

PURCHAS

HIS

PILGRIMES.

IN FIVE BOOKES.

The first, Containing Peregrinations and Discoveries, in the remotest North and East parts of *ASIA*; called *TARTARIA and CHINA*.

The second, *Peregrinations, Voyages, Discoveries, of CHINA, TARTARIA, RUSSIA, and other the North and East parts of the World, by English-men and others.*

The third, *Voyages and Discoveries of the North parts of the World, by Land and Sea, in ASIA, EUROPE, the Polare Regions, and in the North-west of AMERICA.*

The fourth, *English Northern Navigations, and Discoveries: Relations of Greenland, Greenland, the North-west passage, and other Arctike Regions, with later RUSSIAN OCCURRENTS.*

The fifth, *Voyages and Travels to and in the New World, called AMERICA: Relations of their Pagan Antiquities and of the Regions and Plantations in the North and South parts thereof, and of the Seas and Islands adjacent.*

The Third Part.

Unus Deus, Una Veritas.



LONDON

Printed by *William Stansby* for *Henric Feisterstone*, and are to be sold at his shop in *Pauls Church-yard* at the signe of the Rose.

1625.

PAIRCHIV

20-16-20-16-20-16



TO
THE RIGHT
HONORABLE AND
RIGHT REVEREND
FATHER IN
GOD:
JOHN,

Lord Bishop of LINCOLNE, Lord *Keeper*
of the GREAT SEALE of
ENGLAND, &c.

Right Reverend and Honourable:



THESE PILGRIMS deliuering a Historie of the
World in their owne Trauels by Sea and Land,
not onely needed authoritie from the Ad-
miraltie, but fearing suspition of *Ri-t* with-
out warrantable assemblie, become humble
Sutors for your Lordships fauour. So shall
they in the approbation of both (to apply by
a warrant of *Ego dixi, dy estis*, the Patriarchs
mysticall Dreame to our Historicall purpose)

Gen. 28. 12.

finde a *Scala Cœli* to ascend from the ground where they are prostrate
Petitioners, to the Princes Highnesse, whence authorised they may
again *descend* and become the Commons of Common Readers.
Order requires a *Medium* betwixt Princely Height and his Lowli-
nesse, whose function is also tearmed *Holy Orders*, as further tying
him to that equall inequality; wherein hee beseecheth your Lordship
as by speciall Office and in Proprietie to owne that which hee hath
pre-

THE EPISTLE

presumed to offer to the Prince in *Capite*, *Quemadmodum sub optimo rege omnia Rex imperio possidet, Domini domino. Ad reges potestas pertinet, ad singulos proprietas.*

Source: Bodl. Cl. 7.
C.19.45.

Many are the reasons which moued the Author to obtrude his **PILGRIMS** on your Lordship; because he is deeply obliged Yours for former fauours, euen then when you were initiated in the Mysteries of Honour (learning by seruice to Command) in the Discipline of that Honorable Worthy, Lord Chancellor **Egerton** because some conceptions of this Worke were in your Honourable Iurisdiction of *Westminster*, whither left some traduce *Trauelers* for *Vagrants*, they returne in hope of *Sanctuarie*, not so much trusting to the ancient Liberties, as to your Lordships liberall respect to literate endeauours; because these Trauellers aduenturing the world; seeke like *Iacob* at his going and returne, a Reuerend Fathers *Blessing* and *Confirmation*. The Author likewise being called on for his promised *Europe*, submits himselfe to your Lordships Order, heere tendring of that debt, what hee is able, in ready payment. The worke it selfe also being a Librarie in this kind, presents it selfe to your Honour, the Founder of two famous Libraries; one in *Westminster*, (where the Stones & renued Fabrikes speake your Magnificence) the other in that famous Nurfserie of Arts and Vertue Saint **Iohns** Colledge in *Cambridge*, which sometime knew you a hopefull Sonne, but now acknowledgeth your Lordship a happie Father, where also the Author first conceiued with this Trauelling *Geniue*, whercof (without trauelling) he hath trauelled euer since. Learning, the Advancer of your Honour, hath secured her welwillers not to bee reiected in whatsoeuer indeauours (*Scribimus indocti, doctique*) to aduance Learning. The greauest of Nature to goodnesse of Nature, varietie of Estates to a prime Pillar of State, the Historie of Religions to a Religious Prelate, of Antiquities to an Antiquarie, cannot bee altogether vnwelcome; that I mention not the dependance of *London Ministers* Liuiings (*fined* by the Times iniquitie) on your Lordships equall Sentence. These Causes haue moued; One hath inforced; these **PILGRIMS** are your *Seruants*, fitly so called & *Seruando*, saued by your Lordships hand when they were giuing vp the ghost, despairing through a fatal stroke of euer seeing light.

Aug. de C.D. 11.
19.44. 5.

Most humbly therefore, sue vnto your Honour, these **PILGRIMS** for acknowledgement, esteeming your Lordships Name in fore-front a cognisance of blest Libertie and best Service; Now when *Ianus* sends many with gratefull emulations to present their acclamations of a *New Yeere*, presenting (a wordie rather then worthy Present) a *World*, yea, a *New world*, in great part one Age younger to mens knowledge then *America*, sometimes stiled by that Name. I had written other Causes of my addresse to your Honour, but dare not proceed to interrupt Others more weightie. In all humble earnestnesse beseecheth, now in this Festiuall time, the Author with his **PILGRIMS** to finde Hospital

DEDICATORIE.

tall entertainment, not at your Honours table, where Great affaires of Church and State are feasted (except some recreation some times permit) but with Schollers and Gentlemen in the Hall, which will welcome such Guests as your Lordship shall Countenance. So

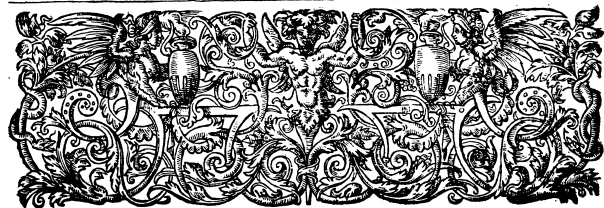
I shall you encourage euer to pray for the increafe of
your Lordships happinesse
in the
Happie Seruice of his
MAESTIE,

Your Lordships

most bounden,

SARVEL PUGHAS.





THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS AND PARAGRAPHS

IN THE SECOND BOOKE OF THE SECOND

PART OF PYCHAS HIS

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

¶ The Iournall of Friar William de Rubru-
quis, a French man, of the Order of the
Minorite Friars, vnto the East parts of
the World, Anno Dom. 1253. H. pag. 1.

CHAP. II.

Tartarian and Northerne Relations written in
Latin by the famous Friar Roger Bacon. H. p. 52
Relations of Vincentius Beluacensis, the moit
of which he receiued from Friar Simon de San-
cto Quintino, one of the foure Friars sent by Pope
Innocent the fourth to the Tartars: seruing to the
illustration of the former. pag. 58.

CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the
Historie of R. Wendouet, and Mat. Paris: with
certaine Epistles of the same subiect. pag. 60.

CHAP. IIII.

The first booke of Marcus Paulus Venerus, or
of Maister Marco Polo, a Gentleman of Venice,
his Voyages. pag. 65.

¶ 1. The voyages of Maister Nicolo and
M. Maffio, from Constantinople to the Great
Can, and their coming home to Venice:
their second voyage with the Author and re-
turne. ibid.

¶ 2. Obseruations of M. Polo, of Armenia,
Turkie, Zorania, Baldach, Persia, Chirmain,
Cobniam, Ormus, Knauc-fooles paradise, and
other Easterne parts in Asia, and Armenia the
lesse. pag. 69.

¶ 3. Of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scallem,
Balaxiam, Balcia, Chesmur, Vochan, Samar-
chan, Carchaa, Peyr, the dreadfull Desarts of
Lop and Tanguth. pag. 73.

¶ 4. Of Carchoran, the original, proce-
dings and exploits of the Tartars; of Priest Iohn
and his descendants. Customs of the Tartars: Of
Bargu, Erginul, Xandu, the Cans Citie and Pa-
lace; of Muke: of strange Sorcerers; and answere
Monkes. pag. 77.

¶ 5. Of Cublai Can, his Raigne and Acts,
Magnificent feasts and huntings, Courts and Coun-
sell. His Citie Cambalu and glorious Pa-
lace. pag. 81.

¶ 6. The Cans provisions for Embassadors
and for Poits, against Dearth; for High-ways;
for the Poore in Cambalu, for Astrologers; Tar-
tars Wine, Fuel, Religion, Opinions, Behauiours,
Court-meatnesse: Polos proceeding from Camba-
lu westward. Of Pulilanghan, Gouza, Tainfu,
Pianfu, Thaigin, Caciaufu, Quenzaufu, Sin-
dinfu, Thebeth, Caidu, Caraian, Carachan,
Cardandan and Vociam. pag. 87.

¶ 7. Of the Province of Mien and Bengala,
how they were conquered to the Can: Of Cang-
gu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other
parts of Cataio. And of the Conquest of Man-
gi. pag. 93.

¶ 8. Of the Cities of Mangi (now called Chi-
na) and the rarities thereof: the many wonders
of Quinfai, the Palaces, Pleasures, Rites and Go-
uernment, obserued by the Natives, and the Tar-
tars. pag. 95.

¶ 9. The ships of India described, the Ile of
Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Islands, the
two lauas, Zeilan, and other Islands, with the ra-
rities therein. pag. 102.

¶ 10. Of the firme Land of the Greater In-
dia. pag. 104.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.
The Historie of Ayson, or Anthonie the Armenian, of Asia, and specially touching the Tartarian. H.P. pag.108.

§ 1. Of the Kingdome of Cathay, and diuers other Princes of Asia, and of the first habitation of the Tartars: and of Cangius, or Gengis his beginning. ibid.

§ 2. Of Changius Can his second vision and conquest. Of Hoocon, and his three famous expeditions. Of Gino Can, of Mangu Can, who was assisted by the King of Armenia, and his death; and of the expedition of his brother Hoocon. pag.112.

§ 3. Of Cobla Can, the fifth Emperour of the Tartars: of the warre with Zarcha, and Tartaria quarrell with the Christians. Hoocon's death. His of the Souldan of Egypt. Of Aoyay and other Princes and Successors of Hoocon. pag.117.

§ 4. Of Aygon the sonne of Aoyay, and Regent by brother, of Bado, and of the exploits of Cadan against the Souldan of Egypt, and others. pag.122.

§ 5. Calan dyeth, Carbanda succedeih; his Ambasse. The Authors entrance into a Religious habit. Of Tamor Can the sixth Emperour, and of Chupar, Hoochra, and Carbanda, three other Tartarian Kings. pag.125.

CHAP. VI.
Travels and Memorials of Sir Iohn Mandeville. pag.128.

CHAP. VII.
The Voyages of Nicolo di Conti a Venetian, to the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu and Quinsai, with some observations of these places. pag.138.

CHAP. VIII.
Extracts of Alhacen his Arabike Historie of Tamerlan, touching his Marshell travels, done into French by Iean du Bec, Abbot of Mortimer. pag.160.

§ 1. Tamerlans birth and person, his Expedition against the Muscovite; his marriage with the Cans daughter; his over-throwing of Calix. ibid.

§ 2. Cataio, Cambalu; Tamerlans Expedition into China, entering the Wall, conquering

the King, and disposing of the Countrey, and returning to Cataio. pag.161.

§ 3. The difference between Tamerlan and Balacet the Turke, his returne to Samarcand, and Expedition against Balacet, the Sarrac, and his taking of Balacet, and making him his foot-soule. pag.155.

§ 4. Emereale of Samarcand; Affairs of China: Funerals of the Can; comming to Quinsai, and description thereof. His disposition of his estate and death. pag.160.

CHAP. IX.
Reports of Chaggy Memer a Persian of Tabas in the Province of Chahan, touching his travels and sojournings in the Countrey of the Great Can, unto M. G. Bapacha Ramulo. pag.164.

CHAP. X.
A Treatise of China, and the adjoining Regions, written on Gaspar da Cruz a Dominican Friar, and dedicated to Sebastian King of Portugal: here abbreviated. H.P. pag.166.
Of Cambodia and the Eramenes there; the cause of his going to China: of China and the neighbouring Regions. ibid.

§ 1. Canaan described, the publike and private buildings, and government. The shipping and husbandrie of China; their contempt of the idle, and provision for impotent poore. pag.170.

§ 2. Of their mechanicall Trades, Merchandises and Manerces: their provisions of fish and fowls; the Persons and attire of Men and Women: their Feasts. pag.176.

§ 3. Of their Lawes, Mandarines or Magistrates, their creation, privileges, maintenance; of Prison and Tortures; of the King and of Embassadors. pag.183.

§ 4. Of the Portugall commerce with the Chinois; of the severe Justice executed upon certaine Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Portugals. pag.190.

§ 5. Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianity. Terrible Earth-quakes and Tempests in China. pag.195.

CHAP. XI.
The relation of Galeotto Perera, a Gentleman man of good credit, that lay prisoner in China. pag.199.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the second Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.
The beginning of English Discoveries towards the North, and North-east, by Sir Hugh Willoughby, Richard Chancellor, and others; of the Muscovite Trade, as also Voyages by Russia, over the Caspian Sea, and thorow diuers Regions of Tartaria. pag.211.

§ 1. The first voyage for discoverie with three ships, set forth under the charge of Sir Hugh Willoughby, Knight, in which he dyed; and Muscovia was discovered by Captaine Chancellor. ibid.
Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by Clement Adams, Schoole-master to the Queenes Henchmen, from the mouth of Captaine Chancellor. pag.218.

The Copie of the Duke of Moscouic and Emperour of Russia his Letters, sent to King Edward the Sixth, by the hands of Richard Chancellor. pag.221.

§ 2. The first voyage made by Master Anthonie Jenkinson, from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Russia, begun the twelfth of May, in the yeere 1557. pag.222.

§ 3. Notes taken out of another mans Relation of the same voyage, touching the Russian Rites. pag.226.

§ 4. The voyage of Master Anthonie Jenkinson, made from the Citie of Mosco in Russia, to the Citie of Boghar in Baetria, in the yeere 1558. written by himselfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moscouite Companie. pag.231.

§ 5. Advertisements and reports of the first voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, gathered out of sundrie Letters written by Christopher Borough; and more especially a voyage over the Caspian Sea, and their shipwracke and miseries there endured by the Ice. pag.243.

A Letter of Master Henrie Lane, to the worshipfull Master William Sanderson, containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east Discoverie, for the space of three and thirtie yeeres. pag.249.

CHAP. II.
Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Eastern parts of the World, taken out of Fernam Mendez Pinto his Peregrination. pag.252.

§ 1. Mendez his many miserable adventures, his strange Expedition with Antonio de Faria; diuers Castles visited, Pirats tamed, miseries suffered, glorie recovered. pag.252.

§ 2. Antonio Faria his taking of Nouda a

Citie in China, triumph at Liampoo; strange voyage to Calempley, miserable shipwrack. pag.258.

§ 3. Their shipwrack in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wandrings of the rest to Nanquin; their imprisonment, sentence and appeal to Pequim; rarities observed in those places and wayes; of the beginnings of the China Kingdome, and of their admirable Wall. pag.263.

§ 4. Mindo Salt pits: Mines of Coretum-baga, Copper-workes; Idolatrie and Christianity; China Trades, and River Faires; their comming to Pequim, trials and sentence. Rarities of Pequim. pag.269.

§ 5. Foure buildings incredibly admirable in Pequim, and diuers of their superstitions: their Hospitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kings revenues and Courts; their Sects. pag.273.

§ 6. Their remoune to Quansie, quarrels, miseries; Tartarian huge Armie, and loss at the siege of Pequim, reported. Quansie taken, and Nixianco: Mendez his explain. Their entertainment by the Tartar King, and going to Cauchinchina with his Embassadors, with many Tartarian observations. pag.277.

CHAP. III.
Spanish plantation of the Philipinas, and what entercourse hath thence hapned betwix them and the Chinois. pag.282.

§ 1. First discoverie of the Philipinas: written by Friar Iuan Gonzales de Mendoza. ibid.

§ 2. First plantation of the Philipinas, by Michael Lopez de Legaspi. pag.284.

§ 3. Of Limahon a China Robber and Renner, by whose occasion the Spaniards sent into China. pag.286.

§ 4. Friar Martin de Herrada, and other Spaniards entertainments in China, and their returne to the Philipinas. pag.292.

Two Letters taken out of Bartolome Leonarde de Argensola his Treatise, called Conquista de las ilas Malucas, printed at Madrid, 1609. mentioning the comming of two English ships to China: which seeme to be two ships of the fleet of Benjamin Wood: The former written by the Visitor of Chincheco in China, unto the Governour of the Philipinas, Don Pedro de Acuna. H.P. pag.309.

The Answer of Don Pedro de Acuna, Governour of the Philipinas, to the Visitor of Chincheco in China. pag.310.

CHAP. IIII.

The reports of a Mahometan Merchant, which had beene in Cambalu: and the troublefome travell of Benediclus Goes, a Portugall Jesuite, from Lahor to China by land, sheweth the Tartars Countries. pag. 310.

CHAP. V.

A generall collection and historical representation of the Jesuites entrance into Iapon and China, untill their admission in the Royall Citty of Nanquin. pag. 316.

§ 1. Of Francis Xavier, Melchior Nunnes, Valignanus, Ruggerius and Palsus. *ibid.*
§ 2. Iaponian Embassy to the Pope; Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their government; Corai invaded, Embassy from China, Taicofamas Temple, and Ogofofamas Succession. pag. 322.

§ 3. Ruggerius enters againe into China with Riccius, and is forced backe to Amacoo; thence sent for againe by the Vice-roy, Sande and Almeida are sent to them, and enter the Countrey as farre as Cequion, and returne to Sciauchin. pag. 327.

§ 4. False brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin: erect a Seat at Xaucem. Monasterie of Nanhoo and other things of note in those parts. They alter their habit; Voyage to Nanquin; the Lake, Rivers, Poles and other rarities. pag. 332.

§ 5. Nanquin described; Riccius expelled thence, he settles at Nancian, thence goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequim; description of it, thence to the Kings Palace, and of Succu, and Hamceu. pag. 338.

§ 6. Letters from Father Longobard and Taifo. Riccius his entertainments at Nanquin and residence there. The Chinois unlearned learning. pag. 343.

CHAP. VI.

A Letter of Father Diego de Pantoja, one of the Companie of Iesvs, to Father Luys de Guzman, Provincial in the Province of Toledo: written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeere 1622. H. P. pag. 350.

§ 1. Difficulties of entering China, their dwelling at Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Presents for the King, troubles in the way by an Eunuch. pag. 350.

§ 2. The King sends for them, is delighted with their Clocks and Pictures; they are shut up, after take a House, are admired for learning; Christianitie of China. pag. 356.

§ 3. The description of the Kingdom of China: of Catay and Musk; the division into Pro-

vinces; Cities and Townes described, River, Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding. pag. 360.

§ 4. Their monyes, apparell, persons, trades, wealth, learning, marriages, superstitions, rites, and opinions. pag. 366.

§ 5. Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie, Degrees, privileges, honours and promotions of learning. Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing. The Mandarin commended. pag. 369.

§ 6. Of the government of China: Of the Mandarins; the China complements and manifold niceties. pag. 372.

§ 7. Of their Women: Of the Tartars Conquest, acts and expulsion. The greatest of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queens Eunuchs. pag. 375.

CHAP. VII.

A discourse of the Kingdom of China, taken out of Riccius and Trigautius, containing the countrey, people, government, religion, rites, sects, characters, studies, arts, acts; and a Map of China added, drawne out of one there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof. pag. 380.

§ 1. Of the name, Citty, and greatness; the Tributaries, commodities, arts, printing, scales, inke, pencil-pennes and fannes. *ibid.*

§ 2. Of their Characters and writing downward: their Studies, Ethikes, Astrologie, Physike, authentike Authors, Degrees how taken both Philosophicall and Militarie. pag. 384.

§ 3. Of the Tartarian conquest; Of Humuu the Establisher of the present government. The Revenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall, Provinces, Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Visitations, Deprivations. pag. 387.

§ 4. Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertainments, and other civillitie: to the King and Magistrates: Of Burials and Marriages, Birth-days, their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites. pag. 391.

§ 5. Of their Superstitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred, of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Divities and three Sects: Priests, Nunnes, Monasteries, Legends, Lyes. pag. 395.

§ 6. Of strangers, and forraigne Religions in China. pag. 399.

§ 7. The Map of China, taken out of a Chinese Map, printed with China Characters; illustrated with Notes, for the understanding thereof. pag. 401.

CHAP. VIII.

A continuation of the Jesuites Acts and observations in China till Riccius his death and some yeeres after. Of Hamceu or Quinlay. An Extract of Monfarts travel. pag. 405.

The

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the third Booke of the first part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Treatise of Russia and the adjoining Regions, written by Doctor Giles Fletcher, Lord Ambassador from the late Queene, Emer-glorious Elizabeth, to Theodore then Emperour of Russia, A. D. 1588. pag. 413.

CHAP. II.

A briefe discoverie of the Northernne discoveries of Seas, Coasts, and Countreies, delineated in order as they were hopefully begun, and have since happily bene continued by the singular industrie and charge of the Worshipsfull Societie of Muscovia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine Thomas Edge the Author. pag. 462.

§ 1. Greenland first discovered by Sir Hugh Willoughby; the Voyages of Frobilher, Pet, and Iackman, Daus, the Dutch; First Morfe and Whale-killing, with further discoveries. *ibid.*

§ 2. Dutch, Spanish, Danish disturbances; also by Hull men, and by a new Patent, with the succeeding success and further discoveries till this present. pag. 466.

§ 3. The description of the severall sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Where-to is added the description of Greenland. pag. 470.

The description of Greenland. pag. 472.

CHAP. III.

The first Navigation of William Barents, alias Bernards, into the North Sea; Written by Gerard de Veer. pag. 473.

CHAP. IIII.

A briefe declaration of Barents his second Navigation, made in Anno 1595, behind Norway, Muscovia, and Tartaria, written by Gerard de Veer. pag. 478.

CHAP. V.

The third voyage Northward to the Kingdoms of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by Gerard de Veer. pag. 482.

§ 1. What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House. *ibid.*
§ 2. Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreddfull winter: the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many many wonders. pag. 492.

§ 3. Their preparation to goe from thence: they depart in a Boat and Scute both open, and come to Cola, 1145. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the

way. This was written by William Barendon in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reverend Peter Plantius in Amsterdum, March the seven and twentieth, 1609. pag. 518.

CHAP. VI.

*A Treatise of Iuer Bory a Gronlander, translated out of the North language into High Dutch. H. *ibid.**
The Course from Island to Groneland. p. 520.

CHAP. VII.

A description of the Countreies of Siberia, Samoidia, and Tingosia. Together with the turnneys leading unto the same Countreies toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Moscovites. pag. 522.

§ 1. Discoverie of Siberia, and the subjection of the same to the Russes. *ibid.*
§ 2. A briefe description of the Wayes and Rivers, leading out of Moscovia toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoidia, and Tingosia, as they are daily frequented by the Russes: with further discoveries towards Tartaria and China. pag. 525.

§ 3. A Note of the travells of the Russes over Land, and by water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yenissei, and to the River Geta, thence unto the Frontiers of Cataia; brought into England by Master Iohn Mericke, the English Agent for Moscouie, and translated out of the Russe by Richard Finch. H. pag. 530.

CHAP. VIII.

*A voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by William Goudon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilot, for discoverie to Ob, &c. H. *ibid.**

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Richard Finch to the Right Worshipsfull Sir Thomas Smith, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipsfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Russia: touching the former voyage, and other observations. H. pag. 534.

The names of the places: that the Russes saile by, from Pechorskoie Zauorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their travell, and distance betwixt each place, or time of sayling, Haling, and Rowing unto the same. pag. 539.

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Master Iofias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Purflogue,

Purfloue, and Marmaduke Willon. Anno 1611. H. pag. 541.
Extracts taken out of two Letters of Iohas Loggan from Pechora, to Master Hakluyt Prebend of Westminster. pag. 546.

CHAP. XI.

A briefe relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and wintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written by William Purfloue. H. pag. 547.
Other obseruations of the said William Purfloue. pag. 550.
The travel from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situate thereupon, over Land. pag. 551.
Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinguities. pag. 552.
Commodities for the Tinguities. ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Later obseruations of William Gourdon, in his wintering at Pustozera, in the yeeres 1614. and 1615, with a description of the Samoyeds life. H. pag. 553.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages to Cherie Island, in the yeeres 1604, 1605, 1606, 1608, 1609. Written by Ionas Poole. H. pag. 556.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages and Northerne discoveries of that worthy irreuerend Discoverer Master Henric Hudon. His Discoverie toward the North Pole, set forth as the charge of certaine Worshipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by Iohn Playfe one of the Companie, and partly by H. Hudon. H. pag. 567.

CHAP. XV.

A second voyage or employment of Master Henric Hudon, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east: written by himselfe. H. pag. 574.

CHAP. XVI.

The third voyage of Master Henric Hudon toward Noua Zembla, and as his returne, his passing from Fairre Islands, to New-found-Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River meere to fiftie three degrees. Written by Robert Iuet of Lime-house. H. pag. 582.

CHAP. XVII.

An Abstract of the Iournall of Master Henric Hudon, for the discoverie of the North-west passage, begun the 17. of Aprill, 1610. ended with his end, being treacherously exposed by some of the Companie. H. pag. 590.

A larger discourse of the same voyage, and the successe thereof, written by Abacuk Price. pag. 597.
A Note found in the Deske of Thomas Widhouffe, Student in the Mathematicks, he being one of them who was put into the Ship. pag. 609.

CHAP. XVIII.

The discoveries of M. M. Nicolo, and Antonio Zeni, gathered out of their Letters by Francisco Marcolino: whereto is added Quirino his shipwracke. H. P. pag. 610.
The shipwracke of Master Piero Quirino, described by Christophoro Fiorauanni, and Nicolo di Michiel, who were present there: heretofore contracted. H. P. pag. 611.

CHAP. XIX.

Ancient commerce betwixt England and Norway, and other Northerne Regions. pag. 619.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great travels by Sea and Land, of Master George Barkley, Merchant of London, in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, and their Islands. pag. 635.

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of Martin Bromionius de Biezefceda seu Ambassadour from Stephen King of Poland, re the Crim-Tartar: Containing a description of Tartaria, or Cherfonesus Taurica, and the Regions subiect to the Perecop in Crim Tartars, with their Customes private and publicke in peace and warre. pag. 632.

CHAP. XXII.

Dithmar Bleskens his Voyages, and History of Island and Groeland. pag. 643.
Of the Islanders Religion. pag. 645.
The Life and Manners of the Islanders. ibid.
Of the wonderful flouding Pools, Lakes, and Fountains in Island. pag. 647.
Of the wonderful Mountaines in Island. pag. 648.
Of the Riebes of the Islanders. pag. 649.
Of the Iudgements of the Islanders. pag. 650.
Of Groeland. pag. 651.

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of Arngimh Ionas, an Islander, his Chrymogza or History of Island: published Anno Dom. 1609. H. P. pag. 654.
 1. Of Island, the Situation, Discoverie, Plantation and Language. ibid.
 2. A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Houses, Perrell, &c. ibid.
 3. Of their Politie, and Religion in old times. pag. 664.

The

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the fourth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Voyage set forth by the Right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, and the rest of the Muscovic Company, to Cherry Land: and for a further Discoverie to be made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in a Ship called the Amitie, of burthen fcutenie tunnes; in the which I Ionas Poole was Master, buttaining foureteene Men and one Boy: Anno Dom. 1610. H. pag. 699.
A briefe note what Beasts, Fowles, and Fishes were seene in this Land. pag. 707.

CHAP. II.

A Commission for Ionas Poole our Servant, appointed Master of a small Barke called the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes burthen, for Discoverie to the Northward of Greenland, given the last day of May, 1610. H. P. pag. 711.

CHAP. III.

A briefe Declaration of this my Voyage of Discoverie to Greenland, and towards the west of it, as follows: being set forth by the right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, Governour of the right Worshipfull Company of new Traders, &c. written by Ionas Poole. H. pag. 711.

CHAP. III.

A Relation written by Ionas Poole of a Voyage to Greenland, in the yeere 1612: with two Shippes, the one called the Whale, the other the Seathoric, set out by the right Worshipfull the Muscovic Merchants. H. pag. 713.

CHAP. V.

A Iournall of the Voyage made to Greenland with five English Shippes and a Pinnasse, in the yeere 1613: written by Master William Baffin. H. P. pag. 716.

CHAP. VI.

A Voyage of Discoverie to Greenland; &c. Anno 1614. written by Ro. Fotherby. H. P. pag. 720.

CHAP. VII.

A true report of a Voyage, Anno 1615, for Discoverie of Sea, Lands, and Islands, to the Northward; as it was performed by Robert Fotherby, the Principle of twenty tunnes called the Richard of London. H. P. pag. 728.

A Letter of Robert Fotherby to Captain Edge, written in Croffe-rodde, July 15. 1615. pag. 731.

CHAP. VIII.

Divers other Voyages to Greenland, with Letters of the which were there employed, communicated to me by Master William Heley, in the yeere 1617.

1618. 1619. 1620. 1621. 1623. pag. 732.
A Letter of Master Robert Salmon to Master Sherwin. In Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, the 24. of June 1618. pag. 733.
A Letter of Master Th. Sherwin: Bell-found this 19. of June, 1618. ibid.
A Letter of James Beuerham to Master Heley. From Fairre-hauen, the 12. of July, 1618. ibid.
A Letter of Iohn Chambers to W. Heley, Bell-found, June 16. 1619. pag. 734.
A Letter of I. Catcher to Master Heley from Fairre-hauen. Laus Deo, this fiftieth of June, 1620. pag. 735.
A Letter of Robert Salmon from Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, July 6. 1621. ibid.
Laus Deo in Fairre-Hauen; the foure and twentieth of June, 1623. pag. 736.
Master Catchers Letter: the nine and twentieth of June 1623. pag. 737.
Captaine William Goodhards Letter: Bell-found this eight of July, 1623. ibid.

CHAP. IX.

The late changes and manifold alterations in Russia since Iuan Vasilowich to this present, gathered out of many Letters and Obseruations of English Ambassadors and other Travellers in those parts. pag. 738.

1. Of the reigne of Iuan, Phedore, his sonne, and of Boris. ibid.

The most pious and magnificent coronation of Theodor Iuanowich, Emperour of Russia, the tenth of June, in the yeere 1584. Tene and observed by Master Ierom Horicy Gentleman, and servant to her Maestie. pag. 740.

2. Occurrents of principall Note which happened in Russia, in the time while the Master Sir Thomas Smith remained there Ambassador from his Maestie. pag. 743.

3. One pretending him selfe to be Demetrius, with the Popes and Polcs helps against the Russian Empire: his Arts, Actions, Marriage, fauour to the English, and miserable end. pag. 751.

The Copie of a Letter sent from the Emperour Demetriy Euanowich, otherwise called Griffo Otreapouye. pag. 758.

The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was sent from the Mosko, from the Emperour Demetriy Euanowich, alias Gryfcha Otreapouye to a Courtier named Gausryla Samoylowich Salmanoue, who was sent downe to the Caffe of Archangell, to Sir Thomas Smith, then Lord Embassadour.

<i>adour.</i>	pag. 759.	<i>couic Merchant, and Master Thomas Lyndes touching a warme Sea to the South-east of the River Ob, and a Note of Francis Gaulle. H.P.</i>	p. 806.
<i>The Copie of the Translation of a new Priviledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperour Demetri Euanowich, otherwise called Grylba Otreapouye, the which Priviledge was sent into England over-land by Olyuer Lylllet Merchants, and seruant to the foresaid Company.</i>	ibid.	<i>Discoveries made by Englishmen to the North-west: Voyages of Sir Sebastian Cabot, Master Thorne, and other Ancients: and Master Weymouth. H.P.</i>	ibid.
<i>The Copie of the translation of a Contract, made by the Emperour Demetri Euanowich, otherwise called Grylba Otreapouye, and the daughter of the Palatine Sendamersko, chiefe Generall of Poland.</i>	pag. 761.	<i>The Voyage of Captaine George Weymouth, intended for the discovery of the North-west Passag toward China, with twofye Boates.</i>	pag. 809.
<i>Q. 4. The Copie of the Translation of a Letter sent from the new Emperour Vassly Euanowich Shoskey to the Kings Maiesty by Master John Mericke.</i>	pag. 765.	<i>James Hall his Voyage forth of Denmarke for the discovery of Greenland, in the yeere 1605. ab- breviated. H.</i>	pag. 814.
<i>Captaine Margarets Letter to Master Mericke from Hamborough, Jan. 29. 1612.</i>	pag. 780.	<i>The second Voyage of Master James Hall, forth of Denmarke into Greenland, in the yeere 1606. contracted. H.</i>	pag. 821.
<i>Q. 5. Of the miserable estate of Ruffia after Swiskeys deportation, their election of the King of Polands Sonne, their Interregnum and popular estate, and choosing at last of the present Emperour, with some remarkable accidents in his time. H.P.</i>	pag. 782.	<i>The Voyage of Master John Knight (which had bene at Greenland once before 1605. Captaine of a Pinnasse of the King of Denmarke) for the Discovery of the North-west passage, begonne the eighteenth of April, 1606. H.</i>	pag. 827.
<i>Pacla inter Primarium Ducem Exercitum Regni Poloniae, & inter Heroes Moscovia. p. 783.</i>			
<i>CHAP. X.</i>		<i>The fourth Voyage of James Hall to Groeneland, wherein he was set forth by English Adventurers, Anno 1612. and slaine by a Greenclander. Written by William Baffin. H.</i>	pag. 831.
<i>A briefe Copie of the points of the Contrasts betweene the Emperours, Maiestie and the Kings Maiestie of Sweden: in Stolboua the seven and twentieth of February, 1616.</i>	pag. 792.	<i>CHAP. XVIII.</i>	
<i>CHAP. XI.</i>		<i>A true Relation of such things as happened in the fourth Voyage for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, performed in the yeere 1615. written by William Baffin. H.P.</i>	pag. 836.
<i>A Relation of two Ruffe Cossacks trauielles, out of Siberia to Catay, and other Countries adjoining therunto. Also a Copie of the last Patent from the Muscovite. A Copie of a Letter written to the Emperour from his Gouvernours out of Siberia.</i>	pag. 797.	<i>CHAP. XIX.</i>	
<i>The Copie of the Altine Chars, or golden Kings Letter to the Emperour of Ruffia.</i>	ibid.	<i>A briefe and true Relation or Journall, containing such accidents as happened in the fift Voyage for the discovery of a passage in the North-west, set forth at the charges of the right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith Knight, Sir Dudley Digges Knight, Master John Mostenholme Esquire, Master Alderman Jones, with others; in the good ship called the Discouery of London; Robert Bilets deaster, and my selfe Pilot, performed in the yeere of our Lord 1616.</i>	pag. 844.
<i>Notes concerning the discovery of the River of Ob, taken out of a Roll, written in the Ruffian tongue, which was attempted by the means of Antonie Marth, a chiefe Factor for the Moscovite Company of England, 1584. with other notes of the North-west. H.</i>	pag. 804.	<i>CHAP. XX.</i>	
<i>The report of Master Francis Cherry a Mos-</i>		<i>A briefe Discourse of the probability of a passage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with testimonies: and a briefe Treatise and Map by Master Briggs. H.P.</i>	pag. 848.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Fifth Booke of the second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

<i>CHAP. I.</i>		<i>Of Trees, Fruits, and Plants.</i>	pag. 981.
<i>Description of the west Indies, by Antonio de Herrera, his Maiesties chiefe Chroni- cle of the Indies, and his Chroni- cle of Ca- tile. H.P.</i>	pag. 855.	<i>Of Reddes or Cane.</i>	pag. 983.
<i>The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Attorneys, which vnto this present day haue serued, and doe serue in the supreme Councell of the Indies, from their first Discoverie.</i>	pag. 916.	<i>Of venenous apples, wherwith they poison their Armes.</i>	pag. 985.
<i>The Gouvernours and Vice-royes, which haue gouerned vntill this time, the Kingdomes of New-Spain and of Peru.</i>	pag. 917.	<i>Of Fishes, and of the manner of fishing.</i>	pag. 986.
<i>CHAP. II.</i>		<i>Of the increase and decrease (that is) rising and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Sea of Sur.</i>	pag. 989.
<i>Observations gathered out of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth Bookes of Iosephus Acosta, a learned Iesuite, touching the naturall historie of the Heauens, Ayre, Water, and Earth, at the West Indies. Also of their Beasts, Fishes, Fowles, Plants, and other remarkable rarities of Nature.</i>	pag. 918.	<i>Of the straight or narrow passage of the Land, lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much sooner and easilier be brought from the Islands of Molucca into Spaine by the West Ocean, then by that way wherby the Portugals saile into the East India.</i>	ibid.
<i>Q. 1. Of the fashion and forme of Heauens, at the new-found World, and of the Ayre and Winds.</i>	ibid.	<i>How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the nature of the place where they are engendered or grow, and of the beaſts called Tigris.</i>	pag. 990.
<i>Q. 2. Of the Ocean that inuiroses the Indies, and of the North and South Seas, their ebbing, flowing, Fishes, fishing Lakes, Rivers, and Springs.</i>	pag. 928.	<i>Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the firme Land, and of their Women.</i>	pag. 991.
<i>Q. 3. Of the qualitie of the Land at the Indies in generall. Properties of Peru, and of new Spaine, and other parts: Of Vulcanes and Earth- quakes.</i>	pag. 935.	<i>Of the chiefe Islands, Hispaniola and Cu- ba.</i>	pag. 993.
<i>Q. 4. Of Metals in the Indies, and especially of the Gold and Silver, and Quick-silver.</i>	pag. 941.	<i>CHAP. III.</i>	
<i>Q. 5. Of Emeralds, Pearles, Indian Bread, Trees, Fruits, Flowers naturall, and carried thither from abroad.</i>	pag. 952.	<i>Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the writings of Iosephus Acosta a learned Iesuite.</i>	pag. 1000.
<i>Q. 6. Of Beasts and Fowles in the In- dies.</i>	pag. 962.	<i>Q. 1. Of the ancient Inhabitants of new Spain, and of the fixe Linages of the Nauatlacas. Of the Mexican Exodus, and adventures by the way, the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tri- bute.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and of Venison.</i>	pag. 965.	<i>Q. 2. Of the second King Vitziloutitli, and of his successours and their Acts vntill the reigne of Moteczuma their last King.</i>	pag. 1009.
<i>CHAP. III.</i>		<i>Q. 3. Of the election of great Moteczuma, the last King of Mexico: his pompe and manner of government, prodigious fore-warnings, of his ruine, and the Spanish conquest.</i>	pag. 1013.
<i>Extracts of Gonzalo Ferdinando de Oviedo his Summarie and the generall Historie of the In- dies.</i>	pag. 970.	<i>CHAP. IV.</i>	
<i>Of the Mynes of Gold, and the manner of working in them.</i>	ibid.	<i>Of the ancient superstitions of the Mexicans and Indians of America, gathered out of the fifth booke of Iosephus Acosta.</i>	pag. 1020.
<i>Of the manner of fishing for Pearles.</i>	pag. 972.	<i>CHAP. V.</i>	
<i>Of the familiaritie which certaine of the Indians haue with the Deuill, and how they receive answer of him of things to come, and other supersti- tions.</i>	pag. 973.	<i>Ciuill Customes and Arts of the Indians taken out of Acostas 6. Booke.</i>	pag. 1050.
<i>Of diuers particular things, as Wormes, Serpents, Beasts, Fowles, Trees, &c.</i>	pag. 975.	<i>CHAP. VII.</i>	

The Contents of the sixth Booke.

the said Picture-historie, are beere prefaced. H. pag. 1066

§ 1. The Mexican Chronicle. ibid.
 § 2. The second part of this Booke containing the particular Tributes, which every Towne subdued payed unto the Lords of Mexico. pag. 1080

§ 3. The third part of this Booke, containeth the private behaviour in Marriages, education of Children, and Trades; with the Martiall, Ecclesiastike, and Civill policie of the Mexican people. pag. 1102.

CHAP. VIII.
 Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine, by Hernando Cortes. pag. 1118.

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkable observed by the Spaniards at their first coming: Cholollas holies; Popocatepecs ashes. Mutezumas multiforme Magnificence and Maiestie. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other Antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis Lopez de Gomara. pag. 1123.

The Hill called Popocatepec. ibid.
 Description of Mexico as it flourished in those times. pag. 1131.

Other Mexican Antiquities, Letters, Numbers, Teeres, Dayes, Weekes, &c. pag. 1135.
 Their reckoning by numbers. ibid.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the sixth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Briefe Relation of the severall Voyages, undertaken and performed by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, in his owne person, or at his owne charge, and by his direction: collected out of the Relations and Journals of credible persons Authors therein. pag. 1141.

CHAP. II.

The Voyage to Saint Iohn de Porto Rico, by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, written by himselfe. H. pag. 1150.

CHAP. III.

A large Relation of Port Ricco Voyage; written as is reported, by that learned man and reverend Divine Doctor Eglington, his Lordships Chaplaine and Attendant in that Expedition; very much abbreviated. H. pag. 1155.

§ 1. The Ships employed in the Voyage and accidents on the Coasts of Spaine, in the Canaries, and the Navigation thence to Dominica. ibid.

§ 2. Description of Dominica and the Virgines. Their landing on Port Ricco, March, fights and taking the Towne. pag. 1157.

§ 3. The Fort Mora besieged and taken. The Towne described: the Mines. Purpose to hold the place: altered by the death and sickness of manie. pag. 1162.

A resolution, which they were to traist to. p. 1163.

§ 4. Purpose of returne. Treatie with the Spaniards. His Lordships departure. Description of the Island, the Beasts, Fruits, Plants, &c. pag. 1168.

§ 5. Accidents by Sea in their way to the Azores and there. pag. 1174.

CHAP. IIII.

The first Voyages made to divers parts of America by Englishmen, Sir Sebastian Cabot, Sir Thomas Pert: also of Sir Iohn Hawkins, and Sir Francis Drake, and many others: collected briefly out of Master Camden, Master Hakluyt, and other Writers. pag. 1177.

A briefe Historie of Sir Francis Drakes Voyages. pag. 1179.

A briefe recitall or nomination of Sea-fights, other Englishmens Voyages related at large in the printed Workes of Master Hakluyt. pag. 1186.

CHAP. V.

The Relation of Peter Carder of Saint Verian in Cornwall, within seven miles of Falmouth, which went with Sir Francis in his Voyage about the World, begun 1577. who with seven others in an open Pinnasse or Shallop of five tunnes, with eight Oares, was separated from his Generall by fowle weather in the South Sea, in October, Anno 1578. who returning by the Straites of Magellan toward Brasil, were all cast away, save this one only aforementioned, who came into England nine yeeres after miraculouly, having escaped many strange dangers, as well among divers Sauvages as Christians. H. pag. 1187.

CHAP. VI.

Master Thomas Candith his Discourse of his fatal and disastrous Voyage towards the South Sea, with his many disadventures in the Magellan Straits, and other places; written with his owne

of the second Part.

owne hand to Sir Tristram Gorges his Executor. H. pag. 1192.

CHAP. VII.

The admirable adventures and strange fortunes of Master Anthonie Knivet, which went with Master Thomas Candith in his second Voyage to the South Sea, 1591. H. P. pag. 1201.

§ 1. What befell in their Voyage to the Straits, and after, till hee was taken by the Portuguese. ibid.

§ 2. Anthonie Knivet his coming to the River of Ianero, and usage amongst the Portugals; and Indians: his divers Travels thoro divers Regions of those parts. pag. 1207.

§ 3. His strange travels with twelve Portugals, whom the Sauvages did cate. His life with the Cannibals: and after that with the Portugals, from whom hee fleeth to Angola, is brought backe, and after manifold chances, is shipped to Lisbonc. pag. 1216.

§ 4. The divers Nations of Sauvages in Brasil, and the adjoining Regions: their diversities of Conditions, States, Rites, Creatures, and other things remarkable, which the Author observed in his many yeeres manifold Pergrinations. pag. 1225.

The Giants of Port Delire, and Inhabitants of Port Famine: also Angola, Congo, and Maffangana, and Angica; Countries of Africa. pag. 1232.

§ 5. The description of divers Rivers, Ports, Harbours, Islands of Brasil: for instruction of Navigators. pag. 1237.

CHAP. VIII.

Relations of Master Thomas Turner who lived the best part of two yeeres in Brasil, &c. which I received of him in conference touching his Travels. pag. 1243.

CHAP. IX.

The taking of Saint Vincent and Puerto Bello, by Captaine William Parker of Plimouth, the seventh of February, 1601. ibid.

CHAP. X.

Certaine Notes of a Voyage made by David Middleton into the West Indies with Captaine Michael Geare, Ann. Dom. 1601. H. pag. 1242.

CHAP. XI.

The Description of the Ile of Trinidad, the rich

Countrie of Guiana, and the mighty River of Orenoco, written by Francis Sparrey, left there by Sir Walter Raleigh, 1595, and in the end taken by the Spaniards and sent Prisoner into Spaine, and after long Captivitie got into England by great Jute. H. pag. 1247.

CHAP. XII.

Captaine Charles Leigh his Voyage to Guiana, and plantation there. H. pag. 1250.

CHAP. XIII.

A true Relation of the traiterous Massacre of the most part of three score and seven English men set on Land out of a Ship of Sir Oliph Leigh, bound for Guiana, in Santa Lucia, an Island of the West Indie, the threec and twentieth of August, written by Iohn Nicol. H. P. pag. 1255.

CHAP. XIII.

The Relation of Master Iohn Willon of Wanstead in Essex, one of the last tenns that returned into England from Wiapoco in Guiana, 1606. H. pag. 1260.

CHAP. XV.

Part of a Treatise written by Master William Turner, Sonne to Doctor Turner of London a Physician touching the former Voyage. H. pag. 1265.

CHAP. XVI.

A Relation of a Voyage to Guiana performed by Robert Harcourt of Stanton Harcourt, in the Countie of Oxfordshire. pag. 1267.

The names of the Rivers falling into the Sea from Amazonas, to Dessequibe, and of the severall Nations inhabiting those Rivers. pag. 1282.

CHAP. XVII.

A Relation of the habitation and other Observations of the River of Marwin, and the adjoining Regions. pag. 1283.
 Rivers from Brabide to the Amazonas. p. 1286

CHAP. XVIII.

A Description and Discouerie of the River of Amazons, by William Davies Barber Surgeon of London. pag. 1287.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Seventh Booke of the second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Treatise of Braßill, written by a Portugall which had long lived there. H. pag. 1289.

§. 1. Of the beginning and originall of the Indians of Braßill, and of their Customs, Religions, and Ceremonies. ibid.

§. 2. Of their manner of killing and eating of Humane flesh: and of their creating Gentlemen. pag. 1294.

§. 3. Of the diversitie of Nations and Languages, and of the Soyle and Climate. pag. 1297.

§. 4. Of the Beasts, Land-serpents, and Fowles. pag. 1301.

§. 5. Of Land-snakes and Serpents. pag. 1303.

§. 6. Of the Fowles that are in the Land, and are thereon furnished. pag. 1304.

§. 7. Of the Brazilian Trees for Fruit, Medicine, and other uses; and their Herbes of rare operations. pag. 1306.

§. 8. Of the Herbes that yield Fruit, and are eaten. pag. 1309.

§. 9. Of the Fishes that swimme in the Salt water: also Shel-fishes, Trees, and Fowles of the Sea: of Rivers and the Creatures which live therein; and the Beasts and Plants brought thither out of Portugall. pag. 1312.

§. 10. Birds that doe feed, and are found in the Salt water. pag. 1316.

§. 11. Fresh-water Snakes (and Creatures of the water.) pag. 1317.

§. 12. Of the Beasts, Trees and Herbes, that come from Portugall, and doe grow and breed in Braßill. pag. 1318.

CHAP. II.

Articles touching the dutie of the Kings Maestie our Lord, and to the common good of all the estate of Braßill. Written (as is thought) by the Author of the former Treatise. H. pag. 1320.

CHAP. III.

Extracts out of the Historie of Iohn Lerijs a Frenchman, who lived in Braßill with Monsieur Villagagnon, Anno 1557 and 58. H.P. pag. 1325.

§. 1. Of the Beasts, and other living Creatures, and Plants of Braßill. ibid.

§. 2. Of the warre, Battalles, Fortitude, and Weapons of the Barbarians: and of their Religion. pag. 1333.

§. 3. Of their Marriages, Education of Chil-

dren, Police, Hospitalitie, Diseases, Physicians, Funerals and Lamentations. pag. 1341.

CHAP. IIII.

The Travels of Hulderike Schmirde in twentie yeeres space, from 1534. to 1554. abbreviated. H.P. pag. 1347.

§. 1. His Voyage up the River of Plate, foundation of Townes, their expedition up the River of Parana and Parabol; and the people of these parts. ibid.

§. 2. Martin Eyollas made Generall. Gabreiros comming: Scherues Voyage. Nunner his infelencie. Divers people and accidents described. pag. 1354.

§. 3. A long and troublesome March from Alfumption into Peru. The Authors returne. p. 1362.

CHAP. V.

The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins, Knight, in his Voyage into the South Sea. An. Dom. 1593. once before published, now reviewed and corrected by a written Copie, illustrated with Notes, and in divers places abbreviated. pag. 1367.

§. 1. What happened in this Voyage before they came neere the Equinoctiall Line, with divers accidental Discoveries usefull for Navigators. pag. 1367.

§. 2. Considerations of Currents: the Scorbute: fire in Ships: Fishes which attend them: Sea-hawking and Hunting: their comming to Braßill and observations thereof. pag. 1372.

§. 3. Tharltons treacherie: Discoverie of Land unknowne: Entrance of the Straits, accidents therein, and description thereof: Divers occasional discourses for the furtherance of Marine and Natural knowledge. pag. 1382.

§. 4. Entrance into the South Sea; Discoverie of the South parts of the Straits to be best islands; by Sir Francis Drake (which the Hollanders ascribe to Maire and Schouten.) Of the Island Mocha, and the parts adjoining. pag. 1391.

§. 5. The Vice-roy sends an Armada against the English; which vieweth them and returneth: is againe set forth: their fight: the English yield upon composition: divers Martiall discourses. pag. 1398.

CHAP. VI.

A briefe Note written by Master Iohn Ellis, one of the Captaines with Sir Richard Hawkins, in his Voyage through the Strait of Magellan, begun the

the ninth of April, 1593. concerning the said Strait, and certaine places, on the Coast and Inland of Peru. pag. 1415.

CHAP. VII.

A briefe Relation of an Englishman which had bene thirtene yeeres Captive to the Spaniards in Peru, &c. H. pag. 1418.

CHAP. VIII.

The Relation of Alexandro Vrfino concerning the Coast of Terra Firma, and the secrets of Peru, and Chili, where hee had lived foure and thirtie yeeres. H. ibid.

CHAP. IX.

Notes of the West Indies, gathered out of Pedro Ordonnes de Cevallos, a Spanish Priest, his larger Observations. pag. 1420.

CHAP. X.

Relation of the new Discoverie in the South Sea, made by Pedro Fernandez Giros Portugez, 1609. with his Petitions to the King, one Englished, another in Spanish. pag. 1422.

The Copie of a Petition presented to the King of Spaine, by Captaine Peter Ferdinand de Quir, touching the discoverie of the fourth part of the World, called Terra Australis Incognita: and of the great riches and fertilitie of the same: Printed with license in Siuill, An. 1610. ibid.

A Note of Australia del Espritu Santo, written by Master Hakluyt. pag. 1432.

CHAP. XI.

The Historie of Lopez Vaz a Portugall (taken by Captaine Withrington at the River of Plate, Anno 1586. with this discourse about him) touching American places, Discoveries and occurrences; abridged. ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Briefe extracts translated out of Ierom Benozos three bookes of the New World, touching the Spaniards cruel handling of the Indians, and the effects thereof. pag. 1448.

CHAP. XIII.

Observations of things most remarkable, collected out of the first part of the Commentaries Royall, written by the Inca Garcilasso de la Vega, Natural of Cozaco, in nine bookes; Of the Original, Lines, Conquests, Lawes and Idolatries of the Incas, or ancient Kings of Peru. pag. 1454.

CHAP. XIIIII.

The suppliment of the Historie of the Incas, briefly collected out of the Authors second part, or Generall Historie of Peru. pag. 1485.

CHAP. XV.

Briefe Notes of Francis Pizarro his conquest of Peru, written by a Spanish Captaine therein employed. pag. 1489.

CHAP. XVI.

The Conquest of Peru and Cusco, called New Castile, and directed to the Emperour by Francisco de Xeres, Secretarie to Captaine Francis Pizarro which conquered them. pag. 1491.

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of occurrences in the Conquest of Peru after Fernand Pizarros departure, written at Xauxa, July 15. 1534. by Pedro Sancho, Notarie Generall in the Kingdoms of New Castile, and Secretarie to the Governour Fr. Pizarro, subscribed by the said Governour himselfe and others, and sent to his Maestie. pag. 1494.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Eighth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A True Relation of Aluaro Nunez, called Capo di Vacca, concerning that which happened to the Fleet in India, whereof Pamphilo Narvaez was Governour, from the yeere 1527. untill the yeere 1536. who returned unto Siuill with three of his Companions onely: Translated out of Ramusio, and abbreviated. H.P. pag. 1499.

§. 1. Their Fleet, and admirall and vnder of Tempest: their entrance into Florida: the Lakes,

troublesome passages, encounters, disastrous success, building Boates for returne. ibid.

§. 2. Misery pursues them at Sea, and betrays them to the Indians: their miserable Lines and Death. pag. 1506.

§. 3. Their flight from the Indians to others, wonderfull cures, backe and belly cares: their travels thorow the Country, and hungry adventures. Diners peoples and their Customs. pag. 1514.

§. 4. They come to the South Sea, and travell through a plentifull Country, till they meet with Spaniards:

of the second Part.

CHAP. II.

CHAP. III.

CHAP. III.

Of the Ile of Hispaniola.

North part of Virginia, begun the six and twentieth
of March, Anno 42. Elizabethæ Regina 16: 2.
and delivered by Gabriel Archer, a Gentleman in
the

*the Elizabeth of London, a Bark of 100 Tunnage,
Captaine Bartholmew Gilbert, in the yeere 1603
Written by Master Thomas Canner, a Gentleman.*

CHAP. XIII.

CHAPTER XIII

happened during my continuance in Tercera: which are related many English Fleets, Sea-fights, and Prizes. pag. 167

PILGRIMS.

Tho. Hope; and since enlarged out of the Writing
of Captaine Iohn Smith, principall Agent and Pa-
tent in these Virginian Occurrents, from the begin-
ning of the Plantation 1606. till Anno 1610. some

CHAP. V.

4. *The Lord La Warres beginnings and proceedings in James Towne, Sir Thomas Gates sent into England; his and the Companies testimony in Virginia, and cause of the late miseries.* pag. 175

CHAP. VII.
The Voyage of Captain Samucll Argal, from
A 2 James

The Contents of the ninth Booke.

James Towne in Virginia, to seek the Ile of Bermudas, and missing the same, his putting over toward Sagadahoc and Cape Cod, and to backe againe to James Towne, begun the nineteenth of June, 1610. H. pag. 1758.

CHAP. VIII.

A short Relation made by the Lord De la Warre, to the Lords and others of the Council of Virginia, touching his unexpected returne home, and afterwards delivered to the generall Assembly of the said Company, at a Court holden the 25. of June, 1611. Published by authority of the said Council, pag. 1762.

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Sir Samuel Argoll, touching his Voyages to Virginia, and Actions there: Written to Master Nicholas Hawes. June, 1613. H. p. 1764.

CHAP. X.

Notes of Virginian Affairs in the government of Sir Thomas Dale and of Sir Thomas Gates, till Ann. 1614. taken out of Master Ralph Hamor (Secretary to the Colonie) his Booke. pag. 1766.

CHAP. XI.

A Letter of Sir Thomas Dale, and another of Master Whitakers, from James Towne in Virginia, June 18. 1614. And a piece of a Treatise, written by the said Master Whitakers from Virginia the yeere before. pag. 1768.

To the R. and my most esteemed friends, M.D.M. at his house at F.Cb. in London. ibid.

Part of a Treatise written at Henrico in Virginia, by M. Alexander Whitaker, Minister to the Colonie there, which then governed by Sir Thomas Dale, 1613. pag. 1771.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Letter: Sir Thomas Dales returne the Spaniards in Virginia. Of Pocahuntas and Tomocomo: Captaine Yerdley and Captaine Argoll (both since knighted) their Governments; the Lord La Warres Death, and other occurrences till Anno 1619. pag. 1773.

CHAP. XIII.

The estate of the Colonie, Anno 1620. and Master Derrmers Letter to me from Virginia, touching his Voyage for the South Sea. pag. 1775.

A Note of the Shipping, Men, and Provisions sent to Virginia, by the Treasurer and Company, in the yeere 1619. pag. 1776.

CHAP. XIII.

A true Relation of a Sea-fight betwene two great and well appointed Spanish Ships, or Men of Warre; and an English Ship, called the Margaret and John, or the Black Hodge, going for Virginia. pag. 1780.

CHAP. XV.

Virginian affaires since the yeere 1620. till this present 1624. pag. 1783.

Ch. 1. A Note of the Shipping, Men, and provisions sent and provided for Virginia, by the Right Honorable Henry Earle of South-hampton, and the Company, and other private Adventurers, in the yeere 1621. &c. With other Occurrences then published by the Company. ibid.

Ships and People. ibid.

And for the benefit of the Plantations these things following have bene here done this yeere. ibid.

Other Occurrences of note. ibid.

Gifts. pag. 1784.

Ch. 2. News from Virginia in Letters sent thence 1621. partly published by the Company, partly transcribed from the Originals, with Letters of his Maiestie, and of the Company touching Silke-workers. pag. 1787.

His Maiesties gracious Letter to the Earle of South-hampton, Treasurer, and to the Council and Company of Virginia here: commanding the present setting up of Silke-workers, and planting of Vines in Virginia. pag. 1787.

Ch. 3. The barbarous Massacre committed by the Sauvages on the English Planters, March the two and twentieth, 1621. after the Englishs ascent. pag. 1788.

Ch. 4. A Note of provisions necessary for every Planter on personall Adventure to Virginia: and accidents since the Massacre. pag. 1799.

CHAP. XVI.

English Voyages to the Summer Islands; Henry Mays Shipwracke there. 1593. The first Colony sent 1612. pag. 1793.

A Copie of the Articles which Master R. More, Governour Deputie of the Summer Islands, propounded to the Company that were there with him to be subscribed unto, which both hee and they subscribed the second of August, in this House, Anno 1612. which about the same time be sent into England, to the Worshipfull Company of the Adventurers. pag. 1795.

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of Summer Islands, taken out of Master Richard Norwood, his Map and Notes added thereto, printed 1622. The Historie of the Creatures growing or lining therein, being enlarged out of Captaine Smiths written Relations. pag. 1796.

CHAP. XVIII.

Extracts out of Captaine John Smiths Historie of Bermudas, or Summer Islands; touching the English acts and occurrences there from the beginning of the Plantation. pag. 1801.

CHAP. XIX.

Briefe intelligence from Virginia by Letters, a Supplement of French-Virginian occurrences, and their supplantation by Sir Samuel Argall, in right of

of the second part.

of the English Plantation. pag. 1805.

CHAP. XX.

Virginias Verger: or a discourse shewing the

benefits which may grow to this Kingdome from American-English Plantations; and specially thos of Virginia and Summer Islands. p. 1809.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the tenth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Briefe Relation of the discoverie and plantation of New England: and of sundrie accidents therein occurring, from the yeere of our Lord 1607. to this present 1622. published by the Presidents and Council, and dedicated to the Princes Highnesse, here abbreviated. p. 1827.

CHAP. II.

The voyage of Master Henric Challons, intended for the North plantation of Virginia, 1606. taken by the way, and ill used by Spaniards: written by John Stoneman Pilot. H. pag. 1832.

CHAP. III.

Extracts of a Booke of Captaine Iohn Smith, printed 1622. called New Englands trials, and continuing the storie thereof, with Motives to the businesse of fishing there. pag. 1837.

An Abstract of Letters sent from the Colonie in New England, July sixteene, 1622. p. 1840.

CHAP. IIII.

A Relation or Journall of a plantation sited at Plimoth in New England, and proceedings therein; printed 1622. and here abbreviated. p. 1842.

CHAP. V.

Good newes from New England: or, a relation of things remarkable in that Plantation; written by E. Winflow, and here abbreviated. pag. 1853.

CHAP. VI.

Nova Scotia. The Kings Patent to Sir Wil-

liam Alexander Knight, for the plantation of New Scotland in America, and his proceedings therein; with a description of Mawoolhen for better knowledge of those parts. pag. 1871.

The description of the Countrey of Mawoolhen, discovered by the English, in the yeere 1602. 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. H. pag. 1873.

CHAP. VII.

The beginning of the Patens for New-found-land; and the plantation there made by the English, 1610. delivered in a Letter dated thence from M. Guy, to M. Slany: Also of the weather the three first winters, and of Captaine Welton: with other remarkable occurrences. H. pag. 1876.

Master Iohn Guy his Letter to Master Slany Treasurer, and to the Council of the New-found-land plantation. pag. 1877.

To Master Iohn Slany Treasurer, and others of the Council, and Company of the New-found-land plantation, the 29. of July, 1612. pag. 1879.

CHAP. VIII.

Captaine Richard Whitbournes voyages to New-found-land, and observations there, and thereof, taken out of his printed booke. p. 1882.

A Relation of New-found-land. pag. 1884.

CHAP. IX.

The names of divers honourable persons and others, who have undertaken to helpe to advance his Maiesties plantation in the New-found-land: written by the said R.W. with extracts of certaine Letters written from thence. pag. 1888.

The second Part of the tenth Booke.

CHAP. X.

Divers warlike Fleets set forth to Sea against the Spaniards, by our English Deputies, Queene Elizabeth, of glorious memorie: Her manifold deliveries and victories. pag. 1891.

CHAP. XI.

The Popes Bull, the King of Spaines preparations, the Duke of Medinas Expedition, the Duke of Parmas Forces, for the invasion of England: divers Sea-fights twixt the English and Spanish Fleets, the Sea-fights of the Spanish, and mis-

erable disasters in their returne. Their Iyes: The Queenes religious triumph. pag. 1895.

Squadron of the Galeons of Portugal. p. 1898.

Don Alonso Peres de Gufman, the good Duke of Medina, Sidonia, Countie of Nebia, Marquess of Cathelhecin Africa, Lord of the Citie of Saint Lucar, Captaine Generall of the Ocean Sea, of the Coast of Andalusia, and of this Armie of his Maiestie, and Knight of the honorable Order of the golden Fleece. pag. 1902.

The true relation of the successfe of the Catholike Armie

The Contents of the tenth Booke

Armie against their Enemies, by the Letters of the Post-master of Logrono of the fourth of September, and by Letters from Roan of the 31. of August, and by Letters from Paris of the Kings Embassadors there: wherein hee declareth the imprisonment of Francis Drake, and other great Nobles of England, and how the Quene is in the field with an Armie, and of a certaine mutinie which was amongst the Quenes Armie, with the successe of the said Catholike Armie since they entred in the Grooyne, till they came on the Coast of England, with two Ballets compounded by Christopher Bruno, a blinde man of Cordowa, printed with licence by Gabriel Ramos Beirano printer. pag. 1913.

CHAP. XII.

A discourse of the Portugall voyage, Anno 1589. Sir Iohn Norris and Sir Francis Drake Generalls, written (as is thought) by Colonell Antonie Wingfield, imployed in the same voyage, formerly published by his friend to whom it was written, and here abbreviated. pag. 1914.

CHAP. XIII.

A briefe and true report of the Honourable voyage unto Cadix, 1596. of the overthrow of the Kings Fleet, and of the winning of the Citie, with other accidents, gathered out of Meteranus, Master Hackluyt, and others. pag. 1927.

CHAP. XIII.

The voyage to the Iles of Azores, under the conduct of the Right Honorable Earle of Essex, 1597. pag. 1935.

§. 1. *The relation thereof by the said Earle, and other Commissioners.* Ibid.

§. 2. *A larger relation of the said Iland voyage, written by Sir Arthur Gorges Knight, collected in the Quenes ship called the VVatt Spite, wherein he was then Captaine; with Marine and Mariall discourses added according to the occurrences.* pag. 1938.

The Conclusion of the Worke, with some later aduersifements touching his Maiesties care for diuersion. pag. 1940.



Maps and Peeces cut in Brasfe or VWood
in the last ten Bookes.

America	p.857	Lituania	p.629
America Meridionalis	p.882	Liunia	p.627
America Septentrionalis	p.853	Magellan Streight	p.900
Map of the Arctike Pole	p.625	Mexican hieroglyphic. histor. cut	
Borussia or Prussia	p.626	in 65. peeces	p.1067, &c.
Hondius his Map of China	p.361	to 1117.	
Purchas his Map of China	p.402	Mosconia	p.778
Denmarke	p.622	Norwegia	p.620
England	p.1980	Polonia	p.630
Florida	p.689	Russia	p.220
Great Britaine and Ireland	p.1981	Nova Scotia	p.1874
Greenland	p.468	New Spaine	p.871
Vlphilas Gottick letters	p.653	Tartaria	p.234
Hispaniola	p.861	Taurica Cherfonefus	p.632
Jfland	p.644	Virginia	p.1692





PEREGRINATIONS
AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE
REMOTEST NORTH AND EAST
PARTS OF ASIA, CALLED
TARTARIA AND
CHINA.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

*The Iournall of Frier WILLIAM DE RUBRQVIS,
a French-man, of the Order of the Minorite Friers, vn-
to the East parts of the World, Anno
Dom. 1253.*



O the most Excellent and most Christian Lord, Lewis,
by Gods grace the Renowned King of France, Frier
William de Rubric, * the meanest of the Minorite
Order, wisheth health and continuall Triumph in
Christ.

It is written in the Booke of Ecclesiastica, concer-
ning the Wiseman: *He shall trauele into strange Coun-
tries, and good and euill shall bee try in all things:* The
very same Action (my Lord and King) haue I achie-
ued: howbeit, I wish, that I haue done it like a wise
man, and not like a Fool. For many there bee, that
performe the same Action which a wise man doth, not
wisely but more vndiscreetly: of which number I feare
my selfe to bee one. Notwithstanding, howsoever I
haue done it, because you commanded mee, when I de-
parted from your Highnesse, to write all things vnto you, which I should see among the Tar-
tari, and you wildest me also that I should not feare to write long Letters, I haue done as your
Almightie enioyned me: yet with feare and reuerence, because I want words and Eloquence suf-
ficient to write vnto so great a Maiestie. Bee it knowne therefore vnto your Sacred Maiestie,
that in the yeare of our Lord 1253, about the Nones of May, wee entred into the Sea of Pon-
tus, which the Bulgarians call the great Sea. It containeth in length (as I learned of certayne
Merchants) one thousand and eight miles, and is in a manner, diuided into two parts. About
the midle thereof are two Prouinces, one towards the North, and another towards the South.
The South Prouince is called Synopolis, and it is the Cattle and Port of the Soldan of Turke-
but the North Prouince is called of the Latines, Gafaria: of the Greekes, which inhabit vpon
the Sea shoare thereof, it is called Cassaria, that is to say, Casaria. And there are certayne head
lands stretching forth into the Sea towards Synopolis, Alfo, there are three hundred miles of di-
stance

part of this
Author, but
the whole
worke being
found in Reut
Colledge Li-
brary in Cam-
bridge, I thought
fit to commu-
nicate it to the
World, it being
never publi-
shed, as I
thinke, in any
Language, I
begin with the
Tartari, as be-
ing the more
the first be-
fore the Chi-
nese, yet, China
or Wang being
come knowne
by them.
Ecclesiast. 3. 1. 3.
Eccl. 3. 1. 3.
Eccl. 3. 1. 3.
Eccl. 3. 1. 3.

zikā.

distance between *Synopolis* and *Callaria*. Infolmuch that the distance from thofe .poynts or places to *Conftantinople*, in length and breadth is about feuen hundred miles : and feuen hundred miles alo from thence to the Eaft, namely, to the Countrey of *Hiberia*, which is a Province of *Georgia*. At the Province of *Gafaria* or *Callaria*, we arrived, which Province is, in a manner, three fquare, having a Citie on the Welt part thereof called *Kerjona*, wherin Saint *Clement* fuffered Martyrdom. And fayling before the faid Citie, we faw a land in, in which a Church is faid to be built by the hands of Angels. But about the miditt of the faid Province toward the South, as it were, upon a tharge Angle Point, ftandeth a Citie called *Soldania*, directly againft *Synopolis*. And there doo all the *Turkie* Merchants, which Traffique into the North Countreys, in their Journey outward, arrive, and as they retorne home-ward alfo from *Ruffia*, and the faid Northerne Regions, into *Turkie*. The forefaid Merchants tranfport thither Ermines and gray Fures, with other rich and coftly Skinnes. Others carrie Clothes made of Cotton or Bombaft, and Silke, and diuers kinds of Spices. But upon the Eaft part of the faid Province ftandeth a Citie called *Matriga*, where the Ruer *Tanais* difchargeth his ftreames into the Sea of *Pontus*, the mouth whereof is twelue miles in breadth. For this Riuier, before it entred into the Sea of *Pontus*, maketh a little Sea, which hath in breadth and length feuen hundred miles, and it is in no place thereof about fixe paces deep, whereupon great Veffels cannot faile out of it. Howbeit the Merchants of *Conftantinople*, arriving at the forefaid Citie of *Matriga*, fend their Barkes vnto the Riuier of *Tanais* to buy dried fihes, Sturgeons, Tholles, Barbils, and an infinite number of other fihes. The forelaid Province of *Callaria*, is compaffed in with the Sea on three fides thereof : namely, on the Welt-fide, where *Kerjona*, the Citie of Saint *Clement* is fittate : on the South-fide the Citie of *Soldania*, whereto we arrived : on the Eaft-fide *Maricandis*, and there ftands the Citie of *Matriga*, upon the mouth of the Ruer *Tanais*. Beyond the fad mouth ftandeth *Umketj*, which is not in fubiection vnto the *Tartars* : alfo the people called *Sofians*, *Hians*, and *Araxes*, which likewife are not vnder the *Tartars* Dominion. Moreover, toward the fouth ftandeth the Citie of *Angedonia*, which hath a Governour appointed to it, named *Guyda*, beinge of the Lingage of the Emperours of *Conftantinople*, and is fubiection vnto the *Tartars*. Next vnto that is *Synopolis*, the Citie of the *Seldan* of *Turkie*, whofe likewife is in fubiection vnto them. Next vnto thefe lieth the Countrey of *Alafkian*, whole Sonne is called *Alaf*, of his Grand-father by the Mothers fide, who is in fubiection to all the Land from the mouth of *Tanais* Welt-ward as farre as *Danubius* is vnder their Iurifdiction, beyond *Danubius* alfo, towards *Conftantinople* *Alafkian*, which is the Land of *Alfauas*, and *Balgia minor*, as farre as *Solonia*, doe all pay Tribute vnto them. And besides the Tribute imparted, they haue alfo, of late yeares, exacted of every houehold an Axe, and all fuch Corne as they found lying on heapes. We arrived therefore at *Soldania*, the twelfth of the Kalends of Iune, And diuers Merchants of *Conftantinople*, which were arrived there before vs, reported that certayne Meflengers were coming thither from the Holy Land, who were delirous to trauell vnto *Saracach*. Notwithftanding, I my felfe had publickly giuen out upon Palme Sunday within the Church of *Santa Sophia*, that I was not your nor any other mans Meflenger, but that I trauelled vnto thofe Infidels according to the Rule of our Order. And being arrived, the faid Merchants admonifhed me to take diligent heed what I fpake : becaufe they hauing reported mee to be a Meflenger, if I fhould fay the contrary, that I were no Meflenger, I could not haue free paffage granted vnto them. Then I fpake after this manner vnto the Gouernours of the Citie, or rather vnto their Lieutenants, becaufe the Gouernours themfelves were gone to pay Tribute vnto *Baatu*, and were not as yet returned. We heard of your Lord *Saracach* (quoth I) in the Holy Land, that he was become a Chriftian : and the Chriftians were exceeding glad thereof, and efpecially the moft Chriftian King of *France*, who is there now in Pilgrimage, and fighteth againft the *Saracens*, to redeeme the holy places out of their hands : wherefore I am determined to goe vnto *Saracach*, and to deliuer vnto him the Letters of my Lord the King, wherein hee admonifheth him concerning the good and commoditie of all Chriftendome. And they received vs with gladnesse, and gave us a good faymment in the Cathedral Church. The Bifhop of which Church was *Saracach*, who told us many good things concerning the faid *Saracach*, which afterward I found to be nothing fo. Then they vsd to our choice, whether we would haue Carcs and Oxen, or packe-horfes to tranfport our Carriages. And the Chriftians of *Conftantinople* mine owne, I did not take Carcs of the Citizens of *Soldania*, but to buy covered Carcs, which I would haue done my Carriages, and to lift them vp againe on lundry Horfes backs : and besides, that I fhould ride a more gentle pace by the Oxendrawing the Carcs. Wherefore, contenting my felfe with their euill counfell, I was traueiling vnto *Saracach* two moneths, which I could haue done if I had gone by Horfe. I brought with me from *Conftantinople* (being by the Merchants aduifed fo to doe) pleafant Fruits, Muskadill Wine, and delicate Bifket bread to prefent vnto the Gouernours of *Soldania*, to the end I might obtayne free paffage : becaufe they looke favourably vpon no man which cometh with an empty hand. All which things I beftowed in one

[illegible]

The neck of
Tarrica Chev.
Seneca,

Chap. 2.
Of the *Tartars*
and of their
houses.

They haue in no place any felled Citie to abide in, neither know they of the Celestiall Citie to come. They haue diuided all *Sybilas* among themselves, which stretcheth from the River *Danubius* euen vnto the rising of the Sunne. And euery of their Captaines, according to the great or small number of his people, knoweth the bounds of his Pastures; and whete he ought to feed his Cattrell Winter and Summer, Spring and Autumme. For in the Winter they defend vpon the warme Riuers South-ward. And in the Summer they ascend vnto the cold Region North-ward. In Winter when Snow lyeth vpon the ground, they feed their Cattrell vpon Pastures without water, because then they vie Snow in stead of water. Their houses wherein they dwell are they ground vpon a round foundation of Wickers artificially wrought and compacted together: the Roofe whereof consisteth (in like sort) of Wickers, meeting about into one little Roundell, of which Roundell ascendeth vpward a necke like vnto a Chimney, which they couer with white Felt, and oftentimes they lay Morter or white Earth vpon the said Felt, with the powder of bones, that it may shine white. And sometimes also they couer it with black Felt. The said Felt on the necke of their house, they doe garnish ouer with beautifull varieties of Pictures. Before the doore likewise they hang a Felt curiously painted ouer. For they spend all their coloured Felts, in painting Vines, Trees, Birds, and Beasts thereupon. The said houses they make so large, that they contayne thirte foot in breadth. For measuring once the breadth between the wheele-rats of one of their Carts, I found it to bee twentie feet, and yet at the least. I told two and twentie Oxen in one Teame, drawing an house vpon each Cart, eleven in one order according to the breadth of the Cart, and another twelve in the other side, as the Axe-tree of the Cart was an huge bigneesse like vnto the Mast of a Shippe. And a Morrow stood in the doore of the house, vpon the fore-side, three of the most ill-mannerd Wickers as bigge as great Chests: and afterward, some ouer another, they frame an hollow hild or court of such like Wickers, and set a doore in the fore-side thereof, and then they couer the said Chalk or litle House with black Felt; vberl ouer with Tallow or Sheeps Milke to keep the rain from soaking through, which they deale likewise with pinting or with feathers. And in such Chells they put their whole Household-stuffe and Treasure. Also the same Chells they doe strongly bind vnder other Carts, which are drawne with Camels, to the end they may waide through Riuer. Neither doe they at any time take downe the said Chells from off their Carts. When they

The benefit of
a Painter in
strange Coun-
tries.

Idols

They use the
like customs in
Florida.

5

Chap. 5.
Of their food
and viſuals.

Drying of flesh
in the wind.

Chap. 6.
How they
make their
drinke, calle
Co'mos.

Caricofmo

Store of
Mares, and
Mares milk

against Winter. In the Winter season when Milke fayleth them, they put the foresaid Curds (which they call *Gry-ur*) into a bladder, and pouring hot water thereto, they beat it until they have refolued it into the said Water, which is thereby made exceedingly towne, and that they drinke in stead of Milke. They are very scrupulous, and take diligent heed that they drinke not faire Water by it selfe.

Chap. 7.
Of the beasts
which they cat
e their gar-
ments and of
their manner
of hunting.

Our Falconers
vie the best fit.
Another
strange cus-
toms, which I
leave to be
scanned by
Falconers
themselves.

Great Lords have Cottages or Granges towards the South, from whence their Tenants bring when Millet and Meale against Winter. The poorer sort provide themselves of such necessaries, for the exchange of Rums, and of other beests skins. The *Tartars* flaves fill their bellies with thicke water, and are therewithall contented. They have also certaine little beests, called by them, *Sogur*, which live in a Cave twemtie or thurthe of them together. All the whole Winter sleeping there for the space of sixe monthes, and these they take in great abundance. There are also a kind of Conies having long tayles like unto Cats; and on the outside of their tayles grow blacke and white haire. They have many other small beests good to eat, which they know and discern right well. I saw no Deere there, but a few Hares, but a great number of Roes. I saw wild Aides in great abundance, which be like unto Mules. Also I saw another kind of beest, called *Aruck*, having in all resemblance the bodie of a Ram, and crooked hornes, which are of such bignesse, that I could scarce lift up a pair of them with one hand; and of these hornes they make great drinking cups. They have Faulcons, Girfaulcons, and other Hawkes in great plenty, all which they carrie upon their right hands; and they put always about their Faulcons neckes a string of Leather, which hangeth downe to the midst of their gorges, by the which string, when they cast them off the fist at the game, with their left hand they bow downe the heads and breasts of the said Hawkes, left they should be toffed up and downe, and beaten with the wind, or lest they should lase too high. Wherefore they get a great part of their victuals by hunting and hawking. Concerning their garments and attire, be it knowne unto your Maiestie, that out of *Caucasya*, and other Regions of the East, out of *Persia* also, and other Countries to the South, there are brought unto them Stuffs of silke, Cloth of gold, and Cotton cloth, which they weare in time of Summer. But out of *Russia*, *Mosell*, *Bulgaria* the greater, and *Tajicatar*, that is, *Hungaria* the greater, and out of *Kerks* (all which are Northern Regions, and full of Woods) and also out of many other Countreies of the North, which are subiect unto them, the Inhabitants bring them rich and colly skins of divers sorts (which I never saw in our Countries) wherewithall they are clad in Winter. And always against Winter they make themselves two Gownes, one with the fure upward to their skine, and another with the fure outward, to defend them from wind and snow, which for the most part are made of Wolves skins, or Foxe skins, or else of Rapions. And when they sit within the house, they haue a finer Gowne to weare. The poorer sort make their vpper Gowne of Doggs or Goats skins. When they goe to hunt for wild beests, there meets a great companie of them together, and enuironing the place round about, where they are sure to find some game, by little and little they approach on all sides, till they have gotten the wild beests into the midst, as it were into a Circle, and then they discharge their Arrows at them. Also they make themselves Curdes of skins. The rich *Tartars* sometimes fure their Gownes with pellice or silke flage, which is exceeding soft, light, and warme. The poorer sort doe line their clothes with Cotton cloth, which is made of the finest wolle they can picke out, and of the coarser part of the said wolle, they make Felt to cover their houses, and their chists, and for their bedding also. Of the same wolle, being mixed with one third part of Horse haire, they make all their cordage. They make also of the said Felt coverings for their shooles, and caps to defend their heads from the weather: for all which purposes they spend a great quantitie of their wolle. And thus much concerning the attire of the men.

Great expense
of Woll.

Chap. 8.
Of the fash-
ion which the
Tartars in cut-
ting their
haire, and of
the attire of
their women.

The men shoue a plot foure square vpon the crownes of their heads, and from the two foremost corners they shoue, as it were, two flames downe to their temples: they shoue also their temples, and the hinder part of their head, euen vnto the nipe of the necke: likewise they shoue the fore-part of their scalp downe to their foreheads, and vpon their foreheads they leaue a Locke of haire reaching downe vnto their eyes-browes: vpon the two hindermost corners of their heads, they vnder each eare, which they twice and braide into Knots and so bind and knit them vnder each eare also. Moreover, their womens garments differ not from their mens, saving that they are somewhat longer. But on the contrary, their womens haire is married, that is, they shoue her scalp from the middle of her head downe to her forehead, and weares a wide garment like vnto the hood of a Nunne, yet larger and longer in all parts than a Nunnes hood, being open before, and girt vnto them vnder the right side. For herein doe the *Tartars* differ from the *Turkes*: because the *Turkes* fasten their garments to their bodies on the left side: but the *Tartars* alwaies on the right side. They haue also an ornament for their heads, which they call, *Betta*, being made of the bark of a Tree, or of some such other light

ter

ter matters as they can finde, which by reason of the thicke and roundnes thereof cannot be holden but in both hands together: and it hath a square sharpe spire rising from the top thereof, being more then a cubite in length, and fashioned like vnto a Pinacle. The said *Botta* they couer all ouer with a piece of rich Silke, and it is hollow within: and vpon the midst of the said spire or ique are top, they put a bunch of Quils, or of slender Canes a cubite long and more: and the said bunch on the top thereof, they beautifie with Peacockes Feathers, and round about all the length thereof, with the Feathers of a Malards taile, and with precious stones also. Great Ladies weare this kind of ornament vpon their heads, binding it strongly with a certaine Hat or Coyke, which hath a hole in the crowne, for the spire to come through it: and vnder the foresaid ornament they couer the haire of their heads, which they gather vp round together from the hinder part thereof to the crowne, and so lap them vp in a knot or bundell within the said *Botta*, which afterward they bind strongly vnder their throats. Herupon when a great company of such Gentlewomen ride together, and are beheld a fure off, they seeme to be Souldiers with Helmes on their heads, carrying their Lances upright: for the said *Botta* appeareth like an Helmet vnto the eyes. All their Women sit on horse-backe, bestriding their Horses like men: and they binde their hoods or gownes about their waistes with a sky-coloured Silke Skarfe, and with another Skarfe they gird it about their breasts: and they binde also a piece of white Silke like a Muffler or Maske vnder their eyes, reaching downe vnto their breasts. These Gentlewomen are exceeding fat, and the lesser their noses be, the fairer they are esteemed: they dawbe ouer their lowest faces with greafe too shamefully: and they neuer lyein bed for their trauell of child-birth.

The duties of Women are to driue Carts: to lay their houses vpon Carts, and to take them downe againe: to milke Kine, to make Butter and *Gry-ur*, to dresse skinnies, and to sew them, which they usually sew with thread made of sinewes, for they diuide sinewes in slender threads, and then twine them into one long thread. They make Sandals and Socks, and other Garments. Howbeit they neuer wash any apparell: for they say, that God is then angry, and that dreadfull thunder will ensue, if washed garments be hanged forth to dry: yea, they beate such as wash, and take their garments from them. They are wonderfully afraid of thunder: for in the time of thunder they thrust all strangers out of their houses, and then wrapping themselves in blacke Felt, they lye hidden therein, till the thunder be ouer-past. They neuer wash their dithes or bowles: yea, when their flesh is foddien, they wash the platter wherein it must be put, wash falding lostr breath out of the pee, and then poure the said bread into the pot againe. They make Felt also, and couer their houses therewith. The duties of the Men are, to make Bowes and Arrows, Stirrops, Bridles and Saddles: to build Houses and Carts; to keep Horses, to milke Mares, to churme Colmes and Mares Milke, and to make bags wherein to put it: they keepe Camels also, and lay burthens vpon them. As for Sheepe and Goats, they tend and milke them, as well the Men as the Women. With Sheeps Milke they thicke and salted, they dresse: and tan their Hides. When they will wash their hands or their heads, they fill their mouthes full of Water, and spowting it into their hands by little and little, they sprinkle their haire, and wash their heads therewith. As touching marriages, your Highnesse is to vnderstand, that no man can haue a Wife among them till he hath bought her: whereupon sometimes their Maids are very faine before they be married, for their Parents alwaies keepe them till they can sell them. They keepe the first and second degrees of Consanguinitie inuoluable, as we doe: but they haue noregard of the degrees of Affinitie: for they will marrie together, or by succession, two Sisters. When Widowes marrie not at all, for this reason, because they beleue, that all who haue serued them in this life, shall doe them seruice in the life to come also. Whereupon they are periwaded, that euery Widow after death shall retorne vnto her owne Husband. And here-hence ariseth an abominable and filthy custom among them: namely, that the Sonne marrieth sometimes all his Fathers Wiues except his owne Mother: For the Court or House of the Father or Mother, falleth by inheritance alwaies to the younger Sonne. Whereupon he is to prouide for all his Fathers Wiues, because they are part of his Inheritance as well as his Fathers possessions. And then if he will, heuileth them for his owne Wiues: for he thinks it no infamie or dishonourment vnto himselfe, although they retorne vnto his Father after death. Therefore when any man hath bargained with another for a Maid, the Father of the said Daughter makes him a feast: in the meane while she fleeth vnto some of her Kinsfolkes to hide her life. Then faith her Father vnto the Bridegroom: *Loe, my Daughter is yours, take her wheresoeuer you can finde her*. Then he and his friends seek for her till they can find her, and hauing found her, he must take her by force and carry her (as it were) violently vnto his owne house.

Concerning their Lawes, or their Execution of Iustice, your Maiestie is to bee aduertised, that when two men fight, no third man dare intrude himselfe: to part them. Yea, the third man doe not help his owne Sonne. But he that goes by the worst, must appeale vnto the Court of his Lord. And whosoever else offeth him any violence after appeale, is put to death. But

Chap. 10.
Of the execu-
tion of Ius-
tice and Iud-
gement: and of
the death

he must goe presently without all delay : and he that hath suffered the iniury, carrieth him (as it were) captiue. They punish no man with sentence of death, vnlesse he bee taken in the deed doing, or confesse the same. But being accused by the multitude, they put him vnto extreame torture, to make him confesse the truth. They punish murder with death, and Carnall copulation also with any other besides his owne. By his owne, I meane his Wife or his Maid Seruant, for he may vie his Slave as hee listeth himselfe. Hainous theft also or felony they punish with death. For a light theft, as namely, for stealing of a Ram, the partie (not being apprehended in the deed doing, but otherwise detected) is cruelly beaten. And if the Executioner layes on an hundred strokes, hee must haue an hundred floges; namely, for such as are beaten vpon sentence giuen in the Court. Also counterfeite Messengers, because they feine themselves to be Messengers, when as indeed they are none at all, they punish with death. Sacrilegious persons they vie in like manner (of which kind of Malefactors your Maiestie shall vnderstand more fully hereafter) because they esteeme such to be Witches. When any man dyeth, they lament and howle most pittifully for him : and the said Mourners are free from paying any tribute for one whole year after. Also, whosoever is present at the house where any one growne to mans estate lyeth dead, he must not enter into the Court of *Mongu-Cao*, till one whole year be expired. If it were a child deceased, hee must not enter into the said Court till the next moneth after. Neere vnto the graue of the partie deceased, they alwaies leaue one Cottage. If any of their Nobles (being of the stocke of *Chongu*, who was their first Lord and Father) deceaseth, his Sepulchre is vnknowne. And alwaies about those places where they interre their Nobles, there is one house of men to keepe the Sepulchres. I could not learne that they vie to hide Treasures in the graues of their dead. The *Comenians* build a great Tombe ouer their dead, and erect the Image of the dead partie thereupon, with his face towards the East, holding a drinking Cup in his hand before his Nauell. They erect also vpon the Monuments of rich men, Pyramids, that is to say; little sharpe houses or pinacles : and in some places I saw mightie Towers made of Bricke, in other places Pyramids made of stones, albeit there are no stones to be found thereabout. I saw one newly buried, in whose behalf they hanged vp sixteene Horfe-hides, vnto each quarter of the world four, betweene certaine high polls : and they set besides his Graue Cosmos for him to drinke, and flesh to eat : and yet they said that he was baptized, I beheld other kinds of Sepulchres also towards the East : namely, large floores or pavement made of stone, fume round, and some square; and then four long stones pitched vpright, about the said pavement towards the four Regions of the world. When any man is sicke, he lyeth in his bed, and causeth a signe to be set vpon the said house : whereupon none at all visit any sicke partie but his seruant only. Moreouer, when any one is sicke in their great Courts, they appoint Watch-men to stand round about the said Court, who will not suffer any person to enter within the Precincts thereof. For they feare least euill spirits or winds should come together with the parties that enter in. They esteeme of Soothsayers, as of their Priests.

Sepulchres.

Chap. 11.
Of our first
entrance a-
mong the
Tartars, and
of their in-
gratitude.

Diet Sariat.

And being come amongst those barbarous people, me thought (as I said before) that I was entered into a new world : for they came flocking about vs on horse-backe, after they had made vs a long time to waite for them sitting in the shadow, vnder their blacke carts. The first question which they demanded, was whether we had our beere with them heretofore, or not? And giuing them answer that we had not, they began impudently to beg our victuals from vs. And we gaue them some of our Bisket and Wine, which wee had brought with vs from the Towne of *Soldia*. And hauing drunke off one Flagon of our Wine, they demanded another; saying, That a man goeth not into the house with one foote. Howbeit we gaue them no more, excusing our selves that we had but a little. Then they asked vs, whence we came, and whither we were bound? I answered them with the words above mentioned : that wee had heard concerning Duke *Sariat*, that hee was become a *Christian*, and that vnto him our determination was to trauell, hauing your Maiesties Letters to deliuer vnto him. They were very inquisiue to know whether I came of mine owne accord, or whether I went? I answered, that no man compelled me to come, neither had I come, vnlesse I my selfe had beene willing : and that therefore I was come according to mine owne will, and to the will of my Superior. I tooke diligent heed neuer to say that I was your Maiesties Embassadour. Then they asked what I had in my Carts; whether it were Gold or Silver, or rich Garments to carrie vnto *Sariat*? I answered, that *Sariat* should see what we had brought, when we were once come vnto him, and that they had nothing to doe as such questions, but rather ought to conduct me vnto their Captaine, and that he, if he thought good, should cause me to be directed vnto *Sariat*: if not, that I would returne. For there was in the same Prouince one *Batin* his Kinsmen, called *Sacacai*, vnto whom my Lord the Emperour of *Constantinople* had written Letters of request, to suffer me to passe through his Territorie. With this answer of ours they were satisfied, giuing vs Horfes and Oxen, and two men to conduct vs. Howbeit, before they would allow vs the foresaid necessaries for our iourney, they made vs to awaite a long while, begging our bread for their

their young Brats, wondering at all things which they saw about our Seruants, as their Knives, Gloues, Purfes and Points, and desiring to haue them. I excused my selfe that wee had a long way to trauell, and that we must in no wise so soone deplete our selues of things necessary, to finish so long a iourney. Then they said, that I was a very varlet. True it is, that they tooke nothing by force from me : howbeit they will beg that which they see very importantly and shamefully. And if a man bestow ought vpon them, it is but cost lost, for they are thanklesse wretches. They esteeme themselves Lords, and thinke that nothing should be denied them by any man. If a man giues them nought, and afterwards stands in need of their seruice, they will do right nought for him. They gaue vs of their Cowes Milke to drinke, after the Butcher was churnd out of it, being very sowre, which they call *Agram*. And so we departed from them. And in very deed it seemed to me that we were escaped out of the hands of Diuels. On the morrow we were come vnto the Captaine. From the time wherein we departed from *Soldia*, till wee arrived at the Court of *Sariat*, which was the space of two moneths, we neuer lay in House or Tent, but alwaies vnder the starry Canopie, and in the open Aire, or vnder our Carts. Neither yet saw we any Village, nor any mention of building where a Village had bene, but the graues of the *Comenians*, in great abundance. The same evening our guide which had conducted vs, gaue vs some Cosmos. After I had drunke thereof, I swear most extremely for the noueltie and strangenesse, because I neuer dranke of it before. Notwithstanding, me thought it was very faculty, as indeed it was.

ON the morrow after we met with the Carts of *Scacacai* laden with houses, and me thought that a mightie Citie came to meete me. I wondered also at the great multitude of huge Droues of Oxen, and Horfes, and at the Flockes of Sheepe. I could see but a few men that guided all these matters : whereupon I inquired how many men hee had vnder him, and they told me that he had not aboute fife hundred in all, the one halfe of which number we were come paid, as they lay in another Lodging. Then the Seruant which was our Guide told mee, that I must present somewhat vnto *Scacacai* : and so he caused vs to stay, going himselfe before to giue notice of our coming. By this time it was past three of the clocke, and they vnloaded their houses neere vnto a certayne water : And ther came vnto vs his Interpreter, who being aduertised by vs that we were neuer there before, demanded some of our victuals, and wee yielded vnto his request. Also hee required of vs some garment for a Reward, because hee was to interpret our Sayings vnto his Master. Howbeit, we excused our selues as well as we could. Then hee asked vs, what we would present vnto his Lord : And we tooke a flagon of Wine, and filled a Maund with Bisket, and a Platter with Apples and other Fruits. But he was not contented therewith, because we brought him not some rich garment. Notwithstanding, we entred so into his presence with fear and bashfulness. Hee fate vpon his bed holding a Croton in his hand, and his Wife fate by him : who (as I verily thinke) had cut and pared her Nose betweene the Eyes, that he might seeme to be more tall and saddle-nosed : for the had left her selfe no Nose at all in that place, hauing annoyed the very same place with a blacke Oyntment, and her Eye-browes also : which sight seemed most ugly in our Eyes. Then I hearsed vnto him the same words, which I had spoken in other places before. For it stood vs in hand to vie one and the same speech in all places. For we were well fore-warned of this circumstance by some which had bene amongst the *Tartars*, that we should neuer vary in our Tale. Then I besought him, that he would vouchsafe to accept that small gift at our hands, excusing my selfe that I was a Monke, and that it was against our profession to possesse Gold, or Silver, or precious Garments, and therefore that I had not any such thing to giue him, howbeit he should receive some part of our victuals in stead of a blessing. Hereupon hee caused our Present to be received, and immediately distributed the same among his men, who were met together for the same purpose, to drinke and make merry. I deliuered also vnto him the Emperour of *Constantinople* his Letters (this was eight dayes after the Feast of Ascension) who sent them forth-with to *Soldia*, to haue them interpreted there : for they were written in *Greeke*, and he had none about him that was skillfull in the *Greeke* Tongue. He asked vs also whether we would drinke any Cosmos, that is to say, Mares Milke : (For those that are Christians among them, as namely, the *Russians*, *Grecians*, and *Alamans*, who keepe their owne Law very strictly, will in no case drinke thereof, yet, they account themselves no Christians after they haue once drunke of it, and their Priests reconcile them vnto the Church, as if they had renounced the Christian Faith.) I gaue him answer, that wee had as yet sufficient of our owne to drinke, and that when our drinke fayled vs, we must be contrayned to drinke such as should bee giuen vnto vs. Hee enquired also what was contained in our Letters, which your Maiestie sent vnto *Sariat*? I answered : that they were sealed vp, and that there was nothing contained in them, but good and friendly words. And he asked what words we would deliuer vnto *Sariat*? I answered : the words of Christian Faith. Hee asked againe what these words were? For he was very desirous to heare them. Then I expounded vnto him as well as I could, by mine Interpreter, (who had no wit nor any vtterance of speech) the Apostles Creed. Which after hee had heard, holding his peace, he shooke his head. Then hee assigned vnto vs two men,

Chap. 12.
Of the Court
of *Scacacai* : &
how the Chri-
stians drinke
no Cosmos.

A cause of
right
worthy the no-
ting.

Superstition,
the Kingdom
of God is not
come
and
drinke.

He is much de-
cided.

About the be-
ginning of Au-
gust, the Tar-
tari returne
Southward.

This River is the limit of the East part of *Russia*, and it springeth out of the Fennes of *Moscow*, which Fennes stretch vnto the North Ocean. And it runneth Southward into a certaine great Sea ten hundred miles about, before it falleth into the Sea called *Pontus Euxinus*. And all the Rivers which we pulled ouer, ran with full streame into those quarters. The foreaid River hath great store of wood also growing vpon the West side thereof. Beyond this place the *Tartars* ascend no farther vnto the North: for at that season of the yere, about the first of August, they begin to returne backe vnto the South. And therefore there is another Cottage somewhat lower where *Fallengers* are ferried ouer in Winter time, and in this place we were driuen to great extremitie, by reason that we could get neither Horses, nor Oxen for any money. At length, after I had declared vnto them, that my coming was to labour for the common good of all Christians, they sent vs Oxen and Men; howbeit wee our felues were faine to trauell on foot. At this time they were reaping their Rye. Wheate prospereth not well in that soile. They haue the seed of Millium in great abundance. The *Russian* women attire their heads like vnto our women. They embroider their Safegards or Gownes on the outside, from their feet vnto their knees with pattie-coloured or grey fluffe. The *Russian* men weare Caps like vnto the *Dutch* men. Also they weare vpon their heads certaine flurpe and high-crowned Hats made of Felt, much like vnto a Sugar-loafe. Then trauielled we three daies together, not finding any people. And when our felues and our Oxen were exceeding wearie and faint, not knowing how farre off we should find any *Tartars*, on the sudden there came two Horses running towards vs, which weooke with great ioy, and our Guide and Interpreter mounted vpon their backs, to see how farre off they could descrite any people. At length, vpon the fourth day of our iourney, hauing found some Inhabitants, we reioyced like Sea faring men, which had escaped out of a dangerous Tempest, and had newly recouered the Hauen. Then hauing taken fresh Horses, and Oxen, we passed on from lodging to lodging, till at the last, vpon the second of the Kalends of August, we arrived at the habitation of Duke *Sartach* him selfe.

Chap. 16.
Of the Do-
minion of Sar-
tach, and of his
Subjects. The people
of *Armenia* are Pa-
gans.

The Region lying beyond *Tanis*, is a very goodly Countrey, hauing store of Rivers and Woods toward the North part thereof. There are mightie huge Woods which two sorts of people doe inhabit. One of them is called *Araxel*, being metre Pagans, and without Law. They haue neither Townes nor Cities, but only Cottages in the Woods. Their Lord and a great part of themselves were put to the Sword in high *Germanie*. Whereupon they highly commend the braue courage of the *Almans*, hoping as yet to be deliuered out of the bondage of the *Tartars*, by their means. If any Merchant come vnto them, hee must provide things necessary for him with whom hee is first of all entertained, all the time of his abode among them. If any lyeth with another mans wife, her husband, vnto hee be an eye-witnesse thereof, regardeth it not: for they are not iealous ouer their wiues. They haue abundance of Hogs, and great store of Honie and Waxe, and diuers sorts of rich and costly Skins, and plentie of Faulcons. Next vnto them are other people called *Mercus*, which the *Latines* call *Merdus*, and they are *Saracens*. Beyond them is the River of *Estila*, or *Felga*, which is the mightiest River that euer I saw. And it issueth from the North part of *Bulgaria* the greater, and so treading along Southward, diuimbequeth into a certaine Lake, containing in circuit the space of foure moneths trauell, whereof I will speake hereafter. The two foreaid Rivers, namely, *Tanis* and *Estila*, otherwile called *Felga*, towards the Northern Regions, through the which we trauielled, are not distant asunder about ten daies iourney, but Southward they are diuided a great space one from another. For *Tanis* descendeth into the Sea of *Pontus*: *Estila* maketh the foreaid Sea or Lake, with the helpe of many other Rivers, which fall thereto into of *Persia*. And wee had to the South of vs huge high Mountaines, vpon the sides thereof towards the said Defart, doe the people called *Cergis*, and the *Alans* or *Alcas* inhabit, who are as yet Christians, and wage warre against the *Tartars*. Beyond them, next vnto the Sea or Lake of *Estila*, there are certaine *Saracens* called *Legs*, who called in Libecution vnto the *Tartars*. Beyond these is *Porta ferrea*, or the Iron gate, now called *Derbent*, which *Alexander* built to exclude the barbarous Nations out of *Persia*. Concerning the situation whereof, your Maiestie shall vnderstand more about the end of this Treatise: for I trauielled in my returne by the very same place. Betwene the two foreaid Rivers, in the Regions through the which we passed, did the *Comanians* of old time inhabit, before they were ouer-run by the *Tartars*.

The people
called *Armenia*
being *Saracens*.

The circuit of
the Caspian Sea.

Region or As-

The *Saracens*
called *Legs*.

He returned
by *Derbent*.

Chap. 17.
Of the Court
of Sartach, and
of the magni-
ficence there-
of. *Cosius*, the *Nes-
sarian*.

And wee found *Sartach* lying within three daies iourney of the River *Estila*: whose Court seemed vnto vs to be very great. For he himselfe had six wiues, and his deest ionne al had three wiues: every one of which women hath a great house, and they haue each one of them about two hundred Carts. Our guide went vnto a certaine *Nessarian* named *Cosius*, who is a man of great auctoritie in *Sartach*: Court. He made vs to goe very farre vnto the Lords gate. For so they call him who hath the O ffe of entretyning Ambassadors. In the evening, *Cosius* commanded vs to come vnto him. Then our Guide began to enquire what wee would present him withall, and was exceedingly offended, when hee saw that wee had nothing ready to present.

We stood before him, and he sate maiestically, hauing mullick and dancing in his presence. Then I spake vnto him in the words before recited, telling him for what purpose I was come vnto his Lord, and requesting to much fauour at his hands, as to bring our Letters vnto the sight of his Lord, I excused my selfe also, that I was a Monke, not hauing nor receiving, nor vying any gold, or siluer, or any other precious thing, save onely our Bookes, and the Vestments wherein wee served God: and that this was the cause why I brought no present vnto him, nor vnto his Lord. For I had abandoned mine owne goods, could not be a transporter of things for other men. Then he answered very courteously, that being a Monke, and so doing, I did well: for so I should offend my vow: neither did himselfe stand in need of bughe that we had, but rather was ready to bestow vpon vs such things as we our felues stood in need of: and hee caused vs to sit downe, and to drinke of his Milke. And presently after, hee requested vs to lay our deuotions for him: and wee did so. Hee enquired also who was the greatest Prince among the *Franks*? And I said, the Emperour, if he could enioy his owne Dominions in quiet. No (quoth hee) but the King of *France*. For hee had heard of your Hignesse by Lord *Baldwin* of *Hennaut*. I found there also one of the Knights of the Temple who had bene in *Cyprus*, and had made report of all things which hee saw there. Then returned we vnto our Lodging. And on the morrow wee sent him a flaggon of Muscadell Wine (which had lasted verie well in so long a Iourney) and a boxe full of Bisket, which was most acceptable vnto him. And hee kept our Seruants with him for that evening. The next morning hee commanded mee to come vnto the Court, and to bring the Kings Letters and my Vestments, and Bookes with mee: because his Lord was desirous to see them. Which we did accordingly, lading one Cart with our Bookes and Vestments, and another with Bisket, Wine, and Fruits. Then hee caused all our Bookes and Vestments to be layd forth. And there stood round about vs many *Tartars*, *Christians*, and *Saracens* on Horsebacke. At the sight whereof, hee demanded whether I would bestow all those things vpon his Lord or no? Which saying made mee to tremble, and grieved mee full sore. Howbeit, dissembling our griefe as well as we could, we shewed him this Answer: Sir, our humbler request is, that our Lord your Maister would vouchsafe to accept our Bread, Wine, and Fruits, not as a Present; because it is too meane, but as a Benediction, least we should come with an empty hand before him. And hee shall see the Letters of my Soueraigne Lord the King, and by them hee shall vnderstand for what cause we are come vnto him, and then both our felues, and all that wee haue, shall stand to his courtserie: for our Vestments be holy, and it is vnlawfull for any but Priests to touch them. Then hee commanded vs to inuest our felues in the said Garments, that we might goe before his Lord: and we did so. Then I my selfe putting on our most precious Ornaments, tooke in mine armes a very faire Cushion, and the Bible which your Maistie gaue mee, and a most beautifull Psalter, which the *Queenes* Grace bestowed vpon mee, wherein there were goodly Pictures. Mine Associate tooke a Missall and a Crosse: and the Clerke hauing put on his Surplice, tooke a Censer in his hand. And so we came vnto the presence of his Lord: and they lifted vp the Felt hanging before his doore, that hee might behold vs. Then they caused the Clerke and the Interpreter thrice to bow the knee: but of vs they required no such submission. And they diligently admonished vs to take heed, that in going in, and in coming out, wee touched not the threshold of the house, and requested vs to sing a Benediction for him. Then we entred in, singing *Salve Regina*. And within the entrance of the doore stood a bench with Cosmos, and drinking cups thereupon. And all his Wiues were there assembled. Also the *Moads* or rich *Tartars* thrusting in with vs pressed vs, and then *Cosius* carried vnto his Lord the Censer with Incense, which he beheld very diligently, holding it in his hand. Afterward hee carried the Psalter vnto him, which he looked earnestly vpon, and his Wife also that sate beside him. After that hee carried the Bible: then *Sartach* asked if the Gospell were contayned therein? Yea (said I) and all the holy Scriptures besides. Hee tooke the Crosse also in his hand, and demanded concerning the Image, whether it were the Image of Christ or no? I said it was. The *Nessarians* and the *Armenians* doe neuer make the figure of Christ vpon their Crosses. Wherefore either they seeme not to thinke well of his Passion, or else they are athwart of it. Then hee caused them that stood about vs, to stand aside, that hee might more fully behold our Ornaments. Afterward I deliuered vnto him your Maisties Letters, with the Translation thereof into the *Arabicke* and *Syracke* Languages. For I caused them to be translated at *Acon*, into the Character and Dialect of both the said Tongues. And there were certaine *Armenian* Priests, which had skill in the *Turkish* and *Arabian* Languages. The foreaid Knight also of the Order of the Temple had knowledge in the *Syracke*, *Turkish*, and *Arabian* Tongues. Then wee departed forth, and put off our Vestments, and there came vnto vs certaine Scribes together with the foreaid *Cosius*, and caused our Letters to be interpreted. Which Letters being heard, hee caused our Bread, Wine and Fruits to be received. And hee permitted vs also to carrie our Vestments and Bookes vnto our owne Lodging. This was done vpon the Feast of *S. Peter ad vincula*.

No good com-
sequence.

Chap. 8.
How they were
given in
charge to goe
vnto Bactra
vnto Sartach.
Father of Sar-
tach.

THE next morning betimes came vnto vs a certayne Priest, who was brother vnto *Coist*,
requelling to haue our boxe of *Chirime*, because *Sartach* (as he said) was desirous to see it:
and so we gaue it him. About Euenyng *Coist* sent for vs, saying My Lord your King wrote good
words vnto my Lord and Master *Sartach*. Howbeit there are certayne matters of disuulne in
this, concerning which he dare not determine ought, without the aduice and counsell of his
Father. And therefore of necessitie you must depart vnto my Father, leauing behind you the two
Cartes, which you brought hither yesterday with Velmments and Bookes: in my custodie be-
cause my Lord is desirous to take more diligeat view thereof. I presently suspicteing what mis-
chiefe might ensue by his countenell, said vnto him: Sir, we will not onely leaue those with
you, but the two other Cartes also, which we haue in our possession, will we commit vnto your
custodie. You shall not (quoth he) leaue those behind you, but for the other two Cartes first na-
med, wee will satisfie your request. I said that this could not consueniently bee done: but needes
we must leaue all with him. Then he asked, whether we meant to carrie in the Land? I answere-
d: If you thoroughly vnderstand the Letters of my Lord the King, you know that we are euen
to be determined. Then he replied, that we ought to be patient and lowly: and so wee departed
from him that Euenyng. On the morrow after he sent a *Nestorian* Priest for the Cartes, and wee
caused all the foure Cartes to be deliuered. Then came the forsaide brother of *Coist* to meet vs,
and separated all those things, which we had brought the day before vnto the Court, from the
rest, namely, the Bookes and Velmments, and tooke them away with him. Howbeit *Coist* had
commanded, that we should carrie those Velmments with vs, which we wore in the presence of
Sartach, that we might put them on before *Bactu*, if need should require: but the said Priest
tooke them from vs by violence, saying: thou hast brought them vnto *Sartach*, and wouldst
thou carrie them vnto *Bactu*? And when I would haue rendered a reason, he answered: be not
too talkatiue, but goe your wayes. Then I saw that there was no remedie but patience: for
wee could haue no access vnto *Sartach* himselfe, neither was there any other, that would doe
vs iustice. I was afraid also in the Interpreter, lest he had spoken other things then I
said vnto him: for his will was good, that we should haue giuen away all that we had. There
was yet one comfort remaining vnto me: for when I once perceiued their countenell, I
conueyed from among our Bookes the Bible, and the Sentences, and certayne other Bookes
which I made speciall account of. Howbeit, I durst not take away the Psalter of my Soueraigne
Ladie the Queene, because it was too well knowne, by reason of the Golden Pictures therein.
And so we returned with the two other Cartes vnto our Lodging. Then came hee that was ap-
pointed to be our Guide vnto the Court of *Bactu*, willing vs to take our Iourney in all posse-
sible halfe: vnto whom I said, that I would in no case haue the Cartes to goe with me. Which thing
he declared vnto *Coist*. Then *Coist* commanded, that wee should leaue them and our Seruant
with him: And we did as he commanded. And so travelling directly East-ward towards *Bactu*,
the third day we came to *Ertia* or *Volga*: the streames whereof when I beheld, I wondered
from what Regions of the North such huge and mightie waters should descend. Before we were
departed from *Sartach*, the forsaide Court, with many other Scribes of the Court said vnto vs:
doe not make report that our Lord is a *Christian*, but a *Moal*. Because the name of a *Christian*
doe not make report that our Lord is the name of some Nation. So great is their pride, that albeit they be-
lieue perhaps some things concerning *Christ*, yet will they not be called *Christians*, being deli-
derous that their owne name, that is to say, *Moal* should be exalted above all other names. Nei-
ther will they be called by the name of *Tartars*. For the *Tartars* were another Nation, as I was
informed by them.

They are
come as farre
as *Urga*.

The *Tartars*
will be called
Moal.

Chap. 19.
How *Sartach*,
and *Jeang-
Cam*, and *Jeang-
Cam* doe reue-
rence vnto
Christians.
This Historie
of *Prebiter
Iohn* in the
North-east is
alleged to be
large by *Gerard
Mercator* in his
general
Map.
From whence
the *Tartar* first
sprang.
An Ocean Sea.
Nayman,
Prebiter *Iohn*.

AT the same time when the *Frenchmen* tooke *Anisich*, a certayne man named *Con Can*, had
Dominion ouer the Northern Regions, lying thereabouts. *Con* is a proper name: *Can* is a
name of authoritie or dignitie, which signifieth a Diuiner or Sooth-sayer. All Diuiners are
called *Can* amongst them. Whereupon their Princes are called *Can*, because that vnto them be-
longeth the government of the people by Diuination. We doe read also in the Historie of
Asiaticke, that the *Turkes* sent for ayde against the *Frenchmen*, vnto the Kingdome of *Con Can*.
For out of those parts the whole Nation of the *Turkes* first came. The said *Can* was of the Na-
tion of *Kara-Catay*. *Kara* signifieth blacke, and *Catay* is the name of a Country. So that
Kara-Catay signifieth the blacke *Catay*. This name was giuen to make a difference betweene
the forsaide people, and the people of *Catay* inhabiting East-ward ouer against the Ocean Sea.
Concerning whom your Maestie shall vnderstand more hereafter. These *Catayans* dwelt vpon
certayne Alpes, by the which I travelled. And in a certayne plaine Country within those Alpes,
there inhabited a *Nestorian* shepherd, being a mightie Gouernour ouer the people called *Tar-
tars*, which were Christians, following the Sect of *Nestorius*. After the death of *Con Can*,
the said *Nestorian* exalted himselfe to the Kingdome, and they called him King *Iohn*, report-
ing ten times more of him then was true. For to the *Nestorians* which come out of those parts
vnto doe. For they blaze abroad great rumours, and reports vpon full nothing. Whereupon
they gaue out concerning *Sartach*, that he was become a Christian, and the like also they report

red concerning *Mungu Can*, and *Ken Can*: namely, because these *Tartars* make more account
of Christians, then they doe of other people, and yet in very deed, themselves are no Christi-
ans. So likewise there went forth a great report concerning the said King *Iohn*. Howbeit,
when I travelled along by his Territories, there was no man that knew any thing of him, but
only a few *Nestorians*. In his Pastures or Territories dwelweth *Ken Can*, at whose Court Frier
Andrew was. And I my selfe passed by it at my returne. This *Iohn* had a Brother, being a
mightie man also, and a Shepherd like himselfe, called *Out*, and he inhabited beyond the
Alpes of *Kara-Catay*, being distant from his Brother *Iohn*, the space of three weekes iourney.
He was Lord ouer a certayne Village, called *Kara Garm*, hauing people also for his Subiects.
He was named *Crit*, or *Merkit*, who were Christians of the Sect of *Nestorius*. But their Lord abandon-
ning the worship of *Christ*, following after Idols, retaining with him Priests of the said Idols,
who all of them are Worshippers of Devils and Sorcerers. Beyond his Pastures, some tenne
or fifteen dayes iourney, were the Pastures of *Moal*, who were a poore and beggerly Nation;
without Gouernor, and without Law, except their Sooth-sayings, and their Diuinations, vnto
the which detestable studies, all in those parts doe apply their minds. Neere vnto *Moal* were
other poore people, called *Tartars*. The forsaide King *Iohn* dyed without issue Male, and
thereupon his Brother *Out* was greatly enriched, and caused himselfe to be named *Can*: and his
Droues and Flockes ranged euen vnto the Borders of *Moal*. About the same time there was
one *Cyngis*, a Blacke-Smith, among the people of *Moal*. This *Cyngis* stole many Cartell from
Vut Can, as he could possibly get: in somuch, that the Shepherds of *Vut* complained vnto
his Lord. Then provided he an Armie, and marched up into the Country of *Moal*, to seeke for
the said *Cyngis*. But *Cyngis* fled among the *Tartars*, and hid himselfe amongst them. And *Vut*
hauing taken some spoiles both from *Moal*, and also from the *Tartars*, returned home. Then
spake *Cyngis* vnto the *Tartars*, and vnto the people of *Moal*, saying: Sirs, because we are dis-
tute of a Gouernor and Captaine, you see how our Neighbours doe oppress vs. And the *Tartars*
and *Moal* appointed him to be their Chieftaine: Then hauing secretly gathered together an
Armie, hee brake in suddenly vpon *Out*, and ouercame him, and *Out* fled into *Catay*. At the
same time was the Daughter of *Vut* taken, which *Cyngis* married vnto one of his Senes, by
whom the conceived, and brought forth the great *Can*, which now reigneth, called *Mungu-Can*.
This *Cyngis* sent the *Tartars* before him in all places where he came: and thereupon was their
name published and spread abroad: for in all places the people would cry out: *Loe, the Tartars
come, the Tartars come*. Howbeit, through continuall warres, they are now, all of them in a
manner, consumed and brought to nought. Whereupon the *Moals* indoeuor what they can,
to extinguishe the name of the *Tartars*, that they may exalt their owne name. The Country
wherein they first inhabited, and where the Court of *Cyngis-Can* yet remaineth, is called
Moncherie. But because *Tartaria* is the Region, about which they haue obtained their Con-
quests, they esteeme that as their royall and chiefe Cite, and there for the most part doe they
elect their great *Can*.

The place of
Ken Can his
abode.

The place of
Vut Can,
Crit & *Merkit*.

Moal in old
times begger-
ly people.
The place of
the *Tartars*.

Cyngis.

Mungu-Can.

Moncherie.

NOW, as concerning *Sartach*, whether hee beleue in *Christ* or no, I know not. This I
am sure of, that he will not be called a Christian. Yea, rather he seemeth vnto mee to
deride and scoff at Christians. He lyeth in the way of the Christians, as namely, of the *Rus-
sians*, the *Valachians*, the *Bulgarians* of *Bulgaria* the selfe, the *Soldaniers*, the *Kerks*, and the *Ala-
nians*: who all of them passe by him, as they are going to the Court of his Father *Bactu*, to
carrie gifts: whereupon he is more in league with them. Howbeit, if the *Saracens* come,
and bring greater gifts then they, they are dispatched sooner. He lutch about him certayne *Nes-
torian* Priests, who pray vpon their Beades, and sing their deuotions. Also, there is another vi-
dent *Bactu*, called *Berta*, who feedeth his Cattell toward *Porta Ferrea*, or *Derben*, where lyeth
the passage of all those *Saracens* which come out of *Perfia*, and out of *Turkie* to goe vnto *Bactu*,
and passing by, they giue rewards vnto him. And he professeth himselfe to be a *Saracen*,
and will not permit Swines flesh to be eaten in his Dominions. Howbeit, at the time of our
returne, *Bactu* commanded him to remove himselfe from that place, and to inhabe vpon
the East side of *Volga*: for he was vnwilling that the *Saracens* Messengers should passe by
the said *Berta*, because he saw it was not for his profit. For the space of four dayes, while wee
remained in the Court of *Sartach*, wee had not any visitals at all allowed vs, but once onely a
little Cosmos. And in our iourney betweene him and his Father, wee travelled in great feare:
For certayne *Russians*, *Hungarians*, and *Alaniens*, being Seruants vnto the *Tartars*, (of whom
they haue great multitudes among them) assemblie themselves twentie or thirte in a compa-
ny, and so secretly in the night conueyng themselves from home, they take Bowes and Ar-
rowes with them, and whomsoever they finde in the night season, they puttyng to death, in-
ding themselves in the day time. And hauing tyred their Horses, they goe in the night vnto
a company of other Horses feeding in some Pasture, and change them for new, taking with
them also one or two Horses besides, to eate them when they stand in neede. Our guide there-
fore was fore afraid, leaue we should haue met with such companions.

Chap. 20.
Of the *Rus-
sians*, *Hungari-
ans*, and *Alani-
ans* of the
Caspian Sea.

Oz-Berta.

The fourth
day of No-
vember.
A great River.

Many Lakes.
Vines.

Chap. 25.
How Ban was
put to death:
and concern-
ing the habi-
tation of the
Dutch men.
A Cottage.
The Moun-
tainnes of *Cauesu*
are extend-
ed into the
Eastern Sea.
The Cite of
Taleu, or *Chin-
talis*.
Frier Andrew.

The Village of
Bela.

He entred in-
to the Territo-
ries of *Mangu-
Can*.
Certaine *Alpes*
wherein the
Cara Cateyas
inhabited.
A mighty Ri-
ver.
Ground tilled
Equis.

A Lake of fif-
teene daies
journey in
compasse.

Colae a great
Cite and full
of Merchants.

Contomanni.

at the Townes end with Ale and Cups. For it is their manner at all Townes and Villages, sub-
ject vnto them, to meete the messengers of *Baan* and *Mangu-Can* with meare and drinke. At
the same time of the yere, they went vpon the Ice in that Countrey. And before the feast of
Saint *Michael*, we had froit in the Defart. I enquired the name of that Prouince: but being now
in a frange Territorie, they could not tell me the name thereof, but only the name of a very
small Cite in the same Prouince. And there defended a great River downe from the Moun-
tainnes, which watered the whole Region, according as the Inhabitants would giue it passage,
by making diuers Channels and Sluces: neither did this River exonerate it selfe into any Sea, but
was swallowed vp by an hideous Gulfe into the bowels of the earth, and it cauled many Fennes
or Lakes. Also I saw many Vines, and dranke of the Wine thereof.

10

The day following, we came vnto another Cottage neere vnto the Mountaynes. And I en-
quired what Mountaynes they were, which I vnderstood to bee the Mountaynes of *Cauesu*.
Su, which are stretched forth, and continued on both parts to the Sea, from the West vnto the
East: and on the West part they are conieyned vnto the forefaid *Cauesu* Sea, where into the
River of *Volga* discharge his streames. I enquired also of the Cite of *Taleu*, wherein were
certaine Dutch men, seruants vnto one *Bori*, of whom Frier Andrew had mention. Concern-
ing whom also I enquired very diligently in the Courts of *Saracens* and *Baan*. Howbeit I could
haue no intelligence of them, but only that their Lord and Maister *Ban* was put to death vpon
the occasion following: This *Ban* was not placed in good and fertile Pastures, And vpon a cer-
tain day being drunken, hee spake on this wise vnto his men. Am not I of the stocke and kin-
dred of *Chingis Can*, as well as *Bori*? (for in very deepe he was brother or Nephew vnto *Ban*).
As freely as *Baan* himselfe doth? Which speeches of his were reported vnto *Baan*. Wherevpon
Baan wrote vnto his seruants to bring their Lord bound vnto him. And they did so. Then
Baan demanded of him whether he had spoken any such words? And he confessed that he had.
Howbeit (because it is the *Tartars* manner to pardon drunken men) he excused himselfe that he
was drunken at the same time. How durst thou (quoth *Baan*) once name me in thy drunken-
nesse? And with that hee cauled his head to be chopt off. Concerning the forefaid Dutch men, I
could not vnderstand ought, till I was come vnto the Court of *Mangu-Can*. And there I was
informed that *Mangu-Can* had removed them out of the iurisdiction of *Baan*, for the space
of a monthes journey from *Taleu* Eastward, vnto a certaine Village, called *Bela*: where they
are fet to dig gold, and to make armour. Wherevpon I could neither goe nor come by them: I
passed very neere the said Cite in going forth, as namely, within three daies journey thereof:
but I was ignorant that I did so: neither could I haue turned out of my way, altho I had knowe
so much. From the forefaid Cottage we went directly Eastward, by the Mountaynes aforesaid.
And from that time we traualled among the people of *Mangu-Can*, who in all places sang
and danced before our Guide, because he was the messenger of *Baan*. For this curteise they doe af-
ford each to other: namely, the people of *Mangu-Can* receiving the messengers of *Baan* in
manner aforesaid: and so likewise the people of *Baan* entertaining the messengers of *Mangu-
Can*. Notwithstanding, the people of *Baan* were more lusty and stout, and they were not so much
curteise vnto the subjects of *Mangu-Can*, as they doe vnto them. A few daies after we entered
vpon those *Alpes* where the *Cara Cateyas* were wont to inhabit. And there we found a mightie
River: insumch that we were constrained to imbarke our selues, and to faile our tie. After-
ward we came into a certaine Valley, where I saw a Castle destroyed, the walls whereof were
only of mulde: and in that place the ground was tilled also. And there we found a certaine
Village, named *Equis*, wherein were *Saracens*, speaking the *Persian* language: howbeit they
dwelt an huge distance from *Persia*. The day following, hauing passed ouer the forefaid *Alpes*,
which descended from the great Mountaynes Southward, we entred into a most beautifull
Plaine, hauing high Mountaynes on our right hand, and on the left hand of vs a certaine Sea or
Lake, which containeth fiftene daies journey in circuit. All the forefaid Plaine is most com-
modiously watered with certaine Freshets, distilling from the said Mountaynes, all which doe
fall into the Lake. In Summer time we returned by the North shoare of the said Lake, and there
were great Mountaynes on that side also. Vpon the fore-named Plaine there were wont to bee
great flocks of Villages: but for the most part they were all walled, in regard of the fertile Pa-
stures, that the *Tartars* might feede their Cattell there. We found one great Cite there, named
Colae, wherein was a Mart, and great flocks of Merchants frequenting it. In this Cite we re-
mained fiftene daies, staying for a certaine Scribe or Secretarie of *Baan*, who ought to haue
accompanied our Guide for the dispatching of certaine affaires in the Court of *Mangu*. All this
Country was wont to be called *Organnum*: and the people thereof had their proper language,
and their peculiar kind of writing. But it was altogether inhabited of the people, called *Con-
tomanni*. The *Nestorians* likewise in those parts vse the very same kind of language and writing.
They are called *Organs*, because they were wont to bee most skilfull in playing vpon the Or-
gans or Citherne, as it was reported vnto mee. Here first did I see worshippers of Idols, con-
cerning

cerning whom, bee it knowne vnto your Majestie, that there bee many sects of them in the
East Countreies.

The first sort of these Idolaters are called *Iugures*: whose Land bordereth vpon the forefaid
Land of *Organnum*, within the said Mountaynes Eastward: and in all their Cities *Nestorians*
doe inhabe together, and they are disperited likewise towards *Persia*: in the Cities of the *Sara-
cens*. The Citizens of the forefaid Cite of *Caual* had three Idol-temples; and I entred into
two of them, to behold their foolish superstitions. In the first of which, I found a man hauing a
Crosse painted with Iuke vpon his hand, wherevpon I supposed him to bee a Christian: for hee an-
swered like a Christian vnto all questions which I demanded of him. And I asked him: Why
therefore haue you not the Crosse with the Image of Iesu Christ therevpon? And hee answered,
We haue no such custom. Wherevpon I coniectured that they were indeed Christians: but that
for lacke of instruction they omitted the forefaid ceremonie. For I saw there behind a certaine
Chest (which was vnto them in stead of an Altar, wherevpon they set Candles and Oblations)
holding an Image hauing wings, like vnto the Image of Saint *Michael*, and other Images also, holding
their fingers, as if they would blisse some body. That evening I could not find any thing else,
For the *Saracens* doe onely inuite men thither, but they will not haue them speake of their Re-
ligion. And therefore, when I enquired of the *Saracens* concerning such Ceremonies, they
were offended thereat. On the morrow after were the Kalends, and the *Saracens* feast of *Palko*:
and changing mine Iune or lodging the same day, I tooke vp mine abode neere vnto ano-
ther Idol-Temple. For the Citizens of the said Cite of *Caual* doe curiously inuite, and lo-
vingly entertaine all messengers, every man of them according to his abilitie and portion. And
entrung into the forefaid Idol-temple, I found the Priests of the said Idols there. For alwaies at
the Kalends they let open their Temples, and the Priests adorne themselves, and offer vp the
peoples Oblations of Bread and Fruits. First therefore, I will describe vnto you thole rites and
ceremonies which are common vnto all their Idol-temples: and then the superstitions of the
forefaid *Iugures*, which be, as it were, a sect distinguished from the rest. They doe all of them
worship towards the North, clapping their hands together, and prostrating themselves on their
knees vpon the earth, holding also their foreheades in their hands. Wherevpon the *Nestorians*
those parts will in no case soyne their hands together in time of prayer: but they pray display-
ing their hands before their breasts. They extend their Temples in length East and West; and
vpon the North side they build a Chamber, in manner of a Vestrie, for themselves to goe forth
into. Or sometimes it is otherwise. If it be a foure square Temple, in the midst of the Temple
towards the North side thereof, they take in one Chamber in that place where the Quire should
stand. And within the said Chamber, they place a Chest long and broad like vnto a Table, and
behind the said Chest towards the South, stands their principall Idol: which I saw at *Caraca-
rum*, and it was as big as the Idol of Saint *Christopher*. Also a certaine *Nestorian* Priest,
which had been in *Caray*, said that in that Countrey there is an Idol of fo huge biggnesse, that it may
be seene two daies journey before a man come at it. And so they place other Idols round about
the forefaid principall Idol, being all of them finely gilt ouer with pure gold: and vpon the said
Chest, which is in manner of a Table, they set Candles and Oblations. The doores of their Tem-
ples are alwaies open towards the South, contrary to the customes of the *Saracens*. They haue
also great Bells like vnto vs. And that is the cause (as I thinke) why the Christians of the East will
in no case vse great Bells. Notwithstanding, they are common among the *Russians*, and *Greci-
ans* of *Gafaria*.

Al their Priests had their heads and beardes shaven quite ouer: and they are clad in Saffron
coloured garments: and being once shaven, they leade an vnmarried life from that time
forward: and they lye an hundred or two hundred of them together in one Cloister or Couent.
Vpon those daies when they enter into their Temples, they place two long Formes there:
and so sitting vpon the said Formes like Singing-men in a Quire, namely, the one halfe of them
directly ouer against the other, they haue certaine bookes in their hands, which sometimes they
lay downe by them vpon the Formes: and their heads are bare fo long as they remaine in the
Temple. And there they reade softly vnto themselves, not vtering any voice at all. Wherevpon
coming in amongst them, at the time of their superstitious deuotions, and finding them all
sitting mute, in manner aforesaid, I attempted diuers waies to prouoke them vnto speech, and
yet could not by any meanes possible. They haue with them also whetherouer they goe, a cer-
taine string, with an hundred or two hundred Nut-shells therevpon, much like to our bead-roll
which wee carrie about with vs. And they doe alwaies vtter these words: *Omne Faciam*:
God thou knowest: as one of them expounded it vnto me. And so often doe they expect a re-
ward at Gods hands, as they pronounce these words in remembrance of God Round about their
Temple they doe alwaies make a faire Court, like vnto a Church-yard, which they enuiron with
a good wall: and vpon the South part thereof, they build a great Portall, wherein they sit and
conferre together. And vpon the top of the said Portall, they pitch a long Pole right vp, exal-
ting

Chap. 26.
How the *Nes-
torians*, *Sara-
cens*, and
Idolaters are
ioyned to-
gether.
The people
called *Iugures*
Idolaters.

Frier William
was at *Caraca-
rum*.

Chap. 27.
Of their Tem-
ples and Idols,
and how they
behaue them-
selves in wor-
shipping their
Idol gods.
Bookes.

Idolatrie.

N. furians.

Sergia a Citee of Calbat.

They are fo at this day.

The euil qualities of the Nefarians.

Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I lemech the Apokey of the greatst part of Aftro haue happened, furthered by Tarianism and Saracenicall All Priests.

* Consider our Author a Friar, whole travels we rather embrace, then (in such passages) his diuinitie. They were later Fathers which made such Decrees, contrary to the Father of truth which ordained marriage in Leue Priests blood, and those married men to the Apostleship: and forewarned of another Father, who with Doctrines of Deuill should prohibite meate and marriage, vnder colour of Priests chastitie, making the Temple fleshes to carnall and iuriuſu whole dooe.

Chap. 26.

Of such things as befall them, departing from Calbat, to the Country of the Nefarians.

Nouemb. 30.

Decemb. 6.

Extreme coll.

Decemb. 7.

A dangerous passage.

on the North side of those Mountains to the East Sea, on the South part of *Seychia*, which the Shephrads of *Maad* doe inhabit: All which are tributarie vnto them, and all giuen to Idolatry, and report many fables of a multitude of gods, and certaine Deified men, and make a pedigree of the gods as our Poets doe.

The *Nefarians* are mingled among them as Strangers; so are the *Saracens* as farre as *Calbat*. The *Nefarians* inhabit fiftene Cities of *Calbat*, and haue a Bishopricke there, in a Citee called *Sergia*. But further, they are mere Idolaters. The Priests of the Idols of the said Nations, haue all broad yellow hoods. There are also among them (as I vnderstood) certaine Hermits liuing in the Woods and Mountains, of an austere and strange life. The *Nefarians* there know nothing, for they say their Service, and haue holy Bookes in the *Syrian* tongue, which they know not. So that they sing as our Monkes doe, who are ignorant of Grammar; and hence it cometh, that they are wholly corrupted. They are great Viuers and Drunkards, and some of them also who liue among the *Tartars*, haue many Wiues, as the *Tartars* haue. When they enter into the Church, they wash their lower parts, as the *Saracens* doe. They eat flesh on Friday of the weeke, and hold their Feasts that day, after the manner of the *Saracens*. The Bishop comes feldome into those Countries, perchance, scarce once in fiftie yeares. Then they caule all their little Children (which are Males) to be made Priests, euen in the Cradell; so that all their men almost are Priests: and after this they marrie Wiues, which is directly against the decrees of the Fathers: they are also *Bigams*, for the Priests themselves, their first Wife being dead, marrie another. They are all *Simonists*, for they giue no holy thing freely. They are very careful for their Wiues and Children, whereby they apply themselves to gaine, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring vp some of the Nobilitie children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospell, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euill life and couetousselle, they drue them further from Christianitie: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tunians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmefulle then theirs.

They were later Fathers which made such Decrees, contrary to the Father of truth which ordained marriage in Leue Priests blood, and those married men to the Apostleship: and forewarned of another Father, who with Doctrines of Deuill should prohibite meate and marriage, vnder colour of Priests chastitie, making the Temple fleshes to carnall and iuriuſu whole dooe.

WE departed from the foresaid Citee of *Calbat* on Saint *Andrees* day. And there we found almost within three leagues, a whole Cattle or Village of *Nefarians*. Entering into their Church, we sang, *Salme Regime*, &c. with ioy, as loud as we could, because it was long since we had seene a Church. Departing thence, in three daies we came to the entrance of that Prouince, in the head of the foresaid Sea, which seemed to vs as tempestuous as the Ocean, and we saw a great Island therein. My Companions drew neere the shoare, and wet a Linnen cloth therein, to taste the Water, which was somewhat salt, but might bee drunke. There was a certaine Valley ouer against it, from betweene the great Mountains, betweene South and East: and betweene the hills, was another certaine great Sea; and there ranne a Riuer through that Valley, from the other Sea into this. Where came such a continual winde through the Valley, that men passe with great danger, least the wind carrie them into the Sea. Therefore we left the Valley and went towards the North, to the great hilly Countries, covered with deepe Snow, which then lay vpon the Earth: so that vpon Saint *Nicholas* day we beganne now to haften our iourney much, and because we found no people, but the *Ians* themselves (to wit) men appointed from daies iourney to daies iourney together, the Mellengers together. Because in many places in the hilly Countries (the way is narrow, and there are but few fields, for that betwene day and night we met with two *Ians*, whereupon of two daies iourneys we made one, and trauelled more by night then by day. It was extreme cold there, for that they lent vs their Goats skins, turning the haire outward.

The second Sunday of *Aduent* in the evening, we passed by a certaine place betweene very terrible Rockes: and our Guide went into me, intreating me to speake some good words, where-with the Deuils might be driuen away; because in that passage, the Deuils themselves went suddenly to carrie men away, so that it was not knowne what became of them. Sometimes they violently snatched a Horse and left the man: sometimes they drew out a mans bowels, and left the empty carkasse vpon the Horse. And many such things did often fall out there. Then we sang with a loud voice, *Credo in Deum*, &c. And by the Grace of God, we passed through (with all our company) vnhurt. After that, they beganne to intreat me, that I would write them Papers to carrie on their heads: and I told them, I would teach them a word which they should carrie in their hearts, whereby their soules and bodies should be saved eternally. But alwaies when I would teach them, I wanted an Interpreter: Yet I wrote them the Creede and the Lords Prayer; saying, Heere it is written whatlouer a man ought to beleeue concerning God. Heere also is that prayer, wherein we begge of God whatlouer is needfull for a man. Whereupon beleeue firmly that which is written here, although you cannot

vnder-

vnderstand it, and aske of God that he do that for you which is contained in this written Prayer: because with his owne mouth he taught it his friends, and I hope he will faue you. I could not doe any thing else, because it was very dangerous to speake the words of doctrine by such an Interpreter, nay almost impossible, because he was ignorant.

AFTER this, wee entred into that plaine where the Court of *Ken-Cham* was, which was wont to be the Countrey of the *Naymans*, who were the peculiar Subiects of *Prephier Iohn*: but at that time I saw not that Court, but in my returne. Yet heere I declare vnto you what befell his Ancestry, his Sonne and Wiues. *Ken-Cham* being dead, *Baatu* desired that *Man-gu* should be *Chen*. But I could vnderstand in certaintie of the death of *Ken*. *Frier Andren* said, that he dyed by a certaine medicine giuen him: and it was suspected that *Baatu* caused it to be made. Yet I heard otherwise, for he lummed *Baatu* to come and doe him homage. And *Baatu* took his iourney speedily with great preparation; but he and his Seruants were much afraid, and sent one of his Brothers before, called *Stichin*: who when he came to *Ken*, and should waite vpon his Cup, contention arising betweene them, they slue one another. The Widow of *Stichin* kept vs a while day, to goe into her house and bleffe her, that is, pray for her. Therefore *Ken* being dead, *Mangu* was chosen by the consent of *Baatu*. And was then chosen when *Frier Andren* was there. *Ken* had a certaine Brother, called *Siremon*, who by the counsell of *Ken* Wife and her Vallais, went with great preparation towards *Mangu*, as if he meant to doe him homage, and yet in truth he purposed to kill him, and destroy his whole Court. And when he was neere *Mangu*, within one or two daies iourney, one of his Wagons remained broken in the way. While the Wagoner laboured to mend it, in the meane space came one of the Seruants of *Mangu*, who helped him: he was so inquisitive of their iourney, that the Wagoner reuealed vnto him what *Siremon* purposed to doe. Then turning out of the way, as if hee little regarding it, went vnto the herd of Horses, and tooke the best Horse hee could choofe, and posting night and day, came speedily to the Court of *Mangu*, reporting vnto him what he had heard. Then *Mangu* quickly assembling all his subiects, caused foure rings of Armed men to compasse his Court, that none might goe in or out: the rest he sent against *Siremon*, who tooke him, (not suspecting his purpose had beene discouered) and brought him to the Court with all his followers. Who when *Mangu* lay the matter to his charge, straight-way confessed it. Then he and his eldest Sonne *Ken Cham* were slaine, and three hundred of the Nobilitie of the *Tartars* with them. The Noble Women also were sent for, who were all beaten with burning fire-brands to make them confesse: and hauing confessed, were put to death. His yongest sonne *Ken*, who could not bee capable or guiltie of the conspiracy, was left aloue: And his Fathers Palace was left vnto him, with all belonging vnto it, as well Men as Chettels: and we passed by it in our returne. Nor durst my Guides turne in vnto it, neither going nor coming. For the Lady of the Nations fate there in heauinle, and there was none to comfort her.

THEN went we vp againe into the high Countries, going alwaies towards the North. At length on Saint *Stephens* day we entred into a great Plaine like the Sea, where there was not so much as a Mole-hill. And the next day, on the feast of *S. Iohn* the Euangelist, we came vnto the Palace of that great Lord. But when we were neere it, within fise daies iourney, our Host where we lay, would haue directed vs a way farre about, so that wee should yet traualle more then fiftene daies. And this was the reason (as I vnderstood) that wee might goe by *Ouan Kende* their proper Countrey, where the Court of *Chingis-Chan* is. Others said, that he did it for this purpose, that he might make the way longer, and might shew his power the more. For lo they are wont to deale with men coming from Countries not subiect to them. And our Guide obtained with great difficultie, that we might goe the right way. For they held vs vpon this from the morning till three of the clocke. In that way also, the Secretarie (whom we expected at *Calbat*) told me, that it was contained in the Letters which *Baatu* sent to *Mangu-Chan*, that we required an Army and ayde of *Sartach* against the *Saracens*. Then I began to wonder much, and to be greatly troubled: for I knew the Tenor of the Letters; and that no mention thereof was made therein: I saue that yee aduised him to be a friend to all Christians, and should exalt the Croffe, and be an enemy to all the enemies of the Croffe: and because also the Interpreters were *Armenians*, of the greater *Armenia*, who greatly hated the *Saracens*; left perhaps they had interpreted any thing in euill part to make the *Saracens* more odious and hateful at their pleasure. I therefore held my peace, not speaking a word with them, or against them; for I feared to gainly the words of *Baatu*, least I should incurre some false accusation without reasonable cause. We came therefore the foresaid day vnto the said Court. Our Guide had a great horse appointed him, and we three a little Cottage, wherein we could (scarcely) lay our stiffe, make our beds, and haue a little fire. Many came to visit our Guide, and brought him drinke made of Rice, in long straight mouthed bottles, in the which I could discern no difference from the best *Amisiodorensis* Wine, saue that it had not the sent of Wine. We were called, and straightly examined vpon what buisines we came. I answered, that we heard of *Sartach* that he was a Christian: we came

Chap. 27. Of the Countrey of the *Naymans*, and what befell the flock of *Ken-Cham* his sonne & wiues.

B. 24.

Stichin and Ken kill one another.

Chap. 28. Of their coming to the Court of *Man-gu-Chan*.

Chin Kende the proper Countrey of the *Tartars*.

Chap. 29.

D

there.

Baatu hath sent vs hither vnto you. You are they to whom. God hath giuen great Dominion vpon earth; We therefore intreat your Highnesse, to giue vs leave to continue in your Countrey to doe the service of God for you, your Wives and Children. Wee haue neither Gold nor Silver, nor precious stones to present vnto you, but our selves, whom we present to serue, and pray vnto God for you. At the least, giue vs leave to continue while the cold be past. My Companion is so weak, that he cannot by any means traile on Horse-backe without hazard of his life. For my Companion will me, and desired me, to craue leave to stay. For we supposed we must returne to Baatu, vntill of his speciall Grace he gave vs leave to stay. Then he began to answer: Even as the Swane spreads his beames every where, so our power and Baatu's friends is selfe every where: so that wee haue no neede of your Silver and Gold. Hitherto I understood my Interpreter: but further, I could not perceive any perfect sentence. Whereby I easily found hee was drunke, and Mangu Chan himselfe was drunke also, as I thought. Yet with this, (as it seemed to mee, hee ended his speech) that he was displeased that we came first to Sartach, before we came to him. Then seeing the defect of my Interpreter, I held my peace, this onely excepted, that I intreated his Highnesse hee would not be displeased, for that which I spoke of Gold and Silver; because I spoke it not that he had need of such things, or desired them, but because we would willingly honour him with temporall and spirituall things.

Then he made vs rise, and sit downe againe; and after some few words, doing our dutie to him, we went out, and his Secretaries, and that Interpreter of his (who had the bringing vp of one of his Daughters) went together with vs. And they began to bee very inquisitive of the Kingdome of France, whether there were many Rams, Oxen and Horses there, as if presently they should enter and take all. And oftentimes I was faine to bridle my selfe much, in displeasing anger and indignation. And answered, There are many good things there which yee shall see, if yee happen to come thither. Then they appointed vs one, who should haue care of vs. And we went vnto the Monke: and when we came out againe, ready to goe to our lodging, the foresaid Interpreter came vnto vs; saying, Mangu Chan hath compassion on you, and giues you two months time to stay. Then the extreme cold will be past, and he sendeth to you; Here within ten daies journey there is a good Citie, called Caracorum, if yee will goe thither, he will cause necessarie things to be giuen you: but if yee will abide here, yee may, and yee shall haue necessaries: yet it will be a troublesome thing for you to follow the Court. And I answered: The Lord prelerue Mangu Chan, and grant him a good and long life. We haue found this Monke here, whom we thinke to be an holy man, and that by the good pleasure of God he came into these parts, wherefore we would willingly stay with him, because wee are Monkes, and wee would pray together for the life of Chan. Then he held his peace and departed. And we went vnto our house, which we found very cold, and without any fuel, as yet falling, and it was night. Then he, to whom we were recommended, prouided vs fuel, and a little meate. Our Guide was now to returne to Baatu, who desired a Carpet of vs, which (by his Commandement) we left in the Court of Baatu: which we gave him, and he peaceably departed fo, kissing our right hand, and confiding his fault, if he suffered vs to endure hunger and thirst vpon the way. We pardoned him, craving pardon of him and his whole Family, if we had giuen them any euill example.

Chap. 31.
Of Pafcha, of
Mangus in
Latharigay, and
William Bon-
chier the Gold-
smith, a Paris-
ian. Building in
request.

They also rec-
tion by Moore
in Ed. Ind.

A Certaine Woman of *Menis* in *Latharigay*, called *Pafcha*, found vs, who made vs great chere, according to her power, who belong to the Court of that Lady, which was a Christian, of whom I spoke before; who told vs of her strange pueritie which she endured before she came to the Court; but now she was well to lue, for the had a young Husband, a *Rutemian* (by whom she had three very faire Children) who was skilfull in building, which amongst them is an excellent Art. Moreover, she told vs, that at *Caracorum*, there was a certaine Goldsmith, called *William*, borne at *Paris*; whose full surname was *Bouchier*, and his Fathers name *Lawrence Bouchier*, and the thinketh he hath a Brother yet vpon the *Great Bridge*, called *Roger Bouchier*. And the told me, that he had a certaine young man which he brought vp, whom hee accounted as his Son, who was an excellent Interpreter. But Mangu Chan deliuered to the foresaid Goldsmith, three hundred Iacots, that is, three thousand Markes, and fiftie Work-men to make a piece of worke, fo that the feared he could not send his Sonne vnto me. For the heard some say vnto her in the Court. The men which came from your Countrey are good men, and Mangu Chan would willingly speake vnto them, but their Interpreter is nothing worth: therefore he was careful for an Interpreter. Then I writ vnto the foresaid Goldsmith, certifying him of my coming hither, and requesting him, that if he could, he would find me his Sonne. And he wrote me answer, that he could not that Moore, but the next, his worke should be perfected, and then he would send him vnto me. We stayed therefore with other Messengers. And it is otherwise with Messengers in Baatu's Court, then in the Court of Mangu Chan. For in the Court of Baatu, there is one *Iani* on the East side, who receiveth all such as come from the West, and fo of other Countries of the world: But in the Court of Mangu, they are all together vnder one *Iani*, and they may lye and visit one another. In Baatu's Court they know not

one

one another, and know not one of another, whether hee be a Messenger or no; because they know not one anothers lodging, nor see one another but in the Court: and when one is called, perchance another is not called. For they goe not to die Court, welle they bee sent for. Wee found there a certaine Christian of *Damascus*, who said he came in behalfe of the *Soldan of Monis*, *Regius*, and of *Cra*; who desired to become friend and tributary to the *Tartars*.

Cra is a strong
torelle of the
Emperours
die-hill, being

THE yere also before I came thither, there was a certaine Clerke of *Acon*, who called himselfe *Ramand*, but in truth his name was *Theodolus*; and he tooke his journey from *Cyprus* with *Eriat Andrew*, and went with him into *Persia*, and got him certain Infirmities of *Acon*, now there in *Persia*, who abode there after *Eriat Andrew*. *Eriat Andrew* returning, hee went forward with his Instruments, and came to Mangu Chan: who being demanded wherefore he came, said, that he was with a certaine holy Bishop, to whom the Lord sent Letters from heaven, written in golden Characters, and commanded him to send them to the Emperour of the *Tartars*, because he should bee Lord of the whole Earth, and that he should periwade men to make peace with him. Then Mangu said vnto him: It thou hadst brought those Letters which came from heaven, and the Letters of thy Lord, then hadst beene welcome. Then he answered: That he brought Letters, but they were with other things of his, vpon a certaine wilde and pampered Geyding, which elcaped fled from him through the Woods and Mountaines, so that he had loit all. And it is very true, that many such chances often happen: wherefore a man must very warily hold his Horse when he alighteth for necessity. Then Mangu demanded the name of the Bishop. He said, he was called *Osob*. Whereupon he told him of *Damascus*, and *Maister William*, who was Clerke of the Lord Legat. Then Chan demanded in what Kingdome it was: To whom he made answer, That it was vnder a certaine King of the *Franks*, called *Moles*; (for he had heard of that which happened at *Maloria*; and he would haue said, that they were of your Seruants) moreover, hee told Chan that the *Saracens* were betweene the *Franks* and him, who hindred his way. But if the way had beene open, he would haue sent Messengers, and willingly haue made peace with him. Then Mangu Chan asked him, If hee would bring his Messengers to that King, and that Bishop? He told him he would, and also to the Pope. Then Mangu caused an exceeding strong Bow to be made, which two men could scarce bend, and two Arrows, whose heads were of Silver, full of holes, which when they are shot like a whistle. And hee employed *Moal* whom hee should send with the said *Theodolus*; Thou shalt goe to that King of the *Franks*, to whom this man shall bring thee, and thou shalt present him with these in my behalfe, and if he will haue peace with vs, we will win it the Countrey vpon the *Saracens*, even home to him; and will grant him the rest of the Countrey vnto the West: If otherwise, bring backe the Bow and Arrows vnto vs, and tell him we shoot faire, and smite strongly with such Bowes. Then hee caused *Theodolus* to goe forth, wrote Interpreter *Maister William* Sonne was, and in his hearing, hee said vnto *Moal*. Thou shalt go with this man, make well the Waies, the Countreys, and their Castles, Men and Manition. Then the young man blamed *Theodolus*, saying, Hee had done ill, in conducting the Messengers of the *Tartars* with him, for they went for no other cause, but to flye. Then hee answered, That he would let them on the Sea, that they should not know whence they came, or which way to returne. Mangu said vnto *Moal* his golden Bull, or Tablet, to wit, a plate of Gold of an hand-breadth, and sixe cubit long, wherein his commandment is ingraven: Who so carrieth that, may command what he will, and it is done without delay. So then *Theodolus* came to *Pafcha*; determining to passe over to the Pope, that he might deceiue the Pope as hee had deceiued *Mangu Chan*. Then *Pafcha* demanded of him, whether hee had Letters to the Pope, because he was a Messenger, and should conduct the Messengers of the *Tartars*? But, not being able to shew the Letters, hee tooke him and spoiled him of all that hee had gotten, and caft him in prison. And *Moal* fell sicke and dyed there. But *Osob* sent backe the golden Tablet to Mangu Chan, by the seruants of *Moal*: whom I met at *Afforon* in the entrance into *Turkie*, who told mee what happened to *Theodolus*. Such Coines runne through the world, whom the *Modians* kill when they can take them. Now the *Epaphras* was at han, and that *Armenian* Monke, *Sergius*, by name, told me, That hee should baptize Mangu Chan vpon the Holy-day. I intreated him to labour by all means that I might be present, that I might beare witnesse that I saw it: and hee promised he would.

Chap. 32.
Of the daies
of the Clerke of
acon, how hee
deceiued Man-
gus Chan, and
was imprisoned
of Pafcha
the
Eriat Andrew
went from Cy-
prus by Persia.
Blaphemous
flattery.

The Golden
Tablet of the
Emperour of
the Tartars.
Pafcha king
of Ponia.

Or, Esferam.

Chap. 33.
Of Mangu
Chan holy-day,
and how his
principall wife
and his child-
ren came to
the Drame ce-
remonies of
the Holyday,
and of their
richly wearing

THE feastuall day came, and the Monke called me not, but at fixe of the clocke I was sent for to the Court, and I saw the Monke with the Priests returning from the Court with his Croffe, and the Priests with the Conter and the Gospell. For that day Mangu Chan made a feast, and his custom is, that vpon such daies as his Sooth-tyers doe appoint wote his feastuall, or with the *Nestorian* Priests comes the Holy-daies, that then he holds his Court: And vpon such daies the Christians come first with their furniture, and pray for him and deliue his Cup. They then departing, the *Saracens* Priests come and doe the like. Next after them come the Idolatrous Priests and doe the same. And the Monke told me, that hee onely believed

the Christians, yet will haue all to pray for him; but he lyed, for he beleueeth none, as you shall hereafter heare, yet all follow his Court, as flies doe Honey. And he giueh vnto all, and all men thinke they are his Familiars; and all prophete prosperitie vnto him. Then we late before the Court a long space, and they brought vs flesh to eate. To whom I made answer, that we would not eate there, but if they would prouide vs meate, they should prouide it for vs at our house. Then they said, get ye home to your house; because you were invited for no other cause but to eate. Therefore we returned by the Monke, who blushed at the Lye he told me, wherfore I would not speake a word of that matter. Yet some of the *Nestorians* would affirme vnto mee, that he was baptized: to whom I said, that I would neuer beleue it, nor report it to others, seeing I saw it not.

The cold much
preuayleth.

The 13. of Ian.

Cotota Caten
the principall
Wife of *Mangu*
Chen.
Batu the Son
of *Mangu Chen*.

We came to our cold and empty house, they prouided vs bedding and Couerlets, they brought vs also fuel, and gaue vs three the carkease of one little leane Ramme, meate for fixe dayes; and euery day a little Platter full of Millet, and lent vs a Caldron and a Triuet to boyle our flesh: which being foddren, we fod our Millet in the broth of the flesh. This was our meate, and it had well sufficed vs, if they had suffered vs to eate in peace. But there are so many hunger-flarred, who are not prouided of meate: that as, soe as they saw vs dresse meate, they thrust in vpon vs, and mult eate with vs. There I found by experience, how great a Martyrdome liberalitie is in pueritie. Then the cold began much to preuaile: and *Mangu Chen* lent vs three Pelk-coates of the Skimnes of Papiens (*Papianum*): whole haire they turne outward, which they thankfully receiued. They demanded also, how we were prouided of necessary food? To whom I answered, that little meate sufficed vs, but we haue not an house wherein to pray for *Mangu Chen*. For our Cottage was so little, that we could scarce stand vpright in it, nor open our Bookes, as soe as we made fire. Then they brought him word; and hee sent vnto the Monke to know, if hee would haue our company: who gladly answered, that hee would. From that time we were prouided of a better house: and we went downe with the Monke before the Palace of the greatest Lady; and wee in the furthest end towards the East, before the Palace of the last Lady. And that was the day before *Olden Epiphania*. On the morrow (to wit) in *Olden Epiphania*, all the *Nestorian* Priests came together before day at the Chappell, and smote vpon a board, and sang Matines solemnely, and put on their Ornamentes, preparing the Censer and the 30 Incense.

And while they stayed waiting thus, behold, in the morning, the principall Wife *Cotota Caten* by name, (*Caten* is as much as *Ladie*, and *Cotota* her proper name) came into the Chappell with many other Ladies, and with her eldest Sonne, called *Batu*, and other little ones of hers: And they call themselves *Downe* vpon the Earth, ducking after the manner of the *Nestorians*, and after this, they touched all the Images with their right hands, alwayes kissing their hands after they had touched, and after that, they gaue their right hands to all that stood about them in the Church. For this is the custome of the *Nestorians* when they come into the Church. Then the Priests sang many things, giuing the Lady Incense in her hand, and the put it vpon the fire: then they performed her. After this, when the day was cleere, she began to put off the Ornament of her head, which is called *Baccha*: and I saw her bare headd, then shee commanded vs to goe forth, and as I went out, I saw a fluer Balon brought: whether they baptized her or no, I know not: but I know, they celebrate not Maile in a Tent, but in a standing Church. And in the Easter I saw them baptize, and hollow fount with great Solemnitie, which now they did not.

And while we went into our house, *Mangu Chen* himselfe came, and went into the Church, or Oratory, and a Golden Bed was brought, on which hee laye by his Queene, our against the Altar. Then were we sent for, not knowing that *Mangu* was come. And the Doore-keepers feared vs, lest we should haue Knives about vs. But comming into the Oratory, hauing a Bible, and a Breuiary in my bosome, I first bowed downe vnto the Altar, and after to *Mangu Chen*: and so passing by, we stood before the Monke and the Altar. Then they made vs sing a Psalm after our manner, and chaunt it. But we sang of that profie, *Yeni Sancti Spiritus, &c.* And *Chen* caused our Bookes to be brought, which they signified. The *Nestorians* answered him at their pleasure, because our Interpreter came not in with vs. And when I was first before him, I had the Bible in my bosome, which hee commanded to be brought vnto him, who looked earnestly vpon it. Then he departed, and his Ladie remayned there, and distributed gifts to all the Christians there, shee gaue the Monke a *Isafan*, and to the Archdeacon of the Priests another: shee caused a *Nesfic* to be spread before vs (to wit) a piece of Cloth, as broad as a Couerlet of a Bed, very large, and a * Buckram, which when I would not receiue, they sent them to my Interpreter, who had them to himselfe. He brought the *Nesfic* to *Cyprus*, which he sold for eightie Sultannes of *Cyprus*: but it was much the worie for the carriage. Then drinke was brought (to wit) drinke made of Rice and red Wine, like Wine of *Rachell*, and Colmos. * Then the Ladie holding the cup full in her hand, desired blessing vpon her knees, and all the Priests sing with a loud voyce, and shee drunke it

* Vitum buccinum.

* Colmos of
Mares Milk
Vid. sup.

it vp: and my companion must sing. Another time, when all of them were almost drunke, then meate was brought (to wit) the carkease of one Ramme which was presently deuoured, and after that, great fishes, which are called *Carpes*, without Salt, or Bread: wherof I eate a little, so they passed the day, vntill the Eueneng. And when the Ladie her selfe was drunke, shee tooke her Chariot (the Priests singing) and went her way. The next Sunday, when *There* was a Marriage in Cana of Galily is read for the Gospel; *Chen* Some came (whose Mother was a Christian) and did like, but not with so great Solemnitie. For he gaue no gifts, but made the Priests drunke, till they were drunke, and gaue them parched Millet to eate.

Before the first Sunday in Lent, the *Nestorians* fast three dayes, which they call the Fast of *Saint Sorkis*, which is the greatest Saint amongst them.

The *Nestorians* beginne their Fast vpon Tuesday, and end it vpon Thursday: so that vpon Friday they eate flesh. And all that time I saw the Chancelor (to wit, the great Secretarie of State called *Solemniti*) make them a pittance of flesh vpon the Friday; and they blessed the flesh with great Solemnitie, as the Patriall Lambe is blessed: but hee eate none with them; and this I learned of *Williamus Parisiensis*, who was his very familiar friend. The Monke lent to *Mangu* to fast that weeke, which (as I heard) hee did: so that on the Sabbath of *Sepuagefima* (at which time it is as it were Easter to the *Armenians*) we went on Procession to the house of *Mangu*: and the Monke, and we two (being first searched whether wee had Knives) went in with the Priests, before him. And while we went in, one of the Seruants went forth, carrying out the shoulder bones of Rammes, burnt to the blacknesse of Coales. Whereupon I marvelled greatly, what it should meane, wherof after I had inquired, I vnderstood, that hee neuer doth offer a man to enter his house, but first consulteth with that bone, which kind of Diuination, is thus done.

When he purpoeeth to doe any thing, hee causeth three of those bones to be brought vnto him: hee vnburts; and holding them hee thinketh of the thing, wherof hee will consult, whether hee may vnburts; and then deliuereth the bones to bee burnt, and there are alwayes two little doe it or not: and then deliuereth the bones to bee burnt, which are diligently Roomes, hard by the house where hee lyes, where those bones are burnt, which are diligently sought for euery day thorow all the Leskar or Army-dwelling. When they are burnt blacke, they bring them vnto him, then hee looke vpon them, whether the bones (by the heate of the fire) clef right length-wise: then the way is open, that hee may do it. But if the bones be cracked arthwart, or round pices: then out of them, then hee doth it not: for the bone is alwayes clef in the fire, or the thinnest skin which ouer-spreadeth it. And if one of the three be clef forth right, hee doth it. When therefore wee went in before him (aduised before, that we should not touch the threshold) the *Nestorian* Priests brought him Incense, and hee put it vpon the Censer, and they censed him. Then they sung, bliding his cup, and after them the Monke pronounced his blessing, and we mult blese laff. And when hee saw vs holding the Bible before our breff, hee caused it to be brought vnto him, that hee might see it, which hee diligently looked vpon. Then after hee had drunke, and the chiefe Priest had wayted on his Cup, they gaue the Priest drinke: After that, we went forth, and my companion stayed laff. And when wee were without, my companion (when hee should haue gone out after vs) turned his face to *Chen*, bowing himselfe vnto him: and then, hastily following vs, hee stumbled at the threshold of the house.

And when we went in haste toward the house of *Batu* his eldest Sonne, they that observed the threshold, layd hands on my companion, and made him stay, that hee should not follow vs, the calling one, and commanding him to carrie him to *Bulgari*, who is the great Secretarie of the Court, and iudgeth those that are arraigned of life and death. But I knew it not, yet when I looked backe, and saw him not comming, I thought theye detrayned him, to giue him some lighter garments: For he was weake, and so laden with Pelk-garments that hee could scarce goe. Then they called our Interpreter, and made him sit with him: but wee went to *Chen* eldest Sonnes house, who had two Wives, and was lodged at the right side of his Fathers Court: who as soe as hee saw vs comming, leaping from his bed whereon hee laye, call himselfe vpon the earth, smiting his forehead against the ground, worshipping the Crosse, and aining, caused it to be set vpon a new cloth, in an high place by him, very honourably. Hee hath a Schoolemaster, a *Nestorian* Priest called *Danid*, a very Drunkard, who teacheth him. Then hee made vs sit, and gaue the Priests drinke, and hee also drunke, receiuing the blessing from them. Then we went vnto the Court of the second Lady, which was called *Cato*, who followed Idolaters: whom we found lying sicke a bed. Then the Monke made her rise out of her bed, and worship the Crosse, bowing her knees thrice, and ducking toward the ground: hee standing with the Crosse at the West-side of the house, and she on the East: this being done, they changed places, and the Monke went with the Crosse vnto the East, and shee vnto the West. And hee boldly commanded her (although shee were so weake, that shee could scarce stand vpon her feet) that shee should call herselfe downe thrice againe, and worship the Crosse, toward the East after the manner of the Christians: which shee did, and hee taught her to make the signe of the Crosse vpon her forehead.

At. et

Ianuary 20

Of the Fast of
the *Nestorians*,
and *Armenians*,
and of their
Processions
vnto the Court
of *Mangu Chen*:
his eldest Son,
and Wives,
Saint Sorkis,
Lent.
Mangu Chen
Conuicted
with Processions.

How they di-
uine by the
shoulder blades
of Rammes
burnt blacke.
In *M. Impen-
sons Voyage* a-
mong the *Tar-
tars*, ye may
reade of such
a Diuination.

Threshold-Su-
perstition.
They doe the
like in *Florida*.

Batu the Court
who was eldest
Son of *Mangu*
Chen.

After the lay downe vpon her bed, and praying for her, we went vnto the third house, where a Christian Lady vied to be: who being dead, a young woman succeeded her, who together with the Daughter of her Lord, joyfully receiued vs: and all that whole house reuerently worshipped the Crosse. And the set vpon a Velvet cloth in an high place, and there cauted meate to be brought (to wit) the carcase of one Ramme, which being set before the Ladie, she cauld it to be distributed to the Priests. But I said the Monke were very wane of the meate and drinke, for the meate being eaten, and much drinke drunke, we were to goe to the Damofell *Cerna*, who lodged behind that great house, which was her Mothers: who at the coming in of the Crosse, cast her selfe vpon the Earth, and worshipped it very deuocely, because shee had bene well taught to doe, and shee let it in a high place, vpon a piece of silke. And all those clothes 10 whereon the Crosse was set, were the Monks.

A certaine *Armenian* brought this Crosse who came with the Monk (as he said) from *Hierusalem*; and it was of siluer, weighing about some foure markes; and it had foure Precious Stones in the corners, and one in the middle. It had not the Image of our Saviour (because the *Armenians* and the *Nestorians* are alhamas, that Christ should appeare nayled to the Crosse) and hee had presented it (oy the Monke) to *Mangu Chan*. And *Mangu* demanded of him what hee desired; to whom he answered, That he was the Sonne of an *Armenian* Priest, whose Church the *Saracens* had destroyed, and craued his helpe for the building againe of that Church. Then hee asked him, for how much it might be built againe he answered, for two hundred Ialcons (that is) for two thousand markes: and he commanded Letters to be given him, to him who hee requied the 20 Tribute in *Persia*, and *Armenia* the greater, that they should pay him the said summe of siluer. This Crosse the Monke carried with him euery where. And the Priests feind the game thereof, began to enuie him. Wee were therefore in the house of the said Damofell, and shee gaue the Priests much drinke. From hence wee went vnto the fourth house, which was the last in number and honour. For hee vied not to come often to that Ladie, and her house was very old, and her selfe nothing gracious. But after *Easter Chan* made her anew house, and new Chariots. She likewise as the second knew little or nothing of Christianitie, but followed Soothsayers, and Idolaters. Yet at our coming in, these worshipped the Crosse, as the Monke and the Priests taught her. There also the Priests drunke againe. And from that place wee returned to our Oratorie, which was neere therabouts: the Priests accompanying vs with great howling and out-cryes in their drunkennesse, which there is reprehensible neither in man nor woman. Then my fellow was brought home, and the Monke sharply rebuked him because hee touched the threshold. On the morrow *Bulgus* came (who was a Iullice) and diligently inquired, whether any had warned vs to take heed of touching the threshold. And I answered, Sir, wee had not our Interpreter with vs: how could we vnderstand? Then hee pardoned him. But would neuer after suffer him to come into any of the houses of *Mangu Chan*.

The Court of the third Lady. The *Armenians* and *Nestorians* are affirmed to shew Christ fixt to the Crosse. *Mango* built a Church. The Court of the fourth Lady.

Drunkennesse not reprobable among the Tartars.

Chap. 35. How Lady Ceta was cured of Scurge by the counterite Monke. L. enee is granted him to carrie the Crosse aloft.

Rubarie and the Crosse Miracles wrought with credulous Superstitious Holy water: none knowne in the East.

Serjus the Armenians Lay.

It happened afterwards, that the same Ladie *Ceta*, which was sicke about *Septuagesima*, was sicke almost vnto death: and diuination by Lots of the Idolaters could profit her nothing. Then *Mangu* sent vnto the Monke, desiring of him, what might be done for her. And the Monke indirectly answered, that if shee were not cured, hee should cut off his head, hauing made that answer the Monke called vs, declaring the matter vnto vs with teares, intreating to watch with that night in Prayer: which we did. And hee had a certayne Roote which is called *Rubarie*; and hee cut it almost to powder, and put it in waters, with a little Crucifix which hee had, wherein the Image of our Saviour was aduanced: whereof hee reported, that by it he knew, when the sicke should recover or dye. For if they should escape, it flake to the breist of the sicke, as if it were gilded, it otherwise it flake not at all. And I still thought that *Rubarie* had bene some holy Relike, which hee had brought from the Holy Land of *Hierusalem*. And he gaue all sicke persons of that water: drinke: so that it could not bee, but their bowels should be griued with sobbiter a Potion: which alteration in their bodies they accounted a Miracle. Then I told him (when he was about to make such a water) that hee should prepare some of that Holy water, which is made in the Church of *Rome*, which hath great vertue to expell Deuils: because I vnderstood hee was vexed of a Deuill. And at his insinuate, we made him some Holy water, and he mingled *Rubarie*, and put his Crucifix all the while in the water to temper it. I said moreover, that if hee were a Priest, that the Order of Priest-hood had great power to expell Deuils. And he said it was very true, and yet hee layed, because hee had no order, nor knew any one Letter: but was a Weaver, as I vnderstood after his Country, when I returned. On the morrow therefore I, and the Monke, and two *Nestorian* Priests went vnto the forefild Ladie. And there was in a little house, behind her greater house. When we came in, shee fate in her bed, and worshipped the Crosse, and let it honourably by her vpon a cloth of silke, and drunke of the blessed water with *Rubarie*, and washed her selfe. And the Monke requested me to reade a Gospell ouer her, so I read the P. sion of our Lord according to *Iohn*. At length shee was cheered, and felt her selfe better: and there cauled foure Ialcons to be brought, which the Iul laid at the feet of the Crosse, and after gaue me to the Monke, and re- 60

ched me one, which I would not receiue. Then the Monke stretching forth his hand, tooke it, and gaue either of the Priests one: so that, at that time shee gaue foure Markes. Then shee cauld Wine to be brought, and gaue it the Priests to drinke; and I must drinke thrice from her hand, in honour of the Trinitie. Shee began also to teach mee the Language, jelling with mee, because I was dumbe, not hauing any Interpreter.

On the morrow we returned to her againe. And *Mangu Chan* hearing that we came that way, made vs come in vnto him, because hee vnderstood that the Ladie was somewhat better, and we found him with a few seruants, supping liquid Tam, to wit, meat made of paffe, for comforting the head: and the burnt shoulder-blades of a Ram lay before him: and hee tooke the Crosse in his hand, but that hee kissed or worshipped it, I saw not: but looked vpon it, and asked some questions, I know not what. Then the Monke craued leave to carry the Crosse aloft vpon a Lance; because I had spoken to the Monke before concerning this. And *Mangu* answered, Carry it as you thinke best to doe it. Then doing our duty to him, wee went to the forefild Ladie, and we found her lustie and cheerful; and the still drunke of the blessed Water, and wee read the Passion ouer her. And those miserable Priests neuer taught her the Faith, nor aduised her to bee baptised. But I saw there mure, not able to speake any thing, but shee still taught me the Language: and the Priests neuer find fault with any kind of Sorcerie. For there I saw foure swordes laid drawne out of the sheath, one at the head of the Ladies bed, another at the feet, and two other, on either side of the doore one. I saw also there one siluer Chalice, of our Chalices, which peradventure was taken or stolne out of some Church of *Hungary*; and it hung against the walls full of almes, and vpon those almes there was a blacke stone. And concerning such things, the Priests neuer teach them that they are euill: Nay, they themselves doe, and teach such things. We visited her three daies, so that shee was restored to perfect health. After that, the Monke made a Banner full of Crosse, and got a Cane as a Lance, and we carried the Crosse aloft. I honoured him as my Bishop, because hee could speake the Language: yet hee did many things which pleased me not: for hee cauled a Chaire which may be tolde to bee made for him, such as Bishops vse to haue, and Gloues, and a Cap of Peacocks feathers, and vpon it a little Crosse of gold: I was well pleased with the Crosse. Hee had fabled feete, which hee laboured to grace with ointments, and was very presumptuous in speech. The *Nestorians* also repeated certaine verses of the Psalter (as they said) vpon two rods, which were ioyned together, being held of two men. The Monke was present at such things. And many other vanities appeared in him, which displeased me. Yet wee ioyned our felices to his societie for the honor of the Crosse. For we carried the Crosse aduanced through all the Tents singing: *Vexilla Regis prouident, &c.* Where- vpon the *Saracens* were much dismayed.

Sorcerie of foure swordes.

The Crosse carried aloft.

Since we came to the Court of *Mangu Chan*, hee rode but twice towards the South: and from that time hee beganne to returne towards the North, which was toward *Caracorum*. Wherevpon I noted all the way, a thing of which *Malter Baldwin* of *Hannonia* had spoken to mee at *Constantinople* (who was there) that hee had seene this onely wonderful, that hee alwaies ascended in going, and neuer descended. For all Riuers came from the East into the West, either directly or indirectly (that is to say) bending towards the South or North. And I enquired of the Priests which came from *Cataya*, who testified this fame. From that place where I found *Mangu Chan*, vnto *Cataya*, were twentie daies iourney, going towards the South and East. To Onan Kerlie, which is the proper Countrey of Moall, where the Court of Chingis is, were two daies iourney right East. And the South parts of the East there was no Cite: yet there were people which are called *Su-Moall*, that is to say, Moall of the Waters: for *Su* is as much to say as Water. These people live vpon Fish, and bounding neither Flocks nor Herds. Towards the North likewise, there is no Cite, but a poore people feeding Cattell, who are called *Kerkis*. The Oranger are also there, who binde smother filed bones vnder their feete, and throw themselves forward vpon the congelated Snow and Ice, with such swiftnesse, that they take Birds and Beasts. And many other poore people there are on the North side, so farre as they may spread themselves for the cold. And they wone on the West, with the Countrey of *Pacatir*, which is *Hungaria* the Greater, whereof I haue spoken before. The bound or limit of the North corner is not knowne, for the extremity of the cold: for in that place there are Northward furies or heapes of Snow. They are iniquitous of the Monitors or monstrous men, whereof *Ildanus* and *Solonus* make mention. They told me they neuer saw any such, whereof we much wonder, whether it bee true or no. All the Nations aforefild (although but poore) yet they must ferue in some trade: for it was the commandment of *Chingis*, that none should bee free from seruaice, till hee were so old, that hee could labour no longer, by any means. Vpon a time a certaine Priest of *Cataya* late with mee, clothed with a red coloured cloth; and I demanded of him whence hee had such a colour. And hee told me, that in the East parts of *Cataya* there were high craggie Rock, wherein certaine Creatures dwelt, hauing all parts the shape of men, but that they bow not the knees, but walke (I know not how) leaping: which are not about one cubit long, and their whole body is covered with hair: who haue their abode in Caves which no man can come vnto. And they of *Aper*, or else an emblem or Apish faile, and perhaps by the *Shimo* inuented, to tell their wares the date: that

Chap. 36. A description of the Countie about the Court of *Mangu Chan*, and of their manner of winning and their money. Chap. 37.

All Riuers bending towards the South: and North runne towards the West.

Chap. 38.

Su-Moall, that is to say, Moall of the Waters: for *Su* is as much to say as Water. These people live vpon Fish, and bounding neither Flocks nor Herds.

Chap. 39.

Maturwan commanded the like in *Su-Hungaria*.

*A description of the date.

that hunt them go to town to buy, carry (strong drinks with them, as strong as they can make, and make pits in the Rocks like Cups, and filling them with that strong drink. For *Catua* as yet hath no Wine (but now they beginne to plant Vineyards) for they make drinke of Rice, The Hunters therefore hide themselves, then the forefayd Creatures come out of their holes, and taste the said drinke, and cry *Chin-chin*. Then they come together: great multitudes and drinke together, till they are full. Then they begin to sing, and dance. To the Hunters come, and bind them hand and feet while they are sleeping; and after they let them goe to their necke, and draw forth three or four drops of blood from every one, and let them goe free. And that blood (as he told me) is most precious to die purple.

Most precious
Purple,
Cataia upon
the Ocean,
Taute and *Mansé*,
who dwell
in Islands,
whose Sea
freezeth in
the Winter,
Cataia paper
money.

money. The manner of writing in *Casta* like that of *China*. The people of *Tibet*. The manner of writing in *Tangut* and *Lugur*. The money of the *Kutenians*. Chap. 37. Of the second part of the people of the East, in *Lent*. The Monks reproved for the multitude of those that came unto him.

Chap. 37.
Of the second
fast of the peo-
ple of the East,
in Lent. The
Monke is re-
proued for the
multitude of
those that
came vnto
him.

He told it also for truth (which nevertheless I do not beleue) that there is a Province beyond *Cataia*, into the which, at whatsoever age a man enters, he continueth in the same age wherein he entred, *Cataia* is vpon the Ocean. And Master *Wilhelmus Tarisfen* told me, that the same Mellengers of certaine people which are called *Tanze* and *Manje*, who inhabit *Lains*, whose Sea is frozen in the winter, so that the *Tartars* may invade them; who offered two thousand *Tumen* or *Lacots* yearly, so they would let them liue in peace. *Tumen* is a peece of money containing ten Markes. The common money of *Cataia* is Paper made of Bombaste, the breadth and length of an hand, vpon the which they imprint lines, like the Scale of *Manje*. They write with a Penfill wherewith Painters paint; and in one figure they make many characters comprehending one word. The people of *Thobet* write as we doe, and they haue Characters very like ours. They of *Tangut* write from the right hand vnto the left, as the *Arabians*, and multiply the lines ascending upward, *Jagur*, as aforesaid, from about downward. The common money of the *Rutenians* are little spotted and griffled skins. When we came with the Monke, hee charitably admonished vs to abstaine from fleish, and that our seruants should eat fleish with their seruants; but he would promise vs Meale, and Oyle or Butter. Which we did, though it much grieved my Companion, by reason of his weaknesse: wherefore our food was Millet and Butter, or Paffe dodd in water with Butter, or fowre Milke, and vnleued bread baked in Oxedung, or Horse-dung.

NOW *Quisquagenarius* came, which is the Lent-time to all the people of the East. And the greatest Laity *Cosiva* with all her company, fished that week, who carried every day to the Oratory, and gave meat unto the Priests, and other Christians, whereof a great multitude 30 flocked thither the first week, to hear their duties. And the gale to me and my Companion, to each a Coate and Breaches of gray Samit (Samito) furred with coarse hair (Stuppa letze) because my companion complained much of the weight of his Skinnies, which I received for my fellows comfort, excusing my selfe nevertheless, that I would not wear such clothes. I gae to my Interpreter what belonged to me. Then the Porters of the Court seeing that I forgot a multitude came daily to the Church, which was within the bounds of the keepers of the Court, they sent one of their fellows unto the Monke, declaring unto him, that they would not have so great a multitude come together within the precincts of the Court. Then the Monke roughly answered, that he would know whether they commanded this from *Mangyu Chan*? hee added moreover certaine threatening speeches, as if he would accuse them to *Mangyu Chan*. Then they preventing him, accused him before *Mangyu*; That he was too full of words, and that he gathered together too great a multitude to hear him speake. Afterward, the first Sunday in Lent, being called to the Court (and the Monke being shamefully demanded whether hee had a Knife, in his hand, and the sword in his thoose, as hee used to beare) and (as it were) reading in it, began to shoulder-blade of a Rymme in his hand, looked up to the Court, and (as it were) reading in it, began to reprove the Monke, demanding, that seeing hee was a man that should prey vnto God, why hee spoke so much with men? but I stood behind with my head bare, and *Chan* saying vnto him, Why dost thou not put off thy Cap, when thou comest before me, as that *Chan* desired, and commanded me to be called nearer. Then the Monke being much abashed, put off his Cap, contrary to the custome of the *Grecker* and *Amenians*. And when Chan him selfe had spoken many things sharply vnto him, we went out. Then the Monke deliuered me the Crosse to beare to the Oratory, because he could not carry it for shame.

After a few daies he was reconciled vnto him, promising that he would goe to the Pope, and that he would bring all the Nations of the West to his obediēce. Whereupon, he returning to the Oratorie after that conference had with *Char*, began to enquire of mee touching the Pope, if I beleeeued he would see him if he came vnto him in the behaue of *Mangu*, and I bee would furnish him with Horles vnto Saint *lames*? He demanded also of you, if I thought you would send your sonne vnto *Mangu*? Then I cōtained him, that he should take heed that hee did not promise lyes to *Mangu*, because the last error should bee worfe then the first; and that God needeth not our lyes, that we should speake deceitfully for him.

At that time there arose a certain question between the Monke and a Priest called *Sonai*, a Learned man, whose father was an Archdeacon, and the other Priests accounted him for a Master and an Archdeacon. For the Monke said, That man was created before Paradise, and that

the Scripture said fo. Then was I called to bee an arbitrator of that question. But I being ignorant that they contended about this *anwerd*, that the Parafite was made upon Tuckley, when the rent trees were made, and that Man was made the first day. Then the Monk began to lay out the Deuill bring ether the first day from the four parts of the world, and making clay made the bodie of man therewith, and God inſpired his ſoule : Then hearing this Heretic of the Monk, and that he fo publicly and shameleſly recited it, I reproved him ſharply, ſaying, I ſhould put his finger upon his mouth, becauſe he knew not the Scriptures, and that he ſhould take heed, that he ſaid it not, whereby he might be faulty : And he began to ſhout me. It fell out I was ignorant of the Language. I ſuapered therefore from him, going to our calling my fellows, that he and the Priests went on Proceſſion to the Court, without calling me; becauſe the Monk ſpoke not to me nor the foreſaid reproofe, nor would he ſerne among them) hee he was wont. When therfore they came before *Mungu*, (I being not ſerne among them) hee he exactly demanded where I was, and why I came not with them : The Priests fearing, excuſed themſelves. But returning, they told me the words of *Mungu*, and murmured at the Monk. After this, the Monk was reconciled to me, and I to him, intrating him, that he would hepe me with his Language, and I would hepe him in the holy Scriptures. For a brother that is bold-*ner of a brother, is as a ſtrong Cure.* After the firſt week of ſailing, the Ladie ceaſed to come vnpon the Oratorie, and to giue meat and drinke, which wee were wont to haue, for the Monk ſuffered it not to be brought, ſaying, that Muſton fat or Suet was put in the confection thereof : and theſe gaue no Oyle, but very ſeldome : fo that we had nothing but browne Bread, and þat boyling in water, that we might ſupe broth : becauſe we had no water, but of diſtiled ſnow, or of Ice, which was exceeding ſcorde. Then my Companion began to our neceſſities, who made I acquainted *Daud* (the Schoole-maſter of Chan eldeſt ſonne) with our neceſſities, who made I acquainted *Daud* : he comanded to giue vs Wine, Flower, and Oyle. Neither the report thereof to *Chan* : and he comanded to giue vs Wine, Lent. Then they gaue vs a bottle of *Nefiorians*, nor the *Armenians*, eate filh, by any means, in Lent. Then the Ladie her horſe ſent me of boyled ſalt with vinegar to ſupper. But hee had a Chit by him vnder the Alar, with Almonds and Raiſins, and dried Prunes, and many other fruits, which hee ate all the day, with Almonds and Raiſins, and dried Prunes, and that in great affliction : for as ſoone as whenſoeuer hee was alone. Wee ate once a day, and they that in great affliction : for as ſoone as they knew, that *Mungu Chan* had giuen vs Wine, molt impudently they came in vpon vs like Dogs, both the *Nefiorian* Priests, who were drunke all the day in the Court, and the *Moad-ſuall* alfo, and the ſeruants of the Monk. The Monk alſo, when any came vnto him, to whom he would giue drinke, he ſent to vs for Wine. So that, the Wine caued our greater affliction then comfort : becauſe we could not denie it without offence. If wee gaue, wee wanted our felles, nor durſt we, that being ſpent, deſire any more from the Court.

ABout mid- Lent Master William's fomme came, bringing with him a faire filder *Croffe*, made after the *French* fafhion, bearing the Image of *Chrif*t all of filuer filded upon it at the top: befide the Monkes and Prieffts feeing, put it away: this *Croffe* hee was to pre-⁴⁰ſent in the name of his Maſter to *Buſiget*, who was the chief Secretarye of the Court: for when he heard, I was offended. The fame young man alſo added to a *Magny Clom*, that the worke of theſe Monkes was ſo good, that hee had ſent to the *Cardinal* of the *Palace*, to ſhew him ſuch a ſhirt as hee had made, which was of the ſame ſiluer ſilded with a bricke-wall ſharth at *Caracorum* a great Court: which was in ſuch place. In that place, there is a great *Palace*, wherein as the Priories of the Monkes are ſo called: ſo theſe are called *Palaces*. And ſo theſe *Palaces* are ſo called, becauſe theſe drinker twice a yeare: vs. In that place, when hee hath that way, and once in ſummer, when hee returneth. And this latter is the greater: becauſe then all the Nobles (who dwell farre ſome two monthes journey off in any place) meet together at his Court. And then two monthes journey.

hee giues vnto them gifes and garments, and thiues his great gonor: therefore
 hee giues them, as large as Granges, wherein his vittuals, and great store of stock. In the presence
 of that great Palace (because it was vnto be brought in bottles of Milke, and other drinks)
 50 Maller *William Parsellus* made him a fourth Cflowes Tree, at the root whereof were fourfold
 Lions, hauing one Pipe in the mouth of each; the first Pipes were conuayed
 within the Tree, vnto the top thereof: whose tops spread backe againe downward; and ypon
 euery one of the Tree, was a golden Serpent, which rayles twine about the bodie of the Tree: And
 one of those Pipes runs with Wine, another with Caracomas, that is, clarified Wyche; another
 with Ball, that is, drinke made of Honey, another with drinke made of Rice, called *Ternauna*.
 And euery drinke hath his vessell prepared of siluer, at the foot of the Tree, so recoure it. Be-
 60 twene those four Pipes in the top, he made an Angell holding a Trumpet; and under the Tree,
 he made an hollow vault, wherein a man might be hid; and a Pipe ascended through the heart
 of the Tree vnto the Angell. He first made Bellows, but they gaue not wind enough. With-
 out the Palace there is a Chamber, wherein the drinkees are layd, and there the seruants reside
 to powre it out, when they heare the Angell sounding the Trumpet. And the houghs of
 the Tree are of siluer, and the leaues and Pearsh. When therefore they want drinke, the Ma-
 ster Butler cryeth to the Angell, that he found the Trumpet. Then his hearing (who is hid in
 the

Chap. 38
A Description
of the works
of William
Chibier, and
the Palace
Mangu Chibier
Catacatum
; which Chibier
they enter
Palm-forest
Two months
journey.

The De-
tion of a
artificial
Tree.

The descrip-
on of the Pa-
lace.

The Sunday in
the Passion he
goeth towards
Caracarus.

They enter Ca-
racarus on
Palme Sunday

Mangy Chan
departeth
from Caraca-
rus.

the Vault) blows the Pipe strongly, which goeth to the Angell. And the Angell sets his Trumpet to his mouth, and the Trumpet soundeth very thrill. Then the Servants hearing, which are in the chamber, every of them powre forth their drink into their proper Pipe, and the Pipes powre it forth from above, and they are received below in Vessels prepared for that purpose: Then the Butlers draw them, and carry them through the Palace, to men and women.

And the Palace is like a Church, having the middle Ile, and the two sides beyond the two rows of Pillars, and three gates on the South. And within before the middle gate stands the tree. And Chan himselfe sitteth in the North front, in an high place, that hee may be seene of all. And there are two degrees of steps ascending vnto him, by the one, he that carryeth his cup cometh vp vnto him, and by the other he defendeth. That space which is in the middle, betwene the tree and the steps whereby they ascend vnto him, is voyde. For there standeth hee that watcheth on his Cup, and the Messengers, which bring Presents. And hee sitteth there above like a God. On the right side (to wit) toward the West are the men on the left women. For the Palace stretcheth it selfe out in length from North to South by the Pillars. On the right side are places full of seats lifted vp, like the Sellar of an house, whereon his Sonnes and Brethren sit. On the left side is the like, where his Wives and Daughters sit. One only woman sitteth there about by him, but not so high as hee. When therefore hee had heard, that the Worke was finished, hee commanded the chiefe Workeman to set it in his place, and make it fit.

And about Passion Sunday, hee went before with small houses, leaving his greater houses behind: And the Monke and we followed him; and he sent vs another Bottle of Wine. And hee 20 passed betwene the hilly Countries, where there was great wind, and an extreme cold, and there fell a great Snow. Whereupon he sent about mid-night to the Monke and vs, intreating vs to pray vnto God, that hee would mitigate that wind and cold, because all the beasts which were in the trayne were in icopardie, especially because all that time they were with young and ready to bring forth. Then the Monke sent him Incense, requiring him to put it on the coales and offer it to God: which, whether he did, I know not. But the Tempest ceased, which had now continued two dayes, and now the third day drew nere. On Palme Sunday we were nere Caracarus: In the dawning of the day we blessed the Willow boughes, whereon as yet there appeared no bud, and about nine of the clocke we entered the Citie, carrying the Crosse aloft with the Banner, passing through the middle of the street of the Sacrament, 30 where the Marker and Faires are vnto the Church: and the Nestorians met vs on Procession. And entering into the Church, we found them prepared to celebrate the Masse: which being celebrated, they all communicated, and they asked mee, whether I would communicate: I answered that I had drunke before, and the Sacrament should not be received but fasting. Masse being said, it was now Evening. Master William brought vs with great ioy to his Inne to sup with him: who had a Wife, the Daughter of a Lutheran, borne in Hungarie, who could speake the French and the Language of Armenia. We found also there a certayne other man called Basilus, the Sonne of an Englishman, borne in Hungarie, who also was skilfull in the foresaid Languages. Supper being ended, they brought vs to our Cottage, which the Tartars had appointed vs, in a certayne part of ground nere the Church, with the Oratory of the Monke. On the morrow Chan himselfe entered into his Palace. And the Monke and I, and the Priests went vnto him. They suffered not my companion to goe, because he stumbled at the threshold. I much deliberated with my selfe what I should doe, whether I should goe or no. And fearing offence, if I should depart from other Christians, and because it pleased him: and fearing lest that good might be hindered, which I hoped to obtaine, I chose rather to goe, although I saw their actions full of Sorcery and Idolatrie: nor did I any other thing there, but pray for the whole Church with a loud voyce, and also for Chan himselfe, that God would direct him to the way of eternall Salvation. We therefore went into that Court which was sufficiently ordered. And in the Summer Riuer are conveyed into every place, whereby it is watered. After this we entered into the Palace, full of men and women, and stood before Chan, having the foresaid Tree at our backs, which with the Vessels thereof tooke vp a great part of the Palace. The Priests brought two little Loues, and fruit in a Platter, which they presented vnto him, blessing them. And the Butler brought them vnto him sitting aloft in a very high place, much raised. And hee presently began to eat one of the Loues, and sent another to his Sonne, and to a certayne younger Brother of his, who was brought vp by a certayne Nestorian, and knew the Gospell, who also sent for my Bible, that he might see it. After the Priests the Monke said his Prayer, and I, after the Monke. Then he promised, that the next day he would come vnto the Church, which is great, and faire, and all the feeling above was covered with silke wrought with Gold. The next day he went his way, willing the Priests to excuse him, that he durst not come to the Church, because the understanding the dead were carried thither. But we, and the Monke remayned at Caracarus, and other Priests of the Court, that they might celebrate Easter there.

Maundie

Maundie Thursday drew nere, and Easter, and I had not our Vestments, and I considered the manner how the Nestorians made the Sacramentall Bread, and I was much troubled, what I should doe, whether I should receive the Sacrament of them, or should celebrate it in their Vestments, and Chalice, and vpon their Altar, or should altogether abstayne from the Sacrament. Then there were a great multitude of Christians, Hungarians, Albanians, Ruthenians, Georgians, and Armenians, all which had not seene the Sacrament since they were taken: because the Nestorians would not admit them to their Church, vntill they were baptized of them, as they said, yet they made no mention of this to vs. And they offered their Sacrament freely to vs, and made me stand in the doore of the Quire, that I might see their manner of Consecration. And also on the Vigil of Euen before Easter, by the Font, that I might see their manner of baptizing. They say, they haue of that Oymment, wherewith Mary Magdalene annoynted the feet of our Lord, and they power in as much of that Oyle, with that which they lay aside, and kneade their bread therewith. For all those people of the East put fat in their bread, in stead of Leuen or Butter, or Suet of a sheepees tayle, or Oyle.

They say also that they haue of the flower, whereof the bread was made, which the Lord consecrated: and alwayes powre out so much Oyle with it, as the flower they lay aside. And they haue a Chamber hard by their Quire, and an Oven, where they bake the bread, which they must consecrate with great reverence. They therefore make one Loafe of an hand breadth, with the foresaid Oyle, which they first break into twelve pieces, according to the number of the Apostles: and after chaide those pieces, according to the multitude of the people: and the Priest gives the bodie of Christ to every one in his hand. And then every man taketh it out of the Palme of his hand with reverence, and stretcheth his hand to the top of his head.

The foresaid Christians, and the Monke himselfe were very earnest, intraiting vs for Gods sake, that we would celebrate, Then I made them bee confessed, by an Interpreter, as I desire the Sacrament of Confession. They therefore made one Loafe of an hand breadth, with the foresaid Oyle, which they first break into twelve pieces, according to the number of the Apostles: and after chaide those pieces, according to the multitude of the people: and the Priest gives the bodie of Christ to every one in his hand. And then every man taketh it out of the Palme of his hand with reverence, and stretcheth his hand to the top of his head.

Some of them also were Souldiers, who excused themselves, that they must needs goe to the Warres, or else they should bee flaine: I firmly forbad them to goe against the Christians, and that they should not hurt them, that they should rather suffer themselves to bee flaine, for so they should become Martyrs. And I said, that if any would accuse mee of this Doctrine before Mangy Chan, I would be ready to preach the same in his hearing. For the Nestorians themselves of the Court were present, when I taught this way of whom I was suspicious, lest they should report ill of vs. Then Master William caused an Iron to be made for vs, to make Hosts; and hee had certayne Vestments which hee had made for himselfe: for he had some knowledge in Learning, and behaved himselfe as a Clerke. Hee caused the Image of the blessed Virgin Marie to bee grauen after the French fashion, and ingraued the History of the Gospell (in the Calaments) very faire, and made a certayne silver Cunnage, to lay vp the bodie of Christ therein, and the Reliques, in certayne little holes cunningly made in the sides of the Boxes.

Hee made also a certayne Oratorie vpon a Chariot, very fairly painted with holy Histories. I therefore tooke his Vestments and blessed them, and wee made Hosts, after our manner, very faire; and the Nestorians assigned mee their Font for Baptisme, wherein there was an Altar. And their Patriarch sent them from Baldack, a square Hide like a portable Altar, made with Chrisme, which they vse in stead of consecrated Stone. Therefore I celebrated on the Day of the Lords Supper, in their silver Chalice and Dish, which were very great Vessels; I did the like also on Easter day. And wee communicated the people with the blessing of God, as I hope. But they baptized in the Vigil of Easter none then threecore persons very orderly. There was great ioy generally among all Christians,

Then it hapned that Master William was grievously sicke, and when hee was vpon recovery, the Monke visiting him, gaue him Rubarbe to drinke, so that hee had almost killed him. Then visiting him, when I found him so ill at ease, I asked him, what hee had eaten or drunke? And hee told mee, the Monke had given him the foresaid Portion, and hee drunke two little Dishes full, thinking it had bene Holey water. Then I went to the Monke, and said vnto him, Either goe as an Apostle doing Miracles indeed, by vertue of Prayer, and the Holy Ghost, or doe as a Physician according to the arte of Medicine. You gaue a strong

with the Lords Supper vnto him, and annoynted him being ready to dye. Hee reproached the Monke for his

Chap. 39. The manner how the Nestorians make the Sacramentall Bread. The Christians confesse themselves, and receive the Sacrament of Christ William in the dayes of the Lords Supper, and Easter

The Christians desire the Sacrament of Confession. They excluded the ten Commandments: perhaps they felt lowes were of those Borderers mindes, which thought K. Henry had put in the Decalogue.

The Patriarch of the Nestorians remayned at Baldack.

Chap. 40. William Rubebarbe is sicke. The Monke giueth him Rubarbe; the Priest is sicke: First William administers.

Mountaines
on the which
Nash Arke re-
fied.
Or Comman
a Town ora
Cine.
Armenian fa-
bles.

The Mountain
Masfis.

Tepheli.

January 14.
Snow.

January 18.
The Country
of Sabenfa.

A Towne of
Sabenfa.
The Country
of the Soldan
of Turke.
Marjogan.
The first Sun-
day in Lent.

February the 15.
The Cite Aris
belonged to
Sabnfa.

The Popes
letters to Sa-
rach, and Ma-
gu Chan.

upon the *Tartari*, who shall border vpon them, and with the helpe of our Nation (that is) the *Armenians*, shall pursue them: so that the *French King* shall place his Roy. IJ Throne at *Taurinum* in *Perfia*. And then all East Countries, and all the vnbeleuing Nations shall be conuerted to the Faith of Christ. And there shall be so great Peace in the world, that the Liuing shall ly to the Dead, We be vnto you wretches, that liued not vntill these times. I read this Prophetic brought to *Constantinople* by the *Armenians*, which remaine there, but I made light of it. Yet, when I spake with the said Bishop, calling it to minde, I regarded it the more. And throughout all that *Armenia*, they as firmly beleue this Prophetic as the Gospell. Hee said vnto vs also: Euen as the Soules in *Limbo* expected the coming of *Christ* for their deliuey: so doe we looke for your coming, that we might be freed from this slavery, wherein we haue so long liued. Neere the City (*Vaxnu*) afore said, there are Mountaines, on the which (they say) the Arke of *Noah* rested. And there are two one greater then the other, and *Araxes* runneth at the footte of them. And there is a little Towne there, called *Comman*, which is by Interpretation, Eight: for (they say) it was so called of the Eight persons, which came forth of the Arke, and built it. Many haue al-
laid to climbe the greater Hill, and could not. And that Bishop told me, that a certaine Monke was very much troubled, and an Angel appeared vnto him, and brought him a piece of the wood of the Arke, willing him to trouble himselfe no more. That piece of Wood they had in their Church, as he told me. Neither is the Hill so high in appearance, but that men might well ge-
vp to it. A certaine Old man shewed me a sufficient reason for their Tongue. No man (saith
he) must climbe vp *Masfis*, because it is the Mother of the world.

In that Citty (of *Vaxnu*) Frier *Bernard Catholane*, of the Order of the Preaching Friars found me; who abode in *Georgy*, with a certaine Frier of the Sepulcher, who possideth great lands there. And he had learned somewhat of the *Tartari* language. Who went with a certaine *Hungarian* Frier to *Taurinum*, to deliue *Argon* Pass to *Sartach*. When they came there, they could not haue access, and the *Hungarian* Frier returned by me to *Tepheli* with one Seruant: but Frier *Bernard* remained at *Taurinum* with a certaine Lay-Frier, whose language he vnderstood. We went out of the Citty of *Vaxnu* in *ostauis* of the Epiphanie: for we had stayed long there by reason of the Snow. We came therefore in foure dayes to the Countrey of *Sabnfa*, a certain *Cine*, sometimes mighty, but now tributary to the *Tartari*, who destroyed all his Munition: so whole Father *Zacharias* got that Countrey of the *Armenians*, hauing deliuered them from the hands of the *Saraceni*. And there are many faire Villages of true Christians, hauing Churches right like the *Frankes*. And every *Armenian* hath in his house, in an honourable place, a wooden hand holding a Croffe, and he sets a burning Lampe before it: And that which we doe with holy Water, sprinkling it to drive away wicked Spirits, they doe the same with Frankincense. For e-
very evening they burn Frankincense, carrying it through all the corners of the house, to rid them of all kinde of Enemies. I ate with the foresaid *Sabenfa*, and he did me great reuerence, both he and his Wife, and his sonne *Zachary* was a very faire and wise young man. Who demanded of me, that if he should come vnto you, whether yee would entertaine him? for he so hardly brooketh the Dominion of the *Tartari*, that, though he haue plenty of all things, he had rather tra-
uaile into a strange Countrey, then endure their Lord-like Dominion. They said further, that they were sonnes of the Church of *Rome*: and if the Lord Pope would find them any ayde, they would bring all the bordering Nations vnto the subiection of the Church.

From that Towne of his, in fiftene dayes, we entered the Countrey of the *Soldan of Turke*, vpon the first Sunday in Lent. And the first Citty we found, is called *Chalougen*. All in the Citty were *Christians*, *Armenians*, *Cargines*, and *Greekes*: The *Saraceni* onely haue the Dominion. There, the Captaine of the Citty said, he had receiued commandement, that no viuals should be giuen to any *Frankes*, or to the Ambassadors of the King of *Armenia*, or of *Ualacijs*. So that from the place where we were the first Sunday in Lent, vnto *Cyprus*, (whether I came eight dayes before the Feast of Saint *Iohn Baptist*) we must buy our provision. He, who was my guide
procured me Horses, and tooke money for the viuals, and put it in his purse. When he came in-
to the Fields, seeing a flocke any where, he violently tooke one Sheepe, and gaue it to his family to eate, and marrailed I would not eate of his robbery. In the Purification I was in a certaine Cite called *Aini*, which was *Sabenfa*, whose situation is most strong: and there are a thow-
sand *Armenian* Churches, and two Synagogues of the *Saraceni*. The *Tartari* place Baile there.

There five Preaching Friars met me, whereof foure came from *Province in France*, and the fift ioynd himselfe to them in *Syria*, and they had but one sicke Boy, who could speake *Turkish*, and a little *French*: And they had the Popes letters to *Sartach*, and to *Mangu Chan*, and to *Bari*; such as your Highnes gaue me, Letters of request, that they would suffer them to continue in their Countrey, and Preach the Word of God, &c. But when I tol them what I had sene, and how they sent me backe againe, they directed their journey to *Tepheli*, where there are Friars of their Order, to consult what they should doe. I said vnto them they might well passe, by those Let-
ters, if they would: but they should bee well assured to inure much labour, and render an account of their conuining: for seeing they had no other message, but the office of Preaching, they would

would care but a little for them, and chiefly, because they had no Interpreter. What they did ar-
ter, I know not.

The second Sunday in Lent, we came to the head of *Araxis*, and passing beyond the top of the Mountaine, we came to *Euphrates*: by the which we defended eight dayes, alwayes going to the West, vnto a certaine Citty, called *Camath*. There *Euphrates* bendeth to the South towards *Halapia*. But we passing the Ruer went through very high hilly Countrey, and thence the deepe *Son* to the West. There was to great an Earthquake there that yeare, that no one Cite called *Arjogan*, tenn thousand persons noted by name, perished, beside poore men of whom there was no notice taken. Ruling three dayes together, we saw the aping of the Earth, as it was clef by the Earthquake, and the heaps of Earth, which came from the Mountaine, and filled the valleyes: so that if but a little more of the Earth had bene moued, that which *Ely* speaketh had bene literally fulfilled. Every valley shall be filled, and every Mountaine, and little hill shall be humbled. We passed through the Valley where the *Soldan of Turke* was vanquished of the *Tartari*. It were too long to write how he was overcome. But a certaine seruant of my guides who was with the *Tartari*, said; That the *Tartari* were not about tenn thousand in the whole, and a certaine *Curgine*, a seruant of the *Soldans*, said; That there were two hundred thousand with the *Soldan*, all Horsemen. In that plaine where the Bataile was, nay that night, there brake out a great Lake, at the time of the Earthquake. And my heart told me; that that Earth open-
ed her mouth to receiue yet more blood of the *Saraceni*. We were in *Sabale* of the lesser *Armenia* in Easter weeke. There we visited the Tombs of forty Martyrs. There the Church of Saint *Blaise* standeth: but I could not goe thither, because it was about in the Citty. On Low-Sunday we came to *Cefaria* of *Capadocia*; where there is a Church of Saint *Basil* the great. About fiftene dayes after we came to *Iscion*, making small iourneys, and resting in many places: because we could not so readily procure Horses. And my guide did this of purpose; taking vpon him to sollicite his owne busines three dayes, in every Towne: whereupon, I was much grieved, but durst not speake, because he might haue sold, or laine me, and our seruants, and there was none to gaine say it. I found many *Frankes* at *Iscion*, and a certaine *Tanenian* Marchant, called *Nicholas de Sanctis Syria*. Who with a certaine companion of his a *Persian*, called *Boniface de Moladano*, carried all the Allum out of *Turkie*, so that the *Soldan* could not sell any, but to thide
fold for nity. My guide preiented me to the *Soldan*. The *Soldan* said, he would willingly ca-
me to be conuey to the Sea to *Armenia*, or *Cilicia*. Then the foresaid Marchant knowing that the *Saraceni* made little accompt of me, and that I was much burthened with the company of my guide (who troubled me euery day to giue him gifts) caused me to be conuey to *Curcum*, a Hauen of the King of *Armenia*. I came thence the day before the Ascension, and stayed till the day after Pentecost. Then I heard, that Ambassadors came from the King to his Father. Then I went speedily to the Kings father, to demand, whether hee had heard any newes of his Sonne: And I found him set with all his Sonnes one excepted, called *Barum Ufa*: Who made a certaine
Cafle. And he receiued newes from his Sonne, that hee was returned: And that *Mangu Chan* had much eased his Tribute, and had giuen him a Priuiledge, that no Ambassalour should come into his Countrey. Whereupon the old man himselfe, with all his Sonnes made a great Banquet. And he caused me to be conuey to the Sea, to the Hauen called *Ayas*: and thence I passed o-
uer into *Cyprus*. And at *Niesia* I found our Princiual, who the same day carried me with him to *Antiochia*, which is in very weak estate. We were there on the Feast of Saint *Peter* and *Paul*. From thence we came to *Tripolis*, where our Chapter was, in the Assumption of the Blef-
ed Virgine.

And our Princiual determined, that I should leaue *Acon*, not suffering me to come vnto you: Chap. 50.
commanding, to write vnto you, what I would by the bearer of these Papers. And not-
withstanding to resist contrary to my obedience, I did according to my power, and vnderstanding, cer-
tifying pardon of your inuincible Clemencie for my superfluous, or wants, or for any thing that
shall be vnderfytly, my foolishly spoken, as from a man of little vnderstanding, not accom-
moded to indite long Histories. The Peace of God which passeth all vnder standing preterue your
heart and vnderstanding.

I would willingly see your Highnes, and certayne spiritual friends, which I haue in your
Kingdome. Wherefore, if it should not bee contrarie to your Maiesties liking, I would beseech
you to write to our Princiual, that he would let me come vnto you, and retume thierly againe
into the Holy Land.

Concerning *Turkie*, your Maiestie shall vnderstand, that the tenth man there, is not a *Saraceni*:
nay, they are all *Armenians*, and *Greekes*, and Children rule ouer them. For the *Soldan* was
conquered of the *Tartari*, had a lawfull Wife of *Hibernia*, by whom he had one feeble Sonne,
concerning whom he charged, that he should be the *Soldan*. He had another of a *Greke* Con-
cubine, whom he gaue to a certayne great Admiral. The third, hee had of a *Turke*. To whom

Chap. 49.
They come to
Euphrates, to
the Cille ca-
malie, they passe
into Cyprus, at
sawed to de-
tention, and
thence to Tri-
polis.

The Cite Ar-
gen mightily
broken with an
Earthquake.
The going of
the eadli clo-
ure.

The Vall y
where the Sol-
dan of Turke
was vanquish-
ed of the Tar-
tari.

Sibelle of the
lesser Armenia.
Mango Byshe-
pode.

Cefaria of Cap-
padocia.

Iscion.

Allum in Tur-
kie.

The Soldan of
Iscion.

Cutcum a ha-
uen of Cilicia,
ouer against
the East part
of the land of Cy-
prus.

Burum Ufa.

Ayas or Giorgio
Iunctive 16. he
was once of Cy-
prus.

Antiochia.
Iuncte 29.
Tripolis.

August. 15.

Chap. 50.
He wroth
from Tripolis
to King Lodowick
and giueth his
advice, by sen-
ding of a be
Ambassage to
the Tartari.

The weak e-
state of Turke.

De Asperio-
ne
Descriptio
Similis

Patriarcha Ne-
storianorum,
b. S. S. S. S. S.
b. S. S. S. S. S.
p. S. S. S. S. S.

Idolatre,
Templa. Cam-
na.

Tegula,
Cestiva,
collegia Sacer-
dotum
Corda muelo-
rum
Iugis.

Tebeth.
Tangut.
Catai. Orienta-
lia.
Chinici. Tunc-
tu. hodie. Cui-
mult. p. S. S. S. S.
Chinici. Tunc-
tu. hodie. Cui-
mult. p. S. S. S. S.

P. R. Spec. H. B.
Lib. 3. 2.
M. M. Mich.
L. 2. c. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.

Others call
him Ocadi Cam

bona cognoscunt vires boni barum, & totius medicinae potentiam. Multi ex eis sunt apud Tartaros. Et igitur Cataiorum moneta vulgaris est charta de bambusa in qua imprimunt quidam lineas. Nec mirum; Cum Ruteni, qui prope nos sunt, habent pro moneta factum. Hesperopolim. Et ista Catia non distat per 120. dista a terra in qua moratur Imperator. Et in illa terra sunt rupes excelles, in quibus habitant quadam creaturae habentes per omnia formam humanam; non tamen genua sciunt, sed ambulando saltando: sed non sunt longitudo maius, quam cubiti; & vestitus totum cor suu erubuit. Et venatores portant cornu suum, & faciunt fouas in rupibus ad modum cyborum. Et illa animalia veniunt & bibunt ceruissim, & inebriantur, & dormiunt, & sic capiuntur. Et venatores legunt eis manus & pedes, & aperiant venam in collo, & extrahunt tres vel quatuor guttas sanguinis, & dissoluant ea, & permittunt abire. Et ille sanguis est preciosissimus pro purpura.

Secundum vero, quod a principio Cataix magna migra vsque ad finem Orientis sunt principales Idolatre: sed mixti sunt inter eos Sacerdotes & Tartari, & Nestoriani, qui sunt Christiani imperfecti, habentes Patriarcham suum in Oriente, qui visitat Regiones, & ordinat in sacris in consiliis ad sacros ordines: quia ipse solus benedicit, & non potest venire ad unum locum nisi quasi in quinquecentis annis. Et ille dicit se habere auctoritatem a Romana Ecclesia ab antiquo; & paratus est obedire, si via esset aperta. Et isti docent filios Nestorianorum Evangelium & fidem, & alios quando possunt. Sed quia parum sunt, & sunt maiorum morum, ideo Tartari desipiunt eos. Et conseruant in vestigia suorum patrum latum ad modum palmarum, & diuidunt primo in duodecim partes, secundum numerum Apostolorum; & postea istas partes diuidunt secundum numerum populi. Et Sacerdos dicit vniuersum corpus Christi in mensa sua; & tunc quilibet assumit de palma sua cum reuerentia. Sed Idolatre prevalant in multitudine in omnibus his Regionibus. Et omnes conueniunt in hoc quod habent Tempia sua nos, & campanas magnas. Et ideo Ecclesia Græcorum & totius Orientis vult habere campanas. Ruteni tamen habent & Giza in Castris.

Omnes Sacerdotes eorum nudum caput & barbiam, & seruant castitatem ex quo radium caput: Et vniunt centum vel ducentum in una congregatione. Diebus quibus intrant Tempia ponunt duo scannia & sedent e Regiones choros in terra, habentes libros in manibus qui aliquando deponunt super illa scannia: & habent circa ea coeperta quandam sunt in Templo legentes in silentio; & nullo modo loquentes in Templo nisi verba officij sui. Habent etiam in manibus quocunque vadunt quandam cordam centum vel ducentum nucleorum sicut nos Pater noster: & dicunt super hac verba. On, Maio, Baccan, id est, Deus tu noster. Hac sunt communia omnibus Idolatre. Sed tamen Logres, qui habitant in terra ubi Imperator moratur, differunt ad alij. Nam alij non ponunt nudum caput, sed pedes, & creaturam aduocant. Isti vero propter Viciniam Christianorum & Saracenorum ponunt vniuersum Deum. Et sunt optimi scriptores: unde Tartari acceptum litteras eorum: & illi sunt magni scriptores Tartarorum. Et isti scribunt a sinistris in dextris, & a sinistris in dextris multiplici lineas & legunt. Tebeth scribunt sicut nos, & habent figuras similes nostris. Tangut scribunt a dextra in sinistram sicut Arabes, sed multiplici lineas ascendendi. Catai Orientales scribunt cum penicillo, quo pingunt picturas: & faciunt in una figura plures litteras comprehedentes unam diuisionem. Et ex hoc videntur Characteres, qui habent multas litteras simul. Vnde vero Characteres & Philosophici sunt Compositi ex litteris, & habent sensum diuisionem. Et tota terra a Danubio vsq. in Orientem vocatur apud Antiquos Scythia, & quia Scythæ. Et omnes Regiones Tartarorum sunt de Scythia: & etiam Rulua, & totum vsq. ad Aquaniam.

And thus much ex plurima parte Compendij Studij Theologie F. R. Baconi.

Relations of VINCENTIUS BELVACENSIS, the most of which hee received from Frier SIMON de Sancto Quintino, one of the foure Friers sent by Pope INNOCENT the Fourth to the Tartars: serving to the illustration of the former.

ANNO. 1246. Cuius, who is also called Gog Cham, was advanced to the Imperial Throne of the Tartars. All their Barons being assembled, placed a golden seat in the midst, wheroun they caused him to sit, and he sat a Word before him, saying, Wee will, and desire, & command thee to rule ouer vs. He demanded if they were contented, to doe, come, goe, flay as he should command. They answered yea. Then said he, The word of my mouth shall henceforth be my Sword: & they all consented. After this they spread a Felt on the ground, & let him thereon, saying, Look upwards and acknowledge God, and looke downe on the Felt wheroun thou sittest. If thou shalt gouerne well, wilt be liberal, wilt be mercifull, and wilt be true to thy Dominion, and shalt reigne magnificient, and the whole World shall be subject to thy Dominion, and God will give thee all thy heart's desire: if otherwise thou shalt be miserable and poore, that the Felt shall not be left thee wheroun thou sittest. This done, they let his Wife with him on the Felt: & lifted them vp both sitting, and proclaimed them Emperour and Emperesse of the Tartars. After which they brought before him infinite store of Gold, & Silver, & Gemmes, with all which remayned to Chagadai, who distributed what he pleased, & released the rest. Then began they to drinke vntill night after their manner; and afterward sudden flesh came in Cartes without Sale, & a-

monght foure or fise they distributed a ioynt thereof. They call him Cam, concealing his proper name, and he boasts himselfe the Sonne of God. Helath a Prince in the Confines of Persia, called Baioth Noy (Noy, significth his dignitie, Baioth is his name) which hath subdued the Countries of Christians and Saracens to the Mediterranean Sea. Another called Corcan remayneth in the West Frontiers with threecore thousand vnder him. The greatest Prince is Baiuth, who hath vnder him one hundred and threecore thousand Tartars, & foure hundred and fiftie thousand Christians and others. The Chams forces are innumerable.

Ann. Dom. 1247. Frier Ascelinus sent by the Pope, came into the Campe of the Tartars with other Friers Preachers: where the Captiue Baiuth-noy by Messengers demanded, whol Messenger they were. Frier Ascelinus answered for them all, I am the Messenger of the Lord Pope, fongers they were. Where Baiuth answered then any man, reputed a Father and Lord. They replied, who amongst Christians is greater then any man? Knowes he not that the Cham is Son of God, and Baiuth-noy and Babo are his Princes? Ascelinus answered, the Pope knowes no them, but heares that the Tartars haue come out of the East, and haue destroyed infinite multitudes. And had he knowne the names of Cham or his Princes, he would not haue omitted titles in the Letters which we bring. But being grieved for the slaughters of so many, especially Christians, with the aduice of his Brethren the Cardinals, he hath sent vs to the next Tartarian Armie we could find, to exhort the Generall thereof to cease such attempts, and to report of that which they haue done. The Messengers went and came diuers times betwixt, & every time in change of Garments, and were very sollicitous for Gifts and Presents which the Friers had none to giue. And besides they denyed to performe the Ceremonies of kneeling to Baiuth-noy, lest they should thereby intimate a subiection of the Pope to the Tartars: whereupon hee consulted to put them all foure to death, to which a Messenger sent from the Great Cham would not consent. The Friers only would put vp their hoods & bow the head: wherat a Tartar asked whereas you Christians adore rocks and stones, that is Croffes imprinted on them; why doe you refuse to doe so to Baiuth-noy, whom Cham the Sonne of God hath commanded to be adored. Ascelinus answered, Christians adore not rocks and stones, but the figure of the Croffe thereof, for his sake which dyed on a Croffe, adorning it with his members as precious Jewels and consecrating it with his blood, purchasing thereby our filiation. So cannot we doe to your Lord. Baiuth-noy lent them word, that hee would send them with their Letters to the Cham, which they refused. Then he sent for the Letters which were translated first into Persian, and thence into the Tartar Language. Hee held them there with many Tricks and Illusions, many weeks with hard fare and ill vllage. And after much adoe he returned with Baiuth-noys answer, hauing first had a Messenger with Letters from the Cham.

The foure were distincti-
liberis, alex-
ander, and Si-
mon.

See a Me de-
finitione
Ethnicus, Aug.
in P. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.

Baiuth-noy Letter was this to the Pope, The word of Baiuth-noy. Pope, know this; thy Messengers came and brought thy Letters to vs. Thy Messengers spake great words; we knew not whether thou guesst them so in charge, or whether they spake it of themselves. In thy Letters thou hadst written: yee kill, slay, and destroy many men. The precept of God shall be firme, who contains the face of the whole world, vnto vs is this. Whosoever shall beare the Statue on their owne Land, let them yield Water and Patrimoine, and let them deliver power to him which containeth the face of the whole World. But whosoever will not beare the Precept and Statute, but shall doe otherwise, let them be rooted out and destroyed. Now we send to you touching that Statute and Precept. If yee will yield Water and Patrimoine on our Land, it is meet that thou Pope thy selfe in thine person come to vs, and to him which containeth the face of the whole Earth: and if thou wilt not beare the fable Precept of God and of him which containeth the face of the whole Earth, we know not, God knowes. It is meet that before thou comest, thou sendest Messengers, and that thou signifyest to vs whether thou comest or no; whether thou wilt compound with vs, or be Enemy. And send an Answer of the Precept quickly to vs. The Precept by the hands of Aybeg and Sargis, we haue sent in the month of Iuly, the twentieth day of the Month. In the Territorie of the Castle Sitien.

The Copie of the Chams Letters to Baiuth-noy. By the Precept of the living God Cingil-cham the Sonne of God, sweete and venerable faith, that God is high ouer all, bee is God immortal, and vpon Earth Cingil-cham, is Lord alone. Wee will that thou come into euery place to the hearing of all, to the Princes obeying vs, and to the Provinces, obeying against vs. It is therefore meete that thou O Baiuth-noy excite them and make it knowne to them, that this is the commandement of the living and immortal God: that thou also incessantly make knowne thy desire touching this, and notifie my commandement in all places, where a Messenger may come. And whosoever shall gamsay thee shall be hunted, and his Land shall be wasted. And after thee, that whosoever shall not beare this my Mandate, shall bee deafe, & whosoever shall doe according to this my iudgement, knowing peace and not doing it, shall be lame. Let this my Ordinance come to the knowledge of all, whosoever shall beare and neglect to observe it shall be destroyed and flaine. Manifest this O Baiuth-noy. And whosoever desireth the profit of his House, and will serue vs, shall bee saved and honoured. And whosoever shall contradict, studie thou to correct them at thine owne pleasure.

Voco

De Bellis cap.
* This comes
to be that Sa-
rachin Rubric
Ercalibay pre-
tended Letter
in Vincenti agit

Vnto *Lewis* the French King were sent certayne Messengers from a great man, called *Ercalibay*; * and there was present *Frier Andrew* of *Lentimel* a *Dominican*, who knew *Danid* the chiefs of them, hauing scene him in the Armie of the *Tartars*. These brought Letters in *Persian* and *Arabicke* Letters. They reported also that a great King of the *Tartars* called *Cham* became a Christian, with most of his followers. And now the said *Ercalibay* was tyme and was come forth from *Cham* with a great Armie to aduance the Christian Faith, and to destroy the Aduersaries thereof; and much desired the French Kings love. They thought also that the said *Ercalibay* would the next Easter beseege *Bababek*. These told the King also of the *Tartarian* Affaires. Whereupon he sent Messengers with Letters and Jewels to *Ercalibay*, with a Tent or Chappell of Scarlet fairly embroidered, with the Storie of the Passion, with Ornaments thereto and things fitting for Diuine Seruice, with a piece of the wood of the Holy Crosse, exhorting him to proceed in the Faith. The Messengers were the foresaid *Frier Andrew* with two other *Friers* and two Clerks. Transcripts of all were sent into France.

CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the Historie of R. WEN-
DOVER, * and MAT. PARIS: with certayne
Epistles of the same subject.

* Hee was Au-
thor of a great
part of this his-
tory, which is
wholly scrib-
ed to Paris
by the
Dacia in here,
as often by la-
ter Authors
corruptly ta-
ken for Den-
marke.
The Dacia of
the ancients
comprehend-
ed *Troglody-
tes*, *Valachia*,
and *Moldavia*.

A Calujs co-
cited.
See briefword
and my Pilgr.
L. 4. c. 4. &
c. 14.

ANNO 1239. the *Tartars*, inhumane Nations, which had made great slaughter, and had with hostile forces invaded the borders of Christendome, in the greater *Hungarie* were vanquished and most of them slaine, being encountered by free Kings, *Christians* and *Saracens*, herein confederate. After which the King of *Dacia* and the King of *Hungarie* caused the Confinnes (before by the *Tartars* brought in man-
ner to a Wilderness) to be inhabited by *Christians*, which they sent thither. Of which out of *Dacia*, alone went more then fortie ships.

ANNO 1240. the detestable people of Satan, to wit, an infinite number of *Tartars* brake forth from their Mountayne-comples, and Rocks-defended Region, like Devils loosed out of Hell (that they may well be called *Tartarians*, as *Tartarians*) and like *Grashoppers* covering the face of the Earth, spoyling the Easterne Confinnes with fire and Sword, running Cities, cutting vp Woods, rooting vp Vineyards, killing the people both of Citie and Countrey. And if they spared any, they vied them in the fore-front of their battels to fight against their Allies, that if they were therein faine or fayned, themselves at their backes might kill them: if otherwise it was without reward. They are rather Monks then men, thirsting and drinking blood, tearing and devouring the flesh of Dogges and Men; clothed with Ox-hides, armed with Iron Plates, in stature thicke and short, well set, strong in bodie; in Warre inuincible, in labour in-
ferable, behind vnarmed; drinking the blood of their beastes for Dainties, &c. These *Tartars* of detestable memory, are thought to be defended of the ten Tribes which went away (forsaking the Law of *Moses*) after the golden Caluise; whom *Alexander* the *Macedon* sought to inclose in the *Caspian* hills, to which labour, exceeding humane power, hee inuoked the assistance of the God of *Israell*, and the tops of the hills joynted together, and the place became inaccessible and impossible. And though it be doubtful, because they vie not the *Hebrew* Tongue, nor Law of *Moses*, nor are governed by any Lawes; yet is it credible, that as their hearts then in *Moses* go-
vernment were rebellious, Reprobatly-cruell and Idolatrous, so now more prodigiously their heart and Language is confounded, and their life inhumane and brutishly inhumane. They are called *Tartars* of a certayne River called *Tartar*, running along their hills.

ANNO 1241. that inhumane and brutish, lawlesse, barbarous and savage Nation of *Tartars*, horribly spoyling the North and North-east parts of the *Christians*, caused a great feare and hor-
rour ouer all Christendome. For they had now brought in manner to a Wilderness, *Frisia*, *Gothia*, *Polonia*, *Bohemia*, and both *Hungaries*, the most part of the Princes, Prelates and people being fed or slaine: as by this Letter appeareth.

TO the Beloued and alway worthy to be beloued Lord, our Father in Law, the Illustrious Prince the Duke of Brabant, H. by the grace of God Earle of Lorraine, Palatine of the Saxons, his humblest seruice. The perills foretold in holy Scripture, now brake forth because of our finnes. For a certayne cruel and innumerable people, savage and lawlesse, invadeth and possesseth the Confinnes next bordering vs, and are now come to Poland, many other Lands being passed and peoples destroyed, wherof specially our vntime Messengers, as by our beloued Confin in the King of Bohemia, we are fully certified and are in-
quied speedily to succour and defend the faithfull. For we know for certayne that about the Ombres of Easter, the Tartarian Nation will invade cruelly and forcibly the Lands of the Bohemians, and if not

prevented, will there perpetrate unheard of slaughter. And because our next neighbours house is now on fire, and the next Countrey ieth open to waste, and some are already wasted, we earnestly and pitifully entreat the aye and counsell of God and of our neighbour-brethren for the vniuersall Church. And be-
cause delay is full of danger, with all our hearts we beseech you, that you make all possible speed to arme us well for your as our deliuerance, making strong preparations of store of Souldiers; diligently exciting the noble, mightie and courageous, with the people [subiect to them] that yet may haue time in readinesse, when we shall next direct our Messengers to you. And we, by the ministerie of our Prelates, Preachers, and Monks, cause the Crosse (because the businesse belongs to him which was crucified) to be generally pre-
ached, fasts and prayers to be appointed, and our Land in common to be called to the warfare of Ihesu Christ. Here we add that a great part of that detestable Nation, with an other Armie aduanced to arme a
small part to himselfe. And to speake much in few words, the Church and People of the North is so oppressed and brought to such Straits, as is neuer was so fowled since the World began. Dated the yere of grace 1241. on the day on which is sung Letare Ierusalem.

And this was the Letters sent to the Bishop of Paris by the Duke of Brabant. The like was written by the Arch-bishop of Cullen to the King of England. Therefore for this grievous tribu-
lation, and for the discord betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, so hurtfull to the Church, there are appointed fasts and prayers, with larger Almes in diuers Regions, that our Lord being pacified with his people, who as a magnificent triumph is as itrong in a few as in many, may destroy the pride of the *Tartars*. The French Kings mother, *Queene Blanch*, with deepe sighs and plentifull teares spake herof to her sonne. What shall we doe my dearest sonne about this lamentable euent, the terrible rumour whereof is come to our Confinnes: general destruction of vs all and of holy Church hangs ouer our times by the impetuous inuasion of the *Tartars*. The King with mournfull voice, not without the Spirit of God, answered: The heauenly comfort, Mother, exalt vs; and if they come on vs, either we shall defend againe those *Tartarians* to their Tartarian places whence they came; or they shall exalt vs to Heauen.

THE Emperour certified herof, wrote to the Princes, and especially to the King of England in this forme. *Fredenike Emperour &c.* to the King of England greeting. Wee cannot conceale, though it somewhat lately came to our eares, but give you notice of a thing which concerneth the Roman Empire (as prepared to the preaching of the Gospell) of all seculour Christian Kingdoms in the World, threatening general destruction to all Christendome. A Christian Nation hath lately come from the Southerne * Region, which had long layne but vnder the torrid Zone, and after towards the North by force passing long way, remaining is multiplied as the Conker worme, called *Tartars* were knowne not of what place or originall, not with out the fore-seene iudgement of God is referred to these last times, to the correction and chastisement of his people, God grant not lase of all Christendome. A publike destruction hath therof followed, the common desolation of Kingdomes, and poise of the fertile Land, which that wicked people hath passed thorow, not sparing sexe, age, or dignitie, & hoping to extinguish the rest of mankind, whilst it alone goeth about to diminish and reigne euer where by their inuence and increas-
able power and number. Now all things which they haue beene able to see eye on being put to death and spoyl, leauing vniuersall desolation behind them, these *Tartarians* (yea *Tartars*) when they had come to the well peopled (Countrie of the Cumani) (prodigall of their line, hauing bowes their most familiar Armes, with Darts and Arrows which they continually vse and are stronger in the armes then other men) they utterly ouerthrow them, and with bloody sword killed all which escaped not by flight. Whose neighbour-hood scarcely warned the Rutheni not farre distant to take heed to themselves. For they suddenly flew thither, to prey and spole as the wrath of God and lightning hurles it selfe, and by their sudden assault and barbarous inuasion take Cleua the chiefe Citie of the Kingdom; and all that noble Kingdom was wasted to desolation, the Inhabitants being slaine. Which yet the neighbouring Kingdoms of the Hungarians who should haue taken warning, neglected: whose flaggish King too secure, being required by the Tartars messengers and letters, that if he desired that he and his should live, he should buy from their fauour by yielding himselfe and his Kingdom; yet was not hereby terrified and taught to fortify against their irruptions: but they ignorant or insolent contempters of their enemies, secure in their enemies approach, trusting in the nature fortification of the place, unexpectedly captured and appressed at variance by them entered a vniuersall and appressed their Tents against them. And when the Tartars Tents were fine miles from the Hungarians, the Tartarian fore-march in the dawning of the morning, rushed suddenly and compassed the Hungarians, and first slaying the Prelates and chiefe men, killed an infinite number, with such unheard of slaughter as scarcely is recorded euer to haue happened in one battell. The King hardly escaped by flight on a swift Horse, which fled with a small company to the brotherly portion of the Hyllian Kingdom, thereto be protected; the Enemy pillaged the Tents and paynes, and now wasting the nobler and greater part of Hungarie beyond Danubius, consuming all with fire and sword, they threaten to confound the rest, as by the venerable Bishop V.ueniens the Archbishop of the said Hungarian King, not ceasing to our Court first as he passed, being conside to the Roman Court. Wee are also herof inly certified by the Letters of our deare sonne Conrade, elect King of Romans, Almay Augustus, and berre of the Kingdoms of Ierusalem; and of the King of Bohemia, the Duke of Austria.

Austria and Bavaria; by the Messengers words also instructed experimentally of the Enemies needre-
 needre. Nor could we learne these things without great griefe. Truly, as the report goeth, their und-
 determined damnable Army, by our Lords sufferance, hath proceeded divided purposely in three parts.
 For one being sent by the Prudent, and entering Poland, the Prince and Duke of that Land were slayne
 by them, and after that all the Region spoiled. The second hath entred the bounds of Bohemia, and be-
 ing entred hath made slay, the King manly opposing himselfe. The third hath runne thorow Hungaria,
 bounded by Austria. Whence the feare and trembling having beginning from furie, doe excite and invite
 all, necessitie vergeth to withstand them, the danger being neerer; the general destruction of the world, and
 specially of Christendome, calls for speedie helpe and succour. For these People is brutish, and without
 law, ignorant of humanitie; yet followers, and hath a Lord whom it obediently obserueth and worshipps, 10
 calls, The God of the earth. The men are of short stature, but square and well set, rough and courageous,
 at the becke of their Leader rushing on any difficulties: have broad faces, frowning looks, horrible cries
 agreeing to their hearts. They wear raw Hides of Oxen, Asse, or Horses, with Iron plates sewed on for
 defense. Armes hiterto, but now, with griefe we seeake it, out of the spoiles of conquered Christians, they
 are more decently armed, that in Gods anger wee may be the more dishonourably layne by our owne wea-
 pons. They are also furnished with better Horses, full with damier face, adorned with finer rayment.
 The Tartars are incomparable Archers; carrie sewed Armes artificially made, by which they pull Rivers
 and waters without lesse. When they fight, their Horses are so fed to be content with barles and leaues of
 Trees, and roots of Herbs: whom they finde swift and hardy. And we see, seeing all these things,
 often by Letters, and Messengers, are misfull to request your excellencie, as also other Christian Princes, 20
 earnestly soliciting and warning, that peace and lone may flourish amongst haliers, and discord being
 appeased (which often endamage Christendome) agreeing together to sit stay to them which have lately
 showed themselves; forasmuch as fore-warmed are fore-armed, and that the common enemies may not
 reioyce, that to prepare their wayes, so great divisions breake forth amongst Christian Princes. Oh
 God, how much and how often would we have humbled our felies, doing the utmost that the Roman
 Bishop might have forced, from the scandal of division against vs, which is gone thorow the World;
 and would more temperately have roused his passions from impetuous valour, that wee might be able
 to quiet our subiects by right, and rule them more peaceably; nor that be would protest the Rebels, the
 greatest part of which is by him fostered: that things being settled, and the Rebels awed against whom
 wee must be willed much treasure and labour, our power might beee advanced against the common En- 30
 mie. But will being to him for a Law, not ruling the superbie running of his tongue, and displaying
 to abysme from manifold division which he hath attempted; by his Legats and Messengers bee hath
 commanded the Crosse to be published against mee the Arme and Advocate of the Church, which hee
 ought to have exercised against the tyrannie of the Tartars or Saracens, invading and possessing the Holy
 Land, whiles our Rebels insult and consule grievously against our honour and fame. And now that our
 greatest care is to free our selves from domestike and familiar Enemies, how shall wee also repell Barba-
 rians? seeing that they by their spies which every where they have sent before, they (howsoever directed
 without Divine Law, yet well trayned in Martiall stratagems) know the publique discord, and the uncon-
 firmed and weaker parts of the Lands: and hearing of the heart-burning of Kings, and the strife of King-
 domes, are more encouraged and animated, O how much doeth triumphing courage adde to strength? Wee 40
 will therefore by Gods providence converted, apply our strength and industrie to this, that we may drive
 away the scandal domestike and barbarous on this side and on that, from the Church. And we have ex-
 pressly sent our deare sonne Constance, and other Princes of our Empire, that they may powerfully with-
 stand the assaults of our barbarous Enemies, and repress their envie. And heartily we desire your Ma-
 jestie in behalfe of the common necessitie by our Lord Iesus Christ, that taking heed to your selfe, and to
 your Kingdom (which God keepe in prosperitie) with instant care and provident deliberation, you dili-
 gently prepare freely ayde of King Princes, and other armed men and Armes: this we require in the
 shrinking of the blood of Christ, and the league of assistance in which we are united. And so let them be 50
 ready with vs manfully and prudently to fight for the deliverance of Christendome, that against the En-
 emies now proposing to enter the confines of Germanie, as the Gate of Christendome, by united force, vs
 flarie to the praise of the Lord of Hosts may be obtained. Neither let it like you to passe over these things
 with dissimulation, or to suspend them by deferring. For if (which God forbid) they invade the Ger-
 mane confines without obstacle, let others looke for the lightnings of a sudden tempest at the doores; which we
 beleeve to have hapned by Divine Iudgement, the world being diversly infected, the lone of many waxing
 cold (by whom faith ought to be preached and conserved) and their pernicious example slaying the world
 with Vices, and sinners other kinds of Simoine and Ambition. Let your Excellency therefore provide;
 and while the common enemies are outrageous in the neighbour Regions, wisely consule to resist them:
 because they have come out of their Lands with this intent, not regarding the perils of life, that they
 might subdue to them (which God avert) all the West, and may pervert and subvert the Faith and
 Name of Christ. And in respect of unexpected victorie, which hiterto by Gods permission hath fol- 60
 lowed them, they are grown to that exceeding madnesse, that now they thinke they have gotten the King-
 doms of the world, and to tame and subiect Kings and Princes to their vile services. But wee hope in our
 Lord Iesus Christ, under whose Standard wee have hiterto triumphed, being delivered from our En-
 emies, that they also which have broke forth of their Tartarian seats, their pride being abated by oppo-

The Pope to
 have his will
 against the Em-
 perour, ex-
 poses Christian
 Princes to mu-
 tual quarrels,
 which he should
 have opposed
 to the Tartars,
 never ceasing
 till he had run-
 ned that Fam-
 ily and the Em-
 pire.
 Their Spies.

This Emperour
 find a misre-
 dacted Suffer
 to K. Hen. 3.

sed forces of the West, these Tartars shall be thrust downe to their Tartaria (or Hell) Nor shall they
 bost to have passed so many Lands, overcome so many peoples, perpetrated so many mischiefs, uncon-
 quered, when their owne Destinie, yea Satan, shall have drawne them to the conquering Eagles of pas-
 sant Imperiall Europe to their death. If these Germanie volentarily raging and prone to warres,
 France the might and swiftnesse of Southerne warlike, and daring Spain, fertile England prone to mee-
 and a furnished Navie, Almayne full of Imperiall Warriors, Stripp-fort Denmark, untamed Ita-
 lie, Burgundie ignorant of Peace, vnguent Apulia, with the Tyrantlike and invincible Isles of
 the Greeke, Adriaticke and Tyrrhene Seas, Crete, Cyprus, Sicill, with the Sea neighbouring Islands and
 Regions, blondest Ireland, with simple Vales, marshie Scotland, Icie Norway, and every Noble and
 famous Region in the West, will cheerfully find their chiefe Souderie under the Colours of the queneing
 Crosse, which and not evenly rebellous men but adverse Devils dread. Dated in our returne after the
 yeeling and depopulation of Faenitia, the third of Iuly.

Some (Papalines) suspected that the Emperour had hatched this Tartar-pessilence like La-
 cifer or Antichrist, to get the Monarchie of the world and to subvert Christianity, and that the
 secret Counsels and wayles: wayes of the Tartars were fraught with Imperiall Counsels. For
 they conceale their Language, variate their Armes, and if one be taken, knowledge of them or their
 purpose can by no tortures be extorted from him. And where (say they) should they lurke, in
 which of the Climates till this time? whence their to secret and fraudulent Conspiracie? They
 are Hircans; and Scythians, false blood-suckers, who with the confederate Cumans, through the
 Emperours deultie, have overthrowne the King of Hungarie, to make him seek shelter under the
 Imperiall wings and doctum homage, &c.

Needs must they goe whom the Deuill drives: or how else but by mad malice, and furious
 faction, or an Antichristian milke, could such impossibilities have beene conceived? Of their driv-
 ing the Turkes and the Chosrovian out of Persia is well-known. Of the Popes entertain-
 ment of the Tartar Messengers, Anno 1248. dole Conferences with them and gifts to
 them, with divers other discourses in the first author of Authenr. I omit. Only this Epistle
 following, as containing both the strange adventures of an Englishman, and his relations of the
 Tartars from better experience, I could not but adde herte, making to most the Readers pur-
 pose and ours. It was written by one Two of Narbena a Clergie man, which being accused of
 Heretic to Robert de Curzon the Popes Legat, fled, and lued one while with the Patariens,
 another with the Begines, and at last writ this Letter containing a discourse of his trauels, amongst
 them in Italie and Germanie. He begins *Incipit De gratia Burdegalensi Archiepiscopo, Two dictu*
Narbonensi [was an eloquentissimus Clericorum, salatem, &c.] and after some premisses of the Pata-
 riens and Begines (too long for this place) hee proceeds; Hoc igitur & multis alijs peccatis inter
 nos Christianos eme, gentibus utitur Dominus, &c. In English, Our Lord therefore being angry with
 this and other finnes falling out among vs Christians, is become as it were a destroying enemy.

Part of an Epistle written by one Yvo of Narbena vnto the Archbishop of Bur-
 deaux, containing the confession of an Englishman, as touching the barbarous
 demeanour of the Tartars, which had liued long among them, and
 was drawne along perforce with them in their expedition against
 Hungarie: Recorded by Matthew Paris in the year
 our Lord 1243.

The Lord therefore being provoked to indignation, by reason of this and other finnes committed a-
 mong vs Christians, is become, as it were, a destroying enemy, and a dreadful scourge. This I may
 justly asseme to be true, because an huge Nation, and a barbarous and inhumane people, whose Law is
 lawlesse, whose wrath is furious, even the rod of Gods anger, overranne, and utterly wasteth infinite
 Contrict, cruelly abetting all things where they come, with fire and sword. And this present Summer,
 the foresaid Nation, being called the Tartars, departing out of Hungarie, whch they had surprisid by reason,
 layd siege vnto the very same Towne, wherein I myselfe abode, with many thousands of Souldiers:
 neither were there in the said Towne on our part above Fifty men of warre, whom together with twenty
 Corse-bowes, the Captaine had left in Garrison. All these, on certaine high places, beliding the ene-
 mies vast Army, and abhorring the beastly cruelty of Christian Subjects, signified forthwith vnto
 their Gouverneur: the hideous lamentations of his Christian Subjects, who suddenly being surprisid in all
 the Province admyning, without any difference or respect of condition, Fortune, sexe, or age, were by man-
 ifold crueties, all of them destroyed: with whose carcases, the Tartarian chieftaines, and their brutish
 and savage followers, glutting themselves, as it were delicious cars, left nothing for a dinner but the bare
 bones. And as for thing it is to consider, that the greedy and ravenous vultures disdained to pray
 upon any of the rich, which remained. Old and deformed Women they gate, as it were for daylie su-
 perfluous, vnto their Counties: the beautiful denuded theye not, but smothered them, lamenting and
 shrieking, with forced and vnnaturall ravishments. Like barbarous miscreants, they quelled Virgins
 selfe. &c. 6

vnto death, and cutting off their tender papts to present for daunties vnto their Magistrates, they encourage themselves with their Bodies.

Howbeit, their spials in the meane time desiring from the top of an high mountain the Duke of Austria, the King of Bohemia, the Patriarch of Aquileia, the Duke of Carnithia, and (as some report) the Earle of Baden, with a mighty power, and in battell array approaching towards them, that according to the immediately vanquished, and all those Tartarian Vagabonds retired themselves into the distressed and vnconquered land of Hungarie: who as they came suddenly, so they departed also on the sudden: which their carriere caused all men to stand in borrow and astonishment of them. But of the said fugitives, the Prince of Dalmatiaooke eight: one of which number the Duke of Austria knew to bee an Englishman, who was perpetually banished out of the Realme of England, in regard of certaine notorious crimes by him committed. This fellow on the behalfe of the most tyrannicall King of the Tartars, had beene wise, as a messenger and Interpreter, with the King of Hungarie, menacing and plainly foretelling those mischiefs which afterward happened, vnlesse he would submit himselfe and his Kingdome vnto the Tartars yoke. Well being allowed by our Princes to confesse the truth, he made such outcries, and protestations, as (I thinke) the Devil himselfe would haue bene trusted for. First therefore hee reported of himselfe, that lately after the time of his banishment, namely, about the thirtieth yeare of his age, hauing loft all that he had in the Citie of Acon at Dice, euen in the midst of Winter, being compelled by ignominious hunger, wearing nothing about him but a shirt of sacke, a paire of shooes, and a haire cap onely, being thauken like a foole, and vnto an vnchoy noyle as if hee had bene dumbe, heeooke his journey, and so traueilling many Countries, and finding in diuers places friendly entertainment, hee prolonged his life in this manner for a season, albeit every day by ralhnes of speech, and incontinency of heart, hee endangered himselfe to the Deuill. At length, by reason of extreame trauaile, and continuall change of ayre and of meates in Caldea, hee fell into a greivous ticknelle, inso much that he was weary of his life. Not being able therefore to go forward or backward, and staying there while to refresh himselfe, hee began (being some what learned) to commend to writing those wordes which he heard spoken, and within a short space, to apply to pronounce and to vtter them himselfe, that he was reputed for a native member of that Countreie: and by the same dexteritie he attained to manie Languages. This man, the Tartars hauing intelligence of by their spies, drew him perforce into their locuties: and being admonished by an oracle or vision, to challenge dominion ouer the whole earth, they allured him by many rewards to their faithful service, by reason that they wanted Interpreters. But concerning their manners and superstitions, of the disposition and stature of their bodies, of their Countreie and manner of fighting, &c. he protested the particulars following to be true: namely, that they were about all men, couetous, haſtie, deceitfull, and mercilesse: notwithstanding, by reason of the rigour and extremity of punishments to be inflicted vpon them by their superiours, they are restrained from brawling, and from mutuall strife and contention. The ancient founders and fathers of their tribes, they call by the name of Gods, and at certaine set times they doe celebrate solemne Feasts vnto them, many of them being particular, and but foure onely generall. They thinke that all things are created for themselves alone. They esteeme it none offence to exercise cruelty against rebels. They are hardy and strong in the breast, lank and pale-faced, rough and huffe-shouldred, hauing flat and short noses, long and sharpe chinnies, their vpper jawes are low and declining, their teeth long and thin, their eye-browes extending from their fore-heads downe to their noses, their eyes inconstant and blacke, their countenances writen and terrible, their extreame ioynts strong with bones and sinewes, hauing thicke and great thighes, and short legs, and yet being equall vnto vs in stature: for that length which is wanting in their legs, is supplied in the vpper partes of their bodies. Their Countreie in old time was a land vtterly desert and waste, situated farre beyond Chaldaea, from whence they haue expelled Lyons, Beares, and such like vntamed beasts, with their bowes, and other engines. Of the hides of beastes being tanned, they vse to shape for themselves light, but yet impenetrable armour. They ride fast bound vnto their Horses, which are not very great in stature, but exceedingly strong, and maintained with little prouender. They vse to fight constantly and valiantly with Laurelins, maces, battle-axes, and swordes. But especially they are excellent Archers, and cunning warriors with their bowes. Their backs are slightly armed, that they may not flee. They withdraw not themselves from the combat, till they see the chiefe Standard of their Generall glue backe. Vanquished, they aske no fauour, and vanquishing, they shew no compassion. They all persist in their purpose of subduing the whole world vnder their owne fiction, as if they were but one man, and yet they are moe then millions in number. They haue 60000. Couriers, who being first before vpon light Horses to prepare a place for the Armie to dis campe in, will in the space of one night gallop three dayes journey. And suddenly dissolving themselves ouer an whole Prouince, and luring all the people thereof vnarmed, vnprouided, dispersed, they make such horrible slaughters, that the King or Prince of the land invaded, cannot finde people sufficient to wage battell against them, and to withstand them. They delude all people and Princes of regions in time of peace, pretending that for a cause, which indeed is no cause. Sometimes they say that they will make a voyage to Colles, to fetch home the three wife Kings into their owne Countreie: sometimes

time, to punish the avarice and pride of the Romans, who oppressed them in times past; sometimes to conquer barbarous and Northern nations; sometimes to moderate the fure of the Germans with their owne meekness; sometimes to learne wauike fates and stratagems of the French; sometimes for the finding out of fertile ground to suffice their huge multitudes; sometimes againe in derision they say, that they intend to goe on Pilgrimage to Saint James of Galicia. In regard of which sleights and collusions certaine vndercast Gouernours concluding a league with them, haue granted them free passage thorow their Territories, which leagues notwithstanding being violated, were an occasion of ruyne and destruction vnto the foresaid Gouernours, &c.

To the Reader.

I Found this Booke translated by Maſter Hakluyt out of the Latine. But where the blind leade the blind both fall: as here the corrupt Latine could not but yeeld a corruption of truth in English. Ramusio, Secretarie to the Decemviri in Venice, found a better Copie and published the same, whence you haue the worke in manner new: so renewed, that I haue found the Tronerie true, that it is better to pull downe an old house and to build it a new, then to repaire it; as I also should haue done, had I knowne that which in the euent I found. The Latine is Latine, compared to Ramusio's Gold. And hee which hath the Latine hath but Marco Polos Carkeſſe, or not so much, but a few bones, yea, sometimes floures rather then bones; things diuers, averse, aduerſe, peruerſed in manner, diſtorted in manner, beyond belief. I haue ſent ſome Author: maymed, but neuer any ſo mangled and ſo mingled, ſo preſent and ſo aſent, as this vulgar Latine of Marco Polo; not ſo like himſelfe, as the three Polos were at their returne to Venice, where none knew them, as in the Diſcourſe ye haue ſhall find. Much are we beholden to Ramusio, for reſtoring this Pole and Lead-ſtarre of Asia, out of that mirie pool or puddle in which he lay drowned. And, O that it were poſſible to doe as much for our Conſtantinopolitan Manducell, who next this (next) was the greateſt Asian Traueller that euer the World had, ſee hauing ſaine amongſt themſelues, neither Priſt, nor Latine can know him, neither haue we hope of a Samaritan to releaſe him. In this I haue indued to giue (in what I giue) the truth, but haue abridged ſome things; to prevent prolixitie and taſtologie in this ſo voluminous a worke, leaſing out nothing of ſubſtance, but what eſſentially is to be found, in this worke: and ſeeking rather the ſhort then a ſtrict verbal following our Authors words and ſentence. As for the Chapters I find them diuerſly by diuers expreſſed, and therefore haue followed our owne method.

CHAP. IIII.

The first Booke of MARCVS PAVLVS VENETVS, or of Maſter MARCO POLO, a Gentleman of Venice, his Voyages.

§. I.

The Voyages of Maſter M. NICOLÒ and M. MAFFIO from Conſtantinople
to the Great CAN, and their coming home to Venice: their
ſecond Voyage with the Authour and
returne.

IN the time of Baldwin Emperour of Conſtantinople, * where viſually remained a Magiſtrate of Venice, called Maſter lo Doſe, in the yeare of our Lord 1250. Maſter Nicolo Polo, Father of Maſter Marco, and M. Maſſio his Brother, Noble, Honourable and Wiſemen of Venice, being at Conſtantinople with ſtore of Merchandize, kept many Accounts together. At laſt they determined to goe into the Great (or Euxine) Sea, to ſee if they could increaſe their ſtocke, and buying many faire and rich Jewels, they departed from Conſtantinople and ſailed by the ſaid Sea to a Port called Soldaia: * from whence they trauelled after by Land to the Court of a great Lord of the Tartars, called Barba, who reſided in the Cities of Bolgara and Aſſera, and was reputed one of the moſt liberal and courteous Princes that euer had bene amongst the Tartars. He was very well pleaſed with their coming, and did them great honour. They hauing made heu of their Jewels, and ſeeing they pleaſed him, freely beſtowed them on him. He, loth placed in Chirmit (not Armitia) on the North ſide of the Euxine Sea. Fierc Barba before call'd Soldaia in Caſſia.

Bacca, or Bo-
bar in Sactia,
of which see
M. Jenkinson.

They come to
the Great Can.

They are sent
Ambassadors
from the *Car*
to the Pope.

Golden table
used as a Com
mission under
the broad
Scale.

6324

Acte or Accor
then in possi
tion of the
Christians,
before 18. c.
Pope clemen
the fourth.
* Another e
pic hath 25.
x For the
Booke was
written by a
Gentleman
Genoa from

mouth: and therefore still in *Ramusio* Marco is mentioned in the third person and not in the first: at least much of it is so written in the whole published by him. The tenth that name. Letters, and Preaching, are sent via the *Tartars*.

for The Citie
and *mensu.*

e- The adora
i. of the Ta

Marcus L. made one of the Cham. Clerkes, a Courtier. Marices L.

tion. His wife died in travelling to a farm in County Kerry. * This 26. 1872, to 1873, as in the edition appended. There is that he was 26 years old when he began to write. They do not return.

(or the *Cafian*) which containeth in Circuit twenty eight hundred Miles, and is like a Lake, not mingled with other Seas. In it are many Ilands, Cities and Castles, some of which are inhabited by those which fled from the *Tartars* out of *Perfia*. The people of *Zorcania* are Christians, observing the rites of the *Christians*. They keep their hayre short, like the *Welsh* Clergie. The Inhabitants have many Cities and Castles, and abound with Silke, of the which they make very faire Cloathes.

Moxal is a Province in which dwell people of many forties, one called *Arabi* which are *Mahometans*, other are *Christians*, some *Nestorians*, others *Jacobites*, and others *Armenians*: and they have a Patriarch called *Lacidi*, which ordaineth Archbishops, Bishops, and Abbots, and lends them thorow all parts of *India*, and to *Cairo* and *Baldach*, and all parts where Christians dwell, as doth the Pope of *Rome*. And all the cloathes of Gold and of Silke called *Moflins* are wrought in *Moxal*. But in the Mountains of this Kingdome dwell the people called *Corda*, whereof some are *Nestorians*, other *Jacobites*, and some followers of *Mahomet*. They are wicked men and rob Merchants. Neare to them is another Province, called *Mus* and *Meridin*, wherein grows infinite store of Cotton or Bombait, whereof they make Buckrams and other works. This Countrey in the vnder the *Tartars*.

Baldach is a great Citie, in which was the *Chalifa* that is the Pope of all the *Saracens*. A River runnes thorow it, from whence to the Sea is ordinarily seauenteen dayes journey. They sayle by a Citie called *Chif*: but before they come thither is *Balfara*, about which grow the best Dates in the world. In *Baldach* are many cloathes of Gold and Silke: there are wrought Damascs and Valuers with diuers figures of creatures. All the pearles (in manner) in *Christendome* come thence. In that Citie is studied the law of *Mahomet*, *Negromancies*, *Physicks*, *Astrologie*, *Gnomonics*, and *Pythagoras*: It is the chiefe Citie in those parts. When the *Tartars* began to raigine, there were four Brethren, the eldest of which, *Mongra* reigned in *Sedia*, Thise purposing to subdue the world, went one to the East, another to the North, to the South a third, which was *Olau*, and the other to the West. In the year from the Incarnation of our Lord 1250. *Olau* having a great Army of one hundred thousand Horse, besides Foot, yet viced pollice, and having had a great part of his men brought by faied flight, the *Caliphs* into his ambush, and tooke him, and the Citie: in which he found infinite store of treasure, inso much that he wondred.

He sent for the *Califa*, and reproved him that in that warre hee had not therewith provided himselfe of Souldiers for defence: and commanded that hee should be inclosed in that Tower, where his Treasure was, without other sustenance. This seemed a iust judgement from our Lord Iesus Christ on him. For he in the year 1255, seeking to convert the Christians to *Mahomet*: And taking advantage on that place of the Gospell, that hee which hath Faith as much as a grain of Mustard-seed, should be able to remove mountains, hee converted all the *Christians*, *Nestorians*, and *Jacobites*, and propounded to them in ten dayes to remove certaine Mountains, or turne *Mahometans*, or be slaine, as not having one man amongst them which had the least faith. They therefore continued eight dayes in Prayer: after which certaine Shoemaker by revelation to a Bilb, was dignified to performe it. This Shoemaker once tempted to lust by sight of a young Woman in putting on her Shooe, zealously had fulfilled that of the Gospell, and literally had put out his right eye: He now on the day appointed with other Christians following the Croffe and lifting his hands to Heauen, prayed to God to haue mercy on his people, and then with a loude voyce commanded the Mountaine in the name of the Father, Sonne, and holy Ghost to remove, which presently with great terrour to the *Califa* and all his people was effected. And that day is since kept holy, with fasting alio on the euen.

Tauris is a great Citie in the Province of *Hirace*. It is a most populous Citie. They liue of Arts and Merchandize. They make Cloathes of gold and silke. Foraine Merchants make great gaine, but the Inhabitants are generally poore: a mixed people of *Nestorians*, *Armenians*, *Jacobites*, *Georgians*, and *Perfians*, and *Mahometans*. These last are perfidious and treacherous, thinking all well gotten which they steal from men of other Religions. And this wickednesse of the *Saracens* hath converted many *Tartars* thereto. If the Christians kill them in their robbery, they are reputed Martyrs. From *Tauris* to *Perfia* are twelue dayes journey. In the confines of *Tauris* is the Monastery of Saint *Bartholomew*, the Monks whereof are like *Carmelites*; they alway make grides which they lay on the Altar, and giue to their friends, with which duocetye releeme of them.

Perfia containeth eight Kingdomes: whereof the first is called *Cafian*, the second *Cordis*, the third *Lor*, the fourth *Sauistan*, the fifth *Span*, the sixth *Sera*, the seventh *Sonara*, the eighth *Timbaim*, which is neere *Arboreffco* towards the North. Faire and great Hories are there, whence they are sold into *India*. There are also very goodly and excellent *Filds* feede deer then the Hories, for that they eat little, carrie much and farre. They haue Camels but not so swift. There are necessary in those Countreys, which sometime in a long way yeeld no graile. The people in those Countreys are very wicked, contentious, Theues, and Murtherrers, professing the faith of *Mahomet*. Merchants are euery where slaine by those Theues, vnlesse they trauell in troups. Yet are there excellent Artificers in the Cities, who make wonderfull things in gold,

The eight Kingdome of *Perfia*.
Merits.
Arts.

The Inhabitants.

silke, and Embroiderie. They abound with Silke-wormes, Wheat, Barley, Milium, and other kinde of Corne: and haue also plenty of Wine and fruits. And though their Law forbid wine, yet they haue a glosse to correct or corrupt the text, that if they boyle it, then it changeth the taste, and therfore the name alio of Wine.

Lafdi is a great Citie in the confines of *Perfia*, where much Trading is exercised. It hath also cunning Artificers who labour in Silke.

The *Chermian* is a Kingdome in the confines of *Perfia* to the East, subiect to the *Tartars*. In the confines of the Mountains the stones are found, commonly called *Turckish*; veines also of *Azules* and *Andalises*. There are also much of the portraiture of all sorts of Creatures verie admirable. There are the best *Falcons* in the world, vnto which of right, red breasted, and vnder the trayne, lesse than those of other Countreys. Proceeding further, you goe through a great Plaine, and having ended eight dayes journey, you come vnto a certaine defcent. In the Plaine many *Partridges* are found, and also *Cattles* and *Townes*. But in that steepe defcent are many trees and thicke fruitfull, but no habitation is there but of Shepherds. This Countrey in the winter time hath intolerable cold.

After this you come vnto a certaine great Plaine, where a certaine Citie is seated, named *Camanda*, which in times past was great, but is now destroyed by the *Tartars*, and the Countrey is called *Rebarte*. There grow *Pomgranats*, *Quinces*, *Adams-apples*, and diuers others fruits, which grow not in our cold Countreys. It hath alio very great Oxen, and all white, thin hayred with thicke blunt short hornes, with a Camels bunch on the backe, accustomed to beare great burthens. And when the packe-saddles are set vpon the bunch, they bow the knee like Camels, and hauing received the burthen rise againe, being so taught by men. The Sheepe of that Countrey are no lesse then *Alles*, bearing so long and broad a trayle, that they weigh thirty pound weight. They are very faire and fat, and good meat. Moreover, in the plaine of this Countrey are many Cities and Townes, with high walls of Mud to defend them from the *Caramans*, that are *Mexicans*, or mingled people of *Indian* women and *Tartars*, ten thousand of which be conducted by one *Nugader*, the nephew of *Zagabur* who ruled in the greater *Turkie*. This *Nugader* hearing of the *Malabar* subiect to *Soldan Asfian*, without his vncles knowledge went and tooke *Dely* with other Cities, and erected a new Seignorie, and mixing with the *Indian* women procreated these *Caramans*, which goe vs and downe to rob and spoyle in *Rebarte* and other Countreys. There they learned magicall and diabolicall Arts, by which the ayre is so darkened in the day time for a long space, that none may see them or prevent them. *Al. Marco* one time thorow such darkness did almost fall into their hands, but made thife to escape to a Castle called *Confalmo*: but many of his company were taken or slaine.

That Plaine wherof I now speake is five daies journey extended towards the South. But at the end thereof, the way beginneth by litle and litle to descend for twenty miles together, & the way it selfe is very bad, and not without danger by reason of Theues. At length you come to very goodly Plaines, which extend themselves two dayes journey in length, and the place it selfe is called *Ormus*. That Countrey aboundeth with Riuers of water and Palme trees. There is alio plenty of diuers Fowles, especially of Poppin-jays, which are not like to ours. From hence you come vnto the Ocean, where on an Iland is seated, a Citie called *Ormus*, whereto many Merchants resort, bringing Spices, Pearles, precious Stones, cloath of Gold and Silkes, and Elephants teeth, and all other precious things from *India*. That Citie is a great Mart, hauing Cities and Castles vnder it, and is head of the Kingdome *Chermian*: the King is called *Ruchmedan Achomach*, who yeelds obedience to the King of *Chermian*. He makes himselfe heyre, if any Merchant dyes there. In Summer they by reason of the heat betake themselves to their Garden houses built on waters. And from nine till noone there blowes a winde with such extreme heat from the fands, that it swallowes vp a mans breath and stifeth him, which makes them lye in the water. The King of *Chermian* sent an Army of sixteene hundred Horse, and five thousand Foot, against the Lord of *Ormus* for not paying his tribute, which were all surprisid and stifed with that winde. The Inhabitants of the place eat no Bread made of Corne and flesh, but feed vpon Dates, figs, Fish, and Onions. They haue not very good Ships: for they fasten them not with yron nuyles (by reason that the wood is brittle and would cleaue) but with wooden pins, with certaine threds made of the shels of *Indian* Nuts. These shels are dressed after the manner of Leather, out of the which, threds are cut, and of the threds exceeding strong cordes are made, which are able to endure the force and violence of the water, and are not easily corrupted thereby. Those Ships haue one Mast, one sayle, one beame, and are covered but with one decke. They are not chalked with Pitch, but with the Trane of Fishes. And when they crosse the Sea to *India*, carrying Hories and other freight with them, they lose many Ships, because that Sea is very tempestuous, and the Ships are not strengthened with yron. The Inhabitants of that Countrey are blacke, and addicted to the Law of *Mahomet*. It is the custome of this Countrey, when any Master of a family dyeth, that the wife left behind him should mourne for him foure weekes, once a day. They haue women which profess the practise of mourning, and are thereto hired, to mourne daily for their dead.

Fine diamonds, as in a Popish faith.

1691.

Cimanda.

Oxen with a bunch on the backe. Sheepe of the bigges of *Alles*.

Their Inchantments. The Authors danger.

Ormus.

Paras.

Their Ships.

An outward shell which grows vpon the *Cao*, and yeelds a cheady substance.

Returning.

Returning from *Ormus* to *Chermain* is a fertile Plaine, but the bread made there, cannot be eaten of them, who are not accustomed therunto, it is so bitter by reason of the bitter water put therein, whereof are store of hot Bathes good against diseases.

Going from *Chermain* in three dayes riding you come to a Defart, which continued till you come to *Cobinam*, seven dayes Journey, which is extended. In the first three dayes you shall have no water, save a very few, and those salt and bitter, of a greene colour in shew, as if it were the ioyce of Herbs: and who so tasteth but a little thereof, cannot escape a loosenesse of the belly. The like also happeneth, if any taste the Salt made of that water. It is therefore needfull, that Travellers carrie some water with them, if they will not be endangered through thirst. The beasts also which are compelled to drinke that water, escape not without scouring. In the fourth day they find a fresh River vnder ground: the three last dayes are as the first,

Cobinam is a great *Mahometan* Citie; goodly, and great Locking Glasses of Steele, are made there. *Twia* also which cureth the eyes; and *Spodo* and that, after this manner. That Country hath Mines, out of which they digge Earth, which they boyle casting it into a ferrie Furnace, an Iron grate receiving the ascending vapour from above, in the which, the conglutinated and clammy vapour becommeth *Twia*. But the groffer matter remaying in the fire, is called *Spodo*. The Inhabitants of this Country, are followers of *Mahomet*.

Leaving the Citie *Cobinam*, you meet with another Defart eight dayes Journey in length, and in it there is great drynesse: it wanteth trees, and fruits, and waters which it hath are very bitter, so that the very beasts refuse to drinke them except they mixe meale therewith, and Travellers carrie water with them. But having passed over this Defart, you come to the Kingdome of *Timochim* in the North Confines of *Perfia*, where many Cities and Castles are. There is a great Plaine in which a great tree groweth, called the tree of the Sunne, which the Christians call the *Tree of Life*. This tree is very great and thicke, and hath leaves, which on the one side are white, and on the other side greene. It produceth a prickly thorn like those of a Chestnut, but nothing in them. The wood is solide and strong, yellow like Boxe. There is no tree within one hundred miles, except on one side, on which are trees within ten miles. In this place the Inhabitants say, that *Alexander* the Great fought with *Darius*. The Cities are plentiful of good things, but *Mahometan*, and of temperate Aire. It hath also goodly men, but specially women, the most beautiful in my judgement in the World.

Machet. *Machet* is in *Saracen* Language, as much to say as a place of Heretikes, and of this place they call the men *Machetici*, that is, Heretikes in their Law, as with vs *Parasites*. Having spoken of the Country, the old man of the Mountayne shall bee spoken of, of whom *Marco* heard much from many. His name was *Alondine*, and was a *Mahometan*. His Valley betwixt two Mountaynes very high, made a goodly Garden, furnished with the best trees and fruits he could find, adorned with diuers Palaces and houses of pleasure, beautified with gold Workes, Pictures, and Furnitures of like. There by diuers Pipes answering diuers parts of those Palaces were sent to runne Wine, Milke, Honey and cleere Water. In them hee had placed goodly Damofels skilfull in Songs and Instruments of Musike and Dancing, and to make Sports and Delights vnto men whatsoever they could imagine. They were also fairly attyred in Gold and Silke, and were faine to goe continually sporting in the Garden and Palaces. He made this Palace, because *Mahomet* had promised such a fensuall Paradise to his devout followers. No man might enter: for at the mouth of the Valley was a strong Castle, and the entrance was by a secret passage.

Alondine had certaine Youthes from twelue to twentie yeares of age, such as seemed of a bold and vndoubted disposition, whom hee instructed daily touching *Mahomets* Paradiſe, and how hee could bring men thither. And when he thought good, hee called a certaine Drinke to bee giuen vnto ten or twelue of them, which cast them in a dead sleepe: and then hee caused them to be carryed into diuers Chambers of the said Palaces, where they saw the things aforesaid as Drinckes, and all varieties of pleasures to them, inasmuch that the Fooles thought themselves in Paradiſe. When they had enjoyed those pleasures foure or fve dayes, they were againe cast in a sleepe, and carryed forth againe. After which, hee caused them to be brought into his presence, and questioned where they had beene, which answered, by your Grace, in Paradiſe, and recounted before all, before mentioned. Then the old man answered, this is the commandement of our Prophet, that whosoever defends his Lord, hee make him enter Paradiſe: and if thou wilt bee obedient to mee, thou shalt haue this grace. And hauing thus animed them, hee was thought happie whom the old man would command, though it cost him his life: for that the Lord and his Enemies were slaine by these his *Assistants*, which exposed themselves to all dangers, and contemned their liues. Hereupon hee was esteemed a Tyrant, feared in all those parts; and had two Vicars one in the parts of *Damofes*, and another in *Cuadifan*: which observed the same order with young men. Hee died also to rob all which palled that way. *Plaw* in the year 1265. sent and besieged his Castle, which after three yeares siege they took, slue him and ruined his Paradiſe, not being able for want of victuall to hold out longer.

* It is likely that the *Assistants* mentioned in the eight & ninth Bookes were branches of this flock. Disciples of his Syrian Vicar of this of them.

§. III.

of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaicar, Scaffem, Balaxiam, Balcia, Chelmur, Vochan, Samarchan, Carchan, Peym, the dreadfull Desert of Lop and Tanguth.

Departing from the foresaid place, you come vnto a certayne Country pleasant enough, which hath Hills, Plaines, and excellent Pasture, and lastly, fruits in great plenty: for the soyle thereof is very fruitful. This continues sixe dayes, and then you enter a Defart of forrie or fiftie miles, without water. After this you come to the Citie *Sapurgan*, where plenty of all victuall is found; especially, Pompons the best in the World, sweet like Honey.

Passing from thence, we came vnto a certayne Citie, named *Balach*, which in times past was great and famous, hauing sumptuous Marble Palaces: but now ouerthrowne by the *Tatars*. In this Citie they report, that *Alexander* tooke the Daughter of King *Darius* to wife. To this Citie (on the East and North-east) continue the Confines of *Perfia*. But if you goe from hence, and proceed betwixt the East, and the North-east, you cannot finde any Habitation for two dayes Journey: because the Inhabitants of the place hauing endured so many grieuances by Theues and Robbers, are compelled to flye vnto the Mountaynes, to wit, places of more safetie. Many waters are found there, and very much game of wild beasts: Lyons also are there. And because Travellers find no food in that Journey, they carrie victualls with them, which may suffice them for two dayes.

That two dayes Journey ended, which we mentioned, we met with a certayne Castle, called *Thaicar*. *Thaicar*, where is great plenty of Corne, and very goodly fields. The Mountaynes also on the South are high, some of which are of white and hard Salt, and the Inhabitants thither dayes Journey about fetch it from thence, being the best World, so hard that they must break it with Iron Instruments, so much that the whole World may haue sufficient Salt from thence. The other Mountaynes have store of Almonds and Pistaches. Going betwixt the East and North-east from hence the Country is fruitful, the Inhabitants Murders, Perfidious, *Mahometan*, Drunkards: Their Wine is boyled and excellent. They goe bare-headed, save that the men bind vp their heads with a certaine string of ten handfull long. But they make them clothing of the skines of the wilde beasts which they take, as Breeces and Shooes, and vse no other Garments.

After three dayes Journey is the Citie *Scaffem* seated in a Plaine, and hath many Castle, in the Mountaynes round about it. A certayne great Ruer a floweth through the middle thereof. There are many Porcupines in that Country, which they hunt with Dogges by the Hunters: and they contracting themselves with great furie, call their prickly Quills against the men and the Dogges, and wound them. That Nation hath a particular language: the shepherds thereof abide in the Mountaynes, hauing made Caves for their Habitation. You goe hence three dayes Journey without any Habitation at all, to the Province *Balcian*.

Balcian is a *Mahometan* Province, and hath a peculiar Language. Their Kings who succeed one another by hereditarie right, are reported to haue deuiſed their descent from *Alexander* the Great, and from the Daughter of *Darius*, and are called *Zuſarnan*, which is to say, *Alexander*. There are found the *Bulaffs*, faire precious stones, and of great value. No man without danger of life, dare either digge such stones, or carrie them out of the Country, but with the licence and consent of the King: for all those stones are the Kings, and hee sendeth them to whom hee pleaseth, either for a Present, or payment of Tribute: hee exchangeth also many for Gold and Silver. And this hee doth lest the stone whereof there is such plenty should become vile and cheaper. Other Mountaynes also in this Province yeeld stones, whereof the best *Azure* is made, the like whereof is not found in the World. The Mines also yeeld Silver great store, and Brasse and Lead. The Country is selfe very cold. It hath many Horses, and those excellent, great, and swift, which haue so hard and strong hooves on their feet, that they need no Iron Shooes, although they runne through Rocks. It is said that not long since there were Horses of the Race of *Alexanders* *Eucubalus*, all with his forehead-marks, in the possession only of the Kings Vnkle, who was slaine for denying the King to haue of them: whereupon his Widow in angry spite destroyed the whole Race. There are also excellent Falcons. The soyle thereof beareth notable Wheate, and Barley without huskes, and Oyle made of Nuts and Sulphure, which is like to flaxe seed, more fauourable then other Oyle. There are itrait passages and many forme of steepes. The men are good Archers and Huntsmen, clothed with beasts skines. The hills are flace and high, large plaines, Rivers along the ruptures: and if any haue an Ague with abiding two or three dayes on the hills hee recovereth, which *Marco* proceed in himselfe after a yeares sicknesse. The women in the skirts of their Garments put fixtie or eightie yards of Cotton, the greatest Bunnie Boncer seeming the goodliest Lasse.

lengthwise in two parts; for the pieces themselves into the ground, and wrote vpon the one, *Cingis*; and on the other, *Uman*; and laid vnto the King: In the meane space, while wereade the Coniurations, it shall come to passe by the Iudis power, that these two parts of the Reed shall fligh together: And whole part shall ascend vpon the other, that King shall obtayne victorie in the battell. The multitude therefore running together to behold that spectacle, the Altrologers beganne to numble their prayers, and readde their incantments, when presently the parts of the Reed being moued, bought together, vnill at length the part of *Cingis* ascended vpon the part of *Uman*. Which being seene, the *Tartars* assured of the future victorie, were encouraged to the battell, and *Uman* being layne, the Victorie, and Kingdome, and *Umans* daughter remayned to *Cingis*. *Cingis* reigned sixe yeeres after this, in the which hee got many Provinces: and lastly, when hee endeouored to winne a certaine Cattle, called *Thaigyn*, and came some what neere, being shot in the knee with an Arrow, hee died, and was buried in the Mountaine *Altai*.

The first King of the *Tartars*, was called *Cingis*; the second, *Cyn Can*; the third, *Barhyn Can*; the fourth, *Esfu Can*; the fifth, *Mangu Can*; the sixth *Cublai Can*, whose power is greater then all his Predecessors, haueing inherited theirs, and adding by Conquest in manner the rest of the World. For hee liued neere sixtie yeeres in his Government. The name *Can* signifieth Emperour. All the great *Cans*, and Princes of that bloud of *Cingis*, are carried to the Mountaine of *Altai* to be buried, whereof I haue already said, although one hundred dayes Iourney from it. And they which enuie the Corps to the buriall, kill all those that they meet in the way, saying: goe, and knee our Lord the King in another life. They kill also the better Horfes. When the bodie of great *Cham Mangu*, the Predecessor of *Cham Cublai*, was brought vnto the Mountaine *Altai* to be buried, the Souldiers accompanying the funeral, are reported to haue layne about ten thousand men, vpon the foresaid occasion.

The *Tartarian* women are most faithfull to their husbands. Adulterie is a great shame with them: yet it is accounted lawfull, and honest, that euery one may marrie as many wiues as he is able to maintayne, although the first be iudged to be more principall and honorable then the rest. These lieue together in the same house without one ill word, in admirable concord, make their merchandises, buy, and sell, and chauffer all things necessarie to their husbands and household, the men medling with nothing but their hunting, hawking, and things pertaining to Armes. They haue the best Falcons in the World, and to they haue of Dogs. They use onely of Fleish and Milke, and what they take in hunting. They eat Horfes, Camels, Dogs, if fat, and drinke

Mares milke, called *Chemurs*, so vied, that it is like white Wine. If the father dies, the sonne may haue all his wiues except his owne mother and sisters. So, the brother being dead, it is lawfull for the brother who remayneth alieue, to marrie the widow of the brother. The husbands receiue no dowrie from the wiues, but they themselves assigne dowry to the wiues, and their mothers. Through the multitude of wiues, the *Tartars* haue many children. Nor is the multitude of Wiues very burdnesome vnto the *Tartars*, seeing they gaue much through their labours. Besides, they are very carefull for the gouernement of the familie, and preparation of food: and with no lesse care, execute the duties of the house. But the men apply themselves wholly to hunting, fowling, and exercise of Armes. The *Tartars* nourish many herds of Oxen, Rocks of Sheepe, and other Beasts, and Cattell, and abide with them in places of Pasture, in the Summer time, in the Mountaines, and colder places, where they finde Pasture and Wood: but in the Winter, they remove vnto the hotter Countreys, where they finde Pasture for their Cattell: and goe forth-on two or three months together. Their houses are couered with flickes and felts, ordinarily round, which they carrie with them on Carts or Waggones of foure wheeles, whither soeuer they goe. For they can fold and extend them, let them vp, and take them downe: and they turne the doore of them alwaies to the South. They haue also neat Carts of two wheeles (couered with Felt to well that rayne cannot pierce them) drawne by Oxen, and Camels, wherein they carrie their wiues, children, and necessarie household-stuffe with them, and defend them from the iniurie of foule weather, and rayne.

The *Tartars*, if they be rich, are clothed with Sables, Ermins, and Cloth of gold, and all their furniture is costly. Their Armes are Bowes, Swords, Polaxes, and some Lances, but they can best vse their Bowes, whereto they are vied from their childhood. They are hardie, valorous, cruell, will continue two dayes and nights on horse-backe armed, exceeding patient of difficulties, and exceeding obedient to their Lords. Their Cattell also are hardie.

The Law and Faith of the *Tartars* is this. They say, that there is a great God, high and heavenly, of whom with daily incense they desire good vnderstanding and health. They haue another, which they call *Natigay*, which is like an Image couered with Felt, or some other thing, which euery one hath in his house. To this God they make a wife and children, placing the wiues Image at the left hand, and the representations of children before his face. This they call, The God of earthly things, which keepeth their Children, and their Beasts, and Corne: and giveth great reuerence. Before they eat themselves, they anoint the mouthes of the Images with the fat of the foulden Fleish, and they call the broth out of doores, in honour of other

Spirits.

Spirits, saying, that their God with his familie haue had their part; and after they eate and drinke at pleasure.

If the Ioune of any *Tartar* die, who hath not yet beene married, and also the daughter of another die vnmarried, the parents of both the deceased parties meet together, and make a marriage betweene the deat: and making a daughter in writing, of that contract, they paine men and women for seruants, Horfes and other creatures, with clothes of all sorts and monies, in paper, and burne them together with the writing of contract: by the fumes whereof, they say that all diuelish things are carried to their children in another world, where they are married, and the fathers and mothers thinke they are towne together through such a bond of affinitie, as if those marriages had beene celebrated, while the married couple yet liued.

When the *Tartars* goe to warre, their Prince conducteth about one hundred thousand Horfes, appointing Heads ouer tens, hundreds, thousands, ten thousands, by which orderly subordination, commands are easily effected. Euery hundred is called a *Tuc*; ten, a *Toman*. When they see forth, they send out men euery way, as Scouts that no Enemy may assault them vnpermitted. Of Horfe and Mares, there are for euery man about eighteen. They carrie also their like Felt houses, vnder the which they shelter themselves in the time of rayne. When there falls out some important employment, they will ride ten dayes together without victuals boyled, and lose of the blood of their Horfes, cutting a veyne and sucking it. They haue Milke dried like Patte, which they make, by boiling the Milke, and taking the Creame which swims on the top, put it in another vessel, and steepe it in Butter: After, they let the Milke in the Sunne and drie it; and when they goe in the Arme, carrie ten pounds thereof, and euery morning take halfe a pound, and put it into a little Flaske or Bottle of Leather, with as much water as he pleaseth: which while he rides, boate together: and this is his dinner. When they encounter with their Enemies, they ride here and there shooting, and sometimes make shew of flight, shooting as they flee, and finding the Enemies broken, reuintegrate their forces, and pursue the victorie: haueing their Horfes at command, with a figure to turne any way. But now the *Tartars* are mixed in diuers parts, and so are their falions.

They punish malefactors after this manner. If any steale a thing of small value, and hath not delerued to be deprived of life, he is fawen times beaten with a Cudgell, or feauenteene, or feauenteen, or thirty fawen, or forty and fawen, gauging the strokes according to the measure and qualitie of the offence, and that vnto an hundred, some doe often times dye, through their strokes. But if any haue stolen an Horfe, or another thing, for the which hee deserveth to dye, hee is cut asunder with a Sword in the middle: but if hee will redeme his life, he shall restore the theft nine fold. Such as haue Horfes, Oxen, or Camels, brand them with their markes, and lend them to the pastures without a keeper.

Leauing the Citie of *Carachoran*, and the Mountaine *Altai*, you come vnto the champaigne Country of *Bargu*, which extendeth it selfe Northwards about sixtie dayes Iourney in length. The Inhabitants of those places are *Achewiti*, and they are subiect to great *Chan*, vining the manners of the *Tartars*. They are wilde men, and eat the flesh of Beasts which they take by hunting, especially of Stagges, whereof they are very deuorant, and they make them for rarie, that they may ride them. They want Corne and Wine. In the Summer they exercise great hunting and taking of wilde Beasts and Fowle, with the felle whereof they may liue in the winter: For in Winter, as well fowle as other liuing creatures flee from thence, by reason of the exceeding and vn timerable cold of that Countrey. After the end of fortie dayes Iourney, you come vnto the Ocean, neere which is a Mountaine where *Astori*, and fawen Falcons breed, which are caried thence vnto the Court of great *Chan*.

Here we must returne vnto the Citie *Campion*. If therefore you proceed further five dayes Iourney from the Citie *Campion* towards the East, (in the places lying in the middle, horrible voyces of Drulls are heard in the night time) you come to the Kingdome *Ergend*, in the Province of *Tartary*, subiect to the great *Chan*. In this Kingdome are many other Kingdomes which are Idolaters. There are some *Nestorian* Christians, and *Turkes*. There are many Cities and Castles, of which *Ergend* is chiefe. From hence, if you proceed further to the Southeast, you may goe to the parts of *Carhai*, going Southeast towards *Cathai*, there is a certaine famous Citie called *Cingay*, (the name also of the Province) tributarie vnto great *Chan*: contained in *Tartary*: the people are some Christians, some *Mohometans*, others Idolaters. They are also found with Oxen, neere as great as Elephants, very fat, haueing white and blacke hayre, short in other parts, and on the shoulders three palmes long, fine and white beyond felle: of which

Marcho brought home to *Venice* as a rare thing. Many also of these Oxen are tamed, and made to engender with tame Kine, and the breed of them are fitter for businesse then any other creatures, beeing great burthens as well as the plow and doe twice as much as others. The best Muske the world is found in this Province, and is of a goodly beault of the breed of a Goat, haueing grosse hayre like a Stagge, feet and tawle like a Gazelle but without hoines: it hath teete teete two above, and two beneath of the length of three fingers, fawen, and white as lorne, and a faire beaft to see, when the Moone is at full, neare the naull vnder the belly there grows

Hee ingnuish the Enemie by the Ear.

Hee dieth with the shot of an Arrow.

Cingis an.

Can Can.

Barhyn Can.

Esfu Can.

Mangu Can.

Cublai Can.

Thaigyn.

Chemurs.

Natigay.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Campion.

Ergend.

Carhai.

Beastie preferred
before No-
bilitie and ri-
ches.
Feasants.

Egriaia.

Gog and Magog

The Citie Sin-
dian.

Isle.
Cangane.

Five forts of
Cranes.

Xendi.

Hunting with
Leopards.

A goodly
house of pla-
sure.

A solemn Sa-
crifice.

Mares milke.

to this beast an impostume or bladder full of blood, and at the full then they goe to hunt the said beasts and take away that swelling, which is dried in the Sunne, and is the best Muske: the flesh also is good to eat. Master *Marcus* brought to *Venice* the head and feet of this beast dried. The men here of Merchandise and Arts, and have abundance of Corne: they are Idolaters, of a fat body and little Nose, blacke haired, having no beard but foure hayres on their chin. The Women are faire and white. And when the men desire to marry wives, they rather leake the beautiful, then the noble or rich. Wherby it cometh often to passe, that a great and Noble man marryeth a poore wife, but beautiful, assigning dowrie to her mother there. This Province extendeth it selfe five and twentie dayes journey in length, and is very fertile. In it are exceeding great Feasants, having traynes eight or ten handfull long. Many other kindes of Birds are also found there, which have very goodly feathers, distinguished with diuers and excellent colours.

Proceeding further towards the East, after eight dayes journey, you meet with the Province *Egriaia*, in the which are many Cities and Castles, all still in *Tanquith*. The principall Citie is called *Calacia*. The Inhabitants thereof are Idolaters, there are three Churches of *Nestorian* Christians, and are subiect to the great *Chan*. In the Citie *Calacia*, Chamlets are made, wouen of white wooll and the hayre of Camels, then the which, there are scarce any fairer found in the world.

Going to the East from the Province *Egriaia*, the way leadeth vnto the Province *Tenduch*, in the which are many Cities and Castles: where also *Presbyter Ischma* vnto to abide, who 20 now payeth tribute to great *Chan*. This King of that progenie of *Ischma* is named *Gongu*, and is a Priest and a Christian, and most of the people are Christians. All the Great *Chan*, after his death who was slaine in battell by *Cingis*, gaue their Daughters to those Kings to wife. This King *Gongu* holds not all that Priest *Ischma* before held, and is the fourth of that progenie. There is a Nation there called *Argon*, more goodly men and fitter for Merchandise then the rest, descended of Idolaters and *Mahumetians*. There are also two Regions where they raigine, which in those parts are called *Og* and *Mogog*, but they which dwell there call them *Yng* and *Mongul*: in *Yng* are *Gog* and in *Mongul* the *Tartars*. Riding East seauen dayes towards *Catay*, are many Cities peopled with Idolaters, *Mahumetians*, and *Nestorians*. There is one Citie called *Sindian*, where very faire and excellent Armes are made of diuers sorts, fit for Armes. In the 30 countrey of this Province are great Mines of silver, and manifold game of wilde beasts, and the Countrey of the mountaine is called *Isaia*. Three dayes journey distant from the foresaid Citie, standeth another Citie *langamur*, that is *White Lake*, wherein is a Palace, in which the great *Chan* most willingly remaineth, because there are many Lakes and riuers, many Swannes, and in the plaines, Cranes, Feasants, and Partridges, and store of other fowle. There are five forts of Cranes there: some have blacke wings like Crows, others are white and bright, having their feathers full of eyes like Peacocks, but of a golden colour, the necke blacke and white very beautifull; a third sort of bignesse not vnlike ours; a fourth, little and very faire, intermingled with red and blew colours; the fifth, of a grizzell or gray colour, having red and blacke heads, and these are very great. And nere vnto this Citie lieth a certaine valley where many Cottages are, in the which 40 an exceeding number of Partridges is maintained, which are kept for the King, coming to lodge there for a time.

This Citie is three dayes journey Northward to the Citie *Xendi*, which the great *Chan* *Cublay* now raigining, built, erecting there a marvellous and artificiall Palace of Marble and other stones, which abuteth on the wall on one side, and the middest of the Citie on the other. He included sixteen miles within the circuit of the wall on that side where the Palace abuteth on the Citie wall, into which none can enter but by the Palace. In this inclosure or Parke are goodly meadows, springs, riuers, red and fallow Deere, Fawnes carried thither for the Hawkes, (of which are there mewed about two hundred Gerfalcons which he goeth once a weeke to see) and he often vnto one Leopard or more, sitting on Horles, which hee lieth vpon the Stages 50 and Deere, & hauing taken the beast, giveth it to the Gerfalcons, and in beholding this spectacle he taketh wonderfull delight. In the middest in a faire Wood hee hath built a royall House on pillars gilded and vermilied, on euery of which is a Dragon all gilt, which winneth his sayle about the pillar, with his head beating vpon the loft, also with his wings displayed on both sides: the couer also of Redds gilt and varnished, so that the rayne can doe it no iniurie, the feeds being three handfull thicke and ten yards long, split from knot to knot. The houle it selfe also may be lundred, and taken downe like a Tent and erected againe. For it is sustained, when it is set vp, with two hundred silken cords. Great *Chan* vnto dwell there three months in the year, to wit, in Iune, Iuly, and August. On the eight and twentieth day of August, he departeth to make a solemn sacrifice. He hath an herd of white Horles, and white Mares, about ten thousand of the milke whereof none may drinke except hee be of the progenie of *Cingis* *Can*, except one family called *Boriat*, priuiledged hereto by *Cingis* for their valour. And these beasts as they goe vp and downe feeding are much reuerenced, nor dare any goe before them or hinder their way. The Astrologers or Sorcerers tell *Chan* that on the twentieth night of the Moone of August, 60

he should disperse that milke heere and there, for the honour of all spirits and his Idols, that they might be carefull pretenses of all those things which he possesseth.

There are two sorts of Idolaters, Sorcerers called *Tibetors* and *Chesma*, which in the middest of the Kings formes stand the Palace and suffer no rayne to fall thereon: which they make the people beleue comes to passe by their Janſenice: and therefore they goe loosely and regardless of their persons neuer washing nor combing themselves. They also haue a horrible custome to drinke and eat such as are condemned to death, but not those which dye naturally. They are called also *Bachis*, which is the name of their Order, as Friars Predicants or Minors with vs. They seeme by Magicke to doe what they list, when the great *Can* in his Hall sits at his Table, which is 10 eight yards high: and in the middest of the hall a good distance from the table is a great Cupboard of plate furnished: They caule that the peeces hall of Wine or Milke or other viands of themselves, fill the goblets without any hand touching them, and goe ten paces in the ayre into the great *Can* hand; and when he hath drunke, returne to their place. This they doe in the presence of any man, when their Lord commands. These *Bachis* also when they will make feasts to their Idols, goe to the *Can* and say: Sir, know that if our Idols be not honoured with Sacrifices, they will bring plagues to Corne and Beasts. And therefore wee pray you to giue the flesh of so many Sheepe with blacke heads, and so many pounds of Incense and Lignum aloes, that we may make them due sacrifice and honour. This they spake not to him themselves, but by certaine Lords deputed to that Office, who spake to the *Can* and obtaine it. On the feast day they 20 sacrifice the said beasts, and sprinkle the broath before the Idols.

They haue great Monasteries some of the bignesse of a Citie, in some of which are about two thousand Monkes which seru Idols, sequestered from the Laitie in their hauing and garments. For they shoue their heads and beards, and were a religious garment. There in the solemnities of their Idols sing with solemn songs and lights, some of them may marry. These are some of great abstinence called *Sengim*, leauiſng an auster life, for they eat nothing but Meale mingled with water till all the daye, and eat the braue without any sauce. These worship the Fire, and the men of other rules say that these which are so austere, are Hereticks against their Law, because they worship not Idols as they doe; and there are great differences betwixt them: and these marry not in any case. They shoue their Head and Beard: they wear blacke hempen garments, and bright yellow. They sleepe in thicke Mats, and liue the fruest life in the world.

¶ V.

OF CYBLAI CAN, his Raigine and Acts, Magnificent feasts and Huntings, Court and Counsell. His Citie Camballa and glorious Palace.

IN this Booke I purpose to write of all the great and marvellous Acts, of the present *Can* called *Cublai Can*, which is in our Tongue *Lord of Lords*, the greatest Prince in peoples, Cities and Treasures, that euer was in the world. He being descended from the Progenie of *Cingis*, the first Prince of the *Tartars*, is the sixth Emperour of that Countrey, beginning to raigine in the year of our Lord 1266, being twentie seauen years old and ruling the people with great wisdom and grauitie. He is a valiant man, exercised in Armes, strong of bodie, and of a prompt minde for the performance of matters, before he attained to the dignitie of the Emperour. (Which by his wisdom he did against the will of his Brethren) he often showed himselfe a valiant Souler in the warres, and carried himselfe like a wisser and bolder Captaine, then euer the *Tartars* had. But since he layed the Kingdome, he went but once into the Field, but sends his Sonnes, and other Captaines in expeditions. 50 In the year of our Lord 1286, his Vnde named *Nasaim*, being thirtie years of age, and hauiſng the command of many people and Countreys, so that he was able easily to bring together foure hundred thousand Horle. Being puffed vp through youthfull vanitie, would now no longer be subiect, but would needs take away the Kingdome from his Lord *Cublai*, and sent to another great Lord named *Caydas*, Lord of the parts towards great *Turkie*, who was nephew of the Emperour *Cublai*, yet hated him, who yielding consent to Rebellion, promised to come in person with an hundred thousand Horle.

Both of them began to gather Forces, which could not bee done so secretly but *Cublai* heard of it, and presently tooke order to set guard to the wayes that no iniunction might passe that way: and then assembled all the Forces within ten dayes journey of *Camballa* with great speed, 60 to that in twentie dayes, were gathered together three hundred & sixtie thousand Horle, and one hundred thousand Foot, a great part of them were Falconiers and men of his Household. With these hee made all haste day and night towards *Nasaim* Countrey, where at the end of twentie five dayes he arrived, altogether vnlooked for: and rested his men two dayes. Then hee called his Astrolo.

The Kings
Magicians.

Shewing.

Audience.

Here begins
the second
Booke of Mar-
cus Polo, of
which I thought
good to aduer-
tise the Rea-
der: as for the
Chapters, the
Laus and Re-
uerence be differ-
ent, I haue left
both and ob-
serued our
owne diuision
into six Chap-
ters. *Can*,
Nasaim, *Caydas*,
Cublai.

ning Suburbs
lar-
they
s are
rned

Burial without the Gilt.

Harlots of the
Suburbs.

The number of
the horse-men
of the Courti-

The Guard.

Solemn facts.

The order of
them that sit
down.

Threshold
threshing.
The Noble.

men that carry
dishes, cover
their mouths.

The ceremonies while the

King drinketh.
Conforts of
Muficke,

The birth day
of Cnbi.

**New Moone
teast.
The presents**

of the men of
Dignitie, sub-
ject unto him

The like Cu-
lome is still v-
ed by the Me-

gull, as also the
New-years
day.

The twelve
Barons.
The prayers of

Religi-

New-yeers day
The white co-

burned without the Suburbs, where the dead bodies of other felts are buried. And because an huge multitude of Sorcerers congregate always there, they laue about twenty or thirty thousand Harlots in the Suburbs and in the Citie, and these laue a Captaine appointed our country brethren, and thousand; and one Generall; whose office is, that when Embassadors come, or such as haue business with the *Can* whose charges he fineth, this Captaine giueth euery *Embassador* a bribe. The Guard of this family, change of women nightly at free cost: for this is the *Queenes* tribute. The Guard of the *Can* is such, that the *Can* himselfe which they finde walking late: and if they be found guilty they are beaten with Cudgels: for the *Can* selfe tell them that it is not good to sleepe mans blood. But many dy of these beatings,

The great *Can* hath in his Court twelue thousand Horse-men, which they call *Casitan*, faithful Souldiers of their Lord, who guard his person more for state then feare. And foure Captaines haue the charge of these, whereof euery one commandeth three thousand. When one Captaine with three thousand Souldiers within the Palace, hath guarded the King for three dayes and nights, another Captaine with his Souldiers againe succedeth: and so throughout the whole yeare, this course of watching by course is obserued.

When through execution of any feallidial day he keepeth a folemne Court, his Table being higher then the off of the Tables, is fet at the North part of the Hall, and his face is to the South, hauing the greatest Queene on his left hand, to wit, his principall wife, and his Sonnes, and nephews, and they of the blood royall on his right. Yet their table is in a lower place, so that they facee touch the Kings feet with their heads; the feet of the eldest being higher then the 20 first. The Barons and Princes, sit in a lower place then that. Their wiues also keepe the like order, first the eldest, then the youngest, man, each in her degree and order. And the Emperour, Lords and euerie Gentleman, sit in a lower place, man, each in his degree and order. And the Emperours himselfe, while he sitteth at his table, maye see by his eyes upon all that featt with him in that Hall. There are not Tables for all to sit, but the greatest number of Nobilitie and Barons eate on Carpets. At all the doores stand two gently folowed with Cudgels, so that they maye see if any Thurfhold, which if hee doe they take his garments away; which hee see that none touch the many blowes as shall be appointed, or elle loie them. They which feare the King sitting at the table, all of them couer their mouths with Silke, leaue their drinking should hee see they meanes touch the Kings meate or drinke. And when he hath made to drinke, the Damsell which giues it, goeth back three paces and kneeles downe, and then the Barons and all the people kneele, and the Musicians sound their Instruments. There is no caufe why I should write any thing ereafter.

ning the meats which are brought to the Table, how dainty and delicate they are, and with what magnificence a pomp they are served in. All the *Tartars* observe this custom, to celebrate the birthday of their Lord most honourably. The Fullbirth borth day of *Cubla*, is kept the twentieth eight of September, and this day is counted more solemn, then any of the whole year, except the first of February, wherein the *Tartars* celebrate the birthday of his Birth day is clothed with a most precious garment of gold. The King therefore Barons and Souldiers, are clothed of the same colour of gold (though of Silke like) and two thousand Barons wrought with gold and silver, which is given them with a payre of shoes : some wear earles and Gemmes of great price, namely, the *Queitairie*, which are next to the *Cas* : and their garments are not worn but on their threee Soleme Feasts according to the thirteenth *Manner* of the yearre : all then clothed like Kings. This custom is also observed with the *Tartars*, that on the birth day of great *Chem*, all the Kings, Princes, and Nobles, which are subiect to his Dominion, should feed vntill vntomach, as to their Emperour. And they who desire to obtaine any place, or other thing, they must first come to the Emperour, and then they must offer him purple, and what they desire, and so offer their requests vnto twelue Barons appointed for this purpose, of what Faith or sect, whether *Christians*, or *Jewes*, *Saracens*, or *Tartars*. All this people, of what Faith or sect, offer to the Emperour himselfe had answered them. And other *Pagans* are bound, (specially to call vpon their Gods, for the life, safete, and prosperitie of *Great Can*.

silver veffell. Many of the alfe are brought, couerd with tate silk cloths, which bring other things, necellarie for the Court. And this day in the morning, all the Kings, Captaines, Barons, Scouldiers, Physicians, Altrol-gers, Falconers, and the Gouvernours of Prouinces, and Armies, and other Officers of the Emperours, all mable in the great Hall before the King, and they who happen to have no place there, for the multitude of men, stand in another place where he may see them. All being placed in their degrees, and ranks, the Emperour, the Prelate, and arch-bishop come forth, and stand before the King, and say: *And presently all doe reverence, and cry, and bowe their foreheade to the earth. Then he sayth, Deus prefere our Lord with health, and joy, and all welfare, God grant. Then he sayth, God exalta and advance his Emperour, and preferre his Subjects in peace, good-will, and prosperitie: and all answere, God grant. And thus they doe tate time. The adoration finished, the laid Prelate goeth to an Altar richly adorned, on which is a red Table, wherein is written the name of the *Cas*, and taking a Censer, and putting odoriferous Spices thereon, they perfume the Table and the Altar with great reuerence, in honour of great *Cas*, and to returne to their places.*

After this, the Emperour, the Prelate, and arch-bishop, and all the other great officers, we haue spoken of, stand before the King, and say, *And a most delicious Dinner hath eating and drinking beene made, and they with their wings, in manner before described. And lastly, a domesticall Lion is brought vnto the King, which lying at his feet, like a gentle Whelp, acknowledgeth his Lord.*

[illegible]

and it is marvellous to see the Lions here and there in the *degs*. Two Lions they be carried in one Wagon, when they go to hunt, and with them a Dog, with which they are joined; and they carry them on this fashion, because of their furie and vnrulnede: and they must carry them contrary to the wind; for else the bealls would lose them, and see the hardy man take Eagles, which are so fierce, that they take Hares, Roe-bucks, Deer, and Exotes, among which none of them feare not with great violence to seize upon Wolves, and vex them to death, without labour and danger, which may be taken by men.

The great Cossacks in this Court, two of which are brethren, one called *Bayan*, the other, *Ming* are called in the *Tartar* language, *Cossacks*; that is, Masters of the Game, whoever of either hath the chance of ten thousand men; they which are vnder one of them, are clothed in red; the other in blue, colour, always when they hunt. These keepe shepers forth of Dogs, to the number of five hundred and Mattaus and other. In hunting they goe with their people, one on the right, and the other on the left hand of the King: and they take up to great a length of the Playne, that from one end to the other is a dayes journey, so that no beast can escape them: and it is great pleasure to them when the *Cossaks* goe in the night, to see the Dogs followe Hares, Beares, and other kindes. And these Brethren are bound by Law to hunt, from the beginning of October till the end of March, and to bring to the Court, one hundred pound of beasts and birds, besides Quails, and all such things as they can get during the hunting time.

who follow her, seeing they, of whom I now speake, are busily employed in taking up the Hawkes, and are careful that by no means they bee hurt or lost. And every flying Hawke carrieth a little table of silver on her foot, signed with the marke of her Master or Falconer, that if shee bee lost, shee may bee returned to her owner. But if the marke cannot be knowne, the Hawke is delivered to a certaine Baron, who for this cause is called *Bulagatz*, to whom are brought all lost things (otherwise the Finder would be counted a Thiefe) and to him Losers resort to inquire of things lost. He hath a most eminent place, noted by his Ensigne, that in so great an assembly of people he may be knowne.

Whiles they are thus busied in sporting and hawking, they come vnto a certaine great Plaine, called *Caz-armeden*, where the Tents of the King and all the Courtiers are prepared, about ten thousand in number. The first and chiefe is the *Cans* Pavilion, vnder which ten thousand Souldiers stand, besides Barons and Noble-men, with the doore to the South: sustayned with three Pillars, wrought with diuers curious and excellent carued works, and covered with the skinnes of Lions (and strokes of diuers colours) which keepe out rayne. But within, the walls of the Pavilions are covered with most costly skinnes of *Armelines* and *Sables*, although in these Countreys these skinnes are accounted most precious, that sometimes skinnes worth two thousand Souldinnes of gold are scarce sufficient for one pair of Vells. The *Tartars* call the *Sable*, the *Queene of Furres*. The Cordes, wherewith these Pavilions are supported, are of silke. There are also other Pavilions erected, wherein the *Wines*, *Sonnes*, and *Hand-mades* of the King remaine. Further aloft, the *Falcons*, *Hawkes*, *Owles*, *Garfalcons*, and other *Birds*, which serue for Hawking, haue their Tents wherein they are contained. For, there is so great a multitude of Tents, that to them that come thither, a farre off it seemeth that a famous Citie is built there. The King remaineth all March in that Plaine, and taketh innumerable Beasts and infinite multitudes of Fowle. For no man may else hunt in all the Prouinces of that Kingdome, at the least within his dayes journey one way, ten another, and fiftene a third way of the *Cans* Court: nor keepe an hunting Dogge, or an Hawke: and specially, from the beginning of March vntill the month of October, no man is permitted to vse any deuise or engine whatsoever, to take *Stagges*, *Doe*, *Roe-bucks*, *Hares*, lest he should hinder their breede: and hereupon it is that there are such fere.

It is incredible what multitudes of People, Merchants, and merchandises of all sorts are seene in *Cambalu*. The Money of the Great *Cas* is not made of gold or silver, or other metall, but they take the middle barke from the Mulberrie Tree, and thus they make firme, and cut it into diuers and round pieces, great and little, and imprint the Kings marke thereon. Of this matter therefore, the Emperour causeth an huge masse of money to bee made in the Citie of *Cambalu*, which sufficeth for the whole Empire: and no man vnder paine of death may lawfully coine any other, or spend any other money, or refuse it in all his Kingdomes and Countreys. Nor any coming from another Kingdome, dare spend any other money in the Empire of Great *Cas*. Whereby it cometh to passe, that Merchants when coming from farre remote Countreys and Regions vnto the Citie of *Cambalu*, bring with them gold, silver, and precious stones, and receive the Kings money for them. And because this money is not received in their Countreys, they change it againe in the Empire of Great *Cas* for merchandise, which they carrie away with them. He also payeth stipends to his Officers and Armies of the mentioned money; and lastly, whatsoever thing he needeth in his Court he buyeth with this money. Wherefore, there is not a King to be found in the World, who exceedeth him in Treasure, nor expended on the Mint as elsewhere.

The Great *Cas* hath twelue Barons, as is said before, which are his Counsell of Warre, and dispose of martiall affaires, and the exalting or disgracing of Captaines and Souldiers. Their office is called *Thai*, that is, *The high Court*, because they haue none about them but the *Cas*. Other twelue Barons are appointed Counsellors for the foure and thirtie Prouinces, which haue a faire Palace in *Cambalu*, in which is for every Prouince a Iudge & many Notaries, These haue power to choise & excoomure of the said Prouinces, and present their names to the *Cas* which confirms them. They also haue the charge of the Treasure to exact and dispende the same. Their office is called *Singh*, that is, *The second Court*, subiect to none but the *Cas*, yet reputed lesse noble then the former, that being a martiall State.

The number and order of the Pavilions.

The huge price of Armelines, and Sables.

Hunting forbidden.

Barke or Paper money.

Cambalu, the Mint of money.

§. VI.

The Cans prouisions for Embassadors and for Posts; against Dearth; for High-ways; for the Poore in Cambalu; for Astrologers; Tartars Wine, Fuel, Religion, Opinions; Behaviour; Court-neatnesse: P o l o s proceeding from Cambalu Westward. Of Pulifangan, Gouza, Tainfu, Pianfu, Thaigin, Cacanfu, Quenzanfu, Sindinfu, Thebeth, Caidu, Caraijan, Caracchan, Cardandan and Vociam.

Without the Citie of *Cambalu*, many publike wayes conduct to the neighbouring Prouinces, and in euery one of them alway at the end of fise and twentie or thirtie miles, are Lodgings or Innes built, called *Lamb*, that is, *Post-houses*, with great and faire Palaces, Chambers furnished with Beds and other Prouisions, meeete to entertaine great Men, yea to lodge a King; the prouisions laid in from the next adjoining places: where about foure hundred Horses are in readinesse for Messengers and Embassadors, which there leave their ridden Horses and take fresh. And in mountaynyng places, where are no Villages, he sends People to inhabit, ten thousand at a place where these *Lamb* are built, which till the ground for their prouisions; and this continueth vnto the furthest limits of the Empire: so that in the publike wayes, throughout the whole Empire, about ten thousand of the Kings Innes are so bound. And the number of the Horses, appointed for the seruice of the Messengers in those Innes, are more then two hundred thousand, a thing almost incredible to tell: so that in a litle while with change of Men and Horie, intelligence might flie to the Court. And if any wonder how so many men and beasts should be prouided for, hee must consider that the *Moors* and *Gentils* haue many women, and store of children, some hunting thirtie Conies which follow them arund; and for victuall they fow three feeds, Rice, Panike and Kill, which yield an hundred fold: they make not bread, but boile theefe with Mlike or Fleth. Whose will nor encrease with them: nor suffer they any ground, which will beare, to lye vntilled. And their Cattell alway increase, that each of them carries with him six, eight, or more Horses into the field for his owne person. These Horses also take turnes, that of the foure hundred aforesaid two hundred are in the stables readie, the other two hundred at graffe by monthly courses. Their Cities adjoining to Rivers or Lakes, are appointed also to haue ferry Boats in readinesse for the Posts. And Cities adjoining to Deserts, are settled at Hories and prouisions thorow those Deserts, but haue contribution from the *Cas*. In cases of great import, the Poste rides with a Gersillon Table, and is trusted so that he will ride two hundred miles in a day, or two hundred and fiftie, sometimes also they ride the night, Foot-ports running by with lights, if the Moore thine not. They wide a Horne that the fresh Horses may be brought forth for them to mount presently and having their bellies and heads girded runne as fast as the horie can and those which are able to endure this excessive riding are of great reputation.

There are also betwene the said Innes other habitations, three or foure miles distant one from another, where there are a few houses wherein Foot-ports dwell, having all girdels full of shrill sounding bells. These are alwayes readie, and as often as the Kings Letters are sent vnto them, conuey them speedily to the next habitation: who hearing the found of the Foot-port coming afaire off, expect him, and receiving his Letters, presently carrie them to the next watch: and so the Letters passing through diuers hands, are conueyed without any delay, vnto that place whither they ought to come. And it cometh often to passe, that the King vnderstandeth newes, or receiue new fruits from a place, ten dayes journey distant, in two dayes: as fruits growing at *Cambalu* in the morning, the next day at night at *Xandu*. But all the mentioned Poste, are then Paid free from all exaction of Tribute, and receive a good recompence of their labours from the Kings Iudges. Rent gatherers besides. Some also are appointed to examine these Posts monthly, and to punish their faules.

He sends yearly vnto diuers Prouinces, subiect to his Empire, to inquire whether any harme be done to the Corne, by Tempests, Locusts, Wormes, or any other plague. And when he hath notice giuen him that any Prouince or Citie, hath sustained any damage, he remitteth Tributes to that people for that yeere, and sendeth Graine for victuall and for Seede, out of his owne Garners. For, in the time of great plentie, the King buyeth abundant store of Corne, and keepeth it in one Countrey, that defect may be supplied out of the Kings Store-houses. Hee fitheth his graine for the fourth part of other mens price, and alway prouideth that his store-houes be stored. Likewise, when any murren lighteth among Cattell, he sends them other Cattell which he hath for Tenth in other Prouinces. And if a thunder-bolt hath stricken any beast of any Herd or Flock, he will haue no Tribute thereof for three yeeres, so the Herd neuer so great: nor custome of a Thunder-stricken ship, thinking God is angry with them which are so stricken. Likewise, that Trauellers may find the way in all places capable to beare Treas, He hath caused

Posts and Innes.

The Romans also had publick Stables, as appears by Confuting.

Zeif. l. x. and

Psalmus who in three dayes would ride

from the Countreys of the Emperour Com.

Strabo. l. viii. c. 619.

Foot-ports, Die I. 1. 1. 1.

Prouisions against dearth.

Furber Roy.

He fitheth his graine for the fourth part of other mens price, and alway prouideth that his store-houes be stored.

Hence per-
haps the walk
from *Lain* to
Agu was oc-
casioned.
Their Rice-
wine.

Coals taken
out of mines
a thing strange
to *Poa* in *Ita-
lian*, but com-
mon with vs,
called *Sa-els*,
because they
are brought by
Sea from *Yen-
taile*. *Re-vo-
as* *Syana* and
the *Chia* lo-
cutes have
told wonders
of these black
stones, a won-
derfull diuine
housney indeed
to this Land,
and specially
to this *Citie*.
Can charitie
to the Poor.
The Tembs
paid to the
Can.
Weekly labour
for him.
The Devil an
Angel of
light.
Astrologers.

Tartarian com-
putation of
times.

Their Reli-
gio.

* *Siam* i
di-
stinct.
Opinions of
the Idol.

Their Cu-
stomes.

Courte reue-
rence.

Trees to be planted, a little distance one from another, neare vnto the principall wayes; and in
Santie and Idur places, he hath caused to set Stones and Pillars for that purpose: and Officers
are appointed to looke to these things. Hee plants Trees the rather because his Astrologers tell
him, that planting Trees lengthens the life.

They make excellent drinke, in the Prouince of *Cathai*, of Rice and diuers Spices, which in
the taste thereof excelleth the sweetnesse euen of Wine. And they who drinke more greedily
therof then reason iudgeth to be fit, for the nature of the drinker requireth, sooner become drunke
then if they had drunke Wine.

Throughout the whole Prouince of *Cathai*, certaine blacke stones are digged out of the Moun-
taines, which put into the fire burne like wood, and being kindled produce fire a long time, as if
they were kindled in the Evening, they keepe quick fire all the night. And many vs these stones,
because that though they haue store of wood, yet is there such frequent vse of Stones and Bathes
(thrice every weeke) that the wood would not suffice.

It is not amiss also, hauing spoken of his Prouisions abroad, to mention his care for the poore
of *Cambala*. When he heares of any honourable Familie decayed by disaduentures, or of any
which cannot worke, and I haue no meanes: he causeth to giue to such Families the whole yeares
expences; each of such Families going to the Officers for that purpose, and shewing their Bill of
allowance, receive prouisions accordingly. There is a Palace deputed for those Officers. They are
provided also of garments for Winter, and for Summer; the *Can* hauing the Tenthes of all Wool
and Silke, and Hennes, which he causeth to be made into Clothes in a house thereto appointed: so
for all Trades are bound one day in the weeke to worke for him. He prouides also apparel for his
Armies, and in euery *Citie* causeth Cloth to be made of his title Countrey. You must vnderstand
that the *Tartars* ancient customes knew no almes, but rather vbraided such as were in need, in
as laced of Gold. But the Idolaters, especially they *Bachfi*, haue prouided it a good worke
acceptable to God, and haue taught him to be thus bountifull, for that in his Court bread is neuer
denied to any which aske: and there is no day in which is not giuen away twentie thousand
Crownes in Rice, Millet and Panke, whereby he is esteemed as a God.

There are also in *Cambala* of *Christians*, *Saracens*, and *Catagans*, about fise thousand Astrolo-
gers and Diuiners, which the Great *Can* prouideth yearly of foode and dayments, as those poore
aboutelaid. These haue an Astroble in which are marked the signes of the Planets, the houres and
points of all the yeere. Herein all these Astrologers, each Religion apart, view the course of the
yeere, according to euery Moone, obseruing the disposition of the weather, referring alway to
God to doe more or lesse after his owne pleasure. They write also vpon certaine squares (they
call them *Tamans*) the things which are to come that yeere, which they tell to those that they
buy them, and such as speake most truth are most honored. If any intend any great worke, or to
goe a farre journey, and will know the event before-hand, he makes recourse to these Astrologers,
to see it with their eyes in the Heauens, which they doe, comparing the present Constellation
with that of his Birth (which they demand of him) fo foretelling him the good or euill.

The *Tartars* reckon the computation of their yeeres by twelues, the first signified by a Lion,
the second by an Ox, the third by a Dragon, the fourth by a Dogge, and so thorow the whole
twelue: so that if a man be demanded when he was borne: he will answer, such a point of such an
houre, of such a day in the yeere Lion (his father exactly let downe in a booke) and
when the twelue is complete, they goe ouer the same againe.

Of their Religion we haue said that they are Idolaters, and for their Gods haue a Table set a-
loft in the wall of their Chamber, on which is written, a Name representing the *High God of
Heauen*; and there euery day, with a Conser of incense, they adore it in this manner. They lift
vp their hands aloft, and strike their teeth thrice, praying it to giue them a good vnderstanding
and health; and desire thereof nothing else. Besides, on the ground they haue another table, called
Natigat, The God of earthly things, with his Wife and Children (as before is said) whom
likewise they worship with incense, striking * or gnashing the teeth, and lifting vp the hands;
and desire thereof temperature of the aire, fruits of the earth, children, and the like. They held
the Soule to be immortal, and that when a man dies it enters into another bodie better or worse,
according to the merits in the former life, as of a poore man to become a Gentleman, and after of
a Prince or Lord, and so higher till it be assumed in God: or if it hath ill deserved to be a poore
man, after a Dogge, alway descending to the lowest ranke of baseness. They haue a comely
speech, salute cheerfully and honestly, haue a graceful carriage, and feed cleanly. They beare
great reuerence to their Parents, and if any be vndeutull, or helpelesse to their need, there is
a public Office designed to this purpose, to punish vngodly or disobedient children. Prison-
ers are released at three yeeres end, and marked in the cheek, to be knowne Malefactors.

The Barons and People which go to the Grand *Can*, obtruse their Rites. First, within half
a mile of the place where the *Can* is, all is hushed and quiet without noyse or cryes, or any loud
speech: and euery Baron carries continually a little faire veil to spit in, after which hee comes
in, none daring to spit on the Hall. They haue Furres buskins of white leather, which they put on
when they enter the Hall, putting off the former and giuing them to the seruants, all they
should foule the faire artificiall Carpets.

Ten miles off *Cambala*, is a certayne great Ruer, named *Palsfangan*, emptying it selfe into
the Ocean, by which many ships with much merchandise ascend. And in that place, there
is a very faire Bridge, all of Serpentine stone curiously wrought, containing three hundred paces
in length, and eight in breadth, that ten men may ride abreast. On each side it is fairly moun-
ted with a wall of marble, and Pillars set on a row: and in the height of the ascent is a great
and high Pillar, at the foote whereof is a great Lion, and on the top another. And io quite thorow
the Bridge one pace and half distant are Pillars with Lions on the top, and a faire well wrought
marble worke betwixt, to keepe men from falling.

Hauing passed ouer the Ruer and Bridge, proceeding thirtie miles westward (in which Pala-
ces are continually scene with Vineyards and fertile Fields) you come to the *Citie Gouza*, both
faire and great, hauing many Monasteries of Idols. Cloth of gold and silkes are made there, and
the purest and finest Gambicks or Lounes, and many common Innes for Strangers and Trauellers
are found in that *Citie*: The Citizens are Artificers and Merchants. A mile without this *Citie*
is the way parth, one leading West, the other South-east: that to the West leadeth through the
Prouince of *Cathai*, but the other towards the Countrey of *Manzi*. From the *Citie* of *Gouza* way,
to the Kingdome of *Tanfu*, you ride ten dayes thorow *Catasa*, alway finding many faire Cities
and Castles, well traded with Vineyards and tilled Fields, from whence Wine is carried to *Cat-
tasa*, where it wants. There are many Mulberrie trees for Silke-wormes: the People ciuill and
Cities very frequent.

Tanfu is the name of the Kingdome, and of the chiefe *Citie* which is great and faire, hath
much trading with store of munition, hit for the *Can* Armies. The Wine about this *Citie* fer-
ueth the whole Prouince. Seuen dayes further westward is a goodly Countrey, beautified with
many faire Cities and Castles, in which also great trade of merchandise is vied. After which
you come to a *Citie* very great, named *Pianfu*, in which there is great abundance of Silke
and Trading.

Westward from *Pianfu* standeth a very goodly Castle, named *Thaigim*, anciently built by a
King called *Dor*. In it is a spacious Palace, wherein is a faire Hall, in which are painted all the
famous Kings which haue reigned there; a faire spectacle. Of this King *Dor* they say that he
was potent, and was attended only by young Damfels, whereof his Court had great store.
30 They also when hee listeth to take his pleasure, carried him in a small light Chariot thorow the
Citie, which is so fortified by Art and Nature, that the Gouernour thereof feared none, no not
Venue his Lord, against whom hee rebelled. But euen men professing fialtie and seruice to
Dor, took him at aduantage in hunting, and brought him captiue to *Prebyster John* or *Venue*,
who put him in vile clothes, and appointed him to keepe his Cartell, and let on him a strong
guard till two yeeres were ended: after which, hee commanded him to bee brought before him,
and attayed him in Princely apparell, and giuing him his pardon after sharpe admonition, sent
him fo well attended to the possession of his Kingdome.

About twentie miles beyond the Castle *Thaigim*, is the Ruer *Caramoran*, which by reason of
the exceeding beddie and depth thereof, hath no Bridge: and floweth to the Ocean. On the
40 shore thereof are many Cities and Castles built; wherein much trading is exercised. This Countrey
aboundeth with Ginger, Silke, and Fowle, especially Feasants, that three of them are bought
for a great of *Venue*. There growe Reeds infinite store, so great that some are a foot, some are
a foot and a half, some growe to many fises. Passing this Ruer, after two dayes journey
is the famous *Citie* called *Caramor*, where many clothes of Gold and Silke are made: here
grows Ginger, Galangale, Spike, and many Spices. The people are Idolaters. Proceeding
10 ten dayes journey Westward, many Cities, and Townes, goodly Fields and Gardens are found;
and euery where Mulberries for Silke-wormes. And they are Idolaters: but there are also *Chri-
stians*, *Turkes*, *Nestorians*, and some *Saracens*. There is much both of wilde Beasts and Fowle.
If you proceed ten dayes journey further, you shall come to a certayne great *Citie*, named
50 *Quenansu*, which is the chiefe *Citie* of the Kingdome, in which haue reigned many famous
Kings: and at this day, the sonne of great *Can*, called *Mangalus*, hath the command thereof. That
Countrey yieldeth great plenty of Silke, Cloth of Gold, and all other things necessarie for fur-
nishing of an Armie, and for preferment of the life of Man. The Inhabitants worship Idols,
and there are some *Christians*, and *Turkes*, and *Saracens*. Five miles without the *Citie* standeth
the Palace of *Mangalus*, seated in a Playne, where are many Springs, Riuerets, and places of
King *Mangalus*
Game. There is a high wall encompassing fise miles, where are all wilde Beasts and Fowles,
in the midst an excellent Palace, hauing many Halls and Chambers great and faire, all painted
with Gold and Azure, and infinite Marbles adorning. The King with his Courtiers applieth
himselfe to hunting of wilde Beasts, and taking of Fowle, and followeth his fathers steps in
60 Iustice and Equitie, much beloued of his people.

Going three dayes journey Westward from the said Palace, thorow a certayne goodly Playne,
where many Cities and Castles are (and abundance of Silke, Mercandise, and Arts) is a moun-
tainous Countrey, where, in the Mountaines and Vallies are frequent Habitations, and here of
Lodgings, of the Prouince of *Cambala*. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, and Husbandmen: All
cousins.

in that Countrey they hunt Lions, Beares, Stags, Roe-bucks, Deere, Wolves. That Plaine is two dayes journey, and the Countrey is twentie dayes Westward all inhabited, hauing Mountaines, and Valleys, and many Woods.

*Abbalah
Mangi.*

After that, twentie dayes towards the West, is a Prouince, named *Abbalah Mangi*, that is, *The white Citie of the borders of Mangi*, which is wel peopled. This Prouince for two dayes journey hath a Plaine, with infinite habitations. After which follow Mountaines, Valleys, and Woods, all inhabited twentie dayes journey Westward. It hath store of wild beasts, and of those creatures which yield Muske. In this Prouince Ginger groweth in great plenty, as also Corne and Rice.

*Mangi.
Sudafra.*

After twentie dayes journey thorow those Hills, is a Prouince, and a Prouince in the Confinnes of *Mangi*, named *Sudafra*. The chiefe Citie hath the same name, great and exceeding rich, being twentie miles circuit about. It hath had many rich and mighty Kings, but the old King dying, left three lones Succelors of the Kingdome, which diuided the Citie into three parts, compassing euery part with their proper walls, all which notwithstanding were contrayed within the former wall. But great *Can* subiected that Citie and Kingdome to his Dominion. Thorow this Citie runne many Riuer, in many places, and round about, some halfe a mile ouer, some two hundred paces, very deepe, and on them are many Bridges of stone, very faire, eight paces broad, set on both sides with marble Pillars, which beare vp a timber Frame that couers the Bridge; each Bridge hauing ftreets and shops all along it. When these Riuer are past the Citie, they become one great riuer, called *Quan*, which runneth one hundred dayes iourney to the Ocean. Neere these Riuer are many Cities and Castles, and ships for Merchandise. Proceeding five dayes journey further, through a certaine Playne, many Cities, Castles, and Villages are found, in which the Lawnes are in great abundance. Many wild Beasts also are there.

The greatest of
the Prouince of Tebeh.

After the Playne whereof we now speake, is the Prouince of *Tebeh*, which great *Can* vanquished, and walled: for in it are many Cities destroyed, and Castles overthrowne by the space of twentie dayes journey. And because it is become a Wilderness, wanting Inhabitants, wilde Beasts, and Lions are there encreased abundantly: and it is needfull that Trauellers carrie victuals with them. Very great Canes grow in this Countrey ten paces in length, and three palmes in thickness, and as much from knot to knot. When Trauellers therefore will rest by night secure from Beasts, they take great bundles of the greener Reeds, and putting fire vnder, kinde them. Which make such a cracking, and so great a noyse, that it may be heard two miles off. Which terrible sound the wilde Beasts hearing, flee away. Moreover, Horses, and other Beasts which Merchants vie for their iourney, hearing this noyse and cracking, are very much affraid, and many beaking themselves to flight, haue escaped from their Masters: but the wiser Trauellers binding their feet together with Fetters, detayne them with violence.

In this his
bookes men-
tioneth the
like of the
Cyprian.
A famous P.
H. the
bookes
chapter 1.

Twentie dayes iourney ended, hauing passed ouer the Prouince of *Tebeh*, we meet with Cities, and very many Villages, in which, through the blindness of Idolatry, a wicked custom is vsed: for, no man there marryeth a wife that is a Virgin. Whereupon, when Trauellers and Strangers coming from other parts, passe through this Countrey, and pitch their Paulions, the Women of that place hauing marriageable daughters, bring them vnto Strangers, desiring them to take them, and enjoy their companie as long as they remayne there. Thus the pretier are choiten, and the reft returne home sorrowfull. And when they will depart, they are not suffered to carrie any away with them, but faithfully restore them to their Parents. The Mayden also requieth some toy or small Pretien of him who hath deflowered her, which she may then as an argument and proofe of her Ielouring. And she that hath bene loued, and abused of most men, and shall haue many such fauours and toys to fiew to her Woods, is accounted more noble, and may more easily and honourably be married. And when there will goe honourably attired, she hangeth all her Louers fauours about her necke, and the more acceptable shee was to many, of so much the more honour is shee adialed worthe. But when they are once married to husbands, they are now no more suffered to be coupled with strange men. And the men of this Countrey are very wary, that they offend not one another in this matter. They are Idolaters, and cruell men, thinking it no sinne if they rob, and exercise theft. They lye by hunting, and the fruits of the earth. Many beasts also are found with them, yielding Muske called by them, Gudderi. They haue a proper Language, and haue no money, not the Paper money of *Can*, but spend Corals for money, and are clothed with the skins of beasts, or coule Hempe. This Countrey appertayneth to the Prouince of *Tebeh*: for *Tebeh* is a very large Prouince, and hath bene sometime diuided into eight Kingdomes, hauing many Cities, and Townes, with many Mountaynes, Lakes, and Riuer, where Gold is found. The women weare Corall about their neckes, and hang about the neckes of their wilde Beasts, as a precious thing. In this Countrey there are very great Dogs, as big as Asies, which take the wilde Beasts, specially wilde Oxen, called *Bayamani*. They are exceeding Necromancers, causing tempests, lightning, thunderbolts, and many other wonders. There are many sorts of Spices neuer brought into their parts. This *Tebeh* is (as all the former Prouinces) subiect to the *Can*.

Caidea.

On the West of the Prouince of *Tebeh*, bordereth the Prouince of *Caidea*. Sometimes govern-

ned by her owne Kings, now by the Gouvernours of the *Can*. By the West you must not understand that the Countrey is in the West, but that wee departing from those parts which are betwixt the East and North-east come hither Westward: and therefore reckon them Westward. The people are Idolaters, haue many Cities, the chiefe called by the name of the Prouince, *Caidea*, built in the entry of the Prouince. There is a great salt Lake, in which is store of Pearles, white, not round, so abundant, that the price of them would become little worth, if they were suffered to be carried away at mens pleasures. Whereupon, it is prouided vpon payne of death, that none should presume to fish for Pearle in this Lake, without the licence of great *Can*.

There is also a Mountaine in this Prouince, which yield Muske. That Lake also which is called *Gadderi*. Many *Gadderi* are also in this Prouince, which yield Muske: and the whole Countrey is full of ingendred Pearle in such plenty, abundance, and richness with Fishes: and the whole Countrey is full of wilde Beasts, that is to say, of Lions, Beares, Stags, Deere, Ounces, Roe-bucks; and diuers kinds of Birds. Cloues are found there in great plenty, which are gathered from small Trees, which haue boughs and leaues like the Bay-tree, but somewhat longer and straighter, white flowers and little, as are the Cloues, and when they are ripe they are blacke and duskie. Ginger, Cinamon, and diuers other Spices grow there in great plenty, which are not brought into our Countrey. Wine groweth not in it, but in stead thereof they make excellent Drinke of Corne, Rice, and diuers other Spices. The Inhabitants of this Countrey worship Idols, by which

they are so belotched, that they thinke they deserve their fauour, if they prostitute their wives, sisters, and daughters to be abused by Trauellers. For, when any Stranger cometh amongst them, euery household-er seeketh to giue him entertainment, and goe their way, leaving the females and house to the Strangers will, and so returne not vntill they depart. And the women presently hang vp their signe, and call be his name, that when the Master of the familie returneth, he may know he is there still, and goe away againe, staying without till he be departed: which hee doeth for the glorie of his Idols, hoping they will be more gracious vnto him. Certaine twigs of Gold are their money, vint weights, and according to the weight of the twig is the value of the money. And this money is the greater money without stamp. They haue also a lesser, which they make after this manner. They boyle Salt in a Caldron an houres space, of which being congealed, they make little lumps like two-pennie loaves, which being made fold, is signed with the Princes Stamp, and make great profit thereof in strange places, remote from Cities which haue store of Muske and Gold, and want Clupmen. These battar their Gold for Salt to vie in their

space meet with Castles, and many Villages, whose Inhabitants haue the same custom, that the Prouince of *Caidea* hath, and at length they come vnto a Riuer, called *Bruu*, where the Prouince of *Caidea* is bounded. In this Riuer Gold is found in great plenty, which they call, *Di Paula* (washed in vessels to seuer it from the sands and earth.) On the banks thereof Cinamon groweth in great abundance. This Riuer runneth to the Ocean.

Hauing passed ouer the Riuer *Bruu*, they come westward to the Prouince *Caraiian*, which containeth seuen Kingdomes. It is subiect to the great *Can*, whose name, named *Sentemur*, is made King of that Kingdom, who is rich, wife and iust. The Inhabitants thereof are Idolaters. You may see vnder and finde it all well peopled. They lye of their Beasts and Fruits. The Countrey breedeth excellent Horses: and it hath a peculiar and difficult language. At the end of those five dayes is the chiefe Citie, called *laui*, and is great and famous, hath in it many Merchants and Artificers, and many sorts of People, *Idolaters, Christians, Negrians, and Saccians*; but the most Idolaters. It hath Corne, and much Rice, although they eat no bread of Corne, because it is not whole wheate, but they make bread of Rice. They make drinke also of it, and diuers Spices very pleasant. They vie white Porcelaines in Read of money, and for ornaments which are found at the Sea. Much Salt is made in this Citie of the water of salt Wells, whereof the King hath great profit. The men of this Countrey care not if any man come to their Wives, so they giue their content. There is also a Lake there very full of Fish, containing an hundred miles in compass. Those men eat raw flesh of Hennes, Beeffe, Mutton and Buffals, but prepared after this manner. They first break it into small peeces, and after season it with excellent Spices; but the poorer sort thrust it in Lay it in Garlicke sawce, and eate it as wee doe boyled meate.

Departing from the Citie of *laui*, hauing trauelled ten dayes iourney westward, yee come to the Prouince named, as is the chiefe Citie, *Caraiian*, which *Cogatin*, sonne of *Cutai*, gouerneth. The Riuer there yield very much gold of *laui*, and also that which is more fold, and the Mountaines gold of the vein and they giue one stone of gold for six of silver. They spend Porcelaine for money brought thither from *India*. The Inhabitants are Idolaters: very great Serpents are bred in this Countrey, whereof some containe ten paces in length, and in thickness ten

ipanes. They haue two little teeth before nigh the head, with three talons or claws like Lions, and theye bigger then a Great Toate, very thining. They haue their mouthes and jawes to wide, that they are able to swallow a man; great and tharge teeth: nor is there any man, or other liuing Creature, which may belid the Serpents without terror: there are found leffe, of

Departing from the Citie of *laui*, hauing trauelled ten dayes iourney westward, yee come to the Prouince named, as is the chiefe Citie, *Caraiian*, which *Cogatin*, sonne of *Cutai*, gouerneth. The Riuer there yield very much gold of *laui*, and also that which is more fold, and the Mountaines gold of the vein and they giue one stone of gold for six of silver. They spend Porcelaine for money brought thither from *India*. The Inhabitants are Idolaters: very great Serpents are bred in this Countrey, whereof some containe ten paces in length, and in thickness ten

ipanes. They haue two little teeth before nigh the head, with three talons or claws like Lions, and theye bigger then a Great Toate, very thining. They haue their mouthes and jawes to wide, that they are able to swallow a man; great and tharge teeth: nor is there any man, or other liuing Creature, which may belid the Serpents without terror: there are found leffe, of

The taking
of them.

eight, sixe, or five paces long, which are taken after this manner. In the day time they vie to lie hid, by reason of the heat, in holes, out of the which they gue by night to seeke their prey, and decoure what beeter they get, Lions, Wolves, or others: and then goe to seeke water, leaving such a track with their weight in the sands, as if some piece of timber had bene diuine there. Whereupon the Hunters fallen vnder the sands thurpe iron prickes in their viall tacts, whereon they are wounded and layne. The Crows priuily ring his kuell, and by their crying cries inuite the Hunters, which come and flay him, taking forth his gall, profitable for diuers Medecines (amongst other things, for the biting of mad Dogs, a vntue weight giuen in Wine; and far women in trauell for carbuncles and pulues) and they sell the fl. diuine as being exceeding delicate. There are brel great Hories in this Prouince, which by Merchants are caried into India. They vie to take one bone out of the tayle, left he should bend his tayle hither and thither, and esseme it more comely that it hang dwine right. They vie long Strumpets the *Frenchmen*; which the *Tartars* and other Nations out their shooting vie short, because when they shoot, they ryle vp. They vie Targets and Armour in the Wars, made of the hides of Bulls: they haue Lances and Croffe-bowes, and poyson all their Arrowes. Some of them which are ill minded, are said to carrie poyson about them cuttually, that if they be taken, they may suddenly swallow it and death together, to prevent cure. For which cause the great Lords haue Dogs dung ready, which they force them to swallow, and that forthem them to vomit the poyson. Before the great *Can* subiected them, they die him by night, supposing that those good parts of that man might abate afterwards in that house; and this was the death of many.

* Poyson and
Dogs dung.

A wicked cu-
stome.

Cardanus
Præcon.

The rareness
of Siluer.
Golden coun-
sings for the
teeth.

* Strake in his
third booke
mentioneth
the same to
be done with
the *Symas* in
some places.

Alaportus re-
ported the
like custome
with the *Trib-
eni*. He sa-
ieth of the
Brasiliens.
Tallies of con-
tricks.

The deceitfull
medicine of
the Magicians.

Going from the Prouince *Carazan*, after five dayes journey Westward, is the Prouince *Cardanian*, which also is subiect to great *Can*. The chiefe Citie thereof is called *Pæcon*. The Inhabitants thereof vie Porcelanes and weighed pieces of Gold in stead of money: for in that Country, and many other lying round about, Siluer mines are not found, and they gie one ounce of Gold for foures of Siluer, and great gaine is made by the change. The men and women of that Country couer their teeth with thune plates of Gold, which they fo fit vnto them, that the teeth themselves seeme (as it were) to be set in the plates. The men about their armes and legs make lills, pricking the places with Needles, and putting thereon a blacke indelible tincture. And these lills or marks are etched with them a great galantie. They gie their minds to nothing but riding, hunting, hawking, and exercises of Armes, leaving the household cares to the women, who are helpe them by flues which they buy or take in Wars. When a woman is brought to bed, shee orfakes the bed, wafeth the child and dresteth it, and then the husband lieth downe and keeps the child with him fortie dayes, not suffering it to depart: is visited meane while of friends and neighbours, to cheare and comfort him. The woman lookes to the house, carrie the husband his bristles to his bed, and giues sucke to the child by him. Their Wine is made of Rice and Spice, their meat Rice, and raw flesh dressed, as is before mentioned. In this Prouince there are no other Idols, save that every familie adoreth the oldest man in the house, of whom they say come the tempests and all they haue. But foraine come to the ayre would kill them, being in Summer very corrupt. They are no letters, but make their Contracts and Obligations by Tallies of wood, the lisse wherof the one keepeth, and the other, the other; which being afterward payd, the tallie is rendered. There are no Physicians in this Prouince, nor in *Caudo*, *Vociam* and *Carazan*: but when any is sicke, they call the Magicians, or Idol Priests together, and he sicke partie declareth his disease vnto them: then the Magicians dance, and found certaine instruments, and bellow forth songs in honour of their Gods, while at length the Duell entrench into one of them skipping and playing in the dance. Then leauing the dance, they confite with him that is possesse, for what cause that disease hapned vnto him, and what is to be done for his recovery. The Duell answereth by him, because he hath done this or that, or because he hath offended this or that God: therefore, he fell into this disease. Then the Magicians inuocate that God to pardon him that offence, promising, that if the sicke partie recover, he shall offer a Sacrifice of his owne blood. But if the Duell thinke the weeke partie to be sicke of such a disease, it is the cannot be freed from the same, he vieth to answer: This man hath so grievously offended that God, that he cannot by any sacrifices be appeased. But if he thinke he shall recover, he commandeth to offer in many Rammes having blacke heads, and to prepare so many Magicians with their wuses, by them to offer Sacrifices, and that God may then be appealed towards him. Which being heard, his kinsmen quickly cause those things to be done which the Duell commanded: they kill Rammes, and sprinkle their blood in the ayre, and the Magicians assembled with their Witches, light great Candles, and perfume the whole house with incense, making fume of *Lignum Aloe*, and sprinkle the broth of the flesh in the ayre, together with the potion made of Spices: all which being duly performed, they skip about againe in a dance in honour of that Idol, which is supposed to haue bene fauourable to the sicke, singing, and making an horrible noyse with their voyces. These things

things being done, they aske the possessed againe, whether by these things the Idol be appeased. The answer, No, they presently prepare themselves to fulfill another command of his. But if he answer, that he is satisfied, they sit downe at the Table, and eat the flesh offered to the Idol with great ioy, and drinke the confectiōs. And dinner being ended, and the Magicians payed, every one returneth to his owne home. And when the sicke hath thus escaped the disease, through the prouidence of God, and hath bene reformed to health, they attribute it to the Idol whom they sacrificed. But if he die, then they say, the Idol was richered, and that some of the Sacrificers eated thereof first. This is not done to all but to the Richer, the Duell deluding their blindness.

§. VII.

Of the Prouince of Mien and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: Of Cangui, Amu, Tholoman, Cingui, and some other parts of Canio. And of the Conquest of Mangi.

New Dom. 1275. the Great *Can* sent an Armie into the Kingdomes of *Vociam*, and *Carazan* to guard it, to the number of twelue thousand expert warriors, vnder the conduct of *Nefardin* a wife Captaine. As soon as the King of *Mien*, and the King of *Bengala* heard of their coming, assembling their forces, they ioyed Horie and Foot together, about threecore thousand, and about a thousand Elephants bearing Cables, and in every Cattle twelue or fixteene armed men were placed. With this Armie the King of *Mien* speedily marched towards the Citie *Vociam*, where the Armie of the *Tartars* rested. *Nefardin* comming forth with a mainly courage to fight against the Enemie, encamped against a certaine great Wood, knowing that the Elephants with those Townes were not able to enter into the Wood. Then the King of *Mien* and his Armie were not able to meete them. But the *Tartarian* Hories perceiving the Elephants to be present, which were placed in the first front of the battaille, were terrified with so great feare, that they could not by any violence or policy be provoked against the Elephants. The *Tartars* therefore were compelled to alight from their Hories, and tying them to the Trees of the Wood, they came to fight on foot against the Elephants. In the front of the battaille, all the *Tartars* purposely shot a multitude of Arrowes against the Elephants, which not able to endure the strokes of the Arrowes, speedily betooke themselves to flight, and with swift course went all vnto the next Wood, add brake their Cables, and ouer-threw the armed men sitting in them, which the *Tartars* seeing, ranne vnto their Hories, and getting vp vpon them, furiously fall vpon the Kings Armie with great violence: and many of either Armie fell, at length the King of *Mien* being put to flight, left the victorie to the *Tartars*, who hasten to the Wood, and taking many Captives, vied their helpe to take two hundred of these Elephants. And euer since Great *Can* hath vied Elephants in his Armies which before hee had not accustomed. Hereupon also he vanquished the Countries of the King of *Mien* and *Bengala*, and subiected them to his Empire.

Departing from the Prouince of *Cardanian*, is a great descent, which continueth two dayes and a halfe, nor is there any habitation there, but a very large Playne, in the which, three dayes in the weeke many men meete together for Trading. Many descend from the great Mountaines of that Country, bringing gold with them to change for siluer, to wit, giuing one ounce of gold for five ounces of siluer: whereupon many Merchants from foraine Nations come thither, who bringing siluer carrie away gold, and bring thither merchandises to sell to those people. For to those high Mountaines, in which, they who gather gold in that Country, dwell, no franger can come, seeing the way is vnpassable and intricate. When you are past that Playne, going toward the South, *Mien* bordereth vpon India, and the way lyeth fiftene dayes journey in places not inhabited and woody, in which innumerable Elephants, Vnicornes, and other wild beasts wander.

After that fiftene dayes is found *Mien*, a great and noble Citie, the head of the Kingdomes, and subiect to Great *Can*. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar language, and are Idolaters. In this Citie there was a King, who being ready to die, commanded that neere to his Sepulchre, there should be made two Towres in Pyramide fashion, one at the head, the other at the feet, both of Marble, of the height of ten fathoms. On the top was a round Ball. He caused one to be covered all ouer with gold, a finger thicker, and the other with siluer. And vpon the top round about the Balls, many little golden and siluer Bells were hanged, which at the blowing of the winde gaue a certaine sound. The Monument or Sepulchre was also couered with Plates, partly of gold, partly of siluer. He commanded this to be made in honor of his Soule, and that his memory should neuer decay among men. And when Great *Can* minded to subdue this Citie, hee sent a valiant Captaine, and the greatest part of his Armie were letters, of which his Court is alway furnished. These winning the Citie, would not violate that Monument without the *Can*s knowledge,

* This by relation; for they vie not to carry about three or foure.

his Stratagem.

Eight & fiftie
of Elephants.

Market in a
dis-habited
Playne.
Change of
gold and sil-
uer.

Vnicornes or
Rhinoceroses

Quinsu, where the King of Mangi resides: who mightily terrified, as never having seen any battell, fled with his wealth and treasures in ships which he had prepared to certain impregnable islands in the Ocean (where he afterwards) committing the custody of the Citie of *Quinsu* to his wife, bidding her to defend it as well as she could; for being a woman she need not fear death, if force were taken. It is to be observed, that King *Fanfai* had been told by his Diviners, that his Kingdom should never be taken from him, but by one which had an hundred eyes: which the Queene knew, and therefore was still in hope not to lose the Citie, howsoever frightened; thinking it impossible for one man to have an hundred eyes. But one day she heard, that the Commander of the *Tartars* was called *Baian Chinfai*, that is to say, An hundred eyes, and was much terrified: wherefore, calling for the Commander of the *Tartars* Army, thinking him to be the man which the Astrologers spake of, she desired that he Citie unto him. Which being heard, the Citizens, and Inhabitants of the whole Province, revolted to the obedience of great *Can*. The Queene was sent unto the Court of great *Can*, and was most honourably received by him, and maintayned like a Queene. And now we will speake of the Cities of * *Mangi*.

The flight of King *Fanfai*. * This name *Mangi* and *Can*, are so difficult that they may seem divers. But the Reader is to observe, that *Can* is a name to the Chinese unknown, and that Kingdom hath appellations diversely diversified: either from the Familie reigning (which now is called *Can*) and the Kingdom *Mis*, and *Mis* *Can*, are not farre from *Mangi*) and by the *Tartars*, when they reigned, it was called *Han* and before, *Can*, which both put together make *Han* *Can*, without an great difference from *Mangi*: Or else by general appellations common to all ages, &c. See our following relations of *Sici* and *Tiguan*.

VIII.

Of the Cities of Mangi (now called China) and the rarities thereof: the many wonders of Quinsu, the Palaces, Pleasures, Rites and Government, observed by the Natives, and the Tartars.

Quinsu.

Quinsu is a faire and rich Citie, situate towards the South-east, and East in the entrance of the Province of *Mangi*, (from *Catao*, whence the *Subow* passes) where are always great store of ships, being leated on the River *Caraman*. Great store of Merchandise is carried thither. Salt is also made there in great abundance.

The Salt of *Canisiquan*. * *Tortagin*.

Panghin.

Going from *Quinsu*, you ride towards the South-east one dayes journey on a stone * *Canis*; on both sides whereof are great Fennes with deepe waters, whereon they may passe with ships: neither is there any entrance into *Mangi* but by shipping (as the Captaine of the *Can* did) but by this Cause. At the end of that dayes journey is a Citie called *Panghin* great and faire. The people make clothes of Gold and of Silke, are Merchants and Idolaters, The Paper money of great *Can* is received throughout that whole Country. It is plentifull of all necessaries of life.

Can.

Phisiana.

To the Citie *Can*, is from *Panghin* one dayes journey South-east, and this is also a famous Citie, abounding with fish, and game, of beasts, and fowle: especially Pheasants are found there, in exceeding great plenty, as great as Peacocks, of which you may have three for one *Venetian* great.

Tingui.

Proceeding further hence one dayes journey, you come thorow a well manured and peopled Country to the Citie *Tingui*, which although it be not great, yet hath it exceeding great plenty of victuals. They are Merchants, and very many ships are also there: plenty of beasts and fowles: it is leated to the South-east, and on the left hand towards the East three dayes journey off is the Ocean; and in the space betweene, are very many Salt pits; and they make great store of Salt. After this, is *Cingui* a great Citie, whence the Country is furnished with Salt, whereof the *Can* makes great profit, beyond belief. They are Idolaters, and have Paper money. From *Cingui* riding towards the South-east, you meet with the noble Citie *Langui*, under the government whereof are other Cities, seven and twenty in number. And in that Citie reside one of the twelve Barons which are Governours of Provinces chosen by the great *Can*. They are Idolaters, and live of Merchandise. They make Armes and Harnesse for warre. And Master *Marco* had the sole government thereof by commission of the great *Can*, three yeeres together in head of one of those Barons.

M. Polo Governour of *Langui*, *Nangui*.

Nangui is a Province to the West, one of the greatest and noblest of *Mangi*, a place of great Merchandise. They are Idolaters, spend Paper money, have store of beasts and fowle, wilde and tame. They make clothes of Gold and Silke, and are rich Merchants, and the Country is very commodious to the *Can*, specially by Customs of Merchandise. There is great plenty of Corne. *Sianfu* is a noble and great Citie in the Province of *Mangi*, and hath ewelue rich and great Causes subject unto her jurisdiction. They make great store of Silkes and cloth of Gold, have plenty of game and fowle, and of all things pertaining to a Citie of note: it is strong, that it was three yeeres besieged, and could not be vanquished by the Armie of the *Tartars*, when the Province of *Mangi* was subdued. For it is compassed on every side with Lakes, that there

was no way unto it, but on the North: so that ships came and went continually, bringing plenty of victuals: which not a little afflicted great *Can*. The two brethren Master *Nicolo*, and Master *Maffio*, then in his Court, hearing thereof, went to him, and offered their service to demolish certaine Engines after the manner of the West, able to throw a stone of three hundred weight, thereby to kill men, and raine houses. The *Can* appointed them the best Cause, where which were *Nestorian* Christians, who made three (*Mangui*) of those Engines in a short space, which were powerfull and approved before him, and by ships sent unto his Armie, Planting them therefore against the Citie *Sianfu*; they began to cast great stones into the Citie: and the first falling upon a certaine house, brake it for the most part, with the violence thereof. Which the besieged Inhabitants seeing, were very much astonished, and yielded themselves, and became subject to the obedience of great *Can*, on the same conditions with the rest of *Mangi*; to the great repute of the two *Venetian* brethren.

From the Citie *Sianfu*, to a certaine Citie, named *Singui*, are numbered fifteen miles South-eastward, which although it be not great, yet hath it an exceeding multitude of Ships, being leated upon the greatest River in the world, called *Quian*, the breath of which in certaine places, containeth ten miles, in other eight, and in some five. But the length thereof extendeth more, which runne thorow divers Regions, and are navigable, and make it to great; incredible store of Merchandise is brought by this River. There are also very many other Cities, in number about two hundred, which participate of this River: it floweth through the bounds of sixteen Provinces. The greatest commodity is Salt, wherewith all the Cities which communicate in these waters are stored. Master *Marco* saw at one time at *Singui* five thousand ships, and yet other Cities on that River have more. All those ships are covered, and have but one mast, and one sayle, and usually carrie four thousand, and so upwards, some of them twelve thousand *Venetian* Cantari. Neither the cordage of Hempe, except for the masts and sayles, but have Canees fifteen paces long, which they ruse into thimbe paces from one end to the other, and binding the cut pieces together, and wreathing them, make very long ropes, so that some of them containe three hundred fathom in length. And those lines are as strong as Hempen, and serve for halles and cables to draw their ships up and downe the River, each ship having ten or twelve Hories for that purpose. On that River in many places are rockie hillocks, on which are built Monasteries to their Idols: and all the way are Villages and places inhabited.

Cingui is a little Citie, upon the foreland River South-eastward, where every yeere is brought store of Corne and Rile, carried the most part to *Cambala*. For they may passe thither by Lakes and Rivers, and by one deepe large hand-made River, which the *Can* caused to be made for passage from one River to another, and from *Mangui* to *Cambala* without going to *Sia*, which workes goodly and wonderful for the site and length, and more for the profit thereby to the Cities. Her hath made also great Causes to goe on land by those waters commodiously. In the midst of the said River is an Island of a Rocks, on which is erected a great Temple and Monasterie, in which are two hundred Idolatrous Monks. This is the Mother-temple and Monasterie of many others.

Cinghianfu is a Citie of *Mangi*, rich in Merchandise, plentifull of game, of wilde beasts and fowle, and of victuall. In it are two Churches of *Nestorian* Christians, built Anno 1274. when the great *Can* sent Governour thither, *Marbasca* a *Nestorian*, which built them.

From the Citie *Cinghianfu*, in three dayes journey South-eastward, you find many Cities and Castles all Idolaters, and at last come to the Citie *Tingui*, a great and faire Citie, abounding with all kinde of victuals. When *Chinfai* *Baian*, General of the Armie of the *Tartars* conquered the Province of *Mangi*, he sent many Christians (called *Mis*) against this Citie, which was double walled, into the inner they retired, into the other the *Mis* entered, and found there abundance of Wine, whereafter a bad journey, they began to drinke to largely, and they were all drunke: and the Citizens in their sleepe suddenly falling upon them, flew them all, none escaping. But *Baian* hearing this, sent another great Armie against those Citizens, which shortly vanquishing the Citie, in revenge, put them all to the sword, leaving none alive.

The great and excellent Citie *Singui*, containeth in circuit twenty miles. Great multitudes of people are in it: it hath many rich Merchants, and cunning Artificers, and it hath also very many Physicians and Magicians and Wisemen or Philoophers. In the Mountains of this Citie, *Ruhak* and *Ginger* grow in great plenty. This Citie hath sixteen Cities under the jurisdiction thereof, where much trading is used, and very many curious Arts are exercised. Very many Silkes are made there. The word *Singui*, in their language, signifies, The Gate of the Earth, as also they have another Citie, which they call *Quinsu*, that is to say, The Chief House. From *Singui* one dayes journey is *Fagin*, where is also abundance of Silke, and cunning Artificers with many Merchants.

Going from *Fagin* three dayes, continually you find Cities, Castles, and Villages, well peopled and rich. The People are Idolaters, under the *Can*: at the end of those dayes you

Mangui, a kind of line, it hereby appears that they had not the view of the Cannon.

Singui.

Quian.

Cingui.

Lakes hand-made River.

Cinghianfu.

Tingui.

Singui.

Physicians and Philoophers, &c.

Quinfai the
Earthly Cite
of Heaven. O
how much
better is the
heavenly Ci-
tie on Earth
large, & more
than medi-
crimable
than the medi-
crimable
Cite of Hea-
ven in glorie
of it. & so.
The situation
12000 bridges
The Ditch.

Ten Market
places.

The high street
The main
Channell.

The Markets.

Pearces of ten
pound.

Trades of di-
vers forces.

A busy Cite.

The Quinfai
Citizens and
their condi-
tion.

come to Quinfai, which for the excellency hath that name (interpreted Cite of Heaven) for in the World there is not the like, in which for many pleasures, that a man would think he were in Paradise. In this Cite Master Marco Polo hath often bene, and considered the fame with great diligence, observing the whole state thereof, setting down the fame in his memorials, as here shall be declared briefly. This Cite by common opinion, is an hundred miles in circuit; for the streets and channells thereof are very wide. There are Market places exceeding large. On the one side a close Lake of fresh water, on the other a great River which enters in many places, and carries away all the filth of the Cite, and so runneth into that Lake, thence running his course to the Ocean: which causeth a good ayre, and commodious passage both by land, and by tide channels. There may goe both Carts and Barges to carrie necessaries: and the report is, that there are twelve thousand Bridges great and small, and those on the chiefe channels are so high that a ship without her Malt may passe vnder, and above, Chariots and Horles.

On the other side the Cite is a Ditch, about fortie miles long, which endeth it on that side large and full of water from the River, made by the ancient Kings of that Prouince, both to reue the overflowings of the water, and to fortifie the Cite: the earth which was taken out being layd within as a banke or hill encompassing. There are ten chiefe Market-places (besides infinite others along the streets) which are square, halfe a mile in each square. And from the forefront of them is a principall street fortie paces wide, running right from one end of the Cite to the other, with many Bridges traueling it. And every foure miles is found such a Market-place, two miles, as is said, in compasse. There is also one large channell, which runnes against the said street, behind the Market-places, on the next banke whereof are erected great Store-houses of stone, where the Merchants from India, and other parts lay up their Merchandise, at hand and commodious to the Market-places. In each of these Market-places is a concourse three dayes in the weeke of persons betwixt force and fiftie thousand, which bring thither all things that are desired for mans life, of all beastes of game, and fowles; that Lake yielding fish commodiously to be taken them up, that for a Venetian groat you may haue two Geese, and foure Ducks for as much. Then follow the Butcher-vens of Veale, Beefe, Kid, and Lambe, which the great and rich men eat for the poore eat vnclean meats without respect. There are all sorts of herbs and fruits continually, and amongst the rest huge Peares, weighing ten pounds a piece, white within like paste, and very fragrant: Peaches yellow and white very delicate: Grapes grow not there, but are brought from other places dried very good, and Wine also, but not so esteemed in those parts, that of Rice and Spices contenting them. Euery day from the Ocean is brought up the River (which is the space of fife and twentie miles) great quantitie of fish, besides that of the Lake, to much as a man would thinke would neuer be bought, and yet in a few houres is gone. All those Market-places are encompassed with high houses, and vnderneath are shops of Artificers, and all sort of Merchandise, Spices, Jewels, Pearles, and in some onely Rice-wine. Many streets answer one another in the said Market-places. In some of them are many Bats of cold water accommodated with attendants of both sexes, a thing which from children they vie themselves vnto. There are chambers also in the said Bats with hot waters for strangers which are not accustomed to the cold waters. They wash euery day; neither doe they eat before they have washed.

In other streets are mercenarie Prostitutes in such number, that I dare not report it: and not onely there the Market-places, where they haue their places appointed, but thorow all the Cite they stand very pompously with great odours, many seruants, and their houses adorne. These are very practise in making sports, and dalliances, and sweetest pleasures rauihing (sole) forth of themselves. In other streets are the Physicians, the Astrologers, they which teach to reade and write, and infinite other Trades. At each end of euery Market-place is a Palace, where Lords and Gouernours are appointed by the King to determine difficulties which happen betwixt Merchants or others, as also to looke to the Guards on the Bridges, punishing the negligent. Alongst the principall Street (whereof wee spake) on both sides are great Palaces with Gardens; and neere them houses of Artificers, and such multitudes of people continually going to and fro, that a man would wonder whence such multitudes should be prouided of victuals. And Master Marco learned of an officer of the Customs-house in Quinfai, that by reckonings a prepared the daily expence of Pepper in Quinfai, to be three and fortie Soma, and euery Soma is two hundred twentie three pounds. Hence may be guessed the quantitie of Victuals, Fieles, Wine, Spices, and were there spent.

The Inhabitants are Idolaters, spend Paper money, are white and faire complexion, appalled for the most part in Silke, which grows in that Territorie abundantly, besides that which is brought from other places. There are twelue principall mysteries, each of which haue one thousand shops; and in each shop or standing, are ten men, fiftene, or twentie at worke, and in some Fortie vnder one Master. The rich Masters doe no worke with their hands, but stand ciuilly adorne, or rather pompously, especially their wives, with Jewels inualueable, and although the ancient Kings ordained, that the child should bee of the fathers Trade; yet the rich

rich are permitted not to worke, but to keepe shop, and men working in the same Trade. Their Houses are well ordered, and wrought richly, adorned with Pictures and other splendidous coſts. The Natives are peaceable, know not to manage Armes, nor keepe them in their Houses; nor is there strife and debate amongst them. They make their worke with great sinceritie. They loue in such amitie, that one Street seems as one Houſe, without jealousies of their Wives, which they hold in great respect, and it would be reputed great disgrace to speake a dishonest word to a married Woman. They entertaine Merchant-ſtrangers kindly, both in their houses, and with best aduice for their affaires. But they are loth to fee Souldiers and the Guards of the Grand Can, as bounteous, by whom they are bereft of their naturall Lords and Kings.

- 10 About the Lake are built faire Buildings and great Palaces of the chiefe men: and Temples of their Idols with Monasteries of many Monks. In the midst of the Lake are two Ilands, vpon each of which is a Palace with incredible numbers of Rooms; whither they resort vpon occasions of Marriages or other Feasts; where Prouisions of Vessels, Naperye, and other things are maintayned in common for such purposes, one hundred sometimes accommodated at once in several Rooms. In the Lake also are Boates and Barges for pleasure, adorned with faire Seates and Tables, and other prouisions for Bankets, covered aboue and plaine, vpon which men stand with Poles to make the Boate goe, the Lake being but shallow. Within they are painted; without, are windowes to open and shut at pleasure. Nor can any thing in the World seeme more pleasant then in this Lake to haue such an object, the Cite so fully presenting it selfe to the eye, with so many Temples, Monasteries, Palaces, Gardens with high Trees on the Waters, Barges, People: for their custom is to worke one part of the day, and to dispende the more part to this place with their Friends, or with Women in the Lake; or else by Chariots riding thorow the Cite, which is also another of the Quinfai pleasures. For all the streets are paved with stone, as also are all the high Wayes in the Prouince of Mangi, onely for the Postes is left on the side, a space vnpacked. The principall street of Quinfai is paved ten paces on each hand, and in the midst it is full of Grauell with passages for the Water, which keeps it alway cleane. On this street are alway innumerable long close Chariots, accommodated with Clothes and Cushions of silke, for six persons; which follow themselves in the street, or goe to Gardens, and there passe the time in places made by the Gardeners for that purpose, and returne at night in the said Chariots.

- 30 When one is borne, the Father sets downe the print of Time, and wish that note goes to the Astrologer to consult of his future fortunes. Of these Astrologers are a great number in euery Market place. They will not celebrate a marriage without such consultation. When one dies that is of note, his Kindred clothe themselves in Canuall, and so both Men and Women accompany him to the burning place, playing on Instruments, and singing all the way prayers to their Idols: and being come to the place, cast into the fire many Papers of Cotton, whereon are painted Slaues, Horſes, Camels, Clothes of gold and silke, Monies, which they thinke hee shall really possesse in another World; and make such mirthfullie, in conceit of the ioy wherewith the Idols there rescue his Soule, where hee begimeth (they say) to liue anew. In euery street are 40 Towers of stone, whiche in danger of fire they flye to carrie their goods, their timber houses being such fabrick to such calamities.

- The Can hath ordained that on the most part of the Bridges, day and night, there stand vnder Wardens, a court ten Guardians, fye by day and fye by night: and in euery Guard is a Tabernacle of Wood with a great Balon, whereby they know the houres of the day and night, which at euery houres end the Wardens strike to notifie what houre, one, two, &c. beginning at the Sunne rising, and then againe at the beginning of the night. They walke up and downe, and if any haue a light or fire after the depared time, they caule him to answer it before the Iustices or Gouernours abroad; or if any walke later, If any be not able to worke, they carrie him to Hospitals, of Hospitals, which are exceeding many founded by the Kings of old, with great reuenues, thorow the Cite. When they are well againe, they are compelled to worke. If a fire happen; these from diuers places come to quench it, and to carrie the goods into Boates, or the Ilands, or those Towers: for in the night the Citizens dare not come out, but those who are in danger. The Can alway keepeth here store of his best and faithfullst Souldierie, as being the best and richest place in the World. Within a mile of each other are builded Rampiers of wood, where a found is made to be heard further off, for like purpose.

- When the Can had reduced all Mangi to his obedience, hee diuided it (being before but one Kingdom) into nine parts, and set a King ouer each, which there administers iustice. Euery yeere they giue account to the Can Officers of the reuenues, and other accidents; and euery three yeeres are charged, as all other Officers are. One of these Deputie-Kings is resident at Quinfai, who is Gouernour of about one hundred and fortie Cities, all rich and great. Nor may this be a wonder, seeing in Mangi there are twelue thousand Cities, all inhabited with rich and industrious people. In euery of which the Can maintayneth a Garrison, proportionable to the greatness and occasions, one thousand, ten or twentie thousand; not all Tartars, but Catayans; for the Tartars are Horſe-men, and keepe where they may exercise their Horſes. Into Catay he sends

Nine Vice-
roys in Man-
da.

12000 Cities,
and their gar-
rison.

those of *Mangi*, and *Cahayari* hither such as are fit for Armes, of which he makes choise every third yeere : and sends for foure or fve yeeres together into places twentie dayes journey from their Country, and then suffers them to returne home, others succeeding. And most part of the *Can* Receipts are this way expended : and if any Citie rebell, he suddenly from the next Garrison rayleth an Armie to reduce or destroy them. This Citie of *Quinsai* hath in continuall Garrison thirtie thousand Souldiers ; and that which hath least, hath one thousand in Horse and Foote.

Fanfurs Palace To speake now of the Palace of King *Fanfurs* ; his Predecessors caused to enclose a place of ten miles circuit with high walls, and divided it into three parts. That in the midst was entred by one Gate ; on the one side and the other were great and large Galleries, the Roofs sustayned by 10 Pillars painted, and wrought with gold and fine azure ; there were smaller at the entrie, and the further the greater ; the fairest at the end, the Roofs fairly adorned with gold, and on all the Walls layes, *Fanfurs* kept his Court and feasted his principall Lords, the great Masters, and rich Artificers of *Quinsai*, ten thousand at a time under those Terraces. This dured ten or twelve dayes with incredible magnificence, every guest indowring to present himselfe in greatest pompe. Behind this middle-most building was a wall, and going out which divided the Palace in which was, as it were, a Cloyster with Pillars, sustayning the Porch or Terrace round about the Cloyster : wherein were Chambers for the King and Queene curiously wrought. From this Cloyster was entrance into a Gallerie six paces wide, in length extending to the Lake, all covered. On each side of this Gallerie were ten Courts, answering one another fashioned like Cloysters, each Court having fiftie Chambers with their Gardens, and in them one thousand Ladies abode, which the King kept for his service, who sometimes with the Queene, sometimes with them, went in his Barge on the Lake for solace, or to visit his Idoll Temples.

1200. Women
in 1000. chambers.

Great Parks.

The other two parts of the Serrail were divided into Groves, Lakes, Gardens planted with Trees ; in which were inclosed all sorts of beasts, Roes, Bucks, Stags, Hares, Conies ; and there the King inclosed himselfe with his Damfels in Charets or on Horse-backe, no man entring there. There did he cause *Thse* to hunt with his Dogs, where whereto they went into those Groves, which answered one another over the Lakes, and there leaving their garments care forth naked, and set themselves a swimming in the Kings presence. Sometimes he would take his repast in those Groves being served by those Damfels, without once thinking of Armes, which *swen* meat cost him the foure *saue* yee have heard. All this was told mee by a rich old Merchant of *Quinsai*, whiles I was there, one which had bene an inward familiar of King *Fanfurs*, and knew all his life, and had seene that Palace flourishing, into which he would needs bring me. The Viceroy now resides there ; and the first Galleries remaine as they were wont, but the Damfels Chambers are ruined ; the wall also which encompassed the Woods and Gardens is fallen to the ground, the Beasts and Trees being gone.

The Sea Gam-
ing.

1600000. house-
holds in *Quinsai*.

Revenues of
Quinsai, &c.
the appurtenances
twentie three
Millions of
Duckats, and
1000000.
Customes.

Twentie five miles from *Quinsai* is the Ocean betwixt the East and North-east, neere to which is a Citie, called *Gampu*, a goodly Port, where arrive the *Indian* ships of merchandise. Whiles *M. Marco* was in *Quinsai*, account being given to the Grand *Can* of the Revenues, and the number of the Inhabitants, he hath seene that there have bene enrolled one hundred and sixtie Toman of firs, reckoning for a fire, the Familie dwelling in one house : every Toman containeth ten thousand, which makes sixteen hundred thousand Families : of all which there is but one Church of *Christians*, and three *Nestorians*. Every house-holder is bound to have written over his doore, the names of the whole house-hold, Males and Females ; also the number of Horses ; the names added or blotted out as the Familie increaseth or decreaseth. And this is observed in *Mangi* and *Catay*.

Those also that keepe Innes, write in a Booke the names of their Guests, and the day and hour of their departure, which Booke they send daily to the Lords or Magistrates, which relate at the Market-places. In *Mangi* the poore which are not able to bring vp their children, sell them to the rich.

The Revenues which accrew to the *Can* from *Quinsai*, and the others pertaining thereto, being the ninth part of the Kingdom of *Mangi*, are first, of Salt every yeere eightie Toman of gold (every Toman is eightie thousand Sazzi of gold, and every Sazze is more then one Florin of gold) which will amount to six Millions and foure hundred thousand Duckats. The cause is, that that Province being nigh the Sea, there are many Lakes where the water in Summer is coagulated into Salt, where with five other Kingdoms of that Province are served. There is store of Sugar growing, which payeth as all other Spices doe, three parts and a third in the hundred. The like of Rice-wine. Also those twelve myteries (which we said had twelve thousand shops) and the Merchants which bring goods hither, or carrie any hence by Sea, pay the same price. They which come from faire Countries and Regions, as from the *Indes*, pay ten per cento. Likewise, all things there breeding, as Beasts, and growing out of the Earth, and Silke, pay tribute to the King. And the computation being made in the presence of *M. Marco*, besides Salt (before mentioned), yearly amounts to two hundred and ten Toman, which will be sixteene millions of gold and eight hundred thousand.

From

FROM *Quinsai* one dayes journey to the South-east are all the way Houses, Villages, faire Gardens, plentifull of Victuals, at the end whereof is *Tapman*, a faire and great Citie, in the jurisdiction of *Quinsai*. Three dayes thence South-east is *Yagun*, and two dayes further may you ride that way, all the way finding Castles, Cities, and cultivated Places, in such Neighbour-hoods, that they seeme to Traudlers all one Citie ; all in the same jurisdiction of *Quinsai*. There are great Canes fiftene paces long and foure palmes thicke. Two dayes journey further is the Citie *Gongui*, faire and great, and travelling further South-east are inhabited places, full of People and Trades. And in this part of *Mangi* are no Muttons, but Bees, Buffals, Goates, and Swine in great plenty. At the end of foure dayes journey is found the Citie *Zengian*, built on a Hill in the midst of a River, which with her parted Armes embraceth and encompasseth it, and then runne one to the South-east, the other to the North-west. They are in the jurisdiction of *Quinsai*, are Merchants, Idolaters, haue store of Game. Three dayes journey thence, thorow a goodly Country exceedingly inhabited, stands *Giesu*, a great Citie, the last of *Quinsai* Kingdom, after which you enter into another Kingdom of *Mangi*, called *Concha*. (The principall Citie thereof is *Fingui*) by the which you traueil, six dayes journey South-east, thorow Hills and Dales, alway finding places inhabited and store of Game of Beasts and Fowle. They are Idolaters, Merchants, subject to the *Can*. There are four Lions, three groves of Ginger and Galingale plants, with other sorts of Spices, eightie pounds of Ginger for a *Saffron* great. There is an herbe, whose fruit hath the effect and gives the colour and smell of *Saffron*, but is not *Saffron*, vntill in their meates. They voluntarily eat mans flesh, if they die not of sickness, as daintier than others. When they goe to Warres, they shawe to the eares and paint their faces with azure, they are all Foot save the Capitaine which rideth, and vie Swords and Lances : are very cruel, and when they kill an Enemy, presently drinke his blood, and after eat his flesh.

After those six dayes traueil is *Quinsai*, a great Citie with three Bridges, each eight paces broad and about one hundred long ; the Women faire, delicate ; and they haue store of Silke and Cotton, are great Merchants, haue store of Ginger and Galingale. I was told, but saw them not, that they haue Hennes without feathers, hayrie like Cats, which yet lay Egges and are good to eat. Store of Lions make the way dangerous. After three dayes, in a populous Country which are Idolaters, and haue store of Silke, is the Citie *Yagun*, where is great plenty of Sugar, sent thence to *Cambala*, which they knew not to make good till they became subject to the *Can* ; in whose Court were *Babylonians*, which taught them to refine it with ashes of certayne Trees, they before only boyling it into a blacke pattle. Fiftene miles further is *Campis*, still in the Realme of *Concha* ; and here the *Can* kepten an Armie in realme for guard of the Country. Thorough this Citie passeth a River a mile broad, fairly built on both sides, and stored with Ships of Sugar and other lading. This River disembokes from hence five dayes journey South-east, at *Zaitum*, a Sea Port, from whence the rich Ships of *India* come to this pleasant and fertile Citie, as is the way betwixt, in which are Trees or Shrubs of *Cassia*.

Zaitum is a famous Port, where many Ships arrive with merchandise, thence dispersed thorow all *India*. There is fish store of Pepper, that the quantitie which comes to *Alexandria* to the West, is little to it, and as it were one of a hundred : the concourse of Merchants is incredible, it being one of the most commodious Ports of the World, exceeding profitable to the *Can*, which Custometh ten of the hundred of all merchandise. They pay so much for hire of ships also that there is not about one halfe of their merchandise remaining entrie to themselves, and yet is that moitie very gainfull to them. The Citie is Idolatrous, given to pleasure ; in it is much embroidery and Aras work. The River is great, very wide and swift, and one arte of it goeth to *Quinsai*, at the putting of which is *Tangui* situate, where Porcelaine dishes are made (as I was told) of a certaine Earth which they cast vp in great Hills, and set lie to all weathers for thirtie or fortie yeeres without stirring : after which refining by time, they make Dishes, paint them and then put them in the Furnace. You may there haue eight Dishes for one *Venian* Great. In this Kingdom of *Concha* the *Can* hath as great Revenue almost as of the Kingdom of *Quinsai*. In these two *M. Marco* was, and in none of the other nine Kingdoms of *Mangi* (in all which is one speech vied, with variouse of Dialect, and one sort of writing) and therefore will speake no more of them ; but in the next Booke discourse of *India* the Greater, the Middle, and the Lesse, in which hee was both in the service of the *Can*, and also in his returne with the Queene to *Argon*.

p. IX.

The Ships of India described, the Isle of Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Islands, the two Iauas, Zeilan and other Islands, with the rarities therein.

Here begins
the third book
of M. Polo's
Ships of India.

WE now enter into India and begin with their Ships, which are made of Firre, and the Zipango Tree, with one deck, on which are twelve Cabins (or less, as the Ships are in quantity) each for one Merchant. They have a good Rooter, and four Malts with four Sailes, and some two Malts, which they erect or take down at pleasure. Some greater Ships have thirteen Cotts, or divisions, on the inside made with boards incased, that if by blow of a Whale or touch on a Rokee water gets in, it can goe no further then that division; which being found is soone mended. They are all double, that is, have two course of boards one within the other, and are well calked with Ocum, and nayled with Iron, but not pitched (for they have no Pitch) but anointed with the Oile of a certayne Tree mixed with Lime and Hemp beaten small, faster then Pitch or Linne. The greater Ships have three hundred Mariners, others two hundred, one hundred and fiftie, as they are in biggish, and from five to six thousand bags of Pepper. And they were wont to be greater then now they are; the Sea having broken into Ports and Harbours, that the defect of water, some places, causeth them to build little. They vyle also Oares in these Ships, four men to an Oare; and the greater Ships have with them two or three ships leffe, able to carry a thousand bags of Pepper, hauing fixte or more Mariners, which leffe ships serue sometimes to tow the greater. They have also with them ten small Boats for fishing and other seruises, fastned to the sides of the greater ships, and let downe when they please to vyle them. Also they flit their ships after a yeres voyage, so that then they haue three course of boards; yea proceed on in this manner sometimes till there be fix courses, after which they breake them vp. Hauing spoken of the ships, we will speake of India, and first of certayne Islands.

Zipangu.

DE MACHIAVELLI
saw golden
fishes, and
make difference between
his owne Re-
lations and
those which
he had recei-
ued from the
second hand;
although it be
true of such
gilding in Eden
Is. 4. 1. & 2. 3.

Zipangu is an Island in the East, one thousand and five hundred miles distant from the shoares of *Mangi*, very great, the people white and faire, of gentle chaucior, in Religion Idolaters, and haue a King of their owne. They haue gold in great store, for f.w Merchants come thither, and the King permits no exportation of it. And they which haue had commerce there tell of the Kings house couered with Gold, as Churches here with Lead, gilded Windows, Floors of gold: there are many Pearles, Once, the fame of these riches made *Cublai Can* to send to conquer it, two Barons, with a great fleet of ships, one named *Abbascan*, and the other *Confinen*, which going from *Zaitum* and *Quinsai* arrived there; but falling out betwixt themselves, could take but one Citie, and there belicaded all they tooke fve eight persons, which by an indurated precious stone mofel in the right arme betwixt the skinne and flesh, could not be wounded with Iron; witeruon, with wooden Clubs, at the command of the two Barons they were flaine. It hapned one day, that a Northerne wind made great danger to the ships there riding, so that some were lost, some returned further into Sea, and others with the two Leaders and 40 other Principals returned home. Out of many broken ships some escaped by boards, and swimming on an Island not inhabited four miles off *Zipangu*, and were about thirtie thousand, with out provisions of victuals or Armes, against whom the *Zipanguers*, after the Tempest was calmed, set out a fleet of ships and an Armie. These coming on Land to seeke the wracked Tartars without order, gave occasion to the Tartars to wheele about, the Island being high in the midst) and to gett vsence to their ships, which were left vnmanned with the Streamers displaid; and with them they went to the chiefe Citie of *Zipangu*, where they were admitted without suspicion, and found few others but Women. The King of *Zipangu* besieged them six months, and they hauing no reliefe yielded themselves, their lues laued: This happened *An. 1264*. The *Can* for this disorder of his two Commanders, cutt off the head of one, and sent the other to a 30 faine Island, called *Zorca*, where he causeth Offenders to die, by sewing them, their hands bound, in a new-blayed hide of a B. fill, which drying turneth to as it puts them in a little-cute to a miserable death. The Idols in this and the adjoining Islands are made with heads of Kine, Swine, Dogs, and other fashions more monstrous, as with faces on their shoulders, with four, five, or an hundred hands (some, and to these they ascribe most power and doe most reverence) and say, that so they learned of their Progenitors. They sometimes eate the Enemies which they take, with great ioy, and for great dauides.

This punish-
ment the Mo-
guls vied to Co-
stantinople, and in
many things
vye full like
Sut. 1. 1. and
out of the Re-
lations agree
with those of
Polo the Mogul
being the Tartar
original:
Nouescent
Coun. 1. 1. in
pronounced
Class
The Manfou

The Sea in which this Island standeth, is called the Sea of *Can* or *Chin*, that is the Sea against *Mangi*; and in the language of that Island, *Mangi* is called *Chin*: which Sea is so large, that the Mariners and expert Pilots which frequent it, say, that there are fve hundred four hundred and fortie Islands therein, the most part inhabited, and that there grows no Tree which yields not a good smell, and that there grows many Spices of diuers kinds, especially *Lignum Aloe*, and Pepper black and white. The ships of *Zaitum* are a yere in their voyage, to they goe in Winter and returne in Summer, hauing Windes of two sorts, which keepe their seasons. And

this Country is farre from India. But I will leaue them (for Ineuer was there, nor are they subiect to the *Can*) and returne to *Zaitum*. From hence sailing South-westward one thousand five hundred miles, passing a Gulfe called *Cheinan* (which continues two monthes sailing to the Northward, still confining on the South-east of *Mangi*, and elsewhere with *Ania*, and *Toloman*, and other Pronounes before named) within it are infinite Islands, all in manner inhabited. In them is found store of Gold, and they trade one with the other. This Gulfe is named after World.

After one thousand and five hundred miles sailing ouerthwart this Gulfe, is the Country *Zi. Zianba*, ambia, rich and great, hauing a King and Language proper, Idolaters, and paying tribute to the Grand *Can* of twenty Elephants, and *Lignum Aloe* in great quantitie yearly. *Anno 1268*, the *Can* hearing of the riches of this Island sent thither *Sayan* with an Armie, to invade it. He combate the King thereof was old, and made this composition of tribute. There are many Woods of blacke Ebonie.

Saying thence betwixt the South and South-east one thousand & five hundred miles is *Iaua*, supported by Mariners, the greatest Island in the World, about three thousand miles in circuit, vnder a King which payeth tribute to none, the *Can* not offering to subiect it for the length and danger of the voyage. The Merchants of *Zaitum* and *Mangi* fetch thence store of Gold and Spices. South and South-westward fix hundred miles from *Iaua* are two Islands, one *Sondur*, which is the greater; the other *Candur*, leffe, both delatate. Fifty miles South-east from them is a Province of firme land, very rich and great, named *Lochea*, the people Idolaters, hauing a Language and King peculiar. There grows Brazil-wood in great quantitie, store of Gold, Elephants, wilde beastes, and fowle, a fruit called *Berci*, as great as Limons, very chere. The place is mountainous and lauge, and the King permits not many to come thither, if they should know his secrets. There is store of Porcelaine shells for money traile, and other places.

Five hundred miles Southward from *Lochea* is the *Pentan*, a large place, which produeth in all the Woods sweet Trees: sixtie miles of the way the Sea is in many places but foure fathoms: after which being sailed to the South-east, thurtie miles further is the Island and Kingdom of *Malsur*, which hath a peculiar King and Language to it selfe; and there is much Merchandise of Spices. From *Pentan* one hundred miles South-east is *Iaua* the leffe, encompassing about two thousand miles, and hath in it many Kingdomes, and as many Languages. They are Idolaters, haue store of Treasure, Spices, Ebonie, Brazil, and are so farre to the South, that the North Starre cannot there be seen. Maier *Aluaca* was in sixte of those Kingdomes, of which shall here be spoken, leaving the other two, which he saw not.

One of thole eight Kingdomes is *Felch*: here the Idolaters by frequent Trade of *Saracens* are conuerted to the Law of *Mahomet*, in the Cities, the Mountaines being heathly, eating mans flesh and all impure food; and so ship all day what they first see in the morning. Next to this is *Bafma*, which hath a Language by it selfe; they live without Law, like beasts, and sometimes lend Hawkes to the *Can* (who challenge all the land) for Presents. They haue wilde Elephants, and Vnicornes make lelle the Elephants, like the Buffals in harte. Their feet are like Elephants feet. They haue one horne in the midst of the fore-head and hurne no boole therewith; but with the tongue and knee. For on their tongue is a certain long prickles and sharpe, and when they hurt any, they trample on it, and presse it by downe with their knee, and then wound him with their tongue. The best of the land is the mire, and are filthie beasts, and not fuch as they (*Vnicornes*) are said to be in our parts, which suffer themselves to be taken of Maidens, but quite contrarie. They haue many Apes and of diuers fashions. They haue Goshawks all blackes Ruens, great, and good for prey. There are certaine small Apes faced like men, which they put in Boxes, and prelerue with Spices, and sell them to Merchants, who carrie them thar w. the World for *Pigmeys*, or little men.

Samarra is the next Kingdome where Maier *Mares* stayed five monthes against his will, forced by ill weather. There none of the Starres of *Charles wane* are seen. Hee declined well on land with two thousand people, and there fortifie. For that fve monthes, for feare of chellish British man-eaters, and traded meane while with them for victuals. They haue excoit in fish Wine of the Date-seed, very medicinall for P. tickle, Dropie, distates of the Syllene; 10 to vyle white, some red; and *India Nut* as big as a mans head, the middle whereof is full of a pleasant liquor, better then Wine: they eat all fish, except without difference.

Dragonas is another of that Kingdomes, clymed by the *Can*, hauing a proper King and Language. It was told of an admirable custom, that when one is sick, they send to enquire of the Starres whether he shall keepe it: the Deu is answered, No; the kindred send for some whole of it, to strangle the sick, partie, after which they cut him in pieces, and the kindred eat him with great ioy, eunt to the marrow of the bones, For (say they) if any substance of him should remaine, worms would breed thereof, which would waste food, and to die, to the great torture of the soule of the deceased. The bones they after take and carrie into some Cane in the hills, that no bait may touch them. If they take any strang, they also eat him.

L. B. I.

Iaua maior, 1
suppositio est
Borneo, and
Iaua minor, that
which fill is
called Iaua.

Lochea.
A South Con-
tinence, it uses
P. 1264.
M. 1264.
Iaua minor, in
which are
eight King-
domes. The
Mahometans by
commerce

first, and after
by conquest, the
region here
sherd
all things, both
Names, Pro-
p. 1264.
Iaua minor,
they knew not
being found,
and reco-
lled to see none.

Vnicornis, or
rather, some
kind of Rhin-
oceros.
Pigmeys, now
made.

See of this
Wine (1264)
in Maier 1264
p. 1264. 1264
See of this
Dragonas.

Lambri.

Lambri is a fifth Kingdome of *Iana* in which is store of Bravill, of the seeds whereof Master *Marco* brought to *Venice*, and sowed them, but in wayne, the soyle being too cold. Some men (the most) in this Kingdome haue tayles more then a palme long, like Dogs, but not hairy; and these dwell in the Mountaines our of Cities. They haue Vnicornes in great plentie, and chafe of beafts and fowles.

Fenfire.

Sage, (seen Sir
F. Dr. ke, and
rebre Indian
Rivier.

Fenfire, the sixth Kingdome hath the best Camfire, which is sold weight for weight with Gold. In that Prouince they take meale out of great and long trees, as great as two men can fathom, whence taking the thinnest barke and wood about three fingers thicke, the pith within is meale, which they put in water, and stirre well, the lightest drowle swimming, and the purest falling to the bottom; and then the water being cast away, they make thereof palle, of which Master *Marco* brought to *Venice*, talking like Barley bread. The wood of this tree throwne into the water sinkes like Iron, whereof they make Lances, but thort, for the long would be too heauie to beare: these they sharpen, and burne at the tops, which so prepared will pierce an Armour sooner then if they were made of Iron.

Nocuran.

Angaman.

Zeilan.

About one hundred and fiftie miles from *Lambri*, lying Northwards, are two Ilands, one called *Nocuran*, in which they lue like beafts, goe all naked, men and women, and worship Idols, haue excellent Trees, Cloues, Sanders white and red, *Indian* Nuts, Bravill, and other spices: the other, *Angaman*, liuage as the former, and I was told, they had Dogs heads and teeth.

Saying hence one thousand miles to the West, and a little to the North-west, is *Zeilan*, two thousand and four hundred miles in circuit, and of old encompassed three thousand and sixe hundred miles, as is seene in the Maps of the Mariners of these parts, but the North winds haue made a great part of it Sea. It is the best land of the World. The King is named *Sender-nax*. The men and women are Idolaters, goe naked (save that they cover their priuities with a cloth) haue no Corne, but Rice, and Oyle, of *Selanino*, Milke, Fleish, Wine of trees, abundance of Bravill, the best Rubies in the World, Saphires, Topazes, Amethysts, and other Gems. The King is said to haue the best Rubie in the World, one palme-long, and as big as a mans arme, without spot, shining like a fire, not to be bought for money. *Indian* Canes as the former, and the value of a Cite for it, but the King answered, he would not give it for the treasure of the world, nor part with it, hauing bene his Ancestours. The men are vassal for warres, and hire others when they haue occasion.

A glorious
Rubie.

D. X.

Of the firme Land of the Greater India.

Malabar.

See my Pilg.
L. 5. c. 11.Bread-deca-
tions.Most of these
following ca-
stomes are still
in vye, as in
Amphitheatron,
and in my Pilg. 5.
c. 11. c. 12.

The great *Zeilan* lying fiftie miles to the West is the great Prouince of *Malabar*, which is not an Iland, but firme Continent, called *India the greater*, the richest Prouince in the World. There are in it four Kings, the chiefe of which is *Senderbad*, in whose Kingdome they fish for Pearles, to wit, betwixt *Malabar* and *Zeilan*, in a Bay where the Sea is not above ten or twelue fathome, in which duers descend, and in bags or nets tryed to their bodies bring vp the Oysters in which they are. And because there are great fishes which kill the Fishermen, they hire certaine *Bramines* to charme them (being skilfull to charme all sorts of beafts also and birds) and these haue the twentieth of the King's tennie. These Oysters are found all April, and till the middle of May, and not else: in September they finde them in a place about three hundred miles off, and till the middle of October. The King goeth as naked as the rest, save that he weareth some honorable Ensignes, as a Collier of precious stones about his necke, and a threed of Silke to his breast with one hundred and foure faire Pearles (as Beads) to number his Prayers, of which he must daily say so many to his Idols: like Bracelets he weareth on three places of his armes, and likewise on his legs; and on his fingers also and toes. The prayers which he sayeth are *Pacauca, pacauca, pacauca*, one hundred and foure times. This King hath one thousand women, and if any please his sense he takes her; as one he did from his brother, whence warres had followed, but the mother threatening to cut off her breasts which had nourished them, if they proceeded, stayed the broyle. He hath many Horsemen for his Guard which alway accompany him, who when the King dies, throw themselves voluntarily into the fire wherein he is buried to doe him service in the next World. This and his brethren the Kings of *Malabar* buy their Horses from *Ommu*, and other parts. The Countrey breeds none, and if it happens sometimes, yet are they there bred ill-favoured and naught. Condemned persons will offer themselves to die in honour of such an Idol, which is performed with twelve Knives, and twelve wounds in diuers parts of the bodies, at every blow, saying, *I kill my selfe in honour of that Idol*, and the last he thrusts in his heart, and then is buried by his kindred. The wives also cast themselves into the fire with their husbands; they being disputed which refuse it.

They worship Idols, and most of them Bees, and would not eat of so filthy flesh as Bees,

for all the World. There are some called *Gau*, which eat these Bees which dye alone, may not kill them, and dawbe out their houses with Ox-dung. These *Gau* are of the Posteritie of those which flue *Saint Thomas*, and cannot enter the place where his bodie is, if ten men should carrie them. They sit on Carpets on the ground in this Kingdome, they haue no Corne but Rice, are no Warriours, kill no beafts, but when they will eat any get the *Saracens* to doe it, or other people; wash twice a day, morning and evening both men and women, and will not otherwise eat, which they which obferue not, are accounted Heretikes. They touch not their meat with the left hand, but vie that hand only to wipe, and other vnclean offices. They drinke each in his owne pot, and will not touch another mans pot, nor suffer their owne to touch their mouth, but hold it ouer and powre it in. To strangers which haue no pot they powre drinke into it, and should it drinke with them. Iustice is feuerly executed for Crimes, and Creditors may encompe their Debtors with a Circle, which he does not pale till hee hath paid or giuen security: if he doth, he is to be put to death; and *M. Marco* once saw the King himselfe on Horse-backe thus encircled by a Merchant whom he had long delayed and frustrated, neither would the King goe out of the Circle which the Merchant had drawne till he had satisfied him, the people applauding the Kings Iustice.

They are very scrupulous in drinking Wine of the Grape, and they which doe it are not admitted to be Witnesse; a thing denyed also to him which layles by Sea, for they say such men are desperate. They thinke Leachery no sinne. It is very hore, and they haue no raime but in June, Iuly, and August, without which refreshing of the Ayre they could not lue. They haue many Phylonomers and Sooth-sayers, which obferue beafts and Birds, and haue an vnluckie houre every day of the weeke, called *Chosack*, as on Munday betwixt two and three, on Tuesday, the third houre, on Wednesday the ninth, &c. throw all the yeare set downe in their Bookes. They curiously obferue Natuities: at thirteen years old they put the Boyes to get their owne liuings, which runne vp and downe to buy and sell, haue a little stocke giuen them to begin; and in *Pearle* fishing they buy a few Pearles, and sell them againe to the Merchants, which cannot well endure the Sunne for little gaine. What they get they bring to their Mothers to selle for them, but may not eat at their Fathers cost.

They haue Idols Males and Females, to which they offer their Daughters, which when the Monkes (or Priests) appoint, sing and dance to cheere the Idols and duers times set victuals before them saying, that they eat, leauing it the space of a meale, singing the while, and then they fall to eating in deed, after which they retorne home. The cause of these folacies is the house-hold quarrels betwixt the God and his Goddesse, which if they should not thus appease, they should lose their blessing.

The great men haue Litters of large Canes, which they can fasten artificially to some vpper place, to prevent *Tarantulas* biting and Fleas, and other Vermin; and for fresh Aire. The place of *Saint Thomas* his Sepulchre, is a small Cite, finally frequented by Merchants, infinitely by Christians and *Saracens* for devotion. The *Saracens* hold him a great Prophet and call him *Ananias*, that is a holy man of the Earth, where he was layne, which is red, and they call it with them with great reuerence, and gie it mixed with water to the sick. *Ananias*'s Church in the roome where Pilgrimes were receiued, but by a Vision of *Saint Thomas* in the night was so terrified that he quickly dyed the place. The Inhabitants are black, not so borne, but often anyont themselves with *Sessamine* Oyle to obayne that beautie: they paint the Deuill white, and their Idols black. The Beue-worshippers carry with them to battell, some of the haire of a wild Ox as a prelatiue against dangers; and therefore such haire are dearely prized.

Morphis or *Monsul* is Northward from *Malabar* five hundred miles, they are Idolaters. They haue Diamonds in their hills, which they search for after great rains. West-wards from *Saint Thomas* is *Lac*, whence the *Bramines* haue originally, which are the truest Merchants in the World, and will not lue for any thing, and trustily keepe any thing committed to their custody, or sell, or better Merchandise for others. They are knowne by a Cotton threed which they weare ouer the sholder tyed vnder the arme crossing the breast. They haue but one Wife, are great Diuiners of great abstinence and long life: obferue their owne shadow in the Sunne when they are to buy, and thence conserue according to their Discipline. They vie to chew a cetyne Herbe which makes their teeth good and helps digestion. There are some Religious of them called *Tingus*, which goe altogether naked, lue austere, worshipping the Beue, whereof they laue a little brail Image on their forehead, and of the Ox bones alies make an Orniment, where with they anyont their bodies in diuers places with great reuerence. They nor kill nor eat any quicke creature, nor herbe greene, or Root before it is dryed, eateing all things to haue a soule. They vie no Dishes but lay their Vands on dry leaues of Apples of Paraisie. They doe their Excrements in the Sands, and then disperse it: higher and thither, lest it should breed Wormes which must presently dye for want of food. Some of them lue to one hundred and fiftie yeares, and their bodies after death are burned.

Deuote.

Boyos put to
dying by Sea.Their Idols &
Votaries.Malabar is by
this Author
extended to
Chromadell
Alia.Morphis.
Lac.
Bramines.Sessamine Oil
dies, called
Tingus, and
Alia.

Adm sepulchre.
Sogomon barchan
the first cause
of Idolatry.

Cass superstitious.

Cass.

Cumari or
Cape Cumari
D. 9.

Pirates, still
vies.

* Here it appears the V-nicorne live mountains; is the Rhoenian; for India both no other.

Their Relations which follow by relation of others, are of little weight; yes, therefore I have omitted the greater part. I had trouble enough to find and translate the truth: and for such as love to hear by fables, as that of Ruch, &c. let them seek elsewhere.
12700. Islands.
India maior, media and minor.
Abissinia, or India media.
Soldan of A. din.

Frankincense.

In *Zeilan* I had forgot to tell of a high Mountayne, which none can ascend but by Iron chains, as I was told, in the top whereof the *Saraceni* lay is *Adams* Sepulchre, the Idolater say it is the body of *Sogomon barchan* the first Idol-founder, sonne to a King of that Island, which gave himselfe to a solitary life on the top of this hill, whence no pleasures nor perfections could draw him. His Father made an Image after his death to represent him, all of Gold adorned with Gemmes, and commanded all the Islanders to worship it, and hence began Idolatry. Higher they come from farre places in Pilgrimage; and there his haire, teeth, and a distill of his are refused, and solemnly thought. The *Saraceni* lay they are of *Adam*, which Report caused the *Can. Anno* 1281. to send Ambassadors thither, who obtained two teeth, and a distill, and some of his haire by grant of the King of *Zeilan*; which he caused to be received by the whole people of *Cam-* 10
balu, without the Cities, and brought to his presence with great honour.

Cass is a great City governed by *Asher*, one of the four Brethren, very rich and a good vicer of Merchants; he hath three hundred women. All the people have a custome to carrie in their mouths chewing, a leaf called *Tumbul*, with Spices and Lime. *Coulam* is five hundred miles North-west from *Malabar*, they are Idolaters; there are also *Christians* and *Jews* which have speech by themselves. They have Pepper, Brasil, Indico, Lions all blacke, Parrots of divers sorts, all white as Snow, others Azure, others Red, and some very little: Peacocks and *Pachens* much differing from ours, and greater, as are their fruits. They are lecherous, and marrie their sisters and kindred. There are many Astrologers and Physicians. In *Cumari* are Asps so great that they seeme men; and here we had fight of the North starre. *Dely* hath a proper King 20
and Language: the people Idolatrous and have store of Spices. The shippes of *Mangi* come thither.

Malabar is a Kingdome in the West, in which and in *Guzzerat* are many Pirates, which come to Sea with about hundred Sails, and rob Merchants. They bring with them their wives and children, and there abide all Summer. In *Guzzerat* is store of Cotton, the Trees fix fathoms (or paces) high, and there twenty yeeres; the Cotton of the old Trees is not good to spin, after they are past twelve yeeres old, but for Quills. There are many * Vnicornes: they have artificiall embroideries. In *Canoni* is store of Frankincense; it is a great City, where is great trade for Horses. In *Cambai* is much Indico, Buckram, and Cotton. *Sermahia* is a Kingdome of a peculiar language, Idolaters, Merchants, a good people. *Chesmacon* is a great Kingdome of Idolaters and *Saraceni*, the last Province of the greater India towards the North-west (*understand the Author according to his journey from China or Mangi by Sea*) five hundred miles from which, are said to be two lands, one of Men, the other of Women, those coming to thieft, and there staying March, April, and May. The Women keepe their Sonnes till twelve yeeres, and then send them to their Fathers. It seemes the Ayre admits no other coult. They are *Christians* and have their Bishop, subiect to the Bishop of *Socotera*; they are good Fishers and have store of Amber. *Socotera* hath an Archibishop, not subiect to the Pope, but to one *Zetalia* which resides in *Baldach*, who chooleth him. The *Socoterans* are Incanters and great Witches, as any in the world (howsoever excommunicated therefore by their Prelate) and raise Windes to bring backe such ships as have wronged them, in despite of all contrarie working.

A thousand miles thence Southward is *Magafhar*, one of the greatest and richest Isles of the World, three thousand miles in circuit, inhabited by *Saraceni*, governed by foure old men. The People live of merchandise, and sell great store of Elephants teeth. The Currents in these parts are of exceeding force. The sell of Jewels, called *Ruch*, like an Eagle, but of incomparable greatness, able to carrie an Elephant (*but I am not able to carrie it*). *Zeilan* also is said to be of great length, &c. there are Elephants, Giraffes, the eyes unlike to ours; the Men and Women are very deformed. I have heard Mariners and great Pilots of those parts report, and have scene them in their writings, which have compassed the Sea of *India*, that there are in it twelue thousand and foure hundred Islands, inhabited or desert. In *India maior*, which is from *Malabar* to *Chesmacon* are thirteene Kingdomes. *India maior* is from *Zimbab* to *Marsili*, in which are eight Kingdomes, besides Islands many. The second or middle *India*, is called *Abissinia*, the chief King is a *Christian*; there are six other Kings, three *Christians*, and three *Saraceni*, subiect to him; there are also *Jews*. Saint *Thomas* having preached in *Nubia*, came to *Abissinia*, and there did the like, and after to *Malabar*. They are great Warriors, alway in Armes against the *Soldan of Adem*, and the people of *Nubia*. I heard that *An. 1288*, the great *Abissinia* would have visited *Iersusalem*, but being dissuaded by reason of *Saraceni* Kingdomes in the way, he sent a Bishop of holy life to doe his deuotions, who in his returne was taken by the *Soldan of Adem*, and circumcised by force: whereupon the *Abissine* rayled a power, discomfited the *Soldan* with two other *Abummetan* Kings, tooke and spoyled *Adem*. *Abissinia* is rich in gold. *Efeor* is subiect to *Adem* for sixe miles distant South-east: where is store of white Frankincense very good, 50
drops from small Trees by incision of the bark; a rich merchandise, &c. Some in that Country for want of Cane make Basket of Reeds, whereof they have great plenty. They also feede their beafts with fishes. They take them in March, April, and May, &c.

Having spoken of the Provinces on the Coast, I will now returne to some Provinces more to

the North, where many *Tartars* dwell, which have a King called *Caid*, of the Race of *Cingis* *Caid* and his *Can*, but subiect to none. These observe the customes of their old Progenitors, dwell not in Cities, Castles, or Fortresses, but abide with their King in the Fields, Playnes, Valleys, and Forreils, and are esteemed true *Tartars*. They have no sort of Corne, but live of Flesh and Milke in great peace. They have store of Horses, Kine, Sheep, and other beafts. There are found great white Beares, twentie palmes long, black Foxes very great, white Alces, and little beafts called *Rondes* which beare the Sable Fures, and *Vari aculini*, and those which are called *Pharus rats*, which the *Tartars* are cunning to take. The great Lakes which are frozen except in a few months of the yeere, cause that the Summer is scarce to be traueled for myre. And therefore the 10
Merchants to buy their Fures, for fourteene dayes journey throw the Desert, have ice vp for each day a booke of Wood, where they abide and barter: and in Winter they die without wheeles, and plaine in the bottom, riding with a semi-circle at the top or end, swaine easily on the Ice by beafts like great Dogs * fix yoked by couples, the *Sledman* only with his Merchant and Fures sitting therein.

In the end of the Region of these *Tartars*, is a Countrey reaching to the furthest North, called *Darkness*, because the most part of the Winter months the Sonne appears not, and the Ayre is thicke and darkish, as betimes in the morning with vs. The men there are pale and great, have no Prince, and live like beafts. The *Tartars* oft rob them of their Cattell in those darke mountains, and left they should lose their way, they ride on Mares which have Colts sucking, which they leave with a Guard at the entrance of that Countrey, where the Light beginneth to faile, and when they have taken their prey gye reynes to the Mares, which hasten to their Colts. In their long continued day of Summer they take many the finest Fures (one occasion of the *Tartars* going to rob them) of which I have heard some are brought into *Russia*. *Russia* is a great Countrey 20
in that Northern Part of the world, the people are *Grecks*, *Christians*, the Men and Women faire, and pay Tribute to the King of the *Tartars* of the West, on whom they border on the East. There is store of Fures, Waxe, and Minerals of silver. It reacheth, as I was told, to the Ocean Sea; in which are store of Geralkons and Falcons.

* Perhaps these are a kind of Deere, Region of *Darkness*.

Russia.

To the Reader.

IN this admirable Voyage of Polo, I confesse, Inopem me copia fecit; the Translation which I had of *Major* Hakluyts from the corrupted Latine, being life then nothing (nimirum damno auctus fui) did me no stead but lust, whiles I would compare it with the Latine, and thought to amend it by the Italian; and was forced at last to recit both Latine and English, and after much vacation to present this thus, as it is, out of Ramusio. I have not given these words for word as an exact Translator, but the sense in all things; substantially, with longer Relations than I have admitted in others, because many which have read M. Paulus, never saw M. Polo, nor know the worth of the worsted Voyage, that perhaps any one man hath written; a man credible in that which he say himselfe, in some things received by Relation, rather telling what he heard, than that which I dare believe, and specially toward the end of his third Booke, which I have therefore more abridged. Ptie is it that time both 40
to growne and eaten some-where, and some-where denuded utterly many his names; and *Trails*, which new Lords and new (Loves) the Saraceni call *Congus*, especially ever since his time in those parts have caused. And farre easier by the Cans greatness then, and his employments under him, might hee know the World in those times; then in the combustions long since begonne and continued, in diversified and quarrelling States is possible. The *Saraceni* quarrelling with Ethnikes, Christians, and other *Saraceni*; the *Tartars* divided and sub-divided into so many quarrelling Serpentine heads, whereby that huge Isle is broken in pieces; the Chinese and others prohibiting traffick of Frangers, especially of their own, that I mention not Ethnikes and Moorish *Douglans*, amongst themselves. In the same time with Polo, 50
lived this following Armenian, of whom Ramusio relateth, and this Discourse mismatches that the Hoxby Land being quite lost, Pope Clement the Fifth minding to recover it, was given to understand that the Hoxby King which might be gotten from the Tartars, and withall of this Haimon or Antonie a *Kingman* of the Kingdom of Armenia, then living a Monk or Frier of the Order Premonstratensis in Episcopia in Cyprus; who in his young time had been exercised in the Warres betwixt the Tartars and Egyptian Solans, by whom he might receive the best Intelligence of Tartarian Affairs. He therefore (as he first removed the Court from Rome to France, where it abode fourteen yeeres) caused the said Haimon to be brought from Cyprus to France with all his Memorials and Writings of that subiect, and being come to Paris, caused one Nicolo di Falcone a Frenchman to write in French, which the other dictated in Armenian, which he had bene Anno 1297. A Copie of this Story written above two hundred yeeres since came to Ramusioes hand (where I have, that I say not you, are beholden) whence hee tooke that which concerned the *Tartars*, omitting the rest, for remitting rather his Reader to M. Polo. Betwixt which two some difference may seeme, but so little, that we need not aduertise thereof.

One thing is remarkable, that the Author and the next, who in many Geographical Notes agrees with him, divide Asia into two parts, one called profound or deepe, the other the greater, and divided in the mid

Hilton and
Mardouils agree in many
things.
The reason of
our method in
thus ordering
our Pilgrimes.
* Strab. l. ii. ad
eum Nat. Ca-
sauh.
* Dionys. Alex.
πεπεργας. vid
Eustach. com.

mid by the *Caipso* Sea and *Caucasia*, which our *Armenian* calls *Cocas*, which *Alexander* *poffe* nate, nor was ever *known* to the *Antients*, who called it beyond that *Hill* *Scythia*, as we call the most of it by a general name *Tartaria*. *Strabo* * hath made his division of *Afia* into the inner and vnder, *Taurus* being the *Empire*, which *Hill* (with *discreet* *Appellations*) beginning at *Pamphylia* runs: *Eastward* through the mid of *Afia* to the *Indies*, that part to the *North* being called *Afia* within (*Taurus*) and that to the *South* *Afia* without. Some *Antient* Geographers as *Dionysius* mentions, extended *Europe* to the *Caipso* Sea, which most of the *Antients* thought to concur with the *Ocean*, as the *Mediterranean*, *Arabian*, and *Perfic* do. *Dionysius* his *Verbes* are worth observation,

Μίαρα * γημὴν πίσης Λοίης ὅρος ἀμφιβέβηκεν,
 Ἀρξάμενον γαίης Παμφυλίδος ἄγχι καὶ Ἰ. δ' ὄρ. &c.

They called it *Taurus*, as there followes of the Bull-forme, &c

Οὐρεα Ταυροειδὲς τε καὶ ἑξυμῆλυν ἰδ' ἀν.

[illegible]

CHAP. V.

*The Historie of AYTON, or ANTHONIE the Armenian,
of Asia, and specially touching the
Tartars.*

δ. I.

*Of the Kingdome of Cathay, and diuers other Prouinces of Asia, and of
the first habitation of the Tartars: and of CANGIS, or
CINGIS his beginnings.*

The largeness
of the King-
dome of Ca-
thay.
Ilands.

Oile of oliues.

Their arrogant presumption,
Effeminate fearfulneſſe,

[illegible]

the Kings signe, according to which signe or marke: the pieces are of greater or smaller value; and if they begin by age to be wadded, or worn-out, leeke that bringeth them to the Kings Court; shall have new for them; of Gold and other Metals, like make Veffels, and other ornaments. Of this Kingdome of *Carthy* it is said, that it is in the beginning of the World, because the head thereof is in the Eaſt; and there is not knowne any other Nation to inhabit more Eaſterly thereunto; on the Weſt it conneſth on the Kingdome of *Tarſi*, on the North with the Deſert of *Belgian*. And on the South-side are the Ilands of the Ocean, afore mentioned.

[illegible]

20 *shay*, as *atoleiaid*; on the West it bordereth on the Kingdome of *Turquesan*, on the North on *cerryayne* Delert, and on the South-side it adioyneth to a very rich Prouince called *Sym*, which is situate betweene the Kingdome of *India* and *Cashain*, and in that Prouince are found Diamonds.

3. The Kingdom of *Turquistan* on the East side is confinical with the Kingdome of *Tarje*, on the West side with the Kingdome of the *Persians*, on the North side with the Kingdome of the *Cassians*, and on the South it reacheth out to the D:art of *India*. In this Kingdome are but few good Cities, but there are large Plains and good feeding for their flocks, therefore the Inhabitants for the most part are Shepherds, dwelling in Tents, and houses that may easily be removed from place to place. The greatest Cite of that Kingdome is called *Oovra*, there groweth much Barley of Wheat: no Wine atall, their Drink is *Cassia*, and other made Drinks, and Milke, they eatte Rice and Corn, and flesh, and are called *Turkes*. And almost all of them are of the Sect of wicked *Mahomet*, yet there is some amongst them of no Faith nor Religion, They have no peculiar Characters of their ownne, but doe live the *Arabike* Letters in their Cities or Campes.

4. The Kingdome of the *Carpianians*, is well stored with good Cities and Townes, and there are many Inhabitants, because the Land is fruitful and pleasant, with wheate, and other graine, is there in great quantity; but they have little Wine. This Kingdome is confined with a Wilderness of one hundred dayes Journey, in length on the West-side, and reacheth out to the *Caspian* Sea. On the North it bordereth on the Kingdome of *Cannians*, and on the South it hath the Kingdome of *Turgesians*. The chiefe Citie of that Kingdome is called *Carpine*, and the people are called *Carpianians*; being Pagans, which have neither Learning, nor Religion. But those which are called *Soldans*, are very fierce in Armes, and have their Language and Letters, and Ceremonies of the *Greekes*, and make the bodie of Christ after the *Greeke* manner, and are obedient to the Patriarchs of *Antioch*.

See Sir John
Mandeville's tra-
vels.

Of the King-
dome of *Tasfa*.

Wit and inclination.

Manners and Rites.

Sym.

Of the King-
dome of Tur-
quesians,
The Inhabi-
tants Shep-
herds.

Осенью.
Сентябрь.
Турция.

Of the King-
dome of the
Ceraunians.

Coraime
Soldairi.

Of the King-
dome of Ca-
maria.
This extre-
mie comes by
the long pre-
sence in Sum-
mer, and ab-
sence of the
Sunne by
Winter.

Corn or Cassia.

See after
Chapter 47.

India.

Note that of Alexander the great, the Sarmatians and Pagans have many and strange Fables, neuer heard of in these parts, as here of Orlandus, Arthur, Ogrus, and others. See in Pals, Persia and Media are omitted.

Armenia.

Miralis, or the Iron Gate, now Denes.

Georgia.

Chalde.

Mesopotamia.

Euphrates
Turkie.

two parts, whereof that which is towards the East is called *Asia profunda*, and that which is on the West is called *Asia maior*, or the greater *Asia*, and many good cities are in that Lake.

6. The Kingdom of *India* is very long, and situated on the Ocean Sea, in these parts is called the *Indian Sea*. This Kingdom beginneth from the Confines of *Persia*, and extendeth by East vnto a Province called *Balaria*, in which are found the precious stones which we call *Balazes*. On the North-side is that long and great Delta of *India*, where the Emperor *Alexander* is said to have found so many Serpents, and such diuersitie of Beasts inhabiting. In that Province it is that Saint *Thomas* preached the Faith of Christ and converted many people and Kingdomes. But because they are so farre distant and remote from other places and parts of Christendome, the Christian Religion is there much diminished, for there is but one Citie that is inhabited with Christians, the rest hauing wholly forsaken the profession of Christianitie. In the South-side of this Kingdome is a very long reach of the Ocean, in the which are many Islands, but their Inhabitants be all blacke, going altogether naked for heat, and worship Idols like foles. In those Islands are found precious Iones, Pearles, and Gold, and sundry Spices, and medicinable drugs helpful vnto men. There is also a certayne Island called *Celan* or *Zeilan*, knowne in ancient time by the name of *Taprobana*, in which are found Rubies and Saphires, and the King of that Land hath the greatest and best Rubie that is any where to be found, which when he is to be crowned King, he holdeth in his hand riding round about the Citie, and is afterwards obeyed of all as King.

9. In the Land of *Armenia* there are foure Kingdomes: yet haue they alwayes bene subiect to one King only. The length of the Kingdom of *Armenia* beginneth at the Confines of *Persia*, and reacheth out West-ward euen to the Kingdom of *Turkie*. The breadth of *Armenia* begins at the Citie *Miralis*, called the *Iron Gate*, and extendeth euen to the Kingdom of *Media*. In *Armenia* there are many great and very rich Cities, of which *Tauris* is the chiefe: they haue both Characters of their owne, called the *Armenian Letters*, and others also which they call *Haleon*. In *Armenia* is the highest Hill or Mountayne that is in the World, which is commonly called *Ararat*, or *Ararar*, and on the top of that Mountayne, the Arke of *Navy* rested first after the Deluge. And albeit for the abundance of Snow which is alwayes on that Mountayne, both Winter and Summer none is able to goe vp the fame, yet is there alwayes scene in the top thereof, a certaine blacke thing, which men ascribe to be the Arke.

10. The Kingdom of *Georgia* on the East-side, beginneth from a certayne great Mountayne, called *Alburis*, or *Albors*. There doe inhabit many Nations, and thereof that Province is called *Alania*, or *Albania*, from whence the Kingdom of *Georgia* reacheth West-ward on the North-side to some Lands of the Kingdom of *Turkie*; the whole length of this Kingdom of *Georgia* lying vnder the great Sea, and on the South-side it is confined with *Armenia* the Great. This Kingdom of *Georgia* is diuided into two Kingdomes, one of which is called by the name of *Georgia*, and the other knowne by the name of *Albeca*, or *Albaca*: and they haue bene alwayes gouerned by two feuerall Kings. The one of which is subiect to the Emperour of *Asia*; namely, the King of *Georgia*. But the Kingdom of *Albeca* being mightie in people, and strongly fortified, could neuer yet either by the Emperours of *Asia*, or by the *Tartarians* be subdued. In this Kingdom of *Georgia* is a marvellous strange Wonder or Miracle, which I durst not haue reported or beleued, if I had not seene it with my eyes. But because I haue personally bene there, and bene made the eye witness thereof, I say, that in those parts there is a Province or Countrey called *Hamfer*, being in circuit about thirte dayes journey, whose whole extent is all couered ouer with such thicke and palpable darknesse, that none can see any thing therein, neither doe any dare to goe into that Land, because they know not the way out againe. Those that inhabit neere about it, ascribe, that they haue often heard the found of mens voices crying, of Cocks crowing, and the neighing of Horses in the Wood, and by the course of a Riuer that runneth out from that place, there appeare certaine signes that there are people inhabiting therein.

11. The Kingdom of the *Chaldeans* beginneth on the East-side from the Mountaynes of *Media*, and reacheth out vnto *Ninive*. The Inhabitants of *Chaldea* are called *Nestorians*, because they are followers of the Error of *Nestorius*, and they haue their peculiar *Chaldean* Characters, others there are amongst them that vse the *Arabian Letters*, and are of the Sect of the seducer *Mahomet*.

12. The Kingdom of *Mesopotamia* on the East-side, beginneth at the great Citie *Mesil*, (called of the Ancients *Seleucia*) which is seated neere the Riuer *Tigris*, and stretcheth out vnto the Riuer *Euphrates*, and the Citie of *Rohais* (or *Edessa*).

13. When the *Turkes* had invaded the Kingdom of *Turkie*, and possessed themselves thereof, they could not preuayle againt the Citie of *Trapezond*, nor the Territorie thereof, because of their strong Castles and other Fortifications, by reason whereof it remayned till vnder the gouernment of the Emperour of *Constantinople*, who vied yearly to send thither a Ruler or Gouernour as his Deputie there, vntill at length one of them rebelling againt him, made himselfe King in such sort that he which now holdeth that Land, is called Emperour of *Trapezond*.

CHAP. 5. §. 1. Tartarians: beginnings of Changius their Romulus & Numa. 111

Inhabitants are *Greekes*. In the Kingdom of *Turkie* are foure Nations inhabiting; namely, the *Greekes*, *Armenians*, and *Iacobines*, (or *Iacobites*, which are *Christians*, liuing on merchandise and manuring the Earth-) and the *Turkes*, which are *Saracens*, that haue invaded that Land, and gotten the Government from the *Greekes*. Some of them liue on merchandise, and labouring of the ground inhabiting in Cities and Townes; others keeping in the Woods and Fields, both Winter and Summer being Shepherds, and very good Bow-men.

14. *Cilicia* at this day is called *Armenia*, by reason that after the enemies of the Christian faith had gotten that Countrey, and held it some time from the *Greekes*, the *Armenians* ended among themselves so well that they weene it againe from the *Pagans*. In so much that the King of *Armenia* by the grace of God ruleth ouer *Cilicia* at this day: In the Kingdom of *Syria* are thiers Nations inhabiting, namely, *Greekes*, *Armenians*, *Iacobites*, *Nestorians*, and *Saracens*. There are also other Christian Nations, namely, the *Syrians* and *Maronites* (or *Maronites*).

16. The Countrey in which the *Tartarians* first inhabited, lieth beyond the great Mountaine *Beizian*, mentioned in the Histories of *Alexander*. And there they liued like brutish People without learning or Religion, feeding herds of Beasts, and going from place to place to seeke pasture. And being not exercised in armes they were depiued of other Nations, and payed tribute to al. Of these in ancient time there were many Nations which by a common name were called *Mogh*, who vpon their encrease were after diuided into foure principall sorts esteemed more noble then the rest. The first of these Nations was called *Tatar*, from the name of that Province wherein they first inhabited: The second, was named *Tanger*. The third, *Comat*. The fourth, *Talar*: The fifth, *Sauks*. The sixth, *Moghs*. And the seventh, *Theris*. And whilst these feuer Nations liued vnder the territories of their Neighbours, as is above said, it happened that a peere old man, being a Smith, saw a Vision in his sleepe; namely, a man armed all in white Armour, and mounted on a white Horse, which calling him by his name, laid vnto him, *Changius*, It is the will and pleasure of the immortal God, that thou be Lord and Ruler ouer these Nations of the *Mogh*, and that by thee they be delivered from the Dominion of their Neighbours, vnder which they haue long remayned: and they shall rule ouer their Neighbours, and receive Tribute of them to whom they formerly paid Tribute. *Changius* hearing this Word of God, was replenished with exceeding joy, and made publickly knowne the Vision which he had seene. But the Rulers and Commanders would not giue credite to the Vision, but rather despised and mocked the old man. But the night following, they themselves saw the same Vision of the Horse-man armed in white, who commanded them from the Immortal God, that they should be obedient to *Changius*, and cause all to obey his command. Whereupon, all the said Chieftaines and Gouernours of the feuer Nations of the *Tartarians*, calling the people together made them to yeild obedience and reverence to *Changius*. Then afterwards placing a Chaire for him in the midst of them, and spreading a blacke Fell Carpet on the ground, they set him thereon, and then the feuer chiefe Rulers lifting him vp, did place him in the Throne, or Chaire of State, with great triumph and acclamation, calling him *Cau* the first Emperour, and doing him soleinne reuerence, with bowing their knees as to their Lord and Gouernour.

40. Now, at this solemnitie of the *Tartarians*, and at the simplicitie of their blacke Cloeth, vsed in the creating of their first Emperour, none ought much to wonder, either because haply they were not then furnished with any finer Cloeth of State, or else were so rude and ignorant at that time, that they knew no better or finer Cloeth of State. But at this men might rather marvell, that the *Tartarians* hauing since that, conquered many Kingdomes, and gotten infinite riches, (and namely, commanding ouer the Dominions and wealth of *Asia*, euen to the confines of *Hungaria*) they will not yet leaue their ancient and accoutumed manner; but at the confirmation of every Emperour observe the like order in euey point, whereof I can well be assured, hauing bene personally present at the ceremony vsed at the Confirmation of one of their Emperours. But to returne to our purpose, *Changius* (as being thus made Emperour by common consent of all the *Tartarians*, determined ere he attempted any thing, to make it all, whether they would all performe faithfull obedience to him, to which end he made certaine Ordinances to be observed of all.

The first was, That all the *Tartarians* should beleene and obey the Immortal God, by whose will hee was promoted to the Imperial Dignitie: which Commandement they obeyed and from thenceforth vntill this day haue euer continued to call on the Immortal God in all their occasions. Secondly, Hee willed that all the men that were able to beare Armes should be numbered, and that ouer euey ten should be one appointed, and ouer euey ten thousand a great Commander, and that alio ouer euey thousand should be a Colonel, or Conductor of a Regiment, and he called an Armie of ten thousand Souldiers a Regiment. He commanded also the feuer Rulers ouer the Nations of the *Tartarians*, that they should forswear themselves of their former diuities: which they relinquished immediatly. But another of his Ordinances was very strange and similitude to the former, which was, that euey Ruler should bring euey of them his eldest sonne, and each with his owne hand to cut off his head. Which Commandement appearing to be most cruel and vniust, yet was there none that would any way gainiay

Nations of
Turkie.

Syria.

Cilicia, how it
came to be
called Armenia.

Capas. Of the
Sarmatians Em-
pire is omit-
ted.

Of the Coun-
try where the
Tartarians for-
merly inhabi-
ted.

Such names
as the Sarmatians
and Alans
haue, Alexander
when they
call them as
before.

Mogh, or
Changius, or
Cau.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

See before.

it, because they knew him to be set ouer them by Gods prouidence, and therefore they presently fulfilled it. When *Charlemaine* had seene that they were ready to obey him, then vnto death, he appointed them all a certaine day in which they should be ready to obey him, and when they were against them which bordered next vnto them, and subdued them. Whereby, they which had bene Lords ouer them, were brought into subiection vnder them. After, hee invaded diuers other Nations, which hee conquered with great celeritie: For hee did all his exploits with a small troupe of men, and was successfull in his enterprises.

Yet, one day it tell out, that being accompanied with a small number he was encountered with a great troupe of his Enemies, in such sort, that the fight began between them, whilst he valiantly defended himself, his Horse being slain under him. And the *Tartari* seeing their Lord overthrown, broke themselves flue to flight: for the Enemies being all buſied in purſuing of thoſe that fled, and having no knowledge of the Emperour, whom they had unhonoured and overthrowne; he runne and hid himſelf among certainee thurbs for ſafety of his life. While there when the Enemies were returned, with purpoſe to ſeek the dead Carcaſſes, and to ſeek out ſuch as were hidden, it happened that an *Owl* came and ſate upon thoſe little trees or ſhrubs which he had choſen for his covert, which when they perceived, they fought no further in that place, ſuppoſing that the ſaid Bird would not have ſate there, if any man had beene hidden underneath. By which means in the dead time of the night he found ſome way to eſcape thence, and came by ſecrets and crooked wayes unto his owne people, and diſcovered unto them what had befallen him. For which the *Tartari* rendred thanks unto the Immortal G^{od}. And that Bird which under God was held to be the meanes of his eſcape, hath ſince beene held in ſuch reverence among them, that happie is he that can get but a Feather of an *Owl*, which they weare in their heads with great reverence. Which I thought fit to ſet downe in this Booke, that the cauſe might be knownne for which the *Tartari* uſe commonly to weare Feathers on their heads.

But their Emperor *Changsu* Ch'au haung gi, great clankes to God; for his delinquencie out of his great danger gathered his Armie together, and fiercely assaulted his former Enemies againe and brought them all vnder subjection; and so became Emperour of the Countries lying on that shile of the Mountain *Bukhan*, and possid'd them quietly without disturbance, vntill it happened him to haue another Vision as (hall after be declared). Neither is it small that in these Histories I haue not set downe the certaine time, becaus; albeit I haue sought of many to knowe the certaine thereof, yet could I neuer finde any to inffirme me fully therein: the reason therof I take to be, becaus; the *Tartarians* at the first were ignorant of all Learning, and knew no letters, and so pallid out the times and memorable accidents without any Record or Register thereof kept, whereby they came after wards to be forgotten.

ø. I I.

Of CHANGIVS Can his second Vision and Conquests. Of HOCCOTA and his three Sonnes expeditions; of GINO Can; of MANGY Can, who was visited by the King of Armenia, and baptised; of the expedition of his Brother HALOON.

17. **A**fter that *Changius* Can had subdued all the Kingdomes and Countreies on this side of the Mountain *Belgian*, he saw another Vition in the night. For the selfe-same *Horfman* armed in white Armour appeared vnto him againe, saying, *Changius* Can, it is the pleasure of the Immortall God, that thou passe vnto the Mountain *Belgian*, and direct thy course Westwards, where thou shalt finde many Kingdomes and Countreies, and subdue many Nations, And that thou mayest be assured that the word which I speake vnto thee is from the Immortall God: Arise and goe with thy people to the Mountain *Belgian*, to that part thereof which is nearest to the Sea, there thou shalt alight by this Horfe, and kneeling downe nine times towards the East: thou shalt worship nine times the Image of God, and he which is Almighty will then see thee the way by which thou shalt passe vnto thy newe Countrey. And this Vition *Changius* reioyced exceedingly, and arose without further doubt or delay: he then tooke his people, and departed from the Mountain *Belgian* in the assistance of the other: in such fort that he forthwith speedily assembled his host, and commanded them to follow him with their wives and children, and all that they had. And so they went forwards vntill they came to the place where the great and deepe Sea did breake against the Mountain, so that there appeared no way nor passage for them.

There presently *Cherubim* *Cans* as had been commanded him by God, alighted from his Horse, and all his followers, in like manner, worshipping nine times on their benedict knees towards the East, they beseeched the Almighty and everliving God, that of his infinite mercy and grace he would vouchsafe to shew them the way and passage thence where they continued in prayer all that night. And in the morning arising, they saw that the Sea was departed from the Mountains,

and, and had left them five y^e of nine feet in breadth to passe. Whereas they being all astonish-
 ed exceedingly, and rendering thanks to the Immortal God most devoutly, they puff'd on
 the way which they law before them, and directed their steps towards the West. But as the
 Histories of the *Tartarians* doe mention, after they had pass'd over those Mountains, they in-
 dur'd more hunger and thirst for certain dayes, because the land was Defart, and the waters
 were bitter and faine, which they could not by any means drink, vntill at length they en-
 counter'd a River, where they might have quench'd their thirst. In which place they abode many
 dayes, and at last they perceiv'd that the River was not their way, but that they were
 it happened by the will of God, that *Chingis Can* grew dangerously sick, in such sort that
 the Physicians despaired of his recovery.

10 By reason whereof he called before him his twelve fionnes, and perceived them to vnite
and concord by an Example. For, he commanded each of them to bring with him an Arrow,
which when he had received, and bound them altogether he willed the eldest to breake them if he
could, which when he had tried, but could not performe, he deliuered them to the second, and
then to the third, and then to all the reft, but none of them could breake them as they were: Then
he commanded his youngest fionne to take the Arrowes feuerally and breake them, which he
easily accomplished. Then said *Chengyu* Com to his fionnes: In like manner will it be with you
after, for as long as you are in concord and vnite, your Empire shall continue; but as foon as
you shall with diuision growe asunder, your Empire shall be likewise. And after other good
examples were giuen by him, and gathered by the *Tartarians*, which in the Language they
call, *Iajach*, or *Asphurians* of *Chengyu* Com. And afterwards he caufed the wifeft and best
of his fionnes, called *Hueota* Com, to be received as his Succedour in his Empire, before he died:
and then refted in peace. And his fionne, called *Hueota* Com, was placed in his Seat,

But before we end this Hifone we must first how the number of Nine came to be of reu-
 30 ofence and sacred imitation among the *Tartarians*: for of a memorial of the nine kneeling
 which they made in the Mountain *Belgian*, when they worshipped the immortal God, ac-
 cording to the direction of him that appeared in white Armour; and their way of the breadth of
 nine feet, through which they passed, they hold that number Nine in very high estimation.
 Inasmuch, that if any will offer a Present to the *Tartarian* Emperor, it must be presented in
 30 of Nine, and of several things, if he will have it graciously accepted; and so that the number
 of Nine be offered the gift is repeated haply, which Customs is yet observed at this day among
 the *Tartarians*.

18. *Hocotca* came, who succeeded in the Empire, was a man of much valour and wisdom, which made him very well beloved of the *Tartars*, who were always faithful and obedient unto him. He therefore brought him self in what manner he might, to *Abdus* all *Ajra*, and thought good to make mall first of the mighty Prince therein being: he stamped in himself in perion. On that enterprise therefore he led forth ten thousand *Horfes* under the conduct of a wife and valiant Leader, called *Ghefebadra*, and commanded him to seek out diuers Kingdomes and States, and when he met with an *Adversarie* too mighty for him, to returne. He marched on, and tooke diuers Castles and Townes, and cruelly vied those which hee vanquished in battell, for terror to others, putting out their eyes, and taking away their *Horfes* and *Visuals*; dealing kindly with the weaker. Thus he proceeded to the Iron Gate which *Alexander* built at the foot of *Cochus*, and razed it, left it might hinder his returne. *Tumson* the Prince of *Georgia* came out against him, and in a *Plaine*, called *Megron*, they fought, but the *Tartars* overcame; and proceeded to *Ajra* a Citie of the *Seldan* of *Turkey*, who was to well provided to entertaine him, that *Ghefebadra* seeing his forces decayed, returned to *Hocotca* Can, then in

The miracu-
lous way.

**The effectiveness
of Chemins Co.**

His allegoric
exhorting of
his sonnes to
vnitie.
The like Hi-
storie hath S-
cillus ferm. 82.
Scilicet see I-
n hands also of
the sonnes of
Attila dis-
agreeing.

His death.

The number
of Nine, esto-
med among
the Tartaria
So they vie
still to the M
gull-sup. pap. 5
Of Hocco C
the second
Emperour of
the Tartaria

Gebefabada.

The Turkeſſe
by the Turkeſſe
the Turkeſſe

Of One Can
the Emperor
The former

Futurs moribus
the Emperor, I
Pine of the

was with the
former, and
Ruler with

Mango
Mango Can
drowned, C
Can, as C
Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

Can, the g
Can, the g
Can, the g

affembled a great number of men, hee went towards the place where the *Tartarians* made their abode, whom they found nothing ſtraniſhed at his approach; for they manfully gave him battle at a place called *Cofinack*, where they overthrew the Armie of the *Turks*, and fo the *Tartarians* wonne the Kingdom of *Turke*, in the yeere 1244.

19. And a little time *Hecoca Can* dyed, and a ſonne of his ſucceeded in the Empire, called *Gino Can*, whoſe life was but ſhort, and after him ſucceeded a Kinſman of his, called *Mango Can*, who was of very great power and ſubdued many *Provinces*, and at length with a great ſhip he went into the *Cabaſon* Sea to take a certaine Iſland, which whiles he held beſieged the Inhabitants of thoſe parts being very ſubtle and ingenious, ſent certaine *Diuers* ſecretly vnder water, who continued to long vnder the Ship, in which hee was, untill they had made many holes therein, ſo that the water came into it (no man obſerving nor ſtopping the leakes) untill the Ship ſunk, and *Mango Can* was drowned therein. Whereupon the reſidue of the *Tartarians* returned home and choſe his brother, called *Cobila Can*, for their Emperour, who raigned over them two and fortie yeeres, became a *Chriſtian*, and founded a certaine Citie, called *Ieni*, in the Kingdom of *Cathay*, which is reported to be greater then *Rome*; and in that Citie he dwelled untill his dying day. But leauing him, let vs ſpeake of the three ſonnes of *Hecoca Can*, of *Hacloſon*, and of his Heires.

20. *Iachi*, the eldeſt ſonne of *Hecoca Can*, rode toward the Weſt with all that people which his Father had giuen him, and there finding fruitful and pleaſant Countries, abounding in all kinde of riches, hee ſetled his Tents, and ruled over the Kingdom of *Turkeſſia*, and the leſſer *Perſia*, euen to the River *Phaſis*, where his people inhabiting euer ſince, are exceedingly multiplied in perſons and riches, and the Heires of *Iachi* haue ſucceeded one the other in thoſe Dominions to this preſent, and thoſe Countries are at this day ruled by two Brothers, the one called *Chapar*, the other *Doas*, who haue diuided thoſe Countries betweene them, and doe poſſeſſe them peaceably.

21. *Baydo*, the ſecond ſonne of *Hecoca Can*, with the *Tartarians* which his Father gaue him, rode towards the North, untill he came to the Kingdom of *Cumania*, where the *Cumanians* hauing many armed men, oppoſed themſelues, and defended their Land againſt them. But being at length over-come, they fled to the Kingdom of *Hungaria*, where are yet many *Cumanians* inhabiting. *Baydo* hauing beaten the *Cumanians* out of their Countrey, went to the Kingdom of *Ruſſia* and conquered it, and poſſeſſed the Land of *Gascaria* (which is in the Northerne part of *Taurica*) and the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*, and by the way which the *Cumanians* had fled, he came to the Kingdom of *Hungaria*. Afterwards the *Tartarians* went towards the parts of *Germania*, till they came to a certaine River that runneth through the Dukedome of *Auſtria*: where they thought to haue paſſed ouer a Bridge which they found there. But *Frederick*, the Duke of *Auſtria*, and others, that bordered neere it, had fortified the Bridge ſo that the *Tartarians* were denyed paſſage. *Baydo* thereupon, incenſed with ſurie, commanded that all ſhould paſſe through the water, and himſelfe was the firſt that entered, expoſing thereby himſelfe and all his followers to apparant danger of death: for ſuch was the breadth of the River and the violence of the ſtreame, that their Horſes were wearied before they could come to the farther bank 40 of the River. Which the reſidue ſeeing which were not yet entered into the water, they were confounded with griefe, and returned to *Ruſſia* and *Cumania* which they formerly had conquered, as hath bene declared; and neuer ſince that haue the *Tartarians* attempted againſt *Germania*. But the poſteritie of *Baydo* hath euer ſince ſucceſſfully held thoſe Lands which he ſubdued. And he which now raigneth there, is called *Techui*, and ruleth peaceably and quietly.

22. *Chagaday* (or *Chagaday*) with thoſe *Tatars*: which his Father gaue him, rode towards the South, euen to the parts of *India* the leſſer. There he found many Deſerts, Mountaines, and drie Lands not inhabited, ſo that hee could not paſſe that way: but hauing loſt many of his People, Horſes, and other Beaſts, he turned him towards the Weſt, and after much labour came to his brother *Iachi*, to whom he related what had befallen him: who taking compaſſion on his brother, gaue him and his people a good part of thoſe Countries which hee had: and euer after, thoſe two brethren dwelled together and their Progenie, untill this day inhabit in thoſe parts, yet in ſuch ſort, that thoſe which defended of the younger brother, doe beare a kinde of reverence to the poſteritie of the Elder, and fo being content with their Portions, they lue peaceably and quietly together: and that Succellor of *Iachi* that now liueth, is called *Berach*.

23. In the yeere of our Lord 1253, *Hayſon*, the King of *Armenia*, ſeeing that the *Tartarians* had in a manner ſubdued all the Kingdomes, Countries, and Lands, euen to the Kingdom of *Turke*, taking Counſell of the wife, hee reſolued to goe in perſon to the Emperour of the *Tartarians*, the better to inſinuate himſelfe into his fauour, and to make league with him. But firſt he ſent his brother, *Lod Shubady*, Conſtable of the Kingdom of *Armenia*, to obayne a life conſult for him: who carrying with him many Preſents, and going attended with a goodly compaign, diſpatched in good order the buſineſſe for which hee was ſent, yet ſtaied hee by the ſpace of ſome dayes before he came backe to *Armenia*: but at his returne, he related to the King what he had ſeene and done: who without delay departed in ſecret manner diſguiſed, becauſe it might

be dangerous for him to be knowne in the Kingdom of *Turke*, through which hee muſt needs make his iourney: and as God would, at his coming thither, he found that the *Soldan of Turke* was ouerthrowne by a *Tartarian* Captaine, whom hee met with there and made himſelfe knowne vnto him, who when hee vnderſtood him to be the King of *Armenia*, and that hee was going toward the Emperour, entertained him very honorably, and cauſed him to be conducted to the Kingdom of *Cumania*, and beyond the Iron gate.

And afterwards, other *Tartarian* Captaines cauſed him to be conducted ouer all other Countries and Places, untill he came to *Amalech* (or *Cambala*) where *Mango Can* their Emperour reſided; who reioyced much at the coming of the King of *Armenia*, and the rather for that from the coming of *Changus Can* ouer the Mountain *Telſian*, no other great Prince had come to meet him, and therefore hee receiued and entertained him with much honour and loue, and gaue vnto him ſome of the greateſt perſons about him to attend, and aſſociate him at his pleaſure, and did him many other fauours. But the King of *Armenia* hauing reſted certaine dayes, increaſed the Emperour to vouchſafe him Audience in thoſe ſaffaires, for which hee was come, and to gae him licence to returne. The Emperour very graciously answered him; that he would moſt willingly accompliſh all his deſires, and that it was very acceptable vnto him that hee came of his owne accord.

The King with good deliberation made ſeuen Petitions. Firſt, He deſired that the Emperour and all his people would be baptized in the Chriſtian Faith, leauing all other Sects. Secondly, That there might be a perpetual peace and friendſhip eſtabliſhed betweene the *Chriſtians* and the *Tartarians*. Thirdly, That in all Countries which the *Tartarians* either had conquered or ſhould conquer, the Churches and Churchmen, whether ſecular or religious, might be free and exempted from all ſeruitude and payments. Fourthly, That he would deliuer and free the holy Land, and the holy Sepulcher of our Lord, out of the hands of the *Saracens*, and reſtore them to the *Chriſtians*. Fifthly, That he would endeavour the deſtruction of the *Caliph of Balad*, who was the head and chief Doctour of the Sect of *Mohometiſme*. Sixthly, Hee required that a ſpecial Charter might be granted him, that of whatſoeuer *Tartarians* eſpecially ſuch as ſhould be neareſt to the Kingdom of *Armenia* hee ſhould bee occaſioned to demand ſide, they ſhould forthwith be ready to aſſiſt him. Seventhly, Hee craued that all the Lands of the iuriſdiction of the Kingdom of *Armenia*, which the *Saracens* had inuaded, and were or ſhould happen to be recovered by the *Tartarians*, might be reſtored to the King of *Armenia*, and that ſuch as hee ſhould get from the *Saracens*, hee might peaceably and quietly enioy. *Mango Can* hauing conſidered the Petitions of the King of *Armenia*, calling before him all his chiefe Captaines and Counſellers in their preſence, made him anſwere after this manner. Becauſe that the King of *Armenia* of his owne accord, and not of compulſion, is come vnto vs from remote parts; it becometh the Imperiall Maieſtie to yield him all his demands that are lawfull and honeſt: Therefore to you, O King of *Armenia*, Wee returne this anſwere, That wee will accept of all your Requeſts made, and will cauſe them all (God-willing) to be duly accompliſhed: firſt, I my ſelfe being Emperour and Lord of the *Tartarians*, will be baptized in that Faith which the *Chriſtians* hold: and this day, willing and deſiring all my Subiects to doe the like: yet not enioyning to force any therunto. To your ſecond, We will and agree that there be a perpetual peace betweene the *Tartarians* and *Chriſtians*, yet with this caution, that there be a perpetual Pledge and Suretie that the *Chriſtians* obſerue on their behalfe the like peace and amitie towards vs, as wee for our part intend inuolubly to keepe towards them. Wee grant alſo, That all the Churches of *Chriſtians* and their Clergie-men whatſoeuer, either Secular or Religious, ſhall enioy their Priuledge and Immunitie of Libertie and Exemption throughout the Dominions of our Empire, and that none ſhall moleſt them any kinde of ways. Touching the matter of the holy Land, we ſay, That if we could conveniently we would willingly goe thither in perſon, for the reuerence we beare to our Lord Ieſus Chriſt. But becauſe we haue many occaſions of importance to Ray vs in theſe parts, wee will take order with our Brother *Haleſon* for the due accompliſhment of that ſeruiſe in all points as it becometh, for the freeing of the Citie of *Hieruſalem* and all the holy Land, out of the hands of the *Pagans*, and reſtoring it to the *Chriſtians*.

Concerning the *Caliph of Balad*, Wee will giue order to *Baydo*, our Captaine of the *Tartarians*, which are in the Kingdom of *Turke*, and the reſt thereof, that they bee all obedient to our Brother, whom wee will haue to deſtroy the *Caliph* as our capitall and deadly Enemy. And the Charter which the King of *Armenia* deſireth for aſſiſtance from the *Tartarians*, wee will it to be drawne according to his deſire, and wee are ready in all things to confirme it. Laſtly, whereas the King of *Armenia* requirith, That the Lands of his Kingdom, which the *Saracens* had taken from, and haue ſince bene recovered by the *Tartarians*, may be reſtored vnto him, wee freely and frankly accord it, willing our Brother *Haleſon* to ſee ſuch reſtitution made without delay.

24. After that *Mango Can* had thus liberally accorded the Requeſts of the King of *Armenia*, and confirmed them by Charters, hee would forthwith receiue the Sacrament of Baptiſme, and was accordingly baptized by the hands of a certaine Biſhop, who was Chanceller of the King of the Kingdom of *Armenia*.

Haſten King of
Armenia
his iourney.

It ſeemes
Armenia
which then
was Amalech,
the Kings Ci-
tie, or Cambala,
is Ramſſa,
hath it.

The King of
Armenia his
Demands.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

The anſwere
of the Tartar-
ians.

1.
2.
3.
4.

See the 18.
and 24 Chap.

6.
7.

Role calls this
Haleſon, V. 10.

Mango Can
was a people
of the King of
Armenia.

The Voyage of Haloon with King Arslan, Persia possid by the Tartars.

* Since de * mout, see Pals. 5. 2. Tugade bele-ged.

In the Latine it is 17. Ramu? Pals had but 3.

Haloon's colour neeth in Serich, The 5. go of Baldach. The Citie and Caliph taken.

The Parfume nee of the Caliph.

His death amongst his Treasures.

The fauour of Haloon to wards Christians, Mis Wife.

King Mayhem brings aye to Haloon.

Haloon, or de Halpa.

Armenia, and all that were of his household with many other great Personages of both Sexes, And then he made choice of such as were to accompany him. Brother Haloon, about the enterprize of the Holy Land. After Haloon and the King of Armenia departed, and rode both together untill they pulled over the great River Phisus; then Haloon with his mighty Armie invaded the Countreyes and Lands euer where, and in less then six months he subdued easily the whole Kingdome of Persia, because it was without a Ruler, or Gouverneur, and tooke in all the Countreyes without resistance, euen till he came to the Land of certayne Infidels, which are called *Assissini*, hauing neither Law nor Religion, but liuing as their Prince and Lord, commonly called *Assissini*, instructed them at whole pleasure and commandment they willingly and readily exposed themselves to death. There had a certayne impregnable Castle, called *Tigade*, which was so well furnished with all kind of necessary prouision, and so strongly built and fortified, that he was feared no assault. Haloon therefore commanded one of his Captaynes to take with him tenne thousand of those Tartarians, which hee had left in Persia, and in no wise to depart from the siege of that Castle untill hee had taken it, so that they remained at the siege thereof, by the space of seuen years both Winter and Summer, that at last was yielded vp by the *Assissini*, only for want of clothes, but not for any penury of victuals, or scarcitie of any other thing, whiles Haloon employed himselfe in ordering of the Kingdome of Persia, and besieging the Castle of the *Assissini*, the King of Armenia tooke leaue of him to returne, because hee had bene long out of his Kingdome: Haloon therefore licenced him to depart, and giuing him many great gifts, directed his Precept to *Bagdet*, residing in the Kingdome of *Turkey*, which hee had subdued, that he should conduct him safely to the entrance of his owne Kingdome, which in all things he fulfilled, so that after three years and a halfe of absence, the King of Armenia, through the mercie of Iesus Christ, came ioyfully home into his owne Countrey.

25. Haloon hauing ordered the Kingdome of Persia in conuenient manner, went into a certayne Province neere to Armenia, called *Sarbach*, where hee repoyled and recreated himselfe all the Sommer, and at the beginning of Winter hee besieged *Baldach*, in which the Caliph resided, who was the chiefe Master and Doctour of the Irreligious Sect of *Mohametisme*, for which Enterprize Haloon re-enforced his Army with thirte thousand Tartarians, that were in the Kingdome of *Turkey*, and assaulting the Citie by the foate, hee tooke the same without any great difficultie, or delay. The Caliph was brought alive into the presence of Haloon, and there was found in 30 *Baldach*, so much Treasure and Riches as would scarcely bee beleeued to bee in all the World besides; This Citie of *Baldach* was taken in the yeere 1158.

26. When Haloon had disposed of the Citie of *Baldach*, he caused the Caliph to be brought vnto him, and all his Treasure to be laid before him, Then he demanded of him whether hee had bene Lord of all that Treasure, who affirming, it was asked againe why hee had not made vfe thereof in procuring the ayde of his Neighbour, and leuied mercenarye Soldiers to defend him and his Countrey from the power of the Tartarians, who hee answered was that hee thought his owne people had been sufficient. Then said Haloon to the Caliph, thou art said to be the chiefe Doctour & Teacher of all that beleue the deceiuing Doctrine of *Mohamet*, & receiue rewards and Gifts of them all; therefore such and so precious a Master should be fed with no other meate 40 but with those precious things, which thou hast looted and kept so carefully, all which wee giue thee for thy sufficiency: and lo commanded that the Caliph should bee shut into a Chamber, and that his Pearle and Gold should bee set before him, that hee might eate as much as hee would thereof, but that no other meate nor drinke should be giuen him, by which means the miserable wretch ended his life after a miserable manner. And there was no other Caliph in *Baldach* after him.

27. After that Haloon had subdued *Baldach* and all the Countrey round about, hee distributed the Provinces amongst his Captaynes and Rulers as hee thought good, giuing charge that the Christians should euerie where hee louingly vfed, and be preferred to the gouernment of Castles and Cities, and the Saracens held vnder strenght subiection. Haloon had also a Wife called *Dem-cisara* descended of those Kings that came from the East being guided by the Starre of the Nativity of our Lord, which Laie being a most deuout Christian, was a great meenes of destroy- ing the Temples of the Saracens, and prohibiting the Solemnities and Ceremonies of *Mohamet*, and finally raised their Temples to the ground, and brought the Saracens in such subiection that they durst not shew their heads.

28. After that Haloon had reffed a yeare, he sent to the King of Armenia, to meete him at the Citie *Relegy*, in the Kingdome of *Mesopotamia*, because hee intended to goe towards the Holy Land, that hee might restore it to the Christians, whereupon, the King *Haytham* of famous memorie tooke his Iourney, accompanied with a great Armie both of Horsemen and Footmen, for at that time the Kingdome of Armenia, was in so good estate, that it could raise a power of 60 welue thousand Horfe, and threecore thousand Footmen, whereof being an Eye witnesse my selfe, I can well giue testimonye thereof, when in the King of Armenia was come according to this appointment of Haloon, and had conference with him touching the Enterprize of the Holy Land, hee asked him that because the Souldan of Halappi, ruled ouer all the Kingdome of Sy-

ria, in which the Citie of *Serusalem* was seated, the way to get the Holy Land, was first to besiege the Citie of Halappi, being the chiefe Citie of Syria, which when hee had wonne, it would not be difficult for him to subdue all the rest of that Countrey: which aduise Haloon liked well, and besieged the Citie of Halappi (or Aleppo) which hee found to be of great strength being well walled and inhabited: therefore with Mines vnder ground, with Slings and other Engines, hee begre it so straightly, and assaulted it so manfully on euery side that albeit it seemed impregnable, yet in the space of nine dayes hee obtained it. In this Citie they found such incredible store of wealth as would hardly be beleued, yet there was a Castle in the middle of the Citie, that held out seuen dayes after the Citie was taken, which at length was wonne by vndermining. So the Citie of Halappi, and afterwards the Kingdome of Syria, was taken by Haloon in the yeare of our Lord 1160.

29. But when the Souldan of Halappi named *Melchanafer* being then in the Citie of *Damascus*, vnderstood that the Citie of Halappi, with his Wife and Children in it, was taken, being vicerely destitute of Counsell hee came and cast himselfe at the feet of Haloon, hoping thereby that his Wife and Children with some part of his Dominions would bee restored him. But the Souldan found himselfe therein deceiued, for Haloon sent him with his Wife and Children into Persia, that thereby he might enioy the Kingdome of Syria, the more securely. These things thus disposed, Haloon gaue to the King of Armenia a great part of the spoile of Halappi, and of the Lands which hee had invaded, whereby the King of Armenia was strengthened with many Castles bordering on his Kingdome, which hee fortified as hee thought good; and after that Haloon had settled the affaires of those Cities and Countreys which hee had wonne, intending to goe to *Serusalem* to free the Holy Land from *Pagani*, and to restore it to the Christians, There came to him a Messenger the third day, who brought newes that the Tartarian Empire was vacant by the death of his Brother *Mango Cam*, and that his comming was earnestly expected to bee his Successor therein, which report made him very sorrowfull: In regard whereof hee could now proceed no further in person, but left ten thousand Tartars to keepe the Kingdome of Syria, vnder the command of a Captayne called *Guboga*, to whom hee gaue order that hee should conquer the Holy Land, and restore it to the Christians, And so leauing his Sonne at *Tauris*, hee hastened backward himselfe by great Iourneys.

¶ III.

OF COBILA CAN the fift Emperour, of the Tartarians: Of the Warre with BAKCHA, and Tartarian quarrell with the Christians, HALOONS death. Acts of the Souldan of Egypt. OF ABATA and other Sonnes and Successors of HALOON.

BEFORE hee could come to the Kingdom of Persia, he heard that the Nobles & Princes had placed his Brother *Cobila Can* in the Imperial seat of the Tartars, which hee heard whilst hee was at *Tauris*: where hee vnderstood that *Bakach* (or *Bercha*) was marching thither with a great Armie, purposing to make himselfe Emperour. Haloon therefore assembled his people and met with his Enemies, on a certayne River which was frozen, where beganne a very great Battale. But the Ice being broken by the great multitude of Horfes and Men, there was drowned on the one side and on the other thirte thousand Tartars: Infomuch that the Armies on each side returned. But *Guboga* whom Haloon had left in the Kingdome of Syria, and the Province of *Palestina* held those Countreyes peaceably, and loved the Christians so well, for he was of the Progenie of the three Kings which went to worship the Nativity of our Lord. But when hee had laboured earnestly to reduce the Holy Land againe vnder the power of the Christians, the Devil loosed the seed of Kandall, and discord betwixt him and the Christianitie of those parts, which hapned on this manner. In the Land of *Belforice*, which is of the Territory of the Citie of *Sidon*, there were sundry Townes and Villages inhabited by Saracens, which paid certayne Tribute to the Tartars, on whom some of *Sidon* and *Belforice* made diuers rodes and spoyles killing sundry of the Saracens, and carrying others away Captiue with a great drone of Cattle. A Nephew of *Guboga* remaining neere therabouts, followed speedily after those Christians that had committed those outrages to them on the behaile of his Vncle, that they should dismisfe their bootie. But some of them vnwilling to large their prey they had taken, ranne vpon him, and slue him, with diuers other Tartarians that accompanied him. *Guboga* hearing that the Christians had slaine his Nephew, rode presently and tooke the Citie of *Sidon*, dismantled the walls thereof, and slue some few Christians, the rest slaying themselves in an Island. And neuer after would the Tartars trust the Christians of Syria, neither durst they put confidence in the Tartars, who were afterwards driuen out of the Kingdome of Syria by the Saracens, as shall be declared,

Belfori.

Haloon taken.

* 1160. yet both Latine & Italian haue 1160.

The Citill was betweene Haloon and Berach or Bercha. See Poly. 5. 1. Gubogus of the Kindred of the three Kings this came to worship the Nativity of Christ.

Belforice

He destroyed the Citie of Sidon.

The Soldan
embrace
g. in the Ganges

Halos prepa-
ring to en-
counter the
war, which

Abaga his Son
and successor

Bendakar Sol-
dan of Egypt
inundeth Ar-
menia, Ramo-
ca his son as-
saulteth

He concludes
a truce with
the Soldan

* That the
Graec Monke
changed their
names, appea-
red by the ex-
ample of Alex-
ander Camer-
in Nise, p. 48. b.
and of Alexan-
der the Em-
peror in Gre-
ce, p. 149. p. 47.
and of Alexan-
der the Em-
peror in Cal-
cedonia, b. 1.
Abaga con-
quered the
Kingdom of
Egypt, and
destroyed
Tartar.
Parsada.

31. Whiles *Haloson* was busie in the warre with *Burcat*, as hath bene said, the *Soldan of Egypt* assailing his Armie came to the Province of *Palestina*, and in a place called *Hamelach*, hee layed battail with *Goukara*, and his *Tartars*, where *Goukara* was slaine, and his Armie de-
feated. The *Tartars* which escaped went into *Armenia*, and by this means the Kingdome of *Syria* was wholly subdued by the *Saracens*, saving certayne Cities of the *Christians*, which were seated neere the Sea. When *Haloson* understood how the *Soldan of Egypt* had invaded *Syria*, and driven thence his people, he gathered his Armie and sent to the King of *Armenia*, and to the King of *Georgia*, and the other *Christians* of the East to prepare themselves against the *Soldan of Egypt* and the *Saracens*, and when his Armie was in readinesse a sicknesse seized him, of which he languished the space of a fortnight, and then dyed, by whose death the enterprize of the Holy Land had an end. *Abaga* his Sonne held the Dominion of his Father, who intreated the Em-
peror *Cobila Can* being his Vnkle, to confirme him therein, to which he willingly accorded. So he was called *Abaga Can*, and began to reigne in the year of our Lord 1264.

32. *Abaga* was wise and gouerned prosperously in all things, two only excepted, one that he would not be a *Christian*, as his Father had bene, but worshipped Idols, beleueing the Idolatrous Priests. The other, that he was always in warres with his Neighbours, by reason whereof the *Soldan* was long in quiet, and the power of the *Saracens* much increased. Those *Tartars* (or rather *Turks*) which could escape from out the Dominion of the *Tartars*, fled vnto the *Soldan*, seeking to avoid the heauie burthens which the *Tartars* imposed on them. And the *Soldan* dealt polikely, for he sent Messengers by Sea to the *Tartars* in the Kingdomes of *Comania* and *Russia*, and made compolition and agreement with them, that whensoever *Abaga* should moue warre against the Land of *Egypt*, then they should invade his Countrey, for which he promised them great gifts, by means whereof *Abaga* could not well invade the Land of *Egypt*, but the *Soldan* could easily without resistance invade the *Christians* in the parts of *Syria*, inasmuch, that the *Christians* lost the Citie of *Antioch*, and diuers other places of strength, which they held in that Kingdome.

33. Moreover, *Bendakar* the *Soldan of Egypt* was so fortunate that hee much abated the Kingdome of *Armenia*. For it hapned that the King of *Armenia* with many of his men was gone to the *Tartars*, which the *Soldan* hearing, sent a Captayne of his to invade the Kingdome of *Armenia*. The Sonnes of the King of *Armenia*, gathering together all that could beare Armes, encountered the *Egyptians* in the Confinnes of their Kingdome, and resisted them courageously; but the Armie of the *Armenians* being ouerthrowne, one of the Kings Sonnes was taken, and the other was slaine in battail. So that the *Saracens* thereby wasted and spoyled all the Kingdome of *Armenia*, and carried infinite riches thence to the great damage of the *Christians*, whereby the Enemies power was much encreased, and the Kingdome of *Armenia* wondrously weakened. The King whole enuieous was wholly bent about the destruction of the Infidels, hauing heard this most vniuersall newes of his owne Countrey, busied his thoughts night and day how to assist the *Saracens*, and oft-times very earnestly dealt with *Abaga*, and his *Tartars* to attempt the ouerthrow of faithlesse *Mahomet*, and the reliefe of the *Christians*. But *Abaga* excused himselfe by reason of the warres, in which he was daily entangled with his Neighbours. The King of *Armenia* saying that hee could not haue any present ayde of the *Tartarians*, sent and made truce by his Messengers with the *Soldan of Egypt*, that he might redeeme his Sonne which was Prisoner. The *Soldan* also promised him that if he restored him a friend of his called *Angoldakar* whom the *Tartars* held captiue, and yielded vp the Cattle *Templech*, and some holds of the Citie of *Halappi*, which he had gotten in the time of *Haloson*, hee would set his Sonne at libertie. Whereupon the *Soldan*, hauing receiued his friend, and the Cattle of *Templech* being yielded, and two other *Caddes* throwne downe at his appointment, deliuered his Sonne out of Prison, and restored him accordingly. Then afterwards King *Haydon* of famous memorie, hauing reigned fortie five yeares, and done much good to the *Christians*, yielded vp his Kingdome to Dominion to his Sonne *Limon*, whom hee had deliuered out of captiue, and renouncing this Kingdome of the World became professed in Religion, and was called *Macabarus*, changing his name (according to the custome * of the *Armenians*) when they enter into Religion, and in short time after dyed in peace in the year of our Lord 1270.

34. This King of *Armenia* *Limon* was wife, and gouerned his Kingdome proudly, and heing much beloved by his owne People, and by the *Tartars*, he laboured earnestly to destroy the *Saracens*, so that in his time *Abaga* made peace with all his neighbors, who of long time had ben his enemies. Then the *Soldan of Egypt* entred the Kingdome of *Turkie*, and slue many of the *Tartars*, and draue them out of many Townes. For a *Saracen*, called *Parnana*, being Captaine ouer the *Tartars* that were in *Turkie*, rebelled against *Abaga*, and sought the destruction of the *Tartarians*. *Abaga* hearing thereof, posted thither so speedily, that in fiftene dayes hee rode fortie dayes journey. The *Soldan* hearing of his coming departed suddenly, not daring to make any longer abode. Yet could not so speedily withdraw himselfe, but that the *Tartars* following swiftly, ouertooke the rearward of his Armie in the entrie of the Kingdome of *Egypt*, in a place called *Paslanke*. There the *Tartarians* rushing on them, rooke two thousand horsemen of

the *Saracens*, beside much riches, and five thousand of the *Cordons* which liued in that Countrey. *Abaga* being come to the Confinnes of *Egypt*, was perswaded to goe no farther for heat: for that Land is very hote, and his *Tartars*, and their beasts hauing come speedily from farre, could hardly haue endured it, by reason whereof hee returned into *Turkie*, and spoiled and waited all the Countrey that had rebelled, and yielded to the *Soldan*. But hee caused the Traytor *Parnana* with his partakers to be cut alunder in the midst, after the *Tartarian* manner, and part of his flesh to be leued in all his meate, whereof hee and his Captaines did eat. Such was the reuenge of King *Abaga* on the Traitor *Parnana*.

35. *Abaga* hauing effected his desires in *Turkie*, and enriched his *Tartars* with the spoyle of the rebellous *Saracens*, hee called to him the King of *Armenia*, and offered him the kingdome of *Turkie*, in regard that his father and hee had bene euer faithfull to the *Tartarians*. But the King of *Armenia* being discreet and wise, rendred great thanks to *Abaga* for so great a Present, but excused himselfe from the accepting thereof, as vnable to gouerne two Kingdomes. For the *Soldan of Egypt* was in his full strength, and earnestly bent against the Kingdome of *Armenia*: so that hee had enough to doe to provide for the defence thereof. Yet aduised him to fetter and dispoile the Kingdome of *Turkie* in such sort ere his departure, that there might bee no feare of Rebellion after wards: and in any case to permit no *Saracen* to command there. Which aduice *Abaga* accepted of, and neuer after suffered any *Saracen* to beare rule in that Countrey. The King of *Armenia* then desired him to thinke of deliuering the Holy Land out of the hands of the *Saracens*: wherein hee promised all his best endeavour: and wished the King to send messengers to the Pope, and to other Princes of *Christendome* for their assistance. So *Abaga* hauing ordered the affaires of *Turkie*, returned to the Kingdome of *Coracen*, where hee had left his familie. *Bendakar* the *Soldan of Egypt*, after hee had received such damage by the *Tartars*, was poisoned, died in *Damascus*: whereof the *Christians* of those parts were very glad. And the *Saracens*: very sorrowfull: for they had not his like after, as they themselves commonly reported. For his sonne, called *Melechabie*, succeeded him, who was loone driven out of his Dominion by one called *Elfi*, who violently vsurping, made himselfe *Soldan*.

36. The time appointed being come, when *Abaga* was to begin his warre against the *Soldan of Egypt*, hee appointed his brother *Mangodanior* to goe to the Kingdome of *Syria* with thirtie thousand men, being *Tartars*, and courageously to ouertooke the *Soldan*, if hee came in battell against him: or otherwise to take in the Castles and Holds of the Countrey, and deliuer them to the *Christians*, if the *Soldan* should than the fight. When *Mangodanior* with his Armie fitting forward, was come neere the Confinnes of *Armenia*, hee sent for the King of *Armenia*, who came presently vnto him with a goodly companie of Horse: so that they entred the Kingdome of *Syria*, and went spoyleing and foraging, till they came to the Citie *Aman*, now called *Camela*, which is seated in the midst of *Syria*. Before this Citie lieth a faire great Playne, where the *Soldan of Egypt* had assembled his Power, intending to fight with the *Tartarians*. And there the *Saracen* on the one side, with the *Christians* and *Tartars* on the other side, fought a great battell. The King of *Armenia* with the *Christians* ruled and commanded the right wing of the Armie which invaded the *Soldan*: left wing manfully, and put them to flight, and pursued them three dayes journey, euen to the Citie *Aman*. Another part of the *Soldan* Armie was also routed by *Amalech* a *Tartarian* Captaine, who pursued them also three dayes journey, to a Citie called *Turara*. When they thought the *Soldan* Power vtterly ouerthrowne, *Mangodanior* who neuer had bene the conflicts of warre before, being afraid without any reasonable cause of certaine *Saracens*, called *Beduini*, withdrew himselfe out of the field, hauing the better, forsaking the King of *Armenia*, and his Captaine which had preyialed against his enemies. When the *Soldan*, which thought hee had lost all, saw the field cleere, and all abandoned, hee got vpon a little hill, with foure armied men, and stood there. The King of *Armenia* returning from the pursuit, and missing *Mangodanior* in the field, was much astonished, and imagining which way hee should be gone, followed after him.

37. But *Amalech* returning from the enemies whom hee had pursued, abode two dayes expecting his Lord, supposing that hee had followed after him, as he ought, for the further subduing of his enemies, and the Countrey which they had overcome: till at last, hauing heard of his retreat, leaving his victorie, hee made speed after him: whom hee found on the bankes of the Riuer *Euphrates* slaying for him. And then the *Tartars* returned to their owne Province. But the King of *Armenia* sustained much losse, and hard aduantage in his returre: for the Hories of the *Christians* of the Kingdome of *Armenia*, were lo wearied and spent with the length of the way, and want of Fodder, that they were not able to trauell, so that the *Christians* going featerly by vniuersall wayes, were often found out, and slayne without mercy by the *Saracens* inhabiting those parts: inasmuch that the greatest part of the Armie was lost, and in a manner all the Nobility, and this misadventure of *Mangodanior* happened in the yeere of our Lord 1282.

When *Abaga* vnderstood the lucke herof, hee assembled all his people, and when hee was ready to set forward with all his power against the *Saracens*, a certaine *Saracen*, the sonne of the Deuill, came to the Kingdome of *Persia*, and preyialed by giuing great gifts to mee that

Paruana cut
under and
eaten.

King Limore-
futh the officer
of the King-
dome of Tar-
ke.

Hee venge the
deliuering of
Ierusalem from
Pagani.

Coracen.

The death of
the Soldan.
Melechabie his
sonne and suc-
cessor.
Elfi the Soldan.

Mangodanior
depured Ge-
nerally by his
Brother.

Hee cometh
to battell a-
gainst the
Soldan.

Tartars.

Amalech.
The King of
Armenia, his
great losse at
his returre.

He is poisoned
with his Bro-
ther.

Tangodor the
brother and
Sue of Argon.

Of a Christian
ruler his Sa-
racen.

Hee seeketh
to betray
the Kings of
Armenia and
Georgia.

Hee is accused
to Cebile Can.

He slayeth his
Brother.

Argon of a
Prisoner
made King.

His revenge
on Tangodor.

ferued neere about *Abaga*, in such fort, that both he and his brother *Mangodanior* were poisoned both in one day : and died both within eight dayes after. The truth whereof was afterwards disclosed by the mischievous Malefactors themselves. And so died *Abaga Can* in the yeere of our Lord 1283.

37. After the death of *Abaga Can* the *Tartars* assembled themselves, and ordained over them a brother of his, called *Tangodor*, who had ouergone the rest of his brethren. In his youth hee had receiued the Sacrament of Baptisme, and was baptised by the name of *Nicholas*. But being come to riper yeeres, and keeping companie with *Saracens*, whom hee loued, hee became a wicked *Saracen*, and renouncing *Christian* Religion, would be called *Mahomet Can*, and laboured by all means to turne all the *Tartarians* to that irreligious Sect of *Mahomet* the sonne 10 of Iniquitie : in such fort, that those that hee could not compell by violence, hee a lured by preferments and rewards : in such time as in his time many of the *Tartarians* became protest-*Saracens*, as at this day appeareth. This Child of perdition commanded the Churches of the *Christians* to be destroyed, and forbade them to vse any of their religious Rites or Ceremonies. Hee caused the doctrine of *Mahomet* to be publicly preached, the *Christians* to be banished, and their Churches in the Citie of *Tartaris* vterly to be destroyed. Hee sent Messengers also to the *Soldan of Egypt*, and concluded a Peace and a League with him, promising that all the *Christians* within his Dominion should become *Saracens*, or else lose their heads, which gaue the *Saracens* cause of much reioicing, and made the *Christians* very sad.

He sent moreover to the King of *Armenia* in *Georgia*, and to the other *Christian* Princes of 20 those parts to come vnto him without delay. But they refused rather to die in battell then to obey his commandement, for other remedie they could finde none. And the *Christians* being now in such anguish and bitterness of heart, that they rather desired to die then to liue, euen to a Brother of this *Mahomet*, with a Nephew of his also, called *Argon*, opposing themselves, and rebelling against him for his cruel deeds did signifie to *Cebile Can* the great Emperour of the *Tartarians*, how he had forsaken the steps of his Ancestors, and was become a wicked *Saracen* : labouing with all his might to bring the rest of *Tartary* to be *Saracens* also. Which when *Cebile Can* vnderstood he was much displeased therewith : in such time that he sent and required *Mahomet* to reforme his cruel wayes, for otherwise he would proceed against him. Which message 30 replenished him with wrath and indignation, in such time that hee being perswaded there was none that durst gainsay his proceedings but his Brother and his Nephew *Argon*, hee caused his Brother to be slayne : and intending the like to his Nephew, hee went against him with a mightie Armie. *Argon* being not of strength to withstand his forces, betooke himselfe to a strong Hold among the Mountaines ; which that Sonne of Iniquitie besieged with his deuillish Armie.

Argon finally yielded himselfe, with condition that he might still enjoy his Dignitie and Dominion. But *Mahomet* deliuered him to the Constable and others of the Nobilitie, to be kept in Prison. And departing towards the Citie of *Tartaris*, where he left his wiues and children, he gaue direction that his Armie should come forthly after him : but appointed the Constable, and such as he trusted most, to put his Nephew to death secretly, and to bring him his head. These 40 things thus hastily ordered and directed, there was amongst those that had receiued the command of that bloody execution, a man of some Place and Authoritie, brought vp vnder *Abaga* the Father of *Argon*, who having compassion of his distresse, tooke Armes, and in the night time (due the Constable of *Mahomet* and all his followers, and deliuering *Argon* made him Lord and Ruler of all : some for feare, and others for love being obedient to his will and commandement. *Argon* being thus established, accompanied with his faithful followers, pursued presently after *Mahomet*, whom hee ouertooke and seized on before he came to *Tartaris*, and caused him after their manner, to be cut asunder in the midst. And such was the end of that cursed Caitiffe *Mahomet*, before hee had fate two yeeres in his seat.

§. III.

OF ARGON the Sonne of ABAGA, AND REGAITO his Brother's of
BAIDO, and of the exploits of CASAN against the
Soldan of Egypt, and others.

IN

the yeere of our Lord 1285. after the death of *Mahomet*, *Argon* the sonne of *Abaga Can*, would not take on him the title of *Can*, vntill hee had receiued commandments from the great *Can* Soueraigne Lord and Emperour, to whom hee dispatched Messengers which were honourably receiued, and entertained by the great *Can*, who reioiced much of his successe against *Mahomet* and sent some of his great Officers, to confirme *Argon* in his Dominion, who was thenceforth called *Can*, and much respected of all. For he was of a goodly aspect and presence, couragious and wise in his proceedings, much regarding and hono- 60

Argon is con-
firmed by Ca-
bile Can.

honouring the *Christians*. The Churches ouer-throwne by *Mahomet* he repayed. The Kings of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, with the other *Christian* Princes of the East, came vnto him, desiring his best counsaile, and helpe that the holy Land might be freed from the *Pagans*. *Argon* very graciously answered, That he would gladly doe any thing that might tend to the honour of God, and the aduancement of *Christian* Religion; and that he intended to make peace with his Neighbours, that hee might the more freely and securely follow that enterprise. But *Argon*, before the execution of these good delignments, dyed in the fourth yeere of his reigne. And a Brother 10 of his, called *Regaito*, succceeded him, who was a man of small valour, as shall be after declared.

He dyeth.

39. In the yeere of our Lord 1289. after the death of *Argon Can*, his brother *Regaito* was his Successor, being a man of no Religion : in Armes he was of no valour, but was altogether giuen over to beastly Luxurie, and satiating his insatiable appetite with superfluous meates and drinks : and did nothing else by the space of six yeeres which he reigned, in such time that being 20 hared of his subjects and contemned of strangers, he was finally strangled by his Peeres. After whole death *Baido*, a Kinman of his succceeded him, who was vpriight and constant in Religion, and did many fauours to the *Christians*, but hee soone ended his dayes, as shall be declared.

Baido succed-
eth him.

40. In the yeere of our Lord 1295. after the death of *Regaito*, his Kinman *Baido* ruled over the *Tartars*. He being a good *Christian* builded the *Christian* Churches, and commanded that none should Preach or publish the Doctrine of *Mahomet* amongst the *Tartarians*. But because those of the Sect of *Mahomet* were many, they could hardly be induced to bee obedient to that commandement of *Baido*, and therefore sent Messengers secretly to *Casan* the sonne of *Argon*, promising to giue him the Dominion which *Baido* held, and to make him their Lord and Ruler, if he would renounce the *Christian* Religion. *Casan* caring little for Religion, but greatly affecting Dominion, promised to do as they desired, and he began an open rebellion, whereupon *Baido* assembled his people, thinking to haue taken *Casan*, not knowing of the Treason which his people had wrought against him. But when they came to the Field, all the *Mahometists* leaving *Baido*, fled vnto *Casan*, so that *Baido* being forsaken, thought to haue escaped by flight, yet was pursued and slaine by his Enemies.

The death of
Baido.

41. After the death of *Baido*, *Casan* being made Ruler over the *Tartars*, at the beginning of his reigne, durst not gainsay what hee had promised the *Mahometists* that had promoted him thereto, and therefore shewed himselfe for a while very austere to the *Christians*. But when hee found himselfe well and firmly settled in his Dominion, hee began to honour and cherish the *Christians*, doing them many fauours as shall be declared. First, therefore hee destroyed many great Ones, who had beene perswaders with him to become a *Saracen*, and to persecute the *Christians*. Then hee commanded all the *Tartars* within his Dominion, to be ready with their Armour and all necessarie furniture, to attend him for a Conquest of the Kingdome of *Egypt*, and ouer-throw of the *Soldan*, and sent to the King of *Armenia*, and the King of *Georgia*, and other 30 *Christian* Princes of the East in that behalf.

Casan gathered his forces, and first set forward towards *Baldado*; and at length turned towards the Land of *Egypt*. The *Soldan*, called *Melchamefar*, who had long before some intelligence of the coming 40 of the *Tartars*, assembled all his power, and came before the Citie of *Aman*, which is seated in the middle of the Kingdome of *Syria*. *Casan* vnderstanding that the *Soldan* meant to giue him battaile, forbore to beleige any Citie or Caille, but hastied speedily to the place where the *Soldan* was, and pitched his Tents but one dayes iourney from him in certaine Meadowes, where was plenty of forrage and feeding, where hee reited his Followers and their Horses which were wearied with their traucell. Amongst whom was a *Saracen*, called *Calphack* (or *Capbeck*) who had serued the *Soldan*, and was fled from him to *Casan*, for feare of imprisonment and punishments for his misde-merits. This *Calphack* had receiued fundrie fauours and rewards of *Casan*, who repayed great confidence in him : yet, like a wicked Traytor, hee disclosed the counsaile and purpose of *Casan* to the *Soldan* and *Saracens*, acquainting them by Letters how *Casan* meant to 50 abide in those Meadowes, vntill they had sufficiently rested their Horses which were wearied with reit, and therefore counsailed the *Soldan* to set vpon him before his Horses were reit-dressed, whereby he might easily ouer-come the *Tartarians*.

Calphack dou-
ble dealing.

The *Soldan* who thought to haue expected the *Tartars* at the Citie of *Aman*, did hereupon change his resolution, and with a chosen companie hastied with all speede to assaile *Casan* as vni-awares. But his Eypals and Scouts giuing him notice of their approach, *Casan* commanded his men presently to bet in order and manfully to resist them. He himselfe more hold then a Lion with such companie as hee had about him, rode to meete the *Saracens*, who had approached to neere that they could not auoid the battaile. *Casan* seeing that the residue of his companie were spread so farre abroad in the Countrey for the feeding of their Horses, that they could not suddenly 60 come to him, hee commanded those that were with him to dismount from their Horses, and placing them in a Circle, made as it were a Wall of them, and with their Bowes and Arrows caused his men to expect their Enemies, and not to shoote vntill they were fure to reach them, by which meanes the *Tartars* shooting altogether, wherein they are very skillfull and ready, wounded the foremost Horses of their Enemies in such sort that they fell before the rest, where-
by

He deathly pro-
liuently.

by the rest following on with great fire, and finding the former ouerthrowne, fell themselves head-long ouer them: infomuch, that of all the *Saracens* there escaped few, which were not either ouerthrowne or else wounded to death, with the Arrowes of the *Tartars*.

The *Soldan* himselfe being in the *Armie*, fled as fast as hee could, which *Cafan* perceiving, made his men get vpon their Horses, and manfully to set on their Enemies, being himselfe the foremost amongst them that entred the *Armie* of the *Soldan*, who with some small companie remaining so long, suffayned the brunt, vntill the *Tartars* came in Troupes well ordered to fight, and the *Armie* of the *Soldan* on both sides to battaile, which endured from the Sunne rising till the Ninth houre. But in the end, the *Soldan* with his *Saracens* fled, being not able to withstand the courage of *Cafan*, who did wonders with his owne hand, and pursued them with his people, killing on euery side vntill it was darke night, and made so great slaughter of the *Saracens*, that the Earth was covered euery where with their dead carcases. That night *Cafan* rested at a place, called *Canoer*, reioicing exceedingly at that great victorie which God had giuen him against the *Saracens*. This fell out in the yeere of our Lord 1301. on the Wednesday before the Feast of the Nativity.

42. Then *Cafan* sent the King of *Armenia*, and a Leader of the *Tartars*, called *Moley*, with fortie thousand Horie, to pursue the *Soldan* as far as the Desert of *Egypt*, being twelue dayes journey distant from the place where the battaile was fought, and willed them to expect him or some Messenger from him at the Citie *Gazara*. And they departed speedily before the Sunne rising, to follow after the *Soldan*. But some three dayes after, *Cafan* sent for the King of *Armenia* to returne, because he purposed to besiege the Citie of *Damascus*, and willed *Moley* with the fortie thousand *Tartars* to pursue with speede after the *Saracens*, and to put what hee could take to the sword. Yet the *Soldan* himselfe flyed very swiftly, and riding on Dromedaries both night and day, in the conduct and companie of certaine *Bedouins*, escaped into the Citie of *Babylon* very strangely. But others of the *Saracens* fled several wayes, as they thought they could best saue themselves, and a great number of them going by the way of *Tripolis*, were slaine by the *Christians*, which inhabited the Mountayne of *Libanus*. The King of *Armenia* returning to *Cafan*, found that the Citie of *Amas* had yielded vnto him, so that the whole treasure of the *Soldan*, and his *Armie* was brought into his presence: which was so great that euery one maruailed, why the *Soldan* carried so much treasure with him when he went to fight. *Cafan*, when he had gathered together all the riches and spoiles which he had gotten, bestowed them bountifully among the *Tartars*, and the *Christians* his followers, whereby they were all made rich.

And I Friar *Haydon*, the Compiler of this Historie, who was present in all Expeditions and Battailles, which the *Tartars* had with the *Soldan*, from the time of *Halos* to this day, yet did I neuer see nor heare that any of the *Tartarian* Lords accomplished more in two dayes then did *Cafan*. For the first day, with a small companie of his owne, he ouer-came a great *Armie* of his Enemies, and did such exploits in his Person, that he wanne fame and commendations about all the rest. On the second day, such was his largesse, and so great this liberaltie of his heart, that of all the infinite wealth and treasure which he got, he kept nothing for himselfe, but a Sword and a Purse, in which was contayned certaine writings concerning the Land of *Egypt*, and the body of the *Soldan*'s *Armie*. And this was most maruailous aboute all the rest, how in so little a number, and of so bad preference (for he seemed like a Monster) there could be so much vertue and rigour contayned: for among neere two hundred thousand Soldiers, there could hardly one of like stature, or of worse aspect be found. Therefore, because this *Cafan* liued in our time, it is fitter to be remembered, than the more ample narration of his Acts. And in regard that the *Soldan* who was ouerthrowne by *Cafan*, is yet liuing at the writing of this Historie, they which intend to destroy, or any wayes to endamage the *Saracens*, may recuse many aduertisements out of these Collections.

After some few dayes rest, *Cafan* directed his course towards the Citie of *Damascus*: where the Citizens hearing of his approach, and fearing lest if hee took them by force, they should die without mercy, by the aduice of the wisest amongst them, sent with one consent their Messengers vnto him with offer of their Citie, which hee willingly accepted, and after a while rode towards the Riuer of *Damascus*, on whole Bankes hee pitched his Tents, forbidding any damage to be done to the Citie. Then the Citizens sent him diuers gifts, and plenty of victuals for his *Armie*. There *Cafan* made his abode few and forrie dayes with all his Followers, except those fortie thousand *Tartars* which were sent with *Moley*, who stayed his coming at the Citie of *Gazara*.

43. While *Cafan* reposd himselfe neere *Damascus*, there came newses vnto him, how a Kinsman of his called *Baydo*, had entred into the Kingdome of *Persia*, and committed great spoile there in his absence: and thereupon hee refused to returne to his owne. Leaving therefore his chiefest Captaine *Cotalufa*, with part of his *Armie* for the custodie of the Kingdome of *Syria* (whom hee willed *Moley* and the rest of the *Tartars* to be obedient vnto as his Lieutenant) he set Ruler and Governours ouer all the Cities, and committed the government of *Damascus* to the Traytor *Casfach*, being not yet acquainted with his traytorous disposition. Then calling

to him the King of *Armenia*, and acquainting him with his purpose, hee told him that hee would willingly haue deliuered the Land which hee had conquered into the *Christians* hands, if they had come to him, and that if they came hee would giue order to *Cotalufa* to restore them the Land which they had formerly held: and to yeeld them convenient supply for the repaying of their Cattles and Fortrelles. These things thus ordered, *Cafan* tooke his journey towards *Mesopotamia*, but when he came to the Riuer *Emphrates*, hee sent word to *Cotalufa*, that leauing twentie thousand *Tartars* vnder the command of *Moley*, hee should come speedily to him with the rest of the *Armie*. *Cotalufa* did as was commanded him, so that *Moley* remayned Lieutenant in *Syria* for *Cafan*, who eft-soones by perswasion of the

10 Traytor *Casfach*, remoued towards the parts about *Ierusalem*, to a place called *Gazur*, to finde good feeding and prouision for his Horses.

But in the Sommer time, *Casfach* (who had formerly hatched Treason in his heart against *Cafan*, sent word secretly to the *Soldan*, that hee would restore him *Damascus* with the other Townes which *Cafan* had taken. The *Soldan* liked hereof, and covenanted to giue him *Damascus* after, *Casfach* became Rebel, and caused all the strong places to rebell against the *Tartars*, bearing themselves hold on the heate of Sommer, in which they knew the *Tartars* could not ride nor yeeld any aide vnto their friends. When *Moley* perceived that they rebelled euery where, hee durst not stay any longer with so small a companie, but tooke the shortest way

20 towards the Kingdome of *Mesopotamia*, and signified thence to *Cafan* all that had happened in the Kingdome of *Syria*. Who seeing hee could not any way redresse it at that season, by reason of heate, yet when the Winter approached, hee made very great preparation on the bankes of the Riuer *Emphrates*, and sent ouer *Cotalufa* before with thirtie thousand *Tartarian* Horse-men, directing him that when hee came to the parts of *Antiochia*, hee should call vnto him the King of *Armenia*, and the other *Christians* of the East, and of *Cyprus*, and with that strength should enter into the Kingdome of *Syria*, whiles hee prepared to come after with the strength of his *Armie*. *Cotalufa* did as hee was commanded, and with his thirtie thousand *Tartars* went forwards till hee came to *Antioch*, and then sent to the King of *Armenia*, who came vnto him with his *Armie*. The *Christians* also in the Kingdome of *Cyprus* hauing

30 heard of the coming of *Cotalufa*, came speedily with their Gallies and other Vessels to the Ile called *Antiochia*, among whom was the Lord *Tyron* brother to the King of *Cyprus*, Master of the Hospitall of the Temple, with their Brethren of their Societie. And thele being all ready to vnder-see the seruice of Christ, there came a rumour that *Cafan* was dangerously sicke, that men dispyred of his recouerie. Whereupon *Cotalufa* with his *Tartars* returning towards *Cafan*; the King of *Armenia* returned also into his Countrey; and the *Christians* at the Ile of *Antiochia* to the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, by which means the businesse of the Holy Land was utterly abandoned, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 1301.

Again, in the yeere of our Lord 1303, *Cafan* assembling a mighty *Armie*, came with great preparation to the Riuer *Emphrates*, intending to enter into the Kingdome of *Syria*, and there to destroy the whole Sect of *Mohomet*, and to restore the Holy Land to the *Christians*. But stand him when they had reaped and gathered their Come and other fruits of the Earth, and had might not find victuals for the Horses, they set fire on the rest, that the *Tartars* when they came what the *Agarens* had done, and how they had waited all the Land, considering that his horses could not there be fed nor sustayned, hee relied to remayne that Winter vpon the bankes of the Riuer *Emphrates*, and to beginne his Journey at the beginning of the Spring, when the grasse began to grow. For the *Tartars* are ever more careful of the beginning of the Spring, when the grasse contented with the smallest pittance of any kind of nourishment for themselves.

50 Then *Cafan* sent for the King of *Armenia*, who came to him without delay, and lodged himselfe on the Riuer. *Cafan* extended three dayes Journey in length, even from a certayne Citie called *Casabe*, to another Citie called *Bir*, which Castles appertayned to the *Saracens*, yet sent *Cafan* for effecting his desire on the *Saracens*, and to deliuer the Holy Land out of their hands, the Devil cast a new Obstacle in his way, for he had newes againe that *Baydo* had entred, and made more spoyle on his Land then before: so that it was contrayned for him to returne to his owne, whereas being much grieued, in respect that hee was contrayned so long to delay the businesse of the Holy Land, hee commanded his Captaine *Cotalufa* with fortie thousand *Tartars* to enter into the Kingdome of *Syria*, and to take *Damascus*, and kill all the *Saracens*; and that the King of *Armenia* should ioyne his people with *Cotalufa*. *Cafan* then returned into *Persia*, and *Cotalufa* and the King besieged the Citie *Amas*: and hauing certayne Intelligence that the King was at the Citie *Gazara*, and would not stirre from thence, they took it by assault with their

Casfach was sent to *Gazur*.

Tyron.

Cafan renewed the warre of *Syria*.

The *Saracens* burne and waste their owne Countrey.

Casfach the traitor.

Thence

*Damascus be-
sieged.*

*The obstina-
cie of Cotuloffa.*

*The Soldan's
wary Warrior.*

*Cotuloffa's
brutish ac-
tempt.*

*The Tartars in-
dangered by
the waters.*

*He dyeth him
with men and
monny.*

Thence they went to the Citie of *Damascus* to besiege it, but the Citizens sent their Mes-
sengers, desiring a Truce for three dayes which was granted them. The Scouts of the *Tartars* be-
ing almost a dayes Journey beyond *Damascus*, tooke certayne *Saracens* whom they sent to *Cotuloffa*
that he might examine them. *Cotuloffa* being advertized by these that there were about
twelve thousand *Saracens* Horsemen, with in two dayes Journey from thence, which expected
daily the coming of the *Soldan*. He rode presently with all speed, hoping to take them at un-
awares: But it was almost night before *Cotuloffa* and the King of *Armenia* could reach thither,
and they had Intelligence that the *Soldan* was come newly before them. Therefore being decei-
ved of their expectation to assaile those twelve thousand alone, some aduised them for the best
to repose themselves that night being now somewhat late, and to set vpon the Enemy in the
morning. But *Cotuloffa* despising the *Soldan*, and his people would not hearken to any aduice,
but commanded his Armie to bee forthwith put in order: which the *Saracens* perceiving, kept
their standing, being on the one side fenced with a Lake, and with a Mountayne on another side,
and knowing that the *Tartars* could not come to assaile them without danger, they would not
goe forth to fight, but remained in the place where they were, and when the *Tartars* thought
without any impediment to have assailed their Enemies; they found a small Riuer betwixt
them, which in some places had no passage over: by means whereof much time was spent be-
fore they could passe over the Riuer; but after they had passed the greatest part over the Riuer,
they let manifestly on their Enemies. Yet the *Soldan* stood still and would not remoue from the
place he was in, betwixt the Lake and the Mountaine: which *Cotuloffa* perceiving, because the
darke night approached, he withdrew his company for that night and lodged them neere the
Mountayne only about a thousand *Tartars*, which could not passe the Riuer, were not with him
that night. The day coming, the *Tartars* againe courageously let vpon the *Soldan*; but as before,
he would by no means come forth to fight, but defended himselfe in that place of advantage.
So the *Tartars* continuing their assault from the morning vntill the ninth houre, being thirstie
and ouer-wearie for lacke of water they retried themselves in good order, leaving the *Soldan*
and came to the Plaine of *Damascus*, where they had plenty of pasture, and water at will,
where they determined to abide vntill they had sufficiently reposed themselves and their
Horses.

But the Inhabitants knowing, that the Armie of the *Tartars* was spread abroad in that
Plaine, opened the Sluces of the Riuer in the night time, whereby the waters rose so high in
eight houres ouer all the Plaine, that the *Tartars* were constrained on the sudden to arise and de-
part, so that the night being darke, and the Ditches all filled with water, and no wayes nor
paths to be seene, they were all amazed in such sort that many Horses perished, and much Ar-
mour was lost, inasmuch, that the King of *Armenia* endured much losse: yet the day coming
through the goodness of God, they escaped the waters, but the Bowes and Arrows of the
Tartars being their chiefe weapons which they vse, and the rest of their Armour being all wet
and vicerly vnderminable, they were so affonied therewith, that if their Enemies had then pur-
sued them, they might have bene taken or flaine. Afterwards, the *Tartars* by reason the sun-
ny had lost their Horses, returned softly by small Iournies to the banks of the *Riuer Euphrates*;
yet none of their Enemies durst follow or pursue them, but the Riuer being risen and swollen
through the abundance of raine that fell, many of the *Armenians*, as also of *Georgians*, perished
therein, more then of the *Tartars*, whose Horses knew better to swimme: so returned they in-
to *Persia* ruined and disgraced, not by the power of the Enemy, but by accident partly, partly
by euill aduice. A great cause whereof was the obstinacie of *Cotuloffa*, who would not regard any
aduice that was giuen, for if he would have hearkened to the counsell of the wise, he might easily
have prevented those dangers.

And I *Frier Haythorn* the Compiler of this Historie, was present at all these proceedings: and
if happily I treat more largely thereof then shall be thought convenient. I craue pardon in re-
gard that I doe it to this end, that on like occasions happening these courtes may be called to
minde. For these actions that are ordered by counsell, haue commonly good and commenda-
ble ends, but the rash and imprudent Enterprizes, doe usually fild of their wished success.
After that the King of *Armenia* had passed the *Riuer Euphrates* with some losse, he resolved to
goe to *Cafan* before he returned to his Kingdome of *Armenia*, and therefore he went first
to the Citie of *Ninive* in which *Cafan* then resided. He enterprised the King with much honour,
kindnesse, and magnificence, and being compassionate of his losses to make him some recompence
of especiall fauour vnto him, he granted him a thousand *Armenian* Horsemen yearly at his
charge for the defence of his Kingdome, and also granted him out of the Kingdome of *Turkie*, a
yeerely pension, for the maintenance of another thousand *Armenian* Horsemen yearly at his
pleasure, the King thus recompensed, having taken his leave, returned to the Kingdome of *Ar-
menia*, which *Cafan* had enjoyed him to watch warily ouer, vntill God pleased to enable him
personally to goe to the reliefe of the Holy Land.

¶ V.

¶ V.

CASAN dyeth, CARBANDA succeedeth his Apostasie. The Authors
entrance into a Religious Habit. Of TAMOR CAN the sixth Empe-
rour, and of CHAPAR, HOCHTAI, and CAR-
BANDA, three other Tartarian
Kings.

10 The King of *Armenia* returned safely to his Kingdome, but after hee came thither hee
found little rest there, for after it so pleased God, that *Cafan* was surprized with a
griuous infirmite, and hauing gouerned wisely in his life, hee was no lesse willing
that his wisdom should bee commended in his death. Therefore hee made his last
Will and Testament, appointing his Brother *Carbanda* (or *Carbaganda*) his Heire and Successor
and hauing ordered all things concerning the Affaires of his Kingdome and his House in prudent
manner, he made many good Ordinances and Lawes which for a memoriall he left behind him,
being at this day inuicibly observed by the *Tartarians*. Then dyed *Cafan*, and his Brother *Car-
banda* succeeded in his Kingdome.

*Carbanda his
Successor.*

20 This *Carbanda* was the Sonne of a Ladie of famous memorie, called *Erockaton*, who was very
devout and religious in Christianitie, while hee liued, and had every day Divine Seruice celebra-
ted before her, keeping a Priest and Chappell of her owne, so that this *Carbanda* was baptized
and named *Nicholas* in his Baptisme, and continued a pious Christian as long as his Mother
liued. But after his Mothers death, delighting in the societie of *Saracens*, he forsake the
Christian Religion to become a *Maomettist*. The King of *Armenia* vnderstanding the death of
Cafan, was much troubled therewith, and his Enemies began to lift vp their Crests very high.
For the *Soldan* of *Babylon* thereupon fought by all means to endamage him and his people,
sending all the yeare almost euery moneth great troups of armed Souldiers, which foraged and
waited the Kingdome of *Armenia*, and did more damage and spoyle on the plaine Countrey
then they had euer sustayned before in any mans memorie. But the Almighty and most mercif-
full God who neuer forsaketh altogether those that put their trust in him, had compassion on
the poore afflicted Christians: for it fell out that in the month of Iuly, seven thousand *Saracens*
of the best Families vnder the *Soldan*, made a rode into the Kingdome of *Armenia*, waisting and
spoiling all as farre as the Citie of *Tharsus*, in which the blessed Apostle *Saint Paul* was borne,
and when they had committed many poyles in that Prouince, and were vpon their returne, the
King of *Armenia*, hauing gathered his people together, encountered and set vpon them neere
the Citie of *Giasaca*, where more by Gods goodness then by their own worth, they were vtterly ouer-
throwne in such sort, that of seven thousand *Saracens* there escaped not three hundred, but
were either taken or flaine, albeit they thought in their Pride, they could haue ouer-runne the

*The Soldan
marches roades
into Armenia.*

*The King of
Armenia ouer-
throweth his
Enemies.*

40 whole Kingdome of *Armenia*, and decure all the Christians therat a morill. This was per-
formed on the Lords Day, being the eighteenth of Iuly, after which conflict, the *Saracens* durst
no more enter into the Kingdome of *Armenia*. But the *Soldan* sent to the King of *Armenia* to
make truce with him, which was agreed betwixt them.

45 I *Frier Haythorn*, hauing bene so relint at all the said proceedings, had purposed long be-
fore to haue taken a Regular Habit vpon me, and to haue entred into Religion. But by reason
of many impediments and difficulties in the Affaires of the Kingdome of *Armenia*, I could not
with my honour forsake my friends and kindred in such extremities. But seeing that Gods
goodnesse had bene so gracious vnto me, as to leaue the Kingdome of *Armenia*, and the Chri-
stian people there after my manifold labours and trauels in quiet, and peaceable estate, I then
50 took the time to performe the Vow which before I had vowed. Therefore hauing taken my
leave of my Lord the King, and of the rest of my kindred and friends, I came in that field where
God gaue the Christians Victory ouer their Enemies, I began my Iourney, and coming to
Cyprus in the Monaisterie of *Epiphania*, tooke a Regular Habit of the Order *Premonstratensis*, to
the end that hauing serued the World as a Souldier in my youth, I might spend the rest of my
life in the Seruice of God, forsaking the pompe of this World, which was in the yeare of our
Lord 1305. Therefore I render thanks vnto God, that the Kingdome of *Armenia*, is at this
day in good and peaceable estate, and well reformed by the Moderate King *Linus*, Sonne to
King *Haythorn*, who is a Looking-glasse or patterne to all other Kings in all kinde of eminent
vertue.

*He taketh the
Habit of a
monasterie.
An. Dom. 1305.*

60 Moreover, the Compiler of this Worke affirmeth, that he hath come thus manner of wayes
to the knowledge of those things which hee declareth and writeth in this Booke. For from the
beginning of *Changue Can*, who was the first Emperour of the *Tartars* vntill *Mango Can*,
who was their fourth Emperour, I faithfully declare what I gathered out of the Histories of the
Tartarians. But from *Mango Can* to the death of *Tadon*, I write, that which I received of an

*These are
this Historie.*

Vnle of mine, who writ the fame by the commandment of *Haiton* King of *Armenia*, and was present then at all the forefaid occurrences, and with great diligence did often difcoufe & make rehearfall of them to his Sonnes and Nephewes, that they might remayne the better to Pofterity, and from the beginning of *Abaga Can* to the end of this third part of this Booke, the Author relateth thole things which hee knew of himfelfe, as hauing bene present at them all, whereby he is enabled to geue teftimonie of the truth. Now albeit we haue hitherto treated of the Hiftories and Deeds of the *Tartarians*, there remaineth yet fometwhat to be faid concerning their Power and Dominion, efppecially of thole that are now living, that it may the better be knowne.

Tamor Can.

Long, or *Ling*,
see p. 19 & 21.

Three in *erice*
Kings of the
Tartars.

Chapar,
Hochtai,
Carbanda,
Chapar.

Hollay, of who
the *Tartars*,
and *Tanulou*.
* There doe
Hans of whom
the *Hungarians*
had originall
Carbanda.

The diuifion of
Afia.

The *Derbest*,
The Citie cal-
led the *Iron*
Gate.

The Birds cal-
led *Seyfcrach*.

47. The great Emperour of the *Tartars* which now holdeth the Empire, is called *Tamor Can*, being their first Emperour, who keepeth his Residence in the Kingdom of *Cathay*, in a very great City called *Long*, which his Father caused to be built, as is aboue declared, his power is very great. For this Emperour alone is able to doe more then all the *Tartarian* Princes together, and the Nations vnder his government are reputed more noble and rich, and better stored of all necessaries, becaufe that in the Kingdom of *Cathay*, in which they now live, there is great abundance of riches.

Besides this great Emperour, there are three other great Kings or Princes of the *Tartars*, which rule each of them ouer many Nations, yet are they all fubieft to the Emperour, and acknowledge him their natural and Leige Lord. And the differences which happen betwene them are decided in the Emperours Court, and determined by his Iudgement. The first of these 20 Kings is called *Chapar*, another *Hochtai*, and the third *Carbanda*. This *Chapar* hath his Dominion in the Kingdom of *Turfanistan*, being the neereft to the Emperour. It is thought that he is able to bring into the field foure hundred thousand Horfemen, and these are bold and good Warriors, but not so well furnished of Horfe and Armour as were expedient. The Emperours fubiefts doe many times make warre vpon them, and they on the other side doe often inuade the people of *Carbanda*. The Dominion of this *Chapar* was in ancient time fubieft for the greatest part to a Lord called *Dony*.

Hochtai keepeth his Seat of Residence in the Kingdom of *Comania*, in a Citie called *Afara*, (or *Sara*) and it is faid, that he is able to bring fix hundred thousand Horfemen to the fight, yet are they not so much commended in Fatts of Armes, as the men of *Chapar*, albeit they haue better 30 Horfes. These make warre fometimes on the Subiefts of *Carbanda*, fometimes againft the *Hungarians*, and fometimes amongst themselves. But *Hochtai* who ruleth at this present holdeth his Dominion peaceably and quietly.

Carbanda hath his Dominion in the Kingdom of *Afia* the Great, and maketh his chiefe abode in the Citie of *Tauris*, being able to bring three hundred thousand Horfemen to the field. But these are gathered out of diuers parts being rich and well furnished with necessities. *Chapar* and *Hochtai* doe fometimes make warre vpon *Carbanda*, but hee neuer medleth first with them: neither mouth warres against any but that he fometimes inuadeth the *Soldan* of *Egypt*: against whom his Predecessors haue fought many Battailes. *Chapar* and *Hochtai* would willingly take from *Carbanda* his Dominion, if they were able to effect it.

40 The reason whereof is this, *Afia* is diuided into two parts, the one part whereof being called the *Upper* or *Deepe* *Afia*, is inhabited by the Emperour, and thole two Kings called *Chapar* and *Hochtai*. The other part being the higher, is called *Afia* the Greater, in which *Carbanda* inhabiteth and hath Dominion. Now there are only three wayes by which men may passe out of the *Deepe* or *Lower* *Afia*, vnto the high Country called *Afia* Major. The one is out of the Kingdom of *Turfanistan*, to the Kingdoms of the *Parthians*; another way there is called *Derbest*, which lyeth neere the Sea where *Alexander* built the Citie called the *Iron Gate*, as in the Hiftories of *Comania* appears; the other way is to goe ouer the Sea, called *Car* *Mare*, which way lyeth through the Kingdom of *Barca*. By the first way the fubiefts of *Chapar* cannot passe to the Territories of *Carbanda*, without great danger and difficultie, becaufe they should find no feeding for their Horfes in many dayes trauiels. The Land being so dry and barren, that before they could come to any fruitful inhabited Country, their Horfes would be starued, or at least so faint and wearied that they might be easily overcome, and therefore that way they will not take. By the way of *Derbest* the people of *Hochtai* may passe into the Country of *Carbanda*, only fixe months in the year, which is in the Winter time. But that way *Abaga* hath called great Trenches and Fortifications to be made in a place called *Ciba*: and is alwayes kept and efpially in the Winter with a Garrison of armed men to defend the passage. The people of *Hochtai* haue alayed many times to passe that way by stealth and secretly: but they neuer could, neither can by any means doe for in a place called *Mongia*, there are alwayes in the Winter time certaine Birds about the biggnes of Pheasants hauing very faire feathers to behold, and these Birds (which are called *Seyfcrach*) when any people come into that Plaine, straight flye away ouer thole Watchmen and their Trenches, whereby the Soldiers there are eene footnes assured of the coming of their Enemies, and preuent the surprize and by the way of the Sea called *Car* *Mare*, they neuer attempted, becaufe that way goeth through the Kingdom of

Barca

Barca, which is so mightie in people and so strongly situated, that they are without hope to preuaile there, and by means hereof hath *Carbanda* and his Predecessors bene secured from the power of so potent Neighbours. Now we will briefly say fometwhat of the manners and fashions of the *Tartars*.

48. The *Cataians* do so much differ from other Nations in their fashions and manner of liuing, that it were tedious to treat of the manifold diuerfities and strange varietie found amongst them. They acknowledge and confesse one Immortal God, and they call vpon his Name: yet they neither fast nor pray, nor any wayes afflict nor humble themselves, for feare or reuerence of him, nor doe any good workes. The killing of men they hold to be no finne; but if they happen to 10 leaue their Braille in their horfe-mouth when hee should feed, they thinke therein they offend God mortally. Fornication and Lecherie is held by them as no finne. They marrie many wyes, and the custom is, that the Sonne must marrie his Step-mother after the death of his Father: and the Brother is married to his Brothers Wife after his deceafe. In matter of Armes they are very good, and more obedient to their Superiour then other Nations are: and doe easily know by certaine signes in Battaille the will of their Commander: whereby the Arme of *Tartarians* was, is easily ruled and commanded. Their Lord bestoweth not any tipend on them, but they live on hunting and such prey as they can get: and their Lord may take from them when hee list whatsoeuer they haue.

When the *Tartars* ride vpon any enterprize, they take with them great foor of Horfe, drinking their Milke, and feeding on their flesh which they reckon very good food. The *Tartars* are very readie and excellent Archers on horfe-back, but on foot they are but flow, they are dexterous and ingenious in taking of Cities and Castles, and for the most part victorious ouer their Enemies: yet will they not forbear to turne their backs to the skirmish if it be for their advantage. And this advantage they haue in the field that they will fight with the Enemies when they list themselves, and yet they cannot be compelled to fight but at their pleasure. Their manner of fight is very dangerous, so that in one conflict or skirmish of the *Tartars* there are more slaine and wounded then in any great Battaille of other Nations, which hapneth by reason of their Arrowes, which they shoot strongly, and surely out of their Bowes; being indeed so skilfull in the arte of shooting, that they commonly pierce all kind of Armour, and they 30 happen to be routed, yet they flye in troups and bands so well ordered, that it is very dangerous to follow or pursue them, becaufe they shoot their Arrowes backwards in their flight, wounding and killing oftentimes both men and horses that pursue them.

The Arme of the *Tartars* maketh no great thew, becaufe they goe trouping close together, so that an Arme of one thousand *Tartars* will scarce seeme five hundred. The *Tartarians* doe courteously entertaine strangers, giuing them part of their Viands, and expect the like offers to be made them, for otherwise they will take it by violence. They are much more skilfull in conquering of Countries then in keeping of them. When they are weakie they are humble and gentle; stout and proud when they are growne the stronger. They cannot endure lying in o-ther men, yet themselves are much giuen to lying, vnlesse it be in two especiall things. The one 40 being in matter of Armes, in which none dares affirm, that he did any exploit which was not done by him, or denie any faire Act which hee hath committed; The other is, That whoeuer hath done any offence, though it delerue death, hee confesseth presently to his Lord if hee examined thereon. This may suffice at this time, concerning the manners of the *Tartars*, becaufe it were long to rehearse all the different customes and kinds of behaviour.

The other Chapters which follow, pertaining rather to aduice fitting those Times, and the holy Land affaires, then the Tartarian Hiftorie, I haue omitted. And in the next place will present some Extracts of our Countriman, that famous Traveller Sir Iohn Mandeville, whose Geographicall Ortelius commendeth, howe fower be acknowledged his Works stuffed with Fables. For my part, I cannot but deplore the losse of such a Treasure, but know not how to recover or repaire it (as Ramusio hath done for Polo) and 50 here haue bene forced to deale with him, as Hiftorians doe with our famous Artift, daring to say litle, becaufe others haue dared fomuch and such incredible things. For his merit, and for his Nation I haue giuen a touch of him, the few Latine Extratts; referring him thus thus a munde to reade him, to Ma-ster Hakluts first Edition of his Voyages, where his first in Latine is to be found at large. I fuppleth that some later Faile out of the Tales of Ogerus the Dane hath stuffed this storie, some of which, for a taile, I haue here left remanings; not that I like pleasure in lies, but that thou mayst see, from what Fontaine I suppose this corruption flowed: and in that my little Age (wisen humours learning) was in- 60 famously imprisoned, and *Dunne* *Scriptura* was vulgarly buried, and *Printing* not at all borne; that Huskes poore Christian Prodigals (prodigall to beleue such lies) were fed with in stead of Bread; not only in the Church by Legends, but in their priuate Iudges, by Artificers, Orlando, Beuties, Guyes, Robin Hoods, Palmerins, and I know not what monstrous changeling-births of Hiftorie. Such was this Ogerus: and in great part such was Oedericus a Friar and Traveller, in whom perhaps some Friar hath traueiled, with him at least in this Author (whose age was before him, and therefore could not erie ought out of him.) Neither is it for nothing (though for worse then nothing, a lie is both) that Priests are in this storie so often mentioned and prayed: I smelt a Friars (Lyars) hand in this businesse. Our

Man.

Barca in the
Latine Copie
is called *Abaca*.

The Religion
of the *Cataians*,
or *Tartarians*
of those parts
is called *Abaca*.

Polygamie.

Wastare.

Exting of
Heath-Reli.

Their Hoip-
talitie.

Delight in
lying.

Ogerus Dine,
of whom they
write that hee
was in
conquered in
the
etc.

Odericus in M.
H. a. published.

Mandevile travelled from Ierusalem beyond Ierico, from Christendome to remotest Ethnikes, and hath fallen among Theeues: The *Fiavly* Priest and Leuite not onely neglected him, but I am afraid played the Theeues thus to rob and wound him; saying: he two former parts, and mugging in the third, which I have therefore chopped off; not daring in the former but with the *Wilde Dogge* to taste and away, for feare of a worse creature. Here you may finde Ives by retaille ethica, ethica, ethica, to this Mandevile; who there, is made a maunde vile full of such prolerie, unworthy thy sight.

CHAP. VI.

Briefe Collections of the Travels and Observations of Sir Iohn Mandevile; written by Master BALE, Cent. 6.

In Old Mandevile, Knight, borne in the Towre of Saint Albons, was so well giuen to the studie of Learning from his childhood, that he seemed to planta good part of his felicitie in the time: for he supposed that the better part of his birth would nothing avail him, except he could render the same more honorable by his knowledge in good Letters. Having therefore well grounded himselfe in Religion by reading the Scriptures, he applied his studies to the Art of Physick, a Profession worthy a noble wit: but amongst other things, he was raulished with a mightie desire to see the greater parts of the World, as Asia and Africa. Having therefore provided all things necessary for his journey, hee departed from his Countrey in the yeere of Christ 1332. and as another Wyse returned home, after the space of foure and thirtie yeeres, and was then knowne to a very tryer. In the time of his traualle he was in Scythia, the grece and lile Armenia, Egypt, both Lybia, Arabis, Syria, Media, Mesopotamia, Persia, Chaldæa, Greece, Ibyrium, Tartaria, and diuers other Kingdomes of the World: and having gotten by this means the knowledge of the eye wit, else, should perill in oblation, he committed his whole Trauell of three and thirtie yeeres to writing in three diuers Tongues, English, French, and Latine. Being arrived againe in England, and having bene the wicke-nesse of the age, hee gave out this speech: In our time (saith hee) it maye be spokn more truly then of old, that Vertue is gone, the Church is vnder foot, the Clergie is in error, the Deuill reigneth, and Simonie beareth the sway, &c. Hee yed at Lege, in the yeere 1372. the 17. day of Nouember, being there buried in the Abbey of the Order of the Guisilmites.

The Tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandevile, in the Citie of Lege, spoken of by Ortelius, in his Booke called *Itinerarium Belgie*, in this sort.

Magna & populoſa Leodij ſuburbis, ad collum radices, in quorum uigis multa ſunt, & pulcherrima Monasteria, inter que magnificum illud, ac nobile D. Laurentii dicuntur, ac Reginado Episcopo. Eſt in hac quoq; regione, ſub ſuburbij Leodij, Guisilmitarum Canobium, in quo Epitaphium beati Iohannis à Mandevile, exſcriptum.

Epitaphium.

Hic iacet vir nobilis, D. Iohannes de Mandevile, aliter dictus ad Burbam, Miles, Dominus de Campſi, natus de Anglia, Medicinæ Proſector, deuotiſſimus orator, & bonorum largiſſimus pauperibus erogator, qui totæ quati orbe luſtrata, Leodij diem vitæ ſuæ cluſit extremum. Anno Dom. 1372. Menſis N. uenbris, die 17.

Hæc in lapide: in quo calata vult armati manu, Leonem calcantis, hæ hæ bifurcata, ad caput manus 50 benedicens, & vernacula hæc verba: Vo, qui pates for mi, pour l'amour dix peccis por ma. Clampus erat vacuum, in quo olim fuſſi decabant laminam æram, & eius in eis ſtrem calata inſcripta. Leonem videlicet argenteum, cui ad pectus luvola rubra in campo carſito, quem Lombus ambiret deſcendat: latus ex auro. Eius nobis oſtendebant, & cultoris, episcopij, & calaria quibus ſum fuſſe oſſerabant, in peragrande toto terrarum orbe, ut ciuitas teſtatur eius Itinerarium, quid typis etiam excuſum poſſim habetere.

Epistola.

Pincipi Excellentissimo, præ cunctis mortalibus præcipue venerando, Domino Edwardo ejus nominis Tertio, diuina providentia, Francorum & Anglorum Regi Sereſſimo, Hieronymo Domino, Aquitavie Duci, marci ac eius Insulis Occidentibus dominanti, Christianorum benevolentia & ornatu, vniuerſuerum arma gentium Tutori, ac Probitoris & strenuati exempli Principi quoque inuicito, milibus Alexia dñi Sequaci, ac vniuerſo Orbis tremendo, cum reuerentia non quæ dicit, cum talibus, & tantam reuerentiam minus ſufficienter extiterit, sed quæ paritas, & poſſibilitas mittentis ac offerentis ſe extendunt, contenta tradantur.

Cm

Cum terra Hierosolymitana, terra promissionis filiorum Dei, dignior cunctis mundi terris sit habenda multis ex causis, & præcipue illa quod Deus conditor celi & mundi ipsi tanti dignatus fuit altitudo, ut in eo proprium filium Saluatorem mundi Christum exhiberet generi humano per incarnationem ex intermatia Virgine, & per eius conuersionem humilissimam in eadem, ac per dolorem mortis sua consummationem ibidem, atq; inde per eius admirandam Resurrectionem, ac Ascensionem in celum, & postremum quia creditur illic in fine sæculi reuerſurus, & omnia indicaturus: certum est, quid ab omnibus qui Christiano nomine à Christo dicuntur, sit tanquam à suis proprijs hereditibus diligenda, & pro cuiusq; potestate ac modis honoranda. Verum quia iam nostris temporibus verius quam olim dici potest, Virtus, Ecclesia, Clerus, Dæmon, Simonia, Cellat, calcat, errat, regnat, dominatur, ecce iusto Dei iudicio, credita est terra tam inepta, & Sacerdotia impietum manibus Saraceno, quæ non est alijs, dolore ipsi meritis audendum, & recedendum. Ego Ioannes Mandeuil militaris ordis fidelem, gerens nomen, natus & educatus in terra Angliæ, in Villa Sancti Albani, ducebat in Adolescentia mea tali inspiratione, ut quoniam non per potestatem, nec per ortus proprias possem præstatam terram suis hereditibus recuperare, orem tamen per aliquod temporis spaciūm peregrinari ibidem, & saluare aliquantulum de propinquo, Unde in Anno ab Incarnatione Domini 1322, impulsi me nauigationis Martilensis maris & vici, in hoc temporis, Anno 1335, scilicet, per 33. annos in transmarinis partibus maris, peregrinatus sum, ambulans, & circuitus multis, ac ductus Patriæ, Regibus, Provinciis, & Insulis, Turciam, Armeniam maiorem & minorem, Egyptum, Libyam Eassem & aliam, Syriam, Arabiam, Persiam, Chaldaeam, Æthiopiam partem magnam, Tartariam, Amazoniam, multas Indias, Cuiatates, Vires, Castra, Villas, & loca, ubi habitant varis gentes, aspectum, morum, legem acritum diuersorum: Attamen quia summo desiderio in terra promissionis eram, ipsam diuitem, per loca vestigiorum filij Dei perſuſtrare curavi, & diuitis in illa fleti. Quæperit & in hac prima parte libri operi iter tam peregrinandi, quam nauigandi, à partibus Angliæ ad istam desertam, & loca inuestigare sentia, qua intra eandem diem breuiter commemorare & diligenter, quoniam peregrinus tam in itinere quam per destinationem vult deſcriptio in aliquo deſerui.

Qui de Hibernia, Anglia, Scotia, Noruegia, & Gallicia ultra arripit ad partes Hierosolymitanas potest saltem vicijs, ad Imperialem Ecclesiam Constantinopolim eligere sit modum profectio, sine per Terras, sine per Aquas. Et si peregrinando eligi transſerre videri, tendi per Coloniam Agrippinam, & sic per Almania in Hungariam ad Monſtrum Cuiatates, ſedem Regis Hungariæ, ubi est Rex Hungariæ multum potens istis temporibus. Nam tenet & Soluoniam, & magnam partem Regni Conannorum, & Hungariam, & partem Regni Rusiæ. Oportet ut peregrinus in finibus Hungariæ tranſeat magnam Danubij flumen, & vadat in Belgradum: Hæc flumen oritur inter montana Almanicæ, & currens versus Orientem, recipit in se 40. flumina antiquam finem in mare. De Belgrade intrat terra Bulgaricæ, & tranſiit per Pontem petrinum ſuūq; Matrocy, & per terram Pyncenatæ, & tunc intrat Græciæ, in Cuiatates Scenes, Almopæ, & Andrinopolis, & sic in Constantinopolim, ubi communiter est ſedes Imperatoris Græciæ. Qui autem viam eligi per aquas versus Constantinopolim nauigare, accipit ſibi portum, prout voluerit, propinquo ſine remotius, Italiam, Pisi, Januæ, Venetijs, Romæ, Neapoli, vel alibi: ſed tranſit Tusciam, Campaniam, Matricam, Coticam, Sardiniam, & quæ in Siciliam, qua diuiditur ab Italia per brachium maris non magnum. In Sicilia est Mons Ætnæ: aquæ ex eadem, qui videntur appellatur Mons Gibelle, & præter illud balneum ubi loca Golphan ubi sunt septem lacus quæ ſemper ignem ſpirantes: ſecundum diuinitatem colorum harum flammarum effluunt: Incola autem ſunt, vel ſterilem, ſiccum vel humilem, calidum, vel frigidum: hæc loca vocant canones Infernalis, vel ſterilem, ſiccum vel humilem sunt 25. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus monumentum Fœderis, & fructus per totum annum, etiam in profunda hyeme. Regnum Siciliæ est bona, & fructuſa habens in circuitu fere leucas 300. Et ne qui erret, vel de facili reprehendat quoniam scribo leucam intelligendum est de leuca Lombardica, quæ aliquando maior est Geometrica: & quoties nunc numerum, ſub intelligat fere, vel circiter, quæ citra, & dictam intendo ponere, de 10. Lombardicis leucis: Geometrica autem leuca deſcribitur, ut notum est, per hæc verſus.

Quinque pedes paſſum faciunt, paſſus quoque centum Viginti quinque ſtadium, ſi illa deſque Octo facis Italia, duplicatam dat tibi leuca.

Constantinopolim vocatur & Cuiatates, & nobilis, triangularis in forma, firmiterq; murata, cuius dua partes includuntur mari Hellespontis, quæ plurimo modo appellantur brachium Sancti Georgij, & alia quæ Buke, Troia vocant. Verſus locum ubi hoc brachium exit de mari est lata verrea planities, in qua antiquius ſitum Troia Cuiatates de qua apud Pœtæ multa leguntur, nec non valde modice apparuit reliquie, ac ſuper omnia, præcioſiſſima Crux Christi, ſeu maior pars illius, & tunc inſcriptis, & ſcriptis ſpongia & arundine, & vno clauorum, & dimidia parte Corone ſimile, cuius altera modiciſſima ſeruat in Capella Regis Franciæ, Pariſijs. Nam & quæ indigunt diuergentibus vicibus reſſeſſe partem vnam, dabatur quoq; mihi de illa Pariſijs vniua ſigna, quam vicijs, nunc præſeſſe conſecra: & est iſſa ſigna non lignea ſed velut de iuicis marinis rigida, & poſſetina. Eccleſia Constantinopolitana in honorem Sanctæ Sophiæ, id est, ineffabili Dei ſapientia dedicata dicitur, & nobiliſſima conuerſorum

Pars prima, continens capitulum 33.

Cap. 1. Commendatio brevis terre Hierosolymitanæ.

Iohannis Mandevile peregrinatio: per 33. annos continuata.

Cap. 2. Iter ad Angliam tempus terras quæ per aquas in Constantinopolim.

Mons Ætnæ.

Æolides Insula.

Temperies Siciliæ Insula.

Luca Lombardica.

Quid fit delecta.

Cap. 2. De vice Constantinopolis, & reliquis diem continens.

Ecclesia Sanctæ Sophiæ.

Regina Helena
britana.Imago Iuliani
nati.
Apostoli & sum-
ma.Cap. 10.
De conductu
Soldani, & vi-
que in Sinu.Littere Solda-
ni in gratiam
Mandevili
concessit.Cap. 11.
De Monite-
rio Sinay, &
reliquis bea-
tis catholis.
Omittuntur
scq. 30. d. ser.
18. c. 13.Cap. 12.
De Ecclesia
gloriosi Pul-
chri Domini
in vrbis Ieru-
salem.Templum Se-
pulchri.Melech Mand-
evili Soldani.Mandevili de
hoc dubitat.
vid. sup. l. 2. c. 1.

nando Ecclesiarum, tam in selemate artificios operis, quàm in firmatibz Sacrosanctis Reliquijs: nam
et continet corpus Sancte & Cathari nostri Domine translatum illic per Reginem Helenam ad
Hierosolymis: et corpus Sancte Lucæ Evangeliste translatum de Bethania Iudeæ: Et corpus Beati
Iohannis Chrysostomi Episcopi Cinciatæ Episcopi, cum multis alijs Reliquijs preciosis: quoniam ibi de-
fuit aqua, semel in anno manavit sui sulcare replens. Ante hanc Ecclesiam, quod ingreditur de Iesso de-
murem habetur de are auro opere summo, magna Imago Iuliani quondam Imperatoris super
Egnum sceleris. De prædita terra Thracie fuit Philegophus Aristoteles oratorum in Civitate Sta-
gæ, et est ibi in loco summa eius altare, ubi & Ingula anni certo die celebratur a populo factum
illud, ac si fuisset Sanctus. Temporibus ergo magnorum consiliorum communium illic sapienter terre,
reparatur fuit per inspirationem immortis consilium optimorum de agenda. Item ad diuinitatem Thracie &
Macedonie sub duobz virabilibus Montibus, vni Olympus, alter Athos, cuius vltimi umbra O-
rientis sole appareat ad 76. miliaria, vsq. in Insulam Lemnon. In borum cacumine montium vetus non
currit, nec ar moietur, &c.

Primi: dicitur aut de reuerentia Soldani, quando ad ipsam intratur exhibenda. Sciendum ergo, cum
ad eo petatur Iteum conductus, nemini denegare consuevit, sed datur petentibus committere sigillum
eius, in appositione alijsq. litteris: hoc sigillum, pro vexillo in virga aut basta dum peregrini ferunt,
omnes Saraceni videntes ibi dñi flexu genibus in terram se reuerentiter inclinant, et portantes omnes
exhibent humanitatem. Vnde in Iteum maior fit reuerentia littere Soldani sigillatæ, quod & Admi-
rabile, et quicquid alijs Domini, quando eis missi sunt, videri recipiunt, se multum inclinant: 20
Deinde ambobz manibus cum capietes ponunt super propria capia, postea osculantur, et tandem legunt
velant cum magna veneratione, quibus semel aut bis perleat, offerunt si premissis ad expellendum
quod quis ibi inducit, ac insuper exhibent dicitur, quicquid possint committi, vel honoris: sed tale
conditum per littera Soldani vix quisquam peregrinorum accipit, qui non in Curia illi fessit, vel notit-
iam apud illum habuerit. Ego autem habui in eodem loco nec, in quibus etiam illi fessit, vel notit-
iam ibi subiectis speciale munus, vt me permitteret intrare, & recipere singula loca, pro
me placito voluntatis, & mihi exponeret quorumcumq. locorum mysteria distincte & abque
villo velamine veritatis, ac me cum omni fodalitate bene benigne recipere, et in curia ratio-
nibus audire, requisiti autem in necesse fore de ciuitate conuocant in ciuitatem. Habito itaq.
peregrini concludit, ad Montem Sinay, &c.

Montis Sinay appellatur iste desertum Syn: quasi in radice Montis istius habetur Canobium Mo-
nacorum pergrade, cuius claustra in cremitu est firmata muris altis, & portis ferreis, pro met be-
stiarum deserti. Et Monachi sunt Arabes, & Graeci, et in magno conuentu, multum Deo deuoti. O-
stendunt illi et caput ipsi Cathari: cum insalutem sanguinolento, & multis parietibus sanctis, &
venerabilibus reliquijs, quæ omnia multis sunt diligenter et q. q. oculis indigne, &c.

Ierusalem cum terra terra Promissus, est quasi vna de sept. oculis indigne, &c.

Ierusalem cum terra terra Promissus, est quasi vna de sept. oculis indigne, &c.

Ierusalem cum terra terra Promissus, est quasi vna de sept. oculis indigne, &c.

Ierusalem cum terra terra Promissus, est quasi vna de sept. oculis indigne, &c.

Singulis autem annis in die Cena Domini in Parascheue, & in vigilia Pasche, tribus his debet
reari Tabernaculum hoc apertum continet, & patet omnibus Christianis gentibus accessus, alias vero
non per annum sine redactione tribuit. Intra Ecclesiam, prope parietem dextrum, est Caluaria locus,
ubi crucifixus pendit Christus Dominus. Per gradatū ascenditur in hunc locum, et est rups vultus
albi coloris, cum aliqua rubredine per loca commissa, habens fissuram, quam dicitur Golgotha, in qua
manus patris precisi sanguinis Christi dicitur infusisse: ubi & habetur Altare constructum, ante quod
cussit iuxta Godofridum de Billio, &c.

Extra duo radia ad Ecclesia ad Meridiem sancti Sepulchri habetur magnus vestibule sancti Ioan-
nis Hierosolymitani, qui cepit & fundamentum est dignificatur oratio Hospitaliarum modo tenen-
tium Rhodum Insulam: in quo recipi possunt omnes Christiani peregrini cuiuscunque sint conditionis,
sui status, vel dignitatis. Nam Saraceni pro lem cura anxij ruerunt, prohibent ne apud quencunque
suorum Christianorum permittat. Ad sustentationem adificij huius hospitalis, habetur in eo 124. co-
lumna marmorea, et in parietibus dimissis 54. pilar. Satis prope hunc locum in Orientem, est Ecclesia
que dicitur de Domina nostra magna: & inde non remote alia, que dicitur nostre Domine Latinorum,
adificata super locum, ubi Maria Magdalene, & Maria Cleopha cum alijs pluribus, dum Christus
crucifigebatur, flebant & dolores lamentabiles exercebant.

Item ad Ecclesia sancti Sepulchri in Orientem ad stadium cum dimidio habetur adificium mirabile, ac
pulchrum valde, quod Templum Domini nominatur, quod constructum est in forma rotunda, cuius cir-
cumferentie Diameter habet 64. cubitos, & altitudo eius 126. & intrinsecus pro sustentatione adificij
multis pilar. In medio autem Templi est locus altaris 14. gradibus, qui & est columnæ vndiq. est fi-
gurat: et secundum quatuor mundi plagas habet Templum quantum intrinsecus per portas Cyprissianis arti-
ficibus constructus, nobilitat, fignatur, & excolet. Et ante portam Aquilonarem intra Templum suos
est aquæ munda, qui quoniam olim exundabat, tamen nunc minime effluit. In toto circum adificij ex-
trinsecus est valde pro atrio latissimum loci, stratum per totum pavementum marmoreis, hoc Tem-
plum non ducitur stare in eodem loco ubi Templum Dei fuit in tempore Christi, quod post Resurrectionem
a Romanis destruxit, istud longo post tempore Adrianus Imperator extruxit, sed non in eodem Templum
priori: prædictum tamen excelsum in medio Templi locum vocant Iudei Sanctum Saronum.

Sciat itaq. quod Saraceni magnam exhibent huic Templi reuerentiam, & honorem, Caput illud dif-
falcate intrantes, & possit gentibus deuotè Deum Omnipotentem exorantes, nulla enim ibidem habetur
templum, sed multa lampades relucens. Neminem Christianorum in hoc luterum ingredi fas est
magis, reputantes eos indignos ad hoc, & nimium immundos, unde nisi vixit iterum non eis habui
ad Soldano, nec ego fuissim ingressus. Ingressus autem cum meis fodalibus depussumus calcamentia,
recognoscens cum multa cordis deuotione, non magis illi facere debere, quam incredulo Saraceno.

Porro in eo loco ubi statuerat idem Rex ante Templum Altare collocauit, videlicet extra portam
Templi occidentalem, habetur & nunc Altare, sed non ad usum, nec ad vsum prius: Nam Saraceni,
quod ibi curantes, transiunt in eo locum, tanquam in & Astrolabo figentes in lineamentum centro batel-
lum, ad cuius umbra per lineas discernuntur ibi horæ.

Vtatur ad dextram fati de propæquo habetur & alia Ecclesia, que nunc appellatur schola Salomonis:
vixitq. ad Meridiem est & aliud Templum sine Ecclesia, quod vocatur Templum Salomonis, quod
alio tempore caput, & fundamentum totius orbis Templariorum fuit.

Domini Salodanus quondam die in Castro, expulsi omnis de camera sua, me salomretinist secum
tanquam pro secreto habendo colloquio. Consequenter enim ei, qui egeret omnes tempore secretorum
qui diligenter a me interrogant quales esset gubernatio vite in terra illius, breuiter respondens, bona, per
Dei gratiam, qui recepto hoc verbo dixit ita non est. Sacrorales (inquid) vestri, qui seipsos exhibi-
turi debent alijs in exemplum, in malis iacens adibus, parum curant de Templi futuro: ha-
bitu & studijs se conformant mundo: le inebriant vino, contentiam infringentes, cum fraude
negotiantes, ac praua principibus consilia ingerentes. Communis quoque populus, dum festis
diebus in tendere debent deuotioni in Templo, currit in hortis, in spectaculis, in Tabernis vixit
ad crapulam, & ebrietatem, & pingua manducans & bibens, ac in bellium morem, luxuriam
rum euidens, in vltima, dolo, rapina, furto, detractione, mendatio & perituro vixit plures eo-
ad libitum excoget, qualiter le velit habere, mutando fibi indumenta, nunc longa, nunc curta
totius quam vestiti: pylotes quoque, calceos, callis, & corrigias fibi fabricant exquisitas, cum etiam
e contra debent iocundum Christi fidei iocundum tempus, Deo deuoti, humiles, veraces, inuicem
diligentes, inuicem concordantes, & inuicem de facili remittentes. Scimus etiam eos prop-
ter peccata sua perdidisse hanc terram optimam quam tempus, nec timentes eam amittere, quan-
diu le taliter gubernant. Attamen non dubitamus, in futurum per meliorem vite conuer-
sationem merebuntur de nostris eam manibus recuperare.

Ad hoc ego ultra confusus, & suspensiss, nequius inuenire responsum: verbar enim obloqui veritati,
quoniam ad Insulam ego pralate, & vultus prauo demisso percontatus sum, Dominus, salua re-
uerentia, qualiter potestis ita plene hoc noscere? De hominibus (ait) mihi interdum multum ad medium
Meditationem per terras & Regiones Christianorum, cum Baisano, Gemmis, Sericiis, ac Aramachis, ac

Colloquium
Mandevili
Reprehensio
Sacredorum
Reprehensio
vulgus illi fira
Vismenon-
um varias
reprehensio

Cap. 15.
De tribus alijs
Ecclesijs, &
specialiter de
Templum Do-
mini.

Tumba God-
fridi de Billio.Cap. 15.
De tribus alijs
Ecclesijs, &
specialiter de
Templum Do-
mini.Littere Soldani
tradite Mand-
evili.Cap. 16.
De pluribus
et locis iuxta
vibem.Vismenon-
um varias
reprehensio

ac per illos singula explore, tam de statu Imperatoris, ac Pontificum Principum, ac Sacerdotum, quam Prælatorum, nec non & Equorum, Præuicorum, ac distinctionem carum.

Igitur peracta collectione nostra satis producta, egressi Principes in cameram reuocant: ex quibus quatuor de maioribus iuxta nos aduocant, fecit eos expresse ac debite, per singulas diuisiones in lingua Gallica distinguere per partes; & singularem nomina portare, omnem Regionem terna Angliæ, ac alias Christianorum terras multas, ac inter nostros fuisse nati, vel multo tempore conuersæ. Nam et ipsi Soldanum audiui cum i bene & diuise loquentem idioma Francorum. Itaque in omnibus his mente consensu omnium, cogitans, & dolens de peccatis singulis, rem taliter se habere, &c.

Secundū partem
Cap. 16.
De Ethiopia, & Diamantibus, & de insula India triplex.
Cap. 18.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 20.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 21.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 22.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 23.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 24.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 25.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 26.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 27.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 28.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 29.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.
Cap. 30.
De Ecclēsia & corpore sancti Iheronimi in capsa honorificata.

Aethiopia consistit in terra Chaldeorum in Austrum, quæ distinguitur in Orientalem & Ethiopiam, & Meridionalem, quarum prima in illis partibus vocatur Cui, propter hominum nigredinem, altera Mauritania.

De Ethiopia intratur in Indiam mediam, nam triplex est, videlicet Infima, quæ in quibusdam suis partibus est nimis frigida ad inhabitandum: Media quæ satis temperata est, & Superior, quæ nimis calida est.

Hanc Meridiam pluribus exactis Insulis per viam decem dierum ventur in Regnum Mabron. Illic in ciuitate Calamiz, seruatur in magno Templo corpus beatissimi Thomæ: Apolloni Domini noster Iheru Christi in capsa honorificata. In quo loco & martirizatus fuit, licet dicant quidam, quod in Edissa ciuitate. Iste populus non est multum tempus transactum, quin suis totus in fidei religione sed non est ad pestem Gentium rursus peruenit.

Per certas historias habetur Decem Danorum Ogerum conquistasse has terras, & in exaltatione sanctarum ipsorum reliquiarum fuisse prestatam beatissimam Ecclesiam, &c.

In hac ipsa terra Thomæ Ecclesia statuerunt multa mira magnitudinis simulacra, ex quibus vnum quod maius est multo alio, apparet sedens homo in alto solio adperto aureis sericis, & lapideis pretiosis, habensq; ad collum superius per ornata multa cinctoria pretiose gemmis, & auro contexta. Ad hoc autem Idolum adorandum confluent peregrini a remotis partibus, & propinquas, in satis maiori copia, & valde seruentiori deuotione quam Christiani, ad sanctum Iacobum in Galizia, quia multi eorum, per totum peregrinationis iter, non audent erigere palpebras oculorum, ne forte propter hoc deuotio intermitatur.

Alij de propo venientes superaddunt laborem itinerandi, ut ad tertium vel ad quartum passum semper cadant in gemitu. Nonnulli quoque demoniaci inspiratione semperque per viam peregrinationis lenulo, & cæcitate nunc miroribus, nunc maioribus faciunt vulneribus per singula corporis loca, & dum ante Idolum perueniunt, excessum fustium de carne propria percipiunt ad Idolum pro offerenda, ac plagis durioribus se configunt, & quandoque sponte pectus se occidunt: in solennitatibus vero, & die dicatione, & fecti in tribulatione simulacrorum, sit conuentus populi, quasi tanti Regni. Et deinde cum processione maius Idolum per circuitum ciuitatis, in curia processimus, modis omnibus perorant, & præcedunt in numero magno pelle canantes bina, & bine ordinatiq; necedq; pluralitas Muscorum cum instrumentis varijs symphoniarum, aut quos continet subsequitur curia cuius lateribus cingunt se peregrinorum exercitus, qui & venerant de remotis.

Ibiq; certitur mirabilis actus vltra modum. Nam aliqui vltra modum diabolice deuotione præcipiunt se sub rotis curru præcedenti, ut frangantur sui crura, brachia, latera, dorsa, nec non & colla in reuerentiam Dei sui (ut dicunt) a quo remunerationem sperant, venire ad Occidentem terrestrem.

Et post processionem postquam statuerunt Idolum in Templo suo loco, multiplicatur ceram simulacris numerus sepe plangentium, & Occidentium vltra quam credi sit facile. Ita quod quandoq; in unica solemnitate immittuntur ducenta corpora, vel plura occurrunt. Et insistentes propinquas arctas lateribus Diaboli martyrum, cum magna muscorum melodia decantantes in sua lingua offerunt Idolis corpora, ac demum accenso rogo omnia corpora comburunt in honorem Idolorum, afflicteque sibi singulis disquisitæ offitio aut cineribus pro reliquijs, quia patris sibi valuerat contra quolibet informis, & tempestatis. Et habetur ante Tempulum, aqua lacu, vel feruorioris piscium, in quo propinquus populus largissimè suis oblationes, Argentum, Aurum, Gemmas, Cypro, & similia, quibus ministris certis temporibus exhibentes prouident Ecclesiæ, ac simulaculo, ac sibi ipsi abundant.

Inde vltius procedendo in Austrum per multas & mirabiles terras quinquaginta dierum diuitem spacio, habetur magna Insula Lamori. Illic omnes nudi incedunt, & feri omnia sunt singulis communis nec vntur priuatis claudis sine serisq; & omnes mulieres sunt communes omnibus, & singulis viris, dummodo violentia non inferatur: sed & pueri est ijs consuetudo, ad offerre comedant teneras carnes humanas: unde & negotiatores adferunt eis crassos infantes venales: quod si non satis propinquas afferunt eos saginam sicut non vitulum, fere Porcum.

Hæc apparet in bona altitudine Polus Antarcticus & ineipit modo apperere in alta Lybia, ita quod in alta Ethiopia, eleuatur otidocem gradibus, prout ipse probauit Afrabolo.

Et est valde grandis Regio Iaua, habens in circuitu ambitum leuacorum duarum millium. Hinc Regi est valde potens, & imperans septem Insularum vicinarum Regionibus. Terra ista est populo valde, & crescit in ea Species, & abundantia Gogoberis, Canelæ, Garisoli, Nucis Mascatæ, & Matice, cum

Cap. 19.
De Iaua, & quibusdam alijs insulis India inferioris.

Mandevili vultu sit obliquo Iaua Insula, grandis. Multa Aromata in Iaua.

Aromatibus multis. Sed & quod ibi nascatur vinum, non habent: Aurum & Argentum est ibi in copia immensa, quod patet in Regio Iaua palatio, cuius palatij nobilitas non est facile scribere.

Quintij gradus ascendentes ad palatij auri, & aulæque cameræ, & ad thalamum camerarum sunt solus de argenteo vel auro, sed & omni statua pauperum in alij habetur ad similitudinem sanctarum, eam quatuordecim argenti, alteram auri, lamina valde crassa, & in ipsi pauperum sunt ex sculpta gela, & hystræ duæq;. In principali vero aula, est plenarie expressa Dumi Ducis Ogeri historiæ, & natiuitate ipsius, quosque in Franciam fastidit dicitur verserit, cum tempore Caroli Magni Regis Franciæ, in Ogerum armata manu conquistasset Christianitati ferè omnes partes transmarinæ à Ierolymis usque ad arbores Solis & Lune, ac prope Paradijsim terrarum.

Pro hac Regione Iaua, (quæ tunc fuit Imperij Tartarici) sibi subingendo, Imperator Grand Can multas pugnauit, sed nunquam vultu expugnauit. Hinc per maria ventur ad regnum Thalamas, quod & Thacion dicitur, in quo habetur magnus numerus bonorum ciuitatum. Intra hanc Insulam, quatuor sunt genera arborum, de quarum una accipitur farina ad panem, de secunda mel, de tertia vinum, & de quarta pessimum venenum. Extrahitur autem farina de suis arboribus isto modo.

Certo tempore autem percutitur super arboris undique prope terram cum securi, & cortex in locis pluribus vulneratur, de quibus recipitur liquor sissus, qui defrutur ad solis estum & contritus reddit farinam albam, ac si de frumento esset confectus, atamen hoc panis non est triticeis saporis, sed alterius valde boni. Stimuli modo de suis arboribus mel elicitur, & vinum: liquor: excepto quod illa non sicut graminis prima deficiantur. Fertur quoque idem extractioem huius farinæ, mellis, & vini, per Contra venenum quod de quatuor arboris genere fit, solum est antioxiaco remedium, ut de proprio fimo per puram aquam diluatur temperat bibat.

In litore maris Calanoch miraculo se veniunt semel in anno, per tres continuis dies de omni genere nesci quæ marinorum, & præsertim se omnino liberet quædam inueniunt. Nam & ego ipse cepi compleræ.

Quod autem, & vinum, conueniunt in hac ipsa specie: quæ amara mirabilis fuit uno tempore Deus olim per Duce Ios Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, usque nunc, singulis annis inueniuntur.

In hac ipsa hac territorio residuissimis terribilibus quantitate, sitq; de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delicatius ac preciosis cibis: mentior, si non quædam ibidem viderem residuum cunctis, in quarum una se tres homines occultantes, sunt, omnes multum alii coloris. Si hic vir exortatus mortis, spectat & exor una cum eo, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habent eam statim scilicet in seculo altero.

In ipsa autem meridionalibus partibus apparet mihi eleuatio poli Antarcticæ 33. graduum, cum 16. minutis. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus: 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis septentrionalibus, sunt sunt Scoti 62. gradibus cum 4. minutis. Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem calti, quæ est de polo ad polum, itinerario mea fuit per quartum Horizontis libere terre, & vltra per 5. gradus, cum 10. minutis. Hinc ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terre circuitus sit 3300. miliarum, octo stadiis pro miliario computatis, & septinginta stadiis superadditis, ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terre, perambulatis 33. stadiis cum uno remittendo, quæ faciunt 4170. miliarum.

Quod autem, & vinum, conueniunt in hac ipsa specie: quæ amara mirabilis fuit uno tempore Deus olim per Duce Ios Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, usque nunc, singulis annis inueniuntur.

In hac ipsa hac territorio residuissimis terribilibus quantitate, sitq; de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delicatius ac preciosis cibis: mentior, si non quædam ibidem viderem residuum cunctis, in quarum una se tres homines occultantes, sunt, omnes multum alii coloris. Si hic vir exortatus mortis, spectat & exor una cum eo, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habent eam statim scilicet in seculo altero.

In ipsa autem meridionalibus partibus apparet mihi eleuatio poli Antarcticæ 33. graduum, cum 16. minutis. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus: 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis septentrionalibus, sunt sunt Scoti 62. gradibus cum 4. minutis. Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem calti, quæ est de polo ad polum, itinerario mea fuit per quartum Horizontis libere terre, & vltra per 5. gradus, cum 10. minutis. Hinc ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terre circuitus sit 3300. miliarum, octo stadiis pro miliario computatis, & septinginta stadiis superadditis, ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terre, perambulatis 33. stadiis cum uno remittendo, quæ faciunt 4170. miliarum.

Quod autem, & vinum, conueniunt in hac ipsa specie: quæ amara mirabilis fuit uno tempore Deus olim per Duce Ios Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, usque nunc, singulis annis inueniuntur.

In hac ipsa hac territorio residuissimis terribilibus quantitate, sitq; de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delicatius ac preciosis cibis: mentior, si non quædam ibidem viderem residuum cunctis, in quarum una se tres homines occultantes, sunt, omnes multum alii coloris. Si hic vir exortatus mortis, spectat & exor una cum eo, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habent eam statim scilicet in seculo altero.

In ipsa autem meridionalibus partibus apparet mihi eleuatio poli Antarcticæ 33. graduum, cum 16. minutis. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus: 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis septentrionalibus, sunt sunt Scoti 62. gradibus cum 4. minutis. Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem calti, quæ est de polo ad polum, itinerario mea fuit per quartum Horizontis libere terre, & vltra per 5. gradus, cum 10. minutis. Hinc ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terre circuitus sit 3300. miliarum, octo stadiis pro miliario computatis, & septinginta stadiis superadditis, ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terre, perambulatis 33. stadiis cum uno remittendo, quæ faciunt 4170. miliarum.

Quod autem, & vinum, conueniunt in hac ipsa specie: quæ amara mirabilis fuit uno tempore Deus olim per Duce Ios Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, usque nunc, singulis annis inueniuntur.

In hac ipsa hac territorio residuissimis terribilibus quantitate, sitq; de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delicatius ac preciosis cibis: mentior, si non quædam ibidem viderem residuum cunctis, in quarum una se tres homines occultantes, sunt, omnes multum alii coloris. Si hic vir exortatus mortis, spectat & exor una cum eo, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habent eam statim scilicet in seculo altero.

In ipsa autem meridionalibus partibus apparet mihi eleuatio poli Antarcticæ 33. graduum, cum 16. minutis. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus: 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis septentrionalibus, sunt sunt Scoti 62. gradibus cum 4. minutis. Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem calti, quæ est de polo ad polum, itinerario mea fuit per quartum Horizontis libere terre, & vltra per 5. gradus, cum 10. minutis. Hinc ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terre circuitus sit 3300. miliarum, octo stadiis pro miliario computatis, & septinginta stadiis superadditis, ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terre, perambulatis 33. stadiis cum uno remittendo, quæ faciunt 4170. miliarum.

Quod autem, & vinum, conueniunt in hac ipsa specie: quæ amara mirabilis fuit uno tempore Deus olim per Duce Ios Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, usque nunc, singulis annis inueniuntur.

In hac ipsa hac territorio residuissimis terribilibus quantitate, sitq; de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delicatius ac preciosis cibis: mentior, si non quædam ibidem viderem residuum cunctis, in quarum una se tres homines occultantes, sunt, omnes multum alii coloris. Si hic vir exortatus mortis, spectat & exor una cum eo, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habent eam statim scilicet in seculo altero.

In ipsa autem meridionalibus partibus apparet mihi eleuatio poli Antarcticæ 33. graduum, cum 16. minutis. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus: 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis septentrionalibus, sunt sunt Scoti 62. gradibus cum 4. minutis. Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem calti, quæ est de polo ad polum, itinerario mea fuit per quartum Horizontis libere terre, & vltra per 5. gradus, cum 10. minutis. Hinc ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terre circuitus sit 3300. miliarum, octo stadiis pro miliario computatis, & septinginta stadiis superadditis, ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terre, perambulatis 33. stadiis cum uno remittendo, quæ faciunt 4170. miliarum.

* Vel Tholomæ.
* Vel Paten.
* Farinæ ac bot.

* Tradit.

Calanoch.

Testitudinis grandissimæ.

Australis latitudo 33. grad. 16. minut.

Hæc erat Eratosthenis computatio.

Cap. 31.
De bona Regione Mani (forte Mani).

Christiani.

Sunt huiusmodi etiam cum in India occidentali, & in Petra Maris, in Decadibus Canisly, vel Quintary, & quæ descriptio

4:00:15 *infule*.

& quemlibet eorum in suo loco constitueret Regem, quatenus Christiana religio in illa Orbis superfacie semper stabilis permaneret, tradidit isti Presbytero Ioanni superiorem Indiam, cum 4000. Infantis, Regionibus, & ipsum prefecit Imperatorem super reliquis cognatis, ut ei certa tributa impenderent, & omnibus obediunt, atq. ex nunc omnes successores Indiarum sunt vocati Presbyter Ioannes, & usq. in hodiernum tempus boni manserunt Christiani, & Religionis emulatores, &c.

CHAP. VII.

*The Voyage of NICOLÒ di CONTI a Venetian, to the Indies, Mangi,
Cambalu and Quinfai, with some Observations
of those places.*

This is taken
out of Ramu-
fus discourse
of this voyage.

Icolo di Conti a Venetian, having travell'd twice thorow Italia, after five and twenty yeeres returned home; & began to June his life to have made denyall of his Faith, he went to the Pope (then Eugenius the Fourth, A.M. 1454.) being at Florence to obtaine absolution: who enoyed him in way of penance, truly to make Narration of his Voyage, and whole Pergrination to his Secretarie Poggius, who writt in it the Latine tongue. 20
Kamutio fought for in a Venice and other Cities of Italic in wame, and at last bared that it was true, that the English by the care of King Emanuel, A. 1500. a Copey whereof he procured from Lisbon, but so conceale it, that it was not known to Paulus, in which yeer was many of better beed; and we out of him these Obligations.

Nicolo di Conti a Venetian being a young man, then at Damasco, and having learned the Arabian Language, went with his merchandize in a Caravan of six hundred Merchants, with whom he traueled into Arabia Petrea, and thence into Chaldee, till he came to Eufrates. In the Defarts of Arabia, once about midnight they heard a great noyse, which they thought were the wilde Arabs comming to rob them, but saw a great multitude passe by neere their Tents without hurting them. Which some of the Merchants said was the King of Persia, Darius the

30
 40
 50
 60
 70
 80
 90
 100
 110
 120
 130
 140
 150
 160
 170
 180
 190
 200
 210
 220
 230
 240
 250
 260
 270
 280
 290
 300
 310
 320
 330
 340
 350
 360
 370
 380
 390
 400
 410
 420
 430
 440
 450
 460
 470
 480
 490
 500
 510
 520
 530
 540
 550
 560
 570
 580
 590
 600
 610
 620
 630
 640
 650
 660
 670
 680
 690
 700
 710
 720
 730
 740
 750
 760
 770
 780
 790
 800
 810
 820
 830
 840
 850
 860
 870
 880
 890
 900
 910
 920
 930
 940
 950
 960
 970
 980
 990
 1000

At the end of that Country is *Zeilam* a famous Island, two thousand miles about, where are Rubies, Saphires, *Cats-eye* Jewels; and store of good Cinnamon; the Tree like a Willow but thicker, the boughs growing more in breadth then height, the leaves like thole of the Bay Tree, so but greater: the Barke of the boughs is belt, that of the Trunk is not good: the fruit like Bayberries of which they make good Oile to anoint them. There is a Lake in which is a Citty of the most precious, governed by *Brammer*, which spend their lives in the studies of Philosophie, and are much given to *Astrologie*.

After that is a great Island called *Somatra*, which the Ancients called *Taprobana*, where live flayed yeere. There grows the Tree of Pepper, the Tree like to I.y. In a part of the Island, called *Batech*, they cate mams flesh. Thence he sayed to *Terraffari*: and thence to the mouth of *Ganges*, and vp the streame (which is very sweet) to *Cernoseum*, and to *Maunazari*; whence crossing ouer Land he came to *Racha*, and thence to *Yamou*, and to *Yamou*; whence crossing ouer, where they are much giuen to spend the time in drinking and fellowshipp both of men and Women. There are certaine old women which get their living by icling bells of gold, silver, and brass, of the bigne of Nuts, which they put in mens yards between the skyn and flesh, when they are of age to vie Women, and in short time cure the place; and the men much please themselves to heare the found of them as they goe. *Here the Copy is defective.*

Mey

Mangi is full of Elephants of which the King nourisheth ten thousand : they serve him in the warre, and carrie Cattle in which hand eight, ten, or twelve men with Lances, Bows and Slings. They take them with a tame female Elephant, yled to feed in a place encompassed with a wall with two gates to goe in and out ; into which in the coupling leaues the male enters at one gate, and shee flees out at the other, many men attending with deuiſes to take him, both gates being shut ; and with fasting , and accustoming other tame Elephants to him, tame him in few days.

The men of this Country have bar be wife, and all both men and women paint or embroider their skines with Iron penes, putting indeblet tinclours thereunto. They worship Idols, to yet when they rile in the morning, they turne to the East, and with hands ioyned, say, *God in Trinitie keepe vs in his Love*. This Country produceth Serpents as grasse as a horn, fixe cubits long, and as bigg as a mans arme, they are called *Aspidochelone*, because they are borne with a beate headed like a Swine, taylor like an Oxe, with a horne in the forehead like an Unicorn, a cubit long, of the colour and stature of an Elephant; with whom he continually fighteth. The horne is much esteemed against poyson. In the furtherst parts of this Country towards the South, they have a kinde of man, some haired and taylor like Horses, some with haire like Aspidochelone, of which they make Fannings.

Beyond *Mengzi* is the greater Province in the World, called *Cataio*, the Lord whereof is called the great *Can*, which highest Emperor : and the chiefe Cite is called *Cambalu*, which foure league and hath eight and twenty miles in circuit. In the middle thereof is a *Fortreffe*, and in it a Palace for the King; and at every of those foure corners is a *Cittie*, each foure miles about, and each of those *Citties* hath a *Fortreffe* : and the way betwixt the *Fortresses* is a way on the wall to all those *Citties*, that if the people rebell he might breake himselfe thither. This Cite fiftene dayes journey is *Quinfa*, another great Cite, which within this litle while hath bene new made by this King. It hath thirty miles compasse, and is more peopled then the *Citties* of *Cambalu*, and hath a *Fortreffe* : and the *Palaces* are adorned after the manner of *Utiat*, and the men and wifemen therein are of the same

After he was gone from *Ara*, whither the River to the Sea in seuteene dayes he arriued at *Zaiton*, a great Port, where he tooke Sea, and in ten dayes came to a great and populous Citie, 30 called *Pauconia*, which is of twelue miles compasse where he stayed foure moneths. There are a few Vines, which runne vpon Trees, and they make no Wine of them. There grow Abre-
cockes, white Sanders, and Camphire, &c.

*I am loth to return into India with this Amboro, whose defells and corruptions have made him so little serviceable, together with the changed names of places since his time. It is remarkable that he sayth that the Indian Mariners sayled by the Starre Anticke, and not by the compass; y^eing certain measures and rules in that Starre-observation. Hee also relateth the huge greatness and terrible fighting of their Ships. But of India, whereof all his Relations are, we have already given you better, than is more puzill^l matheodical, and credible Amboro. Yet before we leave him, let us observe what Aneas Sylvius, or Pope Pius Secundus hath, cited out of him. Hee saith, *ex his causis obdura-**

Either this story is not true, or this *Margi* is not *China* but *Polos Mich*, or some other place.

Cacao

Note.

No compass
which yet in
the next age
was there in
v/c.

En. Syl. de 2.
 Afie parle 6, 10

Macinum: here
by appears
his *Macin* is
about *Siam* or
Pegu, &c.

* And yet how many things more incredible are now found true?

TO THE READER.

READER, I have pressed thee a piece of a *Historie*, [as much as abuts on Tartaria, and China, Althace, a learned Mahometan was the Author] to see how he exalt *Hislorien*, *enzy* there liberally to be cyfused, or whether he fomett per be parabolical, and thus Tametle the Neuchusian *crystall*, [in some things rather what he should have been, and what the Author could say, thus he is not to be taken not to determine. The *Abbot* of Mortimer takes it for a *real* *Storie*, and I doubt whether he be right in his *Historie*. It is to be an *Historie* partly parabolical, yet doing the discerning of the Author a verisimilitude of every thing of ancient and places. (Sufficient to procure our pardon, if not shew it) the vertice of a great part being evident in other *Stories*. It is true that some have

therein clofed, and fiftie thouſand Foot-men, the beſt and choiceſt Souldiers of his whole Ar-
mie. Prince *Tamur*, a kinf-man vnto the Prince, led the Arre-ward, with fortie thouſand
elephants, and fix fiquarons: hee had ſome three thouſand Horſe aduenturers, whom they
called *Oligues*, in this tongue, the ſame which were teame, *The ſorlene bope*.
The *Moscouite* did not obſerue that order, but did fight by double Rankes with Lances, and
there was a place to helpe themſelves therein, and to breake them, notwithstanding thoſe Na-
tions doe not breake them at all, and they ſeemed to bee a greater number then wee, making a
great noyſe. At the length multitude and ſkill outcame the force and valour of the *Moscouite*,
the victory bending to the *Parthians* ſide, the which they did purſue hotly, *Tamur* was hurt
on the fore-head vpon the ſide of the left eye, and had two Horſes ſlaine vnder him in the fight,
Tamur employed himſelfe in giuing God thanks for this victory, after hee had purſued the
enemy three leagues; the next day he reuiued his Arme, and found that hee had loſt of his ſide
for his part between ſeven and eight thouſand Horſe-men, and betweene three and four thouſand
Footmen. The *Moscouite* loſt ſome ſeven and twenty thouſand Foot-men, and betweene
fifteen and ſixteen thouſand Horſe-men. This ſame day was *Odmar* the ſafeguard of the
Prince; but he loſt *Hally*, who was ſlaine by the blow of an Arrow. The Prince did ſlacke no
time after ſo great a victory: He let forward, and came into the borders of the *Moscouite*,
whom he enforced to capitulations, that they ſhould become Tributaries of a hundred thouſand
Duckets, and ſhould pay all the charges of the War, amounting vnto the ſumme of three hundred
thouſand Duckets, he then would ſend backe againe all the Priſoners, and withdraw his Arme,
for ſecurity laſt of they ſhould giue him pledges, which ſhould be changed every year; vnto
all which they agreed. So was this Warre ended to his contentment, returning with glorie
vnto the Prince his Father.

Quinty, if
not Quinty.

The Tartarian
Exercises.

Tamurhan his
Marriage with
the great Chis
Daughter.

The ſituation
of the Citie of
Samarca.

This may bee
prayed in a
Paine and In-
firmity, but not
in a Chriſt
Prince.
Quinty que
ſuſpense, ſi
which of all
Religions, I
none.
Exercises, are
the mouable
populations
of the Tartar.
A wall builded
by the King of
China.

Now *Tamur* was received into all his Countries with much honour and triumph. The great
Cham of Tartaria, Brother vnto his Father, ſent Preſents to graſſie him, making offer vnto
him of his Daughter in Marriage, and that in marryinge of her, hee would caſte him to bee ac-
knowledge as Emperour throughout all his Kingdomes, as his next heire, himſelfe beinge now
old, and out of all hope to haue any more Children. Hereupon hee freely took his Iourney
towards him, being in the City of *Quinty*, where he was received with a Kind of Triumph
and Magnificence: there did he ſhew himſelfe braue in all manner of gallant Showes and Com-
bats, as well in jelt as in earnest. And as theſe Nations are full of vanitie, and deſirous to make
ſhew of their ſtrength and agilitie, *Tamur* carried away the Prize therein, whether it were
thooting neere with his Bow, or in charging Horſes in the middle of the courſes, or in breaking
the ſixt day after his Quintaine, hee made eury one wonder at his dexterity, and was crow-
ned Emperour his Vncle, and of all the Court. After that, he married the Emperours Daughter, de-
ſiringe firſt to bee crowned before the Marriage, to the intent that none ſhould thinke that the
Crown came vnto him by meanes of her, but by ſucceſſion, the Daughters not at all ſucceeding
into the Empire. It was alſo to ſecure his eſtate, and hauing remayned in that place by the ſpace
of two monthes, hee returned from thence with his Wife to *Samarca*, in which Citie hee de-
lighted greatly to remaine, becauſe the ſituation thereof was very faire; and for that the Citie
was accompanied with a faire Riuer, which cauſeth great Traffique, and maketh it richer then
any Citie within that Countrey. *Odmar* alone was called by him, at ſuch time as the great *Cham*
Vncle did impart vnto him his Affaires: and amongſt other matters, he propounded vnto him
the Enterprize of *China*, promiſing him aſſiſtance and ayde, he propounded vnto him
it was to undertake this Warre for the better giuing of his eſtate, ſeeing the King of
China had much gone beyond his ancient bounds.

He had in his Court a Chriſtian whom hee loved much, and eury one greatly reſpected, na-
med *Avalla*, a *Gomic* by birth, brought vp from his youth about his perſon. This man prin-
cipally did ſtirre him vp vnto great Enterprizes, and notwithstanding his Religion, hee truſted ſo
him. Now hee had Religion in reuerence, lo as it did worſhip one only God, Creator of all
things. Hee often ſaid, that the greatneſſe of Diuinitie conſiſted in the ſundry kinds of people
which are vnder the Cope of Heauen, who ſerued the ſame diuinely, nothing it ſelfe with diſ-
tinguiſhing, one in his Eſſence, not receiving therein any diuerſitie. This was the reaſon that moued
him to permit and grant the vie of all Religions within the Countreys of his obedi-
ence, al-
Warre with the King of *China* (who is called the *Lord of the World*, and *Child of the Sunne*)
which was no ſmall Enterprize. But before hee would begin the ſame, hee ſent vnto the ſaid
King of *China*, for to demand right for ſome Countreys (which they call *Herda*) abiding
places, which this Prince of *China* had viſtured long before, and euen the paſſages of a Riuer ſo
called *Tachy*, which is beyond his limits, which are *Walls* which are betweene the Kingdomes
of the great *Cham*, and of our *Tamur*, builded of purpoſe by this King of *China*, to defend him from
the *Souldiers* of the Tartarians, and forces of our Prince, ſo as this was begun with the aduice of the

great *Cham*, and for his benefit as well as for the Princes. Therefore to accompliſh his Enter-
prize, in the meane-time that he attended for the returne of his Embaſſadors, hee cauſed his
forces to come forwards from all parts, appointing vnto them for the place of meeting his owne at
the *Herda* of *Baſchir*, where all his Armee aſſembled: and other aſying troups of the great
Cham in the *Darters* of *Ergimul*, at a certayne day, in which place hee ſhould ioyne with all his
Arme. The Arme of the great *Cham* conſiſted of two hundred thouſand fighting men, wherein
were all the braue men of his Court, who were accuſtomed vnto the Warre, the Emperour
then reigned, and was old, having greatly increaſed his limits, and conquered a great Countrey,
ſo as theſe men were well trayned vp in the Warre, and accuſtomed vnto trauell and paines. Now
then the Embaſſadors which were ſent, returned and informed the Prince of the will of *this great*
King of the World (this King of *China* (who was named *ſo*) who poſſed vp with ſaine glorie,
was aſtoniſhed how any durſt denounce Warre againſt him, making this proud Anſwere; That
Tamur ſhould content himſelfe that hee had left him that which hee might haue taken from
him, and that his Armes and Forces were of another fort, then thoſe of whom hee publiſhed the
victorie, to bring thereby terror vpon his Neighbours.

This Anſwere being heard, our Prince marched directly vnto the Arme, and gaue order for
the conueneance of viſuals from all parts, ſet to haſten forward his Confederates, empered the
Anſwere vnto the Emperour by Embaſſadors diſpatched from him, cauſed the boldneſſe of the
King of *China* to bee publiſhed, to make manifeſt vnto all the World the juſtneſſe of his cauſe.
Before his departure he went to take leaue of his Father, who ended with a ſingular and
tender affection, ſaid he ſhould neuer ſee him againe, and that hee haſtened vnto his laſt reſt,
and hauing made ſolenne Prayers vnto the Prince, his Sonne for his proſperitie, kiſſing him a thou-
ſand times, drew off his Imperiall Ring, and gaue it vnto him, not aſking whether his Iourney
tended: laſt calling *Odmar*, hee bade him take well recommending his faithfulneſſe vnto his Son.
Then he departed and drew towards *Samarca*, where the Emperreſſe his Wife remayned, whom
hee carried with him as is the cuſtome of that Nation, and after hee had (being Religious) viſited
the Tombe of his Seruant *Hally*, hee cauſed his ſoule three dayes to bee prayd for, according to
the Rites of his Law: whereupon hee preſently departed, hauing taken order for the well go-
uerning of his Kingdome in his abſence, committing the charge thereof vnto *Samarca* man well
practiſed in Affaires, and hee who had the charge of our Prince in his youth. So then hee marched
forward in the middle of his Arme, which conſiſted but of fiftie thouſand Horſe, and one hun-
dred thouſand men on foot, relying principally on the Forces of the great *Cham* his Vncle; who
about all deſired this War: hee did not forget to giue in charge, that the reſt of his Forces ſhould
be ready vnto the firſt Commandement, as ſoone as hee ſhould be ioynd with the forces of the
great *Cham*, and marching forwards hee had ſlaid by the way by reaſon of ſome diſtemperance
which had ſurprized him through changing of the Ayre, as the Phyſicians affirmed. But yet,
notwithstanding the forces which *Caſſes*, Captaine of the Arme of the great *Cham* conſiſted,
went daily forwards. Now the newes was ſpied into an infinite number of places of his Em-
pire, yet did hee not neglect to ſend vnto the great *Cham*, and often aduerſe him of
the ſtate of his health, to the end the ſame ſhould not cauſe any alteration, the which hee did
fore-ſee by reaſon of his preferment vnto this Empire, by the great *Cham* his Vncle: and hee
was in doubt of a certayne Lord named *Calix*, who was diſcontented therewith, and had not as
yet neither gratified nor acknowledged him as all the other ſubiects had done.

Now concerning his delay, it was by ſundry diuerſly interpreted; ſome ſaid that hee had bin
aduerſed of ſome vproare to be attempted, when hee ſhould be farre ſeuered from thence, and
had paſſed ouer the Mountaynes of *Pafanſu*, and that *Calix* ſlaid vpon nothing elſe, inſomuch
as the Companies of the great *Cham* were gone forwards, enen beyond the Mountaynes, hauing
thought hee ſhould haue the meanes to worke his enterprize. Thereupon hauing aſſembled great
ſtore of his moſt faithful followers, hee tooke counſell with them, that this was the meanes to
outthrow the purpoſes of *Zachary*, who would reigne ouer and bring them vnder his Empire:
and that ſeeing their Prince had bin ſo badly minded as to do the ſame of his own mind without
calling of them which had intereſt in that election, that now was the time to aſſure the liber-
tie, which was in doubt to be loſt, & cauſed alſo a rumor to be ſpied of the ſickeſſe of this Prince,
that the great *Cham* was old, the greateſt part of his forces, far ſeparated from him, forthwith
diſpatching a Meſſenger vnto the great *Cham* their Prince, to aſſure him that they bent not their
forces againſt him, but were his faithful and obedient ſubiects; but they armed themſelves, becauſe
they would not be gouerned by the *Parthians*, their ancient enemies. Thus *Calix* thought greatly
to trouble him, when hee roſe in Armes againſt him, and did thinke that hee had already aſſailed
the Wall which the King of *China* had made againſt the *Tartarians*. As ſoone then as the Prince
was aduerſed of the pretences of *Calix* thus diſcouered, hee marched one dayes Iourney for-
ward, to the end hee might approach vnto *Calix*, and impart the ſame vnto him, what face
four *Calix* ſet on the matter, hee harkened what would become of *Calix*, that hee might like-
wiſe make ſome commotion: there was left with him to command ouer the *Parthians*, the

This was the
Chinaiſe re-
port built by
ſome and ge-
nerally known
by age ruined,
he was a ſoule
Pole men
men
them not and
by this King
reſpoynd too,
yores after
Pole time, in
which ſpace
all the Chinaiſe
it this ſe-
true had, con-
quered part
of their Em-
pire
conquered be-
fore by *Calix*.
A kind part
betweene the
Father and
the Sonne.

Samar was
Gouernour of
Sachetie in Te-
merlan abſen-
ces
Tamerlan his
Arme march-
ing againſt
the King of
China.

The conſpi-
racy of *Calix*
againſt *Tamur*
in his abſen-
ce.

Good directions from Tamar.

Prince of *Thianxi*, without whom he could not doe any thing, for that hee led the Aungsg-d. This was the Army divided in two parts; the King of *China* remaining long before he was ad-
vertized of all this, and thought he had all the forces both of the *Tartarians*; and *Parthians* upon
his Armies, so as this was of no small importance to favour our Affaires: for *Tamerlan* had espe-
cially giuen commandement, that the pillages which are easily gotten, might as diligently be
kept, to the end that the King of *China* should not be advertized of the tumult. Then *Tamerlan*
set forward his Aungsgard vnder the leading of *Odme*: hee promised vnto himselfe shortly a
happie successe in his Affaires, and aduertized the Emperour of all, but it came vnto him when
he was sicke, And surely it was high time for *Tamerlan* to march forward, or else all had beene
reuealed, so leauing his Footmen, hee made great Iournies. Now during these monthes: *Celiss* haue
aduertized, and made his abode to confult, which was the space of three monthes: that he had bin
presented himselfe with a hundred thousand fighting men before *Camballa*, a very great Citie,
and chiefe of the Province of *Catay*, the Inhabitants thereof came out to meete him, and did
also reueale him with all the joy that might be.

Now whilst our Army marched towards *Cambala*, and from thence vnto *Calatia*, whether our Army went easily, I looking for the Forces of his Native Country of *Zachetia*, to come and to as they supposed all our Forces to be on the necke of them already, which gave great terror vnto the people. *Calix* perceiving that the people did repent, hee thought best to withdraw himselfe out of *Cambala*, determining to oppole himselfe against *Tumoris*, and sent for his 20 power from all places, putting all vpon the vcent and hazard of a battell. He drew out of *Cambala* full fifteen thousand men, as well Burgeois, as Soldiers which were there in Garrison, having woone all the Capraynes which the old Emperour had placed there in Garrison, amounting vnto the reuerend number of thirty thousand men, and him that commanded ouer them, who had confented vnto the reuerend number of thirty thousand Footmen, the which hee had gathered together from all parts. Our Army then marched with great diligence, in such sort as certayne Scouts which were two thousand Horfes, had newes of the Armes of the Emperour, the which came forwardly towards vs, whereof they caufed the Emperour (as he certified speedily) who sent thither two thousand Horfes more, to the end they should keepe the passage. I called *Borras*, by the which our viduals were conueyed vnto the Armie, and also for to winne the wayes time, the Prince knowing right well that the motions of Cuill Warres be furious as the windes, and that it is the best to refitt them flowly, drawing them alwayes out at length if it be possible. For the people in the end acknowledging their fault, their meanes and mony fayling them, and oftentimes viduals also. On the contrary side in a Royall Army none of all this doth happen, where all things are favourable, and the Soldiers well disciplined, obedience and order being commended from the Emperour, the Emperour the guiding of his owne purposes, for he had received commands from the Emperour to hazard thereon all his selfe, all deliuering vp into his hands the safeguard of his life and estate, that he should not suffer to end his dayes in peace, willing him likewise to punish this arrogant fellow and his followers. By this meane came forces from all parts vnto *Tumoris*; but on the contrary part, the Enemies Army was then in his chieft force, and began to feele the want of viduals.

Calix was of the age of fortie, he was a Captayne renowned with the great *Crom*, he was one of the chiefest in dignitie and place, and they had always respected him within *Tamerlan*, he was a perion most worthy of the Empire, if the glory of *Tamerlan*, and his reputation had not so far excelled. The Armies began to view the one of the other about eight of the clock in the morning, where there were very many skirmishes before they came unto the mayne Battayle (according to the fights of these Nations) it was a great Plaine wherein they met at that time faine, his advantage on eyther part: *Odmer* led the Auantgard, wherein there was fortie thousand Horse, and two thousand Foot-men; he made three Squadrons, whereof hee let forth 50 Squadrons were most strong, the Foot-men of the Battayle. *Tamerlan* marched in the same order, but his on the right and left wings. *Tamerlan* had drawn out of the Auantgard and of the Battayle were two thousand *Tartarians* for the Arrier-guard, and had committed to the charge thereof unto a faithful Seruant of his called *Axala* (a Gensie borne) a man of great judgement, and understanding being good and quick, and a Captayne in great estimation among the Soldiers, and might he worshipped God in another manner then we did, and was a Chritian. And hee had many of them with him, whom hee caused to come from the *Georgians*, and from *Pont Eunon*, who fought with great agility; this day did hee hear his great *Silidie* and courage unto his Prince, *Calix* on the other-side, who was a well spoken man, was encouraging his Soldiers to favour his fortune, and the libertie of his Nation: he had diuid d his troups into three mayne Battayles 63 Battayle, with many Foot-men upon the right hand, his owne person was in the middell of the mayne Battayle, with many Foot-men which compulld him round about (according as wee vs to fight.)

In the end, valiantly fighting, he fell into *Axalat* hands, which with one voyce he proclaimed through all his Campe, which overthrow the courage of all his Souldiers. He was kept vntill the next day, and was judged by all the Councill worthy of punishment: whereupon *Tamerlan* cauled his head to bee fitt cut off, the which hee sent to bee presented vnto the Inhabitants of *Cambalis*: he cauled the like to be done vnto all the chiefe Leaders, not for cruelty, but for necessitie, knowing very well, that the meanes to cutt off the Foot of ciuill warres, is to punish the Heads of the same, for they be *Hydras* which grow vp too fast.

8. II

30 Cataio, Cambalu; Tamerlans expedition into China, entering the Wall,
conquering the King, and disposing of the Countrey,
and returne to Cataio.

After this the *Archie* marched into the Kingdome of *Cassio*, a Countrey rich in grasse, and in all kinds of pastures, abounding with great quantity of Beasts, and People, which knew not what warre meant. The Prince gave commandment that these people should not be accounted as Enemies, but his good Subjects, that fée would live all the Cities well, as *Cangi*, *Suegi*, *Gonga*, *Tagni*, *Togora*, *Conga*, which had revolted, and were come to live for pardon at his hands, in humbling themselves before him; the which he granted unto them, enjoying themsoely to provide sufficient victuals for his Armie: which was of no small importance for the appealing of others, who had put all their hope in extremitie, which is in losing their owne lives to make others doe the like: and especially the Inhabitants of *Cambala* had taken this resolution: but being informed of the Emperours clemency, changed their opinions. In the meane while our Armie daily approached, and at such time as we came neereſt, the more did the feare of all the Citie increaſe, inſomuch as the Prince was advertised daily from those which favoured his file, of all things within the Citie; and he was assured that every one determined to obey the Conqueror, and to doe whatsoeuer he commanded. The which being knowne unto the Prince, he left all his Armie at *Gonga*, and himselfe went directly vnto the Citie of *Cambala*, where all things were made quiet, by the means of thirtie thousand Souldiers, being the ordinarie Garrison, whom hee called to enter therein before him, and two houres after entered into the same himselfe, being received with great magnificence, not yielding as yet to pronounce the word of pardon, referring all vnto the Emperour, and to the ordinarie course of Iustice. He stayed for the returne of one of his Favourites, whom he had sent vnto the Emperour, to carry him wordes of his recovery, and of the death of *Cadix*; and that the chiefest of this *Archie* remained prisoner with him: also knowing what Iustice the Emperour would appoint to be inflicted on those Citizens, which were the first beginners of the revolt of this Citie: for the Prince being desirous to be esteemed merciful, and to win loue within this great Citie, would not execute iustice of himselfe, nor in his owne name, but by the Emperours hand; whom hee did gratifie herein, leaving the authoritie wholly vnto himselfe, and by this means hee was not esteemed cruell. Thus the Prince after hee had remayed some heighe dayes departed. He was not many dayes journey from the Citie before hee received tydings, how the great *Cham* his Vncle, willed that justice should be executed on them which were the first moouers of this ruole: the which was executed accordingly in the name of the Emperour; and by his speciall ministers; in such sort, that as the people accused the crueltie of the Emperour, they commended the mercy of *Tamerlan*. Thus was this warre brought vnto an end, to the great honour and reputation of *Tamerlan*.

As soon as our Prince was returned into his Army where he found *Odmar*, who there attended his coming, he was received of his Soldiers, and with a loud voice called by all his Captains and Soldiers; *Molt great Emperor and most victorious*, which was accounted
 50 *do* amongst the *Tartarians*. The Prince after he had long discoursed with his Captains both of the beaurie and greatness of the Citie of *Cambala*, hee arrived at his Tent, where hee had declared unto *Odmar* in what sort all things had passed at *Cambala*: he asked his advice, whether hee should goe and visit the Emperour his Uncle. *Odmar* well perceived that the Prince desired it, and called unto his remembrance the honour which hee had received when hee was at *Quinsai*, and that hee would have beene very willing to spend the Winter with the Emperour, staying for the Spring for to returne unto the enterprise of *China*, with a long speech dissuaded him. The Emperour answered him, that he had euer knowne his filietie and love, and that the cause of his idleness was, for that hee did not find in himselfe ability to recompence the same; and that when he thought to give himselfe some ease, then was the time hee must in stead of the delicacies and pleasures of *Quinsai*, make the Defarts of *Cypriat* the resting place from the troubles of his new victorie: that it was ended, and his purposes determined: I have also heard the Prince say, that *Odmar* did not speake unto him like an earthly but diuine man, and that hee verily believed that God by his meanes did call him back from some misse-hap which would haue light vpon him, to make his glorie increase the more. Now, the Emperour was already

Calix taken
prisoner by
Axilla.
Calix behea-
ded.

The ordinary
Garrison at
Cambalu of
30000, Soul-
diers.

to Tamerlan wel-
comed unto
his Armie,
with new and
strange accla-
mation.

Tamerlan his
Oration unto
his Souldiers
upon his going
forward to
conquer the
King of China.

spread out all, that the Princes determination was to goe and visit the Emperour his Vnde, the which tickled every man with desire to returne into his Countrey, hoping to enjoy the whole of his native soyle. When as commandement was given for a generall review of the whole Armie: where the Emperour spake unto his Souldiers in this manner: *We have long since* (my faithful Souldiers) *an enterprise to goe and assault the King of China, who hath of late re-* *turned even beyond the Mountaynes the Tartarian name; but we were hindered to our great griefe for* *the fault of our weapons. It grieves me that I cannot as well bridge of the felloe soyles of a stranger, as I may* *nowe selves making trvall of my first Armes against the boldesse of the fierce Molocaut, at 10* *though for this last comit victory I am further undervnted unto you, for your greater endeavour, and the* *hazardous of your persons being much greater, so were they our owne people, who would not acknow-* *ledge vs, whereof I cannot speake without shaming of our selves, desiring rather to burie such a victo-* *rie, what glorie and honore (over we have gotten thereby. Neither doe I recomit these things unto* *you, but for to manifest that I forget not your faithfulnesse, and the great trouble you have endured* *with mee. Wee must not therefore bee meane, but must turne our weapons against those which thinke* *that we are greatly troubled, whereas we are victorious. Wee have left our Companions, who have* *temporized to heare the end and successe of our affaires, all our mountains bee there, we must in* *that place (my Souldiers and friendly Followers) passe over the rest of the Winter: our Companions* *look for vs, The Enemy is secure and laket us for vs at this season of the year: for bee perchance 20* *that our Armie which is not sufficient for offence, but onely for defence. You shall receive de-* *light, the better to turne you against the misery of cold: and as wee shall bee clothed with double* *garments, I hope wee shall bee also accompanied with double glorie. Let us march on merrily, I my* *self will goe with you, and bee as your owne glorie. After hee had thus spoken unto his* *Souldiers, they all cried, One God in Heaven, and one Emperour on the Earth: and bowing* *thence all their heads in token of humilitie, they shewed how agreeable they were to obey that* *which hee commanded.*

The chief of the
Souldiers cry-
ing on the Empe-
rours Oration.

Thus every one returned into his Tent, where they abode yet eight dayes more. The Prince first buck againe *Zamas* unto *Sachetay* with some five and twentie thousand Horse, and thise thousand Foot-men, for the facerie of his estate in those parts. Thus after prayers were said, all the Armie being assembled together in the presence of the Prince (according to the cullome of our Emperours) our Armie began to march forward. Hee forgot not howebeit to dispatch one unto the Emperour his Vnde, to give him understanding of all this resolution, the which hee very well liked of. The Prince by the same Messenger did beseech him, to lend unto him in the Spring of the yere some fiftie thousand men to repayre his Armie, and certayne money also for the payment of his men of Warre, which hee granted him. Moreover, the conducing of good store of warlike munition, and plenty of victuals for to renew ours: for this importance which the life of the Lordships of *Aquas* and *Quise* was unto them, whereby the King of *China* had greatly strengthened and assured his state, in so much as hee might at his pleasure enter upon the *Tartarians*, and the *Tartarians* could not enterprise against him with- 40 out great forces, for that hee had caused a wall to be made betweene the spaces of the *Mountaynes*, which continually doo greatly enrich them, because they brought much Cattell through the same, wherein the Countrey of *China* doth greatly abound, by reason it is situated in a temperate ayre, being neither too hot nor cold. This was the cause that made the Emperour his Vnde to desire this warre; whom our Prince, according to his dutie, would to the uttermost of his power gratifie, as also his new Subjects.

So wee began to march, and in thirte eight dayes were arrived at *Ciprius*, the Armie having found great dilcommodities: there had wee newes of *Calibes*, who was very glad to understand how the affaires had passed: hee came to visit the Prince, who shewed unto him a very good countenance, and gaue him particular understanding of his determination, and underlooke at large of *Calibes*, all that had passed within the Kingdom of *China*. The next day the Prince mounted on horse-back, and came unto *Pasunfu*, where the forces commanded by *Calibes* were then much intirent unto their owne. The Emperour called a generall review to be made of all the forces which were with *Calibes*, and after he beheld the countenances of these Souldiers throughout all their ranks, hee caused them to mutter, and to receive money, every one crying, *God save the victorious and invincible Emperour*, according to their cullome.

The Prince of *Thamas* (who comma ded the Armie in *Calibes* absence, going to meet *Tamerlan*) with great diligence had marked the Wall, and the places by the which hee might enter by 67 force, and sent many Spies into the Countrey of *China*: by certayne little wayes that were within the Mountaynes, who advertised him of all. Hee had also ganyed through his courtie a Lord of the same Mountaynes (called the Lord of *Vauchefu*) who riseth a great Countrey, with

A wall build-
ing by the King
of China for
to keep his
Peche in this
warlike state
was not the
same wall, of
which the
Chinese write,
but some o-
ther betwixt
Calibes and
the parts of
Xanpi, which
the Tartars ha-
ving gotten in
Pala dayes,
might some
after lose, and
the Chinese re-
count the Tar-
tarian hold-
ing *Quin* &
& some other
parts of *Man-
chi*, at that
present, the
which had often
fought with
the forces of the
Chinese: but
found all the
forces (if
wholly true)
seemes to im-
port.

The Prince of
Thamas gay-
ned a Lord of
the Mountay-
nes to doe the
Emperour service,
Vauchefu.

whom hee had so well profited, that he made him desirous of a new Master, and to submit him- selfe unto the Emperour, resending daily great dilcommodities by the warres which the *Tartarians* and *Chinese* made: so as hee coming to visit the Prince of *Thamas*, hee assured him of his desire to doe the Prince service, and to helpe him in the warre against the *Chinese*, the which the Prince of *Thamas* had wisely concealed from *Calibes*. But as loone as the Prince was arrived, he imparted the same unto him, the which made *Tamerlan* desirous to haue some speech with him, so that as loone as the Prince had received commandement from the Emperour, hee sent unto *Vauchefu* to advertise him of the Princes arrivall, and of the commandement which hee had received: whereof the other was very glad, and having appointed a day, the Prince tooke his journey (without stirring of the Armie) into the campe of the Prince of *Thamas*, which was neere unto the River of *Languenne*, whither hee had caused this forsaide Lord to come, who met him there.

Then the Prince after hee had heaped upon him gifts of faire Horses, rich Furses, and other rare things, hee willed him to utter that which hee had to say unto him. This Lord spake then in this manner: *Know my Lord, that it is but losse of time to thinke, that with your Armes you should* *bee able to force the Wall, which the Chinese have built against the new form of your subiects, the De-* *fendants have too much advantage therein. I doubt not of your Souldiers stoutnesse and of their cou-* *rage, I know you have conquered many Nations with them, and that whatsover you command* *them, they will doe or doe the same. I know you have great and wise Companions with you, that* *20 your Person is onely of all the World worthy to command them: but all this will bee but in vaine a-* *gainst the Wall of the Chinese, where I assure you there are fiftie thousand men to keepe it, and* *you cannot stay there so short a time, but there will come thither fiftie thousand more, led by* *the Xianxi who hath such a commandement. The King of China will himselfe march forward also,* *who will give you battell with two hundred thousand Horse and as many Footmen. After you have* *fought, I beleieve that the fortune and valour of your men may obtayne the victorie, the which will* *cost you deare: but for to shew unto you how much the reputation and misdeeds of your men hath* *built mee unto them, I will shew you a meane by the which you may cause fiftie thousand men to* *enter into the Kingdom of China, whom I my selfe will conduct; and they shall bee on them which* *keepe the Wall, in such manner as first as you shall perceive it. In the meane time you shall cause your* *30 men to goe unto a place that I will tell you, which will bee very discommodious unto the Chinese,* *by reason of a Mountaine over against them, which you may cause them to mine: for I assure my* *selfe, that when they shall perceive your Souldiers to bee passed, they will lose their courage, and you* *may easily winne the passage for to favour those men of yours which shall bee passed over with mee.* *And for to shew unto you the affection and fidelitie of that I speake, I will deliver unto your hands* *an onely Sonne I have, and two little Daughters; with my Wife: I have also one Brother, who I am* *assured will follow mee to doe your service. The Prince having heard this Lord spake, received* *great joy thereof, hoping that his affaires should happily succede, and this hee kept very se-* *cret, for euen the Prince of *Thamas* knew not the meane that this Lord had, seeing there* *was onely present the Prince and an Interpreter, and the Prince after hee had thus spoken ven-* *40 to him, gratifying him with all hee could possibly, this Lord retired himselfe, accompa-* *nied with the Prince of *Thamas*, who conducted him backe againe with all the honour that* *might bee. So the Emperour returned from thence into his quarter, and the next day after* *hee had imparted the same unto *Qian*, and heard *Calibes* concerning that which hee had* *learned of the departing of the King of *China*, and of his preparation, which was great. This* *enterprise seeming hard unto him, after due reverence yielded unto the Prince, hee spake* *unto him in this manner: Know my Lord, that I am your Slave for to obey you: but seeing* *you require mee to give you an account of all that I know of the estate of the Kingdom of* *China, for that I have remayned these fix months upon the borders by your commandement,* *to hinder them from passing the same, whereby they might hurt your enterprizes, I can af-* *50 firme unto you, that the King of *China*, who reigneth at this present, is of great reputation,* *and hath increased the limits of his Kingdom more then any of his Predecessors. His strength* *consisteth in this Wall (opposed againe vs, the which hee hath caused to be made by reason* *of the ordinarie roades of our Nation. I am of opinion, that there bee betweene fiftie and three-* *score thousand men at the guard of that Wall, men for the most part trained up in the Gar-* *risons of the King of *China*, and his best Souldiers, and I know no good meane to force this* *Wall without great hazard and much losse of your men. I have understood, that towards the* *Lake *Hoguen* you may find a more easie entrance into the Kingdom: after every one had decla-* *red his opinion, hee said: that hee hoped the great God (the Vnicie, of whom hee would* *maintaine against such Idolaters) and his just right shew should answere the reasons which doe con-* *60 tradict his purpose, and the valiant arme of his Souldiers shall give overthrow unto those opo-* *posed it felie against the same; and concealed from his Souldiers that which hee held as assured* *to execute it, to the end, the honour of a happy conducting might be ascribed unto him onely.*

Now, our Prince having satisfied every one of the Kings and Lords that did accompany him, hee appointed the meeting place for his Armie to bee at a certayne place, where hee meant to 70

The speech of
the Mountaine
Lord unto Ta-
merlan.

Calibes Oration
unto Prince
Tamerlan.

The Lake
Hoguen.

choofe fiftie thouſand fighting men, and deliuer them vnto the commandement of the Prince of *Thanaïs*, vnto whom he joyntly the Lord *Acxalla* *Geminis* (for that hee knew him to bee diſcreet) for to accompanie him, commanding him to glue credite vnto him, for his experience and fidelitie. The day appointed being come, the Lord with his brother came to the Emperour, hauing viewed the place againe, and found it to bee forceable and fit to paſſe, aſſuring the Prince once againe of the happy ſucceſſe of their enterpriſe, and the Prince being aſſembled with them to conferre together, reſolued in the end, that his perſon with all the army ſhould approach vnto the wall directly ouer againſt *Quagunfu*, in which meane ſpace the fiftie thouſand men ſhould march forwards vnto the place appointed, and where they were aſſured to paſſe, conſucted by the *Chinois* Lord, vnder the charge of the Prince of *Thanaïs* and *Acxalla*. The Emperour hauing not failed to deliuer vnto them the beſt ſouldiers of his armie, and hauing ſet downe the order by them to bee obſerued, hee willed that the Lord *Acxalla* ſhould leade twentie thouſand of them, and ſhould march the firſt, the reſt by the Prince of *Thanaïs*, and that euerie one ſhould haue one of thoſe Lords to guide them, that by their meane the enterpriſe might bee more ſafely directed. So hauing marched ten leagues, they arrived at the paſſage, the which was won, not finding any man there to reſiſt them: and hauing taken a little reſt, they beganne to march forward other ten leagues which yet remained, where the *Chinois* were, who ſuſpected no ſuch thing, hauing onely an eye vnto them which marched for to force their wall, aſſuring themſelves to haue the maſtery, conſidering their advantage.

A ſecret way found into *China*, by the conduct of the mountaine Lord.

Acxalla ouerthrowe the *Chinois* that kept the wall of partition.

Quagunfu.

The cultome of the *Chinois* in religion.

The Emperours wonne the wall of *China*.

The mountain Lord rewarded with great government.

A good advice to men for General.

But it fell out much otherwiſe, for euen at the very ſame time the *Chinois* did perceiue the Princes armie to approach vnto their wall, as ſome did they ſerue *Acxalla* with twenty thouſand men, who advanced forward being followed by the Prince of *Thanaïs* with thirtie thouſand ſouldiers choſen out of the whole armie, who without any communication ſet vpon the *Chinois*, which came preſently vnto them, hauing left a certaine number of their Campe for the guard of the wall: but they were preſently won by the footmen led this day by *Odmar*, who paſſed ouer ſo as the *Chinois* were cut off betweene our Armies. When *Acxalla* began the battaile, he ouerthrowe them in a manner all the Prince of *Thanaïs* not hazzarding himſelf therein: there was great riches gotten this day, the King of *China* his Couſin (whom hee called King) was taken priſoner: There was a great quantity of gold amongst them, as well on their armes as on their horſe and furniture: they ſhewed no great ſtouteſſe.

The newes hereof being come vnto the King of *China*, who at that ſtoute time was at *Quagunfu*, brought vnto him great aſtoniſhment, for that hee iudged it a thing that could not poſſibly come to paſſe, you might haue ſcene euerie one filled with fright, teares and cries, bowſing the luſte of their friends. The King gathering together ſouldiers from all parts (as the cultome is of theſe people) cauled all the Priſtes and ſuch as had the charge of holy things to come vnto him, and after exhortations vied, becauſe their heads commanded them to offer ſacrifice vnto their Gods, of whom the Sunne is the principall commanding in heauen (whom they hold opinion to be the chiefſt cauſe of their being, accounting it immortal and impaſſible, mouing it ſelfe onely for the benefit of liuing creatures) this did hee command to bee obſerued through out all his Cities; and the ſecond thing was, that euerie one able to beare armes ſhould mount on horſebacke, and come vnto the King at *Pagunfu*, whither hee doubted that we would go, becauſe it was one of the neereſt townes vpon the borders.

I haue forgotten to declare that this Lord who had the charge to conduct fiftie thouſand men vnto the frontiers, at ſuch time as they which were had need thereof, was ſoone in a readineſſe, and came to oppoſe himſelfe againſt the Princes Armie which entered, and being skillfull in the wayes of the country, troubled much the Armie: for a great number of his men were on horſebacke. The Prince determined to beate downe all the walls, the better to aſſure his returne, as alſo all the fortrelles which were there vpon all the paſſages, all of them hauing yielded themſelves after his victorie, ſhewing himſelfe very courteous vnto the people of theſe mountaines, he gaue vnto this Lord a ſmall portion of land, wherein there be ſeuē or eight good townes, *Archey*, *Tamely*, *Faliquen*, *Fully*, *Cabouſon*, *Quelly*, *Pully*, *Quianlu*, who came and deliuered vp their keyes vnto him, being neighbours vnto this Lord, and gaue him the government of the frontier province of *Kianzy*, ſhewing himſelfe to be a Prince of his word, and acknowledging the notable ſeruices the which this Lord had done him. He referred the honouring of his brother vntill hee had meaneſ to doe the ſame: the Prince had receiued newes how that the King of *China* ſtrengthened his forces & marched forwards, and that hee was there in his owne perſon, & that hee ſtrengthened alſo his Cities which are ſufficiently fortified, and vpon theſe doubt hee thought good to haue the aduice of his Captaines, and after ſundry opinions, his reſolution was, to leaue nothing behind him, and to aſſault ſome famous Citie, and take it, by meaneſ where-
of he may nouriſh his Armie, and ſecondarily call the enemy vnto battell. The which the conqueror ſhall alwaies ſeeke, & the defender the laſt he can hazzard the ſame. For that it is a very doubtfull thing to commit themſelves vnto a battell, his dutie being rather to delay, vndermining the conqueror by length hand by wearineſſe, and lights skirmiſhes, then to fight in open field.

1c

It was concluded, and the aduice of euerie one was, to conquer the Countrey by little and little, ſo as their enterpriſe was to draw directly vnto *Pagunfu*, which as it was a great Citie, and one of the chiefſt, ſo it is alſo ſtrongly fortified, and well replenished with people. Then hee diſpatched *Odmar* with fourteen thouſand Horſe, to aduance forward and ſummon the ſame, as for to hinder victuals from being conuayed thence out of the champaigne Countrey: to the end that the Cattell remayning in the fields, ſhould be a meaneſ to maintaine and nouriſh his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord *Acxalla* *Acxalla* made his ſeruices, the Prince had made him Captaine general of all his Foot-men, which was one of the principall honours of the Armie. Hee cauſed the laſt Lord *Acxalla* to march after *Odmar*, with all the Foot-men, which was very nere a hundred and fifty thouſand men, well trained vp in the warres, and good expert fighters. Hee hired himſelfe immediatly after with all his Horſemen, Artilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto *Pagunfu*. *Odmar* did ride twentie French leagues this day, ſo as hee arrived there contrary to their expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemy, and hauing taken much Cattell, wherewith the Countrey greatly aboundeth, he pitched his Tents, leauing the Citie betweene him and vs, and layed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane ſpace, ſending continually vnto the warre, for to weare the Enemy. This endured three or foure dayes, vntill our footmen led by this brave Chriſtian *Geminis*, threwed themſelves in the Playne of *Pagunfu*. Then the Citie was ſummoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or elle they ſhould receiue the Law of the Conquerour. They made anſwere, that they were determined to lye and die in the feruce of their Prince.

Now you muſt vnderſtand that it was ſortie yeeres, or thereabouts, ſince the Father of the King which reigneth at this preſent ouer the *Chinois*, had conquered it from the Empire of the *Tartarians*, and hauing driuen out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, ſo thorowly, that there were but few of the firſt remembrance, but only they of the flat Countrey, and ſmall walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, moſt willingly ſubmitting themſelves vnto the obedience of the Prince: ſo as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if wee had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not haue come greater ſtorre: a thing which made our Prince hope for a happy ſucceſſe, there being no other difficulty which for the moſt part can ouerthrow a great Armie as ours was, and withdraw them from their enterpriſe. And thus the Citie of *Pagunfu* is beſieged, and our footmen camped round about within an Arrowes ſhoote of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeavour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence.

Acxalla hauing viewed a great and ſtrong Suburbe, which was in length almoſt halfe a league, ſuſpected that thoſe of the Citie kept no watch there: that this muſt needs bee, for that they would not make him obſtinate; he had a determination to winne it in the night, and hauing imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the firſt watch all his men were ready, all of them hauing made prouiſion of Ladders, and of ſuch things as are neceſſary for winning thereof with hand-blows, and hauing aſſaulted it on ſundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres, *Acxalla* remayned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thouſand men at the laſt which were within the ſame: the ſpoyle was great, there were many of *Acxalla* his men layne of one ſide, which was that by the which they doubted to be aſſaulted. But on the other ſide, by the which it was taken, there was ſcarce any one layne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly aſtoniſh thoſe of the Citie, who had marked the luſtineſſe of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of the ſafety, which vnto this day they accounted as moſt aſſured. Now you muſt vnderſtand enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which looked it on front vpon the North ſide, where was a Valley by the which they poſſed, and there did runne a Riuer: on this ſide, the Suburbe ſituated which had been taken, ſo as the meaneſ to ſuccour the Citie was ſtopped, our Souldiers keeping the paſſages of theſe Mountaines, the which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdom: for *Pagunfu* was once gouerned by the *Tartarians*, which kept it for a defence againſt the *Chinois*, but had loſt the ſame, and theſe Mountaines were the limits of *China* againſt the aforeſaid *Tartarians*, who gouerned *Pagunfu* at that time, ſo as theſe Mountaines were of hard acceſſe, and there remayned no other way but on the ſide of the Suburbe, the which a Riuer compaſſeth about, running all along the ſide of a bordering Mountaine, vpon the which waye we cauled many bridges to be built, for to haue *ſhigay* a way for to ſuccour our Souldiers, which kept the paſſages of the Mountaines on to the enemyes ſide.

In this meane time the King of *China* Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in perſon and meet with the Enemy, accompanied with his principall Foot-men, and to leaue the greateſt part of his Foot-men at the defence where he had a great deſire, omitting nothing that might weare the beſieged, who defended themſelves courageouſly. So the Prince beganne to harry, cauſing his Engines to approach; as Rammes, and other munitions: in ſomuch that the Citie was aſſaulted on two ſides ve-

The ſiege of *Pagunfu*.

ry courageously. In the end through the valour of *Asalla*, who gaue an assault with twenty thousand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince hauing to command him to doe, to stop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes purpose was to compound for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that he feared, the Citie being great and rich, that when the Souldiers should sacke it, the Enemy who was but thirty leagues from thence, should come vpon them, and by this meanes his Armie should be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer serue well: The other was, for that hee would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were necessary for the sure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to haue such a Citie for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, the Enemies wanted no course yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according to the newes they had receiued, that the Kings Armie marched forward. Whilest these things were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, slue the Gouverneur, whereupon they did relouise for to yeeld themselves vnto the Princes mercy, fauing their liues, and the Souldiers employing their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed vpon, and there came out of the Citie eighteen thousand Souldiers, the Inhabitants remaying in a manner all: there were therein thirtie thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two months. The honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto *Asalla*, to whom was giuen the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee beche the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselfe hee referred the hope of his Master, wherein hee should haue part. This answere did greatly content the Prince, for hee greatly desired the seruice of *Asalla*. Vpon his refusal this charge was bestowed vpon the Prince of *Thomas*, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I haue already told you, our Prince after hee had giuen such order as was necessary, and aduertised his friends in all parts, and about all the Emperour, hee marched forward, hauing contented his Souldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after hee had solemnly called vpon the Immortall, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, wee enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemy, who was at *Simeu*, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as hee receiued newes that our Armie was passed ouer the Riuer of *Chulifu*, the King of *China* marched directly vnto vs with great magnificence: there was nothing to be seene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that euery part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles.

The King of *China* was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had beene brought vp in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor vnder the bloudie ensigne of *Mary* laden with Iron, boytous and furious, not with gold, precious stones, and with such kinde of riches: so as he was very infolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile: Hee often said that we had surpised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that we had stricken him without speaking any word: for this is the custome of the people in those parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighboures and Allies, who marched with the same preparation. The rumour of these riches gaue great courage to the Souldiers, for they were courteous of iust payne, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both our Armies went forward each to approach the other, and there was a Citie yeelded vnto the Prince called *Tianchuey*, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end wee might giue occasion vnto the Enemy for to approach neerer, we went to summon, and at the same time to take possession of the Citie of *Pannin*, the which in aduancing forward wee left a little behinde vs. The King of *China* had vnto many men therein, and it was a Citie sufficiently well fortified: from *Tianchuey* to *Paguinin* there were ten leagues. Hee aduanced his Armie within a league of the Citie *Tianchuey*, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertisement of the Enemies coming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the battaile, which hee had chosen in his iudgement with most advantage, and hauing let downe vnto *Odmar* the order hee would haue to be observed, hee desired to see the coming of this Armie: so sending before him fure or six thousand Horse as Scouts, hee aduanced forward, and *Calides* with him. After hee had seene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee commanded *Calides* to retire himselfe as soone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which hee hoped fone to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to assure them of the battaile: hee caused all his footmen to be placed all along by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great fure of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about six score thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the *Christian* manner, and all they were commanded by sundrie Captaines; but all obeyed *Asalla*, who commanded them as Generall.

Our Horse-men were in battaile array in a great leuell Playne, hauing the Footmen on the left

It was concluded, and the aduice of euery one was, to conquer the Countrey by litle and litle, so as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto *Paguinu*, which as it was a great Citie, and one of the chiefest, so it was also strongly fortified, and well replenished with people.

Then hee dispatched *Odmar* with fourteen thousand Horse, to aduance forward and summon the Citie, as for to hinder victuals from being conuayed thereto out of the champaigne Countrey: to the end that the Cattell remaying in the fields, should be a meanes to maintaine and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord *Asalla* made his seruices, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his Foot-men, which was one of the principall honours of the Armie. Hee caused the said Lord *Asalla* to march after *Odmar*, with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well trayned vp in the warres, and good expert fighters. Hee marched himselfe immediately after with all his Horsemen, Artilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto *Paguinu*. *Odmar* did ride twentie French leagues this day, so as hee arrived there contrary to their expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemy, and hauing taken much Cattell, wherewith the Countrey greatly abounded, hee pitched his Tents, leaving the Citie betweene him and vs, and stayed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane space, insuing continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the Enemy. This ended three or foure dayes, vntill our footmen led by this braue Christian *Gemois*, shewed themselves in the Playne of *Paguinu*. Then the Citie was summoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or else they should receiue the Law of the Conquerour. They made answer, that they were determined to lue and die in the seruice of their Prince.

Now you must vnderstand that it was fortie yeeres, or thereabouts, since the Father of the King which rageth at this present ouer the *Chinois*, had conquered it from the Empire of the *Tartarians*, and hauing driuen out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, so thorowly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Countrey, and small walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, most willingly submitting themselves vnto the obedience of the Prince: so as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if we had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not haue beene greater store of victuals, a thing which made our Prince hope for a happy successe, and being no other difficulty which for the most part can ouerthrow a great Armie as ours was, there withdrew them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of *Paguinu* is besieged, and our footmen camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeavour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence.

Asalla hauing viewed a great and strong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league, supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needs bee, for that they would not make him obstatine; hee had a determination to winne it in the night, and hauing imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them hauing made provision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with hand-blows, and hauing assaulted it on sundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres, *Asalla* remayned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thousand men at the least which were within the fame: the spoyle was great, there were many of *Asalla* his men slayne of one side, which was that by the which they doubted to be assailed. But on the other side, by the which it was taken, there was scarce any one slayne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly almight those of the Citie, who had marked the lustime of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their safety, which vnto this day they accounted as most assured. Now you must vnderstand that the situation of the Citie was of hard access, being seated vpon a Playne, the which was enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which overlooked it on front vpon the North side, where was a Valley by the which they passed, and there did runne a Riuer: on this side was the Suburbe situated which had been taken, so as the meanes to liuccour the Citie was stopp'd, our Souldiers keeping the passages of the Mountaines, the which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdome: for *Paguinu* was once gouerned by the *Tartarians*, which kept it for a defence against the *Chinois*, but had lost the fame, and the Mountaines were the limits of *China* against the aforesaid *Tartarians*, who gouerned *Paguinu* at that time; so as these Mountaines were of hard access, and there remayned no other way but on the side of the Suburbe, the which a Riuer compasseth about, running all along the side of a bordering Mountaine, vpon the which were cauled many bridges to be built, for to haue thereby a way for to liuccour our Souldiers, which kept the passages of the Mountaines on the enemies side.

In this meane time the King of *Chinas* Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in person and meet with the Enemy, accompanied with his principall Horse-men, and to haue the greatest part of his Foot-men at the siege, whereunto hee had a great desire, omitting nothing that might wearie the besieged, who defended themselves courageously. So the Prince beganne to batter, causing his Engines to approach; as Rammes, and other munitions: insomuch as the Citie was assaulted on two sides vnto

Paguinu besieged.

Note these changes of face, which the *Tartars* and *Chinois*.

A great Suburbe wonne by *Asalla* in the night.

The situation of the Citie of *Paguinu*.

The siege of *Paguinu*.

The Citie of
Paguinfu yeelded
vnto Tamerlan
vnto the death of
their Governour,
Axalla's choice.

Tamerlan his
kind of godli-
nesse.

The King of
China his mag-
nificence.

The custome
of the Chinese.

Tiancheu.

Pamiba.

Tiancheu.

The order of
the Princes
bataille a-
gainst the
King of China.

ry courageously. In the end through the valour of *Axalla*, who gaue an assault; with twenty thousand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince hauing to com-
pulsed him to doe, to stop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes pur-
pose was to comproue for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that
who was but thirty leagues from thence, should come vpon them, and by this means his Armie
should be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer ferue well: The other was, for that hee
would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were ne-
cessary for the iure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to haue such a Citie
for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, yet
the Enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according
to the newes they had recieued, that the Kings Armie marched forward. Wherefore these things
were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, slue the Gouverneur, whereupon they did
refuse for to yeeld themselves vnto the Princes mercy, faining their liues, and the Souldiers en-
citing their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed vpon, and there came out of the
Citie eighteen thousand Souldiers, the Inhabitants remaining in a manner all: there were
therein thirty thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two months. The
honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto *Axalla*, to whom
was giuen the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee be-
seged the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselfe hee re-
ferred the hope of his Maister, wherein hee should haue part. This answer did greatly content
the Prince, for hee greatly desired the seruice of *Axalla*. Vpon his refusal this charge was be-
stowed vpon the Prince of *Tianchi*, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I haue already told
you, our Prince after hee had giuen such order as was necessary, and aduertised his friends in all
parts, and aboute all the Emperour, he marched forward, hauing contented his Souldiers, and
made a general muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to
be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after hee had solemnely called vpon
the Immortal, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, we
enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemy, who was at *Sincheu*, with
all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as hee receiued newes that our Armie was pas-
sed ouer the Riuier of *Chuliu*, the King of China marched directly vnto vs with great magni-
ficence: there was nothing to bee seene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe
was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that
euery part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles.

The King of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had beene
brought vp in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor vnder the bloody enigne of *Mars*,
laden with Iron, boylerous and furious, not with gold, precious stones, and with such kind
of riches: so as he was very insolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in desying vnto the battaile.
He often said that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that
we had stricken him without speaking any word: for this is the custome of the people in those
parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbourhood
Allies, who marched with the Prince in preparation. The rumour of these riches gaue great courage
to the Souldiers, for they were curious of to see the riches, and there was a Citie yeelded vnto
the Prince called *Tiancheu*, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end wee
might giue occasion vnto the Enemy for to approach neerer, we sent to summon, and at the same
time to take possession of the Citie of *Pamiba*, the which in advancing forward wee left a little
behinde vs. The King of China had put many men thereto, and it was a Citie sufficiently well
fortified: from *Tiancheu* to *Paguinfu* there were ten leagues. Hee aduanced his Armie within
a league of the Citie *Tiancheu*, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertise-
ment of the Enemies coming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the
battaile, which hee had chosen in his iudgement with most aduantage, and hauing set downe vn-
to *Odmar* the order hee would haue to be observed, hee desired to see the coming of this Armie:
so sending before him fure or six thousand horse as Scouts, hee aduanced forward, and *Calbes*
with him. After hee had seene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee
commanded *Calbes* to retire himselfe as soone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto
him this great cloud, the which hee hoped soone to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vn-
to his men for to assure them of the battaile: hee called all his footmen to be placed all along
by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great force
of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about six-
score thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian manner, and all
they were commanded by iudric Captaines; but all obeyed *Axalla*, who commanded them
as General.

Our Horse-men were in battaile array in a great Iuell Playne, hauing the Footmen on the
left

left hand, and on the right was the coming of the Enemy, so as vpon the least disfauour that
might happen, hee would retire to bee assisted by his footmen. Wee had foure score thousand
horse: *Calbes* with the *Scythians* were in the Avantguard, and had the commandment of thir-
tie thousand horse, who should recieve him at such time as hee did draw on the Enemy, as he was
commanded. It was diuided into three troupes, each one consisting of ten thousand. *Odmar*
had also thirte thousand horse, who should assaile him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward
at the one of the wings, of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces: his purpose
was to suffer the three score and six thousand horse to maintayne the fight against the *Barbarians*,
being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperour hoped after of
them to haue a good marker, by causing his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with whom
there abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his
Person for to giue a new battaile, if so be that any disfauour should happen vnto them: for hee
had vnderstood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within
the middle of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but vpon the
extremities. So the Enemy sayled nothing at all to march directly vnto *Calbes*, and all the Ar-
mie marched after following of him and letting vpon him, and hee euen as the *Scythians* are al-
wayes accustomed to doe, with his six thousand horse in retiring gaue many charges, killing
some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautiful fight to see this
great Armie march, for it seemed to bee twice as great as ours, therein being an infinite number
of armed Chariots, wherein hee put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers: so ma-
ny gildings of gold and silver as well in the trappings of their Horses, as on their Armour, that
it glittered, and was of vs as much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did the
Arkie march after *Calbes*, commended greatly the manner of calling their men out of the
ranks, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did see this Armie come in good order, and he
tried with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, hauing neere him the *Chinois*.
Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Avant-
guard nor battaile, but only an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and inclosed (as I haue
said) with his Chariots: the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned
himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: *Ten must wee this day disperse this cloud here so gilded,*

30 and the King of China and my selfe must make a partition thereof.
Now, hauing seene the Enemy sufficiently aduanced and iudging that hee had had seene them
make a good league, hee thought it not convenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to
put themselves againe into their order; hee sent vnto *Calbes* for to will him to set forward the
fight, and that if those whom hee had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him;
but it was not in *Calbes* power to haue this commandment out of them. For as soone as they
heard this word of fighting vttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who
commanded ouer them, called *Zuichabanes*, who made appareare vnto the *Chinois* to what end
their flight was, charging very lustily vpon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an oc-
casion to begin the first fight. And I assure you, there could not be seene a more furious thing,
nor any for to fight with more desire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honou-
our vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long hour before the *Chinois* had ouerthrowne *Calbes*.
The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused
it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers: you could not yet per-
ceive any alteration in the Princes countenance, Aduerfite and Prosperitie were fo indifferent
vnto him. His six thousand horse were all *Scythians*, who obferue not the same order the
Parthians doe. Now, before the Prince retired with his men, hee did see the first charge giuen,
Calbes being wounded, retired himselfe neere vnto the Prince, hauing with him two thousand
Prince, who commanded that they should cure *Calbes*, viewing the place of his wound, hee
30 caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also.
Now, *Calbes* was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but *Odmar* which
almost all the *Parthian* horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow
them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where hee fought most valiantly,
and hauing beaten them backe euen within the Kings Chariots, hee thought that hee should not doe
wilely to goe about to breake such forces.

The King of China coming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by *Od-
mar*, joining themselves together for his ayde, *Odmar* onely remayning in the battaile sent vn-
to the Prince for to see the footmen, and for to let forward the Artillerie, and that hee should affe-
himselfe of the victory. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloofe off, and sent
60 vnto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, giuing charge thereof vnto
Axalla, who forthwith set forward, hauing commandment to set vpon the Chariots, and to make
the enemies: for the Gouvernours of the horses, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold
them; it made also a great poyle. As soone as hee perceived this disorder, hee set forward, and

The beautie
and richnesse
of the King of
China Armie.

Tamerlan his
speech of the
King of China.

The battaile
betweene the
King of China
and Tamerlan.

The King of China wounded and taken Prisoner.
Tamerlan vi-
siting over the
King of China.

came to hand-blows, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings person. *Axalla* full of courage fought so valiantly, that they never beheld any doe more bravely. *Odmur* during this fight charged againe the Horsemen, who were retyred vnto the Kings aide, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men, gaue aide vnto *Axalla*, and came euen vnto the person of the King of China, who was as yet enclosed within a second ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men: and after hee had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men assisting the Foot-men, and they principally the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campe forced: the fight endured eight houres, and it was euen night, which faded the lues of many of the Enemies. There were slaine two Kings, the Allies of the King of China, and one taken Prisoner: there was inestimable riches gotten, as well in golden Veddallas precious stones, and the most rich and faire Chariots that could be fene.

The Prince would not see the captiued King vntill the next day, being mounted on Horse-backe, and passing through the Campe of the Battayle for to stay the slaughter, and to ioyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue the charge vnto *Axalla*: to whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of China within the middelt of his Souldiers, having him already dressed of a wound he had received in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diversity of streamers wherewith they were decked, the which seemed vnto vs afar off as beautifull, as the diversity of 20 colours plentifull. But to say the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, notwithstanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours: and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking their advantage, nor having any Warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were slaine of the Enemies some threecore thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince hauing giuen thanks vnto God for his victorie, caused the wounded to bee cured, and amongst the others *Caliber*, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himselfe very ill, yet would hee not omit his dutie, to command alwayes his Auant-gard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for he alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, being a *Scythian*, and greatly beloued of his Nation.

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of China's Brothers, who was fled away, hauing ioyned together againe some twelue or fiftene thousand Horse. The Prince went to summon *Pannin*, the which did yeld it selfe vnto him: wherevpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to advance our selues the further into the Countrey. Now I forget to declare how the Prince hauing the next day caused his Tents to bee pitched most lately, and his Guards ordered according to his greatnesse, the principall of his Army being also neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 40 vntill about two of the clocke, when they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee passed the rest of the night. I was neere vnto him and neuer left him: but I neuer heard any vnturning or boasting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee sent a commandement vnto *Axalla* to bring vnto him the imprisoned King: who being come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went to receive him. This King of China came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like a courageous man, approaching neere vnto the Emperour, hee demanded of *Axalla* by an Interpreter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being provoked against my Nation and people, and conspire against my good fortune, haue made mee at this day thy Prisoner: but forasmuch, as it is reported ouer all the World, that *Tamerlan* maketh warre for the honour of his Nation: thou shouldst be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory: that the Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive such Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee said in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the other-side hauing faulted him very courteously, led him into his Tent.

He is surely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his Kingdome. There be many Mynes of Gold and Silver, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the Christians call *Rubiacus*. There be in like manner within the Kingdome of China fiftene very large Prouinces, the which haue Governours. We call this Region *China*, the which they in 60 their Language name *Tame*, and the people *Tamir*, the which we call *Chinois*. This Kingdome doeth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wild-fowle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflow the Countrey, the which is reasonable temperate: they abound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, hauing small quantities of Woolle.

300. Cities.
A description
of China.
Rivers.

Tame, or Tamir
and Tamegus.

left hand, and on the right was the coming of the Enemy, so as vpon the least disfaour that might happen, hee would retyre to bee assisted by his footmen. Wee had fourscore thousand horse: *Caliber* with the *Scythians* were in the Auant-gard, and had the commandement of thirtie thousand horse, who should receive him at such time as he did draw on the Enemy, as he was commanded. It was diuided into three troupes, each one consisting of ten thousand, *Odmur* had also thirtie thousand horse who should assist him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings, of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces: his purpose was to suffer the threecore and six thousand horse to maintaine the fight against the *Beharans*, being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperour hoped after of 10 them to haue a good marker, by causing his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with whom they abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his Person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfaour should happen vnto them: for hee had vnderstood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within the middelt of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but vpon the extremitie. So the Enemy fayled nothing at all to march directly vnto *Caliber*, and all the Arme marched after following of him and letting vpon him, and hee euen as the *Scythians* are al- 15 ways accustomed to doe, with his six thousand horse in retreating gaue many charges, killing some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautifull fight to see this great Arme march, for it seemed to bee twice as great as ours, therein being an infinite number 20 of armed Chariots, wherein hee put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers: so many gildings of gold and silver as well in the trappings of their Horses, as on their Armour, that it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did fee the Arme march after *Caliber*, commended greatly the manner of casting their men out of the ranks, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did fee this Arme come in good order, and hee 30 tried with his eye to noce the place where the Kings Person was, hauing neere him the *Chinois* Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Auant-gard nor battaile, but only an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and indolent (as I haue said) with his Chariots: the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: *Tei must mee this day disperse this cloud here so gilded,*

The beautie
and richnesse
of the King of
Chinas Arme.

Tamerlan his
speech to the
King of China.

30 and the King of China and my selfe must make a partition thereof.
Now, hauing seene the Enemy sufficiently advanced, and iudging that hee had had scene them march a good league, hee thought it not convenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselves againe into their order: hee sent vnto *Caliber* hee should come vnto him; but it was not in *Caliber* power to haue this commandement ouer them. For as soone as they heard this word of fighting uttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them, called *Zioctabans*, who made appeare vnto the *Chinois* to what end and their flight was, charging very fitly vpon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an occasion to begin the first fight. And I assure you, there could not be fene a more furious thing, nor 40 any for to fight with more desire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long houre before the *Chinois* had ouerthrowne *Caliber*. The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused soeuer it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers: you could not yet perceive any alteration in the Princes countenance, Adversitie and Prosperitie were so indifferent vnto him. His thirtie thousand Horse were all *Scythians*, who obserue not the same order the *Parthians* doe. Now before the Prince retyred with his men, hee did see the first charge giuen, *Caliber* being wounded, retyred himselfe neere vnto the Prince, hauing with him two thousand horse ioynd together againe, and many more ioyning themselves together neere vnto the Prince, who commanded that they should cure *Caliber*, viewing the place of his wound, hee 50 caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now, *Caliber* was not able to pierce through this Arme, being beaten backe; but *Odmur* with almost all the *Parthian* horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Arme, where hee fought most valiantly, and hauing beaten them backe euen within the Kings Chariots, hee thought that he should not doe wisely to goe about to breake such forces.

The battaile
betweene the
King of China
and Tamerlan.

The King of China coming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by *Odmur*, ioyning themselves together for his aide, *Odmur* only remayning in the battaile lent vnto the Prince for the footmen, and for to let forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already let forward, kept aloofe off, and sent vnto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, giuing charge thereof vnto 60 *Axalla*, who forthwith let forward, hauing commandement to let vpon the Chariots, and to make an entrance: he let forward the Artillerie before him, the which did greatly astonish the enemies: for the Governours of the Cities, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold them; it made also a great poyle. As soone as hee perceived this disorder, hee let forward, and came

The King of
China wounded
and taken Pri-
soner.
Tamerlan vi-
sitory over the
King of China.

came to hand-blowes, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings person, *Axalla* full of courage fought valiantly, that they neuer beheld any doe more brau-
10 *Odmar* during this fight charged againe the Horsemen, who were retyred vnto the Kings ayde, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men, gaue ayde vnto *Axalla*, and came euen vnto the person of the King of *China*, who was as yet en-
cloled within a second ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men: and after hee had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men afflicting the Foot-men, and they principally
15 when the Prince had refused, the King remayned wounded within the power of the Prince, the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campe forced: the fight endured eight houres, and it was euen night, which faued the liues of many of the Enemies. There were slaine two
of the Allies of the King of *China*, and one taken Prisoner: there was inestimable riches gotten, as will in golden *Vicillas* as precious stones, and the most rich and faire Chariots that
could be scene.

The Prince would not see the captured King vntill the next day, being mounted on Horse-
backe, and passing through the Campe of the Battayle for to stay the laughter, and to toyne to-
gether againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue the
charge vnto *Axalla*: to whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of *China*
within the middle of his Soldiers, having bin already dressed of a wound he had receiued in his
right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diuersitie of fire-
20 wherewith they were decked, the which seemed vnto vs as far off as beautiful, as the diuersity of 20
colours plentifull. But to say the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, notwithstanding
there was much difference betweene their valour and ours: and it is reported, that hee had
ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were
an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude
and barbarous people, which suffred themselves to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking
their advantage, nor having any Warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were slaine of the
Enemies some threecore thousand. Now the next day after the burriall of the dead, the Prince
hauing giuen thanks vnto God for his victorie, caused the wounded to bee cured, and amongst
the others *Caliche*, who by reason of the vntemperate use of the Ayre, rather then by the blow
of the wound he had receiued, found himselfe very ill, yet would hee not omit his dutie, to com-
mand alway his Auant-guard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for hee alone had
Commandement over the Emperours Forces, being a *Scythian*, and greatly beloued of his
Nation.

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of *Chi-
na* Brothers, who was fled away, hauing ioyned together againe some twelue or fiftene thou-
sand Horse. The Prince lent to summon *Pammin*, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him: where-
vpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to aduance our selues the further into the Coun-
try. Now I forget to declare how the Prince hauing the next day caused his Tents to bee pitch-
ed most fitly, and his Guards ordered according to his greatness, the principall of his Army
by him alse neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 40
vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer
dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee passed the rest of the night. I was
neere vnto him, and saw him: but I neuer heard any vanishing or boasting to
proceed out of his mouth. Then hee sent a commandement vnto *Axalla* to bring vnto him
the imprisoned King: who being come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went
to receiue him. This King of *China* came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like
a courageous man, approaching neere vnto the Emperour, hee demanded of *Axalla* by an Inter-
preter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this
manner: The Gods whom I worship, being prouoked against my Nation and people, and con-
spired against my good fortune, haue made mee at this day thy Prisoner: but forasmuch, as it is
50 reported ouer all the World, that *Tamerlan* maketh warre for the honour of his Nation: thou
shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory, that the Lord of the World, the Child
of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receiue such Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee
said in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the
other-side hauing saluted him very courteously, led him into his Tent.

He is surely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his King-
dome. There be many Mines of Gold and Silver, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the
Chirians call *Rubarbe*. There be in like manner within the Kingdome of *China* fiftene very
large Fountaines, the which haue Gouernours. It is reported that hee hath threecore and tenn
Kings wearing Crownes, Tributaries vnto him. We call this Region *China*, the which they in 60
their Language name *Tame*, and the people *Tamgis*, the which we call *Chinas*. This Kingdome
doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wild-fowle, by reason of the great abundance of
running waters which doe overflow the Country, the which is reasonable temperate: there
abound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, hauing small quantitie of
Wool

1000 Cities.
A description
of China.
Rubarbe.

Tame, or *Tamir*
and *Tamgis*.

Wool, and not vnting the same: they haue much Cotton and Linnen in stead thereof. The men
doe weare their haire long, the women combe them: they haue as many Wiues as they are able
to maintayne. Next vnto the King, there is a Gouernour Generall whom they call *Turan*, the
which was the Brother vnto the imprisoned King. The Prince hauing assembled his coun-
10 to the end he might be aduised how he should vie his Prisoners and the rest of the Victory: hee
receiued newes by *Odmar*, how that the Kings Brother was armed at *Quantou*, the which hee
had fortified, and that great store of forces did ioyne themselves vnto him. This was the cause
that the Prince hauing somewhat rested his forces, commanded two thousand *Parthian* Horse to
conuey the Prisoners vnto *Paguisan*, and from thence after they had made abode there, to passe
the Mountaynes, and to remayne at *Borda* (a Citie of olde time faithfull vnto the Empe-
20 rours of *Scythia*) and there to keepe them faithfully. The purpose and resolution of the Prince
was, that it behooued to assault *Quantou*, and to flut vp, if it were possible, the Kings Brother
within the same, being one of the principall seats belonging vnto the King of *China*, and a
Citie greatly peopled and strong: it was forty leagues from the place where the battayle was
fought. But *Odmar* being aduised thither, would not retyre before he had expresse Comman-
dement from the Prince, who hauing sent thither, pitched his Tents round about the said Citie:
hauing summoned many small Cities, the which yielded themselves wholly vnto the Princes
mercy, making great lamentation for their King taken. Notwithstanding, the gentleness
30 of the Conquerour made them to take all their losses with patience: and because it was also re-
ported, that he had vied the King most friendly, and all the Prisoners: the Kings Brother had
sent *Emballadors* to obteyne leave for to knowe of the Kings health, and for to see him, the
which the Prince did willingly suffer, to the end this other should not declare himselfe
40 who would haue brought him more trouble then the other. He attended for the suent of *Quan-
tou*, and had his eye vpon the successe of this siege. Now the Kings Brother hauing receiued
newes of the Affaires of the besieged, he determined either to succour it, or to fight a Battle,
and came straight vnto *Perchie*, and made a bridge of Boats, whereby there be great store in these
fame Countreys.

Now being enforced when the halfe part were passed, which was fiftie thousand men good,
Odmar finding them in very ill order, and nothing at all aduertised of the Enemies nearness,
gaue the charge, and vnterly ouerthrew them: there remayned dead vpon the ground some fiftie
30 thousand men, but it was not without great fight, strengthened with the fauour of water, and
a great Marish wherein they were encamped. Notwithstanding, our Foot-men hauing wonne
the banks of the Riuer, beganne alio to winne the Boats, and to fether them by the means of a
great Boat, the which we with diligence caused to runne downe being full of artificiall fire,
so as at the same very time that they which were within the Boats did draw vnto the shore,
out of the same, hauing first kindled the fire within the Boats, the which with a great force
rushed against the Bridge of Boats and ouerthrew it, and where it was refilled did burne. This
did greatly astonish them that were passed, to see their returne out off. The Kings Brother was
not yet passed vnto the other-side of the water, and he which first had gone ouer was the King
40 of *Caucasia*, who was slayned at the first charge, fighting very valiantly, in the fore-front. The
Kings Brother did see his men slayned and drowned, and could not remedie the same. This
second ouerthrow was of no small importance, although it was but the third part of the Kings
Brothers Army, and that there remayned vnto him as yet a hundred thousand fighting men: but
there was no great hope that he durst present himselfe before our Army. The newes hercof
being reported at *Quantoufon*, they desired to make tryall of the Emperours Clemency. *Axalla*
dispatched one of his faithfull friends of his Countrey vnto the Prince, to carry vnto him these
good newes: which was more welcome vnto the Prince, then the ouerthrow hee had giuen vnto
the Enemy, and agreed vnto all that *Axalla* demanded, referring all vnto his sufficiency and
fidelity. The Kings Brother hauing sent to demand safety for to treat, the Prince granted to
much vnto them, for such as would come vnto him.

50 In this meane-time *Quantoufon* yeelded it selfe into the hands of *Axalla*, who caused the
Carion to come out of the same, recalled the Inhabitants into the Princes protection, and they
which would might remayne therein waarmed: and he entred therewith with the joy of all the
Inhabitants, who did determine to receiue the Emperour into the same with all the magnificence
that might be. He caused thirty thousand men of War to enter thence vnto whom was mo-
ney deliuered for to maintayne them there, vntill such time as all the Foot-men should receiue
pay for three monethes due vnto them, whereof the Inhabitants of *Quantoufon* did furnish the
Prince, to the summe of eight hundred cleuend Tentins, the which do amount vnto foure hun-
dred and fiftie thousand crownes or thereabout. The Prince at this present lent mee vnto *Axalla*,
whom I found feasting of his Captaines and souldiers, staying for the commandement that I
60 brought vnto him, the which was to remaine within *Quantoufon*, and to cause all his footmen
to be fedd directly vnto him, the which was done by the Prince, to the end it should strike
a greater terror into the minds of the enemies, who seeing all his footmen armed, he supposed
they would nothing doubt (*Quantoufon* being taken) but that he would march forward, in such
as

Quantou.

Borda.

Perchie.

Odmar ser-
ued the Kings
Brother as the
passing of a Ri-
uer, and thus
fifty thousand
of his men.
A stratagem.

as he hoped this would greatly advance his Affaires, considering the estate they were in. Returned from *Quantoufon* vnto the Emperor, hauing seen a beautifull and great Citie well fortified, and wonderfully peopled, and round about it there was a fruitfull Country.

An Embassy from the King of China Brother vnto Tamerlan to treat for peace, and the Kings desire.

Conditions agreed vpon betweene Tamerlan and the Chinese.

Thus the Embassadors being arrived, who were of the Kings chiefe Vassals, *Tamerlan* received them with all humanitie, causing his greatnesse to appeare vnto them, and therewithall the agilitie of his Horsemen, to make them see with their eyes, that it would be the destruction of the *Chinese* name, if he proceeded any further. So hauing saluted the Emperor with all reuerence, they vttered their Embassy vnto him, which was that the Kings Brother had sent them vnto him to treat for two causes: the one, was for the liberty of their King, the other, for preservation of their Country. The Prince hauing heard them, answered them, that they had reason to trust vnto his mildnesse, and seeing at this present, they desired it, he would yield thereunto. Thereupon the Prince rote vp, and caused to be laid vnto them, that they should deliuer their offers in writing, and that present answer should be made thereunto. Thus went they out of the Princes presence with great joy, and as it were assured of Peace, and to recover their former prosperities. The conditions which they offered, were to leaue *Tagunfon*, and all the Country beyond it, with all the Fortresses of the Mountaynes; that they would pay all the charges of his Army, since the day of and were made vnto his Embassadors; that they would give two Millions of Gold, for their King. This being presented vnto the Lord, he made answer thereto, which was, that he would keep that which hee had conquered within the Country, which was his owne iudly, leaving his armes had giuen it vnto him; that hee would leave the River where he was now encamped, to be his Frontier, stretched vnto *Hochio, Toban, cesang, Cauchio, Lulan*, euen vnto *Pofchio* bordering vpon the Sea; that the King of China should pay vnto him yearly three hundred thousand Crownes, the which should be deliuered at *Pagunfon*, for acknowledgement of submision vnto the Empire, as well for his Successors as himselfe; that they should pay five hundred thousand Crownes in ready money for the charge of the Army, that the King of China should be deliuered, and all the *Chinese* Prisoners should pay ransom vnto particular men that took them, excepte those which carried the name of Kings, who should pay one hundred thousand Crownes for peace with his Armes; that no *Chinese* should be kept as slave, nor sold for such hereafter, being vnder the Princes obedience; that Traffike and Entercourse of Merchants should be free betweene both the Nations; that the King of China should deliuer his Brother as Prisoner, and two Kings named, with twelve principall men of the Country for assurance of the peace. They accepted of such conditions of peace as pleased the Conquerour, hoping that time would bring againe vnto them their ancient liberty, and that for a time it beuolued them to beare with patience the yoke of their bondage. Now the Prince had sent two thousand Horse, to fetch the King of China, to the end that being at liberty, he might sweare to the peace solemnly, the which he hauing performed at *Quantoufon*, whither the Prince caused him to come, he brought with him vnto *Pagun*, all the pledges, and amongst the rest, the Kings eldest Sonne, and his Brother. The King being departed for to performe his promise, according to the Treaty by him confirmed, he was received, and as it were worshipped within his Country, with all the joy that might be.

Odmar left Countour of China for Tamerlan.

In the meane-time the Emperor, after hee had prouided for the assurance of his new conquest, he left *Odmar* there to gouerne them, and gaue vnto him an estate of thirty thousand Horse and fifty thousand Foot-men, to furnish all the Fortresses and strong places, the Prince hauing led with him many of the new conquered people, desiring to haue them for to dwell within his Country, and to send other Colonies in their places, to assure himselfe the better of the lightnesse of this people, hauing noted them to be inclined vnto Nouelties. Hee gaue in charge vnto *Odmar* to make his principall abode at *Quantoufon*, and to fortifie well the passage; and also commanded a Fortresse to be made at *Dermio*, the better to strengthen his Borders; and after he had left him all things necessary, he recommended vnto him the seruices of that Lord, who had manifested vnto him his great affection. The Emperor hauing well tried his faithfulness in his Affaires as they fell out, he carried with him a Brother of his vnto whom hee gaue great gifts within *Sachetay*.

Then we turned our faces straight vnto *Cambalu*, hauing aduertized the Great Cham of the happy success of our Affaires. The Prince remained in chief King of China, holding in his possession, two of the fairest and greatest Cities of all the whole Country, hauing in hundred good leagues thereof vnto himselfe, and many lesser Cities, hauing extended his Borders vnto a River, by which he might goe vnto the Enemy, but they could not come vnto him without passinge over the same: hauing good meanes to keepe it and with advantage. Now the Prince desired above all that the Idols which were within his Conquest, should be beaten downe, and commanded the worship of one God, establishing the same after the forme of his owne Country for he made account that in short time all would be reduced vnto our cultomes. Our Army wherein was much sicknesse, began to march, and on the third day hauing newes of forces which came towards vs, the Prince lent them a Commandment not to come any further forward, and that they should march lighte vnto *Cambalu*, where the Prince did suppo to finde the Emperor

his Vncle, who had left forward towards that place to haue the good hap for to see him, being determined to receive him at *Cambalu* with magnificence and triumphs, as hee well deserved.

Now I will declare by the way, how *Odmar* being assured from vs, all the Princes fauour was turned vnto *Asella*, vnto whom hee committed the whole charge of his Armes, inasmuch as *Asella* although he was alwaies in great reputation, notwithstanding the fame was much encreased by the Prince at *Quantoufon*, where the Prince did trust him with the Armes, in so weighty an enterprize as that was, and the which hee gloriously achieved: likewise the manner of entering into the Kingdoms of China, the intelligence hee had: so as the report of his valour did the throughout all the Empire. *Calibet* the Aung-gued, and *Asella* was in the battell nere vnto the Emperor, who gaue him the chiefe place, bestowing vpon him two hundred thousand crownes yearly, for to maintayne his ordinary expenses. After certaine dayes journey, we receiued newes of the Emperours arrival at *Cambalu*, the Prince hauing left his Armes in a faire Country for to winter, where hee dismissing many of our Souldiers, we arrived within foure leagues of *Cambalu*, whither all the Princes of the Emperours Court came for to receive him, together with all the principall Inhabitants, for to gratifie our Prince for his happy Voyage. The Prince hauing receiued every one, according to his wonted curtesie, retayning notwithstanding conuenient Maeltie, hee was beheld to the great contentment of all his Subiects. Hee had with him the Emperesse his wife, who had not left him in his Voyage. The next day the Emperor did him to much honour, as to come and meet him, with all the magnificence that might be. Hee gaue a present vnto the Emperor his Vncle of all the richest Charots, and farrest Horses hee had. The Emperor was very desirous to see his daughter: hee caused her Chamber to be vncouered, and called her to enter into his: but the Prince remayned on Horse-backe, whom the eyes of all the people could not be satisfied with admiring. The Prince presented *Calibet* vnto his Successor, and making a recital of his faithfulness, and the endeaure of euerie one, hee caused the Emperor to giue vnto him an hundred thousand crownes of encrease vnto his pension. *Asella* was also presented vnto the Emperor, who being informed of his valour, hee was receiued with all the best fauours that might be, and he gaue vnto him of the reuenues belonging vnto the Empire, an hundred thousand *Tartars* of gold in Principallitie, that he might the better declare vnto him how much hee esteemed of his fidelitie.

Tamerlan turned his fauour vnto Asella.

secoone crowne of speyke sent giuen vnto Asella by Tamerlan.

The meeting betweene the great Cham and Asella in the Cries of Cambalu in Calais.

Asella rewarded by the great Cham for his good feruice and faithfulness.

§. III.

The differences betwixt TAMERLAN and BIAZET the Turke; his returne to Samercand; and expedition against BIAZET; the battell, and victory, his caging of BIAZET, and making him his Foot-soule.

His joy and pleasure continued with vs all the Winter, where the Prince hauing receiued aduertisement: how *Biazet* Emperor of the Turke, had enterprised to ioyne the Empire of Greece vnto his owne, and fully determined to besiege *Constantinople*, the which hee vnderstanding, and succour being required of him by the *Greeke* Emperor, he dispatched one towards *Biazet*, for to declare vnto him his pleasure herein, and warned him on his behalfe, not to trouble the Emperour *Paleologue* who was his confederate. Now this motion came from Prince *Asella*, who had wrought this league, being of kinne vnto *Paleologue*, and also thrust forward with desire to maintayne his Religion in Greece, where he was borne of the *Gennose* race. Whereunto being answered very proudly, by *Biazet* vnto our Emperor, asking what he had to doe therein, and that he should content himselfe, with enjoying his lawes vnto his Subiects, and not vnto others, seeing hee was not borne his Subiect. This answer being made, *Asella* procured to be very ill accepted of the Emperor, and in such sort, that hee determined to hinder this enterprize of the *Ottomans*.

A message sent vnto Biazet.

The proud answer of Biazet.

Now the Prince had obtained of the Emperour his Vncle an hundred thousand Foot-men, and fourecore thousand Horse, hoping to haue as many from *Sachetay*, besides the Lords who would accompanie him for to winne glorie, from whom hee made account also of fifty thousand men more that they would bring vnto him, besides the other forces. Hee supposed that he had departed, leaving the Emperesse with the Emperor her father, for to serue him as a comfort of his age: it was not without a hart farewell of the Emperours part towards his Nephew; but they were married: but nothing withheld our Prince, where there was either glorie, or meanes to encrease his reputation, and profit the Common-wealth: saying often, that hee was borne to this end, and that hee must take in these exercises his principall delights: for euerie other thing wherein hee did exercise himselfe was but borrowed, being appointed and called of God to pursue the

Heauyparting:

A notable saying of our Emperor.

Tamerlan his
dilectus.

Tamerlan's journey
against the Turke.

Tamerlan re-
turneth from
the conquest
of China vnto
Samerland.

Confulation
about the way
the Arme
should take to
the Turke Em-
pire.

Tamerlan his
chiefest trust.

Bachu.

Tamerlan hun-
ded by the way
towards the
Turke.

Baiget march-
ed vnto the
siege of Con-
stantinople.

The govern-
ment of Achil
did chide.

Notable in-
surrection
the Turanians.

pride of Tyrants. Neither will I here omit a dreame, which our Prince had the night before he departed from *Cambala*, which was, that he did see a great multitude of reuerent men, who put forth their hands vnto him, requiring his succour against the violence of certain Tyrants, who did afflict them with sundry kinds of torments: he said, that he did neuer see more reuerent countenances, & that some of them were apparelled in white, and others in cloth of gold, some hauing as it were Crowns of gold vpon their heads, and it seemed vnto the Prince, that he gaue them his hand, and lift them very high. This dreame he recited vs the next morning, but no body was able to giue him the interpretation thereof, & himselfe thought no more of it.

The Prince was accompanied also with *Calbet*, & he commanded the Prince of *Tamir*, to take vpon him the state of Colonel of the footmen, which *Axalla* had left: vnto whom he gaue the charge of Lieutenant general within his Arme, with commandement to leade his Auant-guard, and *Calbet* the Arre-ward, being accompanied with farre greater forces then euer he had in any of his Armies: for they came vnto him from all parts. The *Chinese* Lord was licensed by *Odmar* to goe with 20000. men of the subjects newly conquered, being desirous to shew himselfe vnto the Emperour, as also for to leaue our manners and fashions. The Prince tooke his Voyage directly vnto *Samerland*, the place of his birth, a million of men, following and praying him in all manner of songs. All the Princes of the Countrey also ranne to visite him, & he abode there a moneth. *Axalla* in this meane time was already at the meeting place at *Ozra*, who prepared all things, looking for the Princes commandement for to goe vnto him, aduertising him often of the dangers of *Baiaet*.

We departed from *Samerland*, for to goe vnto *Ozra*, where was the meeting place for all the Princes troupes: and hauing in that place taken aduice for his journey, that is to say, for to know whether should be most expedient and fauorable, either to goe by the coasts of *Malay*, or directly vnto *Capba*, or rather on the other side of the Sea *Bachu* to passe by the skirts of *Perfia*. It was refused in the end, after sundry opinions, although the way were the longer, to passe vnto *Capba* for to come vnto *Trefbonda*, and to the *Georgians*, and from thence to enter into the limits of the *Ottomans*. Then our Arme after the accustomed ceremonies & prayers made vnto God, wherein our Emperour hoped to finde his principall succours, we drew straight vnto *Marania*, where the Arme abode three dayes, looking for the forces which *Odmar* did send, whereof they received 30 newes. There did the Emperour cause all his Arme to be payd, and a general mulct was made. He had newes also there of the forces that the *Moscouite* did send vnto him: he likewise caused an infinite quantity of victuals, and the most part of his furniture to be conveyed by the Sea of *Bachu*, there being one twentie leagues where there was want of water and victuals, through the which our Arme must needs passe, causing all things necessary to be carried by water, the which was a great commoditie vnto vs: and there was a commandement giuen at all the shoares of the Sea, that they should bring all the vessels for to carrie the munition of the Arme: so as this fore-sight did greatly ease our Arme. The Prince went continually coasting the Sea-shore, passing away his time in hunting, and his Arme came not neere him by ten leagues, except such as came to seeke necessaries for the Arme, the which he did extend it selfe some twentie leagues, it was so great. The Prince abode at *Sarash* during the time his Arme passed the River of *Edel*, at *Me-chet*, and at two or three other Bridges, the which they had caused to be made; there had he certaine newes how *Baiaet* marched vnto the siege of *Constantinople*, hauing reduced vnto his obedience all *Bythinia*, and *Bursia* a very noble Citie, the which hee caused to be fortifield, and diuers other Cities, vnto all the cruelties that might be, in such as all the adioyning Prouinces yielded themselves his tributaries: amongst the rest the noble Citie of *Capba*: the Citie was by the Prince giuen vnto *Axalla* for to dispose of the same: which hee did, going thither to see his kind-folke, and to take such order there, as he thought was for the preferation of the Citie, as one not vngratefull vnto his Countrey: he rather placed his hope in this little flower of *Mar Marano*, then in the limits of *Scythia* and *China*, and for to succeed after his Master vnto all his great conquests, for that he had all the Souldiers at his commandement, and great credit amongst all the people over whom his Prince commanded. *Baiaet* hauing a very great and mightie Arme, neither beleueed, nor once thought that wee would come vpon him, to exceeding barbarous was he, that he would not indure any man to much as to speake onely vnto him of our Arme, as depicting it, he was so proud: and there he caused all the bordering people likely to be free borderers, to make any vowes and prayers for our prosperitie. Iustice reigned amongst vs, in much as if a Souldier had taken but an Apple, he was put to death, and this was severely obserued our all, a thing vsuall, and especially in this Journey, the which was the onely cause of overthrowing the tyrannie of the *Ottomans*, and of this proud *Baiaet*. So we arrived at *Bachichebe*, where the Arme refreshed it selfe for the space of eight dayes. Vnto this place came the Embassadors of *Ginney*, vnto the Emperour, whom the Prince did greatly reuerence for his holinesse. The Emperour after he had caused general prayers to be published, *Tamerlans* Arme departed from *Bachichebe*, and they reckoned that there was in our Arme, three hundred thousand Horse-men, and two hundred thousand Foot-men, of all kinds of Nations. Our

Arme

Arme came vnto *Garga*, where it passed the River *Euphrates*, the Auant-guard at *Chusgrig*; and the general meeting of the Arme was appointed to bee at *Gianich*, the which did yeeld it selfe: and there had we newes that *Baiaet* his Arme was neere vnto vs, within some thirty leagues, which caused vs to march more clof. All the Cities yeelded, the Emperour receiving them graciously, and those which refused obedience, were cruelly punished, especially such Inhabitants as were *Turkes*, but the *Christians* let in full libertie, vnder the name of the *Greeke* commandement from the Prince: so hee caused them to be sent vnto *Emanuel*. The great Arme of *Baiaet* thought to have surprised our men within *Senna* (which they had taken) but as soone as they drew neere, our men let it out fire, and the greatest part retyring, there remayned some hundred Horse to performe the same, who retyred themselves in very great disorder. Now, the Prince of *Carcan* had diuided his men into two troupes, and giuen commandement vnto the first troupe, that as soone as they perceived the Enemies to pursue the hundred Horse, they should rescue them, and retyre ioyntly together. Now, hee had the rest of his power in a valley neere vnto a Wood, and hauing suffered some two thousand of the Enemies Horse, *Turke* Auant-cuttors to passe by him, he charged them behind, and fought with them, they not fighting but fleeing as soone as they did see themselves pressed: many were slayne, and many were taken prisoners. This was the first time wee fought, and carried away the victorie: all the prisoners were sent vnto the Prince, amongst the rest the *Bassa* of *Natolia*, who led three troupes. The next day *Baiaet* his Arme drew neere vnto the fight of ours, the which marched might haue heard such noyle of Horses, as it seemed the heavens were full of voyces, the aire did trail of his valour. Vnto the *Scythian* Nation, the which is detestous of goods, they propounded the great riches they should get by the victorie over the *Ottomans*. Vnto the *Partian* Nation ambitious of rule, the honour and glorie of the Nation, being Conquerors of them, who only were able to take from them the Empire of *Asia*. The *Christians* who made the fourth part thereof, assured themselves to conquer their greatest Enemy. Behold, now eury one spake during the night time, according to his humour. The Prince this night went through his Campe hearing

all this, and was very glad to see the hope that eury one of his Souldiers did conceiue already of the victorie; and I being neere him, he did me the honour to let me, at that time he fought the battell against the *Moscouite*, he did heare all them sing long all kinds of songs, the which hee found good hap, and I trust to rescue the like now. Now after the second watch the Prince returned vnto his lodging, and casting himselfe vpon a Carpet hee meant to sleepe: but the desire of it would not suffer him; he then commanded me to giue him a booke, wherein hee did reade: therein was containd the lues of his Father, and Grandfather, and of other valiant Knights, the which hee did ordinarily reade: he called me, hauing lighted vpon (in reade) the discourse of a battell that his Grandfather had lost against the *Perfians*, the which hee had thought to haue gotten (very vnlike) hauing assailed his Enemy, many aduantages being propounded vnto him, whereof he might haue made good vse, all which hee neglected, trusting vnto his owne valour and that of his Souldiers. And hauing ended his speech, he commanded me to reade the same before him, and said vnto me, I would reade this before I beginne a battell, to the end I should not so much trust vnto the Lions skin, wherein I wrap my arme, that I should not ferue my selfe with the Foxes, to wrap therewith my head: for thus (said he) my Grandfather was and whatsoever his men said to him, hee went on heading, thrusting his eares against all the counsell and aduice of his seruants.

Seeing the *Turkish* Foot-men march, whom they doe call *Tanixaries*, the which were placed in the middle, and vpon the two fronts, two great squadrons of Horse-men, the which seemed to be thirty thousand Horse, and another which advanced and covered the battalon of the *Tanixaries*: Hee thought this order to be very good, and hard to breake, and turning himselfe vnto *Axalla*, who was neere vnto him, he said, I had thought to haue fought on foot, but it became great battalon: and my will is, that they come forward vnto mee as soone as they may: to open the I will advance forward an hundred thousand Foot-men, fifty thousand vpon each of my two wings, and in the middle of them forty thousand of my best Horse. My pleasure is, that after they haue tryed the force of those men, that they come vnto my Auant-guard, of whom I will dispose (and fifty thousand Horse more) in three bodies, whom thou shalt command, the which I will aduise with four score thousand Horse, wherein shall be mine owne person, hauing an hundred thousand Horse, and fifty thousand of the best Horse, who shall not march but vnto my ayde. I shall thinke needfull within my Arme, for to impart my commandements. Ouer the first where I

The cause of
Tamerlans
warre against
the Turke.

A stratagem.

How Tamerlan
Arme pressed
the night be-
fore the battell
fought against
the Turke.

Tamerlan his
cullumbe be-
fore a battell.

The manner
of the march
of the *Turkish*
Foot-men.

The order of
Tamerlan his
battell.

P

the first
thousand

White the
Turkies
rises be.

Mamelukes

Tamerlan his
puncyall ma-
ximous wars

The battelle
betweene Ta-
merlan and Ba-
jazet.

Tamerlan his
notable victo-
rie obtained
against Bajazet
wistlenbee

Tamerlan his
wistlenbee
the cause of
the victorie, and
wherein per-
fomed.

thousand the Prince *Circian* commanded: ouer the foremost footmen was the Lord *Synops*, a *Genuis*, kinsman vnto *Axalla*, and he which was his Lieutenant ouer the footmen, a *Captaine* of great estimation. That ouer which the Prince *Axalla* commanded, consisted of fise squadrons of horsemen. *Bajazet* his Armie seemed faire and great, which was aduanced continually forward towards vs, who stirred not one whit from the place of the battelle. There were many light horse men, as well *Scythians*, *Parthians*, as *Moscouites*, who left their ranks, and shot Arrows, and brake Lances betweene the two Armies. There was a Spie who brought word that *Bajazet* was on foot in the middle of his *Janizaries*, where he meant to fight: that hee did not forget to mount on horse-back, giuing order ouer all for the wants of his Armie: but purposed to fight in the middle of those *Janizaries*, who are a number of trusty men, brought vp in exercises from their youth to all manner of warfare, and chosen out of all Nations, the fairest and strongest men, so as they are invincible. By this bringing vp the which they haue had together, they doe fight with a great force and courage for their Prince and Lord, who being in the middle of them, they are in a halfe circle within the Armie. Now, they were thirty thousand men in this order, wherein *Bajazet* put his principall hope: he had many other footmen, but gathered together of all sorts. His battelle of horse was very faire, amounting vnto the number of an hundred and fortie thousand horse, well exercised in all manner of fights. The *Soldes of Egypt* hauing ayded him with thirty thousand *Mamelukes*, very good horse-men, and with thirty thousand footmen. Their Armie in that order seemed almost as great as ours: for they were not loe to fight together as we were, our forces being directly one after the other, and theirs all in a front.

So the Enemies Armie aduanced forward continually with an infinite number of cries, and ours was in great silence. After that common prayer was ended, the Emperour himselfe aduanced continually forward, beholding the first charge giuen, and caused *Axalla* to set forward after he returned into his order, continually exhorting his men before hee left them. There could not be seene a more furious charge giuen, then was performed by the *Ottomans* vpon the Prince of *Circian*, who had commandement not to fight before they came vnto him: there could not haue beene chosen a fairer Playe, and where the skillfull choise of the place was of lesse aduantage for the one then for the other, but that we had the River on our left hand, the which was some aduantage for the Emperour, hauing giuen commandement, that in any case they should not lose the same, and that the Enemies, whatsoeuer came thereof, should not win it: this hee did for to haue the aduantage of the hand in fight. The Emperour, who about all Maximes of warre, did vie to deale in such manner, that the Enemy might bee the first Assaillier: hee had straightly commanded them which were appointed for the first charge, to suffer the Enemy to goe the on-for. Now (as I haue already declared) this young Prince of *Circian* with his forty thousand horse was almost wholly ouerthrowne, hauing fought as much as hee could, but hee entred euen into the middle of the *Janizaries*, where the person of *Bajazet* was, putting them in disorder, where hee was slaine. About this time *Axalla* set vpon them with the Vanguard, where as he was not in any such danger; for hauing surprised one of the enemies wings, hee cut it all in pieces, and his footmen coming to ioyne with him, as they had bene commanded, hee faced the Battalion of the *Janizaries*.

The Prince seeing the charge *Axalla* had vpon his arme, sent ten thousand horse from his battelle for to succour him, and knit together the mayne battelle of *Axalla*, and to giue once againe a charge vpon another Battalion of footmen, the which did shew it selfe, and came to ioyne with and strengthen that of the *Janizaries*, who behaued themselves valiantly for the fauour of their Prince. This fight continued one houre, and yet you could not haue seene any scattered, fighting resolutely the one against the other. You might haue seene the Mountaynes of horses runn one against another, the men die, cry, lament, and threaten at one very time. The Prince had patience to see this sight ended, and when hee did perceive that his men did giue place, hee sent ten thousand of his Horse to ioyne againe with the ten thousand appointed for the Arriward, and commanded them to assilt him, at such time as hee should haue need thereof. At this very time the Emperour chargeth, and made them giue him roome, causing the footmen to assalt, ouer whom the Prince of *Thamas* commanded; who gaue a furious on-set vpon the Battalion of the *Janizaries*, wherein was yet the person of *Bajazet*, who had sustayned a great burthen. But the multitude, and not valour, did preuaile; for as much as might bee done in fight, was by the *Janizaries* performed, for to preferre the person of their Prince. But in the end the Horse-men, wherein was the Emperours person, gaue a new charge, and his Vanguard was wholly knit againe vnto him, hee renewed another forcing, and was fully victorious. *Bajazet* hauing rettyred on horse-back out of the troupe of *Janizaries* wounded, fell alone into the hands of *Axalla*, vnto whom hee yielded himselfe, supposing it had bene *Tamerlan*: then *Axalla* seeing him so followed (being for a time not knowne but for some great Lord of the *Ottomans*) twenty thousand horse did not fight at all, but only in pursuing the victorie, and they made a great slaughter. The Prince had his horse slaine vnder him with the blow of a Lance, but hee was loone remounted againe on horse-back. This day the wilcome of the Emperour gaue the victorie vnto his Soldiers: for the iudgment which hee had in tying of the strong forces

forces of the *Ottomans*, was the safeguard of his. For if all had gone vnto the battelle in one front, surely the multitude had put it selfe into a confusion: but this manner of aiding his men made euerie one profitable. The Emperour iudging (like a great Capitaine) of the need that euerie one of his soldiers had, so that this manner of proceeding was the getting of the victorie. They accounted therefore thousand men slaine of the *Ottomans*, and twentie thousand of ours. The Prince of *Tircis* was slaine, as I haue said: the head of the *Georgians* slaine, *Calibes* was verie forrie hee had loe to eate a reckoning in his Arriward, being very courageous, and a gentle Knight: the Despote of *Serna* was taken prisoner, who did accompanie *Bajazet*, and was a Christian: they gaue him this day of battelle much reputation. The Emperour gaue vnto his very good entertainment, reproaching him, for that hee did accompanie *Bajazet* against him, who did come in fauour of his Emperour. Hee answered him, that it was not according to his Iurie, but the prosperitie of *Bajazet*, vnto whom it seemed, that all the world did bend for to subiect it selfe vnto him, and that his fauour had caused him to set forward. The Emperour presently thereupon gaue him leave to depart at his pleasure. Hee tooke care to get into his hands *Bajazet* his children: hee gaue commandement that *Bajazet* should bee cured, and after brought before him: who at such time as hee was there neuer made any shew of humilitie. The Emperour saying vnto him, that it lay in him to cause him to lose his life, he answered: Doit, that losse shall bee my happinesse. And demanding of him what made him so rash, for to enterprise to bring into subiection so noble a Prince as was the Emperour of the *Greekes*. Hee answered him, the desire of glorie and rule. Wherefore dost thou (said the Emperour vnto him) vie to great cruelty towards men, so farre forth that neither thou nor thine doe pardon either sex or age? This doe I (answered hee) to giue thee the greater terror to my enemies. Then said the Emperour, io shalt thou see the like reward: and causing him to bee conveyed againe out of his presence, hee turned vnto his followers, and said, behold a proud and force contentance, hee deserveth to be punished with cruelty, and it is necessarie that hee bee made an exemplarie punishment to all the cruell of the world of the iust wrath of God against them. I acknowledge that God hath this day deliuered into my hands a great enemy, wee must giue thanks vnto God for the same, the which was performed, being yet day: for the battelle was wonne at foure of the clocke, and there was as yet five houres of day-light. The children of *Bajazet* were brought before him: hee caused them to bee vied courteously, and as the children of an Emperour. The next day hee commanded the dead to bee buried: they found the Prince of *Tircis* dead in the middle of the *Janizaries*, where hee remained enclosed. The Emperour did greatly lament this young Prince, who was his kinsman, and would haue bene one day worthe for to doe him great seruice. In that battelle there died manie Capitaines, & almost the chiefe *Ottomans*. This was a great Battelle, the which was fought from Iken vnto foure of the clocke, in such fort that they knew not vnto whom the victorie did incline. Our Arme flayed vntill the next day, euerie one causing his friends to bee buried. The Prince of *Tircis* was embled, and conveyed with two thousand horse vnto *Samarcand* vntill the Emperour returned. All the other dead bodies were buried at *Sana* with all the honour that might bee. *Axalla* was much grieved for his kinsman, because hee was verie well beloued of the Prince: his charge was much grieved for his brethren who was verie famous; in fighting this same day, we might iudge the earnest of the matters of the world. Behold this Emperour *Bajazet*, who was, as hee thought, superiour to fortune, which in an instant found himselfe and his estate by one battelle ouerthrowne euen vnto the lowest place, and at such time as hee thought least thereof. Hee vied to die, but hee was iustly punished, for despising the multitude we had, for the assurance that hee had in the value of his person, and especially of his *Janizaries*. Hee was three dayes (as they report) before hee could bee pacified, as a desperate man, seeking after death, and calling for it. The Emperour did not vie him at all courteously, but caused small account to bee made of him: and for to manifest that hee knew how to punish the proud: vpon festiuall dayes, when as hee mounted on horseback, hee brought this proud man vnto him, and hee serued him in stead of a foot-stoole: this hee for to manifest the folly and arrogance of men, and how iustly God had humbled him. The next day the Prince marched directly towards *Burfa*, whither all the remainder of *Bajazet* his Armie was retired, with the *Bassa Asaph*. All the countrie yielded vnto vs, and the Prince caused all the holdes and fortresses to bee ouerthrowne and destroyed, and punished all thole which were loe to cause us to stay vntill they were besieged. I had forgotten to declare, how hee caused the Prince of *Tircis* bodie to bee accompanied with diuers prisoners claimed and tied together, whom hee did send vnto *Samarcand*, the which the Prince had determined to make great, for a perpetuall memorie of his gratefullie. Euen so had hee greatly peopled with people of *China*, which had bene taken in the Battalles, *reusen*. Now this battelle did bring great abundance vnto all the countries possessed by *Bajazet*, and no bodie resisted vs, euen vnto *Burfa*, whither this Armie was fled, and therein were also two finnes of *Bajazet* verie young. *Axalla* being alwaies aduanced forward before

Bajazet
brought before
Tamerlan, with
his pride.

Tamerlan his
laying of sa-
uetye.

The despote
of Bajazet at-
tache was a
man of warre.

Bajazet Tamer-
lan's foot-stoole
to mount on
his back.

Tamerlan his
politic for to
conquer his
Countie Samar-
cand.

*Axalla crnell
againſt the Ot-
tomans for the
deſtiny of
Greece.*

*Prefents ſent
by the ſer-
vants of the
great
Chen his
Viceroy.*

our Armie, with forty thouſand Horſe, and an hundred thouſand Foot-men without any carriages, who hindered the Enemies from joyning themſelves againe together: and hee made a cruell Warre vnto the *Ottomans*, deliuering the *Grecians* from the tyrannie of *Baiaſet*. Hee approached neere vnto *Burſa*, where the *Ottomans* did not flay the coming of *Axalla* Armie, but only they which could not runne remained behind. *Baiaſet* his two Sonnes were ſent vnto the *Greeke* Emperour for to bring them vp, and to haue mercede vpon them; the reſt went vnto *Callipoli*, for to goe vnto *Andrinopoli*, the which they held, hauing conquered it from the *Grecians*. Now the Prince (for to returne vnto my purpoſe) diſpatched towards the Emperour his Vncle, and vnto the Emperreſſe his Wife, one of his Familiars, called *Liban*, Captayne of his Chamber, for to carrie him newes of this Victorie, and to ſhew it alſo vnto all the reſt. He ſent vnto him *Baiaſet* his Sword and Bow, and the Caparions of his Horſe, the which was eſteemed to be worth about two hundred thouſand Duckets. You may eaſily thinke that Prince *Liban* was well entertayned of the old Emperour, and of the young Princeſſe, bringing word vnto them, that all the World did bend it ſelfe to make our Prince victorious, who lately receiued theſe Victories from God without infolence, and at ſuch time as hee ſent him moſt glory, then did his men note him to be leaſt puff'd vp. He was neuer bold, but in the day of battaile, and on the Eue for to command ſeuerely, and with greater Majelty. To tell you what he was in aduerſitie, I did neuer ſee him in that eſtate: but it is to be thought, that they which bee not in- ſolent in proſperitie, are not faint-hearted in aduerſitie. So our victorious Prince marched di- rectly vnto *Burſa*, loaden with Spoyle and Trophies which hee daily got; departing from the Cities which hee did come and yeeld themſelves vnto him, therein obſeruing the ſame manner of proceeding, the which wee did in the Conqueſt of *China*; they which did yeeld vnto him with- out fighting, were well vied, and the obſtinate well puniſhed, the Prince knowing that reward and puniſhment are the Moderators of Common-wealthe, the one to bee vied towards the good, and the other towards the euill. In the end we receiued newes by *Axalla*, that hee had re- ceiued *Burſa* in the Emperours name, and how the Inhabitants thereof had purſued the Gar- risons of *Baiaſet*, hauing driven them away, and ſlaine many.

But I dare not follow our Author any further from Tartaria, for whoſe ſake I haue entertained him. Leaving therefore his agreement with the *Greeke Emperour*, and ſecretly viſiting Conſtantinople, his coming to Ieruſalem, and Expedition againſt the Soldan, with his Exports in Egypt, Syria, Perſia, we will returne with him to Samarcand.

§. IIII.

Encreaſe of Samarcand; Affaires of China: Funerals of the Can; coming to Quinzan, and deſcription thereof. His diſpoſition of his eſtate and death.

Perſia as long as hee liued was much affected vnto him: which greatly ſerued him for the keeping as well of *Syria*, as of the *Soldan* Empire, leaving continually men there, and drawing out Colonies, the better to ſettle his Affaires in theſe places. So the Emperour leaving the Prince of *Thanaie*, with his Army to attend his pleaſure, he marched with the reſt of his forces into his owne Country with all the loyes and Triumphs that might be poſſible, the chiefeſt Priſoners marching before the Emperour, amongst the which was *Baiaſet* Emperour of the *Turkes* all chayned, and was a Spectacle vnto all the World of Fortunes incanſurability: hee continued notwithstanding in the ſame hercelence was wont to be in him. So whereſoeuer the Emperour paſſed, the people aſſembled themſelves by thouſands, praying and ſinging his Victories. We arrived at the laſt at *Samarcand* with all our ſpoyle, in very great magnificence: where after we had bene the ſpace of one month or two in Feaſtings and Manificences, the Emperour with his accuſtomed Deuotion, hauing in great ſolemneſſe vowed a Church and Hoſpital vnto his God, the moſt magnificent that might be deuoted. Whereupon to performe the ſame, he began to ſearch out all ſorts of Handicrafts men for to honour this Cite, the which hee had a deſire to make one of the ſtateſt Cities in the World. And in one of the corners thereof he began, and did build there his Temple and Hoſpi- tal, making an account to increaſe yet this Cite, as large againe as it was, and to perple the ſame, with ſo many ſeueral kinds of people and Nations as hee had brought with him, giuing libertie vnto them all to frame and build their Houſes, cauſing money to be diſtributed to the ſame, and giuing all kinds of Priuileges and Freedoms vnto the Priſoners, for to ſerue them a greater deſire to build and ſettle themſelves there: and hauing called the ſtreets and places to be plotted, and hauing appointed a place for every one to build vpon, hee rooke no other plea- ſure, neither had hee any other care then the preferring the good will of his moſt famous Sol- diers, whoſe name hee hauing cauſed to bee written in a general Muſter-booke, the which he

*Caſtles his
vnto vnto God*

commanded to be made, from day to day, they (not thinking thereof) receiued honours, and good turnes of the Prince, in recompence of their good ſeruices. Now he declared the death of the Emperour his Vncle vnto his Councell (of which hee before had receiued Intelligence, but kept it cloſe) and forgot no Ceremony due vnto the honour of the ſaid Emperour outwardly, ſhewing the grieſe hee conceiued for his death; where after hee had reſted ſome eight dayes, hee determined to goe vnto *Quinzan* for to ſee the Emperreſſe, and hauing left *Baiaſet* in the cuſtodie of the Gouernour of *Zubeſet*, the Emperour left forward with his ordinary Court which was of forty thouſand Horſe, and threeſcore thouſand Foot-men.

The Emperour being come vnto *Cambala*, receiued newes of the Battell *Odmar*, had wonne againſt the King of *China*, Captayne General, and how hee purſued this Victorie, hauing taken three or fourty great and rich Cities, the which did yeeld themſelves vnto him, and that againſt the *Chingis* did deſire peace. The Emperour ſent the Articles hee required, which were that be- fore all other things the King of *China* ſhould pay the Arrerages of the Tribute, the which hee had agreed with the Emperour. Firſt, hee ſhould come in perſon to doe homage vnto his Majelty, and acknowledge himſelfe as Vaſall vnto his Empire. That the Army ſhould withdraw it ſelfe during his Voyage, and hee ſhould deliuer vp vnto him all his Cities, ſauing three ſuch as the Emperour ſhould nominate; and that the things ſhould be reſtored vnto the ſame eſtate they were in before the Warre, when the Emperour made the firſt peace; that hee ſhould pay the Army for fix months, and ſhould alſo ſatiſſie all the expences of the War, freſh hee had begunne it; he was Author of the breach of peace. Then the Emperour gratified *Odmar*, ſending vnto him for Wife one of his Siſters with all magnificence that might be, for to make him the more affec- tioned vnto him. I will declare how the Emperour was receiued at *Cambala* by his Subjects, with all the magnificence poſſible, the Emperour for to gratifie them hauing reſtored their Priuileges, the which hee had taken from them, for the Rebellion they had committed with *Cadic*: ſo as the Emperour went ouer all gratifying his Subjects for this new Succellion that was lately fallen vnto him, all the Companies coming vnto him: for in theſe Countreys they haue no certaine dwellings, they are alwayes wandring in troups whereſoeuer they goe: thither the Emperreſſe (hauing left Prince *Axalla* to gouerne at *Quinzan*) came vnto him. The Prince remayned there almoſt two months, hauing in this place giuen order for all the Affaires hee had. *Cambala* was alſo neere vnto mount *Altay*, where they vie to bury the *Syſtian* Emperours, whom we doe call the great *Chen*.

The Emperour cauſed the body of the Emperour his Vncle to be brought thither, and himſelfe would conſult it with all pompe, honouring not only his body, but alſo all that hee had loued in the World, and although it was not the cuſtome to cauſe women for to aſſiſt the Funerals, yet would hee afford this honour vnto the Emperreſſe, that the ſhould aſſiſt the bringing of the body, going neere vnto the ſame. This hee did, the more to make appeare how much hee honoured the memory of the late Emperour in his Wife, being his Daughter, and alſo to the end that it God take him away, his ſiſters being ſmall, the ſhould haue the greater authority, and bee the better acknowledged worthy to gouerne in the minority of his Children; and alſo for that the had been brought vp alwayes in authority, enen ſince hee was married. The Prince deſiring thereby the more to acknowledge the honour the Emperour his Vncle had done him, by adopt- ing him as his Sonne, and in hauing left him ſo great and large an Empire, as that was where- of hee left vnto him the poſſeſſion. Now the Emperour loued her onely, hauing no other affec- tion in body pleaſure, but only the happineſſe of a faire Off-ſpring, the which hee hoped for. Now the father of the late Emperour being come vnto *Cambala*, he determined to conſult it vnto the buriall according vnto the accuſtomed Ceremony, and to put the body with the Kings and Emperours his Anceſtors. After hee had from point to point performed the laſt Will and Teſtament of the late Emperour, he returned from thence vnto *Cambala*, where hee ſpent all Winter in Tilt and Turnying, going a hunting, making his abode there, becauſe he was in a place neereſt vnto the Kingdome of *China*, to know how matters paſſed there, hauing now brought thither his laſt Affairs, purpoſing to goe thither in perſon the next Winter, if *Odmar* did not make an end of the Warre alreadie begunne, and if the King of *China* did not ſubmit himſelfe wholly vnto his obedience, hauing determined not to depart from *Cambala*, vntill this Countrey were pacified, the marke hee ſhot at, being only to keepe that which his valour was able to conquer through his good fortune, being deſirous to ſpend the reſt of his life in enjoying the fruits of his trauals, and for to publiſh his prayſes vnto his people, and with Millions to maintayne them in peace. Hee had alſo a purpoſe to bring vnto an end that which hee had determined to doe at *Samarcand*.

Now *Axalla* was at *Quinzan*, as well vnto the contentment of all the men of Warre, as the Inhabitants, who deſired much to ſee their Prince, and hauing cauſed Prince *Axalla* in their be- half to beſeech it, that it would pleaſe the Emperour to cauſe his Sonne to bee brought vp a- mong them there, the which hee did grant vnto them in fauour of the ſaid Prince *Axalla*, cauſing him for to command in the abſence of the Prince his Sonne, whom hee made Gouer- nour of *Quinzan*, from *Cambala* euen vnto the Sea. This Countrey was replenished with ſome three hundred Cities, and was in largeneſſe more then four hundred leagues, beſides an infinite

*Articles of a
new agreement
betwene Tame-
rlan and the
King of China.*

1
2
3
4

*The magni-
cent Funerall
of the great
Chen at Tar-
ſetia.*

*Tamerlan's
virtuous and
chaste loue
vnto his good
Wife.*

*The young
Prince made
Courtier of
Quinzan and
ouerall the
Countrey;*
which ſeemeth
to be the
North parts of
China; and per-
haps in ſome
times, Nam-
chow was the
Seat of the K.
of China, and
Quinzan of the
Tartars.

Asalla appointed the young Princes Countess, and authorized to use all the Kingdoms of *Tamerlans*, as Governor general.

The King of *Chine* came vnto the Emperor *Tamerlan* Court, and did swear vnto him once againe obedience.

The meanes apparell of *Tamerlan*.
* This battell for brevities sake is omitted, as is also the most part of the Booke.

The description of the Citie of *Quinsay*, with the wonderfull situation thereof. *Tamerlan* received with great magnificence into his Citie, with such and rare presents. The order hee tooke for his sonnes education.

Tamerlan his notable saying of succession in his Empire.

The Emperesse delivered of an other sonne at *Samerland* in *Perchia*.

Tamerlan his recreation, and notable saying thereon.

The admiration and exceeding love the people of *Quinsay* did beare vnto their Emperor. The nature of the people of *Quinsay* vnto their Emperor.

number of Villages. To make short, it was that the Emperor his Vncle gouerned, where this Prince *Asalla* was his Lieutenant general, vnder the authoritie of the young Prince his sonne, vnto whom he deliuered him in charge for to be his Gouernour, authorizing him vnto the gouernement general of all his Kingdomes: for the great wisdom that was in this Knight, made him beloued in all the Countreys vnder the Emperours obedience: the seruises also and great victories the which hee had caused the Emperour to obtayne by his stout courage and good conduct, who for these occasions put his principall trust in him, and after himselfe hee thought him onely worthe to preferre for his children his Kingdom and Emperrie.

The King of *China* came to visit him at his Court, according vnto the countenances offered vnto him, the which hee accepted: he did swear once againe obedience vnto the Emperour, who vnto him to see all his greatest Cities, for to make himselfe the more to be feared of this *barbarian*, who kept no more promise then pleased himselfe. Hee was astonished to behold so many Souldiers, and the Countrey so well replenished with people; and about all, that they fed little curiositie of riches in their apparell and garments, wondering that the Emperour was appareled in meane Cloth of one colour, without any other fashion: but to counterualle that, hee had about him men which seemed to bee Kings. At the same time when the King of *China* was at the Court, the Emperour received newes of the * victorie against the *Seldans*, for the which the Emperour retoyed, making feasts and turneys in his Court in token of mirth, and this reioicing continued for the space of eight dayes. After the Emperour had giuen order for the double paying of his Armie that came into *Perchia*, vnder the conduct of the great Chamberlaine, and *Synops* Colonnell general in the Imperiall Armie, the Emperour went vnto *Quinsay* for to see his sonne, and visit the people of this Countrey.

The Emperour arriving neere vnto *Quinsay*, Prince *Asalla* comming to meet him two dayes journey off, with all the chiefe Lords of the Countrey, together with the principall Citizens, who were preparing for the Emperour the most magnificent receiving that the Citie might be, as well by water as by land. As this Citie is one of the richest in the world, to is one of the greatest, and of the most wonderfull situation, being all wholly diuided and ouerthwarted with channells, vpon the which are framed wonderfull and stately buildings, accompanied with an infinite number of Bridges, vpon the which they passe ouer channells: this Citie aboundeth with all kinde of spices, and in great quantitie, likewise with all manner of merchandise. The Emperour as soone as he was arrived, receiued presents of the Citizens, the which were esteemed to be worth about two millions of Gold, with a wonderfull variety of all rare and singular things, the which they presented vnto him, for to testifie the loue and obedience they did owe vnto him. The Emperour was desirous to see his sonne, whom they brought vp with the accustomed greatnesse of Princes: and hauing caused the child to be brought before him, being of the age of seven yeeres: hee looked from hence forward they should suffer him to weare any thing vpon his head, and himselfe did hang a Bowe about his necke, saying aloud, that they which from their birth were called vnto touraigments, should bee vnto cold and heate, and should bee exercised in Armes betimes, and not brought vp delicately and easilly, reprehending them which had the bringing of him vp, demanding of them, if they meane to make a man of him? And they answering, that he was tender. If he be not borne (said he) to be strong in Armes, he will not be worthy to succed mee: for he must not be an effeminate Prince, that shall preferre the *Parthian* Empire. Now hee had sent the Emperesse vnto *Samerland* to be deliuered, where shee was honourably receiued, hauing neuer bene there since shee was married. Hee receiued newes that shee was there deliuered of another goodly sonne, a thing which hee caused to be published our all, and himselfe in token of ioy, made feasts fiftene dayes, with all kinde of magnificent turnies: this hee did for to shew his agilitie vnto this people, to the end, that hee excelled all his Court in vertues, that they should also iudge him worthe to gouerne them about all other men. After hee continued there a moneth, and hauing visited all the Seatownes neere vnto *Quinsay*, hunting all kinde of chales, neglecting nothing notwithstanding ¹⁰ which belonged to his charge, saying often, that the recreations hee did take, were helpees for to ease him in the paines of his publike affaires whereunto God had called him. Haueing vpon his returne called together all the people, he published his lawes, which were all reuerenced of this people, as though they had proceeded from the Diuinitie, so much admiration had euery one of the greatnesse of this Prince. The which I will truly declare vnto you, that so long as the Emperour was there, this people did almost nothing, being for the most part bled in beholding of him, not finding any greater contentation then that. Some of his Courtiers, and amongst the rest, Prince *Asalla* laid one day vnto him, that this was a Citie fit for his abode. O my friend, it is not so: if they should see mee daily, they would make no more account of mee. It is a maxime, that the Lord of this great Citie must not goe thither but once in ten yeeres, and when hee is there, it behooueth him to temper his actions, as if he were vpon a Scaffold ready for to play some Comedie, where grauitie and good grace is necessary for to content the beholders: for the people doe easilly receiue an euill impression of their Prince, as they also doe a good, if you performe it well vnto them.

Now I haue forgotten to tell you how the Emperour sent Prince *Asalla* in his name from *Quinsay* into *China*, and his Imperiall Maiestie did not depart out of the Prouince before hee returned, he went thither with great diligence for to establish peace there. Prince *Asalla* went forward towards *Pagun*, where hee was receiued of the Gouernour with all possible honour. *Asalla* haueing assembled all the Emperours forces, hee let forward towards the borders of *China*, hee had an interview at *Pachio*, where the meeting place was agreed vpon. Hee passed by *Quinsay* went forward vnto *Pachio*, whither the King came also to meet with him; and hee entered full fiftie leagues into the Countrey newly conquered. It seemed vnto him a thing too much derogating from the greatnesse of the Emperour, the maiestie of whose person hee repleted, if he went any further to see this barbarous King, being more fit that hee should come forward into the Countrey conquered lately from him by *Odmer*, after hee had obtained the victory, then to goe into his Countreys although hee had subiected them vnto the Emperour, and did pay a very great tribute. So the King of *China* arrived within a league of *Pachio* with all his Court; hee let forward vnto a Plaine, where hee and Prince *Asalla* did see each other, who was much better accompanied, from whom the King did as much differ as from the Emperours owne person. They met three severall times together: the King desired to bee admitted into a Citie, which the Emperour had granted vnto him by the treatie. Prince *Odmer* declared that it was of great importance, therefore Prince *Asalla* was by the Emperour appointed for to bee Iudge of this controuersie. In the end they required another further within the Countrey, the which the King accepted: so hee was put into possession of that Citie, the situation whereof was very pleasant, being compassed about with a Lake. *Asalla* haueing discouered that this barbarous King, did earnestly desire it onely for his pleasure, and not for any other euill intent, the Citie which hee deliuered being frated vpon a Riuer further within his Countrey, and that other within our Countrey compassed about with our fortresses: but *Odmer* did not allow of that, and supposed it to be for euill purpose, for to continue newe profities. *Odmer* being an old man, who knew the kings vnfathfullnesse, although hee had made him know it well enough vnto his smart, haueing (as I haue said) wonne twenty or thirty Cities from him; and about fourescore leagues of Countrey, at such times heee obtained the last Battell, during the time that the Emperour was in his last Voyage against the *Perfians*.

So the enterue continued yet betweene Prince *Asalla* and the King of *China* on the Plaine, a Tent being pitched, whither Prince *Asalla* did come vnto him, whom hee continually honoured as much as the Emperours owne person, where after they had long time treated by Interpreters, it was in the end agreed, that the King of *China* should enter againe into *Quinsay*, not suffering him to put any Garrison into it, nor to fortifie the same: but euen as a Prisoner and Subiect vnto the Emperour, hee should enioy it, and it should bee his owne, enioying all the reuene thereof, neither should hee carrie any kingly Ensignes, without the expresse leave of the Gouernour for the Emperour: hee should notwithstanding haue a guard of three hundred men for his person; and should giue knowledge vnto the said Gouernour of his iourneys, before hee entered into the Emperours Countreys, the which hee must passe for to goe thither. Now the Citie was situated in the midst of a very great Lake, in the which were many Ilands, wherein there were an infinite number of houses of pleasure, and it had bene alwaies a very delicate place, where the Kings of *China* were wont to recreate themselves in all kinde of pleasures that were there to be found: in so much as this barbarous King did not respect the conditions propounded vnto him, (so as he might make his abode there, as it were in an Hermitage. Haueing left vnto his brother the gouernment of his whole Kingdom, thorough the displeasure hee had of his bondage whereunto he was brought; a courage certainly magnanimous, and worthe a Nation made euill with the best learning, and vnworthe the name of a Barbarian wherewith we called him.

Three times in the weeke at *Samerland*, *Tamerlan* ministred open iustice vnto the meaneest in his Imperiall Maiestie, a thing which made him beloued of the people ouer whom hee commanded. In the other dayes hee gaue secret audience for the affaires of his Estate, and tooke aduice for matters of importance, which were decided daily in his presence. Hee had such securitie in his countell, that they must needs deale truly before him, and without all passion in discouering: notwithstanding hee alwaies shewed himselfe courteous in his conseruation, and made himselfe both beloued and feared of his people: hee neuer changed his seruants, except they committed great faults against him: of all the seruants of the late Emperour his Vncle hee did not change one of them, but hee did withall encrease their estates, making them in this change to feele his liberalitie, which hee made strangers for to take all, vnto whom hee was accustomed to giue, to binde them vnto him. Hee drew great store of money yearly for tribute of the *Assesians*: but hee distributed it within the same countrey for to maintaine his authoritie there, winning thole for his which might haue hurt him, by meanes of giuing vnto them. Hee had great care of his reuenues, and hee had such a readinesse, that hee did see his estate from three moneths vnto three moneths within one hour, both the ordinarie and extraordinary expences, they presented it to well digested vnto him.

Prince *Asalla* sent into *China* for to establish a peace there.

The meeting of Prince *Asalla* with the King of *China* at *Pachio*.

The resolution of the meeting betweene *Asalla* and King of *China*.

King of *China* brother succedeth.

The iustice of *Tamerlan* his great liberalitie.

Tamerlan his care of his reueneue.

The death of
the Emperour
Tamerlan,
Prince Sauto-
chio proclay-
med Emperour
and signed di-
spatches.

Prince Sauto-
chio nineteen
years old
when he came
unto his Em-
pire.

But our haste of other voyages permits not our stay here. Only we will add, that after things were desired, sicknesses arrested and Death compassed this great Conquerour: and this Trauerer ended his way of all flesh into another world. Presently after his death they ranne to call his sonne, who as also did all his seruants. The Prince Sautochio his eldest sonne, within two houres after was proclaymed Emperour throughout the whole Armie, and dispatches were made from all parts to advertise the Gouverneurs of Provinces thereof, the Letters being signed with the hand of the new Emperour, who having assembled all the Armie together, hee made an Oration unto the Captaines and Soldiers, and caused them to make a generall muster, gratifying all the ancient Seruants of the Emperour his Father: he would not dispose of any thing before he had seene Prince *Axala*, and was joynted with the Imperial Armie. This young Prince, when he came unto this Empire was joynted 16 yeeres old, hee was faire, and had much of the Emperour his Fathers naturall disposition. They hoped that hee would wisely (through the good counsell that was about him) maintayne this great Empire: but they feared greatly the young Prince *Letrochio* his brother (whom his mother loved) would cause divisions, as it happened in the times of their great grandfather between two brethren, who had bene occasion of the destruction of their estate, the which was releued and lifted vp againe unto his height by the valour of *Tamerlan*.

CHAP. IX.

or Gilan.

REPORTS OF GRACIEMENET a Persian of Tabas in the Province of * Chilan, touching his Travells and Observations in the Countrey of the Great Can, unto M. G. BAPTISTA RAMUSIO.

Succur and
Campion men-
tioned by M.
Polo.



E said that he had bene at Succur and Campion, Cities of the Province of *Tamgub*, in the entrance of the State of *Grand Can*, who (said he) was called *Daimir Can*, and sent his Officers to the government of the said Cities, which are the first toward the *Muslemans*, and are Idolaters. He went thither with a Caravan, which went with merchandises out of *Persia*, and from the places adjoining to the *Caspian* Sea, for the Regions of *Catai*, which Caravan they permit not to pierce further then Succur and Campion, nor any other Merchant therein, except he goe Ambassadour to the great *Can*.

This Cite of Succur is great and populous, with faire houses of hewen stones after our manner; and hath many great Temples with their Idols of stone. It is situate in a Playne where runne infinite Riuellets; is abundant in victuals of all sorts, and yeelds like other made of the black Mulberries in great quantitie: hath no Wine growing, but they make a drinke with Honey as it were Ale. Of fruits, by reason the Countrey is cold, there grow none but Peares, Apples, Apricocks, Peaches, Melons and Cucumbers. Hee said that *Rhubard* (of the *commodities* *Memoire* he had brought great store at that time to *Pence*) growes all ouer the Countrey; but the best, in certaine high flony Hills neere adjoining, where are many Springs and Woods of diuers sorts of high Trees, and the Land is of a red colour, and by reason of many Raynes and Springs almost alway myrie. He shewed out of his bosome a picture of the Plant, brought out of the Countrey (which *Ramusio* in his *Preface* to *M. Polo* hath also presented with this discourse) the description of which is this. The leaues, hee said, are ordinarily two spans long, more or lesse as the Plant is in bignesse; narrow below and broad above, downy with (as it were) small hayres in their circumference; the stalk or trunk is Greene fower fingers high, and sometimes a span from the ground: the Greene leaues with age grow yellow and spread on the ground. In the midst of the trunk grows a thin branch with flowers fastned within, like the *Mimole* violets in forme, but of the colour of Milke and Azure, and greater then those violets, of a nyosome fene. The roote within ground is a span or two long, of a tawny colour in the barke, some as bigge as a mans thigh or legge, out of which growe little Rootes or Springs, which spread in the ground, and are cut away from the great Roote; which within is yellow with many reynes of faire red and yellow iuyce, cleaving to the fingers and making the hand yellow: and being cut in peeces the viscous iuyce issueth out and the roote becometh light; they lay them therefore on boards turning them vp and downe diuers times a day, that the iuyce should incorporate therein, lest it leaue the goodnesse: after foure or six dayes hanging them to drie in the winde, where the Sunne may not come at them, being in two monthes drie and perfect. They ordinarily take it out of the ground in the Winter, the vertue being then most vnted in the Roote (the Spring doeth beginning at the end of May) which at other times is dispersed into the leaues and flowers, that iuyce alle being gone and the roote light and hollow.

They sell one of their Cart lodes of Rootes with leaues for fixteene silver Saggi (not much unlike ours) for they haue no Coynes, but they their gold and silver in small thin rods, and thence

A cold climate.

Six Saggi
make an
ounce.

our peeces of a Saggio weight, which in silver is twentie Solli *Uenetian*, and in gold a Duckett and halfe. He said that they would not gather it, if forren Merchants should not come to trade for it, themselves making no reckoning thereof: and that the Merchants of *China* and *India* carry away the greatest part; who if they should cut and dreffe it as before is exprested, after it is brought in *Caris*, in foure or six dayes it would corrupt; and seven burdens Greene (hee said) would not yeeld about one drie. When it is Greene it is intolerably bitter; and in *Catai* they vie it not for medicine, but beate and mixe it with other odoriferous compositions for perfumes to their Idols. In some places there is such fire that they burne it dried in stead of wood; others giue it their crated horses, so little doe they esteeme it in *Catai*. But there they much prize another small Roote, which growes in the Mountains of *Succur*, where the *Rubard* growes, and call it *Mambroni can*, very deere, vial for diseases, those specially of the eyes; nor did hee thinke any of it was brought into these parts. Hee said also, that in all *Catai* they much vise the leaues of another herb, which they call *Chist Catai*, which growes in a place of *Catai*, called *Casansu*. They boyle it, whether new or drie, and taking off a Beaker or two of that decton fasting (as hot as can be borne) takes away the Feauer, payne of the Head or Stomack, Lauck, loyns, and other diseases, especially the Gowr, and it is good for digestion. They vie to carry it with them in their Voyages, and will giue a sack of *Rubard* for an ounce of *Chist Catai*. And the *Cataians* say, that if our Merchants, *Persians* and *Frankes*, knew the goodnesse thereof, they would buy no *Ramond Cini*, so they call *Rubard*.

I asked him of his Voyage from thence to *Constantinople*, and hee answered mee by *Mambroni* our Interpreter, that hee returned not that way he went with the Caravan, by reason that the Greene-head *Tartars* called *Ischilus*, sent an Embassadour at that time when hee was to come away, with a great company, by the way of *Tartaria Deserta*, about the *Caspian* Sea to the great *Turke* at *Constantinople*, to make a league against the *Persian* their common enemy. Whereupon he thought good to come with them, and so did to *Cassa*. I asked of the way he went. Hee said he should haue returned from *Campion* to *Gauia* in six dayes (eight Farlenges, each of which is three Italian miles are a dayes journey, but on the Hills and Deserts they goe not halfe so much) from *Gauia* to *Succur* in five dayes, from *Succur* to *Cannul* in fiftene, here the *Muslemans* (or *Mahometans*) begin: from *Cannul* to *Tarfian* is thirteene. From *Tarfian* they passe three Cities, *Chialis* ten dayes journey thence, after that *Cuchia* other ten, and after that *Asen* in twentie. From *Asen* to *Casfar* are other twentie dayes all rough Desert, all the former way being thorow places inhabited. From *Casfar* to *Samarand* are five and twentie dayes. From *Samarand* to *Bochara* in *Coraflam*, five; from *Bochara* to *Eri*, twentie; from thence to *Veremi* in fiftene; from *Veremi* to *Cassiu* in six; thence to *Solsima* in foure, and thence to *Tamir* in six dayes.

Now for some particulars of those places, hee related that *Campion* is subiect to *Daimir Can*, great Emperour of the *Tartars*; the Cite placed in a fertile Playne all cultivated and abundant in provisions. They are apparelled in black Cotton cloth, furred in Winter with skins of Wolves and Sheepe if they be poore; the richer with Sables and Martens of great price. They wear black Bonnets (haire like Sugar-loafes; the men rather small then great, wearing beards as we do, specially a corymbay time of the yeere. Their houses are of stone like ours, with two or three lotts, slope-roofed, and dierly painted, and they haue one steeple onely of painters. The great men for magnificence make a great Loft or Pageant, and thereon erect two Tents of silke embroidered with gold, silver, and jewels, and there stand with their friends. This they cause to bee carried by forty or fiftie Slaues, and so goe thorow the Cite in silence. The Gentlemen are carried on a simple Pageant, by foure or six men without other furniture. There Temples are made like our Churches, so great that they may containe foure or five thousand persons; and haue in them two Statues, of a Man and a Woman, each foure foot long, all of one peece, stretched on the ground, and all gilded. They haue excellent stone cutters. They bring

quarry stones two or three monthes journey on sled Carts of fottle wheeles very high, drawne by foure or six hundred Horses and Mules. There are also small Images with fix or seven heads, and ten hands, all holding diuers things, one a Serpent, another a Bird, a third a Flower, &c. There are some Monasteries in which live men of holy life, immured within their houses that they cannot goe out whiles they live; and haue victuals euery day brought them. There are innumerable, like our Friars, which goe vp and downe the Cities. They haue a custome, when one of their kindred dyes, to clothe themselves in white many dayes make it Cotton; their garments are made long to the ground with fleece. They vie Printing of their Books, which he thought somewhat like those I shewed him at *M. Thomas* *Guan* printing house. Their Cite is fortified with a thick wall, within filled with earth, able to carry foure Carts abreast, with Towers and Arillery as thick as those of the great *Turke*. The Ditch is wide and drie, but they can make it runne with water at their pleasure. They haue a kind of very great Oxen with long, thin and with hayre. The *Cataians* and *Idolaters* are forbidden to goe out of their Cities, to goe on merchandise thorow the *Samarand*.

By land the Desert about *Ceraflam* to *Samarand*, and till the *Idolaters* (then the *Idolaters*)

Mambroni can.

The way of
the Caravan
betweene *Tamir*
and *Campion*
in *Catal*.

Campion de-
scribed.
Apparall.

Bea dect men
Houses.

Pageants.

Ten pees and
thous.

Huge cart-
s.

Anchorites.

Friars.
White moun-
tains.

Printing.
Immunation.

Bea dect men
Houses.

The *teffels* or
Green-head
Turtars.

climia, Simia,
Lima.

Pratinge moun-
tebanks and
lugging
knights.

rule, which are *Turtars, Mafsumans*, wearing greene sharpe Turbants of felt, fo making a difference betwixt them and the *Persians*, which wear them red and betwixt them two for diuerſitie of opinions in Religion are continual warres, and diſagreement about their Confinnes. *Bucna* and *Samaucand* are two Cities of theſe Green-heads, each a Signorie of it ſelfe. They haue three particular ſciences, *Chimia* (in the ſame ſenſe as here) *Limia*, to wake and cauſe loue, and *Simia*, to make men fee that which is not. The monies which they haue are not Copied, but every Gentleman and Merchant makes thin rods of gold and ſilver, as is before ſaid of *Campion* and *Succurri*. In the market place of *Campion* are euery day many Mountebanks which haue that ſcience of *Simia*, which compaſſed with a great multitude preſent ſtrange fights, aſto cauſe a man to cutt off his arme, or thruſt himſelfe thorow with a ſword, and ſeeme to bee all in bloody, with other like.

CHAP. X.

A Treatiſe of China and the adioyning Regions, written by GASPARD A CRUZ a Dominican Friar, and dedicated to SEBASTIAN King of Portugall: here abbreviated.

§. I.

Of Camboia and the Bramenes there; the cauſe of his going to China: Of China and the neighbouring Regions.

Camboia.
Sim.
Champa.



Being in *Malaca* building an houſe of my Order, and preaching, was informed that in the Kingdome of *Camboia* (which is ſubiect to the King of *Siam* and lyeth toward the parts of *China*, and doth confine with *Champa*, whence cometh the moſt precious *Calambach*) was great opportunitie to preach the Goſpell, and to reſpe ſome fruit. Having leaue of my Prelate, I tooke the iourney in hand. And after the paſſing many troubles and longer in the iourney, with dangers and ſickneſſes, I came a land, and after I had reaſonably informed myſelfe by a third perſon, conſulting with the People and with the Fathers, euen before I knew it I found all to the contrary of that which they had told, and that all were deceits of the ſimple Laytie, which of light matters were moued to preſume of the people that which was not in them. And beſides this, I found many hinderances for the obtaining of my deſires and intent; for firſt, the King is a *Bramene*, and the *Bramenes* are his principall men and his fauourites, and moſt familiar, becauſe they are Witches, for they are much giuen to be pleaſed with witchcrafts, and they doe nothing without conſulting the Witches and *Bramenes* that are in the Kingdome (for by this means they thruſt by the Deuill. And to the firſt thing that the King asked me, was if I were a Witch.

King of Cam-
boia a Bramene.

Prophet miſſus.
Prophetus.

Prophetus miſſus.

Men alius
worſhipped.

The *Bramenes* doe worſhipp another ſome God, which they call *Prophet miſſus*, which they ſaid made the Heauens and the Earth; and another God, which they call *Pratoſſus*, this alſo hauing obtaigned power of another which they call *Pratoſſus*, for to giue this licence to *Prophet miſſus* and I ſlew them, that not onely he had not made the Heauen and the Earth, but that hee had bene a very wicked man and a great ſinner: wherefore theſe Priests ſaid, that they would worſhip him no more, hauing worſhipped him therto with their God *Prophetus miſſus*: whereupon the hatred of the *Bramenes* increaſed towards me, and from thence forward I had diſaſours of the King, which was moued for the zeale of his God, and the God of his *Bramenes*. There met about theſe matters, the Priests of the Idols, and all of their troupe, which goe for Priests, and hold themſelves for religious men, and in their conuerſation and life they are ſeparated from all other people, which to my thinking is the third part of the people of the Land; the King therof ſetting an hundred thouſand men in the field. This religious people, or that holds it ſelfe for ſuch, are exceedingly proud and vaine, and alſe they are worſhipped for gods, in ſort that the interior among them doe worſhip the ſuperiour like gods, praiſing vnto them and proſtrating themſelves before them: and ſo the common people haue a great confidence in them, with a great reuerence and worſhip: in ſort that there is no perſon that dare conſtraint them in any thing, and their wordes among them are held for ſo ſacred, that in no wife they will endure to be gailyſed. Inſomuch that it hapned ſometimes whiles I was preaching, 60 many round about me hearing me very well, and ſatisfying themſelves of that which I ſaid vnto them; if there came any of theſe Priests, and ſaid this is good, but ours is better, they would all depart and leaue me alone. Further, they being very ignorant preſumed to be very wiſe, and the common people did hold them for ſuch, all their knowledge being ignorances and Heatheniſh ſollicitie.

They

They make feuen and twenty Heauens, ſome where there is meate and drinke and faire women when they lay all liuing things doe goe, euen the Flea and the Lowie, for they ſay, that as they haue ſoules, that they muſt liue in ſome other World. And to theſe, they ſay, all doe goe that are not fit. Iguous menas they are. They place others higher, whether they lay, that the Priests doe goe that liue in the Wildernesſes, and all the ſciſdites they giue them there, is to ſit reſtrefhing themſelves with the wiſh. They place others yet higher, the gods of the which, they ſay, haue round bodies like Bowles, which which goe to theſe Heauens, and the honour w.ich they giue them is, to giue them round bodies as the Gods themſelves haue. And euen as they make many Heauens, ſo they doe many Hels, for they make thirteene, to the which they goe according to the grieuouſneſſe of the finnes of euery one, eyther higher or lower.

Twenty ſeuen
Heauens.

Thirteene
Hels.

They haue a diuſion of their religious men, for ſome they call *Maſſinrachas*, which are as ſupreme, which ſit about the King: others they call *Nafcedeches*, which are as our Biſhoppes here. Theſe ſit equall with the King. Others they call *Mistres*, which are in the common degree of Priests, which do ſit vnder the King: vnder the which there are yet two degrees, which they call *Chaynes* and *Sacer*. And all theſe they aſcend in degree, ſo they doe in vanitie and pride, and are more reuerenced. Beſides all this, there is another very great inconuenience, that except the Priests and all thoſe that hold themſelves for Religious men, all the reſt are ſlaues of the King, and when the owner of the Houſe dyeth, all that is in it returneth to the King, and let the Wife and Children hide what they can, and begin to ſecke a new life: the people of the Country is of ſuch a nature, that nothing is done that the King knoweth not: and any bodie be he neuer ſo ſimple may ſpeake with the King; wherefore euery one ſeeketh newes to carry vnto him, to haue an occaſion for to ſpeake with him: whereby without the Kings good will nothing can be done, and wee haue already ſhewed before, that hee is vnwilling to the matter of Chriſtianitie. To theſe things was ioyned ſome diſorders of the Portugalls, ſo that by all means I found croſſes and inconueniences for to obtaigne my deſires and my pretence: wherefore I hauing bene in the Country about a yeare, and ſeeing I could make no fruit beſide the paſſing of grieuouſ ſickneſſes, I determined to leaue this Country, and becauſe they told mee many things of *China*, and the people of it to haue a diſpoſition to Chriſtianitie, and that they loved reaſon, I determined, ſeeing in this Country I did no good, I nor baptizd more then one *Gentile*, which I left in the Country, to goe to *China*, a ſhip, of *China* which was then in the Country; in which they carried me with a very good will, giuing mee the beſt roome in the ſhip, not taking any intereſt of me: yea, they dealt very charitably with me. This name *China* is not the proper name of the people of this Country, nor of the Country it ſelfe, neither is there commonly in the Country notice of ſuch a name, onely among all the people of *Inda*, and among thoſe which dwell in the South parts, as in *Malaca*, *Sum*, *Laos*, this denomination of *Chinas* goeth current, and alſo among thoſe *Chinas* which doe traffique among vs. The proper name of the Country is *Tam*, the e. not well pronounced, but almoſt drowning it: and the name of the people of the Country is *Tamgus*, whence this name *China* doth come, which is current among the ſtrangers we know not, but it may be coniectured, that the people which in old time did ſayl: to thoſe parts, becauſe they paſſed by the Coaſt of a Kingdome, which they call *Canchen-china*, and traffique in it, and viſual, and take reſtrefhings there for the Iourney of the Country that lyeth forward, which is that of *China*, in the which Kingdome they liue after the manner of the *Chinas*, and is ſubiect to the *Chinas*, it ſeemeth, that omitting *Canchin*, from the denomination of this other Kingdome, they called all the Country that lyeth along *China*.

At this word
Tam in Engliſh

China is a great part of *Syria*; for as *Herodotus* ſaith, *Syria* extendeth it ſelfe vnto *India*, which may be vnderſtood, becauſe the *Chinas* did poſſeſſe many parts of *India*, and did conquet them of old time, whereof at this day there are ſome Monuments, as in the Coaſt of *Choromandel*, which is towards the Coaſt of the Kingdome of *Narſinga*, on that ſide which we call *Saint Thome*, becauſe there is a Houſe buildy by the Apoſtle, and the Reliques of his bodie. There is at this day a great Temple of Idols, which is a make for the Nauigators to know the Coaſt which is very low, the which as the men of the Country affirme, was made by the *Chinas*, of whom there remained among them a perpetual memory, and therefore they call it *Temple of the Chinas*, which is to ſay, Temple of the *Chinas*. And in the Kingdome of *Calicut*, which is the head of *Malabar*, there be very ancient tree-trunks which the men of the Country lay theſe are the *Chinas*, and on the ſhoales of *Chilao*, which doe runne from the land of *Ceylon*, toward the Coaſt of *Cheromandel*, is affirmed, by the men of the Country, a great Army of the *Chinas* to be caſt away which came for *India*, which was loſt, becauſe the *Chinas* were but young in that Nauigation. And ſo the men of the Country lay the *Chinas* were Lords of all *Laos*, and of *Laotana*, which is the Kingdome of *Malaca*, *Sum*, and of *Chapao*, as it is commonly affirmed in thoſe parts: wherefore ſome doe affirme, many of this people to be like the *Chinas*, that is, hauing ſmall eyes, flat noſes, and long faces, for the great commixture that the *Chinas* had with all of them, eſpecially with them of *Laos*, which commonly are more *Chinas*-like. But the King of *China* ſeeing that his Kingdome went to decay, and was in danger by

The *Tartars* are theſe fourth Beets from *China* to theſe Ex- plains as in *Europa* you read.

their seeking to conquer other strange Countries, yes, he with-drew himselfe with his men to his owne Kingdom, making a publick Edict vnder paine of death that none of the Country should faile out of the Kindome of *China*: the which lasteth to this day.

Liquos an Island

The *Liquos* are not contented with mayne Land, but it is an Island which standeth in the Sea of *China*, little more or lesse then thirtie leagues from *China* it selfe. In this Island live these people, which is a well disposed people, more to the white then browne. It is a cleanly and well attyred people; they dreffe their haire like women; and tie it on the side of their head. Assured with a siluer bodkin their grounds are plentifull of many and good waters; it is a people that faile very litle being in the middle of the Sea. They wear good floor: Swords, they were like the *Chinese*. Now this Island remayneth to the Sea from *China*, as we haue said, the Coast of *China* runneth, winding from the Prouince of *Cantano*, and from her Coast vnto the Coast of the Prouince of *Nanguin*, whither to the *Portugals* haue faile, the Coast making nere a point as the Maps doe make, the which may be seene well pointed in the Sea-cards and in the Maps made among the *Portugals*.

Cauchin china, Deman an Island.

The *Tartars* are reckoned among the *Soybians*, and runne so far along *China*, with the which it hath continuall warre, that commonly they affirme to haue betwene the *China* and the *Tartars*, a Wall of an hundred leagues in length. And some will affirme to be more then an hundred leagues: the first Kingdome that doth confine with it on the Sea-side of *India*, is one that is called *Cauchin-china*, which hath about an hundred leagues little more or lesse a long the Sea-coast, the Sea maketh a great entrance betwene it and the Ile *Daman*, which is of fiftie leagues in length, and is already of the *Chinese*; and in the end of this entrance this Kingdome abutteth with the Kingdom of *China*, and is subiect to the King of *China*. The people of this Kingdom in their Habit, Police, and Government, doe vse themselves like the people of *China*. The Country is much inhabited and of much people, it is also a very plentifull Country. They haue the same Writing that the *Chinese* haue, although their speech be diuers. Beyond this Kingdom along *China*, which some doe call *Laos*, and others *Siam*, *Mamu*: this by the other side towards *India*, doth confine with the Kingdom of *Cambodia*, and with the great Kingdom of *Siam*, and with the rich Kingdom of *Pegu*, with all the which Kingdomes it hath Traffique: in fort that there remayneth to this Kingdome towards the Sea of *India*, all the Coast of *Pegu*, vnto the ends of the Kingdom of *Champa*, which doth confine with *Cauchin-china*. And so there remayne to these *Laos* toward the side of the *Indian* Sea, the great Kingdom of *Pegu*, the Kingdom of *Tanagarin*, and that of *Quedda*, and that of *Malacca*, and the Kingdomes of *Pa*, of *Patane*, of *Siam*, of *Cambodia*, and of *Champa*, which abutteth vpon the *Cauchin-china*. This Kingdom of the *Laos*; or *Siam*; or *Mamu*, was subdued by the *Bramas* (of the which we will speake presently) in the yeere of fiftie fixe, and among some which they brought captiue to *Pegu* they brought home *China* which the *Laos* held captiues, as one *George Nello* affirmed vnto me, which went for Captaine of the Voyage to *Pegu*. And though commonly there be no warres betwene these *Laos* and the *Chinese*, because of the great Mountaynes that are betwene them, on the which the *Chinese* haue good forces on that side in the Prouince of *Campi*, which doth confine with these and with the *Bramas*; and in the forces they haue continually men in Garrison for the defence of those parts: there be notwithstanding, continually assaults on the one *Laos* were subdued by the *Bramas*, they carryed to *Siam*, to *Cambodia* and to *Pegu* some very good Muske and Gold, whereof as I said before to be great store in that Country, and these people haueing from the best parts that are in the Confines of this Kingdom in the Prouince of *Campi*, from whence they bring it.

Muske: white it is.

The Muske is the flesh and Houle of certayne beastes, which they say, to be as bigge as Foxes, the which beateen with strokes, and killed, they tie the skinned with the flesh together in lumps, the which they cut after the flesh is rotten, and so they sell it, which the *Portugals* doe call Muske Cods. And when it cometh fresh, presently it appeareth to be rotten flesh and Houle: the sell they sell loose, holding these Cods for the finer Muske. Returning to the *Laos*, whereof we were speaking, these be the Wares which they brought to the aboue-said Kingdomes, carrying in returne Cotton-clothes and other things they had need of. This people is not very browne, they weare their haire all cut round vnderneath, and all the rest about ruffled, raving it many times vpward with their hands, that it remayneth to them like a Cap, and serueth in stead of ones; they weare nothing on their heads: they goe naked from the middle vpward, and from the hips couered from the breasts to the halfe legge: they haue their faces some what like the *Chinese*, they doe haue the same Heathenish Ceremonies that the *Pegu* and *Siam*, and the *Cambodians*: The Priests of their Idols doe weare yellow clothes girt about as the rest of the people, and a certayne manner of yellow Copes, with certayne folds and fringes in which they hold their Suplications.

Of

Of this people I saw many in *Cambodia*, which remayned there the yeere before by the way of Traffique, and that yare that I was there, they came not because of the Warres, wherein (as I said) they said they were subdued by the *Bramas*.

These *Laos* came to *Cambodia*, downe a River many daies Iourne, which they say, to haue his beginning in *China*, as many others which runne into the Sea of *India*: it hath eight, fiftene, and twentie lathome water, as my selfe saw by experience in a great part of it: it passeth through many vnknowne and desart Countries of great Woods and Forrests, where there are innumerable Vnknones, and many Buffes, of which I saw many wild in that Country, and *Ma*, which is like a good Mule, and certayne beastes which in that Country they call *Badas*: of the which the Male haue a pointlike and blunt Horns in their fore-head, and some of the Hornes are spotted with singular colours, and others all blacke, others of a waxe colour, but they haue no vertue, but only for the *Hemorrhoids*, or *Piles*: as after the Elephant there is no other greater beast; the haire of it is browne and footed like an Elephant, the head like a Cow, and it hath a great lump of flesh that falleth vpon his head, whereof I did eate traueilling in those parts. There are also many other wilde Beastes. There be some Thorny Trees, like Limons and Oranges, and many wilde Grapes through the Woodes. When these *Laos* doe returne to their Country, going against the streame, they goe in three moneths, this River causeth a wonder in the Land of *Cambodia*, worthy of reciting. Comming nere to a place which they call *Chudermach*, which is twelue leagues from the principall Citie of *Cambodia*, it maketh a passage to another River which cometh from a great Lake, that is in the vttermost parts of *Cambodia*, and hath *Siam*, on the other side: in the middle of the which his bignesse being great, yee can see no Land on neither side, and this River passeth by *Loch*, which is the principall Citie of *Cambodia*, vnto *Chudermach*: the waters of this River, which is also verie great, the most of them doe passe to the River that cometh from the *Laos*, nere to *Chudermach*, and the rest doe run downe the River directly to the Sea, when the great Winter floods doe come, which happen when it raines not in the Countries of *Cambodia*. The many waters which doe come by the River that cometh from the *Laos*, which there they call *Siftor*, doe make a passage right against *Chudermach*, to the River that passeth through *Loch*, with so great furie, that where the waters of *Loch* did run downward, by multitude of the other that entrench into it, they are turned backe and run vpward with a great current: in fort that it ouerfloweth all the Countrey of *Cambodia*, whereby all the Countrey is not traueilled in the time of these floods, but in Boates, and they make their Houses all with high lofts, and vnderneath they are all ouerflowed, and sometimes these floods are so high, that they are forced to make higher Roomes with Canes to keepe their household-stuffe in, and to lodge themselves. This River runneth vpward from Iuly to September, and with the passing from the River that cometh from the *Laos*, (or from the River *Siftor*, which is his proper name) of so many waters to the River of *Loch*, it doth not leaue his running to the Sea, making below verie great arnes, and goeth verie high ouer-flowing many Countries downward, but not so much as above. The *Portugals* say, did they mee in *Loch* a field, a great hill of Earth, over the which they affirmed that in the time of the floods a great ship that was made in the Countrey did passe without touching, which ship might well haue layed from *India* to *Portugall*.

Beyond these *Laos*, follow the *Bramas*, which is a great people, and very rich of Gold and Precious stones, chiefly of Rubies. It is a proud Nation and valiant, these are now Lords of *Pegu*, which subdued it by force of Armes some yeares before they subdued the *Laos*, they are men of good complexion, and well made, they are browne. They haue *Pegu* and part of *Bengala* toward the Sea of *India*. It is a Country very scarce of victuals, they appaell themselves as we said of the *Laos*, but that their clothes are fine, and many do weare them painted or wrought: they are also somewhat like the *Chinese* in the faces, they haue very rich and gallant shippings garnished with Gold, in the which they lye in the Rivers: they vse Vessels of Gold and of Siluer, their Houses are of Timber very well wrought, the Kingdom is very great, they haue not commonly warre with the *Chinese*, because of the great Mountaynes that are betwene the one and the other, and because the *Chinese* are well fortified on that side: notwithstanding this, sometimes there are Robbers on the one side, and the other that doe make assaults, whereby the *Chinese* haue some *Bramas* Captiues, as some *Portugals* which were Captiues in those parts, which saw them did affirme, and did speake with them in the great Citie of *Campi*: and these flmes told them, that from thence it was not very far to *Brama*, and that in *Pegu*, they had seene *Portugals*.

There followeth along the *China* beyond the *Bramas*, the Kingdome of the *Patanes*, which now are Lords of *Bengala*, and after them the *Mogores*. Beyond these *Mogores* there runneth along the *China*, the *Tartarians*, which doe extend themselves from *Mogor* to the Lake *Meotis* and the River *Thana*, which is a very great Kingdom and of much and innumerable people. This people are commonly red and noe white, they goe naked from the waist vpward, they eate raw flesh, and anoint themselves with the blood of it: whereby commonly they are stinking and haue an ill sent.

River of the Laos, Ma, is a kind of wild Affe. Badas are the Rhinoceros: by the fact-land the vnder-land the horse is lower than the fore-chudermach.

Loch.

Siftor. Strange ouer-flow, a fresh River running up without Sea-force.

The Bramas.

The Patanes.

An old man of *China* did affirm unto me, that sometimes when they came against the Countries of *China*, if the wind stood on that side where they came, they were discerned by their smell: and when they go to warre they carry the flesh raw under them for to eat, they eat it in this manner, and anoint themselves with the blood to make themselves the more furdle and strong, and to provoke themselves to cruelty in the Warre: these also fight on Horse-back with Bowes and Arrows, and vie short Swords. With these is the continual Warre of the *Chinas*, and as I have said the *Chinas* have an hundred leagues (others saying there are more) of a Wall between them and the other, where are continually Garrisons of men for the defence of the entries of the *Tartarians*. It may be beleaved that this Wall is not continued, but that some Mountaynes or Hills are intermixt betweene; yet for a Lord of *Perfia* affirmed me, that the like Workes were in some parts of *Perfia*, with intermixing some Hills and Mountaynes.

Wall of China.

Tartarian roads into China.

See Pisto.
Here followed the division of the Countrey into shires or Kingdomes, with their Cities, &c. which were referred to last and better intelligence.

It was affirmed to the *Portugals* which were Captives, and in Prison in their Dungeons, in the years 1550, that some years there is Truce between the *Chinas* and the *Tartarians*: and in the same years the *Tartarians* made a great entry in *China*, in the which they took a very principal Citie from them: but a great number of people of the *Chinas* coming and besieging the Citie, and not being able to enter it by force of Armes, by the Councell of a man of low degree, they had a means whereby they killed them and their Horses, and remayned Lords againe of the Citie. The same *Portugals* which afterward were set at libertie, affirmed, that all the Prisoners made great Feasts, and made a great stirre when the *Tartarians* made this entry, with the hope of being set at libertie by the means of the *Tartarians*, if they did please *China*.

In the Citie of *Canton* I saw many *Tartarian* Captives, which have no other captivitie them to serve for men at Armes in other places farre from *Tartarie* and they were for a difference of Caps, in all the rest they are like the *Chinas* with whom they live: they have for their maintenance a certaine stipend of the King, which they have paid them without faile. The *Chinas* call them *Tais*, for they cannot pronounce the Letter *r*. Above the Lake where *Thames* hath his beginning, they doe confront with the skirts of high *Almayne*, although on the side of *Europe*, and betweene them and *Almayne* are Hills that doe divide them: and of these people of the skirts of the Mountaynes, the *Chinas* say that the King of *China* hath many men of Warre in pay, that doe keepe the weak passages and the Walls on the side of the *Tartarians*: and say, they are great men with great Beards, and wear cut Hoies, and Caps, and blunt Swords, and *Portugal* that was carryed captive the Land inward, told me that he heard the *Chinas* say, that they called these *Alimenes*.

II.

Canton described; the publike and private buildings and Government. The shipping and Husbandry of China; their contempt of the idle, and provision for impotent poore.

Being to intreat of the Citie of *Canton*, I give first a warning to the Readers, that among many Noble Cities, *Canton* is one lesse Noble, then many of *China*; and faire interior in building then many other: although it be more populous then many, this is said by all them that saw it, and travelled within the Land, where they saw many other. This aduantage presupposed, it is to be noted, that *Canton* in his compasse, is of very long Walls, very well made, and of a good height, and to the sight they seeme almost new, being eighteen hundred years since they were made, as the *Chinas* did affirme: they are very cleare without any cleft, hole, or rift, or any thing threatening ruine. They are of free stone about mans height, and from thence upward of bricke made of a day like unto that of the Porcelaine Dishes, whence it causeth them to bee so strong, that I building a Chappell in *Malacca*, one of these (which was brought from *China*) could hardly bee broken with a good Pick-axe. Jointly with this there is in this Citie and in all the rest an Officer of the King, which only hath care to ouer-see the Walls, for the which he hath a good stipend. And every year when the Gouernour of the Borders cometh to visit the Prouince, he doth visit this as well as the other Officers, to know if he doth well his Office, and finding him in any fault, or negligence, hee is put from his Office, and punished. And if he standeth in need of any expence for the mending of the Walls, the Ouer-seeer of the Rentes is bound to give him that which is necessarie, vnder paine: so that if the mending remayneth vndone, he shall bee well punished. For this cause the Walls of all the Cities are continually kept found and in good reparation. These Walls are within the Citie little more then the walke of the same Citie in their height, which is the cause of being much more cooler. The Walls haue in compasse 12350. paces, and it hath eighty three Bulwarks.

The walls of Canton.

This Citie (and so all therewith) hath on the one side the River, along the which, as well this as the rest are built almost in a Valley; and on the other side they have a Ditch full of water of a good breadth, betweene the which and the wall remayneth a good distance where there maye come together a good number of people, and the Earth that was taken out of the Ditch, was cait betweene it and the wall, whereby the face of the wall remayneth a great deal higher then the other ground. Besides the ditch, notwithstanding, this wall hath a great breadth, for it hath on the contrarie side to the River without the walls, and the ditch a little, Hills: that discovereth all the Citie within the walls.

The River and town-ditch.

This wall hath seven gates: the entries of the which are sumptuous and high, strong and well made, with Pinnacles above, not square but made like Pinnacles. The other places of the walls haue no Pinnacles: the wall at the entering of the gates is twelve paces thicke: the gates are all covered plated with Iron, and all of them haue their draw-bridges very strong, which are alwayes vp, and are neuer let down, but are ready against they be needfull: all the gates at the entrances haue Courts, and the Courts that are toward the side of the Suburbs, which lyeth along the River haue euery one three gates, one in the front and two on the sides, which remayne for the seruice of the gates: the gates which are in the side of the Courts are almost of the height of them within: the gate which is in the front in the Court, is like unto that of the walls within: it hath also a draw-bridge: the gates which are in the side of the Courts are small. The Courts that are on the other side of the field, where no Suburbs are, haue no more but one gate, and this not right against that of the walls, but stand on the one side: the streets of the Citie are all drawne by a Line very straight without any manner of making a nooke or winding: all the croffe wayes are as straight as the streets: in sort that there is neuer street nor traueise that maketh any turning. All the streets and traueises are very well paved, the pavements going along the Houses, and lower in the middle for the course of water: the principall streetes haue triumphant Arches which doe crosse them, high and very well made, which make the streets very beautiful, and enoble the Citie: the principall streetes haue along the Houses close Portals, in the which and vnder the Arches many things are sold.

The Gates.

Draw-bridges.

Gate courts.

Grate streets and paved.

The Houses of them which rule the Countrey, are at the entrances very sumptuous, with high Portals, great and well wrought of Malons work: they haue in the fore-front very great gates like the gates of a Citie with two Gables painted with Clubs in their hands: I saw foure in one *Pagode*, (which is a Temple of Idols) drawne naturally from some, which they say, the King hath to keepe his weakest passages from *Tartarie*. They are of great members, of about twelve or thirteene spans high. On the street side it hath right against the principall Porch a receite not very great. It hath built along the street a good wall of a good height right against the gate, that when the gate is open they that are within may not be gazed on by them that goe by the street: this gate serueth not, neither is it opened but for dispatching of matters of Justice, and the principall of the House goe in and out at them, and others that are as honorable or more then they: at the one side of this principall gate is another very great gate, but not so big as the principall, which is for the seruice of the House, and of the Prisoners when the principall gate is shut: and when this principall gate is shut, they let a glazed Paper crosse ouer both the Houses, on which is written the name or firme of the principall of the House, and for to open it againe, an Officer of the House bringeth the same firme or marke on a playfyerd board to the Porter, that hee may open it, without the which token hee may not open it vnder a great punishment.

Houses of Magistrates.

Or little Court.

Sacrifice of Courts, and seruence of high Magistrates.

Entering by this gate, there is a great Court and almost square, which is almost a Horse-race, and it hath a Gallery little lesse then the length of the gate, which is leaden straight from the gate to a very great Table that stands at the end of the Court, the which is all paved with square stones with leuings as high as a mans waste, and it is high in the entry of the gate, and remayneth only one step in the end of it to the Table, and the course in the sides of the Gallery is low, that they goe downe to it by steps: this Gallery of the middle is of such respect a chert of the House, or others as great or greater then they, and those that goe to negotiate, going downe to the Court which hath very great Trees for shadow, and they goe vp againe by steps vnto the Table above-said, which is at the end of the Court, which is very great, all paved with square stones as the Table without it, and very high and all wrought with Malons work: in the middle of it leaning to the wall of the front are two Chaires, with two left hand, serueth for the little of that house, and the other, which stands on the right hand should come another of a higher dignitie then hee, to sit him downe. To entrie one of the sides there are two spaces which runne behind this Gouernour, and are of a good breadth, having placed along the sides of these two spaces in euery one five Chaires with five Tables before them, and as the distance from them to the principall Gouernour is good, they remayne though behind.

in sight of the principall Governour. These serve for ten Assistants which are with the principall at the dispatching of weighty matters. From these Galleries inward are great Lodgings, as well for the Governour of the House, as for the Ministers, and for all the other Ministers and Officers of the House, which are many, as we will shew in their place.

Great Prisons.

On every side of the Court are very great Prisons and great Lodgings, as well for the Jailors (which also are of great authority) as for the Watchers that watch by night and by day, but neither these Prisons nor the Chambers of the Ministers of state, nor the Lodgings of the chief of the House are seen outwardly, for they are ferried of all things, the doors that have continually their Porters. There are in Canton three of these Houses for four principall Officers, and in every Province in the City, that is, the Head of the Province there are four of these Houses: in Canton there are but four; for as the Governour of Canton is also Governour of *Confu*, he is not resident in Canton, but in a City that is in the Borders of one of the Provinces, the recourse in the Affairs of both the Provinces may be the easier. Besides, these principall Houses of the chief Governours, there are many other in Canton, the which though they be not of so great Maieitie as they, they are notwithstanding very great, of other inferior Officers, and chiefly those of the chief layour which are very great. There is on the walls of Canton, on the contrary side of the River a high Towre all close behind, that they which are in it may not be seen, nor gazed on from the Hillocke or Mountaine, that was without the walls, and it is built in length along the wall, so that it is longer then broad, and it is all made in Galleries very sumptuous, from whence they discover all the City, and the Marshes and Fields beyond the River, which serveth for the recreation of them that rule. In the other Cities are such buildings which serve for recreation, many and very sumptuous, and of singular building.

Private houses.

The Houses of the common people in the outward show, are not commonly very faire, but within are much to be admired, for commonly they are white as Milk, that they seeme like sleeked Paper, they are paved with square stones: along the ground, of a faine little more, else, they are dyed with Vermilion, or almost blacke; the Timber is all very smooth and even, and finely wrought and placed, that it seemeth to be all polished, or dyed, or in white and gold, and there is in white to faire and pleasant to the sight, woad Damaske-like, as it were Gold, and to bright that they should doe it injure in painting it. I confesse, in truth, that I never saw so fine Timber as that. It hath after the House that is at the entrie, a Court with folces of small Trees; and Bowers with a faire little Fountayne: and then at the entring of the House where the women doe with-draw themselves, is such a certaine manner of a Gallery open before towards the Court, where they have verie great Cubberds finely wrought, which takes the one square of the House, in the which they have their Oratories, and Gods made of Wood, or Clay: these Oratories are more or lesse curious according to the abilitie of euerie one: all the Houses are tiled with very good Tiles, better, and of more continuance then ours: for besides, they being well made, they are of verie good Clay: those which recieve the water are broad and short, and the uppermost that close, the others are narrower, and at the ends toward the street file, they are garnished with fine Workes made of Lime: for many yeeres they have no need to be tiled againe, for as the Clay is very good, they are not so moulding as ours, or so rough, but they are very smooth and warme, and being so well let they breed no filthinesse. There be many Houses faire within, and very few with Lofts, the most are low Houses.

Temple and Meliquet Suburbs.

They have in the middle of the City a Temple of Idols with high Towers, the walls of the which we will speake of hereafter: they have their Meliquet with *Alen* very high with his Pinacle on the top. The Suburbs without are very great and of many Houses, in such sort that some *Portugals* would have compared them in bignesse with them of *Lisbon*, but to mee and to others they seemed lesse, though they be bigger and of more Houses then the City within the walls. It is very populous, and the people is so much, that at the entring of the gates on the River side yee can scarce get through. Commonly the people that goeth out and in, do carry and make a great noyse to give place to them that carrie burthens. And the Rulers of the City commanding to enquire what vitualls were spent every day, it was found to spend only five or six thousand Porkes, and ten or eleven thousand Ducks; besides which, they ate great store of Beeves and Buffs, and many Hens, and an infinite deale of fowl, whereof the Markets and streets are full, and many Frogs and Sheld-fish, great store of Fruits and all other Pulse. Hereby little more or lesse may be seen what people are in Canton, and whether it may be compared with *Lisbon*.

Suburbs.

The Houses of the Suburbs are like those of the walls within, the streets are so well and leuelled by Line as those within, and all for the most part paved also, and some of them are verie broad, and have triumphal Arches, but very few. Some streets, as well without as within the walls, on the one side and the other along the Houses, have Trees for to make the lawes. In all the streets of the Suburbs at the ends of them are gates with special Porters, whose Office is to locke them every night under paine of sore punishment, and every street hath a Constable and a Layle. He stands bound, either to yeeld the Missethor which by night doth any harme in the street, are to pay for it; wherefore all the streets have every night a watch, the Neighbours dividing

Suburb-gates.

watching them thus in quarters: and they make every night fixe quarters or watches, and for a signe that they are awake, in every street they found a Drumme, where they haue all the night a Lanthorne with a light. The gates of the City are shut as loone as it is night, and on the two leas is let a paper, with the chief Captaine make on euerie one of them, and they are opened with the Sunne, with a token from the same Captaine to them all, with his make written on a white board. Euerie gate hath a Captaine, a very notable man, and euerie one hath certaine Soldiers, which continually doe watch euerie one of the Gates by day and by night.

Here followed much of other Cities; but because the Author has not them nor, but recited his intelligence from *Po* *1696*, I retire you to him. Other China Cities. High-ways.

In some Cities the water runneth almost thorow every street, and on the one side and the other of the street are Tables made of stone, for the common service of the people: and thorow all the streets are very good and well wrought Bridges to passe from one side to another: and thorow the middle of the streets is great traffick by water, that goe from one place to another. In those places where the water runneth in the City, they have made in the walls very good gates, which have very strong Iron grates for to shut by night: and the most of the streets to the land inward are very well paved with stone, and (where is no stone) with small tiles. In all the Mountains and Hills where there are wayes, they are very well made, cut with the Pick-axe, and paved where they are needfull. This is one of the good works of China, and it is very general in every place of it. Many Hills on the side of the *Bramas*, and of the *Loas*, are cut in steps, very well made; and in the height of the Hill is made a low place, very well cut; in the which is a very high Towre, which about doth equal with the height of the Mountain, which is very strong, the wall of one of the Towers was measured at the entring of the gates, and it was six fathome thicke and an halfe. There are on this side many of these workes, and so there may be in other places. I have seen a Gentleman of credit, called *Galate Perera*, Brother to the chief Justice of *Arsayon*, which abode in *Confu*, being Captaine, that (with the houses of the kinmen of the King, being so many and so great) the City was so bigge that it seemed they occupied very little of it, and make a very little show in it, and so he had it written in a Rudder of his, whence I took a great deale * of that which is here spoken of: in such sort that the greatnesse of the City did hide in it selfe the multitude and greatnesse of the houses.

Galate Perera.

* Which is therefore here omitted.

As in the Country there is great store of Timber and very cheape, and much Iron and cheape, and it is very good, there are infinite number of ships and shippings; for through the Country are infinite Groves of Fire trees, and other trees, whereby it is easie for any one though of a little substance, to make a ship and have shippings, and this causeth the great profit and gayne that is of them with the necessitie the Country hath of them: for it hath not only a great number of lands along the coast, but also a very great coast where they Navigate: and besides this, all China is hitherto navigated, and runne through Rivers which doe cut and water it all, which are many and very great. So that yee may sayle to the ends of the Land, and goe in shippings. Any Captaine along the coast may in a little space scorne two hundred, three hundred, even to a thousand ships, if he stand in need for to fight. And there is no small Towne along the River that is not plentiful in small and great ships. Along the City of Canton, more then halfe a league off the River, is so great a multitude of shipping, that it is a wonderfull thing to see them, and that which is most to wonder, is that, that this multitude neuer decreaseth nor faleyeth almost all the yeere: for if thirty, forty, or an hundred goe forth one day, as many doe come in againe the next: I say, the multitude neuer to diminish nor faley, for though some time there be more, some lesse, alwayes there remaineth a marvellous multitude; and that which is more, all those that goe forth, goe laden; and all that come in, come laden; carrying goods, and riches thereof; and that which the wealth most the noblenesse of the Country, the plentiful provisions and other goods, that all these ships bringing great store of merchandise of Clothes, Silkes, and nothing cometh from without China, neither goeth out of it: and that which the *Portugals* doe carrie, and some that they of *Siam* doe carrie, is so little in comparison of the great traffick of the Country, that it almost remaineth as nothing, and vnperceiv'd; seeing that out of China there goeth no more but that which the *Portugals*, and they of *Siam* doe carrie; which is as much as though they brought nothing out of China, but or fixe ships coming laden with Silkes and Porcelaine: the great plenty and riches of the Country doth shew, that it can sustaine it selfe alone: Pepper and lacune which is the principall that the *Portugals* doe carrie, a man may well live without it, and the traffick of merchandise that is in this Country, is in all the Cities within the Land, which as we have said, are almost all built along the Rivers. The *Chinese* have a common speech for to shew the noblenesse of their Kingdom, that the King of China can make a Bridge of ships from China unto Malacca, which are nere five hundred leagues, the which though it seemeth it cannot be, yet by Metaphor it signifieth the greatnesse of China, and the multitude of ships that it is able to make.

Riches of China in silke.

The great ships they call *Lunks*; besides which there are ships for warre, made like great ships, to the which they make great Fore-castles and high, and likewise abate, to fight from them: in such manner that they out-matter their adversaries, and because they vie no Ordnance, all their

Prouers.

Lunks for war and for trade, Ship-fighters. No Ordnance.

their life is to come many together, and compassing the adventures ship, they boord it: and as the Crittles so let they cast a great deal of Lime to blinde the adu. furies, and as well from the Crittles as from the tops they cast many shap pikes burned at the end, which serve for Top-dars, of a very thicke wood: they vie also great store of stone, and the chiefest labour for, is to breake with their ships the dead workes of their adu. furies, that they may be masters o- uer them, haung them vnder them, and being destitute of any thing to shelter them: and as soone as they can enter, they come to the Pike or handy-blows, for the which they haue long Pikes, and broad-pointed Swords hanging at their sides. There bee other lunkes for lading of goods, but they are not so high as those of warre, though there bee some very great. All these ships as well of warre as of burchen vie two Oares a-head: they are very great, and foure or fix men doe rowe euery one of them, laying them along the ship they moue them with such a sleight, that they make the ship goe forward, and they helpe very much for to goe out and in at a barre, and letting vpon the enemies for to boord them: they call these Oares, *Liofius*: in all manner of their shippings they vie the *Liofius*, neither doe they vie any other manner of Oares in any kinde of shpping. There bee other lesser shippings then Linkes, somewhat long, called *Bancones*, they beate three Oares on a side, and rowe very well, and lade a great deal of goods: there be other little, called *Lantees*, which haue fixe or seuen oures on a side, which doe rowe ve- ry swift, and beare a good burthen also: and the two sorts of ships, *viz.* Bancones and Lantees, because they are swift, the theues doe commonly vie. The rowing of these Oares is standing, two men at euery Oare, euery one of iustide, setting one foot forward, another backward. In the linkes goe foure, fixe, or fixe men at an Oare.

They vie also certaine shippings very long, like vnto Gallies, without Oares or beake-head, which doe lade great store of goods: and they make them so long, because lading bringing a great burden they may sayle the better by the Ruers, which sometimes are not rough. They haue many other shippings of burthen, which is superfluous to tell of euery one. There be many small boats of poore people, in which are husband and wife, and children, and they haue no other dwelling but in their boat in a middle decke, for defence of the Sunne, and of the raine: as also haue the Bancones, and Lantees, and others which wee said were like Gallies, and these deckes are in su. h. fort, that vnder them are very good lodgings and chambers in the great ships, in the decke of the poore, they are much inferior: there they breed their Pigs, their Hennes, and there they haue also their poore little Garden, and there they haue all their poore state and harbouring. The men goe to freke worke about the Citie to helpe to maintayne their little house: the women goe in the boats, and with a long cane that reacheth well to the bottom of the Ruer (at the end of the which is a little basket made of rods, wherewith they get shell- fish) with their industrie, and passing of people from one side to another, they helpe to sustaine their household. These poore people notwithstanding doe liue so poorely and beggarly in their apparell, as those which liue poorely in *Portugall*. There are other great shippings, where- in is the stocke of them both, which haue great lodgings where they may be lowe a great deal of stuffe: these haue a great stocke; they haue certaine Cages made all the length of the ship with canes, in which they keepe two or three thousand Duckes, more or lesse as the vessel is: some of these belong to Lordships, and their seruants goe in: they feed these Duckes, as followeth.

After it is broad day, they giue them a little foddren Rice not till they haue enough, when they haue giuen it them, they open a doore to the Ruer where is a Bridge made of canes, and the moule they make at their going forth is wonderfull to see them goe tumbling one ouer another, for the great abundance of them, and the time they take in going out: they feed all the day vntill night among the fields of Rice, those which are owners of the shipping doe recuse a fee of them that owe the fields, for letting them feed in them, for they doe cleanse them, eating the grasse that groweth among them. When night cometh they call with a little Ta- ber, and though they be in sundry Barks, euery one knowes their owne by the found of the Ta- ber, and goe vnto it: and because alwayes in time of time remayne without that come not in, there are euery where many flockes of wilde Duckes, and likewise of Geese. When I saw such a multitude of Duckes in euery one of these Barks, and all of one bignesse, and thinking they could not be hatched by Duckes or Hens, for if it were so, some would haue beene bigger then some, seeing so many could not be hatched in one, two, or thirteene daies, I was willing to know how they hatched them: and they told mee, it was in one of two farts. In Summer, laying two or three thousand Eggs in the dung, and with the heate of the weather and the dung, the Eggs are hatched. In the Winter, they make a Hurdle of canes very great, vpon the which they lay this great number of Eggs, vnder the which they make a slacke fire, continuing it of one fort a few daies till the Eggs be hatched. And because they are hatched in this fort, there are so many of one bignesse, and all along the Ruer are many of these Barks, whereby the Countries are well prouided of this food.

There are some ships wherein the Rulers doe sayle, which haue very high lodgings, and with in houses very well made, gilt, rich, and very sumptuous: and on the one side, and the other

Sundrie spe- ciall.

They vie Oares.

Small ships.

A kinde of Gallies.

Dwelling in ships.

* The bus- iness mer- ch n. side, and the wares bus- iness.

Duck-weeders

Aureall broods.

See an exam- ple in *Portugall*, o this mu- nificence.

they haue great windowes with their Nets wouen of Silke, and very fine small rods let before them, that they within seeing all them without, may not bee seen of them. Toward the side of the *Laos* and the *Bramas*, are continually watches and wards in the Ruers in many ships, euen a whole moneths Iourney in length vnto the Citie of *Cassif*: these ships are in the places where the Ruers make any armes, because of the many theues which commonly are in these parts, being the vttermost of the Kingdome: and because the Ruers haue many armes, many ships are placed in those parts: in euery place where these shippings are, there bee two small ships, which continually doe goe night and day from one watch to another, because they are ve- ry swift, and those of the great ships doe diuide themselves into watches as their quarters, for to watch as well in the final as in the great ones. The ships of passage goe alwayes a great num- ber together, that they may defend themselves, one another, while the ships of warre, and the watches doe come to them, and at the watch where they make night, there they stay till the morning, and by the small boats they are deliuered late to the next watch forward, and so from watch to watch they are accompanied of the small vessels till they bee set in safetie. From the Citie of *Douches*, that is, where the *Gouernour of Cassif* and *Cassan* is resident, vnto the bounde of the Province of *Cassif*, which are places more dangerous, are continually Armadas of fortie or fiftie ships. All these watches are paid of the common Rents of the Kingdome.

China is almost all a well husbanded Country: for as the Country is well inhabited, and people in abundance, and the men spenders, and vying themselves very deliciously in eating and drinking, and apparell, and in the other seruices of their houses, especially that they are great eaters, euery one laboureth to get a living, and euery one seeketh wayes to earne their food, and how to maintaine their great expences. A great helpe to this is the idle people there be much abounded in this Country, and they are very idle, and they laboureth not shall nor care, for commonly there is none that doe giue almes to the Poore; and wherefore, if any poore did aske almes of a *Portugall* and he did giue it him, the *Chinas* did laugh at them, and in mocke- ry said: why giest thou almes to this, which is a Knaue, let him goe and earne it: onely some le- sser haue some reward, going to some high place gather the people, and telleth them some fables to get something. The Fathers and Priests of their Idols are commonly abhorred and not ree- med, because they hold them for idle people, and the Rulers for any light fault doe not spare them, but giue them many stripes. Wherefore, a Ruler whipping once before a *Portugall* a Priest of theirs; and he asking him wherefore he did vnto their Priests to ill, and held them in so little esteeme, answered him: these are idle and wretched Knaues. One day, I saw certayne *Portugalls* entering into the house of the *Quert-ler* of the goods, about the deliuerie of certayne *Portugalls* that were in prison, because the matter belonged to him, for the great profit that came thereof to the King, much people came in with vs to see vs, among the which there was a Priest: al- soone as the Ruler said, *Set them downe*, all of them ran away in great haste, the Priest running as all the rest, it was fear of the whip.

Euery one laboureth to keepe a living: for that which he earneth hee enjoyeth freely, and spends it as he will, and that which is left him at his death remaynes to his children and grand- children, paying only duties Royall, as well of the fruits that they gather, as of the goods they deale in, which are not heauie. The greatest Tribute they haue, is euery married man, or that hath house by himselfe, payeth for euery person in his house two Mases, which are fixte Reys. From *Chempaa*, which as wee said, doth confine with *Canchinchina* vnto *India*, are many vnp- rofitable grounds, and made Wildernesses and Woods, and the men are generally little curious to get or gather together, for they neuer gayne or get so much but it is tyrannized from them, that which they haue is onely theirs as long as the King listeth, and no more. In such fort that as soone as the King knoweth that any of their officers hath much money, hee commandeth him to be put in prison, and they vie him so harshly, that they make him call all that he hath gotten: wherefore there are many in those parts, that if they get any thing or money one day or one weeke, they will not labour till they confume all that they haue earned in eating and drinking, and they doe it because if any tyrannic should chance to come, they may finde nothing to take from them. From hence it cometh, as I say, that they haue in *India* many grounds in duers places vnpfitable; which is not so in *China*, for euery one enjoyeth the fruits of his labour.

Hence it cometh that all the ground that in *China* can yeeld any kinde of fruit receiuing feede, is husbanded. The high places which are not so good for Corne, haue very faire Groves of Pine Trees, lopping also betwene them some Pulle where it may be: in the drie Lands and thirfe they sow Wheate and Pulle: in the Marthes which are ouerflowed, which are many and very long, they sow Rice: and some of these Marthes doe yeeld two or three Crops a yeere. Onely the Mountaynes that are high and beaten with the weather, and are not fit to plant any thing, remayne vnpfitable. There is nothing lost in the Country bee it neuer so vile: for the bones, as well of Dogs as of other Beasts, they doe vie, making toys, and with workes instead of Iu- ries, they set them in Tables, Beds, and other rare things: they lofe not a Ruge of any y. alitie, for as well of the fine as of the coarse, that are not of Woolle, they make fine and coarse Paper, and they make Paper of barks of Trees, and of Canes, and of falken Raggas, and in the Paper made

Ships for guard.

Fleets.

Industrie, cause of pliancie.

Idleness ha- ted.

Almes de- ded.

Idle Idol- Priests punish- ed with vniu- subse of pro- fane bulic Rea- ders.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

Idleness ha- ted.

and Quarters; and weepake of weights, for in *China* no money of Gold or Silver, but only of Brass, the Gold and Silver goeth by weight. But these are they are popular people, though occupied in the traffic, of the Countre, it seems they know not well the truth of this, and that the summe is greater which is collected of the *reins Royall*, for the Countre is very great, and the merchants many and very substantiall. I was informed by means of the Rulers, which is a more certain information, because the *reins* doe *pay* the *throw* their hands, that the rent of the Salt in *Canan* did yield alone to the King 200. *Paoon* of Silver, which doe make 200. *Barr*, which are 400. *Kintals*, that are 1600. * quarters of Silver.

* Which is 40000 pound weight of Silver.

Every one hath a paze of scales and weights in his house, which all are exceedingly perfect. The weights that they commonly have, are from ten crowns to one, and from ten Tans to one, one Tanga is nine pence. By the name of their Countre, the lesser great weight is of one Tael, one Tael is sixe Mazes, one Maze is the same that a Tanga: of the small weights, the smallest is one Conderin, ten Conderins make one Tanga, or one Maze: one Conderin hath ten Caxos; and because the common that goeth in stead of money is Silver by weight, every one hath weights of his owne, as above said: for one labourer with all the means hee can to deceive the other, none doe trust the scales and weights of the other, and every one that goeth to buy in the Market, carrieth a weight and balance, and broken Silver, and the balance is a little beame of Ivorie with a weight hanging at the one end with a string, and on the other end a little scale, and the string of the weight runneth along by the beames, which hath his markes from one Conderin to ten, or of one Maze unto ten. These scales serve for to buy by retale, for to carry the Silver commonly full of mixture, and because they are very curious and fine, which very perfect weights, from hence commeth that he which will make good markets in the Countre of *China*, and that may be cheap, carrieth Silver rather than goods, for by the exchange which the *China* make of the Silvers with the mixture, they give the merchandise good and cheape for the Silver. The Merchants are commonly false and lyars.

There is great abundance of Rice in all the Countre, for there are many marishes, which yield two or three crops every year. There is also much and very good Wheat, whereof they make very good Bread, which they learned to make of the *Portugals*; their vfe before were Cakes of the same Wheat. There be many *French* Beanes, and other Pulse: there is great store of Beefe, and Buffes flesh, which is like Beefe: there are many Hens, Geese, and innumerable Ducks; there are infinite Swine, which is the flesh they most love: they make of the Hogs many singular fitches, whereof the *Portugals* carrie an infinite number to the *India*, when they goe thither by way of traffike. The *China* doe esteeme the Porkes so much, that they give it to the kicke. They eat *Frogs* also, which are sold in great Tubfull of water at the gates, and they that sell them are bound to fry them. All these are sold by weight alone, except Beefe, and Buffes flesh, and Porkes, which commonly is sold by the pound, except if they do buy it whole, for then they are to weigh it whole: and that it may weigh the more, they fill it first with meate and drinke: the Hens to make them weigh the more, they fill them likewise with water, and their crops full of fad and other things. The pound of the Hen, Goose, Duck, and Frog, is all at one price; the Porkes, Beefe, and Buffes flesh is worth lesse, and all at one price. The fish is exceeding much, and all very good, and it never wanteth in the markets: there be many Carps, and Oysters, and other shell-fish, and all is very good: and of all these things the markets are full. The Markets are commonly at the gates of the Cities, and under the triumphal Arches which are in the large and principall streets, as we said before, and along the Portalls of the same streets: but not to sell here fish or fowl, for there be particular streets, excepting quicke flesh, which is sold every where.

There are many Garden-herbes, *sc.* Turneps, Radishes, Cabbage, and all smelling Herbs, Garlicke, Onions, and other herbes in great abundance. There are also many fruits, *sc.* Peaches, Damsons, and another manner of Plummes which wee have not, with long, round, and sharp stones at both ends, and of these they make Prunes: There are many Nuts, and very good, and many Chestnuts both small and great. There is a kinde of Apples that in the colour and rinde are like gray Peares, but in smell and taste better then they. There is a fruit whereof there are many Orchards, it groweth on great and large boughed trees, it is a fruit as bigge as a Plumme round, and a little bigger, they call the huske, and it is very singular and rare fruit, none can have his fill of it, for alwaies it leaseth a desire of more, though they eat neuer so much, and doeth no hurt. Of this fruit there is another kinde smaller, but the biggest is the best, they are called *Lechins*. There are Oranges, Figs, and many other fruits, which were to long to recite. And though there be particular streets of Victualling houses, yet there is through all the Cities almost in every street of these houses. In these Victualling houses is great store of meate dressed, many Geese, Hennes, and Ducks roasted and sod, and store of other flesh and fish dressed: I saw at one doore hanging, a whole Hog roasted, and let one aske where he will, for all is very cleanly dressed: the shewe of all the meate that is dressed is at the doore, almost inciting them that passe. At the doore is a vessell full of Rice, well coloured and dressed, and because the matters

of Iustice are commonly almost from ten of the clocke forward, and many have their houses farre because the Cite is very great, or because they which come from out of Towne with business, as well Inhabitants as Strangers doe eat in their houses. When any man meeteth any acquaintance of his that cometh from abroad, or that he hath not seene him a long time, saluting one another, he asketh him presently if he hath dined, and if he answereth no, he carrieth him to one of these houses, and there they eat and drinke plentifully, for there is great store of Wine, and better then in any place of *India*, which they make of confections: if he answereth that he hath dined already, he carrieth him where they have only Wine and Shell-fish, where they drinke, of which houses there are also many, and there he doth fast him.

10 There is also in *Canan* along the wall on the outside, a street of Victualling houses, in the which they sell Dogscut in quarters, roasted, and raw, with the heads pulled, and their eares; for they call them all like Pigs, it is a meate which the base people doe eat, and they sell them also about the Cite in Cages: through every street they sell flesh, fish, herbes, fruit, and all things necessarie, crying that which they sell. In the end of Februarie, in March, and part of April, when the great flowings are, there cometh great store of fish from the Sea to *Ipawne*, in the mouths of the Rivers along the Sea, whereby there breedeth infinite small fish of many sorts in the pools of the Rivers. Of these *Ipawne* in these times all the Fishers along the Sea coast doe meet in their boats, and there meet so many that they cover the Sea, and lie neere the pools. And these Fishers doe take great quantitie of this small fish, and sell it in Cisternes which they have made with stakes, and a very thicke Net made of wyre, where they do feed them, to the end of the fishing time: and at this time there are wont to come a great number of Barkes from all places of *China* within the Land (for I said already that all *China* is sailed by Rivers, for it is all cut and watered with great Rivers) and these Barkes doe bring a great many baskets within and without, which are all lined with oyled paper, that it may hold water, and every one of these Barkes doe buy the fish they have need of. Then they carrie this fish in these baskets through all the Countre inward, changing every day the water, and all men of any possibilitie, within their grounds and inclosures have great store of fish in ponds, for which they buy the baskets they have need, they feed this fish in the ponds in a very short time with Cow dung and Bulles dung, wherewith it groweth very fast. In all the ditches of the Cities likewise they breed great store of fish in the same sort, of which the Rulers are served. 30 In all the Cities which I said already are built along the Rivers. The King hath many Sea Crowes in Coopes, in which they breed, with the which they make Royall saltings many times: all the Barkes that are bound to goe a fishing with these Cormorants, doe meet and set round in the River, those that have charge of the birds, doe tie them about the crops, that they cannot swallow, and they cast them to fish in the River. They fish till they fill their crops of middle fish, and if it be great, they bring it in the beake, and come to the Barke, where they cast all the fish they have filled, forcing them to cast it: and in this manner they fill the quantitie they will, till they have to their contentment: after they have fished for the Barke they vntye them, and let them goe fish for themselves: after they be full, they come to the Boats, and are put in the 40 Coops: these birds doe fish very much. The King doth give for a favour to the Rulers one or two of these Barkes, according as the person is of qualitie for the maintayning of his house with fresh fish.

Dog-fish.

Fishing with Cormorants.

Their persons.

The attire of the men.

Though that the *China* commonly are ill-favoured, having their faces and noses flat, and are barefaced, with some few haire in the points of the chinne: some notwithstanding there are which have very good faces, and well proportioned, with great eyes, their beards well set, and their noses well shapen; but these are few, and it may be they are of other Nations. They wear long Coats commonly with plates after our good ancient vfe: with a flap over the breast to tie on the side, and all in generally have very long sleeves to their coats, they were commonly blacke Coats of Linnen, or of very fine Serge or course of diuers colours, some wear them of Silks, many doe vfe them on the Feast dayes of Silke: the Rulers wear commonly fine Serge, and on 50 their Feasts they vfe very fine Silkes, chiefly crimson, which none in the Countre may wear but they: the poore people wear commonly Coats of white Linnen, because it costs but little: on their head they wear a high Cap made of very fine twigs, and it is round interwoven with blacke Silke, and very well made, they vfe their Stockins whole footed, which are very well made and fitted, and they wear Boots or Shoes, as the curiofite or abilitie of every one is, either of Silke or of Leather: in Winter they wear Stockins of Felt, either fine or course, but the cloth is made of Felt: the vfe also in Winter their garments lined with Martines, chiefly about the necke: they vfe quilted Tackets, and some doe vfe them of Felt in Winter vnder their Coats.

They vfe long haire like women, which they wear finely combed, and they combe it many 60 times a day, they wear it tyed on the crowne of the head, and through the knot thrust through with a long small Silver pin: those which are not married, to wit, the young Bachelors doe wear for a deuise a fillet or ribband dressed very well made, their Cap remayning above it, that it may be seene: they have a superstition in their haire, therefore they wear it so long, holding that

Long haire.

by

Mourning.

which their Priests of their Gods come continually by night to offer their Sacrifices, and to pray their Heathenish intentions. There they bring many Pictures of men and women, and burne them with many ceremonies. Finally they hang some Pictures of men and women in paper hanging on coards, and with great praying and mourning their pictures by the coards, with great crying and howling, they say, to send the dead man to Heaven. All day and all night while they are in these ceremonies, there is a Table set with great store of meate and drinke. These ceremonies ended, they take the Coffin and set it in a Field where the dead are, and there it consumes with time. Their mourning which they use is the sharpest that ever I saw, for they wear Coats after the common sort, of verie coarse wooll next the flesh, and girt with great coards, and on their head a Cappe of the same cloth, made like the Caps that are used in the Countrey, saying that these have certain flappes that fall over their eyes. Notwithstanding, that as they are neare in kindred to they wear the rougher mourning weed. The rest wear new cloth, and not so coarse. For Father or Mother, they moune three yeeres: and if he be *Louhis*, as soon as he heareth the newes presently he leaveth the office he serueth, and goeth to mourne to his owne house for three yeeres, which being ended he goeth to the Court to demand his office.

China women
custome and
clothes.

I have many
China Pictures
which repre-
sent the wo-
men either
with their feet
wrapped up,
or else very
loose, and
their eye-lids
and noles
little, &c. or the
rest, as in the
Map is set.

Women re-
duced.

Marriage.

The Women commonly, excepting those of the Sea coast, and the Mountayners, are very white and fine women, some having their noses and eyes well proportioned. From their child-hood they wrap their feet in cloathes, that they may remayne small, and they do it for the *China's* doe holde them for finer women that have small Noses and Feet. This is vied yet among the noble people, and not among the basest. They wear their haire very well combed, close and tyed to the crowne of the head, and bound from the rootes to the toppes with a long lace very well placed. And the lace is garnished with Jewels and peeces of Gold round about. They vie long Coats like the *Portugall* women, which have the waiste in the same manner that they have. They wear vpper-bodies with long sleeves, they spend commonly more Silke in their garments than their husbands: but in their common apparell they are clothed in white Linnen-cloth. They make curtseys as our women doe, but they make three together and very hailely. They vie painting their faces with Vermilion and white Cerule very well set. They commonly keepe themselves close, so that through all the Cites of *Canton* there appeareth not a woman, but some light huiuswaies, and bafe women. And so they goe abroad they are not reene, for they live in close Chayres, (whereof wee spake before) neither when any bodie cometh into the house doth hee see them, except for curiofity they chance vnder the doore-cloth, to looke on them that come in when they are strange people.

Adultery.

Widultery.

Harlots.

Commonly the men have one Wife, which they buy for their money more or lesse, according as they are, of their Fathers and Mothers. Yet may every one have as many wives as hee is able to maintaine: but one is the principall with whom they live, and the other he lodgeth in fundry houses. And if hee hath dealings in duers Countreies hee hath in every one a wife and house with entertainment. If the wife committeth adultery, and the husband accuseth her and the adulterer, both suffer death. And if the husband doe suffer the wife to play the adulteresse, hee is grievously punished. I being in *Canton*, saw a Marchant of *China* goe from Justice to Justice, verry sharply handled for suffering his wife to play the adulteresse. The common women are in no wise permitted to dwell within the walls. And in the Suburbs without they have their proper districts where they dwell, out of the which they may not lue: All the common women are slaves, they bring them up for that purpose from their child-hood, they buy them of their mothers, and teach them to play on an Instrumēt of musike, and to sing. And those that can best doe this, because they gaine most, are worth more. And those which cannot doe that, are worth lesse. The Masters either carrie them vnto the men, or sell them to them: and when they are to be sold in the street of the common women, they are written by an Officer of the King in a Booke, and the Master is bound to come euerie yeere with a certaine fee to this Officer, they are bound to answer their Master to much euerie moneth. When they are old, with Paynting they make them seeme young. And after they are not for that trade, they are altogether free, without any obligation either to Master or any bodie, and then they feed vpon that which they have gotten.

The bondage
or slavery of
some in China.

I spake for particularly of this matter, for to come to say that in this Countrey of *China* is no greater captiuitie than this of these Wenchies. And let no man say, or asseme any other thing, for about the examining of it I laboured somewhat in *Canton*, because some *Portugalls* would affirme it otherwise. The captiuitie in this Countrey is in manner following. If any woman by the death of her husband remayne a widow, and hath nothing to maintaine her selfe with, neither the children that are left her as such as are able to get their living, neither hath shee any thing to give her children, this Woman in this necessity, commeth to a rich man, and agreeth with him for six or seven Crownes, for a Sonne or a Daughter, and the price received shee delivereth it; if it be a Daughter, shee serueth as household for a common Woman, and is brought up for that purpose: if it be a Sonne, hee serueth his Master some time. And when hee is of age to

marrie, the Master giueth him a Wife, and all the Children that are borne to him remayne free, and without any Obligation: notwithstanding, this Seruant is bound to giue his Master so much by the yeere, having a house by himselfe: for when he marieth they giue him a house and labour, either at some Trade, or by his industrie for to earne his living. And no man may sell any of these Slaves to the *Portugalls*, having great penalties for it. The Women, as by being common, they looke for great profit of them, in no wife they will sell them, besides the running into great penalties also. And all those which commonly are sold to the *Portugalls* are stollen, they carry them deceived, and secretly to the *Portugalls*, and so they sell them: and if they were percieued or taken in these stealths, they would be condemned in the vtmost punishment. The Lawes of *China* giue authority to the Women for to sell their Children, and not to the Men, for as the Men are bound to get a living for himselfe and for his Children, if hee want the remedie, they hold that hee is in the fault of that. And that Man may the better labour for their living and their Children. So farre is *China* from having Slaves that altogether should be captiues, that neither those which they take in warre are slaves; only they are bound to the King, and are placed for Souldiers in places farre from their Countreies where they were taken, eating of the wages they haue of the King. These doe wear for a deuice a red cap, as I saw the *Tartarians* wear in *Canton*, which had beene taken in the warres.

20

§. IIII.

Of their *Louhis*, Mandarines or Magistrates, their creation, priuiledges, maintenance, Of Prisoners and Tortures; of the King and of Embassadors.

20

Very one that in *China* hath any office, command or dignitie by the King, is called *Louhis*, which is to say with vs *Seior*. How this Title is giuen him, we will in his place make mention of it. There are in euery Prouince of *China* one thousand *Louhis*, or according to others three thousand, besides those that are resident in the Court, by whom are ordaind all matters of the Kingdome, and to whom come all the weighty matters of all the Realme. And because they are to dispatch with the King; and counsele with him within doores, and it is not lawfull for other to counsele with them, neither doe other see them, and they haue entrance where the Wives of the King are, which are many, they are commonly Eunuchs. In euery Prouince are five, which among the rest are most principall, which haue a very great authority and maiesty in their persons, and are greatly reuerenced and honored, not only of the common people, but also of all the other *Louhis*.

30

The principall of the five is the Gouernour, which in their language is called *Tatum*, to this come all matters both great and small of all the Prouince, and for the authority and maiesty of his person hee is not resident where the other *Louhis*, that hee may not be frequented of them, and so he may be more esteemed and feared. To this come all the Rents of the Prouinces except the ordinarie expences, and by him as well the busineses as the Rents that are gathered, and that hath in the Prouinces are referred and sent to the Court. The second dignitie of all Prouinces is the Ouer-seers of the goods, which in their language is called *Ponchisi*; this hath the care to lend to recouer through all the Prouince the Rents thereof, for which hee hath many *Louhis* vnder his iurisdiction, which are particular Officers for the busineses and recoueries of the goods. This prouidereth all the ordinarie charges of the Prouince, and with that which in graue matters of the other Officers inferior, and hath authority ouer them. Likewise, all the other chiefe dignitie vnder this is the chiefe Justice, which in their language is called *Anchofi*, and though there be many other Officers of Justice, this is above all, and by him are the dispatches distributed to the rest, and all matters of Justice resort vnto him, as one that hath authority of the other inferior. Another dignitie vnder this is the chiefe Captaine; who in their

40

all that is necessary of shipping, and victuals, and all other provision against Enemies, and against Theeues: to this belong also the busineses of strangers in cases which belong not to the goods. The fifth and last of the great dignities, is of the chiefe Captaine which puteth in execution the matters of warre, and is resident in the Armies which the *Atao*, being a Lord, doth ordaine when it is necessary besides: he putteth matters in execution and order, if the matter require his presence, hee goeth in prison: and of so important may the matter be that the *Atao* will goe. This is called in the Countrey language *Imbishi*. In the house of euery one of these, except the *Louhis*, which is the inferior of the five, are other ten which are as Assistants, and are also of great authority, five of these doe sit at the right hand of the Principall in five chaires, recited before when

60

Louhis of the
Court Eu-
chus.

The *Tatum*;
Lieutenant,
Deputie or
Vice-roy.

The *Ponchisi*
or Treasurer.

The *Anchofi* or
chiefe Justice.

The *Atao* or
chiefe Cap-
taine.

His Lieute-
nant, the *Imbishi*,
&c. Each haue ten
Assistants.

Enignes of
dignitie, girdle
and Canopie.

The *Taffie* or
Shirriff.

The *Cham* or
Judge of the
Circuit, or
Visitor.

The *Quincchie*,
Commissioners
extraordi-
nary.

The third
yeeres Vi-
sitor.

we speake of the buillings, and fue doe sit on the left hand: these in matters of importance are at the dispatching with the principall of the houle, and the Principall dying or by any other means wanting, one of these according to his antiquitie remayneth in his stead: and if it be necessary to goe through the Prouince about some matter of importance, that appertayneth to the dignitie in whose houle they asist, one of these doe goe with all the authoritie of the Principall. The fue that sit on the right hand, haue a greater degree and dignitie then the fue on the left hand. And as the dignitie consisteth in their Girdles and Canopies, those of the right hand weare Girdles of gold and Canopies of yellow, and those of the left hand weare Girdles of filuer and Canopies of blew, or of changeable colour. The Girdles are little lefse then three fingers broad, and an inch thick, and all about of gold or of filuer very well wrought made of peeces, The Canopies are very large and faire, which an Officer doth beare vpon a staffe a fathom long, of a Cloute tree very faire, and they are lined with silke.

Besides these Assitants and the fue Principall, there is among the inferior one of greater dignitie, which is the chiefe laylor, whom they call *Taffie*, which haue very great houes of great receipts, where they haue great prisons, but neither this nor any that are vnder may weare girdle of gold nor filuer, nor a yellow Canopie, except hee bee an Officer or Captaine of men of warre, that for fauour of a Gentleman may haue a yellow Canopie: the rest weare girdles of Tartanage, or of other matter made like them of gold or filuer, and their Canopies are of changeable flurie or blew, and all these Inferiour doe speake to the Superiour, when they are before them on their knees, and doe kneele as long as they are with them, except the *Taffie*, who when he cometh in kneeleth and riseth vp presently, and is alwayes standing. Euery one of the great ones haue many inferior Officers vnder his iurisdiction, for the matters and businesse necessary to the Office of euery one, all which as they are the Kings officers haue the Title of *Louhis* and their badges or signes. The fue Principall with their Assitants doe weare for a Badge the Kings Armes on their breasts, and on their backs, which are certayne Serpents wouen with gold thred.

Euery yeere there is one sent to euery Prouince as a Iustice, which is called *Cham*, which cometh to take account of all the *Louhis*, great and small, and examineth all the Students and chooseth *Louhis*, and visiteth the Prisons, and all that is necessary to be seene and prouided for in all the Prouince. He visiteth also the Prisons, and all that is necessary to be seene and prouided for in all the Prouince. He visiteth also the Prisons, and all that is necessary to be seene and prouided for in all the Prouince. When this entrench newly into this Citie, it is not lawfull for any to worke, they shut their doores and no body walketh through the street, and to preserue his worship and authoritie they will not boldly communicate in sight of the people, and many Officers with Banners displayed of crimson silke, and all the *Louhis* both great and small are bound to goe and meet him. The same entertainment is vied to euery one of the fue, when he cometh newly to the Prouince where hee is to administer his office. There bee other dignities about all these, which are called *Quincchie*, which is to say, a *Plate* or *Seale of gold*: which are not sent but about very famous Cities, and of great importance, for the Kingdome, or the King. Euery *Louhis* of what qualitie flower hee bee, high or low, hath for a signe or badge, besides the aboue said, a high Cap and round with certayne crosse a-crosse, made of small twiggles wouen 40 with twiss.

All the Offices are giuen from three to three yeeres, and none is giuen for longer time, and all giuen to men that are not borne in that part of the Land, because they may not be moued by affection in matters of Iustice that belong to their offices, and also because they may not become mightie, thereby to preuent insurrections. The offices are distributed by the King with the counsell of the Eunuuchs. And because the Eunuuchs are those with whose counsell the offices are distributed, they are many times mightily bribed.

The *Chams* which the King doth send euery three yeeres, commonly are found men, and bring commonly more authoritie then the rest. And thicke (besides the *Cham*) are sent the third yeere, when euery Officer endeth his office. After that the *Chams* haue taken the accounts of the *Louhis*, they visit the Prisons and give audience to the Prisoners. After this hee with the other principall *Louhis* doe visit the Schollers, and all those that hee findeth to haue studied well, he fauoureth and giueth them good hopes, and those which haue not studied well, if hee see they haue ability for it, he commandeth them to bee whipped. And it already they haue bene whipped and haue not amended, he commandeth them to bee put some dayes in prison, besides the whipping of them, that with these punishments from thence forward they may haue a better care. If hee findeth that they neither learne, nor haue abilitie, hee thrusts them out of the Schooles.

This doe onely the *Louhis* which come euery three yeeres, after they haue dispatched the businesse of the Prouince, hee busieth himselfe in making *Louhis*: which he maketh in forme following. He commandeth to come to the principall Citie of the Prouince, all the Students that haue well studied, from all the Cities of the Prouince, and from all the great Townes, where the King hath Schoole-masters of free Schooles, maintayned at his charge (for the Students did learne the Lawes of the Realme, maintayned at their fathers charge.) And all the principall

Louhis

Louhis of the Prouince assembled with *Cham*, there examine very well euery one of the Students, demanding of him many things concerning their Lawes: and if he answereth to all well, they command him to be put apart, and if he be not yet well instructed, either they send him to learne more, and if it be through his default, either they whip him, or being whipped they send him to Prison, as the *Portugals* saw many in Prison for that fault, where they were in Prison also. After the Examination ended, the *Cham* riseth vp, and all the *Louhis* with great Ceremonies, Feasts, Musicks, and Playings, they give the degree to euery one of them they found sufficient, which is to giue him the Title of *Louhis*. And after the passing many dayes in Feasts and Banquets, they lead them to the Court to receive the Badges of *Louhis*, which are Caps with eares, broad Girdles and Canopies, and there they lay the distribution of Offices. So that in this manner they make the *Louhis*, which in the Country are to administer Justice. The *Louhis* for war are made by *Chiuilites* and famous Deeds which they did in war. So that for their Learning, because of the Learned doe commonly come the fue principall *Louhis* and the Assitants.

Notwithstanding, there are many *Louhis*, which are made for simple fauours, either for doing some particular service to the King, or to the Raimo, or in some Towne, or having some particular fauour or qualitie. As they did to a young man of *China*, because the *Portugals* being in Prison, he serued for an Interpreter, whereby the *Louhis* gaue him the title and badge of *Louhis*, because he could speake *Portugall*. But these and such other doe not commonly sit in the Offices of the King, but enjoy onely the Liberties of *Louhis*: as the Gentlemen *Portugals* haue their Liberties which some enjoy by fauour of the King. And these *Louhis* haue great Liberties in prisoned but for humane faults, and they may imprison any that doe wrong them, and many other Liberties. And though these were some *Portugals* that reported without any certaintie that the *Chiuilites* did flatter naturall Philosophie, the truth is that there is no other Studies nor Vniuersities in it nor particular, but onely the Schooles Royall of the Lawes of the Kingdome. The truth is that some are found that haue knowledge of the courses of Heauen, whereby they know the Eclipses of the Sunne and of the Moone. But these if they know it by any Writings that are found among them, they teach it to some person, or persons in particular, but of this there are no Schooles.

The *Chams* haue no certaine Letters in their Writing, for all that they write is by Characters. Their lines are not outward as in the Writings of all other Nations, but are written vp and downe.

When the *Louhis* are dispatched at the Court with Offices for the Prouinces, where they goe to gouerne, they depart carrying nothing of their owne more then the Apparell they are to weare, and some few Seruants to serue him, when they haue no Offices, neither need they carry any prouision for the Journey, nor carriage or shipping at their owne charge: for through all the wayes where he goeth, he is prouided, as well of shipping as of necessary carriage; and necessary food for all the Kings Officers, which are prouided of the Royall Rents. In all the Cities and great Townes, the King hath many good and Noble Houles for the *Louhis* both great and small to lodge in, and all those which by any means are the Kings, haue sufficient Rents for the maintenance of euery person that shall dwell in the House according to his degree. And that lodge there being come, the Officer of the Houle cometh to him, and asketh him if hee will manly, as farre as the money doth extend, hee is to giue him, very well and cleanly drest, either this will goe to lodge at the Houle of his acquaintance of his, hee taketh the Money: And if any *Louhis* the inferior *Louhis* doe also sometimes, either to spare some Money, or to bee merry at their *Poucheis* haue the charge to giue them sufficient prouision that it doe not want. And at the yeares end account is taken of the Officers of the Houle of the Expences hee made.

By the wayes at euery League, and at euery two leagues are Houles which onely haue Beds, and Chaires for the Trauellers to rest and ease themselves. And some of those that haue care of the *Louhis* come to the Citie where they are to be resident and execute his office, they find 60 or smaller. In these Houles they find all the Seruants necessary, Scruiuers, Porters, and all other Ministers necessary for their Offices. For these are continually in the houles, for to minister cease. Houle and person hath his prouision necessary for his meate, drinke, and his apparell (limited so that it suffice him well) which is payed to him without faile, euery moneth.

Commence-
ment or Ad.
Of this see
more in the
following Re-
lations of the
Islands.

Other sorts of
Louhis.

Their Pri-
uiledges.

Publick Offi-
cers wholly
maintayned
of the publick.

Houles for
Officers.

Publick Innes.

Inferiour Offi-
cers.

Ref in age
with dignitie.

Reuerence.

Nimie fustitie
paris continem.

Tut.

When the *Louthias* are old and wearied in the charges and Offices of the Kingdomes, they are lodged in their owne Countries or where they will, and the King alloweth them every moneth so much according to their qualitie for their maintenance till they dye. And because the Ordinances of the *Louthias* are commonly sufficient, and with some abundance, they may always take some thing to keate their Wives and Children. Before the inferior Ministers these Officers doe all things of their Offices and matters of Iustice, for they are present at all things, to prevent Bribes and partialitie: Whiles the *Louthias* is sitting in the chaire to heare the parties and dispatching of matters, the Porters, Stewards, Sergeants and other Ministers are at the doore: and when any person cometh with any matter, one of the Porters with a high voyce that he may be heard where the *Louthias* sitteth (for it is farre off) telleth who and wherefore he cometh. And none speaketh to the *Louthias* but vpon both their knees on the ground, and commonly they speake a prettie space distant from him. And from thence with a high voyce well understood, he propoundeth his case, or sheweth him his Petition writt in Paper, and lifting vp the hand deliveth him to receive it, and to shew him Iustice; to whom a Minister runneth, the *Louthias* making a signe to him, and presenteth it vnto him. After the *Louthias* readeth it, he either dispatcheth him of that which he asketh, writing at the foote of the Petition with red Inke, or remitteth the party to an inferior Officer to be dispatched. So I saw it done to a Petition which a woman presented to the *Pouchefi*.

The promptnesse and readinesse wherewith the *Louthias* are served, and how feared they are, cannot be written with the Pen, nor exprest with the Tongue, but it must be seene with the eye for to know what it is. All doe their medges running and with great speed, not only the Scribes and Sergeants, and other Ministers, but also the Inferiour Officers to the Superior. And if any faileth neuer so little of the diligence and accustomed speed, or cometh with the lesse negligence in the World before the *Louthias*, he hath not any remission, but immediately they put a little flagge in his hand, and he must hold it in his hand kneeling vntill the parties be dispatched: and then the *Louthias* commandeth to give him the stripes that he thinkes good: and the stripes are such as hereafter we will speake of. Wherby all the Ministers in the Houses of the *Louthias* are playlied or marked with the stripes, so that already among themselves they hold it a disgrace not to be marked with the stripes, because it is a thing generally common among them. And when the *Louthias* waxeth angry or is moued at any thing, it is a wouder to see the so trouble and feare that is in all the flanders by.

I being in the House of the *Pouchefi* with certayne *Portugals*, intreating for the deliuerance of certayne *Portugals* that were Captiues, and imprisoned in the layle, for the which were carried him eight Ounces of Ambar (which at that time was much esteemed of them, and now by carrying so much it is not so much esteemed) we not being willing to give him the Ambar, without giuing vs both the *Portugals*, he took an occasion for to terrifie vs to waxe angry againt the youth, servant of a *Portugal* which was in our company and was our Interpreter. Wherfore he refused of the Chaire and became red as blood, and his eyes were inflamed, and set one foot forward, putting his thumbs vnder his Girdle, looking to the flanders by with a terrible countenance: stepping forward, lift vp his foot and stamp on the ground with it, and said with a terrible voyce, *Tua*, which is to say, Whippe. It was a wonderful thing to see in how little space they took the youth, tyed his hands behind with a Cord, and laid him on his belly with his thighs bare, and two Beadles placed them selues on each side one, with one foot forward, and their Whip readie for to give him the stripes that they should be commanded to give him. Certainly it was all done in a moment. The Merchants that came in our fauour were troubled, and stood aside shaking with feare. At this time one of the Prisoners said, Sirs, be not afraid, for he cannot whip that youth. And in truth we knew it was so, for according to their Lawes there was no fault, wherby he might command him to be whipped, and there was a penaltie if hee did it. The *Louthias* heare the voyce of the Prisoner, commandeth to carry him with speed to the layle againe. And the *Louthias* did this for nothing else but to make vs afraid, that we should giue him the Ambar for one of the Prisoners, for he could not goe vs the other, because he was already adgiudged to dye, and the sentence confirmed by the King, which was irrevocable, and he was willing to haue the Ambar, for he hoped to haue of the King a greater Reward then to be *Pouchefi* for the Ambar. For he did eate it for to sustaine life, and many dayes were past since they had demanded it of the *Portugals*, but as they knew not the name we vied for it, they neuer vnderstood one another till that the yere after they had for the *Auas* of *Cantua* a little for the deliuerie of a *Portugal*: wherby he was aduanced to *Pouchefi*. And this would also haue for the same effect the Ambar at our hands for to be aduanced.

Notwithstanding, we seeing our selues tyed and without an Interpreter by whom to speake, and the youth in disposition of whippings, we gaue him the Ambar. There came presently a Chasing-dog for to proue it, and the Prisoner cast a little in the fire, and seeing the smoke ascend right vp, he was contented, and scattering the smoke hee set his Nose ouer it and said, *Hue*, which is to say, it is very good. And commanded presently to deliuer vs the Prisoner free. It was wonderful to see with what speed it was weighed, and the pieces told and put in a Paper,

and noted by the Scriuener before them all the number of the pieces, and the waight that was there. And after that Paper another, all glued presently. And after that another. And in the third, the *Pouchefi* let his Marke with Red Letters, and what was contained within. And at the same instant came a little Boxe, and being put in it was presently Ropped, and vpon the cover a Paper glued, and vpon it the Marke of the *Pouchefi*: and presently came an inferior *Louthias* Captiue of the Army with his Soldiers, and all afaire off knelled downe, and said a very word *Quas*, which is to say, Yes, enclining their heads and hands to the ground. And receiving his message, presently as he came running, to he returned running with the Boxe to take shipping for to carrie the Ambar to the *Tutan*, to bee sent from him to the King. All this that I haue spoken was done in a trice before we were flirred from the place where we were. This was also deliuous to haue the Ambar of vs before the *Louthias* of that state did come, which was looked for every day to come a new; for this was onely a Lieutenant.

When any *Louthias* that is not of the fue, neither the *Chaen*, neither very inferior, but as they say of the meane sort, goeth abroad into the Citie, he hath before him a good space two Ministers with two Maces that seeme to be of silver, vpon long stauces, made almost after our fashion, and the one goeth on the one side the street, the other on the other side. After these a little distant, goe other two, each with a straight Cane, or Pole in his hand. After these goe other two in the same distance with two Canes traying along the Fauements, which are the Instruments of Iustice wherewith they doe whip. After these goe other two with two Tables like two Targets bowed and plystered, wherein is writt the Title of the Officer that passeth. The foremost figure in their Maces, that he which passeth is in his Office in the Kings place. And the two straight Rods, the right of Iustice which he ought to doe. Those which carrie the Instruments of whipping, doe carrie for a signe certayne long Red Laces, with two great round Tassels at the ends. And all doe carrie very gallant Plumes very well made of the points of a Peacock's tayle. And those that goe before doe now and then say with a loud voyce *Humph*, which is to say, *Give place, or beware*. While these doe passe it is not lawfull in any wife for any one to croffe, or goe in the middle of the street, vnder paine of being whipped without any remission.

It chanced two *Portugals* went through the middle of a street in *Cantua* walking, and behind them came an inferior *Louthias*, which had but foure Ministers, which came crying according to their custome they should giue place. The *Portugals* either gaue no heed or made no regard of those that came: wherfore a Minister comming, gaue a great thrust to the one of them, and the *Portugal* answered him with a boxe on the eare and being bound with his hands behind him, was to goe to Prison. It was necessary for the *Portugal* to come to the *Louthias*, and pacifie him with faire words, and he made an end of pacifying him with foureteen Crownes that hee gaue him. After the Ministers commeth the *Louthias* in a rich Chaire gilt and very faire, on four men backes. These Chaires are great and sumptuous, and the *Louthias* goeth compassed with all the Scriueners and other his Ministers. And all of them while hee goeth by the street, goe alwayes running. And the *Louthias* weareth a long blacke Coat of fine Searge with long leuees, which is the common wearing: he carrieth the armes a croffe like a Friar, and his eyes low without looking to any side: for euen with their eyes they will not communicate with the common people, for to preserve their authoritie the more with them, that may be more feared.

When any of the foure *Louthias* goeth abroad, except the *Tutan*, or the yearly *Chaen*, they goe accompanied with many Ministers, and sixe Officers doe carrie them on their backes, and they goe in more sumptuous and richer, they carrie before foure, five, or sixe Maces, and two or three Instruments and more Ministers.

When the *Chaen* that cometh every three yeres cometh into the Citie, or for forme important affaires goeth abroad, or some *Quinchay*, they shut vp all the doores in the streets where he passeth, and none doth worke, nor is any scene in the street when hee passeth. The shops are shut vp, and every thing of sale is out of sight. The Officers with coards along the street, doe make three lanes, where the triumphing Arches are made in three Arches: and through the middle passeth the *Louthias* onely, and the Officers on the two sides. And it is not lawfull for any to passe through the middle: they are accompanied of many inferior *Louthias* that goe on foot. And on the one side of the street, and the other are many armed men and others with Banners of red Silke aduanced, all standing in good order. In the Court of the house where he is to goe in, are many Kettle-drummes set vpon high stakes to be well played vpon, which are cued downe to the ground with clothes of Silke quartered. After these are many placed in order, with Flags of Silke on his high. After these in the same order, are many with Trumpets, and all are in great glencie. As soon as the *Louthias* appeareth they all found their Instruments in order: the found of the Instruments ended, they remayne all in to great a silence, as if there were no bodie in the Court, being a great multitude of people. The people as they come in doe place themselves on the sides, the middle betweene the Instruments remayne void, wherby the *Louthias* passeth. Before these *Louthias* goe commonly many inferior *Louthias*, of those that carrie Maces when they goe abroad. These are also in this Court many men at Armes with

Manner of
their pompe in
the street.

Pompe of the
greater Officers.

Chaen and
Quinchay
discourte.

Noys and
silence.

lung

long gilt Lances, and with very faire Armour. This is all in the first Court. In the second, along the Gallerie (whereof wee spake above, when wee treated of the houses of the great men, that only the *Louish* palle through them) on the one side and the other are many inferior hanging at their beles, and with Coats and Callocks made in fashion of Froeces with flukes of Gold Silke, which seemeth set upon plates, but it is a very fine worke made upon very single silke, which seemeth only of brauerie and ornament. Some vie on their heads white Head-pieces garnished with Gold, but are of a very fine leafe and thinn, that seeming an Armour, are not. In this manner also are the *Louish* inferiours, which doe enuiron the superior *Louish*. The Chaires where these doe goe are very rich and of great price, and very sumptuous. The Tables whereon is written the titles of dignitie of these Great men are written with letters of Siluer. And when any of these doth enter newly in any Citie with these failes and enternayments, all the *Louish*, great and small, receive him at a house (where hee lodeth very rich and noble) and from thence they accompanie him vnto his lodging, and being lodged, all doe take their leave with many curtesies. In these receivings they vie no sumptuous apparel. The great men (when most) wear Coats of red Silke. In their owne feasts in their houses, and secretly and in rich attires.

Manner of
inquisition.

No Oaths.

Bribe-cricks.

Cane-whip-
ping. Much
is here written
of Prisons and
Executions,
which I haue
omitted.
* Huge Records
or Canes.

Miserable con-
dition of misery.

Whensoever by way of inquirie or examination any Witnesses are demanded, the *Louish* doe it in publicke before the Officers and ministers of his Office, and before all the rest that by any means chance to be there present, and this because no falsehood may be vied, nor any sleight in the manner of inquiring; and by consequence in writing. And first they examine the Witnesses severally, and if they doe agree, they sayne them, and examine the one before the other, till they bring them to alterations and quarrelling by words, that by the words the one speaketh to the other they may come to the knowledge of the truth. And if by this means they doe not comprehend the truth, they give them many stripes and tortures that by one means or other they may know the truth of the matter they enquire or examine; they vie no Oath, for they esteeme nothing of their Gods. They have notwithstanding a respect in the witnessing the persons of quality, and of whom is presumed that they will not easily lye. When they examine any matter of great weight, or a grave person, then they write themselves, the process of the examination. It chanceth sometimes that some of the *Louish* for a great bribe, or for great friendship let some Prisoner loose, and put another in his place, for there neuer wanteth one naughty pucker that will put himselfe in danger of stripes, or death for interest, or and giving him some interest, deceiving him with words, and making the matter light vnto him, and punishments of the guiltie may fall upon the innocent. And when sometime in this sort among those that die in the prisons. But these inuentions are not vied but where the bribes are great; or the adherents very great and mightie. And for to clew the inconueniences which sometimes fall out, when any are imprisoned for weightie matters, or the Prisoners haue great aduerialties, they set downe all the marks of the Prisoners, and cause them to be let at the foot of the writing, that so they may not vie any of the malices abroad.

With how much pittie and leasure they kill, with so much cruelty and speed they whip, for in this case they forgoe none. The stripes are such that with reason it might be a sufficient punishment for to amend, for the canes wherewith they whip are plaited below about four fingers broad, and goe frightening vpward vnto the end, where the Beales hold them; and they are all a finger thicke (for in those parts are canes as big as a mans leg. And because in *Portugall* are many witnesses of knowledge of the same, I dare simply affirme it, and they are eighty or ninety (sans long). And their whips are made of these canes of the height of a middle statured man, and his legs layd along, and his hands tyed behind. And the Beales butchering, as they are commanded, the *Louish* are altogether void of compassion, talking to them with another, eating and drinking, and picking their teeth. The cruelty is such, that the Court is full of blood: and when they haue made an end of whipping them, they carrie them not, but like Butchers with much cruelty they draw them by one leg to the Prison. And when the Beales are whipping, they tell with a loud voice the stripes. If the miserable Prisoners which are in the Prison for grievous faults at the time that this correction is to be done can get a piece of a cord, wherewith they may hang themselves, they goe to buffets who shall hang himselfe first, that the butcherie of the stripes be not executed on them. And the *Portugall* affirmed, which were in Prison, that in one day forrie Prisoners did hang themselves in the Prison where they were, to escape the stripes they were rather willing to lose their liues. And they affirmed, that the cord was very short, that scarcely there was so much as to come about the necke to tie it, and on a fluke which they stucke in the wall, and because the fluke was very lowe, they pulled one another till they were choaked, going to buffets who should hang himselfe first. When any

doth

doth kill himselfe, or dieth in the Prison, it is the order in *China* to cast him in the house of offence, and there to be three dayes, where the Rats doe eate him vp. And sometimes the *Chinies* Prisoners doe eate of them with hunger.

Every Citie that is the Head of the Prouince, hath thirteene Dungeons, and in fixe of them are the men condemned to death: there are in *Canton* vpward of thirteene thousand Prisoners. There are in every Dungeon only for the condemned to death, one hundred and twenty men that serue for watches, and haue a *Louish* over them as their Captain, or Gentleman of the round. There be two sorts of tortures, one for the hands, another for the feet, which are mis-lead by certaine flukes to the bruising or breaking of the fingers or toes with cruel paines.

The King hath as many wives as he listeth: and within doores all the seruice is almost of women: whereof he hath a great multitude: and likewise great store of Eunuchs, and there is no other people within the house. The first son that is borne vnto him of any of his wives succeedeth in the Kingdome. The rest he marrieth, and at such time as he marrieth them they are lodged in some of the Cities that he belitteth; where they are well provided of all things necessary for their maintenance, as sonnes to the King. But they neuer see the Kings face any more after they are married.

All the Embassadors that come to *China*, with Embassages from Kings or Princes, receive of the King great rewards and fauours, and they give him Cap and signes of *Louish*, whereby he hath great priuileges in the Countrey. They may whip and punish the *Chinies* themselves, so that they touch not any *Louish* small or great: for to meddle with these would breed great inconueniences. This was the case the *Fernando* *Perez de Andrade* going for Embassador to *China*, that the *Chinies* did rise against him, and hee escaped with his hands on his head, losing some things; because hauing done vnaccustomed Iustice in *China*, and vpon the *Chinies*, and their forbearing him, he would stretch his hand to the *Louish*. The goods of the Embassador, and of his is free from customes, and to him and to his they give lodgings to dwell in, and all things necessarie while they are in the Countrey. No man, no not a *Louish* may disturbe him in any thing, nor any thing of his. One *Louish* would haue whipped one of *Siam*, for hauing carried a message to the Prison to certaine *Portugall* that were in Prison. One of the Officers laid vnto him that was present, that he was of *Siam* of the Embassage, wherefore being satisfied therewith he let him goe in peace, desiring him he would not doe so againe.

With the *Chinies* being so great as at the beginning we said and declared, the King hath such meanes and industrie in the gouernement thereof, that every month he knoweth all that passeth through all the Realme, and he knoweth it in this manner. All matters of Iustice and of Warre, and all amities with all that is worth the knowing in every one of the Prouinces is referred by the *Louish*, and by other persons to the *Pomchay*, and the *Pomchay* maketh a relation of all by writing to the *Tuan*. The *Tuan* is bound to send a Post every month to the King, which carrieth the information in writing to the King of all things that passeth in that month. They count their monthes by the Moones, and they are to be dispatched in such sort, that at the beginning of every Moone the Posts from all the Prouinces are to be at the Court, that the first day of the Moone it may be presented to the King, as relations of all things happened in every Prouince. And although some Prouinces are farre distant from the Court, that the Posts cannot come within a month to the Court: notwithstanding in such manner they agree that every Moone the King is to haue the relation of every Prouince, though the one be of more time then another, because of the one Prouince being farre and the other neerer.

The manner of the Posts is as among vs, they carrie a Horse which they winde when they come neere to any Towne, that they may haue a Horse ready in every Towne within a certaine distance. They are bound when they heare the Horse to haue a Hurie ready for him, which is bound with such diligence as all the other seruices of the Officers. And where hee is to passe is Ford, as soone as hee windeeth his Horse with great speed they carrie him a Boat, as I saw once going to the Citie of *Canton*, in a Towne that was in the way, called *Quamam*. Sometimes it happeneth by the malice of some *Louish*, when they haue any interest in it, to keepe some thing concealed that the King knoweth not: but woe to them if the King come to know it, for they are grievously punished, as wee shall see in a case hereafter following. Being in *India*, and also in *China*, I was informed that sometimes the King of *China* doth send some men of great confidence disguised through diuers parts of *China*, that they might see how his Officers do seruice him. And if there were any nouelties or changes whereof they made him not priue, or false things that were necessarie to provide.

Store of free-
people, and
butcherie store
of bond by al-
lured libertie
and force.

The King his
wives, chil-
dren and ser-
uants.

Em'assadors
priuileges.

* Lays Sater,
was sent Vice-
roy, ad. 1515,
and sent this
Perez, with a
fleet to China,

and therein
Thomas Perez,
Embassador,
who were well
entertained
there. But

some Portugall
shipping 74
sailed to a
Guan-land, and
exercising all
ouergaze, cau-
sed 27 Portugall
after a moneths
travell from
Canton to the
Court to be
taken for a
spie, and sent
backe to Can-
ton, where hee
died in Prison
among mis-
adventures. See
Maffius's, p. 6
who seemeth
indolent; or
a little re-
solved vnto
him. For hee
had leide 6 ships
there, when he
went to Canton.

Disguised In-
telligencers.

§. V.

Of the Portugall commerce with the Chinois; of the seuerer Iustice executed vpon certaine Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Portugals.

BEcause we speake many times before of Portugals, captiues in China, it will bee a conuenient thing that the causes of their Captiuitie be knowne, where many notable things will be shewed. Yee are to know, that from the yeere 1554. hitherto, the businesse in China are done very quietly and without danger: and since that time till this day, there hath not one ship bene lost but by some mischance: hauing lost in times past many. Because as the Portugals and the Chinoes were almost at warres, when the Armies came vpon them, they weighed anchor and put for the Sea, and lay in places vnsheltered from tempests, whereby the stormes coming, many were lost vpon the coast, or vpon some shelues. But from the yeere 1554. hitherto, *Lionell de Sosa*, borne in *Algarue*, being chiefe Captaine, and married in *Chauli*, made a cōuenant with the Chinoes that they would pay their duties, and that they should suffer them to doe their businesse in their Ports. And since that time they doe them in *Canton*, which is the first part of China: and thither the Chinoes doe resort with their Silkes and Muske, which are the principall goods the Portugals doe buy in China. There they haue fure Houses, where they are quiet without danger, or any one disquieting them, and so the Chinoes doe now make their mercandile well: and now both great and small are glad with the traffike of the Portugals, and the fame of them runneth through all China. Whereby some of the principall of the Court came to *Canton* only to see them hauing heard the fame of them. Before the time done with great trouble, they suffered nota Portugall in the Country, and for great hatred and loathing called them *Fenoi*, that is to say, *Men of the Devil*.

Portugals called Fenoi, and hated.
Name-policy.

Lawes of Navigation.

Coutenit lawe.

Chinese Cities.
Liampo.

Chinches.
Nampoi, or Nampou.

Now they had no commerce with them vnder the name of Portugals, neither went this name to the Court when they agreed to pay customes: but vnder the name of *Fungin*, which is to say, *People of another Coast*. Note also, that the law in China is that no man of China doe fyale out of the Realme in paine of death. Onely it is lawfull for him to fyale along the coast of the same China. And yet along the coast, nor from one place to another in China it selfe it is lawfull to goe without a certificate of the *Louhis* of the Country whences they depart: in which is set downe, whither they goe, and wherefore, and the markes of his person, and his age. If he carrieth not this certificate he is banished to the Frontiers. The Merchant that carrieth goods carrieth a certificate of the goods hee carrieth, and how hee payed duties for them. In euery Custom-house that is in euery Prouince hee payeth certaine duties, and not paying them hee loseth the goods, and is banished to the frontier parts. Notwithstanding the abovesaid lawes, some Chinoes doe not leaue going out of China to traffike, but these neuer returne againe to China. Of these some lye in *Malacca*, others in *Siam*, others in *Pataue*, and so in diuers places of the South. Some of these that goe out without licence are scattered. Whereby some of these which lye already out of China doe returne againe in their ships vnto China, vnder the pretence of some Portugall: and when they are to dispatch the duties of their ships they take some Portugall their friend to whom they giue some bribe, that he may dispatch it in his name and pay the duties. Some Chinoes desiring to get their lining, doe goe very secretly in these ships of the Chinoes to traffike abroad, and returne very secretly, that it bee not knowne, no not to his kindred, that it bee not spread abroad, and they incur the penalty that the lawe doe incur. This law was made because the King of China found that the much communication of the strangers might be the cause of some rioting. And because many Chinoes with an excuse of sayling abroad became theues and robbed the Countries along the Sea coast, and yet for all this diligence there are many Chinoes robbers along the Sea coast.

These Chinoes that lye out of China, and doe goe thither with the Portugals, since the offence of *Fernando Peres* of *Andrada* did direct the Portugals to begin to goe to traffike to *Liampo*; for in those parts are no walled Cities nor Villages, but many and great Townes along the coast, of poore people, which were very glad of the Portugals, and told them their prouision wherof they made their gayne. In these Townes were these Merchants of China which came with the Portugals, and because they were acquainted, for their sake the Portugals were better entertained. And as these Chinoes which were among the Portugals and the Country Merchants in their buyings and sellings, they reaped a great profit thereby. The inferior *Louhis* of the Sea coast receiued also great profit of this traffike, for they receiued great bribes of the one and of the other, to giue them leaue to traffike, to carrie and recurre their goods. So that this traffike was among them a long while concealed from the King, and from the superior *Louhis* of the Prouince. After these matters had for some space bene done secretly in *Liampo*, the Portugals went by little and little forward, and began to goe and make their merchandise to *Chinches*, and to the Ilands of *Canton*. And other *Louhis* permitted them already in euery place for the bribes sake, whereby some Portugals came to traffike beyond *Nampoi*, which

which is very farr from *Canton*, without the King being witting, or hauing knowledge of this traffike. The matters fell out in such sort, that the Portugals wintered in the Ilands of *Liampo*.

Some Chinoes that were among the Portugals, and some Portugals with them, came to order themselves in such manner that they made great thefts and robberies and killed some of the people. These evils encreased so much that the clamour of the iniured was so great, that it came not only to the superior *Louhis* of the Prouince, but also to the King. Who commanded presently to make a very great Armada in the Prouince of *Fuquien*, to drive the theues from all the coast, especially those that were about *Liampo*, and all the Merchants as well Portugals as Chinoes were reputed in this number of theues. Being ready they went forth along the coast of the Sea. And because the windes forced them not for to goe for *Liampo*, they went to the coast of *Chinches*, where finding some of the Portugals, they came to fight with them, and in no wise did they permit any wares to come to the Portugals; who stayed many dayes there (fighting sometimes) to see if they could haue any remedie for to dispatch their businesse. But seeing they had no remedie, they determined to goe without it. The Captaynes of the Armie knowing this, sent a message to them very secretly by night, that if they would that any goods should come to them, that they should send them something. The Portugals very glad with this message, prepared a great and lumpsumme present, and sent it them by night because they were so aduised. From thence-forward came many goods vnto them, the *Louhis* making as though they tooke no heed thereof, dissembling with the Merchants. And so were the businesse ended that yeere, which was the yeere 1548.

Disorders of ourragious Chinois, and insolent Portugals.

Briberie.

The yeere following, which was 1549. there was a straighter watch vpon the Coast by the Captaynes of the Armada, and greater vigilance in the Ports and entrances of China, in such sort that neither goods nor viuals came to the Portugals; but for all the vigilance and watching there was, (as the Ilands along the Coast are many, for they all runne in a row along the China) the Armies could not haue so much vigilance, that some wares were not brought secretly to the Portugals. But they were not so many that they could make vp the ships ladings, and the vnterree those goods which they had brought to China. Wherefore leaving the goods which they had in *Chinches* and *Tanquien* vnder the shadow of the Portugals, (in the which they left thirtie Portugals in charge with the ships and with the goods) that they might defend the ships, and in some Port of China where best they could they should sell the goods that remained in change for some Wares of China, and hauing ordained this they departed for *India*.

As the people of the Armie of the Chinoes law the two ships remayne alone, the other ships being gone, they came vpon them, being induced by some Merchants of the Country, which discovered to them the great store of goods that remayned in those vessels, and the few Portugals that remayned to keep them. Then they layd an ambush for them, dressing some Chinoes aloare, which being in armes made as though they would set vpon the ships to fight with them, because they were close to the Land, that the Portugals being provoked, should come out of the ships to fight with them, & so the ships might remaine without defence to them of the Armada, which lay watching in an ambush, & did accordingly set vpon the two vessels with great furie & ships. The chiefe Captayn which is the *Lutshiffi*, remayned so glorious, that hee did great crueltie on some Chinoes that hee tooke with the Portugals. Hee laboured to perswade foure Portugals which had more appearance in their persons than the rest, that they should say, they were Kings of *Malacca*, hee perswaded them in the end, because hee promised to vie them better then the rest, and therewith hee provoked them. And finding among the clothes that hee tooke a Gowne and a Cap, and asking of one of those Chinoes, that were taken with the Portugals what habit that was, they put in his head, that it was the habit of the Kings of *Malacca*, wherefore hee commanded presently to make three Gownes by that patterne, and three Caps, and so hee appeared to all those in one sort, to make his sayning true, and his victory more glorious. To this was joyned the countenace of the *Lutshiffi* to see if hee could detayne the many goods that hee had taken in ships.

Mountaine Moule-luth.

Secretum ad-mij. istam re-negit amice 2.

And to doe this more safely, not to be taken in a lye, hee did great executions vpon the Chinoes which hee tooke with the Portugals, and killing some of them determined to kill the rest. These things coming to the eares of the *Atiao*, which was his superior, hee disliked greatly that hee had done, and sent to him presently that hee should kill no more of those which remayned, but that hee should come to him presently bringing with him all the prize as well of the *Atiao*, as was commanded, hee commanded his Journey for to goe to the *Atiao*, as hee was called, to be carried in them with more honour. And the other Portugals were carried in Coopes with their heads out fast by the neckes betweene the boards that they could not pull them in, but hauing some wounds in their heads, they went bare headed to the Sunne and to the Dew, and were carried on men shoulers. The *Lutshiffi* went with this Prize through the Country with great Majestie, hee carried before him foure Banners displayed, on the which

Pillory Coops.

were written the names of the four Kings of Malacca. And when he entered into the Towne, he entered with great noise and Majesty, with sound of Trumpets, and with Cryers which were crying the great victory, the *Loubisi* (naming him) had gotten of the four great Kings of Malacca. And all the great men of the Towne went to receive him with great Feasts and Honours, all the Towne running to see the new Victory.

When the *Loubisi* came with all his pompe and glory where the *Ainau* was, after the giving him particular account of all things passed and of his victory, he manifested to him his pretence and agreed with him to divide the goods betwixt them both, and that he should continue the faying of the Kings of Malacca, that both might receive of the King Honours and Rewards. This being set downe they both agreed that to keep this in secret, the *Loubisi* should go forward to in that which he had begun, to wit, he should fly all the *Chinno*, that came thither captive. And presently they commanded presently to put it in effect, and so they like nineties and odd *Chinno*, among whom were some young youths blaine. They left notwithstanding three or four youths and one man, that by them (bringing them to their owne hand) they might sacrifice the King all that they would, that was to make of the *Portugals* Theues, and conceal the goods which they took: certifying also by these that those four were Kings of Malacca. And the *Portugals* not having the Language of the Country, neither had any person to intreat for or favour them would perish: and they being mightie would make their owne Tale good, following the end by them intended. And for this cause they slew not the *Portugals*, but left them alive, for the greater triumph of the victorie.

The *Loubisi* could not do this so secretly, but many of those which they slew had kindred in the Country, which did grieve at the death of theirs. Whereby, as well by these, as by some *Loubisi* that were zealous of Justice, and would not give content in to great evils and fraudulent dealings, this matter came to the Kings eares, and he was informed how the *Portugals* were Merchants which came to traffique with their Merchandise to *Chinno*, and they were no theues, and how they had fully given the Title of Kings to four of them, to the end the King should shew great favours, and doe them great honours, and how they had usurped great store of goods: and that to conceal these evils, they killed men and children without fault.

As soone as the King was informed of all above said, hee dispatched prent from the Court a *Quinchoy*, (of whom we spake before, that is to say *plate of Gold*) And with him he sent other two men of great authoritative also, of the which the one had bene *Panchasi*, the other *Anchoy*, these two as Inquisitors and Examiners of this matter: Commanding and commending to the *Chao* which that yeare went to visit the Province of *Fuquen*, and to the *Panchasi* and *Anchoy*, of the same Province, their ayde and assistance to the *Quinchoy*, and the two Inquisitors in all things necessary for them in these businesse. The two that came with the *Quinchoy*, as Inquisitors, went presently to certayne great Houses which had in the midst a great Court, and on the one side of the Court were certayne great faire Lodgings, and on the other side others in the same fort. Each of the Inquisitors entred in one of these Houses aforesaid. The Prisoners were presently brought, and were presented to the one of them, who for courtesie remitted them to the other, that he should examine them first, with many words of courtesie. The other entred then againe with great thankfulness. So they were sundry times turned from one to another, each of them willing to give the hand to the other of beginning first, till that one of them yielded and began. And as the matter was of great import and much commended to them, all that the guiltie and the accusers did speake these Officers did write with their owne hands. The *Portugals* had for a great Enemy a *Chima* man and Pilot of one of the shippes that were taken, and a *Chima* youth which was a Christian, which from a child was brought up among the *Portugals*: for they were both made of the part of the contrarie *Loubisi*, mooved by gifts and promises: the *Loubisi* being already depoted of their Offices, and held for guiltie, for the which they were accused before the King.

But though they were thus handled, they were so mightie and so favoured, that they could take from the *Portugals* a *Chima* youth that served them for an Interpreter, which upon their Petition was againe delivered them. They examined them in this order, the accused were first brought and examined by one of these Officers, and they carried them to the other to be examined againe. And while the other was re-examining the accused, the accusers were brought to him that examined first. And as well the accused as the Accusers were all examined by both the Officers, that afterward they both (seeing the confessions of the one and the other, they might see if they did agree. And first they examined every one by himselfe. Afterward they examined them altogether, for to see if the one did contrary the other, or did contend and revealed one another, that by little and little they might gather the truth of the case. In these Examinations the two were contrary, to wit, the *Pilot*, and the Christian *Chima* youth, had many stripes, because they agreed in some things. The *Loubisi* did always shew themselves glad to hear the *Portugals* in their defence, who allegeded in their defence, that if they would know who they were, and how they were Merchants and not Theues, they should tend to enquire of them along the Coast of *Chinchoo*, that there they should know the truth, which they might

There is a
note.

The Kings
Justice.

Manner of ex-
amination.

know of the Merchants of the Country, with whom a great many yeeres agoe they had dealt, and that they might know that they were no Kings, for Kings do not abate themselves so much as to come with so few men to play the Merchants, and if before they said the contrary, it was by the deceit of the *Loubisi*, and to receive better favour of him in their persons.

Having this information of the *Portugals*, presently with the opinion of the *Quinchoy* and the other Officers, they went to *Chinchoo* both of them, to enquire of the truth of that which the *Portugals* had told them; and discovering there the truth of the *Portugals* matter, and the lies of the *Loubisi*, and of the *Ainau*, they dispatched presently a *Poli*; wherein they commanded to put the *Loubisi* and the *Ainau* in Prison, and in good safeguard. Wherefore from thence forward 10 all men began to favour them very much. If notwithstanding this examination had bin made in *Chimpo*, as it was in *Chinchoo*, the *Portugals* could not have chosen but have paid it ill, according to the greatness of the evils they had done there. After the *Loubisi* returned from *Chinchoo*, they commanded to bring the *Portugals* before them, and comforted them very much, shewing them great good-will, and saying to them, that they knew already they were no theues, but were honest men: and they examined againe as well they as their adversaries, to see if they contradicted themselves in any thing of that which before they had spoken. In these later re-examinations the *Pilot of China*, which before had showed himselfe against the *Portugals*, and had bene on the *Loubisi* side, seeing that the *Loubisi* were already in Prison, and he knew they could doe him no hurt, he would now speake the truth. They then commanded to torment him, and whip him very fore, to see if he would gain say himselfe, but he still continued in the same confession.

All the examinations and diligences necessarie in this businesse ended, the *Quinchoy* willing to depart for the Court with his company, would first see the *Portugals*, and give a sight of himselfe to the Citie. The sight was great Majesty in the manner he went abroad in the Citie, 30 for he went accompanied with all the great men of it, and with many men in Armes and many Ancients dignified and very faire, and with many Trumpets and Kettle-drummes, and many other things which in such pompes are used. And accompanied in this manner, he went to certain noble and gallant houses. And all the great men taking their leave of him, hee commanded the *Portugals* to come neere him, and after a few words he dismissed them: for this was not but only to see them. Before these *Loubisi* departed they commanded the *Louthias* of the Country, and the Taylors, that all of them should favour the *Portugals*, and give them good entertainment, and should command to give them all things necessarie for their persons. And commanded every one to set his name in a piece of Paper, because that while they were at the Court, and their matters were dispatching, they should not craftily make some missing. 40 And let them communicate with any person. Being gone from the Citie, they lodged in a small Towne, where they set in order all the Papers, and ingrossed only that which was necessarie. And having ingrossed all that they were to carrie to the Court, they burned all the rest. And because these three men which they took for helpers should not spread abroad any thing of that which they had seene, or heard, or written, they left them shut up with great vigilance, that none should speake with them, commanding to give them all things necessarie very abundantly untill the Kings Sentence came from Court, and were declared. The Papers being presented in Court, and all seene by the King and by his Officers, he pronounced the Sentence 50 in manner and forme following.

Pimpu by commandment of the King. Because Chaipuu, Huchin Tutan without my commandment, or making mee priue thereto, after the taking of so much people, commanded them to see *Jaayne*: I being willing to provide therein with Justice, sent first to know the truth of *Quinitum*, my *Quinchoy*, who taking with him the *Louthias* which I sent to examine the truth of the *Portugals*, and also came to all the coast of my Dominion, to see if hee would see the truth of all being knowne, they are come from doing that which I commanded them. And the truth of all being knowne, and by the great *Louthias* of my Court, and well examined, they came to give mee account of all. And likewise I commanded them to be pursued by *Alinpu*, and *Alu Chuen*, and by *Atayaluy* *Chuguin*, whom I commanded to oversee those Papers very well, because the matters were of great weight: wherein I would provide with Justice, which thus being seene and pursued by them all, it was manifest that the *Portugals* came many yeeres before to the coast of *Chinchoo*, to do their affaires, which was not convenient they should doe in the manner they did it, but in my Markes, as was alwaies the custome in all my Ports. These men of whom I have now told you: I know now that the people of

When the
fall out.

The *Quinchoy*
magnificent
entertainment.

Cauleosina
dudrie.

* Is in
abridge:
The Kings
Sentence.

Chincheo went to their shops about their affairs, whereby I knew already that they are Merchants and not thieves, as they had written to me they were.

As I do not blame Merchants to help Merchants, but I put great fault in my Louthias of Chincheo: because that when any ship came to my Port, they should have knowne if they were Merchants, and if they would pay their duties, and if they would pay them, to write presently unto mee. If they had done so, so much evil it had not bene done. Or when they were taken if they had let mee knowe it, I had commanded to let them at libertie. And although I see a custome in my Ports the ships that come unto them to be searched: by order for to pay their duties: they being very faire off, it was not necessarie for to let them doe their business, and goe for their Countries. Besides, this my Vontoo's which knew these men to be Merchants did not tell me, but concealed aine as they could not seeke, did lookes towa a Heaven, and demanded from their hearts justice of Heaven (they know no other God but I preme our the Heavens) Besides these things I know that the Aitao, and the Luthiis did so much evil for contenting of the many goods which they tookes from the Portugals, having no regard where the goods which they tookes, and tookes the goods from, were good or evil mee. Likewise the Louthias along the Sea coast knew these men to be Merchants, and certified mee not. And all of them, as they sell, were the cause of so much evil. I knew more by my Quinchey, that the Aitao, and the Luthiis had Letters, by the which they knew that the Portugals were no thieves: but Merchants, and knowing this they were not contented with the taking of them, but they wrote many lies unto mee, and were not contented with killing of the men, but killed children also, cutting off the feet of some, of others the hands, and at last the heads of them: writing unto mee they had taken and layne Kings of Malacca. Which case I believing to be true, grieve in my heart.

And because hitherto so many cruelties have bene used without my commandment, from hence forward I commanda they be not done. Besides thus the Portugals resisted my Arme, being better to have let them: for bene taken, then to kill my people. Moreover, it is long since they came to the coast of our Dominion: and not their affairs in manner of thieves, and not as Merchants: wherefore if they had bene natural as they are strangers they had incurred paine of death or loss of goods, wherefore they are not without fault. The Tutan by whose commandment these men were taken, said that by this deed I should make him greater: and the people that he commanded to be slayne after this had no heads, their hearts, (that is their soules and their blood) required justice of Heaven. I seeing so great will to doe, my eyes could not endure the sight of the Papers without tears, and great griefe of my heart. I knew not, my Louthias seeing they took these people, wherefore they let it not goe, that I might not come to know so many cruelties and so great. Wherefore seeing all these things, I doe create Senuhu chieft Louthia, because hee did his duty in his charge, and told mee truth, I create also chieft Louthia Quinchio, because hee wrote the truth to mee of the Pontooos which went to doe their merchandise in secret with the Portugals to the Sea. Those which are evil I will make them better, then they which love Rice.

Likewise because Pachou did traffike with the Portugals, and for bribes did permit the Merchants of the Country to traffike with the Portugals, and yet doing these things, wrote unto mee that the Portugals were thieves and that they came to my Dominions onely in steale. And the same hee said also to my Louthias (which presently answered, that hee had, for they knew already the contrarie.) And therefore, such a one, and such a one, (he nameth ten) it is nothing that all you be banished red Caps: to the which I commande you: but you deserve to be made better, as I doe make you. Chien for taking these men thou saydest thou shouldst be greater, and being in the doing of so much evil thou saydest thou didst not feare mee: such a one, and such a one (he nameth nine) for the taking of these men yee say, I would make you great, and without any feare of mee yee all had, such a one, and such a one (he nameth many) I knowe all yee took bribes. But because you did so, I make you base, (he denieth them of the dignitie of Lathia.)

Such a one, and such a one (he nameth many. If the Aitao and the Luthiis would kill so many people, wherefore did you suffer it? But seeing that in consenting you were necessarie with them in their death, all are in the same fault. Chituu, and Chanchituu, were also agreeing to the will of the Aitao and the Luthiis, and were with them in the slaughter, as well those that were as those that were not in fault. Wherefore I condemne you all to red Caps. Lupuu let him have a good heare, because the Tutan being willing to kill this people, hee said that he would let mee first knowe it. To him I will doe no harme, but good, as he deserves, and I command that he remaine Louthia. Sanchi I make my Anchi of the Cite of Canti. The Auteio Commanda to be depised of his honour. Aftau seeing hee can speake with the Portugals, let him have honour and ordinarie, and he shall be carried to Chacquean, where hee was borne. (This is the youth with whom the Portugals did defend themselves, fearing them for Interpreter, they gave him title of Louthia, and maintenance.) Chinghe Head of the Merchants that went to the Sea to traffike with the Portugals, and deceived them, bringing great store of goods a land, it shall be demanded of him, and let in good safeguard for the maintenance and expenses of the Portugals, and I condemne him and his fourne Companions to red Caps, and they shall be banished whether my Louthias shall think good.

To the rest guilty and imprisoned for this matter, I command my Louthias to give to every one the price.

punishment be deserved. I command the Chien to bring mee hither the Tutan that his faults being perswaded by the great mee of my Court, I may command to doe justice on him as I shall thinke good. (This Tutan was alioa contentor in the wickedness of the Aitao and the Luthiis: for the Luthiis, and the Aitao made him partaker, and gave him part of the booties which they tookes from the Portugals, that as the head he should hold for good that which they did: for in truth they durst not haue done that which they did if he had not given consent, and agreed with their opinion.) This hearing what was judged against him, hung himselfe, saying, that seeing the Heaven had made him whole, that no man should take away his head. The Porouos which yet are in Prison, shall be examined againe, and shall presently be dispatched. Chiumchui shall presently be depraved from being a Louthia, without being heard any more. Chibee, head of fixe and twenty, I command that hee and his be all set at libertie, for I find but little fault in them. Those which owe any money I shall bee recovered of them presently. Yamichin, and Tomichier shall dye, if my Louthias doe thinke it expedient; if not let them doe as they thinke best. Alfonso of Pauu, and Peter of Cea (these were Portugals) Janomie and Francisco (these were laues) finding them to be guilty of killing some men of my Arme, shall with the Luthiis and Aitao be put in Prison, where according to be custome of my Kingdom, they all shall dye at last. The other Portugals that are aine with all their Servants which are in all fiftie one, I commanda them to be carried to my Cite of Canti, where I commanda they be well treated, seeing my heart is so good towards them that for their sake I punish in this sort the people of my Countrey, and deale so well with them for it is my custome to doe Justice to all men. The Louthis of the Armada, finding they are in little fault, I commanda they be set free (I deale in this sort with all men, that my Louthias may see that all that which I doe, I doe it with a good zeale.) All these things I commanda to be done with speed. Hitherto the sentence of the King.

The Portugals that were freed by the sentence, when they carried them whither the King commanded, found by the way all things necessary in great abundance, in the Houses about, that the King had in every Towne to the Louthias when they traueil. They carried ferious Louthias, which caused them to have all things necessary through all places where they came, till they were delivered to the Louthias of the Cite of Cansi. From that time they had no more of the King every month but one Fom of Rice (which is a measure as much as a man can beare on his backe) the rest they had need of, every one did seeke by his owne industry. Afterward they dispersed them againe by two and two, and three and three through diuers places, to present that in time they should not become migrate joining themselves with others. Those that were condemned to death, were presently put in Prison of the condemned. And Alfonso of Pauu had a meane to give the Portugals to understand that they were free, that for his selfe comforted in the Lord. Those which were at libertie, now some and then some, came to the ships of the Portugals, by the industrie of some Chienas, which brought them very secretly for the great gifts they received of the Merchants of Portugall, which made their Merchandize in the Cite of Canton.

What became of the Portugals.

§. VI.

Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianity.
Terrible Earth-quake and Tempests in China.

IN the Cite of Canton in the middle of the River which is of fresh water and very broad, is a little Ile, in the which is a manner of a Monasterie of their Priests; and within this Monasterie I saw an Oratorie high from the ground very well made, with certayne gilt steps before it, made of carved worke; in which was a woman seated to bee some flow of Christianity, and in hand a Lampe burning before it. I suspending Priests which were there, demanded of some Lay-men, and some of the Idoll any reason of it. It might well be the Image of our Ladie, made by the ancient Christians, that it might also be some Gentile Image. The great God they have is the Heaven, the letter that signifieth it, is the principall and the first of all the Letters. They worship the Sun, the Moone, Images of Louthias, which they worship for having bene famous in some one thing or other. And likewise Statues and Images of some Priests, of the Idols, and some of other men for respects particular to them. And not only worship they these Images, but whatsoever stone they erect on the Altars in their Temples.

The Tatan by hanging himselfe, reuents the Hymen, or proved the Hangman rather.

Heaven is fit both God and Character.

Omoteffo's and
their offerings.
* A Perfume
to cald.

Lot.

Crucell men to
their foolish
Gods.

Offerings.

The Devil
worshipped.

Paper Offer-
ings.

Two sorts of
Pigs
Messes.

Seculars.

Fests.

Traditionall
Fables.

They call commonly these Gods *Omoteffo's*, they offer them Incense, Benjamin, Cinnamon, and another Wood which they call *Cayo*, * *Laque*, and other smelling things. They offer them likewise *Osha*, whereof is mention made afore. Every one hath a place to pray, and at the entries behind the doors of the Houses, in the which they have their carved Idols: to the which every day in the Morning and at Evening they offer Incense and other perfumes. They have in many places (as well in the Towns as out of them) Temples of Lots. In all the ships they have in, they make presently a place for to worship in, where they carry their Idols.

In all things they are to enterprize either Journeys by Sea or by Land, they give Lots & cast them before their Gods. The Lots are two sticks made like halfe a Nut-shell, flat on the one side, and round on the other: and as bigge as an halfe Nut, and joynd with a string. And when they will cast them, they speak first with their God, perswading him with words, and promising him some Offering if he give him a good Lot, & in it shew him his good Voyage or good successe of his business. And after many words they call the Lots, And if both the flats lide fal upward, or one up another downe, they hold it for an euill Lot, and turne them toward their Gods very melancholy, they call them Dogs, with many other reproaches. After they are wearie of rating them, they soothe them againe with faire milde words, and aske pardon, saying, that the Melancholy of not giving them a good Lot, caused them to doe them injurie, and speake injurious words vnto him: but that they will pardon them and give them a good Lot; and they promise to offer him more such a thing (because the promises are the better for them that promise them, they make many and great promises and offerings) and so they cast Lots so many times till so they fall both on the flat sides which they hold for a good Lot, then remanynge well contented, they offer to their Gods that which they promised. It happeneth many times when they cast Lots about any weighty matter, if the Lot fall not our good, or launching a ship to the Sea it goeth not well, and euill come to it, they runne to their Gods and cast them in the water, and put them in the flame of the fire sometimes, and let them scorche a little, and burning them often, and tread them vnder foot, and give them rayling words, till their business be ended, and then they carrie them with playing and feasts, and give them their Offerings.

They hold for a great Offering a Hogges head boyled: they offer Hennes, Geese, Duckes and Rice all drest, and a great pot of Wine. After they present it all to the Gods, they set his portion apart, which is, to put in a Dish, the small points of the Hogs eare, the bills, and the points of the claws of the Hennes, Geese, and Duckes, a few cornes of Rice very few, and put in with great heed, three or foure drops of Wine very heartily, that there fall not many drops from the Pot. These things so set in a Basin that they fit them on the Altar to their Gods for to eat, and they set themselves there before the Gods to eat all that which they bring.

They worship the Deuill also, which they paint after our fashion: and say that they worship him because he maketh those which are good, Devils, and the euill, he maketh Busses, or Kine, or other beasts. And they say that the Deuill hath a Master that teacheth him his Knaueries: these things say the bafe people: the better sort say they worship him because hee shall doe them no hurt.

When they will launch any new ship to the Sea, their Priests being called by them come in to the ships to doe their Sacrifices with long side Garments of Silke. They set about the shippe many flags of Silke, they paint in the prow of the ship the Deuill, to the which they make many references and Offerings, and say they doe it because the Deuill shall doe no hurt to the ship. They offer to the Gods Papers with diuers Images painted, and other of sundry kinde of cuttings, and they burne them all before the Idols with certayne Ceremonies and well tuned Songs, and while they singing doo last, they ring certayne small Bells, and among all they vie ge. & effore of eating and drinking.

In this Countrey are two manner of Priests, the one that haue their head all shauen, these wear on their heads certayne course Caps like vnto Canopie cloth, they are high, and flat-headed (higher before then behind a hand breadth) made like a Mitre with Pinacles: their dressing is white Coates after the Lay-mens fashion. These live in Monasteries, they haue dining places, and Cells, and many pleasures within their walls. There be others whom commonly the people doe vie for their Banns and Sacrifices, these wear their haire, and blacke like Coates, or of Serge or Linnen, and long like the Lay-men, hauing for a token their haire made fall in the Crowne of the head with a thicke very well made like a closed hand, varnished blacke. None of these Priests haue Wines, but they live wickedly and filthily.

The first day of the year, which is in the new Moone of March, they make throughout the Land great Feasts, they visit one another, the chief principally doe make great Banquets. How much these people are curious in the rule and government of the Countrey, and in their common Traffique, so much they are bafely in their Gentilities, in the vltige of their Gods and Idols. For besides that which is said, they haue many Gentillall Lyes, of men that were turne into Dogges, and afterward into men, and of Snakes that were conuerted into men, and many other ignorances.

I entred one day into a Temple and came to an Altar: where were certayne stones fet vs

which

which they worshipped, and trusting in the little estimation they held their Gods in and in being men that would be satisfied with reason, I threw the stones downe to the ground, & whereas some ranne very fiercely at me and angry, asking me wherefore I had done that, I went mildly to them, and smiling, said to them, because they were so inconsiderate that they worshipped those stones. They asked me wherefore should they not adore them? and I shewed them how they were better then they, seeing they had the vlt of reason, feet, hands, and eyes, whereas they did diuers things that the stones could not doe, and that seeing they were better they should not abate and esteeme so little of themselves as to worship things, so vile they being to noble. They answered me that I had reason, and went out with me in company, leaving the stones on the ground: so that there is likelihood and shew of their becoming Christians. And it maketh also much to this purpose, their not making any difference of meate, as all the people of India do. And seeing that among all the meates they esteeme the Porke most, it is almost impossible for them to become Turks.

Notwithstanding, there are two vertie great inconueniences to make any Christians in this Countrey. The one is, that in no wife they will permit any noueltie in the Countrey, as in some sort it may be scene in the matter of the *Moares*. So that whatsoever noueltie that is in the Countrey, the *Lautibus* take order presently how to repell it, and it goeth no further. Whence it happened in *Cantan*, because they saw a *Portugall* measure the entries of the Gates, they set presently Watches that none should come in without licence, nor goe vpon the Walls.

The second is, that no strange person may enter into *China* without leave of the *Lautibus*, nor be in *Cantan*, which doe give him a certaine time to bee in *Cantan*. The time of the licence ended, presently they labour to haue them depart. Wherefore because I and those which were with me were one month longer in *Cantan*, they let vs written words that none should keepe nor harbour vs in their houses, vnder payne of loth, till wee held it our best cheape to goe to the Ships. To the abusefall is toynd the common people to be greatly in feare of the *Lautibus*, wherefore none of them durst become a Christian without their licence, or at the least many would not do it. Therefore as a man cannot be fested in the Countrey, hee cannot continue Preaching, and by consequence he cannot fructifie and preferre the truth. Thiere was notwithstanding one way how to Preach freely, and fruit might be made in the Countrey, without any doggebarking at the Preacher, nor any *Lautibus* doe him hurt any way: which is, if hee haue a licence for it of the King: And it might be obtained if a solemn Embassy were first sent to the

lemne present to the King of China, in the name of the King of Portugall, religious men going with the Ambassadors to obayne the licence to goe about the Countrey, persuading themselves to bee met with our Armes. And how our Law is no prejudice to his Dominion and Government, but a great help that almightie obey him and keepe his Lawes. This only remedie there is in China, to reach any fruit, and not any other (speaking humbly). And without this it is impossible for any Religious men to Preach or fructifie, and because I had not this remedie, having the abusefall inconuenience, I came to this beneficent remedy, could I fructifie in China.

This people hath besides the ignorance, that filthy abomination, that they feare themselves no sexe among them. Notwithstanding, I Preaching sometimes, as well publike as privately against this vice, they were glad to heare me, saying, that I had reason in that which I sayd, but that they neuer had any that told them that was a sinne, the say thing euill done. It seemeth that because this sinne is common among them, God was willing to fend them a grievous punishment in some places of the earth, the which was common in all China. The being in the Cite of *Canton*, and being willing to know of a rich *China* Merchant the cause that had happened in the Countrey, and see not able to tell it me by word of mouth, gave me a Letter which they had written vnto him of what had happened: saying to me, that I should translate it and give it him againe: but not trusting me hee translated it presently, and remanynge with the copie gave me the principall, which I translated into Portugall with the helpe of one that could speake our language and theirs, the tenor of the Letter is this.

The principall *Lautibus* of *Samsu* and of *Sauon*, wrote vnto the King, saying, that in those Provinces the earth did shake terribly, and the dayes waxed darke like night (the *Yans* not how long), a South-fayer told them all that should happen. In the yeere before in the month of Septembar, the earth opened in many places, and vnder it were heard great noyses like the sound of Bells, there followed a great wind with much rayne, and the wide ranne about all the Compasse. This winde is called in China, *Ty-fume*, and many yerres it bloweth but once a yeere, and it is so raging, that it drieth a Ship vnder sayle on the Lande great space, and the men cannot keepe their feet, nor leaning and holding one by another, and it doth things whose admiration and incredible. In the yeere that I was in China, in the part where the *Portugalls* were, they shewed the Boat of a Ship of a good bignesse, and the place where it was a land (that this wind had rayed it, might bee a great stones cast from the water) and many did affirm it to mee, that the winde had such force, that it carryed it tumbling till it blew it into the Sea. And all the houses the *Portugalls* had made of timber, and covered with strawe, which were many and

No noueltie.

Pecussions as
against the
Sacrifices.

Note

Chinois Sod-
omitie.

Plagues hap-
ping in China

Tyfon a ter-
rible tempest.

were built upon great flakes, and not very high, it threw them all downe breaking the flakes. And one house being fastened with foure Cables, where many *Portugals* retired themselves, at the last fell also, and onely one that was sheltered with a high place escaped that it fell not. To low downe these houses was nothing, for it doth many other things incredible. This winde is almost euery yeere in *China*, the which within twentie four houres that it reigneth, it runneth about all the points of the Compasse. With this winde, and the Lands being shaken with the Earthquakes, many Cities fell and were made desolate, in the which dyed innumerable people.

In a Citie called *Vinayafus*, in this day was a great Earthquake. And on the west side a great Fire burst out, that swallowed up all the Citie, in the which, innumerable people perished, escaping in one place two, in another three, and so some of the *Moogers* escaped. In another Citie neerer to this, there happened the same, but in this none escaped. In a Citie called *Leuchimien*, the River increased in such sort, that it ouer-flowed the Citie, where infinite people were drowned. In a Citie called *Hien*, was an Earthquake, with the which many houses fell, which flew neere eight thousand foules. In *Pachus*, the house of the Kings kinman fell and flew all that were in the house, except a Child of seuen or eight yeeres old his sons, (which was carried to the King) and day and night was a noyse heard vnder the earth, like the found of Bells.

In a Countrey called *Cochue*, with fire from Heauen and with many waters of a Flood, many perished, and the land remayned vnabie to bee cultivated againe. In a Countrey called *Enchenen*, at midnight the houses fell, and the Citie remayned desolate and ruined, where perished neere one hundred thousand foules. In a Citie called *Enchenen*, in one day and a night, the River did flow and ebbe ten times, and with the great flood many people perished. Hitherto the translation of the Letter: that which followeth, was heard by word of mouth of the *Portugals* that were in the Port of *Cantan* in the month of May, and I received the Letter in September.

In a Citie called *Saxxi*, from midnight till five of the clocke in the morning, the sea shoote three times, the eighteenth of Ianuarie, 1556. and the next day after, from midnight till noon, happened the same: the next day following, the twentie of the sayd month, the sea shoote mightily after midnight with great Thunder and Lightnings, and all the Prouince was burnt, and all the people thereof, and all the Suburbs, Townes, and Cities: they say it is from bound to bound, fiftie or sixtie leagues, that there was not one faued but a Child, sonne to a kinman of the King, which was carried to the King. And the third of Februarie in the same yeere, in the Citie of *Panguin* where the King is, fell a shower of rayne like blood. These newes brought one of *China* that came to *Canton*, from a Citie neerer to *Saxxi*, to giue newes to a *Leu*, that hee should resort to his owne house, and find that the Citie where he was a dweller was ouerflowed, and that he knew not whether it would perish with the rest. That which ought to be held for truely is, that in three Prouinces which commonly are sayd to be destroyed, there was no more destruction then of thole places whereof the Letter maketh mention, or little more. The agreeing in the Child, sheweth that the Towne whereof the Letter maketh mention with the child, was in the Prouince of *Saxxi*. This hath more apparence of truth, because the Letter was written from the Court, then to say that all the three Prouinces perished.

After the happening of the things aforesaid: the same yeere in the Prouince of *Cantan*, a woman which went to the *Panchassi*, told him that the Prouince of *Cansu* would bee destroyed with power from Heauen, the which after she was well whipt, was imprisoned: but in the month of May of the same yeere, there fell great store of rayne verie hot, with the which the earth seemed to burne, and many people perished with the great heate: but the Prouince perished not altogether: wherefore this woman was carried to the King, which was in prison in the place where the *Portugals* were, which told this.

Reader, forasmuch as this *Antioch* hath often mentioned, and related also the storie of certaine *Portugals*, Prisoners in *China* (one of which be named Galotto Perera) from whom bee received great part of the *China* intelligence: I haue thought good to adde further Perera's relations, translated long since out of Italian, and published by R. Willes: leaving abbreviated some things in the Frier, that you might rather haue them at the first hand from this Gentleman which saw them: but abbreviated to present tediousness.

CHAP. XI.

The relation of GALOTTO PERERA, a Gentleman of good credit, that lay Prisoner in China.

His Land of *China* is parted into thirteene Shires, which sometimes were each one a Kingdome by it selfe, but these many yeeres they haue bene all subiect vnto one King.

The King maketh alwayes his abode in the great Citie *Pachin*, as much to say in our language (as by the name thereof I am advertised) the Towne of *Kingdom*. This Kingdome is so large, that vnder five moneths you are not able to trauell from the Townes by the Sea side, to the Court and backe againe, no not vnder three moneths in Poste at your vrgent business. The Post-houes in this Countrey are little of bodie, but (with of foote. Many doe trauell the greater part of this journey by water in certaine light Barkes, for the multitude of Rivers, commodious for passage from one Citie to another.

The King, notwithstanding the hugeness of his Kingdome, hath such a care thereof, that euerie Moone (by the Moones they reckon their moneths) he is advertised fully of whatsoever thing happeneth therein. Before that wee doe come to *Cance*, we haue to passe through many places and some of great importance. For this Countrey is so well inhabited neere the Sea side, that you cannot goe one myle but you shall see some Towne, Borough, or Holdrie, the which are so abundantly provided of all things, that in the Cities and Townes they liue climiely. Neuertheless, such as dwell abroad are very poor, for the multitude of them euery where to great, that out of a Tree you shall see many times towarne a number of Children, where a man would not haue thought to haue found any one at all.

From these places in number infinite, you shall come vnto two Cities very populous, and being compared with *Cance*, not possibly to be discerned which is the greater of them. These Cities are as well walled as any Cities in all the world. As you come into either of them, standeth forth great and mightie a Bridge, that the like thereof I haue neuer seene in *Portugal*, nor else where. I heard one of my fellows say, that hee told in one Bridge fortie Arches. The occasion whereof these Bridges are made so great, is for that the Countrey is toward the Sea very plaine and low, and ouerwhelmedeuer as the Sea-water encreaseth. The breadth of the Bridges, although it be well proportioned vnto the length thereof, yet are they equally built, no higher in the middle than at either end, in such wise that you may directly see from the one end to the other, the sides are wonderfully well engraued after the manner of *Rome* workes. But that wee did most maruell at, was therewithall the hugeness of the stones, the like wherof, as we came into the City, we did see many lie vp in places dilabished by the way, to the small charges of theirs, howbeit to little purpose, whereas to buye forth them but such as do come by. The Arches are not made after our fashion, vaulted with sundry fashions together but paved, as it were, whole stones, some of them are twice paces long and upward, the least eleven good paces long, and an half. The wayes each where are gallantly paved with four-square Stone, euerie stone is where for want of stone they vse to lay Bricke: in this voyage we trauelled our certain Hills, where the wayes were pitched, and in many places no worke paved than in the plaine ground.

The Countrey is so well inhabited, that no one foot of ground is left vntilled: small store of cattell haue weene this way, we saw onely certaine Oxen wherewithall the countrey-men doe plough their ground. One Ox draweth the Plough alone, not onely in this Shire, but in other places also, wherein is greater force of cattell. The countrey-men by art doe it in tilage, which we are constrained to doe by force. Here be told the voydings of Clofe-stooles, although there wanteth not the dung of beasts: and the excrements of man are good merchandise ware for Hearbs and Wood. The custom is very good for keeping the Citie cleane. There is great abundance of Hennes, Geese, Duckes, Swine, and Goates, and Wethers haue they none: the Hennes are sold by weight, and so are all other things. Two pound of Hennes flesh, or Goole, or Ducke, is worth two Foie of their money, that is, three halfe pence. Swine flesh is sold at a penny the pound. Beeffe beareth the same price, for the scarcitie thereof, howbeit Northward from *Fuquie*, and further from the Sea coast, there is Beeffe more plentie, and sold better cheape. Beeffe onely excepted: great abundance of all these Viands wee haue had in all the Cities wee passed through. And if this Countrey were like vnto *India*, the Inhabitants whereof eat neither Hens, Beeffe, nor Porke, but keepe that onely for the *Portugals* and *Moors*, they would bee sold here for nothing. But it is falling out that the *Chineans* are the greatest eaters in all the world, they doe feed vpon all things, especially vpon Porke, the fatter that is vnto them, the lesse lothsome. The highest price of these things aforesaid, I haue set downe, better cheape than you sometimes buy

You shall haue a more full description of the Countrey by later Authors: who yet could not so well as this, tell their iudicial proceeding, executions, &c. these 13. are to be vnderstood besides the two royall Prouinces. *Fachin* Peking, or *Paguan*, or *Paguan*, or *Paguan*. *Cambala* signifies the same, and to the Moogers call this Citie. Poste Houses. Their moneths. Excellent wile and an admirable bridge.

Magnificent stones.

Wayes paved, bricked, or pitched. Culture and husbandrie.

Building of
the Cities.No Artillerie.
Large Streets.

Archers.

Loutcas.

Chians, al. Chien.

Pomchiasis.

Anchiefs:
al. Heup.
Taisi.Prisons and
sentencing
offenders.Loutcas Com-
mencement of
AC.

buy them for the great plenty thereof in this Country. Frogs are sold at the same price that is made of Hennes, and are good meat amongst them, as also Dogs, Cats, Rats, Snakes, and all other vivelence meates.

The Cities be very gallant, specially neere unto the Gates, the which are marvellously great, and covered with Iron. The Gate-houses built on high with Towers, the lower part thereof is made of Bricke and Stone, proportionally with the walls, from the walls yoward, the building is of Timber, and many stories in it one above the other. The strength of their Townes in the mightie Walls and Ditches: Artillery have they none. The streets in *Cincoas*, and in all the rest of the Cities wee have seene are very faire, so large and so straight that it is wonderful to behold. Their houses are built with Timber, the foundations only excepted, the which are laid with Stone, in each side of the streets are paintedes, continuall Porches for the Merchants to walke vnder: the breadth of the street is neetherlesse such, that in them fifteen men may ride commodiously side by side. As they ride they must needs passe vnder many high Arches of triumph, that crosse ouer the streets made of Timber, and carued diuersly, covered with Tile of fine Clay: vnder these arches the Mercers do vter their smaller wares, and such as list to stand there are defended from raine, and the heat of the Sunne. The greater Gentlemen haue these Arches at their doores: although some of them be not so mightily built as the rest.

I shall here occasion to speake of a certaine order of Gentlemen, that are called *Loutcas*, I will first therefore expound what this word signifieth, *Loutcas*, is as much to say in our languages *Sir*, and when any of them calleth his name, he answereth, *Sir*. The manner how Gentlemen are created *Loutcas*, & do come to that honour and title is by giuing a broad Girdle not like to the rest, and a Cap, at the commendement of the King. The name *Loutcas* is more general and common vnto moe, than equalitie of honour thereby signified, agreeth withall. Such *Loutcas* that doe serue their Prince in weightie matters for iustice, are created after triall made of their learning: but the other which serue in smaller affaires, as Capitaines, Constables, Sergeants by Land and Sea, Receiueurs, and such like, whereof there be in euery Citie, as also in this, very many are made for fauour: the chiefe *Loutcas* are serued kneeling.

The whole Prouince *China* is diuided, as I haue said, into thirteene Shires, in euery Shire at the least is one Gouverneur, called there *Tutan*, in some Shires there be two. Chiefe in office next vnto them be certaine other named *Chians*, that is, high Commissioners, as you would say, or Visitors, with full authoritie in such wife, that they doe call vnto an account the *Tutans* themselves, but their authoritie lasteth not in any Shire longer than one yeere. Neetherlesse, in euery Shire, being at the least seuen Cities, yea, in some of them fiftene or sixteene, besides other Boroughs and Townes, not well to be numbred, these Visitors where they come, are so honoured and feared, as though they were some great Princes. At the yeares end their circuit done, they come vnto that City which is chiefe of others in the Shire, to doe Iustice there: finally, bullying themselves in the clearing out of such as are to receive the order of *Loutcas*, whereof more shall be said in another place.

ouer and besides these officers in the chiefe Citie of each one of these aforesaid thirteene Prouinces, is resident one *Pomchiasis*, Captaine thereof, and Treasurer of all the Kinges reuenues. This Magistrate maketh his abode in one of the four greatest houses that be in all the chief Cities. In the second great house dwelleth another Magistrate, called *Anchiefs*, a great officer also, for he hath dealings in all matters of Iustice. *Taisi*, another officer so called, lieth in the third house, a Magistrate of importance, specially in things belonging vnto warfare, for therewith hath he charge. There is resident in the fourth house a fourth Officer, bearing name *Taisi*. In this house is the principall prison of all the Citie. Each one of these Magistrates aforesaid may both lay euill doers in prison, and deliuer them out againe, except the fact be heynous and of importance: in such a case they can doe nothing, except they doe meet altogether. And if the deed delict death, all they together cannot determine thereof, without recourse made vnto the *Chien* whereloeuer he be, or to the *Tutan*: and if the sentence is falleth out, that the case be referred vnto higher power.

In all Cities, not only chiefe in each Shire, but in the rest also are meenes found to make *Loutcas*. Many of them doe studie at the Princes charges, whereof at the yeeres end they resort vnto the head Cities, whither the *Chians* doe come, as it hath beene earst said, as well to giue theie degrees, as to sit in iudgement ouer the prisoners.

The *Chians* goe in circuit euery yeere, but such as are to be chosen to the greatest offices, meet not but from three yeeres to three yeeres, and that in certain large halls appointed for them to be examined in. Many things are asked them, wherunto if they doe answer accordingly, and be found sufficient to take their degree, the *Chien* by and by granteth it them: but the Cap and Girdle whereby they are knowne to be *Loutcas*, they weare not before that they be confirmed by the King. Their examination done, and triall made of them, such as haue taken their degree vnto be giuen them with all Ceremonies, vnto banquet and feast many daies together (as the *Chians* fashion is to end all their pleasures with eating and drinking) and for maine chosen to doe the King seruice in matters of learning. The other examines found insufficient to proceed, are sent backe to their studie againe. Whole ignorance is perceived to come of neglig-

gence and default, such a one is whipped, and sometimes sent to prison, where were lying that yeere when this kinde of AG was, wee found many thus punished, and demanding the cause thereof, they said it was for that they knew not how to answer vnto certaine things asked them.

It is a world to see how these *Loutcas* are serued and feared, in such wife, that in publicke assemblies at one thirke they giue, all the seruitors belonging vnto Iustice, tremble thereof. At their being in these places, when they list to moue, be it euen to the gate, these Seruitors doe take them vp, and carry them in seats of beaten Gold. After this sort are they borne when they goe in the Citie, either for their owne business abroad, or to see each other at home. For the dignitie they haue, and office they doe beare, they be accompanied: the very meane of them all that goeth in these seats is vthered by two men at the least, that cry vnto the people to giue place, howbeit they need it not, for that reuerence the common people hath vnto them. They haue also in their company certaine Sergeants, with their Maces, either siluered, or altogether Silver, some two, some foure, other six, other eight, conveniently for each one his degree. The more principall and chiefe *Loutcas* haue going orderly before these Sergeants, many other with Staues, and a great many Catch-poles with Rods of Indian Canes dragged to the ground, for that the streets being pined, you may heere a farre off, as well the noise of the Rods, as the voyce of the cryers. These folloves serue also to apprehend others, and the better to be knowen, they weare burne-red Girdles, and in their Caps Peccocks Feathers. Behinde these *Loutcas* come such as doe beare certaine Tables hanged at haues ends, wherein is written in Silver letters the name, degree, and office of that *Loutcas*, whom they follow. In like manner they haue borne after them Hats agreeable vnto their titles: if the *Loutcas* be meane, then hath he brought after him but one Hat, and that may not be yellow: but if hee be of better sort, then may hee haue two, three, or foure: the principall and chiefe *Loutcas*, may haue all their Hats yellow, the which among them is accounted great honour. The *Loutcas* for warres, although hee bee but meane, may notwithstanding haue yellow Hats. The *Tutans* and *Chians*, when they goe abroad, haue besides all this before them led three or foure Horses, with their Guard in Armour.

Furthermore, the *Loutcas*, yea, and all the people in *China*, are wont to eat their meat sitting on Stooler at high Tables as wee doe, and that very cleanly, although they vie neither Table-clothes nor Napkins. Whatsoever is set downe vpon the board is first carued, before that it be brought in: they feed with two Sticks, refraining from touching their meat with their hands, euen as wee do with Forkes, for the which respect, they lefse doe need any Table-clothes. Neither is the Nation only ciuill at meat, but also in conuersation and in courtisie they come to exceede all other. Likewise in their dealings, after their manner they are so readie, that they face passe all other *Gentiles* and *Moores*: the greater States are so vaine, that they line their clothes with the best filke that may be found. The *Loutcas* are an idle generation, without all manner of exercises and pastimes, except it be eating and drinking. Sometimes they walke abroad in the fields, to make the Soldiers shoot at Piques with their Bowes, but their eating passeth: they will hand-eating euen when the other doe draw to horse. The Price is a great Blanket spread on certaine long Poles, he that striketh it, hath of the best man there standing a piece of Crimfon Tartan, the which is knit about his head: in this sort the winner is honoured, and the *Loutcas* with their bellies full, returne home againe.

The Inhabitants of *China*, be very Idolaters, all generally doe worship the heauens: and as we are wont to say, *God knoweth it*: so say they at euery word. *Tien Tauter*, that is to say, *The Heauens doe know it*. Some doe worship the Sunne, and some the Moone, as they thinke good, for none are bound more to one them to another. In their Temples, the which they doe call *Meen*, they haue a great Altar in the same place as we haue, true it is, that one may goe round about it. There set they vpon the Image of a certaine *Loutcas* of that Country, whom they haue in great reuerence for certain notable things he did. At the right hand standeth the Deuill, much more vgly painted then wee doe vnto set him out, wherunto great homage is done by such as come into the Temple to aske counsell, or to draw lots: this opinion they haue of him, that he is malicious and able to doe euill. If you aske them what they doe thinke of the soules departed, they will answer, that they be immortal, and that as loone as any one departeth out of this life, he becometh a deuill, if he haue lued well in this world, if otherwise, that the same deuill chaunge him into a Bull, Ox, or Dog. Wherefore to this Deuill they doe much honour, to him do they sacrifice, praying him thus he will make them like vnto himselfe, and not like other beasts. They haue moreover certain sort of Temples, wherein both vpon the Altars, and also on the walls doe stand many Idols well proportioned, but bare headed. These beare name *Omisophon*, accounted of them spirits, but such as in heauen doe neither good nor euill, though to be such men and women, as haue chastely lued in this world in abstinent from Fish and Flesh, fed onely with Rice and Salates. Of that Deuill they make some account, for thele spirits they care little or nothing at all. Againe, they hold opinion, that if a man doe well in this life, the heauens will giue him many temporal blessings, but if he doe euill, then shall he haue infirmities, diseases, troubles.

Their Maefty.

Manner of
eating.We, that is, the
Indians and
Spaniards.

Shooting.

Idolary.

Deuill itselfe
respected.

troubles, and penurie, and all this without any knowledge of God. Finally, this people knoweth no other thing then to live and die, yee because they be reasonable creatures, all seemed good unto them we speake in our language, though it were not very sufficient.

So did the Romanes Auguries,
Sodomic frequent,
New and full Mooones.

Birth-dayes,

New yeeres dayes,

Iudice,

Our manner of praying so well liked them, that in prison importunately they besought vs to write for them somewhat concerning heauen, the which we did to their contentation, with such reasons as we knew, howbeit not very cunningly. As they doe their Idolatry they laugh at themselves. The greatest fault we doe finde in them is *Solomon*, a vice very common in the meaner sort, and nothing strange amongst the best. Furthermore the *Lontues*, withall the people of *China*, are wont to solemnize the daies of the new and full Mooones in visiting one another, and making great banquets, for to that end, as I haue said, doe tend all their pastimes and spending their daies in pleasure. They are wont also to solemnize each one his birth day, visiting their kindred and friends doe resort of custome, with presents of Jewells or Money, to receive againe for their reward good cheere. They keepe in like manner a generall Feast, with great Banquets that day their King was borne. But their most principall and greatest Feast of all, and best cheere, is the first day of their new yeere, namely, the first day of the New Moone of *February*, so that their first moneth is *March*, and they reckon the times accordingly, respect being had vnto the reigne of their Princes: as when any deed is written, they date it thus: Made such a day of such a Moone, and such a yeere of the reigne of such a King.

Now will I speake of the manner the which the *Chinees* doe obserue in doing Iudice. So cause the *Chinif* King maketh his abode continually in the City *Pachin*, his Kingdome so great, the thirde to many, as before it hath bene said: in it therefore the Gouernours and Rulers, much like vnto our Sherifves be so appointed suddenly, and speedily discharged againe, that they haue no time to grow nought. Furthermore, to keepe the State in more securitie, the *Lontues* that gouerne one shire, are chosen out of some other shire distant farre off, where they multie their Wives, Children, and Goods, carrying nothing with them but themselves. True it is, that at their coming thither they doe find in a readinesse all things necessarie, their Houfe, Furniture, Seruants, and all other things in such perfection and plenty, that they want nothing. Thus King is well secured without all feare of Treason.

In the principall Cities of the shires be foure chiefe *Lontues*, before whom are brought all matters of the inferior Townes, throughout the whole Realme. Diuers other *Lontues* haue the managing of Iudice, and receiving of Rents, bound to yeeld an account thereof vnto the greater Officers. Other doe see that there be no euill rule kept in the Citie: each one as it behoueth him. Generally all these doe imprison Malefactors, cause them to be whipped and racked, haling them vp and downe by the armes with a cord, a thing very vniual there, and accounted no shame. These *Lontues* doe vie great diligence in the apprehending of the Theeves, so that it is a wonder to see a Thiefe escape away in any Towne, Citie, or Village. Vpon the Sea nere vnto the hoare many are taken, and looke euen as they are taken, so be they first whipped, and afterward laid in Prison, where shortly after they all lye for hunger and cold. At that time, when we were in Prison, there dyed of them about threescore and ten. Their whips be certayne pieces of Canes, cleft in the middle, in such sort that they seeme rather plaine then sharpe. He that is to be whipped lyeth groueling on the ground. Vpon his thighes the Hangman layeth on blowes mightily with these Canes, that the standers by tremble at their crudelitie. Tenne stripes draw a great deale of blood, twentie or thirtie spoyle the flesh altogether, fiftie or threescore will require long time to be healed, and if they come to the number of one hundred, then are they incurable.

The Italianes call the Spaniards, Hard Prisoners, Beating with Canes.

Examinations.

The *Lontues* obserue moreover this: when any man is brought before them to be examined, they aske him openly in the hearing of vs in this manner, be the offence neuer so great. Thus did they also behaue themselves with vs. For this cause amongst them can there be no false witness as Iudice amongst vs is fullen out. This good cometh thereof that many being alwayes about the daily to heare the Euidence, and beare witness, the Proccesse cannot be falsified, as it hapneth sometimes with vs. The *Moors*, *Gentiles*, and *Lontes* haue all their Iudiciall Oathes, the *Moors* doe swear by their *Mosses*, the *Brachmen* by their *Fils*, the rest likewise by the things they doe worship. The *Chinees*, though they be wont to swear by Heauen, by the Moone, by the Sonne, and by all their Idols, in judgement neuertheless they swear not at all. If for some offence an Oath be vied of any one, or by and by with the least euidence hee is tormented, so be the Witnesses he bringeth, if they tell not the truth, or doe in any point disagree, except they be men of worship and credit, who are beleueed without any further matter: the rest are made to confesse the truth by force of Torments and Whips. Besides this order obserued of them in Examinations, they doe feare so much their King, and he where he maketh his abode keepeth them so low, that they dare not once stirre. Again, these *Lontes* as great as they be, notwithstanding the multitude of *Noraries* they haue, not trusting any others, doe write all great Proccesses and matters of importance themselves. Moreover, one vertue they haue worthy of great praise, and that is, being men to well regarded and accounted of as though they were Princes, they be

Patient bearing.

patient above measure in giuing audience. Wee poore strangers brought before them might say what we would, as all to be Lyes and Falaces that they did write, nor did we stand before them with the vsuall Ceremonies of that Country, yet did they beare with vs so patiently, that they caused vs to wonder, knowing specially how little ary Advocate or Iudge is wont in our Country to beare with vs. For wherefoerer in any Towne of Christendome should lye accused vnknowne men as we were, I know not what end the very Innocents cause would haue: but wee in a Heachen Country, hauing our great Enemies two of the chiefeest men in a whole Towne, wanting an Interpreter, ignorant of that Country Language, did in the end fee our great Adversaries callt into Prison for our sake, and deprived of their Offices and Honour for not doing Iudice iust, not to escape death, for as the rumour goeth, they shall bee beheaded.

Some what is now to be said of the Lawes that I haue bene able to know in this Country, and first, no Theft or Murder, is at any time pardoned: Adulterers are put in Prison, and the first once proued, condemned to dye, the woman, Husband must accuse them: this order is kept with men and women found in that fault, but Theues and Murderers are imprisoned as I haue said, where they shortly dye for hunger and cold. If any one haply escape by bribing the Laylor to giue him meate, his Proccesse goeth further, and cometh to the Court where hee is condemned to dye. Sentence being giuen, the Prisoner is brought in publicke with a terrible band of men that lay him in Irons hand and foot, with a board at his necke one handfull broad, in length reaching downe to his knees, cleft in two parts, and with a hole one handfull downe ward in the Table fit for his necke, the which they enclasp therein, nailing the board fast together, one handfull of the board standeth vp behind in the necke: the sentence and cause wherefore the felon was condemned to dye, is written in that part of the Table that standeth before. This Ceremonie ended, he is laid in a great Prison in the company of some other condemned persons, the which are found by the King as long as they doe live. The board aforesaid is made torneth the Prisoners very much, keeping them both from the rest, and eke letting them to eate commodiously, their hands being manacled in Irons vnder that board, so that in fine there is no remedie but death. In the chiefe Cities of euery shire, as we haue before said, there be foure principall Houses, in each of them a Prisoner: but in one of them where the *Tuffe* maketh his abode, there a greater and a more principall Prison then in any of the rest: and although in euery Citie there be many, neuertheless in three of them remaine onely such as bee condemned to dye. Their death is much prolonged, for that ordinarily there is no execution done but once a yeere, though many dye for hunger and cold, as we haue seene in this Prison. Execution is done in this manner. The *Chian*, to wit the high Commissionor or Lord Chiefe Iudice, at the yeares end goeth to the head Citie, where hee heareth againe the causes of such as bee condemned. Many times he deliureth some of them, declaring that heard to haue bene wrongfully put about their neckes: the visitation ended, he chooleth out leuen or eight, not many more or lesse, of the greatest Malefactors, the which to feare and keepe in awe the people, are brought into a great Market place, where all the great *Lontues* meete together, and after many Ceremonies and Supplications, as the vice of the Country is, are beheaded. This is done once a yeere: who lo escapeth that day, may be sure that he shall not be put to death all that yeare following, and lo remaineth at the Kings charges in the greater Prison. In that Prison where wee lay were alwayes one hundred and more of these condemned persons, besides them that lay in other Prisons.

These Prisons wherein the condemned captiues doe remaine are so strong, that it hath not bene a feare, that any Prisoner in all *China* hath escaped out of Prison, for indeed, it is a thing impossible. The Prisons are thus builded. First, all the place is mightily walled about, the walls be very strong and high, the gate of no lesse force: within it three other gates, before you come where the Prisoners doe lye, there many great Lodgings are to be seene of the *Lontes*, *Noraries*, *Partitions*, that is, such as doe there keepe watch and ward day and night, the Court large and paved, on the one side whereof standeth a Prison, with two mighty gates, wherein are kept such Prisoners as haue committed enormous offences. This Prison is so great, that in it are streets of Trade, buying and selling, and letting out beds to hire: some are daily sent to Prison, some daily deliuered, wherefore this place is neuer voyd of leuen or eight hundred men that goe at libertie.

Into one other Prison of condemned persons shall you goe at three Iron gates, the Court paved and vaulted round about, and open about as it were a Cloyster. In this Cloyster be eight Rooms with Iron Doores, and in each of them a large Gallerie, wherein euery night the Prisoners doe lye at length, their feet in the stocks, their bodies hampered in huge wooden gates that keepe them from sitting so that they lye as it were in a Cage, deeper if they can: in the morning they are loosed againe that they may goe into the Court. Notwithstanding the strength of this Prison, it is kept with a Garrison of men, part whereof watch within the Houfe, part of them in the Court, some keepe about the Prison with Lanthornes, and Watch-bells, answering one another fye times euery night, and giuing warning lo lowde, that the *Lontes* resting in a Chamber not nere therunto may heare them. In these Prisons of condemned persons remaine

Seuere Iudice.

Lawes.

A Pillorie board.

Execution.

Strength of the Prisons.

Streets of Prisons.

some fiftene, other twentie yeares imprifoned, nor executed, for the loue of their honourable Friends that feeke to prolong their lues. Many of thefe Prifoners bee Shoemakers, and haue from the King a certayne allowance of Rice: fome of them worke for the Keeper, who fuffe-
 reth them to goe at libertie without fetters and boards, the better to worke. Howbeit when the *Louisa* calletth his Chiefe Rell, and with the Keeper vieweth them, they all weare their Lueries, that is, boards at their neckes, Ironed hand and foot. When any of thefe Prifoners dyeth, he is to be feene of the *Louisa* and *Nigaris*, brought out at a gate fo narrow, that there can but one be drawne out there at once. The Prifoner being brought forth, one of the afore-
 faid *Paribians*, ftriketh him thrice on the head with an Iron fledge, that done, hee is deliuered vnto his friends, if hee haue any, otherwife the King hireth men to carrie him to his buriall in the fields.

Courte for Debtors.

Thus Adulterers and Theeues are vfed, Such as bee imprifoned for Debt once knowne, lye there vntill it be paid. The *Taufis* or *Louisa* calletth them many times before him by the vertue of his Office, who vnderftanding the caufe wherefore they doe not pay their Debts, appointeth them a certaine time to doe it, within the compaffe whereof if they difcharge not their Debts being Debtors indeed, then they be whipped and condemned to perpetuall Imprifonment: if the Creditors be many, and one is to be paid before another, they doe, contrary to our manner, pay him firft, of whom they laft borrowed, and fo ordinarily the reft, in fuch fort that the firft Lender be the laft Recieuer. The fame order is kept in paying Legacies: the laft named, recieuieth his portion firft.

When I faw that fuch as be committed to Prifon for Theft, and Murder, were judged by the Court, I meant not them that were apprehended in the deed doing, for they need no tryall, al-
 though they be brought immediately before the *Taufis*, who out of hand giueth fentence. Other not taken fo openly, and doe need tryall, are the Malefactors put to execution once a yeare in the chiefe Cities, to keepe in awe the people: or condemned, doe remayne in Prifon, looking for their day. Theeues being taken, are carried to Prifon from one place to another in a Cheft vpon mens fhoulders, hired therefore by the King, the Cheft is fixe handfuls high, the Prifoner fitteth therein vpon a bench, the couer of the Cheft is two boards: amidft them both a Pillory-like hole, for the Prifoner his necke, there fitteth he with his head without the Cheft, and the reft of his bodie within, not able to moue or turne his head this way or that way, nor to plucke it in the necke. 10
 ties of nature he voideth at a hole in the bottome of the Cheft, the meate he eateth is put into his mouth by others. There abideth he day and night during his whole Iourney: if happily his Porters fumble, or the Cheft doe jogge, or be fet downe carelefly, it turneth to his great paines that fitteth therein, all fuch motions being vnto him hanging as it were. Thus were our compa-
 nions carried from *Chinea*, to feuen dayes Iourney, neuer taking any reft as afterward they told vs, and their greateft griefe was to lay by the way: as foone as they came being taken out of the Chefts, they were not at their feet, and two of them dyed fhortly after.

Supplies.

When we lay in prifon at *Fuguis*, we came many times abroad, and were brought to the Palaces of Noble men, to be feene of them and their wiues, for that they had neuer feene any *Perringall* before. Many things they asked vs of our Countrey, and our fiftions, and did write euery thing, for they be curious in nouelties aboue meafure. The Gentlemen fiew great curtefie vnto ftrangers, and fo did we finde at their hands, and becaufe that many times we were brought abroad into the Citie, fomewhat will I fay of fuch things as I did fee therein, being a gallant Citie, and chiefe in one of the thirteene fhires aforefaid. The Citie *Fuguis*, is a very great and mightily walled with fquare ftone both within and without, and as it may feeme by the breadth thereof, filled vp in the middle with Earth, laid ouer with Bricke, and covered with Tyle, and after the manner of Porches or Galleries, that one might dwell therein. The flayres they vie, are fo eafily made, that one may goe them vp and downe a Horfe-backe, as eftfoones they doe: the flayres are pauid, as alreadie it hath bene faid: there bee a great number of Mer-
 chants, euery one hath written in a great Table at his doore fuch things as hee hath to fell. In 10
 like manner euery Artizan painteth out his craft: the Market places be large, great abundance of all things there be to be fold. The Citie ftandeth vpon water, many ftreames runne through it, the banks pitched, and fo broad that they ferue for flreets to the Citie vfe. Ouer the ftreames are sundry Bridges both of Timber and Stone, that being made leuall with the flreets, hinder not the paffage of the Barges to and fro, the Channells are fo deepe. Where the ftreames come in and goe out of the Citie, be certayne Arches in the Wall, there goe in and out our *Paras*, that is a kind of Barges they haue, and this onely in the day time: at night thefe Arches are clofed vp with gates, fo that they flut vp all the gates of the Citie. The ftreames and Barges doe embellifh much the Citie, and make it as it were to feeme another *Venice*. The buildings are euen, well made, high not lofted, except it be fome wherein Merchandize is fold. It is a World to fee how great thefe Citie are, and the caufe is, for that the houfes are built euen as I haue faid, and doe take a great deale of roome. One thing we faw in this Citie that made vs all to wonder, and is worthy to be noted: Namely, ouer a Porch at the coming into one of the aforefaid foure Houfes, the which the King hath in euery thure for his Gouernours as I haue before faid, ftan.

Paras.

Another ychte.

ftandeth a Towre built vpon foure Pillars, each one whereof is but one ftone, each one foure handfuls or fpanns long: in breadth or compaffe twelue, as many of vs did meafure them. Befides this, their greateffe fuch in one piece, that it might feeme impoffible to worke them: they bee moreover couered, and in colour, length, and breath fo like, that the one nothing difcreeth from the other.

Tower ftanding on generall Pillars, each of one ftone.

Wee are wont to call this Countrey *China*, and the people *Chineans*, but as long as we were Prifoners, not hearing amongft them at any time that name, I determined to learne how they were called: and asked fometime by them thereof, for that they vnderftood vs not when we called them *Chineans*, I anfwered them, that all the Inhabitants of *India* named them *Chineans*, wherefore I prayed them that they would tell me, for what occafion they are fo called, whither peraduenture any Citie of theirs bare that name. Herunto they alwayes anfwered me, to haue no fuch name, nor euer to haue had. Then did I afke them what name the whole Countrey beareth, and what they would answer being asked of other Nations what Countrey-men they were? It was told me, that of ancient time in this Countrey had bene many Kings, and though prefently it were all vnder one, each Kingdome neuertheleffe enioyed that name it firft had, thefe Kingdomes are the Prouinces I fpeake of before. In conclusion, they faid, that the whole Countrey is called *Tamen*, and the Inhabitants *Tamegues*, fo that this name *China* or *Chineans*, is not heard of in that Countrey. I doe thinke that the neareneffe of another Prouince thereabout called *Cochinchina*, and the inhabitants thereof *Cochindefes*, firft difcouered before that *China* was, lying not farr from *Malacca*, did giue occafion both to the one Nation and to the other of that name *Chineans*, as alfo the whole Countrey to be named *China*. But their proper name is that aforefaid.

Name of China

Tamen the proper name of China. Ta Ling-ni, the name of the Poles name of Man. Si, the name of the West.

I haue heard moreover, that in the Citie *Nangum*, remayneth a Table of gold, and in it written a Kings name, as a memorie of that reidence the Kings were wont to keepe there. This table ftandeth in a great Palace, couered alwayes, except it bee in fome of their feftiuall dayes, at what time they are wont to let it bee feene: couered neuertheleffe as it is, all the Nobilitie of the Citie goeth of dutie to doe it euery day reuerence. The like is done in the head Cities of all the other Shires, in the Palaces of the *Ponchaffins*, wherein thefe aforefaid tables doe ftand with the Kings name written in them, although no reuerence bee done thereunto but in follemne Fealts.

Tables reuerenced.

I haue likewife vnderftood that the Citie *Pachin*, where the King maketh his abode, is fo great, that to goe from one fide to the other, befides the Suburbs, (which are greater then the Citie it felfe) it requirith one whole day a horfebacke, going hackney pace. In the Suburbs bee many wealthy Merchants of all forts. They told me furthermore, that it was Moted about, and in the Moter great ftore of Filh, whereof the King maketh great gynes. It was alfo told me, that the King of *China* had no King to wage battell withall, besides the *Tartars*, with whom hee had concluded a peace more then fourecore yeeres agoe.

Their enemies

There bee Hofpitals in all their Cities alwayes full of people, we neuer faw any poore bodie beg. We therefore asked the caufe of this: anfwered it was, that in euery Citie there is a great circuit, wherein bee many houfes for poore people, for Blinde, Lame, Old folke, not able to trauell for age, nor hauing any other meanes to lue. Thefe folke haue in the aforefaid houfes, euery plenty of Rice during their lues, but nothing elfe. Such as bee recieued into thefe houfes, come in after this manner. When one is ficke, blinde, or lame, hee maketh a fupplication to the *Ponchaffins*, and prouing that to bee true he writeth, hee remaineth in the aforefaid great lodging as long as hee lieth: befides this, they keepe in thefe places Swine and Hennes, whereby the poore be releued without going a begging.

I fay before that *China* was full of Riuers, but now I minde to confirme the fame anew: for the farther we went into the Countrey, the greater we found the riuers. Sometimes we were fo farre off from the Sea, that where wee came no Sea-filh had bene feene, and Salt was there very deare, of fresh-water Filh wee was there great abundance, and that fh very good: they keepe it good after this manner, Where the Riuers doe meete, and fo poffe into the Sea, there lieth great ftore of Boates, fpecially where no falt-water cometh, and that in March and Aprill. Thefe Boates are fo many that it feemeth wonderfull, neither ferue they for other then to take fmall filh. By the riuers fides they make leyres of fine and frong Nets, that lye three handfuls vnder water, and one about, to keepe and nouriſh their Filh in, vntill fuch time as other fhers doe come with Boates, bringing for that purpofe certaine great Chieffes lyned with paper, able to hold water, wherein they carrie their filh in euery Citie, Towne, and Village, where they paffe, vnto the people as they need it: moſt of them haue Net-leyres to keepe Filh in alwayes for their prouifion. Where the greater Boates cannot paffe any farther forward, they kee leffer, and becaufe the whole Countrey is very well watered, there is fo great plenty of diuers forts of Filh, that it is wonderfull to fee: affuredly, wee were amazed to behold the manner of their prouifion. Their Filh is chiefly nouriſhed with the dung of Bueſe and Oxen, that greatly fatteth it. Although I fayd their filhing to bee in March and April, at

Store of riuers

Plentie of filh, and their keeping of them.

He speaketh of
Fugien there
Quanti where
Porcelaine is
made.

At the Church,
Great River
and Boates

Bridge of 112
Barges.

3000 Barges.

Parai, Barges
with faire
journes.

at what time we saw them doe it, neuertheless they told vs that they fished at all times, for that vially they doe feed on Fish, wherefore it behooueth them to make their provision continually.

When we had passed *Fugien*, we went into *Quatin-Shire*, where the fine Clay vessel is made, as I say before: and we came to a Cite, the one side whereof is built vpon the hill, whereby passeth a River navigable: there we took Boate, and went by water toward the Sea: on each side of the River we found many Cities, Townes, and Villages, wherein we saw great store of Merchandise, but specially of fine clay: there did we land by the way to buy victuals and other necessities. Going downe this river Southward, we were glad that we drew neere vnto a warmer Country, from whence we had bene farre distant: this Country we passed through in eight dayes, for our journey lay downe the streame. Before that I doe say any thing of that Shire we came into, I will first speake of the great Cite of *Quatin*, wherein alwayes remaineth a *Tutan*, that is a Gouernour, as you haue seene, though some *Tutans* doe gouerne two or three Shires.

That *Tutan* that was condemned for our cause, of whom I spake before, was borne in this Country, but hee gouerned *Fugien-Shire*: nothing it auayled him to bee so great an Officer. This Country is so great, that in many places where we went, there had bene as yet no talk of death, although he were executed a whole yeere before. At the Cite *Quatin* whither we came the river was so great that it seemed a sea, though it were so little where we took water, that we needed small Boates. One day about nine of the clocke, beginning to goe near the walls with the streame, we came at noone to a bridge made of many Barges, ouer-linked all together with two mighty chaynes. There layed that boat was late, but we saw not one goe either vp thereon, or downe, except two *Lontas* that about the going downe of the Sunne, came and let them downe there, the one in one side, the other on the other side. Then was the bridge opened in many places, and Barges both great and small to the number of sixe hundred began to passe: those that went vp the streame, at one place, such as came downe, at another. When all had thus shot the Bridge, then was it shut vp againe. We heard say that euery day they take this order in all principall places of Merchandise, for paying of the customs vnto the King, specially for Salt, whereof the greatest reuenues are made that the King hath in this Country. The passages of the bridge where it is opened, bee so neere the shore, that no-thing can passe without touching the same. To stay the Barges at their pleasure, that they goe no farther forward, are vied certaine yron instruments. The Bridge consisteth of one hundred and ewelue Barges, there layed we vntill the Evening that they were opened, lothfomly oppressed by the multitude of people that came to see vs, so many in number, that we were enforced to goe aside from the bank vntill such time as the bridge was opened: howbeit, wee were neuertheless thronged about with many Boates full of people. And though in other Cities and places where we went, the people came so importunate vpon vs, that it was needfull to withdraw our felous: yet wee were here much more molested for the number of people, and this bridge, the principall way out of the Cite vnto another place so well inhabited, that where it was called about, it might bee compared to the Cite. When we had shot the bridge, we kept along the Cite vntill that it was night, then met we with another river that ioined with this, we rowed vp that by the walls, vntill we came to another bridge gallantly made of Barges, but lesser a great deal then that other bridge ouer the greater streame: here it layed we that night, and other two days with more quiet, being out of the pease of the people. These rivers doe meete without at one corner-point of the Cite. In either of them were so many Barges great and small, that we all thought them at the least to be about three thousand: the greater number thereof was in the lesser river, where we were. Amongst the rest, here lay certaine greater vessels, called in their language *Parai*, that serue for the *Tutan*, when hee taketh his voyage by other rivers that ioine with this, towards *Pachin*, where the King maketh his abode. Deuotous to see those *Parai* we got into some of them, where we found some chambers set forth with gilded beds very richly, so other furnished with tables and feates, and all other things so neate and in perfection, that it was wonderful.

Quatin-Shire, as farre as I can perceiue, lyeth vpon the South. On that side we kept at our first entrie threinto, travelling not farre from the high mountaines we saw there. Asking what people dwelleth beyond those mountaines, it was told me that they bee *Therues*, and men of a strange language. And because that vnto sundry places neere this River, the mountaines doe approach, whence the people issuing downe, doe many times great harme, this order is taken at the entrie into *Quatin-Shire*. To guard this River whereon continually goe to and fro *Parai* great and small fraught with Salt, Fish powdered with pepper, and other necessities for that Country: they doe lay in diuers places certaine *Parai*, and great Barges armed, wherein watch and ward is kept day and night in both sides of the River, for the safetie of the passage, and securitie of such *Parai* as doe remayne there, though the traouellers neuer goe but many in company. In euery rode there bee at the least thirtie, in some two hundred men, as the passage requirith.

This

This guard is kept vially, vntill you come to the Cite *Oncha*, where continually the *Tutan* of this Shire, and eke of *Cantan*, maketh his abode. From that Cite upward, where the river waxeth more narrow, and the passage more dangerous, there be alwayes armed one hundred and thirtie *Parai*, to accompany other vessels fraught with merchandise, and all this at the Kings charges. This seemed vnto me one of the strangest things I did see in this Country.

When we lay at *Fugien*, we did see certaine *Moors*, who knewe in little of their self, that they could say nothing else, but that *Mahomet* was a *Moore*, my father was a *Moore*, and I am a *Moore*, with some other words of their *Idians*, whereof shall, in abstinence from Swines flesh, they lye vntill the Doull take them all. This when I saw, and being sure, that in many *Chinsh* Cities the reliques of *Mahomet* are kept, as I saue as wee came to the Cite where the fellows here, I informed my selfe of them, and learned the truth. Tiele *Moors*, as they told me, in times past came in great Ships fraught with merchandise from *Pachin* ward, to a Port granted vnto them by the King, as hee is wont to all them that traffike into this Country, where they being arrived at a little Towne standing in the hauens mouth, in time conuered vnto their selfe the greatest *Lontas* there. When that *Lontas* with all his family was become *Moorish*, the rest began likewise to doe the same. In this part of *China* the people bee at liberty, euery one to worships and follow what him liketh best. Wherefore no bodie took heed thereto, vntill such time as the *Moors* perceiving that many followed them in superstition, and that the *Lontas* fauoured them, they began to forbid wholly the eating of Swines-flesh. But all this Country men and women, choosing rather to forsake Father and Mother, then cease off eating of Purke, by no means would yeeld to that proclamation. For besides the great desire they haue to eat that kind of meat, many of them did lye thereby: and therefore the people complained vnto the Magistrates, accusing the *Moors* of a conspiracy pretended betwixt them and the *Lontas*, against their King. In this Country, as no suspicion, nor not one trayterous word is long borne withall: so was the King speedily aduerted thereof, who gave commandment out of hand that the aforesaid *Lontas* should bee put to death, and with him the *Moors* of most importance: the other to be layd first in Prison, and afterward to be sent abroad into certaine Cities, whete they remayned perperuall flues vnto the King. To this Cite came by hap men and women therefore and odde, who at that daye brought to five men and foure women, for it is now twentie yeeres agoe this happened. Their offspring passeth the number of two hundred, and they in this Cite, as the rest in other Cities, whither they were sent, haue their *Majesties*, whereunto all resort euery Friday to keepe their Holiday. But, as I thinke, that will no longer endure, then whiles they doe lye, that came from thence, for their posteritie is so confused, that they haue nothing of a *Moore* in them, but abstinence from Swines-flesh, and yet many of them doe eate thereof priuily. They tell me that their native Country hath name *Cumarian*, a firme land, wherein bee many Kings, and the *Indis* Country will knowe vnto them. It may be so, for as long as they did see our seruants (our seruants were *Franciscans*) they iudged them to bee *Indians*: many of their words founded vpon the *Perfekte* tongue, but none of vs could vnderstand them. I asked them, whither they conuered any of the *Chinsh* Nation vnto their selfe: they answered me, that with much ado, they conuered the women with whom they doe marrie, and yeeld me no other cause thereof, but the difficultie they finde in them to bee brought from eating Swines-flesh, and drinking of Wine. I haue learned more oer, that the Sea whereby the *Moors* that came to *China* were wont to trauell, is a very great gulf, that filleth into this Country of the *Moors*, leauing on the other side all the Country of *China*, and land because that tiele *Moors*, the which wee haue seene, bee rather browne then white, whereby they shew themselves come from some warmer Country then *China* is, neere to *Pachin*, where the Rivers are frozen in the winter for cold, and many of them so vehemently, that Carts may passe oer them.

50 Wee did see in this Cite many *Tartars*, *Mogores*, *Bremes*, and *Layoes*, both men and women. The *Tartars* are men very white, good horse-men, and Archers, confining with *China* on that side where *Pachin* standeth, separated from thence by great Mountaines that are betwixt these Kingdomes. Ouer them be certaine wayes to passe, and for both sides, Cables continually kept with Soldiers: in time past, the *Tartars* were wont alwayes to haue wres with the *Chineans*, but these fourecore yeeres past they were quiet, vntill the second yeere of our Imprisonment.

The *Mogores* lye in like manner white, and Heathen wee are aduerted that of one side they border vpon these *Tartars*, and confine with the *Perfekte* *Tartars* on the other side, whereof wee saw in them some tokens, as their manner of cloathes, and that kinde of Hat the *Saracens* doe wear. The *Moors* affirmed, that where the King lye, there bee many *Tartars* and *Mogores*, but I thought not *China* certainely Bleweth of great value.

As to the *Bremes*, which I haue in this Cite *Chinsh* certaine men and women, amongst whom, there was one that came not long since, hauing as yet but hairetyed vp after the *Per-*

Moors.

That is their Temple.

It seemeth they came by thence from the Calliculca

Ali, Andrus, Tartars.

Monte Visum.

Mogor.

Bremes.

Gues

Southward
from Church
to the Sea.Auntie,
Chenchi.

gues falshon: this woman, and other moe with whom a blacke *Moor* damofell in our company had conference, and did vnderstand them well enough, had dwelt in *Peghu*. This new come woman, imagining that wee meant to make our abode in that Citie, bid vs to bee of good comfort, for that her Country was not distant from thence about fure dayes journey, and that out of her Country, there lay a high way for vs home into our owne. Being asked the way, shee answered that the first three dayes the way lyeth our certaine great mountains and wildernesse, afterward people to bee met withall againe. Thence two dayes journey more to the *Bremes* Country. Wherefore I doe conclude, that *Chenchi* is one of the confines of this Kingdome, separated by certaine huge Mountaines, as is hath bene already sayd, that lye out towards the South. In the residue of these mountaines standeth the Prouince *Sian*, the *Leayn* Country, *Cambala*, *Chimapa*, and *Cochinchina*.

This Citie, chiefe of other thirtene, is situated in a pleasant Playne, abounding in things necessarye, Sea-fish onely excepted, for it standeth farre from the Sea: of fresh Fish so much more, that the Market-places are neuer emptye. The walls of this Citie are very strong and high: one day did I see the *Louisa* thereof goe vpon the walls, to take the view thereof, borne in their scales I spake of before, accompanied with a troupe of Horse-men, that went two and two: It was told me they might haue gone three and three. Wee haue seene moreover, that within this aforesaid Citie the King hath more than a thousand of his kindred lodged in great Palaces, in diuers parts of the Citie: their gates bee red, and the entrie into their houses, that they may be knowne, for that is the Kings colour. These Gentlemen, according to their neareness in blood vnto the King, as soone as they bee married, receiue their place in Honour: this place neither encreaseth nor diminisheth in any respect, as long as the King liueth, the King appointeth them their Wiues and Familie, allowing them by the month all things necessarye abundantly, as hee doth to his Gouernours of Shires and Cities, howbeit, not one of these hath as long as hee liueth, any charge or government at all. They giue themselues eating and drinking, and bee for the most part burley men of bodie, insomuch that espying any one of them, whom wee had not seene before, wee might know him to bee the Kings Cousin. They bee neuertheless very pleasant, courteous, and fayre conditioned: neither did wee finde, all the time we were in that Citie, so much honour and good entertainment any where, as at their hands. They bid vs to their houses, to eate and drinke, and when they found vs not, or wee were not willing to goe with them, they bid our seruants, and slaues, causing them to sit downe with the first. Notwithstanding the good lodging these Gentlemen haue so commodious that they want nothing, yet are they in this bondage, that during life they neuer goe abroad. The cause, as I did vnderstand, wherefore the King, so vsueth his Cousins, is that none of them at any time may rebell against him: and thus bee shutteth them vp in three or foure other Cities. Most of them can play on the Lute: and to make that kinde of pastime peculiar vnto them onely, all other in the Cities where they doe liue, bee forbidden that Instrument, the Curtizans and blinde folke onely excepted, who bee Musicians, and can play.

No Lordsbur
of the blood
royall.

This King furthermore, for the greater securitie of his Realme, and the auoyding of tumults, leteeth not one in all his Country to bee called *Lord*, except hee be of his blood. Many great Estates and Gouernours there be, that during their office are lodged Lord-like, and doe beare the port of mightie Princes: but they bee so many times displaced, and other placed anew, that they haue not the while to become corrupt. True it is, that during their Office they be well provided for, as afterward, also lodged at the Kings charges, and in pension as long as they liue, payed them monetly in the Cities where they dwell, by certaine officers appointed for that purpose. The King then is a Lord onely, not one besides him as you haue seene, except it bee such as be of his blood. A Nephew likewise of the King, the Kings Sisters sonne, lyeth continually within the walls of the Citie, in a strong Palace built. Cattle-wife, euen as his other Cousins doe, remayning alwayes within doores, serued by Euniches, neuer dealing with any matters. Their festiual dayes, new Moones, and full Moones, the Magistrates make great banquets, and so doe such as bee of the Kings blood. The King, his Nephew, hath name *Tan-fu*, his Palace is walled about, the wall is not high, but foure square, and in circuit nothing inferior to the walls of *Gos*, the out-side is painted red, in euery square a Gate, and ouer each gate a Tower, made of timber excellently well wrought: before the principall Gate of the toure, that openeth into the high-street, no *Louisa*, bee he neuer so great, may passe on horse-backe, or carried in his feate. Amidst this quadrangle, standeth the Palace where that Gentleman lyeth, doubtlesse, worth the sight, although wee came not in to see it. By report the roofes of the towers and house, are glazed greene, the greater part of the Quadrangle set with fange Trees, as Oakes, Chestnuts, Cypresses, Pine-apples, Cedars, and other such like that wee doe want, after the manner of a Wood, wherein are kept Stagges, Oxen, and other beafts, for that Lord his recreation neuer going abroad, as I haue said.

One preheminnence this Citie hath aboue the rest where wee haue bene, and it of right as we doe thinke, that besides the multitude of Market-places, wherein all things are to bee sold,

fold, though euery threete continually are cryed all things necessarye, as Fleth of all sorts, fresh Fish, Herbes, Oyle, Vinegar, Meale, Rice, *In summa*, all things to plentifully, that many houses need no seruants, euery thing being brought to their doores. Most part of the Merchants remayne in the Suburbs, for that the Cities are shut vp euery night, as I haue sayd. The Merchants therefore, the better to attend their businesse, doe chioose rather to make their abode without in the Suburbs, then within the Citie. I haue seene in this Riuer a pretie kinde of Fishing, not to bee omitted in my opinion, and therefore will I set it downe. The King hath in many riuers good store of Barges full of Sea-crowes, that breed, are red, and doe dye therein, in certaine Cages, allowed monetly a certaine prouision of Rice. These Barges the King bestoweth vpon his greatest Magistrates, giuing to some two, to some three of them, as hee thinketh good, to Fish therewithall after this manner. At the houre appointed to Fish, all the Barges are brought together in a circle, where the Riuer is shallow, and the Crowes tyed together vnder the wings, are let leape downe into the water, some vnder, some above, worth the looking vpon: each one as hee hath filled his bagges, goeth to his owne Barge and emptieth it, which done, hee returneth to fish againe. Thus hauing taken good store of Fish, they set the Crowes at libertie, and doe suffer them to fish for their owne pleasure. There were in that Citie, where I was, twentie Barges at the least, of these aforesaid Crowes. I went almost euery day to see them, yet could I neuer bee thoroughly satisfied to see so strange a kinde of Fishing.

Fishing with
Cormorants,
they tye their
gorges, that
they swallow
up their prey.
One hath pre-
sented this in
London.



PEREGRINATIONS,
VOYAGES, DISCOVERIES,
OF CHINA, TARTARIA, RUSSIA,
AND OTHER THE NORTH AND
EAST PARTS OF THE WORLD,

By English-men, and others.

THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

*The beginning of English Discoveries towards the North, and North-east,
by Sir HUGH WILLOUGHBY, RICHARD CHANCELLOR,
and others; of the Muscovie Trade, as also Voyages by Russia, over the Caspian Sea, and thorow
divers Regions of Tartaria.*

§. I.

*The first Voyage for Discoverie with three ships, set forth vnder the charge of
Sir HUGH WILLOUGHBY Knight, in which he died; and
Moscovia was discovered by Capitaine
CHANCELLOR.*



IN the yeere of our Lord 1553. the seventh of the Raigne of King Edward the sixth famous memorie, Sebastian Cabota was Gouverneur of the Myllerie and Companie of the Merchants Adventurers for the discoverie of Regions, Dominions, Islands, and places unknowne. Certaine intr. sions were agreed on by him and the said Companie, subscribed by Master Cabota, the ninth of May: the Kings Letters also procured unto remote Princes in divers languages, and a fleet of three Ships set forth at that time vnder the command of Sir Hugh Willoughby Knight, Capitaine generall. which went in the *Bona Esperanza* Admirall, a ship of an hundred and twenty tunnes, having with her a Pinnace and a Boat: *William Gesserow* was Master of the said ship. The *Edward Bonaventure* was of an hundred and sixty tunnes, and had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, in which went *Richard Chancellor*, Capitaine and Pilot Maier of the fleet, and *Stephen Burrough* Master. The *Bona Confidentia* of ninety tunnes, had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, of which *Cornelius Dufworth* was Master.

See Cabota.

See the particulars in Master Richard Cabots printed Voyages, Tom. 1.

The first Voyage.
* This discovery was found written in the *Spagna* which wintered a *Stragor*, where all the Company were frozen to death.
Roß Islands.

Stanfrew Harbour.
Lofoot.

August.

Spagna in 72 degrees.

The Edward Job, or rather due two left, and the Edward found and entered the Bay of Saint Nicola.

W. Loughby his Land, in 72 degrees.

The Captains and Masters were sworn to doe their true intent, and the ships provided of necessaries set forth on the tenth of May, 1553, for the discovery of *Calisy*, and diuers other Regions, Dominions, Ilands, and places vnkowne. The fourteenth of July they discovered Land Eastward, and went on shore with their Pinnace, and found thirty little houses, the Inhabitants fled. The Land was full of little Ilands, called as they after learned, *Ægeland* * and *Halgeland*, in 66. degrees. The distance betweene *Orfordness* and *Ægeland* two hundred and fifty leagues. Then we layed from thence twelve leagues North-west, and found many other Ilands, and there came to anchor the nineteenth day, and manned our Pinnace, and went on the Ilands, and found people mowing and making of Hay, which came to the shore and welcomed vs. In which place were an innumerable sort of Ilands, which were called the Isles of *Roß*, being vnder the Dominion of the King of *Denmarke*: which place was in latitude 66. degrees and 30. minutes. The winde being contrarie, we remained there three dayes, and there was an innumerable sort of Fowles of diuers kindes, of which we tooke very many.

The two and twentieth day, the winde coming faire, we departed from *Roß*, flying vnto the Land, which was still East off vs: then went forth our Pinnace to leske harbour, and found many good harbours, of the which we entred into one with our ships, which was called *Stanfrew*, and the Land being Ilands, were called *Lofoot*, or *Lofot*, which were plentifully inhabited, and very gentle people, being allover the King of *Denmarke*: but we could not learne how faire it was from the mayne Land: and we remained there vntill the twentieth day, 20 being in latitude 68. degrees, and from the foresaid *Roß* about thirtie leagues North North-east.

The thirtieth day of July about none, we weighed our anchors, and went on to the Sea, and layed along these Ilands North North-east, keeping the Land still in sight vntill the second of August: then hailing in close aboard the Land, to the intent to know what Land it was, there came a Skiffe of the Iland aboard of vs, of whom we asked many questions, who showed vnto vs, that the Iland was called *Seynam*, which is the latitude of twenty degrees, and from there but only dryd fish, and Trane-ole. Then we being purposed to goe vnto *Finmarke*, enquired of him, if we might haue a Pilot to bring vs to *Finmarke*, and he said, that if we could beare any should haue a good Harbour, and on the next day a Pilot to bring vs to *Finmarke*, vnto the Ward-house, which is the strongest Hol in *Finmarke*, and most referred to by report. But when he would haue entred into an Harbour, the Land being very high on every side, there came thick flaxes of wind and terrible whirle-winds, that we were not able to beare in, but by violence were constrained to take the sea againe, our Pinnace being vnshipt: we failed North and by East, the wind encreasing so fore, that we were not able to beare any layle, but tooke them in, and lay adrift, to the end to let the storme ouer-passe. And that night by violence of winde, and lay adrift, we were not able to keepe together within sight, and then about midnight we lost our Pinnace, which was a discomfort vnto vs. As soone as it was day, and the fogge ouer-cast, we looked about, and at the last we descried one of our ships to lee-ward off vs: then we fired an hallicocke of our fore-layle, and bare roome with her, which was the *Confidence*, but the *Edward* we could not see. Then she saw something abating, we and the *Confidence* layed off our layles the fourth day, laying North-east and by North, to the end to fall with the Ward-house, as we did consule to doe before, in case we should part companie. Thus running North-east and by North, and North-east fifty leagues, then we founde, and had one hundred and sixty fathoms, whereby we thought to be faire from Land, and perceived that the Land lay not as the Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our course the sixth day, and layed South-east and by South, eight and forty leagues, thinking thereby to finde the Ward-house.

The eighth day much winde rising at the West North-west, we not knowing how the coast lay, brooke our layles, and lay adrift, where founde and found one hundred and sixty fathoms as before. The ninth day, the winde bearing to the South South-east, we layed North-east five and twenty leagues. The tenth day we founde, and could get no ground, neither yet could see any Land, whereto we wondered: then the winde coming at the North-east, we ran South-east about eight and forty leagues. The eleventh day the winde being at South, we founde and found forty fathoms, and faire sand. The twelfth day, the winde being at South anby East, we lay with our layle East, and East anby North thirty leagues.

The fourteenth day early in the morning we descried Land, which Land we bare withall, huying out our Boat to discover what Land it might be: but the Boat could not come to Land, the water was so low, where was very much Ice-alee, but there was no similitude of habitation, and the Land luth from *Seynam* East and by North, one hundred and sixty leagues, being in latitude 72. degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward, the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seventeenth dayes.

The eighteenth day, the winde coming at the North-east, and the *Confidence* being troubled with bilge water, and flooked, we thought it good to leake hartout for her rest: then we bare roome the eighteenth day South South-east, about twenty leagues. The one

and twentieth day we founde, and found ten fathoms, after that we founde againe, and found but seven fathoms, to shallower and shallower water, and yet could see no Land, whereto we marvelled greatly: to auoid this danger, we bare roome into the Sea all that night North-west and by West.

The next day we founde, and had twenty fathoms, then shaped our course, and ranne West South-west vntill the three and twentieth day: then we descried lowe Land, vnto which we bare as high as we could, and it appeared vnto vs vnhabitable. Then we plyed Westward along by that Land, which lieth West South-west, and East North-east, and much winde blowing at the West, we laded into the Sea North and by East thirtie leagues. Then the winde coming North-west, we layed West North-west: after that, the winde bearing to the about the North-west, we layed West South-west, about fourtne leagues, and then descried Land, and bare in with it, being the eight and twentieth day, finding shallow water, and bare in till we came to three fathom, then perceiving it to be shallow water, and also seeing drie sands, we haled out againe North-east along that Land, vntill we came to the point thereof. That Land turning to the Westward, we ranne along sixtne leagues North-west: then coming into a faire Bay, we went on Land with our Boat, which place was vnhabited, but yet it appeared vnto vs that the people had beene there, by crosses, and other signs: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

The fourth day of September we lost sight of Land, by reason of contrarie windes, and the September. eighth day we descried Land againe. Within two dayes after we lost the sight of it: then running West and by South about thirtie leagues, we gat the sight of Land againe, and bare in with it vntill night: then perceiving it to be a lee shore, we gat vs into the Sea, to the end to haue Sea roome. The twentieth of September, we laded to the shore-ward againe, hailing then indifferent winde and weather: then being nere vnto the shore, and the tide almost spent, we came to an anchor in thirtie fathoms water. The thirteenth day we came along the coast, which lay North-west and by West, and South-east and by East. The fourteenth day we came to an anchor within two leagues off the shore, hailing sixtie fathoms. There we went ashore with our Boat, and found two or three good Harbours, the Land being rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The fifteenth day we ran fill along the coast vntill the founteenth day: then the winde being contrarie vnto vs, we thought it best to returne vnto the Harbour which we had found before, and so we bare roome with the same, whereto we could not accomplish our desire that day. The next day being the eighteenth, we entred into the Haven, and there came to an anchor at six fathoms. This Haven runneth into the Mayne about two leagues, and is in breadth half a league, wherein were very many Seale-fishes, and other great fishes, and In this Haven vpon the Mayne we saw Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and diuers fatter beasts, as * *Golinos*, * *Ours*, *Elans*, and such other which were to be knowne, and also wonderful. This remaining in this Haven the space of a weeke, during the yeare faire spent, and also very euill weather, as Frost, Snow, and Hayle, as though it had beene the deape of Winter, we thought best to winter there. Wherefore we sent out three men South South-west, to search if they could finde people, who went three dayes journey, but could finde none: after that, we sent other three Westward four dayes journey, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we three men South-east three dayes journey, who in like sort returned without finding of people, or any similitude of habitation.

The River or Haven wherein Sir *Hugh Willoughby* with the companie of his two ships perished for cold, is called *Arzina* in Lapland, neere vnto *Keger*. But it appeareth by a Will found in a ship that Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, and most of the companie were alive in January, 1554.

Here endeth Sir Hugh Willoughby his note, which was written with his owne hand.

A Letter of RICHARD CHANCELLOR, written to his Vncle Master CHRISTOPHER FROTHINGHAM, touching his discoverye of *Moscouia*.

Forasmuch as it is meet and necessarie for all those that minde to take in hand the trauell into strange Countries, to endeavour themselves not only to vnderstand the orders, commodities, and fruitfulness thereof, but also to apply them to the setting forth of the same, whereby it may encourage others to the like trauell: therefore haue I now thought good to make a briefe rehearsal of the order of this my trauell in *Rutia*, and *Mutcouia*, and other Countries thereto adioyning, because it was my chance to fall with the North parts of *Rutia*, before I came towards *Moscouia*, I will partly declare my knowledge therein. *Rutia* is very plentiful both of Land and People, and also wealthie for such commodities as the Trans Oyle, the most whereof is made by a River called *Diuna*. They make it in other places, but not so much as there. They haue also a great trade in fetching of salt water. To the North part of that Country are the places where they haue their *Furres*, as *Sables*, *Martens*, greifles *Beuers*, *Foxes* white, blacke, and red, *Minkes*, *Ermines*, *Mismur*, and *Harts*. There are also a fether teech, which fish is called

Note. *called a Moske. The takers thereof dwell in a place called Posselora, which bring them upon Mats to Lamps to sell, and from Lamps carry them to a place called Colmogro, where the high Market is holden on Saint Nicolas day. To the West of Colmogro there is a place called Gratanoou, in our language Nougordou, where much fine Flaxe and Hempe groweth, and also much Wax and Honey. The Dutch Merchants have a Staple-house there. There is also a great store of Hides, and at a place called Plesko: and thereabout is great store of Flaxe, Hempe, Wax, Honie, and that Towne is from Colmogro one hundred and twentie miles.*

Poligda. There is a place called Vologda; the commodities whereof are Tallow, Wax, and Flaxe: but not so great plenty as in Gatouou. From Vologda to Colmogro there runneth a River called Duna, and from thence it falleth into the Sea. Colmogro serveth Gratanoou, Vologda, and the Moske, with all the Country thereabout with Salt and salt Fish. From Vologda to Ierellia is two hundred miles, to which Towne is very great. The commodities thereof are Hides, and Tallow, and Corne in great plenty, and some Wax, but not so plentiful as in other places.

100 Miles. The Moske is from Ierellia two hundred miles. The Country betwixt them is very well replenished with small Villages, which are so well filled with people, that it is wonder to see them: the ground is well stored with Corne, which they carry to the Citie of Moske in such abundance that it is wonder to see it. You shall meet in morning seven or eight hundred Sleas coming or going thither, that carry Corne, and some carrie fish. You shall have hence that carry Corne to the Moske, and some that carry Corne from thence, that at the least dwell a thousand miles off: and all their carriage is on Sleas. Those which come so farre dwell in the North parts of the Dukes Dominions: where the cold will suffer no Corne to grow, it is so extreme. They bring thither Fishes, Fowles, and Beasts skinned. In those parts they have but small store of Cattell.

Moske. The Moske is fiftye great: I take the whole Towne to be greater then London with the Suburbs: but it is very rude, and standeth without all order. There houses are all of timber very dangerous for fire. There is a few Castles, the walls whereof are of brick, and very high: they say they are eighteen fathoms thick, but I do not believe it: it doth not so seeme; notwithstanding, I do not certainly know it: for no stranger may come to view it. The one side is ditched, and on the other side runneth a River, called Mulkua, which runneth into Tartarie, and so into the Sea, called Mare Caspium: and on the North side is a bafe Towne, the which hath also a Brick wall about it, and so it is togeth with the Castle wall. The Emperor dwells in the Castle, whereon are nine faine Churches, and thereon are religious men. Also there is a Metropolitan with divers Bishops. I will not stand in description of their buildings, nor of the strength thereof, because we have better in all points in England. They be well furnished with Ordnance of all sorts.

The Castle. The Emperours or Dukes house neither in building nor in the outward shew, nor yet within the house is so sumptuous as I have scene. It is very lowe built in eight square, much like the old building of England, with small windows, and so in other points.

He cometh before the Duke. New to declare my coming before his Maiestie: After I had remained twelue dayes, the Secretarie which hath the bearing of strangers did send for mee, advertising me that the Duke pleased me to have me to come before his Maiestie, with the King my Masters Letters: whereof I was right glad, and so I came mine attendance. And when the Duke was in his place appointed, the Interpreter came for mee into the inner Chamber, where sate one hundred or more Gentlemen, all in cloth of Gold very sumptuous, and from thence I came into the Counsel-chamber, where sate the Duke himselfe, with his Nobles, which were a faine company: they sate round about the Chamber on high, yet so that he himselfe sate much higher then any of his Nobles: in a Chair of gold, and in a long garment of beaten Gold, with an Imperial Crowne upon his head, and a Staffe of Gold and Gold in his right hand, and his other hand bafte lay upon his Chaire. The Chancellour stood up with the Secretarie before the Duke. After my dutie done, and my Letter delivered, he bade me welcome, and enquired of me the health of the King my Master, and I answered, that he was in good health at my departure from his Court, and that my trust was, that he was now in the same. Upon the which he bade me to dinner. The Chancellour presented my Present upon his Grace bare-headed (for before they were all covered) and when his Grace so bad received my Letter, I was required to depart: for I had charge not to stay to the Duke, but when he should see mee. So I departed unto the Secretaries Chamber, where I remained two houres, and then I was sent for againe unto another Place, which is called, The golden Palace, but I saw no cause why it should be so called; for I have scene many fairer then it in all points: and so I came into the Hall, which was small and not great as is the Kings Maiesties of England, and the Table was covered with a Table-cloth: and the Marshall sate at the end of the Table with a little white rool in his hand, which Boord was full of vessels of Gold: and on the other side of the Hall did stand a faine Cupboard of Plate.

Dine with the Duke. From thence I came into the dining Chamber, where the Duke himselfe sate at the Table without Cloth of estate, in a Gowne of Silver, with a Crowne Imperiall upon his head, he sate in a Chaire without cloth high: there sate one nere him by a great way. There were long tables set round about the chamber, which were full fit with such as the Duke had at dinner: they were all in velvet. All the places where the tables stood were higher by two steps then the rest of the house. In the middle of the chamber stood a Table or Cupboard to set Plate on: which Boord full of Cups of Gold: and amongst all the

rest there stood four marvellous great Pots or Crudenes as they call them, of Gold and Silver: I think they were a good yard and a halfe high. By the Cupboard stood two Gentlemen with Napkins on their shoulders, and in their hands each of them had a Cup of Gold set with Pearles and Precious stones. And where the Duke was drinking Cups: when hee was disposed, hee drunke them off at a werferud in Gold; not only he himselfe, but also all the rest of vs, and it was very rich service: for all also were of Gold and very massive. The number that stood there that day was two hundred persons, all were served in Golden Vessell. The Gentlemen that waited were all in Cloth of Gold, and they served him with their Caps on their heads. Before the service came in, the Duke sent to every man a Baitliuch Emperor of Russia, and great Duke of Moscow, that reward they had, and said, Iohn

10 great skinner of Bread, and the Bearer called the party so sent to his name alone, and said, Iohn Baitliuch Emperor of Russia, and great Duke of Moscow, that reward they had, and said, Iohn then must all men stand up, and doe at all times when those words are spoken. And then left of all bee given the Marshall Bread, whereof he eateth before the Duke: Grace, and so doth reverence and departheth. Then cometh the Dukes service of the Swans: all in pieces, and every one in a several dish: the which the Duke sendeth as he did the Bread, and the Bearer saith the same words as he said before. And as I said before, the service of his meate is in no order, but cometh in Dish by Dish: and then after his Crowne, and in Dinner time two Crownes; so that I saw three severall Crownes upon his head in one day. And when his service was come in, hee gave to every one of his Gentlemen Waiters

20 meate with his owne hand, and so likewise drink. His intent thereby is, as I have heard, that every man name, that it is wonder to heare how he could name them, having so many as bee bath. Thus when Dinner was done I departed to my Lodging, which was an house within night.

Land and people, with their nature and power in the warres. This Duke I will somewhat declare of his Country, and his power is marvellous great. For hee is able to bring into the field two or three hundred thousand men: hee neuer goeth into the field himselfe with under two hundred thousand men: And hee hath on the borders of Lithuania sixtie thousand men, and upon the borders of Letto, sixtie thousand men, and towards the Nages as Tartars sixtie thousand, which is wonder to heare of: yet hath hee no Foot-men, but such as goe with the Ordnance and Labourers, which are thirte thousand. The Horse-men are all Archers, with such Bows as the Turkes have, and they ride short as doe the Turkes. Their Armour is a Coate of Plate, with a skull on their heads. Some of their Coates are covered with Velvet or Cloth of Gold: their desire is to be sumptuous in the field, and especially the Nobles: and Gentlemen beleemed it: but the Duke himselfe is richly attyred above all measure: hee Paulinus covered y Kinges Maiesties of England and the French Kinges Paulinus, which are faire, yet not the unto his gown. Else the Duke himselfe goeth but meagrely in apparel: and when hee goeth betweene one place and another hee is but reasonably apparelled over other times. In the while that I was in Moske, the Duke sumptuousness was above all measure, not only in himselfe, but also in their Horces, as Velvet, Cloth of Gold, and Cloth of Silver: set with Pearles, and not scant. What shall I further say? I neuer heard of their doing it by meane. And now to the effect of their Warres: They are men without all order in the field: for they run hurrying on heape, and for the most part they neuer give battayle to their Enemies: but which they do, they do it alby stealth. But I believe they be such men for hard lining as Enemies into it shall freeze more then a yard thick, the common Soldier hath neither Tent nor any thing else over weather, and when Snow cometh he doth cast it off, and maketh him a fire, and layeth him downe owne. Thus doe the most of all his men except they be Gentlemen which have other provision for their provision for himselfe, and his Horse for a month or two, which is very wonderful. For hee himselfe shall eat greene wood, and Oate-meale mingled together cold, and drinke water thereto: his Horfe yet will bee labour and serve him right well. I pray you amongst all our boasting Warriors: how many should we finde to endure the field with them but one month. I know no such Region about vs that be broken to order and knowledge of Civill Warres: if this Prince had within his Countries such men as could make them to understand the things afore said, I do beleieve that two of the best or greatest Princes in Christendome were not well able to match with him, considering the greatness of his power and the

Golden Vell.

Shiuer of use.

Crownes chait. gsd.

Dukes forces.

Armour and rich attyre.

Extremis.

Vainduplicated Soldiers.

Hitlinesse.

with always the Monday next after Trinitie Sunday, and ends on Saint Peters Euen. If they should break that Fast, their helife is, that they should not come in at Heauen gates. And when any of them dye, they have a selfmoued will that on the Coffin, that when the soule cometh to Heauen gates it may deliver the same to Saint Peter, which the soule cometh to Heauen gates. The third Lent beginneth fifteene dayes before the last Lent, and ends on our Lady Euen. The fourth Lent beginneth on Saint Martins day, and ends on Christmas Euen: which Lent is fulfilled for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Nicholas, and Saint Clement. For they four be the principall and greatest Saints in that Countrey. In these Lents they eat neither Butter, Egges, Midge, nor Cheese; but they are very straitly kept with Fals, Cabbages, and Beets. And out of this they do make fells. Furthermore, they have a great number of Religious men: which are Black Monks, and they eat no flesh throughout the yeare, but Fish, Midge and Butter. By their order they should eat no fells: Fish, and in these Lents they eat nothing but Olenvers, Cabbages, fells, Corniberry, with other roots, as Radish and such like. Their drinks is like our penie Ale, and is called Cusell. They have Service daily in their Churches: and use to go to service two houres before day, and that is ended by day light. At nine of the clocke they go to Masse: this ended, to Dinner: and after that is placed the exposition of the Gospel that day: but how they wait and time the Scripture and that together, by report it is wonderfull. As for Whoredoms and Drunkennes there be none such thing: and for Extortion, they be the most commode under the Sunne. Some indoe of these badnes, they have misa as much Land as the Duke himselfe hath: but yet bee reasonable euen with that as they: When they take leues of any of the power of the Duke, hee hath it in an order, when the Adhes of any of their Houses dyeth, then the Duke hath all his goods moveable and unmoveable: so that the Successor buyeth all at the Dukes hand: and by this means they be the best Farmers the Duke hath. Thus with their Religion & make an end, trusting hereafter to know a better.

Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by CLEMENT ADAMS, Schoole-master to the Queenes Henchmen, from the mouth of Capricorn CHANCEROR.

Thus this booke of Clement Adams, in Latine, written in a very elegant hand and elegant title to King Philip: (as I thinke) the very original.

Master Chancelor with his Ship and companie being thus left alone, and become very penurie, heauie, and fawtowed, by this dispersion of the Fleet, hee (according to the order before taken), dispatch his course for Ward-bouke in Norway, there to expect and abide the arrival of the rest of the Ships. And being come thither, and having stayed the space of seven dayes, and looked in vaine for their coming, hee determined at length to proceede alone in the purposed voyage. And as hee was preparing himselfe to depart, it happened that hee fell in companie and speech with certain French-men: who having vnderstanded of his intention, and willing well to his actions, began earnestly to dissuade him from the further prosecution of the discourse, by amplifying the dangers, which hee was to fall into, and omitted no reason that might serve to that purpose. But hee holding nothing so ignominious and reproachfull, as incontinencie and leuitie of minde, and perswading himselfe that a man of valour could not commit a more dishonourable part, then for feare of danger to auoid and shun great attempts, was nothing at all changed or discouraged with the speeches and words of the French, remaying steadfast and immovable in his first resolution: determining either to bring this voyage which was intended, or else to dye the death.

And as for them which were with Master Chancelor in his Ship, although they had great cause of discomfort by the losse of their companie (whom the foreaid tempest had separated from them), and were not a little troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in respect of their doubtfull course: yet notwithstanding, they were of such confident and agreement of minde with Master Chancelor, that they were resolute, without all feare or mistrust of future dangers, Which continuance of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increase their Captaines carefulnesse: for hee being swallowed vp with like good will and loue towards them, feared left through any error of his, the safetie of the companie should bee endangered. To conclude, when they saw their desire and hope of the arrival of the rest of the Ships to be every day more and more frustrated, they proceeded to Sea againe, and Master Chancelor held on his course towards that vnkowne part of the world, and sayled so farr, that hee came at last to the place where hee found no night at all, but a continual light and brightnesse of the Sunne shining cleerly vpon the huge and mightie Sea. And hauing the benefite of this perpetuall light for certaine dayes, at the length it pleased God to bring them into a certaine great Bay, which was of one hundred miles or there about ouer. Whereinto they entred, and somewhat farr within

They arrive in the Bay of Saint Nicholas.

within it cast anchor, and looking every way about them, it hapned that they espied a farr off a certaine Fisher-boate, which Master Chancelor, accompanied with a few of his men, went towards to common with the Fishermen that were in it, and to know of them what Countrey it was, and what people, and of what manner of living they were: but they being amazed with the strange greatnesse of his ship, (for in those parts before that time, they had neuer seene the like) began presently to auoid and to flee: but hee still following them, at last outooke them, and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead) prostrated themselves before him, offering to kisse his feete: but hee (according to his great and singular courtesie), looked pleasantly vpon them, comforting them by signes and gestures, refusing those duties and reuerences of theirs, and asking them vpon all lowering foot from the ground. And it is strange to consider how much fauour afterwards in that place, this humaneitie of his did purchase to himselfe. For they being dismissed, spread by and by a report abroad of the arrival of a strange Nation, of a singular gentlenesse and courtesie: whereupon the common people came together, offering to these new-come guests victuals freely, and not refusing to traffique with them, except they had bene bound by a certaine religious vie and custome, not to buy any faine commodities, without the knowledge and consent of the King.

By this time our men had learned, that this Countrey was called *Russia*, or *Muscovie*, and that *Iuan Oskirich* (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and gouerned farr and wide in those places. And the barbarous *Russer* asked likewise of our men whether they were, and what they came for: whereunto answer was made, that they were English-men sent into those coasts, from the most excellent King *Edward* the sixth, hauing from him in commendement certaine things to deliver to their King, and seeking nothing else but his amitie and friendship, and traffique with his people, whereby they doubted not, but that great commoditie and profit would grow to the subjects of both Kingdomes.

The Barbarians heard these things very gladly, and promised their ayde and furtherance to acquaint their King out of hand, with so honest and a reasonable request. In the meane time Master Chancelor intrated victuals for his money, of the Gournour of that place (who together with others came aboard him) and required hostages of them likewise, for the more assurance of safetie to himselfe and his companie. To whom the Gournours answered, that they knew not in that case the will of their King, but yet were willing in such things as they might lawfully doe, to pleasure him: which was as then to afford him the benefit of victuals.

Now, while these things were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperour, to certifie him of the arrival of a strange Nation, and wishall to know his pleasure concerning them. Which message was very welcome vnto him, inasmuch that voluntarily hee invited them to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesse of so long a journey, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee granted libertrie to his Subjects to argue, and to traffique with them: and further promised, that if it would please them to come to him, hee himselfe would beare the whole charges of poste Horke. In the meane time the Gournours of the place, differed the matter from day to day, pretending diuers excuses, and saying one while, that the consent of all the Gournours, and another while, that the great and weightie affaires of the Kingdom compelled them to differ their answer: and this they did of purpose, so long to protract the time, vntill the messenger (sent before to the King) did returne with relation of his will and pleasure.

But Master Chancelor, (seeing himselfe held in this suspence with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him, they possted the matter off to often), was very instant with them to performe their promise: Which if they would not doe, hee told them that hee would depart and proceed in his voyage. So that the *Muscovites* (although as yet they knew not the minde of their King) yet fearing the departure indeed of our men, who had such wares and commodities as they greatly desired, they at last resolved to furnish our people withall things necessary, and to conduct them by land to the presence of their King. And to Master Chancelor began his journey, which was very long and most troublesome, wherein hee had the use of certaine sleds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are carried themselves vpon sleds, and all their carriages are in the same sort, the people almost not knowing any other manner of carriage, the cause whereof is, the exceeding hardnesse of the ground congealed in the Winter time by the force of the cold, which in those places is very extreme and horrible, whereof hereafter we will say something.

But now they hauing passed the greater part of their journey, met at last with the Sled-man (of whom I spake before) sent to the King secretly from the Iulices or Gournours, who by some ill hap had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea-side, which is neere to the Countrey of the *Tartars*, thinking there to haue found our ship. But hauing long erred and wandered out of his way, at the last in his direct returne, hee met (as hee was coming) our Captaine on the way. To whom hee by and by deliuered the Emperours letters, which were written to him with all courtesie and in the most lauding manner that could bee: wherein expresse commandement was given, that post Horles should be gotten for him and the rest of his company without any money. Which thing was of all the *Russer*, in the rest of their journey he willingly done.

The Discourte of Russia.

Messenger to the Emperour.

The Emperours courteous letters to Master Chancelor.

that they began to quarrell, yea, and to fight also in striving and contending which of them should put their poore horkes to the Sled: so that after much adoe, and great paines taken in this long and wearie journey, (for they had trauelled very neere fiftene hundred miles) Master *Chancellor* came at last to *Moscow*, the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, and the seate of the King.

HONDIVS *bi* Map of Russia.



Ripbeat hits,
a tale of Ant
quitic.

Kossomakka, a
strange beast.

The sharpness
of the winter
in *Mosconig*.

Touching the *Riplean Mountaine*, whereupon the *Snow* lyeth continually, and where hence in times past it was thought that *Tanarus* the river did spring, and that the reft of the wonders of nature, which the *Grecians* fained and inuented of old, were there to be seen: Our men which lately came from thence, neither saw them, nor yet haue brought home any perfett relation of them, although they remaind there for the space of three months, and had gotten in that time some intelligence of the language of the *Maline*. The whole Countrey is plaine and champaign, so and few hills in it: and towards the North, it hath very large and spacious Woods, wherein is great store of Firre trees, a wood very necessary, and fit for the building of houses: there are also wilde beafts bred in thole Woods, as *Buffs*, *Berres*, and blacke *Wolues*, and another kinde of beaſt vnknown to vs, but called by them *Rapkins*; and the nature of the fame is very rare and wonderful: for when it is great with young, it is ready to bring forth, it seeketh out some narrow place betweene two flakes, and so going through them, it preſſeth it ſelfe, and that manner is eaſed of her burthen, which otherwise ſhe could not be done. They hunt their *Buffs* for the molt part a horſe-backe, but their *Berres* a foot, with wooden forks. The North parts of the Countrey are reported to be cold, that the very Ice or water which drieth out of the noyſt wood which they lay vpon the fire, is preſently congealed againe, a frozen ſtream groweth ſo ſoone to be great, that in one and the ſelfe-fame fire-brand, a man ſhall fee both hre and Ice. When the winter doth once begin there, it doth ſtill more and more increaſe by a perpetuall cold: neither doth that cold lath, vntill the force of the Sunne beames doth diſſolve the cold, and make lade the earth, returning it to ſeaſon. Our Nations which vſe ſeaſon

the Ship in the meane time to keepe it, in their going vp onely from their cabbins to the hatches, had their breath oftentimes so suddenly taken away, that they oft-sones fell downe as men very neere dead, so great is the sharpenesse of that cold Climate : but for the South parts of the Countrey, they are somewhat more * temperate.

The Almighty power of God, and the incomprehensible holy Trinitie, rightfull Christian Beliefe, &c. We, great Duke Iuan Vasiluich, by the Graces of God great Lord and Emperour of all Rus-
sia, great Duke of Voloderme, Molco, and Astrugrad, King of Kazan, King of Altzanc, Lord of Plesko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Twertnia, Ioughoria, Permia, Vadska, Rezan, Polotsky, Rofouze, Yanuilaufze, Bealozara, Niofzina of the Low Country, of Chernigo, of a Commander of all Sibetia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Counties: greeting,
Before all, right, great and worthy of honour Edward King of England, our very eldest Countie: greeting,
heartie and good zeale, with good content and friendly desire, and according to my Christian Faith,
and great Governance, and being in the light of great understanding, our Answer to your Honour-
able request vnto your Kingly Governance, at the request of your faithful Seruant Richard, our Hon-
our, with this company, as they shall tell you wisely know is this. In the strength of the twentyeth ar-
ticke of our Governance, we do herebye, that at our Sea-coasts arrived a ship, with one Richard, and his com-
pany, and said, that he was desire to come into our Dominion; and according to his request, hath sent
our Maiestie, and & our eyes: and hath declared vnto vs your Maiesties desire, as that we should
grant vnto your Subiects, to goe and come, and to our Dominions, and among our Subiects, to frequent
they have also delivered vs your Letters which declare the same to have warre for their returne. And
we send order, that whersoever your faithful Seruant Hugh Willoughbie, land or touch in our Domini-
on, to be well entreated, who yet is not arrived at your Seruant Richard can declare.
And we with Christian beliefe and faithfullnesse, and according to your Honourable request, and my
Honourable commandment, will not leave it vndone: and are furthermore willing that you send vnto
them themselves. And if you send me of your Maiestie consill to treat with vs, vnto our part: to see
they Merchants may be well liked of Warre, and where they will make their Market in our Domi-
nions, they shall have free: and free Mary with all free Liberties through my whole Dominion,
kind of Warre, to come and goe at their pleasure, without any toll, damage, or impediment, ac-
cording to this our Letter, our Word, and our State which we have commanded to be read [said] written in
Months of Februarye.

This Letter was written in the *Mofcoven* Tongue, in Letters much liketo the *Greeks* Letters, very fair written in Paper, with a broad Seal hanging at the fane, fealed in Paper upon Wax. This Seal was much like the Broad Seal of *England*, having on the one fide the Image of a man on Horfe-back in complete Harnell fighting with a Dragon. Under this Letter was another Paper written in the *Dutch* Tongue, which was the Interpretation of the other written in the *Mofcoven* Letters. Thelc Letters were fent the next year after the death of King *Edward* Letters, 1554.

50 After this, ¹⁵⁵⁴ ~~intercourse~~ of Letters and Embassages passed betwix King Philip and Queene Marie, and the Moscovite; and the Moscovie Company was instituted and received Priviledges both from their Killingworth was made their first Agent: the particulars whereof are found at large in Maffler Hakluyts first Tome of Voyages, at all other things touching that Trade here sealed: which here I omit, and come to Maffler Ienkinson's Voyage to Mosco, and thence to Tartary,

§. II.

The first * Voyage made by Master ANTHONIE JENKINSON,
from the City of London, toward the Land of Russia, begunne
the twelfth of May, in the year

1557.

* Here made
three others
after, one as
Embassidour
from Quesne
Elizabeth to the
Majestie.

Infir, by the grace of God, the daye above mentioned, I departed from the said City, and the same day at *Grainfend*, embarked my selfe in a good ship, named the *Primrose*, being appointed, although unworthily, chiefe Captaine of the same, and also of the other three good ships, to say, the *Iohn Euangelist*, the *Ana*, and the *Trinitie*, having also the conduct of the Emperour of Russia, his Ambassidour named *Ossip Nepia Gregorovich*, who passed with his company in the said *Primrose*. And thus our fourte sail ships being well appointed, as well for men, as victuals, as other necessary furniture, the said twelfth day of the month of May, we weighed our Anchors, and departed from the said *Grainfend*, in the after-noon, and plying downe the *Thames*, the wind being Easterly, and faire weather, the thirteenth day we came a ground with the *Primrose*, vpon a sand called the blacke tayle, where we fate fast vntill the fourteenth day in the morning, and then God be prayed, shee came off: and that day we pleyed downe as farre as our Ladie of *Holland*, and there came to an Anchor, the wind being Easterly, and there remayned vntill the twentieth day: then we weyed and went out at *Goldsmere* gate, and from thence in at *Bossey* lade, and so into *Orwell* waters, where we came to an Anchor: but as we came out at the said *Goldsmere* gate, and was like to be bilged and lost. But by the ayde of God, at the last she came off againe, being very leake: and the one and twentieth day the *Primrose* remaining at an Anchor in the wands, the other three ships bare into *Orwell* Haven, where I caused the said *Trinitie* to be grounded, searched, and repaired. So we remayned in the said Haven, vntill the eight and twentieth day: and then the wind being Westerly, the three ships that were in the Haven, weighed and came forth, and in coming forth the *Iohn Euangelist* came on ground vpon a Sand, called the *Andros*, where she remayned one tyde, and the next full Sea she came off againe without any great hurt, God be prayed.

The nine and twentieth day in the morning all four ships weighed in the Wands, and that tyde went as farre as *Orfordness*, where we came to an Anchor, because the wind was Northerly: And about fixe of the clocke at night, the wind vered to the South-west, and we weighed Anchor, and bare cleere of the *Nelle*, and then fet our course North-east and by North vntill midnight, being then cleare of *Yarmouth* lands. Then we winde North and by West, and North North-west, vntill the first of June at noon, then it waxed calme, and continued vntill the second day at noon: then the wind came at North-west, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped North North-east, and North-east, and by North, as the wind shifted, and so continued vntill the third day at noon: then the wind vered Westerly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way vntill the fourth day at three of the clocke in the after-noon, at which time the wind vered to the North-west againe and blew a frell gale, and so continued vntill the fueneth day in the morning, we lying with all our ships close by, and caping to the Northwards: and then the wind vering more Northerly, we were forced to put roomer with the Coast of *England* againe, and fell ouerthwart *New-castle*, but went not into the Haven, and so pleyed vpon the Coast the eight day and the ninth.

The tenth day the wind came to the North North-west, and wee were forced to beare roomer with *Flamborow* head, where we came to an Anchor, and there remayned vntill the fueneth day. Then the wind came faire, and we weighed, & fet our course North and by East, time and so continued the same with a merry wind vntill the one and twentieth at noon, at which we took the Sunne, and had the latitude in fixtie degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went North North-east, & North-east, and by North, vntill the fuen and twentieth day. Then we discovered certain lands, called *Helick* lands, lying from vs North-east, being in the latitude of sixty six degrees, fortie minutes. Then we went North and by West, because we would not come too nigh the Land, and running that course foure houres, we discovered, and had sight of *Roff* lands, joyning to the mayne Land of *Finnmarke*. Thus continuing our course along the Coast of *Normy* and *Finnmarke*, the fuen and twentieth day we tooke the Sunne, being as farre thot as *Lofot*, and had the latitude in fixtie nine degrees. And the same day in the afternoone appeared ouer our heads a Rain-bow, like a Semicircle, with both ends upward. Note, that there is betwene the said *Roff* lands and *Lofot*, a Whirl-pool called *Malestrand*, which from halfe ebbe vntill halfe flood, maketh such a terrible noyse, that it shaketh the Rings in the doores of the Inhabitants Houses of the said lands ten miles off. Also if there cometh any Whale within the current of the same, they make a pittifull cry. Moreover, if great Trees be carryed into it by force of strames, and after with the ebbe be cast out againe, the ends and boughs of them have bene lo beaten, that they are like the stalkes of Hempe that is bruized. Note, that all the Coast of

Helick lands
in 66. degrees
40. minutes.
Roff lands.

Malestrand a
strange whirle
pool.

Finnmarke is high Mountaynes and Hills, being covered all the yeare with Snow. And had aboard the shoare of this Coast, there is one hundred, or one hundred and fiftie fathomes of water in depth. Thus proceeding and laying forward, we fell with an Island called *Zenam*, being in the latitude of fuenctie degrees. About this land were saw many Whales, very monstrous, about our ships, some by estimation of fixtie foote long: and being the ingathering time they roared and cryed terribly. From thence we fell with an Island, called *Kettlewike*. This Coast from *Roff* vnto *Lofot* lyeth North and South, and from *Lofot* to *Zenam* North-east and South-west, and from *Zenam* to *Kettlewike*, East North-east and West South-west. From the said *Kettlewike* we layed East and by North ten leagues, and fell with a Land called

Inger land, where we fished, being becalmed, and tooke great plentie of Cods. Thus plying a long the Coast, we fell with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the Northernmost Land that we passe in our Voyage to *Saint Nicholas*, and is in the latitude of fuenctie one degrees and ten minutes, and is from *Inger* land East, and to the North-wards fiftene leagues. And being at this North Cape the second day of July, we had the Sunne at North foure degrees above the Horizon. The third day we came to *Wardhouse*, having fish mists that wee could not see the Land. This *Wardhouse* is a Cattle standing in a land two miles from the mayne of *Finnland*, subiect to the King of *Denmarke*, and the Easternmost Land that he hath. There are two other Ilands neere adjoining vnto that, wherein the Cattle of *Wardhouse* handeth. The Inhabitants of these three Ilands live only by fishing, and make much Stock-fish, which they dry with Fire.

From *Wardhouse* we layed South South-east ten leagues, and fell with a Cape of Land called *Keger*, the Northernmost part of the Land of *Lappia*. And betwene *Wardhouse*, and the said Cape is a great Bay, called *Dommes haff*, in the South part whereof is a Monastery of Monkes of the *Ruffe* Religion, called *Techinchem*. Thus proceeding forward and laying along the Coast of the said Land of *Lappia*, winding South-east, the fourth day through great mists and darkness we lost the company of the other three ships, and met not with them againe, vntill the fueneth day, when we fell with a Cape or head-land called *Smetnos*, which is the entring into the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*. At this Cape lyeth a great fione, to the which the Barkes that passed there by, were wont to make Offerings of Butter, Meale, and other Victuals, thinking that whelke they did lo, their Barkes or Vessels should there perish, as it hath bene oftentimes seene: and there it is very darke and mytie. Note, that the fix day we passed by the place where Sir

Hubert Willoughby with all his company perished, which is called *Arcana rock*, that is to say, the Ruer *Arcana*.

The Land of *Lappia* is an high Land, having snow lying on it commonly all the yeere. The people of the Country are halfe Gentiles: they live in the Summer time neere the Sea side, and vnto take fish, of the which they make bread, and in the Winter they remove vp into the Country into the Woods, where they vie hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Wolves, Foxes, and other beastes, with whole flesh they are nourished, and with their skins apparelled in such strange fashion, that there is nothing seene of them bare but their eyes. They have none other habitation, but only in Tents, removing from place to place, according to the season of the yeere. They know no arte nor facultie, but only shooting, which they exercise daily, as well men as women, and kill such beastes as serue them for their food. Thus proceeding along the coast from *Smetnos*, afore said, the ninth day of July we came to Cape *Grace*, being in the latitude of 66. degrees and 45. minutes, and is at the entring in of the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*. Aboard this current at this Cape runneth South-west and North-east. From this Cape wee pceeded along Cape *Grace*.

the current at Cape *Grace*.

the current at Cape *Grace*.

the current at Cape *Grace*.

the current at Cape *Grace*.

the current at Cape *Grace*.

Zenam land.

Kettlewike land.

Inger land.
The North Cape.

Wardhouse.

Cattell fed with fish.

The Monastery of *Techinchem*.

Arcana rock where Sir *Hubert Willoughby* was frozen.

The *Lappie* covered all fishing their eyes.

The current at Cape *Grace*.

The entring of the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*: seven leagues broad at the least.

Angul.

Pentag rock.

The Towne of
Temp.
Vllug.

to a Towne called *Temp*, an hundred verites from *Colmogre*. All this way along they make much *Carre*, Pitch, and shales of *Aspen* trees. From thence I came to a place called *Ullug*, an ancient *Scacana*, both which fall into the aforefaid River of *Duma*. The River *Ullug* hath his spring in the Land of the *Tartars*, called *Chermica*, joyning to the Countrey of *Permia*: and *Scacana* hath his head from a Lake not farre from the Citie of *Vologda*. Thus departing from *Ullug*, and passing by the River *Scacana*, we came to a Towne called *Torma*. About this place the water is very shallow, and stonie, and troublefome for Barkes and Boats of that Countrey, which they call *Nafades*, and *Dofnecke*, to paffe that way: wherein merchandife are transported from the aforefaid *Colmogre* to the Citie of *Vologda*. These vessels called *Nafades*, are very long builded, broad made, and clofe above, flat bottomed, and draw not above four foot water, and will carrie two hundred tonnes: they have no Iron appertaining to them but of Timber, and when the winde ferueth, they are made to faile. Otherwife they haue many men, some to hale and draw by the neckes with long small ropes made fast to the faid Boats, and some fet with long poles. There are many of these Barkes vpon the River of *Duma*: And the most part of them belongeth vnto the Citie of *Vologda*: for there dwell many Merchants, and they occupie the faid Boats with carrying of Salt from the Sea side vnto the faid *Vologda*. The twentieth of September I came vnto *Vologda*, which is a great Citie, and the River paffeth through the midst of the fame. The houses are builded with wood of Firre trees, ioyned one with another, and round without: the houses are foure fquare without any Iron or ftone worke, couered with Birch barkes, and wood ouer the fame: their Churches are all of wood, two for euery Parilh, one to be heated for Winter, and the other for Summer. On the tops of their houses they lay much earth, for feare of burning: for they are fore plagued with fire. This *Vologda* is in 59. degrees 11. minutes, and is from *Colmogre*, one thousand verites.

Good counsell
for Travellers.
December.

All the way I neuer came in houfe, but lodged in the Wildernesse, by the Rivers fide, and carried prouision for the way. And he that will trauell thofe wayes, must carrie with him an Hatchet, a Tinder boxe, and a Kettle, to make fire and feede meat, when he hath it: for there is small succour in thofe parts, vntill he be in Townes.

The first day of December, I departed from *Vologda* in poffe in a Sled, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to *Mofca* is as followeth. From *Vologda* to *Commelki*, feuen and twentie verites; fo to *Olmor* fue and twentie verites, fo to *Teleyfte* twentie verites, fo to *Ore* thirtie verites, fo to *Polybanki* thirtie verites, then to *Terafau* thirtie verites, which standeth vpon the great River *Volga*, fo to *Koffow* fittie verites, then to *Rogarin* thirtie verites, fo to *Perafanc* ten verites, which is a great Towne, standing hard by a faire Lake. From thence to *Dumk* nay thirtie verites, fo to *Gondorke* thirtie verites, fo to *Ouchey* thirtie verites, and laft to the *Mofco* fue and twentie verites, where I arrived the fixt day of December.

Emperour of
Cafan.

There are foureteen Pofts called *Tames*, betweene *Vologda* and *Mofco*, which are accounted fue hundred verites afunder.

The tenth day of December, I was sent for to the Emperours Caffe by the faid Emperour, and deliuered my Letters vnto the Secreterie, who talked with mee of diuers matters, by the commendement of the Emperour. And after that my Letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would giue mee that I desired.

The fue and twentieth day, being the day of the Natiuitie, I came into the Emperours preſence, and kiſſed his hand, who fate aloft in a goodly Chaire of eſtate, hauing on his head a Crowne moſt richly decked, and a ſtaffe of Gold in his hand, all apparelled with Gold, and garniſhed with Precious ſtones. There fate diſtance from him about two yards his Brother, and next vnto him a Boy of twelue yeeres of age, who was Inheritor to the Emperour of *Cafan*, conquered by his Emperour eight yeeres paſt. Then fate his Nobilitie round about him, richly apparelled with Gold and Stone. And after I had done obeifance to the Emperour, he with his owne mouth calling mee by my name, bade mee to dinner, and fo I departed to my lodging till dinner time, which at fix of the clocke, by Candle light

Multitude of
Gueſts.

The Emperour dined in a faire great Hall, in the miſt whereof was a Pillar foure ſquare, very artificially made, about which were diuers Tables fet, and at the vppermoſt part of the Hall fate the Emperour himſelfe, and at his Table fate his Brother, his Vncles ſonne, the Metropolitan, the young Emperour of *Cafan*, and diuers of his Noblemen, all of one ſide. There were diuers Embaſſadors, and other ſtrangers, as well *Chriſtians* as *Heathens*, duetly apparelled, to the number of fue hundred men, which dined in the faid Hall, beſides two thouſand *Tartars*, men of warre, which were newly come to render themſelues to the Emperour, and were appointed to ſerue him in his warres againſt the *Ruſſe-landers*, but they dined in other Halls. I was ſet at a little Table, hauing no ſtranger with mee, directly before the Emperours face. Being thus ſet and placed, the Emperour ſent mee diuers bowles of Wine, and Meade, and many diſhes of Meate from his owne land, which were brought mee by a Duke, and my Table ſerued all in Gold and Silver, and fo likewiſe on other Tables, there were fet bowles of Gold, ſet with Stone, worth by eſtimation 400. pounds ſterling one cup, beſides the Plate which ſerued the tables.

There

There was alſo a Cupboard of Plate, moſt ſumptuous and rich, which was not vied: among the which, was a piece of Gold of two yards long, wrought in the top with Towers, and Dragons heads, alſo diuers barrels of Gold and Silver, with Cattles on the hump, richly and artificially made. The Emperour, and all the Hall throughout was ſerued with Dukes: and when dinner was ended, the Emperour called mee by name, and gaue mee drinke with his owne hand, and ſo I departed to my lodging. Note, that when the Emperour drinkeeth, all the company ſtand vnp, and at euery time he drinkeeth, or taſteth of a diſh of meate he bleſſeth himſelfe. Many other things I ſaw that day, not here noted.

The fourth of Ianuarie, which was Twelf-tide with them, the Emperour, with his brother and all his Nobles, all moſt richly apparelled with Gold, Pearles, Precious ſtones, and cotly Furres, with a Crowne vpon his head, of the *Tartarian* faſhion, went to the Church in Proceſſion, with the Metropolitan, and diuers Biſhops and Priests. That day I was before the Emperour againe in *Ruſſe* apparel, and the Emperour asked if that were not I, and his Chanceller answered, yea. Then he bade mee to dinner: then came hee out of the Church, and went with the Proceſſion vpon the River, being all frozen, and there ſtanding bare-headed, with all his Nobles, there was a hole made in the Ice, and the Metropolitan halloweth the water with great ſolemnitie and ſeruiſe, and did caſt of the faid water vpon the Emperours ſonne, and the Nobilitie. That done, the people with great thronging filled pots of the faid water to carrie home to their houſes, and diuers children were throwne in, and ſicke people, and plucked out quickly againe, and diuers *Tartars* chriſtend: all which the Emperour beheld. Alſo there were brought the Emperours beſt Horſes, to drinke at the faid hallowed water. All this being ended, hee returned to his Palace againe, and went to dinner by Candle light, and fate in a wooden houſe, very fairely gilt. There dined in the place, about three hundred ſtrangers, and I fate alone as I did before, directly before the Emperour, and had my Meat, Bread, and Drinke ſent mee from the Emperour.

The Citie of *Mofco* is great, the houſes fir the moſt part of wood, and ſome of ſtone, with windowes of Iron, which ſerue for Summer time. There are many faire Churches of ſtone, but more of wood, which are made hot in the Winter time. The Emperours lodging is in a faire and large Caſtle, walled foure ſquare of Bricke, high, and thicke, ſituated vpon an Hill, two miles about, and the River on the South-weſt ſide of it, and it hath fixteene gates in the walls, and as many Bulwarkes. His Palace is ſeparated from the reſt of the Caſtle, by a long wall going North and South, to the River ſide. In his Palace are Churches, ſome of ſtone, and ſome of wood, with round Towres ſaſely gilded. In the Church doores, and within the Churches are Images of Gold: the chiefe Markets for all thinge, within the Caſtle, and for ſundry things ſundry Markets, and euery ſcience by it ſelfe. And in the Winter there is a great Market without the Caſtle, vpon the River being frozen, and there is fold Corne, earthen Pots, Tubs, Sleds, &c. The Caſſis is in circuit two thouſand and nine hundred paces.

The Countiey is full of marſh ground, and Playne, in Woods and Riuers abundant, but it bringeth forth good plenty of Corne. This Emperour is of great power: for he hath conquered all, as well of the *Luthanders*, *Poles*, *Lettos*, and *Smithens*, as alſo of the *Tartars*, and *Geniſes*, called *Samos*, hauing thereby much enlarged his Dominions. Hee keepeth his people in great obedience: all matters paſſe his iudgement, bee they neuer ſo ſmall. The Law is ſharpe for all offenders.

The Metropolitan dealeth in matters of Religion, as himſelfe liſteth, whom the Emperour greatly honoureth. They vie the Ceremonies and Orders of the *Greeke* Church. They worſhip many Images painted on Tables, and ſpecially the Image of Saint *Nicholas*. Their Priests be married, but their wives being dead, they may not marry the ſecond time, and ſo become Monks, whereof there are a great number in the Land. They haue foure Lents in the yeere, and the weeke before Shrouetide, they call the Butter weeke, &c.

They haue many ſorts of meats and drinke, when they banquet and delight in eating of groſſe Meats and ſhip in drinking. Before they drinke they vie to blow in the Cup: their great feaſts, flatterers and diſſemblers. The Women be there very obedient to their Huſbands, and are kept ſtraightly from going abroad, but at ſome ſeaſons.

At my being there, I heard men and women that drunke away their children, and all their goods at the Emperours Tavernes, and not being able to pay, hauing impaired himſelfe, the Taverner bringeth him out to the high way, and beats him vpon the legs: then they that paſſe by, knowing the cauſe, and hauing perſeuerant compaſſion vpon him, giue the money, and ſo hee is ransomed. In euery good Towne there is a drunken Taverner, called a *Curſeman*, which the Duke or Gentleman, in recompence of his ſeruiſe: and for that time hee is Lord of all the Towne, robbing and ſpoiling, and doing what pleaſeth him: and then hee being growne rich, is taken by the Emperour, and ſent to the warres againe: where hee ſhall ſpend all that which hee hath gotten by ill means: ſo that the Emperour in his warres is little charged, but all the burden

Rich ſervice

Twelf-tide

Mofco Riue
halloweth

Riue of holy
water for horſe
and man.

Citie of Mofco.

The Countiey

The Metropo
liſan.

Meats and
drinke.

Drunkenneſſe,

burden

Killing vi'd in
the Grete
Church.

dayes, they come and take one another by the hand: the one of them saith, *the Lord or Christ is risen*, the other answereth, *it is so of a trawb*, and then they kisse and exchange their Egges both men and women, continuing in kissing foure dayes together.

His Majestie heareth all Complaines himselfe, and with his owne mouth giueth sentence, and judgement of all matters, and that with expedition: but Religious matters he medleth not withall, but referreth them wholly vnto the Metropolitan. His Majestie retaineth and will rewardeth all strangers that come to serue him, and especially men of Warre. He delighteth not greatly in Hawking, Hunting, or any other pastime, nor in hearing Instruments or Musike, but leteth all his whole delight vpon two things: First, to serue God, as vndoubtedly he is very deuout in his Religion, and the second, how to subdue and conquer his enemies.

He hath abundance of Gold and Siluer in his owne hands or Treasure: but the most part of his know not a Cawse from a Counter, nor Gold from Copper, they are so much cumberd therewithall, and he that is worth two, three, or foure Grotes, is a rich man.

Monasteries
and Monkes.

They haue both Monkes, Friers, and Nunnes, with a great number of great and rich Monasteries: they keepe great Hospitalitie, and doe releue much poore people day by day. I haue bin in one of the Monasteries called *Trinitie*, which is walled about with Bricke very strongly like a Castle, and much Ordnance of Brasse vpon the walls of the same. They told mee themselves that there are seuen hundred Brethren of them which belong vnto that Houfe. The most part of the Lands, Townes, and Villages which are within fortie miles of it, belong vnto the same.

Images.

They shewed me the Church, wherein were as many Images as could hang about, or vpon the walls of the Church round about, and euen the Roofe of the Church was painted full of Images. The chiefe Image was of our Ladie, which was garnished with Gold, Rubies, Saphires, and other rich Stones abundantly. In the midst of the Church flood twelue Waxe Tapers of two yards long, and a fathom about in bignesse, and there stands a Kettle full of Waxe with about one hundred weight, wherein there is alwayes the wicke of a Candle burning, as it were a Lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

Miracles.

They shewed mee a Coffin couered with Cloth of Gold, which flood vpon one side within their Church, in which they told me lay a holy man, who neuer ate or dranke, and yet that he liueth. And they told me (supposing that I had beleued them) that he healeth many Diseases, and giueth the blind their sight, with many other Miracles, but I was hard of belief, because I saw him worke no miracle whilst I was there.

Drinkes and
Vessels.

After this they brought me into their Sellers, and made me taste of diuers kinds of Drinkes, both Wine and Beere, Meade and Quaffe, of sundry colours and kinds. Such abundance of Drinke as they haue in their Sellers, I doe suppose few Princes haue more, or so much at once. Their Barrels or Vessels are of an vnmeasurable bignesse and size: some of them are three yards long and more, and two yards and more broad in their heads: they contayne fixe or seuen tuns spiced they haue none in their Sellers of their owne making that are lesse then a tunne. They haue nine or ten great vaultes which are full of those Barrels: which are seldome remoued: for they haue trunks which come downe through the Roofe of the vaults in sundry places, through which they powre drinke downe, hauing the Caske right vnder it to receiue the same, for it should be a great trouble to bring it all downe the staires.

The Hospitali-
tie of their
Monasteries.

They giue Bread, Meate, and Drinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they are at their Abbey, but also when they depart, to serue them by the way. There are a great number of such Monasteries in the Realme, and the Emperours Majestie sendeth oftentimes from one to another of them, and lyeth at them three or foure dayes together.

Monke Mer-
chans.

The same Monkes are as great Merchants as any in the Land of *Russia*, and doe occupie buying and selling as much as any other men, and haue Boates which palle to and fro in the Riuer with Merchandize from place to place where any of their Country doe trafique.

Dyerdend Ap-
parell.

They eate no flesh during their lues as it is reported: but vpon Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Thursday, and Saturday it is lawfull for them to eate Egges, Butter, Cheefe, and Milke, and at all times to eate fish, and after this fort they lead their liues. They weare all blacke Garments, and so doe none other in all the Land, but at that Abbey onely.

Wane of Prea-
chers cause of
great igno-
rance and ido-
latry.

They haue no Preachers, not one in all the Land to instruct the people, so that there are many, and the most part of the poore in the Country, who if one asketh them how many Gods there be, they will say a great many, meaning that euery Image which they haue is a God: for all the Country and the Emperours Majestie himselfe will blisse and bow, and knocke their heads before their Images, inuoching that they will cry earnestly vnto their Images to helpe them to the things which they need. All men are bound by their Law to haue those Images in their Houses, and ouer euery gate in all their Townes and Cities are Images let vnto which the people bow and bend, and knocke their heads against the ground before them: as often as they come by any Church or Crosse they doe in like manner. And when they come to any Houfe, they blisse themselves three or foure times before they will salute any man in the Houfe.

They reckon and hold it for great sinne to touch or handle any of their Images within the

Circle

Circle of the board where the painting is, but they keepe them very daintily, and rich men deck them ouer and about with Gold, Siluer, and Stones, and hang them ouer and about with Cloth of Gold.

Sinner of Sa-
pientia.

The Priests are married as other men are, and weare all their Garments as other men doe, except their Night-caps, which is cloth of some sad colour, being round and reacheth vnto the eares: their crownes are shauen, but the rest of their haire they let grow, as long as Nature will permit, so that it hangeth beneath their eares vpon their shoulders: their Beards they neuer shauie: if his Wife happen to dye, it is not lawfull for him to marry againe during his life.

Priests.

They minister the Communion with Bread and Wine after our order, but hee breaketh the Bread and putteth it into the Cup vnto the Wine, and commonly some are partakers with them: and they take the Bread out againe with a Spone together with part of the Wine, and do take it themselves, and giue it to others that receiue with them after the same manner. They will not permit any Nition but the *Greekes* to be buried in their fauour Burials, or Church-yards. All their Churches are full of Images, vnto the which the people when they assemble, doe bow and knocke their heads, as I haue before said, that some will haue knobs vpon their fore-heads with knocking, as great as Eggs. All their seruice is in the *Russie* Tongue, and they and the common people haue no other Prayers but these, *Christe Iesu Christe Iesu* *pona mihi*, that is to say, O Lord Iesus Christ, Son of God haue mercie vpon vs: and this is their Prayer, for that the most part of the vnlearned know neither *Pater Noster*, nor the Beliefe, nor Ten Commandments, nor scarcely vnderstand the one halfe of their seruice which is read in their Churches.

All their ser-
uice is in their
Mother
tongue.

When any child is borne, it is not baptiz'd vntill the next Sunday, and if it chance that it be not baptized then, it must tarry vntill the second Sunday after the birth, and it is lawfull for them to take as many God-fathers and God-mothers as they will, the more the better.

Baptisme.

When they goe to the Church, the Mid-wife goeth foremost, carrying the Child, and the God-fathers and God-mothers follow into the midst of the Church, where there is a small Table readie set, and on it an Earthen Pot full of warme water, about the which the God-fathers and God-mothers, with the Child, fetle themselves: then the Clerke giueth vnto euery one of them a small Waxe Candle burning, then cometh the Priest, and blesseth to lay certayne words, which the God-fathers and God-mothers must answer word for word, among which one is, that the Child shall forsake the Deuill, and as that name is pronounced, they must all spit at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he blesseth the water which is in the Pot, and doth breathe ouer it: then he taketh all the Candles which the Goffis haue, and holding them all in one hand letteth part of them drop into the water, and then giueth euery one his Candle againe, and when the water is sanctified, he taketh the Child and holdeth it in a small Tub, and one of the God-fathers taketh the Pot with warme water, and powreth it all vpon the Childes head.

After this he hath many more Ceremonies, as anoynting Eares and Eyes with Spittle, and making certayne Crosse with Oyle vpon the backe, head, and breast of the Child: then taking the Child in his armes, carryeth it to the Images of Saint *Nicholas*, and our Ladie, &c. and speaketh vnto the Images, desiring them to take charge of the Child, that he may liue, and beleue

40 a Christian man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then coming backe from the Images, he setteth a pair of sheares and clippeth the young and tender haire of the Childes head, in three or foure places, and then doth the Priest charge the God-fathers and God-mothers to take charge of the Child, whereunto euery of the God-fathers and God-mothers lay a hand: then the Priest chargeth the Child to cherge, and the Child be brought vp in the faith and feare of God or Christ, and that it be instructed to cherge, and bow to the Images, and so they make an end: then one of the God-fathers must hang a Crosse about the necke of the Child, which hee must alwayes weare, for that *Russie* which hath not a Crosse about his necke they esteeme as no Christian man, and thereupon they lay that wee are no Christians, because we doe not weare Crosse as they doe.

Their Matrimonie is nothing solemnized, but rather in most points abominable, and as *heere*

Of their in-
continentie.

50 as I can I am in this wile following. First, when there is loue betweene the parties, the man senleth vnto the woman a small Cheift or Boxe, wherein is a Whip, Needles, Threed, Silke, Linnen Cloth, Sheares, and such necessities as the shall occupie when she is a Wife, and perhaps sendeth therewithall Raisins, Figs, or some such things, giuing her to vnderstand, that if she doe offend, the must be beaten with the Whip, and by the Needles, Threed, Cloth, &c. that she should apply her selfe diligently to sew, and doe such things as she could best doe, and by the Raisins or Fruits he meaneth if she doe well, no good thing shall bee with-drawne from her, nor bee too deare for her: and the she sendeth vnto him a Shirt, Handkerchers, and some such things of her owne making. And now to the effect.

60 When they are agreed, and the day of Marriage appointed, when they shall goe towards the Church, the Bride walk in no wife content to goe out of the Houfe, but rethirsteth and fristeth with them that would haue her out, and sayneth her selfe to wepe, yet in the end, two women gether out, and lead her towards the Church, her face being couered close, because of her difimulation, that it should not be openly perceiued: for she maketh a great noyse, though she were sobbing and weeping, vntill she come at the Church, and then her face is recovered, The

man commeth after among other of his friends, and they carrie with them to Church a great Pot of Wine or Meade: then the Priest coupleth them together much after our order, one promising to loue and keepe the other during their liues together, &c. which being done, they beginne to drinke, and first the woman drincketh to the man, and when he hath drunke he letteth the cup fall to the ground, haſting immediately to tread vpon it, and ſo doth ſhe, and whether of them tread firſt vpon it, muſt haue the victorie and be Maſter at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, for he is readieſt to ſet his foot on it, becauſe he letteth it fall himſelfe, then they goe home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The Boyes in the ſtreets cry out, and make a noiſe in the meane time, with very diſhoneſt words.

When they come home, the Wife is ſet at the vpper end of the Table, and the Husband next vnto her: they fall then to drinking till they be all drunke, they perchaunce haue a Minſtrill of two, and two naked men, which led her from the Church, dance naked a long time before all the company. When they are wearie of drinking, the Bride and the Bridegroom get them to Bed, for it is in the Eaening alwayes when any of them are married: and when they are going to Bed, the Bridegroom putteth certayne Money, both Gold and Siluer, if he haue it, into one of his Boote, and then ſitteth downe in the Chamber, croſſing his legges, then the Bride muſt pluck off one of his Boote, which he will, and if he happen on the Boot wherein the Money is, ſhee hath not onely the Money for her labour, but is alſo at ſuch choice, as ſhe need not euer from that day forth to pull off his Boote, but if ſhee miſſe the Boot wherein the Money is, he doth not onely loſe the Money, but is alſo bound from that day forwards to pull off his Boote continually.

Then they continue in drinking and making good cheere three dayes following, being accompanied with certayne of their friends, and during the ſame three dayes, he is called a Duke, and ſhe a Dutcheſſe, although they be very poore perſons, and this is as much as I haue learned of their Matrimony: but one common rule is amongſt them, if the woman be not beaten with the Whip once a weeke, the will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, and the women ſay, that if their Husbands did not beat them, they ſhould not loue them.

They vie to marry there very young, their Sonnes at ſixteene and eightene yeares old, and the Daughters at twelue or thirteene yeares or younger: they vie to keepe their Wives very doſely, I meane choſe that be of any reputation, ſo that a man ſhall not ſee one of them but at a chance, when ſhe goeth to Church at Chriſtmaffe or at Eaſter, or elſe going to viſit fome of her friends.

The women
of Ruſſia paint
their faces.

The moſt part of the women vie to ride a ſtride in Saddles with ſtirrups, as men doe, and ſome of them on Slede, which in Summer is not commendable. The Husband is bound to find the Wife colours to paint her with all, for they vie ordinarily to paint themſelues: it is ſucha common practice among them, that it is counted for no ſhame: they greaſe their faces with ſuch colours, that a man may diſcerne them hanging on their face almoſt a night ſhoot off: I cannot ſo well liken them aſto a Millers Wife, for they lookeaſe though they were beaten about the face with a bagge of Meale, but their Eye-browes they colour as blacke as ſeaſt. The beſt property that the women haue, is that they can ſewe well, and imbroider with Silke and Gold excellently.

Of their Bu-
tells.

When any man or woman dyeth, they ſtretch him out, and put a new paire of ſhoes on his feet, becauſe he hath a great Journey to goe: then doe they wind him in a ſheet, as wee doe, but they forget not to put a teſſimonie in his right hand, which the Priſt giueth him, to teſtifie vnto Saint Nicholas that he dyed a Chriſtian man or woman. And they put the Corſe alwayes in a Coffin of Wood, although the partie be very poore: and when they goe towards the Church, the Friends and Kintmen of the partie departed carrie in their hands ſmall Waxe Candles, and they weepe, and howle, and make much lamentation. They that be hanged or beheaded, or ſlew like, haue no teſtimonie with them: how they are recued into Heauen, it is a wonder, without their Paſſport.

Bread made of
ſtraw.
The vnumcer-
ſainelſſe of the
Ruſſians toward
the poore.
Stones or
Baths vſall
among the Moſ-
covites.

There are a great number of poore people among them which dye daily for lacke of ſuſtenance, which is a pittifull caſe to behold: for there hath bin buried in a ſmall time, within theſe two yeares, aboute eightie perſons young and old, which haue dyed onely for lacke of ſuſtenance, for if they had had ſtraw and water enough, they would make ſhift to lue: for a great many are forced in the Winter to dry ſtraw and ſtampe it, and to make bread thereof, or at the leaſt they eate it in ſtead of bread. In the Summer they make good ſhift with grasse, herbes, and rootes: barkes of Trees are made good meat with them at all times. There is no people in the World, as I ſuppoſe, that lue ſo materially as doe the poouerte in thoſe partes: and the moſt part of them that are not hungry for themſelues, and alſo to relieue others if at need, are ſo vnumcerſall that they care not how many they ſee dye of famine or hunger in the ſtreets.

It is a Countrey full of Diſeaſes, diuers, and euill, and the beſt remedie is for any of them, as they hold opinion, to goe often vnto the Hot-houſes, as in a manner euery man hath one of his owne, which he heareth commonly twice euery weeke and all the houſhold ſit at, and with themſelues therein.

The

The firſt and principall Meade is made of the iuyce or liquor taken frome Berrie, called in *Ruſſia*, *Maiſens*, which is of a marvellous ſweet taſte, and of a Carmolint colour, which Berrie I haue knowne in *Perſia*. The ſecond Meade is called *Vſſonka*, becauſe it is made of a Berrie ſo called, and is like a blacke Goosbeerie; but it is like in colour and taſte to the red Vine of *France*. The third Meade is called *Anarodina* or *Smorodina*, ſhort, of a ſmall Berrie much like to the ſmall *Raiſin*, and groweth in great plentie in *Ruſſia*. The fourth Meade is called *Cherenyinka*, which is made of the wild blacke Cherrie. The fiſt Meade is made of Honey and Water, with other mixtures. There is alſo a delicate Drinke drawne from the Root of the Birch Tree, called in the *Ruſſe* Tongue *Berachentes*, which drinke the Noblemen and others vie in April, May, and Iune, which are the three monthes of the Spring-time: for after thoſe monthes, the ſap of the Tree drieth, and then they cannot drinke it.

I haue by me a Letter of Maſter *Chriſtopher Holdeſſon*, written the ſeuenteenth of Nouember 1555, wherein he writes, that it ſeemes, there is no great puniſhment for breaking their Religion, ſome of them aduenturing to eate Milke with him on a Fasting day, which yet others reſuſed. *Tarſkiſly* (ſo he calls the Towne where he writ) is ſarier then *Volga*, the Riuer almoſt a mile broad: he was asked ſeuē *Alines* for a Sturgeon, he had giuen at *Dauſe* nine Mark-ſpace for a worſer: neither had he ſene ſuch abundance of Ling in *England*, as there of Sturgeons, there being in that dayes Market, about three thouſand.

28

¶ IIII.

The Voyage of Maſter ANTHONIE IENKINSON, made from the Citiſe of Moſco in Ruſſia, to the Citiſe of Boghar in Baſctria, in the yeare 1558. written by himſelfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moſcouie Company.

THE three and twentieth day of April, in the yeare 1558. (having obtained the Emperours of *Ruſſia* his Letter, directed vnto ſundry Kings and Princes, by whole Dominions I ſhould paſſe) departed from *Moſco* by water, hauing with mee two of your Seruants; namely, *Richard Iohnſon*, and *Robert Iohnſon*, and a *Tartar* *Tolmach*, with diuers parcels of Wares, as by the Inuentorie appeareth: and the eight and twentieth day wee came to a Towne, called *Colomo*, diſtant from the *Moſco* twentie leagues, and paſſing one league beyond the ſaid *Colomo*, we came vnto a Riuer, called *Occa*, into the which the Riuer *Moſco* falleth, and loſeth his name: and paſſing downe the ſaid Riuer *Occa* eight leagues, wee came vnto a Cattle called *Terrenetukis*, which wee left vpon our right hand, and proceeding ſixty leagues, leauing it alſo on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where old *Ruſſia* ſate, being now moſt of it ruined and ouer-grown, and diſtant from the ſaid *Terrenetukis*, ſix leagues: the fourth day we paſſed by a Cattle, called *Terreconia*, from *Rexan* twentie leagues, and the ſixth day we came to another Cattle, called *Caffim*, vnder the government of a *Caffin*, *Tartar* Prince, named *Oſcar Zegaine*, ſometime Emperour of the worthy Citiſe of *Cazan*, and now ſubiect vnto the Emperour of *Ruſſia*. But leauing *Caffim* on our left hand, the eighth day *Motom*, we came vnto a faire Towne, called *Motom*, from *Caffim* ſewente leagues, where wee tooke the Sunne, and found the latitude ſixty ſix degrees: and proceeding forward the eleuenth day, wee came vnto another faire Towne and Cattle, called *Nyſe Nouogrod*, ſituated at the falling of the foreſaid Riuer *Occa*, into the worthy Riuer of *Volga*, diſtant from the ſaid *Motom* ſue and twentie leagues, in the latitude of ſixty ſix degrees eighteen minutes. From *Rexan* to this *Nyſe Nouogrod*, on both ſides the ſaid Riuer of *Occa*, is rayſed the greateſt Rore of Waxe and Honey in all the Land of *Ruſſia*. We tarried at the foreſaid *Nyſe Nouogrod* vntill the nineteenth day, for the coming of a Captaine which was ſent by the Emperour to rule at *Aſtracan*, who being arrived, and hauing the number of ſue hundred great Boates vnder his conduct, ſome laden with Victuals, Soulliers, and Munition: and other ſome with Merchandize, departed alſo with the ſaid nineteenth day from the ſaid *Nyſe Nouogrod*, diſtant ſue and twentie leagues, which wee left vpon our right hand. This Towne or Cattle had ſuch his name of this Emperours Father, who was called *Vaſilum*, and Gored in the *Ruſſe* Tongue is as much to ſay, as a Cattle, ſo that *Vaſilum* ſignifieth to ſay, *Vaſilum* Cattle: and it was ſo further place that the ſaid Emperour wch, hath had great good ſucceſſe in his Warres, both againſt the *Cherſians*, and alſo the *Alabometis*, and *Gentiles*, but eſpecially againſt the *Tartars*, enlarging his Empire euen to the *Caspian* Sea, hauing conquered the famous Riuer of *Volga*, with all the Countreys thereabout adjacent. This proceeding on our journey, the ſue and twentieth day of May afore ſaid,

Diuers forts
of *Ruſſia*.
Drinckes, re-
ported by *The-
man Bulg*.

Moſco in 55 de-
grees, to mi-
nutes.

Occa.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

Ruſſia.

six day of August, and having bought and provided a Boate in company with certayne *Tartari* and *Perfians*, we laded our goods and imbarked our felues, and the same day departed I, with the said two *Iobsons*, having the whole charge of the Navigation downe the said River *Volga*, being very crooked, and full of flats toward the mouth thereof. We entered into the *Caspian Sea* the tenth day of August at the Easterly side of the said River, being twentie leagues from *Afracan* atoreland, in the latitude of fortie fixe degrees, twentie seven minutes.

They enter into the *Caspian Sea*.

Volga.

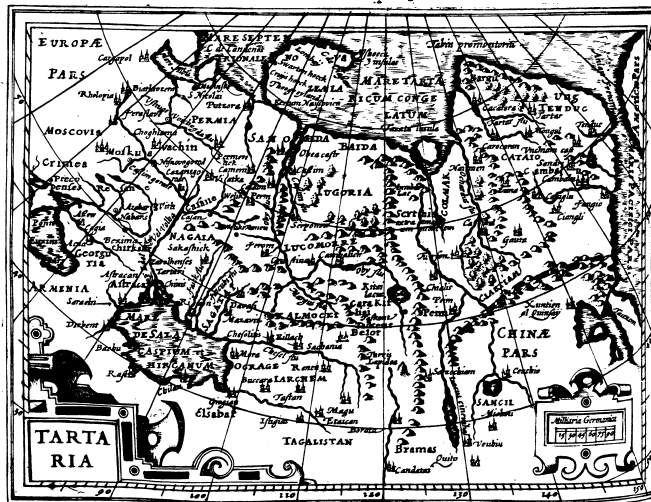
The Blue Sea.

Eighteen leagues from *Volga*.

Volga hath feutene mouthes or fals into the Sea: and we having a large wind, kept the North-east shore, and the eleventh day we sayled seven leagues East North-east, and came vnto an Iland having an high Hill therein, called *Accurgar*, a good Marke in the Sea. From thence East ten leagues, we fell with another Iland, called *Bambetta*, much higher then the other. Within these two Ilands to the Northwards, is a great Bay called the *Blue Sea*. From thence we sayled East and by North ten leagues, and having a contrary wind, we came to an Anchor in a fathome water, and forid vntill the fifteenth day, having a great storme at South-east, being a most contrary wind, which we rid out. Then the wind came to the North, and wee weighed, and set our course South-east, and that day sayled eight leagues.

Thus proceeding forwards, the sixteenth day we loft sight of Land, and the same day sayled thirte leagues, and the eighteenth day twentie leagues winding East, and fell with a Land called *Banghletia*, being feutene foure leagues from the mouth of the said *Volga*, in the latitude of fortie fixe degrees fiftie foure minutes, the Coast lying neereft East and by South, and West and by North. At the point of this Iland lyeth buried a holy Prophet, as the *Tartari* call him, of their Law, where great deuotion is vied of all such *Mahometists* as doe passe that way.

HONDIVS bij Map of Tartaria.



The nineteenth day the winde being West, and wee winling East South-east, we sayled ten leagues, and passed by a great River called *laic*, which hath his spring in the Land of *Siberia*, laic River, nigh vnto the foresaid River *Cama*, and runneth through the Land of *Nagay*, falling into this *Mare Caspium*. And vp this River one dayes journey is a Towne called *Serachick*, librick to the foresaid *Tartar* Prince, called *Murfi Smille*, which is now in friendship with the Emperour of *Russia*. Heere is no trade of merchandise vied, for that the people haue no vief of money, and are all Men of warre, and Pastures of cattell, and guen much to theft and murder. Thus being at an anchor against this River *laic*, and all our men being on Land, I, who lay fore sicke, and five *Tartari*, whereof one was reputed a holy man, because hee came from *Mecca*, there came vnto vs a Boat with thirte men well armed and appointed, who boarded vs, and began to enter into our Barke, and our holy *Tartar*, called *Azy*, perceiving that, asked them what they would haue, and withall made a prayer: with that these Rousen stayed, declaring that they were Gentlemen, banished from their Countrey, and out of liuing, and came to see if there were any *Ruffis*, or other *Christians* (which they call *Cuphars*) in our Barke: To see if there were any *Ruffis*, or other *Christians* (which they call *Cuphars*) in our Barke: To whom this *Azi* most stoutly answered, that there were none, auowing the fame by great oaths of their Law, (which lightly they will not breake) whom the Rousers beleeced, and vpon his words departed. And to through the fidelitie of that *Tartar*, I with all my companie and goods were saved, and our men being come on board, and the wind faue, we departed from that place, and winling East and South-east, that day being the twentieth of August sayled sixteen leagues.

The one and twentieth day we passed ouer a Bay of fixe leagues broad, and fell with a Cape of Land, having two Ilands at the South-east part thereof, being a good marke in the Sea: and doubling the Cape the Land trended North-east, and maketh another Bay, into which falleth the greater River *Tem*, springing out of the Land of *Colmack*. The two and twentieth, three and twentieth, and foure and twentieth dayes, we were at anchor. The five and twentieth, the winde came faue, and we sayled that day twentie leagues, and passed by an Iland of low land, and therabout are many flats and faine: and to the Northward of this Iland there goeth in a great Bay, but we fet off from this Iland, and winled South to come into deepe water, being much troubled with shoals and flats, and ranne that course ten leagues, then East South-east, twentie leagues, and fell with the maine Land, being full of copped Hills, and passing along the coast twentie leagues, the further we sayled, the higher was the Land.

The Countrey of *Colmack*.

The fteen and twentieth day we crossed ouer a Bay, the South shore being the higher Land, and tell with a high point of Land: and being ouerthwart the Cape, there rose such a storme at the East, that we thought verily we should haue perished: this storme continued three dayes. From this Cape we passed to a Port called *Mangulaue*. The place where we should haue arrived at the Southermoit part of the *Caspian Sea*, is twelue leagues within a Bay: but we being fore tormented and tossed with this foresaid storme, were driuen vnto another Land on the other side the Bay, ouerthwart the said *Mangulaue*, being very lowe Land, and a place as well had before arruall, no liked of vs.

The Port of *Mangulaue*.

But yet there went certayne of our men to Land to talke with the Gouverneur and People, as well for our good visage at their hands, as also for prouision of Camels to carrie our goods from the said Sea side to a place called *Sellyazur*, being from the place of our landing fixe and twentie dayes journey. Our Messengers returned with comfortable words and laire promises of all things.

Wherefore the third day of September 1558. we discharged our Barke, and I with my companie were gently enterntayned of the Prince, and of his people. But before our departure from thence, we found them to bee a very bad and brutish people: for they cealed not daily to molest vs, either by fighting, stealing, or begging, rayling the price of Horles, and Camels, and Victuals, double that it was wont thier to be, and forced vs to buy the water that we drinke: which caused vs to hasten away, and to conclude with them as well for the hire of Camels, as for the price of such as wee bought, with other prouision, according to their owne demand: So that for every Camels lading, being but foure hundred weight of ours, we agreed to giue three Hides of *Russia*, and foure wooden dishes, and to the Prince or Gouverneur of the said people one ninth, and two feutenth: namely, nine feuerall things, and twice feuen feuerall things: for money they vie none.

They goe to land.

And thus being really, the fourteenth of September we departed from that place, being a Caruan of a thousand Camels. And having trauelled fixe dayes journey, we came to another Princes Dominion, and vpon the way there came vnto vs certayne *Tartari* on horsebacke, being well armed, and seruants vnto the said Prince called *Timor Sultan*, Gouverneur of the said Countrey of *Mangulaue*, where wee meant to haue arruied and discharged our Barke, if the great storme afore said had not disappointed. These afore said *Tartari* stayed our Caruan in the name of the Prince, and opened our Wares, and tooke such things as they thought best for their said Prince without money, but for such things as they tooke from mee, which was a ninth (after much diffention) I rode vnto the same Prince, and presented my selfe before him, requesting

The Countrey of *Mangulaue*: It stands in

his favour, and Porport to trauell thorow his Countrey, and not to be robbed or spoyled of his people: which request he granted me, and entertaigned me very gently, commanding me to be well texted with flesh and Mares milke: for Bread they vie none, nor other drinke except water: but money he had none to give me for such things as he tooke of me, which might be of value in *Russe* money, fifteen Rubbles, but hee gave mee his Letter, and a Horse worth seven Rubbles. And so I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for he was reported to be a very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstood his commandment was, that I should have bene robbed and destroyed.

This *Sultan* lived in the fields without Castle or Towne, and late, at my being with him, in a little round house made of reeds couered without with Felz, and within with Carpets. There was with him the great Metropolitan of that wilde Countrey, esteemed of the people, as the Bishop of *Rome* is in most parts of *Europe*, with diuers other of his chiefe men. The *Sultan* Lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my coming into those parts, with my further presence in good part. So having leaue I departed, and ouertooke our Carauan, and proceeding on our journey, and traueiled twentie dayes in the W. liernesse from the Sea side without seeing Towne or habitation, carrying provision of victuals with vs for the same time, and were driven by need to eat one of my Camels and a Horse for our part, as other did the like: and during the brackish and salt, and yet sometimes passed two or three dayes without the same. And the first day of October ensuing, we came vnto a Gulfe of the *Caspian* Sea againe, where we found the water very fresh and sweet: at this Gulfe the Customers of the King of *Turkemen* met vs, who tooke custome of euery hie and twentie one, and tuen ninths for the said King and his brethren, which being receiued they departed, and we remayned there a day after to refresh our felues.

Note, that in times past there did fall into this Gulfe the great Riuer *Oxus*, which hath his springs in the Mountains of *Parapansius* in *India*, and now cometh not so farre, but falleth into another Riuer, called *Ardeek*, which runneth toward the North, and cometh himselfe in the ground, passing vnder the ground about five hundred miles, and then issueth out againe and falleth into the Lake of *Kasay*.

We having refreshed our felues at the foresaid Gulfe, departed thence the fourth day of October, and the tenth day arrived at a Castle, called *Sellacure*, where the King, called *Asim Can*, receiued with three other of his brethren, and the ninth day I was commanded to come before his presence, to whom I deliuered the Emperours Letters of *Russia*: and I also gaue him a Present of a ninth, who entertaigned me very well, and caused me to cate in his presence as his brethren did, feeding me with flesh of a wilde Horse, and Mares milke without Bread. And the next day he sent for me againe, and asked of me diuers questions, as well touching the affaires of the Emperour of *Russia*, as of our Countrey and Lawes, to which I answered as I thought good: so that at my departure he gaue mee his Letters of safe conduct.

This Castle of *Sellacure* is situated vpon an high Hill, where the King called the *Can* lieth, whose Palace is built of earth very base, and not strong: the people are but poore, and haue little trade of merchandise among them. The South part of this Castle is low land, but very fruitful, where growe many good fruits, among which there is one called a *Dymie*, or a great bignell, and full of moisture, which the people doe cate after meate in stead of drinke. Also there growe another fruit, called a *Curbosie*, of the bigness of a great Cucumber, yellow, and sweet as Sugar: also a certaine Corne, called *Agur*, whole stalk is much like a Sugar cane, and as high, and the Graine like Rice, which groweth at the top of the cane like a cluster of Grapes: the water that issueth into this Countrey is drawne by direct out of the Riuer *Oxus*, vnto the great destruction of the said Riuer, for which cause it is like to be destroyed, and so become a Wildernesse for want of water, when the Riuer of *Oxus* shall faile.

The fourteenth day of the month we departed from this Castle of *Sellacure*, and the sixteenth of the same we arrived at a Citie called *Orgence*, where we payed Custome as well for our owne heas, as for our Camels and Horses. And hauing there Iourned one moneth, attending the time of our further trauell, the King of that Countrey called *Ally Sultan*, brother to the fore-named *Asim Can*, returned from a Towne called *Corasjan*, within the borders of *Persia*, which he lately had conquered from the *Persians*, with whom hee and the rest of the Kings of *Turkemia* haue continuall warres. Before this King also I was commanded to come, to whom I likewise presented the Emperours Letters of *Russia* and he entertaigned me well, and demanded of me diuers questions, and at my departure gaue mee his Letters of safe conduct.

This Citie or Towne of *Orgence* standeth in a plaine ground, with walls of the earth, by estimation foure miles about it. The buildings within are also of earth, but ruined a good order: it hath one long street that is couered about, which is the place of their Market. It hath bene wonne and lost foure times within seven yeeres by euill warres, by means whereof there

Twentie dayes
trauel in the
Wildernesse,
with scantie
of water.

Another Gulfe
of the *Caspian*
Sea.

Will de Rubria
de Gribeth this
Riuer of *Ardeek*
ca. 4.

Sellacure, or
Sibaygare.

Letters of safe
conduct.

Persie in 45.
degrees 48. min.

are but few Merchants in it, and they very poore, and in all that Towne I could not sell above four Kerleys. The chiefe commodities there sold are such wares as come from *Babbar*, and out of *Persia*, but in most small quantitie not worth the writing. All the Land from the *Caspian* Sea to this Citie of *Orgence*, is called the Land of *Turkemen*, and is subiect to the said *Asim Can*, and his brethren which bee few in number, and one of them hath the name of the chiefe King called *Can*, but he is little obeyed lauing in his owne Dominion, and where hee dwelleth: for euery one will be King of his owne portion, and one brother seeketh alwaies to dwellth another, lauing no naturall loue among them, by reason that they are begotten of diuers women, and commonly they are the children of slutes, either *Christians* or *Gentiles*, which the father doth keepe as Concubines, and euery *Can* or *Sultan* hath at the least foure or five wiues, besides young maidens and boyes, liuing most viciously: and when there are warres betweene these brethren, (as they are seldome without) he that is overcome if hee be not slaine, fleeth to the field with such companie of men as will follow him, and there lieth in the Wildernesse, referring to watering places, and so robbeth and spoylth as many Carauans of Merchants and others, as they are able to overcome, continuing in this sort his wicked life, vntill such time as he may get power and aide to invade some of his brethren againe. From the *Caspian* Sea vnto the Castle of *Sellacure* aforesaid, and all the Countries about the said Sea, the people live without Towne or habitation in the wilde fields, remoouing from one place to another in great companie with their Cattell, whereof they haue great flocks, as Camels, Horses, and Sheepe both tame and wilde. These sheepe are of great stature with great buttocks, weighing fixtie or eighty pound in weight. There are many wilde Horses which the *Tartars* doe many times kill with their Hawkes, and that in this order.

The Hawkes are lured to lize vpon the beasts neckes or heads, which with chafing of them, flues, and fore beating of the Hawkes are tyed: then the Hunter following his game doth slay the Horse with his Arrow or Sword. In all this land there groweth no grasse, but a certaine brull or heath, whereon the Cattell feeding become very fat.

The *Tartars* neuer ride without their Bowes, Arrows, and Sword, although it bee on hauing, or at any other pleasure, and they are good Archers both on horse-backe, and on foot also. These people haue not vie of Gold, Silver, or any other coine, but when they lacke apparell or other necessaries, they barter their Cattell for the same. Bread they haue none, for they neither till nor sowe: they be great deuourers of flesh, which they cut in small pieces, and cate it by handfulls most greedily, and especially the Horse flesh. Their chiefe drinke is Mares milke fowred, as I haue said before of the *Nagayans*, and they will be drunke with the same. They haue no Rivers nor places of water in this Countrey, vntill you come to the foresaid Gulfe, distant from the place of our landing twentie dayes iourney, except it bee in Wells, the water whereof is saltish, and yet distant from the one from the other two dayes iourney and more. They cate their meate vpon the ground, fitting with their legs double vnder them, and so allo when they pray. Arte or Science they haue none, but live most idly, sitting round in great companie in the fields, deuising, and talking most vainly.

They fixe and twentieth day of Nouember, we departed from the Towne of *Orgence*, and hauing traueled by the Riuer *Oxus* one hundred miles, we passed over another great Riuer, called *Ardeek*, where we payed a certaine petite custome. This Riuer *Ardeek* is great, and very swift, falling out of the foresaid *Oxus*, and passing about one thousand mile to the Northward, it then consumeth it selfe in the ground, and passing vnder the same about five hundred miles, issueth out againe, and falleth into the Lake of *Kasay*, as I haue before declared.

The sixteenth of December following, we arrived at a Castle called *Kait*, subiect to a *Sultan* called *Sarwar* *Sultan*, who meant to haue robbed all the *Christians* in the Carauan, had it not bene for care of his brother the King of *Orgence*, as we were informed by one of his chiefe Counsellours, who willed vs to make him a present, which he tooke, and deliuered: besides we payed at the said Castle for Custome, of euery Camell one red hide of *Russia*, besides petite gifts to his Officers.

Thus proceeding in our iourney, the tenth day at night being at rest, and our watch set, there came vnto vs foure Horsemen, which we tooke as *Spies*, from whom we tooke their weapons, and bound them, and hauing well examined them, they confessed that they had sene the tract of many Horsemen, and no footing of Camels, and gaue vs to vnderstand, that there were Romers and theecues abroad: for there traueled few people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie of Carauan, where there be many Camels: and Horse-fleets new without Camels were to be doubtfull. Whereupon we consulted and determined amongst our felues, and sent a Poile to the said *Sultan* of *Kait*, who immediately came himselfe with three hundred men, and met these foure suspected men, which we sent vnto him, and examined them to fortie men three dayes iourney forward, that they confessed, there was a banished Prince with theyr felues miles west of his companie.

The *Sultan* therefore vnderstanding, that the Theecues were not many, appointed vs eightie

The Countrey
of *Turkemen*.

The Riuer of
Ardeek falleth
into the Lake
of *Kasay*.

The Castle of
Kait.

men well armed with a Capitaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Sultan himselfe returned backe again, taking the foure theues with him. These fouldiers travelled with vs two dayes, consuming much of our victuals. And the third day in the morning very early they set out before our Carauan, and hauing ranged the wilderness for the space of foure houres, they met vs, coming towards vs as fast as their horse could runne, and declared that they had found the tract of hories not farre from vs, perceiving well that wee should meete with enemies, and therefore willed vs to appoint our felues for them, and asked vs what wee would giue them to conduct vs further, or else they would returne. To whom wee offered as we thought good vs, and went backe to their *Sahars*, who (as we coniectured) was priue to the conspiracie. But they being gone, certaine *Tatars* of our companie called holy men, (because they had bene at *Mecca*) called the whole Carauan to stay, and would make their prayers, and dinn: how should prosper in our iourney, and whether wee should meete with any ill companie or no: To which, our whole Carauan did agree. And they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and rooke the blade bones of the same, and first sod them, and then burnt them, and tooke of the blood of the said sheepe, and mingled it with the powder of the said bones, and wrote certaine Characters with the said blood, vnto many other ceremonies and words, and wrote certaine uned and found, that wee should meete with enemies and theues (to our great trouble) but should overcome them, to which forcerie, I and my companie gaue no credit, but wee found it true: for within three houres after that the fouldiers departed from vs, which was the fifth day of December, in the morning, wee eleyed farr off diuers horsemen which made towards vs, and wee (perceiving them to bee rousers) gathered our felues together, being fortified by our weapons, and able to fight, and wee made our prayers together eury one after his Law, professing to luse and dye one with another, and so prepared our felues. When the theues were nigh vnto vs, wee persecuted them to bee in number thirtie seuen men well armed, and appointed with his bowes, arrows, and swords, and the Capitaine a Prince banished from his Countrey. They willed vs to yeeld our felues, or else to bee slaine, but wee defied them, wherewith they shot at vs all at once, and we at them very hotly, and so continued our fight from morning vntill two houres within night, diuers men, horses and camels being wounded and slaine on both parts: and had it not bene for foure hand-guns, which I and my companie had with vs, wee had bene ouercome and destroyed: for the theues were better armed, and were also better Archers then wee; But after we had slaine diuers of their men and horses with our Guns, they durst not approach to nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morning, which wee accepted, and encamped our felues vnder a hill, and made the fashion of a Castle, walling it about with packes of wares, and layd our Horses and Camels within the same, to faue them from the shot of arrows: and the theues also incamped within an arrow shot of vs, but they were betwixt vs and the water, which was to our great discomfort, because neither wee nor our Camels had drinke in two dayes before.

This keeping good watch, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the Theues sent a messenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Capitaine, in their tongue, the Carauan *Sahars*, who answered the messenger, I will not depart from my companie to goe into the halfe way to talke with thee: but if that thy Prince with all his companie will sweare by our Law to keepe the truce, then will I send a man to talke with thee, or else not. Which the Prince vnderstanding as well himselfe as his companie, iwore fouldre that wee might all heare: And then we sent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger. The message was pronounced aloud in this order. *Our Prince demandeth of the Carauan Bahis, and of alij that bee Bullfarms, (that is to say, Circumcised) not destroy your bloods, that you deliver into his hands as many Captives, that is, which others (meaning vs the Christians) are at warre among you with their goods, and in so doing, hee will suffer you to depart with your goods, in quiett selfe, and on the contrary, you shall bee handled with no lesse cruelty then the Captives, if hee overcome you, as hee doth not now.* To which our Carauan *Bahis* answered, that hee had no Christians in his companie, nor other strangers, but two *Turks* which were of their Law; and although hee had, hee would rather dye then deliver them, and that wee were not afraid of his threatnings, and that should hee know when day appeared. And so pausing in talke, the Theues (contrary to their oath) carried our holy man away to their Prince, crying with a loude voyce in token of victorie, *ello, ello*. Wherewith wee were much discomforted, fearing that that holy man would betray vs: but hee being cruelly handled and much examined, would not to death confesse any thing which was to vs preiudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had slaine and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was spent, in the morning wee prepared our felues to battell againe: which the theues perceiving, required to talke to agreement, and asked much of vs: And to be briefte, the most part of our companie being loath to goe to battell againe, and hauing little to lose, and life consuet to capall, wee were compelled to agree, and to giue the theues twentie ninths (that is to say) twentie times nine fassall things, and a Camel to carrie away the same, which being received, the theues departed into the wilderness to their elle

Indication.

habitation, and wee went on our way forward. And that night came to the River *Oxus*, where wee refreshed our felues, hauing bene three dayes without water and drinke, and tarried there all the next day, making merie with our slane Horses and Camels, and then departed from that place, and for feare of meeting with the said theues againe, or such like, wee left the high way which went along the said River, and passed through a wilderness of land, and travelled foure dayes in the same before wee came to water: and then came to a Well, the water being very brackish, and we then as before were in need of water, and of other victuals, being forced to kill our Horses and Camels to eat.

In this wilderness also, wee had almost fallen into the hands of Theues: for one night being at rest, there came certaine scouts, and carried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated from the Carauan where with there was a great shout and crye, and we immediately laded our Camels, and departed before about midnight, and very darke, and droue fore till we came to the river *Oxus* againe, and then wee feared nothing being walled with the said river: and whether it was for that wee had gotten the water, or for that the same theues were farre from vs when the scouts discovered vs, we knowe not, but wee feared that danger.

So vpon the three & twentieth day of December, we arrived at the Citie of *Boghar* in the Land of *Bactria*. This *Boghar* is situated in the lowest part of all the Land, walled about with a high wall of earth, with diuers Gates into the same: it is diuided into three partitions, whereof two parts are the Kings, and the third part is for Merchants & Markets, and eury Science hath their dwelling and market by them selfe. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part of Earth, but there are also many Houses, Temples, and Monuments of stone fassampfully builded, and gilt, and specially Bath-Houses for artificially built, that the like thereof is not in the world: the manner whereof is too long to rehearse. There is a little river running through the midst of the said Citie, but the water thereof is most vnholefome, for it breedeth sometimes in men that drinke thereof, and especially in them that bee not there borne, a Worme of an ell long, which yeth commonly in the leg, betwixt the flesh and the skin, and is plucked out about the Ankle with great art and cunning, the Surgeons being much practised therein, and it fhee brake in plucking out, the patient dyeth, and eury day the cometh out about an inch, which is rolled vp, and so worketh till the leg be all out. And yet it is there forbidden to drinke any oppressed and beaten most cruelly through the open markets, and there are Officers appointed for the same, who haue authoritie to goe into any mans house, to search if hee haue either *Aquema*, Wine, or Brag, and finding the same, doe brake the vessels, spoyle the drinke, and punish the matters of the house most cruelly; yea, and many times it they perceive but by the breath of a man that hee hath drunke, without further exa mination he shall not escape their hands.

There is a Metropolitan in this *Boghar*, who causeth this law to be so faithfully kept: and he is more obeyed then the King, and will depose the King, and place another at his will and pleasure, as hee did by this King that reigned at our being there, and his predecessor, by the means 40 was a Prince that loved all Christians well.

This Countrey of *Boghar* was sometime subiect to the *Persians*, and doe now speake the *Persian* tongue, but yet now it is a Kingdome of it selfe, and hath most crueli warres continually the *Persians* with the said *Persians* about their Religion, although they bee all *Mohometists*. One occasion of their warres is, for that the *Persians* will not cut the hayre of their upper lips, as the *Bogharians* leaues, as they doe the Christians. These are of

The King of *Boghar* hath no great power or riches, his revenues are but small, and hee is most maintained by the Citie: for he taketh the tenth parte of all things that are there sold, as well by the Craftsmen as by the Merchants, to the great impoverishment of the people, whom hee keepeth in great subiection, and when hee lacketh money, he sendeth his officers to the Shoppes 50 of the said Merchants, to take their wares to pay his debts, and will haue credit of force, as the money is filuer and copper, for gold there is none current: they haue but one piece of filuer, and that is worth twelue pence *English*, and the copper money are called *Poles*, and one hundred and twentie of them goeth to the v-lue of the said twelue-pence, and is more common payment then the filuer, which the King causeth to rife and fall to his most advantage eury other month, and sometimes twice a month, not caring to oppress his people, for that hee looketh not to raigine about two or three yeares, before hee be either liue or driuen away, to the great destruction of the Countrey and Merchants.

The twentie sixth day of the month, I was commanded to goe before the said King, to whom 60 I presented the Emperor of *Russia* his Letters, who entertained vs most gently, and caused vs to eate in his presence, and diuers times hee lent for me, and dwelled with me familiarly in his secret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperor, and the great *Turke*, as also of our Countreys, Lawes, and Religion, and caused vs to shoote in hand-guns before him, and did himselfe

practise

The river of Oxus.

A wilderness of land.

Boghar a Citie of Bactria in 39. degrees, 10. minutes.

A strange Worme in mens legs.

practise the vse thereof. But after all this great entertainment, before my departure he shewed him selfe a very *Tartar*: for he went to the warres owing me money, and law me not payed before his departure. And although indeed hee gave order for the same, yet was I very ill satisfied, and forced to rebate part, and to take waies as payment for the rest contrary to my expectation: but of a bigger better payment I could not haue, & glad I was so to be paid and dispatched.

But yet I must needs praise and commend this barbarous King, who immediately after my arrival at *Boghar*, having vnderstood our trouble with the *Turkes*, sent one hundred men well armed, and gave them great charge not to returne before they had either slaine or taken the sayd theues. Who according to their commission ranged the wilderness in such sort, that they met with the said companie of *Theures*, and slew part, and part fled, and foure they tooke and brought vnto the King, and two of them were fore wounded in our skirmish with our Guns: And after the King had sent for me to come to see them, hee caused them all foure to be hangd at his Palace gate, because they were Gentlemen, to the example of others. And of such goods as were gotten againe, I had part reformed me; and this good Iustice I found at his hands.

There is yearly great resort of Merchants to this Citie of *Boghar*, which traueill in great Caravans from the Countries therabout adioyning, as *India*, *Persia*, *Balgh*, *Russia*, with diuers others, and in times past from *Cathay*, when there was passage: but these Merchants are so beggely and poore, and bring so little quantitie of wares, lying two or three yeeres to sell the same, that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worthy the following. The chiefe commodities that are brought thither out of these forelaide Countries, are these following.

The *Indians* doe bring fine Whites, which the *Tartars* doe all roll about their heads, and all other Kindes of Whites, which serue for apparell made of Cotton-wooll and *Crasse*, be Gold, Silkes, precious Stones, and Spices they bring none. I enquired and perceived that all such trade pertaineth to the Ocean Sea, and the reason where all such things are gotten are in the subiection of the *Portugals*. The *Indians* carrie from *Boghar* againe wrought Silkes, red Hides, Slaues, and Horles, with such like, but of Kerlesis and other cloath, they make little account. I offered to barter with Merchants of those Countries, which came from the furthest parts of *India*, euen from the Country of *Bengalia*, and the riuer *Ganges*, to giue them Kerlesis for their commodities, but they would not barter for such commodities as Cloath.

The *Persians* doe bring thither *Craikes*, Woollen-cloth, Linnen-cloth, diuers Kindes of wrought fine Silkes, Argomacks, with such like, and doe carrie from thence red hydes with other *Ruffe* wares, and Slaues, which are of diuers Countries, but cloath they will buy none, for that they bring thither themselves, and is brought vnto them as I haue inquired from *Allep* in *Syria*, and the parts of *Turkie*. The *Russes* doe carrie vnto *Boghar*, red hydes, sheepe skintes, woollen cloath of diuers fortis, woollen vessels, byrdes, fadles, with such like, and doe carrie away from thence diuers Kindes of wares made of cotton-wooll, diuers Kindes of filkes, *Crasse*, with other things, but there is but small verterance. From the Countries of *Cathay* are brought thither in time of peace, and when the way is open, Muske, Rubarbe, Satten, Damaske, with diuers others things. At my being at *Boghar*, there came Carauans out of all these forelaide Countries, except from *Cathay*: and the cause why there came none from thence, was the great wars that had duried three yeeres before my coming thither, and yet duried betwixt two great Countries and Cities of *Tartars*, that are diu. in the way betwixt the said *Boghar* and the said *Cathay*, and certaine barbarous wild people, as well *Gentiles* as *Mahometists* bordering to the said Cities. The Cities are called *Taukent* and *Casiker*, and the people that warre against *Taukent* are called *Cockaks* of the law of *Mahomet*: and they which warre with the said Country of *Casiker* are called *Kings*, *Gentiles* and *Idolaters*. These two barbarous Nations are of great force, lying in the helde without House or Towne, and haue almost subdued the forelaide Cities, and so stopp'd up the way, that it is impossible for any Carauan to passe vnimpoyred: so that three yeeres before our being there, no Carauan had gone, or vied trade betwixt the Countries of *Cathay* and *Boghar*, and when the way is cleare, it is nine moneths journey.

To speake of the said Country of *Cathay*, and of such newes as I haue heard thereof, thus thought it best to referre it to our meeting. I hauing made my Iolace at *Boghar*, in the winter time, and hauing learned by much inquisition, the trade thereof, as also of all the other Countries thereto adioyning, and the time of the yeere being come, for all Carauans to depart, and also the King being gone to the warres, and newes came that hee was dead, and I abhorred by the Metropolitane himselfe, that I should depart, because the Towne was like to be besieged: I thought it good and meete, to take my journey some way, and determined to haue gone from thence into *Persia*, and to haue let the trade of that Country, although I had informed my selfe sufficiently thereof, as well at *Afracane* as at *Boghar*: and perceived well the trades not to be much vsed: the trades of *Tartaria*: but when I should haue taken my journey that way, it was let by diuers occasions: the one was, the great warres that did newly begin betwixt the *Sogdians*, and the Kings of *Tartaria*, whereby the wayes were destroyed: and there was a Carauan destroyed with routes and theues, which came out of *India* and *Persia*, by late conduct: and about ten dayes journey from *Boghar*, they were robbed, and a great part slaine. Also the Metropolitane

Carauan do
destroyed.

tion of *Boghar*, who is greater then the King, tooke the Emperours letters of *Russia* from me, without which I should haue bene taken Slaue in euery place: also all such wares as I had received in barter for Cloath, and as I tooke perforce of the King, and other his Nobles, in payment of money due vnto me, were not vendible in *Persia*: for which causes, and diuers others, I was constrained to come backe againe to *Mare Caspium*, the same way I went: so that the eight of March, 1559. we departed out of the said Citie of *Boghar* being a Carauan of fixe hundred Camels: and it wee had not departed when we did, I and my companie had bene in danger to haue loit life and goods. For ten dayes after our departure, the King of *Samarcand* came with an armie, and besieged the said Citie of *Boghar*, the King being absent, and gone to the warres against another Prince his kinsman, as the like chanceth in those Countries once in two or three yeeres. For it is maruell, if a King raigne there about three or foure yeeres, to the great destruction of the Country and Merchants.

The five and twentieth of March, we came to the forelaide Towne of *Urgence*, and escaped the danger of foure hundred routes, which lay in wayte for vs backe againe, being the most of them of kindred to that companie of theues, which wee met with going forth, as we perceived by foure spies, which were taken. There were in my companie, and committed to my charge, two Ambassadors, the one from the King of *Boghar*, the other from the King of *Balk*, and were sent vnto the Emperour of *Russia*. And after hauing tarried at *Urgence*, and the Castle of *Selskye*, eight dayes for the assembling, and making ready our Carauan, the second of April we departed from thence, hauing foure moe Ambassadors in our companie, sent from the King of *Urgence*, and other *Sultans*, his brethren, vnto the Emperour of *Russia*, with answer of such Letters as I brought them: and the same Ambassadors were also committed vnto my charge by the said Kings and Princes: to whom I promised most faithfully, and iure by our Law, that they should be well vied in *Russia*, and suffered to depart from thence againe in safetie, according as the Emperour had writt also in his letters: for they somewhat doubted, because there had none gone out of *Tartaria* into *Russia*, of long time before.

The three and twentieth of April, we arrived at the *Mare Caspium* againe, where we found our Barke which wee came in, but neither Anchor, Cable, Cooke, nor Sayle: neuertheless we brought Hempe with vs, and spun a Cable our felles, with the rest of our tackling, and so made vs a sayle of cloth of Cotton-wooll, and rigged our Barke as well as wee could, but hoare or anchor we had none. In the meane time being desirous to make an anchor of wood of a Carr-wheele, there arrived a Barke, which came from *Afracane*, with *Tartars* and *Russes*, which had two Anchors, with whom I agreed for the one: and thus being in a readinesse, wee set sayle and departed, I and the two *Johnsons*, being Master and Marinier our felles, hauing in our Barke the said fixe Ambassadors, and twentie hue *Russes*, which had bene Slaues a long time in *Tartaria*, nor euer had before my coming, libertie, or meanes to get home, and these Slaues serued to row when need was. Thus sayling sometimes along the coast, and sometimes out of sight of land. The thirteenth day of May, hauing a contrary winde, we came to an anchor, being three leagues from the shore, and there arose a fore storme, which continued foure houres, and our cable being of our owne spinning, brake, and lost our anchor, being off a lee shoare, and hauing no boate to helpe vs, wee hoyled our sayle, and bare roomer with the said fore storme, for present death: but as God provided for vs, we ranne into a creeke full of Oze and so found our felles with our Barke, and liued in great discomfort for a time. For although wee should haue been with our liues the danger of the sea, yet if our barke had perished, we knew we should haue been either destroyed, or taken slaues by the people of that Country, who live wild in the field, like beasts, without house or habitation. Thus when the storme was leas'd, wee went out of the creeke againe: and hauing set the land with our Compass, and taken certain marks of the time, during the time of the tempest, whilst we rid at our anchor, we went directly to the place where we rid, with our Barke againe, and found our anchor which we lost: whereas the *Tartars* much marvelled, how we did it. While wee were in the creeke, we made an anchor of wood of an anchor againe. Within two dayes after, there arose another great storme, at the North-east, and we lay a trike being driven farre into the sea, and had much adoe to keepe our Barke from sinking, the billow was so great: but at the last, hauing faire weather, we tooke the Sunne, and knowing how the Land lay from vs, we fell with the Ruest *Tak*, according to our desire, whereof the *Tartars* were very glad, fearing that wee should haue bene driven to the coast of *Persia*, whose people were vnto them great enemies.

Note, that during the time of our Navigation, we set vp the red Crosse of Saint George in our flagges, for honour of the *Christians*, which I supposed was neuer seen in the *Caspian* Sea before. Wee passed in this voyage diuers fortunes: notwithstanding, the eight and twentieth of May we arrived in safetie at *Afracane*, and there remained till the tenth of Iune following, as well to prepare vs small Boates, to goe vp against the streame of *Volga*, with our goods, as also for the companie of the Ambassadors of *Tartaria*, committed vnto me, to be brought to the presence of the Emperour of *Russia*.

He returneth
the eight of
March, 1559.

Samarcand.

Urgence.

The King of
Balk, or Balgh.

The Caspian
sea.

Wooden anchor.

Dangerous
tempest, and
vile of the
Compass.

The English
Bag in the Caspian
Sea, the
Country there
was ad of

The first is named *Kamen Caravool*, and is distant from *Perranok* one hundred and twenty verities. The second named *Stupno Caravool*, distant from the first fifty verities. The third called *Poloy Caravool*, is one hundred and twenty verities distant from the second. The fourth named *Keseyur Caravool*, is fifty verities distant from the third. The fifth named *Ishkibre*, is thirty verities distant from the fourth, and from *Ishkibre* to *Afracan* is thirty verities.

Ice is Afracan
for four months.

The sixteenth of October they arrived at *Afracan*. The nineteenth of November the wind being northerly, there was a great frost, and much ice in the River: the next day being the twentieth of November, the ice floated in the River, and it continued until Easter day.

The sixth of January being Twelfth day (which they call *Chrephenia*) the *Ruffes* of *Afracan* broke a hole in the ice upon the River *Volga*, and hallowed the water with great solemnity, according to the manner of their Country, at which time all the Soldiers of the Towne shot off their small Pieces upon the Ice, and likewise to gratify the Captain of the Castle, being a Duke, whose name is *Petrovich Michailovich Tronconia*, who stood hard by the ship, beholding them as they were on the River, was shot off all the Ordnance of our ship being fifteen Pieces, viz. two Faucons, two Fauconets, four Fowlers, four Fowlers Chambers, and three other small Pieces made for the Strongs to shoot Haile-stones, and afterwards the great Ordnance of the Castle was shot off.

An Eclipse.

On the one and thirtieth of January there happened a great Eclipse of the Moone, which began about twelve of the clock at night, and continued before five was clear an hour and an half by estimation, which ended the first of February about half an hour past one in the morning: there was wholly darkened by the space of half an hour.

The variation of
the Compasse in
Afracan, was 19 de-
grees 40 min.

The seventeenth of April, the variation of the Compasse observed in *Afracan*, was 13 degrees 40 minutes from North to West. This Spring there came newes to *Afracan*, that the Queen of *Perfia* (the King being blind) had bene with a great Armie against the *Turkes* that were left to possess *Meda*, and had given them a great overthrow: yet notwithstanding *Derbent*, and the greatest part of *Meda* were still possessed and kept by the *Turkes*. The Factors of the Compagnie consulting upon their affaires, determined to leave at *Afracan* the one half of their goods with *Arthur Edwards*, and with the other half, the other three Factors would proceed in the ship on their purposed Voyage to the coast of *Meda*, to see what might be done so there: where, if they could not finde safe traffique, they determined to proceed to the coast of *Gilan*, which is a Province neere the *Caspian* Sea bordering upon *Perfia*: and thereupon appointed the said goods to be laden aboard the ship, and tooke into herallio some merchandise of *Tiflis* or *Perfian* Merchants.

Gilan.

The second of May they weighed, and plyed downe the River *Volga*, toward the *Caspian* Sea. The fourth of May in the morning, they passed by a Tree that standeth on the left hand of the River as they went downe, which is called *Mahomet Agatch*, or *Mahomet Tree*, and about three verities further, that is to say, to the Southwards of the said Tree, is a place called *Vchog*, that is to say, *The Ruffe Wear*: (but *Ochog* is the name of a Wear in the *Tartar* con- tie) where are certaine Coages, and the Emperour hath lying at that place certaine Gun- ners to guard his Fisher-men that keepe the Wear. This *Vchog* is counted from *Afracan* sixty verities: they proceeded downe the said River without staying at the *Vchog*. The ninth and tenth days they met with shallow water, and were forced to lighten their ship by the *Panos*: The eleventh day they went backe to the *Vchog* for another *Panos*: This day by mischance the ship was bigged on the grapple of the *Panos*, whereby the companie had sustained great losse, if the chiefeest part of their goods had not bene layd into the *Panos*: for notwithstanding their pumping with three Pumps, heaving cut water with Buckers, and all the best shifts they could make, the ship was halfe full of water ere the leak could be found and stopp. The twelfth day the *Panos* came to them from the *Vchog*, whereby they lighted the ship of all the goods. The thirteenth day in the morning there came to them a small Boat, sent by the Captain of *Afracan*, to learne whether the ship were at Sea clear off the flats.

Shallow water.

Flats.

The fifteenth day by great indurie and trauell they got their ship clear off the shoales and flats, wherewith they had bene troubled from the ninth day until then: they were forced to pass their ship in three foot water or less. The sixteenth day they came to the *Chetara Bongori*, or Land of three Hillocks, which are counted forty verities from *Vchog*, and are the furthest Land towards the Sea. The seventeenth day they bare off into the Sea, and being about twelve verities from the Foare hillocks, riding in five foot and a halfe water about eleven of the clock in the fore-noone, they tooke their goods out of the *Panos* into the ship, and filled their ship with all things necessarie.

Chetara Bongori.
The Caspian
Sea.

The eighteenth day in the morning about seven of the clock, the *Panos* being discharged departed away towards *Afracan*, the wind then at South-east, they rode fill with the ship, and 60 observing the elevation of the Pole at that place, found it to be 45 degrees 20 minutes. The nineteenth day, the wind South-east, they rode fill. The twentieth day, the wind at North-west, they set saile about one of the clock in the morning, and steered thence South by West, and South South-west, about three leagues, and then anchored in five foot and a halfe water, a-

45 deg. 20 mi-
nutes.
The first obser-
vation in the
Caspian Sea.

boat nine of the clock before noone, at which time it fell calme: the elevation of the Pole at that place 45 degrees 13 minutes. The one and twentieth, having the wind at North-west, they let saile, and steered thence South by West, and South until eleven of the clock, and had then nine foot water: and at noone they observed the latitude, and found it to be 44 degrees 47 minutes: then had they three fathoms and a halfe water, being clear off the flats. It is counted from the Foare hillocks to the Sea about fifty verities. From the said noone-tide until four of the clock, they layed South by East five leagues and a halfe: then had they five fathoms and a halfe, and brackish water: from that till twelve at night they layed South by East half a league, East ten leagues: then had they eleven fathoms, and the water falter. From

Brackish water
foure within
the Sea.

30 that till the two and twentieth day three of the clock in the morning, they layed three and fifty leagues, then had they sixteen fathoms water: from thence they layed until noone South and by West seven leagues and a halfe, the latitude then observed 43 degrees 15 minutes, the depth then eight and twenty fathoms, and shallow ground: from that until eight of the clock at night, they layed South by East five leagues and a halfe, then had they three and forty fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the three and twentieth at four of the clock in the morning, they layed South South-west three leagues and a halfe: then could they get no ground in two and fifty fathoms deepe. From thence until noone they layed South nine leagues, then the latitude observed was 42 degrees 20 minutes. From that till the four and twentieth day at noone, they layed South by West fourteen leagues and a halfe, then the latitude observed was one and forty degrees two and thirty minutes. From noone till seven of the clock at night, they layed South South-west four leagues, then had they perfect sight of high Land or Hills, which were almost covered with Snow, and the midst of them were West from the ship, being then about twelve leagues from the nearest Land: they found but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they layed South-west until mid-night: about three leagues from thence till the five and twentieth day, four of the clock in the morning, they layed West three leagues, being then little wind, and neere the Land, they tooke in their sayles, and lay hulling: at noone the latitude observed was 40 degrees 54 minutes: they found but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At four of the clock in the after-noone, the wind North-west, they let their sayles: and from thence till the six and

41 degrees
32 minutes.

30 twentieth day at noone, they layed East South-east four leagues. From thence they layed till eight of the clock at night South-west three leagues, the wind then at North. From thence they layed until the seven and twentieth day two of the clock in the morning, West South-west eight leagues, the wind blowing at North very much. From the said till four of the clock, they layed South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the Land plaine, which was not past three leagues from them, being very high tagged Land. There were certaine Rocks that lay farre off into the Sea, about five leagues from the same Land, (which are called *Barmake Talb*) they layed between those Rocks and the Land, and about five of the clock they passed by the Port *Bilbil*, where they should have put in but could not: and bearing along the shoare about two of the clock after noone, they came to *Bilbil* in the Countrey of *Meda* *Bilbil*, 40 or *Sheruan*, against which place they anchored in nine foot water. Presently after they were at anchor, there came aboard of them a Boat, wherein were seven or eight persons, two *Turkes*, the rest *Perfians*, the *Turkes* vassals, which bade them welcome, and seemed to be glad of their arrivall, who told the Factors that the *Turke* had conquered all *Meda*, or the Countrey *Sheruan*, and how that the *Turkes* *Batha* remained in *Derbent* with a Garrison of *Turkes*, and that *Shamaly* was wholly spoiled, and had few or no Inhabitants left in it. The Factors then being desirous to come to the speech of the *Batha*, sent one of the *Tiflis* (or Merchants that went over with them from *Afracan*, passengers) and one of the Companies servants *Robert Gilding*, with those Soldiers, to the Captain of *Bacha*, which place standeth hard by the Sea, to certifye him of their arrivall, and what commodities they had brought, and to desire friendship to have quiet

40 degrees
54 minutes.

50 and safe traffique for the same. *Bacha* is from *Bilbil*, the place where they rode, about a dayes journey, on foot easily to be trauelled, which may befixe leagues the next way over Land: it is a walled Towne, and strongly fortified. When the said Messenger came to the Captain of *Bacha*, the said Captain gaue him very friendly entertaynement.

Bilbil.

In the morning very early, hee sent Horse for the rest of the companie which should goe to *Derbent*, sending by them that went, ten Sheepe for the ship. Whilst they were at breakfast, *Malter Turnball*, *Malter Tailboyer*, and *Thomas Hindes* the Master of the ship, came thither, and when they had all broken their fasts, they went to *Bacha*. And from *Bacha* they proceeded towards *Derbent*, as it was by the Captain promised, being accompanied on their way for their safe conduct, with a Gentleman, and certaine Soldiers, which had the Captain of *Bacha* his Letters to the *Batha* of *Derbent*, very friendly written in their behalfe. In their journey to *Derbent* they forsooke the ordinarie way, being very dangerous, and travelled thorow Woods till they came almost to the Towne of *Derbent*: and then the Gentleman rode before with the Captaines Letters to the *Batha*, to certifye him of the English Merchants coming, who received the Letters, and understanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and lent forth to re-

Batha Port.

they incurred were great: for oftentimes, when the Ice with force of wind and Sea did breakes pieces of it were tumbled and driven one upon another with great force, terrible to behold, and the same happened at sometimes to neere unto the Lighters, that they expected it would have over-whelmed them to their vnter destruction: but God who had preferred them from many perils before, did also save and deliuer them then.

Trauell vpon
the Ice.

Chetara Babbar.

Within three or four dayes after the first landing of the Ice, when it was firme and strong, theyooke out all their goods, being fortie and eight Bales or Packes of Raw Silke, &c. laid it on the Ice, and couered the same with such provisions as they had. Then for want of victuals, &c. they agreed to leaue all the goods there vpon the Ice, and to goe to the shoare: and there-vpon brake vp their Chefts and Carriages, where-with, and with such other things as they could get, they made Sleds for euery of them to draw vpon the Ice, whereon they layed their clothes, to keep them warme, and such victuals as they had, and such other things as they might conveniently carrie, and so they departed from the said goods and *Panofes* very early, about one of the clocke in the morning, and traueilling on the Ice, directed their way North, as neere as they could iudge, and the same day about two of the clocke in the after-noon, they had sight of the *Chetara Babbar* (four Hillocks of Ilands so called) vnto the same they directed themselves, and there remayned that night. The goods and *Panofes* which they left on the Ice, they iudged to be from those *Chetara Babbar*, about twentie Versts. And the next morning departed thence East-wards, and came to the *Chetara Bourgori* (or four Ilands before (spoken of) before noon (the distance betweene those places is about fiftene Versts) where they remained all that night, 20 departing thence towards *Afracan*: the next morning very early they lost their way through the perisuation of the *Ruffes* which were with them, taking to much towards the left hand (contrary to the opinion of Master *Hudfon*) whereby wandering vpon the Ice fore or fure dayes, not knowing whether they were entred into the *Crimme Tartars* Land or not, at length it fortuned they met with a way that bene trauelled, which croft back-wards towards the Sea: that way they tooke, and following the same, within two dayes trauell it brought them to a place, called the *Cragynare* (that is to say, in the English Tongue) *Red Cliffs*, which duers of the company knew.

There they remayned that night, hauing nothing to eat but one Loafe of Bread, which they happened to find with the two *Ruffes* that were left in the ship, to keepe her all the Winter (as 30 is aforesaid) whom they chanced to meet going towards *Afracan*, about five miles before they came to the said *Cragynare*, who certified them that the ship was cut in pieces with the Ice, and that they had beene leaping with their Lues.

The English
ship cut in pie-
ces with Ice.

In the morning they departed early from *Cragynare* towards the *Ouchbooge*, and about nine of the clocke before noon, being within ten Versts of the *Vebooge*, they met *Amos Riak*, with the Carpenter, which he found at *Ouchbooge*, and a Gunner newly come out of England, and also fiftie hue Horles with so many *Chiffes* to guide them, and fiftie Gunners for guard, which brought provision of victuals, &c. and were sent by the Duke to fetch the goods to *Afracan*. The meeting of that company was much joy vnto them.

December.

The Factors then brake with *Amos Riak*, and the said company to fetch the goods, *Thomas* 40 *Hudfon* the Master, *Tobias Paris* his Mate, and so they the said Factors and their company march on to the *Vebooge*, where they refreshed themselves that day, and the night following. And from thence proceeded on towards *Afracan*, where they arrived the last day of November. There they went for the goods after their departure from the Factors, traueilled the same day vntill they came within ten Versts of the *Chetara Babbar*, where they rested that night. The next morning by the brake of the day they departed thence, and before noon were at the *Chetara Babbar*, where they stayed all night; but presently departed thence *Thomas Hudfon* with the Carpenter and Gunner to fereke where the goodly day: who found the same, and the next day they returned backe to their company at the *Chetara Babbar*, and declared vnto them in what fort they had found the said goods.

Assisted by
Tartars.

The third day early in the morning, they departed all from the four *Babbar* towards the said goods, and the same day did lade all the goods they could finde vpon the said sleds, and withall conuenient speed returned backe towards *Afracan*. And when they came to the *Chetara Bourgori*, where they rested the night, in the morning very early before the brake of day, they were assaulted by a great company of the *20 Agays Tartars* Horle-men, which came shouting and hallowing with a great noyse, but our people were loe inuained with the sleds, that they durst not enter vpon them, but ranne by, and shot their Arrows amongst them, and hurt but one man in the head, who was a *Ruffe*, and so departed presently. Yet when it was day, they shewed themselves a good distance off from our men, being a very great troope of them, but did not assault them any more. The same day our men with those carriages, departed from thence towards *Afracan*, where they arrived in safetie the fourth of December, about three of the clock in the after-noon, where our people greatly reioyced of their great good luck to haue escaped so many hard euent, troubles and miseries, as they did in that Voyage, and had great cause therefore to prayse the Almighty, who had loe mercifully preferred and deliuered them.

They

They remayned the Winter at *Afracan*, where they found great fauour and friendship of the Duke, Capraine, and other chiefe Officers of that place: but that Winter there happened no great matter, worth the noting.

In the Spring of the yeere 1581, about the miditt of March, the Ice was broken vp, and cleare gone before *Afracan*.

The breaking
vp of the Ice.

A Letter of Master HENRIE LANE to the worshipfull Master WILLIAM SANDERSON, containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east discovery, for the space of three and thirtie yeeres.

After Sanderlon, as you lately requested me, so haue I sought, and though I cannot finde some things that heretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine old Letters to content one that meaneth to please many, I haue briefly and as truly as I may, drawne out as followeth: The rough heuing may bee planned as your pleasure, or as pleaseth him that shall take the paines.

First, the honorable attempt to discover by Sea North-east and North-west named for Cathay, being chiefly procured by provision from King Edward the first, and other his Nobilitie, by and at the cost 20 of Master Sebastian Caboto, then Governour for Discoveries, with Sir Andrew Iudke, Sir George Barnes, Sir William Garrard, Master Anthony Hulfie, and a company of Merchants, was in the last yeere of his Maiesties reigne, 1553. The generall charge whereof was committed to one Sir Hugh Willoughbie Knight, a goodly Gentleman, accompanied with sufficient number of Pilots, Masters, Merchants and Mariners, having three Ships well furnished, to wit, The Bona Speranza, the Edward Bonaenture, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonaenture, Richard Chancellor being Pilot, and Steuen Burrough Master, having discovered Ward-house upon the Coast of Finmark, by storme or fogge departed from the rest, found the Bay of Saint Nicholas, now the chiefe Port of London, there wintered in safetie, and bad ayde of the people at a Village called Newnow.

30 The other two ships attempting further Northwards (as appeared by Pamphlets found after written by Sir Hugh Willoughbie) were in September encountered with such extreme cold, that they put backe to seeke a winning place, and missing the said Bay fell vpon a desert Coast in Lappia, entering into a River immediately frozen up, since discovered, named Arzua Rea, distant East from a Russian Monastery of Adolkes called Pechingho, from whence they neuer returned, but all to the number of fiftie persons perished, which was far worst of experience to haue made Canes and Stones. These were found with the Ships the next Summer, Anno 1554. by Ruffe-fishermen: and in Anno 1555. the place sent vnto by English Merchants, as hereafter appeareth.

Anno 1553.
Master William
thorough was
then young,
and his
brother in this
first voyage.
Newnow is
from the road
of St. Nicholas
Westward 35
mils.

Note.

Anno 1554. the said ship Edward Bonaenture (although robbed homewards by Flemings) returned with her company to London, shewing and setting forth their entertainment: and discourse of the 40 Countries, euen to the Citie of Molco, from whence they brought a priuiledge written in Ruffe with the Kings or great Dukes scale, the other two ships looked for and vnknewen to whom they were.

Anno 1555. the said company of Merchants for a discoverye vpon a new supply, sent thither againe with two Ships, to wit, the Edward Bonaenture, and another bearing the name of the King and Queene, Philip and Marie, whose Maiesties by their Letters to the said Mulcoites, recommended sundry their Subjects then passing, whereof certaine, to wit, Richard Chancellor, George Killenworth, Henrie Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arrivall at the Bay, and passing vp Dwina to Nologda, went first up to Molco, where, vpon knowledge of the said Letters, they with their trayne had speciall entertainment, with house, and dyet appointed, and shortly permitted to the Princes presence, they were with Gentlemen brought through the Citie of Mulco, to the Cistle and Palace, repleased with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entered sundry rooms, furnished in shew with ancient grave personages, all in long garments of sundry colours, Gold, Tyne, Balacke, and White, as our Vestments and Coats haue bene in England, (but able with Caps, Iewels, and Chawes. These were found to be no Courtiers, but ancient Mulcoites, Labantians, and other Merchants of credit, as the manner is, furnished thus from the Wardrobe and Treasurie, waiting and wearing this apparell for the time, and so to restore it.

Anno 1554.

Anno 1555.
The King and
Queens letter
cert.

Then entering into the Presence, being a large room floored with Carpets, were men of more estate, and richer shew, in number about one hundred (it square: who after the said English-men came in, doing reverence, they all stood up the one only sitting, and yet rising at any occasion, when our King and Queenes names were read or spoken. Then after speeches by interpretation, our men kissing his hand, and bowing to dinner, were stayed in another room, and at dinner brought through, where might be seen 60 a masse finer and gilt Plate, some like and as bigge as Kilderkins, and Wallow-houles, and entering the Dining place, being the greater room, the Prince was set bare-headed, his Crowne and rich Cap standing vpon a stande by. Not farre distant sat his Metropolitan, with aiers a ber of his kindred, and chiefe Tattarian Captaines: none sat one against him, or any, at other Tables, their backs towards him:

Entertainment
men by the
Duke.

h. b.

at the Author's rate; and if he hath robbed the Altars of Truth, as he did those of the Calamity Idols, yet in Pequin equity we will not cut off the thumbs (according to Nanquin rigour) upon him: for without any evidence against him, How ever, cheaper I am sure he is by farre to thee than I am, who would have beene loth to be so true a labourer in a lying Author, willingly or commonly (in my conceit) salving his owne fight, though perhaps not seldom deced in things taken up on China men's trust, or entred into their China bookes, such as he here often citeth. Men refuse not Silver for the Oare: gather the Rose withoutstanding the prickles; neglect not Harneit mixed with weeds, without the chaffe, Fruit for the shells, and hate not Honie for the Bees sting; nor will I either in prodigality of faith believe all, or be so penurious as to reject the most of that which here I present. Use thou thy freedom, and him as thy pleasure (I say not mee) and if thou wilt not pardon (such a briefe collection, thou wilt hardly give Callian entertainment to all, and more then all, often yielding braudous and enlarging flourish of stile, beyond a translation, as if his Author had not said enough. The variety, if it be true merely dissembled, present I know not how many entercomers as interludes of Comick and Tragick events, more worthe the reading then most in this kinde; and as fit to recreate: how much more, where veritie is (as I suppose) the ground and substance, though perhaps inlayed with other phantasies among. That the Teluties in some things differ, is their authenticke against him, who as more learned and iudicious, and longer experienced, might finde out some truths better then hee; as his various fortunes, and that time, might let him see many particularities; which they could not see; as his sixtie yeeres after. In many things they both agree: and Galpar de Cruz hath many the same things; and that his strange Relation of the Crosse in China and the Hungarian of the Mount Sinai, is did, is nered by Lucena, perhaps learned by some of His companie: and these exceptions by mee mentioned, are rather preoccupations of censorious iudging my iudgement, then my iudiciall sentence, which the iudicious will suspend, and leave to better experience. Iudicent posteri; veritas Temporis filia.

CHAP. II.

Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Easterne parts of the
World, taken out of FERNAM MENDEZ PINTO
his Peregrination.

§. I.

MENDEZ his many miserable adventures, his strange expedition with
ANTONIO DE FARIA; divers coastis visited, Pirats
tamed, miseries suffered, glorie
recovered.



Pernam Mendez Pinto, borne at old Montemor in the Kingdome of Portugal, was placed in seruice at ten or twelve yeeres of age in Lisbon, the thirteenth of December, A. 1521. on the day of breaking the Swathens, or publike mourning for King Emanuel. A yeere and halfe after he died vpon occasion of a sudden accident, and got aboard a Caruelle which was taken by a French Pirat, which would have made sale of them at Larache to the Moors. But a fortnight after taking another Portugall ship coming from Saint Thome worth 40000. Duckets, they returned for France, carrying some with them for Sea seruice, the rest they let on shore by night on the shoare of Melidies, naked; which came to Santiago da Cacem, where they were relieved. Thence he went to Setuval, and serued Francisco de Faria a Gentleman belonging to the Maister of Santiago, and after that was Page to the Maister himselfe. But his meanes being short he left his seruice.

* See of Gama
tom. i. pag. 26.
Straight of
Mecca or the
Red Sea.
Portugall Fort-
resse in Suez-
stra before the
Arabia Con-
quist.
A Martyr of
Mahomet. Mar-
tyrism non pos-
sed casu.

A. 1537. he went for India in a Fleet of five ships; the Admirall was Don Pedro de Sylva, sonne of Vasco da Gama (first Discoverer of the Indies, whose bones he carried with him in the ship at his returne, which were reeuey by King Johns appointment in greater Funerall pompe, then had bene seene done to a Subiect.) They arrived at Diu the fifth of September. Thence after seenteene dayes he went with two Phisits for the Straight of Mecca, and came in sight of Arabia Muria, and Abadiscunia, almost wracked with fowle weather, and coming to Sucoora, weered neere the Fortresse which Francisco d'Almeida first Vice-roy of India, had built, 1507. Having received some refreshing of the Christians there, they departed, and in the height of Malaya took a ship, but few men being therein left of eighrie; one of which was the Captaine, a Renegado of Malapour, who for loafe of a Malapour woman had denyed his Faith, and refusing to returne to Christianity, notwithstanding all perswasions, wee bove him hand

and foot, and threw him into Sea with a great stone tyed about his necke: The ship also funke, and litle was saved.

They went to despoyle (then) in the Countrey of Preile Iohn; to deliuer a letter to Arrique Barboza, the Factor of Antonio Sylveira, sent three yeeres before by Nuno de Cunha, who with fother others escaped from the rebellion Xael, in which Don Manoel de Meneses, with one hundred and sixtie Portugals were taken, four hundred thousand Duckets, and five Portugall Ships, which were those that Solymán Basha A. 1538. brought with prouision for his Armada to the siege of Diu the King of Xael having sent them with fixtie Portugals for a Caire present; the fleet hee bestowed as almes on Mahomet's house at Mecca. I with three others, were sent some dayes journey in the Countrey to Barboza, then in the Port of Gleytor in guard of the Queene, mother of the Preile Iohn, who welcomed them, as the nightly dore to the flowerie Garden, and as Helena to Ierusalem. so were they (said she) to her eyes.

But (to leaue those things) he went thence to Ormus, and then to Goa; there offered his seruice to Pero de Faria Captaine of Malaca, which entertained him. The occurrences of Bata, Achem, Acra in Samatra, Benda in the continent, and his employments in those parts, as alio of Siaca, Paou, Patane, Iomto.

But (to leaue those things) he went thence to Ormus, and then to Goa; there offered his seruice to Pero de Faria Captaine of Malaca, which entertained him. The occurrences of Bata, Achem, Acra in Samatra, Benda in the continent, and his employments in those parts, as alio of Siaca, Paou, Patane, Iomto. Escaping, two of which the Crocodiles deuoured. Hee was taken and sold to a Moore, which carried him to Malaca. Thence Pero de Faria sent him to Patane in trade: from thence againe, employed by Antonio de Faria to Lugor, Coia Acem a Conuerate Pirat set vpon them,ooke, and killed all, Borall and Pinto only escaping, which leaping into the Sea were reloued by a Barke, and sent to Patane, Faria afraid to returne to Malaca, where he was so indebted for thole goods, vowed to be reuenged of the Pirat. And by helpe of his friends armed a lunkie with fixe & thirty Soldiers, of which I and Borall (extremely both indebted and wounded) were. From Patane we fet forth in May, 1540. and to a Hauen called Bralapisson, some fixe leagues off the firme Land, where we found a lunkie of the Leguio, bound for Siam with an Embassadour of Nanaquim of Landa, Prince of the Ile of Toja situate in fix & thirty degrees, which seeing vs come, halted away with all speed. Faria sent a Chinese Pilot to them with faire offers of loue and courtie, who returned with a present, a rich Sword, and fixe and twentie Pearles in a Boxe of Gold, with this answer, That the time would come, when they should communicate with vs in the Law of the true God of infinite mercy, who by his death had giuen life to all men, and a perpetuall inheritance in the house of the good: and hee blessed that this should bee after the halfe of the halfe of time were past. Neither could Antonio de Faria returne any thing in recompence, they being gotten farre into the Sea.

Heere wee watered, and after coasted to learch the Riuer of Pulo Cambin, which diuides the Kingdome of Champaa, from the Seniorie of Cambosa in the height of nine degrees. Thither we came in the end of May, and the Pilot went vp the Riuer three leagues, to a great Towne called Caimpario, where we stayed to take in prouision twelue dayes. Faria being curiois, desired to knowe whence that Riuer came, the originall thereof (they told him) was a Lake called Pinat, Eastward from that Sea; two hundred and fixtie leagues in the Kingdome of Quirvan; which Lake was compassed with high Hills at the bottom of which, along the waters side, were eight and thirtie Townes, thirteen great, the rest small. One of these Great ones was named Xincalen, where was a great Gold Mine, whence euery day was taken a Barre and a halfe of Gold, which in our money amounteth by the yeere to two and twentie millions of Gold. Four Lords are barons and are hill at waris for a singular proprietie. They said that one of these called Raisidan, in the Court of his house in Siam, had set vp to the necke in earth fix hundred Bars of were feat thither, with one hundred Caluies, they would without doubt become maisters thereof. They said also that in Bnaguirm, another of those Townes, was a Rocke of Diamonds, better then those of Laue, and of Tonampura in the Ile of Lana.

Proceeding along the Coast of Champaa, from Pulo Cambin, we came to a shiffe called Salay, and the next day to the Riuer Toobafay, in the mouth whereof a lunkie passed by, to which we offered the courtie of the Sea, and they in forme made shew of a Negroes Buttocks, with many trumpets and other iollitie. Hence grew displeasure in the night three Barke came to assaile vs, which we tooke, with the Captaine, two Achens, a Turke, & the Negro. This Negro confessed himselfe a Christian, llaue to Galper de Mello a Portugall, whom that dogge (he pointed to him in the Ship. What said Faria, is this Simulan? Ya, hee said, and he had thought in to small feet, and impaled you as hee ferued my matter. Faria having ferued him and his with the same force,ooke the lunkie, in which was thirtie fixe thousand Teies of Iapan Siluer, which make fixtie four thousand Cruzados or Duckets, besides much good merchandise.

Faria proceeded along the Coast of Champaa, and came to the Riuer Timason, by our men called Varella: into which enter the Ships of Siam and the Malaya Coast, which goe for China, and Truck for Gold, Calamba and Iuory, whereof that Kingdome hath store. Many Parrots

Widely seen.
Trya, Spem Luffa.

A strange air
were,

Caimpario,
Lake Pinat,
Quirvan.

Xincalen,
22. Millions
Duckets.
Gold mines, &
iron mines.

Rocke of Dia-
monds.

Simulan a Pi-
rate taken.

Timason, or
True Iachon, or
Varella Truck
for gold.

The other *Necodas* or Captaynes of the Lunkes, seeing what *Faria* had done, consulted together, and seeing he might alio doe as much to them, sent two chiefe men to him, desiring him as *King of the Sea*, to give them scourtie to passe, in dispatch of their businesse before the Monfon were ended, and that as his Tributaries, they would give him twentie thousand *Tais* of Silver: to which he sware, and said: no Thiefe should rob them: and with a Present received the Money brought him within an houre after. A Boy which swore their Passes, gayned in thirteene dayes aboute foure thousand *Tais* (besides gifts for dispatch) each Lunkie giuing fye *Tais* and the lesse *Barkes* two. The Vice-Roy alio of *Anam* sent him a rich Present, with a Letter to instruct him to faine the *Sonne* as Admirall from *Lamoo* to *Lampoo*, at ten thousand *Tais* annuall wages, besides (after three yeares end) further advancement: whereupon he excused his unworthinesse, and departed to *Quangapore*, a Citie of fiftene thousand *Households*, and so coasted all alongh the Iland of *Anam* seven monethes space, till the *Souldiers* were wearie, and required their shares as had beene agreed: which was quietted with promise to winter at *Siam*, and having there made Money of all to giue each man his part.

Quangapore.

Tiba dei Ladra-
ver.Miserable
wrecks, and
their fort-
night's mis-
erie.Reliefe almost
miraculous,
and
Wonderfull
provision.Admirable
escape.

Quangam.

Comby.

New Moore.
Temple in
China.
Guzier.

Palla Quirim.

With this agreement they came to an Iland, called *Thames Land*, because standing out of the Bay, it is their place to take the first of the Monfon. Here at the new Moore in October were encountered with a cruell Tempest in the night, by which the foure Vessels were broken in pieces, five hundred eightie fixe persons drowned, of which eight and twentie *Portugals*; three and fiftie of vs by Gods mercie saved, *Faria* being one, and one and twentie other *Portugals*, the rest *Slaves* and *Mariners*. They spent two dayes and a halfe in Buriall of their dead, and to get some of their provision, which yet having taken Salt-water, would not last about fye dayes of the fast: seeing they stayed there, *Faria* comforted them saying, that God would not permit so much evil but for a greater good; nor would have taken from them five hundred thousand and *Crucades*, but to give them fixe hundred thousand: God doth not punish with both hands, his mercie curing the wound which his Justice maketh.

Thus we walked naked, and bare-foot on the Strand & in the Wildernes, suffering hunger and cold, many of our companions dying, not so much for want of food as the stinke and putrid stinkelomence thereof. In this disconolate plight, a Sea-kite came flying from behind the South Cape of the Iland, and fell fall from a Mullet a span long; which he taking up with great prayse to God, and Prayer to Iesus Christ, not to consider their merits, but his merits for them, he caused it to be roasted and given to the sicke. Looking to the place whence the Fowle came, they saw more of them flying vp and downe, and going thitherwards, discovered a Valley with diuers Fruit-trees, and before they came at it, they found a Deere which a Tygre had newly killed, and with their generall cry was scarred from it, having begun to eat it. We feasted with it, and with many Mulletts which those Sea-kites got, and (scarred with our cries) fell full. This fishing they continued from Munday till Saturday, and then seeing a faile they hid themselves in the Woods. It was a *Lantea* or *Barke* with Oares, which came thither with thirte persons to wood and water; and whiles they were disposing themselves, and had left their *Barke* unmanned, *Faria* apprehended the occasion, and having instructed them, at the name of *Iesus* they all ranne vp on it, entered without gain-saying, and loosing the Prow put to Sea. The *Chinoes* seeing their *Lantea* taken, halied to the shore, but scarred with a little Iron-pieccet of their *Lantea*, they fled to the Waters. We presented fall to eat, whilst an old man was dressing for the *Chinoes*, and after searched and found Silkes, Damaskes, Muske, and other goods worth foure thousand *Cruzados*, besides Rice, Sugar, Hennes, which we most esteemed for recouerie of the sicke. There was a Boy of twelue or thirteene yeares old, whom *Faria* asked, whence and whose the *Lantea* was: he answered, it was his *Father's*, from whom they had unhappily taken lesse then an houre, all hee had gotten in aboute thirte yeares: hee came from a place, called *Quangam*, where in barter for Silver hee had gotten those goods, which hee was going to sell to the *Traders* of *Siam* in the Port of *Combay*; and now hee was going to supply his want of water, you have taken away his gods without feare of the Iudges of Heauen. *Faria* promising to visit him as his Sonne; then, said hee, see me on *Shore* in that miserable Land where my true Father is, with whom I had rather dye then live with so bad people. Much reasoning passed, and he said, they could speake well of God, but little vied his Law: neither would hee ate in three dayes space.

We determined to goe for *Lampoo*, two hundred and fixtie leagues Northwards from thence, and to get if we could, a better *Barke*, this being little, and hardly able to brooke those New Moore-stormes on the Coast of *China*. At Sun-set we set sayle, and next morning going East North-east, came to an Ile called *Guizier*, where we took a fifteen-barke with fiftie of fresh men, where we took of her we thought fit, with eight men of her, twelve to serve for the *Lantea*, our men being weak. They told vs that eightene leagues thence was a good River, called *Xiguan*, within which was poore fiftie-village, called *Xamor*, and three leagues further vp, a Citie of good Trade. The next day in the evening we came to *Xamor*, where a Lunkie rode after for *Faria* purpose, which in the night hee took, the men being all asleepe; whom he bound, threatening to kill them all if they made any cry; and sayled presently with her to the *Palle Quirim*, nine leagues off, and in three dayes after to an Iland called *Luxitay*, where for the recovery of the sicke

like hee stayed fiftene dayes. In the Lunkie hee found no Merchandize but Rice, the most of which hee cart into the Sea to lighten her, and fit her for our Voyage. Thence we put forth for *Lampoo*, where we heard were many *Portugals* from *Malaca*, *Zanda*, *Siam*, and *Pataes*, which vied there to winter.

In the way we encountered, after two dayes sayling, with a Lunkie of *Pataes*, which belonged to a *China* Pirate, called *Quay Panian*, a great friend of the *Portugals*, of whom hee had thirte in his company entertained in his pay. They not knowing vs, began with a terrible salutation of fiftene Peeces of Artillery, but by Crookes in their Banner, we knew them and made signes, by which both congratulated each other with heartie greetings, and *Quay Panian* and hee joyned in league to pursue their Fortunes together. They now purposed to goe to *Chinchoe*, and thre found fye sayle of *Portugals*, which told them of a great Fleet of foure hundred Lunkes, with one hundred thousand men, gone to the Isles of *Goto*, in succour of *Sacan* of *Pontor*, who had voluntarily subieged himselfe to the King of *China* in one hundred thousand *Tais* Tribute yearly. Weooke out of those fye ships thirte fye *Souldiers* more, and proceeded on our way for *Lampoo*. In the way we encountered a small *Parao* with eight *Portugals* sorely wounded, whereof *Antonio Arriquer*, and *Mem Taborda* were, rich men of great effence.

Quay Panian's
China Pirate.

Chinchoe.

Goto.

These recounted to him that a *Gazerate* Rouer, *Coia Acom*, with three Lunkes and foure *Lanteas* (in which were fye hundred men, one hundred and fiftie of them *Moors*) set vpon them (having parted fteuenteene dayes agoe from *Lampoo*, for *Malaca*, purposing to goe for *India*, if the Monfon had permitted) before the Ile *Gumbor*, and after some houres fight took them; eightie two persons (eighteene of them *Portugals*) were slaine, and as many others captiued, with one hundred thousand *Tais* valueu their Lunkes: one of the *Pyrats* Lunkes was fired and burnt to the water. These few in the fute of the entry elaped in the little Boat which hung at sterne; they being buied in the Ipyole and the Sunne then left, could not follow, but went into the River with much triumph.

Faria and *Quay Panian* who had kindred at *La loo*, provided themselves thete of Powder, Lead, Vichuals, and other necessaries for Money, by lease of the *Mandarine*, (no Country in the World being like *China* for all kind of provisions) and from thence got two greater Lunkes in truck of the other, and two *Lanteas*, and one hundred and fixtie *Mariners*, so that they were in all fye hundred persons, of which ninetie fye were *Portugals*. They had one hundred & fixty *Harquebuses*, forty *Brasse* Peeces, & sixty Quintals of Powder, nine hundred pots of Powder, foure thousand Darts headed with Iron, Arrows, and many Fire-works, with other Weapons. Thus provided, they set forth in pursuit of *Coia Acom*, and by a Fisher-boat learned that hee was in the River *Tinlan*, thre to turnish and fit the Lunkes lately taken from the *Portugals*, to goe with it and two others for *Siam* (where hee was borne) about ten dayes thence. *Faria* lent *Pentec* & *Morja* in the Fisher-boat, with some of his company to informe himselfe more fully, which making a tempe. In the night they anchored, and went vp the River in the morning, the enemy knowing nothing till they came in sight, and *Faria* crying out, *Hay my Masters, in the Name of Christ*, to them, to them, *Santiago*, off went the Ordnance, the small shot succeeded, that none now in the Lunkes durst appeare. His small Vessels (*Lanteas*) comming from the shore with succour were so entertained with great shot that they could not helpe themselves, and by our small Vessels were fired with the fire-po; so in three of them two hundred persons were slaine. Out of the fourth they leaped into the water, and were most flaine by *Pentec* men.

Coia Acom which before was not knowne, seeing his *Moors* ready to try the waters courtesie to escape those fiery enemies, armed in Buff, with Plates ringed with Gold, cried out aloud that he might be heard, *La Hal il Hal Muhammed rogolabab: what shall you Musselmans and suff men of the Law of Mahomet, suffer your slaves to be conquered of so feeble a Nation as are these Dogges, which haue no more heart then white Hens, and a bearded woman to them, to them, the Booke of Eternes hath given promise for our Prophet to you and me, to bathe our selves in the blood of these faithles they ranne on our Swords. *Faria* on the other side heard him in the name of Christ crucified, Head-piecc of Maile, that hee lunked to the ground, and with another blow cut off his legges, whereupon his men with such fure as they could, fled. *Faria* not caring for thirte *Portugals* which stood space, eight and fortie of the Enemies lay dead vpon *Coia Acom*, and the rest they flue all but fye, whom they took and bound, the Boyes cutting the others in quarters, and throwing them the drinker of *Portugall* blood, as hee titled himselfe in the beginning of his Writings, for which hee was of that cursed Sect much honoured.*

Optima Italia,
Coia Acom
slaine.The Carc
of the
Civilians.

Of the Enemies were slaine three hundred and eightie, of ours fortie two (eight of which were *Portugals*, *Faria* leached the Iland, and found a Village threien of fortie or fiftie houses, which *Coia Acom* had sacked, slaying some of the Inhabitants. Not farre off was a great house for

seeming a Temple full of sick and wounded men, ninety six in number, which the Pyrat had there in cure, whom he burned, setting the house on fire in divers places, those that sought to escape being received on Pikes and Lances. The Lunke which they had taken from the *Portugall*, six and twenty dayes before, *Faria* gave to *Mom Taborda*, and *Antonio Arriques* in *Almes* for remission of his fines, taking their Oath to take no more but their own. He took special care of the wounded, and caused the flaves to be set free. After all this, there remained of deere games, one hundred and thirte thousand Tais in Silver, of *Japan* and other goods, which that Pyrat had taken along that Coast from *Sumbor* to *Finche*.

§. II.

ANTONIO FARIA his taking of Nouda a Citie in China, triumph at Liampoo; strange Voyage to Calemplay, miserable Shipwracke.

Faria wracked the second time.

Violent wind.

Nouda.

China perilous Coast.

Faria having recovered his sick men, set saile for *Liampoo*, and being come to the point of *Micay* in sixe and twenty degrees, by a storme he was driven upon a Rock in the darke night, and was forced to cast out all the goods, and cutt all their Masts over-board; and with much aloe we escaped with their helpe (two and twenty drowned by our halfe-hinselfe) to the Lunke of *Mom Taborda*. The second day after came two *Portugalls* from *Quay Panian* Lunke, and plained to vs their almost like misfortune (one gust having taken away three men, and cast them a stones cast into the Sea) and the losse of the small Lunke with fiftie persons, most of which were *Christians*, and seven *Portugalls*. One of the *Lanteas* came and told of their disadventure, the other *Lantea* lost, only thirteen men escaping, which the Countrey people carried Captives to *Nouda*; so that two Lunkes and a *Lantea* with about one hundred persons were lost and in Munition and other goods, about two hundred thousand *Cruzados*, the Captaine and Souldiers having nothing left but that on their backs. The Coast of *China* is subject to chiefe strokes more then other Countreys, so that none can saile thereon one yeare without disasters, except at the full and change, they betake them to their Ports, which are many and good, without barred entrees, except *Laman* and *Sumbor*.

Faria went and anchored before *Nouda* and sent some to sound, and to take some of the people to enquire of his men, who brought a Barke with eight men and two women, one of whom (having first sworne by the Sea, that it below, and the winds above should persue him if he broke his Faith, and the beauty of the starres whose eyes he beheld all wrong, as the *Chinese* requested) told him that he taking them to be Sea Routers and Robbers, had taken them and cast them in Irons. *Faria* writ to the *Mandarin* by two of those *Chinois*, with a Present worth two hundred Duckets to returne his men, which returned the next day with an Answer written, that himselfe should come and demand Justice at his feet, and he would doe as hee saw cause. Hee wrote againe, offering two thousand Tais for their Redemption, signifying that hee was a *Portugall* Merchant, which came to trade at *Liampoo*, and payd Customes without any Robbery; and that the King of *Portugall* his Lord was in true amitie with his Brother the King of *China*, and in *Malacca* his subjects vied the *Chinois* justly. This calling the King of *Portugall* the King of *Chinas Brother*, hee took so indignantly, that hee caused the *China* Messengers to be whipped, and their eares cut, and sent them backe with a railing Answer written to *Faria*, which had so proudly blasphemed, calling his King the Brother of the Sonne of the Sonne, the Lion crowned with incredible power in the Throne of the *Vinifer*, under whose feet all *Chinemes* of all that governe the Earth, are placed with all their *Seniores*, as all Writers affirm in their Histories. For this Heretike he burned his Writing with his Picture, as hee would doe to himselfe, charging him presently to set saile and be gone. *Faria* enraged, refused to assault the Towne, having three hundred men, (seventie of them *Portugalls*) with the company of *Quay Panian*, for that feat.

Nouda assaulted.

Having therefore taken foure Barkes, the next morning betimes with them, three Lunkes and a *Lorcha* or *Lantea*, he went up the River, and had sixe fathomes water and an flasse anchoring by the walls. And striking saile without salutation of Artillery, we put off our Flagge of contract, after the *China* custome, to fulfill all complements of peace, sending new offers of love and further satisfaction for the Prisoners. But the *Mandarine* full of indignation, hardly vied the Messengers on the wall in sight of the Armada; whereupon, *Faria* desperate of doing any good that way leaving order with the Lunkes continually to shoot at the Enemy where they were thickest, he with his company landed without contrailition, and marched to the Towne. When we were come within little more then a Calceur shot of the Ditch without the wall, 63 were killed by two gates one thousand, or twelve hundred about one hundred of them Horsemen, or Hackney men rather (for they rode on lame lades) which began to skirmish in such disorderd sort, encountering one with another, and many of them falling to the ground, that they

seemed to be of some neighbour Villages, which came more of force then with force or heart to the bulwaffe. *Faria* expected them, encouraging his men, and making a signe to the Lunkes.

The Horsemen dandid themselves, and wheeled about, as if that would have feared vs, which seeing, without effect they joynd in one bodie or heape rather; whereas the Captaine commanded all the Calceurs to shoot off at once, with such success, that the former halfe of the Horsemen fell to ground. And then were which till that time had stood full, gave the assault, crying on the name of *Jesus*, inasmuch that they died so confidently, that they fell one upon another, and when they came to the Bridge over the Ditch, they thronged themselves so that none could goe forward. In this case we came on them, and slue about three hundred, none of them so early drawing Sword to defend themselves. We prosecuted the victory to the gate, in which was the *Mandarine* with six hundred men, fully mounted, armed with a Corlett of *Chimfon* Velvet gilded, which we knew after to have belonged to *Tome Perez*, which King *Emmanuel* of glorious memorie had sent Embassadour to *China*. Hee and his began a fight with vs in the entrie of the gate, more valorous then the former, till a Boy of ours dismounted the *Mandarine* from his Horse with a Harqueballe shot thorow the breast, which caused the rest disorderly to flee, and we with them into the Towne. They casting downe their weapons ranne out at another gate toward the Countrey, none remaining. *Antonio Faria* gathering his companie together, marched orderly to the *Chifanga*, the Prison where our men were, brake up the gates and grates, and freed his men. Then did he appoint halfe an houre to his people for spoile, himselfe going to the *Mandarine* house, and the 8000 Tais of Silver there, & sixe great boxes of Musk, hee told his gale to the Boyes, which was much Silke twisted, and wadded, *Thamack*, *Sata* tin, *Porcelaine*; the sacke was so rich, that four Barkes or Vessels in which they came, went foure times laden therewith to the Lunkes, that there was neither Boy nor Mariner which had not a Chitt or Chitts of pieces, besides what they had secretly. Having spent an houre and halfe, hee seeing night now come on, let fire in ten or twelve parts of the Citie, which being built of Pine timber suddenly arose into such a flame, that it seemed a Hell. And without impediment, he embarked his company with much riches, and many faire Girles tied by foures and fives with Match, they crying, ours triumphing.

It was now late, yet had *Faria* care of the wounded which were fiftie of them, eight *Portugalls*, and to burie the dead, which were nine only one *Portugall*; and keeping good watch that night, as soone as it was day, he went to a Village on the other side of the water, and found not one person in it, the houses full furnished with goods and provisions, with which hee laded the Lunkes and departed for a desert land fiftene leagues from *Liampoo*, called *Pullo Hubor*, where was good water and anchorage. After wee had layed five dayes betweene the Isles *Comelin* and the continent, *Premata Gandel* a Roare which had done much damage to the *Portugalls* in *Pastano*, *Siam*, *Siam*, taking vs for *Chinemes*, set upon vs with two great Lunkes, in which were two hundred fighting men besides Mariners, and grappling with the Lunke of *Mom Taborda*, had almost taken it, when *Quay Panian* came to her succour with such a stroke on her quarter, that both Lunke; the three *Lorches* which *Faria* brought from *Nouda* coming in, saved most of our men, the enemies being all drowned, and *Mom Taborda* freed. Meane while, *Premata Gandel* had with two hookes and Iron chaines fastned himselfe to *Faria* Lunke, both in the poope and prow, such a cruel battell following, that in lesse then an houre most of *Faria* men and himselfe were wounded, and twice in danger of taking, when the three *Lorches*, and a little Lunke which *Pero Syne* had taken at *Nouda*, came in to his succour, so that eightie sixe *Manch* which had entred *Faria* Lunke were slaine, who had cooped our men before in the poop-roume; and thence entering the *Pera* Lunke, put all therein to the sword.

This victorie cost fiftene of our men their lues, five of them of the best *Portugall* Souldiers, besides three and foure wounded. The prize was valued at eightie thousand Tais, the most of it *Japan* Silver, which the Pirate had taken in three or seven *Chinois* bound for *Chinchoo*. In the other Lunke Lunkes was said to be as much. With this prize *Faria* went to a little land, called *Buncalon*, foure leagues off, and stayed there eighteen dayes, making Cottages for the wounded, which there recovered health. Thence they departed, *Quay Panian* coming in that Lunke of the Pirate, with 20000 Tais over and above for his part: in sixe dayes we came to the Ports of *Liampoo*, which are two lles, in which the *Portugalls* made at that time their contraction, and was a Towne of one thousand houses and sixe or seven Churches built by them, with Sheris, an Auditor, Alcaldes, and other Officers; the Notaries vying to write, *I. N. public Notarie for the King our Lord, in this Citie of Liampoo*, &c. as if it had beene founded betwixt *Samora* and *Lipoon*: and such was their forwardness, that some houses cost three or foure thousand *Cruzados*, all which were razed afterwards by the *Chinois*; so vncertainty are the things of *China* (which in these parts are so effected) to subject to disasters and disadventures.

When *Faria* was come to *Portas de Liampoo*, he sent *Mom Taborda*, and *Arriques* first to acquaint the Towne-men what had passed, who sent *Ieronimo da Rega* with two *Lanteas*, to thank him for the bounty shewed in the case of *Cois Adem*, and with refreshings; and for the

Thomas Perez.

The *Mandarine* slaine.

Prisoners loosed. The Towne sacked.

Comelin Islands. Premata Gandel a Pirate.

Another sea fight. Farians Lunke, and another Lunke. Farians victory.

20000 Cruzados.

Buncalon.

Liampoo, a Portuguese Towne on the coast of China, seven leagues from Liampoo.

learned that *Calempuy* was ten leagues off, and with their helpe found it, eightie three dayes after he had set out on that enterprise.

This Land was seated in the midst of the River, and seemed to bee a league in Compasse. Her chier came *Faria* with trouble and fear, three howes within night, anchoring about a chamber thor from it: In the morning it was agreed, first to goe thence so far without entrance it had, and what impediments might befall their designe. The Land was all environed with a rampire of Heaven Marble, fixe and twentie spannes high, so well cut and set together, that all the wall seemed but one piece, the like whereof wee had never scene in *India*, or elsewhere: first the bottom of the water to the brim, it contained other fixe and twentie spannes. In the top was border of the fame worke round ingirting it, like a Priests girdle, of the bignesse of a mullet of twelve gillions, on which were fet grates of Latten turned, every fixe fathoms fastned into holes of the Latten; in each of which was the Idoll of a woman, with a roundball in her hands, none knowing what it signified. Within these grates, was a row of many Monstres of cast Iron, which in manner of a dance hand in hand, compassed the Ile round. Further inwards from those monstrous Idols, in the same ranke, was another of Arches of rich worke pleafant to behold. And all from hence inward, was a groue of dwarfe Orange-trees thicke set; in the midst whereof were builded three hundred and fixtie Hermitages, dedicated to the Gods of the water, whereof those *Pagynas* have many fabulous praifes. A quarter of a league higher, on a hill to the East, were some buildings with seven fronts of houses like Churches, all from the top to the bottome wrought with gold, which high Towers seeming Bell-steeple: 20 and without, two fiers with Arches which encompassed these buildings, of the fame worke with the fronts; and all from the highest top of the steeple pinacles to the bottom wrought with gold; whereby we judged it some sumptuous and rich Temple.

After this view taken, *Faria* resolved (though it were late) to goe on shore, to see if he could speake with any in those Hermitages; and so he leaving sufficient guard in the Barkes with some Souldiers, twentie Slaves, and foure *Chinois*; (which knew the place, and had beene sometimes there, and might serve vs for Interpreters) he committed the two Barkes to Father *Diego Labrador*, and entered at one of the eight Entrances; walking thorow the Orange-tree groue to an Hermitage, two Caliver shots from our landing place, with the greatest silence that might bee, and with the name of *Iesus* in our heart and mouth. Having yet scene no person, he felt at the doore of the Hermitage with his Halberd, and percolated it locked on the inside: he made one of the *Chinois* knocke, which having done twice he heard an answer within answering, *Praised be the Creator which guided the heauenous Heavens, goe about and I will know thy business.* The *Chinois* went about and entering the backe doore, opened that where *Faria* stood, who with his companie going in, found one man seeming above one hundred yeeres old, in a long Russet Damaske garment, by his presence seeming *Joan* (as after we learned he was) who seeing such a troupe fell downe, trembling hand and foot. A good while it was before he could speake, and then asked what wee were, and what we sought. The Interpreter answered by *Farias* command, that hee was the Captaine of these strangers of *Siam*, who bound for the Port of *Lienpoo* in trade of Merchandise was wracked at Sea; hee and these escaping miraculously, and therefore vowed to come to that Holy Land on Pilgrimage, to praise God for deliverance from so great a danger, and was now come to fulfill it; and withall to demand somewhat in almes to relieve him for his returne, protesting after three yeeres to restore it double whatsoeuer hee now took.

Huicou (that was his name) answered, *I have well heard what thou hast said, and thou desirest to be delivered where thy kindnesse (as the Pilow of Hell) hath drawne thee and thine affluence: to the bottome of the lake of night. For in stead of thanks for so great a benefit, thou comest to rob: and what I pray thee will the Divine iustice repay thee as thy last breath? change thou thy unprofitable, and (believe me) God will change thy punishment.* *Faria* prayed him, hee would not be angry, saying, hee had no other remedie of life: whereat the Hermit lifting his hands and eyes to Heauen, sayd, weeping, *Blissed be thou Lord, which sufferest on earth men, who take for remedie of life these offences, and for certaintie of glory will not serve thee one day.* And then turning his eyes to the companie which were rising the Hangings and Chests, taking the silver from amongst the bones of the deceased therein, hee fell twice from his seate with griefe; and pensively put *Faria* in minde of his last breath, of restitution, of penance perpetual to his flesh, and liberal and discrete communicating to the poore, that the servant of night should have nothing to accuse him in the day of account: praying him alfo to command his companie, to gather up the bones of the Saints, that they should not lye contemptible on the ground. *Faria* gaue him many good words and complements, professing himselfe (which hee whispred neerer) forrie of what had passed, but if hee should not doo it, his companie had threatened to kill him. If it be so, said the Hermit, then *ball thy paine bee less then these ministers of night, whom as hersey Dogs, it seems all the silver of the world would not satisfy.*

Thus with many good words hee tooke leave of the Hermit (having taken all they could get) who told him his knowledge might make his sinne more penall. *Nuno Coelho* praying him not to be

so angry for so small a matter, hee replyed, *More small is the feare which thou hast of death, when knowing thy life in foule facts, thy soule shall stand as foule at the passage of this duncy full of flye flye. And if thou seekest more silver to filly thy infernal appetite, thou must finde in the house, adjoining enough to make it filth, as well in danger of Hell for this already, as in that more burthensome thou shalt defend against to the bosome.* Pray, sayd *Coelho*, take all in patience, for so God hath commanded in his holy Law: the Hermit shaking off his head, sayd, I now see that which I neuer thought to have heard, *Inbred wickednesse and verine saved, the same man stealing and preaching:* and turning to *Faria*, prayed him that hee would not suffer them to fpet on the Altar, being leifer to dye a thousand times then to see it, which he promised. Hee then demanded of *Huicou*, what persons lived in all those houses; who answered, three hundred and fixtie *Talagrespos* only, and foure *Menigrespos* which served them without, for their prouision, and the care of the Sicke. Hee asked if the Kings vied to come thither: no sayd he, *The King being sonne of the Sunne, can absolve all, and none may condemne him.* Asked of their Armes, hee sayd, *To goe to Heauen, there needed no armes to offend, but patience to suffer.* For the mixture of that Silver with leale bones in the chests, hee answered, that it was the *Almes* which the deceased carried with them, to provide them of necessities in the beauen of the *Mones*. Asked of women with them, hee sayd, that the *Bees* living those which care the honey, and pleasures of the flesh, needed not to the life of the Soule. And thus parted hee from the Hermit with embraces, with purpose to returne the next day (it being now night) to the other houses, and not taking about with him this 20 Hermit, as hee was aduised, saying, his gowtie legges could carrie no tydings of vs: to which yet hee did, creeping to the next, and bidding him goe call the *Borazj*.

For an hour after midnight, wee saw fires in a row, which our *Chinois* told vs, were signes of our discourteie, and therefore aduised vs to haste away. *Faria* was awakened, and would needs a thore with fixe men, and ranne like a mad-man from one place to another: his companie requested him to haste away, and he answered, for his honour hee would first see the danger, and intreated them to stay one halfe houre, and wearing hereto, away hee goeth, and follows the found of a Bell to an Hermitage, in which were two men in religious habites; the place was richer then the former wee had bene in. They tooke thence an Idoll or Silver from the Altar with a myrer of Gold on his head, and a wheele in his hand, and three Candlesticks of silver great halfe. Of one of thely, they learned that *Plaw Angros* had come to the house of the Sepulchers of the Kings, and cryed out to them to awaken out of their sleape, telling them of their oath to the Goddess *Amida*, of Strangers with long beards and Iron bodies, which had robbed the Saints, and would kill them all, whence followed the fires, and tending to give notice to the Cities *Corpiem* and *Fumbana* for ayde, their Religion prohibiting them to handle any thing which might draw blood. *Faria* now having gone downe the River a great way, was much enraged for omitting such oportunitie, plucking his beard, and beating himselfe with anguish, till not long after his heate was cooled.

¶ III.

Their Shipwracke in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wandrings of the rest to Nanquin: their Imprisonments, Sentence and appeal to Pequim; varieties observed in those places and wayes; of the beginnings of the China King dome, and of their admirable Wall.

SEuen dayes wee layd thorow the Bay of *Nanquin*, the force of the current carrying vs more speedily, and came all discontent to a Village called *Suyoguerum*, and there provided our felues of victuall and instruction, and entered into a straight called *Xalungau*, in which wee ranne in nine dayes one hundred and foure leagues, and turning to enter the same Bay of *Nanquin*, which was there ten or twelve leagues wide, wee layd with grees and two dics, and being in the sight of the Mines of *Conziacian* in 41. deeming more then natural, and the winde chopped into the North North-west, the Sea going so high that (except our prouision and Chests of plate) we threw all into the Sea, cut both our masts out-board, and about midnight heard a great cry in the *Panora* of *Antonia* de *Faria*, *Faria* Lord God, whereby wee imagined here was some shipwrecke: we tooke the same cry, but heard no answer. Our Baikes also the next day, split on a Rocke, and of five and twentie *Portugals*, eleven were drowned, besides eighteene *Christian* boyes, and foure *China* Mariners. This hapned the fifth of August, 1542.

Wee fourteen which escaped, the next day travelled into the Land, along a Hill, and discovered a Lake, without the w of Land, which made vs returne backe, where wee found our men

The Hermitages, Hermites, & attendants, as Lay brethren, Papilipower.

They are discouered.

Xalungau.

Conziacian.

Faria drowned, and both the Barkes were lost.

to the top encompassed with fixerewes of filuer grates with the tops gilded. On the highest of them was great Globe, and thereon a Lion of filuer, bearing vp a chift of Gold three fpanes fquare, in which they faid were her bones, by the blind people. The Chinois told vs that the man was Fire-blower (fo many yeares the lued) and feuen of Gold in memory of her leuen Sonnes. Without at the entry were two hundred fiftie three filuer Lampes great and rich, which the *Chams* and great men Wiues prefented in her honour. Without the doores were in fixe rewes round about Statues of Giants fiftene fpanes high, well proportioned of Brasse, with Halberds and Maces in their hands, which the *Chinois* faid were twelve hundred. Amongst them were foure and twentie Serpents of Brasse very great, each hauing a woman fitting thereon with a Sword in her hand of the fame metal, and a filuer Crowne on the head: *fo many had sacrificed themselves at her death to do her Service in the next World.* Another compaffe enuironed that of the Giants, all of triumphant Arches gilded, with a great quantitie of filuer Bels hanging on filuer chains, which by the motion of the Aire continually yielded a strange found. Without thofe Arches in the fame proportion ftood two ranks of Latten grates enuironing the whole worke, fet in fpaces with Pillars of the fame, and thereon Lions fet on balls, which are the *Armes of the King of China.*

The Infants say
his armes are
golden Dra-
gons.
Monstrous sta-
tues.

At the foure corners were placed foure Monsters of Brasse, one (which the *Chinois* call the *Demouring Serpent of the deepe Cane of the House of smoke*) in the figure of a dreadful Serpent, with feuen Serpents coming out of his brest, fmoaked with greene and blacke with many 20 prickles more then a fpan long, quite thorow the bodie like Hedge-hogges, each hauing in his mouth a woman counterwart, with difheulled haire, looking deadly. The old or great Serpent holds in his mouth a Liz. rd halfe out, of about thirty fpanes in length, as bigge as a Pipe, with nofe and lips full of blood, and in his hands he holds a great Elephant so forcibly, that his entrailes seeme to come out of his mouth: all to naturally represented, that it is most dreadful to behold. The folds of his tayle were about twentie fathome long, enuironing therein another Monster, the folds of the foure, called *Tarcamparou*, which they say was the *Sonne of that Serpent*, which ftood with both his hands in his mouth, which is as bigge as a gate, the teeth fet in order, and the blacke tongue hanging out about two fathomes. Of the two other, one was the *Figure of a woman*, named *Nadelpau*, Luenteene fathomes long, and fixe about, from whole waite 30 issued a beake or face about two fathomes, which cast fmoake out of the nofthills, and flames of fire out of the mouth, which they make ther-in continually, faying, this is the *Queene of the Fierie Sphere*, and shall burne the Earth: at the end of the World. The fourth is *like a man*, fet cowering with cheekes puffed like hips layles, so monstrous that a man could not endure the sight. The *Chinois* call him *Quangunabou*, and fay, that it is hee which makes Tempests in the Sea, and throws downe Houles by Land, to which the people giue much Almes not to hurt their Iunkes.

Xintigan.

The fecond day we went from *Pocaffir*, and came to another Citie called *Xintigan*, very great, well built, walled with Tyles, ditched about; with two Castles at the end, hauing their Townes, Bul-warkes, and Draw-bridges: in the midst of each Castle was a Towre of fixe 40 Lofts with many workes painted, in which the *Chinois* faid, were fiftene thousand Picos of filuer, of the Rents gathered in that *Archipelago*, which this Kings Grand-father there layd vp in memory of his Sonne *Lequinman*, which fignifieth the *my of all*, holden for a Saint, because he dyed a Religious man, and lyes there buried in the Temple of *Quiny Uaruel*, the God of all the *Fishes in the Sea*, of whom they haue large Legends. In that Citie and another fixe leagues from it is made the grea't part of the Silke of that Kingdom, the waters there beinge quier gulnet colours (they fay) then in other parts. The Weaues Loomes of these Silkes, which they affirme thirteenth thousand, pay yearly to the King three hundred thousand Taels. Going further vp the River, we came the next day Evening to a great Champagne, continuing ten ortwelve leagues, in which were many Kine, Hories, and Mares, pastured for the shambles 50 as well as other fteff, and kept by many men on Horie-backe. These Champagnes pay, we came to a Towne, called *Iungules*, walled with Tyles, but without Townes or Bul-warkes. Here we saw a stone Monument with an Infcription, *Heere lyeth Tranncome Modular, Viceroy to the King of Malacca, who dyed before hee was reuenged of Captaine Albuquerque, the Lim of Sea Robberies.* We enquiring hereof, an old *Chinese* faid, that about forty yeares agoe, the man there interred had come Embaffadour from a King of *Malacca*, to fue to the *Sonne of the Sonne*, for succour against a Nation of a Land without name, which had come from the end of the World, and taken *Malacca*, with other incredible particulars printed in a Booke which hee made thereof. Hauing spent three yeares in this Suite, and brought it to fome maturity, hee ficked of the *Aire* one night at Supper, dyed in nine dayes, and left this 60 Memoriall.

Iungules.
Albuquerque.
See Item, Lib. 2.
pg 31.

The Spanish
hath the Pally,
and it seems
a kind of Pallie
gores by
stroke or bla-
sting of the
Aire.

We proceeded on our way the River growing lesse, but the Countrey more peopled, farily a ftones cast free of some Houles, cyther of a *Pagode*, or Labourer. And two leagues higher on a Hill compassed with Iron grates were two Brasse Statues standing on their feete, one of a

man, the other of a woman, both fuentie foure fpanes long with their hands in their mouths, and puffed cheekes; fainted to Call-Iron Pillars, fenten fathomes high. The Male was named *Quiny Xingatalor*, the woman *Almoft*. The *Chinois* told vs that the man was Fire-blower in Hell to torment fuch as in this life gaue no Almes: the woman was the Hell-Porter, which fuffered the Almes-giues to fyue by a River cold water, called *Ochulady*, and led them their from the Devils hurting them. One of our company laughed at this Tale, whereat a *Bonso* was so offended, that hee fet *Chifu* in rage with vs, who bound vs hand and foot, and gaue vs one hundred ftripes a-piece. Twelve Priests were incensing these Monstres when we were there with Silver-centfours full of sweet Odours, saying, *as we ferve thee, helpe thou vs*: another company of Priests answering: *So I promise thee as a good Lord.* And thus went they on Procession about the Hill an houres fpace following certayne Bells causing a dreadful noyse.

Two mon-
strous statues
and their de-
uotions.

Hence we pulled vp the River euen dayes, all peopled with Cities, Townes, Villages, Castles, in many places, fcarfly a Caluete fteff distant one from another: and all the Land in compell of our light had flore of great Houles, and Temples with gilded Steeples, which amazed vs with the sight. Thus we came to the Citie *Sampyang*, where we stayed five dayes by reason of the fickneffe of *Chifu* Wife. There by his leave we went thorow the fheets, a begging, the people wondering at vs, and giuing vs largely. One woman amongst others which busly questioned with vs, shewed vs a Croffe bearing on her left arme asking if we knew that figne, and we devoutly anfwering, yes, shee lifted vp her hands to Heaven, and fayd, *Our Father which art in Heauen, hallowed be thy Name, in Portugall*, and could fpeake no more. 20 but proceeded in *China* fpeech, and procured leave to lodge vs at her Houle thefe three dayes, telling vs she was named *Inez de Leiria*, and was the Daughter of *Thomas Perez*, which came Embaffadour to *China*, and by reason of a Rebellious Portugall Captayne, hee was taken as a Spyve with twelve others so beaten that fue dyed, the other fenen fundered to diuers places, where they dyed in misery, only *Vasco Calao*, being now left alive. Her Father, the faid, was banished to this Towne, and there married with her Mother hauing fometowh to maintaine her, and by him made a Christian. They lued together many yeares like good Catholikes, and conuer- 30 ted many to the Faith of Christ, in that Citie three hundred assembled on Sundayes to her houfe to their holies. She shewed vs an Oratorie in which was a Croffe of wood gilded, with a Candleficke and filuer Lampe. We asked her what they did, when they came there, and shee faid, nothing but kneele before that Croffe, with their hands and eyes lifted to Heaven, and fay, *Lord Iefu Christ, as it is true that thou art the true Sonne of God, conceived by the Holy Ghost in the womb of the Holy Virgin Mary, for the faluation of Sinners, fo pardon our fins, that we may obayne to see thy face in the glory of thy Kingdom, where thou fittest at the right hand of the Highell.* Our Father which art in Heauen, hallowed be thy Name. In the Name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy 40 ling friendly with each other. Her Father (he faid) had left other Prayers written, which he her other Prayers, and taught the Christians fenten times that, and *Christopher Barrall* writ in other good Prayers. Shee had giuen a Prefent to *Chifu* Wife to deale with her Husband, and giue vs this leaue, and to fte vs kindly, and the Christians there gaue vs fittie Taels of Silver, and *Inez de Leiria* other fittie clofely, de ring vs to remember her in our Prayers.

Frequent is of
China people,
Sampyang.

See Maff 1.6.
The Portugall
Rebels had
possessed Ta-
mas, and raifed
a Fort in the
land, whence
followed that
our gate to Pe-
ter after foure
moneths travel-
well from Can-
ton.

We continued our journey vp the *Batampina*, to a place called *Lequinman*, of tenn or twelue thousand Houles. Neere to the wall stood a long houfe with thirte Furnaces for the purifying of filuer which was taken out of a Hill fixe leagues distant, called *Tarcamparou*; in which Mines the *Chinois* told vs, there continually laboured on thousand men, and that it yielded to the King yearly fixe thousand * *Pikes* of filuer. We departed thence in the Evening, and the next day 50 being anchored betwixt two small Cities ftanding ouer against one another, one named *Pacan*, the other *Nacaua*, both well walled and builded. Thence two Cities occasion mee to requeir what I haue heard often lured in the thirteenth Chapter of the first Chronicle of the foreknowledge there was a Land, called *Quangunabou*, in which lued a petite Prince, called *Turban*, which had fizen *Man* (still much esteemed in *Lapou*, *China*, *Canchin-china*, *Cambolia*, *Siam*, of which I haue feuen many Temples) appointing his eldest Sonne by the faid *Nacaua* his heire. His Mother vpon *Nacaua* and her children fled downe the River fteff fteff leagues, and fortified a place which the called *Pilamara*, that is, the *refuge of the people*. Five yeares after *Silau* prepared a Fleet of thirte Barkes to destroy her and all her fcton, thinking that her Sonne coming of age might 60 thould and three hundred perfons, and but three or four: Bouts not sufficient to come againe thofe few, by common confent and aduice appointed a three dayes Fast thereto to begge fuccour

Lequinman,
Mynes of Tarc-
camparou.
* 1500 Picos
is a Million of
Taels.

China Chri-
stian and Le-
gends.

Beginning of
the first
of the

of God, in all which time none might eat about once, in paine of death. This Fast ended they call Lots and the Lot fell on a Boy of seven years old, which was also named *Silau*, whom after all Ceremonies ended they hid life up his hands to Heaven, and tell them some remedie to these dangers. Who prophesied Victory to her over the Tyrant *Silau*, commanding her to imbarke her in her Enemies Barkes, and at the found of the waters to runne along the Land, till God shewed where she should found a habitation of great name, which through all times should fend out his mercy with voyces and bloud of strange Nations: after which words the Boy fell downe dead.

The thirty Barkes came (with the Story) five dayes after without any people therein: for as a place called *Catebajay*, a blacke Cloud arose over them, which rayned on them scalding drops, which destroyed them all. *Nanaca* with teares and thanks imbarked her three Sonnes and the rest, and went downe the River conducted by the found fourty five dayes, and then came to the place where *Pequim* now stands. Five dayes after they came a land, was the first stone layd thereof by *Pequim*, eldest Sonne of *Nanaca*, and the Citie called by his owne name. And a fluer shield length on the Arch of the chiefe gate *Pommicetay*, and hath this inscribed, in which are fortie Wardes, and in the rest orderly but four. The day also of the foundation (being the third of August) is kept with great Solemnitie, and thereon the King vifeth to them himselfe to the people. The latter Kings also have made a Law that no Strangers, except Embassadors and Slaves should enter the Kingdome. The two brother Brethren founded these two Cities, called by their owne names *Pacan* and *Nacan*, and their Mother founded *Nanquin*, which tooke the 20 name of hers.

In the fifth Booke of the chiefe places of that Empire, is written, that King *Crisnegal* (which reigned as we may accord our computation with theirs) about the year of our Lord 58. buld the wall, the people contributing ten thousand Pikes of fluer (which are fifteen Millions of Cruzados) and two hundred and fiftie thousand men (thirtie thousand Officers and the rest Laboures) which was continued seven and twentie yeares, and then finished, being, faith that Booke the length of seuentie laons (every laon is foure leagues and an halfe) which make three hundred and fiftie leagues. The Priests and Iles are said to contribute as many, and the King and Officers another third, so that seven hundred and fiftie thousand men laboured thereon. This 30 wall I have seene and measured, being generally fixe fathomes high, and fortie fpannes thicke: and foure fathomes runneth a kind of Rampire, twice as thicke as the wall strengthened with a Bituminous substance on the out-side like Potters worke; and in stead of Bulwarke it hath boules of two lockts with beames of blacke wood, called *Candefly*, that is, iron-wood, seeming stronger then if they were of stone-works. This wall or *Changfauan* (so they call it, that is, strong resistance) runneth with an equal course till it encounter with Hills, which are all Chanfred and made so that it is stronger then the wall it selfe, the wall being only in the spaces twixt Hill and Hill, the Hills themselves making up the rest.

In all that way are but few entrances, cauled by the *Tartarian* Rivers, which with impetuous force cut the Countrey about five hundred leagues entring the Sea of *China*, and *Cambin-china*. 40 And one of them more forcible then the others enters the Kingdome of *Sornau* (commonly called *Siam*) by the *Barre of Chuy*. At every of those five entrances the King of *China* hath one Fort and the *Tartar* another: in enquiry of the *China* Forts there are seven thousand men, six thousand foot, and one thousand Horse, in continuall pay; most of them Strangers, *Mogers*, *Cham-paas*, *Pannus*, *Coracones*, and *Gizares of Persia*, the *Chinois* being but meane Souldiers. In all the space of this wall are three hundred and twentie Regiments, each of five hundred men (in all one hundred & sixty thousand) besides Minifters, Commanders, and their retinue which the *Chinois* said, made in all two hundred thousand men, allowed by the King only sustentance, all or most of them being condemned to that service, and therefore receiving no pay. And in *Pequim* 50 is a great and admirable Prison-house, in which are Prisoners continually for the Fabricke of this wall of three hundred thousand men and upwards, most of them from eightene to five and fortie years old: whereof some are men of good qualitie, which for their ill behaviours and enormities are hither sentenced, expecting to be removed hence to the service of the wall: when they may have returne according to the Statutes thereof made, and approved by the *Cham*, which therein dispense the Regall power with meere and mixt Emptre. There are twelue of them which may pay to the King a Million of Gold for Rent.

Legend of Pe-
quim.No danger
may enter Chi-
na.The wall of
china.Sixty thousand
of quarenta mil-
lions of large.From within
the fortresses are
pikes.Five Rivers
interrupting
the wall.

Wall-forts.

Thus in *Spain*
Mole-towers
are extended
to the Gallies,
or Garrison of
Oran, *Ponon*, &c.
Huge Prison,
Cham of the
wall.

§. IIII.

Minde Salt-pits: Mines of Coretumba, Copper-works, Idolatry and Chri-
stianitie; China Trades, and River Fares; their comming to
Pequin, tryall and sentence. Rarities of
Pequin.

10 **T**O returne to our Voyage, from *Pacan* and *Nacan*, wee passed vp the River to *Men-
do*, a greater Citie then either of the former, which on the Land side had a great
Lake of Salt-water, with great flore of Salt-pits therein, which the *Chinois* said,
did ebbe and flow like the Sea, from which it is about two hundred leagues distant;
and that this Citie Rents to the King yearly one hundred thousand Tails, of the thirds of
the Salt, and as much more of the Silkes, Sugars, Porcelaine, Camfire, Vermillion, Quick-silver,
in which are there in great quantitie. Two leagues about this Citie were twelue long Houles, in
which many men were founding and purifying Copper, making such a noyle with the Ham-
mers that this place (if any on Earth) may resemble Hell. In each Houle were fortie Furnaces,
twentie on a side, with fortie great Anvils, on each whereof eight men were hammering round,
with such quicknes as scarce permitted the eyes obferuance; so that in each Houle there were three
hundred and twentie continuall Laboures, besides Workmen of other kinds. Wee asked how
much Copper they might make yearly, and they answered, betwixt one hundred and ten, and
one hundred and twentie thousand Pikes, of which the King had two parts, because the Mynes
were his; the Hill where the Mine was, is called *Coretumba*, that is, *River of Copper*, which in
two hundred yeares (so long was since the Discovery) was not emptied.

30 Above these Houles one league were the River, wee saw on a Hill encompassed with three
rewes of Iron Grates, thirtie Houles in five ranks, very long, with great Towers of Bels
of Metall, and Cast-Iron, with gilded Pillars and caned workes, and artificiall Frontis-
pieces of stone. Here we went on Land by *Chifuy* leate, because hee had vowed to that *Pa-
go*, which is called *Bigayepitim*, that is, the God of one hundred and ten thousand Gods, *Carchoo*, *Fa-
me*, *gnate guinea*, strong & great (say they) about all the rest. For they hold every thing hath a
particular God which made it and preserves it in its nature, & that this *Bigayepitim* brought forth
all of them at his arme-pits, and that of him they all hold their being, as of a father by fillall vail-
on, which they call *Byaporentesay*. In *Pegu* where I have bene sometimes, there is a *Pagode*
like this (there called *Ginocoginana*, the God of all greatneffe) whose Temple was built by
the *Chinois* when they ruled in *India*, which was after their Computation accorded with ours
from *Anno Dom.* 1013. till 1072. conquered by *Oxmagas*, whose Successor seeing how much
bloud was payd for so little good, voluntarily relinquished it. In those thirtie Houles stood a
great quantitie of idols of old wood, and as many more of Tinne, Copper, Latteen, Iron,
Porcelaine, so many that I dare not mention the number. Wee had not gone thence fixe or seven
leagues, when we law a great Citie ruined with the beules and walls on the ground, seeming a
place in circuit. The *Chinois* said, that it had bene called *Cabilauca*, that is, *Flower of the field*,
sometimes prosperous; and that one hundred fortie two yeares since, as is written in a Booke, name
Toxaleam, there came in company of Merchants from the Port of *Tanacum*, a man which
wrought Miracles, in a monthes space raising vp five dead persons, the *Bonzos* saying, he was a
Witch, and because they could not hold dispute with him, prouoking the people against him,
saying, that if they did not kill him, God would punish them with fire from Heaven. The in-
raged multitude killed one *Iobu* a Weaver, where hee sojournd, and his two Sonnes in Law, and
his Sonney, which fought to defend him, and when they had gone about to burne him, in vaine
the fire being extinct, the *Bonzos* stoned him, preaching Christ unto them, which had come
from Heaven to dye for Sinners, and to give life to all which professed his Law with Faith and
Works. They say, that the bodie was cauit into the River, which for the space of five dayes would
not runne lower, and thereby many were moved to professe that Religion: and as wee doubled a
point of Land, we saw a Croffe of stone on a little Hill environed with Trees. *Chifuy* Wife fall-
ing into trauell (of which she dyed) we stayed there nine dayes, and did our Deuotions thereto,
prostrate on the Earth. The people of the Village (called *Chifuy*) marvellous, came running to
the place and falling on their knees, kissed the Croffe often, saying, *Christe Iesu, Iesu Christo*,
Maria Mican, late impone *Mondel*, that is, was a Virgin in his Conception, Birth, and aua-
it. They asked if they were Christians, and we affirming it, had vs to their Houles and vied vs
kindly, being all of that Weauers Posteritie and Christians. They also confirmed that which
the *Chinois* had told vs, and shewed vs the Booke printed of his Miracles, which they said was
named *Mattheu Esandel*, an Hungarian by Nation, an Heremite of Mount *Sinay*, borne at *Bu-
da*. That Booke tells that nine dayes after his death, the Citie *Cabilauca* (sooke loe, that the peo-
ple ranne out into the fields, and abode in Tents; to whom the *Bonzos* came and bid them feare
nothing, for they would beleeve *Quiny Tignareu*, The God of the night, to command the Earth.

The culture
300000. Cru-
zados.3840. Ham-
m. men.
A Pico is 1000.
Tails.

Bigayepitim.

China ruled
under India.

Cabilauca.

A Christian
martyred.
Iobus hath
this storie.

A Croffe.

Met. Esandel
an Hungarian.
Earthquake.
The Chins
Pines.

Langul man.
See colors,
see algaes.

How such infinite numbers
hue.

Sugar-houses.
Infinite proufions and
houses.

Pastures of
beasts.

Dogs for meat.

Movable Cities on the
water.

Beauties and
pleasures of
River-Cities.

to do for no more, otherwise they would give him no Almes. This went the Priests alone in Procession to that Idoll Haute, and making their night-Sacrifices and Perfumes, the Earth quaked about eleven of the clock at night, and overthrew the whole City (one only of about four thousand *Bonzes* remaying alive) into a Lake more then one hundred fathoms deepe, called after this *Fuengang-fai*, that is, *punished from Heaven*.

Hence we came to a great City, called *Langulman*, very rich, with many Turkes and Barks, where we stayed five dayes, *Chifu* there celebrating his Wives Exequies, and giving vs food and payment for her soule, freeing vs from the Oare, and giving vs leave to goe on Land, when we would, without our Collers, which was very great ease to vs. Thence we went up the River, full being on both sides many faire Cities and Townes, and other very great populations, strongly walled, and Fortified along the water with Towers and rich Houses of their Sects, with innumerable castles in the fields, and shipping in the River, in some places five hundred, in others, yea, one thousand faile, in which were sold all things could be named. Many *Chowies* affirmed, that there were as many lived in that Empire on the water, as in Cities and Townes: so many in both, that were it not for the good government of their Trades, they would eate one another. As in Ducks, one trades in buying and hatching the Eggs, and selling the young; another in breeding them for sale when they are great, others in the Eaters, others in the heads, and in wares, others in the Eggs, &c. none interloping the others Trade vnder paine of thirty stripes. In Hogs, one trades in selling them together alive, others kill them, and sell them by weight, others in Bacon, others in Pigges, others in Soule. So in fish, he which sells fresh may not sell salt, some sell them alive, &c. and so in Fruits and other things. And none may change his Trade without license. They have also along this River of *Batamipin*, in which we went from *Nanquin* to *Pekin*, (the distance of one hundred and eighty leagues) such a number of Ingenious for Sugar, and Presses for Wines, and Oyle; made of diuers sorts of Pulse and Fruits, that there are flocks of them on both sides of the River, of two or three leagues in length. In other parts are many huge store-houses of infinite proufions of all sorts of flesh, in which are salted and smoked Beefe, tame and wilde Hogs, Ducks, Geese, Cranes, Bullards, Emes, Deere, Buffalo, Ants, Horfs, Tygers, Dogs, and all flesh which the Earth brings forth, which amazed and amazed vs exceedingly, it seeming impossible that there should be people in the World to eate the same. Wee saw also great flocks of Barks fenced at Poupe and Prow, with Reeds of Canes full of Ducks to sell, in diuers lots one another, which goe out at foure strokes of a Drumme, five or fouen thousand together to feed, where they let them out at the found of the Drumme returning againe, with like exceeding crie. In the like fort they let them out to lay on the grabe. They that hatch them have long houses with twentie Furnaces full of dung with some hundreds of Eggs covered therein, and hatched by that heate, the mouth stopped till they stinke in time, then putting in a Capon halfe plucked and wounded on the breast, they shut it againe, and after two dayes, the Capon hath drawne them all forth, and they put them into holes provided for them.

We saw along the River in some places flocks of Swine wild and tame kept by men on Horke-backs, and in other places tame Deere kept by Footmen, all maymed in the right foreleg, by that they should not runne away, which they doe when they are young. Wee saw Pennes full of little Dogges to sell, Barks full of Pigges, others of Lizards, Frogs, Snakes, Snails, all being tame with them. In these being of small price they may sell many kinds. Yea, the dung of men is there sold, and not the worse for ill price; that stinke yeelding fressh wealth to some, who goe tabouring vp and downe the streets to signifie what they would buy. Two or three hundred faile are seene sometimes frightened with this lading in some Part of the Sea; whence the famed foyle yeelds three Haruells in a year.

We came to a Faire of *China* where on the water 3000. Barks, besides small Boats which goe vp and downe and small Barks were assembled in one place, and made a City with streets in the water about a league long, and a third part of a league broad. These Faires are principally so on the Holy day of some *Pagode*, whose Temple is by the waters side. In this *Water-city*, by the order of the *Atao* of *Batamipin* (who is chiefe President of the thirte two Admirals of the thirte two Kingdomes of this Monarchie) are fixtie Captaynes appointed; thirte for the government and ordering of the same in matters of Justice, and other thirte to guard the Merchants in coming safely secured from Theeves. Over all these is a *Chao*, which hath Merit and mixt Rule in Causes Civil and Criminal without Appeal. The five Failes last from the new Moon to the full, in which it is a goodly thing to see two thousand streets or racks strait, enclosed are sold all things that can be desired, in others Mechanike Trades, and in the middle Boats going up and downe with people to trade without any confusion or tumult. As foone as it is night, the streets are enclosed with Cables. In euery street is ten Lanthornes lighted on the Masts (which yeelds a fairer lustre then the former light by day) to see who goeth by and what is his business. In each of these streets is a Watch-bell, and when that of the *Chao*es sounds, all the rest answer with as strange an Object to the Eare as the former to the Eye. In euery of these Vowes are

Or-

Oratories built on Barks with gilded Tents, where the Idoll and Priests receive the Deuotions and Offerings of the people.

Amongst other remarkable things we saw one row or street of about one hundred Barks laden with Idols of gilded wood of diuers sort, which are sold to be offered in the *Pagodes*; and besides, feet, legs, armes and heads, which sick folks offer for Deuotion. Other Barks there are with Tents of Silke, in which *Comedies* and paffimes are represented. In others are sold *Lettes of Exchange*, the Priests giving them Bills to receive in Heaven what their folly lay downe there, with great increase (Our Sermones would hardly grow rich here with that Trade) others are laden with *Acels* of dead men, they dreaming that all the Almes of those men, whose skulls these have bene, shall belong to their soules; and that the *Porter* of Heaven seeing them come with thus many attending, will open to him as an honorable person: Others have *Cages of Birds*, and call to men to set free those Captiues, which are the creatures of God, with their Almes which they which doe, let loose the Bird and bid him: tell God what he hath done in his Service: others do the like with living *fishes*, offering their freedom to the charitable Redeemer (which themselves will not give them; much like the sale of *Indulgences*) laying, they are Innocents which neuer sinned, which freed by Almes are let goe in the River, with commendations of this their Redeemer Service to the Creator. Other Barks carry *Fiddlers* and *Musicians* to offer their Service: Others (the Priests) sell *Hornes of sacrificed Beasts*, with promise of 1 know not what Feasts in Heaven: others had Tents of sorrow, Tombs and all *Funerall apparerances* with their Service: 20 others, to be let out for Burials: others laden with Books of all sorts of *Historie*, and these also have Scriveners and Proctors; others have such as offer their service to fight in defence of their honour; others have *Mid-wives*, officers *Nurses*; others carry *graine* new and *women* to comfort those that have lost Husbands, Wives, Children, and the like discontented persons: others Boyes and Girles for service; others offer *Compendious* Codes of Law or Learning; others *Physicians*: and to conclude, nothing is to be sought on the Land which is not here to be found in this *Water-city*.

Once, the cause of the greatness of this Kingdom of *China*, is this easie concourse of all parts by water and Rivers: some of which in narrow places have bridges of stone like ours, and some made of one only stone laid over, sometimes of eightie, ninetie, or one hundred spanner, long, and fiftene or twentie broad. All the High-ways have large Caufes made of good stone with Pillers and Arches fairly wrought inscribed with the *Founders* names and prayers in golden Letters. In many places they have Wells to refresh the Travellers. And in more barren and less inhabited places are single women which give free entertainment to such as have no monie, which abuse and abomination, they call a worke of Mercie, and is prouided by the deceased for good of their soules, with Rents and maintenance. Others have also bequeathed in the like one and twentie yeares vnsfortunate trauels leane a great part of *Asia*, and the riches of *Eure* are the endowments of nature in a whole some *Ayre*, *Soye*, *Rivers*, and *Sea*; and with their Police, Justice, Riches and State, that they oblige all the lustres of other parts. Yet such is their bestiall and Deuillish Idolatry, and filthy Sodomitie publicly permitted, committed, taught by their Priests as a vertue, that I cannot but grieve at their vagrancy.

Departing from this admirable City, we sailed up the River, till on the ninth of October, on Tuesday we came to the great City of *Pekin*, whither we were sent by Appaile. Wee went three and three as Prisoners, and were put in a Prison called *Gosaria* for, where for an entrance they gaue each of vs thirte stripes. *Chifu* which brought vs presented to the *Atao* our Progers, sent one of their company with two Notaries, and six or seven Officers to the Prison where we were, and examined vs, to whom we answered as before, and hee appointed vs to make petition to the *Tau-gow*, of the holy Office by our Proctors, and gaue vs a Taell for 50 almes, with a caveat to beware of the Prisoners that they robbed vs notand then went into another execution to be done on feuen and twentie men, sentenced two dayes before, which all dyed with the blowes to our great terror.

And the next day wee were collared and manacled, being much afraid that our *Calempny* business would come to light. After foue dayes the *Tau-gow* of the Hospital of that Prison came againe. By their meanes the *Conchals* petitioned the *Chao* to reuoke the Sentence of cutting tie, we more needed pitee then regour. He heard the pleading by vs committed, but only our power, prometer or Fiscall laying hand againe vs that we were theuys; but being able to proue nothing, the *Chao* suspended him from his Office, and condemned him in twentie Taels to be presented to the execution of Justice for several crimes there written, very fearful to behold: and at the end a fairer gilded room called the same, where was a Tribunal with feuen steps, thid-

Bridges, and high-ways admirable.

Filthy charity.

The Authors opinion.

Their hard vices.

Their Cruelty. The *Fiscall* (set on work to see) seems by the Judge which had sentenced them) 2000.

compassed with three rews of grates, Iron, Latten, and blacke Wood; inlayed with Mother of pearle, having a Canopie of Damaske fringed with Gold and greene Silke, and underneath a Chaire of Silver for the *Cham*, and a little Table before him, with three Boyes attending on their knees richly attired, with chaines of gold on their neckes; the middlemost to give him his Penne, the other two to receive Petitions and to present them on the Table; two other Boyes standing at his side in exceeding rich attyre, the one representing *Justice*, the other on the right hand *Mercy*, without which conyned, the Judge (they say) becomes a Tyrant. (The rest of the state and ceremonie I omit) was kneeling on our knees, with our hands lifted up, and our eyes cast downe to the ground, heard glally our Sentence of absolution. Only we were for one yeere banished to the workes of *Quassy*, and eight moneths of that yeere ended to have free passage to goe home, or whither we would. After the Sentence pronounced, one of the *Catchpoles* stood up, and five times demanded aloud if any could take exception against the Sentence; and all being silent, the two Boyes representing Justice, and Mercy, touched each others *Erignes* which they had in their hands, and said aloud, *let them be free according to the Sentence*, and presently two *Chubbins* tooke off our Collars and Manicles, and all our bonds. The four moneths (the *Tamagore* told vs) were taken off the yeere, as the Kings almes in regard of our penurie; for had we beene rich, we must have served the whole yeere. They gave vs foure Tails of almes and went to the Captaine which was to goe for *Quassy* to commend vs to his charitie, which wred vs accordingly.

Pequin may be called the Mother Citie of the Worlds Monarchie for the wealth, government, greatness, justice, prouisions. It stands in the height of 41. degrees to the North; it containeth in circuit, as the *Chinese* (and as I after heard read in a little Booke written of the greatness thereof, called *Aguicundo*, which I brought with me into this Kingdom) thirte leagues, ten in length, and five in breadth, all which space is enuironed with two Walls, and innumerable Towers and Bulwarks. Without is a larger space, which they say, was anciently peopled, which now hath but Hamlets, and scattered Houses, and Garden-houses (of which sixteen hundred are of principall note, in which are the sixteen hundred Proctors for the sixteen hundred Cities and Townes of note, of the two and thirte Kingdomes of this Monarchie, which reside there three yeeres for the said Townes. Without this circuit or wall, there are in the space of three leagues broad, and seven long, foure and twentie thousand Sepulchres of *Hamourichs*, with their little gilded Chappels, encompassed with grates of Iron and Latten, with rich Arches at their entries. Neere to them are Gardens, Groves, Tanks, Fountains; the walls lined within with fine Porcelaine, adorned also with Lions and Pinacles of diuers paintings. There are in that space five hundred Lodgings, called *Houses of the Sonne of the Sunne*, for entertainment of Souldiers maimed in the Kings warres (besides many others for the old and sicke) euerly of which receive their monthly allowance, and haue in them as they said two hundred men, in all one hundred thousand. Wee saw another street very long, where lived four and twentie thousand Rowers for the Kings shipping; and another about a league long, where lived fourteen thousand Turnets for proction for the Court; and another where were infinite Curtelans freed from tribute (which those of the Citie pay) for service of the Court, many running from their husbands, and here protected by the *Tutan* of the Court, which is supreme in cases of the Kings house.

In that compass all live the Landers of the Citie, which were, as they told vs, about one hundred thousand, there being many Tanks or Ponds compassed with stone and Rivers. There are therein, as that Booke sayth, thirte hundred Noble houses of Religious men and women, which profite the foure chiefe Sects of the two and thirte which are in that Kingdom: some of which they say, haue about one thousand persons within them besides Ieruits. There are other houses (some with great walls in which are Gardens, and Groves with game for hunting; and as it were the Halls of Companies where many resort to see Playes, and the great men) make their seats there with incredible costs. Some of these houses cost about a million, maintained by Companies of rich Merchants, which are said to giue a much thereby. And when any will make a feite, he goeth to the *Xpatom* of the house, who sheweth him a Booke wherein is contayned the order of feasts and Ieruits (which Booke I haue seene and heard read) of all sorts, and of what prices they are, whether Sacred to their Idols, or Secular, (of which one Author hath a large Chapter, here omitted.)

Now for Pequin, it hath three hundred and sixtie Gates, each having a Castell with two Towers, and a Draw-bridge, a Notarie, and foure Warders, to take notice of those which goe in and out, and an Idoll proper according to the dayes of the yeere, euerly of which is fittfull in one of them. The *Cham* reported that there are therein three thousand eight hundred Temples or Pagodes, in which are continually sacrificed birds and wilde beasts, which they say, are more acceptable then tame: those especially very faire which are of the *Menigreps*, and *Comquis*, and *Tedagrops*, the Priests of the foure chiefe Sects, of *Xaca*, *Amida*, *Gison*, and *Cacum*. The streets are long and large, the houses faire, of one or two storeys, encompassed with Iron and Lat-

Tribunal and pompe.

Quassy works.

The Kings alms.

Description of Pequin, or as the Chinese call it Pequin. Aquicundo a Booke written of Pequin. 1600. houses for D. parties.

14000. sepulchres.

Hospitals 500.

14000. Barge men.

14000. Pur. yeators. Catefen street.

100000. Landers. 13000. Monasteries.

* By letting the houses to other men.

1600. Gates and Castles.

3800. Temples

Four chiefe Sects.

ten grates, and at the streets end are triumphall arches, closed at night; in the chiefe are Watch-tells. Euerly street hath a Captaine and foure Quarter-masters of Corporals, which euerly ten dayes acquitt the *Lunches* or *Chams* with occurrents. That Booke reports of one hundred and twentie water-passages, sixe fathome deepe of water, and twelve wide, with many stone bridges, which are said to be eighteen hundred rich and faire, with arches, pillars, and chaines: it tells also of one hundred and twentie Markets places, each of which haue their monthly Faires, (which make foure faires a day throw the yeere) of which we saw ten or twelue in our two moneths free about very full of horse-men and foot-men with all commodities to be sold. There are one hundred and fixtie Shambles, each having one hundred blockes for Fleth of all sorts, the price set downe on every blocke, and besides the shop-weights, are weights at every Gate to examine the weight againe. And besides those generall shambles, euerly street hath five or sixe shops which sell all kinde of Fleth: houses also for Poultry, and for Bacon, and hanged Beefe.

§. V.

Four Buildings incredibly admirable in Pequin, and diuers of their superstitions: their Hospitals and prouisions for the Poore. The King recurrennes and Courts; their Sects.

Nothing seemed to me more admirable, then the Prison, called *Xmanguibalon*, that is, the Prison of the exiled, whose compass containeth about two leagues square, as well in length as breadth, walled high and ditched deepe, with draw-bridges hanged on Iron cast pillars very great. It hath a high arch with two towers, whereon are six great watch-bells, at the found whereof the rest within answer, which are said to be one hundred. In this Prison are continually three hundred thousand men from sixteen to fiftie yeeres of age, all condemned to banishment, for the fabrike of the wall betwixt *Tartaria* and *China*; whom the King findes maintenance onely, without other pay. After they haue served fixe yeeres they may goe out freely, the King freely remitting their sentence in satisfaction of their labour. And if in the meane time, they kill an enemy, or haue bene thrice wounded in fallies, or performe any worthy exploit, he is also freed. There are two hundred and ten thousand employed in that seruice, of which yearly in those that dye, are maimed or fire, one third part is set off, and supplied from that Prison, which was builded by *Gusley* the successor of *Crimpaol*, the founder of the wall, brought thither from all parts of the Realme, and sent to the *Cham* of the wall at his appointment. These prisoners are sent from other prisons, being loose, save that they wear at their necke, a board of a spanne long and foure fingers broad, inscribed with their name, and sentence of exile, such a time. In this Prison are two Faires yearly, one of which we saw, kept in Iuly and Ianuarie, franke and free without payment of tolls; to which are thought to assemble three millions of persons: the Prisoners being meane-while shut up. The Prison hath three Townes, as it were, with streets and Officers, besides the *Chams* lodgings, fit to entertaine a King. There are also all necessaries sold. There are groves, and tanks of water for walking, Hospitals also and twelue Monasteries, with rich houses, wanting nothing that a rich and noble Citie should haue: the Prisoners having their Wiues and Children with them, the King allowing a competent house for them.

Another building about as great as that, was the *Musciparan*, or treasure of the Dead, compassed with a strong wall and ditch, with many stone Towers and painted pinacles: the wall on the top in feall obstermentes, was compassed with Iron grates, close to which were set great store of Idols of different figures, of Men, Serpents, Horres, Oxen, Elephants, Fishes, Snakes, monstrous formes of Wormes, and creatures neuer seene: all of Braffe and cast Iron, and some of Time, and Copper; a sight more admirable to the view, then can be imagined. Pulling by a bridge over the ditch, we came to a great Hill, at the first entrance all enuironed with thick grates of Latten, flocked with stones white and blacke, so shining that a man might see himselfe therein, as in a glasse. In the midit of that Hill stood a marble pillar of sixe and thirte spannes high, all seeming to be but one stone; on the top whereof stood an Idoll of silver with a womans face, with both hands griping a Serpent spotted with blacke and white. And further, before the gate (which stood betwixt two high towers, borne upon foure and twentie bigge stone pillars) stood two figures of men with Iron maces or battle Axes, in their hands, as guarding the passage, one hundred and fortie spannes high, with dreadfull countenances, called *Xupitan Xalcian*, that is, the *Blowers of the House of Smoke*. At the entrance of the gate, stood twelue Halberdiers, and two Notaries at a table, which writ downe all that en red. After we were entered, we came into a large street full on both sides with rich Arches, which infinite beds of Latten hanging thereon, by latten chaynes, by the moouing of the ayre yeelding a great sound. The street was almost halfe

1200. Rivers, 18000. Bridges, 1200. Markets places.

160. Shambles

Prison of the exiled, to the wall, almost eight leagues compass.

* Or 18. to 45.

Multitudes of Prisoners and men employed in the wall. * Before hee sayd 100000.

Huge Faires.

Another admirable Fabrike.

* Terrors, and so after.

Fire blowers

a league

Two H. of
the old sh.

China Char-
of Purgatory.

The Devil
hence sym-
pans in the
pendant Ser-
pents; then
which neither
figure nor
creature hath
become a bul-
let to sup-
pression is glo-
rying or that
his conquest,
Gen. 3. the
stronger they
he spoke out
by the brazen
Serpent, Job.
Bull taken the
old Serpent and
led captive the
captive and
brake the Ser-
pent's head,
which he re-
seems inter-
red with Fei-
nery-mite.

The third
Vierge Edi-
fice of Naca-
pura, the last
of China.
140. Monas-
teries.

Tartarian cru-
elty.

Nunns (sacred
to diuers Gods

The Porters of
Hell.

Isister or God
of Rayne.

* Entailed à
humboldt.

a league long, and within those arches were two ranks of houses, like as it were great Churches with gilted pinnacles, and painted inventions, in number as the *Chinois* affirmed three thousand. Bones, reaching to the routes of the houses, of the same length of halfe a league and very broad. We asked the *Chinois*, if any account were kept thereof, and they answered, that the *Talapo* which had the government of those houses, had registers for them all, and that every house yielded two thousand Tais rent, left thereto by the deceased for their souls discharge, the King having thereof the fourth part, and the *Talapo* the rest for expences of the Fabrick; the Kings fourth part was spent on the exiled Prisoners of *Xuanzangubalen*.

We walked thorow the street, and in the midst saw a great hill round encompassed, with two rows of Latten grates; in the midst whereof was a brazen Serpent, about thirte fathoms in her circles, well proportioned, notwithstanding that incredible massiveness. This monstrous Snake Buller of call Iron of two and thirte fathoms circumference. About twentie paces further, was hands another buller, which (yeing the Serpent with an angry visage) made as though he threw up to him as in admiration; and in four wyres of Iron enuironing, were one hundred and sixtie two fluer Candlesticks, each having fixe, seven, and ten noles. This Idoll gave name to the bones of the dead, and that Serpent coming to rob them, sayth the *Chinois*, the *Treasure of all* and have her flee to the darke bottom of the house of smoke, where God had call her for her badness: And that three thousand yeeres before he made the former throw, and that three fift which shall kill her: after which all these bones shall returne to their bodies, to remayne alway in the house of the Moone. This their *Bones* preach, and that those foules shall bee brought, whose bones are thicker brought, so that no day passeth in which two thousand bones not brought forth. And they which are too farre distant to haue their bones brought, send a Tooth or two, which with their almes will doe as much good as the whole: so that I suppose there are teeth enough in those houses to lade many ships.

A third building were saw without the walls, sumptuous and rich, named *Nacapur*, which signifieth, *The Queen of Heaven*; which they meant not of the Virgin *Mary*, but thinke that as temporal Kings are married, so also is the Heauenly, and that the Children which he getteth of *Nacapur*, are the *Starrs*; and when the Starrs seeme to shoute or fall in the ayre, that there with filled, and water the earth, and make it fruitful, as being the almes which God giues for the soule of the deceased. Wee saw heere one hundred and forty Monasteries, of their wicked Religious men and women; in eury of which, were layd to bee four hundred persons, which come to fixe and fiftie thousand; besides fratuours, which haue not yett receiued the profession, as those within, who goe in sacred habite of red with greene stoles, their beads and heads profuse, with beades about their neckes, for their prayers, but aske no almes, hauing fullness of their owne proper. In this Edifice of *Nacapur*, the *Tartarian* King lodged, Anno 1544, when hee layd siege to this Citie, as shall after bee declared; wherein for a diuillish and bloody Sacrifice, rather, the Daughters of the chiefe men of the Kingdome, and Religious, professed of the Sects of *Quay Fegran*, God of the *Mount of the Sunne*, and of *Quay Nuadel*, God of the *Battell*, and of *Companion*, and of foure others, *Quay Mago*, *Quay Mabele*, and *Mabele*, whole five Sects, are the chiefe of the two and thirte. Within this building were saw diuers memorable things. One was a Wall against the other, almost a league compasse, borne up with stone arches, and in stead of battlements, surrounded with Latten grates, and at eury fixe fathoms, Iron workes on pillars of Brasse fastened one to another, whereon by chaynes hung innumerable hells, making a continuall rattle noyse, with the motion of the ayre.

At the great Gate of this second wall, in terrible shap, stood the two Porters of Hell (as they call them) *Bacharon* and *Quayfau*, with Iron Maces in their hands, terrible to be looked on. Passing vnder an Iron chayne, fastened to the brefts of these Duels, we came into a faire long and wide, compulled with painted arches, on the top whereof were two ranks of Idolls that length, in which were about five thousand Images, we knew not of what matter, being all gilted, with Myrtens on their heads of diuers inventions. At the end of this street, was a great square Hill full with blacke and white shining stones, the whole square compulled with foure rows of Giants of metall, each of fiftene spanes, with Halberds in their hands, and gilted 60 beards. At the end of all stood *Quay Huian*, God of the *Raine*, feet vp against a battion or border, fiftene spanes long, and his head so high, that it reached to the battlements of the tower, (which were about twelue fathoms) by his mouth, eyes, nostrils, and brefts, issuing out water, which the people below gathered as a great relicke. This water came from the top of the tower

by secret pipes. Wee passed vnder his legges, which stood as a great portall, and came to a large house like a Church, with three lles on marble pillars, and on the walls on both sides, many Idols great and small of diuers figures, all gilted, set on their bases in good order. At the end of this house on a round of fiftene steps, stood an Altar made in fashion of a Throne, and thereon the Image of *Nacapur*, like a gooly woman, with her hayre loose, and her hands lifted to heauen, all of gold so burnished, that it dazzled the eyes. About that tribunal in the foure first steps, stood twelue Kings of *China* crowned in fluer. And beneath, were three rows of gilted Idols on their knees, with their hands lifted vp, many fluer Candle-sticks hanging about them. Going thence, we came to another third of arches like the former; and from thence by two others of rich buildings, to a great hill, in which were eightie two Bells of metall very great, hanging by chaynes from Iron beames fastened with Iron Columns. Thence we went to a strong Gate twice four towers, in which stood a *Chyfs* with thirte Halberdiers, and two *Noraries*, which tooke the names of all passengers, to whom wee gave thirte Reis for entrance.

The fourth remarkable and famous building, was in the Riuer of *Batampina*, in an Island about a league in compasse, walled round with stone eight and thirte spanes about water, within filled with earth, round encompassed with two rows of Latten grates; the vttermost fixe spanes high for people to leane on, the inner nine, holding fluer Lions with balls, the Armes of the *China* Kings. Within these grates in good order, were placed one hundred and thirte Chappels, in manner of round Bulwarks; in each of them, was an alabaster Sepulchre seated on the heads of two fluer Serpents, with faces of women and three hornes on their heads. In eury of them were thirte Candlesticks of fluer, with seven lights in each burning. In the midst of a spacious place compulled with three rows of grates, with two ranks of Idols, stood a high Tower with flue steps of diuers paintings, and on their tops, Lions of fluer; in which tower the *Chinois* layd, were the bones of the one hundred and thirte Kings, who were shipped by them for great reliques. These bones they carry eury New Moone full on with another, whereupon the vulgar at those times, offer to them infinite fowls of all forts, Rice, Kine, Hogges, Sugar, Honey, and other prouision; in which the Priests receive, and deceiue them in recompence, as with as it were libleles, of plenary Indulgences, and remission of finnes as they Indulgeth 30 beleue.

In this Tower wee saw a rich house all lined with fluer plates, from the top to the bottom, in which stood those one hundred and thirte Kings statues, and the bones of each King in his owne statue; and they say, that by night these Kings communicate and passe the time together, which none may see but the *Cabineros*, (a higher degree of *Boncos*, as that of *Cardinals* with vs) which fables they beleue very certainlie. In this great circuit wee told three hundred and forty Bells of metall and cast Iron, in fiftene places, by twentie in a place, which all found on those New-moone feasts about layd. Neere to that tower, in a rich Chappell built on feuen and thirte columns of stone, stood the Image of *Amida* made of fluer, with the hayres of gold, on a Throne of fourer with gilted wings, the hands leaued to Heauen. 40 beneath their shoulders, hung like lines of beades, many little Idols, as big as the middle finger; and the secret parts were couered with two great Oyfer-pearles, garnished with gold: They being demanded the meaning of this myterie, they say, that after the great Flood in which all mankind was drowned, God lent *Amida* from the Heauen of the Moone, (being great Chamberlaine to *Nacapur* his wife) to restore the destroyed world; who setting heere teete in *Caslemple* before mentioned, being lately freed of the waters, they turned it into gold, and there standing on her feet with her face in heauen, a great quantitie of Creatures issued from downe her arme; downe her right hand Males, and Females downe the left; hauing no other place in her bodie whence to bring them forth, as other women of the world, whom for sinne God hath subiected to filthinesse of corruption, to shew how filthy sinne is. After shee had finished 50 this trauell or child-birth of 33333. Creatures, (as they number) one third part Males, and two parts Females, shee remayned so weake, hauing no bodie to prouide her any thing, that with dizziness shee fell to the ground dead without recovery. Whereat the Moone in condoling her death couered her life with sorrow, which are those halberds we see from the earth; which say they, shall remaine so many yeeres as the produced Creatures (33333) & then the Moone shall put off her make of sorrow, and the night shall bee after as cleere as the day. Such and other like mad stuffe did they tell, which might make one wonder, and more to weepe, that the Deuill should gull them with such manifest lyes, being otherwise so vnderstanding a people.

From this Hill we went to another Temple of Nuns, sumptuous and rich, in which they told vs was the Mother of this King, *Nhay Camfama*, but would not let vs enter being strangers. Thence by a street of Arches, we went to a haue called *Hechiaro Tapien*, where was store of strange shipping of diuers Kingdomes, which come continually to that Temple for a plenary liblele, which the King with many priuileiges hath granted them, and dyet on free cost. To speake of other Temples and matters of *China*, which wee saw in our two monthes libertie were infinite.

The

The fourth
glorious Edi-
fice.

119. Chappels,
and their com-
mons
149. Can-
dles-ticks.

Rich fluer
Temple.

Lady *Amida* in
marble.

Amida Cham-
berlaine to Na-
capura, as is
to be seen in a
circle perhaps a
little below
Nunns, Geny.
15. so that
which fell
from Geny
316.

A Nunneite.

Ho pital for children.

How the poor children are placed to Trades.
Span. Amisio.

Provision for all sorts of poore.

Provision against sterility, and for the poore. See cap. 4. §. 6.

Royall revenue: how divided. The *tesaurial* is put up in the King's closet as pleasure dispense it.Not to compare *China* with what we see here. *Admiranda Pequini.*The number of Eunuchs perhaps is mistaken by the Printer: the Span. hath 10000. one cipher less. Yet *Pontius* Gilly, that wrote when he was, were chosen 3000. out of 10000. and in the Palace were 16000. Eunuchs.

The King of *China* most reideth at *Pequin*, for so he sweareth at his Coronation. There are certain streets leu'd in this Citie by themselves, wherein are houses called *Lag nampur*, that is, *The School of the poore*, in which Orphans which know no father are taught to write and read, and mechanic trades to earn their livings. Of these Houses they have about two hundred, and as many more of poore Nurses which give sucke to Children, they have about two hundred Parents (which are punished if they be knowne) and after they are weaned, are committed to the former houses. And if any by naturall defect are unable to learne a Trade, they apply to that whereof he is able, as those that are blind to Mills, two to grind, and one to sift; and but with imposing on them some of these poore. The Miller is to give meate and drinke to each of those blind persons, and clothes, and fifteen shillings yearly, which when hee dieth he may give for his soule, that no poore should perishe, according to the fourth precept of *Amida*. For Creeples which cannot goe, they place them with makers of Fraises, Baskets, and other handiworkes; and those which cannot vfe their hands have great Hampers giuen them, and Baskets to seru for Porters to carrie what men buy, from the Markets to their houses; such as haue neither hands nor feet to vfe, are placed in great houses like Monasteries, where are many mercenary women which pray for the dead, half of the Offerings remaying to them, the other halfe to the Priests. If they be dumbe, they place them in a house like an Hospital, where they are sustayned with the Fines imposed on Regretters and scolding women. For common women which are diseased they have other houses, where they are cured and provided for, at the costs of other common women, each paying a monthly fee. The Dowries or Ioynters of Solicitors and Lawyers which maintayne vniu'st Suits, and of partiall bribed Judges.

For the provision of the poore I have further heard read out of their Chronicles that *Cheng van Pungu*, Great Grandfather of the King now reigning, desiring to doe God service (being blinde after a sickness which he had) ordained that in every Citie there should be three hundred poore should not perishe: and to this purpose he applied the tenth part of the Kings Customs, and they say, that God recompensed this his charitie with restitution of his sight, which continued foureteen yeeres after till his death. This is all obserued, and the number of those Store-houses is said to be foureteen thousand. At Harstet the old is diuided to the Inhabitants as they haue need, which after two monthes are to lay in as much new, and fixe in the hundred more, gaine: and that which is giuen to the poore which haue not to latise, is paid out of the Kings Rents of that place, as the Kings Almes. And all the rest of the Royall revenues are diuided into three parts: one for maintenance of the Kings estate, and for the government of the Kingdom; the second for the defence of the Countrey, for Ports, Fleets, and the like; the third being deputed for defence of the Kingdome against the *Tatars*, and other warres with contiguous they say, that if such occasions happen, the *Chidampur*, that is, *The wall of the Kingdom*. For shall the people be vexed, as in other Countreies, where such prouidence is not vied.

I need I dare to particularize all that we saw in this Citie, left the Reader should doubt, matter at the raritie, measuring things by that little they haue leene, and judging by their owne curtailed conceits the truth of those things which mine eyes haue leene. But high capacities, haughtie spirits, and large vnderstandings, dar measure not other flates by the miferies and manneffe before their eyes, will perhaps be willing to heare things so rare; which I hold the more pardonable in others to doubt of, forasmuch as I verily confesse, that I my selfe which I hold held them with mine eyes, am often amazed, when with my little I recount the greatneesse of *Pequin*, in the admirable estate of that *Gensile King*, in the splendor of the *Chans* of Iustice, and of the *Anchary* of government, in the terror and dread caused in all by their Officers, in the famousnesse of the Houses and Temples of their Idols; and of all the rest therein. For only in the Citie *Minapan* which stands within the wall of the Kings Palace are 100000. Eunuchs, and 30000. women, 10000. men for his Guard, and 12. *Tatars*, which is the greatest dignitie, and commonly called the Sun-beames, as the King is called, the Sonne of the Sunne, whole prouities, as *Anchary*, *Ayars*, *Pondabys*, *Lauatans*, and *Chumbins*, all which in the Court are about 500. and none of them haue leffe then 300. men depending, the greater part of which are *Magores*, *Perfians*, *Carsagons*, *Monses*, *Calimachins*, *Tatars*, *Cauchins*, and some *Bramans*; the 63. are Naturals being little esteemed as effeminate, and wanting valour, how white loeue in Acts ad husbandrie. The women are white, chaste, more giuen to labour then the men.

The earth is fertile, which their ingratitude rather ascribes to the merit of their King, then the prouidence of God. Some Priests also barter with them upon Bills of exchange to be re-

payed an hundred for one in Heauen, which Letters they call *Cuchimicos*. Other Priests are of another Sect, called *Namfolsins*, which deny the Soules immortallitie, and therefore teach to take their pleasures in this life. Another Sect is called *Tromacas*, which holds, that a man shall so long lie in his Graue as hee hath lived above ground; after which, by the prayers of their Priests, the Soules shall returne into another creature fownd; and then seeke for the old bodie left in the Graue, to carrie it to the Heauen of the Moone, where it shall sleepe many yeeres, till it be conuerted into a Starre, and there remayne fixed for euer. Another beatly Sect, called *Gisem*, holds that Beasts orther shall enioy Heauen, in recompence of their penance and trauels here lastayned, and not Men which follow their lusts, except they leaue to Priests at their death, to pray for them.

§. VI.

Their remove to Quany, quarrells, miferies; Tartarian huge Armie, and losse as the siege of Pequin, reported. Quany taken, and Nixianco: MENEZ his exploit. Their entertainment by the Tartar King, and going to Cauchinchina with his Embassadors, with many Tartarian obseruations.

After we had two monthes and a halfe gone vp and downe in the Citie of *Pequin*, on Saturday the thirteenth of January, 1544. they carried vs to *Quany* to fulfill our Sentence, where we were brought before the *Chuen*, who made vs of his Guard of eightie Halburders allowed him by the King, which made vs thankfull to God, being a place of little labour and more maintenance and liberty. But after a month, the Deuill would linse betwixt two of our companie, which in reasoning about the Families of the *Maduregras*, and the *Fonfear*, whether were more eminent, grew to hate, thence to brauing words, and after to blowes and wounds, not only of those two, but by part takings of fust of the rest. The *Chuen* and *Anchary* sentenced vs to thirte blowes a man, which made vs more bloody then our wounds. Then they carried vs to a prison, where we lay in Irons fixe and forty dayes. After which we were brought to the Barre, and received other thirty stripes, and removed to another prison, where we stayed two monthes, then removed to certaine Iron-works fixe monthes, much pinched in backe and belly, and being diseased with a contagious sickness, they sent vs forth to begge, which wee did foure monthes. In this miserie wee sware to each other to lue Chritillianly and louingly, and that each month one should be chiefe, whom all the rest should obey, whereby wee after liued in peace.

Christoforus Borrallo the chiefe for that month, distributed vs by couples to take their times weekly to begge, two to fetch water, and make ready what we got, two roger wood. I and *Caluar* de *Mejreles* went one morning to the Wood, and *Mejreles* being Muscical played on his Viail, and sung: a thing pleasing to that people, which spend much time in pastime and banqueting, and profitable also in procuring almes. As we went, we met with a Funerall pompe with Musike in the midst: one of which Musicians knowing *Mejreles*, prayed him to play and sing as loud as he could, that this dead man were now carrie to buriall may heate thee, to comfort him in leauing his wife and children, whereto he was much affected. Hee modestly refusing, the other angrily answered, and others interceded, and almost forced him to goe with them to the burning Buriall after their cutome. I thus left alone, went and got my bundle of wood on my backe. In the way homeward I met in the way an old man, clothed in blacke Damask furred with white Lambe, who hauing shewed mee a filier Croffe, told mee, that he was a poore *Portingall*, *Vasco Caluo*, which leuen and twentie yeeres since was captiued with *Tome Peres*, whom *Lope Soares* had sent Embaddour to *China*, which had a miserable successe by reason of a *Portingall* Captaine. Hee brought mee to his house, and told mee the storie of his and his fellows adventures, and I ouis to him: and at his request I fetched the rest of our companie to his poore house. Hee brought vs to another room, where his wife was, with her two little sonnes, and two small daughters. Shee entreated vs louingly, and shewed vs her Closet with an Altar, and a Croffe thereon, fiercely kept: shee also and her children said a *Portingall* Prayer, with the *Fater noster*, *Credo*, and *Aue Maria*, to our great ioy.

Eight monthes being spent in this our miserie and beggerie, on Wednesday the thirteenth of Iuly, a great tumult and crie arose among the people, by reason or newes of the *Tartarian* King his coming to *Pequin*, with a greater power then euer any King had in the World; that there were in his Armie 180000. men, 60000. of which were Horse-men, which had come by Land from *Lacume*, and *Fanfist*, and *Meeny*, with 8000. Badais to carrie their prouision. Twelve hundred thousand Foot-men had come in fixteene thousand *Lautes* and *Iags* downe the *Batampina*. And because the King of *China* durst not resist to great a power, hee was sent

Sects in *China* *Cuchimicos*, *Namfolsins*, *Tromacas*.

Gisem.

Quany.

Portingall's quarrell.

Paritie a peace-breaker.

Muscical for the comfort of the dead.

Vasco Caluo. See the account page 53.

Newes of the Tartarian King, his coming to *Pequin*.Lopore. Tartarian foot-men downe the *Batampina*.

to *Nautico*. Moreover it was said that in the *Small of Mancataron*, a league and halfe off was lodged one *Nautico*, a *Tartarian* Capitaine with 70000. Horie, who within few hours would be at that Citie. This news much terrified vs, and the next morning the Enemy appeared with Colours quartered greene and white in seven battels, nere to a *Pagode* called *Petlan Nautico*, a little from the walls. From that *Pagode* they came with sound of Instruments of warre in one groſſe Squadron like a halfe Moone, and encircled the Citie: and being within Caliser shot, they made a shout as if Heauen and Earth would haue gone together, and scaling it with two thousand Ladders which they brought with them, assaulted it in all places they could very retolently, and at last brake into the gates by certaine deuices of great Iron Prefles, and flue the *Chacon* with many *Mandamers*, putting the Citieto the sword, facke, and fire; killing, as was thought, 60000. persons, and after stay of seven dayes there, went for *Pepan*, where their King was.

Two dayes after they were gone, they came to a Castle called *Nixiamco*, which he besieged, *Nautico* called the Iouenitie Capitaine to consultation, and agreed to make ready five hundred Ladders that night for the next dayes assault. The next day their *Palinguindans* (so they call their Martiall Instruments) sounded, and fourteen battalions marched, and gave assault with great cries, scaling the walls, and fighting furiouſly; the besieged also defending themselves courageously, and in two houres killing three thousand *Tartars*, the rest fleeing many wounded with poisoned Arrowes, whereof they died. A Count. II. of Warre was hereupon called, one of them being the man which had vs in custodie: who returning with two Captains of his acquaintance to stopper, in their discourse of that misfortune they caſt eyes vpon vs there prisoners, and questioned of what Nation we were, and whether our Kings vied to warre, and whether any of vs knew any Stratagem to get that Castle, promising our freedom if we could effect it. To which we answered accordingly, and *George Mendez* undertooke the designe against our kings fearing his disability, and our urther danger. One of these Captains told the *Mitague* (*Nautico*) hereof, who lent to *Tielemay* the Capitaine which had charge of vs, to bring vs to him. He gave vs a graue welcome (being now in counsell with the Iouenitie Coronels, two houres after midnight, and first made vs to cate, hauing taken off part of our Irons; and then made large promises to *George Mendez*, if he could doe as he had said; so which he answered, that he could assure nothing till he saw it, and then he would tell him the way to take it. We were removed to a Tent adioyning, and there guarded, full of feare lest this vndertaking would cost our liues with a People so cruell. The next day *George Mendez* and two others of our companie were carried with a band of Horie-men about the Castle to view it, and then brought to the *Mitague*, to whom he professeth great facilitie of effecting his purpose: which so contented him, that he swore by the Rice he ate to present vs to the King, and to fulfill his promises, presently taking off the remainder of our Irons. He made vs to cate nere him, and did vs other honour. After which, *George Mendez* as Camp-maſter appointed foure of Chifts, Boxes, and materials to fill vp the ditch, and three hundred long scaling Ladders able to hold each three Soldiers, against the next morning to be made ready two houres before day. All this was happily effected, the ditch filled, and *Mendez* with his two others of vs first scaled the wall, and let vp the *Tartars* Colours; five thousand *Tartars* gallantly ascending to that with a hoste skirmish the besieged were all flaine, and the Castle taken; the gates opened to the *Mitague*, who with great ceremonies tooke the threefold possession. He called *George Mendez*, and the rest of vs to cate nere him, razed the Castle, and taking *Mendez* with him on horse-backe returned to his Tent, giuing him 1000. Taets, and each of vs 100. the cause of much emulation in some of our companie, who by his means had obtained libertie. Thence the *Mitague* marched by places desolate, to a good Towne by the Rivers side, called *Lantimey*, the people whereof were led; the Towne these barbarians fired, as they did other places where they came. The next day they burned *Bomox*, a fowne held of about fixe leagues circuit, most Wheat; and came to the Hill *Pommitay*, and the next day to the Riuer *Palemecian*, within two leagues of the Kings Camp, 30 *Guicay Patan* Ioune of the Kings of *Perſia*, at the Castle of *Lantimey*, by the Kings appointment stayed for him; to whom *Mitague* on his knees deliuered his Scimitar, hauing first killed the ground five times. He welcomed him with honourable termes, and after that, stepping backe two or three paces with a new ceremony, and with a voyce high and seuer (as he which represented the Kings person) said, *He, whose rich border of his garments my mouth continually kisseth, whose great power ruleth over others by Land, and on the Iles of the Sea, sends to tell thee by mee his Slave, that thy honourable coming is as welcome to his presence as the first Summer morning, when in the bathing of cold water most delights the fish; and that without delay thou hastest to heare his voice, mounted on the Horse richly furnished out of his Treasury with me, that thou mayest be equal in honour with the principall of his Court, and they which see thee thou honored may know that thou art so strong member, whose valour deserves this reward.*

This with great state and pompe they went to the King: and fifteen dayes after he brought vs to the Tents of the King well horied, then in the sumptuous Houſe of *Nautico*. When he came to the Trenches, he descended from his Litter (wee from our Horie) and asked leave of

to *Nautico*. Moreover it was said that in the *Small of Mancataron*, a league and halfe off was lodged one *Nautico*, a *Tartarian* Capitaine with 70000. Horie, who within few hours would be at that Citie. This news much terrified vs, and the next morning the Enemy appeared with Colours quartered greene and white in seven battels, nere to a *Pagode* called *Petlan Nautico*, a little from the walls. From that *Pagode* they came with sound of Instruments of warre in one groſſe Squadron like a halfe Moone, and encircled the Citie: and being within Caliser shot, they made a shout as if Heauen and Earth would haue gone together, and scaling it with two thousand Ladders which they brought with them, assaulted it in all places they could very retolently, and at last brake into the gates by certaine deuices of great Iron Prefles, and flue the *Chacon* with many *Mandamers*, putting the Citieto the sword, facke, and fire; killing, as was thought, 60000. persons, and after stay of seven dayes there, went for *Pepan*, where their King was.

Two dayes after they were gone, they came to a Castle called *Nixiamco*, which he besieged, *Nautico* called the Iouenitie Capitaine to consultation, and agreed to make ready five hundred Ladders that night for the next dayes assault. The next day their *Palinguindans* (so they call their Martiall Instruments) sounded, and fourteen battalions marched, and gave assault with great cries, scaling the walls, and fighting furiouſly; the besieged also defending themselves courageously, and in two houres killing three thousand *Tartars*, the rest fleeing many wounded with poisoned Arrowes, whereof they died. A Count. II. of Warre was hereupon called, one of them being the man which had vs in custodie: who returning with two Captains of his acquaintance to stopper, in their discourse of that misfortune they caſt eyes vpon vs there prisoners, and questioned of what Nation we were, and whether our Kings vied to warre, and whether any of vs knew any Stratagem to get that Castle, promising our freedom if we could effect it. To which we answered accordingly, and *George Mendez* undertooke the designe against our kings fearing his disability, and our urther danger. One of these Captains told the *Mitague* (*Nautico*) hereof, who lent to *Tielemay* the Capitaine which had charge of vs, to bring vs to him. He gave vs a graue welcome (being now in counsell with the Iouenitie Coronels, two houres after midnight, and first made vs to cate, hauing taken off part of our Irons; and then made large promises to *George Mendez*, if he could doe as he had said; so which he answered, that he could assure nothing till he saw it, and then he would tell him the way to take it. We were removed to a Tent adioyning, and there guarded, full of feare lest this vndertaking would cost our liues with a People so cruell. The next day *George Mendez* and two others of our companie were carried with a band of Horie-men about the Castle to view it, and then brought to the *Mitague*, to whom he professeth great facilitie of effecting his purpose: which so contented him, that he swore by the Rice he ate to present vs to the King, and to fulfill his promises, presently taking off the remainder of our Irons. He made vs to cate nere him, and did vs other honour. After which, *George Mendez* as Camp-maſter appointed foure of Chifts, Boxes, and materials to fill vp the ditch, and three hundred long scaling Ladders able to hold each three Soldiers, against the next morning to be made ready two houres before day. All this was happily effected, the ditch filled, and *Mendez* with his two others of vs first scaled the wall, and let vp the *Tartars* Colours; five thousand *Tartars* gallantly ascending to that with a hoste skirmish the besieged were all flaine, and the Castle taken; the gates opened to the *Mitague*, who with great ceremonies tooke the threefold possession. He called *George Mendez*, and the rest of vs to cate nere him, razed the Castle, and taking *Mendez* with him on horse-backe returned to his Tent, giuing him 1000. Taets, and each of vs 100. the cause of much emulation in some of our companie, who by his means had obtained libertie. Thence the *Mitague* marched by places desolate, to a good Towne by the Rivers side, called *Lantimey*, the people whereof were led; the Towne these barbarians fired, as they did other places where they came. The next day they burned *Bomox*, a fowne held of about fixe leagues circuit, most Wheat; and came to the Hill *Pommitay*, and the next day to the Riuer *Palemecian*, within two leagues of the Kings Camp, 30 *Guicay Patan* Ioune of the Kings of *Perſia*, at the Castle of *Lantimey*, by the Kings appointment stayed for him; to whom *Mitague* on his knees deliuered his Scimitar, hauing first killed the ground five times. He welcomed him with honourable termes, and after that, stepping backe two or three paces with a new ceremony, and with a voyce high and seuer (as he which represented the Kings person) said, *He, whose rich border of his garments my mouth continually kisseth, whose great power ruleth over others by Land, and on the Iles of the Sea, sends to tell thee by mee his Slave, that thy honourable coming is as welcome to his presence as the first Summer morning, when in the bathing of cold water most delights the fish; and that without delay thou hastest to heare his voice, mounted on the Horse richly furnished out of his Treasury with me, that thou mayest be equal in honour with the principall of his Court, and they which see thee thou honored may know that thou art so strong member, whose valour deserves this reward.*

This with great state and pompe they went to the King: and fifteen dayes after he brought vs to the Tents of the King well horied, then in the sumptuous Houſe of *Nautico*. When he came to the Trenches, he descended from his Litter (wee from our Horie) and asked leave of

Nautico to enter, which granted, he againe went to his Litter, and we followed on foot: at the next passage he defended, and went in leauing vs to expect him. An hour after he returned with foure faire Boyes gallantly arrayed in greene and white, with their golden Xorcas on their feet, to whom all the people rose vp, and drawing their Scimitars laid them on the ground, saying three times, *A hundred thousand yeeres line the Lord of our heads.* Wee lying prostrate with our faces on the ground, one of the Boyes said vs with a loud voice, *Reioyce ye men of the Worlds end, for the hoore of your desire is come, in the which libertie which the Mitague promised you in the Castle of Nixiamco, shall bee granted you. Lift up your heads from the ground, and your hands to Heauen, giuing thanks to the Lord which made the Stars. Wee auerted as wee were taught, Let it bee our fortune that his foot tread on our heads: the Boy answered, The Lord grant your request.*

These foure Boyes with *Mitague* guided vs on through a Gallerie hanging on fixe and twentie Pillars of Brasse, from which wee entered a great Hall of timber, in which stood *Agmages*, *Perſians*, *Berdis*, *Calamihans*, and *Bramas*: thence wee came to another Hall, called *Tigubpan*, where were great flocks of armed men in fure files quite thorow the Hall, their Swords grained with Gold. There *Mitague* performed some ceremony, swearing on the Maces which the foure Boyes carried, kneeling and kissing the ground three times. Then we passed another gate, and came to a square great Hall like the Cloister of a Monastrie, in which stood foure files of brazen Images like Swages with Maces and Crownes, seu n and twentie spannes high, and sixe broad, which the *Tartars* laid were the three hundred and sixty Gods which made the dayes of the yeere; which the *Tartar* King had taken out of a Temple, called *Angicamoy*, in the Citie *Xipatan*, in a Chappell of the Sepulchres of the Kings of *China*, to carrie home in triumph. In this Hill was a Garden of strange herbs and flowers, and therein a Tent vpon twelue turned posts of Camphire wood, in which was a Throne all garnished with much curioſitie of Gold and Silver workes, representing very lustily the Sunne, Moone, Stars, Cloudes. In the midst of the Throne stood a flurt great Statue, called *Abscamianlan*, that is, *God of the health of Kings*, (taken also from *Angicamoy*) about which stood foure and thre e Idols as big as children, about fixe yeeres old, in two ranks set on their knees and hands lifted vp as in veneration. At the entrie of the Tent were foure Boyes gorgeously arrayed which went about it with Censers, and at the fount of a Bell prostrated themselves on the ground, and censuring, said, *Let our eyes come unto thee as a sweet fauour that thou mayest heare vs.* That Tent was guarded by sixte Halbarbers, flanking a pretie distance from it round about. Beyond that Hill wee entered another place, where were foure rich rooms, in which were many great persons.

Thence we followed *Mitague* and the Boyes vnto a great Hall like a Church, where stood fixe Porters with Maces, which with new ceremony let vs in. Here was the King of *Tartars*, accompanied with his *Grades*, among which were the Kings of *Pafus*, *Macey*, *Caspimer*, *Raua*, *Bromo*, and the *Abbasofactay*, and other Kings to the number of fourteen, all in rich attire, placid at the foot of the Throne, two or three paces distant, and a little further off stood two and thirtie faire women, playing on diuers Instruments. The King fate on the Throne, accompanied with twelve Boyes on their knees, with small Scepters of gold on their shoulders; amongst which was a faire Damell which eue and anone fanned the King. Thir was the sister of *Mitague*, who by her meanes enioyed that grace and respect in the Court. The King was about fortie yeeres old, tall, not fleshy, well set; his beard short with Mochaſocks like the *Turks* his eyes somewhat small, his countenance seuer; clothed in a shining reddish vesture set with Pearles; on his feet certaine Slippers greene wrought with Gold and Pearles; and on his head a kind of Sallet with a border of Diamonds and Rubies. Before we came at him by ten or twelue paces, we made our courtesie, three times kissing the ground, with other ceremonies which wee were taught. The King commanded the Musike to cease, and bid *Mitague* aske this Nation of the end of the world, if they haue a King, and how their Land is called, and how farre it is from

China. One of vs answered for the rest, that our Land was called *Portugall*, our King was great and mightie, and from thence to *Pepan* was about three yeeres Voyage; wherat he much marvelled, as not thinking the World to be so great; and asking on his thigh laid aloud with eyes to *Suaen*, O Creator of all things, which of our people *Pitimes* on the Earth may be able to comprehend the marvels of thy greatness? And giuing with his hand he made vs come nearer to the steps of the Throne where the fourteen Kings were placed, and demanded vs againe, how farre it was when we said, three yeeres; he asked, why we came rather by Sea then by Land? wee answered, that the diuersion of States and Kings in the way hindered. He asked, What doe you seeke with so farre trauels and great troubles? wee gaue as good reason as we could; wherat he thanking his head, laid to the King of *Benar*. An old man, that it seemed that our Country had much Couetouſſie, and little Iustitie; so, said the other, it appears; for those men which flie on the top of all waters, by wit and industrie to get that which God hath not given them, either pouerty forceth to forsake their Country, or wantie and blindefſe caused by couetouſſie, makes them forget God and their Fathers. After this, the women began againe to play, and the King retired him self into a house alone with his women which played, and the Damell

State of the
Tartarian
Campe and
Tent. &c.

The Guards.

Xipatan.

Curious
Throne.

The Tartar
King.
His State.

His person.

that fanned. One of the twelve Scepter-boys told *Mitaker* from his Sister, that the King commanded he should not go away, which he tooke for a great grace, and we returned to our Tents.

Tartars off-
Cavalitation.

Fortie and three dayes after we came to the Campe Royall (in which place were many fights betwixt the besiegers and besieged, two assaults by icling with the *Tartars* losse) the *Tartarians* called a Council, where were assembled seven and twentie Kings, and many great men and Captaines, which agreed that seeing Winter was now coming, and the waters of both Rivers had risen and filled the Trenches, and many were sicke (four or five thousand dying daily) that it was best to raise the siege. The King therefore embarked the Foot-men with the munitions, fired the Tents, and went away with 30000. Horse by land, and 30000. *Badas*, 45000. men to the sea.

Si ge of Pe-
quin breaks
up.

Badas, for want of provisions the two last months and a halfe of this Siege (which endured sixe months and a halfe). Besides, 30000. had runne to the *Chinois*, women by their great pay. Hee lodged the first night of his departure at a River called *Quayraguon*; the next day he came to *Guximpe*, which hee found wholly forsaken; thence to *Lianpen*, and after fifteen dayes (eight leagues a day) he came to *Guximtim*, and forced it, committing therewith great slaughter, to provide his Armie of necessaries by the spoyle thereof. The next day hee came to *Guxidol*, which hee medd not with being great and strong, having therein 5000. men, of which 10000. were *Mogwes*, *Cachims*, and *Chempas*, better Souldiers then the *Chinois*.

The King re-
turne into Tar-
taria.

Lefime.

Thence hee passed to the walls of *Singachiron*, and the next day to *Xipator*, and then sent away most of his Souldiers, spending seven dayes in the pay, and execution of Justice on Prisoners. Laules, in which were some ten or twelve thousand men) where five dayes after hee arrived in the night without any pompe.

Tymican.

There hee stayed fixe and twentie dayes, till all his companie were come both of horse and foot, after which hee went to a greater Citie called *Tymican*, where he was personally visited by confining Princes and Ambassadors from remoter Kings, *Xatamas* of *Perfia*, *Siamon* Emperour of the *Gueor*, which within the Countrey confine with *Bramas* of *Tangu*, the *Calamucha* Lord of the brute force of Elephants, the *Sornau* of *Odiaa*, (intituled King of *Siam*) whose Segniorie comprehendeth seven hundred leagues of coast, from *Tauanagaym* to *Chempas*, containing fifteen Kingdomes; the King of the *Mogwes* whose Kingdome lies within land, betwixt *Cortacan* neere *Perfia*, and the Kingdome of *Dely* and *Chitor*, and an Emperour called *Caran*, whose Segniorie consisteth within the Mountaines of *Gentilard*, with a Nation which the Naturals call *Chofody*, of whom we saw some in this Citie, ruddie, of bigge stature, with shooes, and furred cloathes, and much given to vnmaturall lust.

The Mayor is
now much al-
tered, & since
thirtie time Lord
of India.

Caus.

Hee brought with him one hundred and twentie men of his guard, with Arrows and gilded quivers, all cloathed in *Siamos* skinned horses and greene; and twelve Porters on horribacke with Maces of Silver, leading twelve Horles in their right hands with rich embroidered Furnitures. After whom followed twelve men of high 40 and Giant-like stature, clothed Sauge-like in Tygers skinned, leading great Grey-hounds in chaynes and collers of Silver, muzzled. Then came twelve Boyes, faire and well proportioned of equal stature in gallant array, & next them *Leixagun* the Ambassador himselfe, in a Charriot (they call it a *Pirange*) with three wheeles on a side, garnished with Silver and a Chayre of the same, attended with fourte Foot-men in murre and greene, yekling a goodly fight, all things manifest the greatnesse of his Lord. We were one day in his lodging with *Mitaker*, who was sent to visit him, where amongst other strange things, we saw five roomes hanged with Tapestry of Frogs very rich, like that vied amongst vs, as if had come from one place; the Canopies, Silver-caldes, Furniture and State, all rich. This Ambassadors came not only to welcome home the *Tartar*, but to treat also of a Marriage for his Lord, with one of the *Tartar* Si-30 sons, named *Alecia* *Udun*, a woman of thirtie yeeres, very charitable to the poore, whom we have often seene in their Festiual dayes.

A Marriage
treated on be-
tween the *Caran*
and
Tartar.

They depart
from Tartaria.

Unguer.

An Unversitie.

Fuancim.

Guns of wood.

Mitaker at our request mentioned vs to the King, who sayd, he would fend vs with his Ambassador (shortly to *Canchenchina*; and caused vs to be brought againe to his presence with great ceremony of State and Maistie as before at *Pequim*, where hee questioned vs, if we would seeke him, which we excused saying, we had Wives and Children in our owne Countrey; and asking *George Mendez*, hee accepted. Eight of vs were commended to the Ambassador which was to goe to *Puangue* in *Canchenchina*; & we went in the same Barke. We set forth from *Tymican* the ninth of May, and came to a Schoole or Vniuersitie called *Quatpanmor*, where we lodged in a Temple (or Monastrie) called *Napagim*. Next morning we followed our voyage downe the 60 River, and two houres within night came to *Pucunguim*, a small Citie, well fortified with Towers and Bulwarks after our fashion, with store of Artillerie of Iron, like the Pumps of ships, the stocks where the Barrells were fastned being plated with Iron, and carrying a bullet as bigge as a Falcon: which invention they say, they receiued of a people called *Altamais*, of a land named

named *Mufcoo*, which by a great and deepe lake of salt water, came thither with nine Barkes of oates, in companie of a Lady, which was layd to bee exiled out of her Countrey by a King of *Denmarke*. The next day we came to *Linwan*, and five dayes after we continuing our course downe the River, came to *Singafant*, a huge Temple, more then a league in compass; in which place were built one hundred and sixtie four large and long houles full of Skuls, the other bones lying without in great piles. On a Hill compassed with nine gates of Iron, was standing against a strong stone wall, a monstrous statue of Iron thirtie braces high, and six broad, in both his hands holding a bullet fixe and thirtie fathoms about, of call from alio. (This to wound the Serpent which came to robbe them) himselfe being here which should one day restore the flesh to them which came to robbe them) himselfe otherwise to the most vaine and putrid; in his name *Pacina-rau Dubuculom Pinafagay*, who 70000. yeeres agoe, was borne of a *Tartyle* named *Migara*, and of a Sea-burgh one hundred and thirtie braces long, named *Theromocan*. The Ambassadors told vs, that of his Confraternities, there arose to him of annuall rents about 200000. Taies, and as much more of the Sepulchers of the Nobles, which were by themselves; that they belonged to him twelve thousand Priests preying on him, and praying for the dead, who might not without their superiours licence depart out of that Circuit. These Priests once a yeare may delife themselves in fornication within that Circuit; without, as oft as they will, without finne, the *Chijangnes* permitting egress. There are many women also enclosed, who by their *Libangis* or *Prioresse* leave, permit themselves to those Priests.

Monkes and
Nuns, ch. fit
in the Vleuels
name.

The second day after, we came to a great Citie on the River side called *Quanginan*, where the Ambassadors stayed three dayes for provision, and by reason of a Feast at the entrance of *Tat-poor* of *Lechum*, who is there as a Pope: who had prouided these inhabitants to be all Priest, authorized to Sacrifice and give Bills of exchange for money to be repayed in Heauen. He gaue the Ambassadors grace to legation in his Countrey for money, and to give tyres of Honor; which hee recompensed, giving to the Priests all that hee could make, two thousand Taies each; the King had given vs, for which hee gaue vs fiftene in the hundred. Four dayes were passed downe the River to *Lechum*, the mother Citie of that false Religion of *Gentilisie*, as *Reme* is with vs, wherein is a sumptuous Temple, in which are seven and twentie *Tartar* Emperours buried in rich Chappels lyled with Silver, hauing abundance of silver Idols. On the North-side a little from the Temple, was a notable strong great wall, within which were built two thousand and eightie Monasteries, of men and women; in which were sayd to bee two and fortie thousand religious professed, besides frutitors. In those Houles are many Brazen pillars with Idols of their Saints thereon, so much more gilded as esteemed. In one of them was the Kings Sister a widow, which had bene wife of *Raisa Benan*, Prince of *Pafus*, after whose death shee entered Religion with sixe thousand women. The Ambassador visited her, and killed her foot as a Saint.

Quanginan.

A Gentile Pope

Lechum.

Idols.

Departing thence downe the River five dayes, we came to a great Citie called *Rendacale*, in the confines of *Tartaria*. And thence forwards led the Segniorie of *Ximelagay*, thorow which were trauelled four dayes, and then came to a Towne called *Pinkim*, where the Ambassadors were well receiued, and prouided of Pyllors for those Rivers; which were detained fifteen dayes without seeing any thing of note, and then came to a straight call *Quatagur*, into which the Pyllors entered to escape a Pyrat, which had spoyled the most part of the Countrey.

Rendacale.

Ximelagay.

This we came to the Lake *Singapamor*, called by the *Naturals* *Cumchete*, and layd to containe fixe and thirtie leagues in Circuit. Four Rivers runne thence, *Pentran* Eastward thorow *Siam*, entering the Sea by the barre of *Chiatul*, in twentie fixe degrees; *Jangnam* Southwards by the *Laos* and *Gues*, and part of *Dibamba* enter the Sea at *Martuan*, in the Kingdome of *Pegu*; *Pumfien* runnes thorow all *Capimor* and *Sacotay*, and all the Empire of *Mungincoo*, with part of *Melagay* and *Senady*, and so to the barre of *Cymin*, neere *Aracan*. Of the fourth River the Ambassadors could geue vs no intellusions, but some thought it to bee *Ganges*. In seven dayes more, we came to a place called *Alapute*, where they threw stons at vs, and would not suffer vs to land. Thence we layd by another larger River nine dayes, and came to *Tarem* a good Towne, situate to the *Causchun*, where we were well receiued: and in seven dayes more came to a good Citie called *Xolor*. There were silver mines in which one thousand men were at worke, whence they layd was yearly taken fixe thousand Pikes, which makes eight thousand Captals of ours. Thence we went other five dayes by that great River, the Countrey being well peopled, and came to the Citie *Managuelan* at the foot of the Hills *Combar* in the borders of *China*, and *Canchim*; thence to *Tinamagay*. Thence they sent their four Barkes to *Huamagite*, the chiefe Citie of *Canchim*, and went by Land to *Fanagimor*, where the King was.

Singapamor.

Lake, in Can-
chete.

Pentran.

Jangnam.

Pumfien.

Capimor.

Sacotay.

Melagay.

Senady.

Cymin.

Aracan.

Combar.

Huamagite.

Their entertainment there and iourney thence to Iapan, I omit, with their following long Pilgrimage in that Easterne world; wherein I am afraid to wander in places and affayres so vncouth. We are already of things so strange, and therefore uncertaine, I will passe to other Authors; and first to the Philippina and Spanish Commerce of China. The Voyage of Legaspi is taken out of a Latine Manuscript, the rest out of Mendoza, but Spanish discourse of China, and certaine Frays which went thither; the two Letters except, borrowed of an Italian Author.

CHAP. III.

Spanish plantation of the Philippinas, and what intercourse hath thence
baped betwixt them and the Chinois.

§. I.

First *discovery of the Philippinas*: written by Frier IVAN
GONZALES DE MENDOZA.

Magillanes
straights.



Magillanes, was the first that discovered these Ilands, having passed the straight
(which vnto this day beareth the tytle of his name) and came vnto the Iland of
Zebu, whereas they did Baptize certayne of the Inhabitantes, and afterwards in
a banquet, the same Ilanders did kill him, and other sortie of his companions,
which was the occasion that *Sebastian de Guevara*, a naturall *Bisken* borne, for to
escape with his life, did put himselfe in a ship that remayned of the voyage
(which afterwards was named the *Victorie*) and in her, with a few people of the
with the fauour of God hee came vnto *Sinail*, hauing compassed the whole world, from the O.
vnto the *Ponent*, a thing which could vnto all men great admiration, but in particular
vnto the Emperour (*Charles* the sixt of famous memorie, who after he had giuen many gifts and fa-
uours vnto the sayd *Sebastian de Guevara*, he gaue order that a new Armie should be made re-
de, and to returne againe in demand of the sayd Ilands, and to discover that new world.

The second
Voyage.

Villa Lobos.

So when all things were in a readinesse, for to depart on their Voyage (the which was
with great breuitie) they ordeined for Generall of all that flecte, one *Villa Lobos*, commanding
him to goe by the *Nueva Espana*. The *Villa Lobos*, arrived at the Ilands of *Maluco*, and at
those of *Terrenate*, and at other Ilands, joyning vnto them, the which Ilands were layd to goe
by the aforesayd Emperour vnto the Crowne of *Portugall*. In these Ilands they had great waies
by means of the *Portugals*, and seeing themselves with little helpe and small resistance, for to
goe forwards with their conquest, they left it off, and went to the most part of them with the
aforesayd *Portugals*, vnto the *India of Portugall*, from whence afterwards, they sent them as
prisoners vnto the sayd King of *Portugall*, as offenders, that had entred his Ilands without his
licence: who did not only leaue to doe them any harme, but did interate them very well, and
sent them vnto their owne Countrey of *Spain*, and gaue them all things necessarie for their iour-
ney, and that in abundance.

Then certayne yeeres after, *Don Philip* King of *Spain*, being very willing that the discou-
ering should goe forwards, which the Emperour his father had so earnestly procured, sent and
commanded *Don Luis de Velasco*, who was his Vice-roy of the *Nueva Espana*, that hee would
ordayne an armie, and people for to returne and discover the sayd Ilands, and to send in the sayd
flecte for Governance, of all that should be discovered. *Miguel Lopez de Legaspi*, who accom-
plish all that his Maiestie had commanded, and made the discouerie thereof, as followeth;
to be declared.

When the *Spaniards* came vnto them, they were without Lord or head, or any other to whom
they should shew dutie, but hee which had most power and people, did most command: so that
this (and that there were so many of equal power) was the occasion that ciuill waies continu-
ed, without any respect of nature, kindred, or any other dutie, but like vnto brute Beasts, kil-
ling, spoiling, and captiuing one another, the which was a great helpe vnto the *Spaniards*, for to
subiect that Countrey with so great ease vnto the King, and called them the *Spaniards*, in re-
spect of his name. They did vsf amongst them, to make Captiues and Slaues, such as they did
take in vnlawfull waies, and for trusting matters, the which God did remedie, by the going
either of the *Spaniards*: for you should haue a man with fortie or fiftie friends in his compa-
ny, or seruants, that vpon a sodaine, would goe and set vpon a small Village of poore people and vin-
dread, and take and binde them all, and carrie them away for Slaues, without any occasion or
And if it so chanced, that one did lend vnto another, a basket or two of Rice (the which might
bee worth a Ryall of plate) with condition, to returne it againe within ten dayes: if the debtor
did not pay it the same day, the next day following hee should pay it double, and afterward to
double it euery day, so long as hee did keepe it, which in conclusion, would grow to bee so great,
that to pay the same, hee was forced to vndell himselfe for Captiue and Slaue.

But vnto all such as were captiued in this order, or in such like, the King of *Spain* hath com-
manded to geue libertie, yet this iust commandment is not in euery point fulfilled and accom-
plished, because such as should execute the same, haue intert therein. All these Ilands were
Geniiles and *Idolaters*, but now there is amongst them many thousands Baptized, vnto whom the

King

King hath shewed great mercie, in sending vnto them the remedie for their soules in so good
time: for if the *Spaniards* had stayed any more yeeres, they had bene all *Moors* at this day,
for that there were come vnto the Iland of *Burne*, some of that Sect that did teach them, and
lacked little, for to worship that false Prophet *Mahomet*, whole false, peruerse and corrupt me-
mory, was with the Gospel of Christ easily rooted out.

In all these Ilands they did worship the Sunne and Moone, and other second causes, figures of
men and women, which are called in their Language *Maginates*, at whole Feasts (which they
doe make very sumptuous, with great Ceremonies and Superstition) they doe call *Magadmas*.
But amongst them all, they haue in most veneration an Idoll, whom they called *Batala*,
10 which reuerence they had for a Tradition, yet can they not say what should be the occasion that
he should deserve more then any of the therse, to be had in so great estimation. In certayne Ilands
not farre off, called the *Iloos*, they did worship the Deuill, and made vnto him many Sacrifices,
in recompence of a great quantitie of Gold hee had giuen vnto them, but now by the goodnesse
of God, and the great diligence put and done by the Fathers of the Order of Saint *Augustin* (who
were the first that passed into those parts, and liued worthily) and also by the Friers of Saint
Francis, which went thither ten yeeres after, all these Ilands or the most part of them are bap-
tized, and vnder the Ensigne of Iesus Christ: and the rest which doe remayne and are not, is more
for lacke of Ministers and Preachers, then for any obnitiue of their parts. There is now gone
thither certayne Fathers of the Order called Iesuits, who will be a helpe vnto them with their
accustomed zeale and labour. And now goeth thither many other Religious men, very well learn-
ed and Apollitike, of the Order of Saint *Dominique*, who will doe their endeavour to conuert
them vnto Christ, as it behooueth Christians to doe.

The Deuill was
worshipped.

They of these Ilands were accustomed to celerate their Feasts aforesaid, and to make Sacrifi-
ces vnto their Idols, by the order of certayne women which were Witches, whom they doe
call in their Language *Huigas*, that were had in as great estimation amongst them, as be the Priests
amongst *Christians*. The Idols did ordinarily with the Deuill, and many times in publicke, and
doe Deuillish Witch-crafts both in wordes and deedes: into whom it is to bee beleued that
they demanded of them, although for the most part they would tell a Lye, or else such words that
might be giuen diuers interpretations of, and of diuers vnderstandings. They did also vse to cast
Lots, they were great *Agorismers*, or obseruers of times: in so much that if they beginne any
Journey, and at the beginning they meete with a *Cayman* or Lizard, or any other fawse Worme,
they know it to be a signe of euill fortune, whereupon they would straight-ways leaue off
their Journey, although it did import them very much, and returne vnto their Houses, saying,
that the Heauen will not that they should goe forward on that Journey: but all these lyes and
fallensse haue bene taught them, and they perswaded to by the Deuill, are ouerthrowne and
taken away by the Law of the Gospel (as aforesaid) and haue now amongst them many Mona-
sties full of Religious men, of the Order of Saint *Augustin*, Saint *Francis*, and of Iesuits. Ac-
cording vnto the common opinion, at this day there is conuered and baptized more then foure
40 hundred thousand soules, which is a great number: yet in respect of the quantitie that are not yet
conuered, there are but a few. It is left vndone (as aforesaid) for want of Ministers, for
that, although his Maiestie doth ordinarily send thither, without any respect of the great charge
in doing the same, yet by reason that there are so many Iland, and euery day they doe discou-
er more and more, and being so farre off, they cannot come vnto them all, as is necessarie requir-
eth. Such as are baptized doe receiue the faith with great firmnesse, and are good *Christians*,
and would be better, if that they were holpen with good examples: as those which haue bene
there so long time are bound to doe: that the lacke thereof doth cause some of the Inhabitants
so much to abhorre them, that they would not see them once painted vpon a wall. For proofe
whereof (and for to moue such as haue power and authoritie to put remedie in the same, I will
declare vnto you here a strange case, the which royally did passe of a truth in one of these Ilands,

Witches.

50 and is very well knowne amongst them: that is, there chanced to dye an Ilander, a principall
man amongst them: a few dayes after that he was baptized, being very contrite for his finnes,
the which hee had done against God before he was baptized, and after hee dyed. So after by the
Dunne permission of God he appeared vnto many of that Iland whom hee did perswade forth-
with to receiue the Baptisme, with reasons of great efficacy, and declared vnto them (as one
that had experienced the same) the reward of that good deede which without all doubt should
bee giuen vnto them, if they would receiue the same, and liue after conformable, and according
vnto the Commandements of Christ, for the which hee told them, and said, that forthwith
soe as he was dead, he was carried by the Angels into glory, there where all things were of
delight, pleasure, and content, and did communicate onely in the sight of God, and that there
60 was none that entred therein, neither could enter, except he were baptized, according vnto
the preaching of the *Spaniards*, of whom and of others that were like vnto them, there was an in-
finite number. Therefore, if so be that they would goe and enioy of those benefites and delights,
it is necessary that first they should be baptized, and afterwards to obserue and keepe the Com-
man-

Spaniards showed
in the *Indisposi-*
tion.

Spaniards report
of a Vision.

The Indians would not go into Heaven because there were Spanish Soldiers.

mandements that be preached vnto them by the Fathers, that are amongst the *Castillas*, and whereby they had learned, and was the occasion that some of them forthwith received the Baptisme, and that others did delay it, saying, that because there were *Spaniards* Soldiers in glorie, they would not goe thither, because they would not be in their company. All this hurt is done by one peruerse or impious man, and with one euill example, the which amongst many good, as you haue in those parts: but especial amongst them in particular, it ought to be reprehended and punished feuerly with rigour.

Citrus.
Honey.
Cinnamon.
Lined Oyle.

These Islands at the first discovery of them, had the fame to be *Mal Sauer*, or vnholefome, but since experience hath shewed and proued it to the contrary: It is a Countrey marvellously fertile, and yeldeth very much Rice, Wheate, Dates, Hennes, Deere, Buffes, Kine, and great store of Hogges, whose flesh is so fauourie as the Mutton they haue in *Spain*: there be also many Cats that yeld Citrus, great store of fruits which be very good and fauourie: great abundance of Honey, and Fish, and all sold at so small a price, that almost it is sold for nothing. Also there is great store of Cinnamon, but no Oyle of Oliues, but that which is carried thither out of the *Newe Espania*: they haue much Oyle of *Almonds*, and of *Flaxe-seed*, the which they doe spend ordinarily in that Countrey, so that the Oyle of Oliues is not mislaid with them.

There is great store of Cloues, Saffron, Pepper, Nutmegs, and many other Drugges: great store of Cotton and Silke of all colours, the which is brought vnto them by Merchants of *China*, every yeare a great quantitie from whence cometh more then twentie ships laden with pieces of Silkes of all colours, and with Earthen Vessell, Powder, Salt-peter, Iron, Steele, and much Quick-silver, Brasse, Copper, Wheate, Flowers, Walnuts, Biskets, Dates, Linnen Cloth, Counting Chests very gallantly wrought, Calls of Net-work, *Buratto*, *Eschmalts*, Balons and Ewres, made of Tinne, Parchment Lace, Silke Fringe, and also of Gold, the which is faine and twisted after a fashion neuer seene in all Christendome, and many other things of great curiositie, and all this aforesaid is sold very good cheape. Likewise such things as the Islands doe yeeld, are sold very good cheape, for you shall haue foure Rones of Wine, which cometh of the Palmtree for foure Rials of Plate (the which for lacke of that made of Grapes is very good) twelue Hanges of Rice for eight Rials of Plate, three Hens for one Riall, a whole Hogge for eighreen Rials, a whole Buffe for foure Rials, a Deere for two Rials, and yet it must bee both great and good, foure Rones of Sugar for sixe Rials, and the like.

2. II.

First Plantation of the Philippinas, by MICHAEL LOPEZ DE LEGASPI.

* This I translated out of a Manuscript Latin which I found with M. Riquelme.

Nativity Port.
Isla de los Reyes.

Isla de los Reyes.

Michael Lopez de Legaspi, General of the Spanish Armada, on Tuesday the one and twentieth of November, Anno Dom. 1565, let forth of the Haven of Natuticie in New Spain, and sailed betwixt the South and the West, and after Westward, till he came in nine degrees; in that height seeking the Islands of Los Reyes, thence to make for the Philippinas. After eight dayes, the ship called Saint Luke was mysing, the Captaine whereof was *Alfonso de Arellano*, suspected to haue maliciously with-drawne himselfe. The Fleet continuing their course in nine and ten degrees after fittie dayes had sight of an Island of Fishermen and many other small Islands not inhabited, which they passed by. It was agreed that they should heighten their course to thirteenth degrees, in which way they came on Monday the seventeenth of January, 1566. to one of the Islands of Theeues, and lying toward it, fixe miles off, fiftie or sixtie *Paras* (swift sailing Barks with eight or ten men quite naked met them and invited them to their Habitations, where at night they anchored. The next morning, fixe hundred of their *Paras* came about them with victuals to sell, Rice, Honey, Sugar-canes, Plantans, Fruits of diuers kinds, and Ginger whereof there groweth great store naturally. Their principall desire in barter was Iron Nails, giving a large sacke of Rice for a Naley; their sackes deceitfully filled with grauell and chaffe, with Rice in the top. These people are well proportioned and strong. They fought with the *Spaniards* which were watering, and in the time of fight would be trucking with the ships, as fenible of their danger. A Manner which stayd behind was flaine, whose death they reuenged with many of the Saueages slain in the night, one of them being taken and sent into New Spain. Their name fits their Theeuish disposition.

The Philippinas called also the Islands of the Poncet or West.
Isla de Sibuyan.

Eleuen dayes after the fleet renewed their Voyage, and course in thirteenth degrees eleuen dayes longer, and then had sight of the Philippinas, hauing sailed from the Port of Natuticie eight thousand miles. They anchored in a faire Bay called *Baya de Sibuyan*, and there rode three dayes; whilst two Boats went to discouer, one to the North, the other Southward.

A Gentleman of one of them was slaine by an *Indian*, rashly leaping on shoare. These *Indians* haue Iron Lances, with a head or tongue a handfull and halfe long. They haue also shields, Bowes and Arrowes. In making peace each man takes two or three drops of bloud of his arme or breist and mixe both in some Vessell together, which is drunke with Wine and Water. Many *Paras* came to the *Spaniards* with a white flag in the Prow, in token of peace, and the Admiral erected the like in her Poop to signify their leaue to enter. These *Indians* are clothed, but bare-foot. The *Spaniards* demanded prouision, which the other promised, but gave only to the Captaine a sucking Pigge and an Egge. These people are very timorous, perfidious, and therefore suspicious. The Islands beare Hogges, Goats, Hennes, Rice, Millet, Potatoes, Pome-citrons, 10. Frisoles, Cocos, Plantans, and many sorts of Fruits. They weare Bracelets, and Earrings, and Gold Chaines, and whitherouer the Fleet went, was shew of Gold in the Land, whereof Gold they digge but for necessary vyes: the Land is their Money bagge.

The Fleet departed hence, and two dayes after came to the Port of the Ile *Tandain*, where a *Tandain* small Riuer enters; y^e which they went in Boats, and came to a Towne called *Carmen*. There they were well entertained, and had victuals for them: which whilst they were eating an *Indian* spake some Spanish words, and asked for *Armenio Baptista Villalobos*, and Captaine *Calderon de Yaca*: for which the Lord of the place was angry with him, and he appeared no more. The next day the *Spaniards* returning found them armed, threatening them if they came on shoare. They minding not to deale cruelly, *Martin de Goye* was sent to discouer some conuenient harbour, who saw the Citie *Tandain*, and other Townes of other neere Islands, and hauing gone fixe miles found the great Bay where was *Cabalita* a Towne well inhabited. Thither went the Fleet, and the Inhabitants fled. Only *Camatian* the sonne of *Malatagua* a blind man, chiefe of that place, came to them, whom they detayned thinking thereby to get some prouision; but in vaine. He sent forth Soldiers which brought him fure and fortie Hogs, leauing in lieu fowm that for exchange, and dismissing *Camatian*, who had taught the Captaine the names of the neighbouring Isles and of their Gouvernours. Hee brought them to *Mefagua* two and thirte miles off, and then was sent away apparelled and ioyfull. The Island *Mefagua* hath bene frequent, but then had but twentie Inhabitants, which would not see the *Spaniards*. They went to another Island where the people were fled with their goods. Then went they to *Butan* which is subiect to the Ile *Pendana* or the Islands *Corrientes*. The winde draue them to *Babal*, where they anchored. The next day they saw a Lunk and sent a Boat to it, which wounded some of their men. They had Arrowes and Lances and a Bale, and two brasse Peeeces. They cryed to the *Spaniards* *aborda, aborda*. The *Spaniards* sent out another Boat better fitted, which tooke eight, the rest were slaine or fled, hauing fought valiantly. In the lunk they found white shiers painted, Silke, Almayzere, Callicos, Iron, Tin, Brasse, and some Gold. The lunk was of *Borneo*, and so were these *Moors*. All was restored (their intent being to get friends, and the *Borneo* satisfied.

The Captaine sent the Saint *Iohn* to discouer the Coast of *Butan*, and learne where the Cinnamon was gathered, and to find some good Port in fit place to build. The *Borneo* told the Captaine the cause of the *Indians* flight, that about two yeeres before some *Portugals* bearing them selves for *Spaniards*, had come thither from the *Melanes*, and hauing made peace with them, set on them and slue about a thousand *Indians*, the cause of that depopulation. This the *Portugals* did to make the *Spaniards* odious, that if they came thither, they might not be admitted. The Captaine sent a well furnished ship to search the Coast, which came to a place where the *Borneo* Gouverneur said he had friends, and leaping on shoare, he was slaine. The Saint *Iohn* returned from *Butan*, which said, they had seene the King, and two Lunkes of *Moors* in the Riuer at anker, and that the land was great and rich, and exchanged with them fine Gold for Tektors, one for six in equal weight. They bought Wax of the *Moors* but had Earth inclosed in the Cakes; they also incensed the *Indians* against the *Castilians*, which would haue made purchase of them; but were forbidden by the King. They said, they had there seene Wax, Cinnamon, Gold, and other precious things.

On Easter Euen the other ship returned to their great ioy, which had thought her lost, hauing flaid twentie dayes longer then her limited time. They had sailed about the Island *Isla* the space 160. of six hundred miles: and in their returne came to *Saba* a well peopled land, and plentifull of *Saba*. all things. The Captaine determined to goe thither to buy prouision, or else to force them. For *Magelane* had bene there, and the King, and most of the Inhabitants were baptised, and acknowledged the Catholike King: *Magelane* also lying in their detence, and thirte other Soldiers in *Matan*. They also had broken league and slaine some of *Magelane* Soldiers. On Friday April twentie foure, the Fleet arrived at the Port of *Saba*, and one came from King *Tapan* to them, saying, that hee with ten chiefe men would come to them. The Captaine expected them a whole day and the next, in which space the Islanders hid their goods in the Woods. The third day the Captaine sent his brother *Andrew* and the Camp-masser, to admonish the King in the *Malayan* tongue, to receive them as Vassals of the Spanish King. Which not succeeding, hee resolved to vife force. The *Indians* our of other Islands had assembled together to the number of

Wicked politics, an Indian pestilence which since hath infected others.

Moors to be nage.

See tab. 1. L. 1. c. 2.

two thousand, which provoked our men, but at the report of the Ordinance ran away, and the Spaniards went the Towne. Many signes of Gold and Gemmes appeared in the Iland, And being situate so neere to the richest Regions, the Gouverneur hopeth accesse thereby to the increase and glorie of the Spanish Crowne, the Spanish Colonies be there planted. The Captaine from the Citie of Sublet sent the Admirall ship with his brother *Andreu de Vidanera*, to certifie the *L. Leroy de Velasco*, the sounce of the Vice-roy, what had beene done.

This which followed was taken out of *Fray Juan Ginesley de Sotomayor* Relation of Chinoe, & is here much abbreviated. Manila.

Miguel Lopez de Legaspi, General of the Fleet, and Gouverneur of the Countrey which they should discover, dyed in the said Ilands with the Title of *Admirante*, having first peopled some circuit; in which is seated the Citie of *Lufon* (called also *Manila*) as the Metropolitan of all the Iland, where the Gouverneurs have settled their residence ever since the first discovery. They have there founded a Cathedral Church, and Friar *Dom Domingo de Salazar* of the Order of the first Bishop thereof in *Madrid*, 1579. At this present there be three Monasteries of Religious men in that Iland, the one of the Order of *Saint Austine*, and were the first that by which was great profit vnto their Ioules, yet great trauell vnto them, & cost many of them their liues in doing it: the other Monastie is of barefoot Friars of the Order of *S. Francis* of the Province of *S. Iulph*, who haue him great Examples, with great profit vnto them of those Parts. The third are of the Order of *S. Dominick*, or Preachers, who haue done their dutie in all things so well as the other. These three Orders were alone in those Ilands for certayne years, till now of late time haue come thither Iulphs, which haue bin a great ayde and helpe vnto their Religion.

When these Spaniards were come vnto these Ilands, they had straight-ways notice of the mightie Kingdome of *China*, as well by the relation of them of the Ilands (who told vnto them the maruels thereof) as also within a few dayes after, they did see and vnderstand, by ships that came into those Ports with Merchants, that brought Merchandize and riches thereof. This being knowne vnto the Religious people of *Saint Austine*, who at that time were alone in those Ilands: but in especiall vnto the Prouinciall, Friar *Martin de Herrada*, seeing the great captiue or towardness which the Chinoise had more then those of the Ilands in all things, but in especiall in their gallantnesse, discretion and wit: hee straight-ways had a great desire to goe thither with his fellow to preach the Gospell vnto those people, of so good a capacity to receive the time; who with a pretended purpose to put it in vire and effect, he began with great care and studie to learne that Language, the which he learned in few dayes: and did make there Merchants that came from *China* for to procure them to carrie them thither, and many other things, the which did shew their holy zeale: yes, they did offer themselves to bee slaues vnto the Merchants, thinking by that meane to enter in to preach: but yet none of these diligences did take effect, till such time as the Duine Majestie did discover a better way, as shall bee declared vnto you in this Chapter following.

¶ II.

Of *Limacon* a China Robber and Rouer, by whose occasion the Spaniards sent into China.

Lhe Spaniards did enjoy their neere habitation of *Manila* in great quietnesse & in obedience vnto the Christian King *Don Philip*, and in continuall Traffick with the Chinoise. But being in this securitie and quietnesse, vnlouked for, they were beset with a mightie Armada of Fleet of ships, by the Rouer *Limacon*, of whose vocation there are continually on the Coast, the one by reason that the Countrey is full of people, whereas of necessity must be many idle persons: and the other and principally occasion, by reason of the great tyrannie that the Gouverneurs doe vnto the Subjects. This *Limacon* came vpon them with intent to doe them harme as you shall vnderstand. This Rouer was borne in the Citie of *Trucoche*, in the Prouince of *Cuytan*, which the *Portugals* doe call *Catim*. He was of meane Personage, and brought vp in his youth in libertie and vice, he was by nature Warlike and euill inclined. He would learne no Occupation, but was gien to rob in the high-ways, and became so expert that many came vnto him and followed that Trade. Hee made himselfe Captaine ouer them which were more then two thousand, and were so strong, that they were feared in all that Prouince where as they were. This being knowne vnto the King and to his Council, they did straight way command the Vice-roy of the Prouince whereas the Rouer was, that with all the haste possible he should gather together all the Garrison of his Frontiers, to apprehend and take him, and if it were possible to carry him alse vnto the Citie of *Taybin*, if not his

Limacon a Chinoe Rouer.

Whence *Limacon* how was borne.

head. The Vice-roy incontinent did gather together people necessary, and in great haste to follow him.

The which being knowne vnto *Limacon* the Rouer, who saw, that with the people hee had, he was not able to make resistance against so great a number as they were, and the eminent danger that was therein, hee called together his Companies, and went from thence vnto a Port of the Sea, that was a few leagues from that place: and did it to quickly and in such secret, that before the people that dwelt therein, could make any defence (for that they were not accustomed to any such affairs, but liued in great quietnesse) they were Lords of the Port, and of all such ships as were there: into which they marked themselves straight-ways, weighed Anchor and departed to the Sea, whereas they thought to be in more securitie then on the Land (as it was true). Then hee seeing himselfe Lord of all those Seas, beganne to rob and spoyle all ships that hee could take, as well strangers as of the naturall people: by which meane in a small time he was prouided of Mariners, and other things which before hee lacked, requisite for that new Occupation. Hee sacked, robbed and spoiled all the Townes that were vpon the Coast, and did very much harme. So hee finding himselfe very strong with fortie ships well armed, of those hee had out of the Port, and other that hee had taken at the Sea, with much people such as were without shame, their hands imbrued with Robberies and killing of men, hee imagined with himselfe to attempt greater matters, and did put it in execution: hee assaulted great Townes, and did a thousand cruelties. So hee following this trade and exercise, hee chanced to meete with another Rouer as himselfe, called *Pietroquin*, like wise naturally borne in *China*, who was in a Port vnto of any care or mistrust, whereas *Limacon* finding opportunitee, with greater courage did fight with the ships of the Rouer: that although they were three score ships great and small, and good Soulliers therein, hee did overcome them, and took his share and more of their ships, to that *Ontanoquin* escaped with five ships. Then *Limacon* seeing himselfe with a fleet of sixtie sixtie ships well armed, and with many stout people in them, knowing that if they were taken, they should be all executed to death: setting all feare apart, gaue them selves to attempt new inventions of euill, not only in robbing of great Cities, but also in destroying of them.

For the which, commandement was gien straight-ways vnto the Vice-roy of that Prouince (whereas hee used to execute his will) that with great expedition he might be taken, who in few dayes did set forth to Sea, one hundred and thirtie great ships well appointed, with forty thousand men in them, and one made Generali ouer them all, a Gentleman called *Omoncon*, for to goe seeking and follow this Rouer with expresse commandement to apprehend or kill him. Of all this piousness, *Limacon* had aduertisement by some secret friends, who seeing that his Enemies were many, and hee not able to counteruaile them, neither in ships nor men, determined not to abide their coming, but to retire and depart from that Coast: into flying hee came vnto an Iland in secret, called *Tomanacaton*, which was forty leagues from the firme Land, and is in the right way of Nauigation to the Ilands *Philippinas*.

From this Iland they did goe forth with some of their ships robbing and spoyleing all such as they met with Merchandize, and other things that they carried from one Iland to another, and from the Iland vnto the firme, and coming from thence amongst them all, they caused to take two ships of *China* which came from *Manila*, and were bound to their owne Countrey. And having them in their power, they searched them vnder hatches, and found that they had rich things of Gold, and Spanish Rials, which they had in trucke of their Merchandize, the which they carried to the Ilands. They informed themselves in all points of the State, and fertilitie of that Countrey, but in particular of the Spaniards, and how many there were of them in the Citie of *Manila*, who were not at that present above seuentie persons, for that the rest were separated in the discovering and populating of other Ilands newly found, and vnderstanding that these few did liue without any suspicion of Enemies, and had neuer a Fort nor Bulwarke, and the Ordinance which they had (although it was very good) yet was it not in order to defend them nor offend their Enemies, hee determined to goe thither with all his fleet and people, for to destroy and kill them, and to make himselfe Lord of the said Iland of *Manila*, and other adjacent there nigh the time. So with this determination hee departed from those Ilands whereas hee was retired, and went to Sea, and sailing towards the Ilands *Philippinas*, they pulled in sight of the Ilands of the *Ilocoi*, which had a Towne called *Fernandina*, which was new founded by the Captaine *Iohn de Salzedo*, who at that instant was in the same for Lieutenant to the Gouverneur: Four leagues from the same they met with a small Galley, which the said *Iohn de Salzedo* had sent for victuals. Hee came towards her, and with great ease did take her, and did burne and kill all that was in her, and pardoned one of them. This being done, hee did prosecute his Voyage according vnto his determination, and passed along, but not in such secret: but that hee was discovered by the Dwellers of the Towne of *Fernandina*, who gave notice thereof vnto the Lieutenant of the Gouverneur aforesaid, as a wonder to see so many things together, and a thing neuer seen before at those Ilands. Likewise it caused admiration vnto him, and made him to thinke and to imagine with great care what it might be, hee saw that they did beare with the Citie of *Manila*, and thought with himselfe, that to great a fleet

Pietroquin a Rouer: led by this Rouer.

One hundred and thirtie great ships of Warre with forty thousand men. *Omoncon*.

Ilocoi.

Fernandina.

as that was, could not goe to the place which they bare in with, for any goodnesse towards the dwellers therein; who were void of all care, and a small number of people, as aforesaid: Wherewith he determined with himselfe with lo great speed as it was possible, to ioyne together such Spaniards as were there, which were to the number of fiftie four, and to depart and procure to get the fore-hand of them, to aduertise them of *Manilla*, and to aide and helpe them to put their Artillerie in order, and all other things necessarie for their defence.

This *Limahon* was well prouided of provision, and all other things, necessarise, and having the wind faire, hee was alwaies in the fore-front, and came in the fight of *Manilla* vpon Saint *Andrewes* Eue, in the yeere 1574. whereas hee came to an anchor that night with all his whole estate.

For all the contradiction of the winde this fame night the foure hundred *Chinos* did put themselves within a league of the Citie, vpon Saint *Andrewes* day at eight of the clocke in the morning, whereas they left their Boats and went on land, and in great haste began to march forwards in battell aray diuided in two parts, with two hundred Harquebusses afore, and immediately after them other two hundred Pike-men: and by reason that they were many, and the Countrey very plaine, they were straightwaies discovered by some of the Citie, who entred in with a great noise, crying, *Arme, arme, arme, the Enemies come.* The which aduise did little profit, for that there was none that would beleue them: but beleued that it was some false alarme done by the people of the Countrey for to mocke them. But in conclusion, the Enemies were come vnto the house of the Generall of the Field, who was called *Martin de Goyti*, which was the first house in all the Citie that way which the Enemies came. And before that the Spaniards and Souldiers that were within the Towne could be fully perwaded the rumour to be true, the Enemies had for first vpon his house, and the like him and all that were within.

At this time, by the order of his Maiestie was elected for Gouverneur of these Islands *Philipina*, *Guido de Lobo*, after the death of *Miguel Lopez de Legaspi*, who vnderstanding the great might and power of *Limahon* the Rouer, and the final resistance and defence that was in the Citie of *Manilla*, as with much speed as was possible, hee did call together all their Captaines and dwellers therein: and with a generall consent they spared no person of what qualitie and degree soeuer he was, but that his hand was to helpe all that was possible, the which endured two dayes and two nights, for so long the Rouer kept his ships and came not abroad. In which time of their continuall labour, they made a Fort with Pipes and Boards filled with fand and other necessities, thereto belonging, such as the time would permit them: they put in carriages, foure excellent Peeeces of Artillerie that were in the Citie. All the which being put in order, they gathered all the people of the Citie into that little Fort. The night before the Enemye did give assault vnto the Citie, came either the Captaine *Iohn de Salcedo*, Lieutenant vnto the Gouverneur. The Rouer in the morning following, before the breake of the day (which was the second after he gaue the first assault) was with all his fleet right against the Port, and did put a lxxix hundred Souldiers, who at that instant did set vpon the Citie, the which at their pleasure they did sacke and burne. They did assault the Fort with great cruelty, as men fleshed with the last laughter, thinking that the resistance was well not as they did use as they did beleue, for hauing continued in the fight almost all the day, with the losse of two wounded men, that were slain in the assault, and many other hurt, hee straightwaies departed from thence, and returned th: some way that hee came, till they arrived in a nightie Riuier, fortie leagues from the Citie of *Manilla*, that is called *Paganjan*, the which place of soyle did like him very well, and where he thought he might be sure from them, who by the commandement of the King went for to seeke him. There hee determined to remayne, and to make himselfe Lord ouer all that Countrey, the which hee did with little trauell, and built himselfe a Fort one league within the Riuier, whereas hee remayned certaine dayes, receiving tribute of the Inhabitants thereof, as though hee were their true and naturall Lord: and at times went forth with his ships robbing and spoyleing all that hee met vpon the coast. And spread abroad, that hee had taken to himselfe the Islands *Philippinas*, and how that all the Spaniards that were in them, were either slayne or fled away. With this consideration they entred into counsell, and did determine to ioyne together all the people they could, and being in good order, to follow and seeke the Rouer. Then the Gouverneur commanded to be called together all the people bordering thereabouts, and to come vnto the Citie whereas hee was. Likewise at that time hee did geue aduise vnto such as were Lords and Gouvernours of the Islands, called *Pumahu*, commanding them to come thither, with such ships as they could spare, as well Spaniards as the naturall people of the Countrey. The Generall of the field with the people aforesaid, did depart from *Manilla* the three and twentieth day of March, Anno 1574. and arrived at the mouth of the Riuier *Paganjan* vpon tenable Weinsday in the morning next following, without being discovered of any. Then straightwaies at that instant the Generall did put a land all his people and foure Peeeces of Artillerie, leauing the mouth of the Rouer but vp with his shipping, in chaying the one to the other, in such sort, that none could enter in neither yet goe forth to geue any aduise vnto the Rouer of his arrival: he commanded some to goe and discover the fleet of the Enemye, and the

Martin de Goyti came.

Guido de Lobo came Gouverneur.

A fort erected.

Citie burnt.

Paganjan.

Pumahu.

Iohn de Salcedo who succeeded Goyti, and was Lieutenant vnto Michel Legaspi.

place whereas he was fortified, and charged them very much to doe it in such secret sort, that they were not knowne: for therein consisted all their whole worke. Hee commanded the Captaine *Gabriel de Kibera*, that straightwaies he should depart by Land, and that at vpon a sudden he should strike alarme vpon the Enemye, with the greatest tumult that was possible. Likewise he commanded the Captaines *Pedro de Caceres* and *Lorenzo Chacon*, that either of them with forty Souldiers should goe vp the Riuier in small ships and light, and to measure the time in such sort, that as well thole that went by land, as thole that went by water, should at one instant come vpon the Fort, and to geue alarme both together, the better to geue thorow with their pretence: and hee himselfe did remayne with all the rest of the people, to watch occasion and time for to aide and succour them if need be required. Their purpose came so well to passe, that both the one and the other came to good effect: for thole that went by water, did set fire on all the fleet of the Enemye: and thole that went by land at that instant had taken and set fire on a Trench made of timber, that *Limahon* had caused to be made for the defence of his people and the Fort: and with that fire they ille more than one hundred *Chinos*, and tooke prisoners twenty women which they found in the fame Trench, but when that *Limahon* vnderstood the rumour, hee tooke himselfe straightwaies to his Fort which hee had made for to defend himselfe from the Kings Naue, if they should happen to finde him out.

The next day following, the Generall of the field did bring his Souldiers into a square battell, and beganne to march towards the Fort, with courage to assault it if occasion did serue thereunto: hee did pitch his Campe within two hundred paces of the Fort, and found that the Enemye did all that night fortifie himselfe very well, and in such sort, that it was perilous to assault him, for that hee had placed vpon his Fort three Peeeces of Artillerie, and many Basse, besides other Engines of fire-work. Seeing this, and that his Peeeces of Artillerie that hee brought were very small for to batter, and little store of munition, for that they had spent all at the assault which the Rouer did geue them at *Manilla*, the Generall of the field, and the Captaines conducted amongst themselves, that seeing the Enemye had no ships to escape by water, neither had hee any great store of victuals for that all was burnt in the ships, it was the best and moest surest way for to besiege the Fort, and to remayne there in quiet vntill that hunger did constrain them either to yeeld or come to some conclusion: which rather they will then to perish with hunger.

This determination was liked well of them all, although it fell out cleane contrarie vnto their expectation: for that in the space of three months that siege endured, this *Limahon* did so much that within the Fort hee made certaine small Barkes, and trimmed them in the best manner hee could, wherewith in one night hee and all his people escaped.

It happened vpon a day, that there came to the Campe a ship of *Miguel de Lancia*, wherein was Friar *Martin de Herrada* Prouinciall of the *Augustine* Friars. Seuen leagues after they were out of the mouth of *Paganjan*, they met with a ship of *Sangleyes*, who made for the Port, and thinking them to be Enemies, they bare with them (hauing another ship that followed them for their defence) and had no more in them but the said Prouinciall and five Spaniards, besides the Mariners. This ship of *Sangley* seeing that hee did beare with them, would haue fled, but the winde would not permit him, for that it was to him contrary, which was the occasion, that the two ships wherein the Spaniards were, for that they did both sayle and rowe, in a small time came within Cannon shot. In one of the ships there was a *China*, called *Sufay*. This *Sufay* went straightwaies into the fore-ships, and demanded what they were, and from whence they came: and being well informed, hee vnderstood that hee was one of the ships of the fleet behind, came forth to seeke the Rouer *Limahon*, who leauing the rest of the fleet behind, came forth to seeke the Islands to see if hee could discover him to be in any of them: and the better to be informed thereof, they were bound into the Port of *Bulano*, from whence they came with their two ships: from whom they would haue fled, thinking they had bene some of the Routers ships. Being fully perwaded the one of the other, they ioynted together with great peace and friendship: the Spaniards straightwaies entred in say, for to be their Interpreter, and to speake vnto the *Chinos*, in the said ship came a man of great authority, who was called *Omoncon*, who bought a Commission from their King, and shewed it vnto the Spaniards, and vnto the Father Prouinciall: in the which the King and his Counsell did pardon all thole Souldiers that were with *Limahon*, if that forthwith they would leaue him and returne vnto the Kings part: and likewise did promise great gifts and fauour vnto him that did either take or kill the aforesaid Rouer. Then did *Sufay* declare vnto him the coming of the Rouer vnto the Islands, and all that happened in the siege of the Citie, as aforesaid: and how they had him besieged in the Riuier of *Paganjan*, from whence it was not possible for him to escape.

The Captaine *Omoncon* reioyced very much of these newes, and made many signes of great content, and did embrace the Spaniards many times, and gaue other tokens whereby hee did manifest the great pleasure hee receiued, and would therewith straightwaies depart vnto the

Limahon fled three months since.

his escape.

the

rest of the fleet. And for that they looked every day for the death or imprisonment of the Rouer, the better to enforce himselfe: hee determined (for that it was fowgh hand) to goe and see the Generall of the field in *Paganfinan*, and carrie with him *Sinsay*, or e that was known both of the one and the other: by whole means they might treat of such things that best accomlished the confirmation of the peace and friendship betwixt the *Chinoes* and the *Spaniards*, as also of the death or imprisonment of *Limbabou*. With this resolution, the one departed vnto *Paganfinan*, wher as they arrived the same day, and the others vnto *Manilla*, whither they went for victuals.

Omoncon remayed there certaine dayes, after the which hee feeling that the siege did long endure, and that his staying might cause suspition of his death: and againe, that the whole fleet did carrie his coming to the intelligence of the Rouer, being fully perswaded and certaine, that he could not escape the *Spaniards* hand: they had him in such a fraight, and that they would without all doubt, send him vnto the King alive or dead (as they promised him) hee was determined to returne vnto *China*, with the good newes that hee had vnderstood, with a determinate intent, to returne againe and carrie the Rouer, after that they had him prisoner. With this resolution in the end of certaine dayes hee went vnto the Gouverneur, certifying him of his pretence, whereby hee might give him licence to put it in execution. The Gouverneur did like well of his pretence, and did promise him the same, the which the Generall of the field did offer vnto him: and which was, so soone as the Rouer should be taken prisoner, or flayne, to send him vnto the King without any delay, or else, to put him whereas he should be forth-coming, and to give them advertisement to send for him, or come himselfe: and did offer him more, that for his voyage he should be provided forthwith of all things necessarie, without lacking of any thing. *Omoncon* did give him great thanks for the same, and in recompence thereof did promise vnto the Gouverneur, for that he vnderstood, and had intelligence of the Fathers, of Saint *Augustine*, that his Houjour, and his Ancestors, and the *Adelantado*, *Miguel Lopez de Legaspi*, had desired many times to send vnto the Kingdome of *China* some Religious men, to treat of the preaching of the Gospell, and to see the wonders of that Kingdome, and how that they neuer could put this their desire in execution, for that those *Chinoes* which came thither, although they did offer them whatsoever they would demand, fearing the punishment that should be executed on them according vnto the Lawes of the Kingdome: hee did promise him, that he would carrie them with him vnto *China*, such Religious men as his Honour would command, and some Soldiers, such as would goe with them: hoping with the good newes that hee carried, to runne in no danger of the Law, neither the Vice-roy of *Anchoe* to thinke euill thereof, and for a more securitie that they should not be euill entreated, hee would leaue with him pledges to their content.

The Gouverneur being very ioyfull of these newes, did therewith send for the Princiual of the *Augustine* Friars, who was elected but few dayes past: his name was *Frier Alonso de Aluado*, vnto whom hee declared the offer that the Captaine *Omoncon* had made vnto him, whereas hee reioyced, they determined that there should goe but two Religious men, by reason that at that time there was but a few of them, and two Soldiers in their companie. The Religious men should be, *Frier Martin de Herrada* of *Pamplona*, who left off the dignitie of Princiual: and in companie with him should goe, *Frier Hieronimo Martin*, who also was very well learned, and of the Cite of *Mexico*: the Soldiers that were appointed to beare them companie were called, *Pedro Sarmiento*, chiefe Sergeant of the Cite of *Manilla* of *Filabado*, and *Miguel de Loarcho*, both principall men, and good *Christians*, as was convenient for that which they tooke in hand. These Fathers did carrie them for this purpose, that if they did remaine there with the King, preaching of the Gospell, then they should returne with the newes thereof, to give the Gouverneur to vnderstand of all that they had sene, and happened vnto them: and likewise vnto the King of *Spayne*, if need did so require. And the Gouverneur in token of gratitude, did give vnto the Captaine *Omoncon* in the presence of themall, a gallant Chaîne of Gold, and a rich Robe of crimlon in graine: a thing that hee esteemed very much, and much more esteemed in *China*, for that it is a thing that they have not there. Besides this, they did ordayne a reasonable Present for to send vnto the Gouverneur of *Chincheo*, hee that dispatched *Omoncon* by the commandement of the King, to goe and seeke the Rouer: also another Present for the Vice-roy of the Prouince of *Ochian*, who was at that present in the Cite of *Anchoe*. And for that *Sinsay* should not finde himselfe agreed (who was a Merchant well knowne amongst them, and perhaps might be the occasion of some euill and disturbance of their pretence) they gave vnto him also another Chaîne of Gold, as well for this, as also for that hee was euer a true and perfect friend vnto the *Spaniards*. Then straightwaies by the commandement of the Gouverneur there were brought together all such *Chinoes* as were captiue and taken from *Limbabou* out of the Fort aforesaid, at *Paganfinan*, and gave them vnto *Omoncon*, to carrie them free with him: and gaue likewise commandement that the Generall of the field, and all such Captaines and Soldiers that were at the siege of the Fort, should give vnto him all such as did there remaine: binding himselfe to pay vnto the

Omoncon promised to carrie the Friars vnto *China*.

A good pretence.

The Friars names that went to *China*.

A token that *Frier* cloth is esteemed.

Spanisb bountie.

Soldiers, to whom they did appertaine, all whatsoever they should be valued to be worth.

Vpon a Sunday at the break of day, being the five and twentieth of Iune, after they had prayed vnto God to direct their voyage, they set layle with a prosperous wind: there were with the Friars, Soldiers and men of seruice, twentie persons, besides the *Chinoes* that were captiues, and the people of the Captaine *Omoncon*. They were not so loone off from the coast, but the wind abated, and they remayed becalmed certaine dayes: but afterwards they had a lustie gale, that carried them forwards. The *Chinoes* gouerne their ships by a compasse diuided into twelve parts, and doe vfe no Sea Cards, but a briefe description or Ruter, wherewith they layle, and commonly for the most part they neuer goe out of the sight of Land. They manueled very

much when that it was told them, that coming from *Mexico* vnto *Philippina*, they were there three monthes at the Sea and neuer saw Land, vpon the Sunday following, wee had sight of the Land of *China*: so that wee found all our Voyage from the Port of *Bulano*, from whence wee had last departed, vnto the firme Land to be one hundred and fortie leagues: and twentie leagues before they came in the sight thereof, they had founding at threecore and ten and fourescore fathom, and so waxed lesse and lesse vntill they came to the Land: which is the best and surest token they haue to bee nigh the Land. In all the time of their Voyage the Captaine *Omoncon* with his Companie shewed such great courtesie and friendship to our men, as though they had beene the owners of the said ship: and at such time as they did embark themselves, hee gave his owne Cabine to the Friars, and the firme to the Friars, and vnto *Pedro Sarmiento*, and to *Miguel de Loarcho*, hee gaue another Cabine that was very good, and commanded his companie in the ship that they should respect them more then himselfe: the which was in such sort, that on a day at the beginning of their Voyage, the Fathers found them making of Sacrifice vnto their Idols, and told them, that all which they did was a kinde of mocke, and that they should worship but only one God: and willed them to doe so forme. Who only in respect of them did leaue it off, and not vie it after in all the Voyage: whereas before they did vie it euery day many times. Besides this, they would worship the Images that the Friars did carrie with them, and kneele vpon their knees with great heif of deuotion: who now hauing fight of the firme Land, in so short time, and passed that small Gulle so quietly, which was wont to be very perillous and full of stormes: they did attribute it vnto the Prayers of the Friars, their companions and Soldiers.

As they drew neerer the Land, they might discouer from the Sea, a very gallant and well towred Cite, that was called *Tinabul*, whereas the King had continually in Garrison ten thousand Soldiers, and is vnder the gouernement of the Prouince of *Chincheo*. The next day wee came vnto a Watch-tower, which was situated vpon a Rocke at the entrie into a Bay, who had discouered our ship, and knew the Standard or Flagge to bee the Kings: and made a signe vnto the *China* ships which were on the other side of the Point, which was part of a companie ordained for to keepepe and defend the coast, which were more then four hundred. Straightwaies the Captaine of the seven ships came forth to know what wee were. Hee issued forth from behind the Point, with three ships that did rowe with Oares very swift: and when hee came nigh vnto them, hee shot at them to wake them to amaine: the which *Omoncon* would not doe, for that hee supposed (as afterwards hee did confesse) that hee should be some man of little estimation, and not the Generall of the coast. But as hee drew nigher vnto him, hee did know him by the Flagge hee bare on the sterne, in the Poul wherein hee was himselfe with his Soldiers, and straightwaies caused to amaine his stayles, and carried for him. The Generall did the like, and stayed behind, sending a Boat for to bring the Captaine vnto him, and to declare what hee was, and from whence hee came. *Omoncon* did forthwith embark himselfe into his Boat without any resistance, but rather with teare that hee should be punished for that hee did flee from him. The Generall gaue him good entertainment.

This Generall was a goodly man of person, and was very well apparellled, and did sit in a Chaire in the sterne of his ship, the which was all couered to keepe away the Sunne: hee commanded the Captaine *Omoncon* to sit downe by him vpon the haiches, without Chaire or any other thing, who did obey him, although first hee did refuse it with great modestie, as not worthy to haue that honour, which was not esteemed a little. After that hee was let, hee gaue him to vnderstand in effect of all his voyage and successe, and in what extremitie hee left *Limbabou*, and also how that hee carried with him the Friars and other *Spaniards*, which went to carrie the newes, and to treat of peace with the Vice-roy of *Anchoe*: vnto whom, and vnto the Gouverneur of *Chincheo*, hee carried presents, sent from the Gouverneur and Generall of the field of the Islands *Philippina*. When the Generall had heard this relation, hee commanded the Boat to turne and to bring them before him, that hee might see what manner of men they were of person, and the vie of their apparell: and likewise to satisfie himselfe of other desires that came into his mind by that which *Omoncon* had said of them. The Fathers and their companions did obey the commandement, and did embark themselves in the Boat, and came vnto the ship whereas the Generall received them with great courtesie after his fashion.

They departed towards *China*.

These Com-
passes diuided
into twelve parts.
Chinese use
Manilla.

Seending

They leane
the worship-
ping of one
Idol: to wor-
ship another.
Tinabul in the
Prouince of
Chincheo.

p. IIII.

Friar MARTIN DE HERRADA, and other Spaniards entertainment
in China, and their returne to the Philippinas.

Tanfufu, or
Tanfufu.

Tanfufu a little while after, *Ommoon* and his companie arrived at the Port of *Tanfufu* hard by, vpon Wednesday in the evening, being the first day of Iuly. This *Tanfufu* is a gallant and fresh Towne of foure thousand Householders, and hath continually a thousand Souldiers in Garrison, and compassed about with a great and strong wall, and the gates fortified with plates of Iron, the foundations of all the houses are of Lime and Stone, and the walls of Lime and Earth, and some of Bricke: their houses within very fairly wrought, with great Courts, their streets faire and broad all paved. Before that *Ommoon* did come vnto an anchor, they saw all the Souldiers and the people of the Towne were gathered together vpon the Rocks that were ioyning vnto the Port, all armed ready vnto the battell, amongst whom there was a principall Capitaine, and three more of his companions, that were sent him by the Governour of *Chinches*, whom they doe call in their language, *Insuanto*, who had vnderstanding of the coming of *Ommoon*, when the ship entred into the Port, *Ommoon* did salute the Towne with certaine Peeces of Artillerie, and discharged all his Harquebusses six times about, and therewithall tooke in her sayle, and let anchor fall. Then straightwaies the 20 Capitaine whom the *Insuanto* had sent, came aboard the ship, who had expresse commission, not to leave the companie of our people after that they were disembarked, till such time as they came whereas he was, but to beare them companie, and to provide them of all things necessarie: the which he did accomplish.

Ensignes to
know the
Loyall.

All these Captaines and Ministers of the King doe wear certaine ensignes for to be knowne from the common people, to wit, broad Wailes or Gardes embossed after diuers manners: some of Gold and Siluer, some of the Tortois shell, and of a sweet wood, and other some of Ioune, the higher estates hath them embroidered with Pearles and precious stones, and their Bonnets with two long eares, and their Buskins made of Satin, and vnlhorne Velvet.

Boards licence.

Then after, so soone as they were come to an anchor in the Port, the Iustice did send them 30 a Licence in writing for to come forth of the ship, as a thing necessarie, for that without it the Waiters or Guards of the water side, will not suffer them to put foot on land. This Licence was written vpon a boord whited, and signed by the Iustice, whole charge it is to gree the Licence. Then when they came ashore, there were the Souldiers that were appointed by the *Insuanto* in a readinesse to beare them companie, and did direct and leade them vnto the Kings houses of the said Citie: the like hath euery Citie almost throughout all the Kingdome, and there they bid lodge them. These houses are very great and very well wrought, and gallant, with faire Courts below, and Galleries above: they had in them Stanges or Ponds of water full of fish of sundry sorts.

The vie of
their banquet.

The people of the Citie did presse very much to see these strangers, so that with the presse, as 40 also with the great heat, they were manfully afflicted: which being perceived by the Iustice, he gaue order that they might bee eased of that trouble, and caused Sergeants to keepe the doore, and their Yeomen to make resistance against the people. When night was come, the Iustice of the Citie did make a Banquet according to the fashion of the Countrey: and it was in the fashion following. They were carried into a Hall that was very curiously wrought, wherein were many Torchés and waxe Candles light, and in the midst thereof was set for euery one of the Guests a Table by himselfe, as is the vie and fashion of that Countrey: euery Table had his covering of Damask or Sattin very well made, the Tables were gallantly painted, without any Table-clothes, neither doe they vie any, for they haue no need of them, for that they doe eate all their victuals with two little stickes made of Gold and Siluer, and of a manellous 50 odoriferous wood, and of the length of little Forkes, as they doe vie in *Italie*, with the which they doe feed themselves so cleanly, that although their victuals be neuer so small, yet doe they let nothing fall, neither foule their hands nor faces. They were set downe at these Tables in very good order, and in gallant Chaires, in such sort, that although they were euery one at his Table by himselfe, yet they might see and talke one with another, they were furnished with diuers sorts of eates, and very well dressed, both of flesh and fish, as gamons of Bacon, Capons, Geese, whole Hens, and pieces of Beefe, and at the last, many little baskets full of sweet meats made of Sugar, and Marchpanes all wrought very curiously. They gaue them Wine of an 60 different colour and taste, made of the Palm-tree. All the time that the Player luffed, there was in the Hall great store of Musike of diuers Instruments, whereon they played with great comfort, some one time and some another. The Instruments which they commonly doe vie, are Hoybuckles, Cornets, Trumpets, Lutes, such as be used in *Spain*, although in the fashion there is some difference. There was at this Banquet (which endured a great while) the Capitaine that was ordained for their Guard, and the Capitaine *Ommoon*, and *Sinsay*. When Supper was

Wine of a
Palm tree.

done, they were carried into very faire Chambers, whereas were faire Beds, where they slept and ealed themselves.

The next day in the morning, was brought vnto them their ordinarie victuals, and that in abundance, as well of Flesh as of Fish, Fruits and Wine, to be dressed vnto their owne content, and according vnto their manner: they would take nothing for the fame, for so they were commanded by the *Insuanto*. This was brought vnto them euery day, so long as they were there, & in the way when as they went vnto *Chinches*. The same day arrived a Capitaine of fortie Ships in the same Port, and so soone as hee was ashore, he went straightwaies vnto the Palace for to see the strangers: who being aduertised of his coming, came forth and received him at the Palace gate, whereas was vied betwixt them great courtesie. The Capitaine came with great Maistie, with his guard of Souldiers and Mace-bearers before him, with great musike of Hoy-buckles, Trumpets and Drums, and two Whiffles, or Typ-flaues, that made roome, putting the people aside: also there came with him two executors of Iustice, hauing each of them in their hands a Set made of canes, which is an instrument wherewith they doth whip and punish offenders. When this Capitaine came vnto the Palace gate, whereas the Father Friars and their companions did receive him, he was brought on the shoulders of eight men very richly apparelled, in a chayre wrought of Iuorie and Gold, who stayed not till they came into the inner Chamber, whereas he did alight from the chayre, and went straight vnder a Cloath of estate, that was there ordinarily for the same purpose, and a Table before him: there hee fate downe, and straightwaies arose vp, and standing hee did receive the strange guests, who did courtesie vnto him according vnto their fashion, which is to ioyne their hands together, and to stoop with them and their heads downe to the ground: hee gratified them againe, with bowing his head a little, and that with great grauitie. These speeches being finished, there was brought fourth certaine pieces of blacke Silke of twelve vares long a piece. And his Officers did put on the Friars shoulders each of them two, which was for either shoulder one, and was brought about their bodies and girt therewith: the like was done in order vnto the *Spanish* Souldiers, and vnto *Ommoon*, and *Sinsay*, and to their Interpreters. But vnto *Ommoon*, and *Sinsay*, was giuen vnto either of them a branch of Nefogay made of Siluer, which was set vpon their heads, which is accomfutable honour, that is done vnto such as haue done some great enterprise, or such like. After that this ceremonie was done, they 30 played vpon the Instruments aforesaid, which came with the Capitaine. In the meane time of their musike, there was brought fourth great store of Conferences, March-panes, and things made of Sugar, and excellent good Wine: and so being on foote standing, hee caused them to eate, and hee himselfe from the Chayre whereas hee fate, did giue them to drinke euery one in order, without rising vp, which is a ceremonie and token of great fauour, and of loue.

This being done, hee arose from the chayre vnder the Cloath of state, and went and fate downe in that which was brought on mens backs, and with declining of his head a little, hee departed out of the Hall and out of the house, and went vnto his owne house, whereas by the counsell of *Ommoon*, and *Sinsay*, within an houre after they should goe and visite him, the which they did: hee received them maruellously well and with great courtesie: who maruelled at his great Maistie and authority, for that *Ommoon* and *Sinsay*, when they did talke with him were vpon their knees, and so did all the rest. Hee gaue them againe in his owne house a gallant banquet, of diuers sorts of Conferences and Fruits, and excellent Wine of the Palme-tree, and did talke and reason with them in good sort, and was more familiar than at his first visitation.

After that the Fathers with their companions had remained two dayes in the Port of *Tanfufu*, the third day they departed in the morning towards *Chinches*. At their going forth of the Town, they were accompanied with a great number of Souldiers, both Harquebusses & Pike, and before them a great noyle of Trumpets, Drums, and Hoy-bucks, till such time as they came vnto the Riuer side, whereas was a Brygandine provided and made ready in all points, to carrie them vp the Riuer: all the streets along which they went, there followed them so much people that it was innumerable, and all to see them. All along the Riuer whereas they went, was feasted 50 with Villages very gallant and fresh, both on the one side and on the other.

At the end of the two leagues, they came vnto a great Bay, where was at an Anchor a flecter of more then one hundred and fiftie Ships men of warre, whose General was this Capitaine, whom we haue spoken of. At such time as the flecter did discouer them, they began to salute them, as well with great pieces of Artillerie, as with Harquebusses, and other kinde of pastimes, which commonly they doe vie at such times.

Our *Spaniards* did trauell vp the Riuer more than three leagues, hauing continually both on the one side and on the other, very many and faire Townes, and full of people. In the end of the three leagues, they went aland alife a league from the Towne of *Tanfufu*, whereas straightwaies 60 wayes all such things as they carried with them, were taken vpon mens backs, and carried vnto the Towne before them, whereas they were tarrying their coming, for to giue them great entertainment. At their going ashore, they found prepared for the two Religious men, little Chayres to carrie them vpon mens backs, and for the Souldiers and the rest of their companions horse. The Fathers did refuse to bee carried, and would haue gone a foot, but *Ommoon*, and the

Captaine of
fortie Ships.

Sergeant.

Tang.

other Captayne would not consent thereunto. The Fathers obeyed their reasons, and entred into the Chayres, and were carryed with eight men a piece, and the other their companions with foure men a piece, according vnto the order giuen by the Gouverneur. Those that carryed the Chayres, &c. it with fo good a will, that there was striving who should first lay hands to them. This Towne of *Tanqua*, hath three thousand Souldiers, and is called in their language *Ca-an*: at the entering in, it hath many Gardens and Orchards and a street where through they carryed the *Spaniards* vnto their lodging, they all rmed to bee half a league long, and all the street whereas they went, was full of boards and stales whereon was layd all kinde of Merchandise very curious, and things to bee eaten, as fresh Fish and fide, Fish of diuers sorts, and great abundance of Fowle, and Fiech of all sorts, Fruits and Greene Herbes in such quantitie, that it was so sufficient to seruise such a Citie as *Samul*. They were brought vnto the Kings house, which was very great, maruelously well wrought with stone and bricke, and many Halls, Parlours, and Chambers, but none about, but all below. So foone as they were a foote, there was brought from the Captayne or Iustice of the Towne, whom they doe call *Ticua*, a message, bidding them welcome, and therewith a present, which was great store of Capons, Hennes, Teales, Ducks, Geese, Hch of foure or five sorts, fresh Fish, Wine, and fruits of diuers sorts, and of so great quantitie, that it was sufficient for two hundred men. All the which they would haue giuen for a little coole ayre, by reason that it was then very hot weather; and againe, the great number of people that came thither to see them did augment it the more. In the Evening the two *Spaniards* Souldiers went forth into the streets to walke abroad, and left the two Priars within their 20 lodging, vnto whom afterwards they did give Intelligence of all things that they had seene, which did cause great admiration: the wall of the Towne was very broad, and wrought with lyme and stone, full of loope-holes and watch-towers. And as they passed through the streets there came forth of a house a very honest man, as it seemed, who was very well apparelled and flayed them, for that in the same house, there were certayne Dames principall persons, that did see them a farre off, and not content therewith, they did request them with great curtesie for to enter into the house, that they might the better see them: the which they did straightwayes accomplish, and entering in, they were brought into a court, whereas was set Chayres for them to sit downe, and the Ladies were there a little from them, beholding them with great honestie and grauitie. Then a little after, they set them a banquet with March-panes and sweet 30 meats made of Sugar, which they did eate without any curiostie, and drunke after the same. The banquet being done, they made signes and tokens vnto them, that they received great content with their light, and that they might depart when that their pleasure was, the which they did, after that they had made great curtesies with thanks, for their friendship received of both parts. So after they had taken their leave, they went to see a House of pleasure, that was hard by the Towne-wall, wrought vpon the water, with very fine galleries and open lodges to banquet in, made of Malons worke, and therein many Tables finely painted, and round about it Cisterns of water, wherein was store of Fish, and joyning vnto them Tables of very faire Alabastr, all of one stone, and the least of them was of eight fpannes long: and round about them were brookes of running water, that gaue a pleasant sound in the meane time they were banquetting, and 40 therewith many Gardens full of all sorts of Flowers. And a little from that place they went to see a Bridge of all Malons worke, and the stones very well wrought and of a mightie bignesse, they measured some of them, that were twentie and two and twentie foote long, and five foot broad, and seemed vnto them, that it was a thing impossible to bee layd there by mans hands. Of this bignesse, yea and bigger they did see layd vpon many other Bridges, in the discourse of their voyage, going to *Chincheo* and *Aucheo*. The next day in the morning when they were vp and ready, they found in the house all things in a readinesse and in very good order, for their departure, as well their little Chayres, and Horse, as for men to carrie their stuffe and apparell, which did not a little make them to maruell, how that euery one of them with a watter vpon their shoulders, did divide their burthen in two parts, fixe roes before and fixe roes behinde, and did trauell 50 with the same with fo great ease and swiftnesse, that the Horse could not indure with them. They went vnto the *Therian* his house. They found him with great Maistie, but yet gaue them great and good entertainment. Here did likewise put vpon each of them, two pieces of Silke, in the same order as the Gouverneur of *Tanqua* did.

From this Towne of *Tanqua* vnto *Chincheo*, is thirteene leagues, and so playne way that it giueh great content to trauell it: in all the way they could not see one ipane of ground but was tilled and occupied. The like they doe say, is of all the ground that is in the whole Kingdome: it is full of people, and the Townes one neere to another, that almost you can not iudge them to bee many Townes but one, for that there was but a quarter of a league distant, one Towne from another, and it was told vnto them that in all the Prouinces of the Kingdome, it is 60 peopled in the same order. All their ground they till is wated, which is the occasion of the fruitfulness thereof, so that they doe gather fruit all the yeere long, and our *Spaniards* did see in all places whereas they came, that they were gathering of Rice, some new sowing vp, some with eares, and some ripe. They doe plough and till their ground with Kine, *Bufalos*, and Bulis, whereate

very tame, and although they bee very great, yet be their hornes but of a spanne long and turning backwards to the tayle, in such sort that they cannot doe any hurt or harme with them: they doe gouerne them with a cord that is made fast to a ring that is in their nole, and in like sort doe they gouerne the *Bufalos*. They doe feed them commonly in the fields of Rice, for that they haue no other graings, and all the time that they are feeding, a Boy doth ride on euery one of them to distillube them, that they doe no harme therein. But to eate the weedes and graffe that doe grow in the Rice.

All the high-ways are couered with the shadow of very faire Orchards, which doe garnish it very much, and they are planted in very good order: and amongst them there are Shops, whereas is sold all manner of Fruits, to the comfort of all such as doe trauell by the way, which are an infinite number, some on footes, some on horse-backe, and others in little chayres. Their waters by the high-ways are very good and light. The same day when they had trauelled halfe way, they saw a tatte off coming marching towards them in very good order, a squadron of Souldiers, which at the first caused them to maruell, and to bee afraid, till such time as they drew nigher, it was told vnto them, that it was the Captayne of the guard vnto the *Insano*, or Gouverneur of *Chincheo*, who came by his order to receiue them with foure hundred Souldiers, very well armed with Pikes and Harquebusses, and well appareled. So foone as the Captayne came vnto them, hee was mounted on a bay Horse, but of small stature, as they for the most part bee in all that Prouince, hee alighted and came vnto the Fathers, and his companions (who likewise did alight from their little Chayres) and did salute the one the other with great courtesie.

The Captayne came very well appareled with a Chayne of gold about his necke, a man of a good audacie and vnderstanding. Hard vnto his stirrup hee had a Page that went with him, and carryed a great *Tra* *sol*, made of Silke, that did shadow him all ouer. Hee had before him great musicke of Trumpets and Hobyebusses, wherein they played in great concord. This Captayne with his foure hundred Souldiers, did continually guard them for pompe, not necessitie; for the people may not waite weapons but the Souldiers. In this high-way continually there went and came many pukke-Horses, laden with Merchandise and other things, but the most part of them were Mules. The high-ways are very broad, that twentie men may ride together on a ranke, and one not hinder another, and are all paved with great stones.

30 Vpon a Saturday being the eleuenth of Iuly, came our *Spaniards* vnto the Citie of *Chincheo*, foure houres before it was night. This Citie is of the common sort in that Kingdome, and may haue fouente thousand houtholds. It is of great traffike and well provided of all things, for that the Sea is but two leagues from it: it hath a mightie River running along by it downe into the Sea, by which is brought by water and carryed downe all kinde of merchandise. There is a Bridge ouer the sayd River, which is supposed to bee the fairest that is in all the world: it hath a drawe bridge to seruise in time of warres, or for any other necessitie: the Bridge is eight hundred paces long, and all wrought with stones of two and twentie foote long, and five foote broad, a thing greatly to bee maruelled at: at the entrie thereof, there were many armed Souldiers ready to fight, who when they came within Harquebulle shot did salute them in very good order. There was high vnto the sayd bridge in the River rising at anchor, more then a thousand Ships of all sorts, and to great a number of Boates and Barkes, that all the River was couered, and euery one full of people that had entred into them for to see the *Captaine*, for so they did call the *Spaniard*, in that Country, for the streets in the Suburbs, nor in the Citie could not hold them, the number was so great, yet their streets are as broad as our ordinary streets in any Citie in all *Spainne*. This Citie is compassed with a strong Wall made of stone, and is fenced forth with high, and foure fathom broad, & vpon the Gates many towers, wherein is placed their Artillerie, which is all their strength, for that they doe not vse in their Kingdome strong Calles, as they doe in *Europe*. The houses of the Citie are all built after one sort and fashion, but faire, & not very high, by reason of the Earthquakes which are ordinarily in that Country. All the streets (but especially that wherein they walked at their coming thither) haue on the one side and on the other, Sheds, vnder the quall distance the one from the other, many triumphant Arches which doe set out the streets, which haue excellent Market-places, and of great value, and very curious. They haue in euery much, and is vied in euery principall street throughout all the Kingdome, in the which they haue excellent Market-places, whereas is to be bought all things that you will desire to be eaten, as well of Fish, as of Flech, Fruits, Herbs, Combs, Conferences, and all things so good cheape, that it is almost bought for nothing.

The *Insano* or Gouverneur of the Citie, did send that forthwith they should goe vnto his House, for that hee had great desire to see them. In the midst of the streete, where was no lesse number of people then in the other, whereby they entred into the Citie, they met with a *Lop-ria*, that came to entertaine them with great Maistie, and had carryed before him many Banners, Mace-bearers, and Tipstauers, and others which carryed Stors or Whips, which they did traile after them, made fast vnto long tickes, which were the Executioners, the which they doe alwayes making of way, parting the people before the *Loprias*, as you haue heard. The maine

China Women.

House of pleasure.

Stone-bridge.

Thirteene village.

Plowing with *Bufalos*.

Pallage.

A thing to keep away the Sunne.

High ways.

Chincheo hath fouente thousand houtholds.

Fairst Bridge.

A thousand Ships in one River.

They haue no strong Calles.

Earthquakes in this Country.

Arch Merchandises.

Triumph Arches.

The *Insano*.

An Affiant.
Serpents knot
The Kings
Armes.

and company wherewith he came was to great, that they verily did beleete him to be the *Infuante*: but being certified, they vnderstood that it was one of his Counsellors that came from the Governours home to his owne house, which was in the same street whereas hee met with this Counsellor was carried in a Chaire of Iuorie, garnished with Gold and with Curtaines ther of Cloth of Gold, and on them the Kings Armes, which are certayne Serpents knotted together (as hath bene told you). But when he came tight against the *Spaniards*, without any flaying he made a signe with his head, and commanded that they should returne backe againe vnto his house, which was hard by: the Captaines did straight-ways obey his commandement, and a figure Court, and the Counsellor entered into his house, which was very faire, hee had in along, the rest remayned without in the street at the *Loyus* commandement, hee entered vnto them with very good word of Emblance, and commanded a Banquet to be brought forth, and Wine to drinke, he began first both to rate and drinke. Then he commanded to call in the Captaine, vnto whom was giuen the charge to beare them companie, and did chide with him very sharply and seuerely, because hee did carrie them on foot (they could not vnderstand whether it were done for a policie, or of a truth, although the effects wherewith hee did chide seemed of a truth) hee straight-ways commanded two rich Chaires to be brought forth to carry the Fathers, and to giue vnto their companions Horses: the which being done, hee willed them to goe and visit the Governour, who did tarrie their comming: and that another time at more leisure he would see and visit them.

Goodly figure.

The Palace.

They followed their way all along the street, which seemed vnto them to be more faire then the other wherein they entered, and of more faire houses and triumphant Arches and also the hops that were on the one side and on the other, to be better furnished with richer things then the others, in so ample sort, that what therewith, as also the great number of people which they saw, they were so amazed, that they were as people from themselves, thinking it to be a Dreame. To conclude, after they had gone a good while in that street, delighting their eyes with new things neuer seene of them before: they came into a great place, whereas were many Soldiers in good order with their Harquebuses, Pikes and other Armour in a readinesse, appalled all in a Livery of Silke, with their Ancients displayed. At the end of this place, was there a very faire and sumptuous Palace, the gate was wrought of Malons worke of stone, very great and full of figures or Personages, and about it a great window with an Iron grate all gilt: they were carried without and could not be auoyded but with great difficultie. When they were within the first Court, there came forth a man very well apparelled and of authoritie, and made signes with his hand vnto them that brought the *Spaniards*, that they should carrie them into a Hall that was vpon the right hand, the which was straight-ways done. The Hall was very great and faire, and at the end thereof there was an Altar, whereon were many Idols, and all did differ the one from the other in their fashion: the Altar was rich and very curiously trimmed with burning Lamps: the Altar-cloth was of cloth of Gold: and the fruntes of the same.

State-ceremonie.

After awhile that they had bene there whereas the Idols were, there came a Seruant from the Governour and said vnto him in his behalfe, that they should send vnto him the Interpreter: they straight-ways commanded him to goe. And the Governour said vnto him that he should aduise the Fathers and the rest of his companions, that if they would talke and treat of such businesse as they came for, that it must be done with the same ceremonie and respect, as the Nobles of that Princes doe, yea to talke with him, which is vpon their knees (as afterwards they did fee many times yea) if not that they should depart vnto the Houe: whereas they were lodged, and there to tarrie the order that should be sent from the Vice-roy of *Anchie*.

The *Spaniards* were of diuers judgements, struing amongst themselves a good while, but yet in conclusion, the Religious Fathers, whom the Governour of the Islands had ordained and sent as principals in this matter, and whose judgement they should follow, said, that they ought to accept the condition, seeing that by no other means they could not come vnto that they pretended: and not to leave it off for matters of small importance, for that therein they make no offence vnto God, and it may be a mean to the converting of that mightie Kingdome.

When that the *Infuante* vnderstood that the *Spaniards* would enter with the reuerence accustomed, and in such order as was declared vnto them, hee straight-ways commanded that they should come into the Hall whereas hee was, they entered into another Hall as bigge as the first: whereas were many Soldiers with their weapons in their hands in very good order, and richly apparelled, and next vnto them were many Tipstaves and Sergeants, with different Ensignes or Badges, all apparelled with long Robes of silke, garned and embrodered with Gold, and euery one of them had a Helme on his head, some of silke and other some of Iron: Tingeil out, where was a gallant thing to see: all had long haire and died yellow, which hung downe behind their eares vpon their backs: they were placed in very good order, made a lane that the *Spaniards* might passe thorough: then they came into a Gallerie, which was joyning vnto the Chamber where the Governour was, and there they heard such a noyse of Instruments of diuers kinds,

which

Great Majesty.

The Infuantes
pelion and en-
tertainment.

which endured a good while, and was of so great melody, that it seemed vnto them that they neuer before heard the like: which caused vnto them great admiration to see so great Majesty amongst Gentiles. When the Musike was ended, they entered into the Hall afore said, and had not gone many steps, when as they met with the Counsellor that met with them in the direct afore-said, and with him other two of his companions all on foot and bare-headed before the Governour, and their Ensignes of Majesty left off: which is generally vied in all the Kingdome, the inferior to make any liew when that he is before his Superior. Then they made signes vnto them for to kneele downe, for that the *Infuante* was nigh at hand in a rich Towre, vnder a Canopie of great Riches, and did repleat to great Majesty as the King himselfe: hee did enter, to sayne them with tokens of great loue, and humanitie, and told them by their Interpreter, that they were very well welcome, and that hee did greatly rejoyce to see them, with many other words of great fauour. This Governour was a man of goodly person, well fauoured, and of a merry countenance, more then any that they had seene in all that Countrey. Hee caused to be put vpon the shoulders of the Fathers and of the Soldiers that were with him, euery one of them two pieces of silke, which was crossed about them like Sharfes, and likewise to either of them a branch of filute: the like courtesie hee did vnto the Captaine *Omoncon*, and vnto *Sinsay*, and commanded to giue vnto all their Seruants euery one of them a Mantle of Cotton painted. This being done, the Fathers did giue vnto him the Letters which they carried from the Governour and Generall of the field, and a note of the Present that was sent him: craving pardon for that it was so small, but time and oportunitie would not suse: then to send vnto him a thing of greater price and value: certifying him, that if the friendship which they pretended did goe forward, and come to be established, that then all things should be amended and amplified. Hee answered vnto their proffers with words of great fauour, and made signes vnto them to arise, and to goe and take their rests there, whereas they were lodged: the which they did, and found all things in very good order and well furnished, as well of Beds as of all other necessities, which was done by the commandement of the Governour. Before they departed out of the Palace the Captaine of the guard did carrie them vnto his Lodging, which was within the Court, and there hee made them a Banquet with Conferences, and Fruits in abundance: the which being done, hee and other Gentlemen of the Palace did see them company until they came to their Lodgings, which they greatly desired, for that they were weary of their Tourney, and also with the trouble of the great presse of people that pressed on them in the streets, & otherwise for to see them: the which Captaine of the guard did appoint a Company of Soldiers for to guard them both night and day, the which was done more for Majesty then for necessitie or security of their persons. They had a Steward appointed to provide them and all their company of all things necessary, and that in abundance, and not to take of them any thing, which was giuen by particular commandement by the Governour.

The next day, many of the Gentlemen of the Citie did goe vnto the *Spaniards* to visit them, and such as could not goe themselves did send their Seruants, bidding them welcome. The *Spaniards* did make answer, and gratified them all, in the which visitation they spent all the whole day, having great admiration to see the good behaviour, nurture, and gallant demeanour of those as also in their Answers made to our requests. The next day the *Infuante* sent a commandement wherein he willed that the two Fathers to remayne in their Lodgings and take their ease: but the two Soldiers *Pedro Sarmiento*, and *Miguel de Loarcha*, should come and speake with him, and that they should bring with them their Interpreter, for that hee had one there with him, (who was a *Chino*, and vnderstood the Language of the *Philippines*, but so badly, that they could not by his Interpretation talke of any matter of importance. So when they came thither, they were brought whereas he was, but with lesse ceremonie, he requested them to declare vnto him the whole circumstance of the coming of *Limbon* the Rouer vnto the Islands, and how the *Spaniards* dealt with him: that although he had bene informed particularly in all things, by the Captaine *Omoncon* and *Sinsay*, yet he was in a zealousie that they told him not the truth. Hee was nothing deceiued in that he suspected,) for after that our Soldiers had made a true Relation of the coming of the Rouer vnto *Manilla*, and of all the rest, hee found that they differed very much, the one from the other, for that they did attribute it wholly vnto themselves to get honour and benefit: but the *Infuante* like a wise man straight-ways vnderstood their pretence. But red vnto them that if they would not Prisoner, but only beieged, hee offered giue vnto them five hundred ships of warre, with people sufficient to sieue both by Sea were but in vaine, for that the Generall of the field who hath him in siege, with the people and ships that he hath are sufficient to end that Enterprize, and to send him either alive or dead, and that long before that their fleet should come thither. And besides this, their Islands were poore of victuals, and could not sustaine so great an Arme many dayes. Being satisfied with these reasons, hee gaue place that the Interpreter which they brought should come in where as they were.

Vaine glory.

Boo thing.

Suburbs of Auecho.

mayne in a house that was appointed for them in the fynd Suburbs. So loone as they were alighted, there came a Gentleman to visite them, sent from the Vice-roy to bid them welcome, and to know how they did with their journey, and also to see that they were well provided for that night, of all things necessarie, and that in abundance. After this Gentleman, came other Captaynes to visite them, and brought with them great store of Conferences, Wine and Fruit: which is a common custome amongst them, when that they goe in the like visitation, and it is carryed by their seruants in little Baskets very curiously wrought, or else in Barrels made of earth all gile. Within two houres after their coming thither, there came another messenger from the Vice-roy, with many men laden with Capons, Hennes, Geefe, Teales, gamons of Basoppe, and Conferences of diuers sorts, and of great abundance, sufficient for one hundred men to suppe that night, and for their dinner the next day. The next day in the morning very early, there came much people vnto their lodging, sent by the Vice-roy, and brought with them two rich Chayres, for to carrie the Fathers in, and the Curtaines tyed vp, that they might the better vie. They forthwith made haste for to depart, and although they made great speed, yet were vnto them that they had travelled two leagues in the Suburbs: well peopled, faire houses, and many shops full of Merchandise.

Palace open once a day.

Site.

Before they came vnto the Gates, they passed a mightie River three times ouer Bridges, that were great and very faire, and the River so deepe, that great Ships came vp the same, but their masts stooping downe, to passe vnder the bridges. This Citie is the head Citie of all the Province, verie rich and fertile, and many Townes belonging vnto it, and but eight leagues from the Sea. They had no leisure to tell the Souldiers, but they saw that from the Gate vntill they came vnto the Vice-royes Palace on both sides, which was a good way, to be full of them, and all richly apparelled and of one colour. The people that were at the windowes and in the street, betwixt the houses and the Souldiers were so great a number, that it seemed to be done day, and that all the people in the world were there ioyned together in that street. When they came vnto the Palace which was two houres after day, the Gentlemen that were their guides, did caute the Spaniards to enter into a roome which was hard by, till such time as the Gate was open, for that it is open but once a day, and so continue no longer time then the audience endeth. But first, which is done by the Vice-roy once every day, and that is but a small time. But first, before he doth enter into audience, there is shot off foure peeces of Artillerie, with a great noyse of Trumpets, Drums and Waytes. And there is no day that passeth without audience, as our people did see by experience so long as they were there, and were likewise informed of others. The house being come, and the ceremone done as aforesaid, the Gates were opened, and there was in the Court many Souldiers, apparelled in the same luerie that those were in the street. From the midst amongst them came forth a Gentleman, who was as it was told them, the Captayne of the guard of the Vice-roy, who came with great grauitie and authoritie, towards the place whereas our people were, and after they had saluted the one the other, hee made signes vnto them, that they should goe towards the gates of the Palace. When they were within the first Court, which was great and wrought with mightie pillars, there was a great number of Souldiers, and many Sergeants, that entred into another great court, and mounted vp a payre of Haytes that was on the one side, whereas all the people were with great silence, fauing the Captayne of the guard, who went with our people till they came to the gates of the Hall, where was the Vice-roy, at which gate hee stayed with his head discouered, and made signes vnto ours that they should doe the like.

Ceremonie.

Vice-royes site.

Then straight-ways came forth of the Hall a man apparelled in a long Rebe, of good personage, and asked of the Spaniards, if they would speake with the Vice-roy, and they answered, yea: then asked hee againe from whom they came, and by whom they were sent, they answered, that they were sent by the Gouverneur of *Philippina*, who was seruant vnto the mightiest King in all Christendome. When he had this answer, he returned againe into the Hall, and within a little while after he came forth, and bad them come in, but gave them no vnderstand, that in entering into the hall whereas the Vice-roy was, that they should kneele downe, and talke with him in that order, till hee commanded to the contrary, if they would vie this Ceremone, that then they should come in, if not, that they should returne backe againe. They sayd, that they would obseue the order giuen vnto them. Therewith hee went in, who seemed to be the Master of ceremonies, making a signe that they should follow after him, and doe that which hee willed them to doe. At the entering in at the doore, they stayed a little, and then kneeled downe right ouer against there whereas the Vice-roy sat, in a Chayre very high like vnto a Throne, with a Table before him, and was in so darke a place that almost they could not see his face very goodly. On the one side of him, there were some like vnto Heralds of Armes, with Scepters in their hands, and on the other side, two men of a gallant comelike armed with Corlets, made of scales of Gold downe to the calfe of their legges, with Bowes in their hands of gold, and Quivers at their backs of the same. Both the one and the other were vpon their knees. There was

vpon

vpon the Table before him, paper and all things necessarie to write: which is an ordinarie vie amongst them at all times, when there is any publicke audience, and on the one side of the board a Lion made of blacke wood, which was (as after they vnderstood) the Armes of that Province. So straight-ways hee made signes vnto them to draw neere, which they did, and kneeled downe a little from the Table which was whereas the Master of Ceremonies did walk. In this fort they began to talke with him by their Interpreter, and told them the occasion of their coming into that Citie and Kingdome, and from whom and vnto whom they were sent. But hee made signes vnto them that they should arise, the which they did with a very good will, and did persue in their intent. But the Vice-roy did cut them off before they could make an end, and asked if they had brought any Letter from their King, vnto the King his Lord, whom they would goe to see and talke with: but when they answered no, hee straight-ways took his leave of them, saying, that they were welcome, and that they should depart vnto their lodgings and to take their ease, for that afterwards they should haue occasion to declare their mindes vnto him, and hee would giue them their answer, for that the King was farr off, and it required long time to come whereas hee is, but he would write vnto him, and according vnto his commandement, hee would make them answer. And therewith hee took the Letter, and the memorill of the present, and commanded in his presence, to put about the neckes of the Spaniards in manner of a scarf, to either of them six peeces of Silke, and vnto the Souldiers their companions, and vnto *Ommoon*, and *Sinjay*, each of them foure peeces, and to euery one of their seruants two a piece, and to giue vnto the two Friars and the Souldiers, *Ommoon*, and *Sinjay*, euery one of them two branches of Siluer.

With the Silke about their neckes, and with the branches in their hands, they returned out of the Hall and downe the stayres the way they came, and so through the court into the streets, from whence they saw them that the Court gave with so great a noyse, as when they did open it. From thence at the request of *Ommoon*, and *Sinjay*, they went vnto the house of *Toto*, who is the Captayne general of all the men of Warre, and vnto the house of *Cagnio*, who is the chiefe Standard-bearer of the houses: where they were nigh the one the other, very faire and great. They found them with great Maistries of the Vice-roy, and in the same order, with a Table before them, and had on each side of them armed Souldiers, kneeling on their knees. Yet did they not vnto our men with the courteisie that the Vice-roy vied, to caute them to stand vp, which was the occasion, that straight-ways they made a shew that they would depart and bee gone, complaining of *Ommoon*, and *Sinjay*, for that they did carrie them thither, and told them with anger, that the Gouverneur of *Manilla*, did intreat them in a different sort, who was there resident for the mightiest Prince in all the world, and they came thither for, neither was their going thither to bee equalled, vnto the benefite that they came thither for. This discontent the which they received, was the occasion that they would not goe to make any more visitations, although the sayd *Ommoon*, and *Sinjay*, for their owne intert, would haue carryed them to the houses of other Officers, and Gentlemen of the Court.

At their coming thither, they found all their stuffe in good order, and their dinner marvellously well provided, and the whole house hangd and trimmed, as though it had beene for the Kings owne person, with many waying men and Souldiers, those which did guard them both day and night, and hanging at the doore two tables or boards (commanded by the Vice-roy) wherein was written who they were, that were there lodged, and from whence they came, and whereas, and that none whoe soe, should bee so hardie as to offer them any wrong or disturbance, vpon paine to bee for the same offence severely punished. In this house they were more in quiet, then in any other place, whereas they had bene, neither did the people giue them so much trouble, by reason of the great care which the Iudges had in putting order for the same, by the commandement of the Vice-roy, yet was it the greatest Towne and most populated, of all that Province (although in other Provinces there be that be much bigger) and is adiuined that the Citie of *Taylin*, or *Soniam*, (where the King and his Court is resident) hath three hundred thousand households, and yet there is a bigger Citie in the Kingdome called *Lanchin*.

This Citie of *Auecho*, hath a very faire and strong Wall made of stone, which is six fathom high, and foure fathom broad, the which was measured many times by our people, for that they haue a gate out of their lodging that did open to the same. This wall is all couered over with tyles to defend the rayne-water for hurting of it, which could not to the contrary but receive damage, for that there is no tyne-vise in the whole wall. They haue not one Cattle in all this Citie, neither is there any vife in all that Kingdome, for all their force and strength in their Gates, the which be made very strong, with a double wall, within very broad, betwixt the which are continually many Souldiers, such as doe keepe watch and ward both day and night. Vpon these gates they haue much Ordnance, but very ill wrought. The whole wall is full of battlements, and thereon written the names of such Souldiers as are bound to repaire thither in the time of necessitie. At euery hundred paces they haue lodgings, the which are very huge and great: there whereas in the time of necessitie doe remaine and dwell their Captaynes,

D d

Lions the Armes of that Province, perhaps this device of *Fu*, who mislooke them (seeing them common on pillars, &c.) to be the Kings Armes, which were but of those places.

Toto. Cagnio.

Reports of *Pegu*, called *Taylin* also and *Soniam*. *Lanchin* for *Nanchin*, or *Nanchin*, See *Rice*.

Auecho described.

Ordnance bud

to

As long as the troubles do endure, all the wall is fortified with two great mores or ditches, the one within and the other without, which they do fill at all times when they please, by the ditches which they have from the River for the same purpose, and doe fill as water when they please, by the ditches in the City, whereas they have their flanks of the moit part full of Hills. The Mountains, which is the occasion that it is not so heal-ftul, and the inhabitants say, that it is by reason of the Mountains, and many times it is over-flown in the winter, by spring-tides from the River, and in that year that this doth happen, it doth defile much and ruinate a great part of the City, as it was at that time when our people did flee it, for that in the winter before they were troubled with these great years, which did them much harme.

The next day after that our people came into the Citie, the Vice-roy dyd send to invite them to dinner to his owne houle, whereas he made them a great banquet in the forme following. At this coming unto the Palace there came forth a great number of Gentlemen, servants unto the Vice-roy, to bid them welcome, with great force of musicke and tokens of mirth. Banged into the first Court, they brought them into a mighty Hall that was very artificially wtrimmed, wherein was a great number of Tables set in such order, as they were in the banquet that was made them by the Governour of *Cuncheas*, (as hath bene told you) although the number and furniture did farre exceed the other. But before they did sit downe, there came vnto them two Captaynes principall men, vnto whom the Vice-roy had committed the charge of the banquet, to see all things in his name, for that it is a custome in that Kingdome, that Noble men should not be present in their banquetes they make. So the charge was giuen vnto them, to make them be merrie, & to see that their guests be content. When they came vnto them they vied great courtesy, and passed away the time with gallant discourses, till it was time to go to dinner, and that they began to bring in their viuals. Then before they did sit downe, and before the first of Wine, they went a cup in his hand, in manner of a *Salute*, as they did before, and the Captaynes did take each of together whereas they might discouer the Heuons and after that, being full of Wine, they went to Saints of heaven, adding thereunto many words of prayers : and principally they did request that the coming of their new guests might be profitable vnto them all, and that the friendship which they did pretend to establish, might be for good both vnto the one and to the other. This their prayer being done, they did spill out the Wine making a great courtesie, then they vied straight-wayes filled againe, and making reuerence vnto their guests euerie one by himself, they led the Cups downe vpon the Tables whereas the *Fachens* should stand, whereas they were let euerie one by himselfe. This being done, the first seruice was set vpon the boards, and the Captaynes were set at other Tables. The time which the banquet indured (which was very late) till there was great force of musicke and instruments, as of *Vials*, *Gittens*, and *Rebukes*, was such that them many of the Gentlemen did not see them merrie at their dinner. The which being done, the *Captayns* did beare their guests com to the Palace, whereas they did anew invite them to dinner for the next day, in the same Hall, they obeying their request did come, whereas was made vnto them a banquet more noble than the first. This day at the banquet was prelent the *Trois*. In this second banquet they had as the day before, with great musicke, and a Comedie that indured long, with many prettie and merrie iests : there was also a juggler, who did his feates very artificially, as well in vaulting in the ayre, as vpon a flasse that two men did hold on their shoulders. Before the Comedie did begin, his Interpreter the signification thereof was told them, that the better they might content themselves in the conceits.

The next day they lent the present, and those who carried it, did afterward give our people to understand that in opening the present, there was a note which said before a No aim, and straight-ways put in again where it was taken out, before the Catey Notarie and other witnesses, which being done, he held it up and lent it into the City of *Tygheto*, unto the King and his Council, for that they have a rigorous Law in that Kingdom, that no subject or such as have any office of Government, to receive any present of what quality ever it be, so without licence of the King or of his Council. This is conformal to what that, which the Governor of *Chin-ha* did in the presence of our people.

The next day following, the Vice-roy did lend to visite them, and to aske of them a Sword, a Harquebuisse and a Flasse: for that hee would cause others to bee made by them, the which they did lend, and afterwards vnderstood, that they had counterfeited the same, although not in so perfect manner.

Then at a rare time our people seeing, that their being in that Citie seemed to be long and like to be longer, they did procure to find away the time, in the best manner they could, and went abroad unto the Citie, and did by other of them that which they thought best. Whereof they found great abundance, and so at small price, they bought it almost till they were full. They bought many Bookes that did interest of diuers matters, which they brought with them to the Islands. The next day they went to see the Gates of the Citie, and all such curious things as were to be seen, for as they could learne or understand, which were many. But amongst them all, they saw a lumpsumme Token of their Lids, in whose chiefe Channell they counted, and saw sundry

CHAP. 3. §. 4. *Three headed Image. Vice-royes jealousy. Subjection.* 303

and eleven Idols, besides a great number more that were in other particular Clappels, all were of curved work, very well proportioned and gilded; but in especial three of them that were placed in the midst of all the rest, the one had three heads proceeding out of one body, the other was looking on the other in full face, the second was the forme of a Woman with a Child in her armes, the third of a Man appalled after the forme and fashion, that the *Christians* doo call the Apocryphous Idols. Of all the rest some had four armes, and some had fixe, and other eight, and other foure marvellous deformed monstres. Before them they had burning Lamps, and many Twines perfumes and Incense, but in especial, before the three above specified.

But when that the Vice-roy did vnderstand, that our people did goe viewing the Citie gates and Temples (and perceiue that they that gaue him the notice did suspect it, that it was to some ill intent) therewith hee straight-ways commanded, that they should not goe forth of their lodging, without his licence: and likewise commanded the Captaine that hee should giue notice to content thereto, as he had done, and likewise that none should carrie them any thing for to sell, for hee that it should be punished with whipping. Yet notwithstanding, they had euery day very sufficient necessities for their perfonages in such ample vnderstanding, they had e remayne, and not lacke. In this closefollie and keeping in, they suffered many dayes with much fadefulle, and oppressed with melancholicke humours, to seee that their purpose wherefore they did passe it ouer in the best wile they could, in committing it with heaueie eate vnto God, for whole honour and glory they did attempt that voyage, and prayed vnto him for to moue their hearts to content, that the religious Fathers might remayne in that Countrey, for to learne the language (as they had begun many dayes before) by which means their soules might be faued, and clearely deliuered from the tyrannie of the Deuill, who of truth had foules might in possession. So after many dayes, that they had remayned in that close estate, as aforesaid, they determined for to goe and talke with the Vice-roy, and to bee fully refused, either to tarry or returne from whence they came, but were not permitted.

In this order they remained in the Citie certayne daies, and for to conclude, either to flay there, or depart the Kingdome, they were refolute, and determined to write a Letter unto the Vice-roy, They could finde none that would write this letter for them, although they would have payed them very well for their paines. Till in this end, by great request and prayings, the Captayne *Ononice* did write it for them, and straight-ways departed vnto the Citie of *Ampun*, *Ampin*. that he was not farre off, to put away the suspicion they might conceiue, that hee wold write the letter, if that peraduenture the Vice-roy would take it in ill part. Their letter being written, they sent great diligence in sending the same, for that there was none that would carrie it, neither that with requests and gifts, when he should enter into the Palace to deliuer it. But in conclusion, did deliuer the same unto them, they perfwaded their Captayne of their guard to carrie it, who bringing it vnto him, for that they did certifie him, in name of the *Captaine*, *lying*, that he tooke it of them himself. Having read the letter, he answered, that he would carrie it, but that it was thing that did import very much adoe at the first time. And in that, touching the *Francis* that remained in that Countrey to preach, at that time he could make them no answer, for that in such manner, it was fitter he should haue the good-will of the Royall Councell. Yet would hee make answer vnto the letter he was brought from the Gouernour of *Manilla*, and that they might depart, and returne againe to the Citie as they brought *Lindabo* prisoner or dead, the which being done, then shall the Vice-roy be contented which they doe pretend, and to remayne and preach at their will. With this answer they remayne without all hope to remaine there, and did incontinent prepare themselves to depart from that Countrey, and bought many bookes to carrie with them, wherein was comprised all the secrets of that Kingdome. By reason whereof, they might seee large notice vnto the royall Maistie of *King Philip*. The which being vnderstood by the Vice-roy, who had let them buye of bookes, for that he would giue them freely, all such bookes as they would desire to use: the which afterwards hee did not accomplish.

In the mean time they that layed in this Citty, amongst all other things that they understood, to draw away the time was one, it was guen ship of the *Japones*, with others of his *Priest*, there was a *Portugall* prisoner, who was taken from the *Japones*, with others of his *Priest*, who were dead in the Prison, and none left alive but himselfe; with others of his *Priest* desirous for fee him, and to learne of him some secrets of the *Catholike Religion*. Our people being there a great while, they did procure to take with him, asking licence, for that hee had been a Lieutenant unto the Vice-roy, who did not only refuse to grant it them, but made diligent inquire who they were, that did give them to understand thereof, by which means they could not have their desire.

Upon a fodayne there came newes vnto the Citie, that the Rouer Limbon was vpon the coast
banche, vsing his old accustomed cruelties, and how that he had spoiled and robbed a Towne
 on the sea coast. This newes was throughout all the Citie, and appeared to bee true, teachinge

Three headed
Image.
A woman with
childe.

Vice roy
icaloufic.

**People in great
subjection.**

Taney another
Pier, taken to
bee Limabon,
So pition of
euill.

the effect of the deed : yet false touching the person, for that the Rouer was called *Taney*, an
enemie, and contrarie vnto *Limabon* : but a friend vnto *Intaquian*, of whom we haue spoken of.
But thereupon the Vice-roy, and all of the Citie, were comfortable in the supposition that they
had receiued, which was that our people were come into that Kingdome vpon some euill pre-
sence, and to see the secrets thereof, to some euill end, which was the occasion that from that
time forwards, they shewed them not to good countenance as they did before. These newes was
not to loone come, but straight-ways the Vice-roy did fend for *Omoncon*, (who was then return-
ed from his visiting) and *Sinsay*, vnto whom he had done courtesie, and giuen them the tytle of
Loytas and Captaynes, and hee did rephend them very sharply for that they had brought o-
uer people thither, and sayd, that they had told him a lye, in saying that *Limabon* was be-
lieged, in such sort that hee could not escape, neither had the *Castillo* burnt his Ships, and that all was
but a made matter amongst themselves, and how that the Captaynes which they brought, and
sayd that they had taken from *Limabon*, they had robbed from other places, and sayd that the
Spaniards, were spies that came to discover the secrets, and strength of the Kingdome, and that
they had brought them thither, by force of gifts that they had giuen them. They answered
him with great humilitie, in saying, that in all that which they had sayd they did speake the
truth, and that it should appeare at such time, as the newes of the Rouer should bee better
knowne, the which if it shall appeare to be contrarie, they were there ready for to suffer what-
soeuer punishment that should bee giuen them. The Vice-roy being somewhat satisfied with
this their iustificatiō, had them to depart, remitting all things vnto time for the true declarati-
on thereof. Then *Omoncon*, and *Sinsay*, came straight-ways to giue the *Spaniards* to vnderstand
of all that had passed with the Vice-roy, and what they vnderstood of him, which caused in
them so great teares, that for the time which it endured (which was till such time as they vnder-
stood the truth as aforesayd) they payed very well for their feasts and banquets the which they
made them. All this happened in the time that *Omoncon*, and *Sinsay*, were at variance, and
spake many inuious words the one of the other, discovering their intents and deuises, where-
by it plainly appeared, that in all that which they had told vnto the Vice-roy, they lyed, but
in especiall *Omoncon*, *Sinsay* did dissemble, for hee sayd and told vnto all people, that by his or-
der and industrie, our people did fire the Ships of *Limabon*, and besieged him, with other spee-
ches in the like sort, yet twentie dayes before his coming thither, all was ended and done
as appeared. The occasion of their enmitie and falling out, was for that the Vice-roy had
giuen vnto *Omoncon*, a tytle and charge of more honour, then vnto *Sinsay*, hauing made betwixt
them a comfort, that the reward or dignitie should bee equally diuided betwixt them, and that
the one should speake of the other the best they could, because the Vice-roy should doe them
friendship. This condition and comfort (as appeareth) was euill performed by *Omoncon*, being
addicted vnto selfe-looue, and seemed vnto him that *Sinsay*, did not deserve so much as hee did,
for that he was a baine man, and of the Sea, and hee of the more nobilitie, and had the office
of a Captayne.

Omoncon and
Sinsay, are vni-
uersall.

With this griefe and care remayned the *Spaniards* certaine dayes kept close in their lod-
gings, and were not visited so often as they were wont, they first came thither, which
did augment very much their feare, till such time as they vnderstood, that the Vice-roy either
of his owne good-will, or else by some particular order from the King and his Counsell, had cal-
led together all the Gouernours of that Prouince of *Aucoha*, to treat of matters touching *Li-
mabon*, as also in particular, why and wherefore the *Spaniards* came thither, and to resolve them-
selves wholly in all things requisite for the same. So when that they were all come together,
which was in a short time, and amongst them the Gouernour of *Chuncho*, who by another name
was called *Infuanto*, they had particular meetings together with the Vice-roy, in the which
they were all agreed to haue a general meeting, whereunto should bee called the *Castillo*, and
to demand of them in publicke audience, the cause of their coming and being heard, to giue
them their answer according as they had determined : for the which vpon a day appointed they
met all together (but not the Vice-roy) in the house of the *Cagontoc*, and commanded to come
before the *Castillo*, who did accomplish their request with a great good-will, for that they vnder-
stood that they were called to treat of their matter, either to tarrie or depart. So when
they came thither, they were commanded to enter into a mightie Hall, whereas they were all
set in verie rich Chayres with great grauitie and maiestie. The *Infuanto* seemed to bee the chief-
est amongst them, but whether it was for that hee was the principallest next vnto the Vice-roy
(or as it was told them) for that it was hee that sent *Omoncon*, in the chafe of the Rouer *Li-
mabon*, they knew not, but so loone as they were entred into the Hall, they were commanded to
draw nigh, there, whereas they were all placed, without bidding them to sit downe, neither did
they vie any particular circumstance or courtesie. The *Infuanto* tooke vpon him the charge, and
demanded of the *Spaniards* (by means of the Interpreters) what was the occasion of their com-
ing into that Countrey. The *Spaniards* answered as they thought : and supposed, that at that
time it could not bee, but that *Limabon* was either taken prisoner or slaine. Then did the *Infuanto*

General con-
sultation.

conclude his speech, in saying vnto them that they should returne vnto their owne Countrey to
the Islands, and at such time as they did bring *Limabon*, they would conclude all things touching
the friendship they requested, and also for the Preaching of the Gospell.

So from that day forwards, they did procure with all haile for to depart, and gaue the Vice-
roy to vnderstand thereof, who answered them and sayd, that they should comfort themselves
and receiue joy and pleasure, and that hee would dispatch them, so loone as the Visitor of that
Prouince was come to *Aucoha*, which would bee within ten dayes, for that hee had written
vnto him, that he should not dispatch them vntill his coming, for that hee would see them.
From that day forwards, he commanded that sometimes they should let them goe forth abroad
to recreate themselves, and that they should see vnto them some particular pleasure or friend-
ship. So one of them was carryed to see the Murthering of their men of warre, which they haue
in a common custome throughout all the Kingdome, to doe it the first day of the New-moone,
and is a lye sure to bee sene : and they doe it in the field which is joyning vnto the walls of
the Citie, in this manner following. There were joyned together little more or lesse then twen-
tie Choulin Souldiers, Pike-men and Harquebusts, who were so expert, that at the sound
of the Drum or Trumpet, they straight-ways put themselves in battell array, and at another
sound in a squadron, and at another time shot doe diuise themselves from the rest, and discharge
their Pieces with very gallant and good order, and with a trice put themselves againe into their
places or standings : this being done, the Pike-men came forth and gaue the salute all toge-
ther, with so good order and comfort, that it seemed vnto the *Spaniards*, that they did exceede all
the warlike orders vnto in all the world : and if it were so, that their stomachs and hardnesse
were equal vnto their dexteritie, and number of people, it were an easie thing for them to con-
quer the dominion of all the world. If it so chance, that any Souldier should lacke in his Office,
and not repaire to his place appointed, hee is straight-ways punished very cruelly, which is the
occasion, that euery one of them hath a care vnto his charge. This their Muster endured four
houres, and it was certified vnto the *Spaniards*, that the same day and houre it is done in all
Cities and Townes, throughout the whole Kingdome, although they are without suspicion
of enemes.

Five and twentie dayes after that the *Infuanto* had giuen the resolute answer vnto the *Spani-
ards*, came the Visitor thither, and the whole Citie went forth to receiue him, who entred in
with so great Maiestie, that if they had not knowne who hee was, they could not haue bene
perfwaded, but that hee had bene the King. The next day following, the *Spaniards* went to vi-
lite him, for duties sake, as also for that hee had a desire to see them. They found him in his lod-
ging, where he began to make visitation of the Citie. In their Courts were an infinite number
of people, which came thither with Petitions and complaynes, but in the Halls within, there
was none but his Seruants and Sergeantes. When that any came for to present his Petition, the
Porter that was at the entrie made a great noyse, in manner of an *O* *Chif*, for that it was a good
way from the place whereas the Visitor did sit, then cometh fourth straight-ways one of his
Pages, and taketh the Petition, and carryeth it vnto him. At this time it was told him how
40 that the *Castillo* were there : hee commanded that they should enter, and talked with them a
few words, but with great courtesie, and all was touching the Imprisonment of *Limabon*, with-
out making any mention of their departure or tarrying. So after awhile that hee had beheld
them and their apparell, hee tooke his leaue of them, saying, that by reason of the great businesse
hee had in that visitation, hee could not then see them any courtesie, neither to vnderstand of
what their request and desire was, but gaue them great thanks for their courtesie shewed, in
that they would come to visite him.

Three dayes after the Visitor was come thither, the *Infuanto* departed for his owne house,
with order that with all speed possible, hee should ordayne Ships wherein the *Castillo* should re-
turne vnto the *Philippinas*. Likewise the same day, all those that were there assembled by the
50 order of the Vice-roy, departed vnto their owne houses. And the *Spaniards* were commanded
for to stay vntill the full of the Moone, which should bee the twentieth of August, and that day
they should take their leaue of them : for on that day amongst them, it is holden for good to be-
gin any thing whatsoever. Wherein they doe vie great superstition, and doe make many ban-
quets, as vpon New-yeeres day.

The day before the departure of the *Spaniards*, there came some in behalfe of the Vice-roy to
invite them, and made them banquet in the order and fashion as at the first : although this (for
that it was at their departure) was more sumptuous, wherein was represented a Comedie, which
was very excellent and good, whose argument was hrit declared vnto them. All the which they
did represent so naturally, and with so good apparell and personages, that it seemed a thing to
60 passe in Act. There was not in this banquet the Vice-roy, but those Captaynes which were there
the first time : and another Captayne, vnto whom was giuen the charge, to bring the *Spaniards*
vnto *Manilla*, who was called *Chantelay*, a principall Captayne of that Prouince. When the
banquet was ended, they were carryed with great companie from the Hall, whereas the banquet
was made, vnto the house of the *Cagontoc*, who was the Kings Treasurer, & dwelt there hard by.

New-moone
Musters.

Their audacity,
their Piques,
hearts, are sayd
to be taught.

Souldiers are
punished.

Visitors en-
trance in, first.

Manner of his
Courts.

Superstition.

Parting com-
piment.

Treasur.

of whom they were marvellously well received with louing words and great courtesie: in saying that he hoped very shortly to see them againe, at such times they shall returne with *Limabon*, and that as then their friendship should be fully concluded, and would intreat with them in particular of other matters. This being done, he gaue vnto them a Present for to carrie vnto the Governour of *Manila* in recompence of that which was sent vnto the Vice-roy: the Present was forty pieces of Silke and twentie pieces of *Buraco*, a Litter Chaire and gilt, and two *Quas*, *tasles* of Silke, and a Houfe. Likewise hee sent the like Present vnto the *Generall of the field*, and to either of them a Letter in particular: these things were put in Chifts which were very moggitt the Captaines and other Officers that were at the siege of *Limabon*, with three hundred blacke Mantles and as many *Quitafases* to be parted amongst the Souldiers. Besides all these, he gaue vnto the Friars each of them eight pieces of Silke, and vnto the Souldiers their companions foure pieces each of them, and to euery one his Houfe and a *Quitafal* of Silke: their Houfes were very good to trauell by the way. This being done the *Coyone* tooke his leaue of them, and willed them to goe and take leaue and licence of the *Vice-roy* and the *Visitor*, that they might depart, for that all things were in a readinesse for their Voyage: the which commandement they did straight-wayes accomplish, being very well content and satisfied of the great fauours and courtesies, the which they received both of the one and the other: Likewise of the *Teece*, is *Captaine Generall*, whom they also did visit and tooke their leaue.

The *Spaniards* departed from the Citie of *Ancho*, vpon a Tuesday, being the three and twentieth of August in the fight of all the people of the Citie, who came forth to see them with great gresse and throng, as they did when they first came thither into the Countrey: they were all carried in Litter Chaires, yea, their very laues, for that it was so commanded by the Vice-roy the Friars were carried by eight men a piece, and the Souldiers by foure men a piece, and all their Seruants and Slaves were carried by two men a piece. Looke so many men as was to carrie them, there went so many more to helpe them when they waxed wearie, besides foure and twentie that carried their Stuffs. There went alwayes before them a Harbinger for to provide their Lodgings, and with him went a Pay-malter, whose charge was to ordaine and prouide men for to carrie their Litter Chaires, and to give them for their trauell that which is accustomed, and to pay all costs and charges spent by the *Spaniards*.

After that they departed from *Ancho*, they made of two dayes Journey one, which was the occasion that they came to *Chinchoe* in foure dayes. At their entering into the Citie they found a Seruant of the *Infuanto*, with order and commandement, that they should proceed forwards on their Journey, and not to stay in the Citie, but to goe vnto the Port of *Tanysa*, whither he will come the next day following. They obeyed his commandement, and made so much haste that in two dayes they came vnto the Village of *Tangas*, whereas they had bene before, and particular mention made thereof. In the same Village they were lodged, well enterdayed and had great good chere: from thence they went in one day to *Tanysa*, which was the first Port wher-as they did disembark themselves, when as they came from the Ilands vnto that firme Land: the Iustice of the Towne did lodge them in the same Houfe whereas they were first lodged, and did prouide for them of all things necessary and needfull, and that in abundance, till the coming of the *Infuanto*, which was within four dayes after, for that he could not come any sooner (although his desire was) for that it was very foule we weather.

The third of September, the *Infuanto* sent and commanded the *Spaniards* that they should imbarke themselves, for that it was that day the conjunction of the Moone (although at that time the ships were not fully in a readinesse). They obeyed his commandement, and the *Infuanto* himselfe went to the water side, in whose presence came thither certaine Religious men of their manner, and after their fashion they made Sacrifice with certaine *Prayers*, in the which they craved of the Heauens to giue good and faire weather, and a sure Voyage and fauourable Seas vnto all those that shal faile in those ships. This Ceremony being done (which is a thing very much vsed in that Countrey) the *Spaniards* went vnto the *Infuanto*, who was there with great company and Ma-
 30
 40

30
 40
 50
 60
 70
 80
 90
 100
 110
 120
 130
 140
 150
 160
 170
 180
 190
 200
 210
 220
 230
 240
 250
 260
 270
 280
 290
 300
 310
 320
 330
 340
 350
 360
 370
 380
 390
 400
 410
 420
 430
 440
 450
 460
 470
 480
 490
 500
 510
 520
 530
 540
 550
 560
 570
 580
 590
 600
 610
 620
 630
 640
 650
 660
 670
 680
 690
 700
 710
 720
 730
 740
 750
 760
 770
 780
 790
 800
 810
 820
 830
 840
 850
 860
 870
 880
 890
 900
 910
 920
 930
 940
 950
 960
 970
 980
 990
 1000

and therewith they departed to the waters side, towards the Boat which was tarrying for them. As they passed by the Religious men (that before we spoke of) they saw a great Table set, and vpon it a whole Oxe with his throat cut, and hard by the same a Hogge and a Goate, and other things to be eaten: the which they had ordained for to make Sacrifice, which they doe vie in the like Affaires.

They being imbarked in the Boate, they were carried aboard the Admirall, which was the ship appointed for them to goe in: then presently they beganne to stirre the ship, from one place vnto another with certaine Boats and Cables which they had there ready for the same purpose. The ship did not so soone begin to moue, but the Religious men alioare did beginne their Sacrifice, the which did indure vntill night, ending their Feasts and Triumphs in putting forth of the Citie, and vpon their Gates many great Crosses and Lights. The Souldiers shot off all their Harquebusses, and the hippees that were in the Port shot off all their Arillerie, and on the shoare a great noise of Drummes and Bells all the which being ended and done, the *Spaniards* went ashore againe vnto their Lodging: but first the *Infuanto* was departed vnto his owne Houfe, with all the company that he brought with him.

The next day the said *Infuanto* did inuite them vnto a Banquet, which was as famous as any which had bene made them vnto that time. He was at the Banquet himselfe, and the Captaine Generall of all that Prouince. There was abundance of meates and many pretie iudels to passe away the time, which made the Banquet to indure more then foure houres: the which being done, there was brought forth the Present which the *Infuanto* did send vnto the Governour of *Manila* in returne of that which was sent to him. The Present was fourteen pieces of silke for the Governour of *Manila*, and ten pieces for the *Generall of the field*: he also commanded to be giuen vnto the Friars each of them foure pieces, and vnto the Souldiers each of them two pieces, and vnto their Seruants and Slaves certaine painted Mantles, and therewith hee tooke his leaue of them very friendly, and gaue them Letters, the which he had wrote vnto the Governour, and vnto the *Generall of the field*, in witness vnto shewe, the which they had wrote vnto him, and said that all things necessary for their departure was in a readinesse, with victuals for tenne monthes put aboard their ships, so that when as wind and weather did serue they might depart. Also that if in their Voyage it should so fall out, that any of the *Chinois* that went in their ships, should doe vnto them any euill, either abroad or at the Ilands: that the Governour thereof should punish them at his pleasure, and how that the Vice-roy will thinke well thereof. In conclusion, he said vnto them, that he hoped to see them there againe very shortly, and to returne againe with *Limabon*, and when he would supply the wants which now they lacked. The *Spaniards* did kisse his hands, and said, that they had receiued in courtesie more then they deserved, and that in all things, there did abound and not lack, that they remained greatly indebted vnto him for their friendship, and would giue their King notice thereof, that whensoever occasion should be offered, to repay them with the like: and therewith the *Infuanto* departed to his owne Houfe, leaving in the company of the *Spaniards* five Captaine, whose which should goe with them in their company to Sea, and also *Comandante* and *Sinay* who were that day in the Banquet, with the Habit and En-gone of *Loyala*, for that the day before it was giuen vnto them by the *Infuanto*.

Vpon Wednesday which was the fourteenth of September, the wind came faire, wherewith they hoied vp their Sayles and went to Sea: at their departure there was at the waters side the *Infuanto* and the Iustice of *Chinchoe* to see them sayle, they sayed forwards directing their course towards a small Iland that was not farre off, with determination there to take water for their ships, for that it had in it many Riuers of very sweet water. Within a small space they arrived there, and it had a very faire and sure Port, wherein might ride in securitie a great Navy of ships. All Thursday they were there recreating and sporting themselves, for that it was a pleasant Iland, and full of fresh Riuers. Vpon Friday being the sixteenth of September, the day being somewhat spent, they made saile and tooke Port foure leagues from that place in another Iland called *Laulu*, for to put themselves in a new course, different and contrary vnto that which they tooke when they came vnto that Kingdome, for that the *Chinois* had by experience proved, that in those monethes the winds were more fauourable then in other monethes, and for the next day following they sayled vnto another Iland which was called *Chautambo*, not farre distant from that of *Laulu*. This Iland was full of little Townes, one of them was called *Gauin*, which had five Forts of Towers made of Lime and Stone, very thicke and strongly wrought: they were all foure square, and sixe fathome high, and were made of purpose for to receiue into them all the people of those little Townes, to defend themselves from Routers and Theues that daily come on that Coast.

They very much noted, that although this Iland were rockie and sandie, yet was it tilled and sowed full of Rice, Wheate, and other Seeds and Graine. There was in it great store of Kine and Horfe, and they vnderstood that they were gouerned, not by one particular man, to whom they were subiect, neither by any other amongst themselves, nor of *China*, but in common yet notwithstanding they liued in great peace and quietnesse, for that euery one did content himselfe with

Infuanto fast-
well feast.

Ten monthes
provision.

Laulu.

Monofna.

Chautambo.

Gauin.

Kine and
Horfe,
Corn mon-
wellth.

Carca.

with his owne. Vpon Sunday in the afternoon they departed from this Iland, and sayled their course all that night, at the next morning they arrived at another Iland, called *Carca*, which was twentie leagues from the Port of *Tanfuso*, from whence they departed. *Carca*, which seeing what leisure they tooke in this their Voyage, they requested the Captaine to command the Mariners that they should not enter into so many Ports or Harbours. The Captaine answered, and requested them to have patience, for that in making their Iournies as they did, they doe accomplish and follow the order set downe by the Vice-roy and *Infuanto*, who they did, are very fearefull of the Sea, and men that are not accustomed to ingulf themselves too farr,

Ancon.

Nere vnto this Iland there was another somewhat bigger, which is called *Ancon*, wholly dispeopled and without any dwellers, yet a better Country and more profitable for to sow and reape then that of *Carca*. The *Spaniards* being at an Anchor there, understood by the *Chinese* that in times past it was very well inhabited, vnto the which arrived a great Fleet belonging to the King of *China*, and by a great storme were all cast away vpon the fame: the which losse and destruction being understood by another Generall that had the Guard of that Coast, suspecting that the dwellers thereof had done that slaughter, hee came to the shore and slew many of the Inhabitants, and carried all the rest in their ships vnto the firme Land, who afterwards would neuer returne thither againe, although they gaue them licence after that they understood the truth of that successe: so that vnto that time it remained dispeopled, and full of wilde Swine, of the brood that remained there at such time as they were slaine and carried away as you have heard.

A draight.

This Iland and the rest adjoining thereunto (which are very many) have very excellent and sure Ports and Hauens, with great store of fish. These Ilands endured vntill they came vnto a little Gulfe, which is five and fortie leagues ouer, and is sayled in one day, and at the end thereof is the Port of *Cabito*, which is nere vnto *Manilla*. So when that winde and weather fere their turne, they departed from the Iland of *Ancon*, and sailed till they came vnto another Iland called *Plov*, where they understood by a ship that was there a fishing, how that the Rouer *Limon* was escaped in certaine Barkes, which hee caused to bee made very secretly within his Port, of such Timber and Boards as remained of his ships that were burnt, the which was brought in by night by his Souldiers, on that side of the Fort which was next vnto the River, and were not discovered by the *Castilians*, which were put there with all care and diligence to keepe the mouth that come in to helpe them. And towards the Land there whereas hee might escape, they were without all suspicion (they were so strong) and did not mistrust that any such thing should be put in vire, as afterwards did fall out, the which was executed with so great policie and craft, that when they came to understand it, the Rouer was cleane gone, and in safe guard, calling his Barkes at the Iland of *Tocanacan*, the better for to escape and save himselfe, and they said, that it was but eight dayes past that hee fled. With this newes they all received great alteration, but in especiall *Ommen* and *Sinsay*.

After they had remained three weeks in that Harbour detained with a mighty North-wind, that neuer calmed night nor day in all that time. The eleventh day of October, two houres before 40 day, they set sayle and went to Sea. Sixteen leagues from the Port, sailing towards the South, they discovered a mighty Iland very high Land, which was called *Tangerman*, and was of three score leagues about. All inhabited with people like vnto those of the Ilands *Philippina*. Vpon Sunday in the morning being the fourteenth day of October, they discovered the Iland of *Manilla*, of them greatly desired, they layd towards the Land that they so long desired to see, and came thither the twentieth eight day of October, as aforesaid. So that from the Port of *Tanfuso*, which is the first Port of *China*, till they came vnto the Iland of *Manilla*, they were five and fortie dayes, and is not in all full two hundred leagues, which may be made with reasonable weather in ten dayes at the most.

From the Phil.
ippinas to the
Chine is soe
leagues

I could have here added two other Voyages of Franciscans, to China, the one by Peter de Alfaro, 50 and other three of his Order, 1579. the other 1582. by Ignatio, &c. both written at leges by Mendoza. But I haften to our Iesuites exalter Relations. Only I will conclude this storie with Alfaro's returne from China to the Philippinas; and his Relation of their Witche-crafts used in a Tempest then happening: after that two Letters mentioning English ships on that Coast.

A Tempest.

But it so fell out, as they were going along the Coast of the Iland for to enter into the Port of *Manilla*, and being within five leagues of the entry thereof, vpon a sudden there arose the North-wind with so great furie, and caused so great a Sea, that they found themselves in a great deal more danger then in the other storme past, in such sort that they layed before the winde with their fore sayle halfe Mast high, shaking it like all to pieces, and in every minute of an houre ready to be drowned. The *Chinese* for that they are Superstitious and Witches, began to invoke and call vpon the Deuill, for to bring them out of that trouble (which is a thing commonly vied amongst them, at all times when they find themselves in the like perplexities) also they doe request of him to shew them what they should do to bring themselves out of trouble. But when the *Spaniards* understood their dealings, they did disturbe them that they should

not

not persecute in their Lots and Inuocations, and beganne to conjure the Deuils, which was the occasion that they would not answer vnto the Inuocation of the *Chinois*, who did all them after diuers manners, yet they heard a Deuill say, that they should not blame them because they did not answer vnto their demand, for they could not doe it for that they were disturbed by the conjuration of those *Spanish* Fathers, which they carried with them in their ship.

So presently when the night was come, God was so pleased that the storme ceased, and became in few houres very calme, although it endured but a while, for as they began to set sayle to navigate towards the Port, and almost at the point to enter into the fame, a new storme fell on them, and with so great force, that they were contrayned to returne vnto the Sea, for 50 they feared to be broken in pieces vpon the shoares. The *Chinois* began anew to invoke the Deuils by writing, which is a way that they neuer let but doe answer them, as they did at this instant, and were not disturbed by the conjurations of the Fathers, yet notwithstanding they layed in their anchors, for that they said, that within three dayes they should be within the Cite of *Manilla*, and after it was more then four dayes.

Inuocation by
writing.

In conclusion, hauing by the fauour of almighty God overcome all their travels by the Sea, and the necessitye of the lacke of water and victuals, they arrived at the desired Port the second day of February, Anno 1580. whereas they were receiued by the Gournour, and of all the rest with great ioy, &c.

Two Letters taken out of BARTOLOME LEONARDO DE ARGENSOLA his Treatise, called *Conquista de las Ylas Malucas*, Printed at Madrid, 1609. page. 336. mentioning the coming of two English ships to China: which seeme to be two ships of the fleet of * BENIAMIN WOOD:

The former written by the Visitor of *Chinchee* in China, vnto the Gournor of the *Philippinas*, Don PEDRO DE ACUNNA.

* See pag. 13.
6. 1. 5.

TO the grand Captaine of Luzon. Because wee have understood, that the Chinese, which went to trade and traffique into the Kingdom of Luzon, have beene slaine by the Spaniards, wee have made inquisition of the cause of these slaughters, and have besought the King to doe iustice on him, that hath bene the cause of so great mischiefe, to procure a remedie for the time to come, and that the Merchants may live in peace and safety. In the yeeres past, before I came hither to be Visitor, a certaine Sangleie, called Tione, with three Mandarines or Iudges having the Kings *Passe*, came to Cabit in Luzon, to seeke Gold and Silver: which was all lyes: because he found neither Gold nor Silver. And therefore I besought the King, that he would punish this deceiver Tione, that the good iustice that is used in China might be knowne. In the time of the former Vice-roy, and Capado, Tione, and his companion Yanlion delinquent this vnto us. I afterwards besought the King, that hee would cause all 40 the Papers of the cause of Tione to be copied out, and that he would send for the said Tione with his proffers, before his iudges. And I myselfe sent for the said Tione, and caused it to appear that all was but lyes, which the said Tione had said. And I wrote vnto the King, saying, That reason of the lyes which Tione had made, the *Castilians* suspected that we sought to be at warre vpon them: and that therefore they had slaine above thirtie thousand Chineses in Luzon. The King did that which I besought him. And so he chastised the said Yanlion, commanding him to keepe to death, And hee commanded Tione, had to be cut off, and to be put in a Cage. The people of China which were slaine in Luzon, were no fault. And I with others requested this businesse with the King, that I might know his pleasure in this affaire: and in another matter, which was this: That there came two English ships to the coast of *Chinchee*; a thing very dangerous for China: That the King might consider what was to be done in these two matters of so great importance. Likewise wee wrote vnto the King, that he would command the two Sangleies to be punished, which liened the Hairen to the Englishmen. And after wee had written these things aforesaid to the King, he answered us that we could learne, wherefore the English ships came vnto China: whether they came to robbe or no? That they should dispatch from thence a Messenger immediately to Luzon: and that they should signify to them of Luzon, that they should not give credite to the false and lying people of China: And that forthwith they should put to death these two Sangleies, which liened the Hairen to the Englishmen. And touching the rest that wee wrote vnto him, we could doe as wee thought best. After we had received this order, the Vice-roy, the Capado, and I sent this message to the Gournour of Luzon: That the Lordship might know the greatness of the King of China. Seeing hee is so mischiefe, that hee gourneth all that the Moon and Sonne doe here upon Earth. And also that the Gournour of Luzon may know the great wisdom wherewith this mighty Kingdom is governed, which King doe this long while now durst attempt to offend. And albeit the Iapponians have pretended to disquiet Corea, which is vnder the Gournment of China: yet they could not obayne their purpose: but they were driven out of it: And Corea hath remained in great peace and safety, as at this day they of Luzon doe well understand.

I found this
translat. with
Maister H.
Laguer.

Tione.

30000. Chineses
slaine in the
Philippinas.

Two English
ships on the
coast of Chin.
doe so: China
is a lye of
Sinsay.

Danger of
bringing ships
to Ossa: Hairen.

Chinese am-
bition
in Asia
tempest
is violent
Cloud.

The

The Answer of Don PEDRO DE ACUNNA, Gouverneur of the Philippines, to the Visitour of Chincheo in China.

THE Governour answered these Letters by the same Messengers that brought them: using termes full of courtesy and authority. Hee rehearsed the rebellion of the Singalees, from the beginning: Hee justified the defense of the Spaniards, and the punishment that was executed upon the Offenders: Hee said, that no Common-wealth can be governed without chastising the bad, nor without rewarding the good. And therefore that he did not repent him of that execution: because it was done for repressing of them that thought to destroy vs. That the Visions should bee Judge, what hee would doe, if the gleyes Merchants Anyhow, which died among the offenders: But that this was impossible to be remedied: because the force of warre doth not give leave to kill some, and to save others, especially being knowne of the Souldiers, in the heats of battell. That using mercy to those that remained alive, condemned them to rove in the Gallies: which is the punishment, which is ordaind among the Castilians for those that have deserved death. Yet if it seeme in China that this may be a cattie, that in not chastising vs. into favour. That the goods of the Chineses that were layes in safe custody. And that it may be seene, that no other affection moueth mee then that of iustice, I will shortly send them to be delivered to the right: Heeres, or unto such persons as of right they belong unto. None other respect moueth mee to any of these things, but that of reason. Whereas you tell mee, That if I will not let as libertie as come with an admie to Manila, it breedeth no fauour in mee. For I hold the Chineses to be so wise, that they will not be moved to such things upon so weak a ground: especially none occasion thereof to be, as they them on our part. And in case they should be of another minde, wee Spaniards are a People which are very well how to defend our Right, Religion, and Territories. And let not the Chineses thinke, that we are Lords of all the World, as they would haue vs thinke. For wee Castilians, which haue mastered the World with our armes, know perfectly the Countries of China. Wherefore they shall doe well to and doth suppress them, and putteth them to great trouble. And it is no new case, that when our enemies thinke that they haue vanquished vs, they finde vs marching and destroying the Confiner of their Land, and not to cease, until wee haue call them out of their Thrones, and taken their scepters from them. I would be much grieved with the change of the commerce: But I beleene also, that Chineses would not willingly lose it, since that thereby they obayne so great profit, carrying to their Kingdoms our Silver, which neuer faileth in trucke of their merchandise, which are slight things, and soone worne out.

The Ships of the Englishmen, which arrived on the coast of China, it was determined not to receive: because they be no Spaniards, but rather * their enemies, and Pirates. Wherefore if they come to Manila, they shall be punished. Finally, I can say Spaniards doe alwayes iustifie our cause, and doe bowe 40 friends, that shall be justified which beare promise. And from hence forward let them know in China, that we neuer doe any thing for feare, nor for the threats of our enemies. Don Pedro concludes, offering continuance of amitie by new bonds of peace with the Kingdoms of China: and that he will let as libertie in due time the Prisoners which he held in the Gallies: albeit he thought to use them, as he did, in the voyage of Maluco: which he put in execution with speed. And all this be precisely performed.

CHAP. IIII.

The reports of a Mahometan Merchant which had beene in Cambalu: and the troublesome trauell of BENEDICTVS GOES, a Portugall suite, from Lahor to China by land, thorow the Tartars Countreys.

Epist. Roman. Caroli. 1599.

Xatai and Cambalu, for Xatai and Cambalu.

Copie.

Eremer Xaeræ a Jesuite, in a Letter from Lahor in India, subiect to the Mogoll, dated August, 1598, relateth that an old man there knowne to haue distributed 100000. Peeces of Gold at Mecca, affirmed to the Prince that he had liued in Xatai thirteenth yeeres, in Xambala the chiefe Citie: that the King thereof was mighty, and had in his Empire one thousand and fiftie Cities, some very populous: that he had often seene the King, with whom no man spakes but by a Supplication, nor is answered but by an Eunuch. And asked how hee had access thither, he said, he being a Merchant suitayned also the person of the Embassadour of the King of Casar.

and being detained in the first Citie by the Magistrate, he shewed his Commission, and Poffe was presently sent to the King, who returned in a moneth, riding ninety or an hundred courses: a Courtier dayes; bringing him Letters of admision, Hee said that they punish ciuies leuellerly: that thie Xataians are white, long bearded, personable, and comely, thier clothes to be preferred before the Rumes or Turkes; in Religion Iameses, (Christians, so called of Iesus), some Mahometans or Iewes, and many Mahometans, insomuch that they hoped to bring the Christian King to that Sect. They had (he said) to the Jesuite in another conference) many Temples, and Images painted and grauen, and Crucifixes which they with great deuotion worshipped; many Priests, much reuerenced, each hauing his owne Church; to whom they offer their gifts, they liued single and kept Schooles; one supererment: at the Kings charge were the Churches built and repaired; they were blacke clothes, and on holidayes red, with Caps like the Jesuits; but greater; many Monasteries of both Sexes, and some in their owne houses, offering a single life; the Countrey rich, hauing many silver Mines; and that the King had foure hundred Elephants, which they said were brought from Malacca, and that Merchants referred thither; the Voyage fixe monethes. Xaeræus addeth, that in Caximir he heard of many Christkims in Rebat, a Kingdome adjoining to Ceta, with Churches, Priests, and Bishops. These reports (sayth Triguano) the Saracens made, either of purpose to deceiue, after their wont; or were deceiued by like shew of Holies in Images, Lamps, Altars, Priests vestments, Processions, Singings, and the like, which the Deuill hath imitated among the Chinois like to our (Romish) Rites.

These reports caused the Jesuits in India to thinke of sending one of their Society into these parts. Pimenta the Father Vitor sent notice thereof to the Pope, and to the King of Spain, who tooke Order with the Vice-roy to be aduised here by Pimenta. Benedictus Goes, a brother of that Society and Coadjutor to Xaeræus, was thought fit for that designe, hauing the Persian tongue. And lauing come from Echebar (father of the present Mogoll) who had lately taken Brampor, with his Legat, to Goa; he was sent backe to Lahor, to accompanie the Merchants; which every fifth yeere, as that Saracens related, with title of Legats of the King of Persia, and other Easterne Kings (not otherwise admitted) went thither. In the yeere therefore 1602, he went to Agra, where Echebar applauded his purpose, and gaue him foure hundred Crowes for his iourney, besides a thousand Rupias hee had already spent. He changed his habite, and dis- 40 his habits like an Armenian Merchant, and so went to Lahor, calling himselfe Branda Amdia, whither he came on the eight of December. He went to the house of Iohn Galsfo a Venetian, and there provided himselfe of necessaries, wearing his haire and beard long, and Leo Griemone a Greeke, well skilled in Turkish and Persian, vnder-taking to be his companion, with Demetrius another Greeke, and Isaac an Armenian. Furnished with diuers writings and a Catalogue of mouable Feasts till An. 1610. he set forth An. 1603, the sixth of Ianuarie from his Superiour, and in Lent after from Lahor, with the companie of Merchants which got from the Mogols to Calcut, almost five hundred men, with many Camels and carriages.

In a moneths iourney they came to a Citie called Athor, in the Province of Lahor; and after fifteen dayes, passed a Riuer a right hot broode, where they stayed five dayes, being told of theues in great number at hand. Two moneths after they came to another Citie called Passior, where they rested twentie dayes. Thence they going to another small Towne, met with a certain Anciente a stranger, by whom they vnderstood that thirte dayes off was a Citie named Capserham, into which the Saracens are not permitted entrance, and if they enterare put to death. But Echebar Merchants are admitted their Citie, yet not their Temples. Hee said, that the Inhabitants of that Region goe to Church all of them in blacke; their Countrey fertile, and plentifull of Grapes. Hereby Goes supposed that they were Christians. In the place where they Thence they recouied of the Lord of the place a Company of foure hundred Souldiers. In five and twentie dayes they came from hence to a place called Ghidid, all which way their carriages 50 went at the foot of a Hill. The Merchants with Armes on, all which way their carriages for Theues, which vie to throw stones from thence on the Passengers, excepte thus prevented. In this place the Merchants pay Tribute. Being assaulted by Theues many were wounded, and they had much adoe to saue their liues and goods. Benedict escaped by flight into the Woods. At night they came againe together, and auoyded the Theues. After other twentie dayes iourney they came to Cabul, a Citie and Mart feire, not yet hauing passed the Mogoll Dominions. Here they stayed eight dayes: for some of the Merchants would goe no further, and others durst not, being so few. In this Mart the Sister of the King of Casar, by whose Dominion they were to passe to Ceta, happened on the Carauan. The Kings name was Massime Carr; this his Sister was Mother to the King of Ceta, and called Agchem (Aze is a title given by the Saracens to those which haue beene on Pilgrimage at Mecca, which the now returned) Being destitute of provision for her iourney, shee demanded aide of the Merchants, promising to restore all faithfully with interest, if when they were come to her Kingdome.

Goer thought it a ne occasion to procure the friendship of another King, his Mogoll Patents now wearing out. Hee lent her therefore on file of some good fixe hundred Crownes, refusing 207

De Chris. egypt. d. 147. Sinai. 15. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.

Athet.

Passior.

Casroham, Saracens not admitted.

Ghidid.

Assault of Theues.

Cabal.

A kind of Marble much valued in China
 Ciarchan.
 From the extreme border of the Mogoll.

any contract of interest, which hee boundlessly repayed in pieces of Marble much esteemed in China, the best merchandise for such as goe to Catay. *Leo Gramme* the Priest, wearied with the tediousness of the journey, went no further, and *Demetrius* stayed in this Citie on merchandising affairs. *Goez* held on with *Isaac* the Armenian, in the company of other Merchants, which gave likelihood of better security. The first Citie they came at was called *Ciarchan*, in which place is great store of Iron. Here *Goez* was not a little troubled, the *Ciarchis* Sale in these his borders being neglected, which all this way hitherto had freed him from payment of Customes. Ten dayes after they came to a small Towne, called *Parnam*, the vntom of the *Mogoll* confines.

After five dayes stay, they had twentie dayes journey oer high Mountaines into a Region named *Angharan*. In fifteene dayes more they came to *Calcuta*. The people of this Region had yellow haire on head and beard like the *Low-Country-men*, and dwell in diuers Villages. Ten dayes after, they came to a place called *Gialadabath*, where the *Bramanes* exact Customes granted them by the King *Bramar*. After other fifteene dayes they came to *Talban*, where *Ciull* broiles detayned them a moneth; the *Calcutians* rebelling and endangering the wayes. Hence they passed to *Clemer*. Vnder *Abdullah* King of *Samarhan*, *Burgania*, and *Bacharate*, and of other neighbouring Kingdomes, is a small Towne, the Capitaine whereof sent to the Merchants to containe themselves within the walls, the *Calcutians* infesting all without. They answered, that they would pay their Customes, and pursue their journey by night. But hee forbade them, saying, that the Rebels had no Hories as yet, which if they could take from the Carauan, they would proue more mischievous; much better it were, if they would ioyne with him to repell them. Scarcely were they come to the walls, when the rumour came of the *Calcutians* coming: at which newes the Capitaine and his ranne away. The Merchants erected a sudden fortification of their packes, and carried into the same great store of stones to frue their turres if Arrowes failed. The *Calcutians* perceiving that, sent a message to the Merchants, that they should feare nothing, for they would accompanie and defend them. They durst not trust them, but resolved to flee to the next Wood, the Thieves taking out of the packes what they pleased, and then calling them forth, and permitting them which their emptied packes to enter the emptye walls. *Benedict* lost nothing but a Horie, for which alio hee after receiued Cotton clothes. They lured within the walls in great feare. But at that time a great Capitaine, named *Qolbet Ebdahad*, sent his Brother one of the *Bacharate* Region to the Rebels, which caused them to permit the Merchants to goe freely: in all which journey the Rere was vexed with Pilferers. Four of them set upon *Goez*, to escape whom hee threw amongst them his *Persian* Turbant, whereof they making a foot-ball, hee meane while set spurs to his Horie and out-tooke his companie.

Eight dayes after with a tedious passage they came to *Badehsian*, called *Tengi*, which signifieth *A troublefome way*: for there is space but for one to passe, and that on the high banke of a great Riuier. The Inhabitants with a companie of Souldiers let upon the Merchants, and tooke from *Goez* three Hories, which hee after redeemed with gifts. Here they stayed ten dayes, and thence in one day came to *Ciarchan*, where they were five dayes detayned with raines in the 40 open field, and were besides assailed by Thieves. Ten dayes after they arrived at *Serpaul*, a place quite forsaken. They climbed into a high Hill, called *Sacristima*, whither the strongest Hories were only able to passe, the rest going about. Two of *Goez* his Hories halted, and had much adoe to outtake their fellows. In twentie dayes journey coming to the Prouince *Sarail*, they there found many neighbouring Villages. After two dayes stay for refreshing, they in two dayes more came to the foot of a Hill, termed *Ciualitib*, which they ascended, thicke covered with Snow, where with many were frozen, and *Goez* was in great danger. For the Snow held them fixe dayes; after which they came to *Tangbat*, which belongs to the Kingdom of *Casfer*. There *Isaac* the Armenian fell from the banke of a great Riuier into the water, and was eight houres space left dead. In fifteene dayes more they stayned the Towne *Iacovich*, so such an ill way that *Goez* left fixe Hories with the trauell. In five dayes hee got (baiting before the companie) to the chiefe Citie named *Hiarshan*, whence hee prouided his companions of necessaries, who soone after arrived there in Nouember, 1603.

Hiarshan the Seat Royall of the Kingdom of *Casfer*, hath great resort of Merchants, and is also well stored with variety of merchandise. The Carauan of *Cabul* here ends their Voyage: and from thence to *Catay* is a new one furnished, the Captainship whereof the King killeth at a great price, and conferreth on the Capitaine Regall power oer the Merchants thorow all that way. It was a yeeres pace before they could all bee ready to so long and dangerous a journey, which required many persons. Neither is it performed euery yeere, but by them only which know they shall be admitted into *Catay*. There is no better merchandise (as before is said) than a certain shining Marble, which wee are wont to call *Iaffer*, for want of a fitter word (which the King of *Catay* buyeth at a great price; and what hee leaueth they may sell to others at exceeding rates. Of it they make diuers ornaments for Vessels, Garments, Giroules, with leaues and flowers artificially engrauen. The Chinese call it *Tweiz*, and of it are two kinds, one more

precious which is taken out of the Riuier *Cotan*, not farre from the Citie Royall, in manner as the Diuers hills for Pearles, and is brought out like thicke flints; the other manner is digged out of Hills, and is lawed into broad flones about two Ells wide, after fitted to the Voyage. This Hill is twentie dayes journey from that Citie Royall, and is fitted *Canfangui Casfo*, that is, *The stone Mountaines*. They are thence taken with incredible labour, both for the defectness of the place, and the inexorable hardness of the Marble, which they say is forced with fire made thereon to yeeld: the licenſe alſo to take it, is deere sold by the King to some one Merchant, who purchaseth the Monopoly; and when they goe thither they carrie a yeeres prouision for the Labourers, which in that space returne not.

Goez visited the King, whose name is *Mahometis*, and presented him with a Watch, a Glasse and other European Commodities, which made him very welcome. Hee would not at first tell him of going to *Catay*, but only spake of the Kingdom of *Culu* East-ward from thence, and procured his grant thereto, assisted by the Sonne or his Sister the Pilgrime Queene before mentioned. Sixe moneths passed, and *Demetrius* one of his old Societie which staid at *Cabul*, came thither. At that time by the Kings Licenſe one of the Merchants was filled Emperour as in just, to whom the other Merchants after the custome gave Presents, which *Demetrius* refusing, was in danger to be imprisoned and beaten (for so large is his power) had not *Benedict* interceded and by a gift compounded the business. Theeues also brake into the House and setting a Sword to the *Armenians* breik terrified him from crying; but our Brother *Demetrius* hearing, cried out and carried them away. *Benedict* was gone to the King of *Quatun* Mother for payment of his Debt: his Residence was ten dayes journey thence, for that he spent a moneth there in before his returne. In this space the *Saracens* raised a report that hee was dead, slaine by their Priests for refusing their holies. Now because hee dyed intestate, they fought to seize on his goods, which was very troublesome to *Isaac* and *Demetrius*, both for defence of the goods, and losse of their Friend, which redoubled their joy at his returne which plentie of that Marble, and hee in thankfullnesse gave much Almes.

On a day as hee was eating with other *Saracens*, one came in armed, and letting his Sword to his brest, charged him to iurke. *Mahomet*. He answered, that in his Law there was no such name inuoked, and therefore refused: and by the company that mad follow was extruded. The like zeale also endangered him on like termes of *Mahometan* profession. On another day he was called by the King of *Casfer* in the presence of his *Casferis*, the Priests, & the *Mulla* or learned men, and asked what Law hee professed, whether that of *Mosy*, of *Dauid*, or *Mahomet*, and whom they call *Isa*, and turned any way when hee prayed, beleueing that God was eury where: about which rose amongst them great controuersie, they vying to turne to the West: yet they concluded that our Law also might seeme good.

Meane-whiles one *Asi* of that Country was named Capitaine of the future Carauan, who inuited our Brother to his House (having heard well of him) to a Feast, wherein they had Musicke after their manner. At the end, hee desired his company to *Catay*, which they had Musicke but had learned by experience how to deale with the *Saracens*, and would be intreated, that he might seeme to doe, rather then receiue, a Favour. The Capitaine vied the Kings mediators. Letters Patentes for all that way. His *Cabul* companions were herewith offended, as loth to lose his company, and much disuaded him; but hee made shew as though hee were loth hereto to displease the King, and for his like had promised the *Carauan Bassa*, which now hee might not reuoke. They said that these people were perfidious, and would deuide him and his: nor was their feare causeless, for many of the Natives had told them, that those three *Armenians* (so they termed *Demetrius* from going further, who were out of the walls would be slaine. *Goez* would not dispaire the hopes of so many, the Archbishop of *Goez*, but in vaine, saying, hee expences, but would adventure his life in the Deligne.

Hee prouided ten Hories for his Carriages, and for his follow, having another at home. The *Bassa* was gone to his house five dayes journey thence to make all ready, and thence sent *Goez* to follow.

Ann 1604. about the mid of Nouember, they came to a place called *Iulci*, where they vied to pay Customes, and their Commiſſions are examined. Hence they went to *Henculac* (so from *Hir-geda*, to *Captalid*, *Zelan*, to *Sare Guebdal*, to *Mesleste*, to *Thaler*, to *Horma*, to *Thocant*, to *Ming-dela*: in this way they spent five and twentie dayes, the way troublesome, both with labour of stones or Rocks, and with Sande. *Asfu* is a Towne of the Kingdom of *Casfer*, the Go who went and gaue him childish Presents, Sugar and the like, and was gently entertained of to iatise him, he did,

Mahomet can
 King of *Casfer*,
 Gila.

* To wit (as it
 seemes) those
 words *La ilah*
ilalah, *Mehu-*
med, *ilalah*, the
 Characteristi-
 call note of
 Mahometan
 profession.
 * To these
 words.

Carauan Bassa,
 See before in
Cherri Monte
 the like jour-
 ney and the
 same places.

Goez deſceth.

Singhan.

Goetz dyeth.

Tartarian Ter-
rors.

Jaszi journey.

Chenel.
1645.

and his Servant ranne from him at *Singhan*, the Mother Citie of the Province of *Setiaisi*, carrying away half their piousness. At the end of March, 1607, he yet made shift to get to *Soeca*, and thither the next day, and sent *Isaac* into the Market who brought *Ferdinandus* to him. Having received the Letters, he brake into a *Nunc dimittis*, as seeming to have ended his Pilgrimage. Eleven dayes after *Goetz* dyeth, not without suspicion of Poison from the *Saracens*. They had perpetual Spies to watch and catch what he left, which they did most barbarously execute, and amongst the rest his Journal was lost which he had written in very small Letters. They fought for to prevent payment of Debts there entered. They would have buried him like a *Saracen*, but *Isaac* and *Ferdinand* excluded them and buried him, with a recitall of the *Rosaria*, in defect of other Bookes. Thus died *Benedict Goetz*, a man of great parts, which had after his admission done great service to the Societie (howsoever he was not a Priest) much esteemed by the Great *Mogul*, whom he averted from the Warre of *India*. He disswaded before his death that Ours should not trust the *Saracens*, nor adventure this way, as vnprofitable and dangerous. And although he dyed without Confession in so many yeeres, yet he was cheerefull in the mercie of God, and professed that his conscience did not scule him of matters of any moment.

By a *Tartarian* cuttome they divide the goods of the deceased amongst them all, and therefore bound *Isaac* threatening to kill him if he turned not *Mahometan*; but *Ferdinand* put up a Supplication to the Vice-roy at *Cancey*, who subscribed that the Governour of *Soeca* should examine the business. He first was inquisitive, but corrupted by bribes threatened to whip him, and held him in Prison three dayes. But he sold his Garments for want of Money, and continued the Suit five monthes, not being able at first to confesse with *Isaac* for want of Language, *Isaac* only uttered a few *Portugall* words, and the Judge had thought they had spoken in the *Canton* Tongue. At last, *Ferdinand* learned to speake *Pejsian*, and was able to confesse with him. The *Saracens* pleaded that *Ferdinand* was a *Chinese* by his countenance, the other a *Saracen*; he answered that his Mother was a *Chinese*, whom he resembled. But nothing mowed the Judge more then that he was an enemy to their Religion, and pulling a piece of Porke out of his sleeve, they both did eat it; whereupon with laughter of the Assembly, the *Saracens* abominated both, spitting at the *Armenian*, and leaving the Suit, saying, that the *Armenian* was deluded by *Isaac*, cozen-er. For in all the way to prevent offence, *Benedict* and *Isaac* had abstained from Porke. And thus all was by the Judges sentence restored to *Ferdinand* which had beene *Benedict's*: but nothing was found, save Marble pieces which had beene hidden in the ground, which was sold, and yielded to pay their Debts and provision for their Journey to *Pejsian*, whither both of them came. They brought a faire gilded Croffe-Picture and the Charters of three Kings, *Caspar*, *Quoton* and *Cualu*, which are retained at *Peguin* for a memoriall. *Isaac* related all this Story to Father *Mattheus* vpon credit of his memorie, and having stayed a month, was sent the wonted way to *Amacea*; where being well entertained, hee in saying thence to *India*, was taken by *Hollanders*, and sold both goods and liberitie. But the *Portugall* of *Mattheus* redeemed him, and he held on his course to *India*, and hearing of his Wives death, went not to the *Mogul* Country, but staid at *Chenel*, and is now at the writing hereof alive.

CHAP. V.

A General Collection and Historical representation of the Iesuites entrance into Iapon and China, vntill their admission in the Royall Citie of Nanquin,

§. I.

OF FRANCIS XAVIER, MELCHIOR NYNNES, VALIGNANVS, RVGGERIVS AND PASIVS.



Orasmuch as we have failed so lately from the *Philippines* to *China*, and backe againe upon our Friers, and have given you a Iesuits Land Journey, we thought it worthy our labour also to launch into the deepe of their Navigations, and to honour the Iesuits, (to whom in the following parts of this Historie we are so indebted) with observing their Observations of *Iapon*, and the intercourse thereof with *China*; and from it (as the greatest and most glorious Easterne Iesuiticall Conquest) to shipp our felues in their Barge to *China*. How *Francis Xavier* (now Sainted at *Rome*, together with *Ignatius Loiola*, first Founder of that Order) laboured the Conversions of

Ignatius and Francis canonized by Greg. 15. March 15. 1621.

Gentilis

CHAP. §. I. Iesuites glorying of Conversions: their Profelites examined. 317

Gentilis and *Pagani* to *Christianitie*, as in other parts of the *Indies*, so heere in *Iapan* I willingly acknowledge; yea, so farre am I from envying either him or his Order, or any other Order (it is Religious, their Trophees of Conversions, that I could with the Pope seated in *Atacio*, and all the Iesuits, & Friers, yea, all his Iesuites Clergie fully possided of the *Bonanz* Colleges & Temples in *Iapon*; whence a double good might issue; to the *Ethiopes* some light in stead of a total darknesse, a diseased life being better then death; and to *Europe*, robe lightened of their burthen, where professing themselves Lights, they prove Lightning, and raise so manifold combustions. And most especially could I with this honour to my Country-men the *English* Iesuites, and Priests, Popish Emiliaries of whatsoever Order, that they were there ordered, or (twice fits their ambition better) ordering that Easterne World, rather then here disordered and disconcerting, playing the Lords of *Christ's* rule in the West. The very Name of *Christ* is sweet to me, even in *Iapon*, yea, from a Iesuites mouth, or a Iesuites Conuert; and would God they taught them Iesus more, and lesse Iesuiticall fancies of exchanged worship of Creatures, howsoever gilded with *Christian* Names, that the *Iaponians* might learne to acknowledge Iesus and *Maria* truly, in stead of the Blessed Virgin, and that incarnate Blessednesse her blessed Sonne, who is God ever ab blessed for ever.

One told *Cortez* the Mexican Conqueror then speaking great words, that there is much difference in conquering Neighbours at home, and naked *Americans*; I adde, that a man may be *Christianized*, and yet farre short of *Christianitie*, (even by Iesuites * selfimonies) and that somewhat more is required to a *Christian* than *Christian* Names, given in Baptisme to hundreds at once, as some have done without further instruction. Deuotion is rather to be prized by weight and worth, then by tale and numbers, as happens in their Beades here, and too often in their Conversions: where which they indeed too much to be magnified and gloried in, would swallow our silly women laden with innues, hoping for their Confession-cure; and there, with fillmille in it, as such as Reason turns *Christians* because they will not runne madd with their own preluise with *Mahometanism* any where; here in *China*: and Ours have found them to say more 30 then they had done in that little.

I should much rejoyce that their Reports were true, and that as an Orator * of their hath solemized the Canonization of *Loiola*, their Patriarch, and *Xavier* the *Indian* Apostle (so hee stileth them) this Saint *Francois* had converted three hundred thousand Soules, of innumerable Nations; yea, all Heretikes in neere sixtene hundred yeeres, had not converted to many, nay, *Christ* in eleven yeeres. I am glad to heare it, and that which hee addeth, that all Heretikes too whatsoever had not infected to many Languages and peoples, as those, of that all Heretikes told many with *Christian* Truth and Pietie. Doth this man consider how much of the World hath beene *Christian*, and how much after that Hereticall? how many more Nations the *Nestors* when it began, vnto *Tartarian* *Cabay*, or *China*, and the *Indies*; and hath not the *Archbishop* reise praised all *Africa* and before that the *Arrian*, our all the World, which as Saint *Hierome* saith, groned and wondred to see it selfe growne *Arrian*; But these perhaps rather perverted *Christians* then any way converted *Ethiopes*! Yet the great Nations of the *Gobies* and *Fandals*, have not many hundred yeeres since of *Ethiopes*, the great Nations of the *Liubianians*, *Musconter*, *Rassies*, &c. they hold not Catholike (that I mention not the *Armenians*, *Georgians*, and others) one of which numbred many times three hundred thousand.

And that one Impietie of *Mahomet* hath more Followers many, then all whatsoever profession of *Christianitie* in all Languages, Nations, Rites whatsoever (I greue to tell it) and that of *Germanie* and *France* (which he objects) yet their sound, *Luther* and *Calvin* went not out *burgone* over all the Earth, (as these our Relations shew in the Voyages of *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, they were brought) (where Antichrist hath his Throne, a Conqueror more then *Indians* or *Japan*) and when the Prophecie of *Babylon* vnto ruine is fulfilled, the same world shall conquest become *Habermers* to the Gospel hereafter, as the *Levitic* Dispersion in the Transfiguration. Meane-while they find vs worke at home to watch over our Flocks, lest such grueous *Waldens* enter, and make vs to leave the *Plurifier* glorie of compassing Sea and Land to some *Prophet* to these their Heires and Successors in this, as in many other things. But I will leave them glorying of their Conversions, grueing that they are not herein better then their reports. I will follow them to these parts of *China*, and here for *China* take to *Iapon*, and wish that Rule of

This happened in Cape Sen his Ship. See 16. 1644. 3. p. 379.

* See pag. 104. and last Chapter of my Pilgrimage

1. Cor. 10. 4.

See Sir T. Roe and M. Terz. pag. 148. and 186.

This Storye seen a day with *Moguls* & *Chinese* gites are best Conuerted.

* Aditi. Calad. 1621. 1624. 1626.

See before in *Poly. Gen. 10.* the truth here of.

Apoc. 18.

Abi. 11.

Cassius

Cassini (Chi bene) observe them, in things not gainfull to their Religion, approve and applaud their inJultrie, yea, accept and thankfully acknowledge their authoritie. In their Conventions to the Faith, I suspend my faith in the qualitie, if I admit their quantitie. For how could one man well instruct so many in so little time, except hee could have given the Holy Ghost, as the Apostles in their conversions did.

Francis Xavier, in the year 1541, Gyled from *Lisbon*, wintred *to Moambique*, whence hee
pallied into *India*, after that to *Malacca*, and to *Japoa*, & *Candia* or *Ceylon* (sayth the former Au-
thor) *quæ Oceano ab Indico mari vixque ad extremas Sinae, et ad ultimas Indiarum dimittitur, circum-*
stant, Evangelicæ prædicationis illustrant, & impetunt. (Japoa was first discovered, and knowne to the
Portugals by *Mota*, carryed out of his courtie to *China* thither by tempest, & knowne to the
Year 1552. the five and fiftieth of his Age, of his *Indian* peregrination. Hee cleaved to the
Sancion, on the Coast of *China*. This was the *Indian* Standard-bearer to all of that Society
during his travels. *Lisbon* the first years of their Confirmation 1540.) and now defied or
Sancion, and imputed to Doctor *Schnebbenus*, Chanceller of *Colen* his Orator, *Ingeni & Fra-*
cisco vestris succurrite precibus, &c. A Letter of his written from *Japoa*, in *November*, 1549.

Letter of Xavier. We came by Gods grace in August to Japon, on the Feast day of the Assumption of the Virgin Marie, having set forth from Malacca on Adimmour day. The Master of the Ship was a Chinese, which bad undertaken that office to the Captaigne of Malacca, and layd out accordingly till the Master altered his mind (at those Barbarians are usually inconstant) and signed the said land, in the said manner, in the way, 20 This troubled vs in two respects principally, both for the loss of the said land, which we desired, and which being paid, we were compelled to winter on the Coast of China; and again, because the said land, if some Ship was carried an Idoll of Fennil, to which the Mariners in fight and flight of Voye, sacrificed after the manner of their Country. They also by late demanded answer touching their Voyage; which (as they said) demanded was sometimes good, sometimes bad. A hundred leagues from Malacca, holding our course to Cilebes, we were played at an land, where after many Ceremonies the Devil was consulted, what fortune was fitted to us, and he answered, very prosperous: Whereupon with great alacritie we set saile: they worshipped the Idoll with incense, and candles burning, and incense of sweet wood: we trusted in God the Creator of Heavens and Earth, and in the Sonne our Lord Iesus Christ, desiring to carrie his Religion into those parts. When we were under way, the Idoll, they demanded of the Master, who this Ship should returne from Japon to Malacca: the answer was made by the Idoll, that it should goe to Japon, but not returne to Malacca; which made them alter their mind, thinking it better to winter in China, and to deferre the voyage to Japon till the next yeere. You may well thinke how it grieved vs, that the Devil might be consulted touching our course. After this we came to Cauchinchina, where two adwerse things happened, Emanuel Sins companion, by the roling of the Ship in the troubled Sea fell into the fike, almost dead with the brisfe and water, but in few dayes recovered: which before it was ended, the Masters Daughter with the like roling of the Ship fell into the Sea, and in all our sight went downe, and much lamentation followd. The Barbarians presently jured to pacifie the Devil, and without vntill all was done, took paines to kill Birds to the Idoll, and to set dishes of meate before it, and by lots concluded, that the cause of our misfortune, The answer was, that if Emanuel who which first fell in, had died, the Griefe had not fallen into the Sea. You see in what danger the Devil by bad advayse, in few dayes had put returned, his rage into

The tempest being assuaged, we came in few days to the Port of Canton in China. And there they purposed to winter, notwithstanding all our intrigues and expostulations: but I leave you how in sudden they would goe to Chincio, on the *Line Coast*. And when we were amongst them, the safety was certified by some which layned, that there was store of Pirats at Chincio; wherefore they were being faire for Iapon, and croffe for Canton, they brought us to Cangoxiu, the Country of our friend Paul, whose friends we took unkindly. There we spent some days in learning the Elements of the Iapone tongue with great labour, and began to publish the Decalogue, and other head of Christian Learning, which Paul had accurately converted into our owne Language; and we purposed finally to sojourne there, whereby the knowledge of Christ is further and more easily founded, &c. The occasion of his journey thither, hee sheweth in another Letter, that some Portugals being lodged in a House polluted by Devils, compassed the Japanese with Croffe, and that there was great hope of good to be done in those parts: whereupon, notwithstanding his great fear, and very tempestuous, and much infected with Pirats, hee resolved to goe thither.

Riccu and *Triguanicu*, aide that the *Tapanian* Priests allied in defence of their Idolatry, the *Chinois* wildeed against him, whereupon he returned to *India*, to reside with the *Viceroy* to send an Ambassage into *China*, without which there was no entrance, and obtrayned that *James Pereira* was named Legate, with whom he had before conferred about the business at *Sancian*, where the *Portugals* at that time vied to trade with the *Chinois*. (*Ameano* now yet established) so that *Alonso Tondico* and *Pereira* were appointed. *Ximius* loath herein to be croffed, vielded; but *Alonso Tondico* being a man of great gravity, and very careful all that he should hinder his proceedings in promoting Religion. And when *Ameano* was pould with otherwise relent, he intended it him and his followers. Soone after *Alonso* was possessed with a Lepro-

He, and further contemning the Vice-roy, was taken and cast in Irons, and dyed miserably. Xauxer burning with zeal at this China expedition, fought to get some *Christians* by favour or reward, to conuince him by their illu into *China*, and to expose him some-where on the Continent, although he knew that imprisonment attended such traffickers, as came into the Continent, except. Being admonished to take leave of the Captayne, What, layd he, *Should I goe into an Excommunicate person ? I shall neuer see him, nor see one, in this life, nor after, but when in the Vale of Solaphat I shall accuse him before the Iudges, Christ*. And praying for him, after with a countenance full of Maieitie, he put off his shoes, and *booke off the dild*, according to the Evangelicall precept. Thus he came to *Sanciana* Delart land, where the *Portugals* vied to make oother of boughes or straw, (for the time of their Trading with the *Chinues*) with whom he confuted about some way to effect his desires, though with losse of libertie or life. At last he agreed with a *China* Merchant, for as much Pepper (given him of the *Portugall* Merchants in almes) as was wanted some two hundred Tackies, to let him and his Interpreter so sharefeerly, He vsu perperderd it, but was afterwards terrified by other *Portugals*, or with his owne danger, his Interpreter forsooke him : and as that lat, the Merchant also vanquished. He stayed yet waiting for his Factor, till a *Fuente* took him out of the world, in December, 1552. His corps was after translated to India.

The *Portugals* of those times, were very desirous of Trade with the *Chinese*, who on the other side were very suspicious of them, both by that which they *Law* of their Ships and Ordnance, and by that which the *Moorish* at *Canton* reported of their *Fury*, (so the *Mahumetans* * call *Europeans*): that they were warlike and victorious, as appeared *Mahomet* to all *India*, under colour of Merchandise subiected to the *Portugals*, The *Chinese* at *Canton* call their *Fidelity*: for they want the *R*, and pronounce not two consonants without a vowel interposed. By the same name they call also the *Portugals* Ordnance. Yet did they gaine preiudicial, that they were admitted to fetch a trade as ye have heard, so as the *Mart* ended, they must away with their goods to *India*. That course continued threes yeeres, till the *Chinese* growing leafe fearful^e, granted them in the greater lland a little *Peninsula* to dwell in. In that place was an *Idoll*, which still *Bay*. This Rocke did rather then *Peninsula*, began to be inhabited not onely of *Portugals*, *Europe*, *India*, and the *Chinese* but also *Europeans*, in regard of the commerce of Commodities of *Coynes*, brought the *Chinese* thither to sell in *Portugals* Ships, and especially loue of the *Silver* to be built, and the *Portugals* made not onely Contrahs of Merchandize, but of Marriage, with the *Chinese*, and so the *Peninsula* was filled with private families, and out of a barren Rocke arose a noble *Mart*. And as gayn: brought Merchants thither, so they came to keepe and to get foules, the tytle of a *Citie*, and made it a *Bishopps* See. There the *Portugals* kept a residence, and first erected a Church to our Ladie, and after that diuers others. For it seemed convenient to their desires, the world of *China* lying to the North, the *Moluccas* to the South, *Japon*, and the *Philippinas* to the East, to the *Weit Cochinchina*, *Cambodia*, *Siam*, and others.

[illegible]- *Xavier, Zeale,*

Sancian thirtio
leagues from
the China
shore

Xavier's death.
See Vita Xave-
ry. & F. Pinto.
& Eman. Acosta
Maffey's Ricci-
us. &c.

* Since the Expedition of the Western Christians (the chiefs of which were Franks) to the conquest of Ie.

A Peninsula is compassed with water except on one part.
Beginnings of *Amacae*.

Melchior Nunn

Canyon left
Metropolitan
City.

take but a line
de of his rela-
tion, because
you have so
much before.
Alto. Alto. or

So Pinto alfo,
but this is the
provinces
comes not the
ings.

Some sects
knowledge
ore, others
is.

months there to redeeme Portugall prisoners. The Chinoise kill or captivate the Portugals, which are wracked on that Coast, which yes they cease to doe, since they pay their *Culmes*. I went thence in May to Japan.

Valignanus.

Admiranda regni Sinenfis extant with the Visitas Epistolae published by Jo. Hoys. Flavi.

Alexander Valignanus, was sent by the Jesuiticall Generall into *India* as Visitor, and having visited other parts, came to *Amacao*, in his way to *Japan*, forced to stay there ten months with the *Jesuites*. There he more fully informed himselfe of the state of *China*, and raised the embers of the almost extinguished zeal of that expedition. Hee is thought to bee the Author of that treatise called *Admiranda Regni Sinenfis*, containing a summrie of the wonders in *China*, worthy here to have bene inferred, but that we rather ayme at things sene then heard, as having better certaintie. *Oculatus testis unum prestat auritus decem*. Upon the consideration of their wits, Peace, Police, studies of Learning, hee conceived that if any were skillfull of their Language and Letters, he might doe some good for their Conversion. Hereupon hee resolved to employ some that way, although many others of the companie which had experience of the *China* sayffaires, held it labour in vayne. Yet hee went on and because of the paucitie of ours at *Amacao*, and none so fit for that designe, hee sent into *India* to the Provinciall, to send thither at least one Priest for that purpose. And hee going to *Japan*, left order what hee which was sent should doe.

Mich. Ruggerius.

in

Portugall trade at Canton by day, and extraction at night.

Ruggerius first entrance,

Ruggerius freed by the Hsiao-tai.

Ambassage of Siam.

Zungim at Chumim.

Mat. Ricini.

Fraternitie of Iqoa.

Michael Ruggerius, an *Italian* of the Kingdome of *Naples*, was sent, and came to *Amacao*, in July, Anno 1579, and applied himselfe to learne the language which the Courtiers in *China* vied, and is common thorow all *China*, (the Provincies having otherwise peculiar languages) also to learne to reade and writhe their Characters, which are as many words. That language was verie hard both in it selfe, and for the want of teachers. For those *Christians* *Chinoes*, which lived at *Amacao*, in habit of *Europeans*, & those which came thither in Merchandize, were almost as ignorant of the Court tongue, as of the *Portugall*: and though they understood it, yet they could not well pronounce it. And for the Characters, they know those which belonged to their Merchandizing and common vie. *Labor improbus omnia vincit*. With pictures his teacher was often forced to supply characters. And whereas the *Portugals* twice a yeere in the Mart season have access to *Canton*, about January and June, hee went with them thither. For in time they obtained this libertie, that not in a defart Island, as first, nor in the *Amacao* Haven, but in the Metropolitan Citie two dayes vp the River, they might have trading by day, but lye aboard at night, with so many eyes and watches on them, as it is manifest they are not altogether free of their former feares.

These Marts continue two moneths each of them, or longer, and have bene the onely means of admitting the *Jesuites* into *China*, by the industrie and pietie of other *Portugals*. *Ruggerius* therefore with his merchandize also adventured with them, and found an impediment at first. Another *Jesuite* which before had gone thither had converted a youth, Disciple to a Priest, and cloely com- yed him to *Amacao*. His Master made complaint and procured the Magistrate to fetch him backe by force, to the great trouble of Ours, and seeming discredit as it by all artes they had seduced Children from their Parents, which is a thing at *Canton*, both vniuersall and Capitall. *Ruggerius* enterepied himselfe with great care and discretion, and appealed the Admirall or *Hsiao-tai* which hath the command of Strangers, who hereby had an opinion of his vertue, and delighted to see him studious of the *China* bookes. Hee therefore permitted him to stand at his side when others kneeled, and freed him also from the going aboard at night, and allowed him a place in the Palace, where the Ambassadors of the King of *Siam* were vially entertained, bringing their present or tribute (such as you have heard in *Goez*) to the King. There hee studied night and day the *China* bookes, and on Sundays and Holy-dayes, the *Portugals* came thither to him to Masse and to receiue the Sacraments. This continued while they continued, for when the Mart ended hee was commanded to returne with them. The Father procured acquaintance also with the chiefe Captaynes of the Soulliers of that Province (the *Chinois* call him *Zungim*) to whom hee gave a watch. By this means many of those which came to *Amacao*, began to shake off their *Erbike* darkness, and the devout *Portugals* erected a House for the *Catechumens* (new Converts to be instructed in *Christian* mysteries before Baptisme) where hee instructed them, and more freely followed his *China* studies, by helpe of Interpreters. One business hindered another, and his Marts absence (which tookt vp neere halfe the yeeres) this Catechizing, and a tongue is hardly learned by studie without vie; and therefore the Visitor sent for *Matthew Ricini* out of *India*, (which had come out of *Europe* with *Ruggerius*, and now had finished his Diuinitie course at *Goa*) to bee his yokefellow, one to whom the *China* expedition is most indebted.

Anno 1582. *Valignanus* the Visitor, carryed certayne *Japones* Princes sent to *Rome* to yeeld subjection to the Pope, in the name of those Kings which sent them, as you shall here. Hee staying for the Monon at the Colledge of *Amacao*, tooke great paines to aduance the *China* business. And to that purpose hee instituted the *Fraternitie* or fellowship of *Jesuis* in our House, with Lawes fitting to New Converts; forbidding any *Portugals* to bee therein admitted, but onely *Chinois*, and *Japones*, and those which were newly converted of other Nations: a way to be

goutted

gouerned by one of those Fathers which should bee assigned to the *China* Expedition, called, *The Father of the new Converts*, taking care not onely of their saluation, but their other affaires and poverty.

The Vice-roy of *Canton* Province is one of the chiefe Vice-royes, because his Province is farre from *Pekin*, and coasting on the Sea; infested therefore with often Piracies, especially *Japones*. Hereupon the *Canton* Vice-roy exerciseth iurisdiction also in the adioyning Province *Quamfu*, *Quamfu* if occasion require to leuie more Souldiers, although *Quamfu* hath also a Vice-roy of her owne. For this cause the *Canton* Vice-roy resideth not at *Canton*, but at *Scampan*, a Citie bordering on both Provinces. At this time *Quamfu* borne in the Province of *Scampan*, was Vice-roy, a courteous man, who to get money of the *Amacao* sent thither his Writ for the Bishop and Captaine to come to his Court, understanding that they commanded all there. They thought it not agreeing to the *Portugall* honour to goe, not to their safety to neglect his summons, and therefore by *Valignanus* his aduise, *Ruggerius* was sent in the name of the Bishop, to see if hee could get a perpetuall Station in that Kingdome, and *Penella* the Auditor, in place of the Captaine. And to obtaine his fauour, that hee should not disturbe their merchandizing, a Present was sent him at publique charge, of such things as the *Chinois* most regard, as waured garments of silke *Bumask* (which the *Chinois* then knew not how to make) Crystall Glasses, and other things valued at 1000. Duckets. The Vice-roy receiued them in great pompe, more to terrifie then honour them; but at the sight of the Presents (the scope of his purpose) hee became gentle and courteous, and decreed that they might lue in his Port in manner as *baheris* they had done, obeying the Lawes of the *China* Magistrates: which words seeme formall, the *Portugals* liuing there althabre and religion, being subiect to them. The other *Chinois* are subiect to common Officers sent thither from *Canton*. The Vice-roy would haue nothing, but hee would pay for it, which hee did because bribes and gifts are there fauorably punished: but priuily hee sent to them, that money was giuen them to procure him as many other like.

Ruggerius desired that which hee came for, saying, hee learned the *China* Tongue and read their Bookes, which hee seemed much to like, and gaue him hopes at his next returne to obtayne it. And hauing giuen them weight of Silver, with promission, great attendance of Magistrates and Souldiers, much Mucke of Hoybuckes and other Instruments, hee sent them pompously thorow the publique streets of the Citie to their shipping. So weighty is hope of gaine. In August had come (as they vie) *Portugall* ships to *Amacao*, in them of our Society not a few, and amongst others, Father *Matthew Ricini*, who brought with him an artificiall Watch from the *Mt. Ricini*, Provinciall for the aduancing this *China* business. About that time the Captaine of *Amacao* hauing made redie those things which the Vice-roy prescribed, sent backe the Auditor to *Scampan*, but *Ruggerius* vnseasonably (or seasonably rather as the euent manifested) fell sick; yet hee had a Clocke-watch which did without any flinker round the houres, a thing euen fill of Clocke-watches awaked him, and caused him to make his Secretarie presently write a Licence for the Father to come to him with that admirable worke, as soone as hee should bee able. When this Charter was read at *Amacao*, it contained more; for the Fathers were inuited by publique Authority to erect a publike and private house in that Citie, which caused great joy. But the Visitor was afraid as yet to send *Ruggerius*, as not furnished fully for that designe: the beginning of a thing being the greatest part. The other *Jesuites* perswaded, and Father *Francis Pafius* bound for *Japan*, a man well qualified for gouerning was sent, and *Ruggerius* adioyning his Colleague. *Ricini* was made first Consul. And if the business proceeded not, *Pafius* was to proceed to *Japan*, and the other

Those two *Jesuites* went to *Scampan*, and offered their Watch with a triangle Glasse presenting variety of colours, a thing admired of the *Chinois* as a precious Iewell: both which brian Temple, called *Thien-mu-an*, whither hee often sent them diuers viands, and often admitted them in Visitation to his Palace. There they abode foure or fise moneths, often visited in tuall continuance, hauing obtayned licence of the Secretarie also for *Japan*, and were in hope of their preparing for the Voyage, when all was disturbed on a sudden, the Vice-roy being I know not for what fault, deprived of his place. Hee fearing least in the chiefe Citie the presence of Strangers might further hurt him, dismissed the *Jesuites* so, as hee permitted them to stay at *Canton*, commanding the Magistrate there to provide them a house and ground. The *Chinois* call that well knew that his commission was of no force, yet they went, and the *Haitan*, to whom the Charter was directed was absent, and no regard being had thereof, they were not permitted to attend the bankes, and therefore with griefe returned to *Amacao*. *Pafius* presently layd according

Quamfu the true name of *Canton*.

new Vice-roy, blaming the *China* Interpreters which had put into the heads of Stranger-priests to learne the *China* language and Characters, and to desire some place for to erect a sacred and private house, threatening those interpreters if they persisted. In this dispute of proceeding, guid came to *Amacao* and brought the *Cofu*, (so they call the Governour of that Province) one of his Letters Patentes by the Vice-royes authority, inuited the Fathers to *Siangquin*, there to reside a piece of ground for a Church and dwelling house. The cause hereof was an offer made by the Fathers (when they were sent away from *Siangchin*, by the deposed Vice-roy to *Canton*) of the summe of money to any which should procure of the New Vice-roy license for their returne. One of the meanest Souldiers in name of Interpreter to the Societie had put vp a Petition to the Vice-roy, who sent it to the Governour of the Region called *Guan-poon*, of *Cequim* Province to be dispatched, who gaue the former Letters Patentes to the Souldier, which brought them himselfe to *Macao*. They with great joy, as seeing the Diuine hand herein, made ready for the journey, which the former expenses and late Ship-wracks (especially of the *Lapon* Ship in the *Ile Lesqueuco*, which alone hath most of the wealth of the *Citie* in it) made difficult; but *Gaspard Vegas* charitably hoped the expenſe, leconded also by others.

Thus full of hope they set sayle, and in *Canton*, both now and when before they were dismissed from *Siangquin*, they found *Spaniards*. Then, a Ship which from the *Philippina* was bound for New *Spain*, was wracked at the *Ile Nau-tan*, on the *Canton* coast; the men which elapsed were kept in durance. And now fene or eight *Franciscan* Friars, which had gone from the same *Philippina* for *Cauichineha*, hearing the King was become a *Christian*, and in their returne were wracked on the *Ile Hainan*, and taken and poyled, and presented to the Magistrates for reward, whose liberitie the *Iduites* procured, promising all recompence at *Amacao*. Hence they had the Souldiers company, by whom they were conveyed to the Governours Palace, and kneeling were kindly answered, that they should goe about the *Citie* and spye out some convenient place for their purpose, which hee doubted not to procure of the Vice-roy for them.

At the same time at *Siangquin*, they were erecting by the common charge of the Eleuen *Cities* of that Iurisdiction, a Tower (whereof one floor was now rayſed, to which they intended to add nine others about it) in a pleasant place by the Rivers side, a myle and more from the *Citie*, the Suburbs continuing further then it. In the same place they set forth a Temple, and therein erected a Statue to the Governour, whose fixe yeeres government had well deserved of the learned, and of the vulgar. A piece of that field in which the *flourishing Tower* (so they called it) was building, they desired, which hee liked well, and promised to further them with the Vice-roy. The *Iesuites* at their former departure, had left an Altar with one *Chin Niu*, who had placed the same in a convenient place, for want of Images inscribing about it, *Tien Chu* in Cuccall letters, that is, *To the Lord of Heauen*. Hee made also therunto diuers Incenses, and at set one found which inuoked the true God. And this man gaue them entertainment, till they had forth a plot of ground for their wish straight caution to obuerse the Lawes of *China*, and to admit no Strangers companions to dwell with them; which they promised. Much was the concour and admiration of people, much the wonder at their strange Glasse, the Image of our Ladie, a wrought Handkerchiefe, with which they presented the Governour; but hee returned all afterward, fearful of Bribe-imputation. Much trouble arose about that place, and another was assigned them, where they began to build and were forced to payne their precious triangle Glasse, to fit it for their vie; they obtained also an ample Charter from the Vice-roy, and two Patents from the Governour which protected them from wrongs.

In these beginnings they made little mention of the *Gopell*, but employed their spare time in learning the Language and Characters, by a Holy life seeking to inſinuate themselves into the peoples good liking. Their habit was like the modestest of the *Chinois*, a long Gowne with large sleeves: Their house had two Cells, and betwixt them a Hall with an Altar in the midst, God, *Thim-on*, Lord of Heauen; for the *Chinois* want the *D*, which caused that they could not give any name more fit; and this name continueth to this day, although they vie others also, as *Higheſt Ruler of all*, *First beginning of all*, and the like. The blessed Virgin is called the *Great Mother of God*. This Image on the Altar, all which visited them both Magistrates, Students, Priests, and common people, did religiously worship, kneeling and (after their rite) knocking lightly the ground with their fore-heads. They admired the excellencie of the Picture and colours so without ceasing. But when it began to bee rumoured, that they worshipped a Woman for God, they took away that Picture and substituted the Image of *Christ*. After this, they painted the ten Commandments in the *China* language, which many approved. Some brought them Incense for holy vies, and some bestowed their Almſes; others also Oyle for the Lampe which burn-

ned before the Altar; and the Fathers commended their Law as agreeing to the light of Nature. The first which was Baptized, was a poore dilaſed man caſt forth by his parents, whom they intruſted, and a little before his death baptized. The reliefe which they bestowed on him be- came hee had a precious stone in his head, the cause of all that benificence. The *Chinois* much ad- mired the Bookes, of which the Fathers had store, the artificial binding, gilding, col, goodli- nesse of the Print, and their studiouseſſe in the *China* bookes; and received with great applauſe a Booke of *Christian* learning which they printed. Yea, the Governour after the *China* rite would needs doe them publike honour, which is done by sending a goodly Table with Cubitall letters in praise of them, with the Magistrates name, and the date inscribed in leſſe letters. Two of these with great pompe hee sent unto the one, the one to bee let ouer the entrance with inscription. The *house of the flowers of Diuine men*; the other to bee placed in the Hall, inscribed; *The holy Nation of the West*: which wanne them great reputation, this Magistrate being much re- pured for learning and vertue.

Our wants caused *Ruggierius* to intreat leave to goe to *Amacao* for supply, which hee obta- ned with a faire Ship and thirtie Rowers. The Governour requested also, that a Clocke might be made for him. But the poeetrie of the *Amacans*, their Ship not being come from *Lapon*, and the Colledge enioying no Rents, caused him to send the workman to *Siangquin*, to make it there; which hee tooke in good part. Now the *Chinois* are a people suspicious of Strangers, especially those ruler parts of the Province of *Canton*, and much muttered at the *Portugals* Commerce, dy- ing, they made all things dearer, and the profite came but to few. They gaue an odious appella- tion to the *Portugals*, calling them *Demiis*. To this, Fame had added a pious, reporting that building at the same time) and the *flourishing Tower*, was filled the *Strangers Tower*. They there- fore their house thence, which they would haue had made an Idoll Temple, always open to all. One diffided. Hereupon two neighbours conspired, to set a fellow on *Siangquin*, to accuse these stran- gers for seducing Children, as they had done this youth his brothers. (so they agreed) and kept him three dayes, with intent to fill him for a Slave at *Amacao*, (so they agreed) and kept be witnesses hereof. The accusation was put vp in pittifull manner, and the Governour much moved, the Father fetched into Court by an Officer, before hee could haue leisure to write his answer. The Interpreter had filled his sleeves with stones, which hee poured out in Court as man which had sene it, found out the knaue, and rewarded it with terrible whipping; and *Rucius* his skill in the Mathematicks which hee had learned, being an Auditor of *Clauſius* at hanging in their Hall, which the learned held with great pleasure, much desiring to see it in Maps pretending a Description of the world, but presented only their fifteene Provinces, with- dromes scarcely equalled one Province of *China*. They now wondered much to see themselves in *China* characters: and inferred, as hee saw cause, the rites of the world and the *Christian* holies. They have a conceit, that the Heauens are round, the Earth square, and their Empire so seated in the midst thereof; hee therefore foisted his Description, and their Empire so seated in the midst. They that before thought bawly of all other men, as if else-where were no King, nor Republicke, nor Bookes, began to be better conceived of *Europeans*, and to be bet- ter remote from them. This worke hee often reuiled and corrected, till it came at last both fixed the Clocke, and both were together presented to the Governour, who at his owne cost published the Map, and soone after restored the Clocke, because hee had none which knew how

The Ship coming from *Lapon*, *Ruggierius* well releued returned, whereby the house was fi- nished, their debts payed, and the building with flowers, the disposition of the windowes, furni- shing great Magistrates, to behold it. *Rucius* proceeded to make *Sphaeres* of Brass and Iron; hee Printed also Globes, and made Sunne-dials, which hee gaue to the Magistrates. And by his lectures on these subjects, hee got reputation of the best Astronomer in the world, they esteeming o- *Lin-fu-tan*, hauing the rule of two or three Regions and all the Townes therein, not remouing from *Siangquin*: and as the *Chinois* are superstitious observers of Auguries, hee conceived that hee

proudest the luckier man by this familiarity with our men, which he signified when they came to him, with a present to gratulate their honours.

In the Philippines the news of the *Jesuits* success caused the Gouverneur to send the Treasurer *John Tapia* to *Manila*, with Father *Alonso Sanchez* a Spanish *Jesuit*, with a Watch and other presents and letters to the *Jesuits*, to procure an Ambassage from the King of *Spain* to *China*. The *Jesuits* had with petitioning, brought the business to good forwardness, when they received contrary mandates from *Amacao*, it being likely to prove the destruction of that City, if the *Spaniards* with their plenty of Silver from *Pern* and *New Spain*, should have trade in *China*; neither did this belong to the *Spaniards*, but to the *Portugals*, according to the Competition between the two Kings made by *Alexander* the sixth: and although they are both subject now to one *Crowne*, yet their privileges remaine distinct without confusion. Thus the *Magistrate* aduised, and their superior the *Reitor* prohibited them to proceed. Yet the former working was not ceased by Silence, till the *Amacao* Magistrates laboured with divers reasons to diuert the Ambassage. *Capralis* the *Reitor* was desirous to see their house, and they procured the *Lisbon* leave, so that he came thither, viewed all, and Baptised both the young men before mentioned which kept the *Alar*, and a learned man which read the *China* Bookes to the Fathers, this called *Paul*, the other *John*, the first *China* Conuers. *Valguano* made Provincial of *India*, hearing of this success, sent his Father *Edward Sando*, and Father *Amico*: and obtained of the Vice-roy *Edward Mendes* an annual stipend for this mission. They came to *Amacao* in July, 1585.

At the same time it reasonably hapned, that *Lisbon* was commanded from the Court to procure the Strangers at *Amacao*, certain goodly Kethers for the King. He furnished a faine ship and sent *Ruggerius* thither, and brought with him Father *Edward Sando*, who was to salute *Lisbon*, and gave him no more meane gift of our Commodities to procure abode, whereof nothing pleased him as a triangle Glasse. He gives him leave to stay, on condition that they admit no other companion. In *Lisbon* place had succeeded another of *Ceguan* Province, a great friend of the Fathers, who being to goe to *Peguin* about some affaires of his Office every third year, was seated at our house (where the Magistrates were often solemnly entertained) and then offered to carrie one of ours with him in his journey, at least as far as *Ceguan* his owne Countrey. They willing to erect some new seat, least some disaster might in a moment strip them eaily of one and all, agreed that *Ruggerius* and *Sando* should goe, and received licence for entering the Provinces of *Ceguan* and *Huagun*, and places adjoining. This was the Mart time whether *Ruggerius* went, and found *Amico* come thither with the *Portugals*. Thither also a Brother of *Lisbon* was gone with some Merchandise of Silke, (the most whereof is made in the *Ceguan* Province) which the *Portugals* bought at his price by the Fathers intreatie, who therefore tooke the Fathers, his brothers friends, to his City in *Ceguan*, called *Scambin*, (a name somewhat neere the other, but in *China* a little difference proueth great) the native place of both the Gouverneurs.

The *Chinois* have a custome to be called by many names, and no man calls them by their proper name, (but themselves in naming or writing themselves, or sometimes their superiours) without iniurie: they taking a greater name, which others give them for more honour. Now the Fathers had yet assumed no other name, but their servants called them by their proper name, a thing amongst the *Chinois* reputed barbarous. They therefore (to become all things to all) wined all to *Christ* then followed that fashion, and ever since at their first entrance alway a new Name. Their Journey is thus written by *Amico*.

On the eleventh of the Kalends of December, 1585, we departed from Canton. The third day the ship happened to be on fire, some imputing that unluckynesse to us: but without much harme it was quenched. Whiles we layd through the Canton Province, we seldom came in sight and neuer went out of the Ship till we came to *Moylimpor*. I can therefore relate nothing of that Province, but that there were very many Cities, and Townes very frequent, and steepe high Mountains, betwixt which both River (which to diuers, tall of the Province) fered with waters, Waves and Shipping. Every where we beheld sumptuous Edifices dedicated to the worship of Devils, and of Ships almost infinite multitude, and of water-Fowle innumerable kind, and herds of Goats feeding by the banks to the fourth of the Ides of December. Then we arrived at *Moulin* a City, neere which is the beginning of that River, whose course being swift, we were drawn by ropes and rowed with Oares against it. In this City we should hardly have found admision, the passage being by a Bridge with two Iron charynes, opened only and shut at the will of the Gouverneur. But our Conduktor having acquaintance with the *Linitu*, we had present entrance, hardly able to pass for the multitude of Ships, there wayting. We were there well entertained, and on Sunday and Monday said Masse. On Tuesday we went to a City eight miles distant, there againe the commodities of another River. All that way was paved with flowers, in which we passed a Mountain, on the top whereof was an arch with an inscription of his name, who had facilitated that way, otherwise difficult. The weather was unreasonable, raine and cold, perhaps because the whole way in manner was Mountainous. I do not remember that ever I saw way so frequented, not then when Merchants resort to publick Faires: for all the Merchandise from *Nanquin*, and the places adjoining are brought

See that Bull.
Induct.
Gains separates the sub.
of these
Crown, with
our separation
of state. Apply
this to the
quarrell with
the English and
Dutch in the
Indies. And
hereby you see
the *Jesuits* in
struments of
secular affaires
Edm. Mendes,
whose Booke
you have in
the 9. Booke.
tom. 1.

F. Edm. Sando.

Antonie Almeida,
Licent for
Ceguan.

Strange count
for names.
Jesuits change
their names.

Almico's Letter
to Ed. Sando.
Reitor at Xau
cho or Siao
don, contra
dicted.

Malia.

The *Lisbon* as
brother alone
said.
Another riart.

Way paved
and populous.

brought hither. Also the Merchants which inhabit the remotest Cities in that way, on both sides had Partners for the conveying of their Wares, very fully for our Conduktor had nothing to doe but to deliver one hundred and fiftie Packes of Wares with other provisions for the way, to his Hosts, which all hee should find in his Inn in the next Towne. These Partners also provide Horses for the Servants and Seats for the Masters to be carried in by two Porters defended from the Rape by Sambrators, or Shadows which they carrie in their hands. When hee had passed half the way, we changed our Seats and Porters, and had others to the last, in their watching it was but some small gratuity, the Hosts being paid for all, and a Seat is as a safe as a ste bore, as a Horse in our Country, with great commoditie and frequent of Townes. In the Evening we came to the Towne Faquin, and staid there two dayes. Each consorts of Citizens coming to see, that we were almost over-whelmed, and were gladd to get a ship-board on Friday. On Saturday we sailed downe the streame fiftene dayes continuing our course, in which we hired three Barges, in one of which we only were carried. On both Barges many and faine Townes walked about present themselves in the view of Passengers, seeming as huge as Canton, which made me meditate of the facilitie of conveying the Gospel in these parts, we making all this way with a great tranquility of bodie and minde, that we might in the Ship pray or studie and doe other things as commodiously, as at home.

On the sixteenth of the Kalends of January, we came to a most frequent City far greater then Canton, where the Tutan or Vice-roy of the Province Chianli resided. It is high walled divided into three parts, a River flowing thorough with a Bridge of Barges, joining two parts of the City. On this Bridge customs are paid, but our Conduktor being the Lanctau, Brother paid without search. And although we were to be examined by the *Magistrates*, yet we manouvred us, they being not so inquisitive in our parts as in Canton Province, about strangers: yea, they entertaine us with much honourably carrying them to their worship at Xauchin. About halfe a mile from this Bridge another River issues forth with this, which runneth by the other side of the City, and makes the third part of the City. I wished the Fathers a Colledge in this place both for the fertilitye of the soyle and half-moony of the Aire. Having provided necessaries for the rest of our Journey in this City, we went aboard and in the space of six or seven dayes going downe the streame, we beheld on both sides very goodly Woods, and many Isles of wood on the Bankes necessary for those cold Regions, and holding on our course passed by seven Cities, or more, famous for greatness and Merchandise: and on Christmas Eve came to the greatest City of all *Chianli*, where we staid that night for that Solemnitie. But be which then was borne exercised our patience as a grievous North-wind, whereby the River water (otherwise cleere) was so troubled that on Christmas day we could not drink it. For the Rivers course is North-ward, which therefore by a North-wind is so moved.

The next day sailing by a City which by the sight we judged greater then Lisbon, in one dayes passage further, we came to the way which leads to *Nanquin*, where divers Rivers joining together make a kind of Crosse with great commoditie for Trade and passage. For a Barge will defended against wind and weather, convenient for two Gentlemen with their Servants and baggage may here be hired for twenty or thirtie dayes, at an easie rate then a man shall pay for Horses ten Coimbs to Li-bone. From Canton to *Moulin* fiftene dayes journey, for a ship which carried two hundred packes of Merchandise of divers kinds, we paid but nine laces, and seven for those three which we hired for twenty dayes more. After that, leaving the Northerne way which goes to *Nanquin* or *Langquin*, we turned West ward against the streame, yet with benefit of the wind favouring us, we went fiftene and sometimes twenty miles a day: in which space sailing by very large fields we arrived at a City where faire Peace is made, thence carried into India and Europe. We passed by many Woods also and some Cities. The cold mane-white was so great, that one day all was covered with Snow. The River decreased, and on the third of the Nones of January, they valed the Merchandise into ten little Boates, and sailed two dayes, we came to a large City, to which we had entry by a Bridge borne up with fiftie painted Barges.

On the Nones of January we came to Gouli, a City at the end of our Navigation by that River. Here in celebrating Mass we were thronged by the multitude, and a Priest of the Idols invited us, which then performed to his Idols Ceremonies at his House. Altars there erected, & Priests invited, & Hymnes used, where he and those Bonzi also kindly. Here we observed that the Devil counterfeited the Ceremonies of the Catholike Church. We went thence by the foot way carried in portable fairs as before six or seven miles: and then entered the Province of Ciquan, at the Sun-fet entering the City Ciquan. On the Ides of January we againe went a ship-board holding our course by another River, in which that City first beginneth to be Navigable, the flow streame lingering with us three dayes, in which yet we saw eight Cities, about which we found unmeasurable quantities of Oranges, very high Hills abounding with Trees and under-woods, betwixt which that pleasant River sweetly slides receiving from every place new Tributes of matters that it groweth now as large as that of Canton Province. And although *China* have name of fertilitye, yet here appeared some prints of Iapponian sterilitye. For in five dayes space we could get nothing but Rape and Rice, and a little fish. On the eleventh of the Kalends of February we passed by a large City twice as great as Canton, as if she which knew the Region affirmed: for we by reason of Snow and Mists could see nothing but some high Townes. At Sunne going downe we came to a Towne, against which a Bow-shot distant on the other side of the River, we

Seats and Porters in the highways.

Great Cities thick.

Metropolitan City at the end.

All this way is apparent in the new Map.

New River.

Nine Tatis.

• Their miles seeme to be intended Spanish leagues. Cold Region.

Papists and Fajins Ceremonies alike.

Ciquan. Canton.

New River.

Still illiter.

Sciauchin or
Ciquon like
Venice.

were forced to take a new ship, and causing our ship to kee draine (a light banged out at the Mast) the next morning we came to the Citie Ciquon, the end of our journey. In this Citie, which as Father Rogers (or Ruggerius) is wont to say, is a type and representation of Venice, God hath provided vs of a good House, on one side having the Citie, on the other the River for prospect, with convenient Rooms of a Garden, and a fit place for a Chappell. On both sides of vs dwell Idolatrous Priests, which yett avoid their frequent converse to heare and see vs. To the chiefs of them we shewed our Altar erected to the Immortal God, which they beheld with great reverence, worshipping the Image of our Saviour. And the greatest Magistrates were so affected with our Christian Ceremonies, that they said they would greater ranky then the Governour of the Citie, who then mourned for his Mother, and invited vs to his Steward to her Everall Solemnities, whom we answered that our Prayers answerd not but to the workers of the true Good. He vj'd the Father with very great respect, giving him the higher place at table, and accompanying him at the parting to the utmost gate of his Palace, seeming much delighted with the Mysteries of our Faith. Three others greater then the Governour came to see vs, and others come so frequent that it is troublesome. The Priests also give us good looks, whatsoever they thinke. The Edifiers both publick and private, the streets and Lanes of the Citie are larger and fairer then the Citie of Canton. The Citizens also in granitic manners, and civill of Habit, differ not a little from the Inhabitants of Canton and Sciauchin. There is no Citie in Portugall, Lisbon except, that is any way for greatness comparable. The singularities I shall write at another time. Ciquon the 14th of the 1st of February, 1586.

Provincials
Lenten-Porte
Chinese compa-
red to 4000.
Lapianian Con-
verts.

The Provincials of India writ to the General that at their returne to Xaucum they found fortie Christians added to the Church, which number in those beginnings in the ample and barbarous Kingdom of China, may be equalled to fortie thousand Christians in the Lapian Provincies : from Goa 14. Kal. Ian. 1587.

B. IIII.

False Brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin : erect a 30
Seas as Xaucum. Monasterie of Nanhao and other things of note in these
parts. They alter their habit : Voyage to Nanquin ; the Lake,
Rivers, Idols and other Rarities.

REcius calls that Citie where they resided Sciauchin, and saith, it is a principall Citie, though not the Metropolitan of the Province, noble in commerce, in situation (in the midst and water of a fresh water Lake) in wits and learned men. They baptized three Linsian Father and two or three Infants, which then dying they thrust into Heaven at vintages. Status the Pope granted a great Indulgence to the Societe, to further the Lapian and Chinese business : 40
and Agavara the General sent them three Watches and an artificial Clock, which was great, yett mooved by wheels without weights, and strikes also the quarters to the great admiration of the Chinese. Others lent Pictures, one the work of Gaspardius who first taught the Lapian and Chinese the European Painting to the great good of both Churches. But the Kinlesmen of Linsian seeing such flocking to the Fathers grew suspicious of dangers, and caused them to be recalled, and Linsian also to be estranged from them. Also one Linsian had a great acquaintance of Linsian, with purpose to get somewhat from the Fathers, questioned Ruggerius why hee had not seen Mount Fusan in the Province of Hu-quan, a famous resort of Pilgrims; why hee had not that hee durst not without the Magistrates leave : I will procure it, saith hee, and did so. In the way Ruggerius went to the Mother Citie of Quam-fu, where hee visited one of the Royall 30
blond, not knowing that such have nothing to doe with the State, and was not admitted, but bidden first to goe to the Vice-roy, to whom he went and had no injury, nor yett wanted humane-
tie, but was bidden to prosecute his Pilgrimage and not to stay there. Linsian hearing of this, sought to shift his hands of them, and with much adoe they obeyed that two might be per-
mitted to stay in their house.

Colours first
teach to
paint.Vutan a holy
place haunted
by Pilgrimes.New Convent,
a false house.

Another danger happened by one Martin a new Convent which had made two other Convents beleue that the Fathers could by a certaine herb turne Quick-silver into silver, and by that means maintayned themselves. Now the Chinese being exceedingly affected to that Alchymicall vanitie, these gave money to buy a Wife, and other coits to that false brother who vnderooke to learne of Father Ruggerius and to teach the other two that Science. And hauing gotten what he could of them, he also borrowed the Triangle Glasse of the Fathers, with which he ranne away. The Governour one day desiring to see it, they told him who had stolne it, and he sent an Officer which found him out and brought him bound. Hee, to be revenged of the Fathers, accused one of them of Adultery, and the Husband of the pretended Adulteresse (partner in

in the Conspiracie) put vp a Petition against Ruggerius, who upon inquisition was found at the time named to have bene in Quam-fu, two moneths journey thence. The Accuser hoped to get together what, being poore, to stop his mouth, which they refused utterly, and hee for feare fled, some with his Wife. The Father was judicially cleared, and Martin in his presence received twentie cruel stripes, and condemned to the Gallies, was sent to Linsian who had first committed him to confirme the sentence ; who added sixtie stripes more, and being beggered and cast in bonds he was forlaken of all his Friends, and (the Fathers meane-while releasing him) dyed within few dayes of the wounds. He which had gotten the Glasse from Martin, another Convent, came and restored it to them, lest it might breed him danger being with him.

Martin whi-
pped to death.

Linsian was preferred to a higher dignitie in the Province of Hu-quan. To him the Citie had erected a Temple, and on the Altar had set his Statue ; before the Altar a great Harth for burning incense : Candlesticks were also magnificently placed ; and at his departure the whole Citie there visited him, and after their rite, pulled off his old Boots (Bootes are the enignes of Magistracy) and put on new, putting the old in a Chiff, and locking them up to be reserved for a monument of his worth. Ruggerius went to Amacao, and Martin hee got leave for Father Edward the Superior to returne to Sciauchin. The new Convents which had lost their money by Martins death, desired new tumults against the Fathers ; the River (which is a mile broad) overflowing, dammed the houses of the Citie, whence grew occasions of new abuses to Ours. The Visitour endeavoured to procure Legation from the Pope to China, and Ruggerius was sent to Europe on that business, whichooke little effect by the death of diuers Popes ; hee spending 20
the rest of his life at Salerno in the Kingdome of Naples.

Rogorino
Europe.

Recius was also a good while, till Almirada came to him. His Clocke, by the Diall to the eyes, and by selfe-shrinking to the eares, caused no little wonder. But a new calamitie much endan-
gered them made to the Citie-yeare. For certaine old men of Canton, which are honoured for that yearly feast out of the publick treasure, a peculiar Vest, and diuers other immunities, put vp a Petition, admonishing of the danger of the Amacaos, and especially those Spies which had builded houses of diuen stories, and every day proceed with new arts : gluing money toward the building of Sciauchin Tower to get entrance into that Citie, saying to and fro without im-
pediment, dangerous to the State. This is that which our Bookes fore-tell, Yett have seven thorne-
30
and nettles in a gentle soyle, yett have brought in Serpents and Dragons into your houses. That of Amacao is like a sore on the hands or feett easily cured at last, but this of Sciauchin, an ulcer fixt on the breast and bears timely to be remedied, &c. The Visitour reputed a severe man committed it to the Haisu, and at last it came to the Governour of Sciauchin, who then being at Peking to per-
forme the customary trienniall visitation to the King, Phen his colleague (our friend, then Lieute-
nant) assisted vs with his Counsell, and they gave their Glasse to the new Linsian, who ended the questell with the Visitour, as being a false calamitie.

Privileged
old men.
Their elegant
Petition is
whole in Re-
cius, too long
for this place.

The two Muris provided them of exhibitions and European Presents from Canton, and their Clocke, Mathematick Instrumentes, Geographical Maps, Pictures, and Bookes, with Musickall 40
Instruments, had procured them much visitation, and much estimation of Europe, and some first thereof in Conventions. Neither was this Station unpromitable to Amacao, helping their affairs with the Magistrates, in businesses with the Vice-roy, in cases of shipwrackes, in reduc-
ing fugitive slaves. It happened at that time the Vice-roy dying, his Successour would not through superstition enter his Palace till hee had pulled it quite downe and built it anew at the Kings charge. Meanewhile spending his time in Canton Province, he was made against vs
and banished vs. But the Magistrates being our friends, and order come then from Peking by
Barcellets of the Portugals, F. Mat. Recius was employed, and got their good liking, but not
the execution of his Mandate to packe them away, offering money for the house, which they
50
dise to take sixtie pieces of Gold for fixe hundred which it had cost them.

Jesuites bani-
shed.

When they came at Canton the Admirall was absent, and whiles they waited for him the Vice-roy sent a Barke for them to returne, and then permitted them to chuse any other place of
refuge, Recius chose Nanhao in the Province of Quam-fu (or Quam-fu, or Chian-fu) which hee
refused not, but willed them first to trespasse Nanhao, or at Xaucum, commending them to the
Assistance of the Governour thereof, then present, and gave Recius a bundle of bookes of his
owne as in token of good will, who thanked him with his forehead to the ground, after their
30
learned. They departed from Sciauchin on the Assumption day, 1589. They came to the place
called Sanceu, or Three-waters, where the Ruers of Xaucum from the North falls into a great
River : there they vie to change ships, to have others fitted in other fashion to sayle against the
60
stream. In eight dayes sayling to the North, they came to the place where the Governour
the frant stayed for them to bring them to the Temple or Monasterie of Nanhao, part of which
the Vice-roy had given them if they liked it. This Monasterie they found in a goodly Place,
emitted with pleasant Hills, enriched with hand-set fruit-bearing trees, watered with a

Jesuites house
cost 600. pieces
of Gold, which
in ch n a is a
great summe,
Nanhao.Nanhao Mon-
astery, 1600.

Riseret in the midst: the goodliest Hill, graced with a plentiful Fountain, was the Seat of the Temple, a great pile high which was the Monastery wherein a thousand Priests (by the impious piety of the Ancestors, Lords of that ground) had their abode.

Lufu L. gond.

Self ex-reife
politrckie
L. Tim. 4.8.

Pilgrimage.

China hyo-
critic.

Montheus
Idolatory
Bels.

Lufu Shrine.

Folly of Self-
pleasing.

Apply to Im-
ages.
Original of
Idols.
Conseide and
behangd.
Xaucum de-
scribed.
Nashum.

Idols new
Seas.

Chiutaiso Scho-
lar of Ricus.

The original thereof was a man which lived about eight hundred yeeres since, called *Lufu*, who is reported to have dwelt in great reputation of holiness, by reason of his austere course of life; with a chaine girded to his bare flesh, wonted to lift Rice, and to beate it lightly after his manner, as much as Iured for the daily food of a thousand Monasteries. With that chaine his flesh purified, so that wormes bred therein: of which if any happened to fall to the ground, he placed it there againe, laying, *Haile thou nothing to care? why dost thou runne away?* There his carkele preferred and that famous Temple built to his worship, to which is concourse of Pilgrimes out of all the Kingdome, every-where he and all his being much respected. These Monasteries of the Deas are divided into twelve Stations, each having his Superiours, and ouerall an Abbot. When the Father came thither sent by the Vice-roy, they suppoed hee had come to be their Abbot and to reforme their abuses; for they not only had their Concubines and Bannards, but robbed by the high-ways. Now all the Idoll Priests are as subject to the Magistrates as other men; perhaps because their Learned esteeme, not Idols, nor account these their Priests. Yet with *China* Judism thier they gaue the Fathers faire entertainment with much pretended joy, and officiously offered all at their Seruice, making them also a Solemne Feast, and then shewing them the chief places of their Monastery. They were full of great Idols of Brasse and other Metals, and of wood gilded. In one Station were told five hundred. There were also many Steeples and Bels of Metall cast, one such as they had neuer seene in *Europe* to their remembrance.

The bodie also of their Saint, *Lufu*, was shewed, all shining with that their *China* bituminous Vernish (so vulgarly thought, and preferred with incredible veneration, though many deny it to be his bodie:) In the midst of the Temple is an eminent place to which they ascend by neate steps, in which hang about fifty Lamps, but not all burning except on fest dayes. The *Chinois* marvelled at the Fathers doing no worship, a thing usually performed by those *Chinois*, which otherwise repose no confidence in those Idols. They both agreed; the *Chinois* Monks to be rid of their fears, and the Fathers to goe to the Citie.

At their departure, Father *Almeida* went by water, and F. *Matthew* by Land with the Gouernours Seruant, the Abbot bearing him companie. He there told the Magistrate that he liked not of the Temple, because the men had all report as vniuers Neighbours, and hee worshipped one God, and not Idols. This amazed the Gouernour, perswaded before, that there was in the World no other Law nor Characters then theirs, till Father *Matthew* pulled forth his Prayer-booke. The Abbot also testified that hee had worshipped none of the Idols, no not *Lufu* Idole. At last, the Gouernour was perswaded by him, that that of Idol-worship was a later Sect amongst them; yea, the Abbot affirmed, that they deserv'd no worship, but that former Magistrates had obseru'd that without Idols the vulgar would not keepe Religion, and therefore let vpr these to be worshipped. They visited all the Citie Magistrates which vied them with more courtesie then those of *Sciachin*. They went also to another Temple or Monasterie called *Quambas*, on the other Westerne side of the River, and carried their goods thither till they were prouided of a Houle.

The Citie *Xaucum* is seated betwixt two Nauigable Rivers which here met: the one which passeth by *Nashum* on the East, the other running out of the Prouince of *Vnam* on the West. But the Citie walls and Houles are builded in the midst of the field, but they are enforced by the straitnesse to build also on the other side the River, joynd with a Bridge on Barkes. It containeth five thousand Households is fertile but vniuersale, the third or fourth part of the Inhabitants being like of a Tertian from October to December, which takes away many, and leaues a pale Impression on the rest. Strangers also are no less arrested by it, when they come thither on buisness. And the Infidels had almost lost themselves in this new purchase, where being rescued they had a Charter from the Vice-roy to build their Houle in ground belonging to the Monasterie. Thicker the Visitor sent them *Sebastian Fernandez* and *Francis Martine*, which had bene trayned vp in the Schoole of *Amacao*, the first Probationers in *China*. They to auoid expence, built this Houle of one Storie after the *China* manner: and looneklid better of this then their former Residence.

Chiutaiso (the sonne of one of the second ranke of Magistrates called *Sciachin*, a man famous, as being the first named of the three hundred Doctors made every third yeere, and Author of Learned Workes) had spent his Patrimony after his Fathers death with Prodigalitie and expence of Alchymie: and now was forced to shift, with his Wife and Scrants wandering Magistrates of his Fathers Friends, and becoming a Solicitor for other men to the Gouernour became Neighbour to the Fathers, and one day with fest Pompe (after the *China* custom) and precious Gifts came to Father *Matthew*, and chose him for his Master. It was not long till the Father to retule (though he requited his gifts, lest he should seeme to haue bene brought in

thier by courtouneffe) and first taught him Arithmetick. For that which the *Chinois* haue in reckon their numbers: certaynes, but subiect to Error, and vnprophable to high Sciences. He read to him also the *Sphere of Clauins*, and the first Booke of *Euclides* Elements, and taught him to make Sundials of many sorts, and Geometrical Rules to measure Altitudes. He being of subtle wit, committed these things to writing in elegant stile, and shewed them to Magistrates of his Acquaintance, so procuring great opinion and admiration to the Iesuits. His wit and exceeding industry brought him to great skill, that hee made Spheres, Astrolabes, Quadrants, Compasses, Dials and other like, very artificially, and some of sliker: withall so letting forth his Master and the *European* Learning, that it proued of no small consequence. By his meanes the Fathers had acquaintance with *Pimpithan* a Military Commander, with the Gouernours of the Citie and many other Magistrates. *Almeida* fell sicke and was sent to *Macao*, to seee if Physicke might recouer him, and there dyed.

Ricus set forth a goosly Image hitherto vnseene, on the Altar adorned with Waxe Lights, which brought such concourse to see it, that their enuious Neighbours stoned the Houle and Seruants by night: whereto *Chiutaiso* offended acquainted the Gouernour, which had before felt from New Spain, Decree ouer their doore prohibiting all wrongs. He called the Street Gouernours (so Constables with vs) and was likely there to haue scourged them, pretending their ignorance, and putting chaines about their neckes after the fashion, sent them to seeke out the wrong doers, and bring them to his Tribunal. They fearing to anger their Parents, durst not name them, till hee commanded to whip the one and send the other to Prison, whereupon they named two, whose punishment with much intreatie of the Father was pardoned. Father *Francis de Petris* was sent (by the Magistrates Licentie obayned) to succeed in *Almeida* place. The Vice-roy was then preferred by his friends procurement and Bribes to a higher place, but the Provincial Visitor had complained of his wrongs, that by the way hee was acquitted that hee was deputed of all Office, and fined at forty thousand pieces of Gold to the King. Besides, a filthy Vicer brake out of him, and sooner after he miserably dyed. Thus did God punish his pride, which to erect a Temple to himselfe at *Sciachin*, had deputed the Iesuits of their Houle. The same at *Sciachin* was that the Iesuits were expelled for refusing to teach the Vice-roy the Arte of Alchymie.

One *Conseboa* a Merchant of the Citie *Tachin* in *Chiansi*, abode in *Nashum*, and had some fortie persons in his Family, a very Superstitious Idol-worshipper, in whose seruice hee maced his whole life in that *China* abstinence from Fleish, Fish, Egges, and Milke, liuing only of Pulse, Rice, Herbs, and certaine Cakes, industrious for his saluation in another life, but not satisfied with any of the *China* Sects. He had learned by *Chiutaiso* of the Iesuits, and came to *Xaucum* and acquainting Father *Ricus* with his purpose, hee was instructed and baptized *Joseph*. Hee stayed others. They by night assailing their Houle, the Gouernour was made acquainted, who would haue them indicted by the Fathers (which they did very sparingly, whereas the *China* Hat or head covering falling off had bewrayed him, hee was condemned in Capital sentence, the other to be sent to the Gallies, or amongst the Kings Slaues; which sentence was to passe to Superior Gouernours, and so to *Sciachin*, and Father *Ricus* must goe thither about it, which happened well for the new Conuers which had for the most part growne wild. From thence he went to *Amacao* to speake with the Visitor, and returned to *Sciachin*, where the Parents of the theues procured him their Advocate which should haue bene the Plaintiff. Amongst the *China* Magistrates is one which hath his name of *Pardoning punishments*: Hee is sent in the Name of the *Queene Mother*, into each Prouince one. Their Office is to visit Prisons, to exempt the smaller offenders and to mitigate Sentences; for which the Magistrates hold them in great esteem. Hee would not fauour the men, though the Father intreated. The Provincial Visitor only reuokes the judgement of leuen or eight Magistrates. Hereupon they conspired fittie of them to conspire in an impious Sacrifice in a certayne Temple to expell ours from *Xaucum*. But none of the Magistrates of the Citie subscibed, except one, who did it, to offend the Fathers greedily the Visitor better be thought themselves, and intreated *Ricus* to be their Intercessor, wherefore the Visitor was perswaded to pronounce them Dicars and not Theues, and to exchange their sentence into twentie stripes apiece. For the name of Theues would haue bene an ignominious brand to them and to their kindred for euer. Yet would they haue bene an ignominious brand to the Visitor, but hee would not heare them. About that time the *President of the Court of Retes at Peking* passed that way towards *Hamam* his Native Countie, who hearing of Ours (which hee desired not to the Visitors) visited them with gifts, and spent a whole day with them, promising at his returne to carry Father *Matthew* with him to correct their Kalender.

In November 1594, Father *Francis de Petris* dyed, and Father *Lazarus Cataricus* succeeded, *Ricus* bedought him of another course: for howloer they had shaken off the name of *Bones*, yet

China Arith-
metick.

Sauete Justice.

From de Petris

Vice-roy de-
prised.

China absti-
nence.

Nashum.
Theues.

Their sentence

Queenes par-
doners.

Ricus, the igno-
mous.

60. Peking, passed that way towards Hamam his Native Countie, who hearing of Ours (which hee desired not to the Visitors) visited them with gifts, and spent a whole day with them, promising at his returne to carry Father Matthew with him to correct their Kalender.

In November 1594, Father Francis de Petris dyed, and Father Lazarus Cataricus succeeded, Ricus bedought him of another course: for howloer they had shaken off the name of Bones, yet

Magist-
ratus
Populi
Elders
priests
his in
his
and
habite.

Infers
alter
their
habite.

Scilan.

Mount
Maun
or
Melin: See
Ex. Adm-
in.

Naughts.

Cen-
tury Vice-
roy and Gre-
ater Prefect.

Scarcely
en-
sue.

Boat-bridge.

Sciephau, that
is 18. Reemes.
It comes so
many in this
space flow into
it.

Lying vanities

yet because they shaved their beards like the *Portugall* Priests, and cut their hayre, and lined sin-
gle, had their Temple and let prayers, they could not free themselves of that infamous title
which made them visit for greater Delignes. Hee advised the *Visitor*, that by this meanes they
were accounted as the *Idoll* Priests, and that it were fitter to let their hayre and beards grow,
and to wear the habite of the Learned men, each of them having a garment of Silke to visit the
Magistrates, without which they might on equall tearmes amongst the *Chinese* of *Kanum*, or to
visit them: also that it was fite to remove their residence from this unwelcome ayre of *Kanum*, or to
divide it. To all these the *Visitor* yielded, undertaking to acquaint the General of the Order
and the Pope. For howsoever for virtue and learning (wanting to their *Bonze*) the Magistrates
had always shewed countenance to Ours, yet the vulgar held them in that vulgar respect: nei-
ther might the Magistrates broke their custom, to give them equall entertainment. Nor did
they now leave themselves for Learned men of *China*, but for *European* Learned, imitating the

The next yeere, 1699, the Chief Judge of the *Council of Warre*, by the *Chinese* called *Scilan*,
which is farr above the dignity of Vice-roy, (who before had after diuers Dignities betaken
himselfe to a private life) upon occasion of the invasion of *Cora*, was by the King of *China*
(which sent in defence thereof an Armie of eightie thousand) called backe to the Royall Citie.
Hee had a Sonne of twentie yeeres old, who for griefe that he had lost the first degree of their
Students, lost his wits. Hee sent a Captayne for the Fathers, thinking they could recover his
Sonne which hee had with him, and gave them such entertainment, that the Magistrates were
amazed. Hee caused a Charter to bee given to *Kicim* for going to *Nangun*, which lyeth betwixt the
two Prouinces, and the two Rivers, a dayes journey, and the most notable thoroughfare in the
whole Kingdom. For at the foot thereof to the South, the River of *Nanchin* becomes naviga-
ble, which runneth into *Canton* and the South Sea. On the other side of the Hill at the Citie
Nangun, ariseth another great River, which visiteth the Prouinces of *Chinfi* and *Nangun*, and
many Cities before hee enters the Sea Eastward. Thus what comes from forraigne Kingdoms
to *Canton*, is this way conveyed to the in-land Kingdoms, as also from thence hither: Horfes
and Cattel, or Chayres for carriage on mens shoulders, Beasts for carriage and Porters, being al-
most innumerable every day, yet all in good order. The Mountayne is common to both Prouin-
ces, which are distinguished by a Gate erected among the stonie precipices. All the way is set
with Trees, paved with flowers, frequent with Hostiers, as secure by night as by day, both by
the guards of Soldiers, and frequency of Travellers: neither are their over-flowings
by raynes. On the Hill top is a neate Temple, and therein a Garrison, both Prouinces thence
offered to the view. *Nangun* signifieth the *Southerne Towne*. Hee went in one of the Pre-
sidents Ships, till hee came to the Citie *Cencon*; by the way often entering into his owne Ship
and discoursing with him of *European* affaires, Sciences, and Religion. But so many visita-
tions for Magistrates hindered all dealing with his Sonne in this journey, so that by his Father it
was deferred.

In this Citie *Cencon*, resideth a Vice-roy greater then the Vice-roy of that Prouince, they
call him the Vice-roy of foure Prouinces, *Chinfi*, *Fuchien*, *Canton* and *Fuam*: nor all those
Prouinces are subiect to him, but because hee governeth two adjoining Regions, or leste Prouin-
ces out of each of them. The cause of appointing this Vice-roy extraordinary was, the multi-
tude of Thieves in those parts, which bordering on so many Prouinces, could not easily by
ordinarie course of Justice bee apprehended; whence two Regions out of each were committed to
one, who by Militarie forces repressed those molestances. And because the Militarie Magistrates
are subiect to that Council of Warre at *Pekin*, the President was heretofore received with greater
State: about three thousand men were sent to meete him a league off, with their Captaynes,
Colours and Armes, many with Hand-gunnies mixed, shooting off as hee passed, making a faire show
on both sides the River, which there is not very large. When hee was come into the Citie, the
Vice-roy with other Magistrates visited him with Gifts, Prouisions, Banquets; and some com-
panies were set to guard the Ships: which was also done every where, such is the *China* veneration
of such Magistrates by their inferiours. Heere was a Bridge of Boates, opened but once a
day for Ships passage which haue paid their customes.

After they were past this Citie, another River adde it selfe to this, whence they came into a
place called *Sciephau*, about thirtie miles long, in which are many Rockes dispersed, on which
the impetuous force of the water causeth many ship-wracks goods lost, and men drowned; and
requieth expert Ship-men; a strange thing to see a River full of shelves and sharpe rockes, in the
midst of the continent. In the entrance of this dangerous passage is an *Idoll* Temple, wherein
the passengers devoutly commend the safetie of their fortunes to these vanities, which *Scilan* al-
so here did in vaine: for although with multitude and industrie of Slayes his Ship was led by the
Rockes, yet was that broken in which his Wife and Children were caried, though they escap-
ed drowning, by reason of her high building, every one getting vp into the highest decks,
which lifted vp it selfe above those shallower waters. They cryed pitifully, and Father *Mat-*
ther

then hauing then gotten a Boate for himselfe came first and received them, going himselfe into
another lesse, which went before to conduct the way. *Scilan* sent for another Ship presently to
Cencon. Father *Matthew* was taken into another Ship of burthen, which was in a gulf over-
throwne, *John Bartram* his boy was drowned, and hee hardly recovered: the Commodities by
dying were gotten againe, though much hurt by the water. They came to a noble and popu-
lous Citie called *Chengnan*, where the wind by night was so violent, that it dispersed all the
Fleece, which hardly escaped wracke.

Scilan terrified with this disastrous passage by water, purposed to goe by land to *Pekin*, which
is done at the Kings coll; in certayn places there being Horles, Lighters, Porters, prouisions ready
provided. Now thinking to send backe *Kicim* to *Kanum*, lest some accident should in a time
of warre for bringing Strangers to the Court; hee shewed fome the wonders of his triangle
Glasse, which hee was willing to give the President if hee knew he should hold on with
him in the Iourney. They acquainted their Lord, and hee gave him license to goe to *Nan-*
quin, and to enter those two Prouinces of *Cegion* or *Cachien*, and *Nanchin* or *Nangun*. Hee
was carryed thither with two of *Sellans* seruants, still hauing Souldiers from all places to guard
him, they thinking that some of his Sonnes were there carryed. When hee came to that
Mother Citie (for before hee feldome went forth, to prevent all lets) which is in twentie
nine degrees, to the Northernmost part of the Prouince, hee made head of himselfe as one of
Sellans household seruants: and not knowing whither to goe to deliuer his Letters, hee first
went into a Temple of note, which beares name of *Quick-silver*, for they fable that one
of *Huiunfin*, had some hundreds of yeeres agoe, brought perfect *Silver* out of Quick-silver, and
deliuered this Citie from a huge Dragon, whom hee over-whelmed in the ground, and tyed
to that Iron Pillar, and then flew with his whole house, Mice and all, into Heauen. The
building of this Temple is worthy the view, against which are perpetual Faieres, in which their
hayre is lacking to be sold. The Priests are those which they call *Thauhs*, which kee their
hayre and beards grow. When hee entered that Temple, much concourse of people came about
him to see a Stranger, a strange sight there, yea, reputed holy, for they had thought that
the fame of that *Idoll*, had brought him thither from farre Countries. But when hee did no
worship thereto, hee was admonished to doe that which the greatest Magistrates refused not;
but seeing the multitude still flocking about him, hee returned to the Ship, and signified that hee
received gifts of some, especially of the Vice-royes Physician.

Scarcely had they layed out of the chief Citie, when they meete with a Lake admirable
for the greatnesse and other things: on all the banks as farre as a man can see, are innume-
rable Townes, Castles, Villages, great Houses; thence they may passe into *Fuchien*, and thence
to the Sea Eastward. Amongst other Townes there is one Citie called *Nancon*, at the foot of
a Hill called *Liu*, in which Hill are diuers Anchorites, each in his owne Cell, macerating
himselfe with afflicting his bodie. Those Houses are sayd to bee as many, as are dayes in the
yeere: and they tell as a miracle, that the Sunne shining cleere round about, that Hill is al-
way covered with Clouds and myths: so that that Hill (so neere) cannot bee seen out of the
Lake. The course of the River is to *Nangun*, but in that breadth the streame hath small force,
and easily may with the wind bee sayled any way. After you are out of the Lake, a great Re-
gentesse, it is thence forward called *Tamfo*, which signifieth, the *Sum of the Sea*, being in many
the places two or three myles broad, dangerous also for tempests like his Father, and they say
into. The *Chinese* sayle it with great feare, and are there often wracked. Great Ships sayle
therein, and happily out Ships (not the greatest of all) and our Gallies might sayle hither to
betake themselves to some Port, which they may readily doe also in a storme. To this
Lake the Spring-tydes at Change and Full come, at other times not observable: as *Nan-*
quint every day, but it is fresh water. When hee was come to *Nangun* the Presidents seruants

Chingon.

Kings Pothe.

The Glasses
flew
a great
glasse
quinto
Sclan
Nancon
Metropolis
of
Chinfi.

This fables
agree with
Fines Mac-
pores, for
page 374.

Admirable
Lake: see the
new Map.

Mount Liu:
this perhaps
that Calympe
in Plutarch,
or some like place

River Tamfo or
San Sum: be-
yond the Lake.

p. V.

Nanquin described; Ricivs expelled thence, hee settles at Nancian, thence
goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequim; description of it, the way
thither, the Kings Palace, and of Succu,
and Hamceuu.

Nanquin
(which is also
called *Quin*)
defended. It
was then great-
ly being
the Royall re-
sidence, which
remained and
was together
thereby dimi-
nished: it
perhaps also
that Lake de-
caying and
drying up;
not rebuilt
the *Viceroy*
expelled.

Second Wall
twelve Gates.
Third Wall.

Citie wall two
dayes journey
on horsebacke.

Garrison
4000.
In 1600, 20,000
great, 15,000
small.

Large Suburbs

Miserable
Chinle.

Pequim.

Fall from sick-
ness, eggs, and
milk.

Nanquin or Nanchin by the Portuguese is called *Lanchin*: for they heard of it by the In-
habitants of the Province *Fuchian* or *Fuchian*, which vie *L* for *N*. It is called also
Intenfu, because the Governour of the Region there resideth. This is that Citie, which
in the Chinese opinion excelleth all Cities of the world, both in greatness and goodli-
ness: neither may many be compared to it. For it is full of very great Palaces, Temples, Towers,
Bridges, which all yet are exceeded by those of the same kinde in *Europe*. It excellen also in
temperature of the ayre, fertility of the soyle, goodness of wits, gentleness of manners, cle-
mency of speech, multitude of inhabitants of every rank, number and dignity, howbeit by the ab-
sence of the King, that equalitie is made vn-equal. And so in all the Kingdoms of *China*, and
It is compassed with a three-fold wall, the first, that of the Kings Palace exceeding stately. That is
also compassed with a three-fold wall, in manner of a Tower, with ditches filled with water.
It hath four or five *Italian* myles in circuit. And I dare boldly say, that no King any where
hath a more excellent Palace (not if you weigh particulars together, but) compassing all things
The second wall encompasseth the Palace, and the principall part of the Citie, opened with
twelve Gates, which are fortified with Iron plates, and Ordnance planted over against them
within the Citie. This second Wall comprehendeth eightene *Italian* myles compass. The
third Wall and steepest most is not euerie where continued, but where need is, Art hath added dip-
the plement to Nature's fortification.

The circuit thereof can hardly be knowne. The Inhabitants say, that two Horse-men in 30
whole dayes tiding, hazing one out of the same Gate, met together at night: where the pro-
digious quantitie may be observed, especially the forme of the Citie being Circular, and there-
fore most capabie. Although within the walls are great spaces of Mountaynes, Lakes, Groves,
Gardens, yet the greater part is very frequently inhabited. The Garrison Soldiers (which
one would not beleue, had not eye-witness confirmed it) which keepe the Citie alone, are
fortie thousand. The Pole is eleuated 32. degrees, and so it is seated in manner in the midst
of the Kingdom, from North to South. The River runneth by it at the Wall, exceedingly
both enriching and beautifying it. Nor doth it onely passe by, but is in many places brought in-
to the Citie by Channels (whereby greater vessels may enter the Citie) being enlarged by Art.
In times past it was called the chiefe Citie of the Kingdom, and may seeme to have bene an-
ciently more glorious.

Kow were a Land in the Suburbs, which is without the three Walls, and is so large and fre-
quently inhabited, that it is very seeme another great Citie. There a Physician of the Vice-roy
of *Schiachin* knew him, and hee visited the Vice-royes sonne, and by his means grew acquainted
with others. When he went into the Citie, hee vied to be carried in a close Chaire, to
prevent noisie, and for more authoritie, and because the length of the way to find houses
often required it. There hee thinking to fixe a residence, learned of one *Schiachin* a Magi-
strate of his former acquaintance, to whom hee had before given a Globe and an Houre-glass,
receiving promises of much kinde. To him hee went full of hope and not empty handed:
but hee being both miserably courteous, and ambitiously hunting after new places, was often-
ded with his presence (hee pretending that he came to see him) sent for his Heall, and threat-
ned him terribly, causing him to slip away his new Gift: having also agreed with the No-
tarie of his Court to give evidence against him, as a troublesome and dangerous man for-
mally expelled from *Schiachin*. Thus against the streame both of his affection and the River, is he
forced (loath to displease Magistrates) to returne to *Chian* Province. In the way full
thoughts, hee had a vision (as the Story saith) in which God appeared to him, and promise
to be propitious in both the Cities Royall to him.

In *Nancian* the chiefe Citie of *Chian* hee abode. This is as great in circuit, but not in Ma-
chandise as *Canton*, and through none of those portentous great Cities, yet is it famous for the
number of Learned men, which thence are aduanced to diuers parts: the people are thirte and
contented with little, and many of them obtrude that first aforesaid. Of the Learned men
is also a *Succu*, in which on set dayes the more learned doe Lecture or discourse touching ver-
tues in very modest mann. The Physician aforesaid, famous for his Art and well respected by
the

the Vice-roy, was visited by him. Hee now vied his Silken veit and Cap vied by the Learned,
somewhat like but higher, then that which Priests in *Spain* wear, (for hee had learned to keepe
state and not to delect himselfe too much) and carried two seruants with him in long garments
made of Gallico, and his gaitatorie Chaire: without which pompe a man cannot be taken for a
Learned man, the poorest Students vying them, and otherwise contemned. The Physician enter-
tained him kindly and after invited him to a Feast, where were many Students, and some of the
Royall blood (of which that Citie hath very great store) which were glad of his acquaintance;
and when hee had once mentioned his staying there, the Physician was so eager in desire thereof,
that hee fayed that the President *Seilan* had written to him, to procure him residence there, be-
cause in the former abode hee had not his health. The *Chinese* esteeme such lyes to be welcome.

- Hee soone got credit amongst them by Mathematical lectures and instruments, and by his arti-
ficiall memorie especially. For the *Chinese* abuse all others commit whole bookes to memorie
with vnwearyed paynes, and in the first yeeres of their studies doe nothing else. Hee repeated the
most confused and inpendant Characters in order, yea, backwards as well as forward. Many
desired to learne it, and some hee entertrained. Physicians being of no great authoritie, hee sought
to insinuate into fauour of the Magistrates; but a certayne Student had counseled him to ne-
glect their license, and thereupon enquire being made by the Vice-roy, this his friend and Land-
lord very friendly-like, would needs throw him suddenly out of doores, and hee was forced by
force to defend himselfe. But the Vice-roy having received a Libell from him, testifying who he
was, was greatly reioiced (having heard of him) and when hee came to his Court, arose from the
Tribunall to meete him, would not suffer him to kneele, and gave him good viage and magnifi-
cent Titles, insinuating him also to reside there. Whole assemblages were after killed into a greater
feast by his Physicians, magnifying his Mathematickes, Memorarie, Bookes, three square Glasse
and other nouelties. The Vice-roy would haue him make him a Dyall, and teach his Sonnes, but
for that admirable Glasse, hee would by no kinde force accept the gift.

- And whereas time out of minde many of the Royall blood are three, two of them having the
style of Kings, *Chienan*, and *Longan*, sent their principall Seruants or Courtiers, to invite Fa-
ther *Matthew* to the Palace, which is fitting to Royall Maestrie, both for Greatnesse, magnifi-
cence of Building, pleasure of Gardens, and other furniture of household and attendance. *Chienan*
30 first invited and entertrained him, attyred with a Royall veluet and Diadem: Father *Mat-
thew* gave him a Dyall with the Signes of the Zodiacke, and a Globe with *Chinese* characters, and
other *European* commodities: which hee recompensed with Silkes, weight of Silver, and diuers
viands. Nothing gaue him such content as two Bookes of *Japon* paper, smooth and hard bound
in *European* manner: one containing Maps and other Mathematicall representations, with an
explication in their Language; the other was a tractate of *Friendship*, wherein Dialogue-wise
(as *Cicero* in his *Latus*) hee bringeth in the King, questioning what the men of *Europe* thought
of Friendship, and set downe the sentences or Philosophers, Doctors, and other Authors: a
work to this day read there with great applause and admiration, Printed in diuers Provinces.
Chienan continued his friendship and left it as a legacy to his Sonne, who vied when the Father
visited him, to pay the Porters, and to give money to his seruants, a token with them of great
welcome. The Societie also of Learned men grew acquainted with him, and the chiefe of them
hearing him complaine of multitude of visitors, wished him to command his Seruants to say hee
was not at home: which officious lye hee affirming to be by our Law vnlawfull, bred in him and
the rest much wonder.

- In the meane while at *Xance* they sustayned abuses, and *Sebastian Fernandes* was vied igno-
miniously by the calumnies of their quarrellsome neighbours, and sentence of a partiall Iudge,
which caused two Seruants to bee whipped with eard, and *Fernandes* to stand as in a Pillorie, with
his head in a board an ell and halfe square, therein a hole fitted for the necke, to be opened and
shut so that a man cannot put his hand to his mouth: and this for sooth for beating the *Bachelors*.
30 This was written as the cause of his punishment. Hee afterwards bought the *Isles* fauour, a-
vpon to *Riciv*, and *Catanu* continued alone without any Father, till the yeere 1597, and tell
felicke: then going to *Amacao* (Father *Iohn Arcecia* was sent in his place) hee returned with Fa-
ther *Nicholas Longobard* a *Sicilian*. Father *Matthew* was appointed successor of the *China* mis-
sionaries were sent, and Images with other things, which might further their *China* proceedings,
the *Portugals* of *Amacao* continuing their liberallitie herein.

- Father *Matthew* minding to trie all means to pierce to the Court, assayed *Chienan* in vaine,
who feared to raise any suspicion of himselfe. Hearing therefore that *Guan* (which had as you
heard) visited the house of *Xance* in his way to *Nancian*, was thence called by the King to *Nan-
way* at *Nancian* they visited him with a present. In which nothing pleased him as the tige-
nouse Glasse and tooke opportunitie to signifie to him, their desire of presenting the King with
some *European* rarities. Hee approued thereof and sayd, they should not onely goe with him to
the Court, but
L. B. II. called
the Countess
of Maschra.

Pequín is situated in the Northern border about one hundred miles from the wall against the

The walls.

Watch and Ward.

Palace.

Streets.

All goe and ride veiled.

Commodities of Mules and Mallecons.

Books of Pequín.

See Pele (p. 88).

China, Cathay, See Pautia.

Cambula the great Tartar of the North.

Coer (p. 104).

Alchymie and base counterfeit.

Cozening Merchant.

China Language and Accents.

Tartars. *Pequín* exceeds it in greatness, composition of the Streets, hugeness of Buildings, and Munitions: but *Pequín* exceeds it in multitude of Inhabitants, and of Magistrates. To the South it is compassed with two walls high and strong, so broad that twelve Horses may easily run abreast on the breadth without hindering one the other. They are made of Bricks, fine that on the face it stands all on huge stones, the middle of the wall is filled with Earth: the height farre exceeds thote in *Europe*. To the North is but one wall. On theer walls by night is kept as vigilant watch as if it were time of warre: in the day Eunuches guard the gates, or rather exact Tributes, which is not done in other Cities.

The Kings Palace riseth within the inner Southerne wall, neere the City gates and extends to the Northern walls, seeming to take up the whole Citie: the rest of the Citie running fords on both sides: it is more what narrower then the Palace of *Nangung*, but more goodly and glorious; that seeming by the Kings absence, as a carcasse without soule. Few of the Streets are paved with Bricks or Stone, so that in Winter dirt, and dust in Summer, are very offensive: and because it raineth there seldom, the ground is all crumbled into dust, and if any wind blow, it strews every Roome. To prevent which they have brought in a custome, that no man of whatsoever rank goeth on foot or ride without a Veile or Bonnet hanging to his breast, of that substance that he may see, and yet the dust not annoy him: which also hath another commodity that he may goe any whither vainelee, so freed from innumerable tedious salutations, and also be spared attendance and cost. For to ride is not magnificent enough with the *Chinois*, and to be carried in their Seats is costly, with Attendants especially; and in that time of Warre it fitted with ours to passe unknowne, being Strangers.

Mullesters flood at the Palace, and City gates, and in every Street to let Mules, themselves also attending the Hires whether they would in the City: which leading the beasts by the bridle, in that frequency made way, being all of skillful of the ways, knowing most of the great ones Houles: all at a reasonable rate. There is a Booke also which truly relateth all the Streets, Lanes, Regions of the City: Porters also with Seats to carrie Men, and Horses are every where found, but dearer then at *Nangung*, or other places.

All things are to be had in abundance, but brought thither and therefore dearer. Wood is scarce, but supplied with Mine-coles (we call them *Sea-coles*) necessary to that Region, cold being what the Climate usually exacteth: their Beds are so made with Brick-works, that they by a new kind of Stoves admit the heat of thote Coles: a thing viall in all thote Northern Regions. These Northern *Chinois* are some what more dull, but better Souldiers then the other. Here they learned that this Kingdome is *Cataio*, and the King of *China* the great *Cay*, and *Pequín* *Cambula*.

For the nine Kingdomes (of *Mangi*) are thote Southerly Provinces which are vnder the great River *Lan-fu-chow*, and fixe upon it make vp the fifteene, so great that some one of them is as great as all *Italy*. Anno 1608, when we wrote, it is fortie yeares since two *Turkes* or *Moorres* out of *Arabia* brought to *China* a Lion (a beast I seldom heere seen) by Land, which had an Office given by the King to them and theirs, to keepe the Lion, and that they should carry no Tales thence. They in conference called this Kingdome great *Catay*, and this City *Cambula* the like we heard of others which had come from *Persia*. The *Chinois* also have heard of that name, and still call the *Tartars* *Lu*, and the North parts *Pa* and *Pe*: to which Can the *Tartarian* Title added easily makes *Cambula* or *Cambula* with others; for the *Chinois* I seldom vñ B. and *Marco Polo* comming in with the *Tartars* called it by their name. And at this time without the walls of *China* is found no *Catay*. The *Portugals* called it *China*, borrowing the name as may be supposed from the *Spannes*, and hence Cosmographers made them two Kingdomes. But *Goer*, his Journey by Land to *Catay* hath taken away all scruple.

To returne to ours now come to *Pequín*, the President gaue them entertainment, and procured an Eunuch to undertake the business for the Presents, which were a Clocke, two Pictures, two 50 Trigon-glafes and a Bell: all pleased the E. much, but his minde ranne more on making Silver of Quick-silver, which he had heard they could doe, and which would bee more gratefull to the King. And when he saw that would not be vnderaken, neither would he undertake to acquire the King, in this time of *Canyas* Warres, and ours also were taken for *Japannese*, or neere vnto them, they not knowing how by true names to distinguish Nations. The President also began to be fearefull and purposed to carry them backe with him to *Nangung*. Yet they staid a month after him (he being at a certain day by Law to depart) and when they had tryed all wayes in vaine, none daring to acknowledge Strangers, they returned to *Nangung*. They had a Bill of Exchange from *Amaco* to take vp money at *Pequín*, but the Merchant had plaid the Merchant and *Chinse* too, none such there to be found. They hired a ship at an easie rate for their returne 60 (because they goe empty) but not easie in this respect that the Owners pauerie made the journey tedious for what of helpe. This benefit they made of this Journey to learne the Language better, making a Dictionary, obtruding their Accents with Points deuised; (that speech consisting wholly of Monosyllables, the want of skill in these Accents had caused that they neither

did, nor were vnderstood) *Cat-nam* skill in Multitude helping to distinguish thote sounds. What comes *Amaco* and he instructed, that the Company still obserue in their Writing.

All the Rivers in *China* vie to be frozen in the beginning of Winter, that ships cannot passe by water, and Carts by Land are safer. They agreed that Father *Matthew* should goe by Land with two Seruants, to try if he could settle at *Nangung*, the first and the burthens to stay till the River were thawed. He purposed also to goe to *Suen* whether *Chinse* had often invited him, being his Country. Passing thorow *Seiamum*, he visited *Suen* and *Tamcen* famous Marts, and passing the River *Tamcen*, at *Chinchiang*, the chiefe City of that Province hee entered into a land made River, by which is failed to *Suen* and to the chiefe Citie of *Cochan Hamcen*. This River being Southerly and neere frozen ouer, is so narrow that multitudes of shippes cloy it so sometimes that they cannot passe forward or backward: He was forced therefore to go by another way, which is a Coach or Wagon of one wheele, so builded that one fitting in the midst, and two on the sides, the Coach-man behind with wooden Leauers or Barres drives it forwards both fairly and swiftly, that in thort time he came to *Suen*.

This Noble Mart is one of them wherof is the Province, *Thas* which is in *Heauen* the Seat of the Blest, that in *Earth* is named *Suen*, and *Hamcen*: in splendour, wealth, frequency remarkable. It is built in a calme fresh-water River, and quite thorow one may goe, as in *Venice*, by Land or Water, but herein it excelleth *Venice* that the water is fishy. The streets and buildings stand upon piles of Timber, the Wares from *Amaco* and other parts are moit fold here. It hath one gate to the Land, the other are water-ways. The Bridges are innumerable, & Magnificent, Ancient, but of one Arch in thote narrow Channells. Butter and White-meares are plenty, Rice, and the best Wine, which thence is carryed to *Pequín* and other parts. It is farly two dayes from the Sea. It is well fortified, the chiefe City of the Region, which hath eight Cities. One of the Princes held this, when the *Tartars* were expelled, against this Royall Race; whereupon it still payeth a great Tribute, to wit, the halfe of all things growing, (so that some two wile Prouinces pay less then this one Region to the King, against whom it had stood out) it is still also aided with a frequent Garrison. *Chinse* was then alied at *Tamcen* a Neighbour City, who rescued him with great humanity. He abode in a Monastery, and resigned his bed to his Master, who tired by trauell felt sicke, and was likely there to haue dyed. Recovered by his care, he gaue him a Triangle Glasse, which he put in a Silver case with Gold Chaines at the ends, and adorned it further with a Writing that was a fragment of that matter wherof the *Heauen* consist. One was said to offer him five hundred pieces of Gold loone after for it, which till Father *Matthew* had presented his to the King hee would not sell: after that hee let a higher price and sold it.

At the beginning of the *China* year, all are busied in sending Presents to their friends, feasts and salutations. They went to *Cinchian* to the p. blise Solemnitie where *Chinse* was well knowne, and by his speech Father *Matthew* and from thence they went to *Nangung*, in February, 1599. Before we come thither we will looke backe to our *Canton* Iesuits.

40

¶ VI.

Letters from Father LONGOARD and TAISO. RICIVS
his entertainment at Nanquin and Residence there.
The Chinois vnlearned Learning.

50 Father *Nicolas Longoard* wrote vnto *Claudio Aquarona* the Iesuiticall Generall, the 11th of October, 1598, that in the Kingdome of *China* there were then Iesuits distributed into two Residences: and one Multitude: at *Nanquin*, Father *Idon Seruino* and *Thomas de Rocca*; himselfe and *Francis Marinus* a *Chinse* at *Seiamum* in *Canton* Province, *Rice* and *Cantonensis*, and *Sebastian Fernandez* a *Chinse*, were then gone to *Pequín*: that *China* condition and conditions agreed so well with him, that hee seemed to bee in the midst of *Italy*: that much respect had accorded to them in conceit of the *Chinois* together, with that Habit of their Learned, which they had cald the *Bons* and their Habit esteemed base alike. He also much commends *Thais* or *Tais*, (*Chinse* before mentioned) who much eury-where commended the Iesuits and their Learning, as much exceeding what eury had bene taught in *China*. And truly, saith he, the *Chinois* Learning exceedeth not the Science of the *Romans* in the time of *Cicero*.

60 They are much excelled in a kind of writing and speaking briefe and pithie Sentences: their Bookes expresse well *Ethicks* and *Politicks*, but are rude in Naturall Philophie. When I had been the best of *Heaven* *Rocks*, *Paris*, and *Clerus*, and *Pargi*, as the *Romane* Trium *viri* for Learning, besides, *Sophy*, *Cler*, *On*.

Rivers frozen, Rice, goeth by Land.

Suen and Hamcen.

Coach of one wheele.

Suen defecti- bnd. Another Pe- nite.

Huge Tributes.

Tenise.

Glasse glazed.

New yeares day.

China Learning. This comparison with that time of the Romans seemeth pithy none the best, though I believe, besides, *Sophy*, *Cler*, *On*.

I tely runne thorow two of their Bookes, which they esteeme as their Metaphysikes, or first Philosophie, one of their learned men gratulated my proficience; whenas I found therein no them, Father Ricci vieth to add none better then the *Europæans*. A Letter of *Taisi* to Ricci my head to the ground, and exhibits honour and reverence to the elder Brother, Master and Father downe my selfe at the feet of his Seat and Chair. The Letter followeth.

After our departing (it being four yeeres since sight of each other) there hath not bene a day since I have not mine eyes the excellent vertue of your Worshp. I gave two yeeres since to did. I know not whether they have assigned that, to come to your magnificent hands, and what is from your Worshp I said it must goe into the North parts, if it would behold the splendour and magnificence of this Kingdome, that my Country had nothing singular, that Nanquin Court was renowned men in it of excellent vertue, and of a true and solid spirit to receive the Law. This year, gathering together those things which your Worshp taught mee, I made a Booke, and exhibited it in the ship was Scungin, that is, a Sains of these times. Those things which I have added happily may be erroneous, and I feare lest they contradict its founder and higher learning; and therefore have sent my servant to blot out the fals, to illustrate the obscure, writing all in another Booke, and sending it by the same vessel to be knowne throu the world. In those places are of great relicking the *Book of Hothu*, *Chu*, and *Thienching*. All those learned make of a Line a Circle: but according to your Worshp, teaching, a Line is more the termination of a Circle, and a Circle consists therein. From which principles, of *claus* brought of *Thaigu*, that is, of God, doe serve exceed the Commentaries of all our learned bene perced. This one thing afflicts mee, that my writing and stile is meane and abject, and most unfit to illustrate and enlarge the most excellent conceits of its mind. *Mee* while I much long, and as it were on tipstoe look about every where, if haply I may lay your face. From Succo the two and twentieth of the fourth Moone, and the four and twentieth of the Raigne of Vanlia. Subscribed; *Thaisi*

Lombard proceedeth in his Letter, and sheweth the commodiousnesse of one King which useth all, of one *Mandarine* Tongue, of the common industrie and cheapnesse of provisions (not all fitting to bring in the Gospell. There are, sayth he, almost infinite houses of *Bonas* maintained by the King, besides gifts which they receive of others which yett repose no great confidence in them: what would these doe if they beleueed to receive a hundred for one, and eternall life? No Knife carried (but by Souldiers in Garrison, not in the way or at home) their habite long and anciently widd, with their hands alway hidden in their long sleeves, except in vfe of their fanne, ded in a few boxes or bawles; their fcerely behaviour equall to the *Europæan*; yea, in some and greatnesse, as many *Ashens* there are great Cities, each having a Schoole or Vniuersitie with-furherance to the Gospell. Their tenacious Ales of their owne outfomes and jealousie of Strangers, might better fcerure them from Heresies. Hee commends also their workes of Piety, and 50 Charities, Almes, Hospitals for poore, voluntary chaftitutes of the bodie to subdue the affections, as fastings (in which they abstine from Fleish, Fish, Milke, and Eggs, but cate other things as oft and as much as they will) liberties and gifts by Magistrates to Widowes which coytayne themselves from second marriages; triall of a mans life in all his actions commended in their Bookes, especially of those things which other men cannot know; and heretofore the liking of a solitary and contemplative life in the Countrey, and reforming themselves to the first state, as they say, wherein the Heauen created them; for which purpose are congregations of learned men, together in Villages addicted to contemplation, and fleeing publicke Offices (as the ancient Fathers had their conferences in woody and mountainous places) in by an Abbeie; and all *Chine* women lye so enclosed, as if their owne houses were Cloisters: These he commends in them, as also that of all vertues they give the first place to Obedience to Parents as in which consists a mans perfection. And that no man may be ignorant of his duty, if they cannot reade (of which there are but few) they have a short Summe (or Catechisme)

for publishing whereof there is a man appointed at publike charge, every full and change, to publish the same in every street of the City, so that on the same day & houre, a litle before Sun rising the same doctrine is propounded in all the Cities of *China*, and thorow all their streets. This is five Articles or Principles, which are, *First*, Obey Father and Mother: *Secondly*, reverence Better and Elders: *Thirdly*, make peace among Neighbours: *Fourthly*, teach Children and Nephewes: *Fifthly*, let every man well discharge his office: *Sixthly*, commit no offence, that is, not to kill, steale, fornication, &c. which in manner comprehend the second Table of the Decalogue. As for the first Table, the *Chinois*, especially the learned are Atheists, little regarding Idols, wherof the Houses and Temples are full; little minding the rewards or punishments of the life to come, or the soules immortalitie, which yett are easily found in their bookes touching the punishments at least of *Hui Pao* (so they call God) in Hell. Of rewards of blessednesse there is not such evidence, as *Thaisi* affirmed. And although many difficulties happened to ours in the *Roman* habite, yett is it now farre otherwise. As for *Canton* Province, the *Mandarins* which come this way, aske vs why we stay amongst these *Mangins*, that is, Rusticks and Barbarians: We must say they, leave the Bayke and pierce to the pith and marrow of the Kingdome, if we would see colation of new Consecrations: the Ethnicks worship that of the Virgin, and call her *Sein mu nian* (which is, holy Mother, and Queen of Queens: and ends with imploring the patronage and intercession of all the heavenly Quire, speciall of the blessed Virgin, the Apostles, the Angels guardians of *China*, to obtaine of the holy Trinitie happy successe to their endeavours, &c. But wee will returne to our best acquainted in *China*, *Ricini*, whom we left newly arrived at *Nanquin*.

The case was now altered at *Nanquin*, they went on foot without impediment to their lodging, which was in a huge Monastery, called *Cinghsin*, in which is great resort of guests which there hire lodgings, being built in the centre of the City. The *Lapians* were now besten from *Corat* and *Quabaccondos* was dead, which had for terrified that warlike Nation. He heard that they had heard of his going to *Pekin*, and that the *Corai* were was the frustrating of his designs in that unreasonable time. The President was very glad of his coming, and exhorted him to buy a house to house, and send two of his followers to look out for one. Scarcely had he heard this with the solemn Rites, when the President followeth to visit them, which them the wonted poening, kneeling to all three (to the President hee was bound as supreme governor of Temples) and the President inquire the Father to spend two or three daies in his house, to see the Fire-works, which that full Moone, the first of the yeere would bee to bee that which without wonder cannot be beholden, the *Nanquin* herein exceeding as may be thought the whole world.

When it was reported that the President had visited him, all the Maiestie of Magistrates did the like, yea some whom he had not visited. The President of the Court of *Small Causes*, and others; yea hee which a litle after was the *High Colat* at *Pekin*, which all vrged him to know from a vision hee before had had thereof) and procured a house which the President red to him, these being to the *China* wits baits for the Gospells fishing. Now first did they heare the Centre drew all beaue things to it, that the Vniuersie was inhabited round, that there were opposite to the Sunne was dazzled or amazed; others that there was a hole in the Sunne, against the Stars all this, was out of measure paradoxical: the like was the soliditie of the Orbes, and their number; the fixed posture of the Stars, the Planes wanderings, the elevation and degrees, without the Tropicks Geographical Maps in *plano*, and Globes, Meridians, Parallels, with other points of *Europæan* learning. A Doctor of their conficted himselfe shewed; *For*, we end, (which hee spoke of the *Tartars* and *barbarous* out-laws; for you begin where whole life.) They numbered five Elements, *Metal*, *Wood*, *Fire*, *Water*, *Earth*, one of which they it not, placing *vacuum* or emptinesse for the Aire they did not acknowledge for one, because they fcerie Element was the highest, and that where we place the aire: as incredible it was that the *Mathem* writ a booke of the Elements, that their language much applauded, and often by them reprinted. Diuers became his Schollars; one sent from his Master in *Hanlin* Colledge in

Six precepts of *China*.

Cantonians Magistrates.

Blessed Virgin honoured.

Nanquin. Cinghsin, a great Abbeie.

The President supreme government of Temples. Full Moone fire-works.

Mathematicians baits to the Gospell.

China learned how vain was.

Hanlin Colledge in Peking.

These Letters for their superiors and equals they were not in the first person, but the name for the province (1). This is a right at the foot, with the (lower) ligatures to be a mans (choleric) taken from their firing at the side in Lectures. Nitch of China the best. Scungin is the great title of honour amongst the *Chinois*, intimating a holy birth, greatly learning, that he may be Master of all, as was their Chastice such one they with comes every 500. yeere, and now *Ricini*. Probabilities for the Gospell.

China Monasteries.

Vniuersities in our fence with Professors and public Schoole are not in *China*; but for taking degrees in our Vniuersities, a mans private studies, and the Cities public examinations have some resemblance. Many things in which the *Chinese* and *Chinois* coincide.

Pegun (the chief place for *China* learning, to be admitted into, which is a great dignity) He was very witty, and without any Master attained the first booke of *Euclid*, and excelled of Father *Mathew* Geometrical demonstrations. And when hee added some things of Christianitie, you need not, I thinke, he confute that Idolatrous Sect, it is enough to teach the *Mathema-* tikes. For these *Bonzi* would also be Philosophers and Mathematicians. They said the Sunne hid himselfe by night behind a Hill called *Siumi*, rooted in the Sea fount and twentie miles deepe. And for the eclipses, they said that the God *Halooban* caused that of the Sun couering it with his right hand, and that of the Moone with his left.

Not at *Pegun* alone, but at *Nangun* also is a Colledge of *China* Mathematicians of better building then Astronomical Observatories. They do nothing but bring their Almanacks to the rules of the ancients, when they mis-remembered, they ascribed it to irregularitie of nature, not theirs, desiring some prodigious quest to follow. These at first were afraid that Father *Mathew* would have deprimed them of their dignitie, and freed of that feare, they visited him friendly, and he them, where hee saw a strange fight. There is an high Mountain, on the top whereof is an open Plaine or Floor fit to contemplate the Starres. In this open place every night is appointed to watch, and observe if any Comets or other alterations be in the skie, thereof to give the King notice, and what it portends. In this place, of cast mental and Mathematical Instruments, admirable for their greatnesse and neatnesse, the like whereof wee have not seen in *Europe*. They have continued there in all chance and change of weather nere two hundred and fiftie yeeres without damage. Of them were four greater, the one a huge Globe distinguished by degrees with Meridians and Parallels, as great as three men can fadome; it stood on a huge Cube of brass: likewise, upon his Axel-tree: in the Cube was a little doore, sufficient for it to passe when need was. On the vnter superficies was nothing graven, neither Stars, nor Regions, whereby it appears that it was either vnfinisshed, or purposely so left that it might serue both for a Celestiall and a Terrestriall Globe. The second was a huge Sphere, the Diameter whereof was a fadome; with Horizon and Poles, and in stead of Circles, certaine double chaines, the space betwixt them representing the Circles in our Spheres: all these were diuided into three hundred and fiftie degrees, and a few minutes. In the midst was a Globe of the Earth, but a certaine pipe hollowed like the barrel of a Peece, which might be turned any way, and let in any degree or cleuation for trial of the Starres very artificially. The third was a Diall two fadoms high in a huge & long Marble stele to the North, with a channell about the table to hold water, whereby to trie if it stood plaine or no: the stile placed perpendicular, both it and the stone distributed into degrees: it seemed, for exact trial of the shadowes of Solitties and Equinoctials. The fourth and greatest was an engine or instrument of three or four huge Astralabes set one by another, each containing a Geometrical pace in a Diameter, with their Fiduciall line, or *Hallibula*, and *Dioptra*: one of them represented the equator inclined to the South, another which made a crosse with the former to the North; another dore erected to the South, perhaps for knowledge of the Verticall Circle, but turned about to shew any Verticall: all had the degrees marked with iron knots standing forth, that they might bee knowne by feeling in the night. This Worke of *Astralabes* was set in a plaine floor of Marble also, with channells about. In euery of these Instruments was expressed in *China* Characters what euery thing signified; the foure and twentie Constellations of the Zodiacke, answering in the number doubled to our twelue Signes. There was in them this one error, that they were let in the fixe and thirtieth degree of the Pole cleaued, whereas *Nangun* stands without all doubt in two and thirtieth and a quarter of a degree. They seeme to haue beene made to be placed somewhere else, and placed here by some vnskillfull Mathematician. Afterwards Father *Mathew* saw the like, or the same Instruments rather at *Pegun*, cast with the same hand, at that time when the *Tartars* ruled over the *Chinese*, by some expert of our sciences.

The greatest Magistrate desired Father *Mathew* to reuise the *Vniuersall Map*, which hee had made in *Canton* Province, and make larger Commentaries, and hee would print it in publick cost, which hee did, and with an elegant Proeme commended the Author of the worke. This was published and carried into all parts, and in other places reprinted. The Vice-Roy of *Chuen* Province printed it with another methode, making to euery Kingdome a proper Commentarie in a booke, adorning the Author also with his praises. Besides the Presidents of the fixe Tribunalls (as well except for the Kings presence, in the gouernement of their Province, to these of *Pegun*) hee had three other friends, yet vnmentioned. There is a certaine hereditarie dignitie deuised to the eldest sonnes, from those Captaines which expelled the *Tartars*: they are called *Quocum*; their posteritie are honoured by the King, most of all the eldest, which in proceesse of time haue growne into a numerous Family; and although they beare no publick office, except some military commands, yet haue they great dignitie and wealth: and they only do truly resemble the Nobilitie of *Europe*. One head of this Family is at *Nangun*, living in great pompe, with Palace, Furniture, Gardens, all like a King. Hee one day invited Father *Mathew*, and constrained him in the best Garden in the Citie to sit down, besides other pleasing rarities, hee saw an artificiall Mount or Rocke of diuers vnfinisshed Marbles, hollowed

Wit of a

Bacchi, botages

Eclipses.

Colledge of

Astronomers.

Mathematicall

huge Instru-

ments.

A Globe.

A Sphere.

A Diall.

Astralabes.

The Chinese

number 24,

constellations

of the Zodiacke.

The like Instru-

ments as Pe-

gum.

This time a

greener with

the time of Ta-

merian; which

ginneth an ho-

nour to Althous

formers: they

of him; besides

the throuell

the last Tartar

which ruled

them Temor-

Quicun.

Quocum, the

Nobilitie of

Chine.

Artificiall rock.

into Caves; it contained Chambers, Halls, Scitres, Fish-ponds, Trees, and other things, as was wonting with Nature to engender pleasures especially in time of heat: to coole themselves in their Rushes or straits with this Cate-retiring; which although it comprehended no great place of ground, yet would it aske the place of two or three houses time to write all the parts, the egre being by another gate. This Nobilman was young, and desired to see some things of *Europe*.

Another which became familiar with Father *Mathew*, was the Commander of all the *Nangun* Soldiers, which had also another great Office, called *Hou*, who often visited him, and became his great friend, whose friendship gaue vs security, to whom the watch and ward, and security of the Citie belonged. Besides, I will name the chief Eunuch, which hath great authority over the *Nangun* Eunuchs, whereof are numbered some thousands, who is Ruler over the Kings Palace, and hath command of all the Citie gates, and ouer the military Musters together with the former Capitaine, with other parts of authority, and expresteth the same with great pompe. He was almost decrepit, and alter the Eunuchs fashion there, not to genelie; and when *Kecuo* came to him, his Courtiers commanded him to geue him a title which answered to *Hughwaffe* with vs. I explaine it thus; when they speake to the King, they wish to him ten thousand; *thousand yeeres of life* in these three syllables, *Pan pan fan*, which is all one with the title of *Marquis*: to others in the Palace, the Queens, or Children of the King, they wish interior title pray, one thousand yeeres. Now the Eunuchs are so arrogant that they expect this *thousand yeeres wish*, and to be saluted on the knee. Father *Mathew* could not see this safely, lest hee should doe more to him then to the chief Magistrate; but hee had learned, not to neglect in *China* their rites; and he being deafe, one that followed in his care made vp what the Father wanted. Hee gaue him a great gift, which hee refused, and denied him the trigone Glasses, yet this caused the other Eunuchs to honour him.

At that time liued in *Nangun* one which had obayned the first place in the declaration of Doctors (which is a very great dignity) who liued here in this Country prelate, but as great enemies of all. Hee had degenerated to become a Preacher of the three *Chine* Sects, and professed great knowledge of them. Hee had at his house a famous *Vetarie*, or *Bonzi*-Monke, who renouncing the publick Office, which hee had borne, had shued his head, and (which is not usual in *China*) of a *Learned Monke*, became a Minister of the Idols. And because hee was both learned in the *China* Sciences, and growne many yeeres old, hee had acquired much fame and many Disciples, professors of that new Sect which hee taught. These visited Father *Mathew*, to the wonder of all; that Literate-apostate confessed the truth of our Law, and presented the Father with a Fanne with two elegant Epigrams thereon. Two other visited him, one which counterfeited himselfe to haue liued three hundred yeeres, when the *China* Citizens much followed, as doing on the studie of long life, the precept which hee read to his Scholars. Hee also boasted of Geomancy. The other was a Physician, and companion to the other, each blazing the others Science: and whilst both preferred the Father, some suspected that hee had liued some Ages (which they vyle to asseme of Strangers, offering in countenance from them) and would not let it be knowne.

The *Chinese* haue one day tolemme to *Confucius* the Prince of the *Learned*, in which they make a kind of Sacrifice to the word, not as to their God, but their Master. They call it a Sacrifice, but in larger extent of the word. Muske was prepared against that day, at the triall whereof Father *Kecuo* was present. The Priests of the *Learned*, called *Tartars*, offered the Muske, and the Priests came forth in precious vultures, as if they sought sacrifice, who after their wonted rites to the President, fell to their Muske; in which were small braille Beils, Balons, others as not with Bellows; others resembled Beils out of the hollow bellie yielding a found; all these sounded together with such discordant discord as you may imagine; the *Chinese* themselves content setting the concord and harmonicall consent to be lost; only the Instruments remaining from their Ancestors.

This Temple was great and magnificent, built nere the Citie in a Pine-grove, compassed with walls twelve fadoms high. The wall of the Temple was of bricke, the other parts of timber: it is diuided into four Iles; the Pillars were round of huge timbers as great as two men could fadome, and the height proportionable to that thickness; the roofe is excellently carved, not at *Nangun*, nor farthereth there, yet as little decayed from the first tyndour. In the midst of the Temple is a more eminent place of most precious marble, in which is a double Throne, both of marble; the one for the King when hee sitteth to sacrifice, the other is left for him to sit by, to whom the sacrifice is made. The Chaiters without are beautified with moit elegant windings, and left the Birds thought defile all, the windows are all netted with Iron wyres (which is viall thorow all the Palace: yet the gates of the Temple are covered with Braille plates gilded, and wrought with neat Vilages of the faine metal. Without the Temple were many Altars of red marble, which represented the Summe, Moone, Starres, and Hills of *China*.

Carriage of

the Citie Gar-

rison.

Chief Eu-

nuch,

Thousands of

Eunuchs at

Nangun.

Pan, pan, fan,

2500 the Eu-

nuch, Mo-

narch, hee far

exc. Dan, 10.

Epigrams.

Confucius

bradys.

Much of

Chine.

Templetoyl;

and interm-

cen. a thers.

Lakes and Seas, intimating that that God which is there worshipped made the rest, which are placed without, lest they might be worshipped for Deities. It is prohibited by grievous penalties, to cut the trees of that Grove, or any bough thereof, whence they are great and old. In the circuit of the Temple are many Cells, which are said to have been Baths for the Kings to wash in when they were to sacrifice.

Je suis habit.

Societies of
Learned.

Conference of
disputation
twixt an Idol
Priest and
Rising.

Oppression.
Mines of Gold
and Silver
stopped by an-
cient Kings &
forbidden to
be opened to
prevent rob-
beries.

Didacus or *Iacoby* *Pantzia*.

The Father widd the Habir of the *Learned* (as is said) of those especially which professe themselves Preachers of the Law; the Habir modist, and the Cap not unlike ours in Croffe fashion also. He confuted both the Sects of Idolaters, and commended that of the *Learned*, praising *Confucius*, which was rather flient, then would deuse any thing touching the *Next Life*, and taught had some thousands of Discipules in opinion of *Verue* and *Learning*, and had fed dayes in which to hear and to be heard every moneth. *Chinaiſes* brought the Father, and had fed dayes together, and in some reasoning *Ricinus* wrung from him that some corruptions were in the *Idol* that *Learned* men met in their Societies to conferre of Morall *Verues*, in one of those meetings this man learnedly confuted *Confucius*, which another Magistrate tooke haynously, and cryed out, it was intolerable that the Sect of Idols brought out of other Countreys should be cryed out, *Confucius*, whom the *Learned Ricinus* also admirth, refelling the Idol-follies. He answered, he spoke with the man, but he was not yett well acquainted with *China* businesse, in such meetings determine Controversies) and there hee met *Sambo* a famous *Idol*-Priest, a learned Philosopher, Orator, Poet, and well skilled in other Countreys also. When they were wit, this Priest and the Father together, the Priest began to shew his desire to conferre of Religion, *Ricinus* first asked what he thought of the first beginning of Creation, and there is such an Oration of things whom we call the *Lords of Heavens*. I deny not, sayd he, that there is such an Oration, he hath no Majesty nor Deity, but I am equal to him, and so are all others. Canst thou (sayth *Ricinus*) make those things which he hath done? he granted. Make then such a Chafing-dish (sayth *Ricinus*) make this, sayd the other, was a vnnorthy demand. Thou (sayth he) art an Affinomer, and makest new Sunnes in thy minde when thou reasonest thereof. That, sayth *Ricinus*, is but an Image or likenesse which the minde from things seene conceiveth, as in reflexion of a Glasse whereon the Sunne shineth, yett doth not the Glasse create Sunne. The Host for fearre of further quarrell parted them. At Dinner the *Chinise* disputed of a Question of humane nature, how it came bad (they want Logicke and cannot well distinguish betwixt morall and naturall good, and neuer head of originall line) they discouered therfore a whole houre: after which *Ricinus* repeating what had been sayd, entred into dispute with *Sambo*, who laughed at him, and hee answered him with a Tale of I know not what *Flood*, according to his Sect, but hee frustrated him with *Chinaiſes* words, and this Disputation grew famous. They conceiue that God and the Creatures are all of one substance, that God is as great a Soule of the Vniuersie; which opinion from the Idol-folgs hath infected the *Learned*, *Ricinus* writ a summary of that point, which gave cause good satisfaction, and his Law seemed so farbarous as they imagined.

The Kings Treasure was exhaubt by the *Cargay-Tarwee*, whereupon contrary to the *Laws* he cauled the ancient Mines which were fayed to be stopp'd, to bee brought, and opened, and imposed new Tributes, tharin all Provinces, Merchandizes should pay two of a hundredth: which had bene tolerable if gather'd by Magistrates; but his Eunuchs, lent to every Province, without thame or mercede exacted on the people, and rayed a worse combustion then that of *CordHu*. So many Impoffors, Counterfeits, Theuets were every-where: if a man dwelt in a good Soile, they would digge it vp to leaue for a Myne, to force composition from the owner. Some whole Cities and Provinces compounded with these Caterpillars to free themselves from their vexations: the money is gotten, they gawe the King as taken out of their Mynes. This cauled *Dreth*, so called in some places, for the King was said to dreth the money. The Eunuchs, who were the benefice of gawd had not only stopp'd the Mines, but the greevous penalties were inflicted on the withfood his Catch-poll-Huniches, which by these punishments were more inflexible: and when wintered at *Lincin*, happily elap'd these Harpy-clutches, who with their Presents arriving at *Nangim* rejoiced to see a Reference to be prepared there. These Presents intended for the King, brought such an amazement in the beholders that others were ready to offer force to see them. They fill minding to present the King, (the weather now more cleare and peaceable) *Catamens* went to *Amazars*, where was much rejoicing for these hopes, but loone quench'd with sorrow for loffe of their ship which tradeth to *Lapon*, men and goods lost, on which ship all their Commerce dependeth. They found themselves therefore vnable to maintayne three References, the Refutes Reddor scraped all hee could for that purpose, and added a Watch and Image of the blessed Virgin, and Trigone Glasses, Houre-glasses and other Rarities to their Presents.

Father *Diego Pantoia* a Spanish Priest also accompanied *Catanen* to *Nanguin*, and thence

[illegible]

Amongst those Eunuchs which the King had sent to oppress the people, was one *Mathan*, which dwelt at *Lamia*, whither exactions had raved the people and Soldiers into the Captivity, and burnt his Palace and killed his *Servants*, himself escaped disguised, but the *Captives* and *Slaves* of *Coventineus* no less then before. Our Eunuch added himself to him, but could not stir him, till the third time he admitted, because his *Guits* were not answerable to the others appetite. He was therefore for himself betrayed *Qurs* to this *Harpy*, they not knowing it, saying, that in one of his *hijinks* he had been with precious *Gits* for the King, which he threw closely to his *Neighbour Gites* had great command, was his great friend, and whom *Qurs* asked counsel: he told him that now the Eunuchs reigned, and they almost only were the *King*s *Councillors*, nor could the great *Magistrats* withstand their injuries. Yet the countenance of the *Magistrate* was a great help to him, this being the man whom of all the *Gouernours* he most feared, he man to well delecting that his *Citizens* erected to him a *Temple*, *Image*, and *Inscriptions*; who he soon looked countenanced *Qurs* what he might, and gave him the best advice how to carry him self to the Eunuchs, and to the *Magistrats* that he might prosper, but for him they had lost all and themselves to. This *Cappod* had

30 Ayled, to many wares, a temple, all had built a huge ship in which the King himself might have glorious ship
31 Gilded, the wares, the Cels, Chambers, Halls, and other commodious Buildings thereof; * Turnings
32 Windows, Galleries of yecandying wood carryed with many Meanders, * all thing with
33 the Vernish and glittering with Gaud. In this ship he was carryed to ours, where *Reins* met him.
34 He viewed and liked all, and downe on his knees to the Virgins Picture, promised to procure her
35 a place in the Palace. *Reins* modestly refusing his faine for them to the King, saying, "many
36 Magistrates of bell ranks have undertaken that kindnesse: he, faim'd, saying, none of them could
37 doe so much as he with the King; the King answered my Petitions the same day, to them or late,
38 or outhing. The Emperack which brought ours was sent away, and all the Pretens put a head to his
39 ship. He carryed the Letters with him to the Towre of *Thienfu*, whether he went to find
40 thence thier *maoerla* Tribute to the King: he fea'led them, Comedies, Rope-runners, Turn-
41 42 bers, Vaskiers, and Minde Ape-men attending the cheere with such difports as they had ne-
43 ver them againe in their liueth. Another laye on the Ayre one after another, and catched
44 with which hee toll'd, rayd, rumbled to come on an Earthen Pitcher in fuch fort, as hardly
45 could be done with the hands; the like hee did with a Drumme on a Table. A Comedie was
46 acted only with gestures, of disguised Gyants in glorious habits; none from the Theatre pronoun-
47 cing all their parts. A Boy danced admirably, and then as it were falling, layd his hands on the
48 pranks of the other, and fell to wrestle with the luing Boy, as if both had beene alone.
49 We will leave you Spectators here, and so
50

50 We will leave you Spectators here, and now bring you forth another Actor, which bawling in little while
traveled much, and learned more of his Fellowes, suddenly sent into Europe these Relations not unworthy
your view: which I have therefore examined with the Originall Spanish, and the Latine Translation,
and cut off some Superfluities: to give you more full content and to prevent Repetitions: y^e rather because
hee descends to many particularities: which Ricus looking higher and knowing more, hath omitted.

Hh

CHAPTER

CHAP. VI.

* This Booke I have both in Spanish printed 1606. in Portugall at Madrid in the year 1607.

A Letter of Father DIEGO DE PANTOJA, one of the Company of IESVS, to Father LVYS DE GZMAN, Provinciall in the Province of Toledo; written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeere 1602.

§. IIII.

Difficulties of entering China, their dwelling at Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Presents for the King, troubles in the way by an Eunuch.

Right Reverend Father in Christ, the peace of Christ be with you. I think I do not satisfie the dutie which I owe unto your Worship, for the love which you have always shewed unto mee, and the Obligation wherein I am bound to so many most dearly beloved Fathers and Brethren of this Province, if being as I am in this great Kingdom of *China*, procuring the good of these Pagans, (whereunto it pleased our Lord to choole mee) I should not give you some briefe Relation of the things that concerne this our new Mission, and of some things also concerning the greatness of this Kingdom, the Customs, Government and Policy thereof.

Colledge of Iesuits.

Being come, as heretofore I wrote to your Worship, to *Macao* a City of the *Portugals*, adjoining to the firme Land of *China*, where there is a Colledge of our Company; and there attending till the Perfection, Tumults, and Warres of *Japan*, would permit ten or twelve Fathers of vs to passe thither, which stayed expecting fit opportunity: when we were ready to depart, within few monethes, it pleased our God to change my *Lot*, and Enterprize which I had before myne eyes, and to send mee to enter into *China*, whereunto I entered in the end of the year of our Lord 1599. There were in this Mission at this time, only five Fathers divided into three Houses. For though it be twenty yeeres since they first began to enter, yet the entrance of Strangers is so hard and so strictly forbidden, and their state and performance is so difficult, that in all this time there neuer passed above five or six Fathers, and those which succeeded since, though by little and little, did discover the Countrey; But their entrance was by stealth and secretly. Considering that all passages were shut vp, and that in all *China* there was no man that could or durst presume to give licence to preach the Gospell; we always sought to get some access unto the King, either by way of Embassage, or by way of Present, and Gifts, and to seeke to obtaine this in part, or in the whole, to this end and purpose.

Entrance into China difficult.

Means found to enter China.

Embassage. Present.

The Fathers always sought to obtaine some Ambassage of the Pope, or of the Catholike King. But perceiving they could not obtaine this, they procured it by way of giving a Present, not so much of precious things, for they had none of kind, as of strange things neuer seene before in *China*. And having procured this for many yeeres space, without hauing any means to obtaine it, the Diuine Providence ordaind one in the year of our Lord 1590, which was this: The Fathers being in *Xacober*, (a Residence of the Province of *Canton*) there passed that way a great *Mandarin*, called by the King, to give him an Office in the Court, which among vs is like vnto a President of one of the chiefeest Councils, which had known the Fathers long time, and now seeing themselves with him, and signifying vnto him the desire which they had to goe to *Paquin*, to give a Present to the King, and that if hee would doe them the courtesie to carrie them along with him vnder his shadow and protection, they would alwayes remaine thankfull, and exceedingly bound to serue him. After this and other motives which they presented vnto him, did that follow which wrought most effect, which was a good Present, with hope of other things afterward, whereupon he shewed himselfe very tractable to grant their request, and to take them with him to *Paquin*.

Being glad of this resolution, they prepared themselves for the Voyage, and tooke the things which they desired to give the King, which hereafter I will mention. It pleased God to bring them to the company of so great a *Mandarin*, without the hinderance of any kind. Being come to *Paquin* they began secretly to negotiate their business, because they durst not, neither was the *Mandarin* that brought them willing that they should see themselves abroad. But though they attempted all possible means, neither with gifts, nor any thing else, there was not any man that would meddle with this business, because it was a matter that concerned Strangers, considering what might hereof happen vnto them. After they had spent certaine

monethes.

monethes, and saw they profited nothing, and fearing some inuolution, they determined to returne to their Residences from whence they came.

Having returned three hundred leagues, they came to the great Citie of *Nanquin*, which was the ancient Seat and Court of the Kings of *China*, and now (though the King reside not there) yet is it the most noble, great, throne, and beautiful of all this whole Kingdome, and retaineth here being the Royall Court, with all the same Offices which the Citie hath where the King resideth. They desired greatly to get an entrance into this Citie, because, as I have said, it is a faire place, and hath such store of graue persons in it, thereby to make themselves knowne, and here to procure with more facilitate an entrance or access vnto the King. But it seemed a thing impossible, because it is a Citie strictly guarded, especially for Strangers, for whose guard and Watch it hath ordinarily above one hundred thousand Souldiers. And if they went about to get licence, it seemed impossible to obtayne the same of so many great *Mandarins*, as governed there for their trust and small fruit which they had reaped of their journey to *Paquin*; and by the counsell of some friends, which they had there, and with the protection of the *Mandarin* without the contradiction of any *Mandarin*, although all of them knew thereof: howbeit, as a very great man said, which afterward became our great friend, hee was ready to send to apprehend the Fathers, vntill hee understood that they were peaceable people, which had long time abode in *China*.

After they were purposed to remaine there, there was another difficulty to get leave to dwell and have an House within the walls. But the Diuine Providence gave them a very sweet and easie means for all this, as here I will declare. The *Mandarins* liue in this Citie in houses which are not their owne, but belonging to the Offices which they bear: and when one hath ended his Office, hee that succeedeth him, succeedeth him in his Houses, which are all built at the Kings cost. At this time a great *Mandarin* had builded one of these, wherein by his Office hee had carried them to *Paquin*, which at that season came vnto this King, they dwelt in *Nanquin*, as they dwelt in it, especially by night, as they did indeed, with such fearful shapd did terrifie those and none would dwell in it. As Father *Mathew Riccio* (who was the party which negotiated this business, as the Procurator of all this Mission) went about to seeke to buy an House, by way that hee tooke it not for a jest, but that if the house liked him, hee would not vary for that; for thing at all afraid of them, but that they did rather much feare him, because he was no such a Lord. They went to see the House, which presently liked him; and as they sold the *Mandarin* that sold it was so glad, that he gave vs Patents to possess it perpetually in *China*; it, and at their coming in they blessed it according to the Rite of the Holy Mother Church; and by the grace of God there was neuer dreame of any euill thing that troubled the same. All And when they saw the great quietude, without any shew of Spirits, they were greatly satisfied, saying, that without doubt this was a great God, and that hee sought to dwell in that House, and that therefore hee had commanded the Devils to dwell there, and not to suffer others to enter thence; and that when he came they went their way.

To this so good beginning the progresse from thence forward was answerable: for the graue *Mandarin* vnderstanding, together with the same that they were Learned men, that they had many Bookes, that they were men of a good life, and that they had some things of their Countrey, in respect of these things) all of them setting feare apart, and other respects, came to visit the Fathers in great estate, because they were the greatest *Mandarins* of all *China*, but with much better requails. They were so well pleased with all that they saw and heard, that all of them becom the like: and for continuance of their amity they came oftentimes to visit them, and sometimes invited them to their Palaces: and with this same and honour of the grauest sort of people, or fly vnto them any discourteous thing.

This was the state of things when it pleased God to choole me for this Mission, and when I entered into it we had three Residences, one in the Province of *Canton*, another in the Province in the midst of the Kingdome, and three hundred leagues from *Macao*. I entered secretly, as all the rest did (I say without particular Licence of any *Mandarin*.) But my secretie continueth:

100000. Grati-
tation souldiers
in *Nanquin*.

Riccius said
40000. are
the other

40000. are for
the Countrey

adjoining for
the Naule

and Sea-guard:
as Riccio might

speak of the
ordinarie at

their peaceable
times, *Panquet*

of tharoorable
some time

while the 16-
years were

continued. *Mandarins*

houses are
puffed.

House pos-
sessed.

100000. Grati-
tation souldiers
in *Nanquin*.

Riccius said
40000. are
the other

40000. are for
the Countrey

adjoining for
the Naule

and Sea-guard:
as Riccio might

speak of the
ordinarie at

their peaceable
times, *Panquet*

of tharoorable
some time

while the 16-
years were

continued. *Mandarins*

houses are
puffed.

House pos-
sessed.

100000. Grati-
tation souldiers
in *Nanquin*.

Riccius said
40000. are
the other

40000. are for
the Countrey

adjoining for
the Naule

and Sea-guard:
as Riccio might

speak of the
ordinarie at

their peaceable
times, *Panquet*

of tharoorable
some time

while the 16-
years were

The relations.

but a while, as hereafter I will declare. I came at the first, without staying in any other Houle, to *Nanquin*, where three Fathers of vs were four months; Father *Matthieu Riccio* our Superior, Father *Laazarus Catano*, and my selfe, and a Brother a *Chinois*, one of the two which are received into this Mission, and every thing goeth well. But as in matter of strange things the *Chinois* are exceeding scrupulous, more then your Worship can beleue, so there were many which spoke of our abiding in *Nanquin*, considering that now we had three Houses in *China*. We beganne with much more earnestnesse to procure another better foundation, and to returne to *Paguin* more openly, and seeke access vnto the King. And because in *Nanquin* there be *Mandarins* to whom this belongeth, and some of them were our Friends, we beganne to speake of this point.

Leave for Pa-

But it was not needfull to spend many words; for straight way we met with a *Mandarin*, to whom by right this matter appertayned, who frankly and freely offered vs Patents, *Dispatches*, and whatsoever was needfull to accomplish this businesse.

The River of Nanquin overfrozen all the Winter.

The promises of this *Mandarin* were not vaine: for when the time came that the River was vnfrozen, (which all the Winter is frozen over) and Barkes began to goe for *Paguin*, he performed his word faithfully, giuing vs Patents and Passes needfull for the money; and besides, hee sent vs a Barke of the Kings to carry our Present and our owne things. Being glad of these good newes and dispatch, we consulted how we should deal in certaine things which offered themselves in this businesse, and who should goe: There was no question but that Father *Matthieu Riccio* should be one, but who should be his companion: for whom they chose me, and the 20 Brother. We let our things in order, particularly those which were of the Kings Present. *Which were two Clockes with Wheels, one great one of Iron, in a very great Case made faire with a thousand engraved works; full of gilded Dragons, which are the Armes and Signes of this King, as the Eagle is the Emperours; another little Clocke very faire, above an hundred little, all of golden Metall, of the best Work which is made in our Country, which our Father General had sent vs for this purpose; which was set in a gilded Case, as the other was: and in both of them in stead of our Letters were given the Letters of China, and an hand that came forth did point at them. Besides these there were three Images in Oyle, two great ones of an Elkibig, and one little one. The greatest was the figures and representation of Our Lady of the Poplar, of Saint Lucas: The second was of our Lady with the Babe Iesus, and Saint John: the third, was a Picture of Christ, which was the least; all of them were of excellent Work. Besides this, there were cerreyne Looking-glasse; two Triangle-glasse (which though among vs they be of no account, yet are they oftentimes here among them) adorned with Chaires of silver, and set in an excellent Case of Iapon, which was of more than one hundred Images; in them that know what Glasses are. A Book of The Theatre of the World, and a *Bréuaire* exceeding fauourably bound, with an inscription, That that was the Doctrine of the True God, which they did present him withall. A very faire Monocord, because it is an Instrument wherewith the *Chinois* doe wonder much, and other prettie things of lesse importance.*

The particulars of the Kings Present. Gilded Dragons or serpents (or Castles) the Kings Armes, Potts like a Lion, perhaps his confidence for the frequency mentioned also by Pals, pag. 49, 50, or perhaps this might then be, and Serpents since the Ruyll Ensigne. Besides a Lion is the Armes of Casten Province, they began their journey from Nanquin 1600 the 20 of May, fifteen of

All which things being left in order, and imbarqued, we tooke our leave of the Christians of *Nanquin*, (which at our departure came to our Houle with a Banquet with great joy) and of the *Mandarins* our friends, which with great sorrow, and shewes of loue tooke their leaues of vs, and sent vs Presents for our journey, and many Letters of fauour to the great *Mandarins* of *Paguin*.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

We departed with this good dispatch from *Nanquin* in the year 1600, the twentieth day of May. And knowing not how the King, and the *Mandarins* of *Paguin*, and those of the Kings Court, would take this our Journey, because we were Strangers, we sought to prepare our selves for that which might fall out: in great hope that we should find ayde eyther in all or in part to obayne our desire, which we had for the establishment of our Company in this Kingdom, and to procure the opening of an entrance thereunto for the preaching of the holy Gospell.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

We began to sayle vps a very great River, whereof hereafter I will speake somewhat; and so when we had sayled certaine leagues, we entred into another small River made by hand about two hundred leagues, only to carry in Barkes the Tribute which the Princes of the parts of *Nanquin* pay vnto the King, and other things which these Countries yeild (which are the best, and most plentifull of all things which are in *China*) because it seemeth impossible to carry it by Land with Millions of people, being in Rice, Wheate, Siluer, and a thousand other things very great: And the Vessels which are employed about this businesse are so many, that without doubt it is no *Hyperbole* to say that from *Nanquin* to *Paguin*, which is three hundred leagues, all the Summer time it seemeth to be a path way of the Kings Barkes. We were all alweil *Mandarins* as particular men very well intreated all the way, whither many *Mandarins* came out of the Villages and Cities, desiring to see the Present which we carried, and our selves; bringing vs 60 many Presents for our Journey. Having trauelled two hundred and thirty leagues in forty dayes, we came to a very famous place and Mart Towne in *China*, which is in the Province of *Xamoa*, which is next vnto the Territories of *Paguin*, called *Loucin*. Where, because of the great Traffike of Vessels and Merchants, which goe and come from the Court, who

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

300-leagues as were one pathway of shipping.

pay to the King a very great tribute, hee hath placed one of his chiefeft Eunuchs, which serueth euer he goeth abroad he is alwaies carried in a Chaire, vpon eight mens shoulders, which is a Kings Eunuch, the very great honour in *China*, with great flore of Horsemen before and behind, with certaine Barkes of Copper, which make a great sound when they be played vpon, to signifye to the people that he cometh that way, that all may goe out of the way; as the custom is with all the great *Mandarins* in the Cities of their iurisdiction. Which Eunuch vnderstanding of vs, and of the great things which wee brought for the King, and of many other things which they put in his head that wee brought, to wit, precious stones, and others of that kind: hee leut vs word, that hee knew what we had brought for the King, and that he desired much to see it, and that the same day or the next he would come, praying vs that we would make it ready.

He came at the appointed time, and hauing leene the things which wee brought for the King, and making account of them to be precious, and that the King would greatly delight in them, hee fought meanes to caufe them to be presented to the King by all meanes, as things that hee had dealt with vs to bring, to please him; and thereby to obayne some lute for himselfe: and besides this, with desire and hope that wee would giue him some precious stones (whereof the *Chinois* are very greedy) he determined wholly to meddle in this businesse. Hee sent vs a Present of things to eat, and a very courteous message, that wee should passe in one of his Barkes, that shortly he would send vs to *Paguin*, with Souldiers of his house, a Petition made with our owne hand to the king; that we should confult together, and berinke: our felues what we desired to obayne of the King, whether it were to be *Mandarins*, or to loue lands or houses, or courtiers. And we made answer with the like, returning him a Present for his answer with all this merrill words. For though hee came with a great offer, yet wee knew that these Eunuchs, for Eunuchs base minded,

It happened at this time that the chiefeft *Mandarin* of this Citie, which was our great friend was come from *Nanquin*, from whence hee had fetched him for that Office. We determined Country, to relate vnto him this businesse, and to aske his counsell what we were left to doe: Hee received the Father with much courtesie and loue, and kept him two dayes in his house: which, after hee had heard the whole matter, answered, that he was very forrie that we had met had meanes of proceeding; and that hee could performe nothing that hee had promised, and that his intent was nothing but courtesie; that hee would aduise vs to take as little as we could a vertue of needfull, and to thanke him with a very good continuance for that which heee promised, because we were in his power, and he might and would hinder our passage; if we did without making any account of vs, without controulment of any man, because hee was not iudged to any *Mandarin*. Not fubied to ordinary Magistrates.

This fecmed vnto vs to be very sound counsell, and a forcible endowment to follow it. So we followed the same, and applied our felues vnto him in every thing, answering the Eunuch according to his desire, and passed in a Barke of his. He desired much forthwith to carrie the Kings Present to his house, saying, that he would trimme them to giue them to the King, and this was to the King, neither that it seemed reasonable, that when wee did giue them, another should trimme them; especially, that these pieces were not such as had need of more trimming, since the first he made vs great banquets, sport, and cheere: but as in very deede they remayne satisfied. At thing but to doe himselfe good, and to looke for his owne profit, and not for ours, hee beganne some precious stones, which some body had told him that we had brought with vs to please him, in which he thought we would laue giuen him them, he began to be out of hope, and to grow barking: and after fifteene dayes he came to visit vs with great pompe at our emow house, and with a Petition to the King, signifying vnto him how hee had met vs on, the way, and what our intent was, and what things we brought.

We were very honourably entertained in his journey, and in all the Townes and Cities of his Iurisdiction wherby we passed, hee commanded them to giue vs without delay refreshing of his Iurisdiction: which is three dayes journey from the Court of the King. We stayed there with co-company that did waite vpon vs, watching day and night about the Barke with their Centinels and Bells, as they are wont to doe with the great *Mandarins*, and especially because

Hee diminished them.

The force of
Winter.

This will
the beginning
of January,
1601.

of the Winter, alwaies with many Souldiers within and without doores, the gates being thus with hanging Lockes, without suffering our Boy to go forth to buy any thing, without two Souldiers to goe with him. In which kinde of living (though full with some remission of rigour that we were kept in at the first) wee continued about two months and an halfe without any kinde of comfort or rest at any time of the day to by Masse.

At the end of which time, the Eunuch returned to the same place. Wee verily thought that our coming out of that place should not be such as it was, at the least we thought we should be thrust into a perpetuall Trinke or Prison, or in some worse place, as the same went, and the good will which the Eunuch shewed vs.

§. II.

The King sends for them, is delighted with their Clockes and Pictures; they are put up, after take a house, are admired for learning; Christianitie of China.



THE cause of our trouble was the Kings not dispatching of our businesse, and our continuance to aske where hee miiked of our coming, to all was ended by his remembering by him had brought him certain Images, and certain small Bells which strike of themselves should fetch them quickly; and he gave the charge of dispatching our businesse to a great Mandarin of Pagan, to whom it belonged to deal with Strangers.

These newes were brought to the Eunuch vs, who for the executing of the Kings commandement (whose Letter they obey without reply) sent vs word that wee must goe to Pagan, because the King sent for vs, and sent vs off-footmen all the Pieces which hee had in his possession, and the most part of those things which he had taken from vs, that wee our selves should put them in order, that they should receive no hurt by our the way, and gave vs many men to carrie all our stuffe on their shoulders, and Horses for all our companie, and a Mandarin to accompany vs. Wee were lodged all the way in the Palaces of the Mandarin very honourably. Having travelled four dayes, we came to the walls of Pagan, and they lodged vs in an house without the walls. And because the King had referred the businesse to the Mandarin, which I spoke of, the Eunuch feared that hee should lose the thanks, which he thought to receive of the King for that present, if another Mandarin should meddle with it. That day hee caused all things to be made ready of the Petition and remembrance, which therewithall he was to give unto the King, and early in the morning with other things and much Silver of the revenues which hee presented, being all guarded with many Horse-men and Foot-men, hee carried to the Kings Palace. Who having the memoriall delivered unto him, commanded his men to receive all things. They received the same: and when hee had seene all those strange things, the like whereof, or of so great excellencie, hee had never seene before: they say that hee rejoiced greatly, considering and viewing all things a very long while, with great hopes of admiration, especially of the Pictures and Clockes. Hee commanded them to bring vs to his Palace, and to enquire of vs what kinde of thing those Clockes were, and what thing was needfull, for to haue them to goe well. Wee answered to the point. And from the place where we were on horsebacke by poole on two Horses which we mounted, and with the like speed we came to the Court. At the same of our coming, and for to see vs an infinite multitude of people assembled, (because Strangers are no ordinary thing in China:) and when we came to the Court, those which had the charge of vs, were entreated to make roome with houses. When we were come to a certayne place, a great Eunuch accompanied with about two hundred small ones, came downe to demand of vs what the King commanded him, and to see how wee did handle those Clockes: They saw how wee used them; but wee answered to the question, that it was needfull to appoint somebodie of good capacitie to learne, which in two or three dayes would learne how to use them.

When they had returned the answer, the King appointed foure Eunuches of his principall Mathematicians, to learne it, and command them to receive vs in the meane while in his house with in his owne Palace. They received vs with much respect and good to ye sayment. A great multitude of Eunuches came to see vs, and every one to enquire w^h came in his minde. By the King, which all these dayes was occupied in rejoicing, but those new things, commanded the Images to be placed in a principall Hall, whether, as the Eunuches told vs, the chiefe Queen went to doe them reverence: and they told vs of the King, that hee durst not keep them there him, being afraid, because they seemed unto him to be a lye. Often times hee sent Eunuches unto vs, to enquire diuers things concerning our Country, whether it had any King, what number of Apparell he wore, and what kinde of Hat? (for in China they make great difference of the

the apparell of the King, from the foot to the head, and of other men) and if wee had any Picture of him that we should shew it. We had a picture wherein was the Pope with his triple Crowne, and the Emperour, and the King with their Ensignes, kneeling before the name of God, and we gave them it for a shew, declaring that those were three kinde of Kings, and that all of them did worship the true God, which made Heauen and Earth, whose Image we had given them. They carryed it unto him, and because it seemed to be small, hee commanded them to draw another greater, in colours by it.

Afterward hee sent another to demand questions of the things of our Country, particularly of the Kings Houses. Wee had a Map of the *Esfurall*, newly cut in Copper, and a picture of the Place of Saint Mark in Venice, both which wee gave them. Though we suspected that they desired but the second, saying, that they durst not give the other, because: fraight in haste hee would command them to paint them great, and there was none that durst take it upon him, though wee know not whether they delivered it afterward. Hee willed them further to enquire; after what manner wee buried our Kings: because in the matter of Burials and Sepulchers, the *Chinois* are great South-layers, and put a great part of their felicitie in a good manner and place of their Burials. At that time wee received a Map of the Death of his Majestie, (who lieth with God in glorie) and of the manner of his Funerall, and so we answered him, as it was in the Map, to wit, that they made him a Coffin within of Lead (which continueth long) and without of excellent Wood, and put these coffins in a Sepulcher of stone, and for this purpose, there was a Church builded of purpose. They enquired many things of vs of this kinde these few dayes, where unto wee were answered, advancing the things that belonged to the service of our Lord God, as much as we might, and concerned our *Europe*, as farre as the truth would permit vs, because that we deemed it to be convenient for the service of our Lord. They told the King many things, that it seemed hee greatly desired to see vs: But on the other part, he thought it would be too great a courtesie, and much beyond his custome, who neuer suffered himselfe to be seene of his owne people, but of his Eunuches and Wives that seue him, and sometime very seldom of some one of the greatest Mandarins; though he would not suffer himselfe altogether to be overcome of this temptation, yet he suffered himselfe in part, and hee sent to take our Pictures: which two Painters did, each of them by themselves as well as they could. Yet in truth I neither knew my selfe nor my companion in that picture, but as it was they carried it away.

It was not after such figure and manner, as your Worship hath knowne mee, but with a Beard an handfull long, and a garment of a Learned honourable *Chinois*, though downe to the foot, and very modest: but from the head to the foot farre differing from our fashion. After the Eunuches had bene instructed three dayes, the King in haste sent for the Clockes, which they carryed, and set in order before him; whereto hee tooke such pleasure, that he increased their Dignitie, advancing those foure which had learned this skill, to a greater place of their Order. The King asked them many questions of vs, what wee did eate, and how much, and many other trilles. Wherunto the Eunuches answered (as they told vs afterward) as wee could deliver.

They gaue vs all the welcomes of humanitie which the King did shew vs, appointing vs all to be *Mandarins*; (which is the reward and felicitie of the *Chinois*) which wee always refused, saying, that we came not for that purpose, but only to dilate the Law of God, neither wee take that office upon vs: But we were so neere to be made *Mandarins*, that they told vs the King would bestow Dignitie upon vs, that wee were enforced to beseech the Eunuches, plainly that we sought no kinde of Dignitie, nor could we become *Mandarins*: who told him so much; wherby our Lord God delivered us out of much trouble, which wee should have endured in refusing the same, if the King had bestowed it upon vs. We continued in these demands, questions and answers, goings and comings to the Kings Court: for now we had lived a whole month abroad: in which time every day I at least was there, when wee could not goe both, and asked vs, what we would demand of the King: Wee told them, that we sought no A Monest.

Wee would be very glad; because wee had none other intent, but to stay in some certayne place, and to seeke to dilate the Law of God. For though it be true, that our purpose did stretch it selfe further (as I have sayd in the beginning) yet wee found things in so different disposition from that which we imagined, that it seemed an exceeding great error, to make a motion to give an entrance for more companie and Fathers: for it was certayne, that we should doe no good, nor should finde any, which by any means durst presume to move it to the King: and assuredly should lose all that we had done, and at last should cast our selves wholly out of the Kingdom: and therefore it was not convenient that we should be knowne, that we had any companions. And many of our friends gaue vs counsell, that wee should not seeme to seeke to dwell here; for in that very point, they thought wee vs in luptation. Yet neuertheless, we went as farr as we could, and as we thought might be brought to passe, which

Three kinde
of Kings.

The *Esfurall*
Saint Marks.

Sepulchers.

Death of King
Philip the 1.

The King ne-
ver suffered
himselfe to be
seene of the
common peo-
ple.

Bad Picture-
drawers.

Eunuches pre-
ferred.

Iesuites offered
to be *Manda-
rins*.

Mandarin of
Faded.They are shut
up in three
months.Mandarin Pe-
tition.A Turk kept
there.They hear a
House.Visited by
Mandarins.Chinois igno-
rance of the
World.III Cosmogra-
phie.Ignorance mo-
derate of ar-
rango.

Mathematicks

was, that we might have the Kings licence, that no Mandarin might (if he would) cast vs out. The Mandarin, to whom the King at the first had referred our buisnesse, seeing the Eunuch had wholly medled in the fame without him, being much offended therewith, did frowne altogether vpon vs, and made a warrant out, to take vs wherefoeuer they found vs, yetting certayne grievous words against vs, because that being Strangers, and remaying in the Court, wee presented not our felues vnto him, to whom of right belonged all the buisnesse of Strangers. They were at the lodging where wee lay, and they shut vp our Boyes: for they neuer durst offer any discourtesie to Father *Matthew Ricci*, (which at that time was there.) At that time I was at the Kings Court, whither they fought to lend me word to speake with the Eunuches, and that they, if they could, should aduertise the King thereof, that they had apprehended vs. But they hindred with exceeding great care and diligence the going forth of any bodie, and they stayed for me till I came home, (which came home thinking no harme at all) and when I was come in, they shut the doore without.

Wee rode the next day very honourably on Horsebacke to the audience of the Mandarin, and signified vnto him, that in that we did not present our felues, was not our fault; hee vied vs wth ill, and honourably; but they put vs in an house with a Guard, where wee continued some three months, yet for that certayne Mandarins came to see vs. This Mandarin gaue the King a remembrance that hee had vs there: *But that as our purpose was good to serve him with that present, it was reason to give vs some reward, sitting downe that it would doe well to give vs the Eunuchs of the Mandarins, and to pay vs for that which we had given him Royally: but that it was fit to send vs away speedily into our Country, or to Canton (where untill then we had dwelt.)* It seemed not well, that Strangers should dwell and that in the Kings Court, entering into the Palace of the King every day, being a thing to Iudiciall. And in very deed hee had reason: for to suffer vs to enter into the Palace, or to stay and lye there, they did vs such a fauour, that of long time the King of *China* hath neuer done so to any Stranger. Wee feared some trouble by this Petition. But our Lord which had given vs this bitter morrell, afterwards made it sweet to vs againe, because the King made none account of it. And albeit diuers times afterward, the said Mandarin delivered foure Petitions concerning this point, hee made as small account of the last as of the first. And diuers times the Eunuchs told vs, that the Kings meaning was of all likelihood, that wee should stay here, *For feare lest we should returne into our Country, to give news and knowledge of this Kingdome;* as they delt with a Turk, which hath beene here about fortie yeeres. True it is, that hee answered a little, in performing nothing that was in the Petition: But wee took it for good satisfaction, that hee did not yeeld to that, that we might not lose the other thing, which was the principall.

When three months almost were spent, seeing the buisnesse would be prolonged if wee attended the Kings answer, and being shut vp we could doe nothing, nor negotiate any thing that we intended, nor deale in Gods matters, as we desired; wee fought to get out of this place, and to get a licence to take a House, and there to stay wayting till the King would give some order: and wee handled the matter so well, by means of certayne Mandarins which fauoured vs, and principally by the grace of our Lord, that wee obtained our whole desire: And wee took an house in the chiefe situation of this Citie: all that which they gaue vs at the Kings cost in that place, which was sufficient for our sustentation, after wee were gotten out they gaue vs the same allowance in like manner.

Many Mandarins of this Court, heard great fame of vs and of our things: and understanding that we were come out of that place, began to come in great numbers and concourse with much honour and respect, courties and presents to visite vs, and to enquire diuers things which they desired to know. For the fame that went of vs, that we knew all Countries, and the things and customes of the World, and the materiall and spirittuall things of Heauen, was great: and therefore every one came to enquire that which hee desired. And though our knowledge be but little, in comparison of the knowledge which is in our Country: yet being compared with theirs of *China*, which knoweth nothing of the world, (save their owne Kingdome, which by a common name they call, *The World*: of God, and of the things of Heauen nothing, and of other things little, it was somewhat, and was sufficient to fend them some amazed, and alwayes with a desire to returne.

They saw a very faire and great Map of the world which wee brought with vs, and we shewed them how bigge the world was, which they thought to be so little, that they imagined that there was not so much more in all the same, as their Kingdome: And they looked one vpon another, and sayd, wee are not so great as we imagined, seeing here they shew vs, that our Kingdome, compared with the world, is like a graine of Rice, in comparison of a great heape. They also thought, that there was no other Writing, nor no other Bookes in the world but theirs: and when they saw ours, which at the least they saw in outward appearance, to be much better then their owne, they were astonished, and put out of their error, doing vs alwayes more and more honour: and chiefly they were astonished, when we shewed vnto them certayne things in the Mathematicks which they knew not, giuing Clackes to certayne persons, which for this

end we made of purpose: and by these, and other meanes, and principally by discourting with them of Morall vertues, (whereof they write, speake, and haue many Bookes) and of Gods matters, these ranne to great a fame, that the greatest Mandarins of all this Kingdome (which are the greatest persons next the Kings) fought to converse with vs, and to tieke our friendship: and so many flect vs presents, and others came to visite vs, with great numbers of people: others with much courties invited vs to their houses: so that in foure months space, wee had gotten the greatest Mandarins of *Peking* to be our friends, and ready to fauour vs in all things: And he which at this time particularly doth fauour and honour vs, is the President of that Audience, which hath the charge of vs, and at the first approved vs: so that wee remayne Inhabitants of this Citie, with all libertie that wee can desire, to deale with all such as are willing to heare the things that belong to our holy Law, and their saluation. And by this good successe, our Lord hath made vs forget all that is past. And though it bee true, that hitherto wee haue gotten no dispatch, nor resolution of the King, yet wee content our felues in that hee heareth vs stay here, although he neuer grant vs more. For albeit by this our Journey, we haue not obtained all that wee desired, yet we hope that this our first abode here, shall lead greatly to the fruiture of our Lord, and the good of this Mission.

They be commonly of good understandings, so that easily they fall into reason, and are capable: they haue not in the government of this kingdome, any thing that forbideth them to follow what Law they list, nor any Law nor Obligation, which is contrary to our holy Law. They haue none which effectually and with authoritie doth exhort them vnto other Lawes, and with-draw them from the truth. For the *Banni* (which are dedicated for this purpose to Idols) are the common concourse of all men, the most base, contemptible, and worst people in all *China*, whose least case is, to exhort them to any thing more then to give them somewhat to eat, and they doe not onely not exhort them to follow Idols; but also wash their head steeper of lying, periwade them (as wee haue often heard of men of good judgement) that it is not good to serve them, since their Ministers bee such. And so in this matter of worshipping of Idols, though there be many that worship them, and haue many of them, and vnto their Ministers for stily make them lay that they are taught, and that they must so to worship them.

Yet, though these things and others which I haue here before said, helpe them with ease to follow the Law of God, the counterpoise is great, and commonly it weigheth downe the ballance on that side. For first because the matter of Strangers is forbidden in *China*; and the dealing with them is suspicious, one sort because they didayne it, as the Princes, who albeit they now concurre better of vs, yet to learne of Strangers, and to recite a Law which is not of their owne meanes, they hardly perswade themselves: others for feare, as the base people.

The second difficultie, and perhaps the greatest, is a naturall obliuion, that all this Nation hath of another life, and of immortallitie, and of saluation or condemnation of the Soule: and not onely an obliuion, but also an asserion from all these things, wherein wee haue likewise found them to differ from all other Nations. And it is a thing to be noted, that since it is a thing so natural to Man to reuerence some God, either false or true, and to feare or love him, and to be of good capacities in humane things, and so wittie therein: yet as though they were deprived thereof, for they are almost all *Idolaters*, not knowing nor worshipping neither false nor true God, nor neuer thinking what shall follow after this life: And those which a man would thinke are most bound thereto, which are the Learned men, *scholars*, which haue least knowledge herof: yet, rather one of the chiefeest things that they commend, is, not to beleuee any thing that concerneth another life, Hell, nor Paradise, which they wholly place in this life. The Philosophers about two thousand yeeres old, whom they esteeme little less, then if they were their God, to whom every yeere they offer Sacrifices: of whom they hold to great an opinion, that they thinke not that any thing more may be knowne, then They knew. And *scholars* which they haue asked vs, whether we had not these Bookes in our Country? What other Bookes might we haue, that might compare with them? And as these Philosophers, as Gentiles, spake nothing of the other life, but onely of good Government, and Morall vertues, they thought of, and of the common vices, which without beleueing that there could be another life. By reason here-exceedingly, by reason of the fatall abundance, and fruitfullnesse thereof, they feeke great difficulties to vndergoe the yoke of Christ, (though it be so sweet) so contrary to their appetite, which taketh from them the libertie which they haue, in keeping as many Wiues as they are able, and in a thousand other things.

The laster yeeres in the reidencies of *Canton*, *Nankin*, and heere in *Peking*, were made some true Christians, which ouercame all these difficulties, and got on forward with great integritie, constancie and feruour. In the Province of *Canton*, in a reidencie which wee haue in *Xancho*, a principall Citie, haue beene Baptized within this two yeeres, about three hundred persons, which

Ethikes.

Four months

Hopes of
Christianitie.The benedict
of the Banni.

Induction.

Almost all.

Bookes of Phi-
losophers, a-
bout two
yeeres old.
Sacrifices to
Philosophers.Some Christians
made since.

according

Clothes of
Women.Some relations
of Con-
versions are
here for bre-
vity omitted.Multitude of
people.Desire of Learning
and Moral
virtues.Make this
scale.

according to the Letters which euen now we receiued, doe all continue with great example and zeale. And the *Mandarin*, and grauer sort of people, moued by the good examples which they giue, doe fauour them much: and especially, our Lord hath shewed many tokens of his fauour, in hauing shewed great plagues vpon such men, as persecuted them for becoming *Christians*. And about all, God hath shewed his ayde vpon the Women: who, besides the men, are very cause it is not lawfull to see them, nor for their kindnesse. But as I say, herein the grace of our Lord God shewed it selfe very mightie, seeing it overcome this difficultie, and so many of them were Baptized, after they had bene very well Catechized by the Fathers. On Sundays and Holy-dayes, because they cannot come to Masse with the Men, yet at least in this beginning, they meete in places appointed for that purpose, and there they Pray, and reason; and treat of Diuine matters. The men for the exhortations that they make vnto them, haue dayes appointed of discourse, and with their owne consent, to conferre and repeat that which they haue sold them; which going home they repeat to their Wives and Daughters.

Every day some bee Converted in *Nankin*: graue and learned men doe enter. Heere in *Peking* while wee haue bene here, we haue Baptized some, and some great *Mandarin* come by heare. If our Lord doe helpe them, and shed his blood vpon these *Chinnois*, (as hee hath done in *Japan*, and in other places) there will be settled one of the most famous and learned foundations of *Christianity*, that is in all the world. For the greatnesse of this Kingdome, their Lawes and Government conformable to reason, their being so studious as they are, and giuen to Learning, and to know so much as they know of Moral vertues, and their good capacities gentle, docile, and ingenious, and the great peace and quietnesse which they enjoy, without hauing any bodie to trouble them with warre, promise much and giue great hope, that the ventage which they haue ouer other Nations lately discovered, in the gifts of Nature (being assisted by the graue God) will helpe them in Gods matters.

And I assure your Worship, that if the doore were opened to Prædication, and to Baptism, I say not that the Fathers and Brethren of our Companie which might bee spared, but with extraordinary application at all, halfe the Religious men of all Europe, were needfull to attend for many Cities, Townes and places: and so infinite numbers of people as there are: albeit when *Christians* are in such abundance, there is such abundance of graue people and of much estimation, that many of them might bee made *Priests*, *Preachers*, and *Bishops*, without feeling any want of life, there be many very good *Mandarin* whose chief delight is to discourse of things concerning Vertue, and oftentimes they meete together as it were in Fraternities to treat thereof, and deliuering the means to gouerne well, and to follow vertue, perfwading one another, more wee see of this, and the more zeale in these *Christians*, so much the more our heart is ready to burst to see them so deliuered, and to haue so few means to obtayne necessarie remedie and helpe.

L. III.

The description of the Kingdom of China: of Catay and Musk; the diuision into Provinces; Cities and Townes described, Rivers, Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding.

Now by the helpe of our Lord I will say somewhat that I remember, touching the Cities, Police, and Government of this Kingdome, but not in such order as were requisite, because I haue no leasure, and therefore I will only write as things come into my minde, though things bee not lincked well together, because I cannot first write that (as I say in the beginning) vntill our Lord grant me a better opportunitie.

This great Kingdome of *China*, is almost foure square, as the *Chinnois* themselves describe the same: it runneth North and South from the Province of *Canton*, which is the most Southerly part of it, beginning fourteene or eighteen degrees vnder the burnt Zone, vnto foure to degrees, which is the most Northerly part of it: it containeth from *Canton* by water, about six hundred leagues; but in a right line it is foure hundred and fiftie, on the East it consisteth with *Corea*, which ioyneth with the same, and with *Japan*, and with the Ocean Sea, by which they come from *Persia*, and *Nepos Ephantia*, to *Manila*: On the West with certaine small Kingdomes, which lye betwene *Bengala*, the Lands of *Magor* and *Perfia*: On the South, with the sea called *Philippina*, and the *Malacca*, and others, and more South-westerly, it hath *Siam*, *Pegu*, and other Kingdomes. On the North part, it hath those people which in our Countries we

commonly

commonly call *Tartary*, with whom they haue alwayes had warre, and once they wanne all the Kingdome from the *Chinnois*.

For the Readers better satisfaction I haue here presented him Hondius his Map of China, not so true it is, but the erroneous conceits which all European Geographers haue had of it: A more complete Map of China I shall present after, as by comparison will appeare.

HONDIVS his Map of China.



This Kingdome standeth in an excellent climate and situation; for besides the things which it hath in it selfe, it standeth very neere vnto *India*, and other Kingdomes, from whence cometh with great facilitie that which it desireth and wanteth. And before I passe any further, because I haue spoken of the situation and heighth of *China*, I will note for their sakes which would bee glad to learne, and also it may serue to mend two notable errors, which our new City of *Pagum* in fifty degrees, being in very deed but in forty only, as we saw, which twice toke the heighth thereof with a very good Astrolabe: And the limits and end of this Kingdome, which are three dayes journey or less distant from this City of *Pagum*, are at the most but two degrees more: And to those great walls so famous in our Europe are in two and forty degrees is the greatest heighth of the Kingdome of *China*.

The second error is, that our Maps make a Kingdome about *China*, which they call *Catago*, *Sala*, which they put for the head thereof, is this City of *Pagum* wherein we are. Wee finde this here to be true very plainly by occlusion of certaine newes which lately were spred out of diuers parts by the way of *Magor*, which gaue out many things, and great matters of *Catago*, which seemed to be so peculiar and proper to this Kingdome of *China*, that they made vs doubt

Two notable errors of our new Maps. *Pagum* in 40. degrees.

The Kingdome of *China* goeth not past 41. degrees Northward. *China* and *Catago* are all one. *Catago* and *Pagum* are all one.

that it was not a feuerall Kingdome. After wee were come to this Citie of *Pagun* we met with two Canlas or Caruans, one of *Moore* of certaine small Kingdomes bordering upon *China*, another of *Turkes* with their Turbans of the Countreys of *Adem*, and of the great *Ismael Saphi*, (for with this very name they call him) and of other parts, which had knowledge by fame of *Spain*, *Italy*, *Venice*, *India*, and *Portugal*.

These *Turkes* and *Moore*s are wont to hither every five yeeres by Land, in the name of their King, to acknowledge and pay Tribute to the King of *China*: for which purpose they counterfeit certaine Letters, wherewith they easily deceiue the *Chinese*, which thinke and hold that all the Kings of the World doe acknowledge obedience vnto theirs. But the truth is, that they come to vfe their traffike and merchandise, and therefore the *Chinese* admit them 10 willingly: howbeit many now doe know, that their paying of Tribute is a fayned thing: In which their traffike they speecl very well. For the King doth maintaine them very plentifully all their Chilits of them, wherof this yeere they brought a thousand. The King tooke of them an easie price a great part of the merchandise which they brought, and afterward he gave them rewards. The thing of greatest bulke of merchandise are a kinde of stones, which themselves call *Isaper* stones; which is white, yet somewhat dusky, so that it endineth to grey (which seemeth to be that *Isaper* which so often times in the holy Scriptures is called Precious stone.) It cometh in pieces whenever, but whole like pebble stones; which stone for many ornaments the *Chinese* esteeme much; especially the King; and they buy every pound 20 of it at eightie Duckets; and of that which is worse, at fiftie or sixtie Duckets, wherby they gaine greatly. I haue seene these stones of other colours in our Countrey, but not of this which the *Chinese* esteeme.

When these men come to this Citie of *Pagun*, they put them into a great house, which there is for this purpose; (wherein wee were two monthes) and suffer them not to come forth. Wee asked these men certaine questions: and one was this of *Cataga*, enquiring of them, How they called this Kingdome of *China* in their Countrey? They answered, *Cataga*, and that in all the Countreys of *Mogor*, *Persia*, and other parts, it had none other name, and that they knew none other Kingdome that was called *fo*. Wee asked them how they called this Citie of *Pagun*? They said *Cambala*, which, as I haue said, is that which our men set downe for the head Citie of *Cataga*. Wherby it appeareth, that there can no doubt be made, but that wee are heere resident in the Countrey which must be *Cataga*; if there were no fault in the Maps; and wee know that there is no such Countrey, nor Cities, but a few contemptible *Mans* and *Gentiles*.

Wee understood also of their a Ciuet or Muske, wherof they brought some, which is, as it were the maw (or stomacke) of a Beast somewhat bigger then a Cat, which they kill to cut away this maw. They breed wilde in the field, and in a Countrey very neere to *China*, though not of this Kingdome. I had read when I departed out of *Spain*, a Booke which is printed of the things of *China*, which writeth of this Ciuet, and of other things, which I haue seene with mine eyes: it reporteth many errors by halfe informations, which hee which wrote it should haue bene better informed in, although in many things hee tell the truth. They brought also great store of very good *Rhubarb*, which heere wee bought of them of choice, as then Marauders the pound: it is a wilde root like vnto *Nauewe*, wherof, they say, the fields are full. These men say, That there is a Sea of land (which our Maps doe place in *Arabia*) neere vnto *China*, which diuideth it from *Adem*, and other Kingdomes: And this should seeme to be the cause, why these Kings, which heere great fame of this Kingdome, of the greatnesse thereof, and of the weaknesse of the people, doe not seeke to invade the same, being not very farre off; because it would be very difficult to passe ouer the same landie Sea, with a great Armie.

The *Chinese* diuid this Kingdome into thirteene Prouinces, and two Courts, which is, as it were, two Prouinces. Every one of them haue their Metropolitan Citie; and every Citie her diuision of so many Townes. It is knowne very particularly by *Chinese* Bookes which are written of this argument, how many Cities, Townes, and places there are in all the Kingdome, how many houses every one hath, and commonly what numbers of people, what every Countrey feuerally yeeldeth, and how much Tribute it payeth to the King, and many other things: but I doe not set it downe here: because I could not get those Bookes these few dayes past; to take a view thereof: At some other time, God granting mee life, I will doe it more at large. Only I say in general, that all the way which wee trauelled, wee met with so many Cities, Townes, and Villages, that to beleue their greatnesse, it was necessarie to see them. For your Worship will hardly beleue, that wee spent two or three houres in sayling fill by the walls of one Citie. After which there still followed many Townes and Villages, one within sight of another. And after this manner all this way continueth, euen to *Pagun*. Yea, the Villages are very great, and full of people, and of much traffike. For though wee gae them this name (which among vs signifieth some small matter) The *Chinese* doe not distinguish

them by great or small, and so their Villages are bigger then others which wee call Townes.

All the Cities and Townes are very well enclosed with high walls. And because, as I said, I deferre this until another time, I will only speake of *Nangun*, wherof I had some fight.

This Citie standeth in two and thirtie degrees and an halfe, eight or ten leagues from the Sea, vnto which it hath a mouth, and a mightie Riuer. It hath three walls of Bricke very high and faire, with very great and beautifull gates, which they shut vp very timely before night, This Citie, of old time, two hundred yeeres past, was the habitation of the Kings of *China*; and so it continueth in very good condition: The streets are very broad, and all paved with very great square stones, or set with bricke. It hath exceeding long streets of two leagues, and two leagues and an halfe, and in the middle of the Citie are the Kings Palaces, which are very great.

The *Chinese* declare the circuit of this Citie, that two Horsemen going in the morning both out of the same gate, and one going on the one side, and the other on the other, going all the day they meet at night in the gate opposite to that which they went out at. The very truth is, that it is a least eleven or twelve leagues in circuit, and seemeth to haue about two hundred thousand houses of people. It seemed to all of vs that were there, that *Nangun* and this Citie of *Pagun*, each of them haue as many people or more, then foure of the most famous and populous Cities of all our *Europe*, as *Rome*, *Lisbon*, and others of the greater fort. For whereas these two wherof I speake are in themselves so great Cities, not one nor two streets, but the greater part of the Citie every day doth swarme with people.

There are about this Citie many others within one or two dayes iourney, and very famous for greatnesse and traffike; among which there are two, one named *Hachuo*, the other *Suecho*. This Citie call these Cities *Paradise*, to expresse the goodnesse, abundance, and cheapsell of all things that are in this Kingdome, and come from other places. And *Suecho* is so full of people, merchandise, and traffike, that a Booke which is printed (wherein all things are set downe which the Prouinces and Cities pay to the King) saith, that this only payeth one yeere with twelve millions: so that there be whole Prouinces that amount not to so much by a great deale: which though it seeme an incredible thing, yet they write it for a certaintie; and hee which knoweth what these Cities are, will beleue it.

Yet for all this, these Cities haue no notable things, neither sumptuous Temples nor buildings, which are wont to be those things which doe beautifie a Citie: for the houses are not beautiful outwardly; nor they vie no great Porches, as they doe in our Countrey. And he that hath seene the things of our Countrey, and is skillfull in architecture, had find it here very little. For the houses are low, and without galleries, lofts, windowes, or lights into the street; yet they haue faire yards, and are very neate within, and painted with diuers colours, with that *Charan*, or liquid Gumme, wherof I made mention before. And that which I speake of *Nangun*, touching the abundance of people, traffike, and manner of houses, is after the same manner in the other Cities which we law. For the *Chinese* are so like, and so vniforme in all natural and artificial things, that he that hath seene one of the principall Cities, findeth no new thing to be multitude of people proportionally there is little difference.

This Kingdome is commonly very fertile of all things that are necessarie for the vse of man: and a great cause of the fertilitye and abundance thereof proceedeth of the great number of exceeding great Riuer which it hath; which besides the profit that the Riuer yeeld by the fishing, and besides the profit in watering of the grounds, wherein they stand the *Chinese* in great with great ease by water, which is an enriching to them that vie it, and of great plentie in a little of *Pagun*, which is, as I said, sixe hundred leagues, wee trauelled not past one day by Land (because wee would not fetch too great a compasse about by water) wee trauelled a great part of this way vnto *Nangun* by the greatest Riuer that euer I law in any life: greatnesse thereof doe call, *The little Sea*; and that with good reason. For though it were an hundred leagues from the Sea where I entered into it; yet there is great abundance of fish of those kinde which breed in the Sea; as Porpoises, fishes with sharpe leakes, and others which I haue seene.

I saw in this Riuer peere the banks thereof men fish with certaine Fowles as bigge as small which the *Chinese* teach to fish: They haue a very long necke, which they binde in such sort that the fishes cannot goe downe into their stomacke, but they fill their throat with them, if they be small fishes, and when they come out of the water, they make them call them out: and if the fish be great, hee fighteth with him, and beatech him with pecking, shaking him, and

Villages as great as Townes.

Nangun in 32. degrees and an halfe.

Streets long. Palaces.

Circuit.

100000 houses

Hachuo and *Suecho*.

Quifay, *Cia*, *lia*, *ca*.

Reuenue.

Building not beautiful, compared with *Europe*.

Vniformitie in *Chinese* Cities.

Fertilitie.

Commodious Riuer.

In 60. leagues but one day by Land.

This is more exactly mentioned by *Riuen*.

a more exacte observer of all which I haue seene.

Nighty Riuer, perhaps *Quia* mentioned by *Pto*.

Ising with a binde: R. nent or Com-

monies

Very Merchants.

It is so in *Map* count.

Isaper stone a great merchandise.

x. *Almifre* Sp. the Latin hath Muske.

y. *Cama buche* Sp. Latin *Sis*.

Rhubarb. See before in *Chob*.

Metet, p. 104 A Sea of Land.

Diuision.

Chorographi- call Bookes.

China populous

with his bill, vntill hee driue him vp that the Fisher may fee him: which commeth quickly with a small Net like a Wheele vpon a staffe, and hee taketh him vnder the water. And after this sort wee law this Fowle take fishes sometimes of a pound, and a pound and halfe weight; and they say they take bigger. And because this fishing is so gainfull and so certaine, they pay a certaine Tribute to the King for euery one of these Riueres (or Cormorants.)

Muddy Riuer.

Wee met with another Riuer as great as this, which seemed to bee rather of made then water, because the water was alwayes mingled with earth, which whence it should come for so many yeeres, I wot not. They cannot drinke the water without they cleanse it, which they doe with Alum. Besides these two Riueres all the rest is made by hand for vessels to passe to *Pagun*.

Alum used in clarifying of water. Shipping.

The Vessels which we law in all the Cities which we passed, is one of the greatest things that belong to this Kingdome. For in euery Cite there are two sorts of them; one sort of vessels for burden, and another sort for houses. Some of them are very faire, and as fit to dwell in as houses themselves: and many of them also ferue for houses for poore people, wherein they haue their whole household, and bring vp Hens and Hogs, and gayne their liuing in them. I remember, that the same morning that wee entered into *Nangun* there went 500. Vessels or more before our Barke, to enter at the same house, with their layes vp most pleasantly to behold; and many of them being laden with diuers things, all for the prouision of that great Cite: and on this manner they continued all day long in going and coming.

Ship-houses.

Multitude of ships.

The excellent beauty of the *Mandarine* Barges.

Tributes in money and in kinde.

The Barges of the *Mandarine* (which are all made at the Kings cost) are the most costly, and are most for the sight, and very great. They would much reioyce in our *Europe* to see them: because it seemeth that there is nothing comparable to these in beauty. Most commonly these haue Trumpets, and Drummes, which they play vpon when they passe by the Cite, and when they meet with others, that all may giue them place. They are commonly as long as Gallies, and as broad or more, but very high, so that to get vp into one of them is about a fathome high from the water, and therefore they carrie a great burthen.

And because I spake before of those which carrie the Kings Tribute, I will here speake more particularly. Many Provinces from whence they cannot carrie Rice and other like things with ease to *Pagun*, because they are farre off, pay their Tribute in Silver: but those Provinces from whence they may pass by water, pay a great part in Rice. For which occasion all the Cities haue great and strong Vessels made of purpose for this seruice. And when the time of their departure is come, euery Cafa or Companie departeth from their Cite with a *Mandarine* that hath the charge of them.

10000. Vessels at *Nangun* for Tribute of Vintalls, and 1000. for other Tributes: and others many for works.

Path-way of ships.

Slaves or loads.

And they say that those Vessels which goe from this part of *Nangun*, in all amount to ten thousand, though they goe not all euery yeere: yet they haue alwayes more for yeeres of greater plenty; and because many cannot returne in time, to goe backe againe the next yeere, I know not certainly how many they be: but this onely I know, that all this way from *Nangun* to *Pagun*, seemed to be a path-way of these Vessels, whereby wee passed: for they went all along, and because they went so deeply laden, oftentimes they wanted water. To helpe this want of water (for because it is no naturall Riuer it neuer overflows) it hath beene opened like Sluices, wherewith it is kept in all the current three or foure or fixe hours: then opening the same, many doe passe with great ease, and they may goe very well vntill they come to such another place.

Silkes and per-fumes.

Besides these Vessels of vintalls, they carrie to the King euery yeere many others, which bring him particular things, and dainties, wherof this Countrey of *Nangun* yieldeth great store, and also for the seruice of the Kings house. Some Cafas or Carauans of these are of pieces of Silke for the Kings house, which may be some dozen of Vessels; others carrie many things to eat: and with one of these Cafas we passed. They were nine great and faire Vessels, which carried pieces of Silke, and other things which they are wont to burne in the Sacrifices which they make vnto the dead, and before their Idols. They say, that these Vessels for particular things are a thousand: and as soone as they come within the Kings house, the Eunuchs take the charge of them. From *Nangun* vnto the middelt of the Kings Palaces, Vessels may passe by this Riuer: to come to the place which they goe vnto, they passe thorow the middelt of the Palaces. In all these Riueres, when they want winde, the Mariners draw the Barkes with great facilitie, and fixe or seuen are sufficient easily and merrily to draw one of these Vessels laden.

Vessels for works.

Wee met likewise vpon this way a very great number of Vessels which came from farre, laden with Bricks for the Kings works, and greater store this yeere to build a great piece of an house which fire from Heauen had burned: for this purpose they carried great store of timber for beames, and boards, and other lesser timber which are caried from the parts of *Nangun* vnto *Pagun*, some an hundred and two hundred paces long, and one log fastened vpon another, so that these rafts grow high and great: they carrie vpon them frames of dwelling houses ready made, wherewith there goeth an inferior *Mandarine*, which hath the care of it, and sometimes the Mariners goe with all their household, and breed of Hogs, Hens and Duckes: for sometimes they

they stay about a Summer in going to *Pagun*. These seuen or eight yeeres this prouision of timber, Bricks, and lime, and other things hath continued.

The fertilitye of this Kingdome is great, of all things that seeme to be needfull for the life of mans life. And if there bee any other Nation which lueth commodiously without needing traffick with forraigne Kingdomes, they are the *Chinese*. And though it bee true that some things come vnto them from forraigne Countries, yet are they not the necessary things for the life, and which all men vse. The most that commeth out of forraigne parts, and they desire, is Silver: And that which all men carrie from thence is very much, and very good merchandise: as Silke, Gold, Muske, Porcelaine, pieces of wrought Silke, raw Silke, cloth of Cotton wooll, all kinde of works in Copper, Iron, and Latten, Quackill, Sugar, Honey, Waxe, Cinnamon, workes of made of fine wood and gilded, as Bedsteads, Inke-horns, Cabinets, and an infinite number of other things, wherof there is so great abundance, that although they send out many things laden for *Lapin*, *India*, *Manila*, and other parts: yet without doubt they might prouide ten times more: and if more would come to buy, they would alwayes haue the more to sell. All things are very cheape, without all comparison cheaper then in our Countrey. A pound of Sugar is worth eight or ten Maraudis, and sometimes fixe: and if they buy any quantitie at once, an hundred pounds weight are worth nine or ten Riials of Plate: And here at the Court (where all things are deare) a pound is worth twenty, or foure and twenty Maraudis. There is great store of Waxe and that very good, which wee buy here in *Pagun* for the seruice of our Altar, a pound for a Riiall and a Quartill: and the pounds here are greater then ours: for euery one of them weigh sixteen Duckets of Silver weight. Honey likewise is very good cheape. Of Copper and Latten there is exceeding great abundance: and Latten made and wrought into any worke that a man would haue with the fist and all is worth a Riiall and a Quartill the pound. Needles an hundred a quart, and if they buy many together, better cheape. And I haue set downe for example their small things to know the particular price, and of other things (though they bee not so cheape) after the same proportion. Howbeit those which come from forraigne Countries to traffick with them, had need to be very heedfull: for the *Chinese* lole not opportunities to raise the price of them, when they may.

Silver in great request in China.

The great store of merchandise in China.

Cheapsell.

A caution for strange Merchants.

Vintall store and cheape.

Six pence. One halpenny.

Herbs.

The abundance of things for food is likewise great, to wit, of Oxen, Weathers, Sheepe, Goats, and more then of all others of Hogs, because they are the common food that they vse of, Deere, Hares, which they catch with Hawkes, wherof here and in other partsthere are many. And when they are deare here, one of them is worth foure or fixe Quartos: they be as great as they bee in our Countrey, and they are found at all times. Hens, Geese, Duckes, and sundry sorts of wilde Fowles, and all other flesh is exceeding good cheape. Wee came to a very great Cite, where Beefe, Mutton, Hennes, all was of one price a pound, which was foure Maraudis. And in *Nangun* (though the Court be there) a pound of Hens flesh was sold for three halpence. Fishes after the same manner, or better cheape, because it stands vpon the Riuer. And I saw a Fish of ten pound weight sold for a Riiall of Plate, and we bought great Trout at three Maraudis a pound weight. Eggs ten, twelue, sixteen, eighteen for one Conduren.

40 Which in our Countrey is a penie halpence farthing. Fruits are of the like cheapsell. In our journey, which was when Abricokes beganne to bee ripe, which are here very good, they gaue vs two hundred for ten Maraudis. They are very much giuen to eat fresh Herbs and Salads, and Pulfe. At euery banquet and good feast, there is alwayes Fleth or Fish. There are many Nuts, Chestnuts, Filberds, and Pine-nuts though but few, Figs, though not of our kinde, and yet as good or better, and many. And although they haue all these things, yet e- uery Prouince and Countrey doth not yeeld them all: but that which one wanteth another supplyeth.

Their common food in stead of Bread is Rice solden only in water, wherof wee all did feed, although at the first wee had much adoe with it. Commonly they haue euery yeere two Har- uests, and in some places three. And the Land hath great Plaines with Riueres to water the grounds: for the fields of Rice doe much desire to be couered with water.

From our entrance into *Canton* vnto this Cite of *Pagun*, wee met with few Hills, and especially from *Nangun* hither very few. Wee passed by a Plane about an hundred leagues, farther then wee could kinde. I saw likewise much Wheat, wherof they make rolls without leauen, solden in the reeke or vapour of seething water, and so without crust, good for old folkes that want their teeth. Although that it bee true that the fruitfulness of this Countrey is very great, yet without doubt other things, as Rice would not be sufficient, if the *Chinese* were as great feeders as our people, and did not feed so sparingly as they doe. They all ate commodiously thrice a day; once, betimes in the morning: the second time, at two in the afternoon: the third time, very moderately at night. And besides the rich *Mandaries*, few others which are of good abilitie, doe commonly eat either Fleth or Fish, but Pulfe, Salads, and Herbs which cost almost nothing, and their chieftest food is Rice, or Miller, and herof they fill their bellies.

They haue many Horses, Mares, and Mules, whole fleth they eat, though I haue not heard report that the greater sort doe feed vpon them. They haue much Wine of diuers sorts: all made

Two and three hundred in one yeere. Plaines Countrey. Plane of 100. leagues. Spare feeding. Herb-eaters. Horses eaten. Wines diuers.

Neatneffe.

In futes.
Benefit of bot
drinke.Oile made of
an herbe.Cold Prouin-
ces.

made of Rice: but herein they may not compare with the Wine of our Country: Whatsoever they drinke, be it Wine or Water they drinke it alwaies hot. They are neate in feeding, for they touch none of their meate with their hands, therefore they vse neither Table Napkins, nor Table-clothes. All their meate is serued to the Table finely minced. They vse to feed with two small stickes of Iuorie, Ebony Wood, or such like, wherewith they take up all their meate, and vse handomely. And herein I confesse, they have a great advantage of vs; because this manner of feeding is very commodious, and such as euery man that hath triall thereof will much delight in it: and therefore our Fathers and Brethren in Iapon and Macao vse it. They alwaies drinke their drinke hot, and eating little fruit (for they are not so greedy of it as our men are) doe keepe them from many infirmities and sickneses, and therefore they liue healthfully. They have no Oliues, yet haue they abundance of Oile. The best is of a kind of Herbe, which they call in Spain, *Alegria*, which signifieth Joy or Mirth. I say not that it is as good as ours, but May I find no fault in it, nor do I find it less, nor much lesse the *Chinow*, which can cate not smell no kind of ours which we had: and they call their thinking Oile odoriferous, for great a force there is in it. As the *Chinow* are diuerse in diuers Prouinces, so are their Fruits: and those which grow in the Prouince of *Canton*, are not in all these colder Prouinces: There are the best sweetest Q. rages which hitherto we haue knowne, which are eaten with the skinnit.

§. IIII.

Their Monyes, Apparell, Persons, Trades, Wealth, Learning,
Marriages, Superstitions, Rites, and
Opinions.

Timber plenty

Much Gold to
be bought in
China.Brasse money
vied in China.

Here is in this Kingdome great store of Timber; for prooue whereof wee need no more but to see the multitude of Barges laden therewith for good cheape as it is. And therefore I thinke a man may build a ship with all things necessary thereunto, three parts of 10 to be bought, but all is Siluer, which they doe not coyn in Money, but cast it in Barres, and when they would buy any thing, they cut it and weigh it in cerayne fine Weights the *Romane* Weights in our Country: and therefore euery body that will buy or sell, carryeth one of those Weights with them. Great store of Siluer cometh out of forreine Countreies. But the chiefe Masse of it is out of the Mines of the Kingdome it selfe; as also the Gold. When they buy or sell, they try the Siluer of how many *Kilantes* it is: and one is worth more, another lesse, according to the goodnesse thereof. It was very necessary for the *Chinow* to weigh and try their Siluer, and not to coyne it into money: for otherwise there would haue bene a thousand deceipts, wherein the *Chinow* are very cunning. They vse Brasse Money, wherein also they try that which is true or false: for in all sorts there is deceipt and mixture. They haue the best Porcelaine that hitherto hath bene found, which is exceeding good cheape, and in such plenty, that besides all the Kingdome of *China* doth turnish it selfe thereof, they send forthas many ships lading-as they will.

For their Apparell, though they haue great abundance and cheapnesse, yet in goodnesse they may not compare with our Country. There is much Silke and that very good, but they know not how to dresse it. They make good Damaskes, razed Velours, Taffaces, and other sorts: but the colours, though at the first sight they seeme reasonable, are quickly lost and fade away. The ordinary apparell of the common people is of blacke cloth made of Cotton, or of cerayne shags of Silke, which are very great, farre greater then a flocke, which only serue for their purpose, and are very warme. Perions of Honour weare commonly an outward Garment of Silke which they vse in Visitations, and other like Actions: And there are many which alwayes goe abroad apparellled in Silke, but not in such great number as that Booke setteth downe, whereof I made mention before. All men, euen to the very Souldiers, weare their apparell long downe to the in-step of the foot, with very broad sleeves, open before, and fastened to the fides beneath the arme. They be so well contented and pleased with their manner of apparell, that they think there is none in the World comparable to theirs. And in very truth they bee graue and modest, especially those of the *Mandarins*, which differ from all others, faining the *Bonzi*, which shaueth their Beards and Hairs. All the men and women let their Hayre grow long, and the men trusse it up, and wind it on a knot on the top of their crowne. They weare cerayne Nees on their heads like Coffees, made very cunningly of Horse-hayre: and in the Summer time what weare Caps and Hats of the same. There are many sorts of Caps or Hats (for I know not what their seuerall names are) according to the state of euery one. The basest sort which the common people vse ordinarily is round. Their shoes, are of the time blisse that their Garments are of,

of, very commonly of Silke made with many faire borders and knots. It is a discourtesie for a man to be seene (especially before any man of Worship) without a Capon on his head. They greatly esteeme for the moit part things of our Country, and they are very deare. And some pieces of Silke which the *Perisid* Merchants brings, especially Velours of three Piles, are far more deare then their owne. All woollen cloth is much esteemed and very deare, likewise Chamblats, and fine Linnen-cloth, which they bring from *India* are very deare. Looking-glaffes, and all things made of Glasse, and many other things, which in our Country are very good cheape, are here deare, and in great estimation.

The *Chinow* haue commonly little Beards, small Eyes, and Noses, and all of them haue black Eyes, so that they much marvelled at the colour of mine, which are of Gray or Iron colour (which they neuer saw) and they find many secrets in them, and they are very deare. And some of their eyes of mine know where fones and precious things are, with a thousand other Mysteries, so that they thinke they haue Letters in them. To paint an euil-faoured man, they paint him in short apparell, with a great Beard, Eyes, and Nole. They are commonly all white, yet not so white as those of *Europe*: and therefore to them we seeme very white. The Learned men are very graue, of very good capacite, and appeare outwardly very modest and graue.

There are Artificers of all Arts that are in our Country, and very many with the selfe-same manner forme of Instrumens. Euery man is free to follow what Trade he will, without being bound to follow his Fathers Trades, as diuers times I haue heard it spoken when I was in *Europe*: and those which will may study, forsake, or change that course of life. They worke very good things, they be very cunning and excellencie ours moit commonly excell them much, though in some things they be very skilfull.

The seruice of young men and maydes is easie and good cheape, because there is great store of people, so that a years wages is not about two Duckets, and more and drinke, without apparell. As there are many poore people that haue many Sonnes and Daughters, it is a very ordinary thing to sell them, and this the cheapest thing in *China*. For a yong of twelue or fifteene yeares without any naturall blemish will cost not past twelve or fiftene Riials of Plate, and in time of Death much lesse, and it is a common thing to buy them for seruice; though they vse them well, and marry them at their time.

Although the abundance and riches of this Kingdome be very great, as the people alfo is: yet there is no body that is very rich, neyther in any state of people may they compare in this point with our Country. You shall not find in *China*, which is able to spend twenty thousand Duckets of Rent, how neere of Kinne founer he be to the King, and very few, and those easie to be numbered that can spend ten thousand Duckets, and the ordinary is no more which they possesse then that which their lands and Offices yeild them, which is not great. But though it be thus, yet those of our Country possesse much more *Silkes*; considering the cheapnesse of things in their Country, all cometh to one account.

There are very few of the poore people able, because all of them commonly take rather, and few will earne their liuing. Though the multitude of the Nation be so many, and the Kingdome so great, *Surnames*.

40 yet the surnames of all the Kingdome are not about three hundred, and all of one syllable.

There are some, though very few, which may be called Knights, which for seruice to the Kings in some necessities haue given them Offices in succession: but the common life is not to haue any Nobilitie by Descent in *China*; neyther can any man say, I am of a better House then you. But the honour and Nobilitie dependeth wholly vpon Learning, and to cerayne degrees and Offices of *Mandarins*. And therefore an House which now is in Office, and its Father be continueth as long as the Learned men and *Mandarins* doe liue. There is no man, neyther Kinman nor not Kinman of the King which hath euer a Village of his owne that payeth him Tribute: but all men pay to the King; and hee giueth stipends and wages to the *Mandarins*, so that they receiue nothing of particular men by right, though they extort much continually by oppression.

Commonly the *Chinow* doe marry from fifteene to eightene and twentie yeares, and all of them doe marry one Wife that is chiefe; and this is their lawfull Marriage. On the day of their Marriage, when the Bride doth passe to the House of her Husband, shee carryeth openly before her through the streets all the things which she bringeth with her, and all her household stuffe: But besides her they may marrie (I say they may keepe and doe keepe as many as they are able) as many Wives as they will, which for the moit part they buy: and afterward when they will, sell them away againe. They may not only not marrie with any Kin(women of their Wives, but) none of that surname, though they haue no shew of Alliance. The sonnes of the Conque- bines doe likewise inherit, and there is little or no difference in their state and honour, to be the Sonne of the lawfull Wife, or of the other, neyther make they any question of it.

The thing wherein the *Chinow* are most obleruant, Ceremonious and Superstitious is in their Burials, Funerals, and Mournings: for herein they shew their obedience and loue to their Parents, whereof their bookes are full. It is a very ordinary thing to haue great respect to their Fa- ther

Seres lat.
forayaci.

Trades.

Seruants
cheape.
Sale of child-
deu vile.None very
rich.Yet as rich as
ours very rich.

Few will.

Knights.

Nobilitie con-
ly in Learning.No Lord but
the King.

Extortion.

Marriage.

Polygamic.

Inheritance.

Funerals and
mourning.

The

cher and Mother, and the disobedient are grievously punished. Many graue men and *Mandarins* begeth leave of the King to leave their Offices which they haue, and to goe home to keepe their Father and Mother company, yielding for a reason that they be old, and that they would goe to serue them. And it is a Petition in the sight of all men to suert, that they grant it very willingly. When the Father or the Mother dieth, all the Sonnes and Daughters (from the King to the meanest Peasants) doe mourne for three yeares. The mourning colour, which among the blacke Bayes, among them is white Linnen, whereof they make all their apparell euen to the Cap. The first monthes they wear a very rough Sack-cloth, girded with a Cord like the bare-footed Friars. And though he be neuer so great a *Mandarin*, without any exception (sue only the *Mandarins* of the Warre) as hee heareth newes of the death of any of his Parents, he is to leave his Office and Dignitie, and all other Employment whatsoever of Government and Examination of obtaining his degree, and is to goe home for three yeares to burie his Father or Mother, and to mourne and bewaile them. The graue men which haue an house for this purpose, doe not straightway burie their dead, but keepe them two or three yeares in the house, in a Chamber which they keepe for this Office, and it is not the worst in the house: and very usually or euery day they goe thither to make them a thousand Ceremonies and Reuerences, and to burne Incense, and other sweet fauours, and to set ouer the place where they be laid, meate to eat; and at several times, many of those *Bonns* doe meet, and with great Ceremonies begin their Seruice and Prayers, and their Sonnes, Kinsfolkes and Wives make lamentation. The *Mandarins* do not only leave their Offices, and change their Weeds, but also all the things which they did vie. Many sit not in Chaires, but vpon low Stooles: they visit, or suffer themselves to be seene very feldome: they change euen the very Paper wherein they write, wherein they haue a piece of another colour, in token of mourning: when they name themselves in their Letters, they vie not the name which they did at other times, but others proper to the partie, as when he nameth himselfe, hee calleth himselfe *disobedient*, signifying, that by his disobedience to his Parents he did not perueue their alicue.

They vie no kind of Muckee, and many change their ordinarie Diet into courser food. Vpon the Funerall day they provide great company: many Kinsfolkes and Friends meete together, all clad in white, with many *Bonns* (according to euery mans abilitie) which sing with dolefull instruments. And by their apparell which they wear, and their time in singing, hee that knew it them not, would take them for Clerkes reuerend, singing plaine Song; for they which resemble them. They make many Beeres with men, of Paper or of white Silke, many Banners and other Ensignes. The place whither the Corps goeth is adorned with many figures: the Corps is put into a very great Coffin. This Nation holdeth a great part of their felicitie, for them and their Successors to conffit in these things of their Funerals, especially in two, the Coffin or Chist wherein the Corps is to be layed, and the place of their buriall. The stuffe to make the Coffin of, wherein themselves are to be buried, and the making of the Coffin, they leave not to others to doe after their deaths, neither then may the body looke for much cost: to make one of these Coffins, neither in this (as a thing of great importance) will they trust, no not their owne Sonns: but they themselves at leisure seeke some kind of Wood that is least corruptible, and Plankes which are commonly foue, fixe, or eight fingers thicke: which because they be so thicke, and the Chists or Coffins very dolely that they can keepe their Corps in their Houses without any euill smell. Some spend in making their Coffin seuentie, eighty, and an hundred Duckets. They hold it for a felicity to be able to get one of these that is good; on the contrary for a great disgrace, not to haue a Coffin to burie himselfe in, and they are very few which faile in that one point.

The Sepulchre and place thereof is the thing for choosing, whereof they vie great Sorcerie or casting of Lots, and doe it with great heedfulness, and with the helpe of some that are skill in this Art. For they hold opinion, that in making a good choice of the place dependeth a great part of their owne good fortune and of their Posteritie. And oftentimes they are yeare in resolving whether it shall looke toward the North, or to any other part. And therefore the greatest and most contentious Sutes which are in *China*, are about places of Burials. These places of Burials are alwayes without the wals in the fields, or Mountaynes wherein they build Vaults very well made and strong of Bricke, stone, or other matter, wherein they lay the Coffin, and then close it vp very furely: And afterward now and then they come thither to performe certain Ceremonies, & to bring things to eat. They hold it very vnluckie to burie a dead man in the Citie: and if they know it, though he were the greatest man that is in *China*, they will not suffer him to be buried in the dead Friends much, especially those which are women. There are many which beleue the passing of the soules from one bodie into another: and therefore after the death of their Father and Mother, they will neuer kill any living beast, yielding for so much why they will not doe so, lest some of them should be their Mother or Father, or some other person. And likewise many of them fast, because, that whereas some of them be poore; they desire afterward to be borne againe in a rich and honourable Family.

Although it be true that the most part of them beleue not in Idols, and it offendeth them

Three yeares mourning in white Linnen.

Keeping the dead at home.

Other Funerall Rites.

Funerall day.

Funerall Figures.

Coffin.

Buriall place.

Vnluckie to burie in the Citie.

Transition of soules: Moreinglichall Superstition.

not to speake euill of them, yet commonly all of them at a certaine time of the yeare doe them some reuerence, because it is the custome, though in no sort they worship them as Gods: and those which put most confidence in them, burne Paper, Incense, and sweet smels vnto them, and kill beasts before them. Their Bookes of these Idols speake of Hell, and in many places, or in a manner in all the Cities there is set vp a portraiture of Hell made with bodily shapen, and many Devils, as vglie as wee paint them. It is very well set forth, but badly beleued; for it is fetched only there for a bugbear. And if any beleue that which the Idols say of Hell, that it is a place of torments, they say, that after so many yeares be passed, all men come out againe, and are transformed into some beast. Those which beleue in the Idols, come before them to cast Lots to know what things shall come to passe: howbeit I haue not heard in all *China*, that there was any answer of a Diuell in an Idol, as is in other parts, in regard of the small beleue that they haue in them, and the lewdnes of the *Bonns* that serue them. Their houses wherein they fet them, whereof as yet I neuer saw any good one, are commonly verie filthy and stinking.

And besides this consulting of Idols, the *Chinns* are much giuen to Diuinations to know things to come, and whether they shall haue good or bad fortune: whether they shall haue that which they desire or no: and there be an infinite number of these South-seyers, and all of them prattlers, mumblers, and coofeners, whereby they deceiue many. And though the *Chinns* be of good vnderstanding, and know that these fellows know nothing, and euery foot doe take them in lyes: yet for all this, there are verie few that when any occasion is offered, doe not confule with them. And though they seeme to bee but few, yet some of them are in league with the Deuill, as oftentimes wee gather by certaine things.

Many of these graue men of *China*, haue commonly two follies, wherein they doe erre more then in other things. The first is, that they perfwade themselves that they can much *prolong their Liues*; and for this purpose they vie a thousand inuentions, and take many medicines, which indeed rather doe shorten their dayes. There are many Masters and Bookes of this folle, which the people follow like Saints to leaue home, and as we say we be, and that we doe dissemble: but that in deed we be an hundred yeares old, and that we know this rule to lue for euer, and that we doe not Marrie because wee would lue long. The other folle is, that they perfwade themselves that they are able, and goe about to make Siluer, whereof likewise there are many Bookes. They vie for this purpose many Hearbs, and Quick-siluer, wherein they spend the little Siluer which they haue, and remaine beggars, but not perfwaded but that it is feasible, but that it was not their good lucke, and good fortune: and to obtaine this, many of them fast many yeares.

¶ V.

40 Their bad Soulerie and Artillerie; Degrees, Priuiledges, Honours and promotions of Learning, Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing. The *Mandarins* commended.

Here are many Souliers in many Prouinces of this Kingdome: and though they haue had Peace these many yeares, yet they still entertaine them: but because they be looers of peace and quietnesse, the most contemptible state, excepte the state of the *Bonns*, is the Soulier. And indeed it is a most base people, which hath no valour nor worthinesse, much lesse any fortitude in them. Many of them are Porters, which beare on their shoulders, the Chaires wherein the *Mandarins* and honourable persons are carried. And at the time of Battles, which are made from time to time, they repaire thither, to obtaine wages, and thus they haue no worth, nor iote of honour in them. The punishment wherewith their as wee doe Children in Schooles. According to the worthinesse and valour of the Souliers, the beautes of their Armour, offensive and defensive is answerable, which is fitter to be laughed at, the sherto be reported. They haue no Harquebusses that are worth any thing: and all those which meth that they beare it, and the rest of their Armour for fashions sake. And I marvel not: for reason of the exceeding great Peace which they haue so long enjoyed, they haue none occasion to become valiant: but they are able men when occasion seruet, and it kemet they will easilie become valiant.

The *Mandarins* of Souliers, is also a thing of small estimation, and they are nothing comparable with those which they call the *Mandarins* of Learning, which are those, which take Deuotion, but they make a Discourse or an Oration, vpon some matter concerning warre, and they

Holmes.

Or Hell. Steen Faint.

Lots.

Wicked Sorcery.

Diuinations and diuinations.

Soules to prolong life.

Bookes of Alchimie.

Souliers many and few.

Da'cresse. Armour and Armes.

The barrels of their Pieces.

The cause of bad Souliers, & disrepute, and their choice from the common.

Exercise Militarie. No Ordnance. make choise of certaine of those which had done it best. Likewise they shote two or three Arrows, to see if they bee skillfull in shooting. They have no vfe of great Ordnance. Albeit I saw in the Gates of some Cities, certaine small shott Pieces, as broad at the mouth as at the nether end, which I know not whether they shot off sometimes or no: I saw about fise or eight of them upon the Walls. The defence of their Walls is their height, without any other Artillery. The greatest force and number of Souldiers, resideth in the confines of the *Tartars*.

Tartarian conquest. It is foure hundred yeeres since a King of the *Tartars* wonne all *China*, (whereof *Paulus* wrote writeth), which was in that Countrey) and they did also possess it two hundred yeeres: at the end whereof, a *Bonzo* a very prudent and valiant man rebelled, and caft the *Tartar* out, and remayned King, whose issue continueth vntill this day. They alwayes keepe great Watch and ward vpon this frontier.

Fearful Tartars. Many youtnes of these *Tartars* remayned in *China*, and namely in these parts of *Papin*, there are many which keepe and maintayne their Law of *Mahomet*, and have *Mosquies* or *Turkish* Temples, and are much different in shapen and countenances from the *Chinois*. Except the Souldiers, there is no need of them: keep Weapons in their houses: not because it is forbidden, but because there is no need of them: but rather the Learned and grate people, count it a dishonour thing to keepe Armour: there is no vfe of them but in the time of warre. For you shall neuer see them fight with weapons one with another as we doe. But their fighting is to buffet one another, to pull them by the hayre of the head, and to draw them by the collar, and in two words to become friends againe. Our men make no great matter of giuing buffets and such like, for they kill one another.

Not blouidie. The *Chinois* are greatly giuen to Learning and studie; for all their honour and riches dependeth thereupon. They haue about fortie thousand sundry Letters: though many of them be made one of another. They haue no A, B, C, nor any thing like therunto, as among vs. But to signifie euery thing they haue one Letter, and all diuerse. Their words are of one syllable, and no more, though their Letters bee fo many. Those which are commonly vfed euey day, are eight or ten thousand. They begin to learne to write and reade commonly, when they bee fifteen yeeres old: they write with Penills. They haue many little Bookes which encourage Children to studie, exhorting them to take paines, with the reward that they shall grow to bee *Mandarins*.

Many Characters. They know not, nor studie any Science, neither Mathematickes, nor Philosophie, nor any such thing, but only Rhetoricke: for all the substance of their knowledge and fame of Learned men, consisteth in nothing else, but to know how to make a very elegant Discourse and Oracion vpona theme, like as in our *Europe* the Orators vfed anciently. And as the *Chinois* haue good wits, and by hope of reward are verie applicable herunto, they doe it with great excellencie, and occupie themselves with nothing else, and haue no other knowledge to distrust them from it.

Monosyllable language. Euery Doctour (after hee hath obtained his degree) setteth vp in his Countrey before the doores of his House a Title of verie great letters, which saith: *This is the House of a Doctor*: which all men haue in regard. And before the doore, they set vp many high Poles like masts, which euery *Mandarin* of that Citie where he dwelleth fendeth him, with a Banner hangd vp, and alwaies they remaine there. They make a verie excellent Arch triumphall, to him that hath the first degree, at the gate of his House. The *Chinois* esteeme more then we doe, the skill to be able to write well, and Print euery yeere a great number of Bookes, whereof there is no examination nor choise, and euery man Printeth what hee list, good or bad, and so they make books of nothing. The best which come forth are of no Science: for as I haue said, they know none: but they are only of Morall sentences, to the aduancement of good Customes and Government. Their manner of Printing is not like ours: for they joyne not their Letters, but for euery leafe they make a table which hath letters on both sides, it would seeme to bee very hard, but with the custome which they haue gotten, they doe it with great ease, speed and cheape- nesse. I will send you some Booke well printed, that your Worship may see it. They alprint Letters in white, I say white letters, and the ground blacke. And though in the former they come not neare vs, yet in this they goe far beyond vs. They vssually print the letters in Stones, and the letters stand not in the Stone upward to touch the Paper directly, but in the paper and the stone they stand all one way: and this is the order whereby they doe this: They wet the Paper, and laying it vpon the toppes of the Stone, they gently beate it with some verie gentle thing, whereby the Paper which lyeth vpon the Stone sinketh into the hollownesse of the Letter, and refteth lower then the other, then with a kind of Inke which they haue for this purpose, they finely lay it ouer, whereby the Letters remaine white, because they bee deeper, and the rest remaineth blacke. I send you with this Letter certaine papers thereof, that your Worship may reioyce in beholding the excellencie wherewith it is done. One of our Bookes of equall volume with one of theirs, containeth much more: for our letter is lesser then theirs. Though in *China* it be harder to learne to reade and write, then in our Countrey, yet there be few that know ordinarie Letters to deale betwene man and man.

Penill-writing. Euery Doctour (after hee hath obtained his degree) setteth vp in his Countrey before the doores of his House a Title of verie great letters, which saith: *This is the House of a Doctor*: which all men haue in regard. And before the doore, they set vp many high Poles like masts, which euery *Mandarin* of that Citie where he dwelleth fendeth him, with a Banner hangd vp, and alwaies they remaine there. They make a verie excellent Arch triumphall, to him that hath the first degree, at the gate of his House. The *Chinois* esteeme more then we doe, the skill to be able to write well, and Print euery yeere a great number of Bookes, whereof there is no examination nor choise, and euery man Printeth what hee list, good or bad, and so they make books of nothing. The best which come forth are of no Science: for as I haue said, they know none: but they are only of Morall sentences, to the aduancement of good Customes and Government. Their manner of Printing is not like ours: for they joyne not their Letters, but for euery leafe they make a table which hath letters on both sides, it would seeme to bee very hard, but with the custome which they haue gotten, they doe it with great ease, speed and cheape- nesse. I will send you some Booke well printed, that your Worship may see it. They alprint Letters in white, I say white letters, and the ground blacke. And though in the former they come not neare vs, yet in this they goe far beyond vs. They vssually print the letters in Stones, and the letters stand not in the Stone upward to touch the Paper directly, but in the paper and the stone they stand all one way: and this is the order whereby they doe this: They wet the Paper, and laying it vpon the toppes of the Stone, they gently beate it with some verie gentle thing, whereby the Paper which lyeth vpon the Stone sinketh into the hollownesse of the Letter, and refteth lower then the other, then with a kind of Inke which they haue for this purpose, they finely lay it ouer, whereby the Letters remaine white, because they bee deeper, and the rest remaineth blacke. I send you with this Letter certaine papers thereof, that your Worship may reioyce in beholding the excellencie wherewith it is done. One of our Bookes of equall volume with one of theirs, containeth much more: for our letter is lesser then theirs. Though in *China* it be harder to learne to reade and write, then in our Countrey, yet there be few that know ordinarie Letters to deale betwene man and man.

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

Like-wise printing. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the greater sort giue themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when wee write into

into friendship with any. Also they make much account of Paintings, and playing vpon Instru- ments. And albeit they know but little in the first, because they haue no Art, nor paint the things with shadowes, and know not how to paint in Oile: yet in the second they are verie readie on their Instruments, and play grauely and leisurely. I heard certaine sorts of Musike, especially in the Palace of the King: to welcome me, the Eunuches his Musicians played vpon me awhile, and they pleased me: although in this, little it seemeth vnto me they may compare with our Countrey, yet it is certaine, that they thinke they doe farre exceed vs. They haue not about one kinde of Instrument, which the greater sort vfe and make much account of, which is like vnto our Harpe, although the fashion and manner of playing vpon it, differeth from ours, and from all our other Instruments.

*As in China there is no sort of people more honourable then the Learned men, and Doctors: for there is no people of better condition, and of more Honourable and more Noble manner of proceeding. And albeit before they were Doctors and Mandarins, they were verie poor and base people, and many of their Fathers officers of vile Offices, (as it is verie ordinarie) neuertheless, after they haue obtayned the Degrees, they put vpon themselves a more honourable spirit. And therefore albeit in *China*, wee endured much trouble at the base peoples hand, yet the *Mandarins* did alwaies vfe vs honourably and with much respect: especially now, for which cause now no man dare trouble vs. And if there bee any, which in title are like our Lords, Knights, and Courtiers, they are thele. There are among them, men of much excellencie and incertie in their Offices, which doe seeke the common good: And without doubt they make vs wonder, that seeing they bee but *Genitis*, which doe nothing for the zeale of Gods honour, nor for his sake, they be of such incertie, which they shewed of late more then at this time, in hauing to doe with this wicked, vicious, and cozening King, which they now haue: who though hee be so absolute a Lord, that with the same libertie, and in a manner with the same facilitie, hee doth what he list with the greatest *Mandarins* of his Kingdome, as well as with the basest people thereof. Yet for all this, of late yeeres there were many, who with great libertie and courage reprehended his faults by writing (which is the manner of speaking most publicly with him) that all men might read it. And though they might feare some grieuous punishment (besides the losing of their Offices, for that was certayn) neuertheless, there were many men of courage which wrote vnto him: among whom there was one very renowned: The letter which he wrote to the King, began thus. *That although hee were assured, that hee were to be hangd, and that the Fire were kindled to burne him, yet hee would reprehend his vices, and lewdnesse, and the evil example that hee gaue to all his Kingdome: And so hee did, and spake verie freely, and put him in great feare. And it seemeth that for his incertie and courage, the King had some regard of him, and though hee punished him, yet it was verie moderately.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

*There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will here set it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others younger of the second. The eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Mandarins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they had aduised him of a thing so leif, and that hee made none account of them, nor seeking to aduance the true Prince, that hee should seeke those that would serue him, that all of them would there giue over their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chieftest men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should resume their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.**

§. VI.

Of the Government of China: Of the Mandarins; the China Complements and manifold niceties.

NOW I have touch'd the state of the *Mandarins*, it offereth it selfe to speake of the manner of Government in particular; But I confesse vnto your Worship, that the multitude of Offices which they have is so great a frame, that I was not able to understand it, to reduce it into order. Onely I will say in general, that they have many *Genitals*, with a civill and faults. There are no great store of Lawes, but commonly they decide ry one diuerse. And hence your Worship may imagine, that the Government in the practise cannot be very iust, since every one that can tell how to make a good theame or exercise, are their owne profit, whereby of necessity, they commit many aburdities and wrongs, and take all that they can get: Bribes are viall, and men vie thely more than any thing else: And though one of them know this fault: in another, they all dissemble as being in the same fault, that others may winkle at them. And though they seeke to hide it one from another, yet it is like the secret of *Archibulus*.

The *Mandarins* are many in all Cities, but very extraordinarie in the Courts of *Nanquin*, and *Pekin*. For in this Citie of *Pekin*, besides the *Mandarins* of Armes, whereof no great account vpon the business: of all the Provinces: Those that properly belong to this Citie and Court, are day; so that were we not imagine what businesse occupie so many *Mandarins*, nor what is the Jurisdiction of every one. The most principall which are in all the Kingdom and here, are the sixte, Presidents of five Councils, being the chiefe of the Kingdom. There is one, which is the greatest, to whom belongeth the government of all the *Mandarins* of the Kingdom, to advance them to higher Offices that doe deserve it, and as much as they deserve, to chastise and to grade those which badly performe their Office: which because it is a place so great and honorable, the *Chinno* call him, *The Mandarin of Heaven*: who propoeth all the things to the King, as to promote, to advance, to asigne the *Mandarins*, and the King confirmeth them: So that all the *Mandarins* how small former they be, that are in all the Kingdom, are appointed by the King. The second hath the charge of all things belonging vnto Ceremonies, as well humane of Court: as ceremonies in all royall Acts, as in making the King, the Prince, and in marrying of them, &c. And all that which belongeth to the worship of the King, the Prince, and in the death, and others which the Kings offer to Heaven and Earth. There is another chiefe of the Council of Warre: another of the Kings Treasure, which taketh the account of the Kings rents: another Council is of the Workes, as of the Kings houses, pention for all things necessary for the Walls of the Cities, &c. There is another Chastisement, whereunto cause criminal and sentences of Death doe belong. Aboute these (fixte) there is only one Degree, which is absolutely the greatest, before whom whatsoever the King doth in anything is consulted of, them in any thing may compare with any of the meanest Lord of title, of our Country. The of and of small countenance, yet they are much respected and obeyed: And the common people kneeleth vnto them, as to the *Mandarins*. The common chastisement which all the *Mandarins* doe give, is to whip them with peeces of Canes, of foure or fixe fingers broad and thicke, where-with oftentimes they dye, when it is layd on soundly. Whipping is as common as it is to the Children in the Schoole: And sometimes for nothing they give a dozen stripes, as well to the Plaintiffe as to the Defendant, and therewith they end the Suites, and they togue none other sentence, but say: *Give him twentie stripes*.

Vially when the *Mandarins* of any State goe through the streets, men goe before them crying, or making a noise with Instruments, for the people to give place. And in particular Cities, when a great *Mandarin* passeth through the streets, all men hide themselves and goe into houses, and the Handicraftsmen cease from their worke, and that in such sort, that I saw once in a Citie in a street of great traffike, a *Mandarin* appear, and in a moment every bodie got away, even the very Dogges, with exceeding great silence: so greatly they bee reuerenced of all men. And many carrie Chaires, trayling them before them, and other Instruments. But in the Courts (though the *Mandarins* be greater) the people runne not away, they doe no more but give way that they may passe. In the Courts many *Mandarins*, though they be great, ride on Horsebacke, and others in Chaires: but besides them, all goe in Chaires carried on mens shoulders, which according to their Offices are two, or foure, or eight.

Government good if well executed. Lawes lawlesse

Bribes.

Donce in a Net naked.

Court Mandarins.

Chiefes Mandarins, of of Heauen. Spe of these set in the d courts of Heauen and Tri-guns. The second.

The third, &c.

Council of State, of the Cities.

Their wealth and wages meane.

Whipping.

State and pompe.

Every Province hath a Visitor, which publicly visiteth the same euery yeere, and taketh information of the *Mandarins*. There are secret and priuie Visitors. Sometime one is sent: But it is no viall thing, and as I haue heard, it is long since it was left off. I speake this, because I alwaies heard when I was in *Spain*, that the *Chinno* used this manner of Visitation.

The Visitor only may give sentence of death. They be not cruell in punishments by death. Onely the King giueth some cruell execution: and namely this King that now reigneth, which is a very wicked man. One of them is that which lately hee caused here to be executed vpon eight men, by the great frosts of Winter, for no great offence for so cruell a punishment, and as they say, falsly imputed; And this it was: Hee caused their neckes to be put through a thicke plank, which taketh a great part of the head, and they let the plankes to stand vpon Formes, so that the man standeth vpon his feet day and night in the midst of the street, with men to watch him. Hee condemned them to this punishment for three months: but they died before fifteene dayes, with their legs all rotted, and burst with standing alwaies on foot: I my selfe saw them stand on this fashion, which pittied me extremely. I neuer saw nor heard of any other cruell punishments; though, as I haue said, often times the *Mandarins* kill them with whipping, which is a very cruell thing.

The *Chinno* are very curious in writing of newes, which vially they set out in Print, and in a very short space disperse them through all the Provinces. There are alwaies Bookes where, in all the *Mandarins* of the Kingdom are written, as well their names as their Countries: And because they be changed euery foot from one place to another, they blot out and put in the names as soone as they know them, with great facilitie.

One thing among the rest is (wherein they be very dutifull and prolix) in their manifold courtesies, which are of many sorts, according to the estate of him with whom they haue to doe. The viall fashion is when they visite one another, the stranger is set on the most honorable hand (which in some places is the right hand, and in the *Northerne Provinces* the left) and putting one hand in the sleue of the contrarie arme, which is very long and wide, they lift vp their hands to fasten together, then bending their (head and) body downe to the ground, *say*, *Zin zin*, which is of no signification but an intercession of *urbanitie*, their bowing veneration they call, *Zo ye ye*: they change place to repay courtesie. After this the Guest sitteth downe in the Chair of the Master of the house, and the Master of the house another besides that which is the highest place, distant from the wall, and the Chair of the Master of the house is set in the midst of the lowest place, one ouer against another. After this (when they haue ended their salutations) they straightway caule a drinke to be brought, which they call *Cha*, which is water boyled with a certaine herbe, which they much esteeme, for this is a want of ciuilitie and courtesie: and at the least they must drinke of it twice or thrice. He bringeth forth some Fruit or Sweet-meat, and a Spooone take it vp. If the Guest stay any time, straight without faile they will bring out some thing to eat, but with some preparation, answerable to the occasion and person: whereon they eate very late, but it be at the ordinary hours of feeding, and then they eate somewhat more.

When they visite one another (vile they be very great friends and familiars) a Boy goeth alway before, which carrieth a Libell or Booke of visitation, which they call *Poyre*, which is as much as, *A Paper of visitation*: And this name neuer faileth, for alwaies they vie it: wherein his name with much quietnes (as many papers) are written, according as the quality is that which writte, and those that are visited: so is the manner most different whereafter they write the fame: to wit, with more humilitie, either as our bettely, or as an equal, or as an inferior, as a scholer, or as a maister: for as the relations are more and particular, to the falshions and manners which they vie are diuers. Of these things, and of all that hereafter I shall say touching this point, I will send you the examples in their owne papers of visitations, which great *Mandarins*, and ordinary men brought vnto vs, setting down in our tongue vpon euery letter the declaration thereof. And I doubt not but your Worship, our most deare Fathers, and Brethren, and as many others as shall see the fame will reioyce therat. And when that Paper is brought, they carrie newes into the house to him that is visited, which prepareth himselfe to receive his Guest, which cometh within a while after. When they be not people with which they vie euery day, a farre different fashion. And if by chance one come to be appalled, and another be not, he layeth that he durst not salute him, nor receive him before he had put on his apparell, so he getteth him away in great haste to put on his apparell, and then they begin to performe their complements.

When the Guest departeth, hee alwaies goeth before, and at their going out of the doores they vie salutations, and offers of courtesie: according to the quality of the Guest, and the Master of the house, so he bringeth him more or less way, or vnto the street: or it he goe so farre, he layeth till he take his Chair, or his Horse, and then lifting vp their armes and liues vnto their heads they take their leaues and depart one from the other. When they are departed, the Visitor and hee that is visited, each of them send a Boy to give one another thanks, one for the visitation, the other for his good entertainment and friendly viage. If hee that is visited be not

Visitors, of course. Punishment by death rate.

The great frosts of Winter in *Pekin*.

Bookes of newes.

Complements of courtesie and civilitie. That which is in a little letter is added out of *Triguns*.

When they salute in the street, they turne to the North, side to side: at home to the head of the house, which is as

gind the doores, North and South: and also their Temples and Hall for entertainment being made with the doore to the South.

Cha or Cha a drinke made with a certaine herbe.

Poyre or visiting paper. These Libells consist of 12 pages of white paper: a palace and hall long, &c. see *lib. 6. pag. 66.*

Salutation or visitation garments.

Taking leaues.

Head place of the house.

Great Letters for great persons.

First acquaintance.

Sending Presents.

Banqueting.

Invitations.

Feast to taste and bid it.

Chinese Complimental and almost all compliments. New-year.

at home, they leave the *Paytre* at his house, which is a token that hee came to visite him. Hee that is visited is bound to requite his visitation presently, or the next day, if he bee a man of the felle time manner: and if hee finde him not at home, it sufficeth to leave the *Paytre* there: after hee that requiteth the visitation bee a farre greater person then the first which visited him, (as if hee be some great *Mandarins*) hee which first visited him, returneth the next day in person with a paper, wherein hee giueth him thanks that hee came to his house: and if they see one another, hee giueth him thanks by word of mouth. When the man which visiteth is of a great Worship to receive him, and to bring him into the house. All their Houses and Lodgings, come forth an head and more honourable place (which is the highest part) where always they place the Guest. Likewise in their writing they vse a great difference, according to the estates, Dignitie and Age: and in their Letter, the greater the *Mandarins* is, they vse the greater Letter: those that are equal, or inferiour vse a very small letter: likewise they observe the same order in speaking to every one according to his qualitie. When they meet in the streets, the ordinary courtesie, is to put their hands into their sleeves, & closing them together to hold them up, & to vse a comedoe yet more, and thus, they kneele downe, and touch the ground with their head, to often, and with 10 great ceremonies, that I dare not speake of them, lest I should neuer make an end.

When they send Presents, they write downe all things which they send in a paper, as they doe their speeches, with words of Honour: whereof I send likewise examples to see, of very graue persons which sent vs Presents. And whether the partie receive the Present or not, or vnderly a part, hee always sendeth backe another paper with certaine red lines (as herewith is to be seen) with a Letter which sayth: *I thank you much*: And when hee receiueeth the Present, hee always giueth some money to the youths that bring it: and heretofore hee remayneth bound to answer him, with another Present as great at the least: And herein they be very precise, especially persons that are not of the greatest account. A thing which I finde very strange, and which doth put vs to much trouble, to be driuen equally to answer those Presents which the greater *Mandarins* doe send vs, for they always desire some thing of our Country, and here we are very precise. They send vs sometimes from *Macao* some Clockes of land, or Houre-glasses, some Knives, some cases of tooles for Surgeons, and other things: for they much esteeme all things that come from our parts: and with these things, which in our Countries are little or nothing worth, heere we procure friends, which stand vs in exceeding great stead to conferre with them of our holy Faith, and of the saluation of our Soules.

Besides their Presents and visitations, they haue Gossippings and Banquets, whereunto vially they inuite one another. When these be very solemne, they set every Guest two tables for himselfe, one of Fleish and Fish, &c. another of Fruits and sweet Meats. When they be not so solemne, one table for every man, or two at every Table: they prouide for these Guests great diuerty of meates well dressed and seasoned, which they bring forth and layre one after another, that they may be hot. When they inuite one to a Banquet, they send five or tenen dayes before a paper, wherein hee saith, *I excuse my selfe*: If hee excuse not himselfe, hee is resollued to come. This paper is sent with many words of courtesie, & with much honour. On the day appointed in the morning, hee sendeth another to inuite him againe for the felle same day: and at the appointed house, hee sendeth another to pray him to come: and then hee goeth: If any of these messiges should faile hee would not goe. When hee is gone to the Banquet, they vse many other ceremonies: But the most adoe is, about their places, so that it is long before you can place them, and allot out the rooms for they shall sit, before they euer seeke, or at least make shew that they seeke to giue it that the Feast is made to feed. They feed not as men vse to doe in our Country: neither smethem they drinke very suppingly in small Cups of Porcelaine, each of which will containe fve or sixe Thimbels full of Wine: and heerein and in drinking, they spend fve or sixe houres at a Banquet, and goe home an hungred. And thus it happeneth vnto vs: although wee seeke to excuse our selues from them as much as we can, because wee lose much time, yntill it bee some great *Mandarin*, who we feare would take it euill, if we should deny his request. When the Banquet is ended, the next day every one of the Guests sends his Boy with a paper, wherein hee thanketh his Host for his good cheare.

Heere your Worship may see, wherein the *Chinois* spend the one halfe of their life. For the greatest businesse they haue, and that wasteth most of their time, is in Visitations, Banquets, and sending of Presents. And the time wherein they most of all vse the same, is their New-year, or when they goe forth, or come home on a Journey. And to end the whole yeare, I send you some Papers of visitation of all these things (whereof they haue sent many vnto vs) that your Worship may see (though you vnderstand not the outward Letter) the manner and fashion of

this people, how farre different Salutations, manners and fashions, we find you from the plainnesse of our *Europe*, and especially of our Companie. But for the present, we all thinke it needfull to eate after this fashion, and to vie their customes, to obtayne more free access vnto them, and to winne them to Christ.

There is a *Turke* here, a dweller in this Citie, which about foure yeeres agoe, brought one or two Lions to the Father of this King: who, partly because hee knoweth no Learning nor Sciences, and partly because hee sought not to apply himselfe to the habite, customes, and manner of *China*, there is none that will deale with him, nor come neere his house. And through the grace which God hath giuen vs, and because they see vs apply our felices to their Apparell, Fashion, and Courtesie, all the greatest *Mandarins* come home to our house to visite vs, and doe vs the fauour, to hold vs publicly for their Friends: which they vse not to doe, to their owne Country-men, of our qualitie and condition: prayfed bee our Lord alwayes, Amen.

I will not omit to declare the great pleasure, wherewith these learned *Chinois* haue the great content of the things and ceremonies, of our holy Faith in *Europe*, and that wee haue Bishops, and, as we call them heere, *Mandarins*, and superiours in Spiritual things: and about all, they reioyce exceedingly to heare of our Pope, that being so great a personage they preferre a Learned and Holy man by way of Election, and not by Succession, and likewise the obedience and subiection which our Kings doe yield vnto him: and that there haue bene many (as we told them) who being chosen Popes, refuse it in good earnest, and by no means will accept the same: and that we haue all things which concerne the Law of God and good manners, let downe in writing, with all other Bookes concerning him, or his Ministers.

And although that which I haue spoken hitherto, for my selfe, is a thing very apparent and true, and we deliuered it for such, and they so vnderstand it: yet oftentimes they haue giuen vs occasions of laughter. The first was, That when we told them, that some refused to great an Office: straight-way they aske, where you say that they refuse it, is it not euident that their excuse will not bee accepted? As who should say, if they would accept of it, who is there that would make an excuse? And thus they say, because they doe so themselves: for when great Offices are bestowed vpon them, euertime they offer vp a Petition, making a thousand excuses to the King not to receive them: and they doo nothing else, neither can any thing happen so grievous vnto them, as to accept their excuse. But vially they be not admitted: though sometimes they bee, to their great griefe of heart, as I may tell you heere: But to excuse themselves, or to refuse with some danger, is the vice in common, that they will not fayle to doe so: for if they should not doe so, it were more certayne that they should goe without the Office. The second thing that made vs much to laugh, is, that many of them tell vs, that if wee would returne into our Country, without doubt they would make vs Popes: The reason (though not openly) which they yeild, is, that wee haue a great advantage above other men of our Country, to wit, that wee haue science, and studied, and vnderstand their Bookes: because that they only, in their opinion, can make a man perfect, and generally seeene in all things. Such is the high conceit and reputation which they hold of their Bookes.

§. VII.

Of their Women: Of the Tartars Conquest, Acts and Expulsion. The greatestness of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queens Eunuchs.

Will conclude this Letter with two points: the one concerning the Women, whereof I haue little to say: and the last is of the King, and of his Palaces and Seruices. Every man (as I said before) may keepe as many Wives as hee will, and so they doe: which is the cause of many tumults, quarrels, and disorders in their houses. Among their wiues, and among the Somes of liques Mothers, and in disorder in their houses. In that in our Country no man marryeth but one Wife, they neuer are fatished in prating it in words, though neuertheless they doe not follow it, nor put it in practise. And the discontentment which the Women haue among themselves, and with their Husbands for this occasion, is like to prouoke a great encouragement vnto them, to make them desirous to reueue our holy Faith, and to periwade their Husbands to embrace the same, seeing that it doth not permit any more but one lawfull Wife only.

Of their other Conseruation, Customes, and other things, wee know nothing, neither is any thing to be learned: for they keepe house all their life time, and goe out of doores exceeding seldom to visite either their Mother or Sisters, or nearely kinfolmes, for they goe not to any place, no not in thought: And therefore as they haue no conseruation, (but always to keepe home) I can speake nothing of their behaviour. Their Apparell seemeth vnto mee heere and comely: (for sometimes I haue seene the Wives of Officers, and of the poore people, for many of them doe goe abroad.) In some parts of the Country we haue met many women vpon the high way, in short garments, like to the men of our Country, without any difference, save on

their heads, and their feet: for all the rest is all one kinde of Apparell; but these are the common people only: One of the greatest ornaments that the Women have, is, to have verie little teete, and they are so little, that they goe verie badly, and alway they seeme to goe as though they would fall. I could not know the cause, nor the *Chinese* themselves know not the originall occasion, why this is counted for a beautie: albeit some say, it began not for a comelike, but only with a purpose to cut off all occasion from them of going abroad.

The *Chinese* have bene very careful in their Histories, and therefore they have histories of their Kings of about foure thousand yeeres. And if credit bee to be giuen to that which their Bookes report, touching those times, and is gathered by diuers of their Histories: There are many more yeeres from the Flood to our dayes (whereof they also have some knowledge in their Bookes) then the most followed and allowed Calculation among vs, which is that of that mathematicall Historiist. But I leave this, because I have not well conferred the truth and foundation of the *Chinese* Histories. At the least it is certaine, that they have knowledge of their maters, and certain Kings within a little after the Flood, whensoever it was. They had many ancient Kings, which were verie good men, which it may bee were faued in the law of Nature, because the heretick workes of *Venus*, which they report of them were great, and there is no record that they worshipped Idols, but some, that they worshipped the Lord of Heauen and Earth. There were some that fought not to leave their lawfull Sonnes to be their Heires, because they thought them not fit for Government, but choise the wisest and best man, that they could finde, and left the Kingdom vnto him.

This Kingdom in old time was diuided into many small Kingdomes, vntill by little and little it was vntied. It is some foure hundred yeeres (as I said before) since a *Tartar* King possessed it wholly, and two hundred, since a *Bonze* or Religious man of *China* recovered it. This *Mahometan Tartar* King, left some tokens of himselfe in things that he did. He left in *Namurquin*, certaine Mathematicall instruments of Copper, the like whereof for goodnesse peradventure are not in all *Europe*, at least not better.

The *Chinese Bonze* which expelled him out of the Kingdom, was a very valiant and wise man, and therefore by many Histories of his wisdom, and lencious sayings, and iudgement in hard matters: and the manner and forme of Government, which hee ordeined in this Kingdom, which continueth inuincible, doth greatly declare the same. Hee made new Offices and new Names toall of them: An vntill thing when one house beginneth to Raigne, to change all, even the name of the King, as also of all Offices, and also of many Cities. I omit the diuision of the Government into so many heads, and so good distribution, that it seemeth (and so the *Chinese* say) it is like to continue thousands of yeeres, so that no man of the same Kingdom is able, nor hath any power to make any Rebellion of importance. For those which in former time reuolted, were the Vice-royes of the Prouinces, and other great *Mandarins*, in whose power were the Government, the Soldiers, and the treasure. But hee diuided it in such sort, that those which had power over the Soldiers, should haue no money at all, neither should the pay of the Soldiers depend vpon them: and those which keepe the Treasure, must haue no superintendencie and dominion over the Soldiers. Others which were mightie and rich, hee impowerfull and diuided their Authoritie and Reuenues among many; and so there is no man that can call himselfe Great. I remember that I had read in a Booke, set out in the *Spanish* tongue, of the great power of certaine Capaynes, and because the King did not trust them, hee sent one of his house to will them to come vnto him.

All which relation, with many other things which hee reporteth of the prouidence of the King, how hee diuideth his Authoritie among diuers Princes, is not so in truth, neither in truth, neither is there any appearance thereof, neither haue the Capaynes much authoritie, neither are they very rich: for though they haue many people, yet the government of them is diuided into diuers heads, so that they can hardly attempt to raise any Rebellion, especially because they remaine alwayes in the Kingdom, and neere about the King.

The Reuenue of this King, without doubt, is exceeding great, and vntill wee haue gotten it out of their Bookes (wherein every thing is set downe very particularly) I will not presume to publish the same, nor as though I knew not that it is so, since *whilst a man knoweth more of this Kingdom, hee doubteth lesse*: Yet because I feare for all this that it will bee hard to make oneselfe believe the same, which knoweth it not of a certainty; making the Accounts not very large, his Reuenues are one yeare with another an hundred Millions in Silver, Gold, Rice, and an infinite number of other things: although the greatest part is Silver. And hee that considereth the greatness of the Kingdom, and that every man payeth Tribute to the King of their Persons, Lands, Trees, and other things (without carrying any Tribute out of the same) that which I speake will not seeme excessive. But as his Reuenue is very great, so his Expences are many. For those which in this Kingdom doe live at the Kings charge are many, to wit, all the *Mandarins* to whom the King giueth Wages, all the Soldiers, all the Kingdomes of the King, his Eunuchs, and an infinite number of people, whereby his charges are exceeding great, although alwayes there

mayneth a good deale for him to lay vp: and there is no doubt but hee hath it in store in exceeding great quantitie.

Many small Kingdomes round about acknowledge the King of *China*, and pay him Tribute, as *Corea*, and others, whose names I know not, on this Northern part and on the side of *Mandacina* and *Macao*, many others. And sometimes on these Northern parts they trouble him somewhat, in robbing and killing of people. It may be that they worship, or some bodie else may demand, why the King of *China* being so great, subdueth not these small Kingdomes that lye about him to deliuer himselfe of trouble: I answer, that he wanteth no abilitie: but I will say one thing, a Paradoxe to the people of our *Europe*, which is, That neither the *Chinese*, nor their King doe sleepe, nor dreame of dilating their Empire more then it is. And this their resolution is such, that although they would gae them all these Kingdomes, they would not take them, & much lesse if they were farther off. For they hold it for one of the greatest illures (especially the *Mandarins* & graue sort of people) to goe out of their Kingdom to any other part.

There is one of the best Examples herof that may be giuen which fell out of late, and that was, that as by the danger which might grow to his Kingdom, if the people of *Japan* should winne the Kingdom of *Corea*, which is joyned to *China* by the myny Land, and they began to doe; the *Chinese* ayded the *Coreans* with many men: and the people of *Japan* by the death of their King called *Quabacodono*, did wholly abandon it. The Kingdom remayned in the power of the *Chinese*, and so continued two or three yeeres. After which they wholly gae it over, without any other greater respect, then that there were none that were willing to goe thither to gouerne it, nor that the King had any need to annex it vnto his Estate. And without doubt, it seemeth that he would doe the like with any other, although they would put it into his hands. And touching those Kingdomes which pay him Tribute, there is no great account made, whether they come or no: and their continuall coming, is more for the profit of those which come, then that the King doth desire it. And therefore the *Philippine* Islands which in former times paid Tribute to the Kings of *China*, were made none account of when they ceased to pay it.

This King hath one lawfull Wife (as other men haue) in choice whereof they haue regard to nothing else but to her good qualities and externall beautie, for there is no Nobilitie to be sought for. Besides her hee hath a great number of Concubines chosen after the same manner, whose Sonnes (if the lawfull Wiues Children faile) inherit the Kingdom, which commonly falleth out, and such is he which now is King, and he which is to succeed him. When any of these women be once entred into the Kings Palace to bee his Wife, there is no name which may bee compared vnto her in being kept cloie; for they may not only not goe abroad, nor bee seen of their Father, Mother, or Brethren. They haue little or none authoritie, but such as they obtaine of the King. Also the seruice of the King, of the Queene, and of his Concubines, is all by on: are of the most base people which are in all the Kingdom, whole Fathers (because they cannot keepe them when they were young) doe make them Eunuchs, in hope that one day they shall get into the Court to serue the King: the manner is farre different from some which in *Europe*: for these be like those which the *Turkes* vie. Because their Fathers doe this for pueritie, it followeth that they haue no excellencie, for they haue no meanes to learne it, and they are little or nothing Learned.

They elect and choise these Eunuchs from time to time to supply such as die, and this first yeare that I was here, they chose about three thousand, for which purpose they assembled a fiftie or two thousand (as they say) out of which number they made their choise. The Ele-ctors were a very great *Mandarin* to whom, as I said before, the Kings private businesse belongeth in two things, which are a good Countenance and a good Tongue: for purpose whereto, they make them pronounce two words, wherein those that haue not a ready Tongue doe stumble. When they are chosen, and gone to the Court, they diuide them in diuers Offices: yet at their first coming, they are appointed to waite vpon the old Eunuchs as Boyes, which make good trial of their patience, and obedience: and hee that after certaine yeares sheweth himselfe cowardly, they begin to employ in greater matters.

Of these Eunuchs, the King hath his Musicians and Mathematicians, who, to bee briefe, I say, haue no found vnderstanding in these things as all, but only for complement or superficially: yet some of them are bound to watch all night, and to looke whether any Comet doe appeare, or any such like thing in the Skie, to enforce the King thereof: and to performe other like Offices. They are vially versed in sciences, and as they are base, if they rise to bee priuate with the King, some of them be proud and vncourteous. They serue the King as flauers, obeying his will in any waye hee inclineth. The King chastiseth them verie sharpe for every little offence: especially the King that now is, which is a very wicked man. Hee hath caused many to be whipped to death, for some small matter wherein they haue offended him. Yet there are some of them good and discrete, which the King vseth for dispatching of his businesse, and other matters

of weight. Though the ordinarie wages which they haue of the King bee small, yet it serueth them well to liue of, and therefore they goe verie well appaile in many Robes of Silke verie finely wrought of diuers colours, and the manner of their Cap and Appaile differeth from all other peoples. There are of them in number, as they say, aboute sixteen thousand of them in the Kings palaces. Herby your Worshipp may see what Examples and Education the King of China obserueth, which spendeth all his time with these and with women.

Although it be the custome of these Kings, to shew themselves from time to time to certaine of the greatest *Mandarins*: yet they neuer suffer the rest of the people to see them, nor to speake with them; and when he speaketh with any bodie, they enter not into the place where he is; but the King cometh forth to a certain place. If there be any Nation among whom the Law of Nations hath no place in many things it is this: for as they haue no commerce with other Nations, so they haue not the Law which is common to all men. And therefore they admit no Ambassadour in China, vntill it be by the way of giuing some Present, the King not acknowledging any neither doe they thinke that there is any in the World, which is able to deale with their King by way of an Embassadour. And if they bring any *Messsage* (as the *Lepous* brought within the last yeares, who came to intreate of certaine agreements, by no means they are admitted to the sight of the King; neither doth he giue them audience: but some *Mandarin* doth accompany them; and the enterraynement which they giue them, and honour which they shew to all strangers which come vnto them is verie small. But as for the most part they haue no great conceit of strangers, for their enterraynement is like to their conceit. Whosoever he be that cometh into their Countrey, they thrust him vp in a verie homely house, not suffering him to goe abroad.

The Kings Palaces are verie great; and albeit in the excellencie of Architecture they bee not comparable to those of our *Europe*, yet they much exceed in the hugeness of Building. They haue three wals foure square, the circuit of the first may be as bigge as the wall of a good Citie. Betweene the first and the second wall, there is a wall which enuironeth the greatest part of the House, and here are many Houses of the Eunuchs of the lowest sort, which exercise Mechanical Arts, or the like, as Porters, &c.

Betweene the second and the third wall there are many pieces of the Kings House, which is not ioyned altogether, but in diuers parts there be diuers Roomes, built for diuers purposes, one answering to another. These parcels of Buildings which are here (which are euerie one as long as the Carreere of an Horse, and verie high) haue no vnder Roome, but a great Building raised vp with foundations of great Bricks, as broad and long as all the Building, wherein there are Gates of Marble (stone verie wel wrought to passe from one place to another. This house or Foundation is about eight fathomes high little more or lesse. About these are gilded Galleries, Tapesties, Halls, and Chambers, which on the outside shew verie gallant (which is as much as can be seene; for no man can get in to see them.) The greatest part of them is of Timber, with many gilded Embossments, and many other pleasant Pictures. The Rooves are verie well made. The Tiles are of a farre better fashion, in mine opinion, then ours, and so euen ioyned together that that they seeme to be all one piece: they are all annealed with yellow, which is the Kings Colour. To conclude, I say, that it seemed vnto me in multitude of Houses and greatnesse a hardly thing. Albeit betweene these wals the River runneth which I spake of: and to passe from one to another there are many faire Bridges of Marble made of very great Stones: betweene these wals was one of the two fourth parts of the House, on which the fire from Heauen fell downe within these few yeares, and consumed it: and with the blowes of the stones which fell downe many verie great Houses were broken downe to the ground (as sometimes I beheld my selfe) and they remayned with many signes of fire on them. They say, that when this fire fell from Heauen, the King commanded his Sonne to kneele downe, and beseech *The Heauen* to be mercifull vnto him, for he himselfe was too wicked, and that the Heauen would not beare him. Within these wals are many Lodgings of the greatest Eunuchs, who like Fellowes of Colledges liue many in one 50 House, euerie one hauing his private Chamber. Here betweene these wals are Mounts and Groues and other recreations whither the King repairith to recreate himselfe. And the space of these wals is very great, for when I went to the Palace to teach the Eunuchs which were in that place to trimme the Clocke, I passed before I came to their Lodging eight great Palaces, and on the other side there were many more. The Lodgings of the Eunuchs usually are low and bad, for the Kings Seruants, yet verie necessarie.

Next after this followeth the third wall, where the King dwelleth, with his Wives and Children, and those which where his nearest seruants, whereinto no man entrench but they. And therefore albeit I haue heard that it is a very beautiful thing & very much worth the seeing, as in verie deed it seemeth to be: yet I cannot giue any Relation of any thing concerning the same in particular. Only this I say, that when I was in the House of the Eunuchs that were the Mathematicians, I went sometimes vp into a Towre, from whence I might see the tops of the Houses, the Groues, and Orchards, and me thought that I neuer in my life saw so great a frame of Building, although I haue seene many in mine owne Countrey. And therefore there are alwaies a great

The common people neuer see nor speake with the King. Law of Nations contemned. Embassages.

Royall Palace.

Yellow is the Kings Colour.

River and Bridges.

Fire from Heauen.

No place to the wicked.

Mounts and Groues.

Third part.

a great number of Officers of all Offices, some making new Buildings, and others repaying the old. The King neuer goeth abroad, especially this King, and his Ancestors some one time and King a borne no more, vnto a Temple which they haue builded to *The Heauen*, and the Earth, where euerie yeare they offer Sacrifice. And therefore I know not with what pompe hee goeth abroad: But like as in his seruice he hath no men of qualitie, it cannot be such as our Kings vie in their going to Church:

There is a barbarous custome among the Kings, that when the Prince is aduanced to the Kingdom, within a short time after, all the rest of the old Kings Sonnes are to depart out of the House to certaine places appointed for them, which vnto the third Generation are seruile: 10 Kings, but they neuer come more in the presence of their Father, Mother, nor elder Brother: and therefore there is great lamentations of their Mothers at their departure. The Posteritie of these doe alwaies remayne as Kinsmen, and with the name of the Kings Kinsmen. To all these (which are verie many) the King giueth sufficient mayntenance, which is no great matter. They neuer beare Office; and deale with other people, and marrie with them, without doing themselves much good or none at all in being the King, Kinsmen, nor purchase any speciall authoritie thereby. Other Kinsfolkes of the King, married with the Sisters, Daughters, or Cousins of the King, or Queens, although they haue sufficient to liue vpon, yet haue they exceeding small authoritie, and haughtinesse. And herein, nor in any thing may they compare with the *Mandarins*.

Here came to visit vs one married with the Sister of this King that is now, in a Chaire with three or foure Boyes to wait on him. Another came oftentimes married with the Sister of the Wife of the Prince that is to inherit, on Horse-backe with one Boy only attending on him, and hee entrench into the Examinations that hee may proceed Doctor and become a *Mandarin*: So little is the benefit that groweth vnto them by the Confangninity or Affinity of the King which are ioyned vnto him thereby.

Here the time faileth me, though neither matter, nor desire to giue contentment to your Worshipp, and the rest of my most deare Fathers and Brethren, neither doth nor shall euer faile me. And therefore if I shall vnderstand, that they take this in good worth, I will giue Relation of that which shall fall out here by the helpe and grace of our Lord, to whom I humbly beseech all of them to commend me.

I find here withall two Maps of this Kingdome of China, which came to my hand after I had written this Letter, and Relation. I fought to translate all that which is contained in the China Letters; which is all the Rent which euerie one of these Provinces payeth to the King of China; and to make a description of all the Houses which euerie Province hath, and how many people, and many things else: But your Worshipp may beleeue that by no means I had leysure: and therefore I send you only the figure, and another yeare (if it please our Lord God) I will send you the same with the declaration thereof.

All the rundles and squares which are therein are Cities, or Fortresses of many Inhabitants, both of them walled about. There is no Towne heretofore downe that it is not walled: the others are many more.

The Rivers are well distinguished. The great lines are the limits of the Provinces: the other small lines, and of little circuit are the Iurisdiccions of some one principall Citie.

We print here another Map of all the World of our manner with *Chinese* Letters, which be- 50 cause we want time to declare the Letters, I send not till the next yeare, which then we will send if our Lord grant vs life.

I send you many other Papers, that your Worshipp may see the fa'shon of the Letters of these people of China, and what Characters wee committe to memorie. From *Paguin*, being the Court and Royall Citie of the King of China, the ninth of March, 1603.

CHAP. VII.

A Discourse of the Kingdom of China, taken out of RECEIPTS and TRICAVTIVS, containing the Country, People, Government, Religion, Rites, Seals, Characters, Studies, Arts, &c.; and a Map of China added, drawn out of some there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof.

§. I.

Of the Name, Site, and Greatness, the Tributaries, Commodities, Arts, Printing, Seals, Ink, Pencil-pennes and Fannes.

Here in the author begins to describe the Kingdom, being a place that is called China.



His utmost Empire in the East, hath been made knowne to Europe by divers appellations, as that of *Ptolemy, Sina*; that later of *Marco Polo* the Venetian, *Cathay*; and that most viall received from the *Portugals*, which call it *China*. I doubt not also that this is the Region of the *Hippobrycon*, a meat there as common as Beefe here: as also that this is the Region *Serico*, or *Silken*; forasmuch as there is no Kingdom of the East where Silke is found in that quantity and the *Portugals* ship it thence for *Japan*, and all *India*; the *Spaniards* also of the *Philippine* Islands, freight their ships therewith for all the *American* World. Moreover, I find in the *Chronicles* that this Silke-works was there two thousand six hundred thirty six years before the Birth of Christ: whence it passed to the rest of *Asia*, to our *Europe* and to *Africa*. But in this variety nothing seems so strange to me, as that all these names are so strange to me, not knowne or once heard of, although the change of names be not strange to that Country. For as Affairs: He which attayneth the Throne, according to the vicissitude of humane sometimes called *Thun* (which signifies *exceeding large*) another while *Tu*, that is, *Rest*, after that successfully *Hia*, or *Great*; *Siam*, *Adorned*, *Chen*, *Perfected*; *Han*, *The Milky way in Heaven*, &c. And since this Family, called *Cin*, which now holdeth the Sovereignty, hath reigned, it is called *Min*, which intimateth *Splendour*, and by viall addition of one syllable *Tsin*, that is, the Kingdom of *Great Splendour*, Brightness or Glory. Yet do few of their Neighbour Nations observe these changes of Names, whereby each of them almost, stile it by several appellations. Those of *Cin*, *Cathay*, *China*, and the *Siamites* call it *Cin*; the *Japones*, *Thun*; the *Tartars*, *Han*; the *Western* *Siamites*, *Cathay*. Also amongst the *Chinese* themselves, besides the arbitrary name so imposed by their Kings, it hath some common to all Ages, such as *Cumpeu*, that is, the Kingdom; and *Chumbeu*, which signifies a Garden, a name arising from their Geography, becoming indeed the roundness of the Heaven, but a squareness of the Earth, and their Kingdom in the midst thereof, a conceit growne out of conceit now, by better instruction of the *Islanders*.

Their King is called *Lord of the World*, and they supposed accordingly that their Kingdom contained the principal part thereof; not deeming the Neighbour Kingdoms worthy to be called *Kingdomes*, which yet before their Commerce with *Europeans* were all they knew. And not wistfully is the name *Great* prefixed to their Kingdomes appellation, being the greatest Kingdom in the World, which at this day carrieth One Name, or hath done in former times. For Southward it beginneth in the nineteenth degree, at the Ile which they call *Hannan*, that is, the *South-Sea*, and runneth into the North to the two *Fortresses*, even to those walls which divide the *Chinese* from the *Tartars*. The longitude beginneth from the one hundred and twelfth (reckoning from the *Canaries*) in the Province *Tunan*, and extends Eastward to the Sea in one hundred thirty two. These Dimensions were here observed in divers places of the Kingdom where we have passed, by Astrolabes and other Mathematicall Instruments; adding also the observation of Eclipses in their Almanacks, where the Moones Change and Full are fully described, and specially by authority of Cosmographical Plaines. Yet others when all comes to this, that we shall more exactly observe the longitude (which I dare say will be no great matter) it will not wistfully yield. Hence may be observed that this ample Kingdom is for the most part within the temperate Zone; neither doth it extend so farre Northward as some Maps make described by many degrees. And lest any should thinke that some great parts or so large a Dominion

The Chinese call this Kingdom by many names, yet all name China. Some use Cathay, which is knowne to them.

Conceit of the Islanders.

The Kings Title.

Largeness of the Kingdom of China.

The temperate Climate.

nion be desired, I will here translate out of a *China* booke entitled, *The Description of that Kingdom*, there printed, 1579, that which followeth.

In the Kingdom of China there are two Provinces Royall, Nankin the Southerne Court, and Peking the Northerne, and thence others. In these five score Provinces (you might call them Kingdomes) by another division are numbered one hundred fifty eight Regions or lesser Provinces, called by them *Fu*; the most of which have twelve or fifteen Cities of reasonable quantitie, besides Villages, Hamlets, Castles and Townes. In these Provinces are two hundred forty seven greater Cities, called *Cheu* (whence sometimes distinguished from other Cities vnder the name of *single Cities*, which they call *Hien*, 1152. Of men growne to ripe age, which pay tribute or poll money to the King, were then fifty eight millions, five hundred fifty thousand, and so. In all which the female sexe is not reckoned: and of the Masculine are omitted, Boys, Youth, Eunuchs, Souldiers, the Royall kindred, Magistrates, Students, and very many others. And of the Souldiers, although there be a *Sapine* peace (except some Tartarian assaults sometimes) there are maintained in the Kings pay, and in perpetuall Armes, above ten hundred thousand. For the three Northern Provinces are almost halfe in pay, in that booke are numbered Kingdomes adjoining to that of China and tributarie; to the East three, to the West fifty three, to the South fifty six, to the North three. Yet I observe that nothing so many do in these dayes pay tribute, and that those which do, carry more from China, then they bring thither: and therefore the Chinese care not much whether they continue loyal or no.

To the worth of this Kingdom, may be added, the fortification by Nature or Art round about it. To the South and East the Sea washeth it, and so many Islands guard it, that hardly can a Fleet of Ships approach the Continent. To the North, the *Heaven* *precipices* are joined together, with a continued Tract of foyles, leagues, and exclude the Tartars assaults. To the North-west is a sandy desert of many dayes journey, which prohibeth passage of an Armie, or minace their burials. The South-west hath great Mountaines and little Kingdomes to prevent fear on that side.

From this largeness of Territories proceedeth such diversified variety of things growing in that Kingdom, some in the torrid, others in the colder or in the temperate Zone: whatsoever is required to the necessity or delicacy of food or raiment being there natural; nothing being here in *Europe* but either is there, or a better supply: Wheat, Barley, Panike, and other Corne; Rice Pulse (in some Provinces two or three harvests yearly) fruits and Apples of the best (Nuts of all sorts, and Almonds) Figs and others unknowne in our world, as the *Lycias* and the *Longans*, which dry it is: they do Figs, & like to a Peach red, without hoarseness or stone in Oranges, Citrons, Lemons they exceed all places. So doe they in goodliness and variety of Gardens, Herbs, as there taken up their bowers, admiringly varied, more repected for fight then sent; the Art of distilling sweet-waters being there viall. In the four Southern Provinces grow *Berra* long for their stomache and teeth. *Sesame* Ole is both odoriferous and plentifull. Wine is not there so good as in *Europe* (the Grape being neither pleasant nor frequent) made of Rice and other things.

Hogs-flesh is common food: they have Buffalls, Muttons, Goats-flesh; Hennes, Duckes, Geese, innumerable: Horses also, Affes, Mules, and Dogs-flesh are food, and fumble commodities. In some places superstition abtaineth from Beete and Buffalls, Vermion, especially red of labour are not so goodly as in *Europe*, but more in number, and therefore in cheapness. The whole Kingdom is very commodious for passage by Rivers both naturall and hand-made: Passages by hard water, that there are as many ships which keepe on the water as on the land; an Hyperbole, opinion, that there are as many Ships in this Kingdom, as are in all the world besides. I am of waters: their Sea-shipping is fewer and not so comparable with ours. But to returne to their Horses for service are innumerable, but so viall, feeble, that they will not endure the noyning hard wayes they take. They move them not with Iron, but with in rocke and

Besides the Seas plenty of Fish and Rivers, they are stored also in Lakes, seeming for their depths and largeness peete Seas. They have more store of Fish-ponds also, then in these parts, whence the Market is daily furnished. Their Woods have no Lions, but store of Tigers, Beares, brought from other places. Flaxe they have not, but are supplied with abundance of Cotton, the seed whereof was brought thither four hundred years since, and hath so liked the soyle, that the whole world, as may seeme these might have sufficient. Of Silke-works we see store more. Of Hemp, and of some other Herbs, they make many clothes, especially for Summer

"Some say many more see the Map and notes."

chap. 7. The commodities of China.

Fruits of all sorts.

Flesh for food.

Store of shipping and water dwellers.

Fish.

Wildebeasts.

Cotton.

Store of cloth.

vie. They milke not their Sheepe; they sheare them, yet make no cloth of the Wool (notwithstanding woollen-clothes brought thither by Merchants is well sold); but light Summer clothes for blankets and other slight vies. The North parts, though nearer the Sunne than some Regions in Europe, are colder, the great rivers and lakes frozen over, of which we can give no reason, but the neighbouring Mountains of *Tartaria*: against which they are furnished with choice Furs.

Metalls.

All sorts of metalls are there found. They make besides Brasse and Copper, another shining like Silver, as cheap as the yellow Brasse. Of molten Iron they make Kettles, Caldrons, Bells, Mortars, Ordnance, and other things. Their Gold is cleaver then with vs. Silver they vie for money, distinguished not by stamp but weight, in all bargaining using the balance, which is to make the more inconvenient for the differing goodnesse of the Silver, and frequent alloy and fraud. In some places are Brasse farthings. Plate and Gold vessels are Silver by the greater, but nothing so much as in these parts. The women spend much Gold and Silver in their head-dresses. The vulgar vie earthen dishes, called, I know not why, *porcellaine*; the best whereof is made in the *Kiam* Province of a yellow earth. It endureth without tinging hot meates, yet as wooden dishes were with a wyre, they fowle the rifts and make them hold liquor. They make Glasse, but therein are short of the Europeans.

Porcellaine.

Glass.

Buildings.

Their houses are of Timber commonly, even the Kings Palaces, the walls which serve for partitions of rooms being sometimes of Bricks, but the roofes sustained by Timbers: which together with their shipping argues their plenty of trees. Oaks are rare, but supplied with a hard and curling wood with them vied for coffins, in which their curiosities will sometimes find a thousand Ducks. There is also store of a kind of reed, which the *Portugall* call *Bambou*, of almost Iron hardness, the roundness scarcely compassed with both hands, and serves for smaller posts the lesser of them for Laurels and other vies. For fire they vie Wood, Coles, Reeds, Straw, and a bituminous substance called *Chiao* (a kind of Mine-cole or Sea-cole) which is moist and best in the North, digged out of the earth.

Sea-cole.

Rhubarb.

China, Muske.

Saff, Sugar.

Home-wine.

Paper.

Of medicinal herbs they have divers, specially *Rhubarb*, sold for tenne haire pence the pound: *China* Wood, or holy Wood growing in deserts naturally, and thence taken for no other price but the labour: *Muske*; Salt both made of Sea-waters, and of others easily in the Continent; Sugar more common there than Honey, though both plentifull; Waxe both of Bees, and so another whiter and burning better made by certain worms, which therefore are nourished in trees; another also made of a certain fruit: Their paper is not so durable as ours, nor can endure the presse on both sides.

Their drinke.

Chia, Chaga, Chia.

I omit their parti-coloured Marbles, their gems, colours for paintings, odoriferous Woods, &c. I cannot passe by some rarities; as their shrub whence they make their drinke (*ia*). They gather the leaves in the Spring, and dry them in the shadow, and keepe it for daily decoction, using it at meates, and as often as any guest comes to their house, yea twice or thrice, if hee make any tarrying. They sup it hot, bitterish to the palate, but wholesome: not of ancient vie, for they have no ancient Character in their books for it. The *Japaners* pay deare for it, ten or twelve Ducks a pound for the best, and vie it otherwise, putting the powder of the leafe to hot water, as much as two or three Spoonfulls: it the *Chinese* put the leaves themselves into the hot water, which they drinke, leaving the leaves behind. They have also a bituminous substance like milke, raised out of the barkes of a tree, of pitchy cleaving, whence they make *Santalum*, a varnish for their houses and household, ships, and other things: yielding a smooth touch to the hand and glasse (plendour to the eye with long continuance. Thus can they more counterfeite the colours of any wood, and hereby are provided against prouisions of Nappery, this serving for Table linen; they recouering any grasse contagion with a little rinsing of water. They have an Oyle also pressed from an apple not unlike it in vie, but not so plentiful.

Santalum, a rich Varnish.

Spices.

They have Cinamon and Ginger growing, Pepper and other Spices are brought from other parts. They have store of Gun-powder, not so much for Artillerie (which they can vie but meanly) as for Fire-works in pompous spectacles, thereby representing Treces, Fruits, Battels, and other things with great Art and cost. We saw at *Nankin*, in the first month of the yeere, as much this way spent as would have served a continued fight two yeeres.

Chia, Chia.

Of their Arts in China.

This is not to be understood of Temples, &c. as may appear by Nankin Temple, &c.

Painting.

Antiquarie and manner of it.

For Mechanical Arts, they are not comparable to our mens Architecture, whether ye regard the beautie or continuance of their buildings, they not so much as concluding or crediting the stately magnificence or long duration of some in these parts. They either make no foundation, or veeie slight, and thinke a mans age to be age enough for a house, and that scarcely without reparations: their houses being all of Timber, and where the walls are Stone, they have Timbers to beare up the roofe, that the wall may easily be repaired or renewed without meddling with the supports.

Painting is ancienter there then here; some thinke before the Incarnation, and most certain above five hundred yeeres old; much differing from ours because of the multitude of their Characters. They graue or cut these Characters in a table of Pear-tree, Apple-tree or *Zingaph*. In this

this Table they lightly glue on a whole leafe written, and then cunningly shave the drie paper, and they make very little transparency; when they cut the wood, that only the prints they print off leaves at pleasure, one Printer often 1500. in one day: so ready also in cutting that to mee Ours seeme to spend as much time in *composing* and *correcting*. This course is more accommodated to their great Characters then to ours, whose little letters are not easily cut in wooden Tables. They have this commoditie also, that keeping their Tables by them, they may with little labour add or take away words or sentences: and need not at once print off any more Copies then please vie or sale requirith. We doe this with Bookes of our Religion or European Sciences, printing them at home by our *China* servants. They have another way of printing Characters or Pictures printed before in Marble or Wood, laying on a leafe of Paper moist, and on that a woollen Cloth, whereon they beare with a Hammer till the Paper imprints it selfe into the voids spaces and lineaments of the Characters or Picture: after which they lightly colour that leafe with Inke or other colour, whose delineations only remainyng white, and retaining the Prototype-figure. But this is for greater Portraictures.

They are much addicted to pictures, but nothing so cunning in painting, founding, graving, as Europeans. They make magnificent Arcues with figures of men and beasts, and adorne their Temples with Idols and Bells, but their Geniuses otherwise generous and ingenious enough, for want of commerce with other Nations, is herein rudely artificiall. Shadows and Oyle in picturing are to them vnkowne, and their Pictures therefore have no more life of Art then Nature. In Statues, themselves seeme Statues for all rules of Symmetry any further then by the eye, and yet will be doing in huge (indeed) Monsters of this kind, in Earth, Brasse, and Marble. Their Bells have all wooden Hammers, which yield a wooden sound, not comparable to ours, nor seeming capable of those of Iron. They have variety and plenty of Musicall Instruments, yet want Organs and all that have Keyes. Their Strings are made of raw Silke, and know not that any can be made of Guts. The Symmetric of their Instruments is unalterable to yet much applaud they themselves in their owne Harmonie, ignorant of comfort in discord-concord: But this pride seemes to grow (as usually it doth) from ignorance, and it is likely they would

preferre ours if they knew it. They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; such as they have, measure by water or fire, but very imperfectly, as is also their Sun-diall, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others travelling thorow the Kingdom to this faining facultie. Their Comedies are commonly antient, whereby Boys whom they deceives, and few new written. They are vied in publicke and in private Solemnities; as also in Feasts, whereto being called, they offer to the Inuitee a Booke, in which to take his choice, the friend as looking, eating, drinking together; and sometimes after ten hours feasting, they will tion is with singing time in a succession of Interludes one after another. Their pronunciation only for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These but have many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting Table Boxes full of Seales, which containe their diuers names (for every *Chinese* hath many of the names) and those of Wood, Marble, Ivorie, Brasse, Crytall, Corall, and better stones. Their fauouring of Antiquitie and Learning.

There is another Art vnlike, of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-making. Balls of the smoke of Oyle. For their estimation of exact writing makes the making of Inke of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Penill of Hares Penill in head of Pens.

Fannes also are in much use by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already bee importunate: the vie being rather for ornament then necessitie. They are made of Reed, wood, Ivorie, Ebony, together with Paper or Silke, and a certain odoriferous Straw, in round, ovall, or square forme. The chiefe men vie them of Paper gilded with plaits to be let in or out, and therein inscribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or presents (as Gloues in Europe) and we have a Chitt full of them sent vs by our friends. In other do not, but sit on Carpets on the floor) to eat or sleepe.

They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; such as they have, measure by water or fire, but very imperfectly, as is also their Sun-diall, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others travelling thorow the Kingdom to this faining facultie. Their Comedies are commonly antient, whereby Boys whom they deceives, and few new written. They are vied in publicke and in private Solemnities; as also in Feasts, whereto being called, they offer to the Inuitee a Booke, in which to take his choice, the friend as looking, eating, drinking together; and sometimes after ten hours feasting, they will tion is with singing time in a succession of Interludes one after another. Their pronunciation only for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These but have many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting Table Boxes full of Seales, which containe their diuers names (for every *Chinese* hath many of the names) and those of Wood, Marble, Ivorie, Brasse, Crytall, Corall, and better stones. Their fauouring of Antiquitie and Learning.

There is another Art vnlike, of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-making. Balls of the smoke of Oyle. For their estimation of exact writing makes the making of Inke of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Penill of Hares Penill in head of Pens.

Fannes also are in much use by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already bee importunate: the vie being rather for ornament then necessitie. They are made of Reed, wood, Ivorie, Ebony, together with Paper or Silke, and a certain odoriferous Straw, in round, ovall, or square forme. The chiefe men vie them of Paper gilded with plaits to be let in or out, and therein inscribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or presents (as Gloues in Europe) and we have a Chitt full of them sent vs by our friends. In other do not, but sit on Carpets on the floor) to eat or sleepe.

They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; such as they have, measure by water or fire, but very imperfectly, as is also their Sun-diall, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others travelling thorow the Kingdom to this faining facultie. Their Comedies are commonly antient, whereby Boys whom they deceives, and few new written. They are vied in publicke and in private Solemnities; as also in Feasts, whereto being called, they offer to the Inuitee a Booke, in which to take his choice, the friend as looking, eating, drinking together; and sometimes after ten hours feasting, they will tion is with singing time in a succession of Interludes one after another. Their pronunciation only for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These but have many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting Table Boxes full of Seales, which containe their diuers names (for every *Chinese* hath many of the names) and those of Wood, Marble, Ivorie, Brasse, Crytall, Corall, and better stones. Their fauouring of Antiquitie and Learning.

There is another Art vnlike, of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-making. Balls of the smoke of Oyle. For their estimation of exact writing makes the making of Inke of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Penill of Hares Penill in head of Pens.

Fannes also are in much use by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already bee importunate: the vie being rather for ornament then necessitie. They are made of Reed, wood, Ivorie, Ebony, together with Paper or Silke, and a certain odoriferous Straw, in round, ovall, or square forme. The chiefe men vie them of Paper gilded with plaits to be let in or out, and therein inscribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or presents (as Gloues in Europe) and we have a Chitt full of them sent vs by our friends. In other do not, but sit on Carpets on the floor) to eat or sleepe.

They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; such as they have, measure by water or fire, but very imperfectly, as is also their Sun-diall, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others travelling thorow the Kingdom to this faining facultie. Their Comedies are commonly antient, whereby Boys whom they deceives, and few new written. They are vied in publicke and in private Solemnities; as also in Feasts, whereto being called, they offer to the Inuitee a Booke, in which to take his choice, the friend as looking, eating, drinking together; and sometimes after ten hours feasting, they will tion is with singing time in a succession of Interludes one after another. Their pronunciation only for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These but have many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting Table Boxes full of Seales, which containe their diuers names (for every *Chinese* hath many of the names) and those of Wood, Marble, Ivorie, Brasse, Crytall, Corall, and better stones. Their fauouring of Antiquitie and Learning.

There is another Art vnlike, of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-making. Balls of the smoke of Oyle. For their estimation of exact writing makes the making of Inke of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Penill of Hares Penill in head of Pens.

Fannes also are in much use by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already bee importunate: the vie being rather for ornament then necessitie. They are made of Reed, wood, Ivorie, Ebony, together with Paper or Silke, and a certain odoriferous Straw, in round, ovall, or square forme. The chiefe men vie them of Paper gilded with plaits to be let in or out, and therein inscribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or presents (as Gloues in Europe) and we have a Chitt full of them sent vs by our friends. In other do not, but sit on Carpets on the floor) to eat or sleepe.

§. II.

Of their Characters and writing downward: their studies, Ethikes, Astrologie, Physike, Authentike Authors, Degrees how taken both Philosophicall and Militarie.

Cap. 5.
Monosyllable
Language, as
also our proper
English is al-
most wholly.

Monosyllable
Characters.

Equivocation.

Five Accents.

Harshness of
China Speech.

Allegoria sine
eloquio.

Many Nations
and Languages
have the same
Characters.
Court Lan-
guage.

Their writing.

Moral Philo-
sophie.

Confutius.
His private
honours.

Mathematicks.

Phonemans.

NOW, for their more liberal Arts, and Literate-degrees, this Kingdome differs from all others: in which their Learned beare principally way. The *China* words are Monosyllables, not one otherwise, howsoever two or three *Words* sometimes are conioyned into one *Dialect*, to speake after our manner; for they have not *Confutius* nor *Vowel*, but diuers Characters for so many of them, as there are Words, so that a Word, Syllable, Letter, are the same; and when we ioyned diuers Syllables to make one Word, it is after our fashion, because they signifie the same thing: with them each Syllable is a full word. And although the number of things and Characters seeme the same, yet do they so compound them together, that they exceed not seventy or eighty thousand: and he which knoweth ten thousand of them, hath the most necessary: to know all is in manner for any one man impossible. Of these Characters the found is often the same, the figure and signification differing: so that no Language is so equivocal; nor can any Speech be written from the Speakers mouth by the Hearer, nor can a Booke be read to the Hearers understanding, except they haue the Booke before them, by their eyes to distinguish the equivocations which their eares cannot. Yea, in speaking accurately, the Hearer often vnderstands not without repetition and writing either with Inke, or water on the Table, or forming the Characters in the aire; and this most happens in the most elegant and polite discourses (the stile of Bookes and Inkiome-dialect) of their learned, wholly differing from the vulgar Idiom. This equivocation and paucity of sounds is in some sort eased by *Accents*, which are five, and not ealie to distinguish, by which of one Syllable (as we account it) they make it with differing tones five fold in differing signification: and there is no Word which is not pronounced with one of these Accents. Hence is the Language so difficult as none else in the World for Strangers to learn: to speake and vnderstand; which importunate labour of ours hath yet attained. The reason I conceiue to be that they alway haue laboured to adorne their writing more then their speech, their eloquence still consisting in writing and not in pronunciation, as *Socrates* is commended amongst the *Greekes*.

This multitude of Characters, as it is burthensome to the memory, so it hath this commodity, the commerce with diuers Nations of different Languages by community of writing; *Japan*, *Cora*, *Cambinchina*, the *Leuises*, vnderstanding and reading the Characters, each into his owne Language, which the other vnderstand nothing at all. Each Province also hath its owne, and all haue one common Tongue besides, which they call *Quenboa*, or the Court Language (the Magistrates being all forrainers, and none bearing Office in his Countrey Province) vied in their Courts, and by the Learned: this only did ours learne, nor is the other vied by the culler of our learner in conference, except priuily by Countrey-men: yea, children and women keepe this Court-speech. I heare that the *Japane* haue an Alphabet also of Letters after our fashion, besides these Characters; but in *China* they haue none, so that from their Cradle to the extreme age they are learning their Characters, as many as possible Learning: which howsoever it takes up time from better Sciences, it doth it also from idle youthfull vanities. Hence also riseth a kinde of writing with them, in few Characters expressing that which would cost vs long discourses. Their course of writing is from the right hand, the line downward, ours contrary from the left and side-ways.

Of all the noblest Sciences they are best skilled in morall Philosophie (natural), they are rather obscured) and being ignorant of Logike, they deliuer those Ethicke precepts in confused sentences and discourses without order by mere naturall wit. Their greatest Philosopher is called *Confutius*, whom I finde to haue bene borne 551. yeeres before the coming of *Christ*, and to haue liued about 70. yeeres, by example as well as precept exciting to vertue, accounted a very holy man. And if we make his sayings and doings, we meet confide few of our Ethicke Philosophers before him, and many behinde. But with the *Chinois*, his word is authoritative, and no speech of his is called in question; the *Learned*, yea the Kings also, euer faine worshipping him, nor as a God, but as a Man; and his posteritie are much esteemed, the head of that familie inheriting by grant of Kings a title of great honour, with immunities and revenues annexed.

They haue some knowledge also of Astrologie, and the Mathematicks: In Arithmetike and Geometry anciently more excellent, but in learning and teaching confused. They reckon three hundred Starres more then our Astrologers haue mentioned, numbering certaine smaller which do not alway appeare. Of the heauenly *Apparances* they haue no rules, they are much busied about foretelling Eclipses, and the courses of Planets, but therein very erroneous; and all their skill

skill of Starres in manner that which wee call Iudicial Astrologie, imagining these things below to depend on the Starres. Somewhat they haue received of the Western *Seracens*, but they confirme nothing by Demonstration, only haue left to them *Tables*, by which they reckon the Eclipses and Motions:

The first of this Royall Family forbid any to learne this Iudicial Astrologie, but those which by Hereditary right are thereto designed, to prevent Innovations. But he which now reigneth mayntaineth diuers Mathematicians, both Eunuchs within the Palace, and Magistrates without, of which there are in *Pekin* two Tribunals, one of *Chinois*, which follow their owne Authors, another of *Seracens* which reforme the same by their Rules, and by conference together. Both haue in a small Hill a Plaine for Contemplation where are the huge Mathematical Instruments of Brass before mentioned: One of the Colledge nightly watcheth thereon as is before observed. That of *Nangun* exceeds this of *Pekin*, as being then the Seat Royall. When the *Pekin* Astrologers foretell Eclipses, the Magistrates and Idoll Ministers are commanded to assemble in their Officiary Habits to helpe the labouring Planets, which they think they do with bearing brazen Bells, and often kneeling, all the time that they thinke the Eclipse lasteth, lest they should then bee deuoured (as I haue heard) by I know not what *Serpen*.

Their Physicke Rules differ much from ours: they examine the Pulse alike. They succeed well in their Prescriptions, which usually are Simples, Herbs, Rootes, and the like. They haue for it no publicke Schoole, but each learns it of his owne Master, yet in the two Royall Cities 30 Degrees of this Art are giuen after Examination, but cursorily and without any respect acquired by his Degree, because all may practise which will. Neyther doth any study Mathematicks or Physicke, which is in any hope of the Ethike glory, but such as want of wit or meane hath deered from studies more sublime. Contrariwise, that Ethike Science is the Ladder of *China* felicity. *Confutius* brought into order the Bookes of foure former Philosophers, and wrote a fifth himselfe, which five Bookes hee called *Doctrines*: in which are contained Morall and Politike Rules, Examples of the Ancients, Rites and Sacrifices, diuers Poems also and the like. Besides these five Volumes, out of *Confutius* and his Disciples are brought into one Volume, diuers Precepts without order, Similes, Sentences Ethike, Occasional, Politike: this Booke for the foure parts is called the *Four Bookes*. These nine are the ancientest *China* Bookes, whence the

30 others most what are taken, and containe most of their Characters. And the ancient Kings enacted that they which professe Learning, should take the foundations of their Learning from those Bookes, not only to learne the proper sense of the Text, but to be able on the sudden to write fifty of any sentence, for which cause that *Terrabiblion* is learned without Booke. Neyther is there any *Vniuersitie* or publicke Schoole (as some of ours haue affirmed, the Masters or Professors whereof haue undertaken to read and expound those Bookes; but euerie one gets a Master at home at his owne choice and cost (of which there is a huge multitude.) In this Science are three Degrees bestowed on them which offer themselves to be examined and are iudged meet. That Examination is almost wholly in Writing. The first Degree is conferred in euery City in that place which is called the Schoole; by some learned man designed to that Office by the King, who 40 is by that place called *Thibio* the Degree is termed *Suenai*. A threefold Examination is premised. First, at his coming into any City of his Province, all that stand for that degree in that City, and the confining limits thereof resort thither and are examined by those Masters which are let out to the Bachelors till they haue attained further Degrees, mayntained by the Kings stipend. In this Examination euery one is admitted, perhaps foure or 5000 assembled to that purpose. The second is by the foure Gouernours of the City (for none are admitted to Government but the *Learned*) which present out of all that number 200. of the better Writers to the *Thibio* and he in a third Examination chuseth 30. or 30. of the best, which he entituleth *Bachelors*: their Ensignes are a long *Gowne*, a *Cap*, and *Boots*, which none else may weare, in all places they are much respected as in a rank above the vulgar Citizens, and enjoy also diuers Priuileges, being in manner (themselves) 50 only to the Masters aforesaid and the *Thibio*, other Magistrates scarcely meddling with them. *Thibio* not only hath authority over these new created Bachelors, but euer those which were made before to re-examine them: and these according to their writing he diuideth into foure ranks: the first he rewardeth with some publique Office in the City, the second with some inferior honour, the third he neither rewards nor punisheth, the fourth he causeth to be publicly whipped, the last he degradeth and maketh againe Plebeians. The second Degree is called *Kings*, and may be compared with our *Licentiates*, and is conferred but once in three yeeres, and that in the Metropolitane City about the eight Moone with greater Majesty. And the degree is not conferred to all, but to a certayne number of the worthiest, according to the dignity of each Province: *Pekin* and *Nangun* haue each 150. *Cyngan*, *Quamf* and *Fayuan* 95. others fewer. Only 60 Bachelors, but not all, are admitted to this Examination, the *Thibio* sending out of each City or Schoole 30. or at most 40. of the best, which number yet ariseth in some Province to 4000. of those Examinates or Probationers for this second Degree. A little before the eighth Moone (which is often fairs in September, the *Pekin* Magistrates present to the King 100. of the most esteemed Philosophers in the Kingdome, who thence pricketh or nameth thirty, for each Province two, to

Colledge.

Eclipses.

Physician.

Confutius his
five Bookes.
Terrabiblion.

No Vniuersity.

Degrees.

Thibio the Pro-
phet.
Suenai a Ba-
chelor de-
signes a Ma-
ster of Art
with vs.

Ornaments.
Their Priu-
iledges.

The second
degree, *Kun-
g*, is Licen-
tiates or Ba-
chelor in Di-
uinitie, it
compareth them
with ours.
Examin. 150

Palace of examination.

take charge of the Examination of these Candidates. One of these two must be of the *Hanlin College*, the Collegians whereof are most famous thorough the Kingdom. The King doth not name them till that nick of time when they must presently pack to their Province, diligently guard also that they speak with none of that Province till the *Alt or Commencement* be past. In the same Province also are chosen the best Philosophers to assist these two Examiners. In the *Master City* is a huge Palace built for this purpose, compassed with high walls, with many Galleries for the Examiners separate from noise; and four thousand Cells or Studies besides in the midst of the Palace, wherein is a floore and table for one man, that none may see or confer with any other.

Days of Examination.

When the Examiners sent by the King, and those of the Province are come thither, they are presently shut up in their lodgings before they can speak with other men, or with each other, during all the Examination time. Night and day, means are whiles the Magistrates and Soldiers guard the Palace from Colloquies. Three dayes (the same thorough the Kingdom) the ninth, twelfth and fifteenth of the eighth Moone, from morning to night are appointed for their writing, the doores being shut. A light refectory provided the day before is given to the Writers at publick cost. When the Bachelors come to the Palace, they are thoroughly searched whether they have any Booke or Writing with them, and are admitted only with the *Penills* which they vie in writing, their Plate, Paper and Inke; these also and their Garments searched to prevent all fraud, which found caught the twofold punishment both of losse and fence. When they are admitted, the doores shut and sealed, the two Royall Examiners out of the *Tetrahedron* propound

Theater given.

Seven writings.

30 *theses* for so many other Theatemes. These seven Writings must be made for elegance of words and weight of Sentences according to the Precepts of *China* Rhetoricke; neither must any Writing containe above 500 Characters. Two dayes being passed for the Examination of these; the next day out of the Chronicles, or other three Cases of Politie are propounded, wherein each which three Theatemes or Writing expresse their minde, or Libel-wile admonish the King what were fittest to be done. The third day three Law Cases, such as happen in the Magistrates Offices are propounded, for each thereof to expresse his Sentence. These in great silence, each in his appointed Cell, having written their Theatemes, subscribed with their own, their Fathers, Grand-fathers and great Grand-fathers names, and sealed so that none but men appointed may reade them, offer them to certayne Officers, which before the Examiners see them; cause them to be transcribed by certayne thereto appointed: which Copies to be distinguished from the Originals are written in Red Inke, without the Authors names (the Originals laid up safely) than none might by the hand or name know the Author. In this Examination the Assistants first receive the worst & present vnto the two Examiners twice so many as are to be chosen Licentiate; as if one hundred and fifty are to be chosen, three hundred are thence take the first, second, and third, and set them accurately in order, and then conferre them with the Originals, thence taking the names which they cause to be written in great Cubital Letters, in a huge Table, which they expole about the end of the eighth Moone in great 40 concourse of Magistrates, and applaude the new Eleeds Friends and Kindred. The Priviledges and Ornaments of this Degree are more then of the former, and if they intend to proceed no further, they are hereby capable of very good Magificatures. After the Act, the Kings Examiners publish a Booke of their proceedings, the names of the Graduates and their principal Writings, especially his which is as the *Elder Brother* (they call him *Quanyan*) and whole Theatemes were best liked. The Bachelors of other Provinces may not here be admitted, some only except of the Kings Schoole in *Pekin* and *Nankin*.

Creation and Priviledges.

Third degree and of Doctors called *Cin-fu*.

Cin-fu.

The third Degree is like our Doctorship, called *Cin-fu*, which is conferred every third year also, but only at *Pekin*, and away is the next year after that Commencement of Licentiate. Only three hundred chosen out of the whole Kingdom obayne it, although the Licentiate of every Province are admitted to the Examination.

This Act is in the second Moone on the same dayes that the former and in like forme, saving that the diligence is greater, as for a greater degree, and the *Colai*, the chief Magistrates of the Kingdom are Examiners. The Doctors being pronounced in the same Palace, where the Licentiate vie to be; all of them in the Kings Palace, before the chief Magistrates of the Court (yea anciently the King was wont to be present) make a Theame, according to the judgement whereof, the order of the Magificatures which they are to beare, is declared, being distributed in three Ranks.

First and second place glorious.

See that in Examination of Doctors had the first place, hath in this second Examination the third place without question: but he which hath the first or second enoyeth a great dignity during his life, besides the greatest Offices in the Common-wealth; and might (computed with ours) be as a Duke or Marquess, if it were Hereditary. These Doctors presently receive their peculiar *Veil*, *Cap*, *Bonnet*, and other Ensignes of Magistrates, and are preferred to the best Offices, such as the Licentiate may not attayne, and are as the prime men of the Kingdom.

Thule

Those Licentiate which are rejected from the Doctorship, if they meane to proceed no further, are preferred to Magistrate, but if they list still to stand for that degree they betake themselves home to their Bookes atreth, till the third-year-examination retournes, so that some stand ten times, continuing to long private to become more publicke. A Booke is also published of rents, Offices of all the Doctors, and where they governe, whereby a man may know how any the Licentiate or Doctors of the same year respect one the other as Brethren ever after, and love the Friends also of their Colleagues, and honour their Examiners as Fathers.

Ambition will be highest or nothing.

Military degrees.

10 They vie to grant at the same times and places the same Titles (in the Moone following) to Military Professors, but with lesse pompe, because Souldierie is of no such reckoning with them, and few stand for them. This Military tryall is three-fold, in the first they shoot nine Arrows on Horke-backe running; in the second they shoot as many at the same make standing; and hee which hath hit the Marke with foure on Horke-backe and two Arrows on foot, is admitted to the third tryall wherein they have some Theame of Military matters propounded, and the Judges examining this Triple tryall out of the whole number pronounce about fifty Licentiate in every Province. And when the Doctorall Act is at *Pekin*, one hundred of the choice of these after a Triple Examination are made Military Doctors. These Doctors are more easily admitted to Military Professures (but scarcely without Brbes) then the Licentiate. Both the Philosophicall and Military, (out their doores, set vp in great Letters this their new attained dignity. All the Examiners, whether of Mathematicall, or Military, or Philosophicall degrees, are of those Philosophers, without assistance of any Captaine, Mathematician, or Physician, as if thereby they were enabled to all things.

Threefold tryall.

§. III.

Of the Tartarian Conquest; Of *Hwmyv* the Establisher of the present Government. The Revenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall, Provincies, Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Visitation, Deprivations.

40 **T**he Government of *China* is Monarchicall. In times past, there have bene Lord of Title, as are Dukes, Marquesses, and Earles in *Europe*, but taken away eighteen hundred yeares since. It was never subdued by any Forerunners before the Tartarian Conquest. The Islesites. Junke that that Conquerour was *Tamurlane*; for the *Chinois* call him *Timer*, and say that he had before subdued *Paria* and *Tartaria*. Hee (whose father hee was) conquered all the *Chinois* and left them to his Posterity till the year 1368. At that time the Tartarians growing weaker, duers Captayns arose in duers parts of the Kingdom which broke off that yoke. Amongst them all the most famous was of the Family *Cin*, whom afterwards the *Chinois* called *Hwmyv*, a famous Captaine, or rather a Flood of Armes. Hee of a Rebels thorow all the Kingdom, and possessed that Souerainie which still continueth in the Line. For the Crowne there goeth by Inheritance, only two or three of the Ancient Kings have commended it to others, their owne Sonnes seeming unworthy; and the people have by Rebellion sometimes rayted a new Family, duers yet loving their lines rather then acknowledging that Faction, this being Proverbiall in their Philosophie, *An herselfe woman hath but one Husband, and a faithful Servant but one Lord*.

Chap. 5.
Polo hath related the Conquest of *Mong* King *Timur*, and say that he had before subdued *Paria* and *Tartaria*. Hee (whose father hee was) conquered all the *Chinois* and left them to his Posterity till the year 1368. At that time the Tartarians growing weaker, duers Captayns arose in duers parts of the Kingdom which broke off that yoke. Amongst them all the most famous was of the Family *Cin*, whom afterwards the *Chinois* called *Hwmyv*, a famous Captaine, or rather a Flood of Armes. Hee of a Rebels thorow all the Kingdom, and possessed that Souerainie which still continueth in the Line. For the Crowne there goeth by Inheritance, only two or three of the Ancient Kings have commended it to others, their owne Sonnes seeming unworthy; and the people have by Rebellion sometimes rayted a new Family, duers yet loving their lines rather then acknowledging that Faction, this being Proverbiall in their Philosophie, *An herselfe woman hath but one Husband, and a faithful Servant but one Lord*.

There are no ancient Lawes, but the first Founder of any Royall family makes new Lawes, no ancienter then *Hwmyv*, who either made new, or confirmed the old. Out of ignorance of these parts of the world, they thinke their King Lord of the world, and call him *Tian*, the Sonne of Heaven, or (which is all one in their Theologie) of God. His viall title yet is *Hwmyv*, but he is called *Monarch*; whereas they stile other Kings *Guam*, an inferiour title. To prevent Rebellions and Factions, *Hwmyv* ordaind that none of the Royall blood should intermeddle with Government. Those Captayns which had ayded him in expulsion of the Tartars, hee gave the titles of *Guam*, as petty Kings, with large revenues to be yearly payed out of the his inferior Honours and revenues, so much like as further from the original, and after certaine generations to have no more then might well maintaine them without labour. The like honoured with a title of Iron like a Charger, in which are engraven those their exploits for de-

L. 12

luerance of the Kingdom; which being shewne to the King, is priuiledged with pardon of any penaltie, though mortall, three times, except for Treason which forfeiteth presently all Priuiledges. Every time it obtaynes any pardon, it is engrauen in the Plate. The Sonnes in Law, and Fathers in Law of the King, and some which haue extraordinarily merited of the State, enjoy like Honours and Reuenues with the same diminution of time, as before.

He also ordained that all Magistrate and Government should belong to those Licentiates and Doctors, whereto neither the laour of the King or other Magistrates are necessary, but their owne merits, except where corruption frustrates Law. All Magistrates are called *Quangfa*, and for honours like they are titled *Law yor Lou fa*, that is, *Lord, or Father*. The *Portugals* call them *Mandaries*. These haue some representation of *Aristocratie*, in that Government: for though they doe nothing but first petitioning the King, hee also determines nothing without their sollicitation. And if a private man petitions (which is seldom), hee will grant it, sends it to the Tribunal proper for that business, to advise him what is fittest to be done. I haue found for certain, that the King cannot give Money or Magistracie to any, except hee bee solicited by some Magistrate: I meane this of publicke Reuenues; which doubtlesse doe exceed one hundred and fiftie Millions yearly, & are not brought into the Palace Treasury, nor may the King spend them at his pleasure: but all whether Money or Rice and other things in kinde, are layd vp in the publicke Treasuries and Store-houses, in all the Kingdome. Thence the expences of the King his Wives, Children, Eunuchs, Family, and of all his Kindred are in Royall foir disbursed, according to the ancient Lawes, neither more nor lesse. Thence the Souldiers of Magistrates Palace, Cities, Walls, Townes, Fortresses and all prouision of War are thence sustayned, which cause new Tributes sometimes to be imposed, this huge Reuenue notwithstanding.

Of Magistrates are two sorts, one of the Court which rule there, and thence rule the Kingdom, and other Provinciall, which gouerne particular Cities or Provinces. As both sorts are free or free Bookes to be sold every where, printed twice each month at *Peguin*, as by their course of printing (you haue seene) is easily containing nothing else but the name, Country, and degree of the Magistrate; and therefore printed so often because of the exaltings, shifting, setting lower, death of Parents (which suffred three yeares to mourning in private) their owne deaths or depriuations.

Of the Court Tribunals are reckoned fixe; the first, *Li pu* (as is much as *Tribunal* or *Court*, and *Li*, as *Magistrate*) to which it belongeth to name the chiefe Magistrates of the Kingdom, bringing vp from the lower to the higher according to the Lawes prescribed, or if they deserue it, abasing or quite deyring them. For those Licentiates and Doctors continually ascend, except their owne faults deyr them, wherein a deprivation makes for euer vncapable. The second is called *Ho pu*, that is, the Exchequer Court, or that of the Treasury; which exceeds and disturbs the Kings Reuenues. The third is the *Li pu*, or Court of Rites, which ordereth the publicke Sacrifices, Temples, Priests, Kings, Marriages, Schooles, Examinations, Festiual Dayes, common Gratulations, entreteining and sending Embassies, with their Rites, Presents, Colledges of Mathematicians, enterteining and sending Embassies, with their Rites, Presents, Letters; the King holding it abasing to his Majesty to write to any. The fourth, is the *Pompa*, or Military Court, which rewards the meriting, and takes from the sluggish Souldier; ordereth their Musters and gives Military degrees. The fifth is *Campy*, which hath care of the publicke Buildings, Palaces for the King or his Kindred, and the Magistrates; Shippes for publicke burthens or Armadas, Bridges, Walls of Cities and all like prouisions. The sixth Court is *Hampy*, which inquireth into Criminall Causes and fentenceth them; also all the publicke Prisons are subiect hereto.

All the affaires of the Kingdom depend on these Courts, which therefore haue Magistrates and Notaries in every City and Province, to admonish them faithfully of all things, the multitude and order facilitating this so weighty a Designe. For first, in every Court is a Lord Chiefe Iustice, *President* called *Ciem Cui*, who hath two Assistants, one sitting at his right hand, the other at his left, called *Ciam*: their dignity in the Royall Cities is accounted principall. After these every Tribunal hath diuers Offices, each of which hath diuers Collegues, besides Notaries, Courtiers, Apparitors, and other Seruants. Besides these Tribunals there is another the greatest which haue no peculiar business, but take care of the whole Re-publicke, and are the Kings Priuy. Council in all Affaires. These are daily admitted into the Kings Palace, and there abide whole dayes, and answers as they see cause to the Petitions which are put vp to the King (who was wont to define matters with these *Colai* in publicke) and shewing their answer to the King, hee alters or approoueth the same, and lets his hand thereto for the execution.

Besides these Orders of Magistrates and others not mentioned (as like to our owne) there are two sorts not vfall with vs, the one *Choli*, the other called *Zauli*. In each of these Orders are about sixty choice Philosphers, men approved for their wisdom and courage before experienced.

Magistrates.

Quangfa and
Lau Te or Lau
Sir
Mandaria a
Portugall name.

Kings Reue-
nues 150. Mil-
lions.

How dispensed

Bookes of
Officers.

Li pu, or
Court of Ma-
gistrates.

Ho pu,
or
Lau pu.

Pompa.*Campy*.*Hampy*.

The President
or Chiem Cui,
Ciam.

Colai, or Coun-
sell of State.

Choli and *Zauli*
Magistrates
extraordinary.

cal. These two Ranks are vsed by the King in Court or Province business of greater weight, with great and Royall power, which causeth to them great respect and veneration. These by Libell admonish the King if any thing be doe contrary to the Lawes in any parts of the Kingdom, not sparing any of the Magistrates, nor the Kings House, nor the King himselfe; to the wonder of other Nations. And although the King sometimes bee touched to the quick, and toucheth them to the quick againe, yet cease they not still to rip the foretill it be cured. Other Magistrates may doe it, yea any priuate man, but these mens Libels or Petitions are of most worth, as proceeding from their peculiar Office. The Copies of them and of the Kings answers are printed by many, so that the Court and State Affaires flye thorow the Kingdom, and are by some written in Bookes, and those of most moment transcribed into the Annals of the Kingdom. Of late when the King would for lose of a second Sonne haue excluded the eldest, so many by Libels reprehended the King, that he in anger depoued or abased one hundred of the Magistrates. They yet ceased not but one day went together into the Kings Palace, and offered vp their Magistracies if he persisted to breake the Law. Lately also when the chiefe of the *Colai* did not obseue the Law, in two moneths space about one hundred Libels were put vp, notwithstanding they knew him a great Favourite; and hee dyed within a while after, as was thought, of grief.

There are also besides Magistrates, not a few Colledges instituted for diuers purposes, but the most eminent is that called *Han lin Tuen*, into which none are chosen but chiefe Doctors after due Examinations. They which lue in that Royall Colledge, a modle but due Government, yet are of higher dignitie then the Gouernours. Their Office is to order the Kings Writing, make Annals of the Kingdom, to write Lawes and Statutes. Of these are chosen the Masters of the Kings and Princes. They wholly additt themselves to their studies, and in the Colledge haue their degrees of honours, which they attayne by writing. Thence they are preferred to great dignities but not out of the Court. Neither is any chosen to be a *Colai*, but out of this like, which all lue to haue of them, their name giuing credit and reputation of Elegance. These are the chiefe for Examinations of Licentiates and Doctors, who hold them for Masters and send them Presents.

All these *Peguin* Magistrates are found also at *Nangpin*, but obscured by the Kings absence. *Hun pu* had fixed his Seat at *Nangpin*, but after his death *Tun* is one of his Nephewes, who in the Northern Provinces defended with an Armie those Borders against the *Tartars*, perceiving *Hun-pu* Sonne too weak, thought to deyr him of the Kingdom, which hee effected by helpe of the Northern Provinces, and with force, fraud and largesse obtayned his Votes there, hee there fixed his Residence, where the *Tartar* Kings had wonted to abide and called that Citie *Peguin*, that is, the Northern Court, as *Nangpin* signifieth the Southern, leauing to this the former Offices and Immunities.

Of the Government of the other thirteene Provinces depends on two Magistrates, the one *Pai-ciu*, the other *Naganzu*; the former judging Ciuill Causes, the latter Criminall; both residing with great Power in the Mother Citie of the Province. In both Courts are diuers Colledges and they also chiefe Magistrates called *Tau*, which gouerning other Cities often reside in them. The Provinces are all distributed into three Regions, which they call *Fu*, each of which hath a peculiar Gouernour called *Cifu*. These Regions are subdivided into *Cen*, and *Chien*, that is the Cities, if you except our greatest. These haue their speciall Gouernours called *Cien* and *Chien*, and Iudges to helpe them. As for the opinion of some that shunke those only to be Cities, which are called *Fu*, and *Cen*, and *Chien* to be Townes; it is an error: for the City wherein the Gouernour of the Region resides, is also called *Han*, and hath its peculiar Gouernour called *Cien*, which is the first Appeal to him as Superior from the Cities or *Cien*. The second Appeal is to the *Pai-ciu* and *Naganzu* and their Collegues in the Metropolitane Cities, in which Cities likewise haue their *Cien* and *Cifu*, as well as the Subordinate; all in incribable Symmetry.

And because the whole Provinciall Government hath reference to *Peguin*, therefore in every Province besides these, are other two superior to them sent from the Royall Citie, the one fixing his Residence in the Province, called *Tiam*, which may be compared to our *Viceroy*, ha-ving command over other Magistrates, and in Martiall affaires; the other is yearly sent from the Court, and is called *Cai-yuen*, as Commisfioner or Visitor, which reviews all the Causes of the Province, the Cities also and Cities, inquesth of the Magistrates, and punishment some of the meaner foir, acquainting the King touching the rest, how every one demeaneth himselfe; and he only executeth Capital punishments. Besides these, are many others in Cities, Townes and Villages: and beside them, many which haue command of Souldiers, especially in the Con-

See *Pensia*.

Colledges.
Han lin Tuen.

Cause of the
remouing the
Seat Royall
from *Nangpin*
to *Peguin*.

Provinciall
Gouernours.

Tau-ciu,
Naganzu,
etc.

Division of
Provinces,
Regions or
Shires.

Cen and *Chien*.

Tu, or *fu*, *mita*,
etc.

Cifu, *Chien* and
Cien,
Appeals.

Tiam,
the *yuen* or
Chieftain.

finer and on the Coasts in supine Peace, watching and warding in Ports, Walls, Bridges, Castles, as in the hottest Wars, with Blusters and Martiall exercises. All the Magistrates of the Kingdom, are reduced to nine Orders, whether you respect the Philosophicall or Militarie Senate: to all which out of the Treasury is proportionally distributed monthly pay, Money or Rice; yet little answerable to their Magnificence (the highest Order not having one thousand Duckets yearly) and equal to all of the same rank, the supreme in matters of Warre having as much as the supreme in the literate Order, if you look to that which the Law alloweth. But much more accrueh extraordinary then this fee or stipend, besides what any man industrie, courtise, fortune, bribing addeth, by which they oft attayne to great wealth.

All the Magistrates vse the same Caps, both Mercuriall and Martiall, of blacke Cloth with two Eares or wings, of Ouall figure, which may easily fall off, which being a disgrace, causeth the more modestie and steadinesse in carriage of their heads. They all wear like *off*, and like blacke leather *Bootes* of peculiar fashion; also a *Girdle* wider then the body, about foure fingers broad, adorned with circular and square Figures: On the breast and backe, they wear two *square Cloaths* Embroidered: in which and the Girdles is great varietie, according to their diuers Degrees; by which the skillfull know their rank and place. The clothes intimate it by the figures of Flowers, Bowles, Bealls; the girdles by the matter, of Wood, Horne, Sweet wood, Gold or Silver; and the belt of all of the *upper* before mentioned, called *Tux*, brought from *Cyfar*. Their shadowes or *Sembles* by their Colours and numbers intimate like difference. They have other *Ornaments*, *Banners*, *Chapens*, *Confers*, *Guards* with Cries to make way, that in most frequent Streets no man appeareth, more or lesse, according to the Magistrates Dignitie.

The *Chinois* having plenty of all things, care not for subduing the neighbour-Nations, better keeping their owne, lesse caring for others Countries, then our *Europeans*: their Chronicles of foure thousand yeeres not mentioning any care of enlarging their Empire. And any *Chino* impressions or foot-prints bee, it is from men voluntarily going to other Countries, not from the Kings ambition sending them. It is also remarkable that Philosophers beare all the way, the Souldiers and Capaynes being subject to them, and sometimes beaten of them as Schoole-boys by their Master: euen in Militarie matters, the King more vnting the aduise of Philosophers then Captaynes; whereupon every haughtie spirit rather affects meaner places in the *Literate Order*, then great in the *Martiall*. Yea these Literate are more magnanimous, and more contemne their lives in zeale of the publike then the Souldierie. No lesse admirable is the Symmetric and Order of Magistrates in their subordinate Orders, in Obedience, Reuerence, Vitiations and Presents; the Inferiour giuing honourable Titles to the Superiour and kneeling to them. None beares any Office about three yeeres, except the King confirme it. And the chiefe Magistrates of Provinces, Cities and Regions, every third yeere must appeare at *Peking*, and doe their Rites to the King, at which time seuerall inquirie is made of the Magistrates, and they thereupon rewarded or punished. I haue also observed, that the King dares not alter any thing of these, which in this publike Disquisition are ordered by the Judges. *Ann* 1607, we reade foure thousand Magistrates condemned, that being the Search-yeere, and a Booke published thereof.

These Condemned are of five sorts; First, Couetous which haue taken Bribes to peruert Iustice, or haue vltured the publike or private mens fortunes: these are wholly deprivd of Offices for euer. The second are the Cruell, which haue too seuerely punished, which are also deprivd of their Places and Ensignes: The third are the Old and sickly, and the Remisse and negligent; these are deprivd, but permitted the Immunities and Ensignes. The fourth sort, are the rash, headie, and vndisvaid, which are put in lower Offices, or sent to more easie places of Government. The last are such, as haue not governed themselves or theirs, worthy of that place of Government; these are wholly deprivd. The like Inquisition is made every fifth yeere of the Court Magistrates, and the same time also, of Militarie Commanders.

None may beare Office in his native Province, except Militarie. The Sennes also of Domesticke seruants of Magistrates, may not goe out of the house lest they should bee Factors for bribes: but all seruices without doores is done by Officers, designed to his place: and when he goeth out of his House hee sealeth the doores, whether private or publike, that none of his Seruants may goe out vntil writing to him.

They permit no Stranger to liue with them that mindes to returne to his Country, or is knowne to haue Commerce with forraigne Nations: and no Stranger although of a friendly Nation and Tributary, may haue access to the inward parts of the Kingdom, a thing whereof I haue seene no Law, but Custome: neither haue I euer seene any of *Cora* in *China*, except some Slaues which a Capayne brought thence, although a tributary Nation which vntil in manner the *China* Lawes. And if a Stranger steale into the Country, they punish him not with Death nor Slauerie, but permit him not to returne. They most seuerely punish those, which without the Kings leave haue commerce with Strangers: and hardly can any bee perfwaded to be sent abroad with Mandates: and such are rewarded with some Dignitie at their returne. None beare Weapon in Cities, not the Souldiers or Captaynes, but in their Traynings; nor haue any men

weapons in their Houses, except some rustie blade which they vse when they trauell for feare of Thieves. Their greatest Brawles goe no further, then scratching or pulling by the hayre; hee which flees or abstains from wrong is esteemed both Wife and Valiant. When the King dyeth, none of his Sonnes are permitted to remayne in the Royall Citie, but the Heire; and it is Capitall for them, being dispersed in diuers Cities to stirre thence. Some principall amongst them, compounds their strifes and rules them; in Cafes with others, they are subiect to the Magistrates.

¶ III.

Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertainments, and other Ciuilitie: to the King and Magistrates: Of Burials and Marriages, Birth-dayes; their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites.

Courtesie or Ciuilitie, is reckoned one of their five *Cardinall vertues*, much commended in their Bookes. (Their common *Rites* yet haue been largely in *Persia*.) When greater respect is vied, as after long absence, or on a Solemne day, after the common bowing, both fall on their knees with the forehead to the ground, and then rise and downe againe in like sort three or four times. When they doe this reuerence to a Superiour, hee standeth at the head of the Hall, or sits, and at all those prostrations ioyning his hands, bowes a little and the doore is Southwards. The same rite they performe to their Idols; and sometimes as Seruants to their Master, or the meane of the people to honourable persons, which is presently to kneele and knock the ground thrice with their forehead: they stand at his side when their Master speaks, and kneele at euery answer. When one speaks to another, they vse not the second person, nor the first person when they mention themselves, except to their inferiour, and haue as many formes of depressing themselves, as of exalting others, the lowliest of which is to call a mans self by his proper name, in stead of (I.) When they speake any thing of another mans, they vse a more honourable forme; Of their owne, or theirs, a more modest: which a man must learne both for manners sake, and to vnderstand their meaning.

The Visitors send their Libels or papers of visitation, so many that the Porter is faine to keepe a note of their names, and where they dwell, lest wee should forget; and if the partie to bee visited be not at home or at leisure, that libell is left with the Porter for a testimonie. The more liking; setting downe at each gite in a line by it selfe, part of which may be sent backe without offence, which is done with a like libell of thanks. They often lend money or pieces of Gold for presents. They haue Garments proper for visitations. The chiefe place in both Royall Courts, is giuen to Strangers, most remote especially, which made vs commonly to be preferred. The servant, when they are set, brings as many little Cups of *Cha* as are Guests. When they part, neere the Hall doores, they reiterate their bowings, then at the Doore, and at the passing out, and after they are in their Chayre or on Horsebacke, againe without doores; and lastly, a Seruant is sent after in his Masters name, to salute them, and they send their seruants likewise to resalute.

Their Banquets are not so much commensations as *Competitiones*; for although their Cups be as little as Nut-shells, yet they drinke often. Their Ciuill and Religious affaires are therein handled, besides the demonstration of kindnesse. In eating they haue neither Forkes, nor Spoons, to their mouths, but vse small smooth stickes, a palme and a halfe long, where they put all meate but cut in little pieces, they vse of softer condition, as Egges, Fish, and such things as their on, or Wine, or Water; which is fittest to the Stomacke; for they lye long, and are strong at seuerie or eightie yeeres. Neither is any of them troubled with the Stone, more dayes (if it bee to a solempne Banquet) before. Signifying that the Inuites beare prepared a night) bee may heare and learne somewhat of him: At the day they drink another like Libell (on the out-side of these Libels, there is a red paper added with the more honourable Name of the inuitied, which the *Chinois* vse besides their proper name) in the morning to each Guest, and

my honorable Patron and best friend, B. King, *Ann* 1611. and *Ann* 1612. Master B. field my neighbour, the painfull Minister of *Blowes* dyed of a Stone, which I weighed, and found (a miracle in Nature) much about 31 Ounces, whilst these our *China* relations are in the Press; therefore here mentioned. My selfe also having stone; affords, an therefore not to be in compassion.

Weapons.
Brawles.
Succession and
royall kindred.

Capt.
Courtesie in
mutual veneration
and civility
behaviour to
others.

Side-reuerence.

Respect of persons.
See *Thesaurus* B.
p. 344

Visiting one
another.

Tedious course
rele.

China banquet.
Feeding.

Hot drinke.
The Stone
knowne in
China, which
is toment
Europeans in
the Kidney,
Vreters, Bladder:
this salt
deprived me of

third at the house. The Curtnure is not Hangings (whereof they have no vte) but Pictures, Flowers, Vaseis; to each Guest his Table, and sometimes two to one, the one before the other. These Tables are some Cubits long, the bread more in length, and covered with a cloth as our Alcars. The Seats thus with their Varnish, adorned also with Pictures and Gold. The first entertainment is with *Cra* in the Hall; and thence they go to the Feasting-Room. Before they Wine: then goeth to the doore or porch, and first making a low courtesie, and holding a cup of the South, powres out that cup on the ground, offering it to the *Lord of Honour*, and bowing downe againe, returneth, and filling another cup goeth to that principall Guest, and bowing lawes him in the place in which the rites of salutation are vfed: and then they goe together to the Table where the chiefe Guest must sit. The middit of it is the chiefe place; there we see the hande he sets a dish with great veneration, and taking two those stickes (which usually are of Gold or Silver) tipped with Gold or Silver, where they touch the middle) layes them by, and taking a fitt number of his llesues lightly, and sets it in the middit; after which both goe backe and bowe themselves to the middit of the Roome. Thus hee doth to euery one, placing the second on the left hand, the third on the right. Lastly, he which hall the chiefe Roome receiue of his seruant the Inuiter Dishe, Cup, and bids Wine to be filled, and together with the other Guests and the Inuiter, boweth downe, and placeth the Dish on his Table (which is placed in the lower part of the Hall, with his backe to the doore, and face to their place, with great ceremony, to fit them better with both hands, hee will goe againe to the doore, standing by the side of the doer with his hands in his llesues, and modestly bowing it is thanks. They waith neither before nor after. After all this, they performe the last rite of the Inuiter together, and then each to other, and then sit downe. When they drinke, the Inuiter with his hands takes the Cup in the Dish, and lightly lifting it vp, and then letting it downe inuities them to drinke, all turning to him at the same time, and beginning to drinke, or to sip rather, four or five times turning it to his mouth, not as we vfe with one continued draught, but as they drinke, all turning to him at the same time, and beginning to drinke, or to sip rather the principall Guest layd hath downe his hande againe, and to laye downe their stickes, stickes apply a bit or two to their mouthes, diligently chewing, not to laye downe their stickes mans Cup, with hot Wine: and the same rite is againe done by the seruants fill his, and after euery 30 times eating. Mean-while some discourse, or Comedie, or Muliick is repeated, but more sipping Wine is variety, a little of each, Fleish also and Fifth miced, taking off nothing. The grace of their Dish on another like Castles and Towers. Bread, and Rice (which there suppleth our Bread) comes not in folemne Banquets. They haue games also, in which the lofer is faine to drinke, with others disport. None is compelled to drinke aboue his strength. Their drinke is only toyled like our Beere. Their folemne Banquets last all night, the remainders giuen to the Guests to take home. Neere the end of the Feast they change Cups. In eating they are more moderate.

The Guests
courtesie to
the Host.

Sipping oft,
not drinking
one draught.

King observed.

Petitions.
 New years.
 New Moons.

Birth-day,

Kings colour
yellow, Sun-
like.
Dragons.

**The Palace
and gates.**

The Kings colour is yellow (forbidden to others) of which his garment is wrought with many golden Dragons, which are caned or painted in all the Palace, and Velliel, and furniture; in therofe altor; whence fome have thought the Tiles to be of Gold or Braſſe, being of a yellow Earth, each nayled to the Timber : with Nayles gilded on the heads, that all may appear yellow. It were treafon for another to arrogate that colour or Armes, except he bee of the Roy-
The Palace gates are foure, to the foure corners of the World. They which paſſeth, defend from their Horſes or Seats, and goe on foot till they be paſt, the greateſt ſoonest alight, and that at Nanquon alſo, where King hath of long time reſided. The gates to the South both inner and

and outward are three, the King only going in and out at the middle (which otherwise is but) Kingsgate, Time, Title.
the other at the other gates on the right and left hand. Their computation of time is only by the Kings Reigne. Sometimes the King belittoweth a Title on the Parents of the principal Magistrate by a certain writing, made by the Kings Philosophers in the Kings name, esteemed wonderfully, acquired with any cost, and kept in the familie as a thing sacred. The like opinion is of other Titles given to Widowes, exprest in two or three Characters, given to Widowes, Old men.
which to their old age have refused second marriages; or to old Men which have lived an hundred yeeres, and in like caies. They yett the Titles over their doors. Magistrates also doe the like to their friends. To good Magistrates Arches are erected at publick cost, of Marble; by Citizens also to some of their Citizens which have attained any notable dignitie. The most precious Artifices throw all the Kingdome are yearly leitt to the King to *Pequin* with great costs. The Magistrates of the Kings Citie goe abroad with leffe pompe, on horsebacke and few of the principall in Seats, and the other carried but by four Porters: all in reverence of the King, For the Kings sake, and the yearely quarter, all the Court Magistrates assemble at the Seignours of the ancient Kings and Queens, to make the newe offerings, giving the principall honour to *Hannu*. They prepare to this solemnitie certaine dayes fasting at home and surfeiting of Juts.

Kings gate,
Time,
Folk

Widows.
Old men.

Archae.

Requin.

Funerals of
Kings;

0 Honour of
Magistrate

Next to the King they honour their Magistrates, both in formes of words and vilitations, to which none aspire but Magistrates; and they which have beene deprived Iofe notall honour in this kind, but sometimes come forth in their habits and are respected by their Citie Magistrates. If one bee preferred to another dignity, which hath well executed his Office, they honour him with publicke gifts, and reuerse his Boots in a publicke Chit, with Verbes in his praise. To some they erect Temples also, and Altars with Images, and some are deputed to keepe lights there burning, and odours, at publicke Rent charge perpetually, with huge Centers of Bell-metal, which they dedicate to their Idols. Yet they differ amongst themselves in the manner of their Gods asking more or less respect, whereas their Rites are onely memorials, though many of the vulgar * confound them together. Cities and Townes have their Temples, by friends offered to vniworth men, to which at certaine times they goe and sacrifice, and bowing downe to the Images, pray for the good of the Country. Parents with their Children, at Rites, and other Meats. Their Bookes are full of precepts for obsequing Parents with honour, and in outward shew no Nation performs so much. They will not sue out against their but on the side, speake to them with great reuerence, they sustaine their poorer Parents with their labour in best manner they are able, and in nothing are more curious than their funerall.

* As in the *dona*
lia and *latria* of
Saints worship
and that of

See in *Panteia*
of Funerals
and mour-
nings.

s Mourning by
e book.

The mourning colour is white, and all their habite from the Shoes to the Capes, Orange and miserable fahion. The caute of three yeeres mourning for Parents, is because fuch they carried them in armes with fo much labour of education : fo others as they please, a yeere, or three months, as they are in neerehelie : For the King they moune three yeeres throw all the Kingdome, and for the Lawfull *Queene*. Their funerall Rites are written in a Booke which they consult on at that occasion, all the parcels of the habite there pictured. When a man of ranke is dead, the Sonnes and the friends, come to the friends within three or four daies : all the 40 Roome is white, with an Altar in the midle, on which they place the Coffin and Image of the dead. Thither all the friends come in mourning one after another, & offer Wax-candles on the Altar; whyles they burne, making foure bendings and kneeling, having first cast against the Image. The Sonnes stand at the side, and the women behinde, covered with a Curtaine, mourning the while : the Priests also burne Papers and Silkes, with certaine rites to minish Clothes to the deceased. They abstayne from wonted Beds (sleeping on Straw-beds with the graue newe) the Corps from flesh and other daintier food, Wine, Bathes, companie with their Wiues, Bankets, & going out for certaine months, remitting by degrees as the 50 they goe in Procession forme, in mourning : as by another Libell inlited, to which the Lions of Paper all gove before, diversified in colour and gilding, which is thus. The Graue : a long ranke of Idoll Priests, Prayers, and Players on divers Instruments obscuring diuers rites in the way ; huge Bell-centers also carried on mens shoulders ; after which follows the bier, & vnder a huge carved Canope adorned with Silkes, carried with forty or fifty men. Next the children on foot with Candles, and then the women endofed within a white gartery Curtaine, that they may not be seene : followed by women of the kindred in mourning Seats. The Graues are all in the Suburbs : if the Sonnes be absent, the Funerall pompe is deferred till their coming. They bring (if it may be) the deceased in an hearse, & contrary to lie by his friends. The Graues are adorned with Epitaphs in Marble magnificently. Thither on certaine daies yearly the kindred resort to cente and offer, and make a funerall bypout.

Burial.

60 Their Marriages and Spouſals are with many rites, done in their youth; the Contracts compounded by the Parents without their conſent; they obſerve equalitie in yeeres and degree in the lawfull Wife. In their Concubines, luſt, beauty, price beare away. The poorer alſo buy their Wives, and when they liſt ſell them. The King and his kindred reſpect only beauty, Miſtiſtates appointed to make the choiſe. One is his lawfull Wife; the King and his Heire haue

Marriage.

•

Gu-nams
few, in Eng-
land, recently
were few or
none, see
Cem. Remains
difficultie and
even anguist
Portion.

Birth day.

Virilia pileus.

Candlemas.

Fire works.

Cap's,
climes persons
adorned.

Women.

Hair.

Rings.

Apparell.

Name-cere-
moties.

Women female
name.

Fathers name.

School-name.

Letter-name.

Color name.

Religious
name.

Greater than
lesser name.

nine other Wines a little inferior, and after them sixe and thirty, which are also called Wines; by Concubines are more. Those which bring forth Sonnes are more gracious, especially the Mothers of the eldest. This is also familiar to other families thirrow th. Kingdome. Their first but stand in presence of either of the Royall Children: and may not sit Mother, and for her (though not the true Parent) observe triennial mourning. In Marriages they are curious not to take any of the same fur-name, of which fur-names there are not a thousand of the Fathers side, except he be adopted into another familie. They respect no affinity degree. The Wife brings no portion, and so marries with the Mothers kindred almost in any to the street: full of household attenders her, yet is all prouided by his costs which sends money some months before as a gift to her first purpore.

Every mans Birth-day is festiuall celebrated with Presents, Banquets and iollity: especially after the fiftieth yeere explyte (at which time they are reckoned among old men) and then every tenth yeere. The Children then procure Emblems of their friends, and Epigrams, and some write Bookes. That day is also festiuall in which they are of age to take the *Adams cap*, which is about twenty yeeres, till that time wearing their haire loose. But the first New and Full Moone of the yeere is most generally festiuall; such man then hauing ingeniously desired Lights or Lamps made of Paper, Glasse, or other matter, the house seeming by the diuorified 20 Dragon-fancioned Lights, and make great fires of Powder-fire-works.

The *Chinois* are white (but neerer the South more browne) with thinn beards (some haue long ones) with starr g haires, and late growing; their haire wholly blacke; eyes narrow, of egge forme, blacke and standing out: the nose very little, and scarcely standing forth; eares mane in some Prouinces they are square faced. Many of *Canton* and *Quamoy* Prouinces on their little toes haue two nailes, as they haue generally in *Cachin-china*. Their women are all low, and account great beauty in little feet, for which cause from their infancy they bind them with clothes, that one would iudge them stump-tooted: this, as is thought, deuised to but Boyes and Gittles till they are fifteene yeere old, are cut round, leauing a locke onely to growne: after which they let it grow loose ouer their shoulders till twenty. The most of the Priests haue head and beard euery eighth day. When they are men they binde vp their haire in a Cap or Coiffe made of horse or mans haire, or in a silken Cawle; and in Winter of woollen: on the top it hath a hole, where the haire comes forth, and is tyed in a neate knot. The women wear not this Cap, but binde vp their haire in a knot, and make it vp with a dresse of Gold, Silver, Stones, and Floures. They wear Rings on their eares, but not on their fingers.

The men and women wear long garments. The men double them on their breast, and fasten them vnder both the arme-holes; the women on the midle of the breast. They wear wide long sleeves; but the womens wider, the mens straighter, at the wrists. Their Caps are artificially 40 wrought. Their Shoes are much differing from ours; the men wear them of Silke with diuers workes and flowers, exceeding the elegance of our Matrons. Shoes of Leather none but the meaner fore wear; and scarcely admit they Leather soles, but of Cloth. The Caps of their trimming his haire. They winder alio long clouts about their feet and legs, and therefore wear their Beedies loose. They wear no Shirts, but a white Coat next the skinn, and wash often: They haue a seruant to carrie a Shadow or great *Sambrello* ouer their heads against the raine and Sunne; the poore carrie one for themselves.

For Names, besides the fur-name which is spoken, the Father giues one to the Sonne (for females haue no name but the Fathers fur-name, and called as they are borne, first, second, third, 50 in order of the Sisters;) by this name they are called by the Father and Elders; others call them like wife from that order among the Brethren, as is said of Sisters. They in their writings call themselves by that which their Father gaue them; but if others either quall or superior should so call them, it were both vnicuall and inuious. When a Boy goeth to Schoole his Master giueth him another name, which is called his *Schoole-name*, whereby only his Master and Schoole-fellows may stile him. When he hath his *Adams cap* put on, and marrieth a Wife, by this any man may call him, but those which are subiect to him. And when he is now at the full groweth, he receiue of some graue person his most honourable name, which they call *Great name*. If any prelate a new Sect, his Instructor calls him by a new name, which they call, of 60 *Religion*. And when one writes another, he will aske what is his *Honourable name*, to stile him thereby; and we were therefore fayne to take a *Greater name* than that which we recited in Baptisme, for them to call vs by.

They are studious of Antiquities: much value old Triuets of Bell metall, Pictures in blacke and white Characters and writings, sealed with the Authors seale (for there are many Counterfeits). The Officers haue all a Seale proper to their place giuen by *Humour*, which they viceroun- Seales of Ma-
sealing with red colour; and if they lose the Seale they lose the Office, and are befide feuerly gillates.
punished; and therefore they carry it with them, in a sealed and locked Boxe, and neuer leaue it out of sight; at night keeping it vnder their Pillow. Graue men goe not on foote thorow the streets, but are carryed in a leate cloled, except they list to open the fore-part, whereas Magis-
strates leates are euery way open. Matrons leates are altogether cloled, but easily knowne from
mens by the fashion. The Law forbids Coaches and Litters. Some Cities are in the midle of Ri-
uers and Lakes, in which they haue very neate Boates to passe the streets. And because they goe
by water then ours, therefore there Shipping is more conuenient and elegant. But they goe
Magistrates, built by publike cost are as commodious as Houses, with diuers Lodgings, a Hall,
make their folemne Banquets a Ship-board, passing along the Riuers and Lakes for further plea-
sure. All within shines with *Ciaram* or shining Vermil in diuers colours, and the Carued
Masters more then with vs, so that if a man haue bene another Scholler but one day in a
him all honour. Masters re-
spect.

20 Dice-play and Cards are common with them: Chess alio with the grauer persons, not al-
together vnlike ours: but their King neuer remoues but to the four next rooms, and the Bishops
their Queenes. They haue alio which they call *Powder pannes*, which goe before the
Knights and follow the Paunes. They haue a graue Game in a table of three hundred rooms
ning skill whereof gets much credit to a man, although he can doe nothing else; and some
the cunicle such their Masters with wonted rice. There is not punished with Death: the second fault
therin, is branded with an Iron or Inke in the Arme, with two Characters, the third time
in the Face, after their terrible Whipping or condemning to the Gallies, for a time lim-
ted: so that there are abundance of Theeues. Every night in Cities, many Watchmen at
certaine times beate Basons as they walke the streets, the streets also enclosed and shut, yet many
30 the Cities in greatest Peace in the midle of the Kingdome, are shut euery Night, and the Keyes
carried to the Gouernour.

P. V.

Of their Superstitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred,
of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Deities and three Sects:
Priests, Nunnes, Monasteries, Le-
gends, Lyes.

NO superstition is so general in the Kingdome, as the obseruation of luckie and vnluckie
Days and Hours, for which purpose yeerely is Printed a two-fold Table of dayes by which
the Kings Astrologers, in such plentie that euery houle is full of them. In them is
written on euery day, what may be done or not, or to what hour ye must forbear
business, which may in that yeere happen. There are others more dangerous Masters, which
Two-fold Al-
make a liuing by this Wizardly profession of selling lyes, or prescribing fit hours: whereby many
differe the beginning of Building, or iourneying till their appointed day or houre come: & then Impossi-
how vnfitting, fouer that prouoeth with contrary till their appointed day or houre come: & then Impossi-
but a little little onler, that the worke might elience appeare to take beginning. The like super-
stitions professing by Astrologie, or by superstitious numbers, or by Physiognomie, or Palmefrie,
tell future Fortunes, many *Gypsy*-jugglers vied to such impoultures, as by a talking Kinke which
shall profess his Fortunes exactly told him by the professor, or by learning out of printed Bookes
of that which they say shall happen. Yea, their credulitie breeds such strong imagination, that
60 many being foretold of a Sickenesse such a day, will then fall sick of conceit.
Infants, or of Beasts, and familiar Spirits, and receive Oracles from the mouth of
a dwelling Houle, or Sepulcher, conferring it with the head, tayle and feet of *diuers* Dra-
gons, which lye (forth) vnder our earth, whence depends all good or bad Fortune. Diuers
Learned
Strength of
imaginations.
Deaths con-
sulted.
Dracons.

Geologers. Learned men buile their wits in this abstruse Science, and are consulted when any publike Buildinges are rayled. And as Astrologers by the Starrs, so these *Geologers* by inspection of Rivers, Fields, Mountaines and sitte of Regions, foretell Destinies; dreaming by setting a Door or Window this or that way, conveying the rayne to the right or left hand, by the higher or lower road, honour and wealth shall accrue to the Houle. Of these Impostors the Streets, Cities, Courts, Shops, Markets are full, which tell that which themselves want, good Fortune to all Foole-fortunate buyers: yea, Women and blinde folkes proffesse it, and some find such Chapmen of the Learned, Noble, King and all, that they grow to great riches by others little wits. All diff. affers publike or priuate are attributed to Fate, and ill sitte of some Citie, Houle or Palace. The *myse of Birds*, the first meeting in the Morning, Shadowes caused by the Sunne in the house, are to their Fortunes guides.

Augurie. For other vices, some will make themselves Seruants to rich men, to haue one of the hand-maydes become his Wife, fo multiplying issue to bondage. Others buy a Wife, but finding their family become too numerous sell their Sonnes and Daughters as Beasts, for two or three pieces of Gold (although no dearch prouoke him) to euerslasting separation and bondage, some to the *Portingals*. Hence is the Kingdom full of Slaues, not captiued in warre, but of their owne free-borne. Yet is seruice there more tollerable then else-where; for every man may redeeme himselfe at the price payd for him, when hee is able; and there are many poore which with hard labour sustaine themselves. A worse euill in some Provinces is theirs, which finding themselves poore, smother their new-borne Babes, specially Females, by an impious pietie and pitifull pietie, 30

Child-killing. preuenting that sale to Slauey, by taking away that life which euen now they had giuen. They present herento allo their *Metempsychosis*, dreaming that the Soule of that Infant fall the sooner passe into some more fortunate body: and are not therefore ashamed to doe this in others presence, yea not the meane of the communalitie. Many more inhumanely kill themselves, either wearie of a miserable life, or willing after death to be reuenged of some enemy, while to the Enemy of mankind many thousand yearly Sacrifice themselves, by Halter, Drowning, and Poison.

Pitifulle pietie. Another immantie in the Northerne Provinces is vied vpon Male Infantes, whom for hope of Palace preferments their Parents make Eunuchs; of which in the Kings house are ten thousand, a dull and blockish kinde of vnkind vnmanly men. Their Whippings also take away morelines, then the executions of sentences to Death; their Redes slit two ells long, a finger thick and four broad, at the first blow breaking the skinde and flesh on the hinder part of the thighes: to preuent which many bribe the Magistrates, of whose domineering fellese of power they liue in perpetual feare, where calumnies and lyes are so rife: which *China* perfidiouse made the Kings come so guarded abroad and vnknowne, and now not to come forth at all.

Selle flyers. The Kings kindred are now growne to fixtie thousand, and daily increasing become a burthen to the publike, and daily increase in idleness, impotence, numbers, the King being very ious of them, and setting Guards, besides their perpetuall exile from *Pekin* and *Nanking*. No marvell if Strangers be no better trusted in *China*, where the Natives and Bloud are suspected: out of whole Bookey they come to learne, and repute them little better then Beasts: and the Characters whereby they expresse them are taken from Beasts. How Legats are held as prisoners in publike houses is else-where deliuered. Commanders of Soldiers, which guard places are guarded and watched, and not trusted with the pay of their Companies: neither is there any more safe then the Souldiery, most Slaues or condemned persons, for their owne or their Masters euils: and when they are free from exercises of warre, they become Maleservants, Porters, and of other base Offices. The Captaynes only haue some authority. Their armes are worthless for offence or defence, and onely make a shew, the Captaynes being also subject to the Magistrates whippings. Their Alchimsiticall vanitie, and study of long Life, with precepts and huge bookes of both, I omit. The founders forth of these Sciences haue gone body and soule to Heauen. The making of Silver hath made many spend their silver, wits and credit, charged 30 by proffessing Artifics; and the great Magistrates (few in *Pekin* free) are taken vp with the other Study: some shortning their life to make it longer. They write one of their Kings which had procured such a potion of immortallitie, whom a friend of his was not able to dissuade from that conceit, enraged by his sudden fratching & drinking his prepared potion: which hee seeking by death to reuenge, the answer answered, how can I be killed, if this draught cause immortallitie? and if I may, then haue I freed thee of this error.

Eunuchs. Whip-killing. Slauiish feare. Kings kindred. *China* suspitions. Strangers commended. Souldiers base. Seediue of Alchimsiticall and long life.

Chap. 10. Touching the *China* Sects, I read in their Bookes, that the *Chinois* from the beginning worshipped one God, which they call the *King of Heauen*, or by another Name *Heauen* and *Earth*. Beneath this Deitie, they worshipped diuinities, *Spirits* of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the four parts of the world. In all actions they held Religion to be obeyed, which light of Reason 40 they confessed they had from Heauen. Of that Supreme Deitie and his admitting Spirit, they neuer had such monstrous conceits as the *Romans*, *Greekes*, *Aegyptians*, whence the *Leuities* hope that many of them in the law of Nature were faued. Their Sects are reckoned three: The first of the *Learned*, the second of *Seignia*, the third *Laueu*. One of these is professed by all these idolaters: God and Christ, and worshipping that, which by Nature is not God? which

Chap. 10. *China* Gods. What pietie is that *Learned* and *Calumnies*, may not a few be misused by our the Pope, as these idolaters without God and Christ, and worshipping that, which by Nature is not God? which

Chap. 10. *China* Gods. What pietie is that *Learned* and *Calumnies*, may not a few be misused by our the Pope, as these idolaters without God and Christ, and worshipping that, which by Nature is not God? which

Chap. 10. *China* Gods. What pietie is that *Learned* and *Calumnies*, may not a few be misused by our the Pope, as these idolaters without God and Christ, and worshipping that, which by Nature is not God? which

which vie their Characters. That of the *Learned*, is most proper to *China* and most ancient and all their Learned learne it in the course of their studies. *Confutian* is the Prince thereof. This Sect hath no Idols, worshipp one God, beleuing all things to be confuted by his prouidence. They worship in interior sort the Spirits. The best of them teach nothing of the Creation: reward is and punishments, they confine in this life to a mans selfe or his posteritie. Of the immortallitie of the Soule they seeme to make no doubt; for they speake of the decaied liuing in Heauen, but of Hell they make no mention. The later *Learned* deny both, with the soules immortallitie: yea some say, that the foules of good men are corroborated with vertue and made able to hold out, others dying with the body.

10 The principall opinion seemeth borrowed of the Idoll Sect, fue hundred yeeres ago; which holds that this whole Vniuersall consists of one matter, and that the Creatures are as so many members of this huge body; so that every one may attayne to the limitude of God bring one with him; which we confute out of their owne ancient Authors. Though the *Literate* acknowledge one Supreme Deitie, yet they erect no Temple to him, nor any other place proper to his Worship, nor any Priests, persons or rites peculiar, nor haue precepts thereof, nor any which prescribe, or punisheth defect of Holies; nor any which prudently or publicly recite or sing worship belongs to the King: and if any should take on him that Office, hee should vlturpe the Kings, and be thereby a Traytor. For this purpose, the King hath two fittie Temples in two 30 Royall Cities, one dedicated to the *Heauen*, the other to the *Earth*, in which sometimes hee feed to Sacrifice, but now in his place certayne Magistrates haue succeeded, which there sacrifice many Oxen and Sheepe, with many Rites. To the *Spirits* of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the four Regions of the world, only the chiefe Magistrates Sacrifice, nor are the people admitted thereto. The precepts of this Law are contained in the *Terrabilian* and five Bookes of *Deitruis*; Sect is more of note then their yearly *Oblats*, or presentations to their decaied Parents, in this mon to all from the King to the meanel, oblitering their dead Ancestrie as if they were liuing, 40 Neither yet doe they suppose that they eate of the meate which is set them, or need it, but they have no better meane to expell their loue.

30 The *Literate* haue a costly Temple to *Confutian* in every Citie, by Law appointed, in that place where the *Schools* is, and adjoining to the Magistrates Palace, which is let out to the Bachelors or Graduates of the first degree. In a principall place of that Temple his Image is erected, or else his Name in golden Cubittall letters, written in a curious Table. Hither the Magistrates assemble every New-moone, and Full, also the Bachelors, with wonted kneeling, times, they offer rituall Dishes, thankfully confessing his learned works, whence they haue attained their Degrees and Offices, but pray not to him nor looke for ought from him; but as 40 late *Spirits* of each Citie, and to the Magistrate of each Tribunal, wherein they solemnly Office. In these they offer Dishes and Oblats, but in differing Worship: for in these they act of this *Literate* Sect, is the peace and good of the Common-wealth, and of Families, and of each obeyed by them, comprehending all duties of humanitie of Father and Child, of Husband and demne Single life, permit Polygamie and in their Bookes largely explicate that precept of *Cherimie* inflicted for the government of the Common-wealth: and because it requires none, nor 50 prohibeth any thing touching the Life to come, many adjoyne the other two Sects to this.

The second Sect is called *Siquia* or *Omitie*, and by the *Iapones*, *Seisaca* and *Amidada*. Both haue the same Characters, and the same *Totem* or Law. It came to the *Chinois* from the West, brought from the Kingdom of *Thienfo* or *Santo*, now called *Indofan*, betwixt *India* and *sent* Legats thither, which brought Bookes and Interpreters from thence, the Authors of them pierced thither, and were Native of *Siam*. The Authors of this Sect, haue taken some things out 60 of Soules, and other things. Somewhat it elements to acknowledge the *Trinitie* fading of three It extolls Single life, so as it may seeme to reject Marriages. They leaue house and friends and *(Romish)* Ecclesiasticall: the Singings of men saying their seruice may leaue nothing to differ from our *Gregorian*; they haue Images also in their Churches; their Priestly Garments are also

10 The *Literate* haue a costly Temple to *Confutian* in every Citie, by Law appointed, in that place where the *Schools* is, and adjoining to the Magistrates Palace, which is let out to the Bachelors or Graduates of the first degree. In a principall place of that Temple his Image is erected, or else his Name in golden Cubittall letters, written in a curious Table. Hither the Magistrates assemble every New-moone, and Full, also the Bachelors, with wonted kneeling, times, they offer rituall Dishes, thankfully confessing his learned works, whence they haue attained their Degrees and Offices, but pray not to him nor looke for ought from him; but as 40 late *Spirits* of each Citie, and to the Magistrate of each Tribunal, wherein they solemnly Office. In these they offer Dishes and Oblats, but in differing Worship: for in these they act of this *Literate* Sect, is the peace and good of the Common-wealth, and of Families, and of each obeyed by them, comprehending all duties of humanitie of Father and Child, of Husband and demne Single life, permit Polygamie and in their Bookes largely explicate that precept of *Cherimie* inflicted for the government of the Common-wealth: and because it requires none, nor 50 prohibeth any thing touching the Life to come, many adjoyne the other two Sects to this.

The second Sect is called *Siquia* or *Omitie*, and by the *Iapones*, *Seisaca* and *Amidada*. Both haue the same Characters, and the same *Totem* or Law. It came to the *Chinois* from the West, brought from the Kingdom of *Thienfo* or *Santo*, now called *Indofan*, betwixt *India* and *sent* Legats thither, which brought Bookes and Interpreters from thence, the Authors of them pierced thither, and were Native of *Siam*. The Authors of this Sect, haue taken some things out 60 of Soules, and other things. Somewhat it elements to acknowledge the *Trinitie* fading of three It extolls Single life, so as it may seeme to reject Marriages. They leaue house and friends and *(Romish)* Ecclesiasticall: the Singings of men saying their seruice may leaue nothing to differ from our *Gregorian*; they haue Images also in their Churches; their Priestly Garments are also

10 The *Literate* haue a costly Temple to *Confutian* in every Citie, by Law appointed, in that place where the *Schools* is, and adjoining to the Magistrates Palace, which is let out to the Bachelors or Graduates of the first degree. In a principall place of that Temple his Image is erected, or else his Name in golden Cubittall letters, written in a curious Table. Hither the Magistrates assemble every New-moone, and Full, also the Bachelors, with wonted kneeling, times, they offer rituall Dishes, thankfully confessing his learned works, whence they haue attained their Degrees and Offices, but pray not to him nor looke for ought from him; but as 40 late *Spirits* of each Citie, and to the Magistrate of each Tribunal, wherein they solemnly Office. In these they offer Dishes and Oblats, but in differing Worship: for in these they act of this *Literate* Sect, is the peace and good of the Common-wealth, and of Families, and of each obeyed by them, comprehending all duties of humanitie of Father and Child, of Husband and demne Single life, permit Polygamie and in their Bookes largely explicate that precept of *Cherimie* inflicted for the government of the Common-wealth: and because it requires none, nor 50 prohibeth any thing touching the Life to come, many adjoyne the other two Sects to this.

The second Sect is called *Siquia* or *Omitie*, and by the *Iapones*, *Seisaca* and *Amidada*. Both haue the same Characters, and the same *Totem* or Law. It came to the *Chinois* from the West, brought from the Kingdom of *Thienfo* or *Santo*, now called *Indofan*, betwixt *India* and *sent* Legats thither, which brought Bookes and Interpreters from thence, the Authors of them pierced thither, and were Native of *Siam*. The Authors of this Sect, haue taken some things out 60 of Soules, and other things. Somewhat it elements to acknowledge the *Trinitie* fading of three It extolls Single life, so as it may seeme to reject Marriages. They leaue house and friends and *(Romish)* Ecclesiasticall: the Singings of men saying their seruice may leaue nothing to differ from our *Gregorian*; they haue Images also in their Churches; their Priestly Garments are also

God suppoed the soule of the world

Perfom had no Temples

Two Temples Royall

King high Priest: Magistrates insit-out

Oblat

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

Temple of rituall Spirit, Tribunal

gether like ours, which with an Ecclesiasticall terme wee call, *Pinnalia*. In their Service they often recite the name *Tolome*, which themselves confesse to be ignorant of. But they denie eternitie in their Heaven and Hell, ascribing a new birth after I know not what revolution of time, in some other of their concurred Worlds, then and there to be penitentially punished; with other fooleries. They prohibit to eat of living creatures, but few impole on themselves this abstinence, and they make false abjuration from this and other finnes, if they give to the Priests, who profess to delueve from Hell by their Prayers or Recitations, whom they will.

This Sect came in at first with great applause, as clearly profiting the Soules immortality; but nothing more disgraced it, then that that King and these Princes which first embraced it (which the *Literate* often objected) died miserably with violent death, and publick loss and misfortune followed. By writing of many Bookes they have entangled it in inextricable Labyrinths. The notes of Antiquity appear in the multitude of their Temples, and most of them sumptuous: in which huge Monsters of Idols of Brasse, Marble, Wood, and Earth are sene; with Steeples adjoynd of Stone or Bricke, and in them huge Bells, and other ornaments of great price.

The Priests of this Sect are called *Oficiarii*, they shave their head and beard, against the fashion of the Country: some travell, as is said, some lead a very austere life in Mountains and Caves, but the greatest part which amount to two or three millions, live in Monasteries, sustented with their antiently-given Revenues, and Almes, and also by their owne industry. These Priests are accounted, and iustly, the most vile and vicious in the whole Kingdome, sprung of the basest plebeians, sold in their childhood to the Ides *Oficiarii*, and of Slaves made Disciples, succed their Masters in Office and Benefice, a course which they have found for their propagation. For few are found which voluntarily by desire of sanctitie doe adjoyne themselves to those Monks, Ignorance also and illiberal education makes them like their Masters, few of them learning Letters or civill rites; and daily growing worse. And although they have no wives, they are much addicted to women, and cannot but by grievous penalties be kept from them.

The Colleges of the *Oficiarii* are divided into diuers Stations, in every of which is one perpetuall Administrator, to whom his seruants or as many as he brings vp, succed. They acknowledge no Superior in those Cells, but every one in his owne Station builds as many Lodgings as he can (most of all places, in the Court) which after they let to strangers, so that they are rather Innes then Monasteries, as full of tumults as empty of deuotion. Although they bee of base estate, yet are they employed to Funerals and other Rites, by which wilde beasts, and fowles, and fishes are set at liberty, by the professors of this Sect with opinion of great merit. In this our age this Sect hath much reuiued, and many Temples are built and repaired, by Eunuchs, Women, and the rude vulgar, and especially by the *Caesars*, or *Patrons*, which all their lives abstaine from Fleish, Fish, (Egges, and Milke) and worship a multitude of Idols with set prayers at home, and are by hire to be called to any other mans. Nunnes also observe the same Monasticall rules, being single and shued; they call them Nunnes, nothing so many as the Monks.

The third Sect is called, *Lauzu*, derived from a Philosopher which lived at the same time with *Confucius*, whom they fable to have bene carried 80. yeeres in his parents wombe before he was borne, and is therefore called, *Lauzu*, that is, the *Old Philosopher*. He left no Bookes of his Opinion, nor seems to have intended any new Sect, but certaine Sectaries, called *Tanfu*, made him the head of their Sect after his death, and wrote diuers elegant Bookes gathered out of diuers Sects. These also live single in their Monasteries, and buy disciples, base and wicked as the former. They wear their haire as the Lay-men, differing here, that where they wear their haire tied on a knot, these have a Cap on the crowne of Wood. Some also are married, and say our Holyes in their owne houses. They say, that with other Idols they worship also the *Lord of Heaven*, whom yet they imagine Corporeall, and to have suffered many things. They tell, that the King of Heaven which now reigneth, is called *Ciam*, and he which before ruled was named *Leu*. This *Leu* came one day to the Earth riding on a white Dragon, and *Ciam* a Wizard entayned him with a Feast, where whiles *Leu* was eating, *Ciam* gat vp on the white Dragon, and was carried to Heaven, and excluded *Leu* from that sovereignty; only he obtained of this new King, that he might rule over a certaine Mountain in his Kingdome, where they say he fill liueth, thus confuting (as the *Greekes of Iow*) themselves to worship an Vntrue and Traitor. Besides this Deity of *Heaven*, they acknowledge three others, one of which they say, *Lauzu* is, having some dreame also, as the former of the Trinitie.

They also speake of places of rewards and punishments, but differing from the former: for they promise a Paradise for soule and body together, and haue Images of some in their Temples which haue gone thither. To obtayne this, they prescribe certaine exercises of sitting in diuers postures, set Prayers, Medicines by which the life is lengthned, if not made immortal. Their Priests exorcise Devils, and drive them out of houses, by painting horrible shapes of them in yellow Paper on the walls, and making horrible cries as if themselves were become Devils. They arrogate also to bring downe or to stay Rames, and other publicke and priuate fortunes, most impudent impostors, either Lyars or Magicians. They asst the Kings sacrifices in those Temples of *Heaven and Earth* (thereby acquiring much authority) being Masters of the Munke therein; and

Many and costly Temples, Steeples, Bells, Images. Their Priests many, and miserable.

Monasteries, Innes. A deuotion of wide extent. See P. II. of the Ruier fauce. Fulkens.

Nun, or Nun.

Third Sect, Lyre of Lauzu.

Leu Legend.

See before of Lauzu; here the great Lake.

Way to foolies Paradise.

and are called to Funerals, to which they goe in precious vestments with diuers musickall Instruments, making a pompous procession shew the thorow the streets. The like pompes they vie at the streets ends on certain times, hired by the dwellers.

They haue a Prelate called *Ciam*, which dignity he transmitted to his posterity 1000. yeeres since by hereditary successions, and seemeth to haue taken beginning from a Magician which liueth in a Cane of *Quamfi* Province, where his posterity still continueth. Their Prelate liueth commonly at *Pegun*, ordered by the King, and admitted into the inmost Palace to conie. Chaire, and with other pompe competent to the chiefe Magistrates, and is allowed by the King a great Renueue. But I haue learned of a Conuener that these Prelates now are so ignorant that they know not their owne Chaires and Rites. They haue no power over the people, but the *Tanfu* (Priests) and their Monasteries, many of which are also Alchims. These three Sects *Humen* ordained that these three Lawes should be kept for the good of the Kingdome, only the *Literate* to rule; whence it comes that they seeke not to ruiue each other. The Kings make vie of them all for their purposes, often repairing the old, and building new Temples. The Kings wives are more prone to the Idol Sect, and maintayne whole Monasteries without the Palace, and buy their Prayers with Almes. The Idols are not only in Temples in this Kingdome, but in private houses in peculiar places, in streets, ships, Palaces, they are the first thing you see, and so yet put their little confidence in them. Their wisest men seeke to mixe all three Sects together, and so wisles they embrace all, are of none, and proue *Abestis*.

§. V I.

Of Strangers, and forraigne Religions in China.

Now inhospittall the *Chinois* are to Strangers, we haue in part heard, neither permitting egress to the Nations, nor ingresse to Aliens except in three respects. The first, such as come to pay their annual Tributes. The second, such as pretending honour and tribute. come (as wee haue heard) from the West with seeming tribute, a colour to their gaine by merchandize. The third, such as in admiration of the *Chinois* virtues and learning, come thither (as the Queene of *Sheba* to *Salomon*) to learne the same, which is the *Ismaelites* zealous, of discounting their mysteries to others. And this made the *Ismaelites*, after so long stay that they haue any intelligence or commerce with stranger: & therefore the *Ismaelites*, which haue obtained two great priuileges, the Eunuchs Palace for their residence, and the employment in correcting the *China* Kalender, both by Royall approbation; yet could not obtayne leave to obaeue longitudes and latitudes of places, because they were liad to be Countrymen to those of *Macao*. Yea, a *Calao* or Counsellor of State, was deputed, for sending a message to a bordering Prouinces they set narrow watch at Custom-houses, Bridges, and in the very Riues, dome, there are no such Officers, nor searches. Neither may any stranger pass out of the Kingdome by means of the *Peking*, which had the Towne of *Macao* assigned them their ingresse and egress traffike. The same vicall twice a yeere to the chiefe Citie of the Prouince of *Canton*, which they haue free entrance in the Citie about their merchandize, but must lie on shipboard at night. In the midst of the Ruier there is a little Island and therein a Temple, in which they are allowed their Catholike deuotions. There by Boat did they prouide to steale in or out of the Country home againe. Of these there are now many thousand Families in *China*, dispersed into the most Circumcision. But as farre as I could euer learne, they neither teach, nor care to teach, others their that their continuing in was in the time that the *Tartars* reigned here, which since haue increased, fourth generation on they are reputed as Nations; yea, they are admitted to the studies of Learning, their former superstition, retaining nothing thereof, but abstinence from Swines flesh, which rather by Nature, then for Religion, they abhorre.

Ciam Prelate.

Multiplication of Sects.

This is also recited by *Mauro* of *Macao*.

Many *Mahometans* in *China*.

Christians.

Touching *Christians* in *China*, there is not so great certainty. Certain *Mogores* told *Riccius* of some in the *Xenfan* Province, in the North parts of *China*, at a place called *Xuchow*, which were white bearded, wild Bells, worshipped *Sa*, that is, *Iesus*, and *Maria*, and honoured the Crucifix; these Priests married, which cured diseases without medicines. A Jew at *Pegum* gave more full intelligence, that at *Cusumfu*, and at *Lincow*, in the Province of *Schamow*, and in the Province of *Schamow*, there lived certain Strangers, whose Ancestours had come out of forraigne parts, which worshipped the Crosse which the *Chinois* expresse by the Character of *Ten* and made the signe thereof with the finger on their meate and drinke. They also made the same signe with Inke on the foreheads of their children, to preserve them from misfortunes. A *Jesuite* also saw, in the hands of an Antiquarie, a Bell, with a Church and Crosse thereon graven, circumscribed with *Greeke* letters. The Jew also reported that those Crosse-worshippers had the same doctrine in their prayers which the *Jewes* held: this the *Jesuites* interpreted of the Plaster common to them both. Hee affirmed that there were many of them in the Northerne Provinces, which so flourished in Letters and Armes, that they grew suspitious to the *Chinois*, which he thought was caused by the *Saracens* some sixty yeeres before. The Magistrates were so incensed hereby, that they for feare were dispersed, some turning *Jewes*, some *Saracens*; others *Idolaters*: and their Temples were also converted into Idolatrous Temples, one of which he mentioned in his Country. Ever since they hide their profession, and when the *Jesuites* sent one of their Conuerts to make enquire, he could learne of none: which they thought proceeded from their feare, taking him for a Spie sent from the Magistrates.

See sup. in Pines. 163.

All these Sects the *Chinois* call, *Hoi*, the *Jewes* distinguished by their refusing to eate the new or leg; the *Saracens* Swines flesh; the *Christians*, by refusing to feed on round-hoofed beasts, Asses, Horses, Mules which all both *Chinois*, *Saracens*, and *Jewes* doe there feed on. The *Saracens* called the *Christians* also *Sai*, as before; and *Ten*, which is a name given in *Persia* to the *Armenian Christians* (as an *Armenian* affirmed to *Riccius*) whence hee conjectured, that these *Christians* came out of *Armenia*. And by the report of *Hudson the Armenian*, which sayeth, their King came to the Great *Can of Cathay* (which were here before observed, at least the best parts thereof, to be the North parts of *China*) to persuade him and his to become *Christians*; which in great part also hee affected, besides other *Christians* there reported to be, by *Paulus*; and those of *Saracen*, subject to the Great *Can*, mentioned by *Verriamoun*, which seeme to be near these in *China*. The *Malabar Christians* have *Chalde* memorials of *China*, converted by Saint *Thomas*; and their Metropolitan hath his style of all *India* and *China*.

See sup. pag. 111.

Siam.

A certaine Jew at *Pegum* hearing of the *Jesuites* there, came to them to see and confesse with them, imagining them to be *Jewes*. This Jew was borne at *Chasumfu*, the Mother-citie of the Province *Honan*, his name was *Ngai*, his countenance not resembling the *Chinois*; hee neglecting *Judaisme*, had addicted himselfe to the *China* studies, and now came to *Pegum* to the examination, in hope of proceeding Doctor. There did hee enter the *Jesuites* Houle, professing that he was of their Law and Religion. *Ricci* leads him into the Chappell, where on the Altar stood the Image of the Virgin, *Iesus*, and *Iohn Baptist*, kneeling; which he taking to be the Images of *Rebecca* and her Twins, did worship vnto them, contrary (he said) to their custome. The Images of the Euangelists he supposed to be so many of *Iacobi* Iones. But vpon further questioning, the *Jesuites* perceived that he was a professor of the Law of *Moses*: he confessed himselfe an *Israélite*, and knew not the name of *Jew*; so that it seemed, the dispersion of the ten Tribes had pierced thus farre. Seeing the *Hebrew Bible*, hee knew the Letters, but could not read them. He told them that in *Chasumfu* were ten or twelue Families of *Israélites*, and a hire Synagogue, which had lately cost them ten thousand Crownes; therein the *Pentateuch* in Rolls, which had bin with great veneration preserved five or six hundred yeeres. In *Hanchow* the chiefe Citie of *Chequian*, hee affirmed, were many more Families with their Synagogue; many also in other places but without Synagogues, and by degrees wearing out: his pronunciation of *Hebrew* names differed from ours, as *Hierusalem*, *Mosca*: for *Messia*, *Ierusalem*. His Brother, hee said, was skilfull in the *Hebrew*; which he in affection to the *China* preferment had neglected; and therefore was hardly censured by the Ruler of the Synagogue.

Chasumfu. Jew at Pegum his report.

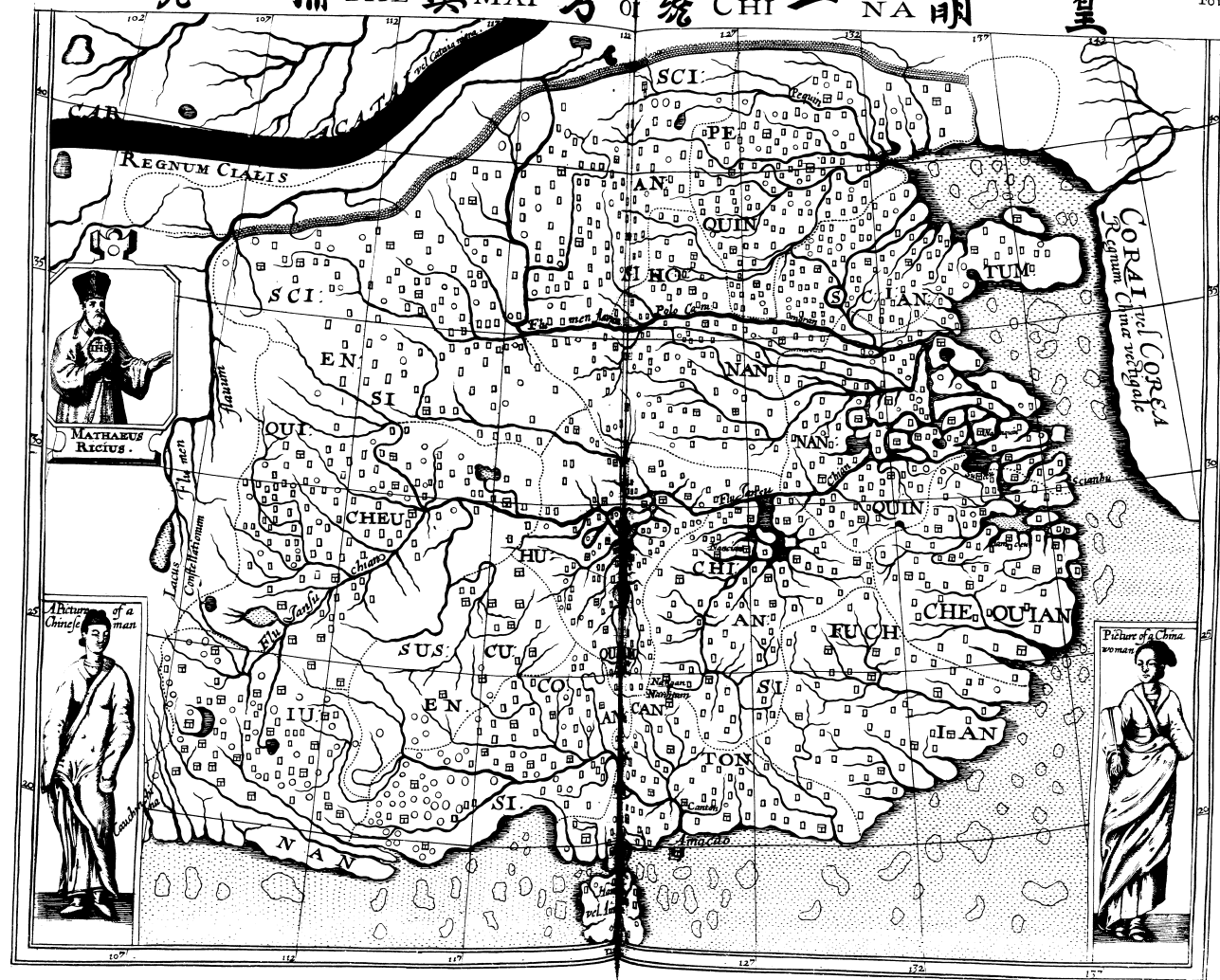
Jesuites dispersion.

Jewes at Hanchow.

Pentateuch. Want of prikes.

Decay of Law.

To this Citie did *Ricci* send one of his to enquire, who found those reports true, which also copied the beginnings and endings of their Bookes, which they compared, and found to agree with their owne *Pentateuch*, saying that they wanted prikes or points. He wrote also to the *China* Characters to the Ruler of their Synagogue, that hee had the rest of the Bookes of the Old Testament, and other Bookes of the New, which contained the acts of the *Messias*, being already come. The Ruler doubted, saying, that he would not come till ten thousand yeeres were expired. Hee also promised, that because hee had heard much good of him, if hee would come thither, and abstaine from Swines flesh, they would make him Ruler of their Synagogue. After this, three *Jewes* came from thence to *Pegum*, and were almost persuaded to become *Christians*. These complained, that through ignorance of the *Hebrew*, their Religion decayed, and that they were likely all of them in a short time to become *Saracens* or *Ebnikes*. The old *Asia* Synagogue, was now dead, his sonne a young man succeeded in place, but ignorant of their Law.



Law. And that their Jewish Religion was indeed languishing, appeared by this, that they both worshipped the Popish Images, and complained that in their Synagogue and private houses they had none. They were offended that they were forbidden the eating of any creature, which themselves had not killed, which had they observed in this Journey had cost them their lives. Their wives and neighbours esteemed Circumcision of their Infants on the eighth day a cruell thing, which they could be willing to alter, with acceptance of the Christian Law, nor would much stand about Swines flesh.

As for the Christian Religion thither carried by the Jesuites, you have heard the whole substance of their owne large Histories; I mean not of Miracles, and other like stufe and stuffes, 10 but the meanes of conveying the Gospel to the Chinese, which are Merchandise, money, & gifts, Mathematicks, Memorative-art, Morality, which to China Countreines and Curiosity with their conforming to Confucius Ethicks, and China Literature, Habite, Names and officious Rites, were good Orators, and made way with much adoe to that little which is done; a mutuall exchange in many things, of Remph for Chinese Beades, Shaving, Vests, Songs, Mummings, Tapers, Censers, Images, Legends, Monks, Nunnes, Processions, Pilgrimages, Monasteries, Altars, hee and shee Saints, and other things innumerable pertayning rather to bodily exercise which 1. Tim. 4. 8. *profiteth little*, then to Godliness, or God-likenesse, who being a Spirit, requireth men to worship him in spirit and truth; and by foolishness of preaching sanctifieth them that beleue, not by wisdom of words, in elegant writings, and those more of Arts then Christianity. The great Doctor of 1. Cor. 1. 21. 22. *Gentiles* tooke another course, not with excellency of words, sayth he, or wisdom; yea, bee effected to know nothing among the learned Corinthians but Iesus Christ and him crucified: neither flood his word in the enticing speech of mans wisdom, but in plain evidence of the Spirit; not the wisdom of the world, but the wisdom of God in a mystery, &c. Which I speake not as denying the service of Arts to Divinity, but of Divinity in manner to Arts, where the profession is not as of a Tent-maker to live that he may preach, but as of an European Philosopher, where Hagar dominereeth, and Sara at some times whispers a little, and except in Images and Shewes scarcely dothes her selfe, as more fully appeareth in the fore-going History. But would God any Arts 1. Maiton, c. 1. *eyes*, and say Europeans had but one, when as they have but this one naturall eye, and in themselves thankfull to Jesuicall labours in professing the Gospell, as I doe here my selfe for this Historicall light of China.

§. VII.

The Map of China, taken out of a China Map, printed with China Characters; illustrated with Notes, for the understanding thereof.

40 THE original Map, whence this present was taken and contrasted, was by Captaine *Serie* (whole industrie and adts have both here and elsewhere enriched this worke) gotten at *Batavia* of a Chinese, in taking a distresse for debts owing to the English Merchants; who seeing him carefull to convey away a Boxe, was the more carefull to apprehend it, and therein found this Map, which another Chinese lodged at his house, lately come from China, had brought with him. The greatnesse of the danger at home (if known) made him earnestly begge for that which was on the other side as earnestly desired and kept. Master Hakluyt procured it of the Captaine, professing his intent to give it to Prince Henry of glorious memory, who being suddenly advanced to a higher view in Heaven, and Master Hakluyt following, this Map came to my hand, who sought to expresse my love to the publike in communicating what I could thereof. For it being in China Characters (which I thinke none in 50 England, if any in Europe, vnderstand) I could not wholly give it, when I give it; no man being able to receive, what he can no way conceiue.

And as in greatest things our little vnderstandings easier apprehend negations then affirmations, and can better tell what they are not, then what they are; so this Map easily tells at first, 10 *euery* without Commentaries, the comments and conceits of our Geographers, *Orellius*, *Mercator*, *Hondius*, and whatsoever other our Authors of Maps, and Globes, who all haue heerein fayled, giving nothing lesse then China in their China; whether we regard the generall figure and shape thereof, or the particular Rivers, Hills, Prouinces, Wall, Latitude, and it were beleue the Jesuites Longitude also. They present it in forme somewhat like a Harpe, whereas it is almost square; they make Hills, Rivers, Lakes, Ilands, (as if it were a part of the Continent) 60 Cities, Prouinces, euery thing out of due place. Whose industrie I commend; but industrie guided by rancie, and without light, is but the blind leading the blind, or like a teedled vmanaged Horse, the more spurred, the more ready to carrie his Rider into precipices, or out of the way at least. Our Geographers have indeed payd the Chinese in their owne Come: 1. Mm 3 for

The Chinese jealous of Suanes.

Benefit of this Map in continuing others.

Caray no Island.

Prouincers and
their names.

* Three or 4.
to the South-
west.
Degrees.

Quian.
* An indubitable &
o here speaks
of the irregu-
larities of Cata-
mora.

P. Phil. 4. 4. 13.
S. 2.

Their little Eyes and Noſes, long Hayre bound vp in knots, womens ſeete wrapped vp, long wide-ſleeued Garments, Fumes, &c. I haue (taking diuers parts out of diuers) preſented to ther. A taſte of the *China* Characters ſeemeth to haue in the Title. That of *Reiſiu* I haue added from the Ieſuits, in thanks for his great paines, and to ſhew the habit of the head, &c.

The names of the Prouinces I haue hunted out of the Ieſuits Iourneies and other Relations. In the moſt I am ſure I am right, in the other * you haue my coniecture; for neither know we their Characters, nor haue any giuen vs a particular Geography or Choro-graphy, but only the names of the Prouinces. I haue added names alſo to ſome Cities and Riueres of principall note. As for the truth of the Map I finde well to agree with the Ieſuits Iourneies; but it hath not *European* Art, it being neither graduated, nor Hills, nor Woods, or other differing places preſented to the view; only hauing Characters, Lines, Lakes, and Riueres. I haue aduanced to adde Degrees to helpe ſuch Readers as cannot doe it better themſelues, following the Ieſuits preſcripts in general, although I cannot but manuell at that longitude, ſo farre differing from the general opinion, and could almoſt doubt, that herein theſe *Portugals* are minding that diſtinction agreed on betwixt the *Spaniards* and them, which hath anciently cauſed ſuch contentions, and wherein you haue read ſome Offices of the Ieſuits in theſe *China* Diſcourſes. But I will not contend, where themſelues ſpeake faintly.

Now for *Quian* which *Polo* hath mentioned, as the greateſt Riuer in the world (it is here called *Ianſu*, or *Hienſu*, or *ſenſu*, that is, the *Donne of the Sea*, and *Ianſuchian*) and another called *Ca-ramoran* (Cara ſignifieth black, and this great Northerne Riuer is alwaye thick and troubled) and their Marriage by Art, is here viſible; and more then two hundred Cities (one of *Polo* Wonders) communicating their Merchandizes by that *Quian*, or *Chian*, as they now terme it *Ianſuchian*, again ſignifying the chiefe Riuer. For the name *Chienſiu* to bee giuen by the *Tartars* to *China*, ſeemeth his Iourney hath made it out of doubt; alſo that *Pepuſiu* is *Cambalu*, that is, the City of the King. I doe conceiue that *Polo* Mangi was the nine Southerne Prouinces of *China*; the Northerly before conquered was knowne by the name of *Cathay*; a name by the *Tartars* giuen to diuers Countreies, as *Cara Catay* and *Catay Calay* and Great *Catay*. This Great *Catay* is *China*.

Polo and other Authors ſpeake of *Cathay* and *Mangi* as two; perhaps the *Tartars* ſo accounting them; the one, to wit, the North parts being formerly ſubiekt to them, and called by this ancient name, the other called *Mangi* in contempt, as the *Romanes* called the ſubiect *Britannia* of this Iland by their former name, and the others *Pitti* and *Barbarians*; and as our Anceſtors called thoſe *Britons* which withſtood them *Wallſ* or *Welſ* in a kind of diſgrace. Nay ſill the Northerne *Chianſiu* call the Southerne *Mangies*, that is, *rude* or *barbarous*, as the Ieſuits haue taught vs. But neither *Cathay*, nor *Mangi*, was then the name which they aſſumed, but was giuen them by the *Tartars*, as *China* is a name vnknewen to them now. If any will find nother *Cambalu*, nor *Cathay* but *Pepuſiu* and *China*, I will not contend, though my Reaſons elſewhere giuen out of *Polo*, and *Chaghi* *Memor*, and others, with the former Relations of *Polo* and *Albiacen*, make me ſcrupulous, and ſill to beſeeke ſome Prince or *Can* with his *Cambalu* or Court in the more Northerly parts of *Aſia*, then the Ieſuits could learne of; which the *China* iealouſie, admitting no enterouche of Strangers, and the many quarrelling *Tartar* Princes in the way haue concealed from vs hitherto.

The great blacke ſpace on the North-weſt hath in the Originall certayne Characters in it which expreſſe it: whether it intendeth Mountayns which their Art could no better expreſſe, and the Riueres thence running may import, or that ſandy Deſert on the North-weſt, I cannot fo well determine. The Ieſuits ſay, that *ab occaſu qui Aquiloni vicinior eſt, continentium viſum a-rena ſerena aget, qui multorum dierum penuria aduenarum exercitus ab Sinarum Regno aut deceret, aut ſpſit*. I rather thinke that it is *Cara Catay* or *Blacke Catay*, before often mentioned, both Mountayns, and Deſerts, and perhaps coloured blackiſh, as the name intimates, by black lands, or as health grounds which vs: it was the firſt *Tartarian* Conqueſt, and beginning of the greateſt greatneſſe which this World hath yielded; the Countrey before of *Preſbyter Ioannes* *Aſiatice*.

The wall is in this forme in the original, not in the Picture made vp of Mountaynes, wherein I thinke they had not art to imitate Nature; the Art in the whole Map much reſembling our old Maps, of wooden prints, ſue that I ſee no one Mountaine preſented in ſwelling faſhion to the Eye. The Ilands are very many with their Characters, but poorly delineated, their names hee omitted for their vncertainty: ſo little (and yet how much more then any other) doe wee giue you of *China*, till Time giue vs more. The degrees are not ſo perfectly accommodated to the Map, by reaſon that we muſt at once follow the *Chianſiu* Map which had no degrees (nor could their Art without degrees giue eury place his juſt longitude or latitude) and the Ieſuits Rules: yet we haue come ſomewhat neere, as may be ſeene. Other things appeare in the Hiſtory.

C H A P. VIII.

A continuation of the Ieſuits Acts and obſervations in China ſith Reſius his death and ſome yeeres after. Of Hancou or Quinfay

An Extrait of MONTAIGNE'S travels.

Hus hauing with *Portugals* eyes taken ſome view of the Kings Palace, and with Reſius of their whole Government, I hold it ſeemeth to leave the *China* Apoſtles (ſo Reſius is called) till we haue ſeene ſome fruit of his labours, and ſo after his death. He tells vs that three days after they had bene ſhut up in the Palace of Strangers as yee haue read, they were brought forth into the Kings Palace to performe the wonted Rites to the Kings Throne. This is done in a large and glorious Court or Porch, where 30000. men might be contained; at the end whereof is a high Chamber, vnder which by five great doores is a paſſage to the Kings Lodgings; in that Chamber is the Kings Throne, where anciently he ſate to heare and diſpatch buſineſſes and ſuitors, and to receive the Rites of Magiſtrates, rendering thanks for their Preſentments. But in the preſent ſolitarieſſe of the King, thoſe Rites are done to the Empty Throne, many there gratulating the King eury day. In this Court, enuironed with ſtately Workes, 3000. Soldiers watch eury night, beſides others watching in Towers without, a ſtrong ſquad from one another. In each of the five Gates is an Elephant, which heere goe forth when it is day; and thoſe are admitted which come to gratulate the King. Theſe come in a peculiar Habited Reſty, with an Ivory Table in their hand to couer * their mouth, and exhibit their kneeling and bowing to the Throne, as they are taught by Officers of Rites or Maſters of Ceremonies: one crying out to that purpoſe at the performance of each geſture. The Gouernour of Strangers hauing ſhut them vp, firſt petitioned the King ſharply againſt *Adathan* the Eunuch and them, but ſeing no anſwer, he petitioned more gently but would haue them ſent from *Pepuſiu*, which the King liked not, yet without Petition from the Magiſtrates would not deſtroye them. The Eunuchs alſo laboured their ſtay for feare the Clockes ſhould miſcarry beyond their ſkill. The Kings Mother hearing of a ſelfe-ſtriking bell ſent for it, and the King ſent it, but to prevent her asking it, cauſed the Wheelles to be looſed, ſo that not ſeing the viſe, he ſent it againe.

When the Ritual Magiſtrates could get no anſwere to their Petitions, for not touching their ſtay at *Pepuſiu* the *Preſbyter* ſent to Reſius that he would make a Petition to giue him leave to ſtay there in pretence of Sickneſſe and Phyſicke, which hee did, and the other preſently anſwered, giuing him libertie to hyre a Houſe; continuing alſo his former allowance, with foure ſeruants to bring it eury fifth day, (Fleſh, Salt, Rice, Wine, Herbs, Wood,) and another ſeruant in continual attendance: ſo that now they recovered libertie and credit. The Eunuchs alſo told them of the Kings approbation of their ſtay; and they had out of the Treasurie eight Crownes a moneth, which their goot much further then here: and the Captaynes of Strangers by open Sentence gaue them full libertie. One of the *Chianſiu* and then the only became their friend, with his Sonne, after ſome *European* Preſents, which hee bountifully rewarded: likewise the ſupreme Preſident of the Court of Magiſtrates, and other of the Grands, beſides the Eunuchs of the Palace, and ſome of the Queenes and Royall family. Amongſt others was *Famoucha* a great man, who for withſtanding the Eunuchs capotic in *Pepuſiu* Prouince, was deſtroyed, whipped, and three yeeres Impriſoned; but by others honoured with Temples, Odours, Images, and Bookes in prayre of him, as a Saint, and the King wearied by multitude of Petitions for him, granted him againe his libertie. Alſo *Lugſon* a great Magiſtrate and Mathematician as they accounted, became Reſius his Scholler, and was baptiſed *Leo*, borne at *Hancou*, the chiefe City of *Chianſiu*, of which afterward.

Yet had Reſius a great enemy of a great Learned man of *Hancou* Colledge, who in zeale of the Idol-ſect had put away his Wife, and * profeſſed himſelfe one of their Voraries or Shauing, drew many Diſciples after him, and writ many Bookes againſt the *Literary* Sect; and writ alſo againſt Reſius his bookes. One of the Kings *Admonitions* accuſed him to the King by Petition, and the King reſcribing ſeuereſly, hee ſue himſelfe: yea, the King ordeyned, that if the Magiſtrates would become Apoſtate ſhauiques, they ſhould leaue their Robes and get them to the Deſerts; many accordingly chuſing rather to leaue their Offices, than their Idols. One *Thacon* ſo famous, that the chiefe Queene daily worſhipped his habit, (nauing no other meane of entercourſe) and ſo proud that he ſent to Reſius to come and viſite him, with the rites of kneeling. But on occaſion of ſearch for a Libell againſt the King, hee was found guilty of writing all of the King, for not proſſing Idols, and of ill viſage to the Kings Mocher, for which hee was Whipped ſo, that before they could adde bonds, hee dyed. One which by torments confeſſed himſelfe author of the Libell, had 1600. gibbets plucked from his fleſh and then beheaded, a Death moſt (for the diſtinction of the body) abominable to the *Chianſiu*.

were so necessary. *Mandoul* mentions *Warre* at *Quinsay* in his time; *Nicolo di Conti* (which was here about the yeere 1440.) sayth, *Quinsay* was in his time new built, of thirtie miles compass.

But that *Quinsay* of *Conti* and *Abacen*, is perhaps *Thienfo*, being (as they lay it) neerer *Cambalu*. I confesse, much may bee sayd for *Nangin* to finde *Quinsay* royall, and I have given such a note * vpon it, to incite industrious search, because it was the Ancient royall Chamber: Neither could I finde any other Royall Citie but *Peguin*, in *Ricim* or other Writers, till *Triguanus* later Epistles intimated, that the *Cheguan* Prouince hath bene sometimes Imperiall; which I conceiue to be that time of *Farfur* mentioned by *Pole*, and *Hansen* his *Quinsay*.

Anno 1618. *Triguanus* writes of Persecution in *China*, raised by an Idolotrous Magistrate in *Nangin*, and effected by bribes, which hath caused the *Iesuites* to bee sent thence: but because our intelligence is little, wee will leave them heere (as much as lyeth in our power) and visite some of the other Northerne people; having first giuen you a briefe view of a *Frenchmans* trauell, *Monfieur de Mansart*, who hauing trauelled thorow the *Indies*, saluted *Canton* in *China*, and *Cochinchina*; whose knowledge therefore could not bee so solid, as the *Iesuites*, nor yet is so contemptible that it should vtterly bee forgotten. Wee will therefore present his Seruice as a *French Page*, and one attending the *Iesuites* Grauitie, and thus as it were bearing their trayne.

Malaca.

From *Malaca* I went to *Macao*, (neere a moneths trauell) which is a Citie situate on the Sea coast, at the foote of a great Mountayne, where in times past the *Portugalls* had a great Fort, and to this day, there bee yet many that dwell there. This is the entrance into *China*, but the place is of no great importance; they are *Gentiles*, and diere the Inhabitants begin to bee faire complexioned.

Cochinchina.

Thence I trauelled two moneths to the *Cochinchines*, finding nothing by the way worthy of note; no not so much as necessaries, so that wee were fayne to carrie our Victuals with vs, the greatest part of the way. They are Subjects to the King of *China*, but sometimes they rebell and make Warre against him; and there is great number of *Christians* among them. Their Kings treasure consisteth in a certayne kinde of Wood, called *Calamba*: for which the *Portugalls* pay one hundred Crownes a pound, to make *Pater-nosters* with. It is of a mixt colour, with blacke and yellow veynes; the better sort of it is moyst, so that being cut it expelleth a kinde of fat oylie liquour. It groweth out of a certayne Tree, which they fell and let it lye a while a putrifying: then they bruise it, and within the fume, they finde this kinde of Wood, like many hard knots. They are a very white people, because there it begins to bet cold, low of Stature, flat Nosed, and little Eyed, with a very few hayres on their Chins, and Mustachoes: none at all on their Cheekes, the hayre of the Head they weare long like Women, tyed vp with a blacke silke hayre-lace, and weare a flat Cap vpon them. They weare Cloath-breeches made very leuell, and a short Robe about them, like a Matter of the chamber of Accouts.

Huge Serpents.

There are found a kinde of Serpents that will swallow vp a whole Stagge; two Friers assured me that traulling in that Countrey, together with fixtene other men, through a Pennemarth, about the dawning of the day, they met to their seeming, a great Tree lying along the ground, the boughes being lopped off, vpon which they all began to sit downe and rest themselves: but no sooner were they fate, but that which they tooke for a Tree, fiercely rowled it selfe from vnder them, and leit them all to picke strawes on the ground, for indeed this was one of those Serpents.

Wilde Beasts.

this of Lions is doubtful.

Their custome is (as they say) to put themselves in ambush among the boughes of a Tree, and when they espie their prey to draw nere, bee it Man or Beast, they fall vpon him with open mouth and deuoure it. There are also store of Lions, *Leopards*, and *Tigers*: and there the Fruits begin to resemble those of these parts: but the Fruit, which about all others aboundeth there, is the *CMirablen*.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortraungling further, he speaks true of ordinare courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers haue found some of Ous

Thence I sent forwards to *Canton*, the principall Citie of all *China*, (some three Moneths trauell distant) beyond which there is no passage, say any body what hee will to the contrary; for neuer any man proceeded further, except (as they say) fixe *Iesuites*, who dwelled twentie yeeres at *Canton*, as well to learne the Language perfectly, as to let their hayre to grow long, after the Countrey manner, of whom there was neuer since heard any newes, nor is their hope due to see their returne. That people is very white, and appparelled as is aboue sayd; they are likewise *Gentiles*, and worship the same Image with three heads. Their Women of the better fort, and qualitie which are able to liue of their owne without working, neuer goe out of their houses but as they are carried in a Chayre. And to that effect, from their Infancie, they put their feete into certayne wooden Slippers, to make them stump-footed and impotent, in so

found admittance, as in the former Relations is seene. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For which vpon great efforts could not finde meures to enter *China*, haue belid that in he haue bene there.

much as they are not able to goe: the reason they alledge for it, is, that Women were made to no other end, then to keepe at home.

The *Christians* are not permitted to lye within the Citie, but as soone as Night approaches they must retire themselves to their Ships, being lawfull for them to Traffique where soeuer they please by Day-light. And for their traffique, what rarities fouer there bee throughout all *China*, are to bee had in this Citie, which are diligently brought thither, to wit, great store of cloath of Gold and Silke, Cabinets, wrought Vessels, Venus shells, Massie gold, and many other things. They will exchange or barter Gold for twice as much waight in Silver; for they haue no coyned money, for when they would buy any thing, they carrie with them a piece of Gold, and will cut off as much as they intend to bestow on what they take. They make carouch them.

The Citie is gouerned by foure Rulers, and each one hath his Gouvernement, or Circuit apart, secluded from each other: those of one quarter dare not goe and labour in another, and those which cause themselves to bee carried, from one part to another, must change their Beersers every night, vnlesse there bee any complaint made of some mildemour, committed within the Circuit: for then they shut them suddenly, or if they bee shut, they open them not, till the offender be found. The King bestowes these commands on those who are best Learned. This is a most faire Citie, and well built, very neare as bigge as *Pera*, but there the Houses are arched, the set by, yet is Silke in faire more great abundance, but withall more course then ours, by reason of their store, being so great as they are constrained to make it abroad in the fields, on the very Trees, in this wise; when the Wormes are hatched, (whereof the Egges are farre greater then ours.) They obserue what quantitie of Wormes each Tree will bee able to feede, then they lay so many on it, leaving them there without any more adoe, except it bee to goe for indeed a farre off they appeare to bee so, and is a very fine sight to behold: they vie a strange kinde of Fishing with Cormorants. They tie their neckes a little about their stomackes, leit they should deuour the Fish they take: then comming to their Masters, hee pulleth it a-lie, out of their throates: Likewise for water Fowle, they make vie of great Bot-tles with two holes, which they loose floating vp and downe the water a good while, to acquaint the Fowles therewith: then some fellows will wade vp to the necke in the water, churfting their heads into those Bot-tles, and hauing a bagge vnderneath, come as neere the Fowle as they will, taking them with their hands, without the rest being afraid of it.

Silkes and Silke-women.

See Pole, Perre, &c. of this Fishing.



VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF THE NORTH PARTS OF THE WORLD, BY LAND AND SEA, IN ASIA, EUROPE, THE POLAR REGIONS, AND IN THE NORTH-WEST OF AMERICA.

THE THIRD BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

A Treaty of Russia and the adjoining Regions, written by Doctor GILES FLETCHER, Lord Ambassador from the late Queen, Elizabeth, to THODOR, then Emperor of Russia, A.D. 1588.



The Country of Russia was sometimes called *Sarmatia*. It is a great Name, (as I suppose) for that it was parted into divers small, and yet absolute Governments, not pretending to be subject the one to the other. For England that tongue doth signify, as much as to *Part*, or *Divide*. The *Russ* were then that four Brethren, *Ukrainians*, *Syberians*, and *Kazans*, divided among them the North parts of the Country, *Kievan*, *Scythia*, *Gloriana*, they and sister *Lithuania*, each calling by that name, his own Name. Of this partition it was called *Russia* about the year from Christ 860. As for the conjecture which I finde in some Cosmographers, that the *Russ* Nation borrowed the name of the people called *Rossellus*, and were the very same Nation with them, it is without all good probability, both in respect of the Etymology of the word (which is very farre fetched) and especially for the seat and dwelling of that people, which was betwixt the two Rivers of *Tanais* and *Donis*, as *Strabo* reported, quite another way from the Country of *Russia*.

When it bare the name of *Sarmatia*, it was divided into two chiefe parts: the *White*, and the *Black*. The *White Sarmatia*, was all that part that lyeth towards the North, and on the side of the *Arcticke*, as the Pronounes now called *Dniava*, *Volga*, *Don*, *Volga*, *Caspian*, *Novogrod*, &c. whereof *Novogrod* was the Metropolitane, or chiefe Citie. The *Black Sarmatia* was all that Country that lyeth Southward, towards the *Enxian* or *Black Sea*: as the Dukedome of *Volodimer*, *Moscow*, *Ryazan*, &c. Some have thought that the name of *Sarmatia* was first taken from one of *Moscow*, whom *Moscow* and *Isophus* call *Alfermat*, Sonne to *Iokan*, and nephew to *Eler*, of *Gog*, the posteritie of *Sem*. But this seemeth to be nothing but a conjecture taken out of the like of *Joseph*.

I have in some places contracted, in others mollified the biting or more bitter stile, which the Author voucheth of the *Russ* Government, that might doe good service, without harme abroad.

Chap. 1. The description of the Country of *Russia* with the breadth, length, and Names of the Shires

The borders
of Russia.The Shires of
Russia.The Provinces
or Counties
got by Con-
quest.The breadth
and length
of the Country.The Soyle
and Climate
of Russia.Difference of
Russia in dif-
ferent seasons.The Cold of
Russia.

of the name *Astermathe*. For the dwelling of all *Lakans* posteritie is described by *Mofes*, to have bene betwixt *Mefopotamia*, (an Hill betwixt *Amur*) and *Syphace*, neere to the River *Emperator*. Which maketh it very unlikely, that *Astermathe* should plant any Colonies so farre off, into the North and North-west Countries. It is bounded Northward by the *Lappes*, to the North *Qozan*. On the South-side by the *Tatars*, called *Chrim*. Eastward they have the *Neargins* or *Tatars*, that possesse all the Country on the East side of *Volga*, towards the *Caspian Sea*. On the West and South-west border, lie *Lithuania*, *Lumnia* and *Polonia*.

The whole Country being now reduced under the Government of one, contrariety these chiefe Provinces of Shires. *Volodmer* (which beareth the first place in the Emperours title, because their House came of the Dukes of that Country.) *Moskwa*, *Nisnigrod*, *Polotsk*, *Smolensk*, *Nogograd*, *Velica* (or *Nagograd* of the low Country) *Rostow*, *Tamulane*, *Belozersk*, *Rogoz*, *Dynia*, *Conspolia*, *Moskwa*, *Polotsk*, *Polotsk*, *Ghalsk*. These are the natural Shires pertaining to Russia, but farre greater and larger then the Shires of England, though not so well peopled. The other Countries or Provinces, which the *Russ* Emperours have gotten perforce added of late to their other Dominion, are these which follow, *Tverra*, *Toughbora*, *Rennia*, *Velica*, *Rudghoria*, *Chernig*, *Ondaria*, *Obdaria*, *Condora*, with a great part of *Siberia* : where the people though they be not natural *Russes*, yet obey the Emperour of Russia and are ruled by the Lawes of his Country, paying customs and taxes as his owne people doe. Besides these hee hath under him the Kingdome of *Cassan* and *Astracan*, gotten by Conquest not long since. As for all his possessions in *Lithuania* (to the number of thirte great Townes and more,) with *Narva* and *Dorpat* *Lumnia*, they are quite gone, being purloined of late yeeres by the Kings of *Poland* and *Sweden*. These Shires and Provinces are reduced all into four *Islands*, which they call *Chiefs*: (that is *Tatarchie*, or *Fourth parts*. Whereof wee are to speake in the Title or Chapter, concerning the Provinces, and their manner of Government.

The whole Country is of great length and breadth. From the North to the South (if you measure from *Calais* to *Spain*) which beareth somewhat Eastward) it reacheth in length about four thousand two hundred and sixtie verst, or miles. Notwithstanding the Emperour of Russia hath more territorie Northward, farre beyond *Calais* to the River of *Tromschka*, that runneth a thousand verst, well nigh beyond *Pekinga*, neere to *Wardenshe*, but not intire so clearly limited, by reason of the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmarke*, that haue diuers Townes there as well as the *Russes*, plotted together the one with the other : every one of them claiming the whole of those Territories as his owne right. The breadth (if you goe from that part of his Territorie that lyeth farthest Westward on the *Narva* side, to the parts of *Siberia* Eastward, where the Emperour hath his Garrisons) is four thousand and foure hundred verst, or thereabouts. A Verst (by their reckoning) is the thousand pace, yet lesse by one quarter then an *English* mile. If the whole dominion of the *Russ* Emperour were all habitable, and peopled in all places, as it is in some, hee would either hardly hold it all within one Regiment, or be too mighty for all his neighbour Princes.

The Soyle of the Country for the most part is of a bright sandy mould, yet very much doth it differ from place to place, for that of such things is great variety in the North. The Country Northward, towards the parts of *Siberia* and *Polonia*, is a very barren, and full of desert Woods by reason of the *Clymats*, and extreme cold of the cold in Winter time. So likewise along the River *Volga*, betweene the Counties of *Cassan* and *Astracan* : where (notwithstanding the Soyle is very fruitful) it is so barren, being the River *Volga* on the West side, the Emperour hath some few Cities, with Garrisons in them. This happeneth by means of the *Chrim Tatars*, that with their bowles have often come to dwell there, (being a wilde and wastefull) nor suffer the *Russes* (that is farthest from the strength of his Country) to people those parts. From *Volodmer* (which lyeth about the third part seven hundred verst from the Port of *Saint Nicholas*) downe towards *Moskwa*, and so towards the South part that bordereth upon the *Chrim*, (which contrariety the like part of one thousand seven hundred verst, or thereabouts) is a very fruitful and pleasant Country, yielding Pasture, and Corne, with Woods and water in very great plenty. The hke is betwixt *Rosow* (that lyeth South-east from *Moskwa*) to *Nagograd* and *Polotsk*, that reach farthest towards the North-west. So betwixt *Moskwa* and *Smolensk* (that lyeth South-west towards *Lithuania*) is a very fruitful and pleasant foyle. The whole Country differeth very much from itselfe; by reason of the yeeres : so that a man may marvaile to see the great alteration and difference betwixt the Winter and the Summer in Russia. The whole Country in the Winter lyeth under Snow, which falleth continually, and is sometime of a yard or two thicke, but greater towards the North. The Rivers and other waters are all frozen up, a yard or more thicke, how swift or how slow they bee : and this continueth commonly five Moneths, viz. from the beginning of November, till towards the end of March, what time the Snow becometh to melt. So that it would be a frost in a man to looke abroad at that time, and see the winter face of that Country. The sharpness of the ayre you may judge of by this : for that water dropped downe or cast

call vnto the ayre, congealeth into Ice before it come to the ground. In the extremitie of Winter, if you hold a Pewter dish or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in some chamber where their warme Stoves bee) your fingers will freeze fast vnto it, and draw of the skinne at the parting. When you passe out of a warme roome into a cold, you shall sensibly feelle your breath to waxe thicke, and euen stifling with the cold, as you draw it in and out. Diuers not only that trauell abroad, but in the very Markets, and streets of their Townes, are mortallye brought into the Townes sitting dead and stiff in their Sleds. Diuers lose their Noses, the tips of their Eares, and the balls of their Cheekes, their Toes, Feet, &c. Many times when drisen by hunger, and enter the Villages, tearing and rauening all they can finde : so that the inhabitants are faine to flee for the safeguard of their liues. And yet in the Summer time you shall see (the winter is now and face of the Country, the Woods (for the most part) which are all of Firre and ypon the (sudden) such variety of Flowers, such noyse of Birds, (specially of Nightingales, that seeme to be more loud and of a more variable note then in other Countries) that a man shall not lightly trauell in a more pleasant Country.

And this fresh and speedy growth of the Spring there, seemeth to proceed from the benefit of the Snow : which all the Winter time being spread ouer the whole Country as a white robe, warme, and discolleth it into water) doth so thoroughly drench and soake the ground, that is with the Heavens and Planes forth in great plenty and variety, in a very short time. As the Winter, July, and August being much warmer then the summer ayre in England.

The Country throughout, is very well warded with Springs, Rivers, and Ozeras or Lakes. Wherein the providence of God is to be noted, for that much of the Country being so farre inuaded with these Rivers, and that in very great number, that emptying themselves one into another, runne all into the Sea. Their Lakes are many and large, some of sixtie, eighty, a hundred, two hundred miles long, with breadth proportionate.

The chiefe Rivers are these, *Volga*, that hath his head or spring at the roote of an Alder-tree, about two hundred verst above *Chersk*, and groweth so bigge by the increase of other Rivers by that time it cometh thither, that it is broad an *English* mile and more, and so runneth into the *Caspian Sea*, about two thousand and eight hundred verst or miles of length.

The next is *Barishkwa* (now called *Narva*) that dismeth the Country from *Lithuania*, and falleth into the *Encon Sea*.

The third *Tanais* or *Dona*, (the ancient bounder betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*) that taketh his head out of *Recon Ozeras*, and so running through the Country of the *Chrim Tatars*, falleth into the great Sea lake, or meere, (called *Marias*) by the City of *Calais*. By this River (as the *Russes* tell the world by water, drawing your Boate (as their manner is) ouer a little *Shum* or narrow tent to *Conspolia*, which they passed the River of *Moskwa*, and so into another called *Ocke*, whence he drew his Boate, ouer into *Tanais*, and thence passed the whole way by water.

The fourth is called *Dynia*, many hundred miles long, that falleth Northward into the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*, and hath great Alabaster rockes on the banks towards the Sea side.

The fifth *Duna*, that falleth into the Bay at *Salomsk* ninety verst from the Port of *S. Nicholas* the Finland Sea by the Towne *Tanais*. So that from the Port of *S. Nicholas* into the Finland Sea, and so into the Sound, you may passe all the way by water, as hath bene tried by the *Russes*.

The sixth *Sachwa*, that floweth into *Dynia*, and so into the North-sea.

The seventh *Ocke*, that floweth into the Bay at *Salomsk* ninety verst from the Port of *S. Nicholas* the Finland Sea by the Towne *Tanais*. So that from the Port of *S. Nicholas* into the Finland Sea, and so into the Sound, you may passe all the way by water, as hath bene tried by the *Russes*.

The eighth *Moskwa*, that runneth thorow the City *Moskwa*, and giueth it the name.

There is *Nichola* also a very large and long River that riseth out of *Perma*, and falleth into the *Encon Sea* in length far more, besides diuers other. The Pole at *Moskwa*, is fiftie five degrees ten minutes. At the Port of *Saint Nicholas* towards the North sixty three degrees and fifty minutes.

For kinds of fruits, they haue Apples, Peares, Plammes, Cherries, Red and Blacke, (but the Black wild) Deere lukes Muske Milian, but more sweet & pleasant, Cucumbers and Gourds (which they call *Arbuse*) Raspes, Strawberries, and Hottberries, with many other Berries in the great

M. Cole Mini-
ster to Sirie-
rme *James*
told me of a
lockish fall-
low, which is
from his Ma-
jesty Table in
the next room,
licked it, and
payd the skin
of his tongue
for that sweet
sauce : a sweet
sweet to sweet
sweet.

The cake also
red.
Effect of snow.

The chiefe Ri-
uers of Russia
are these.

Chaps.
The Nature
Commodities
of the Coun-
try.

great quantities in every Wood and Hedge. Their kinds of Graine are Wheate, Rye, Barley, Oates, Pease, Buckwheat, Rye-barley, that in taste is somewhat like to Rice. Of all these Graines the Country yieldeth very sufficient with an over-plus quantity, so that Wheate is sold sometime for two Altens or tenne pence sterling the Cheffird which maketh almost three English Buils.

Rye. Their Rye is sowed before the Winter, all their other Graine in the Spring-time and for the most part in May. The *Perman* and some other that dwell farre North, and in Desert places, are ferued from the parts that lye more South-ward, and are forced to make Bread sometimes of a kind of Rote called *Pagbony* and of the middlerine of the Firre-tree. If there be any Deutch (as they accounted this last year, Anno 1588. Wheat and Rye being at thirteenth Altens, or five shillings five pence sterling the Cheffird) the fault is rather in the practice of their Maltitude that vie to engross it, then in the Country it selfe. The Native Commodities of the Country (wherewith they ferue both their owne turnes and send much abroad to the great enriching of the Emperour, and his people) are many and substantiall. First, Fures of all sorts. Where the providence of God is to be noted, that provideth a naturall remedy for them; to helpe the naturall incommode of their Country by the cold of the Climate. Their chiefe Furs are these, Blacke Fox, Sables, Lufemes, Dunne Fox, Martrones, Gunefalles or Armins, Lases or Minuets, Beuer, Woluerine, the Skin of a great Water Rat that smelleth naturally like Muske, Calabor or Gray squirrel, Red and White Foxe. Besides the great quantitie spent within the Country (the people being chad all in Furs the whole Winter) there are transported out of the Country fure yeares by the Merchants of *Turke, Persia, Bulgaria, Georgia, Armenia*, and some other of Christendome to the value of foure or five hundred thousand Rubels, as I have heard of the Merchants. The best Sable Fur groweth in the Countrey of *Rebels, Momeysky and Obozsky*, the worst sort in *Siberia, Perm*, and other places. The Blacke Fox and Red cometh out of *Siberia*, White and Dunne from *Pechora*, whence also come the white Wolfe, and white Beare Skin. The best Woluerine also thence and from *Perm*. The best Martrons are from *Siberia, Cadom, Morum, Perm, and Casan*. Lyferne, Minuets, and Armins, the best are out of *Galeit, and Ouglitz*, many from *Novogrod*. The Beauer of the best sort breedeth in *Murmansk* by *Cola*. Other common Fures, and most of these kinds grow in many, and some in all parts of the Countrey.

Waxe. The second Commodity is of Waxe, whereof hath bene shipped in forraign Countreys (as I have heard it reported by those that best know it) the summe of fiftie thousand Pood yearly, every Pood containing foure pound, but now about tenne thousand Pood a year.

Honey. The third is their Honey; whereof besides an exceeding great quantitie spent in their ordinary Drinckes (which is *Mead* of all sorts) and their other vices, some good quantitie is carried out of the Countrey. The chiefe incarte of Honey is in *Mordua* and *Cadom* neere to the *Chermisn Tartar*: much out of *Semerichy, Bezan, Morum, Casan, Dorogobolsky, and Valaia*.

Tallow. Fourthly, of Tallow they afford a great weight for transportation: not only for their own Countrey hath very much good ground apt for Pasture of cattell, but also by reason of their many Lents and other Fatts: and partly, because their greater men vie much Waxe for their Lights, the poorer and meaner sort Birch dried in their Stoues, and cut into long thinnes, which they call *Lachom*. Of Tallow there hath bene shipped out of the Realme a few yeares since about one hundred thousand Pood yearly, now not past thirty thousand or thereabouts. The best yeld of Tallow is in the parts and Territories of *Smolensky, Tvergha, Ouglitz, Novogrod, and Valaia, Olsky, and Goudsky*.

Hide. Another principall Commodity is their Lofh and Cow-hide. Their Lofh or Buffe-hide is very faire and large, their Bull and Cow-hide (for Oxen they make none, neither yet Weather) is of a small size. There hath bene transported by Merchants (strangers and Russes) in hundred thousand Hides. Now it is decreed to thirty thousand or thereabouts. Besides great store of Goats Skins, whereof great numbers are shipped out of the Countrey. The largest kind of Lofh or Buffe breedeth about *Roslow, Wicbda, Novogrod, Morum, and Perm*. The lesser sort within the Kingdom of *Casan*.

Trane Oyle. An other very great and principall Commodity is their Trane-oyle, drawn out of the Seal-fish. Where it will not be impertinent to shew the manner of their hunting the Seale, which they make this Oyle of: which is in this sort. Towards the end of Summer (before the Frost beginne) they goe downe with their Boats into the Bay of Saint *Nicolaie*, to a Capitel called *Cassoway* or *Faxoway*, where they leave their Boats till the next Spring-tide. When the Summe waxeth warme toward the Spring, and yet the Ice not melted within the Bay: they returne thither againe. Then drawing their Boats over the Sea Ice, they vie them for Houles to rest and lodge in. There are commonly about fiftene or sixtene Fleete of them, of great large Boats, which divide themselves into diuers companies, five or six Boats in a confort.

They that first find the haunt, fire a Beacon, which they carrie with them for the purpose. Which being espied by the other companies, by harkening them as are appointed of purpose, they

they come all together and compass the Seales round about in a Ring, that lye Sunning themselves together vpon the Ice, commonly foure or five thousand in a shoale, and so they invade them every man with his Club in his hand. If they hit them on the Nofe, they are soon killed. If on the sides or backe they beare out the blow, and many times so catch and hold downe the Club with their Teeth by mayne force, that the partie is forced to call for helpe to his fellows.

The manner of the Seales is, when they see themselves beset, to gather all clofe together in a throng or plumb, to sway downe the Ice, and to brake it (if they can) which to bendeth the Ice, that many times is taken the Sea-water vpon it, and maketh the Hunters to wade a foot or more deepe. After the slaughter, when they have killed what they can they fall to skinning every Boast his part in equal portions and so they lay them, taking from the body the flaring, the Land or Fat with all that cleaveth to the Skin. This they take with them, leaving the bodies behind, and so goe to shoare. Where they digge Pits in the ground of a fathome and an halfe deepe, or there about, and so taking the Fat or Land off from the Skin, they throw it into the Pit, and cast in among it hot burning stones to melt it withall. They throw it into the Pit, and vied to oyle Wool for Cloth, the groffer (that is of a red colour) they sell to make Sape.

Likewise Ickary or Cauery, a great quantitie is made vpon the River of *Volga*, out of the fish called *Bellouginga*, the Sturgeon, the Seueriga and the Sterledy: Whereof the most part is shipped by French and Netherlandish Merchants for Italy and Spaine, some by English Merchant.

The next is of Flaxe and Hempe, whereof there hath bene shipped (as I have heard Merchants say at the Port of *Narva*) a great part of one hundred ships small and great yearly. Now not past fure. The reason of this abating and decrease of it and other Commodities, that were wont to be transported in a greater quantitie, is the shutting vpon of the Port of the *Narva* towards the *Finland Sea*, which now is in the hands and possession of the *Sweedes*. Likewise the stopping of the passage over-land by the way of *Smolensky*, and *Polotsky*, by reason of their Warres with the *Polonians*, which causeth the people to bee less prone to buy mayntayning and gathering these and the like Commodities, for that they lacke Sales. Partly also for that the Merchants and Mouicks (for so they call the common sort of people) are very much discouraged by many heauy and intollerable exactions, that of late time have bene imposed vpon them: no man accounting that which he hath to be sure his owne. And therefore regard not to lay vpon any thing, or to haue it before hand, for that it causeth them many times to be fleeced and spoiled, not onely of their goods, but also of their liues. For the growth of Flaxe the Province of *Volhysky*, and the Countrey about is the chiefe and only place. For Hempe *Smolensky, Dorogobolsky* and *Valaia*.

The Countrey besides maketh great store of Salt. Their best Salt is made at *Starogolsky* in very great quantitie, where they haue great store of Salt-works, about two hundred and fiftie verst from the Sea. At *Astracan* Salt is made naturally by the Sea-water, that catcheth it vpon great Hills, and so it is digged downe, and carryed away by the Merchants and other that will fetch it from thence. They pay to the Emperour for acknowledgement or custome three pence. Ruffe Realme, as in *Perm, Wicbda, Tama, Kestimey, Solowetsky, Orma, Bumbolsky, and Novosky*: all out of Salt-pits, save at *Solowetsky*, which lyeth neere to the Sea.

Likewise of Tarre they make a great quantitie out of their Fierr-trees in the Countrey of *Smolensky*, whereof much is sent abroad. Besides these (which are all good and substantiall Commodities) they haue diuers other of smaller account, that are natural and proper to that Countrey: as the fish tooth (which they call *Ribakusha* which is used both among Noblemen and Gentlemen, and for diuers other vices. Some vie the powder of it as about *Pechora*. The fish tooth whereof it is called a Morie, and it caught or twelue pence a-piece.

In the Province of *Corelia*, and about the River *Dvina* towards the North Sea, there groweth a soft Rocke which they call *Slude*. This they cut into pieces, and so tear it into thin flakes, which naturall it is apt for and so vie it for Glasse. An othermes such like. It giueth both in or Horne: for that it neyther breaketh like Glasse, nor yet will burne like the Lanthorne. Salt-peter they make in many places, as at *Ouglitz, Tvergha*, and *Wing*, and some small store of Brimstone vpon the River *Volga*, but want skill to refine it.

Their Iron is somewhat brittle, but a great weight of it is made in *Corelia, Cargapolsky*, and *Wing*. Their beards of strange kinds are the Lofh, the Ollen, the wilde Horse, the Beare, the Woluerine or wood Dogge, the Lyferne, the Beauer, the Sable, the Marton, the blacke and dunne Foxe, the white Beare towards the Sea coast of *Pechora*, the Gunstale, the Lase, or Minuets. They

8. Hempe and flaxe.

9. Salt.

10. Tarre.

11. Ribakusha.

12. Slude.

13. Salt pether and Brimstone

14. Iron.

The strange beards, the Lofh, the Ollen, the wilde Horse, the Beare, the Woluerine, the wood Dogge, the Lyferne, the Beauer, the Sable, the Marton, the blacke and dunne Foxe, the white Beare towards the Sea coast of Pechora, the Gunstale, the Lase, or Minuets.

They have a kind of Squirrel that hath growing on the pinion of the shoulder bone, a long tuft of haire, much like unto feathers, with a far broader tayle then have any other Squirrels, which they moue and shake as they leape from tree to tree, much like unto a wing. They skile a large space, and seeme for to flie withall, and therefore they call them *Leach Vachys*, that is, the flying Squirrels. Their Hares and Squirrels in Summer are of the same colour with ours, in Winter the Hare changed her coate into milke white, the Squirrel into gray, whereof commeth the *Calabar*.

Deare Horses

Sheepe, I haue

seene some of

them in *Rag-*

land breed

twice a yeere;

the Ram hath

fourne hornes,

&c.

Fresh-water

fish.

chap. 4.

The chief C-

ities of Russi-

a.

Mosko.

Berofus, a fa-

miliar author,

or rather that

which now

bareth his

name.

Mosko freed.

Newograd.

They have fallow Deere, the Roe Bucke, and Goats very great store. Their Horses are but small, but very swift and hard, they trauell them vnthod both Winter and Summer, without all regard of pace. Their Sheepe are but small, and beare coarfe and harsh wool. Of Fowls, they haue diuers of the principall kinds: First, great store of Hawkes; the Eagle, the Gersulcon, the Slighfaulcon, the Gof-hawke, the Tuffell, the Sparhawk, &c. But the principall Hawke that breedeth in the Countrey, is counted the Gersulcon.

Of other Fowles their principall kinds are the Swanne tame and wilde, (whereof they haue great store) the Storcke, the Crane, the Tiedder, of the colour of a Fealtan, but farre bigger and luerth in the Firre woods. Of Fealtan and Partridge they haue very great plenty. An Owle there is of a very great bignesse, more vgly to behold then the Owles of this Countrey, with a broad face, and eares much like unto a man.

For fresh water Fish, besides the common sorts (as Carpe, Pike, Pearle, Tench, Roach, &c.) they haue diuers kinds very good and delicate: as the Bellouge, or Bellougina of foure or five elnes long, the Ostrina or Sturgeon, the Soueriga, and Sterledy somewhat in fashion and taste like to the Sturgeon, but not so thicke or long. These foure kinds of fish breed in the *Volga*, and are caught in great plenty, and serued thence into the whole Realme for a great food. Of the Roes of these foure kinds they make very great store of Icarry or Caueary, as was said before! They haue besides these that breed in the *Volga*, a fish called the *Ribabala*, or white Salmon; which they account more delicate than they doe the red Salmon, whereof also they haue exceeding great plenty in the Rivers Northward, as in *Dnyne* the River of *Colo*, &c. In the *Ozera* or Lake nere a Towne called *Periflaue*, not farre from the *Volga*, they haue a small fish which they call the fresh Herring, of the fashion, and somewhat of the taste of a Sea-herring. Their chief Townes for fish are, *Taryflaue*, *Bealonera*, *Newograd*, *Asfracan*, and *Cazan*: which all 30 yield a large Customs to the Emperour every yeere for their trades of fishing, which they practise in Summer, but send it frozen in the Winter time into all parts of the Realme.

The chief Cities of *Russia* are, *Mosko*, *Newograd*, *Roflone*, *Voldomer*, *Pleske*, *Smolenske*, *Larusslaue*, *Periflaue*, *Nisnougrad*, *Vologda*, *Ufinsk*, *Golmigror*, *Cazan*, *Asfracan*, *Chergolus*, *Columna*.

The Cite of *Mosko* is supposed to bee of great antiquitie, though the first Founder bee vnknowne to the *Russe*. It seemeth to haue taken the name from the River that runneth on the one side of the Towne. *Berofus* the Chaldean in his fifth Booke telleth that *Nimrod* (whom o Colonies the, and that *Mosko* planted both in *Asia* and *Europe*. Which may make some probability that the Cite, or rather the River whereon it is built, took the denomination from this *Mosko*: the rather because of the climate or situation which is in the very farthest part and lift of *Europe*, bordering vpon *Asia*. The Cite was much enlarged by one *Enas* or *Iohn*, sonne to *Dmitry*, that first changed his title of Duke into King: though that honour continued not to his posteritie: the rather because he was iussured into it by the Popes Legate, who at that time was *Innocentius* the fourth, about the yeere 1246, which was very much disliked by the *Russe* people, being then a part of the Eastern or *Greece* Church. Since that time the name of this Cite hath growne more famous, and better knowne to the World: inasmuch that not only the Province, but the whole Countrey of *Russia* is termed by some by the name of *Moskous* the Metropole Cite. The forme of this Cite is in a manner round, with three strong walls, circling the one within the other, and freets lying betweene, whereof the inmost wall, and the buildings clofed within it (lying fast as the heart within the bodie, fenced and watted with the River *Moska*, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperours Castle. The number of houses (as I haue heard) through the whole Cite (being reckoned by the Emperour a little before it was fired by the *Chrim*) was 41000. in all. Since the *Tartar* besieged and fired the Towne (which was in the yeere 1571.) there lieth waste of it a great bredth of ground, which before was well set and planted with buildings, specially that part on the South side of *Moska*, built not long before by *Basiline* the Emperour for his Garrison of Soldiours, to whom he gave priuiledge to drinke Meade, and Beere as the drinke or prohibited things, when other *Russe* 60 may drinke nothing but water, and for that cause called this new Cite by the name of *Nolits*, that is, *Skinke* or *poore* in. So that now the Cite of *Mosko* is not much bigger then the Cite of *London*. The next in greatness, and in a manner as large, is the Cite *Newograd*: where was committed (as the *Russe* sayth) the memorable warre so much spoken of in Stories of the *Scythian*

thian seruants, that tooke Armes against their masters: which they report in this sort: *sc.* That the *Boiars* or Gentlemen of *Newograd* and the Territorie about (which onely are Soldiours after the discipline of those Countries) had warre with the *Tartars*. Which being well performed and ended by them, they returned homewards. Where their vnderbood by the way, *Platan* 41 that their *Chology* or Bondslaves whom they left at home, had in their absence possided their fount. Townes, Lands, Houses, Wiues, and all. At which newes being somewhat amazed, and yet disdayning the villanie of their seruants, they made the more speed home: and so not farre from *Newograd* met them in waitlike manner marching against them. Whereupon aduising what was best to be done, they agreed all to set vpon them with no other threat of weapon but with 10 their Horse whips (which as their manner is, euery man rideth withall) to put them in remembrance of their seruile condition, thereby to terrifie them, and abate their courage. And so marching on, and lashing altogether with their whips in their hands they gaue the onlet, Which seemed so terrible in the faces of their villaines, and broke such a lenie into them of the smart of the whip which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like Sheepe before the Drivers. In memory of this victory the *Newogradians* euer since haue stamped their Coine (which they call a *dingee* *Newogradsky*, current thorow all *Russia*) with the figure of a Horse-man shaking a whip aloft in his hand. These two Cities exceed the rest in greatness. For strength their chief Townes are, *Volsko*, *Smolenske*, *Cazan*, and *Asfracan*, as lying vpon the borders. But for situation *Larusslaue* farre exceedeth the rest. For besides 20 the commodities that the soyle yeldeth of Pasture and Corne, it lieth vpon the famous River *Volga*, and looketh ouer it from a high banke very faire and stately to behold: whereof the Towne taketh the name. For *Larusslaue* in that Tongue significth as much as a faire or famous Banke. In this Towne (as the name) I doubt not but the *Russe* King *Pladimir*, surnamed *Larusslaue*, that married the daughter of *Harald* King of England, by mediation of *Suen* the Dane, as is noted in the *Danish* Story about the yeere 1067.

The other Townes haue nothing that is greatly memorable, save many ruines within their walls. Which sheweth the decreafe of the *Russe* People, vnder this government. The freets of their Cities and Townes in stead of paues, are planked with Firre trees, plained and layd 30 vnclofed the one to the other. Their houses are of wood without any lime or stone, built very close and warme with Firre trees plained and piled one vpon another. They are fastned together with dents or notches at euery corner, and so clasped fast together. Betwixt the trees or timber they thrust in moss (whereof they gather plenty in their Woods, to keepe out the aire. Every house hath a paire of staires that lead vp into the chamber out of the yard or street after the *Scythian* manner. This building seemeth farre better for their Countrey, then that of stone and bricke: as being colder and more dampish then their wooden houses, specially of Firre, as that is a dry and warme wood. Whereof the prouidence of God hath giuen them such store, as that you may build a faire house for twentie or thirtie Rubbles, or little more, where wood is most scant. The greatest inconuenience of their wooden building is the aptnesse for firing, which happeneth very oft, and in very fearefull sort, by reason of the driftnesse and fatnesse of the Firre, that being once fired, burneth like a Torch, and is hardly quenched till all be burnt vp.

The firr-name of the Imperiall house of *Russia*, is called *Bedala*: It tooke the originall (as is supposed) from the Kings of *Hungarie*, which may seeme the more probable, for that the *Hungarian* Kings many yeeres agoe haue borne that name: as appeareth by *Benjamin* and other Stories written of that Countrey. For about the yeere 1059, mention is made of one *Bedala* that succeeded his brother *Abderus*, who reduced the *Hungarians* to the *Christian* Faith from which they were fallen by *Abderus* and *Turkys* perswasion before. The second of that name was called *Bedala* the blind, after whom succeeded diuers of the same name.

That their Ancestry came not of the *Russe* Nation, *Iuan* *vasilovich* father to this Emperour, would many times boast, disdayning (as should seeme) to haue his progenie deriued from the *Russe* blood. As namely to an *Engellish* his Goldsmith, that had receaued Bullion of him to make certaine Plate: whom the Emperour commaunded to looke well to his weight. For my *Russes* (said he) are theues all. Whereat the Workman looking vpon the Emperour, began to smile. The Emperour being of quick conceit, charged him to tell him what hee smiled at. If your *Majesty* will pardon mee (quoth the Goldsmith) I will tell you. Your *Hightnesse* said, that the *Russes* were all theues, and forgat in the meane while that your selfe was a *Russe*. I thought to (quoth the Emperour) but thou art deceived. For I am no *Russe*, my Ancestors were *Germanes* (for to they account of the *Hungarians* to be part of the *German* Nation, though indeed they come of the *Hunnes*. That inuaded those Countries, and rested in those parts of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungarie*.

meene to recouer themselves, and perhaps either by *Hungarian* assistance with their Princes, or taking a Prince from *Hungarie* then assisted with *Germanes*, they began to recouer that *Tartarian* desolate, whereof still some Synonymes remayne.

Like lips, like leuitie.

Tarusslaue.

The manner of the Russe building.

chap. 5. Of the house or focke of the Russe Emperour.

The house of Bedala is not natural Russe. See sup. 56. where the Tartar destroyed these Countreies then called Bulgaria maior, many times used Hungarie: and so in Bulgaria death, so in Hungary and thus Bulgaria had been.

The advancement
of the
house of Beala.

* *Viz. A. D.*
1588.
Since the Sec-
per hath been
in duers Fa-
milies, with
manifest com-
butions.

The Emperor
viciously
killed his son.

We have since
had two which
have assented
to be this De-
metrius, and
have obeyed
the State;
thereof, and
of their lines di-
posed as
Countesses.

Chap. 6.
Of the man-
ner of crow-
ning or inau-
guration of the
Russe Emper-
ours.

How they aspired to the Dukedome of Volodemer (which was their first degree, and ingrat-
ing into *Russia*) and whether it were by Conquest, or by Marriage, or by what other means,
I could not learn any certainty among them, That from these beginnings of a small Dukedome
Shires or Provinces of *Russia*, this house of *Beala* spread it self forth, and aspired by degrees to
the Monarchie of the whole Country, is a thing well known, and of very late memorie. The
last that reigned before this Emperour, to wit, *Ivan Bassien*, and *Ivan* father to the other that
reigneth at this time. Whereof the first that tooke unto him the name and title of Emperour,
was *Bassien* father to *Ivan*, and grandfather to this man. For before that time they were con-
tented to be called great Dukes of *Mosko*. What hath beene done by either of these three, and
how much they have added to their first estate by Conquest, or otherwise, I may be seen in the
Chapter of their Colonies, or Purchases perforce. For the continuance of the race, this House of
Beala at this present * is in like case as are many of the greatest Houses of *Christendome*, viz.
the whole Stocke and Race concluded in one, two, or some few of the Blood. For besides the Em-
perour that now is, who hath no child (neither is like ever to have, for ought that may be com-
mured by the constitution of his body, and the barrenness of his wife after 10 many years
marriage) there is but one more, viz. a child of sixe or seven years old, in whom reiteth all the
dest of the three, and of the best towards the end, As for the other brother that was de-
ad the head in his fume with his walking staffe, or (as some say) of a thrust with the prong of
a blow, may appear by his mourning and passion after his fomes death, which never left him till
it brought him to the grave. Wherein may be marked the iustice of God, that punished his de-
light in shedding of blood with this murder of his sonne by his owne hand, and so ended his
dayes and tyrannie together, with the murdering of himselfe by extreme griefe, for this his un-
happy and unnatural fact.

The Emperours younger brother of sixe or seven years old (as was said before) is kept in a
remote place from the *Mosko*, under the tuition of his mother and her kindred, of the House of
the *Nagayes*: yet not safe (as I have heard) from attempts of making away by practice of some
that aspire to the succession, if this Emperour die without any issue. The Nurse that suckled
before him of certain meat (as I have heard) died presently. That he is naturally fowle to
his *Russians*, the *Russe* People warrant it, by the fathers qualitie that beginneth to appear al-
ready in his tender years. Hee is delighted (they say) to see Sheepe and other cattell killed,
and to looke on their throats while they are bleeding (which commonly children are afraid to
behold) and to beate Geese and Hennes with a staffe till he see them lie dead. Besides this of
the male kind, there is a Widow, that teacheth him in the succession, Sister to the old Emperour,
and Aunt to this man, sometime Wife to *Mexen* Duke of *Helf*, Brother to the King of *Dan-
mark*, by whom the last Emperour since the death of her Husband hath beene
allured againe into *Russia*, by some that lose the succession better then her selfe, which appeareth
by the sequel. For her selfe with her daughter, so fowle as they were returned into *Russia*, were
thrutt into a Nunnerie, where her daughter died this last year while I was in the Country, of
no natural disease as was supposed. The mother remaineth still in the Nunnerie, where (as I
have heard) she bewayleth her selfe, and curseth the time when she returned into *Russia*, content
with the hope of marriage, and other faire promises in the Emperours name. Thus it standeth
with the Imperiall Stocke of *Russia*, of the House of *Beala*, which is like to determine in those
that now are, and to make a convention of the *Russe* estate. If it be into a government of some
better temper, and milder constitution, it will be happy for the poore people that are now op-
pressed with intolerable servitude.

The Solemnities vied at the *Russe* Emperours Coronation, are on this manner. In the great
Church of *Frodohe* (or our Ladie) within the Emperours Cattle is erected a Stage, whereon
standeth a Scenne that beareth upon it the Imperiall Cap and Robe of very rich stuffe. When
the day of the Inauguration is come, there resort thither, first the Patriarch with the Metropo-
litanes, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Abbots, and Priors, all richly clad in their Pontificalibus. Then
enter the Deacons with the Quire of Singers. Who so fowle as the Emperour fetcheth foot
into the Church, beginne to sing: *Many yeeres may live with Theodores Isaacovich*, &c. Whereunto
the Patriarch and Metropolitane with the rest of the Clergie, answer with a certaine Hymne, in
forme of a Prayer, singing it all together with a great noise. The Hymne being ended, the Pa-
triarch with the Emperour mount up the Stage, where standeth a Seat ready for the Emperour.
Whereupon the Patriarch willett him to sit downe, and then placing himselfe by him upon an-
other Seat provided for that purpose, boweth downe his head towards the ground, and sayeth
this Prayer: *Oh Lord God King of Kings, Lord of Lords, which by thy Prophet Samuel didst chuse
thy servant David, and anoint him for King over thy People Israel, have now our Prayers, and love*
from

from thy *Servant* upon this thy *Servant* Theodores, whom thou hast chosen and exalted for King o-
ver these thy holy Nations, anoint him with the oyle of gladness, protect him by thy power, but upon his
head a Crowne of Gold and precious Stones, give him length of dayes, place him in the Seat of Iustice,
strengthen his arms, make him victor over him all the barbarous Nations. Let thy force be in his whole
heart, turne him from all error, and shew him the salvation of thy holy and universal Church, that he
may iudge thy people with Iustice, and protect the children of the poore, and finally attaine everlasting
life. This Prayer he speaketh with a low voice, and then pronounceth a loud: *All praise and
power is Gods the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost*. The Prayer being ended, he commandeth
certaine Abbots to reach the Imperiall Robe and Cap: which is done very decently, and with
10 great Solemnitie, the Patriarch withall pronouncing aloud: *Peace be unto all*. And so he beginneth
another Prayer to this effect: *Now your selves together with us, and pray to him that reigneth
over all. Preserve him (oh Lord) under thy holy protection, keep him that hee may doe good and holy
things, let Iustice shine forth in his dayes, that we may live quietly without strife and malice. This
is pronounced somewhat softly by the Patriarch, whereto hee addeth againe aloud: *Thou art
the King of the whole World, and the Saviour of our faith, to thee the Father, Sonne, and Holy
Ghost, be all praise for ever and ever. Amen. Then putting on the Robe and the Cap, hee blesteth
the Emperour with the signe of the Crosse: saying withall, in the Name of the Father, the Sonne,
and the Holy Ghost*.*

The like is done by the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops: who all in their order come
to the Chaire, and one after another blesteth the Emperour with their two fore-fingers. Then is said
by the Patriarch another Prayer, that beginneth: *Omni holy Virgin Mother of God, &c.* After which
a Deacon pronounceth with an high loud voice: *Many yeeres to Noble Theodores, good, honoura-
ble, beloved of God, great Duke of Volodemer of Mosko, Emperour, and Monarch of all Russia, &c.*
Whereto the other Priests and Deacons that stand somewhat farre off by the Altar or Table, an-
swers singing, *Many yeeres, many yeeres, to the Noble Theodores*. The same Note is taken up by
the Priests and Deacons, that are placed at the right and left side of the Church, and then alto-
gether, they chaunt and thunders, singing: *Many yeeres to the Noble Theodores, good,
honourable, beloved of God, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, Emperour of all Russia, &c.*
These Solemnities being ended, first cometh the Patriarch with the Metropolitans, Arch-
10 bishops, and Bishops, then the Nobilitie, and the whole Companie in their order, to
doe homage to the Emperour, bending downe their heads, and knocking them at his feet to
the very ground.

The Stile wherewith hee is inuested at his Coronation, runneth after this manner.
Theodores Isaacovich, by the grace of God, great Lord and Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of
Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouggrad, King of Cazan, King of Astracan, Lord of Plesko, and great
Duke of Smolensko, of Tverria, Ioughorra, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others, Lord and
governor of Nouggrad, of the Low Country, of Chermigo, Rezan, Polotsko, Rostoue, Ya-
of the North parts, and Lord of many other Countries, &c.

This stile containeth in all the Emperours Provinces, and stretcheth forth his great-
ness. And therefore they have a great delight and pride in it, forreth not only their
owne people but also Strangers that have any matter to delivier to the Emperour by
Speech or writing) to repeat the whole forme from the beginning to the end. Which breedeth
much caill, and sometimes quarrell betwixt them and the *Turks*, and *Poland* Ambassadors:
who refuse to call him *Czar*, that is Emperour, and to repeat the other parts of his long Stile.
My selfe, when I had audience of the Emperour, thought good to salute him onely with thus
much, viz. *Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouggrad, King of
Cazan, King of Astracan*. The rest I omitted of purpose, because I knew they gloried, to have
10 so full part, that the Chanceller (who then attended the Emperour, with the rest of the Nobili-
tie the Emperours Stile was very long and could not so well be remembered by Strangers, that I had
till I commanded my Interpreter to say it all out.

The manner of their Government is much after the *Turkish* fashion: which they seeme to
imitate as neere as the Country, and reach of their capacities in Politike Affaires will give
them leave to doe.

The State and forme of their Government seemeth to apply all to the behoofe of the Prince,
and that after a most open manner: as may appear by the *Synodicals* or secrets of their Govern-
ment afterwards set downe, as well for the keeping of the Nobilitie and Commons in an vnder-
proportion, and farre uneven balance in their severall degrees, as also in their Impositions
and Exactions, without any regard of Nobilitie or People: farther then it giueth the No-
bilitie a kind of libertie, to exact upon the Commons and baser sort of People in all parts
of

Chap. 7.
The State or
forme of their
Government.
The *Russe* Go-
vernment ty-
rannicall.

Gaill-kind
guise-all kind
renate.
Absolute So-
vereignty.

of the Realme wherefoer they come, specially in the place where their Lands lye, or where they are appointed by the Emperour to gouverne vnder him: Allo to the Commons howe contentment, in that they passe ouer their Lands by dissent of Inheritance to whether Sonne or Testament without any controllment.

Concerning the principall points and matters of State, wherein the Souerainetie consisteth (as the making, and amending of publicke Lawes, the making of Magistrats, power to make Warre or Ciuill and Criminall) they doe so wholly and absolutely pertayne to the Emperour, and his Councell of all theise. For as touching any Law or publicke Order of the Realme, it is cuer determined of before any publicke Assembly or Parliament be summoned. Where besides his Councell, he hath none other to confult with him of such matters as are concluded before hand, but only a few Bishops, Abbots, and Friars: to make aduantage of the peoples Superstitions, euen against themselves, which thinke all to be holy and iust, that passed with content of their Bishops and Clergie men, whatsoever it be. For which purpose the Emperours are content to make much of the corrupt state of the Church, as now it is among them, and to nourish the same by extraordinary fauours, and Immunities to the Bishops Sees, Abbeyes and Frieries: as knowing Superstition and false Religion best to agree with a Tyrannicall State, and to be a speciall meanes to vperhold and maintaine the same.

Magistracies.

He succeeded him.
Jurisdiction.

Iuan Vasiliuich
cruell.

Appeals and
Pardons.

Ancient No-
bilitie.

Chap. 8.
The manner
of holding
the Parlia-
ments.
The States
of Parliament.

The order
of the summons
or assembling.

Friday respect.

Secondly, as touching the publicke Offices and Magistracies of the Realme, there is none hereditarie, neither any so great nor so little in that Countrey, but the bestowing of it is done immediately by the Emperour himselfe. In so much that the very *Dukes*, or Clerks in euery head is the (better to extend his Deuotions) refresheth all such matters pertaining to the State, wholly to the ordering of his Wives Brother, the Lord *Boris Federuich Godunoe*.

Thirdly, the like is to be said of the Jurisdiction concerning matters Iudiciall, specially such as concerne life and death. Wherein there is none that hath any authoritie or publicke Jurisdiction that goeth by Dissent, or is held by Charter, but all at the appointment and pleasure of the Emperour, and the same practised by the Iudges with such awe and restraint, as that they dare not determine vpon any speciall matter, but must referre the same wholly, vnto the *Majesty* of the Emperours Councell. To shew his Souerainetie ouer the liues of his Subiects, the late Emperour *Iuan Vasiliuich* in his walkes or progresses, if he had misliked the face or person of any man Which was presently done, and the head cast before him.

Fourthly, for the Soueraine Appeals, and giuing of Pardons in Criminall Matters to such as are considered, it is wholly at the pleasure and grace of the Emperour. Wherein also the Empire is considered, it is being a woman of great Clemencie, and withall delighting to dealing in publicke Affaires of the Realme, (she rather to supply the defect of her Husband) doth behaue her life after an absolute manner, giuing out pardon (specially on her birth day and other solemne times) in so much that there haue bene of late of the ancient Nobilitie, which haue held diuers Provinces by right of Inheritance, with an absolute Authoritie and Jurisdiction ouer them, to order and determine all matters within their owne Precinct without all Appeals; or controllment of the Emperour. But this was all annulled and wrung cleane from them by *Iuan Vasiliuich* Father to this Emperour.

Their highest Court of publicke consultation for matter of State, is called the *Zabore*, that is, the *Publicke Assembly*. The states and degrees of persons, that are present at their Parliaments are these in order. 1. The Emperour himselfe. 2. Some of his Nobilitie about the number of twenty being all of his Councell. 3. Certaine of the Clergie-men, &c. about the same number. As for Burghers or other to represent the Comminaltie, they haue no place there: the people being of no better account with them then as seruants or bond-slaves that are to obey, not to make Lawes, nor to know any thing of publicke matters before they are concluded.

The Court of Parliament (called *Zabore*) is held in this manner. The Emperour causeth to be summoned forth of his Nobilitie as himselfe thinketh meete, (as was said) all of his Councell together with the Patriarch, who calleth his Clergie, to wit, the two Metropolitans, the two Archbishops, with such Bishops, Abbots, and Friars as are of best account and reputation among them. When they are all assembled at the Emperours Court, the day is intimated when the Session shall beginne. Which commonly is vpon some Friday, for the Religion of that day.

When the day is come, the Clergie-men assemble before at the time and place appointed, which is called the *Stroile*. And when the Emperour cometh attended by his Nobilitie, they ascribe all, and meete him in an our-roue, following their Patriarch, who firsteeth the Emperour with

with his two fore-fingers, laying them on his fore-head, and the sides of his face, and then kisseth him on the right side of his breast. So they passe into their Parliament Houle, where they sit in this order. The Emperour is enthroned on the one side of the Chamber. In the next place not farre from him at a small square Table (that is, a square room to twelve persons or thereabouts) sitteth the Patriarch with the Metropolitans and Bishops, and certayne of the principall Nobilitie of the Emperours Councell, together with two *Dukes*, or Secretaries (called *Dumoy diakes*) that enact that which passeth. The rest place themselves on benches round about the Room, euery man in his ranke after his degree. There is there propounded by one of the Secretaries (who representeth the *Speaker*) the cause of their Assembly, and the principall matters that they are to consider. For to propound Bils what euery man thinketh good for the publicke benefit (as the manner is in *England*) the *Russe* Parliament alloweth no such censure, nor liberty to subjects.

The points being opened, the Patriarch with his Clergie-men haue the Prerogative to be first asked their vote, or opinion, what they thinke of the points propounded by the Secretarie. Whereas they answer in or to, according to their degrees, but all in one forme without any Dissent: as hauing learned their Lesson before, that serueth their turnes at all Parliaments alike, whatsoever is propounded. Commonly it is to this effect. That the Emperour and his Councell are of great wisdom and experience, touching the *Palaces* and publicke Affaires of the Realme, and farre better able to iudge what is profitable for the Common-wealth, than they are, which attend upon the seruice of God only, and matters of Religion. And therefore it is their duty, to proceed. That instead of their aduise, they will ayde them with their Prayers, as their duties and consciences doe require. To this or like effect hauing made their Answers euery man in his court, vpon handt him a summe-abbot or Friar more bold then the rest (yet appointed before-hand as a matter of forme) and desireth the Emperour it would please his Majestie to command to be deliuered vnto them what his Majesties owne iudgement, and determinate pleasure is, as touching those matters propounded by his *Duke*.

Whereunto is replied by the said Secretarie in the Emperours name. That his Highnesse with the aid of his Noble Councell, vpon good and sound aduise haue found the matters proposed to be very good and necessary for the Common-wealth of the Realme. Notwithstanding, forasmuch as they are Religious men, and know what is right, his Majesty hath thought their godly Opinions, yea, and their Consciences too, for the approving or correcting of the said Propositions, and therefore desireth them again to speak their minds freely. And if they shall like to giue their consents, that then the matters may passe to a full conclusion.

Hereunto when the Clergie-men haue giuen their consents (which they vie to doe without any great pausing) they take their leaues with blessing of the Emperour: who bringeth the Patriarch on his way so farre as the next Room, and so returneth to his Seat, all be made ready for his recurrence homeward. The Acts that thus are passed by the *Zabore* of Parliament, the *Dukes* or Secretaries draw into a forme of Proclamation, which they send abroad into euery Province, and head Towne of the Realme, to be published there by the *Dukes* and *Diakes*, or Secretaries of those places. The Session of Parliament being fully ended, the Emperour inuitheth the Clergiemen to a solemne Dinner. And so they depart euery man to his home.

The degrees of persons or Estates of *Russia* (besides the Soueraine State or Emperour himselfe) are these in the order. 1. The Nobility which is of four sorts. Whereof the chiefe *Dukes*. These held sometime a feuerall Jurisdiction, and an absolute Authoritie within their Pre-emption composition. They yielded themselves to this House of *Beda*, when it beganne to waxe fierce: the Emperour in his Warres with a certaine number of Horse. But the late Emperour *Iuan Vasiliuich* Father to this Prince, being a man of high spirit, and sublim in his kind meaning and to bring it downe to a lesser proportion: till in the end he made it to clip off their greatneesse, but by his *Klapoy*, that is, his very Villaines or Bond-slaves. For so they terme and write themselves in any publicke Instrument or priuate Petition which they make to the Emperour. So that they hold their Authorities, Lands, Liues, and all at the Emperours pleasure as the rest do.

The meanes and practice whereby he wrought this to effect against them, and othered the Nobility (so well as I could note out of the report of his doings) were thiese, and such like. First, hee vied to set on the inferiours, to getter or get all themselves to thiose that were accounted to be of the Nobler Houses. Where hee made his aduantage of their malice and contentions, the one against the other, by receiving deuised matters, and accusations of secret practice and Conspiracies to be intended against his Person and State. And so hauing singled out the greatest of them, and cut them off with the good liking of the rest, hee fell at last to open practice, by turning of the other to yeild their Rights vnto him.

Their discourse
at Parliament.

Chap. 9.
Of the Nobilitie,
and by what means
it is kept in an
under proportion
agreeable to that State.
The *Vladimir*
Knyaz chiefe
of the Nobility.

The faction of
Oppressors and
Zemsky divided
by the Em-
perour.

2. Hee diuided his subjects into two parts or factions by a general Schisme. The one part he called the *Oppressors* or *Selektmen*. These were such of the Nobility and Gentry as he took to his owne part, to protect and maintaine them as his faithfull subjects. The other he called *Zemsky*, Gentlemen as he meant to cut off, as suspected to mislike his Government, and to have a meaning to practise against him. Wherein he provided that the *Oppressors* for number and quality of *Value*, *Money*, *Armour*, &c. farre exceeded the other of the *Zemsky* side, whom he put as it were from vnder his protection: so that if any of them were spoyled or killed by those of the *Oppressors*, (which he accounted of his owne part) there was no amends to bee sought for by way of publike iustice, or by complaint to the Emperour.

The whole number of both parts was orderly registred and kept in a Booke: so that every man knew who was a *Zemsky* man, and who of the *Oppressors*. And this libertie of the one part to spoile and kill the other without any helpe of Magistrate, or Law (that continued seuen yeeres) enriched that side, and the Emperours Treasury, and wrought that withall which hee intended by this practise, viz. to take out of the way such of the Nobilitie, as himselfe misliked: whereof were slaine within one weeke to the number of three hundred within the Citie of *Mosky*.

This mischievous practise of making a general Schisme, and publike diuision among the subjects of his whole Realme, proceeded (as should seeme) from an extreme doubt, and desperate feare, which hee had conceived of most of his Nobilitie, and gentlemen of his Realme, in his Wars with the *Polsman* and *Chirim Tartar*. What time he grew into a vehement suspicion (conceiued of the ill successe of his Affaires) that they practised Treason with the *Polsman* and *Chirim*. Whereupon hee executed some, and deniued this way to be rid of the rest.

3. Having thus pulled them and sealed all their Inheritance, Lands, Priuileiges, &c. gave some very small part which hee left to their name, hee gave them other Lands of the tenour of *Pennelony* (as they call it) that are held at the Emperours pleasure, lying far in another Countrey, and to remoued them into other of his Prouinces, where they might haue neyther fauour, nor authority, not being Native nor well knowne there. So that now these of the chiefe Nobility (called *Vladny Knazys*) are equalled with the rest: sue that in the opinion and fauour of the people they are of more account, and keepe still the Prerogative of their place in all their publike meetings.

Their practise to keepe downe these Houses from rising againe and recouering their dignities are these, and such like. First, many of their Heires are kept vnmarried perforce, that the stocke may dye with them. Some are sent into *Siberia*, *Cascan* and *Afracan*, vnder pretence of seruice, and there either made away, or else fastclapped vp. Some are put into Abbeyes, and thrust themselves Eriers by pretence of a Vow to be made voluntary, and of their owne accord, but deniued forced vnto it by force, upon some pretended crime objected against them. Where they are so guarded by some of speciall trust, and the Countie it selfe (vpon whose head it standeth that they make no escape) as that they haue no hope but to end their liues there. Of this kind there are many of very great Nobilitie. These and such like wayes begunne by the Emperour *Iuan Vasilovich* are still practised by the *Godemee*, who being advanced by the Marriage of the Emperres sister their Kinswoman, rule both the Emperour, and his Realme (specially *Borris Federovich Godanee*, Brother to the Emperre) and endeavour by all means to cut off, or keepe downe all of the best likeliest to make head against them and to hinder their purpose, as *Knez Andreus Garaken Bulgakeue*, a man of great birth and authority in the Countrey. The like they haue done with *Peter Gollanui* (whom they put into Dungan where hee ended his life) with *Knez Vasilie Vrynich Gollanui*, with *Andrius Iuanovich Sukey* accounted among them for a man of a great wildeome. So this last yeere was killed in a Monastery (whither they had thrust him) one *Knez Iuan Petrich Sukey* a man of great valour, and seruice in that Countrey: who about five or sixe yeeres since, bare out the siege of the Citie *Polsky*, made by *Stephan Batore* King of *Polonia*, with one hundred thousand men, and repulsed him very valiantly, with great honour to himselfe, and his Countrey, and disgrace to the *Polsman*. Also *Michieta Romanovich Vnle* to the Emperour by the Mothers side, was supposed to haue dyed of Poyson, or some like practise.

The Names of these families of greatest Nobilitie are these in their order. The first is of *Knez Voldemere*, which relicteth at this time in one Daughter a widow, and without Children (mentioned before) sometime wife to *Hartack Maynys* Brother to the King of *Denmarke*, now closed within a Nunnerie. The second *Knez Methelsky*, thrust into a Friarie, and his only Sonne kept from marriage, to decay the house. The third *Glimsky*. But one left of his house, and hee without children save one Daughter. The fourth *Sukey*, whereof there are foure Brethren young men, and vnmarried all. The fifth *Habetsky*. Of this House are foure liuing. The sixth *Bulgakey*, now called *Gulchetsky* house, whereof are five liuing, but youths all. The seventh *Vorallinsky*. Two left of that stocke. The eighth *Odgozky*, two. The ninth *Tellerky*, one. The tenth *Tajones*, three. These are the Names of the chiefe Families, called *Vladny Knazys*: that in effect

Names of the
greatest Hou-
ses of the Russe
Nobilitie.

haue lost all now, sue the very name it selfe, and fauour of the people, which is like one day to relict them againe, if any be left.

The second degree of Nobilitie is of the *Boiarsnes*. These are such as the Emperour honoureth (besides their Nobilitie) with the title of Counsellers. The revenue of these two sorts of their Nobles that rieth out of their Land assigned them by the Emperour, and held at his pleasure (for of their owne Inheritance there is little left them, as was sayd before) is about a thousand Markes a yeere: besides Pension which they receiue of the Emperour for their seruice in his Warres, to the summe of fouen hundred Rubbels a yeere, and none about that summe.

The second
degree of No-
bilitie.

Lord Boris af-
ter this Empe-
rour.

But in this number the Lord *Borris Federovich Godanee* is not to bee reckoned, that is like a *Transcendent*, and in no such predicament with the rest, being the Emperours Brother in law his Protector for direction, for Command and authoritie Emperour of *Russia*. His yearly revenue in Land and Pension, amounteth to the summe of 93700 Rubbels and more, as appeareth by the particulars. Hee hath of inheritance (which himselfe hath augmented in *Vasna Dergubsky* sixe thousand Rubbels a yeere. For his office of *Committ*, or Master of the Horse twelue thousand Rubbels or Markes, raised out of the *Comastine Slobodsky*, or the liberties pertaining to that Office, which are certayne Lands and Townies neere about the *Moske*. Besides, all the meadow and pasture ground on both sides the banke of the River *Moske*, thirtie versh up the streame, and for aite versh downwards. For his pension of the Emperour (besides the other for his Office) fiftene thousand Rubbels. Out of the Prouince or Shire of *Pogda*, there is giuen him for a singular exempted out of the Chieftird of *Pogolsky*, two and thirtie thousand Rubbels, besides a rent of *Turres*. Out of *Rexan* and *Semer*, (another peculiar) thirtie thousand Rubbels: Out of *Offer* and *Furrik* another exempt place eight thousand Rubbels. For rent of *Bach* houses and *Bathing* houses without the walls of *Mosky*, fiftene hundred Rubbels. Besides his *Pennelony* or lands, which hee holdeth at the Emperours pleasure, which farre exceedeth the proportion of Land allotted to the rest of the Nobilitie.

One other there is of the house of *Glimsky*, that dispendeth in Land and Pension about fortie thousand Rubbels yearly. Which hee is suffered to enioy, because hee hath married *Borris* his wiues Sister, being himselfe very simple and almost a naturall. The ordering of him and his Lands are committed to *Borris*.

In the third ranke are the *Voyanodys*, or such Nobles as are, or haue bene Generals in the Emperours warres. Which deliuer the honour of their Title to their posterities also: who take their place about the other Dukes and Nobles, that are not of the two former sorts, viz. of the *Vladny Knazys*, nor of the *Boiarsnes*.

The third sort
of Nobilitie.

These three degrees of their Nobilitie, (to wit) the *Vladny Knazys*, the *Boiarsnes*, and the *Voyanodys*, haue the addition of *Vich*, put vnto their name, as *Borris Federovich*, &c. which is a note of Honour that the rest may not vsmpe. And inaske it bee not added in the naming of them, they may sue the *Bescheff* or penaltie of dishonour vpon them, that otherwise shall terme them.

Title Vich.

The fourth and lowest degree of Nobilitie with them, is of such as beare the name of *Knazys*, or Dukes, but come of the younger Brothers of those chiefe Houses, through many discent, and haue no instance of their owne, sue the bare name gettill of Duke only. For their order is to deliuer their names and titles of other Dignities vnto all their Children alike, whatsoever else they leaue them. So that the Sonnes of a *Voyanodys* or General in the field, are called *Voyanodys*, though they neuer leaue the field, and the Sonnes of a *Knaz* or Duke, are called *Knazys*, though they haue not one great of inheritance or liveryhood to maintain themselves withall. Of this sort there are so many, that the penaltie maketh them cheape: so that you shall see Dukes glad to serue a meanie man for five or sixe Rubbels or Markes a yeere, and yet they will stand highly vpon their *Bescheff* or reputation of their Honour. And these are their feuerall degrees of Nobilitie.

The second degree of persons, is of their *Sina Boiarsky*, or the sonnes of Gentlemen, who are preferred, and hold that Name by their seruice in the Emperours warres, being soldiers by their very stocke and birth: To which order are referred their *Dyacks* or *Sent* waies, that is to say the Emperour in euery head Townie, being ioynd in Communion with the Dukes of that place.

The second
degree of per-
sons.

The last are their Commons, whom they call *Moskies*. In which number they reckon their Merchants, and their common Artificers. The very lowest and basest sort of this side (which are held in no degree) are their Countrey people, whom they call *Chirimen*. Of the *Sina Boiarsky* (which are all soldiers) we are to see in the description of their Forces, and Militarie prouisions. Concerning their *Moskies*, what their condition and behaviour is, in the Title of Chapter Of the Common people.

The third
degree.

The whole Countrey of *Russia* (as was sayd before) is diuided into foure parts, which they Of the Go- call *Cherfird*, or *Terrachies*. Euery *Cherfird* containeth diuers Shires, and is annexed to a giuen of feuerall Office, whereof it takes the name. The first *Cherfird*, or *Terrachie*, beareth the name of their Prouince and Shire.

Peskyk Chetfird, or the Jurisdiction of the office of Ambassadors, and at this time is under the chiefe Secretarie and officer of the Ambassadors, called *Andreas Schalcalone*. The standing fee or stipend that hee receiveth yearly of the Emperour for this service, is one hundred Rubbels or Marks. The second is called the *Refrenary Chetfird*, because it is proper to the *Refrenary* or high the Chancelour, but it is executed by one *Zupan Abramone*. His pension is an hundred Rubbels yearly.

The third is the *Chetfird of Pomeiny*, as pertaining to that Office. This keepeth a Register of all Lands given by the Emperour for service to his Noblemen, Gentlemen and others, suchout stipend in all Assurances for them. The officer at this time is called *Eleanor Wallingus*. His 10 stipend is five hundred Rubbels a yeere.

The fourth is called *Cassimoy Dewerts*, as being appropriate to the Office that hath the jurisdiction of the Kingdomes of *Cassan* and *African*, with the other Townes lying upon the *Polish*, now ordered by one *Drusich Penetlene*, a man of very speciall account among them, for his wisdom and promptnesse in matters of policie. His pension is one hundred and fiftie Rubbels a yeere.

From these *Chetfirds* or *Tetrarchies* is exempted the Emperours inheritance or *Vechem* (as they call it) for that is preserved from ancient time to the House of *Roda*, which is the frame of the Imperial blood. This husband of fixe and thirtie Townes within their bounds or Territories. Besides diuers peculiar Institutions, which are likewise deducted out of those *Chetfirds*, as the 20 Shire of *Pagha* (belonging to the Lord *Borris Federemich Godone*) and such like.

These are the chiefe Gouernours or Officers of the Provinces, not resident at their chargeabroad, but attending the Emperour whither soeuer hee goeth, and carrying their Offices about with them; which for the most part they hold at *Moske*, as the Emperours chiefe foute.

The parts and practice of these four Offices, as to receive all Complaints and Actions whatsoever, that are brought out of their feuerall *Chetfirds* and *Quarters*, and to informe them to the Emperours Councell. Likewise to send direction againe to those that are vnder them, in their feyd Provinces, for all matters given in charge by the Emperour and his Councell, to be done or put in execution within their Precincts.

For the ordering of every particular Province of these four *Chetfirds*, there is appointed one 30 of these Dukes, which were reckoned before in the lowest degree of their Nobilitie, which are resident in the head Townes of the feyd Provinces. Whereof every one hath joyned with him in Commission a *Dyack* or Secretary to assist him or rather to direct him. For in the executing of their Commission, the *Dyack* both ali:

The Commission of the Dukes or Presidents of Shires.

The parts of their Commission are these in effect. First, to heare and determine in all civil matters within their Precinct. To which purpose they have vnder them certayne Officers, as *Gubny Staret* or Coroners, who besides the tryall of selfe Murders, are to attach Fellows: as the *Soudis* or vnder Justices, who themselves also may heare and determine in all matters of the same nature, among the Country people of their owne Wards or Bayliwicks: but so that in case either partie dissent, they may appeale, and goe further to the Duke and *Dyack* that reside within the head Towne. From whom also they may remoune the matter to the higher Court at *Moske* of the Emperours Councell, where they all appeale. They have vnder them also *Sweky Staret*, that is Aldermen, or Bayliffs of the Hundreds.

Secondly, in all criminal matters, as Theft, Murder, Treason, &c. they have authority to apprehend, to examine and to imprison the offender, and to haue received perfect evidence and information of the cause; they are to send it ready drawne and orderly digested vpon the *Moske*, to the Officer of the *Chetfird*, whereunto that Province is annexed: by whom it is referred and propounded to the Emperours Councell. But to determine in any matter criminal, or to doe execution vpon the partie offending, is more then their Commission will allow them to doe.

Thirdly, if there bee any publicke service to be done within that Province, (as the publishing of any Law, or coming together, by way of Proclamation, collecting of taxes and impositions for the Emperour, murthering of Soldiers, and sending them forth at the day, and to the place assigned by the Emperour or his Councell) all these and such like pertayne to their charge.

Duke and Dyack: many of them vnder officers and Spunges preferred againe.

These Dukes and *Dyacks* are appointed to their place by the Emperour himselfe, and are changed ordinarily at every yeere end, except vpon some speciall liking or fure, the time be prorogued for a yeere or two more. They are men of themselves of no credit, nor fauour with the people where they gouerne, being neither borne, nor brought up among them, nor yet hauing inheritance of their owne there, or else where. Only of the Emperour they haue for that sake them more suspected and odious to the people, because being so bare, and committing feild and hungry vpon them lightly every yeere, they racke and spoyle them without due regard of Justice or Conscience. Which is easily tolerated by the chiefe Officers of the *Chetfirds*, to the end they may spoyle them againe, and haue a better booke when they call them to account: which

which commonly they doe at the end of their service, making an advantage of their iniustice and oppression ouer the poore people. There are few of them but they come to the *Peskyk* or Whip when their time is ended, which themselves for the most part doe make account of. And therefore they furnish themselves with all the spoyle they can for the time of their Government, that they may haue for both turnes, as well for the Emperour and Lord of the *Chetfird*, as to referre some good part for themselves.

They that are appointed to gouerne abroad, are men of this qualitie: faine that in the foure border Townes that are of greatest importance, are let men of more speciall valour and trust, to be in every Towne. Whereof one is euer of the Emperours priue Councell. These foure border Townes are, *Soumouk, Volsky, Novogrod*, and *Asan*, whereof three lie towards the *Polonian* and *Souden*, one bordereth fure off vpon the *Chern Tatar*. These haue larger commission then the other Dukes of the Provinces that I spake of before, and may doe execution in criminal matters. Which is thought behoofull for the Common-wealth: for incident occasions that may happen vpon the borders that are fure off, and may not stay for direction, about any current and particular matter from the Emperour and his Councell. They are changed every yeere (except as before) and haue for their stipend 700. Rubbels a yeere he that hath most: some haue but 400. Many of these places that are of greatest importance, and almost the whole Country is managed at this time, by the *Godones* and their Clients.

The Citie of *Moske* (that is the Emperours Seat) is gouerned altogether by the Emperours 20 Councell. All matters there both ciuill and criminal, are heard and determined in the feuerall Courts, held by some of the said Councell, that reside there all the yeere long.

Only for their ordinary matters (as Buildings, Reparations, keeping of their Streets decent and cleane, Collections, leuying of Taxes, Impositions and such like) are appointed, two Gentlemen, called *Dyacks* or Secretaries, who hold a Court together for the ordering of such matters. This is called the *Zemskyk* house. If any Townsmen suspect his seruant of theft or like matter, hither he may bring him to haue him examined vpon the *Peskyk*, or other court. Besides these two Gentlemen, and Secretaries that order the whole Citie, there are *Starosts* or Aldermen for every feuerall Companie. The Alderman hath his *Sweky* or Constable, and the Constable hath certayne *Deertsky* or Deacons vnder him, which haue the courtship of 30 ten households a piece, whereby every disorder is sooner spied, and the common service hath the quicker dispatch. The whole number of Citizens poore and rich are reduced into Companies. The chiefe Officers (as the *Dyack* and Gentlemen) are appointed by the Emperour himselfe, the *Starost* by the Gentlemen and *Dyacks*, the *Sweky* by the *Starost* or Alderman, and the *Deertsky* by the Constables.

This manner of government of their Provinces and Townes, if it were as well set for the giuing of justice indifferently to all sorts, as it is to prevent innovations, by keeping of the Nobilitie within order, and the Commons in subiection, it might seeme in that kind to be no bad nor vnpolitike way, for the contrayning of so large a Common-wealth, of the breadth and length as is the Kingdom of *Russia*. But the oppression and slavery is so open, and so great, that a man would marvell, how the Nobilitie and People should suffer themselves to be brought vnder it, while they had any means to auoid and repulse it: or being so strengthened as it is at this present, how the Emperours themselves can be content to preside the same, with so open iniustice and oppression of their Subiects, being themselves of a *Sweky* profession: By this it appeareth how hard a matter it were to alter the state of the *Russe* Government, as now it standeth.

The Emperours of *Russia* giue the name of Councellour to diuers of their chiefe Nobilitie, rather for honours sake, then for any vse they make of them about their matters of State. These are seldome or neuer called to any publicke confutation. They which are of his speciall and priue Councell indeed (whom he vieth daily and ordinarily for all publicke matters pertaining to the State) haue the addition of *Dumoy*, and are named *Dumoy boiers*, or Lords of the Councell, their Office or Sitting *Banishin dumoy*.

Their names at this present are these in their order. First, *Knez Feoder Iuanovich Meshchislky*. 2. *Knez Iuan Michailovich Glauky*. 3. *Knez Vasilie Iuanovich Sucky Scopin*. (These three are accounted to be of greater birth then wisdom, taken in (as may seeme) for that end, rather to furnish the place with their honours and presence, then with their aduise or counsell.) 4. *Knez Vasilie Iuanovich Sucky*, thought to be more wise then the other of his name. 5. *Knez Feoder Michailovich*. 6. *Knez Michail Romanovich Trombetsky*. 7. *Knez Demetrie Iuanovich Romanovich Trombetsky*. 8. *Knez Andrey Gregorovich Carake*. 9. *Knez Demetrie Iuanovich Fajfemich*. 10. *Knez Feoder Iuanovich Fajfemich*. 11. *Baden Iuanovich Saborne*. 12. *Knez Iuan Fajfemich*. 13. *Knez Feoder Demetrich Shkifene*. 14. *Knez Feoder Michailovich Troy*. 15. *Iuan Emtierky*. 16. *Demetrie Iuanovich Godone*. 17. *Borris Federemich Godone*, brother to the Emperre. 18. *Stephan Fajfemich Godone*. 19. *Gregorie Fajfemich Godone*. 20. *Iuan Fajfemich*

The government of *Moske*.

An hard matter to alter the State of *Russia*.

chap. 11. Of the Emperours Councell.

The number and names of the Councellours of State.

Four Secre-
taries.

Vasilovich Gidomov. 21. Feodor Sheremietov. 22. Andriev Petrovich Chiglenina. 23. Ignat Petrovich Tarflov. 24. Roman Michailovich Pena. 25. Demostrey Ivanovich Cherenjov. 26. Roman Vasilovich Alferjov. 27. Andriev Shalcalov. 28. Vasilie Shalcalov. 29. Elen. 30. Drezben Penelov. 31. Zapon Abramov.

The four last of these are called *Dumny deatky* or *Lord-Secretaries*. These are all of the Emperours privie Council, though but few of them are called to any consultation, for that all matters are audited and determined upon by *Borisi Federovich Gidomov* brother to the Imperial, with some few or six more whom it pleaseth him to call. If they come, they are rather to hear, then to give counsel, and doe to demene themselves. The matters occurrent which are of State done within the Realme, are informed them at the fittings by the Lords of the fourte *Chetfirds*, or *Tetrarches*. Whereof mention is made in the Chapter concerning the Governement of their Provinces. Who bring in all such Letters as they receive from the Dukes, *Dyeds*, Captaines, and other Officers of the Cite and Castles pertaining to their feuerall *Quartir* or *Chetfird*, with other advertisements, and informe the Council of them.

The like is done by the chiefe Officer of every feuerall Office of Record: who may come into the Council-chamber, and informe them, as occasion incident to his Office doth require. Besides matters of State, they consider of many private Causes, informed by the way of supplication in very great numbers. Whereof some they entertayne and determine, as the Cause or course of Law. Their ordinary dayes for their sitting are, Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays. Their time of meeting is commonly seuen of the clocke in the morning. If there be any extraordinary occasion, that requieth consultation on some other day, they have warning by the Clerke of the Council, called *Dorofey Bulbov*, who receiveth order from the *Referade*, or High-Countable of the Realme, to call them together at the time appointed.

Chetf. 12.
Of the Emperours Customs and other Revenues.
The Offices of Receipt.
The Steward Receiver of the Crowne-land Rents.

For the receiving of Customs, and other Rents belonging to the Crowne, there are appointed divers *Vnder-officers*, which deliver over the same into the head *Treasurie*. The first, is the Office of *Dvorofica* or *Steward of the household*. The second is, the Office of the *Chetfird*, which I comprehend vnder one, though it be divided into foure feuerall parts, as was said before. The third is called, *Bulsha Prechoda*, or the great Income.

As touching the first, which is the Office of the *Steward*, it receiveth all the Rents of the Emptayneth in fix and thirtie Townes, which they call, *Vasnia*. The *Vasnia* or Crown-land containeth the chiefe that yeld the greatest Rents are these: *Alexandrovsk, Cerkolsk, Orsk, Silinsk, Dmitriksk, Moskalovsk, Charsk, Samaisk, Stravrovsk, Bratsk, &c.* The Inhabitants or *Oboroty* of these and the other Townes, pay some Rent money, some other Rent duties (called *vitall*, as Oxen, Sherpe, Swannes, Geefe, Hares, Hennes, wilde Fowle, Fish, Hay, Wood, Honey, &c. Some are bound to lowe for the Emperours prouision certaine acres of ground, and to make the Corn ready for his use: hauing for it an allowance of certaine acres of ground for their owne proper use.

This prouision for the household, specially of Graine sowed by the Tenants, is a great deale more then is spent in his house, or in other allowance sowed out in livery, or for the Emperours honour, called *Schalamazy*: for which use there is bestowed very much, both in Graine and other *Vitall*. This surplus of prouision is sold by the Steward to the best hand, and runneth into the Emperours *Treasurie*.

In the time of *Iuan Vasilovich*, father to this Emperour (who kept a more Princely and bountifull house, then the Emperour now doth) this ouerplus of Graine, and other incomes into the Stewards Office, yielded to his *Treasurie* not past 60000. Rubbels yearly, but riseth now by good husbanding of the Steward *Gregory Vasilovich Gidomov*, to 250000. Rubbels a yeere. And by this by the means of the Emptreffe, and her kindred, (specially *Borisi Federovich Gidomov*) that riseth out of the Rent prouision, is employed to the payment of the wages of his household officers, which are very many attending at home, and purveying abroad.

The second Office of Receipt, is called the *Chetfird*, (being diuided into foure feuerall parts, as Shires contayned within their feuerall *Chetfirds*, have this also as a part of their Office, to receive the *Tagla* and *Podar* belonging to the Emperour, that riseth out of the four *Chetfirds*, or *Quarters*. The *Tagla* is a yearly Rent or imposition raised vpon every *shir* or measure of Graine, that groweth within the Land, gathered by *svorne men*, and brought into the Office. The *Podar* is an ordinary Rent of money imposed vpon every *Soake*, or *Hundred* within the whole Realme.

This *Tagla* and *Podar* bring in yearly to the Offices of the *Chetfirds* a great summe of money:

The Office of
Chetfird.Tagla and Po-
dar.

as may appeare by the particulars heere set downe. The Towne and Province of *Volska* pay yearly for *Tagla* and *Podar* about 18000. Rubbels. *Nougorod* 35000. Rubbels. *Tartchev* and *Orsk* 8000. Rubbels. *Kazan* 20000. Rubbels. *Moscow* 12000. Rubbels. *Volgograd* and *Dnyev* 8000. Rubbels. *Volgoda* 12000. Rubbels. *Cazan* 18000. Rubbels. *Ujling* 30000. Rubbels. *Koslov* 50000. Rubbels. The Cite of *Moskva* 40000. Rubbels. *Sibirskiy* 20000. Rubbels. *Chetfird* 12000. Rubbels. The totall amounteth to 400000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere, which is brought in yearly the first of September, that is reckoned by them the first day of the yeere.

The third (that is called the *Bulsha Prechod*, or great Income) receiveth all the Customs that are gathered out of all the principall Townes and Cities within the whole Realme. Besides the fees and other duties which rise out of diuers smaller Offices, which are all brought into this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*. The Townes of most trade, that doe yeld greatest Customs, are these here set downe. *Moskva*, *Smolensk*, *Volska*, *Nougorod Velika*, *Stravrovsk*, *Tartchev*, *Orsk*, *Tartchev*, *Chetfird*, *Nesna Nougorod*, *Cazan*, *Volgoda*. This Customs out of the great Townes is therefore more certaine, and safe to be reckoned, because it is let and rated precisely what they shall pay for the Customs of the yeere. Which needs must be paid into the said Office, though they receive not so much. If it fall out to be more, it runneth all into the Emperours *aduantage*.

The Customs at *Moskva* for every yeere, is 12000. Rubbels. The Customs of *Smolensk* 8000. *Volska* 12000. Rubbels. *Nougorod Velika* 6000. Rubbels. *Stravrovsk* by Sale and other common-
20 duties 18000. Rubbels. *Tartchev* 800. Rubbels. *Orsk* 700. Rubbels. *Tartchev* 2500. Rubbels. *Chetfird* 1800. Rubbels. *Nesna Nougorod* 7000. Rubbels. *Cazan* 11000. Rubbels. *Volgoda* 2000. Rubbels. The Customs of the rest that are Townes of trade, is sometimes more, sometimes lesse, as their traffike and dealings with commodities to and fro, falleth out for the yeere.

This may be said for certaine, that the three Tables of Receipts belonging to this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, when they receive least, account for thus much, *viz.* The first table, 160000. Rubbels. The second table, 50000. Rubbels. The third 70000. Rubbels. So that there cometh into the Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, at the least reckoning (as appeareth by their Bookes of Customs) out of these and other Townes, and maketh the summe of 340000. Rubbels a yeere. Besides this Customs out of the Townes of trade, there is received by this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, the yearly Rent of the common Bath-houses, and Cabackes or drinking houses, which payntne to the Emperour. Which (though it be vncertaine for the iust summe, yet because it is certaine, and an ordinary matter, that the *Ruff* will bathe himselfe as well within as without) yeldeth a large Rent to the Emperours *Treasurie*.

There is besides, a certaine Muld or Penaltie that groweth to the Emperour out of every Iudgement or Sentence, that passeth in any of his Courts of Record in all Ciuit matters. This Penaltie or Muld is twentie *Dinoges* or Pence vpon every Rubbel or Marke, and so ten in the hundred. Which is paid by the partie that is comitt by Law. He hath besides for every name contained in the Writs that passe out of these Courts, five *Altens*. An *Altens* is five Pence sterling, or thereabouts. This is made good out of the Office, whence the *Writ* is taken forth. Thence it goeth to the Office that keepeth the lesser Seale, where it payeth as much more to the Emperours use. This riseth commonly to three thousand Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts. Farther also out of the Office of *Roskova*, where all felonies are tryed, is received for the Emperour the halfe part of Felons goods, the other halfe goeth the one part to the Informer, the other to the Officers.

All this is brought into the Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, or Great income. Besides the ouerplus or remainder that is faued out of the Land-rents allotted to diuers other Offices: as namely, to the Office called *Referade*, which hath Landis and Rents assigned vnto it to pay the yearly salaries of the Souldiers, or Horsemen, that are kept full in pay. Which in time of peace, when they rest at home not employed in any seruice, is commonly out of the Office, and payed them by halves, sometimes not the halfe: so that the remainder out of the *Referade* Office that is layd into the Emperours *Treasurie*, cometh for the most part every yeere to 250000. Rubbels.

In like sort (though not so much) is brought in the surplus out of the *Stratelsky* Offices which hath proper Landis for the payment of the *Stratelsky* men or Gunners, as well those at *Moskva*, that are of the Emperours Guard (12000 in ordinary) as on the borders, and other garrison Townes and Lands to maintain the fortaine mercenary Souldiers, as *Poles*, *Swedes*, *Dutch*, *Scotts*, &c. So out of the Office of *Pozharsky*, (which hath Landis and Rents allotted for the prouision of munition, great Ordnance, Powder, Shot, Saltpeetre, Brimstone, Lead, and such like) there is left somewhat at the yeeres end, that runneth into the *Treasurie*. All these bring into the Office of *Bulsha Prechod* that which remaineth in their hand at the yeeres end. Whence it is delivered into the Emperours *Treasurie*. So that the whole summe that groweth to this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, or the great Income (as appeareth by the Bookes of this said Office) amounteth to 800000. Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts.

Yeere begins with December.
The Office of *Bulsha Prechod* or great Income.

The Emperours Customs.

The whole receipt of the *Bulsha Prechod* or great Income.

Remnant of the *Industial* Offices.
Maiden or *Excheq.*

The Emperours
treasure-house
within his Ca-
stle of Mosky.

The sum of the
Emperours rent
money.

All these Offices, to wit, the Office of the Steward, the four *Chefsfirs*, and the *Bultha Preced* deliver in their receipts to the head treasure, that lyeth within the Emperours Loue or Castle as the *Adelphs*. Where lyeth all his Monies, Jewels, Crowns, Scepters, Plate, and such like, the *Chefs*, *Hutcher*, and *Bags* being signed by the Emperours themselves with their owne seale, Though at this time the *L. Boris Federowich Gdanow*, his seale and over-sight, supplie for the Emperour, as in all other things. The vender *Cher* at this time is one *Strapan Vasilowich Gdanow*, Cousin germane to the said *Borris*, who hath two Clerkes allowed to serve vnder him in the Office.

The sum that
groweth to the
Emperours Treas-
ury in money
only, for currey
yeere.

1. Out of the Stewards Office above the expence of his house 130000. Rubbels. Sum 1430000. Rubbels clerke, besides all charges for his house and ordinary salaries of his Souldiers other-
2. Out of the four *Chefsfirs* for Snake and Head money, 400000. Rubbels. wife discharged.
3. Out of the *Bultha Preced* Office, or great Income for Customs and other Rents, 800000. Rubbels.

But besides this revenue that is paid all in money to the Emperours treasure, he receiveth yearly in Furres, and other duties to a great value out of *Siberia*, *Pechora*, *Permia*, and other places, which are sold or bartered away for other forraigne commodities to the *Turkys*, *Persians*, *Armenians*, *Georgians* and *Boungarian* Merchants, that trade with in his Countries, besides others of Christendome. What it maketh in the whole (though the value cannot bee let downe precisely, as being a thing casuall as the commodity may be got) it may be guessed by that which was gathered the last yeere out of *Siberia* for the Emperours Customs, viz. 466. Timber of which 20 be, five Timber of Martonpes, 80. blacke Furs, besides others commodities.

To them may be added their leasuries, and confiscations upon such as are in displeasure, which resist to a great summe, besides other extraordinary Impositions, and exactions done upon their Officers, Monasteries, &c. not for any apparant necessity, or use of the Prince, or Commonwealth, but of will and custom: yet with some pretence of policie. To this purpose the by-word was vied by the late Emperour *Iuan Vasilowich*: *That his people were like to his beard. The softer shaven, the thicker it would grow. Or like sheep, that must needs bee shorne once a yeere at the least: so keepe them from being over-laden with their wooll.*

Vnderstand
these volatile
courtesies of the
times when the
Auctor writ.
Gods disfigure-
ment hath been
heavy to
sleep such ill
for a among
them.

MEANS serving to which purpose were to prevent no extortions, exactions, or briberies, whatsoever, done upon the Commons by their Dukes, *Diacks*, or other Officers in their Prouinces: but to suffer them to goe on till their time be expired, and to iucke themselves full. Then to call them to the *Pranagh* (or whip) for their behauiour, and to beat out of them all, or the most part of the booty, (as the Honey from the Bee) which they haue wrung from the Commons, and to turne it into the Emperours Treasury, but neuer any thing backe againe to the right owners, how great or euident fouer the iniurie be. To this end the needie Dukes, and *Diacks*, that are sent into their Prouinces, serue the time very well, being changed so often (to wit) once a yeere: where in respect of their owne, and the qualitie of the people (as before was said) they might be continued for some longtime, without all feare of innovation. For coming still fresh vpon the Commons, they sucke more eagerly like *Therius* the Emperours Flie, that came new still vpon an old fore. To whom he was wont to compare his *Prators*, and other Prouincial Officers.

2. Yet they did make of these Officers (that haue robbed their people) sometimes a publicke example, if any be more notorious then the rest: the Emperour thus seeming to dislike the oppressions done to his people, and transferring the fault to his ill Officers. As among diuers other, was done by the late Emperour *Iuan Vasilowich* to a *Diack* in one of his Prouinces: that (besides many other extortions and briberies) had taken a goole readie dress full of money. The man was brought to the Market-place in *Mosky*. The Emperour himselfe present made an Oration. *These, good people, are they that would eate you vpon the bread, &c.* Then asked he his *Polachers* or Executioners, who could cut vp a Goole, and commanded one of them first to cut off his legs about the middle of the shin, then the armes about his elbows (asking him fill if *Goos-fish were good meat*) in the end to chop off his head: that he might haue the right fashion of a Goole readie dress'd.

3. They make an open shew of want, when any great Taxe or Imposition is towards. As was done by this Emperour *Theodore Iuanowich*, by the aduice of some about him at the beginning of his raigne: when being left very rich (as was thought) by his father, he sold most of his Plate, and stamped some into Coyne: that he might seeme to want money. Whereupon presently out came a Taxation.

4. They suffer their subjects to giue freely to the Monasteries (which for their superstition go very many doo, specially in their last Wills) and to lay vp their money and substance in them, to keepe it more safe. Which all is permitted them without any restraint or prouiso, as was and is in some Countries of Christendome. Whereby their Monasteries grow to exceeding great wealth. This they doe to haue the money of the Realme better stored together, and more ready

die for their hand, when they list to take it. Which many times is done without any noyse: the Friars being content rather to part from somewhat (as the increase groweth) then to lose all at once. Which they were made to doubt of in the other Emperours dayes.

To this end *Iuan Vasilowich* late Emperour vied a very strange practise, that few Princes would haue done in their greatest extremities. Hee resigned his Kingdome to one *Felica Knew Simoen*, the Emperours sonne of *Casau*: as though hee meant to draw himselfe from all publicke doings to a quiet private life. Towards the end of the yeere, he caused this new King to call in all Charters granted to Bishops, Priests, and Monasteries, which they had enioyed many hundred yeeres before. Which were all cancelled. This done (as in dislike of the fact & of the mis-gouernment of the new King) hee refused his Scepter, and so was content (as in fauour to the Church and Religious men) that they should renew their Charters, and take them of himselfe: referring and annexing to the Crowne so much of their lands, as himselfe thought good.

By this practise he wrung from the Bishops, Priests, and Monasteries (besides the lands which he annexed to the Crowne) an huge masse of money. From some forie, from some fittie, from some an hundred thousand Rubbels. And this as well for the increase of his Treasury, as to abate the ill opinion of his hard gouernment, by a shew of worke in another man. Wherein his spirit is to be noted: that being hated of his subjects (as himselfe knew well enough) yet should venture such a practise to let another in his saddle, that might haue rid away with his horse, while himselfe walked by on foot.

5. They send their Messengers into the Prouinces or Shires, where the special commodities of their Countrey grow, as Furres, Wax, Honey, &c. There to foretell and ingross sometime one whole countrey, sometime two or more, taking them at small prices what themselves list, and selling them againe at an exorbitant rate to their owne Merchants, and to Merchants strangers. If they refuse to buy them, then to force them vnto it. The like is done when any commodity either nature or forraigne (as Cloth of Gold, Broad-cloth, &c.) thus engrossed by the Emperour, and receiued into his treasury happeneth to decay, or marre by long lying, or some other casualty. Which is forced vpon the Merchants to be bought by them as the Emperours price, whether they will or no. This last yeere of 1589, was engrossed all the Wax of the Countrey: so that none might deale with that commodity, but the Emperour only.

6. To take vp and engross in like sort sometime forraigne commodities (as Silkes, Cloth, Lead, Pearle, &c.) brought into his Realme by *Turkys* Merchants, *Armenians*, *Boungarians*, *Poles*, *English*, and other. And then to force his Merchants to buy them of his Officers at his owne price.

7. They make a Monopolly for the time of such commodities as are paid him for Rent, or Customs, and to inbalance the price of them, as Furres, Come, Wood, &c. What time none must sell of the same kinde of commodity, till the Emperours be all sold. By this means he maketh of his Rent, Come, and other commodities as vicissually (as before was said) about 30000. Rubbels or Markes a yeere. Of his Rent, Wood, Hay, &c. 30000. Rubbels, or thereabouts.

8. In every great Towne of his Realme he hath a *Caback* or other drinking house, where is sold *Aqua-vita* (which they call *Ruff Wine*) Mead, Beere, &c. Out of these he receiveth Rent that amounteth to a great summe of money. Some yeere 800. some 1000. some 2000. some 3000. Rubbels a yeere. Wherein besides the base and dishonourable means to encrease his treasury, many foule faults are committed. The poore Labouring man, and Artificer, many times spendeth all from his wife and children. Some vie to lay in twentie, thirtie, fortie Rubbels, or more into the *Caback*, and vow themselves to the pot, till all that be spent. And this (as he will say) for the honour of *Hopodare*, or the Emperour. You shall haue many there that haue drunke all away to the very skin, and so walke naked (whom they call *Nags*). While they are in the *Caback*, none may call them forth whatsoever cause there be, because he hindereth the Emperours revenue.

9. Some of his *Bisshops*, or *Nobles* of his Court, (whom he vseth vpon trust) that haue houses in the *Mosky*, fine themselves robbed: Then they send for the *Zemsky men*, or Aldermen of the Citie, and command them to finde out the robbery: In default of not finding it, *prane* or cease the Citie for their misgouernment in 8000. 9000. or 10000. Rubbels at a time. This is many times practised.

10. In these exactions to shew their Soueraignty, sometime they haue bene vied very plaine, and yet strange cauations. As was that of *Iuan Vasilowich*, father to this Emperour, after this sort. He sent into *Permia* for certain loads of Cedar wood, wher he knew that none grew in that Countrey. The inhabitants returned answer they could finde none there. Whereupon hee seized their Countrey in 12000. Rubbels, as if they concealed the commodity of purpose. Again, he sent to the Citie of *Mosky* to prouide for him a *Caback*, or measure full of lue Fleas for a medicine. They returned answer that the thing was impossible. And if they could get them, yet they could not measure them, for leaping out. Whereupon hee *prane*, or beat out of their thins 7000. Rubbels for a Mult. By like cauation hee extorted for his Nobilitie 30000. Rubbels, because he missed of his game, when hee went a hunting for the Hare:

as if their hunting and murdering of Hares had been the cause of it. Which the Nobilitie (as the manner is) *Praised* presently againe vpon the *Manfick*, or common people of the Country.

Chap. 13.
Of the state of
the Common
people, or
vulgar sort of
the people in
the Country of
Russia.
The rule
and miserable
estate of the
Russia people.

Mischiefe
of
their
manners
and
men.

The condition of the Commons and vulgar sort of people, may partly be understood by that which already hath been said concerning the manner of their Government, and the state of the Nobilitie, with the ordering of their Prouinces, and chiefe Townes of the Land. And reckoned in no degree at all, nor have any suffrage nor place in their *Zabore*, or high Court of Parliament, where their Lawes and publique Orders are concluded vpon. Againie into what seruile condition their libertie is brought, not onely to the Prince, but to the Nobles, and Gentlemen of the Country (who themselves also are but seruile, specially of late yeeres) it may further appeare by their owne acknowledgments in their Applications, and other writings to any of the Nobles or chiefe Officers of the Emperours. Wherein they name and subscribe themselves *Kolopey*, that is, their Villaines, or Bond-slaves: as they of the Nobilitie doe vnto the Emperour. This may truly be said of them, that there is no seruant nor bond-slave more awed by his Master, nor kept downe in a more seruile subjection, then the poore people are, and that vniuersally, not onely by the Emperour, but by his Nobilitie chiefe Officers and Souldiers. So that when a poore *Manfick* meeteth with any of them vpon the high way, hee must turne himselfe about, as not daring to looke him on the face, and fall downe with knocking of his head to the very ground, as he doth vnto his Idoll.

Secondly, concerning the Lands, goods, and other possessions of the Commons, they answer the Name and lye *Common* indeed, without any fence against the rapine and Spoyle, not onely of the highest, but of his Nobilitie, Officers, and Souldiers. Besides the Taxes, Customs, Seazures, and other publique exactions doe vpon them by the Emperour, they are so racked and pulled by the Nobles, Officers, and Messengers, sent abroad by the Emperour in his publique affaires, specially in the *Tammes* (as they call them) and chorow faire Townes, that you shall haue many all into other places, by reason of the extreme violence, and exactions doe vpon them. So that reckoning little more then an hundred miles *English*, (that is in little fittie *Dariemes* or Villages at the least, some half a mile, some a mile long (that land vacante) and desolate without any inhabitant. The like is in all other places of the Realme, as is sayd by those that haue better trauelled the Country then my selfe had time, or occasion to doe.

The great oppression our poore Commons, made them to haue no courage in following their Trades: for the more they haue, the more danger they are in, not onely of their goods, but of their liues also. And if they haue any thing, they conceale it all they can, sometimes conveying it into Monasteries, sometimes hiding it vnder the ground, and in Woods, as men are wont to doe where they are in feare of forraigne inuasion. In somuch that many times you shall see them afraid to be knowne to any *Boiaren* or Gentleman, of such commodities as they haue to sell. I haue seene them sometimes when they haue layd open their Commodities as they haue (as their principall Purres and such like) to looke still behind them, and towards euery doore as men in some feare, that looked to be set vpon, and surprisid by some Enemie. Whereof asking the cause, I found it to be this, that they haue doubted least some Nobleman or *Snowdostoy* of the Emperour had bene in company, and to layd a trayne for them to pray vpon their Commodities perforce.

This made the people (though otherwise hardened to beare any toyle) to giue themselves much to Idleness and Drinking: as passing for no more, then from hand to mouth. And herof it cometh that the Commodities of *Russia* (as was sayd before) as Waxe, Tallow, Hides, Flax, Hemp, &c. grow and goe abroad in farre less plenty then they were wont to doe: because the people being oppressed and spoiled of their gettings, are discouraged from their labours. Yet this is one thing is much to be noted, that in all this oppression there were three brethren Merchants, of late that traded together with one Stocke in common, that were wound to be worth 300000 Rubbels in money, besides Lands, Carrels, and other Commodities. Which may partly be imputed to their dwellings farre off from the eye of the Court, *viz.* in *Wichida*, one thousand miles from *Moske* and more. The same are sayd by those that knew them, to haue lye on worke all the yeere long ten thousand men in making of Sale, carriages by Cart, and Boat, hewing of Wood and such like: besides fye thousand Bond-slaves at the least, to inhabit and till their Land. They had also their Physicians, Surgeons, Apothecaries, and all manner of Artificers of *Donteb*, and others, belonging vnto them. They are sayd to haue payed to the Emperour for Custome to the summe of three and twentie thousand Rubbels a yeere, (for which cause they were so suffered to enioy their Trade) besides the maintayning of certayne Garrisons on the borders of *Siberia*, which were neare vnto them. Wherin the Emperour was content to vie their purse, till such time as they had got ground in *Siberia*, and made it habitable, by burning and cutting downe Woods, from *Wichida* to *Perra*, about one thousand versts, and then tooke it all away from them

Rich Russian
Merchants.

them perforce. But this is the end being enioyed and disloynd, as a matter not standing with their policie, to haue any so great, specially a *Manfick*, the Emperour began first to pull from them by pieces, sometimes (when thousand Rubbels at a time, sometimes more: till in the end their Sonnes that now are, are well as of their Stocke, and haue but small part of their Fathers substance: the rest being drawne all into the Emperours treasurie. Their names were *Iacome*, *Gregorie*, and *Simon*, the Sonnes of *Ongke*.

For the qualitie of their people otherwise, though these furnish so be in them some aptnesse to receive any Art (as appeareth by the natural wits in the new, and very children) yet they excell in no kinde of common Art, much lesse in any learning, or military profession: which they are kept from of purpose, as they are also from all military profession: that they may bee fitter for the seruile condition, wherein now they are, and haue neither reason, nor valour to attempt inuasion. For this purpose also they are kept from reasoning, that they may learne nothing, nor see the fashions of other Countries abroad. You shall seldom see a *Russe* a traueller, except hee bee with some Embassadour, or that hee make an escape out of his Country. Which hardly he can doe, by reason of the borders that are watched so narrowly, and the punishment for any such attempt, which is death, if hee bee taken, and all his goods confiscate. Onely they learne to write, and to read, and that very few of them. Neither doe they suffer any stranger willingly to come into their Realme, out of any ciuill Countie, for the same cause, farther then needfull of vttering their commodities, and taking in of foraine doles enforce them to doe.

And therefore this yeere 1580. they consulted about the removing of all Merchants strangers to the border Townes, to abide and haue their residence there, and to bee more wary in admitting other strangers leaues, into the inland parts of the Realme. For the same purpose also they are kept within the bounds of their degree by the Lawes of their Country: to that the sonne of a *Manfick*, Artificer, or Husbandman, is euer a *Manfick*, Artificer, &c. and hath no means to aspire any higher: except buying, learned to write and read, hee attayne to the preferment of a *Prick*, or *Dyack*. Their Language is all one with the *Slauonians*, which is thought to haue bene deriued from the *Russe* Tongue, rather then the *Russe* from the *Slauonians*. For the people called *Scelapi*, are knowne to haue had their beginning out of *Scelania*, and to haue termed themselves of their Conquest *Scelapius*, (that is) Famous or Glorious, of the word *Scelapi*, which in the *Russe* and *Slauonian* Tongue signifieth as much as *Glorie*, or *Fame*. Though afterwards being subdued and trod vpon by diuers Nations, the *Italian*, their Neighbour, haue turned the word to a contrary signification, and termed euery Seruant or Peasant by the name of *Scelapi*, as did the *Spaniards* by the *Gates* and *Synaps*, for the same reason. The *Russe* Character or Letter is, no other then the *Greek*, a little somewhat altered.

Concerning their Trades, Diet, apparell, and such like, it is to be noted in a feewall Chapter of their priuate behaviour. This order that bindeth euery man to keepe his rank, and feewall subiection, wherein his fore-fathers liued before him, is more meet to keepe the Subiects in a seruile ayre, or excellent qualitie in Nobilitie or Commons: as hauing no further reward nor prestate, but rather procuring more danger to themselves, the more they excell in any noble or principall qualitie.

Their Courts of Ciuill Iustice for matters of Contract, and other of like sort, are of three kinds, the one being subiect vnto the other by way of appeal. The lowest Court (that seemeth to be appointed for some ease to the Subiects) is the Office of the *Gumny Starnit*, that signifieth an Alderman, and of the *Sotkiy Starnit*, or Bayliffe of the Soake or Hundred, whereof I spake before in the ordering of the Prouinces. These may end matters among their neighbours within their Soake, or feewall Hundred, where they are appointed vnder the Dukes and *Dyacks* of the Prouinces, to whom the parties may remove their matter, if they cannot be agreed by the said *Gumny*, or *Sotkiy Starnit*.

The second kepe in the head Townes of euery Prouince or Shire, by the said Dukes and *Dyacks*, that are Deputies to the foure Lords of the *Chefirds* (as before was said). From these Courts they may appeale, and remove their Suits to the chiefe Court, that is kept at the *Moske*, and *Dyack*, where are resident the Officers of the foure *Chefirds*. These are the chiefe Iudices, to whome euery of them in all Ciuill matters that grow within their feewall *Chefird* or Quarter, and may bee either commenced originally before them, or prosecuted out of the inferior Courts of the Shires by way of appeal.

Their commencing and proceeding in Ciuill actions is on this manner. First, the Plaintiff putteth vp his Supplication, wherein hee declareth the effect of his Cause, or wrong, done vnto him. Whereupon is granted vnto him a *Wepi*, or Warrant, which hee delivereth to the *Ryssk*, or Sergeant, to doe the arrest vpon the partie whom hee meaneth to implead. Who vpon the arrest

of the
plaintiff
must
take
care
that
the
arrest
be
well
done.

The
Iudice
of
the
Emperour
concerning
his
Iudice.

Slauonia
and
the
Language.

Chap. 14.
Of the public
like Iustice, and
manner of
proceeding in
Ciuill, and
Criminal
matters.

Court of
Ciuill
Iustice
three.
The
highest
Court
of
Matters.

Their
manner
of
proceeding
in
Ciuill
matters.

Horsemen in
continual pay
80000.Footmen in
continual pay
120000.Strangers
mercenaries
in pay 4000.The chiefe
Captaines or
Leaders.
1. The *Voynado*
or Generall.2. Lieutenant
generall.3. Marshalls of
the field, foure.4. Marshalls
Deputies 8.5. Coronels
Vnder-cap-
taines.6. Masters of
the Artillerie.

some what dangerous for some State, to haue so great forces vnder the command of Noblemen, to assemble euery yeere to one certaine place. But the matter is to be considered, as that no danger can grow to the Emperour, or his State by this means. First, Because these Noblemen are many, to wit, 1100. in all, and changed by the Emperour so oft as hee thinketh good. Secondly, Because they haue their liuinges of the Emperour, being otherwise but of very small Revenue, and receive this yearly pay of 40000. Rubbels, when it is presently to be paid forth againe to the Soldiers that are vnder them. Thirdly, Because for the most part they are about the Emperours person, being of his Counsell, either speciall, or at large. Fourthly, They are rather as Pay-masters, then Captaines to their Companies, themselves not going forth ordinarily to the warres, save when some of them are appointed by speciall order from the Emperour himselfe. So the whole number of Horsemen that are euer in a readinesse, and in continuall pay, are 80000. a few more or lesse.

If he haue need of a greater number (which seldom falleth out) then hee entertaineth of those *Sinaboiarsky*, that are out of pay, so many as he needeth: and if yet he want of his number, hee giueth charge to his Noblemen, that hold Lands of him, to bring into the field euery man a proportionable number of his seruants (called *Kolopshy*, such as till his Lands) with their furniture, according to the iust number that hee intendeth to make. Which, the seruice being done, presently lay in their weapons, and returne to their seruile occupations againe.

Of Footmen that are in continuall pay, he hath to the number of 120000. all Gunners, called *Streiffy*. Whereof 5000. are to attend about the Citie of *Moske*, or any other place where the Emperour shall abide, and 2000. (which are called *Stremanny*, *Streiffy*, or Gunners at the Stirr) about his owne person at the very Court or house where himselfe lodgeth. The rest are placed in his garrison Townes, till there be occasion to haue them in the field, and receive for their salarie or stipend euery man seven Rubbels a yeere, besides twelue measures, a peece of Rye, and Oats. Of mercenary Soldiers, that are strangers (whom they call *Nimfoly*) they haue at this time 4000. of *Poloniens*: of *Cherchelsky* (that are vnder the *Poloniens*) about 4000. whereof 3500. are abroad in his Garrisons: of *Dutches* and *Scots*, about 150: of *Greekes*, *Turkes*, *Danes*, and *Swedes*, all in one band, 100. or thereabouts. But these they vse only vpon the *Tartar* side, and against the *Siberians*: as they doe the *Tartar* Soldiers (whom they hire sometimes, but only for the present) on the other side against the *Poloniens* and *Swedes*: thinking it best so to lye to their seruice vpon the contrary border.

The chiefe Captaines or Leaders of these forces, according to their names and degrees, are these which follow. First, the *Voynado* *Bulbas*, that is, the *Great Captaine*, or *Lieutenant generall* vnder the Emperour. This commonly is one of the foure houses of the chiefe Nobilitie of the Land: but is chosen otherwise, as that he is of small valour or practise in Martiall matters, being thought to serue that turne to much the better, if he bring no other parts with him save the countenance of his Nobilitie, to be liked of by the Soldiers for that, and nothing else. For in this point they are very warie, that these two, to wit, Nobilitie and Power, meet not both in one, specially if they see withe some withall, or aptnesse for policie.

Their great *Voynado* or Generall at this present in their warres, is commonly one of these foure, *Knez Feodor Iuanovich Meshchery*, *Knez Iuan Michailovich Glimsky*, *Cherchabinsky*, and *Trigubetsky*, all of great Nobilitie, but of very iunple qualitie otherwise: though in *Glimsky* (as they say) there is somewhat more then in the rest. To make vp this defect in the *Voynado* or Generall, there is some other ioyued with him as Lieutenant generall, of farre lesse Nobilitie, but of more valour and experience in the warres then he, who ordereth all things that the other countenanceth. At this time their principall man, and most vsed in their warres, is one *Knez Demetrie Iuanovich Forefime*, an ancient and expert Captaine, and one that hath done great seruice (as they say) against the *Tartar*, and *Polonian*. Next vnder the *Voynado* and his Lieutenant generall, are foure others, that haue the marshalling of the whole Armie diuided among them, and may be called the Marshalls of the field.

Euery man hath his quarter, or fourth part vnder him: whereof the first is called, the *Prava* *Polisky*, or Right wing. The second is, the *Leany Polisky*, or Left wing. The third is, *Rusny Polisky*, or The broken band, because out of this there are chosen to feed abroad vpon any sudden exploit, or to make a rescue or supply, as occasion doth require. The fourth, *Surovody Polisky*, or The warding band. Euery one of these foure Marshalls haue two other vnder them (eight in all) that twice euery weeke at the least must mulier and traine their severall wings or bands, and hold and giue iustice for all fautes and disorders committed in the Campe.

And these eight are commonly chosen out of the humbled and ten (which I spake of before) that rescue and deliver the pay to the Soldiers. Vnder these eight are diuers other Captaines, as the *Gul any*, Captaines of thousands, five hundreds, and hundreds. The *Poyda Saitsky*, or 60 Captaines of fifties; and the *Dvorkitsky*, or Captaines of tentes.

Besides the *Voynado*, or Generall of the Armie, (spoken of before) they haue two other that beare the name of *Voynado*: whereof one is the Master of the great Ordnance (called *Neradna Voynado*) who hath diuers vnder-officers, necessary for that seruice. The other is called, the *Voynado*

Voynado Gulany, or the *Walking Captaine*, that hath allowed him 1000. good Horsemen of principall choice, to range and lye abroad, and hath the charge of the running Cattle, which we are to speake of in the Chapter following. All these Captaynes, and men of charge must once euery day report to the *Bulbas Voynado*, or Generall of the Armie, to know his pleasure, and to informe him if there be any requisite matter pertaining to their Office.

When Wars are towards (which they faile not of lightly euery yeere with the *Tartar*, and many times with the *Polonian* and *Sweden*, (the foure Lords of the *Cherbsky* send forth their Summons in the Emperours name, to all the Dukes and *Dyacks* of the Princes, to be proclaimed in the head Townes of euery Shire: that all the *Sinaboiarsky*, or Sonnes of Gentlemen make their repaire to such a border where the Service is to be done, at such a place, and by such a day, and there present themselves to such and such Captaynes. When they come to the place assigned them in the Summons or Proclamation, their names are taken by certayne Officers that haue Commision for that purpose from the *Rejsende*, or High Comptable as Clerkes of the Bands.

If any make default and faile at the day, he is mulcted, and punished very severely. As for the Generall and other chiefe Captaynes, they are sent thither from the Emperours owne hand, with such Commision and charge as he thinketh behoofull for the present seruice. When the Soldiers are assembled, they are reduced into their Bands, and Companies, vnder their severall Captaynes of tens, fifties, hundreds, thousands, &c. and these Bands into foure *Polisky* or *Legions* (but of farre greater numbers then the *Roman* Legions were) vnder their foure great Leaders, which also haue the authoritie of Marshalls of the field (as was laid before).

Concerning their Armour they are but slightly appointed. The common Horse-man hath nothing else but his Bow in his Case vnder his right arme, and his Quiger and Sword hanging on their Horse side. The vnder Captaynes will haue commonly some peece of Armour besides, as a shirt of Maille, or such like. The Generall with the other chiefe Captaynes and men of Nobilitie, will haue their Horse very richly furnished, their Saddles of Cloth of Gold, their Bridles faile bound and tasselled with Gold, and Silke fringed, beudded with Pearle and Precious stones, themselves in very faire Armour, which they call *Bulany*, made of faire shining Steele, yet couered commonly with Cloth of Gold, and edged round about with Armine Furre, his Spere Helmet on his head of a very great price, his Sword, Bow, and Arrows at his side, his Staffe in his hand, with another Helmet, and his *Shelapara*, or Horse-mans Scepter carried before him. Their Swords, Bowes, and Arrows are of the *Turkish* fashion. They practise like the *Tartar* so shoot forwards and backwards, as they lye and retire.

The *Streiffy* or Footman hath nothing but his Peace in his hand, his striking Hatchet at his backe, and his Sword by his side. The stocke of his Peace is not made Calceuer wide, but with a plane and strait stocke (some what like a Fowling-peece) the Barrell is rudely and vnartificially made, very heauie, yet shooteth but a very small Bullet. As for the prouision of victualle to serue his turne for foure moneths, and if need require to giue order for more to be brought vnto him to the Campe from his Tenant that tilleth his Land, or some other place. One foure hand. Though the chiefe Captaynes and others of account carry Tents with them after the fashion of ours with some better prouision of victualle then the rest. They bring with them some store of Meale, which they temper with water, and so make it into a Ball, or (small lumpes some other flesh or fish dried, after the *Dutch* manner. If the *Russe* Soldier were as hardie to well trayned for his warres, as he is indifferent for his Lodging and Dyet, he would faare exy Warlike soldiers. Which cometh partly of his seruile condition, that will not suffer any great courage or valour to grow in him. Partly for lacke of due honour and reward, which hee hath no great hope of whatsoever seruice or execution hee doe.

The *Russe* trusteth rather to his number, then to the valour of his Soldiers, or good ordering of his Forces. Their marching or leading is without all order, save that the fore *Polisky* or Legions, (whereinto their Armie is diuided) keepe themselves severall vnder their Ensignes, and to thrust all on together in a hurrie, as they are directed by their Generall. Their Ensigne is the Image of Saint George. The *Bulbas Dvorkany* or chiefe Horse-men, haue euery man a small Drumme of Brasse at his Saddle-bow, which hee striketh when hee giueth the charge, or onlie.

The walking
Captaine.chap. 16.
Of their mustering, and lo-
ying of forces, manner of
Armour, and prouision of
victualle for the
warre.
Their order
for mustering.The Horse-
mans Furni-
ture.Shooting for-
ward and
backward.
The form
Furniture.
Prouision of
victualle.

Prouision.

Horus alit eties.

chap. 17.
Of their march-
ing, charging, and other
Martiall Dis-
cipline.
George's enigne
was a great
Drumme.

The heremans
manner of
charging.

They have Drummes besides of a huge bignesse, which they carrie with them vpon a board layd on foure Horses, that are sparred together with Chaines, every Drumme hauing eight strikers, or Drummers, besides Trumpets and Shawmes, which they found after a wild manner, much different from ours. When they giue any charge or make any inuasion, they make a great hallow or shoute altogether, as loud as they can, which with the sound of their Trumpets, Shawmes, and Drummes, maketh a confused and horrible noyle. So they set on first discharging their Arrows, then dealing with their Swords, which they vie in a brauery to shake, and brandish ouer their heads, before they come to strokes.

The footmans
charge.

Their Footmen (because otherwise they want order in leading) are commonly placed in some ambush or place of advantage, where they may most annoy the enemy, with least hurt to themselves. If it be a set battell, or if any great inuasion be made vpon the Russe borders by the Tartars, they are for with them by the *Volantary palany* (or the *walking General*) whom I spake of before. This walking or moving Castle is so framed, that it may be set vp in length (as occasion doth require) the space of one, two, three, foure, fise, sixe, or seuen miles: for so long it will reach. It is nothing else but a double wall of wood to defend them on both sides behind and before, with a space of three yards or thereabouts betwixt the two sides: so that they may stand within it, and haue room enough to charge and discharge their pieces, and to vie with other weapons. It is closed at both ends, and made with loops-holes on either side, to lay out the nole of their Piece, or to pull forth any other weapon. It is carryed with the Armie wherefoeuer it goeth, being taken into pieces, and so layed on Carts sparred together, and drawne by Horses that are not seene, by reason that they are covered with their carriage as with a shiffe or pent-house. When it is brought to the place where it is to be used (which is deuised and chosen out before by the *walking Volantary*) it is planted so much as the present vie requireth, sometimes a mile long, sometimes two, sometimes three, or more: which is soone done without the helpe of any Carpenter, or Instrument: because the Timber is so framed to clape together one piece within another: as is easily vnderstood by those that know the manner of the Russe building.

Store of Munition.

In this Castle standeth their shot well fenced for advantage, specially against the Tartar, that bringeth no Ordnance, nor other weapon into the field with him, save his Sword and Bow and Arrows. They haue also within it diuers field Peeces, which they vie as occasion doth require. Of Peeces for the field they carrie no great store, when they warre against the Tartar: but when they deale with the *Polonian* (of whose forces they make more account) they get together furnished with all kind of Munition, and other necessarie provisions. It is thought that no Prince of Christendome hath better store of Munition, then the Russe Emperour. And this may partly appeare by the Artillerie Houle at *Moske*, where are of all sorts of great Ordnance, all braue Peeces, very faire, to an exceeding great number.

The Russe Souliker is thought to be better at his defence within some Castle, or Towne, then he is abroad at a set pitched field, which is euery noted in the practice of his Wars, and namely, at the siege of *Volosky*, about eight yeeres since: where he repulseth the *Polonian King Stephen Batory*, with his whole Armie of 16000. men, and forced him in the end to giue ouer his siege, with the losse of many of his best Captaynes and Soulikers. But in a set field the Russe is noted to haue ouer the worke of the *Polonian* and *Sueden*.

Reward for
valour.

If any beuise himselfe more valiantly then the rest, or doe any speciall piece of seruice, the Emperour sendeth him a piece of Gold, stamped with the Image of Saint George on Horseback, which they hang on their fleeces, and set in their Caps. And this is accounted the greatest honour they can receive, for any seruice they doe.

Chap. 18.
Of their Colo-
nies, an main-
taining of
their conquests
or purchases
by force.

The Russe Emperours of late yeeres haue very much enlarged their Dominions and Territories. Their first Conquest after the Dukedome of *Moske*, (for before that time they were but Dukes of *Velodomer*, as before was said) was the Citie, and Dukedome of *Novogrod* on the West, and North-west side: which was no small enlargement of their Dominion, and strengthening to them for the winning of the rest. This was done by *Iuan* great Grand-father to *Thodore* now Emperour, about the yeere 1480. The same began likewise to encroach vpon the Countreys of *Lithuania*, and *Linnia*, but the Conquest only intended, and attempted by him vpon some part of those Countreies, was pursued and performed by his Sonne *Basilus*, who first won the Citie and Dukedome of *Plesko*, afterwards the Citie and Dukedome of *Smolensky*, and many other faire Townes, with a large Territory belonging vnto them, about the yeere 1514. These Victories against the *Lettins* or *Lithuanians* in the time of *Alexander* their Duke, hee achieved rather by advantage of ciuill Diffentions and Treasons among themselves, then by any great power or force of his owne. But all this was lost againe by his Sonne *Iuan Vasilovich*, about eight 60 or nine yeeres past, vpon compulsion with the *Polonian King Stephen Batory*: whereunto he was forced by the advantages which the *Pole* had then of him, by reason of the which hee had giuen him before, and the disquiett of his owne State at home. Only the Russe Emperour, at this time hath left him on that side his Countrey, the Cities of *Smolensky*, *Viobolsky*, *Cheringo*, and *Beala* good in *Lithuania*. In *Linnia*, not a Towne, nor one foot of ground. Which

When *Basilus* first conquered those Countreies, he suffered the Natives to keepe their Possessions, and to inhabit all their Townes, only paying him a Tribute, vnder the Government of his Russe Captaynes. But by their Conspiracies and Attempts not long after, hee was taught to deale more furly with them. And so coming vpon them the second time, hee killed and carryed away with him, three parts of foure, which hee gaue or sold to the Tartars that serued him in those Wars, and the third of them placed there his Russe, so many as might ouer-match the rest, with certayne Garisons of strength besides, wherein notwithstanding this ouer-fight was committed, for that (taking away with him the Vp-land, or Countrey people that should haue kept the ground, and might easily haue bene kept in order without any danger, by other good policies) he was driuen afterwards many yeeres together to visitall the Countrey (especially the great Towne) out of his owne Countrey of *Russia*, the soyle lying there in the meane-while waste, and vntilled.

The like fell out at the Port of *Narue* in *Liesland*, where his Sonne *Iuan Vasilovich* deuised to build a Towne, and a Castle on the other side the River (called *Ingangord*) to keepe the Towne and Countrey in subiection. The Castle hee caused to bee so built, and fortified, that it was thought to be inuincible. And when it was finished, for reward to the Architect (that was a *Polonian*) he put out both his eyes, to make him vnable to build the like againe. But hauing left the Natives all within their owne Countrey, without abating their number or strength, the Towne and Castle not long after was betrayed, and surrendered againe to the King of *Sueden*. On the South-east side they haue got the Kingdome of *Cazan* and *Astracan*. These were wonne from the Tartar, by the late Emperour *Iuan Vasilovich*, Father to the Emperour that now is: the one about thirty fise, the other about thirty three yeeres agoe. Northward out of the Countrey of *Siberia*, he hath layed vnto his Realme a great breadth and length of ground, from *Wichita* to the River of *Obba*, about 1000. miles space: so that hee is hold to write himselfe now, *The great Commander of Siberia*.

The Countreies I koele of *Permia*, and *Pechora*, are a diuers People and Language from the Russe, ouercome not long since, and that rather by threatening, and shaking of the Sword, then by any actual force: as being a weaker and naked people, without meanes to resist.

Their Neighbours with whom they haue greatest dealings and intercoure, both in Peace and Warre, are first the Tartar: Secondly, the *Polonian* whom the Russe calleth *Lecher*, noting the first Author or Founder of the Nation, who was called *Lecher* or *Lecher*, whereunto is added *Pe*, which signifieth People, and so is made *Polachus*; that is, the People or Posteritie of *Lecher*: which the *Lecher* after their manner of writing call *Polanos*. The third are the *Suedens*. The *Polonians* and *Suedens* are better knowne to these parts of *Europe*, then are the Tartars that are farther off from vs (as being of *Asia*) and diuided into many Tribes, different both in name, and government one from another. The greatest and mightiest of them is the *Cherim* Tartar, (whom some call the *Great Chan*) that lyeth South, and South-eastward from *Russia*, and doeth most annoy the Countrey by often Inuasions, commonly one euery yeere, sometimes 40 entering very farre within the In-land parts.

In the yeere 1571. he came as farre as the Citie of *Moske*, with an Armie of 300000. men, without any battell, or resistance at all, for that the Russe Emperour (then *Iuan Vasilovich*) leaung forth his Armie to encounter with him, marched a wrong way: but as it was thought of chiefe Captaynes, of a meaning to betray him to the Tartar.

The Citie hee tooke not, but fired the Suburbs, which by reason of the buildings (which is all went on with such rage, as that it consumed the greater part of the Citie almost within the space of foure houres, being of thirty miles or more of compass. Then might you haue seene 50 a lamentable Spectacle: besides the huge and mightie flame of the Citie all on light fire, the people burning in their houses and streets, but most of all of such as laboured to passe out of the Gates farthest from the Enemy, where meeting together in a mighty throng, and so pressing euerto make to prevent another, wedged themselves so fast within the Gate, and streets neere vnto it, as that three Ranks walked one vpon the others head, the vppermost treading downe those that were lower: so that there perished at that time (as was said) by the fire and the press, the number of 80000. people, or more.

The *Cherim* thus hauing fired the Citie, and fed his eyes with the sight of it all of a light flame, returned with his Armie, and sent to the Russe Emperour a Knife (as was sayd) to sticke himselfe in the field: obeying this losse, and his desperate case, as not daring either to meete his Enemy in the field, nor to truit his Friends or Subjects at home. The principall cause of this continuall quarrell betwixt the Russe and the *Cherim*, is for the right of certayne border places claimed by the Tartar, but possessed by the Russe. The Tartar alleadgeth, that besides *Astracan* and *Cazan*, (that are the ancient possession of the East Tartar) the whole Countrey from his bounds North and Westward, so farre as the Citie of *Moske*, and *Moske* it selfe, pertaineth to his right: Which

Russia.

The Devilite was.

Permia and Pechora.

Chap. 19.

Of the Tartar and other bute decess to the countrey of Russia, with whom they haue most to doe in war and peace.

The *Polonians* called Lecher by the Russe.

The bring of Moske by the Cherim Tartar, in the yeere 1571.

Moueeable Citie and Court.

standing place, they plant their Cart-houes very orderly in a ranke : and so make the forme of streets, and of a large Towne. And this is the manner of the Emperour himselfe, who hath no other seat of his Empire but an *Agora*, or Towne of wood, that moueeth with him whithersoever hee goeth. As for the fixed and standing building used in other Countries, they say they are vniuersall and vnpleasant.

They begin to moue their Houes and Cattell in the Spring time, from the South part of their Countrey towards the North parts. And so driving on till they haue graied all vp to the furthest part Northward, they returne backe againe towards their South Countrey (where they continue all the Winter) by ten or twelue miles a stage : in the mean while the graie being sprung vp againe, to serue for their Cattell as they returne. From the border of the *Shaloon* towards the *Caspian* Sea, to the *Russe* frontiers, they haue a goodly Countrey, specially on the South and South-east parts, but ill for lacke of tillage.

Of money they haue no vfe at all, and therefore preferre Brasle and Steele before other metals, specially Ballade, which they vse for Swords, Knives, and other necessities. As for Gold and Silver they neglect it of very purpose, (as they doe all tillage of their ground) to be more free for their wandering kinde of life, and to keepe their Countrey lesse subject to inuasions. Which gaunt them great advantage against all their neighbours, euer inuading, and neuer being inuaded.

For Perion and Complexion, they haue a broad and flat viages, of a tanned colour yellow and blacke, fierce and cruell looks, thinne hyred vpon the vpper Lip, and a pit on the Chin, light and nimble Boies, with short Legges, as if they were made naturally for Horse-men : whereto they practise themselves from their Child-hood, feldome going a foot about any business. Their Speech is very filden and loud, speaking as it were out of a deepe hollow throat. When they Sing you would thinke it a Cow lowed, or some great Bandogge howled. Their greatest exercise is Shooting, wherein they trayne vp their Children from their very infancie, not suffering them to eate, till they haue shot neere the marke within a certain fardling.

There are diuers other *Tartars* that border vpon *Russia*, as the *Nagies*, the *Cheremifins*, the *Morduites*, the *Chircassies*, and the *Shaloon*, which all differ in Name more then in Regiment, or other condition, from the *Chirum Tartar*, except the *Chircassies*, that border South-west towards *Lithuania*, and are farre more ciuill then the rest of the *Tartars*, of a comely person, and of a stately behauiour, as applying themselves to the fashion of the *Talman*. Some of them haue subjected themselves to the Kings of *Poland*, and professe *Christianitie*. The *Nagies* lyeth Eastward, and is reckoned for the best man of warre among all the *Tartars*, but very lauge and cruel about all the rest. The *Cheremifin Tartar*, that lyeth betwixt the *Russe* and the *Nagies*, are of two sorts, the *Luganoy* (that is of the valley) and the *Nagernoy*, or of the hilly Countrey. These haue much troubled the Emperours of *Russia*. And therefore they are content now to buy Peace of them, vnder pretence of giuing a yereley pension of *Russe* Commodities to their *Morfu* or *Dynomorfus*, that are chiefe of their Tribes. For as beall also they are bound to serue them in their warres, vnder certayne conditions. They are sayd to be iust and true in their dealings : and for that cause they haue the *Russe* people, whom they account to be double, and false in all their dealing. And therefore the common sort are very unwilling to keepe agreement with them, but that they are kept in by their *Morfu*, or Dukes for their pensions sake.

The most rude and barbarous is counted the *Morduit Tartar*, that hath many selfe fashions, and strange kindes of behauiour, differing from the rest. For his Religion, though hee acknowledge our God, yet his manner is to worship for God, that liuing thing, that hee first meeteth in the morning, and to sweare by it all that whole day, whether it be Horse, Dog, Cat, or whatsoever else it be. When his friend dyeth, hee killen his best Horse, and haue flayed off the skinne, hee carryeth it on high vpon a long pole, before the Corps to the place of Buriall. This hee doth (as the *Russe* sayth) that his friend may haue a good horse to carrie him to Heauen : but it is likelier to declare his loue towards his dead friend, in that hee will haue to lye with him the best thing that hee hath.

Next to the Kingdome of *Altiracon*, that is the furthest part South-eastward of the *Russe* Dominion, lyeth the *Shaloon*, and the Countrey of *Media* : whether the *Russe* Merchants trade for raw Silkes, Syndon, Saphyon, Skinnes, and other commodities. The chiefe Townes of *Media* where the *Russe* tradeth, are *Dorben* (built by *Alexander* the great, as the Inhabitants say) and *Zamachie*, where the staple is kept for raw Silkes. Their manner is, in the Spring time to reuue the Silke-wormes (that lye dead all the Winter) by laying them in the warme Sunne, and (to hasten their quickning, that they may sooner goe to worke) to put them into bagges, and so to hang them vnder their Childrens armes. As for the Worme called *Chrimifin* (as we call it *Chrimifin*) that maketh coloured Silke, it is bred not in *Media*, but in *Assiria*. This tradeth to *Dorben* and *Samachie* for raw Silkes, and other commodities of that Countrey, as also in *Perfia*, *Bongbaria*, downe the Riuer *Pelgha*, and through the *Caspian* Sea, is permitted as well to the *Englysh*, as to the *Russe* Merchants, by the Emperours last Grant at my being there. Which hee accounteth for a very speciall fauour, and might prove indeed very beneficiall to our *Englysh* Merchants, if the Trade were well and orderly vied.

The

The whole Nation of the *Tartars* are utterly void of all Learning, and without written Law. Yet certayne rules they haue which they liue by tradition, common to all the Houes for the practice of their life. Which are of this sort. First, To obey their Emperour and other *Mogghes*, whatsoeuer they command about the publicke Service. Secondly, Except for the publicke behoofe, every man to be free and out of Contumelious. Thirdly, No private man to possess any Lands, but the whole Countrey to be as a Common. Fourthly, To neglect all deuotious and vertuous of Men, and to content them selves with such commoditie next to hand, for more bandes, and readiness, in the executing of their Affaires. Fifthly, To weare pay-basse Attire, and so patch their Cloathes, whether there be any need or not : that when there is need, it be no shame to weare against Coats. Sixthly, To take or to haue from any Stranger whatsoeuer they may get, as being Enemies to all good, save to such as will submit themselves to them. Seventhly, To cherish their own Herd and Nation, to beate away and dead. Eighthly, To suffer no Stranger to come within the Realme, if any doe, the same shall be dead to him that first taketh him, except such Marchants and other, as haue the *Tartar* Rule or Passes about them.

Tartars gene-
rall Rules.

The *Perimians* and *Samois* that lye from *Russia*, North and North-east, are thought likewise to haue taken their beginning from the *Tartar* kinde. And it may partly be guessed by the saluon of their Countenance, as hauing all broad and flat faces, as the *Tartars* haue, except the *Chircassies*. The *Perimians* are accounted for a very ancient people. They are now subject to the *Russe*. They lye by Hunting and trading with their Furres, as doth also the *Samois*, that dwelleth more towards the North Sea. The *Samois* hath his name (as the *Russe* sayth) of eating himselfe sayd in times past, they liued as the *Cannibals*, eating one another. Which may not be probable, because at this time they eat all kinde of raw beest, whatsoever it be, euen the very Carrion that lyeth in the ditch. But as the *Samois* themselves will say, they were called *Samois*, that is, of themselves, as though they were *Indians*, or people bred vpon that very soyle, that neuer changed their place from one place to another, as most Nations haue done. They are subject at this time to the Emperour of *Russia*.

chap. 20.
Of the Perimians,
Samois,
and Lappes.
The Perimians.
The Samois.

I talked with certaine of them, and finde that they acknowledge one God : but represent him by such things as they haue most vfe and good by. And therefore they worship the Sunne, the Moon, the Lodis, and such like. As for the storie of *Sala Baba*, or the *Golden hege*, (which I haue read in some Maps, and descriptions of these Countreys, to be an Idol after the forme of an old Woman) that being demanded by the Priest, giueth them certaine Oracles, concerning the successe and euent of things, I found it to be but a very fable. Only in the Prouince of *Odria* vpon the Sea side, nere to the mouth of the great Riuer *Obis*, there is a Rocke, which naturally (being somewhat helped by imagination) may seeme to beare the shape of a ragged Woman with a Child in her armes, (as the Rocke by the North cape the shape of a Rier) where the *Obisarian Samois* vfe much to resort, by reason of the commoditie of the place for Fishing : and there sometime (as their manner is) conceiue, and practice their Sorceries, and ominous conjurings about the good, or bad speed of their Iournies, Fishings, Huntings, and such like.

The Samois
Religion,
Sala Baba
the Golden
Hag.

They are clad in Scale-armes, with the hayrie side outwards downe as low as the knees, with their Breastes and Netherlocks of the same, both men and women. They are all Blacke, hayred, naturally beare life. And therefore the Men are hardly discerned from the Women by their looks : save that the Women weare a Locke of hayre downe along both their eares. They liue in a manner a wilde and a fange life, routing still from one place of the Countrey to another, without any propriety of House or Land more to one then to another. Their leader or director in every Company, is their *Papa* or Priest.

The Samois
habite and be-
hauiour.

On the North side of *Russia* next to *Carchia*, lyeth the Countrey of *Lappia*, which reacheth in length from the furthest point Northward, (towards the North cape) to the furthest part South-east (which the *Russe* calleth *Suuetofke* or Holy nose, the *Englysh* men Cape-grace) about three hundred and fortie vfe verst or miles. From *Suuetofke*, to *Candlen*, by the way of *Perfega* (which meureth the breadth of that Countrey) is sixtie miles or thereabouts. The whole Countrey in a manner is either Lakes or Mountaines, which towards the Sea side are called *Tundras*, because they are all of hard and craggy Rocke, but the inland parts are well furnished with Woods, that grow on the hilly sides, the lakes lying betwene. Their dyet is very bare and simple. Bread they haue none, but feed onely vpon Fish and Fowle. They are subject to the Emperour of *Russia*, and the two Kings of *Sweden* and *Dennemarke* : which all exact Tribute and Custome of them (as was sayd before) but the Emperour of *Russia* beareth the greatest hand out them, and exact of them farre more then the rest. The opinion is that they were first termed *Lappes*, of their briefe and short speech. The *Russe* diuident the whole Nation of the *Lappes* into two sorts. The one they call *Nouromansky Lappes*, that is, the *Norwegian Lappes* : because they be of the *Danish* Religion. For the *Danes* and *Norwegians*, they account for one people. The other that haue no Religion at all, but liue as brute and Heathenish people, without God in the world, they call *Dukay Lappes*, or the wilde *Lappes*.

The Lappes.

No Bread.

Wilde Lappes.

The whole Nation is vterly vnlearned, hauing not so much as the vfe of any Alphabet, or Letter

Witches. Letter among them. For practice of Witch-craft and Sorcerie, they passe all Nations in the world. Though for the enchanting of ships that lye along their Coast (as I have heard it reported) and their guining of winds good to their friends, and contrary to other, whom they meant to hurt by tying of certayne knots upon a Rope (somewhat like to the Tale of *Adam* his wind-bag) is a very Fable, devised (as may seeme) by themselves, to terrifie Saylers for coming neere their Coast. Their Weapons are the Long-bow, and Hand-gunne, wherein they excell, as well for quicknesse to charge and discharge, as for neernesse as the *Marke*, by reason of their continuall practice (whereeto they are forced) of shooting at wild-fowle, by reason of in Summer time to come downe in great companies to the Sea-side, to *Wardboys*, *Cole*, *Leger*, *Ruffes*, *Daners*, and *Norwegians*, and now of late to the *Englishmen* that trade thither with the *Cloth*, which they exchange with the *Lappes* and *Carchians*, for their Fish, Oyle, and Furs, whereof also they have some store. They hold their Mart at *Cole*, on *Saint Peters day*, what time the Captaine of *Wardboys* (that is Resiant there for the King of *Denmarke*) must be present, or at least send his Deputie to set prices upon their Stock-fish, Trane-oyle, Furs, and Costume, which is ever payed before any thing can be bought; or sold. When their fishing is done, Keele turned upwards, till the next Spring-tide. Their trauell too and fro is upon Sleds, drawen by the *Olen* Deere: which they use to turne a grazing all the Summertime, in an Island called *Kilden* (of a very good Soyle compared with other parts of that Country) and towards the Winter time, when the Snow beginneth to fall, they fetch them home againe, for the use of their Sled.

Chap. 21.
Of their Ecclesiastical State, with their Church Offices.

Concerning the Government of their Church, it is framed altogether after the manner of the *Greeke*: as being a part of that Church, and neuer acknowledging the Jurisdiction of the *Latine* Church, vsurped by the Pope. That I may keepe a better measure in describing the Ceremonies, then they in the wing them (wherein they are infinite) I will note briefly: First, what Ecclesiastical Degrees, or Offices they have with the Jurisdiction, and practice of them. Secondly, what Doctrine they hold in matter of Religion. Thirdly, what Lyturgie, or forme of Service they vse in their Churches, with the manner of their administering the Sacraments. Fourthly, what other strange Ceremonies, and Superstitious Deuotions are vsed among them.

The Church Offices.

Their Offices, or Degrees of Church-men, are as many in number, and the same in a manner both in name and degree, that are in the Westerne Churches. First, they haue their *Patriarch*, then their *Metropolitans*, their *Archbishops*, their *Dioceses*, or *Bishops*, their *Protopresbys* or *Archpriests*, their *Deacons*, *Friers*, *Monks*, *Nunnes*, and *Eremites*.

The Patriarch.

Their *Patriarch*, or chiefe Director in matter of Religion vntill this last yeere, was of the Cite of *Constantinople* (whom they called the *Patriarch of Sio*) because being driven by the *Turke* out of there place his Patriarchall See. So that the Emperours, and Clergie of *Ruffia*, were wont yearly to send Crites thither, and to acknowledge a Spirituall kind of homage, and subjection professed the Christian Religion. Which custom they have held (as it seemeth) ever since they have no Story or Monument of Antiquitie (that I could heare of) to shew what hath bene done in times past within their Country, concerning either Church, or Common-wealth matters. Onely I heare a report among them, that about three hundred yeeres since, there was a Marriage betwixt the Emperour of *Constantinople*, and the Kings Daughter of that Country: who at the first denyed to ioyne his Daughter in Marriage with the *Greeke* Emperour, because he was of the Christian Religion. Which agreeeth well with that I find in the Story of *Laonicus Chab.* concerning *Turkish* Affairs in his fourth Booke: where he speaketh of such a Marriage betwixt *Iohn* the *Greeke* Emperour, and the Kings Daughter of *Sarmatia*, and his argueth out of their owne report, that at that time they had not receiued the Christian Religion: as also that they were conuerted to the Faith, and withall persecuted at the very same time, receiuing the Doctrine of the Gospell, corrupted with Superstitions even at the first when they tooke it from the *Greeke* Church, which it selfe then was degenerate, and corrupted with many Superstitions, and foule Errours, both in Doctrine and Discipline: as may appeare by the Story of *Nicophorus Gregorius*, in his eighth and ninth Booke. But as touching the time of their Conuersion to the Christian Faith, I suppose rather that it is mistaken by the *Ruffes*, for that which I yeeres agoe, *Plodimir* Duke of *Ruffia*, married one *Anna* Sister to *Basilius*, and *Constantinus* Brothers, and Emperours of *Constantinople*. Whereupon the *Ruffes* receiued the Faith and Profession of Christ. Which though it be somewhat more ancient then the time noted before out of the *Ruffe* Report, yet it falleth out all to one reckoning, touching this point, viz. in what truth and

fin-

sinceritie of Doctrine the *Ruffes* receiued the first stamp of Religion: for asmuch as the *Greeke* Church at that time also was many wayes infected with error and superstition.

At my being there, the year 1588. came vnto the *Marke* the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio* (called *Hieronymus* being banished as some sayd) by the *Turke*, as some others reported by the *Greeke* Clergie deputed. The Emperour being giuen altogether to superstitious deuotions, gaue him great entertainment: Before his coming to *Mosko*, hee had bene in *Italy* with the Pope, as was reported there by some of his company. His arrand was to consult with the Emperour concerning these points, First, about a League to passe betwixt him and the King of *Spain*, as the meetest Prince to ioyne with him in opposition against the *Turke*. To which purpose also Ambassadors had passed betwixt the *Ruffes* and the *Persians*. Likewise from the *Germans* to the Emperour of *Russia*, to ioyne league together, for the inuading of the *Turke* on all sides of his Dominion: taking the aduantage of the simple qualitie of the *Turke* that now is. This treatie was helped forward by the Emperours Ambassadors of *Almayne*, sent at the same time to sollicite an inuasion vpon the parts of *Polonia*, that lye towards *Rusland*, and to borrow money of the *Ruffe* Emperour, to pursue the warre for his Brother *Maximilian*, against the *Suedens* Ionne, now King of *Poland*. But this consultation concerning a league betwixt the *Ruffes* and the *Spaniards* (which was in some forwardnesse at my coming to *Mosko*, and already one appointed for Ambassage into *Spain*) was marred by meanes of the ouerthrow giuen to the *Spanish* King by her Majestie, the Queene of *England*, this last yeere. Which made the *Ruffe* Emperour and his Council, to giue a sadder countenance to the *English* Ambassadors at that time: for that they were disappointed of so good a policie, as was this conjunction supposed to bee betwixt them and the *Spanish*.

His second purpose (whereeto the first serued as an introduction) was in reuenge of the *Turke* and the *Greeke* Clergie, that had thrust him from his seate, to treat with them about the reducing of the *Ruffe* Church under the Pope of *Rome*. Wherein it may seeme that coming lately from *Rome*, hee was set on by the Pope, who hath attempted the same many times before, though all inuaine: and namely the time of the late Emperour *Iuan Vasiluich*, by one *Ambrosius* his Legate. But thought this belike a farre better meane to obayne his purpose by treatie and mediation of their owne Patriarch. But this not succeeding, the Patriarch fell to a third point of treatie, concerning the resignation of his Patriarchship, and translation of the Sea from *Constantinople* or *Sio*, to the Cite of *Mosko*. Which was so well liked and enterprised by the Emperour (as a matter of high Religion and policie) that no other treatie (specially of forraigne Ambassadors) could bee heard or regarded, till that matter was concluded.

The reason wherewith the Patriarch perswaded the translating of his Sea to the Cite of *Mosko*, were these in effect. First, for that the Seap of the Patriarch was vnder the *Turke*, that is enemie to the Faith. And therefore to bee remoued into some other Countrey of *Christian* profession. Secondly, because the *Ruffe* Church was the only naturall daughter of the *Greeke* at this time, and holdeth the same Doctrine and Ceremonies with it: the rest being all subject to the *Turke*, and fallen away from the right profession. Wherein the subtil *Greeke* to make the better market of his broken wares, aduanced the honour that would grow to the Emperour, and his Country: as for the right translating the Sea, and appointing his Successour, hee made no doubt of it, but that it pertayned wholly to himselfe.

So the Emperour and his Council, with the principall of his Clergie, being assembled at the *Mosko*, it was determined that the Metropolitane of *Mosko*, should become Patriarch of the whole *Greeke* Church, and haue the same full Authoritie and Jurisdiction that pertayned before to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio*. And that it might bee done with more order and solemnitie, the five and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1588, the *Greeke* Patriarch accompanied with the *Ruffe* Clergie, went to the great Church of *Pecherske*, or our Ladie, within the Emperours Caste (hauing his two fingers) where hee made an Oration, and deliuered his resignation in an Instrument of writing, and so layed downe his Patriarchall staffe. Which was presently receiued by the Metropolitane of *Mosko*, and diuers other ceremonies vsed about the Inauguration of this new Patriarch.

The day was holden very solemnely by the people of the Cite, who were commanded to forebear their workes, and to attend this solemnitie. The great Patriarch that day was honoured &c. carryed with great pompe thorow the streets of *Mosko*, and at his departing receiued many gifts more, both from the Emperour, Nobilitie, and Clergie. Thus the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio*, (which hath continued since the Councell of *Nice*) is now translated to *Mosko*, or had, wherein the subtil *Greeke* hath made good aduantage of their Superstition, and is now gone away with a rich bootie into *Poland*, whether their Patriarchship be current or not.

The matter is not vnlike to make some schisme betwixt the *Greeke* and *Ruffe* Church, if the

The translation of the Patriarchall Sea from Constantinople or Sio to Mosko.

The Patriarchship of Constantinople transferred to Mosko.

*As they doe
and euer since
haue done:

Ruffe hold his Patriarchship that hee hath so well payed for, and the *Greekes* Elect another withall, as * likely they will, whether this man were banished by the *Turke*, or deprived by order of his owne Clergie. Which might happen to giue aduantage to the Pope, and to bring ouer the *Ruffe* Church to the Sea of *Rome*, (to which end peraduantage hee deuised this Stratagem, and call in this matter of Schisme among them) but that the Emperours of *Ruffia* know well enough, by the example of other *Christian* Princes, what inconuenience would grow to their State and Countrey, by subiecting themselves to the *Romish* Sea. To which end the late Emperour *Iuan Vasilouch*, was very iniquitous of the Popes authoritie ouer the Princes of *Christendome*, and sent one of very purpose to *Rome*, to behold the order and behauiour of his Court.

With this Patriarch *Haremyus*, was driven out at the same time by the great *Turke*, one *Demetrio* Archbishop of *Lesvia*: who is now in *England*, and pretendeth the same cause of their banishment by the *Turke*, (to wit) their not admitting of the Popes new Kalender, for the alteration of the yeere. Which how vnlutely it is, may appeare by these Circumstances. First, because there is no such affection, nor friendly respect betwixt the Pope and the *Turke*, as that hee should banish a Subject for not obeying the Popes ordinance, specially in a matter of some sequel for the alteration of Times within his owne Countreys. Secondly, for that hee maketh no such scruple in deducting of times, and keeping of a iust and precise account from the Incarnation of Christ: whom hee doth not acknowledge otherwise then I noted before. Thirdly, for that the said Patriarch is now at *Neples* in *Italy*, where it may be guessed he would not haue gone within the Popes reach, and so neere to his nose, if hee had beene banished for opposing himselfe to 20 gainst the Popes Decree.

This office of Patriarchship now translated to *Moske*, beareth a superiour Authoritie ouer all the Churches, not onely of *Ruffia*, and other the Emperours Dominions, but thorow out all the Churches of *Christendome*, that were before vnder the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio*: or at least the *Ruffe* Patriarch imagineth himselfe to haue the same authoritie. Hee hath vnder him as his proper Diocesse the Prouince of *Moske*, besides other peculiaris. His Court or Office is kept at the *Moske*.

Before the creation of this new Patriarch, they had but one Metropolitane, that was called the Metropolitane of *Moske*. Now for more rate to their Church, and new Patriarch, they haue two Metropolitans, the one of *Novogrod* vnder, the other of *Rosse*. Their office is to receiue of the 30 Patriarch such Ecclesiastical orders, as hee thinketh good, and to deliuer the charge of them to the Archbishops: besides the ordering of their owne Diocesse.

Their Archbishops are foure: of *Smolensko*, *Cazan*, *Polsko*, and *Volodga*. The parts of their office is all one with the Metropolitans: save that they haue an vnder Archbishops, as Suffraganes to the Metropolitans, & Superiours to the Bishops. The next are the *Pladskis* or Bishops, that are but fixe in all: of *Cruitsko*, of *Razan*, of *Orfer* and *Torshock*, of *Collomensko*, of *Volodmersko*, of *Susdalla*. These haue every one a very large Diocesse: as diuiding the rest of the whole Countrey among them.

The matters pertaining to the Ecclesiastical jurisdiction of the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops, are the same in a manner that are vied by the Clergie in other parts of *Christendome*. 40 For besides their authoritie ouer the Clergie, and ordering such matters as are meere Ecclesiastical, their jurisdiction extendeth to all Testamentarie causes, matters of Marriage, and Divorcements, some Pleas of injuries, &c. To which purpose: also they haue their Officials, or Commissaries (which they call *Besaren Vladitsky*) that are Lay-men of the degree of Dukes, or Gentlemen, that keep their Courts and execute their Jurisdiction. Which besides their other oppressions ouer the common people, raise ouer the Priests: as the Dukes and *Dyaks* doe ouer the poore people, within their Precincts. As for the Archbishops or Bishops himselfe, hee beareth no sway in deciding those causes, that are brought into his Court. But if hee would moderate any matter, he must doe it by intreatie with his Gentleman Official. The reason is, because these 50 *Boiariky*, or Gentleman officials, are not appointed by the Bishops, but by the Emperour himselfe, or his Council, and are to giue account of their doings to none but to them. If the Bishop can intreat at his admission to haue the choice of his owne Official, it is accounted for a speciall great fauour. But to speake it as it is, the Clergie of *Ruffia*, as well concerning their Lands and revenues, as their Authoritie and Jurisdiction, are altogether ordered and ouer-ruled by the Emperour and his Council, and haue so much, and no more of both as their pleasure doth permit them. They haue also there Assistants or severall Counsels (as they call them) of certeyne Priests that are of that Diocesse, residing within their Cathedral Cities, to the number of foure and twentie a peece. These aduise with them, about the speciall and necessarie matters belonging to their charge.

Concerning their Rents and Revenues to maintayne their dignities, it is somewhat large. The 60 Patriarch yearly rents out of his Lands (besides other fees) is about 3000 Rubbels or Marks. The Metropolitans and Archbishops, about 2500. The Bishops, some 1000. some 800. some 500. &c. They haue had some of them (as I haue heard say) ten or twelue thousand Rubbels a yeere: as had the Metropolitane of *Novogrod*.

Their

Their Habit or Apparell (when they shew themselves in their Pontificalibus after their fountein manner) is a Mitre on their heads after the Popish fashion, set with Pearle and Precious Stone, a Coape on their backs, commonly of Cloath of Gold, embroydered with Pearle, and a Croisers Staffe in their hands, layed ouer all with Plate of Silver double gilt, with a Croile or Shepherds Crooke at the vpper end of it. Their ordinary habit otherwise when they ride or goe abroad, is a Hood on their heads of blacke colour, that hangeth downe their backs, and standeth out like a Bon-grace before. Their vpper Garment (which they call *Rau*) is a Gowne or Mantell of blacke Damaske, with many Lifts or Gards of white Sattin layed vnder it, euery Gard about two fingers broad, and their Croisers staffe carried before them. 10 Themselues follow after, blessing the people with their two fore-fingers, with a manerous grace.

The Election, and appointing of the Bishops and the rest, pertaineth wholly to the Emperour himselfe. They are chosen euer out of the Monasteries: so that there is no Bishop, Arch- 15 bishop, nor Metropolitane, but hath bene a Monke, or Friar before. And by that reason they are, and must all bee vnmarried men, for their Vow of Chastitie when they were first chosen. When the Emperour hath appointed whom hee thinketh good, hee is inuited in the Cathedral Church of that Diocesse, with many Ceremonies, much after the manner of the Popish Inauguration. They haue also their Deanes, and their Arch-deacons.

As for preaching the Word of God, or any teaching, or exhorting such as are vnder them, they neither v/e it, nor haue any skill of it: the whole Clergie being vtterly valedained both for 20 other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Onely their manner is twice every yeere, viz. for the first of September (which is the first day of their yeere) and on Saint *Iohn* Baptists day, to make an ordinary speech to the people, euery Metropolitane, Arch-bishop, and Bishop, in his Cathedral Church, to this or like effect: That if any bee in malice towards his Neighbour, Prince, hee beware of such practice: if hee haue thought of Treason or Rebellion against his other Duties to the holy Church, hee shall amend that fault, &c. And this is a matter of forme with them, vttered in as many words, and no more, in a manner, then I haue here set downe. Yet the matter is done with that Grace and Solemnitie, in a Pulpit of purpose set vp for this one Act, as if hee were to discourse at large of the whole substance of 30 Diuinitie. At the *Moske* the Emperour himselfe is euer present at this Solemne Exhortation.

As themselves are void of all manner of Learning, so are they way to keepe out all meanes that might bring any in: as fearing to haue their ignorance and vngodlinesse discouered. To that purpose they haue perwaded the Emperours, that it would breed Inuention, and slow danger to their State, to haue any nouelty of Learning come within the Realme. Wherein they say but truth, for that a man of spirit and vnderstanding, helped by Learning and liberal Education, can hardly indure a tyrannicall Government. Some yeeres past in the other Emperours time, there came a Presse and Letters out of *Polonia*, to the Citie of *Moske*, where a Printing Houle was 40 set vp, with great liking and allowance of the Emperour him selfe. But not long after, the houle was set on fire in the night time, and the Presse and Letters quite burnt vp, as was thought by the procurement of the Clergie-men.

Their Priests (whom they call *Papays*) are made by the Bishops, without any great tryall for worthinesse of gifts, before they admit them, or Ceremonies in their admission: save that their heads are thorne (not hauen, for that they like not) about an hand breadth or more in the crowne, and that place anointed with Oyle by the Bishop: who in his admission putteth vpon the Priest, first his Surplesse, and then tetheth a white Croile on his breast of Silke, or some other matter, which hee is to weare eight dayes, and no more: and so giueth him authoritie to say and sing in the Church, and to administer the Sacraments.

They are men vtterly vnlearned, which is no maruell, for as much as their Makers, the Bishops themselves (as before was said) are cleere of that qualitie, and make no farther v/e at all of any kind of Learning, no use of the Scriptures themselves, save to reade and to sing them. Their ordinary charge and function is to say the Lyturgie, to administer the Sacraments after Churches. Their number is great because their Townes are parted into many small Parishes, without any discretion for diuiding them into competent numbers of Households, and people for a iust Congregation: as the manner in all places where shee meanes is neglected, for increasing of knowledge, and instruction towards God. Which cannot well be had, where by meanes of an vnequal partition of the people, and Parishes, these followeth a want and vnequalitie of 60 append for a sufficient Ministry.

For their Priests, it is lawfull to marry for the first time. But if the first Wife dye, a second hee cannot take, but he must lose his Priest-hood, and his living withall. The reason they make out of that place of Saint *Paul* to *Timothy* 1.3.2. not well vnderstood, thinking that to bee spo- 70 ken of diuers Wiues successively, that the Apostle speaketh of at one and the same time. If hee

The Election
of Bishops.

The learning
and exercise
of the
Clergie.

Priests.

The *Ruffe*

Priests

marry bee

once.

will needs marrie againe after his first wife is dead, he is no longer called *Papa*, but *Rosape*, or *Priest quendam*. This maketh the Priests to make much of their Wiues, who are accounted as the Matrones, and of best reputation among the women of the Parish.

For the stipend of the Priest, their manner is not to pay him any tenths of Corne, or grasse else: but he must stand at the deuotion of the people of his Parish, and make vp the Incomes towards his maintenance, so well as hee can, by Offerings, Shriffs, Mariages, Burials, Dirges, and Prayers for the dead and the liuing (which they call *Molena*.) For besides their publike Seruice within their Churches, their manner is for euery priuate man to haue a Prayer said for him by the Priest, vpon any occasion of businesse whatsoeuer, whether he ride, goe, saile, plough, or whatsoever else he doth. Which is not framed according to the occasion of his businesse, but at random, being some of their ordinary and vsuall Church-prayers. And this is thought to bee more holy, and effectuall, if it is repeated by the Priests mouth, rather then by his owne. They haue a custome, besides to solemnize the Saints day, that is, Patrone to their Church once euery yeere. What time all their Neighbours of their Countrey and Parishes about, come in to haue Prayers said to that Saint for themselves, and their friends: and so make an Offering to the Priest for his paines. This Offering may yeld them some ten pounds a yeere, more or lesse, as the Patrone or Saint of that Church is of credit and estimation among them. The manner is on this day (which they keepe Anniversarie for the Priest, to hire diuers of his Neighbour Priests to helpe him: as hauing more Dirges to dresse for the Saint, then he can well turne his hand vnto. They vsb besides to visit their Parishioners houses, with Holy Water, and Pericome, commonly once a quarter: and so hauing sprinkled, and benedict the Goodman and his wife, with the rest of their household, and household-stuffe, they receive some Deuotion or lesse, as the man is of abilitie. This and the rest layd altogether, may make vp for the Priest towards his maintenance, about thirty or forty Rubbels a yeere: whereof he payeth the tenth part to the Bishop of the Diocesse.

The Priests maintenance.

Their Priests attyre.

The *Papa* or Priest is knowne by his long Tufts of Haire, hanging downe by his Eares, his Gowne with a broad Cape, and a walking staffe in his hand. For the rest of his Habit, hee is apparelled like the common sort. When he sayeth the Lyturgie or Seruice, within the Church, hee hath on him his Surplesse, and sometimes his Cope, if the day bee more Solemne. They haue besides their *Papas* or Priests, their *Cherapapases* (as they call them) that is, *Black Priests*: so that may keepe their Benefices, though they be admitted Friars withall within some Monastrie. They seeme to be the very same that were called Regular Priests in the Popish Church. Vnder the Priest, is a Deacon in euery Church, that doth nothing but the Office of a Parish Clerke. As for their *Protopapases*, or Arch-priests, and their Arch-deacons (that are next in election to their *Protopapases*) they serue onely in the Cathedrall Churches.

Friars.

Of Friars they haue an infinite ribble farre greater then in any other Countrey, where Popery is professed. Bury City, and good part of the Countrey, swarmeth full of them. For they haue wrought (as the Popish Friars did by their Superstition and Hypocricie) that if any part of the Realme be better and sweeter then other, there standeth a Friery or a Monastrie dedicated to some Saint.

The number of them is so much the greater, not onely for that it is augmented by the Superstition of the Countrey, but because the Friars life is the safest from the Oppressions, and Exactions, that fall vpon the Common. Which causeth many to put on the Friars Weed, as the best Armour to beare off such blowes. Besides such as are voluntary, there are diuers that are forced to shire themselves Friars, vpon some displeasure. These are for the most part of the chiefe Nobility. Diuers take the Monasteries as a place of Sanctuary, and there become Friars, to auoyde some punishment, that they had deserued by the Lawes of the Realme. For if hee get a Monastrie ouer his head, and there put on a Coole before hee bee attached, it is a protection to him for euer against any Law, for what crime soeuer: except it be for Treason. But this *Prouise* goeth withall, that no man commeth there, (except such as are commanded by the Emperour to be receiued) but hee giueth them Lands, or bringeth his stocke with him, and putteth it into the common Treasury. Some bring twoo. Rubbels, and some more. None is admitted vnder three or foure hundred.

The manner of their Admission is after this sort. First, the Abbot strippeth him of all his Secular or ordinary Apparell. Then he putteth vpon him next to his skinnie, a white flannell shirt, with a long Cament ouer it downe to the ground, girded vnto him with a broad Leather Belt. His vpper-most Garment is a Weed of *Garra*, or *Say*, for colour and fashion, much like to the vpper Weed of a Chimney-sweeper. Then is his crowne borne a hand breadth, or more close to the very skinnie, and these, or like words pronounced by the Abbot, whilst hee clippeth his haire: *As these haires are clipped, and taken from thy head, so now we take thee, and separate thee cleane from the World, and worldly things, &c.* This done, hee anointeth his crowne with Oyle, and putteth on his Coole: and so taketh him in among the Fraternitie. They vpon perpetual Chastitie, and Abstinence from flesh.

Besides, their Lands (that are very great) they are the greatest Merchants in the whole

Countrey.

Countrey, and deale for all manner of Commodities. Some of their Monasteries dispend in Lands, one thousand, or two thousand Rubbels a yeere. There is one Abbey called *Trois*, that hath in Lands and Fees, the summe of 100000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere. It is built in manner of a Castle, walled round about, with great Ordinance planted on the wall, and containeth within it a large breadth of ground, and great varietie of building. There are of Friars within it, (besides their Officers, and other Seruants) about seuen hundred. The Emperour that now is, hath many Vowes to Saint *Sergius*, that is Patrone there: to intreate him to make him fruitful, as hauing no children by the Emperour her Husband. Lightly euery yeere hee goeth on Pilgrimage to him from the *Markes*, on foot, about eighty English miles, with five or sixe thousand women attending vpon her, all in blue Liuteries, and foure thousand Souldiers for her Guard. But Saint *Sergius* hath not yet heard her Prayers, though (they say) hee hath a speciall gift and facultie that way.

What Learning there is among their Friars, may be knowne by their Bishops, that are the chiefe men out of all their Monasteries. I talked with one of them at the Citie of *Poloda*, where (to try his skill) I offered him a *Russe* Testament, and turned him to the first Chapter of Saint *Mattheus* Gospell. Where hee began to reade in very good order. I asked him first what part of Scripture it was, that he had read: he answered, that he could not well tell. How many Euangelists there were in the New Testament? He said he knew not. How many Apostles were there? He thought there were twelue. How many should hee be? Whereunto he answered me with a piece of *Russe* Doggrine, that he knew not whether he should be faued, or no: but if God would *Toghalouate* him, or gratifie him so much, as to saue him, so it was, he would be glad of it: if not, what remedy. I asked him, why hee should himselfe a Priest? Hee answered, because hee would eate his Bread with peace. This is the Learning of the Friars of *Russia*, which though it be not to be measured by one, yet partly it may be guesied by the ignorance of this man, what is in the rest.

The Friars Learning.

They haue also many Nunneries, whereof some may admit none but Noblemens Widowes, and Daughters, when the Emperour meanth to keepe them vnmarried, from continuing the blood or stocke, which if he would haue extinguished. To speake of the life of their Friars, and Nunnes, it needs not, to those that know the hypocricie, and vnclannesse of that Clergy-brood. The *Russe* himselfe (though otherwise addicted to all Superstition) speaketh so fully of it, that it must needs gaine silence of any modeist man.

Besides these, they haue certayne *Eremites*, (whom they call *Holy men*) that are like to those *Gymnosophists*, for their life and behauiour: though farre vnlike for their Knowledge, and Learning. They vse to goe barke naked, saue a clout about their middle, with their haire hanging their neckes, or midst, euen in the very extremitie of Winter. These they take as Prophets, and ment, though it bee of the very highest himselfe. So that if hee reprooue any openly, in what sort soeuer, they answer nothing: but that it is *Po graecum*, that is, for their finnes. And if hee lift, hee thinketh himselfe much beloued of God, and much beholding to the holy Man, for taking it in that sort.

Strange hardi-nesse.

Of this kind there are not many, because it is a very hard and cold Profession, to goe naked in *Russia*, specially in Winter. Among other at this time, they haue one at *Markes*, that walketh naked about the streets, and inueigheth commonly against the State, and Gouvernement, especially againt the *Godonoes*, that are thought at this time to be great Oppressors of that Common-wealth. Another there was, that dyed not many yeeres agoe (whom they called *Basilus*) that

Basilus the Eremite.

towards his people. His body they haue translated of late into a sumptuous Church, neere the Emperour Houle in *Markes*, and haue canonized him for a Saint. Many Miracles hee doth there (for the Friars make the people to beleue) and many Offerings are made vnto him, not only by the people, but by the chiefe Nobilitie, and the Emperour, and Emperesse themselves, which witnesseth that Church with great Deuotion. But this last yeere, at my being at *Markes*, this Saint I attended by him) was charged by a woman that was familiar with him (being then fallen out) that hee had intended this matter (fixe yeeres before. Now hee is put into a Monastrie, and there Basilus this disgrace, a little before him to haue this counterfeite Miracle practised vpon him, his Church by fire in a Thunder. Which caused his Bels (that were ringing before all day and night long as in triumph of the Miracles wrought by *Basilus* their Saint) to ring somewhat fast account at *Pleske*, (called *Nicholas of Pleske*) that did much good, when this Emperours Father came to sacke the Towne, vpon suspicion of their reuolting and Rebellion against him. The Em-

Lame Miracle.

Nicholas the Eremite.

The administering of the Lords Supper. Confession.

Communion in both kinds.

The Sacrament of the Lords Supper they receive but once a yeere, in their great Lent time, a little before Easter. Three at the most are admitted at one time, and neuer above. The manner of their communicating, is thus. First, they confesse themselves of all their finnes to the Priest (whom they call) their gloriously Father. Then they come to the Church, and are called vp to the Communion Table, that standeth like an Altar, a little removed from the vtter end of the Church, after the Dutch manner. Heere first they are asked of the Priest, *whether they be cleane or no*; that is, whether they haue neuer a sinne behind that they left vnconfessed. If they answer, *No*, they are taken to the Table. Where the Priest beginneth with certayne vsuall Prayers, the Communicants standing in the meane while with their armes folded one within another, like *Penitentes* or Mourners. When these prayers are ended, the Priest taketh a Spoon and filleth it full of claret Wine. Then hee putteth into it a small peece of Bread, and tempereth them both together: and so deliuereth them in the spoon to the Communicants, that stand in order, speaking the vsuall words of the Sacrament. *Eate this, &c. Drink this, &c.* both at one time without any pause.

After that hee deliuereth them againe Bread by it selfe, and then Wine carded together with a little warme water, to represent Blood more rightly (as they thinke) and the water withall, that flowed out of the side of Christ. Whiles this is in doing the Communicants vnfold their armes. And then folding them againe, follow the Priest thrise round about the Communion table, and so returne to their places againe. Where hauing sayd certayne other prayers, hee dismisseth the Communicants, with charge to bee merrie, and to cheere vp themselves for the fower dayes next following. Which being ended, hee enioyneth them to faist for it as long time after. Which they vfe to obtruse with very great deuotion, eating nothing else but Bread and Sale, except a little Cabbage, and some other Herbe or Root, with water or quasse Mead for their drinke.

This is their manner of administering the Sacraments. Wherein what they differ from the institution of Christ, and what Ceremonies they haue added of their owne, or rather borrowed of the *Greekes*, may easily bee noted.

chap. 23.
Of the Doctrine of the Ruffi Church, & what errors it holdeth.
1. Their disallowing of certayne parts of the Canoniall Scriptures.

Their chiefeft errors in matter of Faith I finde to bee these. First, concerning the Word of God it selfe they will not read publicly certayne Bookes of the Canoniall Scriptures, as 30 the bookes of *Moses*: specially the foure last, *Exodus*, *Leuiticus*, *Numeri*, and *Deuteronomius*, which they say are all made disauthenticke, and put out of vfe by the coming of Christ: as not able to discerne the difference betwixt the *Morall* and the *Ceremoniall Law*. The bookes of the *Prophets* they allow of, but reade them not publicly in their Churches, for the same reason: because they were but directers vnto Christ, and proper (as they say) to the Nation of the *Iewes*. Only the Bookes of *Psalms* they haue in great estimation, and sing and say them daily in their Churches. Of the New Testament they allow and reade all, except the *Revelation*: which therefore they reade not (though they allow it) because they vnderstand it not, neither haue the like opinion, to know the fulfilling of the Prophecies contayned within it, concerning especially the Apostolicke of the *Antichristian* Church, as haue the Westerne Churches. Notwithstanding, 40 they haue had their *Antichristis* of the *Greeke* Church, and may finde their owne falling off, and the punishments for it by the *Turkish* inuasion in the Prophecies of that Booke.

Secondly, (which is the fountaine of the rest of all their corruptions both in Doctrine and Ceremonies) they hold with the *Papists*, that their Church *Traditions* are of equall authoritie with the written Word of God. Wherein they preferre themselves before other Churches: affirming that they haue the true and right Traditions, deliuered by the Apostles to the *Greeke* Church, and so vnto them.

Thirdly, that the Church (meaning the *Greeke*, and specially the Patriarch and his Synod, as the head of the rest) hauing a soueraine Authoritie to interpret the Scriptures, and that all are bound to hold that Interpretation, as sound and authentique.

Fourthly, concerning the Diuine nature and the three Persons, in the one substance of God, that the holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father only, and not from the Sonne.

Fifthly, about the office of Christ, they hold many foule errors, and the same almost as doth the *Papish* Church: namely, that hee is the sole Mediator of redemption, but not of intercession. Their chiefe reason (if they be talked withall) for defence of this error, is that vnapt and foolish comparison, betwixt God, and a Monarch or Prince of this world, that must be iudged vnto Mediators about him: wherein they giue speciall preferment to some aboute others, as to the blessed *Virgin* whom they call *Prochete*, or vndeified, and Saint *Nicolas*, whom they call *Serra penitenc*, or the *Speedy helper*, and say, that hee hath three hundred Angels of the chiefeft appointed by God to attend vpon him. This hath brought them to an horrible excefse of Idolatry, after the grossest and prophaneft manner, giuing vnto their Images all religious worship of Prayer, Thanksgiuings, Offerings and Adoration, with prostrating and knocking their heads to the ground before them, as to God himselfe. Which because they doe to the Picture, not to the portraiture of the Saint, they say they worship not an Idol, but the Saint in his Image, and so fond-

2. Traditions equallo to the holy Scripture.

3. The Church to haue soueraine authoritie in interpreting the Scriptures.

4. The holy Ghost to proceed from the Father only.

5. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

6. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

7. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

8. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

9. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

10. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

11. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

12. Christ to be sole Mediator of intercession.

tend not God: forgetting the Commaundement of God, that forbideth to make the Image or likenesse of any thing, for any Religious worship, or vfe whatsoeuer. Their Church walls are vnclean full of them, richly hanged and set forth with Pearle and Stone, vpon the smooth Table. Though some also they haue embossed, that flicke from the board almost an inch outwards. They call them *Chudenodites*, or their Miracle workers: and when they provide them to set vp in their Churches, in no case they may lay, that they haue bought the Image, but *Exchanged money for it*.

Sixtly, for the meanes of Iustificacion, they agree with the *Papists*, that it is not by Faith one-ly apprehending Christ, but by their Workes also. And that *Opeus operum*, or the worke for the worke sake, must needs please God. And therefore they are all in their numbers of Prayers, Fasts, Vowes, and Offerings to Saints, Almes dees, Crossings and such like, and carrie their numbering Beads about with them continually, as well the Emperour and his Nobilitie, as the common people, not only in the Church, but in all other publicke places, specially at any solemn meeting, as in their Fasts, law Courts, common Consultations, entertainment of Ambassadors, and such like.

Seuenthy, they say with the *Papists*, that no man can bee assured of his saluation, till the sentence be passed at the day of Iudgement.

Eightly, they vfe auricular Confession, and thinke they are purged by the very action from many finnes, as they confesse by name, and in particular to the Priest.

Ninthly, they hold three Sacraments, of *Baptisme*, the *Lords Supper*, and the last Anointing or *Unction*. Yet concerning their Sacrament of extreme *Unction*, they hold it not for necessitie to saluation as they doe Baptisme, but thinke it a great curse and punishment of God, if any dye without it.

Tenthly, they thinke there is a necessitie of Baptisme, and that all are condemned that dye without it.

Eleuenthy, they rebaptise as many *Christians* (not being of the *Greeke* Church) as they conuert to their *Ruffe* profession: because they are diuided from the true Church, which is the *Greeke*, as they say.

Twelfthly, they make a difference of Meates and Drinckes, accounting the vfe of one to be more holy then of another. And therefore in their fast Fasts they forbear to eate flesh, and white meates (as wee call them) after the manner of the *Popish* superstition: which they obserue so strictly, and with such blinde deuotion, as that they will rather dye, then eate one bit of Flesh, Egges or such like, for the health of their bodies in their extreme sicknesse.

Thirteenthly, they hold Marriage to bee vnlawfull for all the Clergie men, except the Priests only, and for them also after the first Wife, as was sayd before. Neither doe they well allow of it in Lay-men after the second marriage. Which is a pretence now vfed against the Emperours only Brother, a child of sixe yeeres old: who theretore is not Prayed for in their Churches, (as for no legitimate. This charge was giuen to the Priests by the Emperour himselfe, by procurement of the *Godanes*: who make him beleue, that it is a good policie to turne away the liking of the people from the next succellour.

Many other false opinions they haue in matter of Religion. But these are the chiefe, which they hold, partly by meanes of their traditions (which they haue receiued from the *Greeke* Church) but specially by ignorance of the holy Scriptures. Which notwithstanding they haue in reade them with that godly care which they ought to doe: neither haue they (if they would) Bookes sufficient of the old and new Testament for the common people, but of their Lyturgie only, or Booke of common service, whereof there are great numbers. Which notwithstanding it is not to be doubted, but that hauing the Word of God in some sort (though without the ordinarie meanes to attaine to a true sense and vnderstanding of it) God hath all his number among them. As may partly appere by that which a *Ruffe* at *Moske* sayd in secret to one of my Seruants, speaking against their Images and other superstitions: That God had giuen vnto England light to day, and might giue it to morrow (if hee pleased) to them.

As for any Inquisition or proceeding against men for matter of Religion, I could heare of none: save a few yeeres since against one man and his wife, who were kept in a close Prison for the space of eight and twentie yeeres, till they were ouer-grown into a deformed fashion, for their hayre, nayles, colour of countenance, and such like, and in the end were burned at *Moske*, in a small Houfe set on fire. The cause was kept secret, but like it was for some part of truth in matter of Religion: though the people were made to beleue by the Priests and Friars, that they held some great and damnable Heresie.

The manner of making and solemnizing their Marriages, is different from the manner of other Countries. The man (though hee neuer saw the woman before) is not permitted to haue any sight of her all the time of his wooing: which hee doth not by himselfe, but by his Mother

6. Iustificacion by workes.

7. Saluation by sentence.

8. Auricular confession.

9. Three Sacraments.

10. All damned that dye without Baptisme.

11. Anabaptis.

12. Marriage for some persons vnlawfull.

13. Marriage for some persons vnlawfull.

14. Inquisition.

15. Inquisition.

16. Inquisition.

17. Inquisition.

18. Inquisition.

The manner
of indowment
for Wives.

Thus the contract being made, the parties begin to fend tokens the one to the other, the Woman first, then afterwards the Man, but yet see not one another till the Marriage be solemnized (on the Eve before the marriage day, the Bride is carried in a *Colemago*, or Coach, or with her, which they are to lay in. For this is ever provided by the Bride, and is commonly very fair, with much cost bestowed upon it. Here she is accompanied all that night by her Mother

Ceremonies in Marriages.

Ring.

Exotic

Mead.

Come

Silence:

455

Id

Chap. 25.
Of the other
Ceremonies
of the Russe
Church.
The signe of
the Crosse; how
it crosseth ou
other deuoti
ons.

Hallowing of Rivers.

Drinking of
Holy-water.

Their manner is also to give it to their sicke in their greatest extremitie; thinking that it will either recover them, or sanctifie them to God. Whereby they kill many, through their unreasonable superstition, as did the Lord *Borris* his onely sonne, at my being at the *Abbeys* unreasonable

Cruel blind-
riffs of super-
stition.

he killed (as was said by the Physicians) by pouring into him cold Holy-water, and presenting him naked into the Church, to their Saint *Basilis*, in the cold of Winter in an extreme of sickness.

They have an Image of Christ, which they call *Nerechi*, (which signifies as much as *Made without hands*) for to their Priests, and superstition withall periwadeth them it was, This in their Processions they carry about with them on high upon a pole, enclosed within a Pize, made like a Lanthorne, and doe reverence to it as to a great myserie.

Brewing with
Holy-water.

At every brewing their manner is likewise to bring a distill of their wort to the Priest within the Church: which being followed by him, is poured into the brewing, and so giueth it such a vertue, as when they drinke of it they are seldom sober. The like they doe with the first fruits of their Corne in Harvest.

Palm-sunday.

They have another Ceremony on Palm-sunday, of ancient tradition: what time the Patriarch rideth through the *Mosks*, the Emperour himselfe holding his horse bridle, and the people crying *Hosanna*, and spreading their vpper garments vnder his horse feet. The Emperour hath of the Patriarch for his good service of that day two hundred Rubbels of standing pension. Another pageant they have much like to this, the weeke before the Nativite of Christ: when every Bishop in his Cathedrall Church, fetcheth forth a shew of the three children in the Cuen. Where the Angell is come flying from the rooffe of the Church, with great ad- der, by the *Chaldeans* (as they call them) that run about the Towne all the twelve dayes, disguised in their players coats, and make much good sport for the honor of the Bishops pageant. At the *Mosks*, the Emperour himselfe, and the Emperesse neuer faile to be at it, though it be the same matter plaied every year, without any new invention at all.

Fasts.

Besides their fasts on Wednesdayes, and Fridayes throughout the whole yeere, (the one because they say Christ was sold on the Wednesday, the other because he suffered on the Friday) they have foure great Fasts or Lentes every yeere. The first, (which they call their great Lent) is at the same time with ours. The second, about Mid-summer. The third, in Harvest time. The fourth, about Hallontide: in which they keepe not of pollicie, but of mere superstition. In their great Lent, for the first weeke, they eat nothing but bread and salt, and drinke nothing but water, neither meddle with any matter of their vocation, but intend their fasting and fasting only. They have also three *Vigils*, or *Wakes* in their great Lent, which they call *Syriacus* and the last Friday their great *Vigil*, as they call it. What time the whole Parish must be present in the Church, and watch from nine a clocke in the Evening, till fixe in the morning, all the while standing, save when they fall downe and knocke their heads to their Idols, which must bee an hundred and seauente times iust through the whole night.

Burials.

About their burials also, they have many superstitious and prophane Ceremonies: as putting within the finger of the corps, a letter to Saint *Nicolas*: whom they make their chiefe mediator, and as it were the porter of heauen gates, as the Papists doe their *Peter*.

In Winter time, when all is covered with snow, and the ground so hard frozen, as that no spade nor pick-axe can enter their manner is not to bury their dead, but to keepe the bodies (so many as are all the Winter time) in an house, in the suburbs, or out-parts of the Towne, which they call *Bolsdome*, that is, *Gods house*: where the dead bodies are pyled vp together, like billets on a woodstake, as hard with the frost as a verie stone, till the Spring-tide come, and resolue the frost: what time euery man taketh his dead friend, and committeth him to the ground.

Monks minds

They have besides their yeeres and moneths mindes for their friends departed. What time they have prayers said out the graue by the Priest: who hath a penny ordinary for his pains. When any die, they have ordinary women mourners, that come to lament for the dead partie: and stand howling about the body after a prophane and heathenish manner (sometimes in the house, sometimes bringing the body into the back-side, asking him what he wanted, and what he meant to die. They bury their dead, as the party vied to goe, with coar, hofe, boots, hat, and the rest of his apparel.

Many other vaine and superstitious Ceremonies they haue, which were long and tedious to report. By these it may appeare how farr they are fallen from the true knowledge, and practice of Christian Religion, hauing exchanged the Word of God for their vaine Traditions, and brought all to external and ridiculous Ceremonies, without any regard of Spirit and Truth, which God requirith in his true worship.

Chap. 26.
Of the Empe-
rours dome-
sticke, or pri-
uate behauiour.

THE Emperours priuate behauiour, so much as may be, or is meet to be knowne, is after this manner. Hee riseth commonly about foure a clock in the morning. After his appar- telling and walking, in cometh his ghostly Father, or Priest of his chamber, which is named in their tongue, *Otesa Dubenna*, with his Crosse in his hand, wherewith he blesteth him, laying it first on his forehead, then vpon his cheekes, or sides of his face: and then after him the end of it to kisse. This done, the Clerke of the Crosse (called *Cherby Deyack Praser*) bringeth

into his Chamber, a painted Image, representing the Saint for that day: for every day with them hath his *seuerall Saint*, as it were the Patrone for that day. This hee placeth among the rest of his Image Gods, wherewithall his Chamber is decked, as thicke almost as the wall can beare, with Lampes and Waxe-candles burning before them. They are very costly and gorgeously decked with Pearle and Precious Stone. This Image being placed before him, the Emperour beginneth to crosse himselfe after the *Russe* manner, first, on the fore-head, then on both sides of his breast, with *Apostol Pomeloy*, *Pomeloy mensa boljody*, *Jacroy mensa grafick Syndjfla*: which is as much to say, as, *Help me, O Lord my God, Lord comfort me, defend and keepe me, save me from doing euill, &c.* This hee directeth towards the Image, or Saint for that day, whom hee is named in his Prayer, together with our Lady (whom they call *Pracheite*) Saint *Nicolas*, or some other, to whom he beareth most deuotion, bowing himselfe prostrate vnto them, with knocking his head to the very ground. Thus he continueth the space of a quarter of an houre or thereabouts.

His priuate
Prayer.

Then cometh againe the Ghostly Father or Chamber Priest, with a Silver Bowle full of *Holy-water*, which they call in *Russe*, *Sueta Voda*, and a sprinkle of Basil (as they call it) in his hand: and so all to besprengkle first the Image Gods, and then the Emperour. This *Holy-water* is brought fresh every day from the Monasteries, farre and neere sent to the Emperour from the Abbot or Prior, in the name of the Saint, that is Patrone of that Monastery, as a speciall token of good will from him.

Then these Denotions being ended, he sendeth into the Emperesse, to aske whether the hath rested in health, &c. And after a little pawles goeth himselfe to salute her in a middle Rosome betweene both their chambers. The Emperesse lyeth a-part from him, and keepeth not one chamber, nor Table with the Emperour ordinarily, save vpon the Eue of their Lent, or common Fasts: what time she is his ordinary Ghest at Bed and Boord. After their meeting in the morning, they goe together to their priuate Church or Chappell, where is said or sung a morning Service (called *Zaurana*) of an houre long or thereabouts. From the Church hee returneth home, and sitteth him downe in a great chamber, to be seene and saluted by his Nobilitie, such as are in fauour about the Court. If he haue to say to any of them, or they to him, then is the time. And this is ordinary, except his health, or some other occasion alter the custome.

The Emperour
giueth pre-
sence every
morning.

About nine in the morning, he goeth to another Church within his Castle: where is sung by Priests, and Choristers, the high Service (called *Obedna*, or *Complin*) which commonly lasteth two houres: the Emperour in the meane-time talking commonly with some of his Councell, Nobilitie, or Captaynes, which haue to say to him, or he to them. And the Councell likewise conferre together among themselves, as if they were in their Councell-house. This ended, he returneth home, and recreateth himselfe vntill it be Dinner time.

He is serued at his Table on this manner. First, every Dish (as it is deliuered at the Dresser) is tasted by the Cooke, in the presence of the high Steward, or his Deputie. And so is receiued by the Gentlemen-waiters (called *Shiflers*) and by them carryed vp to the Emperours Table, the high Steward or his Deputie going before. There it is receiued by the Sewer (called *Estrafny*) who giueth a Dish of euery Dish to the Taster, and so placeth it before the Emperour. The number of his Dishes for his ordinary Service, is about seuentie: dressed somewhat grossly, with much Garlike, and Salt, much after the *Dutch* manner. When hee exceedeth vpon some occasion of the day, or entertainment of some Ambassadors, hee hath many more Dishes. The Service is sent vp by two Dishes at a time, or three at the most, that he may eate it warme, first the baked, chiefe of his Nobility that are about his Court, and his Ghostly Father, or Chapleine. On the one side of the chamber standeth a Cubboord, or Table of Plate, very fair and rich, with a great Cistene of Copper by it, full of Ice and Snow, wherein stand the Pots that are used for that meale, a way, when he calleth for it. The manner is to make many Dishes out of the Service after it is And this is counted a great fauour and honour.

The Emperour
Service at his
Table.

After dinner he layeth him down to rest, where commonly he taketh three houres sleep, except he employ one of the houres to bathing, or boxing. And this custome for sleeping after Dinner, is an ordinary matter with him, as withall the *Russe*. After his sleep, he goeth to Euen-song (called *Vechurna*) and thence returning, for the most part recreateth himselfe with the Emperesse till Supper time, with Letters and Dwarres, men and women, that tumble before him, and sing many Songs after the *Russe* manner. Theres his common recreation betwix meales that he most delights in. One other speciall recreation, is the fight with wild Beares, which are caught in Pits or Nets, and are kept in barred Cages for that purpose, against the Emperour be disposed to see round about, where hee is to quite himselfe so well as hee can: for there is no way to fyre out. When the Beare is turned loose, he cometh vpon him with open mouth: if at the first push he misse his ayme, so that the Beare come within him, hee is in great danger. But the wilde Beare

Beare bying.

being very scarce, hath this quality, that giueth aduantage to the Hunter. His manner is, when he aduayleth a man, to rise vp right on his two hinder-legs, and so to come roaring with open-mouth vpon him. And if the Hunter then can pull nigh into the very breast of him betwixt his fore-legs (as commonly he will not misse) resting the other end of their Boar-speare at the side of his foot, and so keeping the Pike still towards the face of the Beare, he speendeth him commonly at one blow. But many times these Hunters come short, and are either slaine, or miserably torne with the Teeth and Talents of the fierce Beast. If the partie quite himselfe well in this fight with the Beare, he is carried to drinke at the Emperours Sellar doore: where he drinkech himselfe drinke for the honour of *Hopdare*. And this is his Reward for aduentering his life, for the Emperours pleasure. To maintaine this pastime, the Emperour hath certayne Huntsmen that are appointed for that purpose to take the wild Beare. This is his recreation commonly on the holy dayes. Sometimes he spendeth his time in looking vpon his Gold-smithes and Jewellers, Taylors, Embroiderers, Painters, and such like, and so goeth to his Supper. When it draweth towards Bed-time, his Priest faith certayne Prayers: and then the Emperour blesteth and crosseth himselfe, as in the morning for a quarter of an hour or thereabouts, and so goeth to his Bed.

Emperour
Theodore do-
terber.

Pilgrimage.

The Emperour that now is (called *Theodore Iunior*) is for his person of a meane stature, somewhat low and groffe, of a fallow complexion, and inclining to the Drowie, Hawke-nosed, vnto in his face, by reason of some weakness of his limmes, heavy and vnto, yet commonly smiling alowt to laughter. For qualitie otherwise, simple and low vnto, yet very gentle, and of an easie nature, quiet, mercifull, of no martiall disposition, nor greatly apt for matter of Police, very Superstitious, and infinite that way. Besides his priuate Deuotions at home, he goeth euer weeke commonly on Pilgrimage, to some Monastere or other that is needfull here. He is of thirtie foure yeeres old, or thereabouts, and hath reigned almost the space of six yeeres.

chap. 27.
Of the Empe-
rours priuate, or
household Of-
ficers.
Master of the
Horse.

The Lord
Steward.
The Lord
Treasurer.
Comptroller.
Chamberlaine
T. Rens.
Harbengers.

Gentlemen of
the Chamber.
The Guard.

Groomes.

The chiefe Officers of the Emperours household, are these which follow. The first is the Office of the *Boiaren Consilia*, or Master of the Horse. Which containeth no more then is expressed by the name, that is, to be Ouer-see of the Horse, and not *Magister Equitum*, or Master of the Horsemen. For he appointeth other for that Service, as occasion doth require (as before was said.) He that beareth that Office at this time, is *Boris Federovich Godunov*, Brother to the Emperesse. Of Horse for Service in his Warres (besides other for his ordinary vices) he hath to the number of 10000, which are kept about *Moske*.

The next is the Lord Steward of his household at this time, one *Gregorie Vasilovich Godunov*. The third, is his Treasurer, that keepeth all his Monyes, Jewels, Plate, &c. now called *Sigan Vasilovich Godunov*. The fourth, his Comptroller, now *Andreas Petrovich Clesine*. The fifth, his Chamberlaine. He that attendeth that Office at this time, is called *Ejoma Sifabova Palesinich*. The sixth, his Tasters, now *Theodore Alexandrovich*, and *Iuan Vasilovich Godunov*. The seventh, his Harbengers, which are three Noblemen, &c. no diuers other Gentlemen that do the Office vnder them. These are his ordinary Officers, and Offices of the chiefeest account.

Of Gentlemen, beside that wait about his Chamber, and Person (called *Sluffy Strassy*) there are two hundred, all Noblemens Sonnes. His ordinary Guard is two thousand *Hagbutters*, ready with their Peeces charged, and their Match lighted, with other necessary Furniture, continually day and night: which come not within the houle, but wait without in the Court or Yard where the Emperour is abiding. In night time there lodgeth next to his Bed-chamber, the chiefe Chamberlaine, with one or two more of the best trust about him. A second chamber off, he lodgeth six other of like account, for their truth and faithfulness. In the third chamber lye certayne young Gentlemen, of these two hundred, called *Sluffy Strassy*, that take their turne by forties euerie night. There are Groomes beside that watch in their courtie, and lye at euerie gate and doore of the Court, called *Ejapnick*.

The *Hagbutters* or Gunners, whereof there are two thousand (as was said before) watch about the Emperours Lodging, or Bed-chamber, by course two hundred and fiftie euerie night, and two hundred and fiftie more in the Court-yard, and about the Treasure-houle. His Court or houle at the *Moske* is made Castle-wise, walled about with great store of faire Ordnance planted vpon the wall, and containeth a great breadth of ground within it, with many dwelling houles. Which are appointed for such as are knowne to be true, and trustie to the Emperour.

chap. 28.
Of the priuate
behaviour, or
qualitie of
the Russes people.
Constitution
of their bodies.

The priuate behauiour and qualitie of the *Russe* people, may partly be vnderstood by that which hath bene liyd, concerning the publike State and vlage of the Countrey. As touching the naturall habit of their bodies, they are for the most part of a large size, and of 60 fleshy bodies: accounting it a grace to be somewhat groffe and barlie, and therefore they nourish and spread their Beards, to haue them long and broad. But for the most part they are very vnto, and vnto withall. Which may be thought to come partly of the Climate, and the numbnesse which they get by the cold in Winter, and partly of their Dyet that standeth

most of Roots, Onions, Garlike, Cabbage, and such like things that breed grosse humours, which they vie to eat alone, and with their other meates.

Their Dyet is rather much, then cutous. At their Meales they beginne commonly with a Their Dyes *Chark*, or small cup of *Agua-vita* (which they call *Russe Wine*) and then drinke not till towards the end of their Meales, taking it in largely, and all together with kissing one another at Drinking and to his bench to take his after-noones sleepe, which is as ordinary with them as their nights rest. Sleeping. When they exceed, and are in a more variety of Dishes, the first are their baked meates (for roast meates they vie little) and then their Broaths or Portage. To drinke drinke, is an ordinary matter 10 with them euerie day in the Weekes. Their common Drinke is *Mead*, the poorer sort vie water, and a thin Drinke called *Quass*, which is nothing else (as we say) but water turned out of his swit, with a little Bran mealed with it.

This Dyet would breed in them many Difates, but that they vie Bath-floues, or Hot-hou- Bath floues ses in stead of all Physicke, commonly twice or thrice euerie Weeke. All the Winter time, and almost the whole Summer, they heate their *Peaches*, which are made like the *German* Bath-floues, and their *Potails* like Ovens, that so warme the Houle, that a stranger at the first shall hardly like of it. These two extremities, specially in the Winter of heate within their Houles, and of extreme cold without, together with their Dyet, maketh them of a darke and fallow complexion, their skinnies being tanned and parched both with cold and with heat: specially 20 the women, that for the greater part are of farr worse complexions then the men. Whereof the cause I take to be their keeping within the Hot-houles, and buying themselves about the heating, and vying of their Bath-floues and *Peaches*.

The *Russe* because that he is vied to both these extremities of heate and of cold, can beare them both a great deale more patiently then strangers can doe. You shall see them sometimes (Extremities) Pige at a Spit, and presently to leape into the River stark naked, or to powre cold water all ouer their bodies, and that in the coldest of all the Winter time. The women to mend the bad hue of their skinnies, vie to paint their faces with white and redde colours, so visibly that euerie Women saw 30 Hisbands: who make their Wives and Daughters an ordinary allowance to buy them colours such faire Images. This parcheth the skinnie, and helpeth to deforme them when their painting is of.

They apparell themselves after the *Greece* manner. The Noblemans attyre is on this fashion. First, a *Taffia*, or little night cap on his head, that couereth little more then his crowne, commonly 40 very rich, wrought of Silke and Gold Thread, and set with Pearle and Precious Stone. His head he keepeth hauen close to the very skin, except he be in some displeasure with the Emperour. Then he suffereth his haire to grow and hang downe vpon his shoulders, couering his face as 50 he goeth abroad, and for the most part he weareth a wide Cap of blacke Foxe (which they account for the best Fur) with a *Tiara*, or long Bonnet put within it, standing vp like a *Perjan* or *Bagliman* Hat. About his necke (which is fenele all bare) is a Coller set with Pearle and Precious Stone, about three or foure-fingers broad. Next ouer his thirtie (which is curiously wrought, because hee strippeth himselfe into it in the Sommer-time, while hee is within the houle) is a *Shapen*, or light Garment of Silke made downe to the knees, buttoned before; and then a *Cafian* or a close Coat buttoned, and girt to him with a *Perjan* Girdle, whereat hee hangs 60 his Knives and Spone. This commonly is of Cloth of Gold, and hangeth downe as low as his some Gold Lace, called a *Ferris*. Another ouer that of Chambric, or like Silke called an *offen*, sleeued and hanging low, and the Cape commonly brooched, and set all with Pearle. When he goeth abroad, hee catcheth ouer all these (which are but sleight, though they seeme to be many) another Garment called an *Honawake*, like to the *Alkaben*, laue that it is made without a Coller 70 for the necke. And this is commonly of fine Cloth, or Camels haire. His Buskins (which hee *Perjan* Leather called *Saphian*, Embroidered vnder them in stead of Boot-hofe) are made of a Cloth of Gold. When he goeth abroad, hee mounteth on Horse-backe, though it be but to the next doore: which is the manner also of the *Boiarsky*, or Gentlemen.

The *Boiarsky*, or Gentlemans attyre is of the same fashion, but differeth in Stoffe: and yet he will haue his *Cafian* or Vnder-coat sometimes of Cloth of Gold, the rest of Cloth or Silke. 80 The Noble woman (called *Chyna Boiarsena*) weareth on her head, first a Coller of some fofte Silke (which is commonly called *Rud*) and ouer it a Furriner, called *Obrya* of white colour. Ouer that her Cap (made after the Coiffe-fashion of Cloth of Gold) called *Shapke Tempke*, edged with some rich Fur, and set with Pearle and Stone. Though they haue of late begun to discline in Embroidery with Pearle about their Caps, because the *Diack*, and some Mer- chants Wives haue taken vp the fashion. In their eares they weare Earrings (which they call 90 *Soger*)

Sargee, of two Inches more compasse, the matter of Gold set with Rubies , or Saphires, or some like Precious Stone. In Sommer they goe often with Kerchiefs of fine white Lawne, or Cambricke, fastened under the chinne, with two long Tassels pendent. The Kerchiefe spotted with white Hats with coloured bands (called *Staps* & *Stopy*.) about in raynie weather, they wear Colers of three or foure-fingers broad, set with rich Pearle and Precious Stone. Their vpper Garment is a loose Gowne called *Opyfen*, commonly of white Linnen, with wide loose sleeves, hanging down to the ground buttressed before with great Gold Buttons, or at least Silver and gilt, high of some rich Fur, that hangeth downe almost to the middle of their backs. Next under the *Opyfen* or vpper Garment, they wear another called *Leunick* that is made clofe before with to great wide sleeves, the cuffe or halfe sleeve up to the elbows, commonly of Cloth of Gold: and under that a *Ferris Zemiky*, which hangeth loose buttressed throughout to the very foot. On Stone. They goe all in Buskins of White, Yellow, Blue, or some other coloured Leather, embroidered with Pearle. This is the attyre of the Noble-woman of *Russia*, when shee maketh for the making or fashion.

As for the poor *Admiral* and his Wife they goe poorly clad, The man with his *Odenavakey*, or loof Gowne to the mall of the legges, tyed together with a Lace before, of coufrie white or blue cloth, with some *Shube* or long *Alf* of the same *Shube*, or of *Shace* before, and his furred Cap, and Buskins. The poorer sort of them, with their *Odenavakey*, or upper Garment, made of Cowes haire. This is their Winter Habit. In the Sommer time, commonly they wear nothing but their shirts on their backs, and Buskins on their legs. The woman goeth in a *pad* or blue Gowne, when she maketh the best hew, and with some *arme Shube* of Furre under it in the Winter time. But in the Sommer, nothing but two thinners. For they call them one-over the other, whether they be within doores, or without. On their heads, they wear Caps of some coloured Stoffe, many of Veluet, or of Cloth of Gold: but for the most part Kerchiefs. Without Earings of Silver or some other Metall, and her Croffe about her neck, you shall see no *Ruffe* woman, be shee Wife, or Maide.

As touching their behaviour, and qualitie, otherwife, they are of reasonable capacities, if they had thofe means that fome other Nations haue to tryne vp their wits in good Nurture, and Learning, which they might borrow of the *Polonians*, and other their Neighbours, but that their refufe, of a very felfe-pride, as accounting their owne falfions to be farre the beft. Partly felfe (as I faid before) for that their manner of bringing vp (void of all good Learning, and Ciuill behaviour) is thought by their Gouvernours moft agreeable to that State, and their manner of Government. This caueth the Emperours to bee very wary for excluding of all Peregrinitie, that might alter their falfions. Which were leffe to bee difliked, if it fet not a print into the very minds of his people. For as themfelves are very hardly and cruelly dealt with all by their Chiefe Magiftrates, and other Superiours, fo are they as cruell one againft another, fpecially our 40 of their inferiours, and fuch as are vnder them. So that the bafteft and wretchedeft *Chriftians* (as they call him) that ftoopeh and croucheth like a Dogge to the Gentleman, and licketh vp the duft that lyeth at his feet, is an intolerable Tyrant, where hee hath the aduantage. By this means the whole Countrey is filled with Rapine, and Murder. They make no account of the life of a man. You fhall haue a man robbed fometime in the very ftreets of their Townes, if he goe late in the Evening; and yet no man to come forth out of his doores to refcue him, though he heare him cry out. I will not fpeake of the ftrangenefle of the Murders, and other cruelties committed among them, that would fairly be beleued to be done among men, fpecially fuch as profefle themfelves *Chriftians*.

The number of their vngarrant and begging poore is almost infinite: that are so pinched with famine and extreme need, as that they begge after a violent and desperate manner, with *Gine me and crie me, Gine me and kill me*; and such like Phrases. And yet it may be doubted whether this be the greater, the Cruelty or Intemperance that is vied in that Countrey. I will not speake of it, because it is so foule and not to be named. The whole Countrey ouerfloweth with all sinnes of that kind. And no maruell, as hauing no Law to retrain **Whoredomes, Adulteries, and like** vncleaneoffe of life.

As for the truth of his word, *as some say*, the *Ruffe* neither beleueeth any thing that another man speaketh, nor speaketh any thing himselfe worthy to be beleued. These qualities make them very odious to all their Neighbours, specially to the *Tartars*; that account themselves to be honest and iust, in comparison of the *Ruffe*. It is supplied by some that doe well consider of the State of both Countries, that the offence they take at the *Ruffe* Government, and their manner of behaviour, hath beene a great cause to keep the *Tartar* still Heathenish, and to mulke as he doth of the Christian profession.

To the Reader.

[illegible]

Silver by a Dutchman (Michael Mercator, Nephew to Gerardus) many yeeres before Scouter or Maure intended that Voyage. As for Noua Zemla by Stephen Burrough, and others, long before discovered, they also haue given new names, which I enue not: only I feare a vñ foli, and have ingested both ours and theirs. But so much of this. Next to this more generall Discoverie shall follow the Dutch Northernne Voyages, and the English North-westernne: after which wee will take a more complementall leaue of that Continent, and from thence visit the Northernly and North-westernne Discoveries; at once hunting for a New World and a New passage to This.

CHAP. II.

A briefe Discoverie of the Northernne Discoveries of Seas, Coasts, and Countries, delivered in order as they were hopefully begunne, and haue ever since happily beene continued by the singular industrie and charge of the Wor-shippfull Society of Muscovia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine THOMAS EDGE the Authour.

§. I.

Greenland first discovered by Sir HUGH WILLOUGHBYE: the Voyages of FROBISHER, PET and JACKMAN, DAVIS, the Dutche; First Morfe and Whale-killing, with further Discoveries.



THE Northernne parts of the World have ever been held to be *Officina Gentium* & *celus Paganus Nativum*, Nature's Shop and Store-house of Men, better furnished then any other part of the Earth, and from whence those notable Inundations came first of the *Cymbrians* and *Tentons*, in the time of the antique *Romans*; and secondly of the *Goths* and *Vandals* vnder *Atila*, to the confusion of things both Duine and Humane in all the Southerne parts of *Europe*, as farre as *Barbarie* could prevaile against *Civilitie* and Religion. For remedie whereof the Townes along the *Baltick* Sea entered into a confederacy vnder the names of the *Hans Townes*, and undertooke the keeping of those Northernne people, and the securing of these Southerne Kingdomes from any like overflowsings, upon which Priviledges and Immunities as were granted and agreed vnto them by all the Southerne Princes, and according to such Lawes as were made and provided for the maintenance and strength of the said *Hans Townes*, amongst which the supreme and fundamentall Lawe was that none of these Nations so secured should haue trade or commerce in any parts beyond the *Baltick* Seas, to the end the barbarous people might not be enabled thereby to practise or moue against the *Hans Townes*: which was the cause together also with the extremities of cold, that those Northernne Seas were neuer looked vnto vntill the yeere 1553. At which time the trade of this Kingdom waxing cold and in decay, and the Merchants incited with the fame of the great masse of riches which the *Portugals* and *Spaniards* brought home yearly from both the *Indies*, entered into a resolution, notwithstanding the prohibition of the *Hans Law* to discover the Northernne Seas, which so long had been frozen and shut vp; and to see whether they could not afford a passage to *Cathay* and the East *Indies*, and accordingly provided three ships, and sent them forth vnder the command of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, Knight, who embarked himselfe in a ship called, the *Bona Esperanza*, Admirall of that Voyage, with *Richard Chancellor* Captaine of the *Edward Bonaventure*, together with a third ship, called the *Bona Confidentia*. These three ships falling downe from *Ratcliffe*, the tenth of May in the foresaid yeere went on their Voyage, and proceeding as farre as the Cape of *Norway*, they were seuered by a tempest. *Chancellor* after he had stayed at Ward-houle seven dayes, expecting the Admirall and the other ships, according to a former appointment vpon any such casualty, and hearing nothing of them, went on, and discovered the Bay of *Saint Nicolas*, and founded a trade there, which hath continued to these times.

Sir Hugh Willoughbie was driven to the height of 72.° where hee fell vpon an Island, now knowne by the name of *Willoughbie Land*, and lieth from *Seam* (vpon the Continent of *Norway*) East and by North an hundred and fixtie leagues or thereabouts, from thence he went North and North-west, and within eight dayes after he fell vpon a Land which lay West South-west, and East North-east, betwene 74. and 75. degrees of latitude, and plying Westward along by

CHAP. 2. §. I. Greenland discovered by Sir H. Willoughbie, Borough, &c. 463

the Land, he was driven by the wind to put to Sea againe, vntill the wind came about. Then they made towards the Land againe, and bare with it, but finding that place vnfit for landing, they hailed out againe, running along the Land sixteen leagues North-west, where they found a Baye Baye, went on Land and found the place inhabited. From thence they put to Sea againe, runne along the coast for fortie leagues together, till at length they came to an ancior within two leagues of the shire, where they landed, and found two or three good Harbours.

Afterwards they entered into the Haven which ranne vp into the Maine about two leagues, where they remained for the space of a weeke vpon the maine Land. They found Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and other beastes. They ten by Sir H. Will. and found in his ship, In aumatic after he was alive, as appears by a Will of Galt, Will. his kinsman, subscribed by Sir Hugh Willoughbie which Will I now haue, and keepe as a Relique of this worthy discoverer and first Sinder of King James his New land.

The *Muscovia* Merchants hauing thus sealed a trade in *Russia*, and being incorporated by the name of, The Merchants of *England*, for the discoverie of new trades, pursued their first resolutions for finding a way to *Cathay* by the North-east, and in the yeere 1556. sent out *Stephen Burrough*, for discoverie of the Riuer *Obb*, who proceeding forwards in that Voyage discovered the Riuer *Pechora*, the Streights of *Vaigatz* and *Noua Zembla*; went on thore vpon the Island of *Vaigatz*, and vpon the North Continent of *Russia*; met with the *Samoeds*, observed their manner of life, their Religion, their Sacrifices to their rude and ill shaped Idols; and the yeere being spent, returned into *Russia*.

The Companie hauing fought for the North-east passage, and finding such difficulties as are mentioned in their particular Journals, refused to make triall, if the North-west part could not afford a passage to the *Indies*, which was the first and maine hope of their Northern Discoveries. And in the yeere 1576. they sent forth Sir *Marin Frobisher* with two Barks, who coming into the height of 62. or thereabouts, found a great Inlet, now knowne by the name of *Frobishers Streights*, into which he put himselfe, and layed sixtie leagues with a mayne Land on each side, and so for that yeere returned.

The next yeere following he made a second Voyage to that place, purposely to lade himselfe with a kind of Oare, which the yeere before he had found there, and gaue hope by the colour to yeeld Gold, and being laden with some quantitie, returned.

The yeere following, being 1578. hauing made triall here of that Oare, and finding it not to fall out according to his expectation, hee was furnished out to proceed in the further discoverie of those Streights, and entering into the same, made way so farre as hee thought fit, and then returned backe, hauing first taken possession thereof in the name of *Queene Elizabeth* of famous memorie, who called the place *Meta incognita*: he brought home some of the Natives, and left some of his men there.

In the yeere 1580. the Companie sent out a second Voyage for the discoverie of the Riuer *Obb*, and thence to goe on to *Cathay*; furnishing forth two ships vnder the command of *Ariuer Pet*, and *Charles Jackman*, who following their instructions, arrived at *Vaigatz*, passed those Streights with a particular obseruation of those Islands and places therein, plying along the East part of *Noua Zembla*, and the North of *Russia*, and the *Samoeds* Countrey, so farre as the Ice would giue them leaue, and finding no possibilitie of passage by reason of the Ice, returned backe in the latter end of the yeere. By this time the Voyage of *Saint Nicolas* was knowne, and became a beaten trade. And the Companie sent out yearly thither ten or twelue ships, which returned freighted with the commodities of that Countrey.

In the yeere 1583. by the leaue and admittance of the *Muscovia* Companie, Sir *Humfrey Gilbert* went out for the discoverie of the North part of *Terra Florida*, came into the great Riuer called, *Saint Lawrence* in *Canada*, tooke possession of the Countrey, felcted the gouernment of the fishing there which is so well knowne in these times.

In the yeere 1585. *Master Iohn Davis* was furnished out at *Dartmouth* with two Barks, for the discoverie of the North-west, came into the height of 66. plying along the coast, observed the possibilitie of a passage, and in the end of the yeere returned.

In the yeere following, being 1586. hee went on againe in the further discoverie thereof, found a great Inlet betwene 55. and 56. of latitude, which gaue him great hope of a passage, traded with the people there, and so returned.

In the yeere 1587. hee made a third Voyage to those places, followed his course to the North and North-west, to the Latitude of 67. degrees, hauing the Continent (which hee called *America*) on the West side and *Groneland*, which hee named *Desolation* on the East, and going on the height of 86. degrees, the passage enlarged so that hee could not see the Westerne shoare. Thus he continued in the Latitude of 73. degrees in a great Sea free from Ice, of an vnmeasurable depth, but by the occasion of the departure of two ships which were in company with him, which

in Gronelandia de Dutch, Nor-ma.

Hans Townes.

Cathay, See L. 1. cap. 1. of this whole Voyage. 321.

* An error in the last tube, the Land Sand is 77.

* See Hackl. V tom. 1. p. 274.

1576. Sir M. Frobisher Hackl. tom. 3. p. 294 & seq.

1578.

1580.

Pet and Jackman, Hackl. tom. 3. p. 445.

1583.

R. H. Gilberts Hackl. tom. 3. p. 455.

1585.

Master Davis Hackl. tom. 3. p. 498 & seq.

1586.

1587.

Fretum Dani.

which he left Fishing at a place, he returned home. This passage continueth the Name and memorie of the first Discoverer, and is called *Fretum Daniæ*. And thus the Discoverie of the North Seas proceeded on from time to time, by the endeavour and charge of the *Muscovia* Company, untill they had particularly discovered the Land, Coasts, Islands, Straights, Havens, Bays, fros: Together also with the observation of the Commodities and Advantages, arising from every part of the same, continuing even unto these times to haunt and frequent the parts which they formerly found out: As by their yearly Reportaries and Journalls may appear, and that either without emulation or competition of any other Nation, that ever came into those parts or entered any Discoverie there vnto late yeeres, as appears by this that followeth.

When *Richard Chancellor* had led a trade with *Iohn Vasilovich* then Emperor of *Russia*, and his Ambassadors had beene here in *England*, to accomplish matters requisite for maintenance of the Amities and Entercoeurse made and agreed vpon betweene these two Crownes: *King Philip*, *Queene Marie*, Dukes also at that time of *Burgundie*, and Soueraignes of all the *Netherlands*, made a grant of Priuiledge vnto the *Muscovia* Merchants for the sole Trade of those Seas, prohibiting all others to haunt and frequent the same, without speciall Licence and consent of the sayd Company: in which grant of Priuiledge was accordingly enioyed without disturbance or interloping of the *Hollanders*, who out of obedience either to the Prohibition made by their Soueraigne, or for that they durst not adventure into these Seas, did not any way attempt to becom or appear there, either for Discoverie or trade of Merchandize, for the space of fise and 30 yeeres. For the Company hauing as is aboue mentioned, made their first Discoverie in the yeere 1553. there was neuer heard of any *Netherlander* that frequented those Seas, untill the yeere 1578. At which time they first began to come to *Cola*, and within a yeere or two after, one *Iohn de Waale* a *Netherlander*, came to the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*, being drawne thither by the perauersion of some *Engliss* for their better meane of Interloping, which was the first man that was that euer was lesse there. And this as is formerly noted was fise and twentie yeeres after it was first Discoveried by the *Muscovia* Merchants.

1594. These Voyages follow.

Afterwards the *Hollanders* crept in more and more, and in the yeere 1594. they made out foure Ships for Discoverie of the North-east passage to *China*, the Master Pylor whereof was *Jo William Barrents*, these came vpon the Coast of *Nouasembila* to the Latitude of 77 degrees, drew backe againe towards the Straights of *Vaigatz*, and then returned giuing Names vnto some places and Promontories vpon that Land.

1595.

In the yeere 1595. They sent out a second Voyage, tracing the way through the Straights of *Vaigatz* in the same steps, as *Peter and Lackman* had formerly passed, and so returned.

1596.

In the yeere 1596. They set out third Voyage with two Ships, the one of which flapped her course from the Cape of *Norway*, to an Island in the Latitude of 74. degrees, where they called *Cherie Island*, and they call *Bear Island*, and from thence to *Greenland*, where *Sir Hugh Willoughby* had bene two and fortie yeeres before, for so long time there is betweene the first Discoverie thereof and the yeere 1596. And from thence to the North-east part of *Nouasembila*, in the Latitude of 76. degrees, where they Wintred and lost their Ship, and came home with much difficultie.

In the yeere 1603. *Stephen Bennet* was employed by the Company, in a Ship called the *Grace*, to chiefe parts Northwards of the Cape, and was at *Cherie Island* and killed some Sea-horfs, and brought home Lea. 1 Oare from thence.

In the yeere 1608. the said fellowship set forth a Ship called the *Hope-well*, whereof *William Hudson* was Master, to discover to the Pole, where it appeareth by his Journall, that hee came to the height of 81. degrees, where he gaue Names to certayne places, vpon the Continent of *Greenland* formerly discovered, which continue to this day, namely, *Whale Bay*, and *Hackin Head*, and being hindered with Ice, returned home without any further vize made of the Countrey, and in tanging homewards, hee discovered an Island lying in 71. degrees, which hee named *Hudsons Tutcher*.

Here it is to beee vnderstood, that the Company hauing by often resort and employment to those parts, observed the great number of Sea-horfs at *Cherie Island*, and likewise the multitude of Whales, that shewed themselves vpon the coast of *Greenland*: They first applied themselves to the killing of the Morces, which they continued from yeere to yeere with a Ship or two yearly: in which Ships the Company appointed *Thomas Welden* Commander, and in the yeere 1609. the Company employed one *Thomas Edge* their Apprentice, for their Northern Voyage, and joynd him in Commiffion with the foresayd *Welden*. Now the often vizing of *Cherie Island*, did make the Sea-horfe grow scarce and decay, which made the Company looke out 60 for further Discoveries.

In the yeere 1610. the Company set out two Ships, viz. the *Lioness* for *Cherie Island*, *Thomas Edge* Commander; and the *Aminta*, for a Northerne Discoverie, the Master of which Ship was *Jonas Poole*: who in the month of May fall with a Land, and called it *Greenland*, this is the Land

Land that was discovered by *Sir Hugh Willoughby* long before, which Ship *Aminta* continued vpon the coast of *Greenland*, discovering the Harbours and killing of Morces, untill the month of August, and so returned for *England*, hauing gotten about some twelue Tunnes of goods, and an *Vnicorne*'s horne.

In the yeere 1611. the Company set forth two Ships for *Greenland*, the *Maria Margaret* Admirall, burthen one hundred and sixtie tunnes, *Thomas Edge* Commander; and the *Elizabeth*, burthen sixtie tunnes, *Jonas Poole* Master, well manned and furnished with all necessarie Provisions, they departed from *Blackwall* the twentieth of Aprill, and arrived at the Foreland in *Greenland* in the Latitude of 79. degrees, the twentieth of May following, the Admirall had in her

10 six Biskayners expert men for the killing of the Whale: this was the first yeere the Company set out for the killing of Whales in *Greenland*, and about the twelfth of Iune the Biskayners killed a small Whale, which yielded twelue Tunnes of Oyle, being the first Oyle that euer was made in *Greenland*. The Companies two Shalops looking about the Harbour for Whales, about the fise and twentieth of Iune rowing into *Sir Thomas Smiths Bay*, on the East side of the Sound faw on the thore great flore of Sea-horfs: after they had found the Morces they presently rowed vnto the Ship, being in crosse Road seuen leagues off, and acquainted the Captayne what they had found. The Captayne vnderstanding of it, gaue order to the Master, *Stephen Bennet*, that he should take into his Ship fiftie tunnes of empte Caske, and let layle with the Ship to goe into *Foule Sound*. The Captayne went gently away in one Shalop with fise men vnto the Sea-morfe, andooke with him Lances, and coming to them they let on them and killed fise dead Morfes, and kept one thousand Morfes lying on shore, because it is not profitable to kill them all at one time. The next day the Ship being gone vnto the place & well mored where the Morfe were killed, all the men belonging to the Ship went on shore, to worke and make Oyle of the Morces; and when they had wrought two or three dayes, it fortuned that a small quantitie of Ice came out of *Foule Sound*, and put the Ship from her Moring. The Master and ten men being a board of the Ship, let fall their Sheat anchor which brought the Ship vp to ride; the Ice coming vpon her againe, brought her Anchor home and ranne the Ship ashore, where shee by the Masters weake Iudgement was cast away, and all their Bread spoyled not fit to eate. The Ship being cast away without hope of recouerie, the Commander *Thomas Edge* gaue order, that all the Morfe lying on shore should be let goe into the Sea, and so gaue ouer making of Oyle, and presently haled vp ashore all his Shallops and Boates, being fise, letting the Carpenter to trim them, the Saylor to make Sayles and Walfcloathes for the Boates, fit to serue them at Sea. Hauing fitted their Boates as well as they could with the small prouision they had, being in number foure small Shallops and the ships Boate, they diuided their men into them equally with what prouisions of victuals they could well carrie, and after they had sayd Prayers all together on Land; being fiftie men they departed from the place where they lost their Ship, on the fiftenth of Iuly with the winde Southerly, and rowed thither or fortie leagues to the Southward, and then they lost compassie of one Shalop and their ships Boate of *Horne Sound*, which two Boates met with *Cherie Island*, and acquainted him with the loss of the *Lioness* Ship, and that thee had lost on land goods worth fiftie hundred pounds: So our men caried the *Hull Ship* into *Foule Sound*, to take in the Companies goods and to kill some Sea-horfs for her selfe at that place. The Captayne and two other Shallops put from the Coast of *Greenland* in the height of 77. degrees, and fet their course for *Cherie Island*, which lyeth in 74. Degrees (—) sometimes saying and sometimes Rowing, and made *Cherie Island* the ninth and twentieth of Iuly, hauing bene in their Shallops at Sea fourteen dayes, and coming into the land with a great storme at North-west, with much difficultie they landed on the South side of the land.

Being on shore, the Captayne sent three of his Saylor out land vnto the North roade, being three miies distant from that place, to see if the *Elizabeth* was there, and they faw a Ship riding in the North roade, and being over-joyed they returned backe vnto the Captayne to acquaint him, without saying to speake with any of the Ships company, and by good hap the Master of the *Elizabeth* clyped men on the Shore, being at that time weighing Anchor to fet sayle for *England*, vpon which hee stayed and sent the Boate ashore to see what men they were, and when the men of the *Elizabeth* came ashore, they found them to be men of the *Maria Margaret*, and so went aboard vnto the Master to acquaint him; whereupon the Master caused Anchor to be weighed and went to the South side of the land, and there rooke in the Captayne, and hee being aboard vnderstanding what a poore Voyage the *Elizabeth* had made, gaue order to the Master to goe for *Greenland*, there to take in such Goods as the sayd Edge had left in *Foule Sound*. They departed from *Cherie Island* the first of August, and arrived at *Foule Sound* the Fourteenth Day: where they found two Boates which they had left companie of before, and all their men being come thither with a *Hull Ship* which they met with, and brought to that place; which Ship had spent all the yeere in *Horne Sound*, and got little goods. The *Elizabeth* being mored, the Captayne gaue order vnto the Master to deliver out of his Ship, all the goods hee had got at *Cherie Island*, which was Sea-horfs hydes and Blubber, being of little worth; And to take in the Oyle and Whale-fines, which were gotten by the *Maria Margaret*'s compa-

* See *Raffius* North-west Discoverie, *Vnicorne*, a Sea-horfs Horne.

1611.

First Whale-killing, Biskayners.

500 Morfes killed.

Shipwracke by Ice.

Hull Ship.

Cherie Island.

for Greenland, alleging unto them, that the Companies ships were in each severall Harbour busied about their Voyage, and that none would stirre from his Harbours to molest them, and that there make a Voyage pesterce, which the said Zelanders did attempt, and there named our nought. Whereupon Captaine Thomas Edge, chiefe Commander of the *English* Fleet, having laden those ships that were in Harbour with him, and presently sent for *William Hely*, his Vice-admirall, giving him order (who was not then full laden, but in good forwardnesse) to take the ship *sayd Hely* presently put in execution. But before his coming thither, the Zelanders had notice by an *English* Surgeon, that if they did not depart, the *English* Vice-admirall would come presently and force them from thence. Whereupon the Zelanders laden all the goods they had in two ships, and sent them away before the coming of the *English* Vice-admirall, leaving one ship behind, with certaine Caske of Blubber, and two Whales and an halfe vncut vp, in a braundo to trye if the *English* would meddle with them or not, which said ship and goods there left, were surprized by the said *English* Vice-admirall; the goods detain'd to the Companies use; and the ship restored there to the Zelanders; which ship having in her ten cast Peeces, and sixtie men, and having intelligence of one of the Companies ships, at that time laden in the Country take that ship of the Companies and her lading, and carrie her to Zeland. For prevention whereof, the said Vice-admirall tooke five Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of Zeland, which were in England restored to the owners.

In which said yeere 1618. the Zelanders lending out for restitution of the goods taken from them. A new Company commixt of *English*, *Scottish* and Zelanders, through the meanes of our Sir John Comyngham Knight, procured a grant for setting forth of shipping to those parts, which might vnto her be ouerthrowne and spoiled the trade of the first discoverers thereof; and to that discoverers of the chiefe men were hired by the new Company that had been servants to the first that the East India Adventurers should ioyne stocke with the *Mosconia* Adventurers, and be one thereupon dissolved, to the *Mosconia* Companies great trouble and cost, in taking of all the pretensions they had bespoken, and paying ready money for the same, having no use thereof, but Company, in which yeere, and the next yeere after, their Voyages proved very ill, and they were losers, and much vexed and crossed in their proceedings, to the great disheartning and detriment of the *Mosconia* Company: yet that yeere 1618. they set forth thirteenth ships and two Pinnasses, under the command of the said Captaine Thomas Edge, who arriving upon the coast of King James his Newland, in the beginning of Iune separated themselves to severall Harbours for accomplishing of their Voyages, the most part being ships of no force. Presently after in all Harbours where the *English* were, arrived great store of ships of Zeland, in warlike manner, being ships of great force, who continued in the same Harbours amongst the *English*, setting two boats to the *English* one with *Diskeners*, with a full purpose to drive the *English* from their Harbours, and to reuenge the injuries (as they termed it) done them the yeere before: and to that purpose towards the latter end of July, ten Saile of the said Zelanders, being at a Harbour called the *Forceland*, where the said *William Hely*, Vice-admirall of the *English* Fleet that yeere, was in the ship *Plowfare*, Master Robert Salomon, with one *English* ship and a Pinnasse there of no force, let upon the said *English* Vice-admirall, threatening, if he would not yield presently, to dispoyle him of ship and goods, not permitting to take his men aboard. And with aboard of their chiefe ships layd the *English* Vice-admirall aboard, there being but seven *English* to enter the ship, which they detain'd for foure and twentie houres, the Zelanders not daring to enter, making many braudoes and attempts, thinking to make the *English* to yield; and hand Fortune of *Compsure*, burthen foure hundred tunnes, with eighteen cast Peeces, besides bralle hundred tunnes, with eighteen cast Peeces, Captaine Cornelius Cooke; the *Salmaster* of *Fish*, burthen two hundred tunnes, fourteen cast Peeces, Captaine Adrian Peterfor; the *Cat of Duple Lander*; and *William Johnson* of *Milborough*, in a ship with fourteen cast Peeces: all which, after much conference passed betwixt the said Zelanders and *William Hely*: which said Zelanders alleging that there was good lawe in *Flinders* for what they did. And on Sunday the nineteenth of July, 1618. did forcibly let upon the said *English* Vice-admirall, five together playing their great Ordnance, small Shot, and Murderers, seeking what in them lay to kill and spoile all the

English that were aboard: who resisted their force, and in spite of all their oppossers set sayle, slauting them with their Ordnance, and maintaining fight against them till their Sayles were shot downe, some of their chiefe men slaine, others hurt, and their ship forced either to anchor, or run ashore. The Zelanders vied the *English* very unkindly, ridding their ship of all their goods, and taking away all their munition and artillery, not leaving any goods ashore, but burning vp the Caske, not permitting the *English* to take in fish water, but that their Boat thorow in going ashore, and minding, as they protested and swore unto the said *William Hely*, that they would take and ranke all the *English* ships in the Country, and carrie the *English* Captaine to Zeland: having as they said, that yeere in those parts 23. sayle of well appointed ships, onely to ouerthrow all the *English*, all which were to meet in Scotland outward bound. After the surprizing of the said *English* Vice-admirall, all the rest of the *English* ships being dispersed farre asunder, could not ioyne together, being in all places hindered by the *Flemmings*: and by that means the *English* Voyage vnto the extraordinary great losse and charge of the Companies, the most part of their ships returning home without any goods.

The next yeere 1619. the said *Mosconia* and East India Companies let out nine ships, and two Pinnasses, under the command of the said Captaine Edge, in which yeere, diuers *Hollenders* being in the Northernmost Harbour in the Country, employing great quantitie of Boats in chasing the Whale there, off into the Sea, put them by their vniual course, so that the Companies ships, being five of the nine, in the two Northernmost Harbours, were disappointed of their Voyage in those Harbours; and thinking to better it in the other Harbours; the foresaid *William Hely* sending a Shallop with ten men in her, with Letters to the said Captaine Edge, of their ill successe to the Northwards, the said Shallop was cast away, and all the men lost: and the said Captaine being laden, sent a Pinnasse to the said *William Hely* in August, advertising him of his departure, thinking all the ships to the Northward had been laden, willing them to haste home. By means of which Shallops casting away, the Voyage was greatly hindered to the Companies exceeding great losse; in that the *Hollanders* did as then bring over great quantitie of Whale-oyle, and sold it at vnder rates, so that the Company was forced to keep their ships on their hands twelue moneths, and sell it afterwards at a very small price, and lost one ship in her returne homewards neere *Yarmouth*: which did so much dishearten the said Company, that they dissolved againe, and thought verily to haue aduertured no more thither (if their successe those two yeeres past, in which the East India Company ioynd with them was so bad, that any that would buy their provision might enioy the benefit of the Trade there.) At which time, the worthe and famous Merchantes Adventurers: namely, *Ralph Freeman*, *Benjamin Deicrops*, *George Smead*, with Captaine Thomas Edge, all brethren of the *Mosconia* Company, pitying great comfort, and breeding of Trade into their hands. In which yeere 1620. they set out seven sayle of ships, under the command of *William Gossland*, and the said *William Hely*; in which said yeere, by reason of great store of *Flemmings*, and Danes in the foresaid Northernmost Harbours, their ships had ill successe to the Northwards, and were forced to passe from Harbour to Harbour to seeke to make a Voyage, but could not, and so returned home halfe laden, with seven hundred tunnes of Oyle.

The next yeere 1621. the foresaid Adventurers hired, and set forth eight ships, seven for the Whale Voyage, and one to the South-eastwards vpon Discouerie, under the command aforesaid, which yeere in one of their chiefe Harbours their Voyage was ouerthrowne, by reason of the foresaid *Flemmings* and Danes, being to the Northward, as aforesaid, putting the Whale by her course, and in all places in the Country generally disheartened, and out of hope to haue made any Voyage that yeere, whereby to haue earned their bread. Yet it pleased God afterwards in some Harbours, Whales hitting in, a Voyage was performed, and 1100. tunnes of Oyle brought home, to the great encouragement of the said Adventurers: otherwise that Trade had beene vnto ouerthrowne.

The yeere following 1622. the said Adventurers at their owne charge set forth nine ships, vnder the command aforesaid, and therein employed diuers Land-men; many of which afterwards proued good Sea-men, and are fit for any Sea seruice. Eight of which ships were appointed to make their Voyage vpon the Whale, and one to goe on discouerie to the South-eastwards. But ill successe happened, one of their greatest ships of burthen, whereof *Iohn Maffin* was Master, away against a peece of Ice, vpon the coast of King James Newland, foure leagues from the shoare, in which ship perished nine and twentie men, and the remainder being three and twenty, were by the providence of the Almighty miraculously saved in a Shallop, coasting thirte leagues afterwards to meet with some other ships to find some succour, hauing neither bread nor drinke, nor any means whereby to get any food: and so remained three dayes in extreme cold weather, being in a small Boat ready to be swallowed vp of every waue, but that God provided better for them. Many of which people their hands and feet rotted off, being frozen, and they

Sir John Comyngham.

East India Adventurers joyne;

Dutch assault the English.

1619.

1620.

1621.

1622.

Ships wracke.

died in the Country. The rest of the ships returned home laden, bringing in them 1300. tons of Oyle, yet the forlaid chiefe Harbour could not performe their full lading there, by reason of the *Flumming* and *Danes* being to the Northwards, as aforelaid, which doth yeteely hinder the Companies ships from making a Voyage.

Of III.

The Description of the severall sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Wherein is added the Description of Greenland.

10

* The Ordinarie growne Whale Finnes.

Small eyes. Some kinds have greater. Some mentions one taken on Tmes theore, the eye of which was a Car-boade, a man might stand in the hole upright: The like wee may seeke of the throat, &c. Nature being herein luxuriant, and diversified.

You may see this Story of the Whale killing presented lucely in the Map, which Captaine Edge hath liberally added to this Relation.



The Whale is a Fish or Sea-beast of a huge bignesse, about sixtie fute * foot long, and thirtie fute foot thick, the head a third part of all his bodies quantite, his spacious mouth containyng a very great tongue, and all his finnes, which wee call Whale finnes. These finnes are fastned or rooted in his upper chape, and spread over his tongue on both sides his mouth, being in number about two hundred and fiftie on one side, and as many on the other side. The longest finnes are placed in the middle of his mouth, and the rest doth shoure by their proportionable degrees, backward and forwards, from ten or eleven foot long to foure inches in length, his eyes are not much bigger then an Oxes eyes, his body is in fashion almost 20 foot forwards, growing on still narrower towards his taylor from his bellie, his taylor is about twenty foot broad, and of a tough fold substance, which wee vyle for blockes to chop the *Blubber* on (which yeelds Oyle) and of like nature are his two swimming fannes (and they grow forward on him.)

This creature cometh oftentimes above water, spouting eight or nine times before he goeth downe againe, whereby he may be deficed two or three leagues off. Then our Whale-kills presently rowe forth from the place where they stand to watch for him, making what haste they can to meet him: but commonly before they come neere him, he will be gone downe againe, and continue a good while before he riseth: so that sometimes they will pass him. Yet are they very circumspect, ever looking round where they may espie him rise, or discern his way downe water, which they call his *Wale*. When he is up and the Shallops neere him, if he went downe water: but the Harponnyre, who standeth vp in the head of the Boat, darts his Harping-iron at the Whale with both his hands, so soone as he cometh within his reach, whereby the Whale being stricken, presently defendeth to the bottom, and therefore do they reare out a rope of two hundred fathome, which is fastned to the Harping-iron, and lieth coiled in the Boat: And they let him have as much of the rope as reacheth to the bottom, and when they perceiue him rising they hale in the rope to get neere him, and when the Whale cometh vp above water, then do the men lince him with their lances, either out of one Shallop or the other; for most commonly there be two Shallops about the killing of one Whale. In lancing him they strike neere to the finnes he swimmeth withall, and as lowe downe water neere his bellie as conveniently they can: but when he is lanced, he friskes and strikes with his taylor so forcibly, that many times when hee hieeth a Shallop hee splitteth her in pieces; so that the men are relieved and taken in by another Shallop: and sometimes hee frisketh so fully upon them, that some of the men are either mayned, or killed with his stroke. Therefore they who vnder take this businesse which is the principall thing in the Voyage, must not only be bold and resolute, but also discret and wary; otherwise their rash forwardnesse may prevent them of their expected conquest; considering they have no shield to withstand the offended beast their enemy, but only by a heedfull warrenesse to auoide the receiving of his dangerous stroke. Swimming is also requisite for a Whale-killer to be expert in, for it may be a meanes to save his life, when so he hath lost his Boat, and another is not neere presently to helpe him.

The Whale hauing receiued his deadly wound, then he spouteth blood (whereas formerly he cast forth water) and his strenght beginneth to faile him: but before he dieth, hee will sometimes draw the Shallop three or foure miles from the place where he was first stricken: and as he is a dying, he turneth his bellie vpwards, which lieth vttermost being dead. Then they fasten a rope to his taylor, and with the Shallops, one made fast to another, they rowe him towards the ship with his taylor foremost. Then doe they lay him crosse the sterne of the ship, where he is cut vp in this manner: two or three men a Boat or Shallop come close to the side of the Whale, and hold the Boat fast there with a Boat-hooke; and another standing either in the Boat, or most commonly vpon the Whale, cutteth the fat (which wee call *Blubber*) in square pieces with a cutting Knife, three or foure foot long. Then to race it from the flesh, there is a Crane or Capstern placed purposely vpon the poope of the ship, from whence there descendeth a rope with a booke in it; this booke is made to take hold on a piece of *Blubber*: and as the men winde the Capstern, so the cutter with his long knife lootheth the fat from the flesh, even as if the hard of a

Swine

Swine were to be cut off from the leane. When a piece is in order cut off, then let they lower the Crane, and let downe the *Blubber* to float vpon the water, and make a hole in some part of it, putting a rope thorow it; and so they proceed to cut off more, fathning ten or twentie pieces together to be towed a shoare at one time, being made fast to the sterne of a Boat or Shallop. These pieces being thus brought vnto the shoare side, they are drawne by one and one vpon the shoare into small pieces about a foot long, but thin: then it is carried vnto the choppers by two boyes, stand behind the choppers, taking in each hand a piece, and so they put it into half-trubs which are of a board which is raised of an equall height for the furnace. And the boat being fitted with all things necessarie for the choppers, they place the chopping blockes, which they make of the Whales taylor, and the *Blubber* is layd ready for them, as they vyle it, in small pieces vpon the board whereon they stand. Then the choppers take it vp with hand-hookes, and lay it on their blockes, and chop it in thin pieces (the thinner he cuts it, the better it is) and when it is chopped, they put it off the blocke downe into the Shallop, with a short Paddle made like a *Coppe*: take: and thus doe fixe or eight men stand chopping on the one side of the boat, and on the other side of the boat about two or three yards distant are the Furnaces and Coppes placed and heared. Then betwene the chopping boat and the Coppes, is layd a broad thicke plank, on which standeth a hoghead, which containeth as much as is put into the Copper, at one time for one boyling, and the tub being emptied, is made to slide vnto the chopping boat againe, being there filled with a copper ladle againe, and put into another Copper. When it is boyled enough, the small pieces of *Blubber*, which wee call *Fritters*, will looke browne as if they were fried. Then are they taken out with copper ladders, and some of the Oyle also with them, and put into a Barrow made close to dreine the Oyle, which standeth ouer another Shallop, that is set on the back-side of the Furnace to receiue the Oyle in, and as soone as the *Fritters* are taken cleane out of the Copper, then presently is the tub of small *Blubber* emptied into the Copper againe to be also boyled.

The Boat into which the hot Oyle is put out of the Coppes, is ever kept halfe full of water, which doth not onely coole the Oyle before it runne into the Caske, but also is a cleane out of the droffe, which descendeth to the bottom of the Boat. Out of the Oyle-boat doth the Oyle runne thirte or fortie yards in Troughs or Gutters, and so into Burs or Hogheads, which being filled, is rolled off to coole, and another Caske layd to fill, and when there is any quantitie of Oyle made, it is carried aboard the ship in ratts. In this manner is the Oyle saved and prepared.

Now concerning the Whale Finnes, the Whales head being cut off from the body (as hee Whale Finnes standeth at the sterne of the ship where hee is cut vp) is towed by a Boat as neere the shoare as it will come: but it is aground in twelue or thirteene foot water, then by crabs which are placed on land it is drawne on land, at severall times when the water is at his height, to neere the shoare, that men at a lowe water with their Boats on, cut off the *Blubber* and Finnes, which by the crabs are drawne on shoare, and the Finnes are with Axes, one foused from another, and being made cleue, are packed vp by fiftie in a bundle, and so shipped.

There are eight or ten kinds of Whales, and differing the one from the other in goodnesse, quantitie and qualitie.

The first sort of Whale is called the *Grand-hoy*, taking his name from *Grand-hoy* in Newfoundland, as hauing there bene first killed: he is blacke of colour, with a smooth skinned, white underneath the chaps. This Whale is the best for Oyle and Finnes of all the rest (and of Oyle, and some fute hundred Finnes.) This sort of Whale doth yeeld about an hundred hogheads

The second sort of Whale is called *Sards*, of the same colour as the former, but somewhat lesser, and the Finnes likewise lesser, and yeelds in Oyle according to his bignesse, sometimes fewe things like unto Barnacles. This Whale hath naturally growing vpon his backe,

The third sort of Whale is called *Trumpa*, being as long as the first, but thicker forwards, of 3. *Trumpa*, colour more gray then the former, hauing but one spout in his head, and the rest haue all two; he hath in his mouth teeth about a span long, and as thicke, as a mans writ, but no finnes; his head is bigger then the two former, and in proportion farre bigger then his bodie. In the head of this Whale is the *Permettie*, which lieth there in a hole like a Well. This is the Whale that *Spermatocete* is supposed to yeeld the *Ambergreece*; There taken about fortie hogheads of Oyle besides the *Permettie*.

The fourth sort of Whale is called *Otta Sotta*, and is of the same colour of the *Trumpa*, hauing finnes in his mouth all white, but not about halfe a yard long, being thicker then the *Trumpa*, but not so long: he yeelds the best Oyle, but not about thirte hogheads.

The fift sort of Whale is called *Gubara*, of colour blacke like the two first, sauing that it hath standing vpon the top of his backe, a finne halfe a yard long. This Whale is as bigge

as the first; his fins little or nothing worth, being not above halfe a yard long: and hee yeeldeth about twelue hogheads of Oyle, all which his backe yeelds; as for his bellie it yeelds nothing at all.

6. *Sedena*. The fixt sort is called *Sedena*, being of a whitly colour, and bigger then any of the former, the finnes not above one foot long, and he yeelds little or no Oyle.

7. *Sedena Negro*. The seventh is called *Sedena Negro*, of colour blacke, with a bume on his backe; this Whale yeelds neither Oyle, finnes, nor teeth, and yet he is of a great bignesse.

8. *Sewria*. The eight sort is called *Sewria*, of colour as white as snow, of the bignesse of a Wherrie, he yeelds not above one hoghead or two of Oyle, nor any finnes, and is good meate to be eaten.

The description of Greenland.

Antiphrasical
appellation.
I have found
this description
of Greenland,
with other
notes, written
by Ro. Fotherby.
Deere.

Greenland is a place in Nature nothing like vnto the Name: for certainly there is no place in the World, yet knowne and discouered that is lesse Greene then it. It is couered with snow, both the Mountaines and the lower Lands, till about the beginning of Iune, being very Mountainous, and beareth neither grasse nor tree, save onely such as grow vpon the Moores and heathie grounds, in the North parts of England, which we call *Heath*, or *Long*. This growth when the snow melteth, and when the ground beginneth to be vncouered. And on this doe the Deere feed in the Summer time, and become very fat therewithall in a moneths space, but how they lue in the Winter time it is not easily to be imagined. For seeing at the end of May wee find the ground all couered with snow, it is very like, that in the time of Winter there is no part bare, where any thing can grow; especially during the time that the Sunne is altogether depressed vnder the horizon, which in the latitude of 77. degrees, continueth from the eighteenth of October till the fourth of Februarie. This Countrey by all probabilities hath neuer been inhabited by any people; notwithstanding, I thinke men might lue there, carrying thither good store of provision of victuals, and other things necessary against the cold, which perhaps will be vehement in the Winter time, by the former reasons; namely, because the Sunne remayneth so long vnder the Horizon.

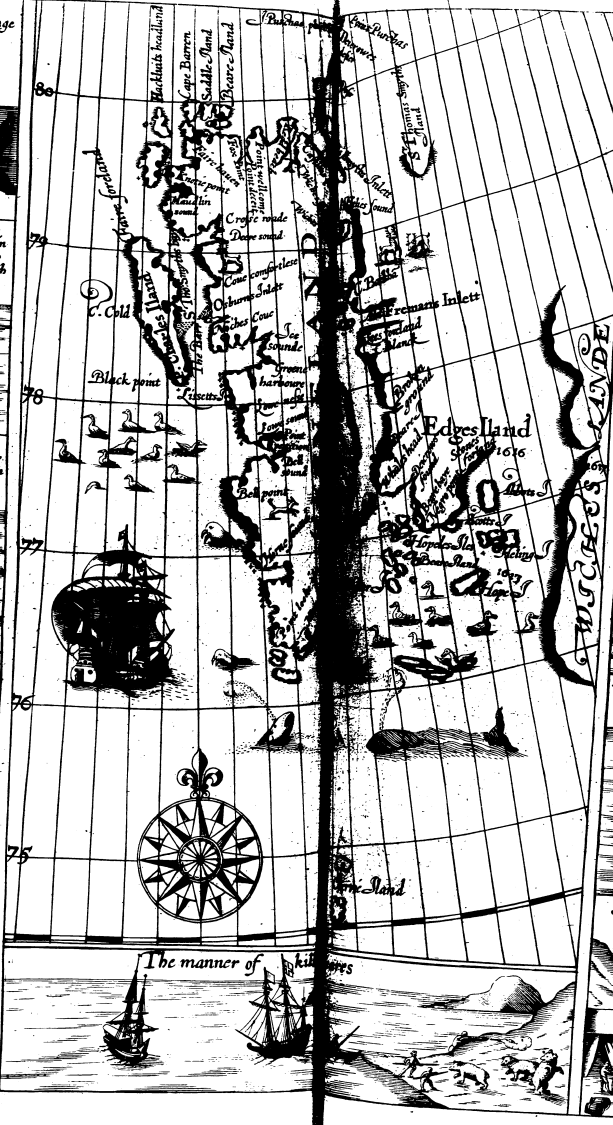
Nevertheless, there will not be any continuance of darknesse, because the Sunne in his greatest declination will be but 10. degrees vnder the Horizon, at this time of his being in the South of the Meridian in the former latitude of 77. degrees, which is once in foure and twentie hours; and therefore the time of their Noone will bee much lighter then our Night here in England, when the dayes are at the longest; for then is the Sunne 15. degrees vnder the Horizon at midnight, and yet the greatest darknesse is but like twi-light. And although it bee a generall saying, and a common received opinion, that the further North the greater cold, yet experience teacheth, that it is not alwaies true. For at *Mosco*, and thereabouts in the Winter time, there is extreme frosts and cold weather, insomuch that oftentimes men are brought home dead, being stuned with cold; and many haue their noses and eares caused to fall off, through the extremity of the piercing aire: yet at *Edenborough*, which is more Northerly by one degree and an halfe, and in all places neerer vnto it the aire is temperate, and the cold tolerable, the snow neuer lying any long time on the ground after it is fallen. Notwithstanding, wee haue snow remayning all the yere long in diuers places of England, but the reason of this, because the aire is euer warmer neerer vnto the Sea shore, (as *Edenborough* standeth) and contrariwise the cold is most vehement in places which are farthest remote from the Sea, as *Mosco* is situated.

All the Creatures that appeare vnto vs vpon the Land, are Deere, Beares, and Foxes, and sundrie sorts of wilde Fowle, as Cuthbert Duckes, Willocks, Stints, Sea-pigeons, Sea-parrets, Gulls, Noddies, &c. The Author addes a discourse of sending condemned men to inhabit there, with diuers protest: for their seruice there, for the further discovery how best to bee effected, for such things as are most necessary for this employment of Whale-killing, &c. but because experience hath giuen best instructions already, and destructions must otherwise be prevented, I haue forborne to detain the Reader in those (otherwise) iudicious speculations.

The Southernmost part of Greenland stands in 76. degrees 30. minutes, which wee call *Point Lookout*, and we haue discouered all the West side of the Land as farre vnto the Northwards as 80. degrees odd minutes: in which compasse wee haue already experience of fixe or eight good Harbours for the killing of the Whale; and on the East side we haue discouered as farre as 78. degrees, finding diuers Ilands, great and small, yeelding good Harbours, and store of Whales, and Sea-horses; and for a further discovery on the East side, I am perswaded it had bene farre greater, if the Dutch had not so disturbed vs in our proceedings, as also the *Hull-men*, who euer practised to follow our steps, after the discovery within one yere or two: as by our Masters Journall more at large may appeare. The best actions haue their hindrances and crosses, and so hath this had; for, the Dutch haue bene a bane to this Trade and Discovery: The *Hull-men* haue done some bad seruice in this Action, for they were the first that carried the Dutch to the *Tatchet*, as by *Winndens* Oath and Journall appeares, they were also a cause of that bad Voyage,

Yet in these
euen neerer the
Sea, and farre
neerer the
Sun, betwixt
30. and 40. the
Winters are
extreme.
R. Feib.

A black and white illustration of a large sailing ship with multiple masts and sails, positioned on the right side of the frame. In the middle ground, a small rowing boat with several figures is visible on the water. The background shows a calm sea and a distant shoreline.



to vs in 1618. in that they animated the *Flemmings* to come backe to *Greenland* againe, as appeared in this Iournall, in the yeere 1617. they haue done some other ill seruices against vs as well as the *Dutch*, but in regard they are our Countrey-men, I will omit and with their amendment, and pray to God to find a good and further Discouery to bee made in the Northerne parts, *Amen*.

Rader, I present thee here three admirable Voyages of Discouery made by the Dutch, no whit enuying their due praise, but honouring their worthy *Acts* and *Arts*. They haue formerly bene published in Dutch, and translated by W. Philip. I haue here abbreviated them, as my use is with others, to aune profit. The Dutch themselves write that after the English Russian Trade, one Oluet Buncell moved with hope of gaine, went from Enckhuysen to Pechora, where he left all by hisperacke, having discovered Colima in Noua Zemla. These Navigations of the English, and those of Buncell, and the hopes of China and Cathay, caused the States Generall to send forth two shippes vnder the command of Hugo Linfchoten, to the Streights of Wey-gates, and two others vnder William Bernards, by the perswasion of P. Plancius to goe right Northwards from Noua Zemla. Linfchoten went fiftie miles beyond the Streights, the Northerly winds, and late season forcing him backe. Bernards Iournall here followeth, of that and his two later Voyages, the two later written by one employed therein.

*Prælogomena, ad Hadrianum De-
telm, edit. Am-
stelædami per
Hug. Grotium.
1611.*

20

CHAP. III.

*The first Navigation of WILLIAM BARENTS, alias BER-
NARDS into the North Seas, Written by GIL-
BERT DE VERE.*

IT is a most certayne and assured Assertion, that nothing doth more benefit and further the Common-wealth (specially their Countreys) then the art and know-
ledge of Navigation, in regard that such Countreys and Nations as are strong
and mightie at Sea, haue the meane and ready way to draw, fetch, and bring
vnto them for their mayntenance, all the principallest commodities and fruits
of the Earth.

In these Navigations we must not be dismayed if some mislike, or if we cannot perfect a Discouery in the first, second, or third Voyage. *Alexander Maginus* (after he had wonne all *Grecia*, and from thence entred into little and great *Asia*; and comming to the farthest parts of *India*, there found some difficultie to passe) said, 'If wee had not gone forward, and persisted in our intent, which other men esteemed and held to be impossible, we had stil remayned and stayed in the entry of *Cicilia*, where as now we haue ouer-runne and pist through all those large and spacious Countreys: for nothing is found and effected all at one time, neyther is any thing that is put in practice, presently brought to an end. To the which end, *Cicero* wisely saith; God hath giuen vs some things, and not all things, that our Successors also might haue some-what to doe. Therefore there is any commodity to be hoped, and in time to be obtained: for that the greatest and richest Treasures are hardestest to be found. I thought good to set downe, in regard that I haue vndertaken to describe the three Voyages made into the North Seas, in three yeeres, one after the other; behind *Norway*, and along and about *Muscovia*, towards the Kingdome of *Cathia*, and *China*: whereof, the two last, I my selfe holpe to effect; and yet brought them not to the desired end that we well hoped.

First, to shew our diligent, and most toylefome labour and paines taken, to find out the right course, which we could not bring to passe, as wee well hoped, wished, and desired, and possible might haue found it, by crossing the Seas, if we had taken the right course; if the Ice & the shortness of time, and bad crosse had not hindered vs. We haue assuredly found, that the onely and most hinderance to our Voyage, was the Ice that we found about *Noua Zemla*, vnder 73-74-75- and 76. degrees; and not so much vpon the Sea betwene both the Lands: whereby it appeareth, that not the nearnesse of the North-pole, but the Ice that cometh in and out from the *Tartarian Sea*, about *Noua Zemla*, caused vs to feele the greatest cold. Therefore in regard that the nearnesse of the Pole was not the cause of the great cold that wee felt, if wee had had the meanes to haue held our appointed and intended course into the North-east, we had peraduenture found some entrance: which course wee could not hold from *Noua Zemla*, because that we were entred amongst great fore of Ice; and how it was about *Noua Zemla*, we could not tell, before we had sought it; and when we had sought it, we could not then alter our course, although alio it is vnertaine, what we should haue done, if we had continued in our North-east course, because it is not yet found out. But it is true, that in the Countrey lying vnder 80. degrees, (which we esteeme to be *Greenland*) there is both Leanes and Grasse to be seene: Wherein, such Beasts

A thing not
continued,
cannot be
effected.
All things are
effected in
convenient
time.

The first find-
ing is hard,
but the second
attempt is
easier.

as feed of Leaves and Grass (as Harts, Hinds, and such like beasts live, whereas to the contrary in *Nova Zembla*, there groweth neither Leaves nor Grass, and there are no beasts therein but such as eat flesh, as Beares and Foxes, &c. Although *Nova Zembla* lyeth 45. and 6. degrees more Southerly from the Pole, then the other Land aforesaid. It is also manifest, that the Tropicks, vnder 23. degrees and an halfe, yet it is as hot, as it is right vnder the Line. What wonder then should it be, that about the North-Pole also, and as many degrees on both sides, it should not be colder then right vnder the Pole? It was not the Sea, nor the nearness vnto the Pole, but the Ice about the Land, that let and hindered vs (as I said before) for that as soon as we made from the Land, and put more into the Sea, although it was much further Northward, presently we felt more warmth, and in that opinion our Pilot *Willem Barrent*, dyed, who notwithstanding the leafall and intolerable cold that he endured, yet he was not discouraged, but offered to lay wagers with divers of vs, that by Gods helps, hee would bring that pretended Voyage to an end, if he held his course North-east from the North Cape. But I will leave that, and shew you of the three Voyages aforesaid, begunne and set forth by the permission and furtherance of the Generall States of the united Provinces, and of Prince *Maurice*, as Admirall of the Sea, and the rich Towne of *Amsterdam*.

First, you must vnderstand, that in *Anno* 1594. there was four ships set forth out of the v-nited Provinces, whereof two were of *Amsterdam*, one of *Zeland*, and one of *Enckhuyzen*, that were appointed to sayle into the North Sea, to discouer the Kingdomes of *Cathay*, and *China*; so Northward from *Norway*, *Maluccia*, and about *Tartaria*, wherof *Willem Barrent*, a notable skillfull and wife Pilot, was Commander ouer the ships of *Amsterdam*, and with them vpon Whit-sunday, departed from *Amsterdam*, and went to the *Tuck*.

Vpon the fifth of Iune they sayled out of the *Tuck*, and hauing a good wind and faire weather, vpon the three and twentieth of Iune, they arrived at *Ridulin* in *Muscovia*, which was that it is a place well knowne and a common Voyage, I will make no further description thereof. The nine and twentieth of Iune, at foure of the clocke in the after-noon, they set sayle out of *Ridulin*.

The fourth of Iuly they saw *Nova Zembla*, lying South-east and by East fix or seuen miles from them, where they had blacke drudge about at one hundred and fixe fathome. *Willem Barrent* tooke the height of the Sunne with his Crosse-staffe, when it was at the lowest, that is betweene North North-east, and East and by North, and found it to be eleuated above the Horizon six degrees and $\frac{1}{2}$ part, his declination being 12. degrees and 55. minutes, from whence calculating the aforesaid height, there resteth sixteenth degrees and 35. minutes, which being subtracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 73. degrees and 25. minutes. Then they woond Eastward and sayled fixe miles, East and by South, and East South-east, and past by a long point of Land that lay out into the Sea, which they named *Langens*, and hard by that point Eastward, there was a great Bay, where they went a Land with their Boat, but found no people. From *Langens* to Cape *Bape*, East North-east it is foure miles. From Cape *Bape* to the West point of *Lombfay*, North-east and by North are fixe miles, and betweene them both there are two Creeks. *Lombfay* is a great wide Bay, on the West-side thereof hauing a faireauen, fix, or eight fathome deepe, blacke sand, where they went on shoare with their Boat, and vpon the shoare placed a Beacon, made of an old Mast which they found there; calling the Bay *Lombfay*, because of a certayne kind of Beares so called, which they found there in great abundance. The East point of *Lombfay*, is a long narrow point, and by it there lyeth an Island, and from that long point to Sea-ward in, there is a great Creeke. This *Lombfay* lyeth vnder 74. degrees and $\frac{1}{2}$ part. From *Lombfay* to the point of the *Admirals* Island, they sayled fixe or seuen miles, North-east and by North. The *Admirals* Island is not very faire on the East-side, but a faire of very flat, so that you must thinne it long before you come at it, it is also very vneuen, for at one calling of the Lead they had ten fathome deepe, and presently at another calling of the Lead they had but 30 fathome, and presently after that againe ten, eleuen, and twelue fathome, the streame running hard against the Flats.

From the East-end of the *Admirals* Island, to Cape *Negro*, that is the *Blacke* point, they sayled about fixe or fixe miles, East North-east, and a mile without the *Blacke* point it is twenty fathome deepe, the ground slimy, as vpon *Pamphus*, right East-ward of the *Blacke* point, there are two sharpe pointed Hills in the Creeke, that are ealie to be knowne. The fix of Iuly, the Sunne being North, they came right before the *Blacke* point with faire weather, this *Blacke* point lyeth vnder 75. degrees and 20. minutes. From the *Blacke* point to *Williams* Island, they sayled foure or five miles, East North-east, and betweene them both about halfe a mile, there lay a small Island.

The seuenh of Iuly they sayled from *Williams* Island, and then *Willem Barrent* tooke the 60 height of the Sunne, with his Crosse-staffe, and found it to be eleuated above the Horizon in the South-west and by South 33. degrees and 6. minutes, his declination being 22. degrees and 49. minutes, which being added to 33. degrees and 6. minutes, make 75. degrees and 55. minutes. This is the right height of the Pole of the said Island. In this Island they found great store of

Drift.

Driftwood, and many Sea-horses being a kind of fish that keepeth in the Sea, hauing very great teeth, which at this day are vied in head of Iuory or Elephants Teeth, there also is a good Road for ships, at twelue and thirtene fathome deepe against all winds, except it bee West South-west, and West-winds, and there they found a piece of a *Russia* ship, and that day they had the wind East North-east, mistie weather.

The ninth of Iuly they entred into *Beeren-fort*, vpon the Road vnder *Williams* Island, and there they found a white Beare, which they perceiving, presently entred into their Boat, and shot her into the bodie with a Musket, but the Beare shewed most wonderfull strength, which almost is not to be found in any beast, for no man euer heard the like to be done by any Lion or cruell beast whateloue: for notwithstanding that she was shot into the bodie, yet she leape vp, and

swamme in the water, the men that were in the Boat rowing after her, cast a Rope about her necke, and by that means drew her at the sterne of the Boat, for that not hauing seen the like Beare before, they thought to haue carryed her aliuie in the ship, and to haue shewed her for a strange wonder in *Holland*; but she vied such force, that they were glad that they were rid of her, and contented themselves with her skinn only, for shee made such a noyse, and stroue in such sort, that it was admirable, wherewith they let her rest and gaue her more scope, with the Rope that they held her by, and so drew her in that fort after them, by that means to wearie her; meane-time, *Willem Barrent* made neerer to her, but the Beare swamme to the Boat, and with her fore-feet got hold of the sterne thereof, which *Willem Barrent* perceiving, did, the will there rest her selfe, but she had another meaning, for the vied such force, that at last she had gotten half her body into the Boat, wherewith the men were so ahailed, that they ranne into the further end of the Boat, and thought verily to haue beene spoyled by her, but by a strange means they were deliuered from her, for that the Rope that was about her necke, caught hold vpon the hookes of the Ruther, whereby the Beare could get no further, but so was held backe, and hanging in that manner, one of the men boldly stept forth from the end of the Scute, and thrust her into the bodie with a half-pike; and therewith she fell downe into the water, and so they rowed forward with her to the shippe, drawing her after them, till shee was in a manner dead, wherewith they killed her out-right, and hauing flayed her, brought the skin to *Amsterdam*.

The twentieth of Iuly, they sayled out of *Beeren-fort* from *Williams* Island, and the same day in the morning got to the Island of *Croffer*, and there went on Land with their Pinnasse, and found the Island to be barren, and full of Cliffs and Rocks, in it there was a small Hatten, wherewith they towred with their Boat. This Island is about halfe a mile long, and reacheth East and West, on the West end it hath a banke, about a third part of a mile long, and at the East end also another banke, vpon this Island there liueth two great Croles, the Island lyeth about two long miles from the firme Land, and vnder the East-end thereof there is a good Road, at fixe and twentie fathome fitt ground; and somewhat closer to the Island on the Strand, at nine fathome fitt ground.

From the land of *Croffer* to the point of Cape *Nassaw*, they sayled East, and East and by North about eight miles; it is a long flat point which you must be careful to shunne, for thereabouts at seuen fathome there were flats or shoales, very farre from the Land; it lyeth almost vnder 76. degrees and a halfe. From the West end of *Williams* Island, to the land with the *Croffer* is three miles, the course North. From *Nassaw* point they sayled East and by South, and East South-east fixe miles, and then they thought that they saw Land in North-east, and by East, and sayled towards it fixe miles North-east to decrie it, thinking it to be another Land, that lay Northward from *Nova Zembla*, but it began to blow hard out of the West, that they were forced to take in their Marfale, and yet the wind rose in such manner, that they were forced to take in all their Sayles, and the Sea went so hollow, that they were constrained to drue fixtene houres together, without sayle, eight or nine miles East North-east.

The eleuenth of Iuly their Boat was by a great waue of the Sea sunk to the ground, and by that means they lost it, and after that they drue without sayles fixe miles, East and by South; at last the Sunne being almost South-east, the wind came about to the North-west, and then the weather began somewhat to cleere vp, but yet it was very mistie. Then they hoisted vp their sayles againe and sayled foure miles till night, that the Sunne was North and by East, and there they had fixtie fathome deepe, muddie ground, and then they saw certayne flakes of Ice, at which time vpon the twelfth of Iuly they woond West, and held North-west, and sayled about a mile with mistie weather, and a North-west wind, and sayled vp and downe West South-west three or foure miles, to see if they could find their Boat againe: after that they woond against the wind, and sayled foure miles South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then they were close by the Land of *Nova Zembla*, that lay East and by North, and West and by South; from thence they woond ouer againe till noone, and sayled three miles, North and by West, and then till the Sunne was North-west, they held North-west and by North three miles, then they woond East-ward and sayled foure or five miles North-east and by East.

The thirteenth of Iuly at night, they found great store of Ice, as much as they could decrie out of the top, that lay as if it had beene a plaine field of Ice, then they woond Westward ouer from the Ice.

The

A comparison of the heat vnder the line, with the cold vnder the North Pole.

The reason issue and opinions of *Willem Barrent*.

Iune 5.

The particulars being knowne to many of our Mariners, I omit.

Langens.

Lombfay.

Admirals Island.

Cape Negro. Black point.

Williams Island.

The fourteenth of July, *William Barrens* took the height of the Sunne with his *Astronomical*, and then they were vnder 77. degrees and a ½. of the Pole, and sayled Southward six miles, and perceived the firme Land, lying South from them. Then they sayled till the nineteenth of July in the morning, West South-west six or seven miles, with a North-west winde, and mistle 77. degrees 5. minutes left. Then they sayled two miles South-west, and were close by the land of *Nova Zembla*, about Cape *Najm*.

The five and twentieth of July, they were so inclosed about with flakes of Ice, that out of the top they could not discern any thing beyond it, and sought to get through the Ice, but they could not pass beyond it. At night, they took the height of the Sunne, when it was at the lowest betwene North and North-east, and North-east by North, it being elevated about the Horizon 6. degrees, and ½. his Declination being by North, it being elevated about 16 degrees ½. from 19. degrees and 50. minutes, and there resteth 13. degrees 5. minutes, which subtracted from 90. there resteth 77. degrees less 5. minutes.

The fixe and twentieth of July in the morning, they sayled six miles South South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then South-east six miles, and were within a mile of the land of *Nova Zembla*, and came againe to Cape *Truff*.

The eight and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken at noone with the *Astronomical*, it was found to be elevated about the Horizon 57. degrees and 6. minutes, her Declination being 19. degrees and 18. minutes, which in all is 76. degrees and 24. minutes, they being then about four miles from the land of *Nova Zembla*, that lay all covered over with Snow, the weather being cleare, and the winde East.

The nine and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken with the Croffe-staffe, *Astronomical* & Quadrant, they found it to be elevated about the Horizon 38. degrees, her declination being 19. degrees, which subtracted from 32. there resteth 13. degrees of the Equator, which being subtracted from 90. there resteth 77. degrees, and then the nearest North point of *Nova Zembla*, called the Ice point, lay right East from them. There they found certain Stones that glistered like gold, which for that cause they named Gold-stones, and there also they had a faire Bay with sandie ground.

Vpon the same day they woond Southward againe, and sayled South-east two miles betwene the Land and the Ice, and after that from the Ice point East, and to the Southward six miles to the Islands of *Orange*; and there they laboured forward betwene the Land and the Ice, with faire still weather, and vpon the one and thirtieth of July got to the Islands of *Orange*. And there went to one of those Islands, where they found about two hundred Walrusen, or Sea-horses, lying vpon the shoare to baste themselves in the Sunne. This Sea-horse is a wonderful strong Monster of the Sea, much bigger then an Ox, which keeps continually in the Seas, having a skin like a Sea-calf or Seale, with very short hayre, mouthed like a Lion, and many times they lye vpon the Ice; they are hardly killed vntill you strike them just vpon the forehead, it hath four Feet, but no Eares, and commonly it hath one or two young ones at a time. And when the Fisher-men chance to finde them vpon a flake of Ice with their young ones, they catch the young ones before her into the water, and then takes them in her Armes and so plunge them downe with them, and when she will reuenge her selfe vpon the Beates, or make resistance against them, then she casts her young ones from her againe, and with all her force goeth towards the Boate (whereby our men were once in no small danger, for that the Sea-horse had almost stricken her teeth into the sterne of the Boate) thinking to ouer-throw it, but by means of ones againe in her Armes. They have two teeth sticking out of their mouths, on each side one, each being about halfe an Ell long, and are esteemed to be as good as any Iurie or Elephant teeth, specially in *Mascomia, Tartaria*, and thereabouts where they are knowne, for they are as white, hard, and euas as Iurie.

The Sea-horses that lay basting themselves vpon the Land, our men supposing that they could not defend themselves being out of the water, went on shoare to assault them, and fought with them, to get their Teeth that are so rich, but they brake all their Hatchers, Cuttle-axes, and Pikes in peeces, and could not kill one of them, but stricke some of their Teeth out of their mouths, which they took with them: and when they could get nothing against them fighting, they agreed to go aboard the Ship, to fetch some of their great Ordnance, to shoot at them therewith; but it began to blow so hard, that it rent the Ice into great peeces, so that they were forced not to do it, and therewith they found a great white Beare that slept, which they shot into the bodie, but hee ranne away, and entred into the water; the men following her vpon the Ice, and killed her our-night, and then drew her vpon the Ice, and so sticking a halfe-pike vpon his backe, found her fast vnto it, thinking to fetch her when they came backe againe, to shoot at the Sea-horses with their Ordnance, but for that it began more and more to blow, and the Ice therewith brake in peeces, they did nothing at all.

After that, *William Barrens* finding that hee could hardly get through, to accomplish, and end his

his pretended Voyage, his men also beginning to bee wearie, and would sayle no further, they all together agreed to returne backe againe, to meet with the other Ships that had taken their course the *Weg-gates*, or the Straights of *Masfisc*, to know what Discoueries they had made there. The backe againe.

The first of August they turned their course to sayle backe againe from the Islands of *Orange*. There *William Barrens* took the height of the Sunne, it being vnder 71. degrees and ½. and there they found a great Creeke, which *William Barrens* judged to be the place where *Oliver Brumel* had beene before, called *Coffin-jarck*. From the blacke Land they sayled South, and South by East, East to another small point three miles, on which point there stood a Croffe, and therefore they called it the *Croffe-point*, there also was a flat Bay and low water, fise, six, or seven fadome deepe, 10 foot ground. From *Croffe-point* they sayled along by the land South South-east six miles, and then came to another in all points, which behind it had a great Creeke, that reached Eastward: This point they called the fifth point, or Saint *Lawrence* point. From the fifth point they sayled to the *Sewer* point three miles, South South-east, and there lay a long blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Croffe; then they entred into the Ice againe, and put inward to the Sea because of the Ice. Their intent was to sayle along the coast of *Nova Zembla* to the *Weg-gates*, but by reason that the Ice met them, they woond Westward, and from the ninth of August in the Evening, till the tenth of August in the Morning, sayled West and by North eleven miles, and after that four miles West North-west, and North-west by West, the winde being North, in the Morning they woond Eastward againe, and sayled vntill Evening ten miles East, and 20 East and by South; after that East, and East and by North four miles, and there they found a faire Hauen six fadome deepe, sandie ground. This Creeke on the North side hath three blacke points, and about the three points lyeth the road, but you must keepe somewhat from the third point, for it is itie, and betwene the second and third point there is another faire Bay, for North-west, North, and North-east winds, blacke sandie ground. This Bay they called Saint Bay. *Lawrence* Bay, and there they took the height of the Sunne, which was 70. degrees and ½.

From Saint *Lawrence* Bay, South South-east two miles to *Sewer* point, there lay along blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Croffe, there they went on Land with their Boate, and perceived that some men had beene there, and that they were led to save themselves, 30 for there they found fixe Sackes with Rye-meale buried in the ground, and a heape of stones by the Croffe, and a Bulle for a great Piece, and thereabouts also there stood another Croffe, with three Houses made of wood, after the North Country manner: and in the houses they found many barrels of Pike-stauers, whereby they conjectured, that there they vied to take Salmons, and by them stood fise or six Coffins, by Graues, with dead mens bones, the Coffins standing vpon the ground all filled vp with stones; there also lay a broken *Ruffis* ship, the Keele thereof being fortie four foot long, but they could see no man on the Land: it is a faire Hauen for all winds, which they called the *Meale-hauen*, because of the Meale that they found there. From the blacke Rocke or Cliffe with the Croffe, two miles South South-east, there lay a low land a little into the Sea; from whence they sayled nine or ten miles South South-east, there the height 40 of the Sunne was 70. degrees and 50. minutes, when it was South South-west. From that land they sayled along by the Land four miles South-east and by South, there they came to two Islands, whereof the vntermost lay a mile from the Land: those Islands they called Saint *Clara*.

Then they entred into the Ice againe, and woond inward to the Sea in the wind, and sayled from the land vntill Evening, West South-west four miles, the wind being North-west; that Evening it was very milde, and then they had eight fadome deepe. Then againe they sayled South-west and by West, and West South-west three miles, there they had ten fadome deepe, and so sayled till the thirteenth of August in the morning, South-west and by West four miles, two hours before they had ground at fiftie fadome, and in the morning at fortie fadome, soft mudde ground. Then they woond from the land and sayled North, and North and by East four miles, from thence they woond to land againe, and sayled till the fourteenth of August, fise or fise miles South-west, sayling close by the land, which (as they phesse) was the Land of *Coligen*.

August the fifteenth, the Sun being South-west, *William Barrens* took the height thereof, and found it to be elevated about the Horizon 35. degrees, his Declination being 14. degrees and ½. so that as there wanted 55. degrees of 90. which 55. and 14. degrees ½. being both added together, made 69. Degrees 15. Minutes, which was the height of the Pole in that place, the wind being North-west, then they sayled two miles more Eastward, and came to the Islands called *Masfisc* and *Delog*, and there in the morning they met with the other Ships of their companie, being of *Zeland* and *Enck-husen*, that came out of *Weg-gates* the same day, there they shewed each other where they had beene, and how farre each of them had sayled and discouered.

The Ship of *Enck-husen* had past the Straights of *Weg-gates*, and said, that at the end of *Weg-gates* hee had found a large Sea, and that they had sayled fiftie or sixtie miles further Eastward, and were of opinion that they had beene about the River *Obi*, that cometh out of *Tartaria*, and that the Land of *Tartaria* reacheth North-eastward againe from thence, whereby they thought

There returne

Oliver Brumel,

blacke Land,

Croffe-point.

Saint *Lawrence*

Sewer point.

Coligen.

Masfisc and

Delog.

They meet with their companie.

clat

that they were not farre from Cape *Tahai*, which is the point of *Tartaria*, that reacheth towards the Kingdome of *Cathai*, North-east and then Southward, and so thinking that they had Discovered enough for that time, and that it was too late in the yeere to sayle any further, as also that their Commission was to discover the Situation, and to come home againe before Winter, they turned againe towards the *Wey-gates*, and came to an Iland about fve miles great, lying South Stones that were of Christall Mountayne, being a kind of Diamond.

Stateliland.

When they were met together, as I sayd before, they made signes of joy, discharging some of their Ordnance, and were merrie, the other Ships thinking that *William Barents* had sayled round about *Nova Zembla*, and had come backe againe through the *Wey-gates*; and after they had so shewed each other what they had done, and made signes of joy for their meeting, they set their course to turne backe againe for *Holland*, and vpon the sixteenth of August they went vnder the Islands of *Marlin* and *Delvay*, and put into the road, because the wind was North-west, and lay till the eighteenth of August. Then they set sayle, and came to the *Taxel* the sixteenth of September.

CHAP. III.

A briefe Declaration of BARENTS his second Navigation, made in Anno 1595, behinde Norway, Muscovia, and Tartaria, written by GERAT DE VEE.



He foure Ships aforesaid, being returned home about Harvest-time, in Anno 1594, they were in good hope that the Voyage aforesaid would be done, by passing along the Straights of *Wey-gates*, and specially by the report made by two Shippes of *Zeland*, and *Euck-hoyfen*, wherein *Iohn Huyghen* of *Amsterdam* was Committie, who declared the manner of their travell in such sort, that the Generall States, and Prince *Maurice* resolved, in the beginning of the next yeere to prepare certayne Shippes, not onely (as they went before) to discover the passage, but to send certayne Wares and Merchandizes thither, wherein the Merchants might lide what Wares they would, Freight not Customs. *Peter Planin* a learned Cosmographer, being a great furtherer and setter forward of this Voyage, and was their chiefe Instruſtor therein, setting downe the situation of the Coasts of *Tartaria*, *Cathai*, & *China*; but how they lye it is not yet sufficiently Discovered, for that the courtes and rules by him set downe, were not fully effected, by means of some inconveniences that fell out, which by reason of the shortness of time could not be holpen.

In Anno 1595, the Generall States of the united Provinces, and Prince *Maurice*, caused foure Shippes to be prepared to sayle through the *Wey-gates*, or the Straights of *Nassau*, to the King-⁴⁰ dome of *Cathai* and *China*: two out of *Amsterdam*, two out of *Zeland*, two out of *Euck-hoyfen*, and one out of *Rottterdam*: five of them laden with divers kinde of Wares, Merchandizes, and Money and Fashors, to sell the said Wares; the seventh being a Pinnaſſe, that had Commission, when the other Shippes were past about the Cape of *Tahai* (which is the furthest point of the Ice, to turne backe againe, and to bring sayle forth Southward, without any let or hindrance of that was our chiefe Pilot, and *James Henfkerke* chiefe Factor, thought good to write downe the same in order, as it is hereafter declared, as I did the first Voyage, according to the course and stretching of the Land as it lyeth.

James Henfkerke famous for the *Gibraltar* exploit.

First, after we had bene mustered at *Amsterdam* and every man taken an Oath, that was then purposely ministred vnto vs; vpon the eighteenth of June we were sayled to the *Taxel*, from thence to put to Sea, with other Shippes that were appointed to meete vs at a certayne day; and so to begin our Voyage in the name of God. The second of Iuly we set sayle out of the *Taxel*. The fifth of August, the North Cape lay about two miles East from vs, and when the Sunne was North-west, the *Mother* and her *Daughters* lay Southward from vs foure miles.

The sixteenth, we saw great flocks of Ice, all along the Coast of *Nova Zembla*, and casting out the Lead, had 75 fathom loft ground. After that we held diuers courſes because of the Ice, and twentieth of August, when the Sunne was East, and then we cast out the lead againe, and found 30 three Glafſes of ground, and within two houres after that, fathome, red sand, with small shells: then we saw two Ilands, which they of *Euck-hoyfen* gave the names of Prince *Maurice* and his Brother, which lay from vs South-east three miles, being low Land, and then were sayled eight miles, till the Sun was South. Then we sayled East, and oftentimes casting out the lead, we found

twentie,

twentie, nineteene, eigheteene, and seuenteen fathome deep, good ground mixed with black shells, and saw the *Wey-gates* (the Sunne being West) which lay East North-east from vs about fve miles, and after that we sayled about eight miles.

Then we sayled vnder 70. degrees, vntill we came to the *Wey-gates*, most part through broken Ice, and when we got to *Wey-gates*, we cast out our Lead, and for a long time found thirteene and foure fathome, loft ground, mixed with black shells, not long after that we cast out the Lead and found ten fathome deepe, the wind being North, and we forced to hold fiftie aloofe, in regard of the great quantitie of Ice, till about mid-night, then were forced to wind Northward, because of certaine Rocks that lay on the Southside of *Wey-gates*, right before vs, about a mile and a halfe, hauing ten fathome deepe: then we changed our course, and sayled West North-west for the space of foure Glafſes, after that we woond about againe East, and East and by South, and so entered into the *Wey-gates*, and as we went in, we cast out the Lead, and found seven fathome deepe, little more or lesse, till the nineteenth of August, and then the Sunne being South-east, we entered into the *Wey-gates*, in the Road, the wind being North. The right Channell betweene the *Image* point and the *Samoyeds* Land was full of Ice, so that it was not well to bee past thorow, and so we went into the Road (which we called the *Traen* Bay, because we found flore of *Traen*-oyle there, this is a good Bay for the course of the Ice, and good almost for all winds, and we may sayle to farre into it as we will, at foure, fve, and three fathome, good Anchor-ground, on the East side it is deepe water.

Image point, *Samoyeds* Land, *Traen* Bay.

20 The twentieth of August, the height of the Sunne being taken with the Croſſe-staffe, we found that it was eleuated about the Horizon 69. degrees 21. minutes, when it was South-west and by South, being at the height, or before it beganne to descend. The one and twentieth of August, we went on Land within the *Wey-gates* with foure and fiftie men, to see the situation of the Countrey, and being two miles within the Land we found many *Uel-werck*, *Traen*, and such like Wares, and diuers foot-steps of men, and Deere, whereby we perceived that some men dwelt thereabouts, or else vied to come thither. And to assure vs the more thereof, we might perceive it by the great number of Images, which we found there vpon the *Image* or *Beelbooke* (so called by vs) in great abundance, whereof ten dayes after we were better informed by the *Samoyeds* and the *Russians*, when we spake with them. And when we entered further into the Land, we vied all the meanes we could, to see if we could find any houses or men, by whom we might be informed of the situation of the Sea thereabouts, whereof afterward we had better intelligence by the *Samoyeds*; that told vs, that there are certayne men dwelling on the *Wey-gates*, and vpon *Nova Zembla*, but we could neither find men, houses, nor any other things, so that to haue better information, we went with some of our men further South-east into the Land; towards the Sea-side, and as we went, we found a path-way made with mens feet in the Mofſe or Marsh-ground, about halfe knee deepe, for that going so deepe we felt hard ground vnder our feet, which at the deepest was no higher then our shooes, and as we went forward to the Sea-coast, we were exceeding glad, thinking that we had fene a passage open, where we might get through, because we saw little Ice there: and in the Euening entering into our ship againe, we shewed them that newes. Meane-time, our Maſter had sent out a Boat to see if the *Tartarian* Sea was open, but it could not get into the Sea because of the Ice, yet they rowed to the *Croſſe*-point, and there let the Boat lye, and went ouer the Land to the West point, and there perceived that the Ice in the *Tartarian* Sea, lay full vpon the *Russian* Coasts, and in the mouth of the *Wey-gates*.

They goe on Land.

Image.

The three and twentieth of August we found a *Lodgie*, or Boat of *Pazars*, which was sewed together with Baſt or Ropes, that had bene Northward to seeke for some Sea-horſes Teeth, *Traen*, and Geſſe, which they fetch with their Boat, to lade in certaine Shippes that were to come out of *Russia* through the *Wey-gates*. Which ships they said (when they spake with vs) were to sayle into the *Tartarian* Sea, by the River of *Oby*, to a place called *Ogolia* in *Tartaria*, there to stay all Winter, as they vied to doe every yeere: and told vs that it would yet bee nine or ten Weekes ere it began to freeze in that place, and that when it once beganne to freeze, it would freeze so hard, that as then men might go ouer the Sea into *Tartaria* (along vpon the Ice) which they called *Chermers*.

The foure and twentieth of August in the morning betimes, we went on board of the *Lodgie*, to haue further information and intruſion of the Sea, on the Eastside of the *Wey-gates*, and they gave vs good intruſion, such as you haue heard.

The five and twentieth of August we went againe to the *Lodgie*, and in friendly manner spake with them, we for our parts offering them friendship; and then they gave vs eight Geſſe, that lay in the bottom of their Boat: we desired that one or two of them would goe with vs aboard our ship, and they willingly went with vs to the number of seuen; and being in our ship, they wondered much at the greatnesse and furni- ure of our ships and after they had fene and looked into it every place, we set Fish, Butter and Cheſe before them to eat, but they refused saying, that that day was a Fasting day with them, but at last when they saw some of our Pickled Herrings, they ate them both heads, tayles, skinnies, and guts, and hauing eaten thereof,

we

we gaue them a small Firkin of Herrings, for the which they gaue vs great thanks, knowing not what friendship they should doe vs to require our courteis, and wee brought them with our Pinnasse into the *Tran Bay*. About Noone we hoysed vp our Anchors with a West North-west wind; the course or stretching of *VVyg-gates*, is East to *Cross point*, and then North-east to the *Twiss point*, and somewhat more Easterly: From thence the Land of *VVyg-gates*, reacheth North North-east and Eastward two miles, by the *Twiss point*, and somewhat Westerly, wee sayled backe againe, because of the great store of Ice, and tooke our course to our Road aforesaid: and sayling backe againe we found a good place by the *Crosse point*, and put out our fork-saile, and the sixteenth and twentieth of August in the morning we hoysed Anchor, and put out our fork-saile, and so failed to our old Road, and there to stay for a more convenient time.

They speake with Samoyeds.

The eight and twentieth, nine and twentieth, and thirtieth of August till the one and thirtieth, the wind for the most part was South-west, and *VVilliam Barents* our Capaine failed to the South-side of *VVyg-gates*, and there went on Land, where we found certaine Wildmen (called *Samoyeds*) and yet not altogether wilde, for they being twentie in number, staid and spake with our men, being but nine together, about a mile within the Land, our men not thinking to find any men there (for that we had at other times been on Land in the *VVyg-gates*, and saw none) at last, it being mistie weather, they perceived men, fure and fure in a company, and wee were hard by them which they knew it: then our Interpreter went alone towards them to speake an Arrow out of his Quiver, offering to shoot at him; wherewith our Interpreter, being with our Armes, was afraid, and cryed vnto him, saying (in *Russian* speech) *Shoote not, we are friends* which the other hearing, call his Bow and Arrows to the ground, therewith giuing him to vnderstand that he was well content to spake with our man: which done, our man called to him once againe, and said: *We are friends*; wherunto he made answer and said: then you are welcome; and saluting one the other bended both their heads downe towards the ground, after the *Russian* manner: this done, our Interpreter questioned with him, about the situation and stretching of the Sea East-ward through the Streights of *VVyg-gates*; whereof he gaue vs good information, saying: that when they should haue past a point of land about fure daies failing from thence, shewing North-eastward; that after that, there is a great Sea (shewing towards the South-eastward,) saying, that he knew it very well, for that one had bene there that was sent thither by their King with certaine Soldiers, wherof he had bene Captaine.

Sea open.

Samoyeds apparell.

Haire, person, stature.

Their King.

Their Sleds.

Departure.

The manner of their Apparell is, like as we see in *Wildmen*, but they are not wilde as they are of reasonable judgement: they are apparelled in Harts skines from the head to the feet, vnlesse it be the principallest of them, which are apparell'd, whether they be men or women, like vnto the rest, as aforesaid, vnlesse it be on their heads, which they couer with certaine coloured Cloth lined with Furre: the rest wear Caps of Harts or Bucks skines, the rough side outwards, which staid close to their heads, and are very fit. They wear long Haire, which they pleate and fold, and let it hang downe vpon their backs. They are (for the most part all) short and low of stature, with broad flat faces, small eyes, short legs, their knees bending outwards and are very quick to goe and leape. They trust not Strangers; for although that we showed them all the courteis and friendship that wee could, yet they trusted vs not much: whereas we perceived hereby, that as vpon the first of September we went againe on Land to which we had sent one of our men, desired to see one of their Bowes: they refused it, making a signe that they would not doe it. Hee that they called their King, had Centinels standing abroad, to see what was done in the Countrey, and what was bought and sold: At last, one of our men went neerer to one of the Centinels, to speake with him, and offered him great friendship, according to their accustomed manner, withall giuing him a Bisket; which he with great thanks tooke, and presently ate it; and while hee ate it, hee still lookt diligently about him on all sides what was done.

Their Sleds stood alwayes ready with one or two Harts in them, that ranne so swiftly with one or two men in them, that our Horses are not able to follow them. One of our men shot a Musket towards the Sea, wherewith they were in great feare, that they ranne and leapt like mad men: yet at last, they satisfied themselves, when they perceived that it was not maliciously done to hurt them: and we told them by our Interpreter, that we vied our Pieces in stead of Bowes; wherat they wondered, because of the great blow and noyse that it gaue and made and to shew them what wee could doe therewith, one of our men tooke a flat stone about halfe a handfull broad, and let it vpon a Hill a good way off from them, which they perceiving, and thinking that we meant some what thereby, fiftie or sixtie of them gathered round about vs; and yet some-what farre off, wherewith hee that had the Piece, shot it off, and with the Bullet smote the stone in sunder: wherat they wondered much more then before.

After that, wee tooke our leaues one of the other, with great friendship on both sides; and when we were in our Pinnasse, wee all put off our Hats, and bowed our heads vnto them, sounding our Trumpet: They (in their manner) saluting vs also, and then went to their Sleds againe. And

And after they were gone from vs, and were somewhat within the Land, one of them came riding to the shoare, to fetch a rough-hewed Image, that our men had taken off the shoare, and carryed into their Boate: and when hee was in our Boate, and perceived the Image, he made vs a signe that wee had not done well to take away that Image: Which we beholding, gaue it to him againe: Which when hee had receiued, he placed it vpon a Hill right by the Sea side, and tooke it not with him, but sent a Sled to fetch it from thence: and as farre as wee could perceive, they esteemed that Image to be their God; for that right our against that place in the *VVyg-gates*, which wee called *Beelt-hooke*, we found certayne hundreds of such carved Images, all roughabout the Heads, being somewhat round, and in the middle, hauing a little hill in stead of a Nose; and about the Nose two eyes, in place of Eyes; and vnder the Nose a can, in place of a Mouth. Before the Images, wee found great store of Althes, and bones of Harts: wherby it is to be supposed, that there they offered vnto them.

Hundreds of carved Images, all shaped like men.

The second of September, a little before Sunne rising, we put forth an Anchor to get out, for that the wind as then blew South South-west; it being good weather to get out, and it weather to lytle fill: for we lay vnder a low Banke. The Admirall and Vice-admirall seeing Focke-stayle, the Sunne was East and by South: and to let sayle. When we put out our there wee cast Anchor to stay for the Vice-admiralls Pinnasse; which with much labour and paines, in time got out of the Ice, by often casting out of their Anchor: and in the Evening hee got to vs: in the Morning about two houres before Sunne rising wee let sayle, and by Sunne rising, wee got within a mile Eastward of the *Twiss point*, and sayled Northward six miles, till the Sunne was South. Then wee were forced to wind about, because of the great quantitie of Ice, and the Myt that then fell, at which time the wind blew to vncertainty, that we could hold no course, but were forced continually to winde and rune about, by reason of the Ice, and wee supposed that we had sayled Southward vp towards the *Samoyeds* Countrey, and then held our course South-west, till the watchers were North-west from vs; then we came to the point of the *States* Island lying Eastward about a Musket shot from the Land, hauing 13. fathom deepe.

The fourth of September, wee hoysed Anchor because of the Ice, and sayled betwixt the firme Land and the *States* Island, where we lay close by the *States* Island at foure and fure fathom deepe, and made our Ship fast with a Cable cast on the shoare, and there wee were late from the point of the Ice, and durters times went on land to get Hares, wherof there were many in that Island. The sixth of September, some of our men went on shoare vpon the firme land to seeke for Stones, which are a kinde of Diamond, wherof there are many also in the *States* Island: and while they were seeking the Stones, two of our men lying together in one place, a great leane knowing what it was that tooke him by the necke, cryed out and sayd: *Who is that that pulls me so by the necke?* wherewith the other, that lay not farre from him; lifted vp his head to see Beare, and therewith presently rose vp and ranne away.

A Beare kills two men.

The Beare at the first falling vpon the man, by his hand in his finger, and sucked out his blood, wherewith the rest of the men that were on the Land, being about twentie in number, ranne presently thither, either to save the man, or else to strike the Beare from the dead body: and ha but perceiving them to come towards her, fiercely and cruelly ranne at them, and got another of them out from the Company which shee tore in pieces, wherwith all the rest ranne away.

Her flourell.

We perceiving out of our Ship and Pinnasse, that our men ranne to the Sea-side to save themselves, withall speed entred into our Boates, and rowed as fast wee could to the shoare to relieue beene so cruelly killed and torne in pieces by the Beare, wee seeing that, encouraged our men to but they would not all agree therunto: some of them saying, our men are already dead, and we might save our fellowes lues, though we would make haste, but now we need not make such speed, but take her at an aduantage, with most securitie for our selues, for we haue to doe with a cruell, fierce, and ravenous Beare. Wherupon three of our men went forward, the Beare still did the three that went forward in that sort, were *Cornelius Jacobson*, Master of *William Barents* Ship, that the sayd Master and Pilot had shot three times and mist, the Purser stepping somewhat further forward, and seeing the Beare to be within the length of a shot, presently leuelled his Piece, and discharging it at the Beare, shot her into the head betwixt both the eyes, and yet the Beare somwhat to stagger, wherewith the Purser and a Seerghs-man drew out their Curtheses;

They kill the
Beare.

and strooke at her so hard, that their Curleaxes burst, and yet she would not leave the man, at last *William Gysen* went to them, and with all his might strooke the Beare vpon the snout with his pice, at which time the Beare fell to the ground, making a great aoyle, and *William Gysen* leaping vpon her cut her throat. The seventh of September, wee buried the dead bodies of our men in the *States* Iland, and having slayed the Beare, carryed her Skin to *Amsterdam*.

The ninth of September, we set sayle from the *States* Iland, but the Ice came in so thicke and with such force, that we could not get through, so that at Evening we came backe againe to the *States* Iland, the winde being Westerly. There the Admirall and the Pinnale of *Reterdam*, fell on ground by certayne Rockes, but got off againe without any hurt.

Twist-point.

The tenth of September, we layd againe from the *States* Iland towards the *Wey-gate*, and sent two Boates into the Sea, to certifie vs what flore of Ice was abroad : and that Evening we came all together into *Wey-gate*, and Anchored by the *Twist-point*. The eleventh of September in the Morning, we layd againe into the *Tartarian* Sea, but we fell into great flore of Ice, so that we layd backe againe to the *Wey-gate*, and Anchored by the *Crosse-point*, and about midnight we saw a *Russian Lodgie*, that layd from the *Beale-point* towards the *Samters* Land. The thirteenth of September, the Sunne being South, there began a great storme to blow out of the South South-west, the weather being mistie, melancholy, and frowie, and the storme increasing more and more, we draue through.

The fourteenth of September, the weather began to bee somewhat clearer, the winde being North-west, and the storme blowing (stife out of the *Tartarian* Sea, but at Evening it was fair weather, and then the wind blew North-east, the same day our men went on the other side of *Wey-gate*, on the firme land, to take the depth of the Channell, and eptred into the Bough behind the Ilands, where there stood a little House made of wood, and a great fall of water into the land. The same Morning we hoysed vpon our Anchor, thinking once againe to try what we could doe to further our Voyage, but our Admirall being of another minde, lay still till the twentieth of September. The same day in the Morning, the winde draue in from the East-end of the *Wey-gate*, whereby we were forced presently to hoysed Anchor, and the same day layd out from the West-end of the *Wey-gate*, with all our Fleet, and made homewards againe, and that day past by the Ilands called *Matfloce* and *Delgoy*, and that night we layd twelve miles North-west and by West, till Saturday in the morning, and then the winde fell North-east, and it began to Snow. We saw the point of *Candymies*, lying South-east from vs, and then we had seen and twentie fathom deepe, red sand with blacke shells.

Matfloce and
Delgoy.

The nine and twentieth of September, in the Evening entered into *Ward-house*, and there we stayed till the tenth of October. And that day we set sayle out of *Ward-house*, and vpon the eighth of Nouember, we arrived in the *Mars*.

CHAP. V.

The third Voyage Northward to the Kingdomes of Cachaia,
and China, in Anno 1596. Written by
GERAT DE VEER.

§. I.

What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House.



After that the seven Ships (as I said before) were returned backe againe from their North Voyage, with lesse benefite then was expected, the Generall *States* of the United Provinces consulted together, to send certayne Ships thither againe, a third time, to see if they might bring the said Voyage to a good end, if it were possible to bee done : but after much Consultation had, they could not agree thereon ; yet they were content to cause a Proclamation to be made, that if any, either Townes, or Merchants, were disposed to venture to make further search that way, at their owne charges, if the Voyage were accomplished, and that thereby it might be made apparent, that the said passage was to be layd, they were content to give them a good reward, in the Countreys besellie, naming a certayne summe of money. Whereupon in the beginning of this yeere, there was two Ships rigged and set forth by the Towne of *Amsterdam*, to sayle that the Voyage, the men therein being taken vp vpon two Conditions : viz. What they should haue if the Voyage were not accomplished, and what they should haue if they got through, and brought the Voyage to an end, promising them a good reward if they could effect it, thereby to encourage the men, taking vp as many unmarried men as they could, that they might not bee dissuaded by means of their Wiues and Children to leave off the Voyage. Vpon these Conditions, thole

two

CHAP. VI. Three Sunnes and foure Raine-bowes. Ice, Danger escaped.

two Ships were ready to set sayle in the beginning of May. In the one, *Iacob Heemkerke Hendrickson*, was Master and Factor for the *Willem* and Merchandizes ; and *William Barents* chiefe Pilot. In the other, *John Cornelison Ryp*, was both Master and Factor for the goods that the Merchants had laden in her.

The fifth of May, all the men in both the Ships were Mustered, and vpon the tenth of May, they sayled from *Amsterdam*, and the thirteenth of May got to the *Vlie*. The thirtieth of May we had a good winde, and sayled North-east, and wee tooke the height of the Sunne with our Crosse-staffe, and found that it was eleuated above the Horizon 47. degrees and 42. minutes, his Declination was 21. degrees and 42. minutes, so that the height of the Pole was 69. degrees 10 and 24. minutes.

The first of Iune we had no night, and the second of Iune we had the winde contrarie, but vpon the fourth of Iune we had a good winde, out of the West North-west, and sayled North-east. And when the Sunne was about South South-east, wee saw a strange sight in the Element : for on each side of the Sunne there was another Sunne, and two Raine-bowes, that past cleane thorow the three Sunnes, and then two Raine-bowes more, the one compassing round about the Sunnes, and the other crosse thorow the great rundle ; the great rundle standing with the vttermoist point, eleuated above the Horizon 28. degrees : at noone the Sunne being at the highest, the height thereof was measured, and wee found by the *Astronomicon*, that it was eleuated above the Horizon 48. degrees and 42. minutes, his Declination was 22. degrees and 17. minutes, the which being added to 48. degrees 43. minutes, it was found that wee were vnder 71. degrees of the height of the Pole.

John Cornelis ship held aloofe from vs, and would not keepe with vs, and would hold no course but North North-east, for they alledged, that if wee went any more Easterly, that then we should enter into the *Wey-gate*, but wee being not able to perswade them, altered our course one point of the Compass, to meet them, and sayled North-east and by North, and should otherwise haue sayled North-east, and somewhat more East.

The fifth, wee saw the first Ice, which we wondered at, at the first, thinking that it had beene white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a sudden began to cry out with a loud voyce, and said ; that hee saw white Swannes : which wee that were vnder Hatches hearing, presently came vp, and perceived that it was Ice, that came drifing from the great heapes, showing like Swannes, it being then about Evening, at midnight we sayled through it, and the Sunne was about a degree eleuated above the Horizon in the North.

The sixth, about foure of the clocke in the after-noon, wee entered againe into the Ice, which was so thong that we could not passe through it, and sayled South-west and by West, till eight Glafes were runne out, after that we kept on our course North, North-east, and sayled along by the Ice.

The seventh, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated above the Horizon 38. degrees and 38. minutes, his Declination being 22. degrees 38. minutes ; which being taken from 38. degrees 38. minutes, wee found the Pole to bee 74. degrees ; there we found to be great flore of Ice, that it was admirable : and we sayled along through it, as if we had past between two Lands. The water being as Greene as Grasse, and we supposed that we were not farre from *Greenland*, and the longer we sayled, the more and thicker Ice we found. The eighth of Iune, we came to so great a heape of Ice, that we could not sayle through it.

The ninth of Iune, we found the Iland that lay vnder 74. degrees and 30. minutes, and as we went, it was about five miles long. The tenth, we put out our Boate, and therewith eight of our men went on Land, and as we past by *John Cornelison* ship, eight of his men also came into our Boate, whereof one was the Pilot. Then *William Barents* asked him, whether we were not too twene them, for *William Barents* sayd, he would proue it to bee so, as in truth it was. The eleventh we were in great danger of our liues : for that going vp a great Hill of Snow, when wee were to haue fallen vpon, yet by Gods helpe we should all haue broken our neckes, it was so slippery, our armes and legges, for that at the foot of the Hill there was many Rockes, which we were likely to haue fallen vpon, yet by Gods helpe we got safely downe againe. Meane time *William Barents* late in the Boate, and saw vs slide downe, and was in greater feare then we, to behold vs in that danger. In the said Iland, we found the varying of our Compass, which was 13. degrees, so that it differed a whole point at the least : after that wee rowed aboard *John Cornelison* ship, and there we ate our Egges.

The twelfth in the morning, we saw a white Beare, which we rowed after with our Boate, thinking to cast a Rope about her necke ; but when we were neere her, she was so great, that we durst not doe it, but rowed backe againe to our Ship to fetch more men and our Armes, and so made her againe with Muskets, Harquebusses, Halberds, and Hatchets. *John Cornelison* men coming also with their Boate to helpe vs : and so being well furnished of men and weapons,

Iune.
Three Sunnes
and foure
Raine-bowes.
The like hath
beeene seene in
England about
the time this
wrote entered
the Preface.

Ice.

Greene water.

Beare, or che-
rie-land.

Egges.

Danger efa-
ced.Variation of
the Compass.Great white
Beare.

Fight with
her.

we rowed with both our Boates vnto the Beare, and fought with her while four Gliaes were runne out, for our Weapons could doe her little hurt; and amongst the rest of the blowes that we gaue her, one of our men strooke her into the backe with an Axe, which fluckt fast in her backe, and yett she swamme away with it; but we rowed after her, and at last we cut her head in funder with an Axe, wherewith the dyed: and then we brought her into *Iohn Cornelius* ship, where we flayed her, and found her Skinne to bee twelve foot long: which done, we ate some of her flesh; but we brooke it not well. This Iland we called the *Beare-Iland*.

The thirteenth we left the Iland, and layed North, and somewhat Easterly, the winde being West, and South-west, and made good way: so that when the Sunne was North, wee ghest that we had layed fixteene miles Northward from that Iland.

The fourteenth, when the Sunne was North, wee cast our Lead one hundred and thirteene fathome deepe, but found no ground, and so layed forward till the fifteenth of Iune, when the Sunne was South-east, with mistie and drifling weather, and layed North, and North and by East: about Euening it cleared vp, and then we saw a great thing driving in the Sea, which we thught had bene a Ship: but passing along by it, we perceived it to bee a Dead Whale, that we flunk monstrously; and on it there was a great number of Sea-mewes: At that time, we had layed twentie miles.

Dead Whale.

The sixteenth, with the like speed we layed North, and by East, with mistie weather; and as we layed, we heard the Ice before we saw it: but after, when it cleared vp, we saw it, and then wood off from it, when as we ghest we had layed thirtie miles. The seventeenth and eighteenth, we saw great store of Ice, and layed along by it, vntill we came to the point, which we could not reach, for that the wind was South-east, which was right against vs, & the point of Ice lay Southward from vs: yett we laured a great while to get beyond it, but we could not doe it. The nineteenth, we saw Laye againe, then we took the height of the Sun, and found that it was eleuated about the Horizon 33. degrees and 37. minutes: her Declination being 33. degrees and 26. minutes: which taken from the sayd 33. degrees and 37. minutes, we found that we were vnder 80. degrees and 11. minutes: which was the height of the Pole there. This Iland was very great, and we layed Westward along by it, till we were vnder 79. degrees and a halfe, when we found a good road, and could not get neare to the Land, because the winde blew North-east, which was right off from the Land: the Bay reacheth right North and South into the Sea.

80. Degrees
and 11. minutes.Another fight
with a white
Beare.

The twentieth one, we cast our Anchor, at eighteene fathome before the Land; and then we and *Iohn Cornelius* men, rowed on the West-side of the Land, and there fetched Balst: and when we got on board againe with our Balst, we saw a white Beare that swamme towards our ship; whereupon we left off our worke, and entering into the Boate with *Iohn Cornelius* men, rowed after her, and crossing her in the way, droue her from the Land, wherewith the swamme further into the Sea, and we followed her; and for that our Boate could not make good way after her, we manned our Scute also, the better to follow her: but she swam a mile into the Sea; yett we followed her with the most part of all our men of both Ships in three Boates, and strookes oftentimes at her, cutting and hewing her, so that all our Armes were most broken in pieces. During our fight with her, she strooke her Claws so hard in our Boate, that the figges thereof were fene in it: but as hap was, it was in the fore-head of our Boate: for if it had bene in the middle thereof, the head (peradenture) our-throwne it, they have such force in their Claws: At last, after we had fought long with her, and made her wearie with our three Boates that kept about her, her Skinne being thirteene foot long. After that, we brought her into our ship, and layed her: her Skinne being thirteene foot long. After that, we rowed with our Scute, about a mile inward to the Land, where there was a good Haue, and good Anchor ground, on the East-side being fandie, there wee cutt our Lead, and found fixteene fathome deepe, and after that, ten, and twelue fathome, and rowing further, we found that on the East-side there was two Ilands, that reached Eastward into the Sea: on the West-side also there was a great Creeke or Riuer, which shewed also like an Iland. Then we rowed to the Iland that lay in the middle, and there we found many Red Geefe-egges, which we saw fitting vpon their Nests, and droue them from them, and they flying away, cryed red, red, red: and as they fate wee killed one Goose dead with a stone, which we dreift and eate, and at least fixtie Egges, that wee took with vs aboard the ship, and vpon the two and twentieth of Iune, we went aboard our ship againe.

Beares skin
13. foot long.Red Geefe
Egges.Red Geefe
beet their
young Geefe,
vnder 80. De-
grees in Green-
land.
Fable of Bar-
nacles.

Those Geefe were of a perfit Red colour, such as come into *Holland* about *Waringen*, and euery yeere are there taken in abundance, but till this time it was neuer knowne where they hatch their Egges, so that some men have taken vpon them to write, that they fly vpon Trees in *Sealand*, that hang out the Water, and such Egges as fall from them downe into the Water become young Geefe, and swim there out of the water; but those that fall vpon the Land butt in funder, are lost: but this is now found to be contrary, and it is not to be wondered at, that no man could tell where they breed their Egges, for that no man that euery wee knew, had euery been vnder 80. Degrees: nor that Land vnder 80. degrees, was neuer let downe in any Card, much less the red Geefe that breed therein.

Note.

It is heere also to bee noted, that although that in this land which we esteeme to be *Greenland*,

land, lying vnder 80. Degrees, and more, there groweth Leaues and Graffe, and that there are such Beasts therein as eate graffe, as Harts, Buckes, and such like beasts as lue threene, yett in *Nova Zembla* vnder 76. Degrees, there groweth neither Leaues nor Graffe, nor any Beasts that eate graffe or leaues lue therein, but such Beasts as eate Fleish, as Beares and Foxes: and yett this Land lyeth full 4. Degrees from the North Pole, further then *Greenland* aforesayd doth.

The three and twentieth, wee hoyfted Anchor againe, and layed North-westward into the Sea; but could get no further, by reason of the Ice; and so we came to the same place againe where we had layne, and cast Anchor at eighteene fathome: and at Euening being at Anchor, the Sunne being North-east, and somewhat more Eastward, wee took the height thereof, and found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 13. degrees and 10. minutes, the Declination being 23. degrees and 8. minutes: which subtracted from the height aforesaid, setteth 10. degrees and 18. minutes, which being subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole there was 79. degrees and 42. minutes.

After that, we hoyfted Anchor againe, and layed along by the West side of the Land, and then our men went on Land, to see how much the Needle of the Compass varied: Meane time there came a great white Beare swimming towards the Ship, and would haue climbed vp into it, if we had not made a noyse; and with that wee shot at her with a peece, but the left the ship, and swam to the Land, where our men were: which we perceiving, layed with our ship towards the Land, and gaue a great shout; wherewith our men thought that we had fallen on a 20. Rocke with our Ship, which made them much abashed; and therewith the Beare also being afraid, swamme off againe from the Land, and left our men, which made vs glad: for our men had no Weapons about them. Touching the varying of the Compass, for which cause our men went on Land, to trie the certaintie thereof: it was found to differ 16. Degrees.

B: are affaile
them.

The five and twentieth of Iune, we hoyfted Anchor againe, and layed along by the Land, and went South, and South South-west, with a North North-east winde, vnder 79. degrees. There we found a great Creeke or Riuer, wherinto we layed ten miles at the least, holding our course Southward; but we perceived that we could not get through: there wee cast out our Lead, and for the most part found 10. fathome deepe, but we were constrained to laure out againe, for the winde was Northerly, and almost full North, and we perceived that it reached to the firme land, so which we supposed to be *Low Land*, for that we could not see it any thing farre, and therefore we layed forreuer vnto it, till that we might see it: and then we were forced to laure, and vpon the seuen and twentieth of Iune we got out againe.

Variation of
the Compass
16. Degress.

The eight and twentieth, we got beyond the point that lay on the West side, where there was so great a number of Birds, that they flew against our Sayles, and wee layed ten miles Southward, and after that West, to shun the Ice. The nine and twentieth, wee layed South-east and somewhat more Easterly, along by the Land, till we were vnder 76. degrees and 50. minutes, for we were forced to put off from the Land, because of the Ice. The thirtieth of Iune, we layed South, and somewhat East, and then we took the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated about the Horizon 38. degrees and 10. minutes, the Declination was 23. degrees and 20. minutes, which being taken from the former height, it was found that we were vnder 75. degrees.

Store of Birds.

The first of Iuly, we saw the *Beare-Iland* againe, and then *Iohn Cornelius* and his Officers came aboard our ship, to speake with vs about altering our course, but wee being of a contrary opinion, it was agreed that we should follow on our course, and hee his: which was, that he (according to his desire) should layle vnto 80. Degrees againe; and here his was of opinion, that there he should finde a passage through, on the East side of the Land that lay vnder 80. Degrees. And vpon that agreement we left each other, they sayling Northward, and wee Southward, because of the Ice, the winde being East South-east.

Iuly,
Cherie-Iland.They part
of compass.

The second one, we layed Eastward, and were vnder 74. degrees, hauing the wind North North-west, and then we wood out our another Bough, with an East North-east winde, and layed 50. Northward. In the Euening the Sunne being about North-west and by North, we wood about againe (because of the Ice) with an East winde, and layed South South-east, and about East South-east, and then we wood about againe (because of the Ice) and the Sunne being South-grees, hauing a South-east and by East winde, and layed North-east. The third, we were vnder 74. degrees, hauing a South-east and by East winde, and layed North-east and by North: after that we wood about againe with a South winde, and layed East South-east, till the Sunne was North-west, then the winde began to be somewhat larger.

The eight, we had a good North-west winde, and layed East and by North, with an indifferent cold gale of wind, and got vnder 72. degrees and 15. minutes. The ninth of Iuly, we went East and by North, the wind being West. The tenth of Iuly, the Sunne being South South-west, we cast out our Lead, and had ground at one hundred and fixtie fathome, the wind being North-east and by North, and we layed East and by South, vnder 72. degrees. The cleuenth, we found 70. fathome deepe, and saw no Ice, then wee ghest that we were right South and North from *Daninaes*, that is the East-point of the White-Ira, that lay Southward from vs, and had fandie ground, and the banke stretched Northward into the Sea, so that we were out of doubt that we

were upon the banks of the White Sea, for we had found no sandie g., and all the Coast along, but only that bank. Then the wind being East and by South, we sailed South, and Southward by East, vnder 72. degrees, and after that, we had a South South-east Wind, and sayled North-

The thirteenth of July, we sayled East with a North North-east wind: then we took the height of the Sunne, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 54. degrees and 38. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees and 54. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was found to be 73. degrees, and then againe we found Ice, but not very much, and we were of opinion, that we were by *Willoughbies* Land. The fourteenth, we sayled North-east, the wind being North North-west, and in that fort sayled about a dinner time, along through the Ice, and in the middle thereof we cast our Lead, and had ninety fathome deepe, in the next quarter wee cast our Lead againe, and had an hundred fathome deepe, and we sayled so farre into the Ice, that wee could goe no further: for wee could see no place where it opened, but were forced (with great labour and paine) to lauer out of it againe, the wind blowing West, and we were then vnder 74. degrees and 10. minutes:

The fifteenth, we drawe through the middle of the Ice with a calme, and casting out our Lead, had an hundred fathome deepe, at which time the wind being East, wee sayled West. The sixteenth, we got out of the Ice, and saw a great Beare lying upon it, that leaped into the water when hee saw vs: Wee made towards her with our ship, which hee perceiving got vp vpon the Ice againe, wherewith wee fought once at her. Then wee sayled East South-east, and saw no Ice, ghesing that we were not farre from *Nova Zembla*, because we saw the Beare there vpon the Ice, at which time we cast out our Lead, and found an hundred fathome deepe.

The seventeenth, we took the height of the Sunne, and it was elevated above the Horizon 37. degrees and 55. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees and 15. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was 74. degrees and 40. minutes: and when the Sunne was in the South, we saw the Land of *Nova Zembla*, which was about *Lembyg*: I was the first that espied it. Then we altered our course, and sayled North-east and by North, and hoied vp all our sayles, except the Fore-sayle and the Lefen. The eighteenth, we saw the Land againe, being vnder 74. degrees, and sayled North-east and by North, with a North-west wind, and we gate about the point of the *Admirals* Island, and sayled East North-east, 30 with a West Wind, the Land reaching North-east and by North. The nineteenth, we came to the *Crosse* Island, and could get no further, by reason of the Ice, for there the Ice lay still close vpon the Land, at which time the wind was West, and blew right vpon the Land, and it lay vnder 76. degrees and 20. minutes. There stood two Croffes vpon the Land, wherof it had the Name.

The twentieth, we anchored vnder the Land, for we could get no further for the Ice. There we put out our Boat, and with eight men rowed on Land, and went to one of the Croffes, where we rested vs a while to goe to the next Croffe, but being in the way we saw two Beares by the other Croffe, at which time we had no weapons at all about vs. The Beares rose vp vpon their hinder feet to see vs (for they smell further then they see) and for that they smelt vs: therefore they rose vp right, and came towards vs, wherewith we were not a little abashed, in such sort that we had little lust to laugh, and in all haste went to our Boat againe, still looking behind vs, to see if they followed vs, thinking to get into the Boat, and so put off from the Land: but the Master stayed vs, saying, hee that first begins to runne away, I will thrust this Hake-staffe (which he then held in his hand) into his ribs; for it is better for vs (said hee) to stay all together, and see if we can make them afraid with whooping and howling; and so we went softly towards the Boat, and got away, glad that we had escaped their clawes, and that we had the leisure to tell our fellowes thereof.

The one and twentieth we took the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 35. degrees and 15. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees, which being taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was found to be 76. degrees and 15. minutes: then we found the variation of the Compasse to be 26. degrees. The same day two of our men went againe to the Croffe, and found no Beares to trouble vs, and we followed them with our Armes, fearing least we might meet any by chance, and when we came to the second Croffe, we found the foot-steps of two Beares, and saw how long they had followed vs, which was one hundred foot-steps at the least, that way that we had beene the day before. The two and twentieth being Munday, we set vp another Croffe, and made our Marke thereon: and lay there before the Croffe Island, till the fourth of August, meane time we walght and whitened our Linnen on the shore.

The thirtieth, the Sunne being North, there came a Beare to neere to our ship, that we might hit her with a stone, and we shot her into the foot with a Piece, wherewith shee ranne halting away. The one and thirtieth of July, the Sunne being East North-east, seven of our men killed a Beare, and sayled her, and cast her bodie into the Sea. The same day at noon (by our Instrument) we found the variation of the Needle of the Compasse to be 17. degrees.

The

The first of August we saw a white Beare, but she ran away from vs. The fourth, we got out of August, the Ice, to the other side of the Land, and anchored there: where, with great labour and much paine, we fetched a Boat full of stones from the Land. The fifth, wee set sayle againe towards Ice point, with an East Wind, and sayled South South-east, and then North North-east, and saw no Ice by the Land, by the which we were lauered. The sixth, we gate about the point of *Naf-* Point Naffaw. Point Naffaw.

The seventh, we had a West South-west Wind, and sayled along by the Land, South-east, and South-east and by East, and saw but a little Ice, and then past by the *Truff* point, which we had much longed for: at Eueneng we had an East Wind, with mistie Wee fathome deepe, vnder the 10 water, and more then sixteen fathome above the water: which in all was two and fifty fathome thick, for it lay fast vpon ground, the which was thirtee fixe fathome deepe. The eight in the morning we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather.

The ninth, lying still fast to the great piece of Ice, it snowed hard, and it was mistie weather, and when the Sunne was South, we went vpon the Hatches (for wealwayes held watch) where as the Master walked along the ship, he heard a beaft sniffe with his nose, and looking over-board, he saw a great Beare hard by the ship, where hee cryed out, a Beare, a Beare: and with that all our men came vp from vnder Hatches, and saw a great Beare hard by our Boat, (seeking to get into it, but we giuing a great shout, she was afraid, and swamme away), but presently came backe againe, and went behind a great piece of Ice, wherunto we had made our ship fast, and climbed vpon it, and boldly came towards our ship to enter into it: but we had torne our Scute Sayle in the ship, and lay with foure Peeces before at the Boat-spirit, and shot her in the bodie: and with that, shee ranne away; but it snowed so fast that wee could not see whither shee went: but we ghesit that shee lay behind a high Houell: wherof there were many vpon the piece of Ice.

The tenth, being Saturday, the Ice began mightily to breake, and then wee first perceived that the great piece of Ice wherunto we had made our ship fast, lay on the ground; for the rest of the Ice draue along by it; wherewith wee were in great feare that wee should be compassed about with the Ice, and therefore we vied all the diligence and meanes that we could to get from thence, for we were in great doubt: and being vnder liyle, wee sayled vpon the Ice, because it was all broken vnder vs, and got to another piece of Ice, wherunto we made our ship fast againe with our Sheate Anchor, which we made fast vpon it; and there we lay till Eueneng: and when we had supped, in the first quarter, the said piece of Ice began on a sudden to burk and rend in pieces, so fearefully that it was admirable; for with one great cracke it burk into foure hundred pieces at the least: we lying fast to it, weighed our Cable, and got off from it, vnder the water it was ten fathome deepe, and lay vpon the ground, and two fathome above the Water; and it made a fearefull noyse both vnder and about the Water when it burk; and spread it selfe abroad on all sides. And being with great feare, gotten from that piece of Ice, we came to another piece, that was six fathome deepe vnder the Water: to which wee made a Rope fast on both sides. Then we saw another great piece of Ice, not farre from vs, lying fast in the Sea, as it was as tharpe as a Tower; wherunto we rowed: and casting out our Lead, we found that it lay twentye fathome deepe, fast on the ground vnder the Water, and twelue fathome above the Water.

The eleuenth being Sunday, we rowed to another piece of Ice, and cast out our Lead, and found that it lay eighteen fathome deepe fast to the ground vnder the Water, and ten fathome above the water. The twelfth, wee sayled neere vnder the Land, the better to shunne the Ice, for the great flakes that draue in the Sea, were many fathome deepe vnder the Water, and we were better defended from them being at foure and five fathome Water, and there ranne called that point, *The small Ice point*.

The thirteenth in the morning, there came a Beare from the East point of the Land, close to our ship, and one of our men with a Peece shot at her, and brake one of her legs, but she crept vp the Hill with her three feet, and we following her, killed her, and hauing flayed her, brought the skinnie aboard the ship. From thence wee set sayle, with a little gale of Winde, and were forced to luere, but after, that it began to blow more out of the South, and South-east.

The fifteenth, we came to the Island of *Orange*, where we were inclosed with the Ice, hard by a great piece of Ice where we were in great danger to lose our ship, but with great labour and much paine, we got to the Land, the Wind being South-east, wherewith we were contrayned to turne our ship, and while we were buified therabouts, and made such noyse, a Beare that lay there and slept, awaked, and came towards vs to the ship, so that wee were forced to leaue our Worke about turning of the ship, and to defend our selues against the Beare, and shot her into the bodie, wherewith shee ranne away to the other side of the Land, and swamme into the water, and got vp vpon a piece of Ice, where she lay still, but we coming after her to the piece of Ice where she lay, when she saw vs, she leapt into the water, and swamme to the Land: but we got betweene her and the Land, and strooke her on the head with a Hatchet, but as often as we strooke

Willoughbies
Land concei-
ted from some
Maps.

Nova Zembla.

Admirals Island.

Crosse Island in
76. degrees 20.
minutes.Two Beares.
Their sent.Variation 26.
degrees, per-
haps 16.152. fathome
deepe.
Snow.

Beares assault.

Ice thunder.

Beare killed.

Orange Island.

stroke at her with the Hatchet, she duckt under the water, whereby wee had much to doe before we could kill her: After this she was dead we flayed her on the Land, and tooke the skinn aboard with vs, and after that, turned our shippe to a great piece of Ice, and made it fast therunto.

The sixteenth, ten of our men entring into one Boat, rowed to the firme Land of *Noua Zembla*, and drew the Boat vp vpon the Ice, which done, we went vp a high Hill, to see the situation of the Land, and found that it reached South-east, and South South-east, and then againe South-east, and East South-east, we were much comforted againe, thinking that we had wonne our Voyage, and knew not how we should get some enough aboard, to certifie *William Barents* thereof.

The eighteenth, we made preparation to fet sayle, but it was all in vaine: for we had almost lost our Sileat Anchor, and two new Ropes, and with much lost labour got to the place againe strongly vpon the Cables, along by the ship, so that we were in feare that we should lose all the drell work for vs, so that in the end, we got to the place againe from whence we put out.

Point Defire.

The nineteenth it was indifferent good weather, the Wind blowing South-west, the Ice still driving, and wee set sayle with an indifferent gale of Wind, and past by the point of *Defire*, South-east into the Sea-wind, in good hope, and when we had gotten above the point, we sailed wee were contrayned to turne backe againe, and sayled North-west untill we came to the Land miles: from the head point of *Defire*, to the head point, South and by West fix one from the other: from the head point to *Flushingers* head, it reacheth South-west, which are three miles from *Flushingers* head to the point of the Island, it reacheth South-west, and by South, and cheth West South-west foure miles: from the Ice Hauens point to the fal of Water, or the streame thence the Land reacheth East and West.

The one and twentieth, we sayled a great way into the Ice Hauens, and that night anchored therein: next day the streame going exream hard Eastward, wee hailed out againe from thence, and sayled againe to the Island point, but for that it was misty Weather, comming to a piece of South South-west.

Earth on the top of Azure Ice.

There we went vp vpon the Ice, and wondred much therat, it was such it was not like other Ice, for it was of a perfect Azure colour like to the Skies, whereby there grew great contention in words amongst our men, some saying that it was Ice, others that it was frozen Land: for it lay vneasonable high above the Water, it was at least eighteen fathom vnder the water close to the ground, and ten fathome about the water: there wee flayed all that againe, the Wind being South-west and by West. The three and twentieth, we sayled 40 from the Ice, South-eastward into the Sea, but entred presently into it againe, and wound about to the Ice Hauens. The next day it blew hard North North-west, and the Ice came mightily driving in, whereby we were in a manner compassed about therewith, and withall the Wind beganne more and more to rife, and the Ice still draue harder and harder, so that the pinne of the Rother, and the Rother were thorne in pieces, and our Boat was thorne in pieces betweene the ship and the Ice, we expecting nothing else, but that the ship also would be prellt and crusht in pieces with the Ice.

Boat broken with Ice.

The five and twentieth, the Weather began to be better, and we tooke great paines, and bestowed much labour to get the Ice, wherewith wee were inclofed, to goe from vs, but what meanes sooner we vied it was all in vaine, but when the Sunne was South-west, the Ice began 50 to drue out againe with the streame, and we thought to saile Southward about *Noua Zembla*, wee were of opinion that our labour was all in vaine, and that we could not get through, and agreed to goe that way home againe, but comming to the *Strieme Bay*, wee were forced to goe backe againe, because of the Ice which lay so fast therabouts, and the same night also it froze, that wee could hardly get through there, with the little wind that we had, the Wind then being North.

The six and twentieth, there blew a reasonable gale of Wind, at which time wee determined to sayle backe to the point of *Defire*, and so home againe, seeing that wee could not get through the *Mergates*, although we vied all the meanes and industry wee could to get forward, but when 60 we had past by the *Ice Hauens*, the Ice began to drue with such force, that wee were inclofed round about therewith, and yet we fought all the meanes we could to get out, but it was all in vaine: and at that time we had like to haue lost three men that were vpon the Ice to make way for the ship, if the Ice had held the course it went, but as we draue backe againe, and that the

Ice

Ice also whereon our men stood, in like sort draue, they being nimble, as the ship draue by them, one of them caught hold of the beak head, another vpon the throuds, and the third vpon the great brate that hung out behind, and so by great aduenture by the hold that they tooke, they got safe into the ship againe, for which they thanked God with all their hearts: for it was much likelier that they should rather haue bene carried away with the Ice, but God, by the nimbleness of their hands, deliuered them out of that danger which was pittifull thing to behold, although it fell out for the best, for if they had not bene nimble, they had surely dyed for it. The same day in the evening, wee got to the West-side of the *Ice Hauens*, where wee were forced in great cold, poutertie, miserie, and griefe, to stay all that Winter, the winde then being East

Escape of three men.

10 North-east.

The feuen and twentieth, the Ice draue round about the ship, and yet it was good weather, at which time we went on Land, and being there it began to blow South-east, with a reasonable gale, and then the Ice came with great force before the bough, and draue the ship vpon foure foot high before, and behind it seemed as if the keele lay on the ground, so that it seemed that the ship would be ouerthrowne in the place, whereupon they that were in the ship, put out the Boat, therewith to saue their liues, and withall put out a flagge to make a signe to vs, to come aboard: which wee perceiving, and beholding the ship to be lifted vp in that sort, made all the haste we could to get aboard, thinking that the ship was burst in pieces, but comming vnto it, we found it to be in better case then we thought it had bene.

Ship lifted vp, and belee with Ice.

20 The eight and twentieth, we got some of the Ice from it, and the other began to set vp right againe, but before it was fully vp right, as *William Barents* and the ship Pilot went forward to the bough to see how the ship lay, and how much it was risen; and while they were busie vpon their knees and elbows to measure how much it was, the ship burst out of the Ice with such a noise, and so great a cracke, that they thought verily that they were all cast away, knowing not how to saue themselves.

Another danger.

The nine and twentieth, the ship lying vp right againe, wee vied all the meanes wee could, with Iron hookes and other instruments, to breake the flakes of Ice that lay one heaped vpon the other, but all in vaine, so that we determined to commit our selues to the mercy of God, and to attend aile from him, for that the Ice draue not away in any such fort that it could helpe

30 vs. The thirtieth, the Ice began to drue together one vpon the other with greater force then before, and bare against the ship with a boyftrous South-west wind, and a great snow, so that all the whole ship was borne vp and enclofed, whereby all that was both about it and in it, began to cracke, so that it seemed to burst in an hundred pieces, which was most fearefull both to see and heare, and made all the haire of our heads to rise vp right with feare: and after that, the ship (by the Ice on both sides that ioyned and got vnder the same) was driven so vp right, in such sort, as if it had bene lifted vp with a Wrench or Vice.

The one and thirtieth of August, by force of the Ice, the ship was driven vp foure or five foot high at the beake head, and the hinder part thereof lay in a cliff of Ice, whereby wee thought that the Rother would bee freed from the force of the flakes of Ice, but notwithstanding that 40 brake in pieces flasse and all: and if that the hinder part of the ship had bene in the Ice, that draue, as well as the fore part was, then all the ship would haue bene driven wholly vpon the Ice, or possibly haue runne on ground, and for that cause wee were in great feare, and let our Scutes and our Boat out vpon the Ice, if need were, to saue our selues, but within foure houres after, the Ice draue away of it selfe, wherewith wee were exceeding glad, as if wee had saued ourselues, for that the ship was then on flote againe, and vpon that we made a new Rother and a Staffe, and hung the Rother out vpon the hookes, that if we chanced to bee borne vpon the Ice againe, as we had bene, it might be freed from it.

Rother broken

The first of September being Sunday, while we were at prayer, the Ice began to gather together againe, so that the ship was lifted vp two foot at the least, but the Ice brake not. The same 50 evening the Ice continued in that sort still driving and gathering together, so that we made preparation to draw our Scute and the Boat out of the Ice vpon the Land, the wind then blowing South-east. The second, it snowed hard with a North-east wind, and the ship began to rise vp higher vpon the Ice, at which time the Ice burst and cracke with great force, so that wee were of opinion to carrie our Scute on Land in that foule weather, with thirtee barrels of Bread, and two hogheads of Wine, to sustaine our selues if need were.

September.

The third, it blew hard but snowed not so much, the wind being North North-east, at which time wee began to be loofe from the Ice, wherunto wee lay fast, so that the Schek broke from the Steuen, but the planks wherewith the ship was lined, held the Schek fast, and made it hang on, but the Boutloofe and a new Cable (if we had failed vpon the Ice) brake by forcible prefling of the Ice, but held fast againe in the Ice, and yet the ship was staunch; which was wonder, in regard that the Ice draue so hard, and in great heapes, as big as the Salt-hills that are in *Spainne*, and within a Harquebuss shot of the ship, betweene the which wee lay in great feare and anguish.

The fourth, the weather began to cleare vp, and we saw the Sunne, but it was very cold, the wind

wind being North-east we being forced to lie still. The fift. it was faire Sun-shine weather, and very calme, and at evening when we had supped, the Ice compassed about vs againe, and were hard enclofed therewith, the ship beginning to lie vpon the one side, and leaked sore, but by Gods grace it became staunch againe, wherewith we were wholly in feare to lose the ship, it was in so great danger: at which time wee tooke counsell together, and carried our old Locke about our Scute that we had drawne vpon the Land, and at that time we carried some Bread, and Wine on Land also, with some Timber, therewith to mend our Boat, that it might serve vs in time of need.

The fixt, it was indifferent faire Sea-weather, and Sun-shine, the wind being West, wherby we were somewhat comforted, hoping that the Ice would drue away, and that we might get thence againe. The seuenth, it was indifferent weather againe, but we perceived no opening of the water, but to the contrary, it lay hard enclofed with Ice, and no water at all about of them came backe againe, the other three went forward about two miles into the Land, and there found a Riuer of sweet water, where also they found great store of Wood that had bene driven thither, and there they found the footsteeles of Harts and Hinds, as they thought, for they were downe footed, I have thought them so, which made them judge them to be so.

The eight, it blew hard East North-east, which was a right contrary wind to doe vs any good, touching the carrying away of the Ice, so that we were still faster in the Ice, which put vs in no small discomfort. The ninth, it blew North-east, with a little snow, wherby our ship foure foot deepe in the Ice, and our Sheek in the after Steuen, brake in pieces, and they lay three or foure to be somewhat loose before, but yet it was not much hurt. In the night time, two Beares came close to our ship side, but we sounded our Trumpet, and shot at them, but hit them not, because it was darke, and they ranne away. The tenth, the weather was somewhat better, because the wind blew not so hard, and yet all one wind.

The eleuenth, it was calme weather, and eight of vs went on Land, every man armed, to see if that were true as our other three companions had said, that there lay Wood about the Riuer, out, and thereby were compelled to alter our course, and at last saw that we could not get out of the Ice, but rather became faster, and could not loose our ship, as at other times we had done, so also that it began to be Winter, we tooke counsell together what we were best to doe, according to the time, that we might winter there, and attend such adventure as God would send vs: and after we had debated vpon the matter (to keepe and defend our felues both from the cold, and wilde beasts) we determined to build a house vpon the Land, and to keepe vs therein as well as we could, and so to commit our felues vnto the tuition of God, and to that end we went further in to the Land, to find out the convenientest place in our opinions, to raise our house vpon, and yet we had not much stiffe to make it withall, in regard that there grew no trees, nor any other thing in that Country convenient to build it withall: but we were leaving no occasion vnlight, to vs, at last we found an vnexpected comfort in our need, which was, that we found certaine trees, either from *Tartaria*, *Musconia*, or else where; for there was none growing vpon the Land, wherewith (as if God had purposely sent them vnto vs) we were much comforted, being in good hope that God would shew vs some further fauour: for that Wood serued vs not onely to build our house, but also to burne, and serve vs all the Winter long, otherwise without all doubt, we had died there miserably with extreme cold.

The twelfth, it was calme weather, and then our men went into the other side of the Land, to see if they could find any Wood nearer vnto vs, but there was none. The thirteenth, it was calme, but very misty weather, so that we could doe nothing, because it was dangerous for vs to goe into the Land, in regard that we could not see the wilde Beares, and yet they could smell vs, for they smell better then they see. The fourteenth, it was faire Sun-shine weather, but very cold, and then we went into the Land, and layed the Wood in heapes one vpon the other, that it might not be covered over with the Snow, and from thence meant to carrie it to the place where we intended to build our house.

The fifteenth in the morning, as one of our men held watch, we saw three Beares, wherof the one lay still behind a piece of Ice, the other two came close to the ship: which we perceiving, made our Peeces ready to shoot at them, at which time there stood a Tub full of Beefe vpon the Ice, which lay in the water to be seasoned, for that close by the ship there was no water: red shewish as the Dog did with the Pudding, for as the was snatching at the Beefe, there was still, and looked vpon her fellow, and when shee had stood a good while, shee smelt her fellow,

and perceiving that she was dead, shee ran away, but wee tooke Halberds and other Armes with vs, and followed her, and at last she came againe towards vs, and we prepared our felues to withstand her, wherewith the role vp vpon her hinder feet, thinking to rampe at vs, but while shee reared her selfe vp, one of our men shot her into the bellie, and with that she fell vpon her fore-feet againe, and roaring as loud as she could, ran away. Then we tooke the dead Beare, and ripe her bellie open; and taking out her guts, we fet her vpon her fore-feet, that so the might freeze as shee stood, intending to carrie her with vs into *Holland*, if wee might get our ship loose, and when we had fet the Beare vpon her foure feet, we began to make a Sled, thereon to draw the Wood to the place where we went to build our house, at that time it froze two fingers thicke in the salt water, and it was exceeding cold, the wind blowing North-east.

The sixteenth, the Sunne shone, but towards the evening it was misty, the wind being Easterly, at which time we went to fetch Wood with our Sleds, and then we drew foure beames about a mile vpon the Ice and the Snow, that night againe it froze about two fingers thicke. The seuenteenth, thirteenth of vs went where the Wood lay with our Sleds, and so drew fire and fire in a Sled, and the other three helped to lift the Wood behind, to make vs draw the better, and with more ease, and in that manner we drew Wood twice a day, and laid it on a heape by the place where we meant to build our house.

The three and twentieth, wee fetched more Wood to build our house, which wee did twice a day, but it grew to be misty and still weather againe, the wind blowing East, and East North-east, that day our Carpenter being of *Purmeut* died, as wee came aboard about evening. The foure and twentieth, we buried him vnder the fedges, in the cleft of a hill, hard by the water, for we could not dig vp the earth, by reason of the great frost and cold, and that day wee went twice with our Sleds to fetch Wood.

The fife and twentieth, it was darke wether, the wind blowing West, & West South-west, and South-west, and the Ice began fowth to open, and drue away; but it continued not long, for that hauing driuen about the length of the thoe of a great Peece, it lay three fathoms deepe vpon the ground: and where we lay the Ice drue not, for we lay in the middle of the Ice; but if we had layne in the mayne Sea, we would have hoysed layle, although it was then late in the yeere. The same day we rayled vp the principles of our house, and began to worke hard thereon, but if the ship had bene loose, we would have left our building, and haue made our after Steuen of our ship, that we might haue bene ready to layle away if it had bene possible.

The fixe and twentieth, wee had a West wind and an open Sea, but our ship lay fast, wherby we were not a little grieved, but it was Gods will, which we most patiently bare, and we began to make vp our house, part of our men fetched Wood to burne, the rest played the Carpenters: and were busie about the house, as then we were sixteen men in all, for our Carpenter was dead, and of our sixteen men there was still one or other sicke. The seuen and twentieth, it blew hard North-east, and it froze so hard, that as we put a nayle into our moutnes (as when men worke Carpenters worke they vse to doe) there would Ice hang thereon when weooke it out againe, and make the blood follow: the same day there came an old Beare and a young one

towards vs, as we were going to our house, being all together (for we durst not goe alone) which we thought to shoot at, but the ran away, at which time the Ice came forcibly driving in, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, but so extreme cold, that we could hardly worke, but extremely forced vs thereunto.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, and the Sunne shone, the Wind being West and very calme, the Sea as then being open, but our ship lay fast in the Ice and stirred not; the same day there came a Beare to the ship, but when the eysed vs, the ranne away, and we made as much haste as we could to build our House. The nine and twentieth in the morning, the Wind was West, and after-noon it blew Northerly, and then we saw three Beares between vs and the House, an old one and two young; but we notwithstanding drew our goods from the ship to the House, and so got before the Beares, and yet they followed vs: neuerthelesse, we would not shun the way for them, but hollowed out as loud as we could, thinking that they would haue gone away, but they would not once goe out of their foot-path, but got before vs, wherewith we and they that were at the house, made a great noise, which made the Beares run away, and we were not a little glad thereof. The thirtieth the Wind was East, and East South-east, and all that night and the next day it snowed so fast, that our men could fetch no Wood, it lay so close and high one vpon the other: then wee made a great fire without the House, therewith to thaw the ground, that so we might lay it about the House, that it might be the closer; but it was all lost labour, for the Earth was so hard, and frozen so deepe into the ground, that wee could not thaw it, and it would haue cost vs too much Wood, and therefore wee were forced to leave off that labour.

It freezeeth in the salt water two fingers thicke in a night.

House builded.

Hard and violent frost.

Ground not to be thawed.

p. II.

*Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreadfull Winter : the Sunnes absence,
Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous
speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many ma-
ny Wonders.*

The first of October, the Wind blew stiffe North-east, and after-noon it blew North, with a great storme and drift of Snow, whereby we could hardly goe in the Wind, and a man could hardly draw his breath, the Snow draue so hard on our faces, at which time we could not see two ships length from vs. The second before noone, the Sunne being North, and then South, and vvee let vp our Houle, and vpon it wee placed a May-pole made of frozen Snow.

The third before noone, it was calme Sun-shine vveather, but so cold, that it was hard to be indured, and after-noon it blew hard out of the West, vvith so great extreme cold, that if it had continued, we should have beene forced to leave our vvorks. The fourth, the Wind was West, and after-noon North, with great store of Snow, vvhereby vve could not vvork: at that time vve brought our Anchor vpon the Ice to lye the faster, vvhen vvee lay but an Arrow shot from the Water, the Ice was so much driven away.

The fifth, it blew hard North-west, and the Sea vvas very open and vvithout Ice, as farre as vve could discern, but vve lay still frozen as vvee did before, and our ship lay two or three foot deepe in the Ice, and vvee could not perceiue otherwise, but that vvee lay fast vpon the ground, and then it vvas three fathome and a halfe deepe. The same day vvee brake vp the lower deck of the fore-part of our ship, and vvith those Deales vve covered our Houles, and made it slope under head, that the Water might runne off, at vvhich time it vvas very cold. The sixth, it blew hard West South-west, but towards Evening, West North-west, with a great Snow, that we could hardly thrust our heads out of the doore, by reason of the great cold. The seventh, it was indifferent good vveather, but yet very cold, and wee calkt our Houle, and brake the 30 ground about it at the foot thereof: that day the Wind went round about the Compass.

The eight, all the night before it blew so hard, and the same day also, and snowed so fast, that we should have smothered, if we had gone out into the Ayre; and to speake truth, it had not beene possible for any man to haue gone one ships length, though his life had layen thereon: for it was not possible for vs to goe out of the Houle or ship. The ninth, the Wind still continued North, and blew, and snowed hard, all that day the Wind as then blowing from the Land, so that all that day we were forced to stay in the ship, the vvether was so foule.

The tenth, the vvether was somewhat fairer, and the Wind calmer, and blew South-west, and West, and South-west, and that time the Water flowed two foote higher then ordinary, which we ghest to proceede from the first North-wind, which as then had blowne. The same day the vvether began to be somewhat better, so that we began to goe out of our ship againe: as as one of our men went out, he chanced to meet a Beare, and was almost at him before hee knew it, but presently he ranne backe againe towards the ship, and the Beare after him; but the Beare coming to the place where before we had killed another Beare, and let her vp right, and there let her freeze (which was covered over with Ice, and yet one of her pawes reached about it) she stood still, whereby our man got before her, and climbed vp into the ship, in great feare, crying, *A Beare, a Beare*; which we hearing, came about Hatches to looke on her, and to shoot at her, but we could not see her, by means of the exceeding great smoke, that had so fore tormented vs (while we lay vnder Hatches) in the foule vvether which we would not haue indured for any money, but by reason of the cold and snowie vvether, we were contrayned to doe it, if we 30 would haue our liues, for aloft in the ship we must vvondoubtedly haue died: the Beare stayed not long there, but ranne away, the Wind then being North-east. The same day about Evening, it was faire vvether, and we went out of our ship to the Houle, and carried the greatest part of our Bread thither.

The eleuenth, it was calme vvether, the Wind being South, and somewhat warme, and then we carried our Wine and other Vitals on Land: and as we were hoisting the Wine our-board, there came a Beare towards our ship, that had layen behind a piece of Ice, and it seemed that we had waked her with the noyle we made: for wee had seene her lye there, but we thought her to be a piece of Ice; but as the same neere vs, we shot at her, and the ranne away, so we proceeded in our vvork. The twelfth, it blew North, and somewhat Welterly, and then halfe of 60 our men kept in the Houle, and that was the first time that we lay in it, but wee indured great cold, because our Cabins were not made; and besides that wee had not Clothes enough, and we could keepe no fire because our Chimney was not made, whereby it smoked exceedingly. The thirteenth, the Wind was North and North-west, and it began againe to blow hard, and then

CHAP. 5. 2. Beere melted, Sea covered with Ice. A Beare assaults the Ship. 493

then three of vs went aboard the ship, and laded a Sled with Beere, but when wee had laden it, thinking to goe to our Houle with it, suddenly there rose such a Wind, and so great a storme and cold, that wee were forced to goe into the ship againe, because wee were not able to stay without, and wee could not get the Beere into the ship againe, but were forced to let it stand without vpon the Sled; being in the ship, wee indured extreme cold, because wee had but a few clothes in it.

The fourteenth, as we came out of the ship, wee found the Barrell of Beere standing vpon the Sled, but it was fast frozen at the heads, yet by reason of the great cold, the Beere that purged out, froze as hard vpon the side of the Barrell as if it had bene glued thereon, and in 10 that fore we drew it to our Houle, and set the Barrell an end, and dranke it first vp, but wee were forced to melt the Beere, for there was scant any vvntrozen Beere in the Barrell, but in that thicke Yeast that was vvntrozen lay the strength of the Beere, so that it was too strong to drinke alone, and that which was frozen tasted like water, and being melted wee mixt one with the other, and so dranke it, but it had neither strength nor taste.

The fifteenth, the Wind blew North and East, and East South-east, that day we made place to set vp our doore, and shouled the Snow away. The eighteenth, the Wind blew hard East South-east, and then we fetched our Bread out of the Scute which wee had drawne vp vpon the Land, and the Wine also which as then was not much frozen, and yet it had layne sixe Weekes therein, and not vvithstanding that it had oftentimes frozen very hard. The same day wee saw 20 another Beare, and then the Sea was so covered ouer with Ice, that wee could see no open vvater.

The nineteenth, the Wind blew North-east, and then there was but two men and a Boy in the ship, at which time there came a Beare that sought forcibly to get into the ship, although 30 we were in an extreme feare, each of them seeking to faue themselves, the two men leapt into the Ballast, and the Boy climbed into the foot Mast top, to faue their liues, meane time, some of Sunne-hine vvether, and then againe wee saw the Sea open, at which time wee went on board to fetch the rest of our Beere out of the ship, and wee found some of the Bar- 30 rels and 10 rels frozen in pieces, and the Iron hoops that were vpon the Iosam Barrels were also frozen in pieces.

The two and twentieth, the Winde blew coldly, and very stiffe North-east, with so great a Snow, that wee could not get out of our doores. The three and twentieth, it was calme vvether, and the Winde blew North-east, then wee went aboard our ship, to see if againe, and therefore durst not stirre with the sick man, but let him lye still that day, for hee was very weak.

The foure and twentieth, the rest of our men being eight persons, came to the Houle, 40 and drew the sickle man vpon a Sled, and then with great labour and paine, wee drew our Boate home to our Houle, and then turned the botome thereof vppwards, that when time serued vs (if God saved our liues in the Winter time) we might vie it: and after that, perceiving that the ship lay fast, and that there was nothing left to be expected then the opening of the water, we put our Anchor into the ship againe, because it should not be covered ouer and lost in the Snow, that in the Spring time we might vie it: for wee alvvays trusted in God that hee would deliuer vs from thence toward Summer time, eyther one way or other. The Sunne, when we might see it best and highest, began to be very low, and wee vied all the speed we could to fetch all things with Sleds out of our ship into our Houle, not only needed to drinke, but all 50 other necessaries, at which time the Wind was North.

The five and twentieth, wee fetched all things that were necessary for the furnishing of our Houle, our Master looked about him and saw three Beares behind the ship that were coming 50 towards vs, whereupon hee cryed out aloud to faue them away, and wee presently leaped berde vpon the Sled, whereof the Master tooke one, and I the other, and made resistance against them as well as we could; but the rest of our men ranne to faue themselves in the ship, and as that the Beares would haue ranne vnto him, to decour him, but God defended him: for the Meane time, wee and the man that fell into the Clift of Ice, tooke our aduantage, and 60 got into the ship on the other side, which the Beares perceiving, they came fiercely to wards vs, that had no other Armes to defend vs vvithall, but only the two Halberds, which wee doubting would not bee sufficient, wee still gave them vvork to doe by throw- ing Billets and other things at them, and cuery time we threw, they ranne after them as a Dogge vvith to doe at a Stone that is cast at him. Meane time, wee sent a man 70 dounce

May-pole of Snow.

Extreme Snow

Hence it may seeme, that the course of the Tides and Sea is from the North.

Beere melted.

Sea covered with Ice.

Beares assaults the ship.

Barrels and Iron hoops broken with Ice.

All come to the Houle.

Fight vvith Beares.

downe vnder Hatches to strike Fire, and another to fetch Pikes, but wee could get no Fire, and so wee had no meanes to shote: at the last, as the Beares came fiercely vpon vs, wee strooke one of them with a Halberd vpon the Snow, wherewith shee gaue backe, when shee felt her selfe hurt, and went away, which the other two were not so great as these, perceiving, ranne away: and wee thanked God that wee were so well deliuered from them, and so drew our Sled quietly to our Houfe, and there shewed our men what had happened vnto vs.

The first and twentieth, the Wind was North, and North North-west, with indifferent faire weather: then wee saw open Water bare by the Land, but wee perceived the Ice to draine in the Sea, still towards the ship. The tenth and twentieth, the Wind blew North-east, and it snowed so fast, that wee could not worke without the doore. That day our men killed a White Foxe, which they dead: and after they had roasted it, ate thereof, which tasted like Conies flesh: the same day wee set vp our Dyal, and made the Clocke strike, and wee hung vp a Lampe to burne in the night time, wherein wee vfed the fat of the Beares which wee melt, and burnt in the Lampe.

The nine and twentieth, the Wind still blew North-east, and then wee fetched Segges from the Sea-side, and layd them vpon the Sayle that was spread vpon our Houfe, that it might bee so much the closer and warmer: for the Deales were not driven close together, and the foule weather would not permit vs to doe it. The thirtieth, the Winde yet continued North-east, and the Sunne was full above the Earth, a little above the Horizon. The one and thirtieth, the Winde still blew North-east, with great store of Snow, whereby wee durst not looke out of doores.

The first of November, the Wind still continued North-east, and then wee saw the Moone rise in the East when it beganne to bee darke, and the Sunne was no higher above the Horizon then wee could well see it, and yet that day we saw it not, because of the close weather, and the great Snow that fell, and it was extreme cold, so that wee could not goe out of the Houfe.

The second, the Wind blew West, and somewhat South, but in the Evening it blew North, with calme weather, and that day we saw the Sunne rise South South-east, and it went downe South South-west, but it was not full above the Earth, but passed in the Horizon along by the Earth: and the same day one of our men killed a Fox with a Hatchet, which was flayed, roasted and eaten. Before the Sunne began to decline, wee saw no Foxes, and then the Beares vied to goe from vs.

The third, the Wind blew North-west with calme weather, and the Sunne rose South and by East, and somewhat more Southerly, and went downe South and by West, and somewhat more Southerly: and then wee could see nothing but the vpper part of the Sunne above the Horizon, and yet the Land where wee were: was as high as the Mast of our ship, then wee took the height of the Sunne, it being in the eleventh degree, and fortie eight minutes of Scorpio, his Declination being fifteen degrees and twentie four minutes, on the South-side of the Equinoctiall Line.

The fourth, it was calme weather, but then wee saw the Sunne no more, for it was no longer above the Horizon, then our Chirurgeon made a Bath (to bathe vs in) of a Wine-pipe, wherein wee entered one after the other, and it did vs much good: and was a great meanes of our health. The same day weeooke a White Foxe, that oftentimes came abroad, not as they vfed at other times: for that when the Beares left vs at the setting of the Sunne, and came not againe before it rose, the Foxe to the contrarie came abroad when they were gone.

The fifth, the Winde was North, and somewhat West, and then wee saw open water vpon the Sea, but our shipp lay still fast in the Ice, and when the Sunne had left vs, wee saw the Moone continually both day and night, and neuer went downe when it was in the highest degree. The fixt, the Winde was North-west, still weather, and then our men fetched a Sled full of Fire-wood, but by reason that the Sunne was not seene, it was very darke weather.

The seuenth, it was darke weather, and very still, the Winde West, at which time wee could hardly discern the Day from the Night, specially because at that time our Clocke stoll, and by that meanes wee knew not when it was day, although it was day, and our men rose not out of their Cabins all that day, but only to make water, and therefore they knew not whether the light they saw, was the light of the day or of the Moone: whereupon, they were of seuerall opinions, some saying, it was the light of the day, the others of the night: but as weeooke good regard thereunto, wee found it to bee the light of the day about twelue of the clocke at noone.

The eight, it was still weather, the Winde blowing South, and South-west. The same day our men fetched another Sled of Fire-wood, and then also weeooke a White Foxe, and saw open water in the Sea. The same day wee shared our Bread amongst vs, each man having foure pound and tenne ounces, for his allowance in eight dayes, so that then

wee were eight dayes eating a Barrell of Bread, whereas before wee ate it vp in foure or six dayes: we had no need to share our flesh and fish, for we had more store thereof, but our drink failed vs, and therefore wee were forced to share that also: but our best Beere was for the most part without any strength, so that it had no sauer at all: and besides all this, there was a great deale of it spilt. The ninth, the Wind blew North-east, and somewhat more North-east, and then wee had not much day light, but it was altogether darke. The tenth, it was calme weather, the Wind North-west, and then our men went into the ship to see how it lay, and wee saw that there was a great deale of water in it, so that the ballast was couered over with water, but that it was frozen, and so might not bee pumped out. The eleventh, it was indifferent weather, the Wind North-west. The same day we made a round thing of Cable yarne, and like to a Net, to catch Foxes withall, that wee might get them into the Houfe, and it was made like a Fox-trap.

The twelfth, the Wind blew East, with a little light: that day wee began to share our Wine, every man had two Glasses a day, but commonly our Drink was water, which we melted out of Snow, which we gathered without the Houfe. The thirteenth, it was foule weather, with great Snow, the Wind East. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a cleere Skie full of Starres, and an East-wind. The fifteenth, it was darke weather, the Wind North-east, with a vading light. The sixteenth, it was weather with a temperate Ayre, and an East-wind. The seuenteenth, it was darke weather, and a close Ayre, the Wind East. The eighteenth, it was foule weather, the wind South-east: then the Master cut vp a packe of course Clothes, and diuided it amongst our men that needed it, therewith to defend vs better from the cold. The nineteenth, it was foule weather, with an East-wind, and then the Chit with Linnen was opened, and diuided amongst the men for shift, for they had need of them, for then our only care was to find all the meanes we could to defend our bodie from the cold. The twentieth, it was faire still weather, the Wind Easterly, then wee wait for the flocks, but it was so cold, that when wee had wait and wrung them, they presently froze to fluffe, that although wee layd them by a great fire, the side that lay next the fire thawed, but the other side was hard frozen, so that wee put them into the seething water againe to thaw them, it was so exceeding cold. The one and twentieth, it was indifferent weather with a North-east wind, then we agreed that every man should take his turne to cleane Wood, thereby to ease our Cooke, that had more then worke enough to doe twice a day to dreffe meate, and to melt Snow for our Drink, but our Master and the Pilot were exempted from that Worke.

The two and twentieth, the Wind was South-east, it was faire weather, then wee had but seuentee Chiefes, whereof one we ate amongst vs, and the rest were diuided to every man but for his portion, which they might eat when he list. The three and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, the Wind South-east, and as we perceived that the Fox vied to come often, and more then they were wont, to take them the better, we made certaine Trappes of thicke Plankes, whereon wee laid stones, and round about them placed pieces of thurs fast in the ground, that they might not digge vnder them, and so got some of the Foxes. The foure and twentieth, it was foule weather, and the Wind North-east, and then wee prepared our felues to goe into the Bath, for some of vs were not very well at ease, and so foure of vs went into it, and when we came out, our Surgeon gaue vs a Purgation, which did vs much good, and that day weooke two Foxes. The five and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West, and the six and twentieth, it was foule weather, and a great storme with a South-west Wind, and great store of Snow, whereby wee were so closed vp in the Houfe, that wee could not goe out, but were forced to ease our felues within the Houfe. The seuen and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind South-west, and then we made more Spinges to get Foxes, for it stood vs vpon to doe it, because they frued vs for meate, as if God had sent them purposely for vs, for we had not much meate, and as if God had sent them purposely for vs, ther, and the Winde blew hard out of the North, and it snowed hard, whereby wee were shut vp againe in our Houfe, the Snow lay so closed before the doores.

The nine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, and a good Ayre: the Wind North-east, and we found meanes to open our doore by shoueling away the Snow, whereby wee got one of our doores open, and going out, we found all our Traps and Spinges cleane couered over with Snow, which wee made cleane, and set them vp againe to take Foxes: and that day weeooke one, which was then frued vs not only for meate, but of the skinned wee made Caps to wear vpon our heads, wherewith to keepe them warme from the extreme cold. The thirtieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West, and six of vs went to the ship, all well provided of in the ship.

The first of December, it was foule weather with a South-west Wind, and great store of Snow, whereby wee were once againe flopt vp in the Houfe, and by that meanes there was so

Beere strength
lesseneth froles

Ship ballast
covered with
water.

Wine shared.
Drinke wast.

III washing.

Bathing and
purgings.

Store of Snow.

Foxe skin-caps.

December.

Lye still in Cabins.

Some heated to heat them.

Cold and Smokes.

Ice cracking noise.

Ice in the Houfe.

Clock frozen.

Doore digged open.

Cold stronger then fire and Sacks.

Sea-coale fire.

Swounding & dizziness by the Cole-vapour and closeness.

Benefit of cold

Shoes on feet frozen within. They were no shoes.

Clothes on their backs frozen.

great a smooke in the Houfe, that we could hardly make fire, and so were forced to lye all day in our Cabins, but the Cooke was forced to make fire to dreffe our meate. The second, it was still foule weather, whereby we were forced to keepe still in the Houfe, and yet we could hardly fynd by the fire, because of the smooke, and therefore stayed still in our Cabins, and then we heated vs, which we put in our Cabins to warme our feet, for that both the cold and the smooke were vnſupportable.

The third, we had the like weather, at which time as we lay in our Cabins, we might heare the Ice cracke in the Sea, and yet it was at the least halfe a mile from vs, which made a huge noise, and we were of opinion, that as then the great Hills of Ice which we had ſene in the Sea, in Summer time, brake one from the other, and for that during those two or three dayes, because of the extreme smooke, we made not so much fire as we commonly vſed to doe, it froze so fore within the Houfe, that the Walls and the Rooſe thereof were frozen two fingers thick with Ice, and also in our Cabins where we lay all those three dayes, while we could not goe out: by reason of the foule weather, we ſet vp the Glaſſe of twelve houres, and when it was runne out, we ſet it vp againe, still watching it left we should misse our time. For the cold was so great, that our Clocke was frozen, and might not goe, although we hung more weight on it then before.

The fourth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind North-east, and then we began euery man by turne to digge open our doores that were cloſed vp with Snow, for we ſaw that it would be often to doe, and therefore we agreed to worke by turnes, no man excepted but the Maſter and the Pilot. The fifth, it was faire weather with an East-wind, and then we made our Springes cleane againe to take Foxes. The fixt, it was foule weather againe, with an Easterly Wind, and extreme cold, almost not to be endured, whereupon we lookt pitifully one vpon the other, being in great feare, that if the extremitie of the cold grew to bee more and more, we should all dye there with cold, for that what fire ſouer we made, it would not warme vs, yea, and our Sacks which is ſo hot, was frozen very hard, so that when we were euery man to laſe his part, we were forced to melt it in the fire, which we ſhared euery ſecond day about halfe a pint for a man, wherewith we were forced to ſuſtayne our ſelues, and at other times we drinke water, which agreed not well with the cold, and we needed not to coole it with Snow or Ice, but we were forced to melt it out of the Snow.

The ſeuenth, it was ſtill foule weather, and we had a great ſtorme with a North-east Wind, which brought an extreme cold with it, at which time we knew not what to doe, and while we face conſulting together, what were beſt for vs to doe, one of our companions gaue vs counsel to burne ſome of the Sea-coales that we had brought out of the ſhip, which would caſt a great heate and continue long, and ſo at Evening we made a great fire thereof, which caſt a great heat: at which time we were very careful to keepe it in: for that the heate being ſo great a comfort vnto vs, we tooke care how to make it continue long: whereupon we agreed to ſtop vp all the doores and the Chimney, thereby to keepe in the heate, and ſo went into our Cabins to ſleepe, well comforted with the heate, and ſo lay a great while talking together; but at laſt we were taken with a great ſwounding and dazeling in our heads, yet ſome more then other ſome, which we firſt perceived by a ſicke man, and therefore the leſſe able to beare it, and found our ſelves to be very ill at eaſe, ſo that ſome of vs that were froſt, ſtart out of their Cabins, and firſt opened the Chimney, and then the doores, but he that opened the doore fell downe in a ſwound vpon the Snow, which I hearing, as lying in my Cabin next to the doore, ſtart vp, and caſting Vinegar in his face, recovered him againe, and ſo he roſe vp: and when the doores were open, we all recovered our healths againe, by reason of the cold Ayre, and ſo the cold which before had bene ſo great an Enemy vnto vs, was then the only reliefe that we had, otherwiſe without doubt, we had dyed in a ſudden ſwound, after that the Maſter, when we were come to our ſelues againe, gaue euery one of vs a little Wine to comfort our hearts.

The eight, it was foule weather, the wind Northerly, very ſharpe and cold, but we durſt lay no more coles on, as we did the day before, for that our miſfortune had taught vs, that to ſumme one danger we ſhould not runne into another. The ninth, it was faire cleere weather, the ſkie full of ſtarrs, then we let our doore wide open, which before was ſtill cloſed vp with Snow, and made our Springes ready to take Foxes. The tenth, it was ſtill faire Star-light weather, the wind North-east: then we tooke two Foxes, which were good meate for vs, for as then our victuals began to bee ſcant, and the cold hill increaſed, whereunto their Skins ſerued vs for a good defence. The eleuenth, it was faire weather, and a cleere ayre but very cold, which hee that felt not would not beleeue, for our Shoes froze as hard as hornes vpon our feete, and within they were white frozen, ſo that we could not wear our ſhoes, but were forced to make great Pattentes, the upper part being Sheep-skins, which we put on our three or fourt paires of ſockes, and ſo went in them to keepe our feet warme.

The twelfth, it was faire cleere weather with a North-west wind, but extreme cold, ſo that our Houſe walls and Cabins were frozen a finger thicke; yea, and the Clothes vpon our backs were white over with Froſt, and although ſome of vs were of opinion, that we ſhould lye

lay more coles vpon the fire to warme vs, and that we ſhould let the chimney ſtand open, yet we durſt not doe it, fearing the like danger we had eſcaped. The thirteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with an Eaſt wind: then we tooke another Foxe, and tooke great paines about preparing and dreſſing of our Springes, with no ſmall trouble, for that it was ſtayed too long without the doores, there aroſe bliſſes vpon our Faces and our Eares. The fourteenth, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the ſkie full of ſtarrs, then we tooke the height of the right ſhoulder of the *Kent*, when it was South South-west, and ſomewhat more Weſterly (and then it was at the height in our Compaſſe) and it was eleuated about the Horizon 20 degrees and 28 minutes, his Declination being 6 degrees and 18 minutes, on the North-side of the line, which Declination being taken out of the height aforeſayd, there reſted 14 degrees, which being taken out of 90 degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76 degrees.

The fifteenth, it was ſtill faire weather, the wind Eaſt: that day we tooke two Foxes, and ſaw the Moone riſe Eaſt South-east, when it was fixe and twentie dayes old, in the ſigne of *Scorpio*. The ſixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, the wind Eaſt: at that time we had no more Wood in the houſe, but had burnt it all: but round about our houſe there lay ſome couered over with Snow, which with great paine and labour we were forced to digge out, and ſo ſhouell away the Snow, and ſo brought it into the houſe, which we did by turnes, two and two together; wherein we were forced to vſe great ſpeed, for we could not long endure without the Houſe, because of the extreme cold, although we wore the Foxes ſkinnes about our heads, and double apparell vpon our backs.

The ſeuenth, the wind ſtill held North-east, with faire weather and ſo great Froſts, that we were of opinion, that if there ſtood a Barrell full of water without the doore, it would in one night freeze from the top to the bottome. The eighteenth, the wind ſtill held North-east, with faire weather: then ſeuen of vs went out vnto the Ship to ſee how it lay, and being vnder the decke, thinking to finde a Foxe there, we ſought all the holes, but we found none; but when we entred into the Cabin and had ſtricken fire to ſee in what caſe the ſhip was; and whether the water roſe higher in it, there we found a Foxe, which we took and carried it home, and ate it, and then we found that in eigheteen dayes abſence (for it was ſo long ſince we had bene there) the water was riſen about a finger high, but yet it was all Ice, for it froze as fiſt as it came in, and the veſſels which we had brought with vs full of fiſh water out of *Holland*, were frozen to the ground.

The nineteent, it was faire weather, the wind being South: then we put each other in good comfort, that the Sunne was then almoſt halfe ouer, and ready to come to vs againe, which we longed for, it being a weary time for vs to bee without the Sunne, and to want the greateſt comfort that God ſendeth vnto man here vpon the earth, and that which reioyces euery living thing. The twentieth, before noone it was faire cleere weather, and then we had taken x Foxe, but towards Evening, there roſe ſuch a ſtorme in the South-west, with ſo great a ſnow, that all the houſe was incloſed therewith. The one and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, with a North-east wind, then we made our doore cleane againe, and made a way to goe out, and clenſed our Traps for the Foxes, which did vs great pleaſure when we took them; for they feeded as daintie as Veniſon vnto vs. The two and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great ſtore of ſnow, the wind South-west, which ſtopt vp our doore againe, and we were forced to digge it open againe, which was almoſt euery day to doe. The three and twentieth, it was foule weather, the wind South-west, with great ſtore of ſnow, but we were in good comfort: that which is the faireſt ſigne that the Sunne paſſeth on the South-side of the line, and from thence it turneth Northward againe. The foure and twentieth, being Chriſtmaſſe Euen, it was faire weather, then we opened our doore againe, and ſaw much open water in the Sea: for we had heard the Ice cracke and drue: although it was not day, yet we could ſee ſo faire. Towards 50 Evening it blew hard out of the North-east, with great ſtore of Snow, ſo that all the paſſage day, it was ſtill faire weather, with ſtill ſnow againe. The five and twentieth, being Chriſtmaſſe, we heard the Foxes runne over our Houſe, wherewith ſome of our men ſayd, it was an ill ſigne; and while we ſate diſputing why it ſhould bee an ill ſigne, ſome of our men made anſwer, that it was bene a very good ſigne for vs.

The fixe and twentieth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, and it was ſo cold that we could not warme vs, although we were vſed all the meanes we could with great fires, good ſtore of clothes, and with hot ſtones and bliſſes, layd vpon our feete and vpon our bodies, as we lay in our Cabins; but notwithstanding all this, in the morning our Cabins were frozen, which made vs behold one the other with bad countenance, but yet we comforted our ſelues againe as to vs againe, and we found it to bee true: for that the *Dayes beginning to lengthen, the Cold began to ſtrengthen*, but hope put vs in good comfort, and cald our paine. The ſeuen and twentieth, it

Cold bliſſes:

Extremely terrible freezing.

Sunnes comfort.

Houſe incloſed with ſnow.

Sun in Tropical Capricornes, Decem. Stile none.

Cold Chriſtmaſſe.

Ill ſigne in a dead.

Cold inuincible.

was still foule weather, with a North-west wind, so that as then we had not bene out in three dayes together, nor durst not thrust our heads out of doores, and within the house it was so extreme cold, that as we late before a great Fire, and seemed to burne on the fore-side, we froze behind at our backs, and were all white as the Countrey-men vñe to bee, when they come in at the gates of the Towne in *Holland* with their sleds, and haue gone all night.

The eight and twentieth, it was still foule weather with a West wind, but about Euenning it began to cleere vp, at which time one of our men made a hole open at one of our doores, and went out to see what newes abroad, but found it so hard weather that hee stayed not long, and told vs that it had snowed so much, that the Snow lay higher then our house, and that if he had stayed longer, his eares would undoubtedly haue bene frozen off. The nine and twentieth, it was calm weather, and a pleasant ayre, the wind being Southward: that day, hee, whose turne it was, opened the doore, and digged a hole through the Snow, where we went out of the house upon steps, as if it had bene out of a Cellar, at least seven or eight steps high, each steps foote from the other, and then we made cleane our Springes for the Foxes, whereof for certayne dayes we had not taken any: and as we made them cleane, one of our men found a dead Foxe in one of them, that was frozen as hard as a stone, which he brought into the house, and thawed it before the fire, and after slaying it, some of our men ate it. The thirtieth, it was foule weather againe, with a storme out of the West, and great store of Snow, so that all the labour and paine that we had taken the day before to make steps to goe out of our house, and to cleane our Springes, was all in vaine, for it was all covered over with Snow againe, higher then it was before. The one and 30

thirtieth, it was still foule weather, with a storme out of the North-west, whereby we were so fast shut vp into the house, as if we had bene prisoners, and it was so extreme cold, that the feele the heate, so that we had worke enough to doe to patch our hole: and which is more, if we had not sooner smelt, then felt them, we should haue burnt them ere we had knowne it.

After that with great cold, danger, and distaste, we had brought this yere vnto an end, we entered into the yere of our Lord God 1597, the beginning whereof, was in the same manner as the end of *Anno* 1596. had bene, for the weather continued as cold, foule, and Snowie, as it was before, so that vpon the first of January we were inclosed in the House, the measure then being West: at the same time we agreed to shure our Wine every man 30

small measure full, and that but once in two dayes: and as we were in great care and feare that it would bee long before we should get out from thence, and we haueing but small hope therein) some of vs spared to drinke wine as long as we could, that if we should stay long there, we might drinke it at our need. The second, it blew hard with a West wind, and a great storme with both Snow and Frost, so that in foure or five dayes, we durst not put our heads out of the doores, and as then by reason of the great cold, we had almost burnt all our Wood; notwithstanding, we durst not goe out to fetch more wood, because it froze so hard, and there was no being without the doore, but seeking about we found some peeces of wood that lay ouer the doore, which we close, and withall close the blockes whereon we vñe to beate our Stock-sill, and so holpe our felues so well as we could. The third, it was allone weather, and we had little wood to burne. The 40

fourth, it was still foule stormie weather, with much Snow and great cold, the winde South-west, and we were forced to keepe in the house: and to know where the wind blew, we thrust a halfe-pike out at the Chimney with a little cloth or feather vpon it, but as soone as wee thrust it out, it was presently frozen as hard as a peece of wood, and could not goe about nor stirre with the wind.

The fifth, it was somewhat still and calme weather: then wee digged our doore open againe, that we might goe out, and carrie out all the filth that had bene made, during the time of our being shut in the house; and made euery thing handsome, and fetched in Wood which we clef, and it was all our dayes worke to further our felues as much as we could, fearing least we should be shut vp againe: and as there were three doores in our portall, and for that our house lay covered ouer in Snow, wee tooke the middle doore thereof away, and digged a great hole in the snow, that lay without the house, like to a side of a vault, wherein we might goe to cafe our felues, and cast other filth into it: and when we had taken paines all day, we remembered our felues that it was Twelfth Euen, and then we prayed our Master that we might be merrie that night, and sayd, that we were content to spend some of the Wine that night which we had spared, and which was our share every second day, and whereof for certayne dayes we had not drunke, and so that night we made merrie, and drunke to the three Kings; and therewith we had two pound of Meale, whereof we made pan-cakes with Oyle, and euery man a white Biskett, which we sate in Wine: and so supping that we were in our owne Countrey, and amongst our friends, it comforted vs as well as if we had made a great banquet in our owne house: and we al- 60

so made tickets, and our Gunner was King of *Nova Zembla*, which is at least two hundred miles long, and lyeth betwene two Seas.

The six, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then we went out and cleafed our Traps to take Foxes, which were our Venison, and we digged a hole in the Snow, where our fire

wood lay, and left it cloe above like a vault: and from thence fetched out our Wood as we needed it. The seuenth, it was foule weather againe, with a North-west wind, and some Snow, and very cold, which put vs in great feare to be shut vp in the house againe. The eight, it was faire weather againe, the wind North: then we made our Springes ready to get more Venison: which wee longed for, and then wee might see and make day-light, which then began Day-light to encrease, that the Sunne as then began to come towards vs againe, which put vs in no little comfort.

The ninth, it was foule weather, with a North-west wind, but not so hard weather as it had bene before, so that we might goe out of the doore to make cleane our Springes. The tenth, it was faire weather with a North wind: then seuen of vs went to our ship well armed, which we found in the same state wee left it in, and in it wee saw many footprints of Beares, both great and small, whereby it seemed that there had bene more then one or two Beares therein; and as we went vnder hatches, we strooke fire, and lighted a Candle, and found that the water was risen a foot higher in the ship. The eleuenth, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the cold began to be somewhat lesse, so that as then we were bold to goe out of the doores, and went about a quarter of a mile to a Hill, from thence we fetched certayne stones, which we layd in the fire, therewith to warme vs in our Cabins.

The twelfth, it was cleare weather, the wind North-west: that euenning it was very cleare, and the skie full of Starres, then wee tooke the height of *Oculus Tauri*, which is a bright and well knowne Starre, and then wee tooke the height of the Horizon 29. degrees and 54. minutes, her declination being 15. degrees 54. minutes on the North side of the Line. This declination being subtracted from the height aforesaid, then there resteth 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76. degrees, and so by measuring the height of that Starre, and some others, wee guessed that the Sunne was in the like height, and that we were there vnder 76. degrees, and rather higher then lower.

The thirteenth, it was faire still weather, the wind Westlly, and then wee perceived that day-light began more and more to encrease, and we went out and cast Bullets at the bale of the Flag-staffe, which before we could not see when it turned about. The fourteenth, it was faire weather and a cleare light, the wind Westlly, and that day we tooke a Foxe. The fifteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, and kaze of vs went aboard the ship, where wee found the Bolck-vanger (which the last time that we were in the ship, wee stucke in a hole in the fore decke, to take Foxes) pulled out of the hole; and lay in the middle of the ship, and all tome in peeces by the Beares, as we perceived by their footprints.

The sixteenth, it was faire weather, the wind Northerly, and then we went now and then out of the house to stretch out our ioynts and our limbs with going and running, that we might not become lame, and about noone time we saw a certaine redness in the skie, as a shew or messenger of the Sunne that began to come towards vs. The seenteenth, it was cleare weather with a North wind, and then still more and more wee perceived that the Sunne began to come nearer vnto vs, for the day was somewhat warmer, so that when we had a good fire, there fell great peeces of Ice downe from the walls of our house, and the Ice melted in our Cabins, and the water dropped downe, which was not so before, how great foucer our fire was; but that night it was cold againe.

The eighteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-east wind, then our Wood began to confume, and so we agreed to burne some of our Sea-coles, and not to stop vp the Chimney, and then we should not need to feare any hurt, which we did, and found no distaste thereby, but we thought it better for vs to keepe the Coles, and to burne our Wood more sparingly, for that the Coles would serue vs better when we should staye home in our open Scute.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind: at that time taking of Foxes began to fayle vs, which was a signe that the Beares would come againe, as not long after we found it to be true, for as long as the Beares stay away, the Foxes came abroad, and not much before the Beares come abroad, the Foxes were but little scarce.

The two and twentieth, it was faire weather with a West wind: then we went out againe to cast the Bullet, and perceived that day-light began to appeare, whereby some of vs said, that the Sunne would soone appeare vnto vs, but *William Barrens* to the contrary said, that it was yet two weekes too soone. The three and twentieth, it was faire calme weather, with a South-west wind: then foure of vs went to the ship, and comforted each other, giuing God thanks that the hardest time of the Winter was past, being in good hope that we should live to talke of those things at home in our owne Countrey: and when we were in the ship, we found that the water rose higher and higher in it, and so each of vs taking a Biskett or two with vs, we went home againe.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind: then I, and *Jacob Hamerkerke*, and another with vs went to the Sea-side, on the South side of *Nova Zembla*, where contrary to our expectation, I first saw the edge of the Sunne, therewith wee went speedily home againe, to tell *William Barrens*, and the rest of our companions that ioyfull newes: but

Summe appeareth againe, January 24.

William

William Barents being a wife and well experienced Pilot, would not beleue it, esteeming it to be about fourteen dayes to foone for the Sunne to shine in that part of the World; but we earnestly affirmed the contrary, and said, that we had leene the Sunne.

The five and twentieth, and sixe and twentieth, it was misty, and close weather, so that we could not see any thing: then they that layed the contrary way, with vs, thought that they had won: but vpon the feuen and twentieth day it was cleare weather, and then wee saw the Sunne in his full roundnesse about the Horizon, whereby it manifestly appeared that we had leene it vpon the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary. And as we were of diuers opinions touching the same, and that wee said, it was cleare contrary to the opinions of all old and new Writers; yea, and contrary to the nature and roundnesse both of Heauen and Earth; some of vs 10 held, that seeing in long time there had bene no day, that it might be that we had ourselfe ourselfe, whereof we were better assured; but concerning the thing in it selfe, seeing God is wonderful in all his workes, we will referre that to his almighty power, and leave it vnto others to dispute of; but for that no man hath thinke vs to be in doubt thereof, if wee should let this passe without discouraging vpon it, therefore we will make some declaration thereof, whereby we may assure our felues that we kepe good reckoning.

You must vnderstand, that when we first saw the Sun, it was in the first degr. and 25. min. of *Aquarius*, and it should haue staied according to our first ghesing, till it had entred into the 16. deg. and 27. min. of *Aquarius*, before he should haue the west there vnto vs, in the height of 76. deg. Which we striving and contending about it amongst our felues, could not be satisfied, but won. 20 dered thereat, and some amongst vs were of opinion, that we had mistaken our felues, which neuertheless we could not be persuaded vnto, for that every day without faile, we noted what Houe-clocks, and also had vied our Clocke continually, and when that was frozen, we noted what Houe-clocks of twelve houres long, whereupon we argued with our felues, in diuers while, to wee agreed to looke into the *Ephemerides* made by *Iohann Schale*, Printed in *Venice*, for the day of Ianuary, (when the Sun first appeared vnto vs) that at *Venice* the Clocke being one in the night time, the Moone and *Iupiter* were in conjunction, whereupon we fought to know when the same conjunction should be ouer or about the house where we then were, and at last we 30 ascertained that the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary was the same day whereon the conjunction when the Sunne was in the East: for we saw manifestly that the two Planets ascertained each other, both in the signe of *Taurus*, and that was at fixe of the clocke in the morning, at which time the Moone and *Iupiter* were found by our Compasse, to be in conjunction cure our house, there we had at right South, and the South part of the Compasse was South South-west, and the Sunne and the Moone were eight pointes different, and this was about fixe of the clocke in the morning: this place differeth from *Venice* five houres in longitude, whereby we may ghesse how 40 degrees, which is in all 75. degrees, that we were more Easterly then *Venice*, by all which it is manifestly to be seene, that we were not stayled in our account, and that also we had found our right longitude, by the two Planets ascertained, for the Towne of *Venice* lieth vnder 37. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and her declination is 46. degrees and 5. minutes, whereby it followeth that our place of *Nova Zembla*, lieth vnder 122. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and the height of the Pole 76. degrees, and so you haue the right longitude and latitude, but from the vttermost point of *Nova Zembla* to the point of Cape de Tabin, the vttermost point of *Tartaria*, where it windeth Southward, the longitude differeth 60. degrees; but you must vnderstand, that the degrees are not so great as they are vnder the Equinoctiall Line, for right vnder the Line a degree is fifteene miles, but when you leaue the Line, either Northward or Southward, then the degrees in longitude doe lessen, so that the nearer that a man is to the North or South Pole, so much the degrees are lesse: so that vnder the 75. degrees Northward, where we had but 60. degrees to faile to the said Cape de Tabin, which is, 220. miles, so the said Cape lieth in 172. degrees in longitude as it is thought: and being about it, it seemeth that we should be in the Streight of *Anian*, where we may faile bololy into the South, as the Land reacheth. Now what further instructions are to be had to know, where wee lost the Sunne vnder the said 76. degrees vpon the fourth of Nouember, and saw it againe vpon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary: I leaue that to be described, by such as make profession thereof, it sufficeth vs to haue 60 shewed, that it failed vs not to appeare at the ordinary time.

Difference of

Longitude between *Venice* and their winning place.

Note: for deg. of longitude.

Barents came with the Sun.

The five and twentieth of Ianuary, it was darke cloudy weather, the wind Westerly, so that the seeing of the Sunne the day before, was againe doubted of, and then many wagers were layd, and we still looked out to see if the Sunne appeared, the same day we saw a Beare, (which

as long as the Sunne appeared not vnto vs we saw not) coming out of the South-west towards our house; but when we shouted at her she came no nearer, but went away againe. The six. & twen tieth, it was faire cleare weather, but in the Horizon there hung a white or darke cloud, wherewith we could not see the Sunne, whereupon the rest of our companions, thought that we had mistaken our felues vpon the foure and twentieth day, and that the Sunne appeared not vnto vs, and mocked vs, but vve were resolute in our former affirmation, that vve had leene the Sunne, but not in the full roundnesse: That Evening the Sixe man that was amongst vs, was very vweake, and felt himselfe to be extreme sicke, for he had layne long time, and vve comforted him as well as vve might, and gaue him the best admonition that vve could, but hee dyed not 10 long after midnight.

The twentie leuen it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, then in the morning we digged a hole in the snow hard by the house, but it was still to extreme cold, that we could not stay long at workes, and so we digged by turnes, every man a little while, and then went to the fire, and another went and supplied his place, till at last we digged seven foot depth where wee went to burie the dead man, after that when we had read certaine Chapters, and sung some Psalmes, we all went out and buried the man, which done we went in and brake our faits, and while we were at meate, and discoursed amongst our felues, touching the great quantitie of snow that continually fell in that place, wee said that if it fell out, that our house should bee closed vp againe with snow, we would finde the meanes to climbe out at the chimney, whereupon our 20 Master went to trie if hee could climbe vp through the chimney, and so get out, and while hee was climbing one of our men went forth of the doore, to see if the Master were out or not, who standing vpon the snow, saw the Sunne, and called vs all out, wherewith we all went forth, and saw the Sun in his full roundnesse, a little about the Horizon, and then it was without all doubt, that we had seene the Sunne vpon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary, which made vs all glad, and we gaue God heartie thanks, for his grace shewed vnto vs, that that glorious light appeared vnto vs againe.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind, then we went out many times to exercise our felues, by going, running, casting of the ball, (for then we might see a good way from vs) and to refresh our ioynts, for wee had long time sitten dull, whereby many of vs 30 were very loole. The nine and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great flore of snow, the wind North-west, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow. The thirtieth, it was darke weather, with an East wind; and we made a hole through the doore, but wee shouled not the snow very farre from the portall, for that as soone as we saw what weather it was, wee had no desire to goe abroad. The one and thirtieth, it was faire calme weather, with an East wind, then we made the doore cleane, and shouled away the snow, and threw it vpon the house, and went out, and wee saw the Sunne shine cleere, which comforted vs, meane time we saw a Beare, Beare, that came towards our house, but wee went softly in, and watched for her till she came neerer, and as soone as she was hard by we shot at her, but the ran away againe.

The first of February, being Candlemasse Eue, it was boisterous weather, with a great flore, February 40 and good flore of snow, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow, and we were constrained to stay within doore, the wind then being north-west. The second it was foule weather, and as then the Sunne had not rid vs of all the foule weather, whereby wee were somewhat discomforted, for that being in good hope of better weather wee had not made so great prouision of wood as we did before. The third, it was faire weather, with an East wind, but very mystie, whereby wee could not see the Sunne, which made vs somewhat melancholy, to see so great a myst, and rather more then we had had in the Winter time, and then we digged our doore open againe, and fetched the wood that lay without about the doore into the house, which we were forced with great paine and labour to dig out of the snow. The fourth, it was foule weather, with great flore of snow, the wind being South-west, and then we were close vp againe with snow, but then we tooke not so much paine as we did before, to dig open the doore, but when we had 50 occasion to goe out we climbed out at the chimney, and ealed our felues, and went in againe the same way.

The fifth, it was full foule weather, the wind being East, with great flore of snow, whereby wee were shut vp againe into the house, and had no other way to get out but by the chimney: it the chimney and those that could not climbe out, were faine to helpe themselves within as well as they could. The sixth, it was still foule stormy weather, with flore of snow, and we still went out at the chimney, (and troubled not our felues with the doore, for some of vs made it an eale matter to climbe out at the chimney. The seuen, it was still foule weather, with much snow, and a South-west wind, and we thereby forced to keep the house, which grieved vs more then when the Sun shined not, for that hauing seene it, and felt the heate thereof, yet wee were forced not to enjoy it. The eighth, it began to be fairer weather, the wind being South-west, then wee saw the Sun rise South, South-east, and went downe South South-west, by the Compasse that we had made of Lead, and placed according to the Meridian of that place, but by our common Compasse it differed two points. The ninth, it was faire cleere weather, the wind South-west, but as then we could not

Heat of the Sunne.

see the Sunne, because it was close weather in the South, where the Sunne should goe downe. The tenth, it was faire cleere weather, so that we could not tell where the wind blew, and then we began to feele some heat of the Sun, but in the Evening it began to blow somewhat cold out of the west.

Beare skinn.

100. Pound of
fat taken out
of a Beare, vic
full for Lamps.

The eleventh, it was faire weather, the wind South, that day about noone, there came a Beare towards our house, and wee watched her with our Muskets, but shee came not so neere as we could reach her, the same night wee heard some Foxes stirring, which since the Beares began to come abroad againe we had not much feare. The twelfth, it was cleere weather and very calme, the winde South-west, then we made our Traps cleane againe, meane-time there came a great Beare towards our house, which made vs all her in, and wee leuelled at her with our Muskets, the Beare passing through her body, and went out againe at the breast, cleane through the heart, the bullet feeling the blow, leapt backwards, and ranne twentie or thirtie foot from the house, and there lay downe, wherewith wee leapt all out of the house, and found her still alive, and when the faw vs, shee reard vpon her head, as if she would gladly haue done vs some mischief, but we trusted her not, for that we had tryed their strength sufficiently before, and therefore wee shot her twice into the body againe, and therewith shee dyed. Then we ript vp her belly, and taking out her guttes, drew her home to the Houle where we layed her, andooke at least one hundred pound of fat out of her belly, which wee moulde and burned in our Lampe. This Grease did vs great good service, for by that meanes we still kept a Lampe burning all night, long, which before wee could not doe, for want of Grease, and every man had meanes to burne a Lampe in his Cabin, for such necessities as hee had to doe. The Beares skinn vv as nine foot long, and seven foot broad.

The thirteenth, it was faire cleere vvether with a hard West winde, at which time we had more light in our house by burning of Lamps, whereby we had meanes to passe the time away, by reading and other exercises, which before (when we could not distinguish Day from Night, by reason of the darknesse, and had not Lamps continually burning) vvce could not doe. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere vvether, with a hard West wind before noone, but after noone, it was still weather, then due of vs went to the Ship to see how it lay, and found the water to increase in it, but not much. The fifteenth, it was foule vvether, with a great storme out of the South-west, with great force of Snow, whereby the Houle was clofed vp againe, that Night the Foxes came to deuoure the dead body of the Beare, vvherby we were in great feare, that all the Beares thereabouts would come thither, and therefore wee agreed, as fcone as we could to get out of the house to burie the dead Beare deepe vnder the Snow.

The sixteenth of February, it was foule vvether, with great store of Snow and a South-west vvind, that day was Shroue-tuesday, then wee made our feloes somewhat merrie in our great grieve and trouble, and every one of vs dranke a draught of Wine.

The nineteenth, it vv as faire cleere vvether, vvith a South-west winde, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, vvich in long time before vvce could not doe, because the Horizon vv as not cleere; as also for that it mounted not to high, nor gaue not so much shadow, as we vv ere to haue in our *Astrolabium*, and therefore vv e made an Instrument that was halfe round, at the one end hauing 90. degrees marked thereon, vvheron we hung a thread vvith a Plumet of Lead, as the vvater Compasse haue, and therewith vv e tooke the height of the Sunne, when it vv as at the highest, and found that it vv as 3. degrees eleuated above the Horizon, his Declination 11. degrees and 16. minutes, which being added to the height aforesayd, made 14. degrees and 16. minutes, vvich subtracted from 90. degrees, ther rest 75. degrees and 44. minutes for the height of the Pole, but the aforesayd 3. degrees of height, being taken at the lowest side of the Sunne, the 16. minutes might well be added to the height of the Pole, and so it was iust 76. degrees, as we had measured it before. The twentieth, it was foule vvether, with great force of Snow, the vvind South-west, vvherby vv e vv ere there vv againe in the house.

The two and twentieth, it vv as cleere faire vvether, vvith a South-west vvind, then vv e made ready a Sled to fetch more Wood, for need compelled vs therunto; for as they say, hunger Armes, but coming to the place where we should haue the Wood, we could not come by it, by reason it lay so deepe vnder the Snow, whereby of necessity we were compelled to goe further, where vv e great labour and trouble we got some: but as vv e returned backe againe therewith, it was so fore labour vvnto vs, that we were almost out of comfort, for that by reason of the long cold and trouble that we had indured, vv e vv ere become so vv eake and feeble, that vv e had little strength, and vv e began to be in doubt, that we should not recouer our strengthes againe, and should not be able to fetch any more Wood, and so we should haue dyed with cold, but the present necessity and the hope wee had of better vvether, increased our forces, and made vs more then our strengthes afforded, and when we came neere to our house, we saw much open vvater in the Sea, vvich in long time we had not seen, which also put vs in good comfort, that things would bee better.

The

The five and twentieth, it was foule vvether againe, and much Snow, with a North vvind, whereby we were clofed vp with Snow againe, and could not get out of our Houe.

The eight and twentieth of February, it was still vvether, with a South-west vvind, then ten of vs went and fetched another Sled full of Wood, with no lesse paine and labour then wee did before, for one of our companions could not helpe vs, because that the first joynt of one of his great Toes was frozen off, and so he could doe nothing.

The first of March, it was faire still vvether, the vvind West but very cold, and we were forced to forage our Wood, because it was so great labour for vs to fetch it, so that when it was day, we exercised our felues as much as we might, with running, going, and leaping, and to them that exercised our felues as much as we might, to warme them, and towards night we made a good lay in their Cabins, wee gaue hot stones, to warme them, and towards night we made a good fire, which we were forced to endure. The second, it was cold cleere vvether, with a West vvind, the same day weooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated above the Horizon 6. degrees and 48. minutes, and his Declination was 7. degrees and 12. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrees, resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The third, it was faire vvether with a West vvind, at which time our Sicke men were somewhat better, and fare vvright in their Cabins, to doe some thing to passe the time away, but after they found that they were too ready to sleepe before their times. The fourth, it was faire vvether, with a West vvind, the same day there came a Beare to our Houe, whom we vvatcht vvith our Pieces, as wee did before, and shot at her, and hit her, but shee ranne away, at that time five of vs went to our Ship, where we found that the Beares had made worke, and had opened our Cookes cupboard, that was covered ouer vvith snow, thinking to finde some thing in it, and had drawne it out of the Ship where we found it.

The ffeuenth, it was still foule vvether and as great a vvind, so that wee were shut vp in our Houe, and that they would goe out, must climbe vp through the Chimney, which was a common thing vvith vs, and full we saw more open vvater in the Sea, and about the Land, whereby we were in doubt that the Ship in that foule vvether, and driving of the Ice, would bee loose (for as then the Ice draue) while we were shut vp in our Houe, and wee should haue no meanes to helpe it. The eight, it was still foule vvether, vvith a South-west storme, and great force of Snow, whereby vv e could see no Ice in the North-east, nor round about in the Sea, whereby vv e were of opinion, that North-east from vs there was a great Sea. The ninth, it was foule vvether, but not so foule as the day before, and lesse snow, and then vv e could see further from vv as, and perceiue that the vvater vv as open in the North-east, but not from vs towards *Tartaria*, for there vv e could still see Ice in the *Tartarian Sea*, otherwise called the Ice Sea, so that vv e vv ere of opinion, that there it was not very vvide, for vvhen it was cleere vvether, vv e thought many times that wee saw the Land and shewed it to our companions, South and South-east from our house, like a hilly Land, as land commonly sheweth it selfe, when we see it.

The eleuenth, it was cold, but faire Sun-shine vvether, the vvind North-east, then we tooke the height of the Sunne vvith our *Astrolabium*, and found it to bee eleuated above the Horizon 10. degrees and 19. minutes, his Declination was 3. degrees and 41. minutes, which being added to the height aforesayd, made 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, ther resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. Then twelve of vs went to the place where wee vvied to goe, to fetch a Sled of Wood, but still vv e had more paine and labour therewith, because we were vv eaker, and when we came home vvith it, and were very vv eare, we vvayed the Master to giue each of vs a draught of Wine, which hee did, vvhervvith we were somewhat releued and comforted, and after that were the vvillingest to labour, vvich vv as vvnsupportable for vs, if meeere extremitie had not compelled vs therunto, vvayng oftentimes one vvnto the other, that if the Wood vv ere to be bought for Money, we vvould giue all our Earnings or Wages for it.

The twelfth, it was foule vvether, the vvind North-east, then the Ice came mightily driving in, vvich the South-west vvind had bene driven out, and it was then as cold, as it so had bin before in the coldest time of Winter.

The sixteenth, it was faire vvether, the vvind North, that day wee opened our doore to goe out, but the cold rather increased then diminished, and was bitterer then before it had bene.

The sixteenth, it vv as faire cleere vvether, but extreme cold vvith a North vvind, vvich put vs to great extremitie, for that vv e had almost taken our leaues of the cold, and then it began to come againe. This continued till the one and twentieth.

The one and twentieth, it vv as faire vvether, but still vv ery cold, the vvind North, the same day the Sunne entered into *Aries* in the Equinoctiall Line, and at noone vv e tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated 14. degrees above the Horizon, but for that the Sunne vv as in the middle Lane, and of the like distance from both the Tropicks, there was no declination, neither on the South nor North side, and so the 14. degrees aforesayd being subtracted from 90. degrees, ther resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The same day, we made shoos of Felt or Rugge, vvich we drew vvpon our feete, for vv e could not goe in our shoos, by reason of the great cold, for the shoos on our feet vv ere as hard as hornes, and then vv e fetched a Sled-full

March.

Note.

Sail in *Aries*.Shoos of Felt
and Rugge.

Sled full of Wood home to our house, with sore and extreame labour, and with extremitie of cold which we indured, as if March meant to bid vs farewell, for our hope and comfort was, bee broken.

The three and twentieth, it was very foule weather, with infernall bitter cold, the wind North-east, so that we were forced to make more fire, as we had bene at other times, for then it was as cold as euer it had bene, and it froze very hard in the floore and vpon the walls of our house. The four and twentieth, it was alke cold, with great force of snow, and a North wind, before by reason of our bad vnting of them, we disliked of. The fives and twentieth, which cleare weather, and very calme, then we digd our felues out of the house again, and went out, then we fetcht another Sled of Wood, for the great cold had made vs burne vp all that we had, away very fast. The same day, fixe of vs went aboard the ship to see how it lay, and found it

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, whereby the Ice drave still in one sort; but we perceived that the Beares had kept an cull fauoured house therein.

The second of April, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and very calme, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 18. degrees and 40. minutes, his declination being 4. degrees and 40. minutes, which being subtracted from the was 76. degrees.

The fixt, it was still foule weather, with a stiffe North-west wind, that night there came a Beare to our house, and we did the best we could to shoot at her, but because it was moit weather, and the cocke foffy, our Pece could not give fire, wherewith the Beare came boldly to but our Master held the doore fast to, and being in great haste and feare, could not barre it with the piece of Wood that wee wld thereunto; but the Beare seeing that the doore was shut, went backe againe, and within two houres after shee came againe, and went round about and got to the chimney, and made such a roaring, that it was fearful to heare, and at last downe, and tore the layle that was made fast about it in many pieces, with a great and fearful noise, but for that it was night, we made no resistance against her, because wee could not see her, at last she went away and left vs.

The fourteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, then we saw greater hills of Ice round about the ship, then euer we had bene before, which was a fearful thing to behold, and much to be wondered at, that the ship was not smitten in pieces. The fifteenth, it was faire, calme weather with a North wind, then feuen of vs went aboard the ship, to see in what ale it was, and found it to be all in one sort, and as wee came backe againe, there came a great Beare toward vs, against whom we began to make defence, but the perceiving that, made away from vs, and we went to the place from whence shee came to see her Den, where we found a great hole made in the Ice, about a mans length in depth, the entrie thereof being very narrow, and with 40 in wide, there we thrust in our Pikes to feel if there was any thing within it, but perceiving it that we went along by the Sea-side, and there we saw, that in the end of March, and the beginning of April, the Ice was in such wonderful manner risen and piled vpon one vpon the other, that it was wonderful, in such manner as if there had bene whole Townes made of Ice, with Townes and Bulwarkes round about them.

The sixteenth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, whereby the Ice began somewhat to breake. The seuenteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, and then feuen of vs went to the ship, and there we saw open water in the Sea, and then we went ouer the Ice-hills as well as we could, to the water, for in fixe or seuen moneths we had not gone so neere vnto it, and when we got to the water, there we saw a little bird swimming therein, but as soone as it espied vs, it dined vnder the water, which we tooke for a signe, that there was more open water in the Sea then there had bene before, and that the time approached that the water would open.

The eighteenth of April, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was eleuated about the Horizon 25. degrees and 10. minutes, his declination 11. degrees and 12. minutes, which being taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 13. degrees and 58. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was found to be 75. degrees 58. minutes; then eleuen of vs went with a Sled to fetch more Wood, and brought it to the house, in the night there came another Beare vpon our house, which 40 we hearing, went all out with our Armes, but the Beare ran away.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a North wind, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne againe, and found it to be eleuated 28. degrees and 8. minutes, his declination 14. degrees and 8. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height

height of the Pole. The nine and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a South-west wind, then we played at Colie, both to the ship, and from thence againe homeward, to exercise our felues. The thirtieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then in the night wee could see the Sunne in the North (when it was in the highest) iust about the Horizon, so that from that time wee saw the Sunne both night and day.

p. III.

- 10 Their preparation to goe from thence: they depart in a Boat and Scute both open, and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the way.

The first of May, it was faire weather with a West wind, then wee sod our last flesh, which for a long time we had spared, and it was still very good, and the last morsell tasted as well as the first, and we found no fault therein, but only that it would last no longer. The second, it was foule weather, with a storme out of the South-west, whereby the Sea was almost cleare of Ice, and then wee beganne to speake about getting from thence, for we had kept house long enough there. The third, it was still foule weather, with a South-west wind, whereby the Ice began wholly to driue away, but it lay fast about the ship, and when our best meate, as flesh, and other things beganne to faile vs, which was our greatest sustenance, and that it behoued vs to be somewhat strong, to sustaine the labour that we were to vndergoe, when we went from thence, the Master shared the rest of the Bacon amongst vs, which was a small Barrell with salt Bacon in pickle, whereof euerie one of vs had two ounces a day, which continued for the space of three weekes, and then it was eaten vp.

The fourth, it was indifferent faire weather, the wind South-west, that day fise of vs went to the ship, and found it lying still as fast in the Ice as it did before, for about the middle of March it was but fienty fise paces from the open water, and then it was fise hundred paces from the water, and enclosed round about with high hills of Ice, which put vs in no small feare, how we should bring our Scute and our Boat through or ouer that way into the water, when we went to leaue that place. That night there came a Beare to our house, but as soone as shee heard vs make a noyse, shee ranne away againe, one of our men that climbed vp in the Chimney, saw when shee ranne away, so that it seemed that as then they were afraid of vs, and durst not bee so bold to set vpon vs, as they were at the first. The fift, it was faire weather, with some snow, the wind East, that Euening, and at night wee saw the Sunne when it was at the lowest, a good way about the Earth. The fixt, it was faire cleare weather, with a great South-west wind, whereby we saw the Sea open both in the East and in the West, which made our men exceeding glad, longing fore to be gone from thence. The seuenth, it was foule weather, and snow hard, with a North wind, whereby we were closed vp againe in our house.

The tenth, it was faire weather with a North-west wind, that night the Sunne by our common Compasse being North North-east, and at the lowest, wee tooke the height thereof, and it was eleuated 3. degrees and 45. minutes, his declination was 17. degrees and 45. minutes, from whence taking the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole.

The fourteenth, wee fetcht our last Sled with fire-wood, and still ware our shoes made of Rugee on our feet.

The fise and twentieth, it was faire weather, with an East wind, then at noone time wee tooke the height of the Sunne, that was eleuated about the Horizon 34. degrees and 46. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 46. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The fixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, whereby the Ice came in againe. The feuen and twentieth, it was foule weather, with a great North-east wind, which drave the Ice mightily in againe, wherupon the Master, at the motion of the companie, willed vs to make preparation to be gone.

The nine and twentieth in the morning, it was reasonable faire weather, with a West wind, then ten of vs went vnto the Scute to brug it to the house to dresse it, and make it ready to sayle, but wee found it deepe hidden vnder the snow, and were inayn with great payne and labour to digge it out, but when wee had gotten it out of the snow, and thought to draw it to the house, wee could not doe it; because wee were too weake, wherewith wee became wholly out of heart, doubting that wee should not bee able to goe forward with our labour, but the Master encouraging vs, bade vs strive to doe more then we were able; laying, that both our liues and our well-fare consisted therein: and that if wee could not get the Scute from thence, and make it ready, then hee said wee must dwell there as Burgers of *Noma Zembla*, and make our Graues in that place: but there wanted no good-will in vs but only strength,

Burgers of *Noma Zembla*.

which made vs for that time to leave off worke and let the Scute lie still, which was no small griefe vnto vs, and trouble to thinke what we were best for vs to doe; but after noone being thus comfortlesse come home, wee tooke hearts againe, and determined to turne the Boat that lay by the house with her keele upwards, and to amend it, that it might bee the fitter to carrie vs ouer the Sea, for wee made full account that we had a long troublelome Voyage in hand, wherein we might haue many crosses, and wherein we should not bee sufficiently provided for all things necessarie, although wee tooke neuer so much care, and while wee were busie about our worke, there came a great Beare vnto vs, wherewith we went into our house, and stood to watch her in our three doores, with Haquebusses, and one flood in the Chimney with a Muskett, this Beare came loddier vnto vs then euer any had done before, for shee came to the neather step that went to one of our doores, and the man that stood in the doore saw her not, because hee looked towards the other doore, and they that stood within saw her, and in great feare called to him, wherewith he turned about, and although he was in a maze, he shot at her, and the Bullet past cleane through her body, wherupon shee ran away. Yet it was a fearful thing to see, for the Beare was almost vpon him before hee saw her, so that if the Peece had fayled to giue fire (as oftentimes they doe) it had cost him his life, and it may bee, that the Beare would haue gotten into the house: the Beare being gone somewhat from the house lay downe, wherewith we went all armed and killed her our right, and when wee had ript open her bellie: we found a piece of a Bucke therein, with haire, skinne and all, which had not long before shee had torne and deuoured.

The one and thirtieth of May, it was faire weather, but somewhat colder then before, the wind being South-west, whereby the Ice draue away, and we wrought hard about our Boat, but when wee were in the chieftest part of worke, there came another Beare, as if they had smelt that wee would be gone, and that therefore they desired to taste a piece of some of vs, for that was the third day, one after the other, that they let so fiercely vpon vs, so that wee were forced to leaue our worke, and goe into the house, and three followed vs, but wee stood with our Peeces to watch her, and shot three Peeces at her, two from our doores, and one out of the Chimney, which all three hit her: but her death did vs more hurt then her life, for after we ript her belly, we dreft her Linner and eate it, which in the taste liked vs well, but it made vs sick, specially three that were exceeding sicke, and wee verily thought that wee should haue lost them, for all so their skins came off, from the foot to the head, but yet they recovered againe.

The third of Iune, in the morning it was faire cleare weather the wind West, and then wee were somewhat better, and tooke great paines with the Boat, that at last we got it ready, after we had wrought fixe dayes vpon it: about euening the Boate began to blow hard, and therewith the water was very open, which put vs in good comfort that the deliuerance would soone follow, and that we should once get out of that desolate and fearefull place.

The fourth, it was faire cleare weather, and indifferent warme, and about the South-east Sunne, eleven of vs went to our Scute where it then lay, and drew it to the ship, at which time the labour seemed lighter vnto vs then it did before, when weooke it in hand and were forced to leaue it off againe. The reason thereof was, the opinion that wee had that the snow as then lay harder vpon the ground, and so vs became fronger; and it may be that our courages were better, to see that the time gaue vs open water, and that our hope was that wee should get from thence; and so three of our men stayed by the Scute to build her to our minds: and for that it was a Herring Scute, which are made narrow behind, therefore they stayed it off behind, and made it a broad steame: and better to brooke the Seas, they built it also somewhat higher, and dreft it vp as well as they could, the rest of our men were busie in the house to make all other things ready for our Voyage, and that day drew two Sleds with victuals and other goods vnto the ship, that lay about halfe way betweene the house and the open water, that after they might haue so much the shorter way, to carrie the goods vnto the water side, when wee should goe away: at which time all the labour and paines that wee tooke seemed vs light and easie vnto vs, because of the hope that wee had to get out of that wilde Desart, irksome, fearefull, and cold Countrey.

The fift, it was foule weather, with great Store of haile and snow, the wind West, which made an open water, but as then we could doe nothing without the house, but within we made all things ready, as Sayles, Outers, Masts, Sprit, Rother, Sward, and all other necessarie things. The sixt, in the morning it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then we went with our Carpenters to the ship, to build vp our Scute, and carried two sleds full of goods into the ship, both victuals and Merchandise, with other things, which we meant to take with vs; after that there rose very foule weather in the South-west, with snow, haile, and raine, and which we in long time had not had, whereby the Carpenters were forced to leaue their worke, and goe home to the house with vs, whereby also we could not be drie, because wee had taken of the Deales, therewith to amend our Boat and our Scute, there lay but a layle ouer it, which would not hold ouer the water, and the way that lay full of snow began to be soft, so that wee left off our shoes made of Rugge and Felt, and put on our Leather shoes.

The eight, it was faire weather, and wee drew the wares to the ship, which wee had packed and made ready, and the Carpenters made ready the Scute, so that the same euening it was almost done, the same day all our men went to draw our Boat to the ship, and made ropes to draw withall, such as wee vie to draw with in Scutes, which wee caft ouer our shoulders, and held fast with all our hands, and so drew both with our hands and our shoulders, which gaue vs more force, and specially the desire and great pleasure wee tooke to worke at that time, made vs stronger.

The tenth, wee carried foure Sleds of goods into the ship, the wind then being variable, and at euening it was Northerly, and wee were busie in the house to make all things ready, the Wine that was left we put into little vessels, that so wee might diuide it into both our vessels, and that as wee were enclosed by the Ice, (which wee well knew would happen vnto vs) wee might easilier cast the goods vpon the Ice, both out and into the Scutes, as time and chance seru'd vs. The eleuenth, it was foule weather, and it blew hard North North-west, so that all that day we could doe nothing, and we were in great feare lest the storme would carrie the Ice and the ship both away together, (which might well haue come to passe) then wee should haue bene in greater miserie then euer wee were, for that our goods both victuals and others, were then all in the ship, but God provided so well for vs, that it fell out so unfortunately. The twelfth, it was indifferent faire weather, then we went with Hatchets, Halberds, Shouels, and other instruments, to make the way more plaine, where we should draw the Scute and the Boat to the water side, along the way that lay full of knolls and hills of Ice, where wee wrought fore with our Hatchets and other instruments, and while wee were in the chieftest of our worke, there came a great leane Beare out of the Sea vpon the Ice towards vs, which we iudged to come out of *Tartaria*: for we had sene of them twenty or thirty miles within the Sea, and for that wee had no Muskets, but only one, which our Surgeon carried, I ranne in great haste towards the ship to fetch one or two, which the Beare perceiving ranne after mee, and was very likely to haue ouer taken me, but our companie seeing that, left their worke and ranne after her, which made the Beare turne towards them, and left me, but when hee ran towards them, hee was shot into the body by the Surgeon, and ranne away; but because the Ice was so vneuen and hilly, hee could not goe farre, but being by vs ouertaken, we killed her our right, and smote her teeth out.

The thirteenth, it was yet lying.

The fourteenth, it was faire weather, then the Master and the Carpenters went to the ship, and there made the Scute and the Boat ready, so that there rested nothing as then, but only to bring it downe to the water side, the Master and those that were with him, seeing that it was open water, and a good West wind, came backe to the house againe, and there hee spake vnto *William Barrens* (that had bene long sicke) and shewed him, that he thought it good, (seeing it was a fit time) to goe from thence, and so willed the companie to draw the Boat and the Scute downe to the water side, and in the name of God to beginne our Voyage, to sayle from *Noua Zembla*: then *William Barrens* wrote a Letter, which he put in a Muskets charge, and hanged it vp in the Chimney, shewing how he came out of *Holland*, to sayle to the Kingdom of *China*, and what had happened vnto vs being there on Land, with all our crosses, that if any man chanced to come thither, they might know what had happened vnto vs, and how we had bene forced in our extremitie to make that house, and had dwelt ten moneths therein, and for that wee were put to Sea in two small open Boats, and to undertake a dangerous and aduenturous Voyage in hand, the Master wrote two Letters, which most of vs subscribed vnto, signifying how wee freed from the Ice, and that we should sayle away with it againe, and how it fell out to the contraries beginning to faile vs, we were forced for the sauing of our owne liues, to leaue the ship, and to sayle away in our open Boats, and so to commit our selues into the hands of God, Which done, hee put into each of our Scutes a Letter, that if wee chanced to lose one another, or that by stormes or any other misaduenture we happened to be cast away, that then by the Scute that escaped, men might know how wee left each other, and so hauing finished all things as we determined, wee drew the Boat to the water side, and left a man in it, and went and fetched the Scute, and after that cleane Sleds with goods, as Victuals, with some Wine that yet remained, and the Merchants goods, which we preferred as well as we could, viz. fixe packes with fine wollen Cloth, a Chest of Linnen, two packes with Veluet, two small Cheits with Money, two Ditch of Bacon, two Runlets of Oyle, fixe small Runlets of Bread, a Barrell of Cheese, with other packes belonging to the Saylers, so that when they lay all together vpon a heape, a man would haue iudged that they would not haue gone into the Scutes, which being all put into them, we went to the house, and first drew *William Barrens* vpon a Sled to the place where our Scutes lay, and after that wee fetcht *Claes Adrian*, both of them hauing bene long sicke, and so we entred into the Scutes, and diuided our sleds into each of them alike, and put into either of them a sicke man, then the Master cauled both the Scutes to lie close one by the other,

had not presently taken it in againe, we had funke in the Sea, or else our Boate would haue been filled with water, for the water began to leape ouer-board, and wee were a good way in the Sea, at which time the waues went so hollow, that it was most fearfulfull, and wee thereby saw nothing but death before our eyes, and euery twinkling of an eye looked when wee should sinke. But God that had deliuered vs out of so many dangers of Death, holpe vs once againe, and contrary to our expectations, lent vs a North-west wind, and so with great danger we got to the fast Ice againe, when we were deliuered out of that danger, and knew not where our other Scute was, wee layd one mile along by the fast Ice, but found it not, whereby we were wholly out of heart, and in great feare that they were drowned, at which time it was mytie weather, and so laying along, and hearing no newes of our other Scute, we shot off a Musket, which they hearing shot off another, but yet we could not see each other, meane time approaching neerer to each other, and the weather waxing somewhat clearer, as wee and they shot once againe, we saw the smoke of their Piece, and at last we met together againe, and saw them lye fast, betweene drining and fast Ice, and when we got neere vnto them, we went over them lye fast, betweene to vnlade the goods out of their Scute, and drew it ouer the Ice, and with much paine and trouble brought it into the open water againe, and while they were fast in the Ice, we found some Wood vpon the Land by the Sea side, and when we lay by each other, we fed some Bread and Water together, and eat it vp warme, which did vs much good.

The eight and twentieth, when the Sunne was in the East, wee layd all our goods vpon the Ice, and then drew the Scutes vpon the Ice also, because we were so hardly prest on all sides, with the Ice, and the wind came out of the Sea vpon the Land, and therefore wee were in feare to be wholly inclosed with the Ice, and should not be able to get out thereof againe, and being vpon the Ice, we layd sayles ouer our Scutes, and lay downe to rest, appointing one of our men to keep watch, and when the Sunne was North, there came three Beares towards our Scutes, where-with hee that kept the Watch cryed, *three Beares, three Beares*, at which noyse wee leape out of our Boates with our Muskets, that were laden with hayle-bolt to shooote at Birds, and had no time to discharge them, and therefore shot at them therewith, and although that kinde of shot could not hurt them much, yet they ranne away, and in the meane time they gaue vs leaden to lade our Muskets with bullets, and by that meanes wee shot one of the three dead, which the other two perceiving ranne away, but within two houres after they came againe, but when they were almost at vs and heard vs make a noyse, they ranne away, at which time the winds was West, and West by North, which made the Ice drine with great force into the East.

The nine and twentieth of Iune, the Sunne being South South-west, the two Beares came againe to the place where the dead Beare lay, where one of them tooke the dead Beare in his mouth, and went a great way with it ouer the rugged Ice, and then began to eat it, which we perceiving shot a Musket at her, but she hearing the noyse thereof ranne away, and let the dead Beare lye, then foure of vs went thither, and saw that in so short time she had eaten almost the halfe of her, we tooke the dead Beare and layd it vpon a high heape of Ice, that we might see it out of our Scute, that if the Beare came againe we might shoot at her, at which time we tryed the great strength of the Beare, that carryed the dead Beare as lightly in her mouth, as if it had bene nothing, whereas wee foure had enough to doe to carry away the halfe dead Beare betweene vs.

The first of Iuly, it was indifferent faire weather, with a West North-west wind, and in the Morning the Sunne being East, there came a Beare from the drining Ice towards vs, and swam ouer the water to the fast Ice whereon we lay, but when he heard vs, he came no neerer but ran away, and when the Sunne was South-east, the Ice came so fast in towards vs, that all the Ice whereon we lay with our Scutes and our goods, brake and ran one peece vpon another, whereby we were in no small feare, for at that time most of our goods fell into the water, but wee with great diligence drew our Scutes further vpon the Ice towards the Land, where vve thought to be better defended from the drining of the Ice, and as we went to fetch our goods, we fell into the greatest trouble that euer we had before, for that we endured so great danger in the sailing thereof, that as we layd load vpon one peece thereof, the rest funke downe with the Ice, and many times the Ice brake vnder our owne feete, vvhetherby we were wholly discomforted, and in a manner cleane out of all hope, expecting no issue thereof, in such sort that our trouble at that time fircumounted all our former cares and impeachments, and vvhien wee thought to draw vp our Boates vpon the Ice, the Ice brake vnder vs, and we were carryed away vvhith the Scute, and all by the drining Ice, and when we thought to faue the goods, the Ice brake vnder our feet, and with that the Scute brake in many places, especially that which wee had mended, as the Mast, the mast plankie, and almost all the Scute, wherein one of our men that vvas sicke, and a Chiefe of money lay, which we feared greater of our liues got out from it, for as we were doing it, the Ice that was vnder our feet drave from vs, and lidd vpon other Ice, vvhetherby we were in danger to burst both our armes and our legges, at which time, thinking that wee had bene cleane quit of our Scute, vve beheld each other in pittifull manner, knowing not vvhayt we should doe, our liues depending thereon, but God made so good prouision for vs, that the peece of Ice drave from

each other, wherewith we ranne in great haste vnto the Scute, and drew it to vs againe in such case as it was, and laid it vpon the fast Ice by the Boate, where it was in more securitie, which put vs into an exceeding great and dangerous labour, from the time that the Sunne was South-east, vntill it was West South-west, and in all that time we rested not, which made vs extreme wearie, and wholly out of comfort, for that it troubled vs before, and it was much more fearful vnto vs, then at that time when *William Barren* dyed, for there we were almost drowned, and that day we lost (which was funke in the Sea) two Barrels of Rinde, a Chift with Linen-Cloth, a Dry Rat with the Sailors Clothes, our Astronomical Ring, a packe of Scarlet Cloth, a Rundler of Oyle, and some Cheetes, and a Rundler of Wine, which bouged with the Ice so that there was not any thing thereof saved.

The fourth, it was so faire cleere weather, that from the time we were first in *Nova Zembla*, we had not the like. The fifth, it was faire weather, the Wind West, South-west, the same day dyed *Iohn Brasen* of *Harlem*.

The sixth, it was faire weather with some Raine, the Winds West, South-west, and at Evening VVest, and by North, then we went to the open water, and there killed thirteene Birds, which we tooke vpon a peece of drining Ice, and laid them vpon the fast Ice.

The ninth, in the morning, the Ice began to drine, whereby we got open water on the Land side, and then also the fast Ice whereon we lay, beganne to drine whereupon the Master and the men went to fetch the Packe and the Chift, that stood vpon the Ice; to put them into the Scute, and then drew the Scutes to the water, at least three hundred and fortie paces; which was hard for vs to doe, in regard that the labour was great, and we very weake, and when the Sunne was South South-east we set sayle with an East-wind, but when the Sunne was West, we were forced to make towards the fast Ice againe, because therabouts it was not yet gone, the Wind being South, and came right from the Land, whereby we were in good hope that it would drine away, and that we should proceed in our Voyage. The tenth, from the time that the Sunne was East North-east, till it was East, we tooke great paines and labour to get through the Ice, and at last we got through, and rowed forth, vntill we happened to fall betweene two great flakes of Ice that closed one with the other, so that we could not get through, but were forced to draw the Scutes vpon them, and to vnlade the goods, and then to draw them ouer to the open water on the other side, and then we must go fetch the goods also to the same place, being at least one hundred paces long, and when we were in open water againe, we rowed forward as well as we could, but we had not rowed long, before we fell betweene two great flakes of Ice, that came drining one against the other, but by Gods helpe, and our speedy rowing, we got from betweene them, before they closed vp, and being through we had a hard West Wind, right in our Teeth, so that of force we were constrained to make towards the fast Ice that lay by the shore.

The eleventh, in the morning as we late fast vpon the Ice, the Sunne being North-east, there came a great Beare out of the water running towards vs, but we watcht for her with three Muskets, and when she came within thirtee paces of vs, we shot all the three Muskets at her, and killed her out-right, so that she flured not a foot, and we might see the fat runne out at the holes of her skinned, that was shot in with the Muskets, I swamme vpon the water like Oyle, and so drining dead vpon the water, we went vpon a flake of Ice to her, and putting a Rope about her necke, drew her vp vpon the Ice, and smit out her Teeth, at which time we measured her bodie, and found it to be eight foot thicke, then we had a West Wind with clofe weather, but when the Sunne was South it began to cleere vp, then three of our men went to the land that lay before vs, and being there, they saw the *Crosse Island*, lying Westward from them, and went thither to see if that Summer there had bene any *Reflow* there, and went thither vpon the fast Ice, that lay betweene the two lands, and being in the land, they could not perceiue that any man had bene in it since we were there, there they got founteine Egges, but when they had them, they knew not wherein to carrie them, at last one of them put off his Breeches, and tying them fast below, they carried them betweene two of them, and the third bare the Musket: and so came to vs againe, after they had bene twelue houres out, which put vs no small feare to thinke what was become of them, they told vs that they had many times gone vp to the knees in water, vpon the Ice betweene both the lands: and it was at least fixe mile to and fro, that they had gone, which made vs wonder how they could indure it, seeing we were all so weake. With the Egges that they had brought, we were all well comforted, and fared like Lords, so that we found some reliefe in our great miserie, and then we shared our last Wine amongst vs, wherof euery one had three Glasse.

The twelfth, in the morning, when the Sunne was East, the Wind began to blow East, and East North-east, with mytie weather, and at Evening fixe of our men went into the Land, to seeke certayne stones, and found some, but none of the best sort, and coming backe againe, eyther of them brought some Wood. The thirteenth, it was a faire day, then Iuven of our men went to the firme Land to seeke for more stones, and found them, at which time the VVind was South-east. The fourteenth, it was faire weather, with a good South VVind, and then the Ice began to drine from the Land, whereby we were in good hope to haue an open water, but the

Three Beares.

One Beare carryeth another in his mouth and eat it.

Strong Beare.

Iuly.

Huge Beare.

Wind turning Westerly againe, it lay still, when the Sunne was South-west, three of our men went to the next Island that lay before vs, and there shot a *Barchemys*, which they brought to the Scutes, and gave it amongst vs, for all our goods were common.

The sixteenth, there came a Bear from the firme Land, that came very neere unto vs, by reason that it was as white as Snow, wherby at first we could not discern it to be a Bear, because it shewed to like the snow, but by their stirring at last we perceived her, and as she came neere unto vs, we shot at her and hit her, but she ranne away: that morning the Wind was VVest, and after that againe, East North-east with close weather. The fourteenth, about the South South-east Sunne, five of our men went againe to the next Island, to see if there appeared any open water, for our long staying there was no small griefe unto vs, perceiving now how wee should get from thence, who being halfe way thither, they found a Bear lying behind a piece of Ice, which the day before had bene shot by vs, but shee hearing vs went away, but once our men following her with a Boat-hooke, thrust her into the skine, wherewith the Beare vnto vpon her hinder feet, and as the man thrust at her againe, she strooke the Iron of the Boat-hooke in pieces, wherewith the man fell downe vpon his buttockes, which our other two men seeing, two of them shot the Beare into the bodie, and with that she ranne away, but the other man went after her with his broken staffe, and strooke the Beare vpon the backe, wherewith the Beare turned about against the man three times one after the other, and then the other two came to berand that her into the bodie againe, wherewith shee fat downe vpon her buttockes, and could scant rime any further, and then they shot once againe, wherewith shee fell downe, and they frote her Teeth out of her head: all that day the Winde was North-east, and East North-east.

The eighteenth, about the East Sunne, three of our men went vpon the highest part of the land to see if there was any open water in the Sea, at which time they saw much open water, but it was so far from the land, that they were almost out of comfort, because it lay so far from the land, and the fast Ice, being of opinion that we should not be able to draw the Scutes and the goods so farre thither, because our strengthes still beganne to decrease: and the fore labour and paine that we were forced to indure more and more increased, and comming to our Scutes, they brought vs that newes, but we being compelled therunto by necessity abandoned all wearisome and faint-heartedness, and determined with our feloes to bring the Boats and the goods to the water side, and to row vnto that Ice, where we must passe ouer: so got to the open water, and when we got to it, wee vnto our Scutes, and drew them first ouer the Ice to the open water, and after that the goods; it being at the least one thousand paces, then wee let lay, till the Sunne was West and by South; and presently fell amongst the Ice againe, where we were forced to draw vp the Scutes againe vpon the Ice, and being vpon it, wee could see the *Crosse* Island, which wee ghes to bee about a mile from vs, the Wind then being East, and East North-east.

The nineteenth, lying in that manner vpon the Ice, about the East Sunne, seven of our men went to the *Crosse* Island, and being there they saw great store of open water in the West, wherewith they much reioiced, and made as great haste as they could to get to the Scutes againe, but before they came away they got 100. Egges, and brought them away with them, and comming to the Scutes, they shewed vs that they had seene as much open water in the Sea as they could discern, being in good hope, that that would be the last time that they should draw the Scutes ouer the Ice, and that it should be no more measured by vs, and in that fort vs in good comfort, wherupon we made speed to dresse our Egges, and shared them amongst vs, and presently the Sunne being South South-west we fell to worke, to make all things ready to bring the Scutes to the water, which were to be drawne at least two hundred paces ouer the Ice, which wee did with a good courage, because we were in good hope that it would be the last time, and getting to the water, we put to Sea with Gods helpe, with an East, and East North-east Wind, and a good gale, so that with the West Sunne, we past by the *Crosse* Island, which is distant from *Cape* 50 miles, ten miles, and presently after that the Ice left vs, and wee got cleere out of it, yet wee saw some in the Sea, but it troubled vs not, and so wee held our course West and by South, with a good gale of Wind out of the East, and East North-east, so that wee ghes that betweene eury meale-tyde wee layed eighteen miles.

The twentieth, having still a good gale about the South-east Sunne, we past along by the *Blacke* Point, which is twenty miles distant from the *Crosse* Island, and layed West South-west, and about the Evening about the West Sunne, we saw the *Admirals* Island, and about the North Sunne past along by it, which is distant from the *Blacke* Point eight miles, and passing along by it, we saw about two hundred Sea-horjes, lying vpon a flake of Ice, and wee layed dole by them, and drawe them from thence, which had almost cost vs deere, for they being mightie strong fishes, and of great force, swamme towards vs, (as if they would be reuenged on vs for the despite that we had done them) (round about our Scutes) with a great noyse, as if they would have deuoured vs, but wee escaped from them, by reason that we had a good gale of Wind, yet it was not wisely done of vs to wake sleeping Wolues. The one and twentieth, wee past by *Cape* *Plancio*.

Plancio, about the East North-east Sunne, which lyeth West South-west eight miles from the *Cape Plancio* *Admirals* Island, and with the good gale that we had about the South-west Sunne, wee layed by *Launce*, nine miles from *Cape Plancio*: there the Land reacheth in to South-west, and we had *Launce*, a good North-east wind.

The two and twentieth, wee having so good a gale of wind when wee came to *Cape Cant*, *Cape Cant*, there we went on land to seeke for some Birds and Egges, but we found none, so we layed forwards, but after that about the South Sunne we saw a Clift that was full of Birds, thither wee layed, and casting stones at them, we killed two and twentieth Birds, and got fiftene Egges, which one of our men fetcht from the Clift, and if we would have stayed there any longer, we might have taken a hundred or two hundred Birds at least, but because the Matter was somewhat further into Sea-ward then we, and stayed for vs, and for that wee would not loose that faire fore-wind, we layed forwards along by the Land, and about the South-west Sunne, wee came to another point, where wee got a hundred twentie and foue Birds, which wee tooke with our hands out of their Nests, and some wee killed with stones, and made them fall downe into the water, for it is a thing certayne that those Birds neuer vied to see men, and that no man had euer fought or vied to take them, for else they would have flowne away, and that they feared no hodie, but the Foxes and other wild beasts, that could not climbe vp the high Clifts, and that therefore they had made their Nests thereon, where they were out of feare of any beasts comming vnto them, for we were in no small danger of breaking of our legges and armes, especially as wee came downe againe, because the Clift was so high and so steepe, those Birds had entery one but one Egge in their Nests, and that lay vpon the bare Clift without any straw or other thing vnder them, which is to be wondered at, to thinke how they could breed their young ones in so great cold, but it is to be thought and beleued, that they therefore lie but vpon one Egge, that lo the heat which they give in breeding lo many, may be wholly giuen vnto one Egge.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire weather, but the winde still North-easterly, whereby wee were forced to lye still, and about noone wee took the height of the Sunne with our *Astrabium*, and found it to be clearest about the Horizon 37. degrees and 20. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 10. minutes which subtracted from the height storefaid resteth 17. degrees and 10. minutes, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 73. degrees and 10. minutes, and for that we lay still there, some of our men went offentimes on Land to seeke stones, and found some that were as good as euer any that we found.

The seven and twentieth, wee had layed from *Cape de Cant*, along by *Comitien*, to the *Crosse* Point, twentieth miles, our course South South-east, the Wind North-west.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather with a North-east wind, then we layed along by the Land, and with the South-west Sunne, got before *Saint Laurence Bay*, or *Sance* Point, and layed South South-east six miles, and being there, wee found two *Russian* Lodges, or ships beyond the Point, wherewith we were not a little comforted, to thinke that we were come to the place where we found men, but were in some doubt of them, because they were so many, for at that time we saw at least thirtie men, and knew not what they were, there with much paine and labour we got to Land, which they perceiving, left off their worke, and came towards vs, but without any Armes, and we also went on shore as many as were well, for diuers of vs were very ill at ease, and weak by reason of a great scouring in their bodies, and when wee met together, we saluted each other in friendly wise, they after theirs, and wee after our manner, and when wee were met, both they and wee lookt each other steadfastly in the face, for that some of them knew vs, and wee them, to see the same men which the yeere before, when wee past through the *Wey-gates* had bene in our ship: at which time wee perceived that they were a halst and wondered at vs, to remember that at that time wee were so well furnished with a great ship, that was exceedingly prouided of all things necessary, and then to see vs so leane and bare, with so small Scutes in that Countrey: and amongst them there were two, that in friendly manner clapt the Matter and me vpon the shoulder, as knowing vs since that Voyage: for there was none of all our men that was as then in that Voyage, but wee two only, and asked vs for our *Crabbe*, meaning our ship, and we shewed them by signes as well as we could (for we had no Interpreter) that we had lost our ship in the Ice, wherewith they said, *Crabbe* *pro* *pal* (which wee vnderstood to bee, *Have you lost your ship?*) and we made answer, *Crabbe* *pro* *pal*, which was as much as to say, That we had lost our ship, and many more words we could not vfe, because we vnderstood not each other, then they made shew to be forrie for our losse, and to be grieved that we the yeere before had bene there with so many ships, and then to see vs in so limple manner, and made vs signes that then they had drunke Wine in our ship, and asked vs what drinke wee had now, wherewith one of our men went into the Scute and drew Wine water, and let them taste thereof, but they thak't their heads, and said, *No dobre* (that is, It is not good) then our Matter went neerer vnto them, and shewed them his mouth, to giue them to vnderstand that we were troubled with a loosenesse in our bellies, and to know if they could giue us any counsell to helpe it, but they thought wee made shew that wee had great hunger wherewith one of them went vnto their Lodging, and fetcht a round Rie Loafe, weighing about eight pounds, with

some Inured Fowles which we accepted thankfully, and gaue them in exchange halfe a dozen of Mutchys, then our Master led two of the chiefe of them with him into his Scute, and gaue them some of the Wine that we had, being almost a Gallon, for it was so neere out: and while we layed there, we were very familiar with them, and went to the place where they lay, and fod some of our Mutchys with water by their fire, that we might eat some warme thing downe time, that we departed from *Iohn Cornelison*, we had not seene any man, but onely monstrous and cruell wild Beares.

The nine and twentieth, it was reasonable faire weather, and that morning the *Russians* beganne to make preparation to bee gone, and to set saile: at which time they digged certayne Barrels with Trayne Oyle out of the sieges which they had buried there, and put it into their ships.

No Raie. The thirtieth, lying at Anchor, the Wind fill blew North-west, with great force of Raie, drye dry, which was an vnaccustomed thing vnto vs: for wee had had no Raie in long time before, and yet we were forced to stay there all that day.

Scurvy-grasse, or Lepie leauet cure their scouring and Scorbittall infirmities. The one and thirtieth, in the morning, about the North-east Sunne, we were rowed from that there about Trade of Merchandize, as the other *Russians* that wee saw before had done, but wee the *Procygans*: there to our great good we went on Land, for in that land we found great store of Lepie leauets, which seemed vs exceeding well, and it seemed that God had purposely sent vs thither: for as then we had manyicke men, and most of vs were so troubled with a scouring in our bodies, and were thereby become so weak, that we could hardly row, but by means of those leauets we were healed thereof: for that as soone as we had eaten them, we were presently eased and healed, whereas we could not choise but wonder, and therefore wee gaue God great thanks for that, and for many other his mercies shewed vnto vs, by his great and vnexpected aide sent vs in, in that our dangerous Voyage: and so as I said before, wee ate them by whole handfulls together, because in *Holland* we had heard much spoken of their great force, and as then found it to be much more then we expected.

Augst. The first of August, the Wind blew hard North-west, and the Ice that for a while had driven towards the entry of the *Weg-gates*, layed and drave no more, but the Sea went very hollow, whereby we were forced to remoue our Scutes on the other side of the Island, to defend them from the waues of the Sea, and lying there wee went on Land againe to fetch more Lepie leauets, whereby we had bene so well holpen, and still more and more recovered our healths, and in so short time, that we could not choise but wonder thereat, so that as then some of vs could eat Bisket againe, which not long before they could not doe. The second, it was darke mistie weather, the Winde still blowing stiff North-west, at which time our vittuals beganne to decrease, for as then we had nothing but a little Bread and Water, and some of vs a little Cheefe.

The third, about the North Sunne, the weather being somewhat better, we agreed amongst our selues to leave *Nona Zembla* and to croffe ouer to *Russia*: for so committing our selues to God, and then we entered into Ice againe, which put vs in great feare: about the South-west Sunne, got cleere thereof, and entered into the large Sea, where we saw Ice, and then what with sayling vnto the *Russian Coast*; but about the North-west Sunne we entered into Ice againe, and then it was very cold.

The fourth, about the South-east Sunne, being gotten out of the Ice, we sayled forward with a North-west Wind, and held our course Southerly, and when the Sunne was South, at noone time we saw the Coast of *Russia* lying before vs, whereas we were exceeding glad, and going neerer vnto it, we strooke our sayles and rowed on Land, and found it to be very low Land, like weell, but perceiving that there wee could not much further our selues, hauing as then sayled forward along by the Coast of *Russia*, with an indifferent gale of Winde, and when the Sunne was North, we saw another *Russian Isle* or Ship, which we sayled vnto to speake with them, and being hard by them, they came all about Hatchies, and wee cryed vnto them *Candianer Candianer* (whereby we asked if we were about *Candianer*) but they cryed againe and said, *Piscanor Piscanor*, (so shew vs that wee were thereabouts) and for that we sayled along by the Coast, where it was very dry, supposing that we held our course West and by North, that so we might get beyond the Point of *Candianer*, we were wholly deceived by our COMPASS, the flood vpon a Chift bound with Iron bands which made vs vary at least two Points, whereby we were much more Southerly then we thought our course had bene, and also farre more Easterly, for wee thought

thought verily that we had not bene farre from *Candianer*, and wee were three dayes sayling from it as after we perceived, and for that we found our selues to bee so much out of our way, we sayled there all night till day appeared.

The twelfth of August, it was faire weather, at which time the Sunne being East, we saw a *Russian Lodge* come towards vs, with all his sayles vp, whereas we were not a little comforted, which we perceiving from the Strand, where we lay with our Scutes, we desired the Master that we might goe vnto him, to speake with him, and to get some vittuals of them, and to that end we made as much haile as we could, to launch out our Scutes and sayled toward them, and when we got to them, the Master went into the Lodge, to ask them how farre we had to *Candianer*, which we could not well learne of them, because we understood them not, they held vp their five Fingers vnto vs, but we knew not what they meant thereby, but after we perceived, that thereby they would shew vs, that there flood five Croffes vpon it, and they brought their COMPASS out and shewed vs that it lay North-west from vs, which our COMPASS also shewed vs, which reckoning also we had made: but when we saw we could haue no further intelligence from them, the Master went further into their Ship, and pointed to a barrell of Fish that he saw therein, making signes to know, whether they would sell it vnto vs, shewing them a peece of eight Rials, which they vnderstanding gaue vs one hundred and two Fifths, with some Cakes which they had made of Meale, when they lodde their Fish, and about the South Sunne we left them.

The sixteenth of August in the Morning, sayling forward North-west, we perceived that we were in a Creeke, and so made towards the *Russian Lodge*, which we had seene on our starboard, which at last with great labour and much paine we got vnto them, and coming to them about the South-east Sunne, with a hard winde, we asked them how farre we were from *Sembla de Cool* or *Kilduin*, but they shooke their heads, and shewed vs that wee were on the East-side of *Zembla de Candianer*.

The seuenteenth lying at Anchor, in the Morning at break of day, we saw a *Russian Lodge* that came sayling out of the *white Sea*, to vvhom we rowed, that we might haue some instruction from him, and when we boarded him, without asking or speaking vnto him, he gaue vs a loafe of Bread, and by signes shewed vs as well as he could, that hee had seene our Companions, and that there vvas seuen men in the Boate, but wee not knowing well what they sayd, neither yet beleueing them, they made other signes vnto vs, and held vp their fuen Fingers, and pointed to our Scute, thereby shewing that there was so many men in the Boate, and that they had sold them Bread, Fleish, Fish and other vittuals: and while wee stayed in their Lodge, we saw a small COMPASS therein, which we knew that they had bought of our chiefe Boate, which they likewise acknowledged. About mid-night wee found a fall of fresh Water, and then we went on Land to fetch some, and there also wee got some Lepie-leauets, and as wee thought to row forward, we were forced to saile, because the flood was past, and still we looked earnestly out for the point of *Candianer*, and the five Croffes, whereof we had bene instructed by the *Russians*, but we could not see it.

The Eighteenth, in the Morning the Sunne being East, we puld vp our Stone, (which we vied in feed of an Anchor) and rowed along by the Land, till the Sunne was South, and then we saw a point of Land reaching into the Sea, and on it certayne signes of Croffes, which as we went neerer vnto we saw perfectly, and when the Sunne was West, we perceived that the Land reached West and South-west, so that thereby we knew it certainly to bee the point of *Candianer*, lying at the mouth of the *white Sea* which we were to croffe, and had long desired to see it. This Point is easily to bee knowne, hauing five Croffes standing vpon it, which are perfectly to be discerned, and hauing a good North-east vvind (which was not for vs to slacke) we let forward in the Name of God, and when the Sunne was North-west we past the Point, and at that night and the next day sayled with a good Wind, and all that time rowed but while three Glasses were runne out, and the next Night after ensuing, hauing still a good vvind, in the Morning about 30 East North-east Sunne, we saw Land on the West-side of the *white Sea*, which we found by the ruffling of the Sea vpon the Land before us we saw it, and perceiving it to bee full of Clifts, and not low sandie ground with some Hills, as it is on the East-side of the *white Sea*, we assured our selues that we were on the West-side of the *white Sea*, vpon the Coast of *Lapland*, for the which we thanked God, that he had helped vs to saile ouer the *white Sea* in thirte hours, it being fortie Dutch miles at the least, our course being West with a North-east winde.

The twentieth, we vided certayne Croffes, with Warders vpon them, wherby we understood that it was a good way, and so put into it, and being entered a little way within it, we saw a great *Russian Lodge* lying at Anchor, whereunto we rowed as fast as we could, and there also we saw certayne Houses wherein men dwelt, and when we got to the Lodge, we made our selues fast vnto it and cast our tent ouer the Scute, for as then it began to rayne, then we went on land into the Houses that stood vpon the shore, vvhere they shewed vs great friendship, leading vs into their Stoues and there dried our wet Cloathes, and then fetched some Fish, made vs sit downe and ate somewhat vvith them. In those little houses we found thirteene *Russians*, *Russian Houses*, who

Lapländers mi-
cable life.

who every morning went out to Fish in the Sea, whereof two of them had charge over the rest, they lived very poorly, and ordinarily ate nothing but Fish and Bread: at Evening when we prepared our selves to go to our Scute againe, they prayed the Master and me to stay with them in their Houses, vvhich the Master thanked them for, would not doe, but I stayed with them all that night: besides those thirteene Men, there was two *Lapländers* more, and three Women of a Fish, and some fishes heads which the *Russians* threw away, and they with great thankfulness tooke them vs, so that in respect of their pouterie, we thought our selves to be well furnished: and yet we had little enough, but as it seemed their ordinary living was in that manner, and we were forced to stay there, for that the vvin being North-west, it was against vs.

The one and twentieth, we met our other Companie vvhich with vs rejoiced, and shewed each other of our proceedings, and how wees had layed too and fro in great necessity and hunger, and yet they had bene in greater necessity and danger then we, and gaue God thanks ther hee had preferred vs alure, and brought vs together againe, and then we ate something together and dranke of the cleere Water, such as runneth along by *Collen* through the *Rhene*, and then we agreed that they should come vnto vs, that we might layle together.

The two and twentieth, the rest of our men with the Boate came vnto vs, about the East South-east Sunne, whereat we much rejoiced, and then we prayed the *Russians* Cooke to bake a facke of Meale for vs, and to make it Bread, paying him for it, vvhich hee did, and in the meane of them, which we lodde and ate, and vvhile we were at meate, the chief of the *Russians* came vnto vs, and perceiving that we had not much Bread, hee fetched a Loafe and gaue it vs, and alget them to grant therunto, because it was their Fastig day, and for that vve had paynted But-vas fow what grasse, they were not vnto get them once to drinke with vs, because our Cup would they lend vs any of their Cups to drinke in, least they should likewise be grased, at that time the vvin was North-west.

Sluterie a fast
breaker.

The four and twentieth, the wind blew East, and then the Sunne being East, we got to the feuen Ilands, where we found many Fisher-men, of whom we enquired after *Cool* and *Kilduin*, and they made signes that they lay West from vs, (which we likewise sheft to bee so) and all they shewed vs great friendship, and cast a Cooke into our Scute, but for that wee had a good ring at their great courtserie, and so with a good gale of vvinde we came before the feuen Ilands, where the Sunne was South-west, and past betweene them and the Land, and there found certayne Fisher-men that rowed to vs, and asked vs where our Crable (meaning our Ship) was, wherunto we made answer, with as much *Russian* language as wee had learned: and sayd, *Crable*, (that is, our Ship is lost) which they vnderstanding, sayd vnto vs, *Cool* *Brabens* *Crable*, whereby we vnderstood, that at *Cool* there was certayne *Netherland* Ships, but wee made no great account thereof, because our intent was to layle to *Ware-houfe*, fearing least the *Russians* 40 or great Prince of the Countrey would stay there.

Kilduin.

The five and twentieth, sayling along by the Land with a South-east vvinde, about the South Sunne, we had a sight of *Kilduin*, which time we held our course West North-west, and sayling in that manner betweene *Kilduin* and the firme Land, about the South South-west Sunne, we got to the West end of *Kilduin*, and being there looked if we could see any Houses or people therein, and at last we saw certayne *Russian* Lodgies that lay vpon the Strand, and there finding a convenient place for vs to Anchor with our Scutes, while we went to know if any people were to bee found, our Master put in with the Land, and there found five or fixe small Houses, wherein the *Lapländers* dwelt, of whom we asked if that were *Kilduin*, wherunto they made answer, and shewed vs that it was *Kilduin*, and sayd, that at *Cool* there lay three *Brabens* *Crables* or Ships, whereof two were that day to set layle: wee found a small House vpon the shoare, vvhich there was three Men and a great Dogge, which received vs very friendly, asking vs of our affaires, and how we got thither, whereunto we made answer, and shewed them that we had into *Holland*: wherunto they made vs answer as the other *Russians* had done, that there was three Ships at *Cool*, whereof two were to set layle from thence that day, then we asked them if they would goe with one of our men by Land to *Cool*, to looke for a Ship, wherewith we might get into *Holland*, and they would reward them well for their paines, but they excused themselves, and sayd, that they could not goe from thence, but they sayd they would bring vs over the Hill, where vve should finde certayne *Lapländers* whom they thought would goe vvvith vs, as they did: for the Master and one of our men going with them over the Hill found certayne *Lapländers* there, vvhich they got one of our men going with them, promising him two Ryals of eight for his paines, and so the *Lapländer* going vvvith him,ooke a Piece on his necke, and our man a Boat-hooke, and about Evening they set forward, the vvinde as then being East, and East North-east.

The

The fixe and twentieth, it was faire vveather, the vvinde South-east, at vvhich time we drew vp both our Scutes vpon the Land, and spokall the goods out of them, to make them the lighter: vvhich done, we went to the *Russians* and vvarmed vs, and there dressed fish meates as wee had, and then againe we began to make two meales a day, vvhich we perceived that we should every day finde more people, and vvhich one of their drinke which they call *Quaffe*, vvhich was made of broken peeces of Bread, and it tasted well: for in long time wee had drinke nothing els but Water. Some of our men went further into the Land, and there found blew Berries and hamble Berries, vvhich they plucked and ate, and they did vs much good, for we found that they healed vs of our loolensie, the vvinde still blew South-east.

The eight and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, and then we drew the Scutes vpon the Land againe, that we might take the rest of the goods out of them, because the wind still blew hard North, and North North-west, and hauing drawne the Scutes vp, we spread our sayles vpon them, to shelter vs vnder them, for it was still mytie and raynie weather, much desiring to heare some newes of our man, that was gone to *Cool* with the *Lapländer*.

The nine and twentieth, we spied the *Lapländer* coming alone without our man, whereat we wondered, and were somewhat in doubt, but when hee came vnto vs, he shewed vs a Letter that was written vnto our Master, which he opened before vs, the Contents thereof being, that hee had written the Letter wondred much at our arrivall in that place, and that long since hee very thought that we had bene all call away, being exceeding glad of our happie fortune, and how that hee would presently come vnto vs with vviduals, and all other necessaries to succour vs withall, we being in no small admiration who was it might bee, that shewed vs so great fauour and friendship, could not imagine what he was, for it appeared by the Letter that he knew vs well: and although the Letter was subscribed, by me *Iohn Cornelison* *Kp*, yet we could not bee perswaded that it was the same *Iohn Cornelison*, who the yere before had bene set our in the other ship with vs, & it was about the *Beare* Island: for those good newes we payd the *Lapländer* his hyer; and besides that, gaue him Hofs, Breeches, and other furniture, so that hee was apparelled like a *Hollander*: for as then we thought our selves to bee wholly out of danger, and sobeing of good comfort, we layd vs downe to rest. Heere I cannot chuse but shew you how fast the *Lapländer* went: for when he went to *Cool*, as our Companion told vs, they were two Dayes and two Nights on the way, and yet went space, and when he came backe againe he was but a Day and a Night coming to vs, which was wonderfull, it being but halfe the time, so that we sayd, and verily thought that hee was halfe a Coniurer, and he brought vs a Partridge, which hee had killed by the way as he went.

The thirtieth, wee saw a *Russian* Ioll come rowing with *Iohn Cornelison*, and our Companion that wee had sent to *Cool*, who being landed, wee received and welcommed each other, with great joy and exceeding gladnesse, as if either of vs on both sides had senee each other rife from death to life againe: for we esteemed him, and hee vs to bee dead long since: hee brought vs a Barrell of *Raspely* Beere, Wine, *Aqua vite*, Bread, Fleish, Bacon, Salmon, Sugar, and other things, which comforted and reliued vs much, and wee joyced together for our vnexpected meeting: at that time giuing God great thanks, for his Mercie shewed vnto vs.

The first of September, in the Morning with the East Sun, we got to the West-side of the Riuer of *Cool*, and entred into it, where we rowed till the Flood was past, and then wee cast the Stones that srued vs for Anchors vpon the ground, at a point of Land till the Flood came againe: and when the Sunne was South, wee set layle againe with the Flood, and so layled and rowed till mid-night, and then wee cast Anchor againe till morning. The second, in the Morning, we rowed vp the Riuer, and as wee past along wee saw some Trees on the Riuer side, which comforted vs, and made vs glad as if we had then come into a new world, for in all the time that wee had bene out, we had not senee any Trees, and when we were by the *Salt Kettles*, which were about three miles from *Cool*, we stayed there a while, and made merrie, and then went forward againe, and with the West North-west Sunne, got to *Iohn Cornelison* Ship, wherein we entred that had bene in the *Ypogis* begun with *Iohn Cornelison* the yere before, and had each other welcome: and then we rowed forward, and late in the Evening got to *Cool*, where some of vs went on Land, and some stayed in the Scutes to looke to the goods: to whom we sent Milke and other things to comfort and refresh them, and we were all exceeding glad that God of his mercie had deliuered vs out of so many dangers and troubles, and had brought vs thither in safetie.

The third, wee vnladed all our goods, and there refreshed our selves after our toylefome and wearie Iourney, and the great hunger we had endured, thereby to recouer our healths and strengths againe.

The eleuenth, by leave and consent of the *Bayart*, Gouverneur of the great Prince of *Moscouia*, we brought our Scute and our Boate into the Merchants House, and there let them Rand for a remembrance of our long farre (and neuer before sayled way) and that wee had sayled in those open Scutes, almost four hundred *Dutch* miles, through, and along by the Sea Coasts to the Towne of *Cool*.

The 15 Scute
and Boate layd
up for a Mon-
ument: betw
much more
worthily then
the old worlde
figs.

Y y

The

The fouenteenth of September, *Iohn Cornelison* and our *Maister* being come aboard, the next day about the East Sunne, we set sayle out of the *Riuer Coula*, and with Gods grace put to Sea, to sayle homewards, and being out of the *Riuer*, we set sayle along by the Land North-west and by North, the winde being South.

Vpon the nine and twentieth of October, we arrived in the *Mafe*, with an East North-east winde, and the next morning got to *Maifeland Sloce*, and there going on Land, from thence rowed to *Deisse*, and then to the *Hage*, and from thence to *Harlem*. And vpon the first of Nouember about Noone, got to *Amsterdam*, in the same Clothes that we wore in *Nova Zembla*, with our Caps furr'd with white Foxes skinned. The newes thereof being spred abroad in the Towne, it was also carryed to the Princes Court in the *Hage*, at which time the Lord Chancellour of *Denmarke*, Ambassadour for the sayd King, was then at Dinner with Prince *Maurice*: for the which cause we were presently fetcht thither by the Scout, and two of the Burgers of the Towne, and there in the presence of those Ambassadours, and the Burger-masters, we made rehearfall of our Journey both forwards and backwards.

I thought good to adde hither for Barents or Barentfons sake, certaine Notes which I haue found (the one Translated, the other Written by him) amongst Maister Hakleys Paper.

This was Written by *William Barentson* in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reuerend *Peter Plantius* in *Amsterdam*, March the fuen and twentieth, 1609.

Intelligence from *Samoiedo*, 1595.
Barkes going from *Pechora* to *Guelphid*: wintering there.
Guelphid was taken by the *Tartars* in 1595.

*These foue and twentieth of August, Stilo nouo 1595. wee spake with the Samoiedo, and asked them how the Land and Sea did lie to the East of Way-gates. They sayd after fower dayes iourney going North-east, we should come to a great Sea, going South-east. This Sea is the East of Way-gates, they sayd as called *Marmora*, that is to say, A calme Sea. And they of Ward-house haue told us the same. I asked them, if at any time of the year it was frozen ouer? They sayd it was, and sometimes they passed it with sleds. And the first of September 1595. Stilo nouo, the Ruffes of the *Ladie* or *Barkes* affirmed the same: saying that the Sea is sometimes so frozen, that the *Ladie* or *Barkes* goe sometimes to *Guelphid* from *Pechora*, are forced there to winter: which *Guelphid* was wonne from the *Tartars*, three yeeres past.*

1599.
No Ebbe nor Flood.

*For the Ebbe and Flood there I can finde none; but with the winde so runneth the streame. The third of September, Stilo nouo, the winde was South-west, and then I found the water higher, then with the winde at North or North-east. Mine opinion is grounded on Experience, That if there be a passage in it small: or else the Sea could not rise with a Southerly winde. And for the better proofe to know if there were a Flood and Ebbe, the ninth of September, Stilo nouo, I went on Shore on the South end of the Staters Island, where the *Crosse* standeth, and layd a Stone on the brinke of the Water, to prove whether there were a Tide, and went round about the Island to foote at a Hare, and returning, I found the Stone as I left it, and the Water neither higher nor lower: which proueth as afore, that there is no Flood nor Ebbe.*

September 9.

CHAP. VI.

A Treatise of IVER BOTT a Gronlander, translated out of the North Language into High Dutch, in the yeere 1560. And after out of High Dutch into Low Dutch, by WILLIAM BARENTSON of Amsterdum, who was chiefe Pilot aforesaid. The same Copie in High Dutch, is in the hands of IODOCVI HONDIVS, which I haue seene. And this was translated out of Low Dutch, by Maister WILLIAM STREE, Marchant, in the yeere 1608. for the use of me HENRIE HYSDON. WILLIAM BARENTSONS Booke is in the hands of Maister PETER PLANTIVS, who lent the same vnto me.

Nymis, it is reported by men of Wisdome and Vnderstanding borne in *Gronland*, That from Stad in *Norway* to the East part of *Island*, called *Horn-nasse*, is fuen dayes sayling right West.

Item, men shall know, that betweene *Island* and *Gronland*, lyeth a Riffe called *Gombornse-ikere*. There were they went to laue there payge for *Gronland*. But as they report there is Ice vpon the same Riffe, come out of the long North Bottom, so that we cannot vfe the same old Passage as they thinke.

Item, from *Long-nasse* on the East tide of *Island* to the abouteyd *Horn-nasse*, is two dayes sayle to the *Brimfione* Mount.

Gombornse-ikere. The long North bottom.

Item,

Item, if you goe from *Bergen* in *Norway*, the course is right West, till you bee South of *Rake-nasse* in *Island*: and dilant from it thirteene miles, or leagues. And with this course you shall come vnder that high Land that lyeth in the East part of *Gronland*, and is called *Sno-fjelle*. A day before you come there, you shall haue sight of a high Mount, called *Hant-fjelle*: and betweene *Wharfjelle* and *Gronland*, lyeth a Head-land called *Hernoldus Hooke*: and thereby lyeth an Hauen, where the *Norway* Merchants Ships were wont to come: and it is called *Sund Hauen*.

Item, if a man will sayle from *Island* to *Gronland*, hee shall set his course to *Sno-fjelle*, which is by West *Rake-nasse* thirteene miles or leagues right West, one day and nights sayling, and after South-west to run the Ice, that lyeth on *Gombornse-ikere*; and after that one day and night North-west. So shall hee with this course fall right with the abouteyd *Swastier*, which is high Land, vnder which lyeth the aforesayd Head-land, called *Hernoldus Hooke*, and the *Sund Hauen*.

Item, the Easter Dorpe of *Gronland* lyeth East from *Hernoldus hooke*, but neere it, and is called *Skagen Ford*, and is a great Village.

Item, from *Skagen Ford* East, lyeth a Hauen called *Beare Ford*: it is not dwellt in. The mouth thereof lyeth a Riffe, so that great Ships cannot harbour in it.

Item, there is great abundance of Whales: and there is a great Fyishing for the killing of them there: but not without the Bishops consent, which keepeth the same for the benefit of the Cathedral Church. In the Hauen is a great *Swalsh*: and when the Tide doth runne out, all the

Whales doe runne into the sayd *Swalsh*.

Item, East of *Beare Ford*, lyeth another Hauen called *Alabeng Sound*: and it is at the mouth narrow, but farther in, very wide: The length whereof is such, that the end thereof is not yet knowne. There runneth no Streame, & the lyeth full of little Iles. *Egyle* and *Oxen* are there common: and it is playne Land on both sides, growne ouer with greene Grasse.

Item, East from the Icie Mountayne, lyeth an Hauen called *Foskothoren*; so named, because in *Saint Olaf*s time there was a Ship cast away, as the *peach* hath beene in *Gronland*: In which Ship was drowned one of *Saint Olaf*s men, with others: and those that were saved did burie those that were drowned, and on their Graves did set great Iron Crossees, which wee see at this day.

Item, somewhat more East toward the Icie Mountayne, lyeth a high Land, called *Cose Hanger*, vpon which they Hunt white Beares, but not without the Bishops leave, for it belongeth to the Cathedral Church. And from thence more East-ly, men see nothing but Ice, and Snow, both by land and water.

Now wee shall retorne againe to *Hernoldus Hooke*, where we first began to come to the first Towne that lyeth on the East-side of *Hernoldus Hooke*, called *Skagen Ford*: and so we will write the Names of all that lyeth on the West-side of the Ford or Sound.

Item, West from *Hernoldus Hooke*, lyeth a Dorpe called *Kodoford*, and it is well built: and as you sayle into the Sound, you shall see on the right hand a great Sea and a Marle: and into this Sea runneth a great streame: and by the Marle and Sea standeth a great Church, on which the Holy Crosse is drawne of colour wisse: it belongeth to *Eusebius de Hekfong*, and the Land to *Peters Wyke*.

Item, by *Peters Wyke*, lyeth a great Dorpe called *Wardfalle*, by which lyeth a water or Sea of ewelme miles or leagues ouer: in which is much Fille: And to *Peters Wyke* Church belongeth *Wardfalle* Bay or Towne, and the Villages.

Item, neere this Bay or Towne, lyeth a Cloyster or Abbey, in which are Canons Regular, it is Dedicated to *Saint Olaf*s, and same *Augustines* canon: And to it belongeth all the Land to the Sea side, and toward the other side of the Cloyster.

Item, next *Gudoford*, lyeth a Ford called *Rompeis Ford*: And neere lyeth a Cloyster of Nuns of *Saint Benedicts* Order.

Item, this Cloyster to the bottomes of the Sea, and to *Wegon Karker* was Dedicated to *Saint Olaf* the King. In this Ford lyeth many small Iles. And so this Cloyster belongeth to *Isle* the Ford and the Church. In this Sound are many warme Waters. In the Winter they are intolérable hot: but in the Summer more moderate, and many Bathe in them are cured of many distempers.

Item, betweene *Rompeis* and the next Sound, lyeth a great Garden called *Nasse*, belonging to the King. There is a little costly Church dedicated to *Saint Niclaus*. This Church had the King before this. Neere it lyeth a Sea of Fresh water, called

in which is great abundance of Fish, without number. And when there falleth much Rayne, that the Waters doe rise therein, and after fall againe, there remaineth vpon the Land much Fish drie.

Item, when you sayle out of *Emefines Ford*, there lyeth an Inlet, called *Souders-waters Wyke*: and somewhat higher in the same Sound, and on the same side, lyeth a little Cape called *Blumning*: and beyond that lyeth another Inwike called *Granvike*, and above that lyeth a Garden called *Dulsh*, which belongeth to the Cathedral Church. And on the right hand, as you sayle out of the same Sound, lyeth a great Wood, which pertaineth to the Church, where they fiede all

Y y

Swastier.
Wharfjelle.
Hernoldus Hooke.
The Hauen in *Gronland*.

Skagen Ford.
Beare Ford.

A great fishing for Whales.
A great *Swalsh*.

Alabeng Sound.
Store of *Oxen*.

The Icie Mountayne.
The Hauen of *Foskothoren*.
Noe.

Cose Hanger.
A hunting of white Beares.
More Easterly all Delart.

The Towne from *Hernoldus Hooke* West-ward.
The Towne of *Gudoford*.
A great Church with a white Crosse on it.

Peters Wyke.
Wardfalle.
Eusebius de Hekfong tongue signifieth I. wane.

A Monasterie, *Rompeis Ford*.
A Nunnerie, *Wegon Karker*.

Hot waters in *Gronland*.
A place called *Nasse*, belonging to the King.

Saint Niclaus Church.
Emefines Ford.
Souders-waters Wyke.

Blumning.
Granvike.
Dulsh Garden.
A great Wood of *Oxen*, *Kimers*, and *Heries*.

their Cattell, as Oxen, Kine, and Horses : And to the Church pertaineth the Sound of *Emeford*. The high Land lying by *Emeford* is called *The Ramas bayle* : So called, because that on thole Hills doe runne many *Roe Deere*, or *Reyne Deere*, which they vnto Hunt, but not without the Bilshops leave. And on this high Land is the best Stone in all *Gronland*. They make thereof Pots, because fire cannot hurt it. And they make of the same stone *Fattors* or *Cilnernes*, that will hold ten or twelve Tunnes of water.

Item, West from this lyeth another high Land, called *The long high Land* : and by another called whereon are eight great Orchards, all belonging to the Cathedral Church.

Item, next to this Sound lyeth another Sound called *Swaffer Ford*, wherein standeth a Church. To this Church belongeth the King, called *Saint Hemishute*.

Item, next to that lyeth *Ericky Ford*, and entering therein lyeth an high Land called *Ericky Hange* : which pertaineth the one halfe to *Deners Kerke*, and is the first Parish Church on *Gronland*, and lyeth on the left hand as you sayle into *Ericky Ford* : and *Deners Kerke* belongeth all to *Mydan Ford*, which lyeth North-west from *Ericky Ford*.

Item, farther out then *Ericky Ford*, standeth a Church called *Skogel Kerke*, which belongeth to all *Medford* : And farther in the Sound standeth a Church called *Leadon Kerke*. To this Church belongeth all thereabout to the Sea ; and also on the other side as farre as *Bomfils*. There lyeth also a great Orchard called *Grete Lead*, in which the *Gufman* (that is a chiefe or Bayliffe ouer the 20 *Borers*) doth dwell.

And farther out then *Ericky Ford*, lyeth a Ford or Sound called *Fosse*, which belongeth to the Cathedral Church : and the sayd *Fosse* Sound lyeth as men sayle out towards *Ericky Ford* ; and to the North of it lyeth two Villages, the one called *Euer-boy*, and the other *Farther-boy*, because they lyeth so.

Item, from thence farther North lyeth *Breda Ford*, and after that *Larmont Ford* from that West, and from *Eduemont Ford* to the West is *lee Dorpe*. All these are places built, and in them dwell people.

Item, from the Easter builded Land to the Water Dorpe, is twelue miles or leagues : and the rest is all waste land. In the Dorpe in the West standeth a Church, which in times past belonged to the Cathedral Church, and the Bishop did dwell there. But now the *Skerlengers* haue all the West Lands and Dorps. And there are now many Horses, Oxen, and Kine, but no people neither Christian nor *Flamben* ; but they were all carryed away by the Enemy, the *Skerlengers*.

All this before Written was done by one *Iuer Bay* borne in *Gronland*, a principall man in the Bishops Court : who dwelt there many yeeres, and saw and knew all these places. He was chosen by the whole Land for Captayne, to goe with Ships to the West land, to driue away their Enemies the *Skerlengers*. But hee coming there, found no people neither Christian nor Heathen, but found there many Sheepe running being wilde, of which Sheepe they tooke with them as many as they could carrie, and with them returned to these Houses. This before named *Iuer Bay* was himselfe with them.

To the North of the West Land lyeth a great Wildernesse with Cliftes or Rockes, called *Hemel Hasfils*. Farther can no man sayle, because there lyeth many *Swaigen* or White-poolles : and also for the Water and the Snow.

Item, in *Gronland* are many Silver Hills, and many white Beares with red patches on their heads ; and also white Hawkes, and all sorts of Fysh, as in other Countreies.

Item, there is Marble stone of all colours, also *Zerul Stone* or the Load Stone, which the Fire cannot hurt, whereof they make many vessels, as Pots, and other great vessels.

Item, in *Gronland* runneth great streames, and there is much Snow and Ice : But it is not so cold, as it is in *Island* or *Norway*.

Item, there grow on the high Hills, Nuts and Acornes, which are as greates Apples, and good soeate. There groweth also the best Wheate, that can grow in the whole Land.

This Sea Card was found in the Iles of *Pere* or *farre*, lying betweene *Shon Land* and *Island*, in an old reckoning Booke, written aboue one hundred yeeres agoe : out of which this was all taken.

Item, *Punmus* and *Potbarfe*, haue inhabited *Island* certayne yeeres, and sometimes haue gone to Sea, and little had there traile in *Gronland*. Also *Punmus* did giue the *Islanders* their Lawes, and caused them to be written. Which Lawes doe continue to this day in *Island*, and are called by name *Punmus Lawes*.

The Course from Island to Gronland.

If men bee South from the Hauen of *Bred Ford* in *Island*, they shall sayle West, till they see *Whitfarkes* upon *Gronland*, and then sayle somewhat South-west till *Whitfarkes* bee North off you, and in your need not feare Ice, but may boldly sayle to *Whitfarkes*, and from thence to *Ericky Hauen*.

If men be North the Hauen of *Bredford* in *Island*, then sayle South-west, till *Whitfarkes* beare North : then sayle to it, and to come to *Ericky Hauen*.

If you see Ice, that cometh out of *Tralobethon*, you shall goe more Southerly, but not too farre South for feare of *Fresland*, for there runneth an hard streame. And it is fifteene miles or leagues from *Fresland*.

Item, *Fresland* lyeth South, and *Island* East from *Gronland*.

Item, From the Ice that hangeth on the Hillies in *Gronland*, cometh a great Fogge, Frost and Cold. And such a Fogge cometh out of the Ice of *Tralobethon* : and it is a great Wildernesse.

There are Sables, Marternes, Hermelins, or Ermins, White Beares, and White Hawkes, Seales, White and Gray, Gold and Silver Hills, also Fysh dried and salted, and thousands of Salmons : also store of Loth Hides and other Hides. There are Hares, Foxes, Wolues, Otters, and Veltirafren.

Now if it please God they come to *Gronland*, then shall they set but two men on shoare ; who shall take with them diuers kindes of Marchandize : and let them deale with good order, and let them bee such as can make good Report, what they there doe see or finde ; and let them obserue whether men may there Land or no, with the loue of the Inhabitants.

And I counsaile and charge those that shall Trade for *Gronland*, that they let no more folke on Land, but they keepe men enough to man the Ship. And looke well to the course you hold to *Gronland*, that if those that bee let on shoare bee taken, they may come home againe with Gods helpe. For if shipping returne, they may come home or bee releued in a yeere and a day. And in your liuing there so demean your selues to them, that in time you may winne the Countrey and the people.

Remember my Scholler and Clarke, which shall bee there appointed as Commander, that you send those on Land, that will shew themselves diligent Writers, and that they carie themselves so, that they may learne thereby the State of the Countrey. They shall take with them two Boats and eight Oares, and take Tynder-boxes for fire if there be no Habitation. Also set vp Croffes of Wood or Stone, if need be.

This Note following was found in an old Booke of Accounts, in the Yeere 1596.

Nymis, From *Grad* in *Norway*, standing neere the Latitude of sixtie three Degrees ; you shall hold your course due West : and that course will bring you vpon *Swartnesse* in *Gronland*. And in this course is the least streame and least perill of *Swalgen* or *Indrastra*. There is lesse perill this way, then is on the North-side you shall keepe $\frac{3}{4}$ of the Sea on *Fresland* side, and one third on *Island* side. And if it bee cleere weather, and you haue kept your course right

you, you shall see the Mount of *Suenels lokut* in the South-west part of *Island*. And if you haue the North a storme in the North, you must thumne it as you can, till *Whitfarkes* be North of you. Then shall you sayle right with it, and seeke the Land : and you shall finde a good Hauen, called *Ericky Ford*.

Item, If you bee betweene *Gronland* and *Island*, you may see *Suenels lokut* on *Island*, and *Whitfarkes* on *Gronland*, if it be cleere weather. Therefore men of experience doe affirme, that it is but thirtie leagues betweene both.

Also if you haue a storme betweene *Gronland* and *Island*, you must haue care you bee not laid on *Fresland* with the streame and Winde ; for the streame or Current doth run strong vpon *Fresland*, out of the North.

Also if you haue a storme out of the South, you shall not sayle out of your course, but a storme is keepe it as neere as you can possibly, till *Whitfarkes* in *Gronland* beare North off you : then the South 30 sayle toward it, and you shall come into *Ericky Ford*, as it is afore-said in the first Article.

CHAPTER VII.

A Description of the Countries of Siberia, Samoieda, and Tingoefia. Together with the Journies leading into the same Countries toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Moscovites.

δ. I.

*Discoverie of Siberia, and the subiecting of the same
to the Russes.*

The first and second Paragraphs were published in *Larve* by *Hoffell Gear*. *das An.*: 61. here a little contracted: the last I found

in M. Hagley's
Papers.
Arica or *Oneck*
Wichida,
White Sea to
the North of
Russia.

*Samoeds,
Oysel and Vling
Mary Townes
for the Sa-
moeds.*

The first Voyage into the Samoeds countries.

**The second
Voyage.**

Many Deserts
and diuers
great Riuer.
Riuer *Obi*.
Great wealth
to be gotten
by the Trade
to the Riuer of
Oni.

Conditions of
the people.
Government.
Dy r.
No Bread
Shouting.
Appareil.
Houses.

Great wealth
obtain'd by
continuance of
this Voyage.

The first of these is the fact that the

And the next years following, he sent thither a greater number of his people, joining with them certain of his Kindred and Alliance. They carried with them duers bea Marsh-line; as small Beas, and other like *Dutch* small Wares; took diligent notice of every thing in those parts; and after they had pulled many Defers, and duers great Ruers, they came to the Ruers *Obis*, where making Acquaintance and Friendship with the *Sanneds*, they found that Fures were to be had for a small price, and that great wealth was there easily to be gotten; and further, that this people had not any Cities, but lived together in Companies, and peaceably, and governed by some of the ancientest among them; that they were lothome in their feeding, and lived on the flesh of such beasts as they took; that they had no knowledge of Corne or Bread, were cunning and skillful Archers, making their Bowes of a gentle and flexible kind of Wood, and that they used to hunt with small fennel fenes or filb bones; with those they killed white beas, which are exceeding plentiful in small fens; they layd also with bones of fishes, and with the fennel fenes, and filb bones, they made a little fire, and by the heat thereof, warming them for Needles their three-bone kind of fens; they found also that the Fures, and they *teu* together the Fures, wherewith they cloath themselves: the Fures furs they turned outward, and in Winter inward; that they couered their Houses with the Skins of Elkes and such like beas, little esteemed among them. Finally, these Messengers of *Oneke*, leached curiously into every matter, and returned home stord with costly Fures.

Now when as *Ooneko* vnderstood by their report, that which he so much longed to know, he together with certayne others of his Friends, continued his Trafficke into those Countreyes for 62
duers yeeres together: by meanes whereof the *Oonekos* grew very mightie, and bought great Possessions in all parts. Those that dwelled nere unto them being ignorant from whence all this wealth aroose, greatly wondred at it. For the *Oonekos* builded Churches in some of their

CHAP. 7. §. 1. Of oil. Imperiall Priviledge. River Wichida. Oneekos.

Villages. Yea, afterward they erected in the Towne of *Osoil* upon the *Wichita*, where at that time they dwelt, an exceeding faire Church, which was rayled from the very foundations of newen stone. Finally, they knew no end of their goods.

L. Eris, that
Theodore Em-
perour. The
Kujes pro-
nounce it as
th.

[illegible][illegible]

60 After this the Meffengers pailed over the River *Obi*, and travelled beyond it almost two hundred leagues toward the East and North-east, having feene by the way many wild beafts of several shapes, most cleere Countaynes, extraordinary Plants and Trees, pleasant Woods, and Sammel or duers fotts, whereof some did ride on *Elkes* or *Lephes*, other were drawne in Sleds by *Elkes* or *Lephes*.

Imperial pro-
viders.

The first Voyage
set out by
Boris Godunov

They submit themselves to the Moscovites.

Rain:

Raine Deere,
Dogs equin
swiftnesse to
Harts.

Raine Deere, and others also were drawne by Dogges, which are equall to Harts for swiftnesse. Finally, many other things in their whole journey they met with, not before scene, and theretore the fame at their returne, And so at length taking with them some voluntary Samoiedo, and leaving there duers of their owne people to learne their Language, they returned backe into the Emperours whole successe of their Voyages.

Samoiedo thoe
rings.
Stuier.

They marvelled at the Samoiedo which were brought vnto them, commanding them to make some shew of their cunning in shooting; which they did so perfectly, that almost it seemed to any man incredible. For taking a piece of Coyne left them our * Penne, and saluting it to the stocke of a Tree, and then going as farre from the fame, as they could very hardly discern it, they did every time that they did shoot so assuredly hit the fame, that they did not once misse it. Whereat many of the beholders did about measure wonder.

And on the other side, the Samoiedo as greatly wondered both at the Moscovites manner of luring and falshions, as also at the sterelnesse of the Citie: neither did they without a certeyn terrour behold the Emperour himselfe, so richly attired and mounted either on Horse-backe, or in adorne. Then with admiration they beheld the Guards furnished with their Calivers, whom about four hundred waited on the Emperour at his going abroad. So oft also as they heard the ringing of the Bells, which are very many among the Moscovites, and saw so many themselves to bee in some Mansion of the Gods; willing withall, that they were a while aspie, that they had the fortune to see so glorious an Emperour, whom they reported themselves to be hapied as a Divine power. The Meates which the Moscovites did set before them, they did greedily cate: whereby it plainly appeared, that the fame were more pleasant to their taste, then they promysed to receive the Emperour for their Lord; and to perswade their Country-men, inhabiting farre and wide to doe the fame. They humbly also prayed the Emperour to vouchmight pay the foresaid Tribute. Concerning their Idolatrie, there was no speech made there: but they were left to their owne countries. Nowwithstanding, I thinke that the Christian Faith would easlye spread among them, if they had sufficient and godly Teachers. Neither doubt I but the Moscovites would have taken order therein, if they had not beene hindered by these most troublesome Warres.

These things so done as is declared, the Onekes were raised to great Honours, and endowed with great Priviledges, as also with Supreme Authority over many places, adjoining vnto their Lands, enjoying Possessions lying one hundred miles asunder vpon the Riuer of *Duna*, *Yboudia*, and *Sachana*, so that they are very mighty and rich, and increase daily in greater Honours.

It was further ordained by the Moscovites, that there should be places chosen by the Riuer Castles thereon, and furnishing them with Garrisons, and that there should be sent thither a chiefe Governour, principally for further discovering the Countrey, and bringing it vnder subcertaine Castles enclosed with certeyn strong beames, cut out of the Woods thereby, and fastened one in another in double rewes, filled betwene with earth, and fortified with Garrisons: And so great a multitude of men is duely sent thither, that in some places there are Cities assembled, consisting of *Poles*, *Tatars*, *Russes*, and other Nations mingled together. For, into these parts are sent all that are banished, Murderers, Traitors, Theeves, and the summe of there for certeyn yeeres, every one according to the rate of his offence: whereby there is very populous assemblies of people growne together, who with the Castles already builded, doe also for that they enjoy great priviledges, neither pay any thing for the Lands which they possess.

The whole Countrey is called *Siberia*, the Citie builded therein *Siber*. And in deed at the first, the Offenders among the Moscovites, did not lesse tremble at the name of *Siberia*, then * doe euill persons in *London*, when they are threatened with New-gate: for they were forthwith sent away into *Siberia*. But now the often inflicting of that punishment is almost brought to contempt. But Noblemen and great Personages, if at any time they incur the Princes displeasure, doe as yet very much feare the name of *Siberia*. For many times both themselves, with their Wives and Families are sent away into those parts: where some Office is committed vnto them, till the Emperours anger bee allwaied, and they called home into *Moscovia*.

I will now shew the way by which they traull out of *Moscovia* into those parts, and that

in the best manner that I could get notice thereof, which whatsoever it shall seeme to bee, I have not attayed vnto it, without great paines and ready furtherance of some friends, which I found in the Court, while I continued in *Russia*: who though they were ready to pleasure me, and that I had beene very instant with them about it, yet with much adoe were brought to communicate this particular Iournall vnto me. For if at any time after, when the Land should bee at quiet, it should any way come to light, doubtlesse it would cost them all their liues. For such is the disposition of the *Russes*, that they will not indure to haue the secrets of their State to bee made knowne.

§. II.

A briefe Description of the wayes and Riuer, leading out of *Moscovia* towards the East and North-east into *Siberia*, *Samoiedia*, and *Tingocia*, as they are daily frequented by the *Russes*: with further Discoveries towards *Tartaria* and *China*.

From the Citie of *Osul* vpon the Riuer *Wichida*, where the *Onekes* dwell, they goe against the streame, vntill they come to *Lauinia*, a little Towne built by the *Russes*, and it is distant from *Osul* almost seuenteen dayes journey. Whither before they come, they passe many Riuer and Woods. The Riuer *Wichida* springeth out of the Mountains of *Iugoria*, which to the South ioyne vpon *Tartaria*, and from thence runne Northwards to the Ocean Sea. Out of the same Mountains issueth the Riuer *Petora*, which falleth into the Ocean Sea on this side the Streight of *Wogats*. From *Lauinia*, after three weekes journey, they come to *Neem*; a Riuer so named of the gentle gliding of her streames through the Woods. For *Neem* in English signifieth Still or Dumble. On this Riuer they proceed about five dayes space with their Boats; and then, for that the *Neem* taketh his course another way, for shortening their journey, they must of force caule their fluffe to be carried by Land, the space of a league: And so they come to the *Wifera*, a Riuer issuing out of certeyn Rockes adioyning to the Mountains of *Iugoria*. These Rockes the Moscovites call *Camenna*. From hence they are carried downe the Riuer *Wifera*, for the full space of nine dayes, vntill they come to *Sail Camfof*, a small Towne builded by the Moscovites, for refreshing of Travellers for a short space, which hence forward are to proceed on their journey by Land. As for the *Wifera*, it keepes on his course somewhat farther, at length falleth into the *Cam*, which passing by *Viatoma*, a Towne of *Moscovia*, falleth into the great Riuer *Rba*, commonly called *Volga*, which entrench with many branches into the *Caspian* Sea, as I haue receiued from eye witnesses.

The Towne of *Sail Camfof* is reasonably inhabited, hauing many Villages round about it. The Inhabitants, for the most part are *Russes* or *Tartars*. Here is great store of Cattell, and chiefly of Horses. Travellers hauing here somewhat refreshed themselves, doe lade their carriages on Horses, and trauell for the most part through Mountains full of Firres, Pines, and other trees of strange sorts. Betwene these Mountains they passe over the Riuer *Soiba*, and from thence over *Cofna*, both running toward the North-east.

Now these Mountains are diuided into three parts: whereof the two first are passed ouer each of them in two dayes, and the third in four dayes. The first part is called *Camfofay Camen*: The second *Cingifay Camen*: The third *Podanfof Camen*. And doubtlesse all these mountainous Countries are much different from the other Countries out of which they enter into them. For the Woods vpon them, are firer and thicker growne with trees, bearing euery where diuers kinds of Plants. These three Desarts are frequented by none in a manner but *Tartars*, and *Samoiedo*, who onely hunt after those costly Fures, which are to pay their tribute to the Emperour of *Moscovia*. The Mountains of *Podanfof Camen* are higher then the rest, and for the most part covered with Snow and Cloudes, and therefore difficult for Travellers to passe over: but by little and little they haue a gentle descent. From thence they come to *Vergataria*, in which Towne they must abide vntill the Spring, by reason of the Riuer *Tocra*, which arising not farre from thence, is all the rest of the yeere very shallow.

But the Spring approaching, when the Snow melts from the hoary Hills, and the Land waters arise, it is passed ouer with Skiffes and small Boats. *Vergataria* is the first Towne of the Countrey of *Siberia*, and was begun to be builded with some other Townes within these one and twenty yeeres. It is reasonably full of buildings, and the lands about it are tilled as in *Moscovia*. Heere there is resident for the Emperour of *Moscovia* a Governour, which yearly at the beginning of the Spring, by way of the Riuer doth distribute great store of Corne, and Victuals among the Castles with Garrisons throughout all *Siberia*: furnishing also in like manner the Moscovites, which remayne beyond the Riuer *Obi*. For in those places the ground is not yet tilled; and the *Samoiedo*, as before is said, for the most part feed on the flesh of wilde beasts.

This Iournall
to the North-
east was hard
ly obtained by
some friends
in Court.
The great dan-
ger for im-
pairing this Iour-
nall.

Lauinia 17 dayes
journey distant
from *Osul*, a
small Towne
in *Iugoria*.
Riuer Petora.
New Riuer 3
weekes jour-
ney from *Lau-
inia*.
From *Neem* to
Wifera 9 dayes
journey.
From *Wifera* to
Sail Camfof 9
dayes.
Volga by the
Tartars called
Kail.
Sail Camfof.

The Riuer
Soiba.
The Riuer
Cofna.
Mountains in
three parts,
1. *Camfofay Cam-
men*.
2. *Cingifay Cam-
men*.
3. *Podanfof Cam-
men*.
Vergataria.
Tocra Riuer.

Vergataria the
first Towne of
Siberia.
1590.
Russian Count-
nour.

Five dayes
journey to
Iaphania.

Talab a migh-
ty River 200.
leagues from
Toma.

From Iaphania
to Toma 12.
dayes journey
by land.
Many traile
farr beyond
Oby toward the
East & South.
Tobolska the
chiefe Towne
of Siberia.

Tobolsk on the
River Tris.
Tobol Nijne
Tobol Nijne.

Pobomy a
Towne.

Tris River.
Olyogorod
ranch.

Zergolka town
built in an
Island of the
River Oby.

Nenafey
Cattles 200.
leagues above
Zergolka.

They traile
400 leagues
into the la-
nd beyond
Vasincop.
The Region of
Siberia called
Siberia Gidana.

Downe the River *Toma*, in five dayes they come to *Iaphania*, a Towne builded and inhabited within three yeeres. Thence againe they passe downe the *Toma*, and having proceeded two dayes thereon, they are enforced by reason of the often windings and turnings of the River, to cut out in certain places, for shortning of the way. In these places there now dwell here and there, *Tartars* and *Samoeds*, living for the most part upon Cattell and Fishing.

At length leaving *Toma*, they come to the mighty River *Tabat*, distant from *Vergaria* about two hundred leagues. And from thence they proceed farther to *Toma*, a populous Towne, and the Winter time, in the space of twelve dayes. And here is vied much buying and selling of place, for such as determine to stay in the Country not above six months. But many doe search the further part, and traile farr beyond the *Oby*, toward the East and South.

From *Toma* they come to *Tobolska*, the chiefe of all the Townes of *Siberia*: wherein is the seat of the chiefe Governour of *Siberia*, and of the *Moscovites*: wherein is the place yearlye are brought from the other Townes of the whole Country, as well on this side, as beyond *Oby* the tributes, which being brought together, and guarded with Souldiers, are after all the other Governours in *Samoeds*, and *Siberia*, are bound to obey him only. In this Citie South parts, and almost farthest parts of *Tartaria*, and men of other Nations repairing thither: 20
who, the farther that the report of these Countries reacheth, doe in so much the greater numbers places there are Churches and Chapels erected, wherein the *Greeke* Religion is exercised with diuers Superstitions. But howsoever, no man is forced against his will to their Religion: wonne thereunto.

The Citie *Tobolska* is situated on the River *Tris*, which with a most forcible streame, and as it were another *Danubius*, rising from the South, taketh his course toward the *Oby*, through which it seemeth to runne with the same course. On the other side is the River *Tobol*, of which the Citie taketh her name. Into this falleth the River *Tafsa*, which seemeth to spring from the North-east, and from certaine Mountaines there upon the Coast. On the side of this River the *Moscovites* have of late builded a Towne, called *Pobomy*, inhabited with dwellers drawne out very pleasant land, but that it is enured with an exceeding fertile soyle, as also with Foxes, Sables, and Martens. Now *Pobomy* is distant from *Tobolska*, about two weekes journey, toward the North-east. *Tris* with almost like distance from *Tobolska*, falleth into the *Oby*. And at the mouth of it was builded a Towne, called *Olyogorod*, but afterward razed downe by notwithstanding I guesse to have beene the extremity of the cold, for that the Towne stood 40
far vnto the Sea then they thought fit, and feared lest some inconvenience might grow thereby, for which cause about five leagues above that razed Towne, they builded another upon an Island because winds blow faintly, or for the highness of the house: so that, though the *Oby* be altho every where very broad; notwithstanding, they draw their Boats in it with ropes, alonge after the same sort that they traile up the Rivers of *Moscouie*.

Two hundred leagues above *Zergolka*, they came to *Nenafey*, a Citie builded thirtie years agoe, at which time the Governour sent certaine men thither out of *Siberia*, to seeke out young 50
tries profitable for mankind, and fit to build Townes in. Wherefore at that time they builded this Citie, and furnished it with a certaine Garrison, in a very pleasant, wholesome, warme, and being situated toward the South-east, by little and little grew to be a Citie. The Inhabitants whereof were enioined to proceed by degrees into further and more temperate Countreies, and withall: whereby at length they might more largely extend the Dominion, and spread abroad 60
four hundred leagues, they found goodly Countreies, but not inhabited. And whereas ten yeeres past, having sayled two hundred leagues up the River *Oby*, they lighted upon a Countrey very fruitful and pleasant, which was very temperate, and free from all discomforts, and the Winters very short, and in a manner none at all. They took occasion thereupon to returne into which having received such good things, forthwith commended the Governour of *Siberia*, that with all speed he should cause a Citie to be builded there. The Governour obeyed, and there was a Citie builded upon his commandement, with certaine houses adioyned; so that now it

is a large Citie; The name thereof is *Toma*, because they understood, that a great multitude of *Tartars* in times past were leached there, of whom this Citie tooketh that name for the pleasantness of the situation thereof. And it is reported that these *Tartars* had at that time a King, whose name was *Alus*: Whereby it came to passe, that the Citie which was first builded, held out many assaults of sunny people that dwell in those Champion Countreies. And now this Citie is so mighty, that in procelle of time, some reasonable great Kingdome is likely to grow out of it.

Furthermore, betwixt this Citie of *Nenafey*, and the Citie *Toma*, and *Siberia*, the *Moscovites* daily doe discover many people dwelling in the Inland parts, some of whom call themselves *Obfaches*, and now are growne into one bodie with the *Tartars*, *Samoeds*, and *Ruffes*, living friendly together: they have many Kings among them, almost like unto the *Indians* (1 People. 10
I speake of the petty Kings, not of the greater Kings of *India*.) And to bee briefe, the *Moscovites* have proceeded so farre into that myne Land, that we have just cause to marvell thereat. Moreover, there are many Castles and Townes betwixt the Rivers of *Oby* and *Tris*, builded almost at the same time when *Tobolska* was, and are now proper Townes: whose Inhabitants are *Moscovites*, *Tartars*, and *Samoeds* of their kind, which we call, *The same Samoeds*, in respect of those which are altogether wild.

And the first of the Townes is *Tara*: from which place it is neere ten dayes journey between *Oband* and *Tris*. Then *logortum*, builded about fiftie yeeres past. *Belesbe*, and *Mangofsooi*. 20
Now, both of them toward *logortum* toward the South. The Inhabitants that dwell on the west side of the River *Oby*, seeke daily to discover more and more. On this side of *Oby* are seated the Cities *Tobolska*, *Siberia*, *Belesbe*, and certaine others, builded upon certaine Rivers: and more are builded day. Beyond *Oby* are *Narva*, *Toma*, and diuers other Citie, the Inhabitants whereof mixt of Horses v. Reyno Deere, or exceeding swift Dogs, which they taken with diuers kinds of fishes, and especially with *Thornbackes*, because usually they thinke they be made the stronger with that kind of food, *logortum*, whereof I spake before, is builded in an Island of the River *Oby*.

Alto above *Narva* as men traile toward the East, they meete with the River *Tala*: on the 30
bankes whereof they have builded a Citie, named *Comgof-sooi*. The Russian Souldiers of which Cattle, together with the Inhabitants of *Narva*, about threen yeeres past, were commanded by the Governour of *Siberia* to traile East, and diligently to search what unknown Nations dwell in those parts. Therefore travelling through certaine vast Deserts, for the space of tenne weekes or thereabouts, passing in the way through many faire Countreies, many Woods, and Rivers, at length they espied certaine Cottages set up in the fields, and certaine Hords or Companies of people. But because they had *Samoeds* and *Tartars* for their guides, which were acquainted with those places, they were not afraid. The people came vnto them reuerently, and with humble behaviour, and signified by the *Samoeds* and *Tartars*, that they were called *Tingofes*, and that their dwelling was upon the bankes of the great River *lenfey*, which they said 40
did spring from the South South-east, but that they knew not the head thereof. These people were deformed with forebodings vnder their throats, and in their speech they thrilled like Turk-cooks. Their language seemed not much to differ from the *Samoeds*, which also understood many of their words.

lenfey being a River farre bigger then *Oby*, hath high mountains on the East, among which are some that cast out fire and brimstone. The Country is plaine to the West, and exceeding fertile, stored with plants, flowers, and trees of diuers kinds. All manner strange fruits do grow therein, and there is great abundance of rare Fowles. *lenfey* in the spring overfloweth the fields about fiftie leagues, in like manner as they repara vnto us, as *Nilus* doth *Egypt*. Where- 50
with the *Tingofes* being well acquainted, doe keep beyond the River, and in the mountaines, vntill it decreate, and then returne, and bring downe their herds of Cattell into the plaines.

The *Tingofes* being a very gentle people, by the perswasion of the *Samoeds*, without delay submitted themselves to the same Governours which they obeyed, whom they reuerenced as a kind of Gods. But what God they worship, or with what rites, it is vncertaine, neither as yet can be knowne, the *Moscovites* being negligent searchers into such things.

Neither heretofore will I murrell, though the Streight of *Wangats* be stopped up to the North-east with such huge Mountaines of Ice, since the Rivers *Oby* and *lenfey*, and very many more, whose names are not yet knowne, powre out to hughe a quantitie thereof, that in a manner it is incredible. For it cometh to passe in the beginning of the spring, that in places neere vnto the Sea, the Ice through the excessive thicknesse and multitude thereof, doth carie downe whole woods before it. And without doubt this is the cause, that about the shoares of the Streight of *Wangats*, so great abundance of floating wood is every where seene. And whereas 60
in that Streight neere vnto *Nova Zembla*, it is extreme cold, it is no marvell, if in regard of the narrownesse of the Streight, so hughe heapes of Ice are gathered and frozen together, that in the end they grow to fixtie, or at least to fiftie fathoms thicknesse, as this present yeere (1612) they measured the same, which at the coit of *Isaac Lamer* went thither in a small Barke, in whole

The Citie
Toma.

Tartar King.

Obfaches
the Indians
(1 People.

Tara a Towne.

logortum.

Belesbe.

Mangofsooi.

logortum.

Narva and

Toma beyond

Oby.

Reyno Deere

and exceeding

swift Dogs

which they

take with

diuers kinds

of fishes, and

especially with

Thornbackes.

because usually

they thinke

they be made

the stronger

with that

kind of food.

logortum,

whereof I spake

before, is

builded in an

Island of the

River Oby.

Alto above

Narva as men

traile toward

the East, they

meete with

the River

Tala: on the

bankes whereof

they have

builded a

Citie, named

Comgof-sooi.

The Russian

Souldiers of

which Cattle,

together with

the Inhabitants

of Narva,

about threen

yeeres past,

were com-

whose companie the said *Lucas Lamer* would have sent mee, but I would not. For I am ready to prove, that this is no passible way, and that they will fill lose their labour, whosoever shall attempt the same, unless they take another course in the business. But lets returne to our purpose.

Next morn, those whom I mentioned before, undertooke a long Journey beyond the River *Lenise* Eastward, and were somewhat afraid to turne to the South, taking with them certain *Tingoesies*, by whom they were informed, that many Nations dwelt toward the South, which differed much from them, whose *Kags* were most commonly in warre one with another. But having travelled certaine dayes to no great purpose, at length they returned home. Yet before they returned they gave order to the *Tingoesies*, to search those Countries more thoroughly; to make with the *Malcoines*. The *Malcoines* at their departure, left divers of their people in those parts, and also certain *Samoeds* and *Tatars* their confederates, after they had bestowed some small gifts among the *Tingoesies*.

The yeere following, the *Tingoesies* sent divers of their owne people Eastward: who travelling somewhat farther then they had done before, at length found another mightie River, somewhat lesser then *Lenise*, but as swift as it: And following the course thereof some few dayes, they lighted upon certaine people whom they tocke, being Switzers tooke them few. But they could not understand their language, saying that by certain signes and words of the *Salways*, which often repeated *om om*, they conjectured that on the other side of the River, they 20 parts: And pointing to the River with their fingers, they often repeated the word *Pisida*: whereby the *Tingoesies* gathered, that that should be the name of the River; but by the voyage wherby the *Tingoesies* did afterward gather, that they were knollings of Bells. The *Tingoesies* did all by the way, either for feare, or through change of ayre. The *Tingoesies* were verie sorrie for their deaths. For at their returne they shewed, that they were men of good understanding, well let, with small eyes, flat faced, browne colour, and enclining to tawne.

When the *Malcoines* understood these things by the *Samoeds*, which returned into *Siberia* out of the Country of the *Tingoesies*, effronces they were stirred up with great desire to search out the farther parts of that Country, wherefore they became futors to the Governour, that they might bee sent thither with some others joyned with them. Here presently yielded to their request, granting unto them a certaine companie of Soldiers, and enjoyed them curiously to search out all things, and to take with them *Tingoesies*, *Samoeds*, and *Tatars*. So being about seven hundred men, they passed the River *Obi*, and came to the River *Lenise*, through the countryes of the *Samoeds* and *Tingoesies*. And passing the River, they marched forth Eastward, fully provided all the company with victuals, taking with wonderful dexterity, Fowles, Goats, which they met in the way. Having travelled as farre as the River *Pisida*, they pitched their 40 Tents on the banks thereof, with purpose to stay there till it were passable, the Ice being shortly to brake up, because the spring was at hand, at which time they came thither, yet they durst not passe over the River *Pisida*; having now plainly heard the sound, whereof they were advertised before: which they certainly judged to be nothing else but the tawling of Brazen Bells; and when the wind blew from the farther side of *Pisida*, they sometimes heard the noise of men and horses. Moreover they saw certayne fowles, though but a few; whereby they conjectured that they were velleys, which layed downe the streame. They layd further, that the fowles were square, like the Indian fowles, as wee suppose. But seeing no people at all on that side of the River where they remained, after they had staid there a certaine space, and had perceived that in the spring time the River did greatly swell (which nevertheless they had formerly affirmed for a certaine, since the shore is high on both sides): At length by very great journey, and yet not before Autumne they returned home to *Siberia*; reporting, and that upon their going faire shew of that Country: And that they had seen therein many rare Plants, Flowers, as men that seeke after nothing but gain, in all things else very negligent and rude.

These newes being brought to the Court of *Moscow*, the Emperour *Boris*, and the Noblemen that were with him, much wondering thereat, and inflamed with a great desire to search out exactly all particulars, resolved the yeere next ensuing, to send Ambassadors thither, which should carrie presents with them, and should take *Tatars*, *Samoeds*, and *Tingoesies* in their company. And they were enjoined to search out the further side of the River *Pisida*, and to make a league of friendship with the Kings if they found any, and let downe in writing all things that they could observe by the way, and should make report of them most exactly. But these things did not take effect, because of the breaking out of the ciuill warres, among the *Malcoines* in the meane season.

I am of opinion, that in this country is the beginning, and the bounds of the Kingdome of *Cassia*, which bordereth upon *China*. Yet I feare the *Malcoines* will lose their labour, if they ever returne thither. But time will declare the event hereof.

Yet for all this, by the commandement of the Governours, even in the time of this warre, there was a voyage made into those parts, many Inhabitants of *Siberia* being employed in the same, who passing over the River *Lenise*, travelled further on foot; thence of whom they did the way, being not accustomed to handshoe. There also found many things agreeable to the relation of the former. And they likewise did observe the rowling of brazen Bells. But upon the diffusions of the *Tingoesies* they durst not passe the River: But they layed awhile in the Mountains, out of which they saw oftentimes flames of fire ascend, & they brought thence some small quantity of combustions, and of touch-stone: so that some of the *Malcoines* thought that the *Malcoines* Morecos, which Governours of *Siberia* caused certain costly Bells to be made, and that they commanded them to be done by the Kings of the River. *Obi* is the first beginning of the spring; and so forth the same continually till they came to the River *Obi*; wherein they 30 found that toward late certaine dayes, discharging as (as hee thought) into the sea. The few others likewise to travel our Land: giving commandement to both of them before they went. To the Land-men, that they should they by the Rivers side small the Bells around; and that if they did not arise there, then after one yeere they should returne. To them that were in the Bells, over whom hee made one *Lucas* Captayne, he gave in charge, diligently to discover the Coast, and whatsoever thereon was worthy to be observed. They did as they were enjoined. And the Mariners arriving at the mouth of the River *Lenise*, met with certayne of the which travelled our Land, which were sent before in Boats and Skiffes downe the River.

In their journey they found all things in a manner to fall out as the Governours had foretold; But *Lucas* being dead by this way, and some others, they thought it like best, for both of the Governours to returne the same way, that they came in. And when they came bound into *Siberia*, they declared unto the Governours the whole discourse of their journey, which seemed to stand to be sent unto the Emperour; and this Relation is layd upon the Treasures of *Moscow*, as well as the Warden becometh, and then, as it is thought, in that last examination, hee fear that by this time it is perished, which it is, truly it is much to be lamented; in regard that they have found in many rare and sundry Islands, Rivers, Fowles, and wild beasts, and also 30 farre beyond the River *Lenise*, a Wood of Wood, which is not to be seen in any other place.

Moreover, the River *Tura* falleth into the River of *Obi*, springing out of some place, near unto the River *Lenise*, and out of a great Wood in those parts; out of which Wood ariseth the River *Lenise*, which is to be seen in the Mountains, out of which Wood ariseth the River *Lenise*. So that even from *Obi* they travel by water along the Coast of the *Samoeds*, and passing only two leagues over Lands, they meet with the River *Tura*, downe which with the streame they fall into the River *Lenise*. And this is a very easy way, and lately found out by the *Samoeds*, and the *Tingoesies*.

Doublelesse (it is to be lamented) that the *Hollanders* have not had good successe in passing the 40 Streight of *May-gatz*; but surely they know not the right way to attempt the same. For if they attempt it by shippes, though it were an hundred times, it would hardly once take effect. But if they would thoroughly discover these Countries, then they should stay two or three yeeres about *Pesera* and *May-gatz*, where they should not want good Huters, nor Victuals: and from thence they should find out some with small Boats, as *Arcticke* and *Arcticke* parts, by the very example of the *Russies*, whose Friendship if they would procure, themselves, they should easily find *Kings* and *Pilots*: and so at length all their Costs would thoroughly be discovered.

Doublelesse goodly Countries would be found out, and not only *Land*, but the *May-gatz* Land also. There is just cause to doubt, whether *America* about *China* joyne not with some of the three parts of the old World: As wee the *Africa* joyne with *Asia*, with a narrow necke of Land upon the Redde Sea. And doublelesse, this seemeth likely to be true: For who can affirme, that they be separated? Seeing that they have found some things in the Writings of prophane Authors; whereby it may be proved, and being many Arguments from thence. And though these parts be not joyned together, yet they must needs be divided with some small Streight.

The opinion of the Author of this Story. The fourth Voyage to the River *Pisida*.

The rowling of Brazen Bells. Mountaines casting out flames of fire. The first Voyage by *Obi* and thence to the River *Lenise*.

The second Voyage: Eastward beyond the River *Lenise*. Certain people taken. The River *Pisida*. Bells.

The description of the people dwelling upon the River *Pisida*. Such are the people of the East both *Tatars* and *Chines*. The third voyage beyond the River *Lenise* Eastward.

The River *Tura* falleth into the River of *Obi*, springing out of some place, near unto the River *Lenise*, and out of a great Wood in those parts; out of which Wood ariseth the River *Lenise*. So that even from *Obi* they travel by water along the Coast of the *Samoeds*, and passing only two leagues over Lands, they meet with the River *Tura*, downe which with the streame they fall into the River *Lenise*. And this is a very easy way, and lately found out by the *Samoeds*, and the *Tingoesies*.

The right way to discover the North-east parts. Note.

The rowling of Brazen Bells of which they have in *China*, and perhaps in the North parts about it. Hutes in *Pisida*. Velleys (laying downe *Pisida* with square fowles). They came not home till Autumne. The pleasantness of this Country in April and May.

§. III.

A Note of the Travels of the Russies over Land, and by Water from Mezen, near the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yenisse, and to the River Geta, even unto the Frontiers of Cataia; brought into England by Master JOHN MERRICK, the English Agent for Moscow.

and translated out of the Russic by RICHARD FINEY.

River Mezen to Pechora, is a thousand Versts; and the same is traueled with Reine *Mezen* to Pechora to *Adamas* River, or *The troubled River*, and thence to the Bay of Saint Nicholas. The Russies call these Boats called: Coaches in several Weekes. At this place there is a certain Quierall, where the fore said Boats or Vessels are downed by men. Out of *Adamas* River, or *The troubled River*, passing this Quierall, they enter into *Zelma* River, or the *Green River*. From *Zelma* River, or the *Green River*, they enter into *Zelma* River, running down the Current; but with the faire wind it is no more but three dayes and three nightes Iourney. From Obi to *Tasi* Castle, is a Weekes rowing. From *Tasi* Castle so the River *Tasy* upon long Wooden Partens through the Snow, is three Weekes trauele. But through the deepe Channell in the aforesaid Vessels, called *Coaches*, is four Weekes trauele. At *Belamangh* them to a place, called *Torran-hamke*, *Zemina*, that is, The Wintering place of one called *Torran-hamke*. Having traueled to this *Torran-hamke*, *Zemina*, they come out on the backe side to a place called, The River of *Tingos* being a shoare of Rocky shales, said named of *Tingos*. Beyond them live a people called *The Belamangh*: and beyond the *Belamangh* inhabit the people of *Selachor*. These people report concerning *Tingos* the *Green* and *Tingos* the *Lesser*: That beyond this fore said *Tingos* inhabit the people *Indoko*, and the *Obidoko*, which is a kind of *Tasore*. Also beyond the *Tingos* is a River called *Geta*, which was traueled by the *Russies* of *Yahon*, and *Russies* of *Pechora*. These men by report here lived in the parts of *Geta*, five yeeres. After which one of the *Russies* of *Yahon* named *Wasse*, returned into *Siberia*; and he reported, that he was traueled from *Tingos* to *Geta* a Summer. Likewise, this said *Wasse* reported, that a *Samoied* told him, that in *Tingos* the greater were Vessels of a great burthen, some that drawne with the Rope, by a very great number of people: but hee could not tell what people they were, neither whether they did intend to trauele with the said Vessels.

CHAP. VIII.

A Voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by WILLIAM GOVERNOR of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilot, for Dissourie to Obi, &c.

The twentieth of April we weighed Anchor at *Blacke* in the River of *Thames*, and a ship called the *Amur*; whereof *James Hudson* was Master, and sailing along the Coast of *England*, *Scotland*, *Norway*, and *Finmark*, on the eleventh of the next month of May, we found our selves in the latitude of 71. degrees 40. minutes.

The twelfth, we came forth eight leagues North North-east, the wind being at South South-east, and found our selves in the latitude of 73. degrees 40. minutes, and at 50 miles we had thoughts of *Chorie* Island: for we were enclayed by our Commission to touch there, although it were three degrees to the North of our way.

The thirteenth, being Whit-Munday it cleared vp, and then we did let *Chorie* Island five leagues East South-east from vs.

The fourteenth, being faire weather, we stood to the Northwards, thinking to have gone on shoare, but we could not for Ice, and labouring to Land on the South side of the land, we met with *James Poole* about Evening in the *Elizabeth*, who came as then to the land, and was let forth by the Right Worshipsfull Company of our *Russian* Merchants, to discover further Northward, from eighty degrees toward the North Pole. Then we stood to the Eastward, where we found great store of Ice.

The fifteenth, we went on the South-side of the Island, in hope of the arrivall of the *Marie* *McGregor*, which being a ship of nine fore Tunnes, was let forth very chargeably by the aforesaid *Russian* Company, and had in her sixe *Barker*, being excellent Whale-killers of *Saint John de Luz*, for the killing of the Whale on the Coast of *Greenland*, in a Road called *Croffe* Road, standing

standing exceeding farre to the North, even in the latitude of 79. degrees and better. The same day at night, seeing that there we could doe no good, we determined to proceed on our Voyage for the River of *Pechora*: and Letters being given one to the other for Testimoniall of our meeting in that place, we left *James Poole*, and directed our course to the Eastward.

The two and twentieth of May, we came to a small Island, called *Bigs Hole* by *Tapani* Harbour. The three and twentieth, we arrived at the Ile of *Kidim* in *Lappia*.

The four and twentieth, *Iofus Logan*, which was appointed Factor for *Pechora*, and my selfe with two more, went to *Olenka*, and stayed there all the hie and twentieth, being Saturday, where we found a ship of *Tarmouth*, whereof *James Wright* of Hull was Master, of whom we learned the proceeding of the *Hollanders*.

The fiftenth of June, in the morning we had fight of the Coast of *Lappia*, a little short of *Cape Comfort*, and met with a ship of *Amsterdam*, by which we sent Letters to Master *John Merrick* our English Agent, then Resident in *Colingue*; and we had two Hogheads of Beere of them.

The eight, we played to *Cape Comfort*, the wind at South-east.

The ninth being Sunday, in the morning we put off from the Coast of *Lappia*, to crosse over the *White Sea*, to the Cape of *Calina* corruptly, and commonly called *Cardinali*. At noone we passed through some Ice, the weather being thicke and foggie.

The eleventh, we played to the Cape of *Calina*, passing through much Ice, the wind at North North-east. And therefore we thought it better to go to the Southward againe: and in the Evening we came to an Anchor in ten fathomes. This night we had a fore storme; the wind at North-east.

The twelfth, in the morning we weighed, and in weighing brake our Anchor: and then we stood to the Southward, and came to an Anchor; and at night we went on shoare for Wood, and Water, where was good store of Drift Wood: And within a ledge of Rocks on the West-side of *Calina* there lay ten Lodis or *Russe* small ships, some foure or fifteene Tunnes the biggest (of a Towne called *Pingua*) all which were bound for *Nova Zembla*, to kill the Morle: with the men of which I wrote we had some conference, and did see their Provisions: which were Laurens of their fashion, and Harping Irons; their Victuals were Salt-fish, Butter, Bacon, Meale, their Drinke Quaffe.

The sixteenth, in the morning we weighed and stood our course for the Ile of *Caligine*, the wind being at South South-west, and did find the Ice that was close to the shoare to be open: but at night finding that we could not fyre our course for the Ice, we thought it better to stay, and so came to an Anchor.

The seventeenth, we weighed in the morning, and stood along the shoare, which did lye South-east by East, and North-west by West. And in the after-noon, we went on shoare with our Shallop, and came to a River, which we called *Hakluyts* River, where we did see certaine *Samoieds*, with their Deere: but when they perceived vs, they fled into the Land, carrying with them such things as in haste they could get together: but left most of their necessities, as Bowes, Arrows, long Spears, wanting Iron heads burnt at the end, Harping Irons, Wimbles, and Morle-skinnes, lying hid, some in one place, some in another: which we caused our men to vncouer, and would not suffer them to take any thing away: only I tooke the Pizzell of a Morle which they had lately killed; and *Iofus Logan* lent a Knife, that they might not thumne vs hereafter. The same Evening we anchored and stayed all night.

The eighteenth, we weighed, and at noone we came to an Harbour, which, as we thought, was the very place where Master *Stephen Barrow* was in his Discoverie of *Udage*, and *Nova Zembla*, 1556, where there is twelve, or thirteene foot of high water upon the Barre, and within six or seven fathomes. Also in this place were three Lodis of *Fingua*, which when they saw vs come in, rowed out, and at night returned, and some of their men came aboard of vs, and told vs that they could not paffe for Ice; and said, that they were bound for *Sharkas Gooka*, or *Shor Bay* to fish for certayne fishes; which they call *Omitie*, which are somewhat like a *Shad*, and for Morles.

The twentieth, *Iofus Logan* and my selfe went ouer to the Mayne, which was distant two leagues, and came to a great River in 67. degrees and 40. minutes, where there had beene people: and there we saw foure or five great white fishes swimming, which are foure or five yards long, and called by the *Russies* *Beluga*, whereof they make Oyle, whereof afterward we found at *Pechora*, great store to be foyled.

The one and twentieth, we sent our men for Wood, for there was good store of Flote-wood as we had found all the Coast along, but none growing.

The two and twentieth, in the morning we came ouer the Barre, the wind at South South-east, directing our course for the Ile of *Caligine*; and at noone we passed through much Ice, which lay so thicke that we could not fyre, but rooke in our fuyles, and made fast our ship to a piece of Ice.

The three and twentieth, in the morning we set fyre, and played to the Wind-ward, the wind at South-east, with raine: and at night we moved to a Cake of Ice.

May, Ship called: *Kidim* in *Lappia* *Olenka*.

Cape Comfort A ship of *Amsterdam*.

Calina.

They glean these, *Ten Lodis* of *Pingua* bound for *Nova Zembla*.

A good Harbour, *Stephen Barrow*.

Three Lodis of *Pingua*, *Sharkas Gooka*, which is the great Bay of *Hakluyts*.

They had the third time, A great River.

Flote-wood.

The four and twentieth, in the morning we let sayle, and plyed to wind-ward, the wind at South-west to get cleere of the Ice and at noone we observed and found our felues to bee in 67. degrees 12. minutes, and in the after-noon we had fight of the Land againe, being foure leagues to the Southward of the aforesaid Harbour; and finding the Tyde to fet very fore vpon the shoare to the Westward, we stood to the Eastward, bearing through the Ice, and at twelue at night wee more to a piece of Ice.

A foretyde vpon the shoare.

The five and twentieth, we looked and sayled to the Eastward, till we found the Ice so thick, that we could not passe further: then we made fast to a piece of Ice: the wind at North North-east, thick fogge, and some raine. The six and twentieth, we let our fore-top sayle, the wind another, as we could find the thick fogge: we stood sometimes one way, sometimes to five leagues off, and the Ice lying to the Ice open; and at noone we had fight of the shoare, being four from the shoare: wherefore we made fast to a great Cake of Ice. The seven and twentieth, we lay still, the Ice lying very close, with thicke fogge weather: the wind at North North-west.

The eight and twentieth, in the morning it was cleere, and the Land did beare North by West seven leagues off, and then we let sayle plying to the Eastward till noone: then we made fast to a piece of Ice, it being very foggy: the wind at West North-west. And the same day at eight in the after-noon we looked from the Ice, it being cleere, the wind at North-west. And at mid-night we got cleere of the Ice, keeping our course East North-east.

Cape Swetins.

William Courtes girth on shoare. Two Ruffe Crosses.

A derpe Bay Westward of Cape Swetins. They goe on Land againe. An house of Wood.

They goe on Land the sixth time. A undance of Muskito.

The nine and twentieth, at eight in the morning, we had fight of Cape Swetins, the wind at North North-west, with thicke fogge weather: At noone, finding the Ice to lye close to the shoare, we callt about to the Westward. And at eight in the Evening, we came to an Anchor in tenne fathomes; and then I went on shoare, where there were two Ruffian Crosses: the Land boord, we weighed and stood neerer to the shoare because of the Ice.

The thirtieth, in the morning the Ice came so extremely vpon vs, that we could not weigh; seeing we could not passe to the Eastward, we stood to the Westward of Cape Swetins, into the afore-said derpe Bay in seven fathomes: the wind at East North-east, cleere weather.

The first of July, we went on shoare to see if there were any thing to take notice of: but we found nothing worth the going. For only we saw a wild Deere, and an House of Wood after the Ruffe fashion, where people had bene. The second, likewise we rode still, and going againe on shoare we did see the Ice all gone to the Eastward; and so came aboard. The third, at six in the morning we weighed, the wind at East North-east, and plyed through some Ice: and at four in the after-noon we got cleere of it: and at eight of the clocke we came to an Anchor, it being calme and cleere weather: then I went on shoare, where we were fittly came aboard because of the great abundance of Muskitos or Gnats. At our coming hauled the wind at South-west, we let sayle and stood along the shoare.

The fourth, we sayled along the shoare with faire weather, hauing the winde variable. The fifth, we plyed to the Eastward, wind at North-east by East faire weather. The sixth, we 48 plyed along the shoare, the wind at North by East. And in the after-noon we passed through much Ice. The tenth, we plyed through the Ice to the Eastward, the wind at East North-east, thicke and foggy. The eight, with cleere weather, the winde at North North-east, we plyed to the Eastward; and at noone observed the Sonne hauing 69. degrees 40. minutes: At Evening we had fight of the Land to the Eastward of the Riuer of Pechora; and thinking to get into the shoare we could not for the shoal water.

Crosses found and cerayne Ruffes in the Riuer of Pechora.

The depth of the Riuer of Pechora. They passe ourth the Barre, and ride in fathoms.

They view the Riuer of Pechora. The Dry Sea. They are in fathoms.

The long Island, which you must keep to the Larboard or East side, & then steer away South South-west.

The ninth, in the morning we stood backe to find the Barre or entrance of the Riuer of Pechora. And in the after-noon, seeing the Sand ouer the Ice, which was not broken off from the shoare, I went thither with my thallop, and going on shoare, we espied three Crosses, and cerayne Ruffes walking vpon the Sand; who told vs, that that was the place that we desired: and one of them came aboard our ship to bring vs ouer the Barre. But coming to shoal water, we durst not trust his skill, but stood backe againe, and came to an Anchor in foure fathomes.

The tenth, in the morning I went to find the Barre where we had eluen and tenne, and in one place but nine foot water. And coming aboard we fet layle to come in. And in going ouer the Barre we were on ground; but, God be thanked, we got well ouer, and came to an Anchor in six fathomes.

The eleuenth, the Ice brake off from the shoare, and came to fast vpon vs, that we could not thrust from it, but were put on ground vpon a Sandvye God be thanked without any harme. The same day leaving our ship lying to Josias Logan our Factor, my selfe, William Purcell, being rowed in our Skiffe by six of our Mariners, took our way toward the Towne ouer a shoal Sea, which the 60 Ruffes call, The Dry Sea, which may very well be called For on the flatbord or West side going is a low dry Sand, and on the Larboard or East side is shoal water, as two, three, or foure foot water. And seven leagues within to the South-west is an Island called Dwojoi, that is to say, The long Island, which you must keep to the Larboard or East side, & then steer away South South-west.

weft, neere vpon twentie leagues, all in shoal water; and then you shall come to the fight of an high Land called The Boluan; which in the Ruffe Tongue signifieth, a Blotke: which you must leane on the Larboard, or East side. And be sure to keepe the channell, which doth trend South-west, and South-west by West. By report of the Inhabitants the Riuer hath two and thientie mouths.

The twelfth, we passed ouer the Dry Sea, (which the Ruffes call in their Language, Suchet Moris,) to the mouth of the Riuer Pechora: where we found many small Islands, some a mile, some two miles in length, and so shoal water, that we could not get to the shoare with our Shallop, but lay in her all night at an anchor, being vncertaine which way to take: and seeing so many entrances before vs, we could hit right at none. The thirteenth, in the morning we got to an Island, at the very mouth of the Riuer, where we stayed all the day, hauing much wind and fogge. The fourteenth, being Sunday, we let sayle from the Island, the Sea going very high: and at noone we came by Gods direction, into one of the chiefe entrances of the Riuer Pechora; and came to an house, where there were two and their families, who made vs the best entertainment that they could, and gave vs directions how to goe to the Towne.

The fifteenth, we came to a Sari or Ferme house of one of the principall men of the Towne, who bid vs kindly welcome: and as the place and season afforded, hee made vs good cheer. He lay there at this time, to take Duckes, Swannes, Geese, and other Fowles: for then was the time of the year. Their feathers they sell, and their bodies they fild for winter prouision. He also gave vs a man to bring vs to the Towne.

The sixteenth, we came to the Towne of Pefkura, which standeth vpon a Lake. There was no Gentleman or Gouernour in the Towne at our arrival: for he had destroyed the Castle, and fled away the last Winter. For certaine dayes we could haue no answer, whether we might stay or no, all the chiefe men being abroad for their Winters prouision. But the chiefe Customer Mampo, sending men to know their mindes, the three and twentieth day of the same month of Iuly, we were embraced of them, and desired to stay, and they appointed vs an house to dwell in. Furthermore, they told vs that the Riuer Pechora was more conuenient for vs, then the Riuer of Dvyna; and that a great part of the goods, which come to Colmogro vpon Dvyna, doe passe in one place or other by the Riuer Pechora, which, they say, runneth through Siberia; and how much farther they themselves know not. The five and twentieth, in the morning, hauing one of their Boats full with feathers, we departed from the Towne, taking our leaues of Josias Logan, who stayed behind.

The six and twentieth, we came downe to the Boluan, where we went aboard of two Coches of some fiftene runnes a piece, bound for Munguza. Here I went on shoare, and bought an aerie of Slight-falcons, being very young. The seven and twentieth, in the Evening we came aboard our ship, and the same night took in the Feathers, and laded their Boat againe with Meale, sending her vp to the Towne by the Ruffes that brought her downe.

The eight and twentieth, we got out our goods, which were appointed to be left at Pechora, vnder the charge of Master Logan, and made ready our ship. The nine and twentieth, we weighed anchor, and fell lower downe, the wind North North-east. The thirtieth, we rode still, and in the after-noon two Lodias that were fishing for Omulias, went out to Sea, the wind at North-west by West. The one and thirtieth, the wind being at West North-west, there came in foure and twentie sayles of Lodias or Coches, all bound for Munguza: but the yeere being scarce spent they gaue ouer their Voyage, and went to the Towne of Pefkura, to winter.

One of one of the which Lodias we hired a man belonging to the Towne, to stay with William Purcell and Marmaduke Mathew, by our goods, till the Lodias came, which we had hired. Which two were to winter with Master Logan in the Countrey. The aforesaid foure and twentie Lodias were of Colmogro, Pinga, Meane, and Pefkura.

The first of August, the wind at West, we weighed, and, God be thanked, came safely ouer the Barre of Pechora. From thence we directed our course for Noua Zembla: and at noone 50 we came to Ice: where hauing sayled many points of our Compasse, at mid-night we took in our sayles, and made fast to a piece of Ice: the weather being very thicke and foggy. The second being very cleere, and seeing no way to passe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to return; and because the yeere was so farre spent to go to Cherie Island, to see if it pleased God to giue vs there any good successe, for the bearing of the charges of this Voyage. So we looked, and at eight in the Evening we got cleere off the Ice, keeping our course by the edge of it, which did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third at noone we had fight of Colgiens Island, and took the latitude being on the North side of the Island which was 69. degrees 20. minutes: and at night I went on shoare to see the Land, which was high clay ground: and I came where there was an aerie of Slight-falcons: but they did not all away faue one, which I took vp, and brought aboard. This Ile of Colgiens is but thirtie leagues from the Barre of Pechora.

The fourth, we passed through some Ice, and at noone we got cleere off the Barre of Pechora. The fourth, Colgiens bearing South-west fixe leagues, the wind at East North-east. The five, we had faire weather, the wind at East South-east, we sayled two and thirtie leagues North North-west.

The five and twentieth, we weighed, and, God be thanked, came safely ouer the Barre of Pechora. From thence we directed our course for Noua Zembla: and at noone 50 we came to Ice: where hauing sayled many points of our Compasse, at mid-night we took in our sayles, and made fast to a piece of Ice: the weather being very thicke and foggy. The second being very cleere, and seeing no way to passe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to return; and because the yeere was so farre spent to go to Cherie Island, to see if it pleased God to giue vs there any good successe, for the bearing of the charges of this Voyage. So we looked, and at eight in the Evening we got cleere off the Ice, keeping our course by the edge of it, which did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third at noone we had fight of Colgiens Island, and took the latitude being on the North side of the Island which was 69. degrees 20. minutes: and at night I went on shoare to see the Land, which was high clay ground: and I came where there was an aerie of Slight-falcons: but they did not all away faue one, which I took vp, and brought aboard. This Ile of Colgiens is but thirtie leagues from the Barre of Pechora.

The fourth, we passed through some Ice, and at noone we got cleere off the Barre of Pechora. The fourth, Colgiens bearing South-west fixe leagues, the wind at East North-east. The five, we had faire weather, the wind at East South-east, we sayled two and thirtie leagues North North-west.

The five and twentieth, we weighed, and, God be thanked, came safely ouer the Barre of Pechora. From thence we directed our course for Noua Zembla: and at noone 50 we came to Ice: where hauing sayled many points of our Compasse, at mid-night we took in our sayles, and made fast to a piece of Ice: the weather being very thicke and foggy. The second being very cleere, and seeing no way to passe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to return; and because the yeere was so farre spent to go to Cherie Island, to see if it pleased God to giue vs there any good successe, for the bearing of the charges of this Voyage. So we looked, and at eight in the Evening we got cleere off the Ice, keeping our course by the edge of it, which did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third at noone we had fight of Colgiens Island, and took the latitude being on the North side of the Island which was 69. degrees 20. minutes: and at night I went on shoare to see the Land, which was high clay ground: and I came where there was an aerie of Slight-falcons: but they did not all away faue one, which I took vp, and brought aboard. This Ile of Colgiens is but thirtie leagues from the Barre of Pechora.

The fourth, we passed through some Ice, and at noone we got cleere off the Barre of Pechora. The fourth, Colgiens bearing South-west fixe leagues, the wind at East North-east. The five, we had faire weather, the wind at East South-east, we sayled two and thirtie leagues North North-west.

70 degrees 40 minutes.
72 degrees 34 minutes.
74 degrees 30 minutes.

North-west, we observed, and found our selves in 70. degrees and 40. minutes. The sixt, the wind being at South South-west, we steered North North-west fortie leagues, and were in 72. degrees 34. minutes. The seventh, the wind was variable, the weather faire & we steered North by West, eight and thirtie leagues, and at noone had the latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. And at eight in the Evening we founded, and had eightie fathomes Greene Oze, 30. minutes. wind at West, we layed North twenty leagues: in the morning we founded, and had thirtie fathomes Oze: and at three in the afternoon, the wind comming North, wee cast about to the Westward.

The ninth, faire weather, we layed thirtie leagues West, the wind at North. At noone we founded, and had an hundred and twentie fathomes, Greene slime. The tenth, the wind variable, with fogge and raine: we steered West North-west five and twentie leagues: and at noone we observed, and had the latitude of 74. degrees 37. minutes. The eleventh, was thick foggie weather; we layed foure and twentie leagues West: and at eight in the Evening we founded, and had ninety fathomes, soft Oze. The thirteenth, at noone wee had sight of *Cherie* Island, being within a mile of it, before we did see it: and the same Evening we got into the *Cove*, and moored our ship. Here we stayed twelve dayes, taking what it pleased God to send, which was but little.

The fixe and twentieth of August, we left the Island, because the time of the yeere was faire spent, and returned for *England*, where (blessed be God) we safely arrived in *Saint Catherine* Poole, in the River of *Thames*, on Saturday being *Saint Mathew*'s day, and the one and twentieth of September, 1611.

There were in the Haven of the River *Pechora*, at our being there, about thirtie Lodias, or small *Ruffe* ships, having ten, twelve, fourteen, and sixteen men in each of them: which purposed to have gone, some to *Nova Zembla*, some to *Tasse gorodok*, and some to other places in *Mongumly*, to the East of the River *Ob*. These Lodias for the most part, were of *Ussing*, *Colmogro*, *Pinega*, *Mazen*, and *Pechora*.

Also, we that went up to the Towne, found about fiftie Cayukes, or Boats of foure, five, six, and seven tunnes a piece, fishing in the River of *Pechora* for Salmon, and other kinds of fish; most of which Cayukes come from the great Towne of *Ussing*, and the Townes thereunto adjoining, by the River *Iug*, through the Land into the River *Pechora*, and at the *Bolman*, at the River's mouth they tooke most part of their Salmon.

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of RICHARD FINCH to the Right Worshipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Company of English Merchants, trading into Russia: touching the former Voyage, and other observations.



Right Worshipfull, my dutie remembered unto you, with prayer to God for the preservation of your healths and prosperous success in all your worthe affairs. My last Letters unto you were from *Typtani* in *England*, by *Thomas Hare-castle* of *Hull*, dated the foure and twentieth of May, 1611. The other, the nine and twentieth of May from *Kyldin* neere *Camen*, by a ship of *Hamburg*: which foresaid Letters were directed to our Governour, the right Worshipfull Sir *Thomas Smith*, Knight. May it now please you further to vnderstand, That the ninth day of Iuly, we came to the mouth of the River of *Pechora*, which the *Russes* call *Pechoritzk Zauror* with our 50 ship. And being entred into the aforesaid Harbour, it was full of Ice, and hard to finde: for we found no mayne Land, fave a small Sound behind the Ice. And labouring to and fro along the land, espied two Crosses standing on the sand: and presently our men espied three men coming toward them. These men belonged to three Boats of *Pinega*, which Boats had been in our companie not long before, at a place called by them, *Promoya*, by vs, *Obfoure*, but by other Writers, *Moskowitz*. One of these *Russes* came on board of our ship, and told vs, that we could goe no farther with our ship, then the place, that their Vessels, called *vaacher*, rid in; and that to the Towne we must goe in small Vessels; giving vs directions to layle by, for the better finding of the Towne. After our getting over the Barre of the *Pechoritzk Zauror*, and that we 60 were come to an anchor, we rode in great danger by the abundance of Ice, and the strong tide both of the ebbe and flood, which droue the same Ice forcibly against our ship. For, the eleventh of Iuly, lying in foure fathomes water, a piece of an Island of Ice, set with such a power against our ship, that it droue vs out of our riding into eight foot and an halfe, and nine foot water.

They arrive in the Port of Pechora, he ninth of Iuly.

Two Crosses standing on the sand, Pinega.

Ship endangered by Ice.

The eleventh of Iuly, Master *Iofias Logan*, *William Gurdon*, and *William Partridge*, with our Shallop went up to the Towne of *Pechora*, taking directions of the *Russes* for the finding of the same. Neuthelesse, two dayes after their departure from our ship, they had mistaken their way, if by chance they had not met with a small *Ruffe* Boat, in which were *Russes* that directed them. Being about thirtie Versts from the Towne, they came to the house of one *Vasili Deadolous*, who that this present is one of the chieftest Customers: by which Customers the Towne of *Pechora* is now governed, since there was no Gentleman sent from the *Moscow*. This man gave them good entertainment, and sent up with them a man of his owne, fearing that the people would be amazed at our mens fudden and unexpected comming. Yet as soone as they entered our people, they were all exceedingly afraid. Diuers of them with their women fled into the Woods, vntill that one of the chieftest Customers had sent for them other Customers, who at that time were all out of Towne. But being met together, Master *Logan* showed them the Priviledges, of feassall of their Emperours granted to your Worthips. After the perusing of which, with the good report giuen of Master *Mariete*, your Agent, and our Nation by one of *Colmogro*, with whom Master *Logan* was acquainted; the Towne-men were well satisfied: and appointed our people an House. And many of them sent Breid, *Pis*, Ducks, Fish, and such like vnto them, entretyning them very well, according to the fashion of the Country, with continuall admiration how they found the Towne.

Touching the Inhabitants, there is no doubt, but that they will be glad of our trading thither. Neuthelesse, by that which I haue heard and perceived, it is very likely, that the same will be distastfull to the Merchants of the Country, and others that trauell thither in the Winter time, out of many parts of *Russia*: and also, to them that trade in the Summer time, by Sea to *Mongumly*, and through the River of *Pechora* in Cayukes to *Porm*, *Oussulme*, and *Pechora*.

The tene and twentieth of Iuly, our Shallop with a small *Ruffe* Boat, returned to our ship from *Pechora* Towne, departing from the same the Thursday before, being the fixe and twentieth of Iuly. In our forsaide Shallop, and *Ruffe* Boat, were sent downe by *Iofias Logan*, fixe and fortie bags of white Partridges feathers, and an hundred and seauentie white Foxe skines. These Feathers and Foxe skines, are bought of a *Colmogro* man, to be payd for the same in *Ruffia* by Master *Mariete*; and, as I vnderstand, not so cheape as others doe buy there of the *Fowlers* themselves. But if two men were left, one at *Pechora*, another at *Oussulme*, and *Porm*, with ready money and a little commodities, much good might be done in the Winter time by buying of Sables, Beuers, Beuers wombs, Squerrils, Foxe skines white and dunne, Loth hides, and Deere skines. And for the transportation of your goods to *Pechora*, or bringing of your goods from *Pechora*: the same may be done from *Archangel* vpon the *Dynna* to *Mazen*, and from *Mazen* to *Pechora*, *Oussulme*, and *Porm*, both by Winter ouer Land, and in Summer through fresh water Rivers, or alongst the shoare with speed, and with a little charge: as by the manner of their ordinary trauell appeareth, as it hath bene of a truth deliuered me, from the mouths of men of long experience.

The last of August, came into *Pechoritzk Zauror*, or the Haven of *Pechora*, fixe and twentieth of Iuly, our Boats, which was the Fleet left out from *Oussing*, *Colmogro*, *Pinega*, and *Mazen* all of them being bound for *Mongumly*: but having bene crossed with contrary winds, & the time of the yeere being spent, they gaue ouer their intended Voyage: purposing with the next faire wind, to layle to the Towne of *Pechora*, there to ly up vnder their Lodias and commodities till the next Spring, and themselves with their small Boats or Wherries to goe home, passing from thence vp the River of *Pechora*, which they told me they could easily doe in a monthes time. As soone as this Fleet of Lodias was come to an anchor, many of them came aboard of our ship, wondering to see a ship there. They demanded of me, how we came thither, and what the intent of our comming was: and whither we purposed to layle from thence. Among these were some which seemed to be Merchants, who asked to buy Lifts, remnants of Cloth, Cap-clothes, *Aqua vite*, especially, they asked for small Pewter Dishes, which I vnderstand to be a commoditie sold by them to the *Samoeds*, at a great rate. I answered them, that the goods which we had brought, were part already at *Pechora*, and the rest was to be transported thither, as soone as the Veisell came: that was hired to carrie the same vp: to that, if any of them were minded to buy of our commodities, they might haue it of one of our Customers there. After which, two or three of them demanded of me, whether I would buy any Sables, or Squerrils: which was but a brag. At this time many of them being on board together, some of them were in private talke, which was my chance to ouer-heare, and was as followeth: If these *Neamchines*, or Strangers resort to these places, it will be an occasion in short time to make vs to be without Bread. The like speeches I heard a little before, of two men of *Pinega*; and of an old man remaying in 40 *Pechora*, that came downe to our ship with the Feathers.

Touching the goods left with *William Partridge*, *Marmaduke Wilson*, and the *Ruffe*, in regard the same lay in no good place, we were desirous to haue hired one of their *Ruffe* Boats, to haue carried the same to the Towne at a reasonable rate: the rather because it was on their way, and their Boats were not ouerladen: which they with two Boats might haue done with ease: yet they

Our men arrive at Towne of Pechora. People afraid of the English.

White Partridges and Fowls.

Commodities.

The Fleet of Mongumly of 16 Lodias, Or Mungul.

From Pechora to Colmogro in a moneth's traue) by Rueter.

Small Pewter Dishes, a great commodity.

they would not, vnlesſe wee would giue them thirtie or fūe and twentie Rubbels at the leaſt, and that with Condition, that they might diſtribute into each Boate ſomewhat thereof. Therefore vnderſtanding their vnrreaſonable demand, hauing a Boate already hyred, we vtterly vſed the goods into all the fixe and twentie Lodges or Boates : which had bene a trick to haue loſtall.

[illegible]

The thirteenth of August, we arrived at *Cherie Hand*, finding in 74. degrees and odd minutes, and Anchored in the South Cove, finding the same very clear of Ice. And presently after our Ship was at an Anchor, *James Vindis* the Master, *William Gardner*, and I, went on shore on the Cove to look for Morches. Here we found a certaine Nene, which I have by *Thomas Edge*: the effect of which was: That he arrived there with three Shalups from *Greenland*; that there he had found the Ship called the *Elizabeth*, and that hee was gone in her to *Greenland*; that four and twentieth of Iuly, hoping to finde the goods which hee had left there: and that hee did purpose to returne againe to *Cherie Hand* with as much speed as could be made. Subscribed by *Thomas Edge*.

At our coming to the Iland, wee had three or foure dayes together very fine weather: in which time came a reasonable flock of Morles, both at the South Coast and at the North-side: 30
and wee were in good hope we should have made a fauing Voyage. Neuerthelesse, though there were flocks of Bealls, yet by no means would they goe on those beaches and places, that formerly they haue bene killed on. But fortie or fiftie of them together, went into little holes within the Rocks, which were so fittle, sleepe and dillippee, that as soone as wee did approach towards them, they would tumble all into the Sea. The like whereof by the Masters and *William Cran-*
don: report, was neuer done. For lying as they did, and being so off as they were, it was not possible to doe any good vpon them. Moreover, to get them off these forefard Rockes to make them come on thoe vpon their accustomed places, the Master and our men on both sides of the Iland went to draw them away, yet they would not. But by often drawing of them out of their holes, we killed as many as wee could. In the end the weather growing stormie and cold, there were few or none of them left. Wherefore iceing all hope of good to be done of them to be past, 40
wee departed from thence the fixe and twen:eth of August, 1611. for *England*. We did not perceiue any Ship of *Holl* to have bene there this Summer,

Having touch'd the chiefest points of our Voyage, I thinke it meete to set downe somewhat of the State, Commodities, and Trade of *Pechora*, *Onst Zilna*, and *Parmia*.

Pecora. The Towne of *Pecora* is small, having three Churches in it : and the most part of the people are poore. In the Spring and a great part of the Summer, they live by catching of Partridges, Geefe, Duckes, and Swannes, of which they eury Summer take a great number. The flesh of these Fowles they salt, and live of them the most part of the Winter. These people are of English

A Pound is 35. pound, or the third part of a hundred
 Altreines is a unit of their Pence, a Great of ours.
 A great fishing of Salmons, beginning the first of August.
 The men of *Calmego*, *Osnifing*, and others, that come to *Pechora*. Which must be done with great care as the times are now. One *Mosfed* a mans sonne feathered with men of *Calmego* for ready money, at true Altes the Poul, and Duckes feathers (as told me which was Downe) they fold now for feuen or eight Altreines the Poul. Likewise he told me that in former times the *Roffler* that vled to trade therin, before the people of the Countie knew what Commodities were worth, had commonly a Poul of Partridge feathers for ney. So that the chiefeft Commoditie and beft cheape is Feathers, being bought at *Pechora* with vs at *Ar* one hundred *Egler* miles on this side of the Towne of *Pechora*, is a place called by them the *Bolans*, where they take great store of Salmons. But it is always the first of August before

CHAP. 9. *Travelling Deere. Russe Merchants. Commodities, Prouisions.* 537

before they begin to call out their Nets. And oftentimes towards the latter part of the Summer, they haue much store, that they are sold ordinarily for foure pence a Fish, and sometimes for a penny a Fish of their money. Vea, in a plentiful yeare, I haue bene told, one may buy whole draughts of Salmon for a very small summe of money. The Salmon are here as fat: three Fishs weighing commonly a Powl and no more. The best sort of the people of *Peruvia* are fat: to preferre a great quantity of their Salmon with a little salt. For they eat eighthe, or one hundred Fishs with a Powl of Salt: and many times in plentiful yeares, much Fish is cast away for want of salt; which they are loath to beflow when Salt is deare.

This Salmon is carryed by the *Pechora* men to *Mezen* in Sleds, drawne with Keyne Deere. But if they be minded to carrie the said Fish from *Mezen* to *Colmogor*, then they carrie the same 1c from thence with Sleds drawne with Horfes.

Allo many men of *Colmogor*, *Puega*, and *Mezen*, buy Salmons at *Pechora*, and carrie it in the Winter time to *Mezen*, to which place they pay from *Pechora* for the hyer of a Sled and a Keyne Deere, ordinarily ten Altines, being twelue dayes journey : and from *Mezen* to *Colmogor*, being fix dayes journey, they pay foure-pence a Powd at the molt. The Deere that trauell from *Pechora* to *Mezen*, will not drawe aboute fuen Powd weight. This way is trauelled euery Winter. The first daye they carrie twelue weekes before Christmalle. And the second time is two or three weekes before Shrouetide, in which time they are that they very diligently obferue to tell the Salmons in. Molt part of the men of *Pechora* time.

mon in. Molt part of the men of *Pecobra*, haue every one his owne Deere to trauell with. And some particular men of the better sort haue twentie or thirtie Deere, which they let out to *hyer* Traudling
20 *all* the Winter time; and in the Summer time they put them forth to the *Samoiedo* to keepe, *Deere*.
Also when the *Wigwags* come to the *Wagwags*, many Merchants and others come out of *Resfita* to
Winter time is flore, brought thither by the *Samoiedo* round about the shore, of which in the
is in the Winter time and not else. The chiefeft *Ruffe* Merchants or other parts : which Trading
30 parts, I haue bene told, are the *Obizacowee*, the *Shepekiner*, and the *Yeademickin*. The Com-
modities carryed by them, are red, and yellow Cloathes; but chiefly *Ruffe* money, with which
they buy Commodities there of the *Ruffes*, as well as that which they buy of the *Samoiedo*
in barter.
The Commodities carryed from *Piscobda*, *Onhring*, *Colomago*, *Pinego*, and *Mescen*, to *Pecobra*
40 *and Mongoxee*, are Meale, Bacon, Butter, Ote-male, Tobacco, and Sale, with some fmall quan-
tities of Yeatts and tanned Beare, with some Cloath, and o-ther of our Commodities. These
Commodities at *Mongoxee* are sold at great rates. But at *Pecobra* the Commodities are sold fome-
times deare and sometimes cheape, in respect of prices. For if the *Fifteen Boates* carryed at least thirte
Boates that let out every Summer for *Mongoxee*, laden with their Prouisions and Com-
modities aforefaid, be croffed with contrary windes; and that by the latelne of the yeere, the Com-
modities carryed to *Mongoxee*, are by contraynt to leaue the fame like Commodities for *Pecobra*, (as this yeere
1671. they were.) Then commonly Meale, Bacon, and fuch like Commodities with them are
deare. For by reafon of the little quantitie of Meale doth ferue all thofe parts. For the greater
part of them liue both *Fifteen Boates* and cryed in feed of Bread, of which *Fifteen* they haue plentie.
50 Likewise, there vifeth not to goe from *Colomago* with their Prouisions, about two Boates in a
Summer direclly to the Towne of *Pecobra*: efpecially fince the Towne was burnt, and that there
was no Gouernour in the fame.

Also by the *Mongozey* men it did appeare, that there was no likelihood for them to vtter that quantitie of Commodities at *Pechora*, at any rate. For if there had, there would not haue refused to lay vp their goods in Ware-houses till the next Spring.

to lay their eggs in Ware-houses till the next Spring, and then to proceed for *Mongee* to the Town of *Turtum*, from *Turtum* they come to *Febora*, is a place called by the *Kaffes*, *Osul Zima*. This is, by the description given unto me, a settlement from *Febora*, as *Osling* is from *Celmgore*; and is likewise traversed by the same River, and is a goodly Town, and is to be travelled in sleds drawn with *Reyne Deer*. In this place of *Osul Zima* great flocks of Squirrels, *Beuters*, and *Beuers* wmbes, *Foxe* skinnes white and dunne, and other Furs, and, chiefly Squirrels, of Winter time at this place, a good quantity of Squirrels and other Furs, so that having a man in the reasonable rate. Moreover, here are to be bought *Loh*-hydes, and *Deere*-skinnes, which in the Winter time are brought to this Towne of *Osul Zima* from *Pern*, which is not farre from *Perme*. But to buy *Loh*-hydes and *Deere*-skinnes, the best course is to goe from *Osul Zima* to *Perme*, and to buy them there, for if you should be fure to goe to *Chio*, and at a farre better Rate, Also thole that is fure to come out of the Winter time to *Pern*, to buy these foreaid

theye, toward the later part of Winter carrie all these Hydes by Sleds, some two or three dayes
journey from *Perry* to the lide of a certayne River, neere vnto which is a small Towne or Vil-
lage; where as soone as the Ice is gone, theye haue small Dorthenicks and Floates, on which they
carre their Hydes, and being out of this Ruer, they enter into *Dugna*, and transport them to
Colmogor and *Archangel*.

be a

Elephants teeth, whence, and which way.

bee had among the *Samiyedi*, Elephants teeth, which they sell in pieces according as they get it, and not by weight. And I have been told, they kill the same at a very small rate. It is called *Zilma*, *Mamasta* *Kaoff*. Thus much may suffice at this time to bee spoken of *Pechora*, *Oufi*, *Zilma*, and *Perna*.

- Now I will set downe as I have beene enformed by diuers *Russes*, the Names of the chieft places which they vnto to *Siboda*, an Haven so called in the Province of *Mezen*, to the *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, or the Haven of *Pechora*, and the Distances to each place: with a Direction how to saile from *Pechorskoie Zaurort* vp to the Towne of *Pechora*, *skoie-shore*. And from thence to the forelayd *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, to the *Tamber-skoie-shore*. And from thence to the River of *Ob*: and thence to *Mongozey*.
 - I will likewise set downe a true Direction, to goe by water in their Boates called *Coyaks*, through the River of *Perna*, and other Rivers, till they come from *Mezen* to *Oufi* *Zilma*, and *Pechora*.
 - Likewise I meane to write of the *Samiyedi*, travelling from *Vaygats* to the parts of *Mongozey*, in the Winter time, and from thence backe againe to the forelayd Towne of *Mezen*, called *Siboda*.
 - Lastly, I will intrate of such Commodities as are to bee had at *Mezen*, with the speedie passage from thence to *Colmogro* by Sea, or by Land in the Sommer time. And it is as followeth.
- The things aboue mentioned, that I have not seeme my selfe, I have not slightly set downe from the mouthes of one or two, but from the mouthes of many ancient men, well experienced in the Trauelsand Trades of all these parts, which Master *James Vadan* the Master of our Ship can likewise witness. Therefore if the same may bee any way beneficiall vnto the Company, and that thereby I have discharged my dutie vnto your Worthips, I shall bee heartily glad thereof. Thus fearing I have bene over tedious by my rude Letter, I rest, with my heartie prayer vnto Almighty God, for the happie preferuations of your felices, and all yours. Written on Ship-board, the last of August, 1611.

Your Worthips humble Servant to command, RICHARD FINCH.

The Names of the principall places, which the Russes saile by from Mezen to the Pechorskoie Zaurort, or the Haven of Pechora. 1611.

From *Mezen* to *Candinas*, with a faire wind and stiffe gale, is thirtie houres saile: They sayling commonly almost 40. leagues in foure and twentieth houres, according to which it is 50. leagues. From *Candinas* to the Ile of *Colgei*, is as before thirtie houres sayling, and after 40. leagues in foure and twentieth houres, is 50. leagues. From *Candinas* to *Promoye* or *Oshura*, is twentieth houres sayling, or 35. leagues. From the Ile of *Colgei* to *Colcol-coua*, is fifteene houres sayling, and reckoned as aboue appeareth, is 25. leagues. Along the shoare of this place are heapes of Sand, in the forme of Bells. Therefore the *Russes* call this place *Colcol-coua*, beinge derived from *Colcol*, which in *English* signifieth a Bell. From *Colcol-coua* to the *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, is three houres saile, or 5. leagues. This place is only a small Brooke which they vnto for a Sea-marke, more then for any benefit it is to be reaped at the same. From *Pechorskoie Zaurort* to the *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, is sixe houres saile, or 10. leagues. So that from *Colgei* land to this forelayd *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, is not about 40. leagues at the most.

A direction to saile from the Pechorskoie Zaurort, where wee rode with our Ship in August 1611. to the Towne of Pechora, as followeth.

From this *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, they saile into the *Soboisie Mera*, or *Drie Sea*, and not before stirring away from hence South-west and by South, and in a faire gale of Winde, in foure houres they come to an Island called *Dolgoi*. This Island is reported to bee three or foure *Russe* Versts long, hauing on it in some time of the yeere many Geelce, which the men of *Pechora* take before they bee able to flie. From this *Dolgoi*, they flie away South South-west; and sayling this course with a faire gale of wind, in eight or nine houres they come in sight of the maine Land, beinge an indifferent high Land. This Land is called the *Boluanon*; and thus is 20. leagues at the most. This *Boluanon* they haue on their Larboard side. Neere this place are diuers that inhabit in *Russe* How'es: where in the Summer time they lye a Fowling, and fishing of a certayne Fish called *Omesh*, which are like our Maccarels. If need bee, here a man may haue a guide or good

good instructions to conduct him to *Pechora* Towne. Hard by this *Boluanon*, is the *Oufia* or barre of the entering of *Pechora* River. For as soone as you are ouer this barre, you come into the Rivers mouth, which leadeth to *Pechora* Towne. If it bee thicke foggie weather, then one of them continually soundeth the depth of the Channel, keeping as neere as they can in the deepest water: and in so doing, they shewome mistake their way, so that they flie away West from the *Boluanon* to the Rivers mouth, keeping the Land on their Starboard side. And by all mens report, from the *Boluanon* to *Pechora* Towne, is with a faire wind and stiffe gale, not about twentieth houres saile: which according to their sayling, is about three and thirtie leagues. And it is not about thirtie leagues from the *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, where our Ship lay, to *Pechora* Towne.

The names of the places that the Russes saile by, from Pechorskoie Zaurort, to Mongozey: with the manner of their Trauall, and Distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halting, and Rowing into the same.

From *Pechorskoie Zaurort* to *Mathysens Oshura*, or Island, is with a faire wind and stiffe gale, at the most thirtie houres saile, which beinge reckoned as before, for fortie leagues in foure and twentieth houres, is fiftie leagues: to which they flie away East from *Mathysens Oshura* to the *Taugerskoie-shore*, is nine houres saile or fiftene leagues. When they are come to this Island, they flie away from thence East to the said *Taugerskoie-shore*. Also in cleere weather from *Mathysens Oshura*, they can see the maine Land, with the *Mezenetskoie Zaurort*: where the two Islands bee called the *Zelenaya* or *Greene* Islands: to which Islands many of the *Russes* resort, to take a kinde of Fishes, called *Omesh*, which are like Maccarels: of which heere are store. This maine Land they haue on their right hand or Starboard side, lying South from *Mathysens Oshura*. That is, the long Island. So that there are two *Dolgoi*: the one, within the *Pechorskoie Zaurort*, and the other is this, which is betwixt the *Mathysens Oshura*, and the *Taugerskoie-shore*: lying as before was sayd, South from the sayd *Mathysens Oshura*. From which land in a cleere day they can see the Land of *Vaygats*, which lyes on the Larboard side, beinge very high Land. So that turning out-right, in the middle betwixt the *Mezenetskoie* Land on their Starboard, and the Land of *Vaygats* on their Larboard side, they saile directly into the *Taugerskoie-shore*. Likewise there is not much of this *Taugerskoie-shore*. For they say, that beinge at one end, they can see the Sea at the other end thereof. Also about the Land of *Vaygats* are neither Flats nor Shoals. From the *Taugerskoie-shore* to the *Carlskoie Guba*, is twelue houres saile, or twentieth leagues. In this Bay or *Guba*, is the *Mezen* or *Oshura*, or *Carlskoie* Island. Further it is to bee assembered, that as soone as they enter this *Carlskoie Guba* or B-y, they saile vp a River, leauing this Bay on their Starboard: which River bringeth them into the *Montoya Roca*, which signifieth a thicke or troubled River. From the *Carlskoie Guba* to this *Montoya Roca* is 20. leagues. Likewise, beinge a little past the *Taugerskoie-shore*, there may be described an high Land, which they call *Seemee Land*, that is, *The Hantsker perch*. And beinge ouer the *Montoya Roca*, which they see eight dayes, and eight nights in halting along the shoare by the Rope or *Beachena*, they come out two Lakes, which two Lakes from one end to the other they commonly row ouer in one Day or two Tides: the same not beinge about ten or twelue leagues. Having gotten to the end of those two Lakes, they come to a place called the *Nauolok*, which signifieth an Ouer-hall. And it is almost two hundred fathoms, or foure hundred paces in length: And hauing emptyd their Vessels, called *Coaches*, laying poles vnder them, with the Companies or men of foure or fise Boates, hauing twelue or thirtie men in a Boate, they hall their Vessels ouer, launching them into a third Lake, which they call the *Zeleny Oshura*, that is, the *Greene Lake*. These Ouer-halls constraineth them to conforce themselves into Companies: otherwayes they could not get this way to *Mongozey*. At the end of this *Zeleny Oshura*, or *Greene Lake*, they come into the *Zelenaya Roca*, or *Greene River*, into which they runne with the streame, beinge often compelled to empirie their great Boates with their Lodis, or Wherries, laying their Goods vpon the shoare: when beinge done they row their great Lodis ouer the shoals empty: and hauing got ouer the shoals, they bringe their goods on board againe. And thus they doe in diuers places of this *Zelenaya Roca*, or *Greene River*: by reason whereof they are commonly ten dayes from the Ouer-hall, before they can get through this forelayd River, which is all with the streame; but the Distance hereof cannot yet be perfectly learned. Beinge come to the end of this *Zelenaya Roca*, they enter into the River of *Ob*: and fliazing rowed a little way vp the same, they come to a place which they likewise call *Zaurort*: which signifieth a turning, winding, or entering into a place. From this *Zaurort*, they turne into the *Tawze Roca*, fliazing away South to *Tawze* River; but it is foure and twentieth houres saile, or fortie leagues from the River of *Ob*, before they come into any part of the *Tawze Roca*.

Mathysens Oshura.

Taugerskoie-shore.

The Mezenetskoie Zaurort: where Hantsker perch is.

The two Islands called Zelenaya, or the Greene Islands.

Dolgoi Oshura, or the Long Island.

Carlskoie Guba.

Mezen or Oshura, or Carlskoie Island.

A River.

Montoya Roca, or the Thicke or troubled River.

Two Lakes.

The Nauolok, or Ouer-hall.

Zeleny Oshura, or the Greene Lake.

Zelenaya Roca, or the Greene River (saileth into Ob).

The River Ob.

The Zaurort in the River of Ob.

Tawze Roca.

THE
Towne Garde,
or Castle.

Mongfy.

The *Samoyeds* on the Mayne, over against *Pogost*, are well in the Winter to *Mongfy*. We may learn of the *Samoyeds*, the trade of *Mongfy* is more perfectly. *Mezen* a Town of great traffick for Furrer. *Mezen*, in the River of *Ob*, are neither Woods nor Inhabitants, till they layle so farre up the Mayne, that they come neere to *Siberia*. But there are Woods. When they are entred into this *Tamze* River, they have foure dayes and foure nights sayling to *Tamze* Castle, with a faire wind and a stiff gale: But if they bee drun to rowe to the *Tamze* using calme weather. This *Tamze* Garde, or *Tamze* little Castle, with the Villages, Townes, and are two Gentlemen or Gouvernours, with three or foure hundred Gunners, and in this place several places of these parts of *Mongfy*. Moreover, the men of *Mezen*, and small Castles in all these Notes, told me: That in the Winter time there went men from *Siberia* to *Mongfy*, to buy Sables: delivring vnto me, that the Sables taken by the *Samoyeds* about *Mongfy*, to be richer in *Furres*, then those that come from *Siberia*. Altho they told me, that the *Samoyeds* inhabiting vpon the Mayne land offer against *Furres*, travelled in the Winter time with their Keyes from thence to the parts of *Mongfy*, to kill Sables and other beasts: And doe carrie their *Furres* commonly rebot about *Shroue* tide, staying not there long, but as soone as they had made sale of their *Furres*, they departed home againe. Further, these men of *Mezen* told me, that in the Winter time with them was to be sold store of *Squirrels*, *Beavers*, *Beavers* wombs, and *Wolves* Sables. And that all those that travelled in the Winter time from any part of *Mongfy*, to *Mezen*, or *Peozarecca*, or *Oust-Ielma*, to any part of *Russia* whether they were Merchants, or buyers of *Furres*, as the *Samoyeds* that caught them; they must of force come to their Towne of *Mezen*, to hire Horses to carrie them to *Colmogro*. By which means they told me, their Towne was well replenished with all manner of *Furres*, especially of *Squirrels*. Also they informed the same of them, lying there in the Winter time for their purpose. Therefore, said they, if we any of our Nation would trade into their parts, they would be glad thereof, and that they may be furnished of all sorts of *Furres*, and as a furre better late then hitherto we have had them in any part of the Spring or Summer time by Boats, save a very small charge. Lastly, that in the Spring time, we should not lose of a parcel of *Trane* oyle, and *Deeres* skinner, which every day the *Samoyeds* transported to *Archangel* to sell.

A true direction of the Russes is following from *Mezen*, with *Coyocks* or *Small Boats*, through the River *Peozarecca*, and from thence to a place called by them *Peastanoy Nauolock*, on the Sandy Ouer-hall, passing from thence through other Rivers, till they come to *Oust-Ielma*, and so to the Towne of *Pechora*: And is as followeth.

Mezen.
Peozarecca.
Peastanoy Navolock.

Oust-Ielma.
Pechora.
The *Samoyeds*.

HAVING embarked themselves at *Mezen*, in these small *Coyocks* on Boats, covered with the barkes of trees, they layle to a River called *Peozarecca*. From thence they layle, or draw their Boats to a place called, the *Peastanoy Nauolock*, or *Sandy Ouer-hall*. From *Mezen* to this *Ouer-hall* is ten dayes sailing along the shore with the rope. This said *Ouer-hall* is five *Rosses* Versh ower. And after they have vnladen their goods out of their *Coyocks*, they draw the said *Veresh* ower at times with Horses, that come from *Mezen* of purpose: lying there the most part of the Summer, to that intent: and they pay sixe pence *Ruff* for drawing out an empty *Oust-Ielma*: and with the streame in foure dayes they drie to a place called *Pustozera*, and from *Pustozera* against the streame they come to the *Bolomon*, and from the *Bolomon* to the said *Coyocks*, carrie *Furres* to *Ufing*, and diuers other places into the Countrey of *Russia*. All which they doe in a Summers time.

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Master IOSTIAS LOGAN to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master WILLIAM PYS GLOVE, and MARMADUCE WILSON. ANNO 1611.



The first of Iuly, *William Gardon*, *Richard Ench*, and *William Purgleme*, went on shore at *Snatmef*, where two Crofles stand. The second, we weighed anchor againe, and stood into the Bay because of the Ice: and that night we went on shore againe. The third, we weighed anchor, and stood it about *Snatmef*. The fift, we stood to the Eastwards five leagues more, and about twelue of the clocke at night, we were thwart of the Island of *Toxar*. The tenth, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed, and went ouer a Barre, at two fathomes, and came into Harbour, where we anchored at ten of the clocke in the morning in five fathomes, hauing sands round about vs, being land-locked. The eleuenth, my selfe, *William Gardon*, and *William Purgleme*, with fix of our men more, departed from the ship with our Shallop, to goe vpon to the Towne of *Pustozera*.

The fourteenth, we arrived at the fishing house of one *Euan Vastion* *seue* *seueban*, where the people were afraid of vs, and were ready to runne away: but we spake to them, and gaue them some *Biscuit* and *Aqua vite*, and they sod vs some fish, and shewed vs our way to another Fishery: but they ran away from vs, so we departed on our way. The fiftenth day, at foure of the clocke in the afternoone we met with a *Ruffe*, that was borne at *Ufing*, who gaue vs *Milke*, and such things as he had, and we gaue him some *Biscuit*, and some *Aqua vite*, and hee directed vs vnto another Fishery, about foure five miles from that place where we arrived, about fixe of the clocke the same night. But comming ashore, we found not any, save one man, who after some conference had with vs, and giuing him some Bread, and some of our *Aqua vite*, hee told vs, that the Master of the house, with three of his sonnes were hunting of Ducks, and that their wiues were afraid, and were runne into the Woods to hide themselves, leauing a young child behind them for haile. So he brought vs into the house, where by that time that we had stayed an houre (because there were so many *Maschates*, which are like vnto a *Midge*, and stung most horribly, so that we were not able to stay without) the Master of the house, and some came thither, who at the first, were afraid, thinking we came to rob them. And they were about to shoot our men in the Boat: but one of our men holding vp a *Biscuit* cake, they then came to them, and spake vnto them: but our men not vnderstanding them, made them signes to the house, where my selfe, *William Gardon*, and *William Purgleme* were: who, when they came into the house, being yet afraid, they came in one after another. Now, when we had saluted them after the *Ruffe* manner, they asked vs of whence we were, and for what cause we came thither: whereunto I made answer, that we were *Englisb* men, who because of the troubles in *Russia*, came thither to seeke a Trade, hauing heard diuers times of the fame of those parts. Then hee replied, that in times past those places had beene good for trading: but now, by reason of a bad Gouvernour, in those troublefome times, vpon a plectne hee had fired the Towne, and burned about an hundred houses: and so by that means they were fallen into poeury, and trading decayed, by reason of his great exactions. Yet hee said, that they haue great store of *Salmon*, and that the last yeere they got about 150000. *Salmons*, and in the Winter is their chiefest Mart. For then the *Samoyeds* come thither from diuers places, and bring Sables, and *Beavers*, white Foxes, *Rosamacks*, Feathers, and some *Squirrels*. So hauing lipped with him, we gaue him a gallon of our *Aqua vite*, and some fortie cakes of our white *Biscuit*, and three or foure pound of *Rasins*: for we heard, that he was one of the principall men in the Towne. Then desiring his fauour, he helpe vs to a man to goe with vs vpon to the Towne, because of the fearfullnesse of the people, which they conceit through the Warres of the *Poles*: and so we departed from thence that night to the Towne.

The sixteenth, in the afternoone we arrived at the Towne of *Pustozera*, where we found not many people, considering the number of houses there, which are betwixt fourescore and an hundred, being of wood, built after the *Russian* manner, and they are subiect vnto the *Ruffe*, obeying all their Rites as doe the *Russers*. The people were all abroad (some, in getting of *Morles* Oyle, and *Belouages* Oyle, and some fishing of a fish called *Omnetta*, which is a very sweet fish, and some hunting Ducks) lusing the Customers, and three or foure more, who were likewise afraid of vs, although we had one of their owne people with vs, and were ready to flee away. So seeing their fearfullnesse, caused their men to goe first on shore with vs three aboue mentioned, not permitting the rest of our men to come on Land as yet: then hee calling to them, they stayed, still peeping from behind the corners of their houses, vntill at the last there was a *Ruffe*, one of *Colmogro*, that had wintered with them, who knew me, and had seen me some two

Cola in Leppia.

yeeres before at Cola in Leppia, at his Vnclcs house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, shewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intent of harme: for hee knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at Cola foure or five yeeres together, and lay at his Vnclcs house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had seene mee with his Vncl at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had seene him there, and so we grew acquainted: and he went with vs to the Customs-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our coming thither, I craved licence, that foure of vs might winter with them: which they denied, alleging that they durst not without the Emperour of Russia his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was 10 remaigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, aboue all other strangers; and shewed what great priuiledges hee had bestowed on our people: and how by the English-mess meane as at the first, what a trade is now at Arkania, and what profit came, not only into his Maiesties Tresorie, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours priuiledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and withall shewed five or sixe dayes, vntill he had sent for the chieft men of the Towne-men, who were abroad, and then they would giue vs an answer. Then I desired, that we might haue an house to be in, to there was one Callem that made answer, that he would: whereupon wee went with him, made much of them, and feasted them with our *Aqua vite*, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtayne their loue.

Arkania.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to giue vs our answer, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would: but they must write vp to the *Mauke* of our sent to fixe of them of the chieft, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what we they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to send for England.

Molmogoy.

The fourth of August, five and twentie Lodys arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for Molmogoy: but by reason of contrary winds, they were forced into Pechora, and came vpp to the Towne of Pufsozer, and vnladed to make sale.

Pale baptized Ruffe.

The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, vnto a *Pales* house, of which is christened *Ruffe*, where we are to remaine all the Winter.

Frost in August.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the *Ozera* was frozen ouer, and the Ice druing in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, so that they got no Salmon, nor not so much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a *Soyma*, which the Town-men bought, that went downe the River to haue gone for *Ingoria*, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes sayling, that would haue carried them furth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, so that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gave ouer their Voyage, and came vpp to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the *Ozera* stood in one night, that men did walke on it the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of November, there went two men of *Pemega* to *Ust-silma*, to buy Squirrels, and Beavers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arose at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Slobodka Mart.

The foure and twentieth, there went duers men, with at the least, three or foure score Sleds drawne with Deere, to a place called *Slobodka*, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof: and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom *William Purcellone* went into Russia. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Ingoria.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Town-men of *Pechora* went ouer land into *Ingoria*, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the *Samoyeds*.

The eleuenth, *Marmaduke Wilson* said that he saw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I saw the Sunnes beames my selfe, but I could not see the Sun it selfe, although I watched it very stricktly. The fourteenth, it was howie, and stormie weather, and continued so vntill the foure and twentieth day, which was close weather also.

Sunne returneth.

The fixe and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the nearthe most part of it all the way iust with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was stormy and snowie weather, and so continued vntill the end of the moneth.

The second of Januarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie heigh above the Horizon.

The fift, *William Purcellone* returned from *Colmogoy*. The eleuenth, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a general Fast both for young and old, not exempting the sucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continuing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, in much as water, neither admitted they their sucking Babes, save chiefe that fainted, to whom they gaue a few Figs and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of *Pufsozer* that went into *Ingoria*, returned from thence, having had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the *Samoyeds* had amongst themselves: so that they durst not goe into *Molmogoy*, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into Russia.

The three and twentieth, came the *Carratchey*, which is the chiefe of the *Samoyeds*, but they 10 had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the *Samoyeds* of *Molmogoy*, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe *Carratchey*, his sonne, his sonnes sonne, and his brothers sonne at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told me, that they had seene ships in the *Voyages*, two yeeres one after another: but they durst not bee seene of them, but fled from them: for the *Russes* told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our coming, when they saw our behaviour, and the enterainment that they had of vs: Neuerthelesse, they were very timorous, and vnratable courteous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The second of February, the most part of the *Samoyeds* went to *Slobodka* with their commodities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the cares with the *Samoyeds* of *Colmogoy*, 20 and had layne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to quarrell pay ranfome for some of their men that were taken afterwards.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, a little Southerly, and set at West and by South Westerly. The sixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could fer it, the variation being two points Westerly: for, at a South South-west, the Sunne Variation cometh to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a *Ruffe*, concerning their trade of *Molmogoy*, who had beene there twice, and he was the first that our attempted it, and none hath beene farther then he to the Eastwards.

30 The twentieth, to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called *Zylenka*, at the mouth of *Pechora*, sayling with a faire wind. From thence to *Breit-vimof*, three dayes and three nights sailing with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of *Yngaya*. And from thence by an Iland, or rather a Rocks, called *Sveelia Lomda*, leauing it on the Starboard side for feare of Rocks, still keeping your course North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, with a land lying off into the Sea three miles, some fixe or sixe dayes sayling. Which when you haue gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more inclining to the South, five or sixe dayes more: and then you shall come to the River of *Ob*; against the mouth whereof lieth an Iland: but you must keepe the Sea-board of it, by reason it is shoald betwixt it and the Mayne. The Land all along the shoare is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East 40 side of the Iland. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes sayling ouer in breadth, and is full of Ilands: whereby they report it to be shoald. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be without a mayne channell; which as yet they haue not sought for: and therefore they iudge it unauailable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of diuers sorts: but the people here, and the *Russes* are vnwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the River *Ob* to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes sayling more. To the Eastward of the River *Ob* lieth another great River as large as *Ob*, and is very deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is unknowne. Although that hee affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes vpp the River: and all along as they went, they met with sundry sorts of People, differing in Language one from another, 50 which they call *Samoyeds*. Yea, and the People there did cerifie them, that vp more towards the South, there are *Tartars* inhabiting, who ride vpon Horses. And hee affirmed, that they found pieces of Ploughs that had beene driuen downe the River by the floods, caused by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on both sides. Into this River, on the East side falleth another River, called *Tingulsky*, and the Inhabitants thereof are so called: whereby I coniecture, that it is not farre from the Citie *Tangur* in *Calboy*. These *Tingulsky* report, that there is another huge River, that trendeth to the Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of *Tingulsky*: wherein there are great ships, not vnlike vnto the *Russes* ships, that layle in it, hauing many Mails and Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyse: which should 60 seeme to be the *Chinians*, that trade thither in the Summer, and retorne bucke againe ere the Winter doth come. The like also affirmed another, being a *Ruffe*, who hath beene in the River of *Tingulsky*, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the *Russes* tooke their Journey from hence, from *Pufsozer* into *Russia*, with such commodities as they bought.

General Fast for three dayes very strickt.

Ruffe friend.

February.

Colmogoy.

Slobodka.

Samoyeds.

Variation.

The report of

a *Ruffe*, a great

Trawler of

the way from

Pechora to Ob.

Molmogoy.

Zylenka two

Ilands.

Breit-vimof.

Sveelia Lomda.

A long Point.

From Molmogoy

Laurat to Ob

is 16 dayes

sayling.

An Iland.

Ob is full of

Ilands, broad

and shoald.

The people of

Pechora, and

the *Russes* are

vntwilling, that

we should goe

to Ob.

The River

Tingulsky.

Samoyeds.

Horses.

Ploughes.

The River of

the *Tingulsky*.

Tangur mention-

ed by Polo, a

Kingdome

Northward

from *Calboy*, or

China.

The River

Pufsozer.

Gunnes.

Ma ch.

Cela in Lapia.

yeeres before at *Cela* in *Lapia*, at his Vnclcs house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, blawing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intent of harme: for he knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at *Cela* foure or fve yeeres together, and lay at his Vnclcs house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had fene mee with his Vncl at *Cela*. Then I called to mind, that I had fene him there, and so we grew acquainted: and he went with vs to the Custome-house, where faying an houre, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our coming thither, I craued licence, that foure of vs might winter with them: which they denyed, alledging that they durst not without the Emperour of *Russia* his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was reigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, about all other strangers: and shewed what great priuiledges hee had bestowed on our people: and how by the *English*-mens meane at the first, when a trade is now at *Arkania*, and what profit came, not onely into his Maiesties Treasurie, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and which shewed the Emperours priuiledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed vs to stay fve or fixe dayes, vntill he had sent for the chiefe men of the Towne-men, who were abroad, and then they would giue vs an answer. Then I desired, that we might haue an house to be in, and not to stay without doores. So he gaue libertye to any that would, to entertaine vs, where-to there was one *Calum*, that made answer, that he would: whereupon we went with him, and were in an Ambar of his, vntill wee receiued answer from them. In the meane time wee made much of them, and feasted them with our *Aqua vite*, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtayne their loue.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to giue vs our answer, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would: but they must write vp to the *Musko* of our being here. So we thanked them, and gaue them such entertainment as we could, and sent presents to fixe of them the chiefe, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what fauour they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to send for *England*.

The fourth of August, fixe and twente *Lodyas* arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for *Molmogsy*: but by reason of contrary winde, they were forced into *Pechora*, and came vp to the Towne of *Puflozer*, and vnladed to make sale.

Molmogsy.

Pale baptizied Russe.

Frost in August.

The fixe and twentieth, we remoued from the house where we were at the first, vnto a *Pales* house, who is christened *Russe*, where we are to remaine all the Winter.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the *Ozers* were frozen ouer, and the Ice driving in the Riuier to and againe, brake all the nets, so that they got no Salmon, no not so much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Town-men bought, that went downe the Riuier to haue gone for *Ingoria*, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes faying, that would haue carried them forth of the Riuier to the Sea, the wind came contrary, so that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gaue ouer their Voyage, and came vp to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the *Ozers* fawd in one night, that men did walke on the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of November, there were two men of *Pemga* to *Chilissina*, to buy Squerrils, and Beavers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arose at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Slobodka Mart.

The foure and twentieth, there went diuers men, with at the least, three or fourecore Sleds drawne with Deere, to a place called *Slobodka*, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof: and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom *William Purfelow* went into *Russia*. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Ingoria.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and set South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Town-men of *Pechora* went ouer land into *Ingoria*, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the *Samoeds*.

The eleuenth, *Marmaduke Wilson* said that he saw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I saw the Sunnes beames my selfe, but I could not see the Sun it selfe, although I watched it very tridly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormie weather, and continued so vntill the foure and twentieth day, which was cleife weather also.

Sunne returneth.

The fixe and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it hauing the northernmost part of it all the way iust with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was stormy and snowie weather, and so continued vntill the end of the month.

The second of Ianuarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie heigh above the Horizon.

The fift, *William Purfelow* returned from *Colmogra*. The eleuenth, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a generall Fast, both for young and old, not exempting the sucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continuing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water: neither admitted they their sucking Babes, laue chole that faigned, to whom they gaue a few Figs, and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of *Puflozer*, that went into *Ingoria*, returned from thence, hauing had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the *Samoeds* had amongst themselves: so that they durst not goe into *Molmogsy*, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into *Russia*.

The three and twentieth, came the *Carratches*, which is the chiefe of the *Samoeds*, but they had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the *Samoeds* of *Molmogsy*, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe *Carratches*, his sonne, his sonnes sonne, and his brothers sonne at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told mee, that they had fene ships in the *Vogys*, two yeeres one after another: but they durst not bee lesse of them, but fled from them: for the *Russes* told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our coming, when they saw our behaviour, and the entertainment that they had of vs: Neuerthelesse, they were very timorous, and vnsustainable courteous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The second of February, the most part of the *Samoeds* went to *Slobodka* with their commodities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the *Samoeds* of *Colmogra*, and had slayne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to pay ranfome for some of their men that were taken away.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, a little Southerly, and set at West and by South Westerly. The sixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could see it; the variation being two points Westerly: for, at a South South-west, the Sunne cometh to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a *Russe*, concerning their trade of *Molmogsy*, who had beene there twice, and he was the first that euer attempted it, and none hath beene farther then he to the Eastwards. And he told me, that their course from *Medensky Zauorot*, at the mouth of *Pechora* to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called *Zylenia*, is two dayes and three nights distance, faying with a faire wind. From thence to *Brat-vinnofe*, three dayes and three nights faying with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of *Vogys*. And from thence by an Iland, or rather a Rocks, called *Scotia Landia*, leaving it on the Starboard side for feare of Rocks, still keeping your course North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, with a land lying off into the Sea three miles, some fve or fixe dayes faying. Which when you haue gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more ending to the South, fve or fixe dayes more: and then you shall come to the Riuier of *Ob*; against the mouth whereof lieth an Iland: but you must keepe the Sea-board of it, by reason it is shoald betwixt it and the Mayne. The Land all along the shore is a fine low Land, and the going into the Riuier, is on the East side of the Iland. The Riuier is reported to be a Summer dayes faying ouer in bredth, and the fall of Ilands: whereby they report it to be shoald. Yet, in my opinion, so great a Riuier cannot be without a mayne channell; which as yet they haue not fought for: and therefore they iudge it inuigable. Also they report it to be very plentifull of Fish of diuers sorts: but the people here, and the *Russes* are vnwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the Riuier *Ob* to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes faying more. To the Eastward of the Riuier *Ob*, lieth another great Riuier as large as *Ob*, and is very deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farr as yet it is unknowne. Although that hee affirmed, that he himselfe had layd at the least three weekes vp the Riuier: and all along as they went, they met with sundry flocks of People, differing in Language one from another.

so which they call *Samoeds*. Yea, and the People these did carrie them, that vp more towards the South, there are *Tartars* inhabiting, who ride vpon Horses. And hee affirmed, that they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driven downe the Riuier by the floods, caused by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This Riuier is very high Land, and deepe water on both sides. Into this Riuier, on the East side falleth another Riuier, called *Tinguffy*, and the Inhabitants thereof are so called: whereby I coniecture, that it is not farr from the Citie *Tangus* in *Cathay*. These *Tinguffys* report, that there is another huge Riuier, that tendeth to the Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the Riuier of *Tinguffy*: wherein there are great ships, not vnlike vnto the *Russe* ships, that layle in it, hauing many Malls and Gunnes, which when they are hot off, make all the earth shake with the noyle: which should be to be the chiefe of the *Christians*, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the Winter doth come. The like also affirmed another, being a *Russe*, who hath beene in the Riuier of *Tinguffy*, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the *Russes* tooke their Journey from hence, from *Puflozer* into *Russia*, with such commodities as they bought.

Generall Fast for three dayes very strict.

Russe found.

February.

20 dayes, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the *Samoeds* of *Colmogra*, and had slayne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to pay ranfome for some of their men that were taken away.

Variation.

The report of a *Russe*, a great Traveller of the way from *Pechora* to *Ob*, *Medensky Zauorot*, *Zylenia* two Ilands, *Brat-vinnofe*, *Scotia Landia*, A long Point, from *Molmogsy* *Zauorot* to *Ob* is six dayes faying, *Ob* is full of Ilands, broad and shoald.

The people of *Pechora*, and the *Russes* are vnwilling that wee should goe to *Ob*. The Riuier *Tinguffe*, *Hortice*, *Poughes*, The Riuier of the *Tinguffys*, *Tampt mentioned by Polo*, a bigg Kingdom Northward from *Cathay*, or *China*. The Riuier *Pudja*, *Gunnas*, *Ma. ch*.

were ready to returne to *Pechora* with their goods, being Rie, Malt, Hops, Salt, *Aqua-vita*, and some course Cloth. Moreover, *Ruffes* haue their Sonnes or Kinemen Leigers there, in Winter doe send Cloth and Money our Land.

Haueing made my provision for my journey, and taken my leave of Master *Thomas Ligon*, wee set forward that night, and did not aboute five and twentie Versts, to a place where wee found the Argetheij which set out from *Slobetka* the two and twentieth day in the morning by break of day. We had better passage in our returne, then we had in our journey from *Pustozersk*, by reason of much Snow fallen in the time of our being in *Ruffia*, and frozen so hard, that it bare both Deere and Sleds in all places. Wee kept together with the Argetheij, being then two hundred and fiftie Sleds, till we had passed more then two thirds of our way over the Mountaynes: and then long before day haueing closed Buckes of the beff, wee departed the fourth of Ianuarie, being eight Sleds in company, and did not all that day and night following, being Moon-light, save sometimes for the space of an hour that wee layed where, the *Samoedi* our Guide knew there was good store of Moss, (which is white) to refresh our Deere. The fifth of Ianuarie, we came to *Pustozersk*, haueing in forcie hours travelled three hundred and fiftie Versts with our choice Buckes. Our Argetheij or Caravan arrived there after vs the twelfth of Ianuarie.

The *Samoedi* being the onely Guides in Winter, either from *Pustozersk* to *Slobetka*, or to any other places Eastward, as *Ougria*, *Siberia*, or *Malgomys*, know, by their continual trauell, the way, though it be neuer so thick weather, as also where the most store of white Moss is growing: and according as they find themselves nere unto some mossie place, be it something before night, or within night four or five hours before they can come thither: there for that Night they pitch their Tents, being for the most part made of Deere and Elkes skines: we had in our company foure great Tents set vp, and some twentie vnder each Tent. This worke of pitching the Tents belougth vnto the Women. In the meane time the men vnyoake the Deere, and sume them loose to digge through the Snow, bee it neuer so deepe, for their food and sustenance. Then the *Samoedi* (of every Tent one) out of the next Wood, prouide as much Fuel as shall serue for their stoves.

First, they set on Kettles full of Snow water, which being melted, they drinke thereof euery one a good draught: then they feast their Supper, ving as before round about the Fire, haueing vnder vs for our Beds the skines of Deere, covered with our day apparel. For all the time of our journey, the Merchants, whether *Stranger*, *Ruffe*, or *Permic*, according to the number of them, make provision of *Vituls* to feed the whole familie in euery Tent, euery man his day about, together with the *Samoedi*, their Wives and Children: who carrie all their Household euery where with them; and out of their Sonnes and Daughters, they appoint a watch over their Deere, for feare of the Wolfe and other Beasts, which notwithstanding their watch sometimes kill in a night one or two of their Deere, as it fell out nights in our journey to *Slobetka*. This *Slobetka* is a pretie Towne, haueing in December and Ianuarie, great resort of people repaying thither, as well *Rich Ruffes* out of many places, with many to buy Fures, as others with provision of Meale and Malt, and other Commodities, to furnish the *Pustozersks*, as also to buy Fish, to wit, Salmon, Oyle of *Bealuges*, Deere skines, 40

The tenth of Ianuarie, the Inhabitants of *Pustozersk*, returned from Trading with the *Samoedi* of *Ougria*, on which Journey they let forward the five and twentieth of Nouember: and within three dayes after, came betwixt eight or nine hundred *Samoedi* with a small quantitie of their Commodities, in respect of former yeeres, by reason of Warre betwixt the *Samoedi* of *Ougria*, and *Malgomys*, who were wont to Trade one with another, and not to warrone a samit another. So Sables, and other Commodities being scant, the Inhabitants sold them very deare: yet notwithstanding, the *Ruffes* bought vp all, fitting one to haue them before another. So that after that little money, which we had was bestowed, we could not doe any thing in barter. Moreover, the *Ruffes* did not onely informe against vs to the Inhabitants to stirre them vp against vs, but also vied the like meanes to the Inhabitants to disuade them from trading with vs, either in their own Countries, or else where; allalleging that we would betray them, and not onely carrie them away to make them Slaves, and robbe them, but also would murder and destroy all the rest, wherefoer we should come. The Inhabitants also of *Pustozersk*, being incited by the *Ruffes*, doubting we would enter farther into their Trade Eastward, began also to hinder, and forbid the *Samoedi* to come to vs. Yet by meanes of our Host being a *Palce* borne, we spake with diuers of the principall of the *Samoedi*, hee being our Interpreter, and wee our selues vnderstood certayne *Samoedi* speaking broken *Ruffe*, and by these meanes we found out more at large the delipshulnes of the *Ruffes*, and the enuie of some of the Inhabitants against vs (as also their feare, least we or any other *Stranger*, should enter into further Discouerie of their trafficking toward the East, but especially about the Riuer Obi. Some sayd we were sent as spies to betray their Land to the *Poles* or the *Swedes*, with whom they had warre. Some saye counsell to put vs vnder the Water: others aduised to let vs vpon the Beale, where wee should haue been without all doubt drowned in short space, others thought best to fend vs vp

to the Nobilitie, and to seaze on all our goods to the vfe of the State. But diuers of the best in the Towne, with whom wee kept all friendship that possible we could, withstood thofe bloudie practices. The Lord therefore bee blessed.

The fifth of March, the Inhabitants of *Pustozersk* went againe to *Slobetka*, carrying the *Ruffes* March with their Commodities thither.

They returned home the eleuenth of April, 1611. The one and twentieth of April, water was first fene vpon the maine Riuer *Pechora* aboute the Ice, descending from about *Oust-silma*. The twentieth of May, the Ice brake vp. The five and twentieth of May, certayne of the Inhabitants of *Pustozersk*, went by water vnto *Oust-silma*.

The fixe and twentieth, *Iofas Ligon* with our Host the *Polonian*, hired a Boate and went toward *Oust-silma*, carrying with him certayne Cloath and Copper Kettles, in hope to sell them well there, being intreated in the Summer before by one of their Townelmen to come thither, or to send one to Winter there: alledging that they got great store of Loh-hydes, Squirrels, Sables, and Beuers. Which some yeeres indeed, as we were credibly informed, fallett out according to his report. But at his arrival there, diuers of the Townelmen came against him, and would not suffer him nor any of his Boate to Land for the space of ten houres: but in the end, they let him goe on (thou after, as wee suppose, the Inhabitants of *Pustozersk* had bought most of their Commodities. So that hee staying there two dayes, could get but nine Loh-hydes, and halfe a timber of course Sables, in barter for some Cloath and Copper. The principall cause of his going thither, was, to meete with some of the *Permic* out of *Permia*, who some yeeres come downe with Rie, and Rie-meale, and thought to haue giuen notice to thole *Permic* of our being at *Pustozersk*, and to haue willed them to haue perswaded their Countrey-men to bring thither the next Spring following all their Commodities, being Waxe, Honey, Loh-hydes, and Fures, which they might doe for halfe the charge that they are at in bringing them to *Archangel*, on the Riuer *Dvina*.

Oust-silma is a pretie Towne of some sixtie Houles: and is three or foure dayes sayling with a faire wind against the streame from *Pustozersk*, but backe againe they may layle it in two dayes. The third of Iune, came the first *Ruffes* in their Cayooks by Riuer out of *Ruffia* to *Pustozersk*. These Cayooks, be small Boates of two tunnes, haueing two men in each Boate.

The twentieth of Iune, came *Ruffes* Coes or Boates, passed by *Pustozersk* from *Oust-silma* for *Malgomys*. The one and twentieth, sixe *Ruffes* Soymas more departed from *Pustozersk*: all the rest haueing giuen out their Voyage, which came thither the Summer before, 1611. The two and twentieth, one Soyma belonging to the Towne of *Pustozersk*, departed for *Malgomys*.

The three and twentieth, and foure and twentieth, the Inhabitants of *Pustozersk*, went to Fifth for *Bealuges* vnder the *Boluan*, being the highest Land nere vnto the *Dvne Sea*, and two dayes sayling from the Towne.

The five and twentieth, I departed after them, and arrived there the seuen and twentieth, hoping to haue prouided good store of *Bealuges* Oyle. But it fell out contrarie: though there were aboute fiftie Boates, haueing in euery Boate three men, and in many foure, by reason it pleased God to fend such windie and stormie weather, that the Boates could not goe to Sea in many dayes together, during their wouted time of Fishing for thofe Bealls: being till the twentieth of Iuly. Then euery man leaueth that Fishing and repaire to their owne Fisheries, to hunt Ducks, Grete, and Swannes, which most yeeres they get in abundance, and make good profit of their Feathers and Downe: as also of their Fleeth, which they fillt vp in Caske for Winter provision, fering them also all the Summer for Fleeth Coes. These *Bealuges* they catch with harping Irons, eyed fast to a long rope of nintie or an hundred fathoms, with a staffe of the length of eight yards or somewhat longer, being put loose into the Iron, wherewith when the least cometh within the reach of him that struketh, he smiteth him with the Iron, leauing it in the Beall: then the therope being layed out cleere to vnto the man, holding his Staffe still in his hand: but the Beall being wounded hasteneth to the bottome, where haueing beate himselfe nere to death, hee fall in their rope by little and little, the Beall ascending thereby. And if they finde him not nere death, they strike him againe: and being dead they cut off his skinne with the fat on it in many parts, some the breadth of two hands, some more or lesse. Then coming on shoare, they take the Fat from the skinne, and cut it in small peeces to dissolve it to Oyle, casting away the Fleeth which is red, to the Fowles of the Sea: excepte some poore *Samoedi* come that way, who take it, though it haue lyeen putrifying two or three dayes, and dyeth it, and maketh good cheare with it with his Familie. This Beall is as bigge as two good Sturgeons. Moreover, I was informed by an ancient Traueller, that the Fleeth and Fat of that Beall, being cut as Beefe much better then young Whales, which I haue heard that they fillt three Barrells. In these Summer when I was there, by reason of Northerly windes blowing hard, they killed by all their Boates not aboute fiftie Bealls: with some Boate they killed two, with other three, with some foure, But with most not one.

April, 1611:
May so be the
brake up.

Our men in-
treated to win-
ter at *Oust-
silma*.

Oust-silma.
Iune 3.

Sixteene *Soymas*
depart for
Malgomys.

Fishing for
Bealuges vnder
the *Boluan*.

Manner of kil-
ling them.
The *Ruffes* vnto
the Ice vnto
to kill the
Beall as they
doe their *Bea-
luge*: but their
rope is longer,
and a barrell
made
one end to
buoy it.
Samoedi po-
uerne.
Bealuge made
meate in *Italie*

Snow bene-
teeth their Tra-
uill.

The fourth of
Ianuarie.

Mossie food for
the Deere.

The manner
of encamping
with the *Sa-
moedi*.

Their Tents.

Hard sofly lod-
ging.

Poorer *Samoedi*

Dangerous
Wolves,
Slobetka.

Trade with the
Samoedi of *Oug-
ria*.
Eight or nine
hundred *Sa-
moedi* come to
Pustozersk.

The false sug-
gestion of the
Ruffes against
vs.

July 19. The thirteenth of July I received a Letter from Master *Iofus Logan*, the effect whereof was ;
A Buaceine by Ruer to *Puffocera*, so which flood them in fourteene Rubbels or Marks for vs to goe in her, or by Lodia for *Ruffia*.
terch home For they were purposed not to send a Ship for vs that yeere.
M-her Logan The ninth of August, Master *Iofus Logan*, and *Marmaduke Wilson*, came from the Towne of
and his Com- *Puffocera* in a Lodia to goe for *Ruffia*, and Anchored in the *Gloembe*, which is a deepe place of
pany into *Ruf- the full faling with Omelies, and Seepies falted in Catke, attending a faire winde.*
fa. The ninth of August, we set fayle out of the *Gloembe*, and entred the *Sueboi-morie*, that is,
August. *The Driv or Iouda Sea*, and flirred away next land North North-east.
The *Gloembe*. The nine and twentieth, a litle before day, not thinking we had bene so neere the Land, 10
Promoi Catoy. we were on the Breches of *Promoi Catoy*, or the Sands of *Promoi*, a bad Harbour so called by the
Ruffer, and beate ower one Sand by Gods providence onely, so high, being halfe full of water, that
in dispaire of euer getting her off againe, wee unladed most of the goods, as Fish, Oyle, Fea-
thers, Downe, and Lohi-hydes, as soone as it began to bee day-light, and the *Ruffer* knew
vs to bee vpon the mayne Land. The thirtieth day, being somewhat calme and the wind Easter-
ly, but thicke weather still, there came three men from *Uafie Berogen* his Lodia, who was our
Confort, while wee were working to get our Lodia a floate againe, and told vs, that their Lo-
dia was beaten in peeces vpon the mayne Land, some seven or eight Versts to the Westward of
vs. The one and thirtieth, wee laboured againe, and by Gods assistance got her a floate, hauing 20
taken out almost all her goods ; and that night laded some part againe.
September. The first of September, we got all our goods aboard, and at Night-tide being faire weather,
the winde North-west and Moone-light, wee put from that comfortlesse place, and went into
the *Promoi* Harbour, hauing on the Barre nine or ten foote water ; but within foure or five fa-
thoms. A South-west Moone maketh there a full Sea. It is in the great Bay betweene *Sue-
nor* and *Candinas*. The second, the winde at East North-east faire weather, wee set fayle with
our leake Lodia, the Pumpe neuer refing.
The third, the winde variable, wee fayled againe the shoare till about Noone : then the
wind coming to the West, wee put backe againe for *Christena Staumoecha*, which is the Croffe
Harbour, where wee rode in a fine Ruer, hauing a bad Barre.
The ninth, in the Morning wee purposed to put to Sea againe, the winde Easterly ; but the
Barre was so growne and warped vp with sands, when wee came vpon the entrance of it, that
we could not passe ower, neither with Wind nor Oares, but were forced vpon the mayne : where
our Lodia was beaten so high vpon the land, that all hope of fauing her was past. That day wee
got out of her an hundred Barrells of Fish and Oyle, and yet we could not get her off againe.
The tenth, the winde being at North-west, caused high Tides, by which means we got her
off, and brought her againe into Harbour. The eleuenth wee had so much winde and Snow, that
we could not get our goods aboard all that day. The twelfth, we got all aboard, hauing stopped
most of our leakes with Mofse and old Clouters.
The thirteenth, the wind at East faire weather, wee put to Sea out of that bad Harbour, lea- 40
uing one of our Boates there, and eight Barrells of Fish to rale our leake Lodia. The fourteenth,
about mid-night we were thwart of *Candinas*, and flirred South-west, and South South-west all
the next day : but the Night following being much winde, the *Ruffia* eschewing themselves to
bee on the Westerne shoare, strooke fayle, and by Day-light wee saw Land to the Westward of
the *White Sea*, being the sixteenth day : and wee were forced againe into another bad Harbour,
in called *Dumio Solt*, that is, *Dumio Piller*, on the Coast of *Lapland*, where we made our Lodia
fast among the *Rockes* : where there lay drie halfe-tides, and lay there benept and wind-bound
vntill the fixe and twentieth day : and then at Tide-time wee got out of that place.
The eight and twentieth, wee entered into the Ruer of *Dugna*, and landed that night at the
Castle of *Archangel* in the *English* House, all our Oyle, Lohi-hydes, and other goods ; as *Sea-
thers*, Downe, &c.
The nine and twentieth, about mid-night we came to the *English* House at *Columgro*, and there
continued all the Winter.
The three and twentieth of April 1613. the Ruer of *Dugna* brake vpat *Archangel*.

Other Observations of the sayd WILLIAM PURFLOGUE.

From *Medanike Zaurov* to the Isle of *Uogay*, is two dayes fayling with a *Ruffe* Lodia. 60
Barre. From *Uogay* to the Ruer *Ob*, is foure dayes fayling. The Ruer *Ob* lyeth North and South,
Uogay Land. The course from *Vergay* to *Tunka*, is North-east ; and from thence East to the mouth of
The Ruer *Ob*. Within the *Ob* some three dayes fayling, is a Ruer on the East side called *Tu*, hauing as it
The Ruer *Tu* it were a Barre at the entrance thereof : yet there is alwayes eleuen or twelue foote water vpon

it, but within it is very deepe. Within two dayes fayling within the *Tu*, the *Ruffe* hath build-
ed a Towne and a Castle, being called *Molgomfy* ; where all the Hunters of Beasts assembl-
ed, and bring their Furs with them. Also the *Ruffe* Soyams or Boats and choise of *Puffocera*, come thir-
tier with their Meale and other Merchandizes. And hauing sold or bartered their Commodities,
they once returne home, some to *Puffocera*, and others to *Ruffia*. The Hunters also provide a
the next Winter for Hunting againe.
There are three Riuers vnder the high Land of *Ongoria* and *Naramsey*, and great flocks of
Morfies about the point of *Naramsey*, whither the Inhabitants of *Puffocera* do send a
Lodia in the Autumne, with diuers Commodities to trade with the *Ongorian Samoiedi*. Also
they kill many Morfies, onely taking their Teeth, and trauell among the *Samoiedi* all the
to trade with them, and returne ower Land to *Puffocera* in Ianuarie next following. Some
yeeres, if the winde doe not serue them instantly, they are glad to get that Voyage by Sea.
As for example, in the yeere 1611. when we wintered there, the frost came vpon them before
they had wind to serue them ; whereupon they were forced to giue ower that Voyage. And as
soone as they could trauell by Sled, some of the richest of the Somes and Seruants of the Town-
men, were sent with certayne Commodities to barter with the *Samoiedi*, against their Fathers or
other Friends should come after in the Winter, and to buy vp all the best Furs and other Com-
modities.
The *Ruffer* when they fayle for *Molgomfy* in their Soyams, goe not about *Naramsey* point to
the mouth of the Ruer *Ob*, but fayle vnto name Ruer, called *Metracia Rea*, that is to say, the
Mudde Ruer, &c. at the head thereof they hale their Boats ower a litle neck of land into the Ruer
Zelenai, that is, the Green Ruer, &c. to fall down into the Ruer *Ob* and so faile Southward vnto
the Ruer *Ob* till they come to the Ruer *Tu*. From the Barre of *Tu* to the Riuers mouth, is about
daies & a nights fauing. There is an Island in the mouth of *Tu*, being very high Land. From thence
the Riuers to the Towne, leauing the Island on the left hand are eight dayes fayling. But ere you
come to the *Tu* Riuers, there is a small Ruer called *Power*, or *Piet* ; where they get the best
flocks of all *Molgomfy*. And vnto the Ruer *Tu* to *Valchanko*, against the streame are fixe dayes
fayling Eastward, till you come to a Voloc, or necke of Land a mile and an halfe ower, being
marsh ground, ower which the *Ruffer* and *Puffocers* hale their Boats into another Ruer, called
30 *Toromban*, and rowing downe with the streame three dayes, they fall into the mightie Ruer *Ze-
nifce*. At the mouth of the Ruer *Toromban*, there dwell people on an Island, hauing builded them
a litle Towne and a Church. And from thence they fayle downe the Ruer to *Hamick*, which
is a great Ruer, and runneth vnto the East.
The Ruer of the *Tunguffie*, is three dayes and three nights fayling within the Ruer *Tenifce*.
There are no Woods neere vnto the mouth of *Tenifce*. But in the Ruer of *Tunguffie* are great flocks
of Woods. There are two or three Riuers betweene the mouth of *Tenifce* and *Tunguffie*, but not
so large as the *Tunguffie* Riuers : is neere vnto which the *Ruffes* doe fish ; and as soone as it is
frezeth, they goe againe to their old trade of hunting the Sables, Beuers, and Foxes. And hauing in
two winters (so laboured for themselves, those that be good Husbunds returne rich into *Ruffia* and
40 except they fall againe into pueritie through fire or other wayes, neere returne thither againe.
The *Tunguffie* are a taller people than the *Samoiedi*, and wear their Garments made of skins
shorter, and made closer to their bodies than the *Samoiedi*. They be a very gentle people to con-
uerse withall.
From the mouth of *Ob* to the great Ruer *Tenifce*, as a *Ruffe* told mee, is foure dayes and foure
nights fayling. Betwixt *Ob* and *Tenifce*, is high blacke Land.
Beyond *Tenifce* Eastward is another great Ruer, called *Pifida*. The Land trendeth due East
beyond the Ruer *Tenifce* to *Pifida*, and to another Ruer, called *Catowga*, which cometh out of
Catoy, whole King the *Permauer* call *Tunka Tfor*. The Ruer lyeth North and South, they
know not how farre. For the *Tunguffie*, of whom they haue intelligence of this Ruer, are afraid
50 of Gun-shot that they doe beare, which they vfe on the South part of that Ruer, and dare not
trauell vp it. In it they fyw Vessels with two or three fayles, which in the Spring, fayle downe
the Ruer Northward, and in the Autumne, returne againe to the South. But they know not
whether they fish, or goe to gather some Mynes, which are supposed to be in those Countreys,
not daring to goe neere them. It was told me, that betwixt *Pifida* and *Catowga*, about the mid-
way vnto the Sea-coast were found diuers Stones, some like vnto Gold in colour, other white
and like Silver. Also the *Tunguffie* haue seene people about that great Ruer, called *Catowga*,
riding on Horses : and it is said, that there is great flocks of Corne, Beefes, Horses, Sheepe, and
Goates in this Countrey.

The trauell from *Pechora* to *Permia*, *Ongoria*, and to the Ruer *Ob*, and
the Townes situated thereupon, ower Land.

From *Puffocera* vnto the Ruer *Pechora*, with a faire wind to the Ruer *Ob*, is fourteen dayes
fayling by Ruer. From *Onse* to *Pedamen*, ten dayes. From *Pedamen* to *Ob* eight dayes by
Decem-

Molgomfy
a great Mart.

Ongoria and
Naramsey.

Score of Mor-
fies. They returne
from *Uogay*
in Ianuarie.

Metracia Rea,
Zelenai Ruer,
Ob Ruer.
Tu Ruer.
Anland in the
mouth of *Tu*,
A Towne
of Land.

The Ruer *Tu*
runneth
the Ruer
Hamick.

The Ruer of
the *Tunguffie*.
Two or three
Riuers from
Tenifce vnto
the mouth of *Ye-
nifce*.

The Ruer *Pifida*
da.
The Ruer *Ca-
towga*.

Ships with two
or three sailst.

Horses about
the Ruer *Ca-
towga*.

Deere.

Deere in Winter time, as soon as the Snow is fallen and frozen. From thence to *Berefova* (sixteen days); which is a Towne of Trade, it is from *Pultozera* to *Vade* in *Ougoria*, being on the West Houses thereof builded vnder the ground.

The River of *Pechora*, runneth through great *Permia*; and the head thereof is five Weekes traucell from *Pultozera*.

Vercho-tovnia.

From Great *Permia*, is nine dayes trauell by Horse and Sled to *Vercho-tovnia*. *Vercho* signifieth in the *Russe* Tongue, The higher; as *Vercho-tovnia*, is *Tovnia* The higher. From thence by River is ten dayes journey to *Tumen*. From *Tumen* to *T-shofka*, six dayes downe the River *Irish*. *T-shofka* is the chiefest Citie in *Siberia*. From *T-shofka* to *Surgout*, or *Sergall*, is six Weekes journey vpon the River *Ob*. From *Surgout* to the Citie *Tem*, (called among the *Tartars*, is three Weekes to the Southward: But they suppose that it runneth much farther to the South, by reason thereof to come to many feuerall Nations downe the said River to trade at *Surgout* and *T-shofka*: as namely, the people of *Banghar*, the *Teficks* or *Perjian* Merchants, and many ferts of *Tartars*. *Abraam Michaelovitch* was chiefe Customer at *Surgout*, 1611. And hee told mee, that hee receiued for the Emperours Custome for goods, bought and sold that yeere, the summe of sixteene thousand Robles, or Markes.

The Country of King Alteen.

Moreover, he told mee, that the people of *Cathay* doe trade to *Surgout*, and people from diuers other Kingdomes, as from *Alteen*, or King *Alteen*, who among other things bring *Plates of Silver* and sell them. Another *Russe* named *Philas*, who had trauelled farther among the *Tinguffies*, then any other *Russe*, and spake their Language, told mee he had bought of a *Tinguffie*, a Glasse Plate of Silver weighing in *Russe* Money thorne two *Alteens*, four *Dingoes*, for twentie blue Glasse Beades.

An Alteen is fiftie penney, a Dingoo is apenie.

Berefova vpon the *Ob*, before you come neere *T-shofka*, is a Towne of Trade for Fures, but especially for Loh-hides; which are bought for tenne *Alteens* a peece. I was told by a *Permie*, that there was a *Russe* which bought four thousand Elkes, or Loh-hides, there for a fourth part of a Roble or Marke a peece.

Hawkes as white as snow.

To the Eastward of *Pechora* are store of Hawkes, which I hold to bee as good as the *Turkie* Hawkes, namely, light Falcons, Goshawkes, and let-falcons, whereof some are as white as Snow, others speckled White and Red, Likewise, there are all kinds of the richest Sables brought from *Mulgomy*, and blacke Foxes. There is also Chriffall of the Mountaine, if we might haue libertie to trauell those Countreys, wee might haue these Commodities cheaper there then at *Pechora*. And within the *Ob* we might vent our Commodities at a better rate.

Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinguffies.

Russe Money.

First, at *Pechora* readie Money, being *Russe* Money, is the best and principallest both to put off 40 other goods to profit, as also to get credit among the Merchants strangers at our first coming thither, till Trade be settled and knowne through *Permia*, and *Siberia*. Sale, Rice, Meale, white *Daukie* Rice Kill-dried for heating in the ship, Oat-meale and Butter for the *Samoeds*; all sorts of course Cloth, some fine Cloth, Copper, and Brasse Kettles of the middle size, from two pound to thirtie, or thirtie fine. But Brasse not above fiftene pound with eares of Brasse, all the Kettles and eares of one peece. Also Files to harpe Arrows and other things, small Horse-bells, course Canasse for vpper Gownes. Four peny, six peny, and ten peny Nayles: small Anchors of foure and twentie pound a peece. Frankincense for their Churches and Houses.

Commodities for the Tinguffies.

A course Ham-burgh Cloth.

Pewter, Pewter Sawcers, Little Platters, Flat Porringers, some grauen, some vngrauen. Nells of Cups, some grauen, others vngrauen. Salt-sellers. Plates, or sheets of Latten being white. *Hamburgh* Lichenas, Blue, Red, and Tawny. But I think our course Northernne dozens, and course Kettles Northernne diu into those colours, would vent as well and better then they: they being thicker walked, and the *Samoeds* delight altogether in thicke Cloth. Grey dozens of an easie peece would vent well among the *Permiecks*, which were much grey or mingled coloured course Cloth. And some course dozens died Yellow, or Northernne course Cloth Red and Yellow, would bee no bad Commodity.

Aqua vita of two sorts, the best and indifferent for the *Samoeds*. Glasse Beades, Skie coloured. Needles round and three square. Brasse Balons, *Russe* Linnen Cloth, or *Polsk* Linnen Cloth. Hops, Mault, *Russe* Sops, All sorts of Strong Wines, as Sacke and Canarie Wine. Bacon is a good Commodity in *Siberia*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Later Observations of WILLIAM GORDON, in his Wintering at Pultozera, in the yeares 1614. and 1615. with a Description of the Samoyeds life.



The twentieth of Nouember, I departed from *Pultozera*, to goe to *Tongerin*, at foure in the after-noon, and did ride most of the Night, before wee came to the Chooome, going East South-east. The one and twentieth, *Atsiline* returned to the Towne, and wee remoued and went our Journey, faire and little wind. The two and twentieth, wee went North, wee kept on our course East South-east, hauing gone from the Towne 50 miles, at night *Atsiline* came to vs. The three and twentieth, little wind, wee went on our Journey, and at Noone passed ouer a little River, called *Coy*, falling North into *Pechora*, 14 leagues below the Towne, and at Night came all the *Russes* from the Towne, hauing gone 44 miles East South-east.

The foure and twentieth, wee remoued on our Journey being very cold, and went not above ten miles East South-east, at Night wee broke one of our Sleds, which went laden with Viuals.

The five and twentieth, wee went forward very slowly, at Noone I receiued a Letter from *Matier Copman* by *Toma* *Creteone*, this after-noon another had his Sled broken, we went 10. or 12. miles. The sixe and twentieth, we continued on our Journey, and at Euen we passed ouer a River, called *Shapkina*, falling South into *Pechora*; halfe way betwixt *Pultozera* and *Oufi-xilma*, a Sled broken and mended out of hand, going East South-east 15 miles. The seuen and twentieth being Sunday, the wind at South-west, did blow very hard and Snow all the day, the snow driving that we could hardly see which way to goe, yet wee kept on East South-east 18 miles.

The eight and twentieth, in the Morning, wee passed ouer *Nougortoka* River, which falleth East South-west into *Shapkina* River, sixe dayes Journey above *Oufi-xilma*, the wind South-west, and Snow all day, wee kept on full East South-east 15 miles. The nine and twentieth, the wind South, with Snow all day, being not cold, wee went on East South-east 20 miles. The thirtieth, the wind East South-east, very cold in the after-noon, we passed ouer *Habcaga* River, which falleth into *Pechora*, sixe dayes Journey above *Oufi-xilma*, going 20 miles.

The first of December, the wind East blowing very hard, the Snow did drife so hard, that we could not goe forward, but stood still all day and did not remoue. The second, calme and not so cold, wee went on East South-east 10 miles. The third, in the Morning it was very warme, at Noone the wind North, it was extreame cold, the Snow driving very thicke, in the after-noon we passed ouer the River *Haryena*, which falleth into *Colony* South-east, hauing gone East South-east 15 miles.

The fourth day warme, we went East, at Euen we came to a River called *Colony*, which falleth South into the River *Oufe*, where wee stayed all Night, hauing gone 20 miles. The fift, in the Morning wee went on vpon the River six or seuen miles East and by North, and came where it parted in two, the one keeping North-east, the other being called *Sandauers*; from the South-east we went betwixt these both East and by South 12 miles, and tooke vpon our lodging vpon a Playne where no Wood is to bee seene.

The fixt, being Saint *Nicholas* day, which with the *Russes* is held a principall day, in the morning they cauled their Images to bee brought into the Chooome, lighting Wax-candles before them, making their Prayers to them, according to their Order; after which I gave them a bottle of *Aqua vita*, wherewith the Guides were drunke, that they could not guide their Deeres, but let mee to direct the way by Compasse, which I did all the day, although I had but little skill, so we went South-east and by East 20 miles.

The seuenth, being very faire weather, our Guides lay all the day with *Pobemall*, and could not goe forward. The eight, faire and calme, we went forward South-east and by East 10 miles, and tooke vpon our lodging by a small River which falleth into *Sandauers* River. The ninth, very cold, that we had much adoe to keepe our selues from freezing, going on foot all the day ouer a playne where no Wood groweth, going South-east 15 miles, and lay by a Woodside all night. The tenth, the Frost was so extreame, that wee lay still and could not proceed. The eleuenth, being Sunday, the Frost continued extreame, and my selfe, although I was something better provided then any of them, yet I had something to doe to keepe my selfe from freezing, going on foot most part South-east and by East 15 miles. The twelfth, the Frost was so extreame, that there was no looking forth, but lay still all day. The thirteenth, not altogether so cold, wee proceeded on our Journey 20 miles South-east & by East, and at night we passed ouer the River *Hafada*, which falleth South-east into the River *Acana*. The fourteenth, the wind South, with Snow and not so cold, we went thorow Woods 20 miles, East South-east. The fiftenth, the wind South, with

Nouember; 1614. My Journey within 30. leagues of *Ob*, and neere to *Berefova*. The River *Coy*, falling into *Pechora*.

The River *Shapkina*, falling into *Pechora*.

The River *Nougortoka*, falling into *Shapkina*. *Habcaga* River, falling into *Pechora*.

December. The River *Haryena*, falling into *Colony*.

Saint *Nicholas* Day.

A small River falling into *Sandauers*.

Terrible Frost.

The River *Hafada*, falling into *Acana*.

B b b Snow

they kill in this manner to fume the dead man, they make a Stake sharpe, which they thrust into the Beasts fundament, with many howlings and cryings, till they be dead. The Master with the Slave they burne, the Deere they eate as well raw, as boyled or roast, although they vie all three. It is a young Child dyed vnder foureteen of their yeeres, which is feuen of ours, they doe hang it by the necke on some Tree, laying, It must live to Heauen.

If any Controuerfie bee, which cannot be decided or the truth knowne, then one of the two betwixt whom the Controuerfie is, must bee sworn, which is in this manner; they will make an Image of a Man of Snow, bringing a Wolues nose, deliuering a Sword to him that must sweare, he rehearsing by name all his Friends, desiring that they might all bee cut in peeces in that manner, as hee doth cut that Image of Snow. Then hee himselfe, doth cut the Image of Snow in all to peeces with the Sword; then after, the Wolues nose being layd before him, he desires that the Wolfe may destroy all his tame Deere, and that hee may neuer more take or kill any wilde Deere after that, if hee speake not the Truth, so cutting the Wolues nose in peeces, theris no more to bee sayd of that Controuerfie.

The Samois is stout and bold of Spirit, not very tall but broad Breasted, broad Faces, with hollow Eyes. Their ordinary instruments for Warre, are Bowes and Arrowes, very dangerous, they haue long Spares, (the heads bee made in *Mongawary*, by another sort of Samois) and short Swords, not much vnlike some that I haue seene brought from East India.

When they would know any thing to come, they lend for their Priest or Witch to conuerse with the Deuill, sitting in one side of the Tent, haue before his face a peece of an old shirt of Mayle, hung with Beils and peeces of Brasie, in his right hand a great Tabor made with a Wolues skinn, beating vpon the same with a Hares foot, making a very dolefull sound, with singing and calling for the Deuill, to answer his demand, which being ended, they strangle a Deere for a Sacrifice, making merrie with the Fleish.

The Women be very hard of Nature; for at their Child-bearing, the Husband must play the Midwife, and being deliuered, the Child is washed with cold water or Snow, and the next day the Woman able to conduct her Argill.

The Russes haue a yeerly Trade with the Merchants of *Begbar*, at a place called *Tumen* in *Tartary*, whither they of *Begbar* come with Camels every yeere.

From *Tumen* in *Tobol* in *Siberia*, they come in foureteen dayes.

From *Tobol*, they come to *Berefova* in nine dayes, all downe the River *Ok*.

From *Berefova*, partly by the River *Ok*, then ouer a necke of Land of halfe a mile ouer, into the River *Ouse*, and downe the River *Ouse* into the River *Pechora*, and so to *Pogoreca* in three weekes. At *Pogoreca*, the English haue Wintered three yeeres.

CHAP. XIII.

Diuers Voyages to Cherie Land, in the yeeres 1604. 1605. 1606. 1608.

1609. Written by IONAS POOLE.



As yet sayle * from *London* the fiftenth of April 1604. in a Ship called the *God Speed*, of fixtie Tunnes, with thirteene Men and a Boy; our Merchant was *Master Thomas Widen*, our Master was one *Steuens* *Bannis* of Saint *Catherines*. We arrived at *Cala* in *Lapland*, the first of May, where we tarried till the last of the same Month, at which time we set sayle from *Cala*, and went to an Harbour called *Pechingo*, which lyeth betwene *Cala* and *Ward-houfe*. In which Harbour of *Pechingo*, we continued vntill the thirtieth of Iune. At which time we set sayle from thence, and through contrarie winde and foule weather, were put into *Ward-houfe*, where we tooke in fresh water, and stayed vntill the sixth of Iuly.

The same day, the wind came Southerly, and we steered away North-west and by North about 56. leagues, we obserued the Sunne at twelue of the clocke at Noone, and found our selves to be in 73. degrees 5. minutes of Northerly Latitude. The seventh of Iuly, it was all day calme, and wee founded, but had no ground in two hundred and fiftie fathoms. The eight day, we had little winde, which was at South-east, and foggy weather; and at eight of the clocke at Night, we saw great flocks of Sea-fowles, which we call Willocks: some of these Fowles had each of them a small Fish in their bills, and flew toward the North-west and by North. The other without Fish, some of them flew contrarie to the former, and some fate in the Sea very neere our Ship.

About twelue of the clocke at night we founded, and had ground at one hundred and twentie fathomes. We steered away North-west and by North, till foure of the clocke the eight day in the morning, then it fell calme; and as the ship lay still, our Master spied a Morfe, which came to our ship and swamme round about it. While we were all gazing at this Monster, I spied

These yeere but halfe a yeere.

Jugementor Oath.

Their persons.

Divination.

Womens hardnesse.

40

30

60

A Morfe.

the Island stande leagues off, bearing North North-west halfe a point Westly, which shewed very high Land, and much Snow vpon it. The wind came to the North-east. The ninth day, we came to an *Anchore* on the South South-east side, in fiftie and twentie fathomes streame ground. We voyaged out our Boate, and *Master Widen* went toward the Land; but thinking to haue landed he could not, because there was a great Sea, and great flocks of Ice all along the shores side. Within one leuere the Boate came aboard, and they said, there were so many Fowles, that they covered the Rocks, and flew in such great flocks, that they shewed like a Cloud. While thus they were talking, close by the Boate, rose vpon huge Morfe, putting his head about the water, looking roundly as the Boate, and made such an horrible boyle and roaring, that they in the Boate thought he would haue sunk it.

The same day, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed and stood away South-west by South about foure miles, where we dropped the South-west point off the Island, and found the Land to trend North North-west, and all along the shore some scattering Ice. We layd along the shore, finding fiftie fathomes, and sometimes thirtie fathomes, streame ground with white shels. We held this count downe we saw few all the Northermost part of the Island: and being within three miles of it, and about thirteene miles from the Point, we came round about. And some two miles from the Land, we anchored in sixteene fathomes, streame ground. We had not ridden one houre to end, but a great piece of Ice came directly with the ryde vpon vs, and before we could weigh, it strooke the ship with such force, that it hitled on the one side.

As soon as it was past, we went on shore, where we found abundance of Sea Fowles, as Willocks, Gulls, Noddies, Sea-mewes, a small Fowle like a Willocke, and diuers others, as wilde Geese, Sea-spidgers, Oysters, and such like: whereof *Master Thomas Widen* killed so many with his Peeces, that we almost laded our Boate with them. The same night we took three heapes of fishing-lines, but when we laded them, we found neither fish nor bayte for the Seales had eaten them all off.

The ninth day, our *Master Widen* and our *Master* went on shore, to see what they could find. They went in the fore-noon about eight of the clocke, and came againe about foure in the after-noon very weary, seeing nothing but small Foxes, almost like *Dogges* in every place full of their smell and their taylor. In the meane time, the *Master* *Mate* and my selfe observed the Sunne, and found that part of the Island lay in 74. degrees and 45. minutes.

The tenth day we weighed, haue the wind southerly, and found the Land to trend away East South-east. The length of this side is about ten miles, good ground. We had not sailed six miles, but we saw a landie Bay against which we came to an *Anchore* in nine fathomes. We had not furled our Sayles, but we saw many Morfes swimming by our ship, and heard withall so huge a noise of roaring, as if there had beene an hundred Lions. Immediately we manned our Boate, wherein was *Master Widen* and sixte men more: we landed, and saw abundance of Morfes on the shore, close by the Sea-side, and drew neere vnto them, we perceived that they were all of the same company, which we had seene before. It seemed very strange to vs to see such a multitude of Monsters of the Sea, lyke *Hogges* vpon heapes: In the end we shot at them, not knowing whether they could runne swiftly or lize vpon vs or no. To be briefe, we had but three Peeces, *Master Widen* a Fowling Peeces, my selfe a Musket, and another a Musket. Their Peeces were spoyled instantly. For *Master Widen*, was cloyed, the other man when hee had shot one by himselfe, thought to knocke him on the head with the stick, but falling in Peeces. I shot still, and some when they were wounded in the side, would but looke vp and lyve downe againe. Some were killed with the first shot, and some would goe into the Sea with face or face shot: they are of such an incredible strength. When all our Powder and shot was spent, we with our Carpenters Axes cleave their heads. But for all that, we could say, of aboute the third and we killed but fiftene. We took off their heads, and when we had done, we went straggling vp and downe to see what we could find. I found the first Tooth that was cast vpon the Island, and going a little farther along, I found as many Teeth more. As Land three men more could carrie, which filled an Hog-head, all which would deliuer to *Master Widen*.

The next day following, being the eleuenth day, we went on shore againe, and killed about sixe more: And afterward we went up into the Land, and saw nothing but Fowles and Foxes. I perceived in deed a great print of a Beares foot, and after that many other footings, but yet saw no Beare or other wild beast.

The twelfth, we weighed from thence, and stood to the Eastward: we had not gone past foure miles, but we found the Land to fall away South-east and by South. The length of this side is aboute twelue miles. All this side we went close by the shore with our Boate, and the ship layd along about three miles off. We went oftentimes on shore, but could see nothing on all that side but Fowle, and abundance of Drift Wood, the most part whereof was firs, which haue bene beaten vp and downe the Sea. This day being Sunday, about eight of the clocke at night, we anchored within two miles of the place where we arrived at the first. The same night we went on shore, and in a Bay vnder an huge Cliffe of a Rocke, vpon the Beach, we found

Cherie Land described.

Store of fowles.

Morfe roaring.

Abundance of Sea-fowles found on shore.

Small Fowles, Sea-spidgers, Oysters, and such like.

They killed Morfes.

The third of Teeth.

Abundance of Drift Wood.

A thousand Moris heads, we went aboard.

neere a thousand Moris; we killed thirtie or thereabouts, and when we had taken off their heads, we went on shore againe, and with our Pieces fell a killing of the beasts.

One of our company named *Richard Long*, called *Spitish* Piece, and with all his hand-bow Master led this day *Cherie Moris*, all the heads whereof were very principall. When we had done, we went about a mile to the Eastward, so far we were could finde: And landing at a Bay where we found no more, we went backe to the Eastward, and found a piece of Lead Vre, we looked for the same, but found none. The same day returning aboard, we set sayle for *Perchee* in *England*, where we arrived the five and twentieth of July: and stayed there four dayes: at which time we set sayle for *Cole*, and arrived there the eight of August, where we continued till the sixteenth day, at which time we departed thence for *England*, and arrived in the *Thames* the fifteenth of October, of the year aforesaid 1604.

When we came to *London*, because *Sir Francis Cherie* Knight and Merchant was at the charges of this Discoverie, this land was called *Cherie land*.

Why the land was called *Cherie land*.

The third Voyage to Cherie land, performed by Master WELDEN Merchant, and STEPHEN BENNETT Master, in the year 1605.

IN the year aforesaid, we set sayle from *London*, the first of May, with one ship of fixtie Tunnes, and two and twenty men and boyes. The three and twentieth of the said month, we were taken by a ship of *Dunkirk*. They took from vs two Hogheads of strong Beere, our Muskets, a Fowling Peece of Master *Welden*, which cost three pounds sterling. After the Captaine had misused vs at his pleasure, though we were in peace with his Countrey, he let vs goe.

The eight and twentieth of June, we put off from *Assumption Point*, which is a place not farre backe the North Cape, and about 70. degrees in latitude, but by contrarie winds we were put backe againe. Yet the second of July, we came to *Cherie land*, and anchored on the South-east side: and having a Shallop in pieces to set vp, we carried it on shore, and went to worke upon our fourte on shore with shot and juelings, and due abundance of Moris. The year before we due all with shot, not thinking that a paining could pierce their skinned: which we found now contrarie, if they be well handled, for otherwise, it may thrust with all his force and not enter: or if he doe enter, he shall speele his Lance upon their bones: for they will strike with their fore-feet, and bend a Lance round, and break it, if it be not all the better plated. They will also strike with their Teeth at him: that is next them: but because their Teeth grow downward, their strokes are of small force and danger. After we had opened the beasts which we had slain, we took out the blubber, and carried it a mile into the Bay, where we set up the shallop. The reason why we carried it thither, was, because we thought that the fire of our Furnace would scare them away: for we did buye all their fat to bring it into Oyle. Thus we followed our business till the fourte and twentieth of July, at which time we had very foule weather with fogges. Now the ship riding in the same Cove, where we killed our Moris, had taken in eleven Tunnes of Oyle, and the teeth of all the beasts aforesaid. Then we made preparation to be gone home againe, our men went with our shallop, and eight men with me to fetch our Tent, and our keyling Coppens, our finest Clothes and some Teeth. At my returne, when I was almost aboard, coming through a place betweene the land and a Rocke, a gale of wind blowing out of the Sea, made the Sea very high upon the Rockes, whereby we had like to have bene sunken: for our Boat was almost full of water; and if we had not speedily rowed backe againe, we had dyed each man of vs. To make short, we got into a Cove, where the Rockes did keepe the growne Sea from vs, and we lighted our Boat. In this Cove I found a Myne of Lead Vre, and digged vp about thirtie pounds weight of it, which I brought into *England*. And calling to mind that we were in sight of our ship, when we shipped the water which I spake of before, I mistruied that they thought, as they did indeed, that we were all drowned. Therefore I demanded who would go with me, to the top of a Cliffe which stood over against the ship? And one *Iohn Tenings* said, that he would goe: he had not gone halfe way, but he would goe no farther because it was so cold, and the Hill flood Roping very steep toward the Sea, and all the side of it was loose Earth, which we must needs passe. Then I went forward all alone, and found all our men on shore, saving an old man, and a sickle man. But the Cliffe being so high and steep, that they vnder it could scarce vnderstand what I said, nor I what they said, but with much ado: They demanded, as I tolke it, all our men were well: I told them yes, as loud as I could: And then I threw downe a piece of the lead Vre which I had found, which *Marcellus* took vp: And when I was going away I heard

Assumption. July 3. Cherie land.

Many Moris killed with shot and iuelings.

The fight of the Moris.

Oylmenes of the factice Moris.

Eleven uns of Oyle.

A Mine of Lead.

I heard them shout, and looking behind me, I saw them all point toward the Skiffe that lay at anchor hard by the shore; whereby I perceived that the rope was broken, which made it fast to the Inshore, and the Skiffe was gone off to the length of her ript: so that they could not go aboard except one of them did swim to the Skiffe, which was exceeding dangerous, both because it was extream cold, and also for feare of being killed by the Moris, that were in the Sea all about the Boat. Whereupon with all speed possible I ranne to helpe our men in that distresse; and coming to the Shallop, some were willing, and some unwilling: But I said that out I would; and taking nothing aboard wth me but a few Teeth, we got out: and in the place where we had like to have bene sunken before, we had a great hollow Sea: but our Boat being light, and the tyde with vs, we got through: wherby *Ed. Welden*, and *Stephen Bennett* our Master, with all the company were not a little ioyfull, and gave God humble thanks, that had of his great mercy defended vs from a great many of dangers that day. For that day we saw abundance of yce drivng toward the land, but the winde and tyde shifting, put it another way. Likewise two boyes had like to have bene slain with the fall of a rocke, which fell close by them, they being but newly stepped out of the place where the rocke fell.

In the time that we were in this distresse, I called the Mountaine by the name of *Mount Miseric*, which is so called at this day. Likewise there is a very high Mountaine on the East South-east point of this land: which, because Master *Welden* and I got two Foxes neere it, I called it *Mount maderpud*, alluding to the name in the merrie booke of *Rensald* the Fox.

The five and twentieth of Iulie, we got out of the Cove with the Ship, having such a fogge, that although we ride so neere the land, that we could heare the fowle that were on shore, yet we could not see the land. This fogge continued untill the eight and twentieth of Iulie: on which day having clearer weather, we got our water and other provision aboard; and set sayle for *England*, and passing by the coast of *Finnmark* and *Norway*, we arrived at *London* the fourte and twentieth of August 1605.

The fourth Voyage to Cherie land, 1606.

WE set sayle from *London* in a Ship and a Pinnasse; the Ship being of burden fixtie Tunnes, and the same that I was in the Summer before; Master *Thomas Welden* was Merchant, and Master *Bennet* Master, having in all two and twenty men and boyes. The Pinnasse was of twenty Tunnes, and had eight men in her, and I *Janus Paul* was Master of her: we were set out by Master *Raffa*, one of the *Adelphi* Company.

The eight and twentieth, we had sight of land on the coast of *Norway*, in the latitude of sixtie degrees and a halfe; nine leagues off.

The sixteenth of Iune, we fell with the *Assumption*, it bearing South and by West eight leagues off: and we lay beating betweene the North Cape, and it, till the eighteenth of Iune: At what time we put off, and steered away North North-west about three leagues, and found much Ice: we thought to have gotten through it, but could not: and when we had spent twelue houres in it, and having the wind Northerly, we put backe againe. The foure and twentieth, we fell with the North Cape againe, at twelue of the clock at noone. The foure and twentieth, we put off againe, and being five and fortie leagues from the Cape, we met with Ice, and upon a piece of Ice we saw a Beare. The Ship being on head of vs, bare close to the Ice; and Master *Welden* shot the said Beare dead at the first shot. This Beare was from the neereff land about sixteen and twenty leagues, and lived of Seales or other fish that he could prey upon.

The second of Iulie, we saw *Cherie land* at a North soule: the land bearing North about by white small shelly ground with small blacke stones.

The third of Iulie we anchored on the West side of the land in twentie fathoms, having very much Ice. I observed the Sunne at the lower, and found the latitude of that place to be 74. degrees, 55. minutes. It followeth there South-west and by South; and the Road cometh from the South-west.

The fifth and sixth dayes, we were troubled with much Ice; but it being broken, we brought the ends of our Cables to our maine Masts; and having a good tyde, we did floure, as we were to wit, cleere off the Ice. We ride thus in Ice six dayes, to wit, untill the thirteenth day; at what time the Ice began to goe away, and the Moris came on shore. For their nature is such, that they will not come on land as long as any Ice is about the land.

The fourteenth, we went on land; Master *Welden* and Master *Bennet*, with the Ships company, and I with the company of the Pinnasse. And being altogether on shore, and seeing of the beasts sufficient to make our voyage, we were prepared to goe to killing. Master *Welden* and Master they lay; that they and we might meet at the middell of them, and so inclose them, that none of them should get into the Sea.

Extream cold the 27. of Iulie.

Abundance of drivng Ice.

Mount Miseric.

A monstrous fogge.

August 24. A Ship and Pinnasse set forth.

Ice within 45. leagues of the North Cape. A Beare on Ice 27. leagues from any land last 31.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes.

The Road cometh from the South-west.

The thirteenth of the Nature of the Moris.

A great white
Bear.

As I fished a compass about, before we were aware, rose a great white Bear within a Pike's length of vs: whereupon we made a stand, and my selfe having both a Musket and a Lance, thought to have shot him: but remembering my selfe, that the report of my Peece might make all the Mories goe into the Sea, and so hazard our Voyage, I went to him with my Lance. All this while he lay foming at the mouth, and would not stirre, but gaped and roared as though he would have eaten vs all; but presently we were pricked him in the flanke: and then with an allie leuen or eight hundred Beasts. And after that Master *Walden* drew the Bears. For ten dayes space we played our businesse very hard, and before six houres were ended, we had slayne about the foure and twentieth of July, we had the wind at North-east: and it froze so hard, 10 that the Ice did hang on our Clothes.

Seven or eight
hundred Beasts
slayne in fixe
houres.
A great Frost
the 22. of July.

The five and twentieth, we had taken two and twentieth runs of the Oyle of the Mories, and three hogheads of their Tallow. The seven and twentieth, Master *Walden* drew another Bear. The eight and twentieth, we took in *Walden* and Wood. The nine and twentieth, we set saile for England. The fifteenth of August, 1606, we arrived in the *Thames*.

The sixth Voyage made to Cherie Island, the South part whereof standeth in 74. degrees and 40. minutes of Northerly latitude, in the yeere 1608.

May 17.
Ward-house,
Tiquay.

The sixteenth of April, in the yeere 1608, we set saile from *Blacky wall*, and came to *Gramp*, and in a ship called the *Paul*.

June 13.
Cherie Island.

The one and twentieth of May, we were within 4. leagues of the North Cape, standing in 71. degrees and 3 of North latitude. The foure and twentieth, we came to *Walden*. The five and twentieth, we weighed, and came to *Tiquay* in *England* the five and twentieth: where we stayed about our businesse till the thirteenth of June.

A Beare slaine.

The thirteenth of June, we weighed anchor, and directed our course for *Cherie Island*. The eighteenth, at foure of the clocke in the morning we saw *Cherie Island*, it bearing North North-west 10. leagues off: and at foure of the clocke at night we were anchored on the North-west side of it: and Master *Walden* went on Land on the North side, and slue a Beare.

Another Beare
slayne.

The nineteenth, we rid still, and Master *Walden* went to the North side againe, and slue another Beare. The same day we sent two men to the South side of the land, to see if there were any Mories on shoare. They came againe the next day, and said, that there were great flocks.

Great herds
the 20. and 21.
of June.

The twentieth and one and twentieth dayes it was calme, and the weather cleere, and wee runne downe the things slaine; and that side of the Maits thas was to the Sonne ward, was so hot, 40 that the Tarr did frye out of it, as though it had boyled.

1000. Mories
killed in seven
houres.

The two and twentieth, at a North-west Sun, we weighed anchor and went to the South side of the land, and came into a Cove, where the Mories were, and slue about 900. or 1000. of them in lesse then seven houres: and there were played our businesse untill the second of July: at what time we had taken into our ship 22. tunnes and three hogheads of Oyle.

July 3.

The third of July, being Sunday, one *Richard Stevens* of *Herewich* came to the said *Cherie Island*, in a ship called the *Dragon*, being set out by Master *Dunpe*, a Brewer dwelling in *Saint Catharines* neere the Tower of *London*; which set out a ship with Master *Thomas Walden* the yeere before 1607.

A living Morie
brought into
England.

The ninth day, we made our Voyage, and came out of the Cove, having taken in 21. tunnes of Oyle, and one hoghead, one barrell, and one terce of Mories teeth: besides 400. other teeth. The twelfth, we took into our ship two young Mories, male and female, alie: the female died before we came into *England*: the male lived about ten weekes. When we had watered, we set saile for *England* about foure of the clocke in the morning.

The fourteenth day, we saw the Land bearing North North-west, 15. leagues off vs, and founded, and had 8. fathoms, greene Oze, like *Doues dung*.

The twentieth of August, we arrived at *London*: and having dispatched some private businesse, we brought our living young Morie to the Court, where the King and many honourable personages beield it with admiration for the strangenesse of the same, the like whereof had never before beene scene alieue in *England*. Not long after it fell sicke and died. As the beaist in shape is very strange, so is it of strange docilitee, and apt to be taught, as by good experience we often proved.

The

The seventh Voyage to Cherie Island, made in the yeere 1609.

We were furnished with two ships, determining to goe to *Tiquay* in *England*, to buy fish of the *Lapper* and *Ruffer*, and afterward to goe to *Cherie Island*: the one was called the *Lionsse*, in which I went for Master, the other, the *Paul*, which was there the last yeere, 1608.

The one and twentieth day of March, we weighed anchor at *Gramp*: and the sixe and twentieth, we came to *Harwich*: where it was concluded, that the *Lionsse* should goe directly to *Cherie Island*. The fifteenth of April, we weighed at *Harwich*: and the last of the same month we fell betweene *Lefow* and *Zemam* vpon the Coast of *Finmark*.

The second of May, we came to the North Cape; and the same day we stood for *Cherie Island*: but meeting with contrary winds and foule weather, we bare backe againe for the Cape, and fell with the Land the fourth day in the morning. We put the second time from the North Cape; and the eighth day we were anchored at *Cherie Island*. It did freeze very hard, but we found no Ice about the land, save that which claued to the Rocks. We went into the Cove with our Shallops, and found eight Mories on the Ice hard by the shoares side: And we also found all the beaists that were killed the last yeere not washed away with the Sea, covered over with Snow and Ice. We thought to have gotten abundance of Fowle as wee had done in the yeeres before: but they would not fit; the reason was, because they were but new come to the land, and not felled as then: yet some Fowle we got, and came aboard. And because the wind was Northerly, that we could not conveniently goe to the North side with the ship, we determined to send some men over Land, to see if there were any Mories on shoare vpon that side. The ninth day, I prepared to goe over Land to the North side, about a North-east Sunne, with three men in my companie. I my selfe had a Musket, and about a quarter of a pound of Powder, and sixe Bullets; an Halfe-pike in mine hand, and an Hatchet at my backe. One of the men had a birding Peece; the other two had each of them a Juelin. Wee went over the Snow and Ice space outwardly; but some fowle we killed, by reason we relied not any where. And when we were within a mile of the other side, one of my companie said, he saw a Bear: whereupon we looked up, and saw three great ones. Whereupon I made a stand, and gaue each of my companie some *Agasuite*, and a little Bread, and told them, that we must not in any case seeme fearefull, because the nature of them is such, that whosoever seemeth fearefull, or offereth to runne away, they will seize vpon him. In this time I made my Musket readie: and the Beares seeing vs to come toward them, stood vpon their feet, and two of them went toward the Sea: The third stood still champing and foming, as though hee would have eaten vs. When I was within shot of him, he beganne to follow his fellows, still looking behind him with his former gesture: In the meane while I got ground of him, the three men following mee with their weapons. In the end the angry deuill turned backe, and came directly toward mee: I let him come within two long Pike lengths, and gaue him such a welcome, that hee fell downe fione dead.

The company that were with me were glad as well as I: yet I had beene at the killing of Beares before. After this Beare was slayne, we told seauenteene more, whereof three were young ones. This done, we went on to the Sea side, where we found the Shallop which we left the yeere before. Wee were no sooner far to eat a little food, but there came a Beare with two young ones as big as Lambes of a month old: they skipped about their dams necke, and played with one another very wantonly. The same came so neere that I shot at her, and being loth to hurt the young ones, being playing about her fore-parts, I shot her through the top of the shoulder; then she went away. Immediately we saw another Beare coming toward vs, which before he came to vs, stood vpon his hinder feet twice or thrice, vying the same countenance that the first did, which I slue. I let him come very neere, and thinking to giue him his passpor, the flint of my Musket was broken, which made him come very neere vs. Then the fellow that had the birding peece shot him into the foot: whereupon he ran away faster then we could follow him. Wee seeing too many Beares, and hauing no store of Powder nor Shot, bent our iourney toward our ship againe. Wee had not come a quarter of a mile, but wee saw a huge Beare fast a sleepe on the Snow. I went softly toward him, and gaue him such a flip, that hee neuer role out of the place where he lay. His skin when he was slayne was thirteene foot long. A neere neighbour of his hearing the report of my Peece came toward me: and him I slue also. Now, hauing but one shot left, I thought it not best to bestow it there, although I saw another he vpon the Snow hard by. While we fate downe to rest vs in the mid-way, there came toward vs another Beare with one young one: they came almost within shot, and went backe againe: presently they turned againe, and came within shot of me, and stood on her hinder legs directly upright, and so did the young one. I made account they would haue come neerer: but they to the contrary ran away. Wee came being very wearie aboard our ship about a North-west Sunne. Then we weighed, and stood to the Northward, hauing the wind at South: and by three of the clocke the next morning, we came to the North-east Point with the ship. There wee manned our Shallops.

Lefow,
Zemam,
May 2.

They arrive at
Cherie Island
the 8. of May.

Fowle.

Three Beares.
Qualitie of
Beares.
Feare a Train
con.

A Beare slaine.

17. Beares in
sight.

Young Beare:
whelps.

A Beare slayne,
the skin where-
of was 12. foot.
A third Beare
slayne.

The tenth day.

Shallop, and Master *Thomas Welden* and I went on shoare, where hee flue five Beares, and I one, and I wounded two more very low. And before a North Sunne, our men had fayed them all; both them that I flue the day before, and them that wee flue this last time: for they were all together.

The eleventh day, we went on Land, and walked some old fayed Morfes skinner, which had lyeen there two yeeres: but they will hardly prove good. The twelfth day, we rid at the West side, and got some Fowle with shot, and there we rid till the thirteenth.

The thirteenth, wee faw very much Ice to the Southwards and Westwards, which came drifing fo fast toward the shoare where we rid, that wee were forced to weigh, and flood to the North side of the land. The Ice followed vs hill: then wee flood to the East side of the land: and there wee found both the land and our felues encompassed round with Ice. The wind being Westley, and a good fluffe gale, it blew the Ice about a mile and an halfe from the Eastern side: by which means wee got betwixt the Ice and the land, and stood to the Southward, but faw not any thing in the Sea fave Ice; fauing close by the Land a little open Sea traze while one way, and another while another way, and could not see open Sea till the fifteenth of the same month; at a North-west Sunne wee faw the open Sea: only a ledge of Ice which began to part insunder, was betwixt vs and it. Toward that place wee flood, and intending by Gods helpe to get through, we made provision to defend the ship from the Ice, by hanging Cables ends, and Plankes, and Captain barres about the bowes of our ship. But for all our tenders, our ship had a great knocke vpon a piece of Ice. About a North Sunne, we got out into the open Sea; with humble thanks to God for our deliuerance.

The sixteenth day, the land did beare North-east and by North, eight leagues from vs: and it did freeze all that day, the wind being at North, which was almost calme. The seventeenth, at noone the land did beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off; the wind South-ley, snowy weather. The same day we faw a faye, bearing East North-east off vs about 5 leagues. The eighteenth, the land did beare North about 15 leagues off, the wind being at East and by North, Snow and frosty weather. The nineteenth, at twelue of the clocke at noone the land bare North and by East: and wee faw the Ice somewhat scattered, and the wind Southerly, put roome toward the land, and vpon one piece of Ice we faw five Seales: one I killed, and one Iooke alie, and brought it aboard our ship. But wee could not come neere the land by faye leagues. The wind came to the West with thicke weather and Snow. The twentieth, at twelue at noone the land beare North North-west, about twelue leagues off. We founded, and had 100 fathoms, greenish Oze, faire weather, but cold.

The one and twentieth, we faw the ship that wee had seene the sixteenth day: wee spake with them about 12. at noone. The Master told vs he was of *Hull*. Wee demanded whether he was bound? He told vs, to *Cherie Island*, and that there he would make his Voyage. The land at this time did beare North and by East about nine leagues off; and it was faire, but cold frostie weather. The 22, 23, 24, and 25. dayes, we did beate vp and downe in the Ice. The 26, 27, and 28. dayes, likewise wee fayed vp and downe in the Ice; hauing the wind Northerly, and the land bearing betweene the North and the North North-east, cold weather. The nine and twentieth, the land beare North nine leagues off, the wind at North-east, inowey weather and Frost.

The thirtieth day, we flue 26. Seales, and espied three white Beares: wee went aboard for Shot and Powder, and coming to the Ice againe, we found a shee-Bear and two young ones: Master *Thomas Welden* shot and killed her: after thee was dayne, wee got the young ones, and brought them home into *England*, where they are alue in *Paris Garden*. The one and thirtieth, we beate vp and downe in the Ice, but could not come neere the Land for Ice; the winde was Northerly.

The first of Iune, we got within fure or fixe miles of the land: but finding very much Ice close by the Land, we flood off againe, the wind being at North-east, cold weather. The second day, we got within three leagues of the land: but finding exceeding much Ice round about vs, we flood off againe, the wind at North-east, cold frostie weather. From the second day to the fife, wee fayed first one way, and then another, as the wind and Ice would giue vs leaue. The wind being at North and by East, and the land being betweene the North-west and by North, within fixe leagues and leffe.

The sixth day, we spake with the *Hull* man, who told vs, that he was put twentie leagues to the North-west of the land, being fall in the Ice. We had the wind Northerly, and frosty weather; the Land bearing North North-west. The seventh and eight, we beate vp and downe in the Ice: the land did beare North-west eight leagues off. The winde was Northerly, with cold and frostie weather.

The ninth, the Land beare North-west off vs about six leagues off. That day we had the first fogge since the time of our arriual, which was the eight of May. Neither lofe we the sight of the land about eighteene hours in all this time. This day, about a North-east Sunne it began

gan to thaw, and in fixe houres the snow was melted, which lay vpon the Ice about fixe inches thicke: which put vs in good hope that the Ice was almost past.

The tenth, we got within fixe miles of the shoare: where I made an attempt to haue got to the land with the Shallop: but coming within three miles of the shoare, I could get no farther, the Ice was so thicke, and such foggy weather. I made another attempt the same day, and got within one mile of the Land: but the Ice was so thicke that I could get no farther. The same day wee faw good store of Morfes on the Ice and in the Sea.

The eleventh and twelfth, we played vp and downe fayne by the Land, to see if we could get on Land with our Shallop: but the Ice was so close about the Land, that wee could not by any means. This day the wind was at South-east, thicke foggy weather. The thirteenth, we had thicke fogge and calme weather; and when it began to cleere, wee had fight of the Southern part of the land, bearing East South-east, about fixe miles off; but it fell thicke suddenly againe. There wee anchored in fortie fathoms, white shelly ground; and rid till ten of the clocke at night: at what time I prepared to goe on shoare, as fast as I could with a Shallop and fixe men. About eleuen of the clocke wee put from the Ship, and with great labour got through the Ice to the land, by a North-east Sunne.

The fourteenth day, I landed on the Wester side of the land, and determined to goe from thence to the North side, where wee flew the Beares. The ninth of May I left three men with the Shallop, and tooke three men with me. In my iourney I found fuch bad way, that I had no stomacke to goe through; for where there was no fnow, the ground was so soft, and without grasse, that we went vp to the anckles in dirt and where the fnow lay, which was in some holes, three or foure fathoms thicke, it was so soft, that we slipt each step vp to the twift; so that wee were about three houres in going scarce two miles. Whereupon, considering it would bee long before I should get ten miles and backe againe, I returned to our Shallop, and found that the men which I left had killed some fowle, which wee lof, and when wee had eaten them, I prepared to goe in the Shallop to the North side. I went close by the shoare; for the Sea was full of Ice. As wee went along by the Cliffe, we got good store of Fowle; which made vs glad and ioyfull, becaufe there was no hope to get aboard the Ship that day, nor the next. About a North-west Sun we got to the place about which I found nine Beares, three of them I flew, the other tooke the 30. That three that were laine we fayed, and tooke their flesh and falted it in their skinner; which I stowed in the Shallop for feare of a dearth. I had a terce full of falt there, which wee left in that place the eleuenth of May.

The fifteenth day, when wee had ended our bufinede, and eaten some of our Beares flesh, and fet vp an Ensigne in token of our possession of the land, we prepared to be gone: and about an East North-east Sunne the wind came Westley; which made me thinke, as it proved, that the Ship would be on the South-east side of the land; and when wee were coming, and almost at the North-east point, we faw nine men; presently I knew them to be the men of *Hull*. Along I came to the East side, where wee took in drift wood, and a broad fone to make a fire vpon in our Boat. While wee were there, wee espied our ship vnder her Fore-topfayle, and her Mizen. We made all the haste wee could, and came to the Coue, where wee made our voyage the Summer last past. There likewise I wrote vp a Pike, with a white cloth vpon it, and a letter signifying our possession for the right worshipfull Company trading to *Malina*. When I had done, I elipted shifter, and told him we had taken possession there, the eight of May last. He answered, That if the beafts came on shoare, he would kill them if he could; and that there were as good men which and so departed and got some fowle. About a South-west Sunne wee flood toward our Ship, hauing the wind at West South-west, and the Ship bearing from vs South-east about foure leagues. I had not failed ten miles, but the Ice was so close and firme, that I could not get aboard, nor backe againe; for it closed with fuch force, that it made the Shallops felues cracke, as though they would haue met together. Wee laboured very fore to saue our Boat, becaufe it did concerne our liues, and got her into a place where she lay betweene two pieces of Ice. After this fort we draue with the Ice till we had lost fight of our Ship, which was about a North Sun; and still wee draue, being not able otherwise to moue till we were about eight leagues from the land.

The sixteenth day, at an East South-east Sun, the Ice began to open. Then, although my Company were in deperaire, and said it was impossible to get out, to worke wee went, and by cutting off Ice, and removing of it one piece from another, we made way through toward the Land. The neerer to the Land wee got, we found the more open Sea; and by a North Sunne wee got on shoare. After wee had giuen God thanks for our deliuerance out of such extreme danger, wee ate some Fowle and Beares flesh, which wee fod vnder a Cliffe. There wee found nine young Foxes, and killed the old one. There also we slept vpon the cold Sand, which was not past three inches thicke, and vnderneath Ice; and flaid there till a South-east Sunne the Euenteenth day. The sixteenth, we went from this place to the Coue, where we found the *Hull* mans Boat. I made a tilt of the Shallops faye, and fod some Beares flesh and Fowle; and fayed about the

The first shaw.

The Beares laine on the North side.

Three Beares laine, powdered, and eaten.

Possession taken of Cherie Island for the Malina Company.

Drift wood on the East side.

The Coue.

They fired on Beares flesh. Five Foxes found.

Coue

Three Myne
of Lead found
on Gull-Land.

Good Sea-
coales found
on the Island.
Two Beares
kaine.

An huge com-
palle of Ice,

Another
Beare kaine.

Another
Beare kaine.

Their ship
got in the Ice
cold time.

The Matthew.

The Marie
Marguerite.

Ioly.

Lagen and Edge.

Fowle their
chiefest food
in extremitie.

A Beare kaine.

Another
Beare kaine.

Snow and
Froft.
Some Minerall
Lead digged.

About twentie
Foxes eaten.

Dangers by the
Ice.

Coued all that day. And vpon an Iland, commonly called Gull-Iland, I found three Myne of Lead Vre; but hauing no hit tooles to breake the Rocks, and also because I was in the view of the Hull mans Tent, I was forced to let it rest, till the Ships could get into the Coue.

The eighteenth day, we went to the North side of the Iland, and in our way wee found good Sea-coales to burne: some wee spoke with vs to try them, and found them good. And on the North side I slew two Beares. Then wee shared the bread that was left; and wee had but two cakes to a man: for some of my Company while I was asleepe, or killing of the Beares, had broken open the cheff wherein the bread was, and had couered some away. Our beare was spent before this time, and wee were faine to drinke linn water.

The nineteenth, wee went to the Coue, the wind being Westely, so that wee could eafely go. As I could see from the top of an high Hill was couered with Ice, fauing that withina quarter of a mile off the shore, it was cleere round about once in a tyde.

The twentieth day, I went to the North side againe, and slew a Beare. Thus wee spent the time, sometimes on one side, sometimes on the other, neuer staying about one day in one place till the Ship came in; vvhich was the feuen and twentieth of Iune, on vvhich day I slew another Beare. I slew feuen in all, vvhofe flesh wee ate full fauourly, forgetting the oonly rankelne of it; for hunger is a fauourie lawce.

The feuen and twentieth, our ship came to an anchor on the North side, where wee then were; asfoone as vve saw her, wee needed no bidding to go aboard. When wee were come to the ship side, they bad vs vvelcome; but vvhether vs thought to haue releued our felues, vve found it farre otherwise; because the Ship had a knoeke vnder a piece of Ice in the Sterne, vvhich brake in the corner of a Planke vnder the vvvater, so that our bread-roume was full of vvvater, and all our bread froyled, fauing about one hundred weight: vvhich was but a small quantitie for three and forty men. This day a Ship called the *Matthew* came to an anchor by vs. Then Master *Widen* and I went on shoate, where vve found one *Iohn Skinner*, Masters mate of the *Matthew*, vvhich eleuen men by him. We set vp our Tent, and told him there was no voyage for him to make: but our necessitie was such, that wee were faine to make foure hundred of bread of them, vpon some condition, vvhich I will not speake of here. The same day vvee thought to haue taken a Copter aboard, vvhich I digged out of the snow; but by negligence it was let fall into the Sea, yetterward taken vp againe and carried aboard. The same day, another Ship called the *Mary Marguerite* came into the said Coue on the South side.

The eighteenth, I went to the Coue vvvith the Shallop and fixe men, vvhether I found the *Mary Marguerite*; there passed no great kindnesse betweene them and me. I flew three Morfes there, two vvere loth; the others head I brought aboard. The next day I came aboard our Ship, and vve rid on that side, looking fillt vvhether any beafts would come on shoate, till the second of Iuly. Then vve vveighed, and stood to the East side of the Iland; because the vwind was at West North-west, and great force of Ice came from those parts. We had not rid one hour to an end, but vvee saw a Skiffe coming towards vs. In this Skiffe was one *Iofas Legan*, and *Thomas Edge*, Factors in the *Paul* for the vvvorshipfull Company. They told vs that the *Paul* was in the Coue, and the ship of *Holl*. They vvere aboard againe, and vvhether the tyde was spent, vve weighed and thought to haue anchored nere the Coue; but the vwind vvas so far Easterly, that vve could not: so vve went to the West side, and ride there till the fourth day, vvhether vvee goe Fowle; for in all the time of our being about the Iland, and in the Ice, yetter vvee were troubled vvvith much Ice: The vwind vvas at West and by North, vvhich brought the Ice vvhole vpon vs; so that vve were forced to vveigh againe.

The sixth, vve came into the Coue; vvhether *Master Widen* slew a Beare. The eight day, he slew another Beare: and the same day I went to the North side, vvvith the Shallop and vviduals for the men vvhich kept on that side. I stayed there till the fourteenth of Iuly: on vvhich day vvee had the vwind Northerly, vvvith snow and froft, and the Iland enuironed round with Ice.

In this time the Ships Company on the South side did digge some Minerall Lead. And vvee caught about twentie Foxes, vvhich vvee did eat as fauourly as if they had beene Venifon.

The fifteenth day, by a North-west Sunne vve came aboard the Ship, vvhich lay in the Coue, vvvith our Shallop and all our provision that was on the North side. And the *Luness* prepared to goe to *Saint Nicolas in Russia*, as it was appointed before in *London*.

The sixteenth, the wind being North-east brought such force of Ice to the Iland, that it vvas compassed round close to the shore; and filled the Coue so full, that by no means possible the Ships could get out, but ride fillt shut in for foure dayes.

The feuenteenth, the Ice began to open at the mouth of the Coue, and some were willing to goe out with their Ships; but couetousnesse had like to haue brought vs all to great misery: for each man struing to ride longin in the Coue, supposing that there the Morfes would come first on shoate, they found it cleane contrary; for the wind came Southerly, and blew all the Ice from this side of the Iland, faue that which was in the Coue: which pressed so fore vpon our Ships,

Ships, that our Anchors could not hold vs. For the *Matthew* was put from three Anchors, and droue with that small tyde, that runneth there within her length of a sunken Rocks; but a great piece of Ice on ground vpon the Rocks did keepe her from it. And when the flood came againe, the was driuen within halfe her length of the Rocks; so that they were glad to get moit of their vviduals out of her vpon the Rocks, looking each minute when the should split in funder. And though the reit of the ships did not drue as the did, yet they had many a fore stroke with the Ice. For the Southerly wind caused a hollow Sea to come in; so that our ships strooke with such force against the Ice, that wee could hardly stand on our feete in them. Then each man layed to his hand to faue his ship, by putting Plankes and old Cables ends and bundles of Hoops betweene their ships and the Ice. But they were beaten all to pieces presently. Then we put pieces of Rime Plankes betweene the bowes of the *Paul*, in which ship I was: Immediately, they also were beaten into small pieces, although they were about foure inches thick. With the stroke that brake the Planke, the Carpenter said, the ships side did cracke, and two timbers were broken. Then presently wee also got out of the ship moit of our vviduals, and carried it to the shoate. There might you see a sorrowfull spectacle. For all the ships, being fise in number, were so fast in the Ice, that all the men that were in them all, which were one hundred eighty two, could not imagine how to faue one. Among the reit, we made account that the *Matthew* would finke, ere long: because the Ice had broken nine timbers on one side, and eleuen on the other; so that the Greene Sea did come into the ship: and her mayne beame was broken at that instant likewise. In this sort we continued till the twentieth day following: when we looked fillt to bee put on the Cliftes with the force of the Ice, that pressed vpon our ships to fore, that our Anchors could not possibly hold.

Vpon the twentieth day, it pleased God to bring the wind Westely, then the Ice began to open, and to cleue out of the Coue by little and little, to our great comfort. But that Ice that did not get cleane out, came backe againe, and ranne round in a Circle; so that wee had a continual labor to defend the ships from it, wherevpon we made meanes to get our by long Warps, as we termed them. Wee were faine to let slip one Cable, and the *Luness* one. The *Matthew* had but one Cable and Anchor; but they borrowed one of vs. By a North-west Sunne, all the ships got out of the Ice to the Coues mouth, where we stayed for the ebbe. When the ebbe was come, the *Luness* departed on her Voyage to *Saint Nicolas in Russia*. And presently the *Matthew*, and the *Mary Marguerite* let faile and got out. Then wee in the *Paul* let faile, and before our Anchor was vp, it got hold vpon one of *Matthews* Cables, that free loft, when shee droue out, and brought vs vp to a *Bitter*, so that wee were very nere the Rocks; but wee got off againe, and ride there till a North-west Sunne the next day.

The one and twentieth day, we weighed and stood to the East side of the Iland, where we found the *Mary Marguerite*, which had lost her Boat. Streight way we sayled to the North side, where we anchored and rid till a North Sunne.

The two and twentieth day, it cleared vp of a fogge, which had continued since the first of our coming out of the Coue, and we thought it best to fetch the vviduals aboard, so that we carried on shoate when the tyde was like to be split with Ice.

Then *Iofas Legan* and I tooke feuen men more with vs, and came to the Coue on the South side: where wee found abundance of Morfes lying on the Ice, that was in the Coue. I slue one of them, andooke off his head; we could not get to the shoate where our vviduals lay, but we made a fire vnder a Cliffe in the same Coue.

The three and twentieth day, wee got to our vviduals, and *Iofas* went with it to our shippes: but I tarried at the Coue, hoping that the beafts would come on Land when the Ice was gone; as they did afterward. There I tarried till the fise and twentieth of Iuly; at what time *Iofas Legan* came to mee with the Shallop, and a Skiffe laden with Caske and other provisions; and told mee, that they had slaine fise or fixe hundred Morfes on the North side.

Hee tarried with mee till the feuen and twentieth of Iuly: now seeing no beafts did come on Land, because the Ice did hang about the Coue, he went to the North side againe: but the same day hee was gone, they began to come on Land.

The next day following, being the eight and twentieth, wee slue about eighty, andooke their Blubber and Teeth. Then they began to come on shoate againe the thirtieth day: at what time *Master Bonner* was come into the Coue to freake his Anchors. Then his men came on shoate, and wee slue about one hundred and fiftie beafts more. But there rose a storme at South-east, that brought in such a surge, that it walked about fixtie beafts into the Sea; so that moit of them were lost.

The next day being the last of Iuly, *Master Widen* and *Master Jones* came to the Coue with about twelue men, being all very wearie. For they had left the Shallop in a Coue on the North-west side of the Iland, and came out Land. Then to worke wee went on all hands, and placed our Coppers. And by the fift day of August we had ended our businesse; and the ship came from the North side into the Coue.

is said to bee brought to a Bitter. The Bitter end is that end of the Cable within board at the Bitter.

C c c

The

I a warpe, is a Rope (commonly called a Hawse) vvhich is used to warpe a ship, there is, with an Anchor bent to the Hawse and layd out to hale the ship forward: which is done when they want to carrie out, or into a Harbour.

A Bitter is a name of the Cable about the Bitts, for when they come to Anchor, they take a name with it about the Bitts and the Pillar: which is done when they want to carrie out, or into a Harbour.

August.

The sixt of August, I tooke the Skiff and seuen men to fetch the Shallop to the Coue, that Master *Welden* had left in a Coue, on the North-west side of the Iland, the last of Iuly. When I came to the place, considering I was nere the North side, where we commonly make our Voyage, and also defined by Master *Welden*, if I could goe to doe so, I went thither, and found about ch. m with all, but two, I tooke one, and a luttie fellow that was our Cooper had the other: we had not killed pait ten but his Lancebrake. Then I slue all the rest in lesse then two houres, and weooke their Teeth; and the next day by a West Sunne we came aboard the *Pand* with them.

The eight day, we got the Southermost Point of the Iland: where wee rid all that day. I o rose such a fogge, that wee had like to haue lost both our Boats and men; but they got to the ship againe with much adoe.

The ninth day, it was calme; but wee had such a fogge, that wee could not see two Cables length from the ship. And about eight of the Clocke at night, wee lost our Skiffe altogether.

The tenth day, we had a little Wind at North-west and by West. Then seeing no amendment of the weather, wee left the ship of *Hull* behind vs in the Iland, and about fixe of the Clocke feyle for *England*, and arrived safely at *London* the last of August, 1609. Blessed bee God.

A Voyage performed to the Northwards, Anno 1603, in a ship of the burthen of fiftie tunnes, called the Grace, and set forth at the cost and charges of the War-shippfull FRANCIS CHERIE. Written by WILLIAM GORDEN; being the first Voyage to Cherie Ilands, which came to my hands since the former (or rather later Voyages) were in the Presse.

The ship being readie the tenth of Aprill, whereof was Master *Stephen Bennet*, and for Factor and Quer-seer *William Gorden*, our Directions from the said Merchant, were first to proceed to *Cala*, and there to make life of such goods as we had, and to take in such other as the Countrey of *Lappia* did afford, and then to proceed vpon some well knowne before, after our Affaires ended, we were readie to proceed forward. But our men being hired therunto would haue refused, if there had not beene made an agreement by selfe, partly with promises, partly with gifts. And thus setting forward the first of August, 40 did hinder vs, if we did not light vpon some land our determination was hindered by means of meeting with an Iland, and likewise the yeere being farr spent, keeping our course from West end of *Kilden*, to the Ilands of *Uppland*, which were passed the tenth of August with the little wind; then directing our course North-west, the wind at South-west easte wind, so that the eleventh day we did reckon our felues to haue layed twentie leagues North-west. The twelfth day, it was most part calme and foggie. The thirteenth day, it was cleere, and the wind at South, and we had layed twentie leagues North-west. The fourteenth day, the wind at East, we kept our course and layed ten leagues, and the same day being thicke and foggy, we had thought wee had leene Land about foure of the clocke in the after-noon, bearing 50 pping fill his forme, and not altering till the wind increasing, caused it to fade away (for it was led then fifteene dayes twentie leagues North-west and by North, till hauing close weather, wee did see two great high Hills, which did seeme to vs above the Clouds, and did seeme very nere, but we found it otherwise for layling towards it, we found it further then we did expect, chored in thirte fathomes. In which time we could not see neere unto the Land, where wee an- and by West. That night our Master knowing, a better what did belong vnto those Affaires, 69 would not suffer the Boat to goe aland till the morning: which was the seuen teenth day of August, and before our going aland, the Master caused a banke of Lines to bee shot for, to toy for us, and then he and my selfe with foure of our Company went aland. First, vpon a little Iland nere adjoining, where we had much adoe to get to our Boat againe, by reason of the steepnes

of the Rockes: then we went on shore vpon the Mayne, where at our coming on Land, wee did see two Foxes, one White, the other Blacke. Thus spending most part of the day, wee returned aboard our ship without any profit: only one of our men tooke vp a peece of Lead, and I found a peece of a Morice Topp, by which we perceived that the Sea Mories did vse thither, but the time for that yeere was past, for we did see none. After our coming aboard, having hal- led the Line, we found nothing but one but fish thereon, wherefore presently weighing Anchor, we layed West to see if we could haue any true obseruation, the next day which wee had, and found our felues to bee in 74. degrees 30. minutes. The same day directing our course for *London*, where we arrived the tenth of September, by Gods helpe, in health and safetie.

CHAP. XIII.

Diners Voyages and Northerne Discoueries of that worthy irreuerable Discoverer Master HENRY HUDSON. His Discouerie toward the North Pole, set forth at the charge of certaine Warshipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by JOHN PLATSE one of the Company, and partly by H. HUDSON.

A May 1607. Aprill the nineteenth, at Saint *Esthens* in Bishops Gate street, did communicate with the rest of the Parishioners these perious Seamen, purposing to goe to sea foure dayes after, for to discouera Passage by the North Pole to *Japan* and *China*. First, *Henry Hudson* Master. Secondly, *William Colmer* his Mate. Thirdly, *James Young*. Fourthly, *John Colman*. Fifthly, *John Cooke*. Sixthly, *James Benbery*. Seuenthly, *James Skemton*. Eightly, *John Playce*. Ninthly, *Thomas Baxter*. Tenthly, *Richard Day*. Eleuenthly, *James Knight*. Twelfthly, *John Hudson* a Boy.

The first of May 1607, we weyed Anchor at *Gravesend*; and on Tuesday the fixe and twen- tieth day in the morning, we made the Iles of *Shetland*, and at noone we were in 60. degrees 11. minutes, and fixe leagues to the Eastward of them: the Compass had no variation. We had fixe- ty foure fathomes at our sounding, blacke, ozle, sandie, with some yellow fields. Our ship made in 61. degrees 11. minutes. This day I found the Needle to incline 79. degrees vnder the Ho- rizon. For foure dayes space we made very little way by contrary winds.

On Thursday the fourth of Iune, we were by our obseruation still in 61. degrees and 14. mi- nutes, eight and twentie or thirte leagues from the Northern part of *Shetland*: the Land be- ing by our Accompt East and by North 94° , I found variation in fixe degrees Westerly.

The fiftenth of Iune, we were in 63. degrees 25. minutes. The eighth, all the fore-noon we had a fresh gale Southerly; we steered away North and by West, and by obseruation we were in 64. degrees 27. minutes.

The eleuenth, we saw fixe or seuen Whales nere our shippe: we were in fixe seuen de- grees thirte minutes. About fixe of the clocke, the winde came vp at North-east and by the winde was at East North-east, a Riffe gale, we steered away as afore, and accounted by West fiftene leagues, all the night proceeded a great fogge with much wind.

The thirteenth, betweene one and two in the morning, we saw some Land on head of vs, and some Ice: and it being a thicke fogge, we steered away Northerly, and hauing much wind wee stood away South and by East fixe or eight leagues. Our sayle and throudes did freeze. At eight in the morning it cleered vp, the wind being at North-east and by East, with much wind wee were hardly able to maintayne a sayle. This was a very high Land, most part covered with Snow. The neather part was vncouered. At the top it looked reddish, and vnderneath a blackish Clay, with much Ice lying about it. The part which we saw when wee cast about, trended East and West: And the Northern part which we saw, trended North-east and by North, and North- West, and the Length which we saw was nine leagues; we saw much Fowle. Also we saw a slandeth a very high Mount like a round Caffe, which we called, the *Mount of Gods Mercie*. All the after-noon, and all the Euening it rained. At eight in the Euening we cast about, and 66 steered all night North and by West, and sometimes North North-west.

The fourteenth, being nere the Land and we had Snow. At foure in the morning, the wind ve- ring Northerly, we cast about and stood South-west and by South. This day we had much wind and raine, we thorted sayle being nere the Land. The sixteenth, in the morning it blowed so much wind at North-east, that we were not able to maintayne any sayle, wee then strooke a hull,

May. The Iles of Shetland. No variation, 61. degrees 11. minutes. The inclination of the Needle. Iune.

63. degrees 37. minutes. 67. degrees 30. minutes.

Youngs Cape. The Mount of Gods Mercie. Snow.

hull, and let our ship drive, waiting for a fitter wind; this night was very much raine. The fixteenth, was much wind at North-east. The fourteenth, we layle at noone, we steered away North-east by South, and East South-east. The eighteenth, in the afternoon a fine gale South-east, which toward the Evening increased, and we steered North-east three Watches, twelve leagues. The nineteenth we steered away North North-east sixteen leagues. At noone we had raine with fogge. From twelve to foure we steered North North-east eight leagues, and account our felues, in fouente degrees neereff hand: purposing to see whether the Land which we made the thirteenth day, were an land or part of *Greenland*. But then the fogge increased very thicke with much wind at South, which made vs alter our course, and to thorten our sayle, and we steered away North-east. Being then as we supposed, in the Meridian of the same land, 10 having no observation since the eleventh day, and lying a hull from the fifteenth to the fourteenth day, we perceived a current setting to the South-west. This day we saw three Whales neere our ship, and having steered away North-east almost all watch, five leagues, the Sea was growne curry way: we supposed we were thwart of the North-east part of that Land which we made the thirteenth day, and the current setting to wind-ward. The reason that moved vs to thinke so, was, that after we had sayled five or six leagues in this Sea, the wind neither increasing nor dulling, we had a pleasant and smooth Sea. All this night was fogge with a good gale of wind, we steered away North-east untill the next day at noone, and sayled in that course twelve leagues.

The twentieth, all the morning was a thicke fogge with the winde at South: we steered North-east all noone. Then we changed our course, and steered away North North-east, hoping for an open Sea in our course to fall with the bodie of *Newland*. This day at two in the afternoon it cleared vp, and we saw the Sunne, which we had not seen since the second of this month. Having steered North North-east, about foure leagues off vs, trending as we could please North-east and South-west. We steered away East North-east, the wind at South a good gale, like a Ducke: we saw also many Birds of Ice driving at the Sea. We looked for one and went roomer for another. And this morning about foure, a thicke fogge we saw a head of vs.

The one and twentieth, in the morning we steered North-east, and East North-east two watches, five or six leagues. Then it grew thicke fogge. And we cast about, and steered North-east and East North-east two watches, five leagues, finding we were embayed. The wind came at East South-east a little gale: we tacked about and lay South. All this night was a thicke fog with little wind, East we lay with the steme.

The two and twentieth, in the morning it cleared vp, being calme about two or three of the clocke: after we had a prettie gale, and we steered away East and by North three leagues. Our observation was in 72. degrees 38. minutes, and changing our course, we steered North-east, the wind at South-east a prettie gale. This morning when it cleared vp, we saw the Land, trending like a mayne high Land, nothing at all covered with snow: and the North part of that mayne high Land was very high Mountaynes, but we could see no snow on them. We accounted by our observation the part of the mayne Land, lay neereff hand in 73. degrees. The many fogges and calmes with contrary winds, and much Ice neere the shoare, held vs from farther Discovery of it. It may be objected against vs as a fault, for halting to Westwardly course, (for ought that we know) was to any *Christian* unknowne: and we thought it might as well have been open Sea as Land, and by that means our passage should have beene the larger to the Pole: and the hope of, having a Westwardly wind, which would be to vs a landward wind if we found Land. And considering we found Land contrary to that which our Cards make mention of; we accounted our labour for much the more worth. And for ought that we could see, it is like to be a good 50 Land, and worth the seeing.

On the one and twentieth day, in the morning while we steered our course North North-east, we thought we had embayed our felues, finding Land on our Larboard, and Ice upon it, and many great pieces of Drift Ice: we steered away North-east, with diligent looking out every cleere for Land, having a desire to know whether it would leave vs to the East, both to know the breadth of the Sea, and also to shape a more Northerly course. And considering we knew no name given to this Land, we thought good to name it, *Held with hope*, lying in 73. degrees of latitude.

The Sunne was on the Meridian on the South part of the Compass, neereff hand. Here is to be noted that when we made *The Mount of Gods Mercy*, and *Youngs Cape*, the Land was covered with snow for the most part, and extreme cold, when we approached neere it: But this Land was very temperate to our feeling. And this likewise is to be noted, that being two days without observation; notwithstanding, our lying a hull by reason of much contrary wind, yet our observation and dead reckoning were within eight leagues together, our ships being

before vs eight leagues. This night untill next morning proved little Winde.

The three and twentieth, in the morning we had an hard gale on head of vs, with much rayne that fell in very great drops, much like our Thunder showers in *England*; we tacked about and stood East North-westly with a short sayle, to our feeling it was not so cold as before we had it. It was calme from noone to three of the clocke with fogge. After the winde came vp at East and East South-east, we steered away North-east with the fogge and rayne. About seven or eight of the clocke, the winde increased with extreme fogge, we steered away with short sayle East North-east, and sometimes East and by North. About twelve at mid-night, the wind came vp at South-west, we steered away North, being reasonable cleere weather.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning about two of the clocke, the Master mate thought he saw Land on the Larboard, trending North North-west Westwardly, and the longer we ranne North, the more it fell away to the West, and alld think it to be a mayne high Land. This day the wind being Westwardly, we steered away North, and by observation we were in 73. degrees neereff hand. At noone we changed our course, and steered away North and by East, and at our last observation, and also at this, we found the Meridian all Leeward on the South and by West, Westwardly part of the Compass, when we had sayled two Watches eight leagues.

The five and twentieth, the wind scanted and came vp at North North-west, we lay North-east two Watches 8. leagues. After the wind became variable between the North-east and the North, we steered away East and by North, and sometimes East, we had thicke fogge. About noone three Grampasses played about our shippe. This After-noon the wind vered to the East and South-east, we haled away North and by East. This night was cleere weather, but small fogge (we vlew the word *Night* for diffinition of time, but long before this the Sunne was always about the Horizon, but as yet we could neuer see him upon the Meridian North.) This Night being by our account in the Latitude of 75. degrees, we saw small flocks of Birds, with blacke Backes and white Bellies, and long speare Tayles. We supposed that Land was not farre off, but we could not stirre any way with all this diligence which we could vie, being in close weather, that many times we could not see five or six leagues off.

The six and twentieth, in the morning was a thicke fogge, we had our wind and held our course as afore. This day our observation was 76. degrees 38. minutes, and we had Birds of the same sort as afore, and divers other of that colour, having red Heads; that we saw when we first made the Mount of *Gods Mercy* in *Greenland*, but not so many. After we steered away North and by East: two V Watches 10. leagues, with purpose to fall with the Souther part of *Newland*, accounting our felues 10. or 12. leagues from the Land. Then we stood away North-east one V Watch five leagues.

The seven and twentieth, about one or two of the clocke in the morning we made *Newland*, being cleere weather on the Sea; but the Land was covered with fogge, the Ice lying very thicke all along the shoare for 15. or 16. leagues which we saw. Having faire wind we coasted it in a very pleasing smooth sea, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms, foure leagues from the shoare. This day at noone, we accounted we were in 78. degrees, and we stood along the shoare.

40 The day was 10 flocks of *Vogel Hooke*. About eight of the clocke this Evening, we purposed to shape our course from thence North-west. Here is to be noted, that although we ranne along neere the shoare, we found no great cold, which made vs thinke, that if we had beene on the shoare the place temperate. Holding this North-west course, about ten of the clocke at night, we saw a great flock of Ice on head off vs, bearing West off vs; which we could not goe cleere off with the forsayd course. Then we cast about, and stood away betweene the South and the South-east, as much desirous to leave this Land as we were to see it.

The eight and twentieth, was a hard gale of wind all the fore-noon betweene the South and the South-west. We shaped our course, we did it to be farther from the Ice and Land. It pleased God that about twelve of the clocke this night it cleared vp, and we found that we were betweene the Land and the Ice; *Vogel Hooke* then bearing neereff hand East off vs. Then we tacked about, and stood in for the shoare, having Sea-room betweene the Ice and the Land. The nine and twentieth, at foure in the morning the wind at North-east, a prettie gale, we thought best to thorten our way, so we tacked about and stood North North-west, the wind a little increasing. About twelue at noone, we saw Ice a head off vs, we cast about again, and stood away East South-east with very much wind, so that we thorten our sayles for the space of two Watches. Then about eight this Evening, we strucke a Hull, and it proved the hardest storme that we had in this Voyage. The thirtieth, in the morning was stormie; about noone it ceased, at seven in the Evening it proved almost calme.

60 The first of July, all the fore-noon the wind was at South-east, we stood North-east for the shoare, hoping to finde an open Sea betweene the shoare and the Ice. About noone we were embayed with Ice, lying betweene the Land and vs. By our observation we were in 78. degrees 42. minutes, whereby we accounted we were thwart of *The great Indraght*. And to free our felues of the Ice, we steered betweene the South-east and South, and to the Westward, we

Note.
Land on/behir
Larboard.

Many Fowles,
Much drift Ice,
to keep close to
the wind: 100.
mer coast.

* To tacke the
ship is to bring
her head about
to lye the o-
ther way.

Land not co-
vered with
Snow.

The Land of
Held with hope
in 73. degrees.

A mayne high
Land.

75. Degrees
Land neereff
off.

76. degrees 38.
minutes.

Greenland in
Newland disco-
vered.

78. Degrees.

Vogel Hooke.

Temperate
590.

July.

78. degrees 42.
minutes.

Abundance of Seales.

grees and 4. and 8.1. degrees by this way there is no passage: but I think this Land may be profitable to those that will adventure it. In this Bay before spoken of, and about this coast, we saw more abundance of Seales then we had seen any time before [swimming in the water. At noon, this day having a stiff gale of wind at North, we were thwart of Collins Cape, standing thence I let our course West South-west, with purpose to keepe in the open Sea vs. From Ice, and layled in that course 16. leagues. At ten this night we fled away South-west, with the wind at North a hard gale, vntill eight the next morning 18. leagues.

The fourteenth, in the morning a good gale at North: at eight, we altered our course, and steered away South till eight in the Evening, and ran 13. leagues. This day proved reasonable East, with thicke fogge. All this after-noon and night proved close weather, little fogge, and reasonable warme.

The nineteenth, at eight in the morning the wind at South, with thicke fogge, we steered South-east 4. leagues till noon: then the wind vered more large; we steered South-east and by East 4. leagues till four: then we vered thence, and steered East and by South Easterly, and 15. leagues, till eight the next morning. This day after the morning, proved reasonable cleere and warme.

The twentieth, in the morning little wind: at eight this morning we saw Land ahead of vs vnder our Lee, and to weatherward of vs distant from vs 12. leagues, being part of Newland. It is very high mountainous Land; the highest that we had seen vntill now. As we layled here it, we saw a Sound ahead of vs, lying East and west. The Land on the Northern side in our sight being 10. leagues from vs. And the Land on the Southern side being 8. or 10. leagues was calmer. This day by observation we were in 77. degrees 26. minutes. On the Northern side of the mouth of this Inlet lie three Islands, not farre the one from the other, being very high like heapes of Corne. The farthest of the three to the North-west, hath four very high Mounts Southern end. Here one of our companie killed a red billed Bird. All this day after the morning, and all night proved calme, enclining rather to heate then cold. This night we had some warme rayne.

The one and twentieth, all the fore-noon calme; at four in the after-noon we had a small gale of wind at South South-east, with fog; we steered away East to stand in with the Land, and layled 3. leagues vntill mid-night: then the wind came at North-east, we cast about, and steered South 10. leagues till eight the next morning. The two and twentieth, at eight in the morning much wind at East, and variable, with short layle we steered 3. leagues South and by East: then came downe very much wind; wee strooke a hull. All this after-noon and night, proved very much wind with raine.

The three and twentieth, all the fore-noon was very much wind at South, with raine and fogge. At four this after-noon we saw Land, bearing North-east of vs 6. leagues from vs. Then we had the wind at South South-west; we steered away South-east, and South-east and by East 4. leagues, the Sea being very much growne. We accounted we had lullled North-west, and by North 22. leagues; and North 3. leagues. Then fearing with much wind to be set on a lee shoare, we tackt about, and made our way good West and by North, halfe a point Northerly, all this night with much wind.

The four and twentieth, in the morning much wind as afore, and the Sea growne. This morning wee strooke our mayne Top-mast to calse our ship, and layled from the last Evening eight to this noon 15. leagues West and by North halfe a point Northerly. From twelue to eight, 6. leagues as afore, with the wind at South and by West: at eight we tackt about with 50 the winde at South South-west, and lay South-east and by East, with much winde, and the Sea growne.

The five and twentieth, was a cleere morning we set our mayne Top-mast, we saw Land bearing North of vs, and vnder our Lee, we layled South-east and by East. Then the wind faded; we cast about, and lay South-west and by West 4. leagues; till noon. Then it began to alter, and the wind to faint againe: we cast about, and lay South-east and by South, the wind at South-west and by East, and layled in that course 3. leagues till eight in the after-noon. Then the wind faded againe, and we layled 3. leagues South. Now, seeing how contrarie the winde proved, to doe the good which we desired this way; I thought to proue our fortunes by the West once againe; and this Evening at eight, we being the latitude of 78. with the better, and from Land 15. leagues; which leagues part whereof beare from the North-east to the East off vs, we steered away West, with the wind at South-east, and cleere weather.

The fixe and twentieth, all this day proved rayne with thicke fog, and an hard gale of wind at East and by North, and East North-east. From the last Evening at eight to this noon, we ran 22

ranne 25. leagues: from noon till mid-night 19. leagues, the wind at East and by South; from mid-night till two the next morning, 2. leagues West.

The seven and twentieth, extreme thicke fog, and little wind at East and by South. Then it proved calme, and the Sea very loftie. We heard a great rute of noise with the Ice and Sea, which was the first Ice we heard or saw since we were at Collins Cape: the Sea bearing vs Westward toward the Ice. Wee hauled out our Boat, and wanted to rowe out our ship further from the danger; which would have bene to small purpose, by means the Sea went so high: but in this extremitie it pleased God to giue vs a small gale at North-west and by West, we steered away South-east 4. leagues till noon. Here we had finished our Discouerie, if the wind had continued that brought vs hither, or if it had continued calmer: but it pleased God to make this North-west, and by West wind the means of our deliuerance: which wind wee had found comming off vs in this Voyage. God giue vs thankfull hearts for great deliuerance. Here we found the want of a good ship-boat, as once we had done before at Whales Bay: we wanted also halfe a dozen long Oares to rowe in our ship. About noon, the day cleared vp, and we saw by the skie Ice bearing off vs: from West South-west to the North and North North-east. Then we had a good gale at West, we steered away South-east 4. leagues From foure to six South 4. leagues, and found by the low skie and our seeneesse to Greenland, that there is no passage that way; which if there had bene, I ment to haue made my returne by the North of Greenland to Davis his Streights, and to the English. Here finding we had the benefit of a Westerly wind, which 20 all this Voyage we had found faint; we altered our course, and steered to the Eastward, and ran South-east foure leagues. From eight this Evening till noon the next day, East South-east 30. leagues. All this day and night proved very cold, by means, as I suppose, of the winds comming off so much Ice.

The eight and twentieth, very cold, the wind at West, not very foggy. At noon this day we steered away South-east and by East, and by observation we were 76. degrees 36. minutes. From noon to eight 10. leagues. Then the wind faded to South-east and by South, we steered away East and by North 18. leagues, till the next day noon.

The nine and twentieth, all the fore-noon a thicke fog and wet, the wind at South-east and by East, nereest hand, and raw cold. From noon to foure, we layled three leagues East and by North, halfe a point Northerly. Then the wind vered more large, we steered East and by South 8. leagues till twelue at night. At this timet to windward we heard the rute of Land; which I knew to be so, by the colour of the Sea. It was extreme thicke fog, so that we could hardly see a Cables length from our ship. We had ground 25. fathoms, small blacke pebble stones. Wee founded againe, and had ground at 30. fathomes small stones like Beanes, at the next cast no ground at 40. fathomes. I cast about againe, and steered South-west 6. leagues West and by North two leagues till the next day noon. All this day and night extreme thicke fog.

The thirtieth, all the fore-noon very thicke fog. At noon almost calme: after we had little wind, and steered North North-west till two: then it cleared vp, so that we could see from vs 2. leagues with the wind at North-west. Then we steered East South-east: after it cleared. At 40 South in the Evening, we saw Land bearing off vs North-west from vs 5. leagues, and we saw Land bearing off vs from vs 7. leagues. We had Land likewise bearing off vs from East South-east, to South-east and by East as wee iudged, 10. leagues. Then hauing the winde at West North-west, we steered South and by East. It presently proved calme till ten this Evening: then we had a little gale at South-west and by West, wee steered away South South-east till twelue this night, and accounted ourselves in 76. from Land 10. leagues: which was the likest Land that wee had seen on all the parts of Newland, being plainne riggish Land of a meane height, and not ragged as all the rest was that we had seen in this Voyage, nor couered with snow. At twelue this night we saw two Mories in the Sea nere vs, swimming to Land. From twelue at night to foure, calme.

30 The one and thirtieth, at foure this morning we had the wind at South-east, we steered South South-west. Then it proued calme, and so continued all the fore-noon. The after-noon we had the wind at East South-east, we steered South 8. leagues. Then being like to proue much wind, contrarie to our purpose, and finding our fog more thicke and troublesome then before, diuers things necessarie wanting, and our time well nigh spent to doe further good this yere, I commanded to heare vp for our returne for England, and steered away South South-west. And this night proued a hard gale of wind at South-east and by East. Wee were thwart of Chierie Land the next morning at foure of the clocke, being to windward off vs 5. leagues: knowing we were nere it, we looked out carefully for the same, and it proued cleere, we saw it, being a very ragged Land on the Western side, rising like Hey-cookes.

60 The first of August, a very hard gale of wind at East South-east, we shorted sayle, and steered away South South-west. This night was very foggy, with a hard gale of wind at East and by South, we steered by our account 37. leagues: and from eight this Evening till the next morning foure, 10. leagues as afore. All this night was very foggy, wet and raw cold.

The second, in the morning calme with a thicke fog, cold and flabbie weather. About noon we

we had a little gale West and by North, we steered away as afore. The third, in the morning calme and cleere weather, with a little gale East and by South, we sayed South South-west, then we had the wind at South-east, we sayed as afore. All this day and night proved cleere weather, a little fogge at noone, which continued not long. At twelue this night the cleere vered to the East and by North, we held our course South South-west, as afore.

The fifteenth of August, we put into the Isles of *Ferry*, standing in 51. degrees; and the fifteenth of September, landed in *Tilkerie Hope* in the *Thames*.

CHAP. XV.

A second Voyage or Employment of Master HENRY HUDSON, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east: written by himselfe.

* I have Robert Jordall Journal also, for brevity omitted.

THeir names employed in this action are as followeth: *Henry Hudson*, Master and Pilot; *Robert Jordall*, the Master his Mate; *Ludlow Arnall*, *John Cooke*, Boat-dry, *James Stratton*, *Thomas Feiler*, *Thomas Hilles*, *Richard Tomlin*, *Robert Keyner*, *John Hudson*, and *Thomas Gilly*. The courses observed in this voyage directly one on the other.

April. Anno 1608. the two and twentieth of April, being Friday, we set sayle at Saint *Katharine*, and fell downe to *Blacke wall*.

May. The twentieth of May, at noone by observation we were in 64. degrees 52. minutes, and at this time and place the Needle declined vnder the Horizon by the Inclinatorie 81. degrees, and we had a smooth Sea, by means whereof my observation was good.

The one and twentieth, at night thicke fog, we sayed North North-east, with the wind at East. The two and twentieth, in the fore-noone the winde at South-east, we steered North-east, as afore: in the after-noonne little wind and thicke fog; I was accounted vs in 67. degrees, the Sea smooth, the Needle declined 82. degrees, this night was calme and cleere. The three and twentieth, in the morning the wind was Easterly, we stood North North-East, and North and by East. All the fore-noonne was foggy: in the after-noonne it cleered, and the wind at East North-east, and East and by North, we lay as nere as we could with a full sayle; we accounted *Lowfoote* from vs East North-east, 16. leagues, distant from vs; at foure a clocke this after-noonne, we stood all night, as afore.

The five and twentieth, the wind at East North-east, we stood away North as we could lie: all this day was cleere weather, and seaching cold, which cold begrethe the one and twentieth day, and then my Carpenter was taken sicke, and to dooth yet continue; and three or foure more of our companie were enclining to sicknesse, I suppose by means of the cold. All the night it was calme. The fixe and twentieth, cold but cleere weather, the wind betweene East and East North-east, we stood North-easterly till twelue a clocke at night: then we had the wind at North-east, cold and drie weather, at noone we had the wind North and North North-west; we stood away North-east, and East North-east, as we could, and accounted our fleshes in 69. degrees 40. minutes, and the Needle enclined, hauing a smooth Sea, nereest 84. degrees. All night we had wind and weather as afore.

The eight and twentieth, drie cold cleere weather: the wind betweene North North-west and North, we made our way good East North-east; we saw the Sunne on the North Meridian about the Horizon 5. degrees 25. minutes. All this night we had much wind, as afore. The nine and twentieth, a hard gale at North North-west; by account we ranne from mid-night to noone 21. leagues, East North-east. We had the Sunne on the Meridian 5. degrees, the latitude 73. degrees 13. minutes, whereby we found our ship to haue out-runne vs. At mid-night the wind came to South-east: we cast about, and stood East North-east. This day partly cleere weather with some snow. The thirtieth, cold cleere weather, the wind betweene North-east, and East and by North: we went East South-east, and obseruing, were in 73. degrees 50. minutes. The one and thirtieth, cold and cleere weather: from the last day till this day noone, we stood South-east and by South, in the latitude of 72. degrees 45. minutes.

June. The first of June, a hard gale at East North-east, with snow: we made our way good South South-east. The second, a hard gale of wind at North-east: towards night, calme with fogge, our course was South-east all day. The third, in the morning we had a sight of the North Cape; and at a West and by North Sunne, the Cape bore off vs South-west, halfe a point Southerly, being from vs 8. leagues: and obseruing the variation, I found it to the Westward 21. degrees: and

and hauing a smooth Sea, the Needle enclined vnder the Horizon 84. degrees and a halfe, the nereest I could finde. We had the wind at South-west, and we stood away North-east and by East. It was cleere weather, and we saw *Norway* Fisher-men at Sea.

The fourth, warme cleere sun-shine, we stood away North-east and by East. Now by Gods helpe our Carpenter recovered, and made a Mast for our ship-board, and the companie made a Sayle, we had the Sunne in the light on the North Meridian: his height was 5. degrees 40. minutes. Inclination 23. degrees 21. minutes: Poles height 72. degrees 21. minutes. The fift, in the morning calme weather: we founded, and had 120. fathoms, fand Oze: here we saw a swelling Sea setting North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, with fire-ame-lecthes: and we saw drift wood. After we had wind; and we sayed and made our way North North-east: towards night we founded, and found ground at 150. fathoms, fand Oze. This day cleere weather, and not cold. The fixt, we had cleere weather, the wind being at East North-East, from the last day till this day noone; we shaped our way on diuers courses North and by West, in the latitude of 73. degrees 24. minutes. We found that our ship had out-runne vs, founding in 160. fathoms: in the after-noonne little wind.

The seuenth, in the morning the wind at South, after at South South-east: from the last day till this day noone, we accounted our way from diuers courses North-east, 15. leagues. This day was close but cleere weather, and we had a good gale of wind at this time. And three dayes before this, our Cooke and one more of our companie were very sicke. In the morning, we had ground at 150. fathoms, and at night we had no ground at 180. fathoms, which encreased hope. This night we had some fow, which continued foure houres: then the wind came at North-east and by East with storme; and with short sayle we stood North and by West: here the Needle enclined 86. degrees. I accounted that we were in 74. degrees and a halfe at nereest land, this night we saw the Sunne on the North Meridian, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 23. minutes. The eight, from twelue a clocke last night till noone, we accounted our way on diuers courses, North and by East: then our latitude was 74. degrees 38. minutes, and we had no ground at 200. fathoms. In the after-noonne the wind came at South South-east, and South-east and by East. This day and night we had cleere weather, and we were here come into a blacke blue Sea.

The ninth, cleere weather, the wind came at South-east and by East: from the last day till this day noone, we had a good way North-east, in latitude of 75. degrees 29. minutes: then we entred into Ice, being the first we saw in this Voyage: our hope was to goe through it, we bearing roome for another, till foure in the after-noonne: at which time we were loe farre in, and the Ice soe thicke and firme ahead, being in it foure or five leagues, that we had endangered vs somewhat too farre; we returned: as we went in, and with a few rubbes of our ship against the Ice; by eight a clocke this Evening we got free of it. We made our way till next day at noone, South-west and by South, 18. leagues: in the middelt of this way we had no ground at 180. fathoms. The tenth, in the morning halsey weather; but at noone it cleered up, and then we cast about, and stood away North and by East, the wind being at East South-east, and watches, five leagues: then we had the wind at East, we cast about, and stood South South-east, East and by South: we strooke a hull.

The twelfth, in the morning fog, and all day after cleere weather, the wind at South South-west, we steere East and by North: at noone being in the latitude 75. degrees 30. minutes. From noone till foure a clocke, five leagues East and by North; then we saw Ice ahead of vs, and vnder thom greenish Oze. Here we saw diuers pieces of drift wood by vs driving, and streame Leeches lying South South-west, and North North-east. We many times saw the like since we saw the North Cape. The thirteenth, cleere weather, the wind at East, we made a South way 6. leagues, two watches: then we cast about, and made a North way one watch 3. leagues: at twelue at foure and a halfe in the fore-noonne fog, and our throates were frozen: the after-noonne was cleere Sun-shine, and so was all the night.

The fifteenth, all day and night cleere sun-shine; the wind at East, the latitude at noone 75. degrees 7. minutes. We held Westward by our account 13. leagues. In the after-noonne the Sea was stirred: and the wind being at East we set sayle, and stood South and by East, and South South-east as we could. This morning, one of our companie looking over board saw a Mermaide, and calling vpon some of the companie to see her, one more came vp, and by that time she came close vnto the ships side, looking earnestly on the men: a little after, a Sea came and overthrew her: her body as big as one of vs; her backe and breasts were like a womans, (as they say that saw her) from the Naill upward, her skin very white; and long haire hanging downe behind, of colour blacke: in her going downe they saw her tayle, which was like the tayle of a Porpoise, and speckled like a Macrell. Their names that saw her, were *Thomas Hilles* and *Robert Keyner*.

Needles inclining in 14. degrees and a halfe.

Dark blue Sea.

Mermaide seen, and described.

The sixteenth, cleere weather, the wind being at East. From the last day till this day noone, we made our way South and by East 9 leagues; and from noon to eight a clocke in the Evening, 6 leagues: then we caft about and flood to the Northwards.

The seventeenth, cleere weather, the wind at South-east and by East; from the last day till this day noone, our way was North-east and by East, at noone being in the latitude of 74. degrees 40. minutes. At after-noon we founded, and had ground at 86. fathom, greene Oze, and our wa- ter whitill greene: Here we saw Whales, Porpoises, and the Sea full of Fowles: from noone to mid-night North-east and by East we had the Sunne at lowest, on the North and by East, Easterly part of the Compasse: latitude 74. degrees 54. minutes. Sounding we had 92. fathoms water. Oze as before.

The eighteenth, faire weather, the wind at South-east and by East, from mid-night till this day noone, we layed North-east and by East, in the Latitude of 75. degrees 54. minutes, and had ground at ninetie five fathome Oze, as afore. Here we had Ice in our sight to the North- ward off vs. In the after-noon, having little wind at North-east, we caft about and lay East South-east, and at fixe a clocke, had ground at ninetie five fathoms and a halfe Oze, as afore. From noone to twelue a clocke at night, our way was South-east, and South-east and by East, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East halfe a point Eastward. The Sunnes height was eight degrees 40. minutes. Sounding ninetie fathom. All this day, we had Ice on our Larbord trending: and at this time, from the North-west off vs to the East South-east, I haue held the way we made betweene this noone and mid-night Observations, doe make mee suspicte the more.

The nineteenth, faire and warme weather, the sea smooth. Here the Needle inclined vnder the Horizon 89. degrees and a halfe, being in the Latitude at noone of 75. degrees 54. minutes; Sounding we had ground in an hundred fathom. From twelue a clocke last night till this day noone, we accounted our way from East and by North to South-east, ten leagues, having Ice al- wayes in our sight trending off our Larbord, we had the winde betweene North, and North-west. We saw the Sunne at the lowest on the North and by East, halfe a point Easterly, his height was 8. degrees 10. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 56. minutes. Sounding we had ground in one hundred and twentie fixe fathom. From noone to this time, we accounted our way East and by South, and East South-east, twelue leagues.

The twentieth, faire warme weather, this morning at foure of the clocke, wee had depth one hundred and twentie five fathom. Here we heard Beares roare on the Ice; and we law upon the Ice and neare vnto it, an incredible number of Seales. We had founding one hundred and fifteen fathom, and after ground at ninetie five fathom, and a halfe Oze. We had the Sun on the Meridian North and by East, halfe a point Easterly: his height was 7. degrees 50. minutes. From twelue a clocke last night, to twelue a clocke this night, our way was made good by our account South-east and by South, twelue leagues, and South-east, three leagues and a halfe, the Ice alwayes be- ing on our Larbord. This wind this day, betweene North and North-west.

The one and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the morning we founded, and had one hundred and twentie fathome greene Oze, and the Ice bore off vs East, the winde variable; in diuers courses we made our way good South-east; our Latitude at noone being 74. degrees 9. minutes, we were haled to the Northward beyond expectation. All this day faire, cleere, and warme weather, and Ice on our Larbord at a North and by East Sunne; being then at lowest, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which made the Poles height 74. degrees 33. minutes. From the last day at noone, till twelue a clocke this night, by account of our ships way, we were haled to the Northward. Here we had ground at one hundred and thirteene fathome, greene landie Oze.

The two and twentieth, faire cleere weather, the winde at West North-west. At eight a clocke in the Morning, we had ground at one hundred and fifteene fathome, greene Oze. From mid-night to noone, our course was North-east and by East, being in the Latitude of 74. degrees 35. minutes, and we found that our ships way, and our observation were not but there was carefull heed taken of both. Here we had Ice a head off vs, trending to the South- east; and all day before Ice on our Larbord. Here we stood South-east five leagues, then the Ice trended South and by West five leagues; we layed by it, and doubled it by eight a clocke in the Evening, and then it bore East off vs. Here we haue a smooth sea, the Needle inclined 85. de- grees, from eight a clocke to twelue, North and by East Easterly. Then we had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East 4. a point Easterly. The Sunnes height was 7. degrees 45. minutes, which made the Latitude 74. degrees 43. minutes.

The three and twentieth, in the morning thick fogge, the wind at North North-west. From mid-night till foure a clocke this morning, we layed North-east five leagues, and then we were among the Ice; we caft about, and stood two hours South-west, two leagues, and had no ground at one hundred and eightie fathom. Then we caft about againe, and stood East till eight a clocke

two leagues, and then it cleered vp, and we had Ice a head off vs. And from North, we flood to South-east, and our shroudes were frozen. Then till noone we went East and by South, four leagues, and were neere Ice on our Larbord, in the Latitude of 74. degrees 50. minutes. In the after-noon the wind being at North, we stood two hours and a halfe, five leagues and a halfe; three hours South South-east, five leagues; one hour South-east and by South, one league and a halfe; an hour East halfe a league, which brought eight in the Evening alwayes Ice on our Larbord. This alter-noon, we had some snow. From eight a clocke to mid-night, South South-west five leagues, with Ice as afore. We saw the Sunne at the lowest, North North-east, his height was 7. degrees 15. minutes, the Poles height 74. degrees 18. minutes.

The foure and twentieth, cleere, but cold and some snow, the wind betweene North North-east, and North-east, from mid-night to foure a clocke, we stood Southward two leagues, and South-east and by East two leagues. And from foure a clocke till noone, South-east Southerly nine leagues, founding we had ground in one hundred and fortie fathome. From noone to three a clocke, we stood South-east and by South three leagues; from three to foure, South-west and by South one league; and had Ice from the North-east to the South-east off vs. From foure a clocke to eight, we stood South-west two leagues and a halfe, Southward halfe a league, with Ice neere vs vnder our Lead.

The five and twentieth, cold and cleare, the wind at East South-east; from eight a clocke last night till foure this morning, our way was South and by East, four leagues and a halfe; founding we had ground in eightie fathome, then we had little wind till noone, at East North-east, and the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-west and by South point of the Compasse, ere it began to fall, we were in the Latitude of 72. degrees 52. minutes, and had Ice on our Larbord, and our hope of passage was gone the way, by means of our nearnesse to *Noua Zembla*, and the abundance of Ice. We had from Noone to eight a clocke in the Evening, the wind between North North-east, and North-east, we stood South-east three leagues and a halfe, and had Ice on our Larbord, and shoaling fixtie eight fathome.

The fixe and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, and little wind at East North-east. From twelue a clocke at night till foure this morning, we stood Southward two leagues, founding we had fixtie fixe fathome Oze, as afore. From foure a clocke to noone, South-east and by South four leagues, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-east, and by South point of the Compasse, in the Latitude of 72. degrees 25. minutes, and had sight of *Noua Zembla* foure or five leagues from vs, and the place called by the *Hollanders*, *Swart Cliffe*, bearing off South-east. In the after-noon, we had a fine gale at East North-east, and by eight of the clocke, we had brought it to beare off vs East Southerly, and layed by the shoare a league from it.

The seven and twentieth, all the fore-noon it was almost calme; wee being two mile from the shoare, I sent my Mate *Robert Isac*, and *John Cooke* my Boat-swaine on shoare, with foure others, to see what the Land would yield that might bee profitable, and to fill two or three Casks with water. They found and brought aboard some Whales Finnes, two Deeres Hornes, and the Dung of Deere, and they told me that they saw Grasse on the shoare of the last yeere, and young Grasse came vp amongst it a halfman long; and it was boggie ground in some places, there are many streames of Snow water nigh, it was very hot on the shoare, and the snow melted aspece, they saw the footings of many great Beares, of Deere, and Foxes. They went from vs at three a clocke in the morning, and came aboard at a South-east Sunne; and at their coming, we saw two or three companies of Morfes in the sea neere vs swimming, being al- most calme. I presently sent my Mate, *Ladlow* the Carpenter, and fixe others a shoare, to place where I thought the Morfes might come on the shoare, they found the place likely, but found no signe of any that had bene there. There was a Croffe standing on the shoare, much Drift-wood and signes of Fires that had bene made there. They saw the footing of very great Deere and Beares, and much Fowle, and a Foxe; they brought aboard Whale finnes, some Mofes, Flow- ers, and greene things that did there grow. They brought also two peeces of a Croffe, which they found there. The Sunne was on the Meridian on the North North-east, halfe a point Easterly, before it began to fall. The Sunnes height was 4. degrees 45. minutes, Inclination 22. degrees 33. minutes, which makes the Latitude 72. degrees 12. minutes. There is disagree- ment betweene this and the last observation; but by means of the cleerenesse of the Sunne, the smoothnesse of the Sea, and the nearnesse to Land, we could not be deceiued, and care was taken in it.

The eight and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the Morning our Boat came aboard, and brought two dozen of Fowle, and some Egges; whereof a few were good, and a Whales finne; and we saw the Sea full of Morfes, yet no signes of their being on shoare. And in this calme, from eight a clocke last Evening, till foure this Morning, we were drawne backe to the Northward, as farre as wee were the last Evening at foure a clocke, by a Streame or a Tide; and we chole to new Ship-boate before we doe vs service, and was an encouragement to my Company, which want I found the last yeere.

River and
land.

The nine and twentieth, in the morning calme, being halfe a league from the shoare, the Sea being smooth, the Needle did encline 84. degrees, we had many Morfes in the Sea nere vs, and desiring to find where they came on shoare, we put to with Sayle and Oares, towing in our Boat, and rowing in our Barke to get about a point of Land, from whence the Land did fall more Easterly, and the Morfes did goe that way. VVee had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by VVest point, halfe a point to the VVester part of the Compass, in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes. At two a clocke this after-noon we came to anchor in the mouth of a River, where lieth an Island in the mouth thereof, foure leagues: wee anchored from the Island in two and thirte fathomes, blacke faine ground. There droue much Ice out of it with a streame that fet out of the River or Sound, and there were many Morfes sleeping on the Ice, and by it we were put from our Road twice this night; and being calme all this day, it pleased God at our need to gae vs a fine gale, which fired vs out of danger. This day was calme, cleere and hot weather: all the night we rode still.

The thirtieth, calme, hot, and faire weather, we weighed in the morning, and towed and rowed, and at noone we came to anchor nere the Ile aforesaid in the mouth of the River, and saw very much Ice driving in the Sea, two leagues without vs lying South-east and North-west; and driving to the North-west so fast, that we could not by twelue a clocke at night see it out of the cop. At the land where we rode, lieth a little Rocks, whereon were twelve or fiftie Morfes lying aleepe, being all that it could hold, it being full and little. I sent my companie ashore to them, leaving none aboard but my Boy with mee; and by means of their needecesse to the water, they all got away, faw one which they killed, and brought his head aboard; and ere they came aboard they went on the Island, which is reasonable high and steepe, but flat on the top. They killed and brought with them a great Fowle, whereof there were many, and likewise some Egges, and in an houre they came aboard. This Ile is two light-shoot out in length, and one in breadth. At mid-night our Anchor came home, and wee layd aground by means of the strength of the fire, but by the helpe of God, we houred her off without hurt. In thore time we moud our ship, and rode still all night; and in the night wee had little wind at East, and East South-east. VVee had at noone this day an obseruation, and were in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes.

Ialy.

The first of Iuly, we saw more Ice to Seaward of vs; from the South-east to the North-west, 30 driving to the North-west. At noone it was calme, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South and by VVest point, halfe a point to the VVester part of the Compass, in the latitude of 71. degrees 14. minutes. This morning I sent my Mate *Deere*, and foure of our companie to rowe about the Bay, to see what Rivers were in the same, and to find where the Morfes did come on land; and to see a Sound or great River in the bottome of the Bay, which did alwaies send out a great streame to the Northwards, against the tide that came from thence: and I found the place in coming in, from the North to this place before this. VVhen by the means of the great plenty of Ice, the hope of passage betweene *Newland* and *Nova Zembla* was taken away; my purpose was by the *Voyage* to passe by the mouth of the River *Ok*, and to double that way the North Cape of *Tartaria*, or to give reason wherefore it will not be: but being here, and hoping by the plenty of Morfes we saw here, to defray the charge of our Voyage; and also that this Sound might for some reason be a better passage to the East of *Nova Zembla*, then the *Voyage*, it is held according to my hope conceived by the license it gave: for where as we had a flood came from the Northwards; yet this Sound or River did runne so strong, that Ice with the streame of this River was carried away, or any thing else against the force: so that both in flood and ebbe, the streame doth hold a strong course; and it floweth from the North three houres, and ebbseth nine.

His purpose
altered.

Strong stream.

The second, the wind being at East South-east, it was reasonable cold, and so was Friday; and the Morfes did not play in our fight as in warme weather. This morning at three of the clocke, my Mate and companie came aboard, and brought a great Deeres horne, a white locke of Deeres hure; foure dozen of Fowle, their Boat halfe laden with drift Wood; and some flowers and greene things, that they found growing on the shoars. They saw a herd of white Deere, of ten in a companie on the land; much drift wood lying on the shoare, many good Bayes, and one River faire to see to on the North shoare, for the Morfes to land on; but they saw no Morfes there, but signes that they had beene in the Bayes. And the great River or Sound, they certified mee, was of breadth two or three leagues, and had no ground at twentie fathomes, and that the water was of the colour of the Sea, and very salt; and that the streame fet forth strongly out of it. At fixe a clocke this morning, came much Ice from the Southward driving upon vs, very fearefull to look on: but by the mercy of God and his mightie helpe, wee being moored with two Anchors ahead with vering out of one Cable, and braving home the others, and sending off with Beames and Sparres, escaped the danger: which labour continued till fixe a clocke in the Evening, and then it was past vs, and we rode still and took our selfe this night.

Herd of white
Deere.

The third, the wind at North a hard gale: At three a clocke this morning we weighed our anchor, and set sayle, purposing to runne into the River or Sound before spoken of.

The

The fourth, in the morning it cleered vp with the wind at North-west, we weighed and set sayle, and flood to the Eastwards, and past ouer a Reeve, and found on it fise and a halfe, fixe, fixe and a halfe, and seuen fathoms water: then we saw that the Sound was full, & a very large River from the North-eastward free from Ice, and a strong streame coming out of it: and wee had founding then, foure and thirte fathoms water. We all conceiued hope of this Northerly River or Sound, and saying in it, we found three and twentie fathomes for three leagues, and after twentie fathomes for fise or fixe leagues, all tough Ozie ground. Then the winde veered more Northerly, and the streame came downe so strong, that we could doe no good on it: we came to anchor, and went to supper, and then presently I sent my Mate *Deere*, with fise more of our companie in our Boat, with Sayle and Oares to get vp the River, being provided with Victuall and Weapons for defence, willing them to found as they went; and if it did continue still deepe, to goe untill it did trende to the Eastward, or to the Southwards, and wee rode still.

The River
searched.

The fife, in the morning we had the wind at West: we began to weigh anchor, purposing to set sayle and to runne vp the Sound after our companie: then the wind veered Northerly vpon vs, and we faued our labour. At noone our companie came aboard vs hauing had a hard rought; for they had bene vp the River fise or seuen leagues, and founded it from twentie to three and twentie; and after brought it to eight, fixe, and one fathome; and then to foure foot in the best: they then went ashore, and found good store of wilde Goose quills, a piece of an old Oare, and some Flowers, and greene things which they found growing: they saw many Deere, and soid we in our after dayes saying. They bringe come aboard, we presently set sayle with the wind at North-North-west, and we flood our againe to the South-westwards, with sorrow that our labour was in vaine: for, had this Sound held as it did make shew of, for breadth, depth, life of harbour, and good anchor ground, it might haue yeilded an excellent passage to a more Easterly Sea. Generally, all the Land of *Nova Zembla* that we yet haue seene, is to a mans eye a pleasant Land: much mayne high Land with no Snow on it, looking in some places greene, and Deere feeding thereon: and the Hills are partly covered with Snow, and partly bare. It is no marvell that there is so much Ice in the Sea toward the Pole, so many Sounds and Rivers being in the Lands of *Nova Zembla*, and *Newland* to ingender it; besides the coasts of *Pechora*, *Russia*, and *Greenland*, with *Lappia*, as by proofes I finde by my trauell in these parts: by means of which Ice I suppose there will be no maugible passage this way. This Evening we had the wind at West and by South: we therefore came to anchor vnder *Deere Point*; and it was a storme at Sea, we rode in twentie fathomes, Ozie ground: I sent my Mate, *Ladlow*, with foure more ashore to see whether any Morfes were on the shoare, and to kill some Fowle, (for we had seene no Morfes since Saturday, the Morfes were on the shoare, and that wee saw them driving out of the Ice.) They found good landing for them, but no signe that they had bene there: but they found that fire had bene made there, yet not lately. At ten of the clocke in the Evening, they came aboard, and brought with them neere an hundred Fowles called Wellocks; this night it was wet foggy, and very thicke and cold, the winde at West North-west.

Nova Zembla
pleasant to the
eye.Cause of much
Ice in those
Sea, which
make no maugible
passages.

The sixt, in the morning we had the wind storme and shifting: betweene the West and South-west, against vs for doing any good: we rode still and had much Ice driving by vs to the Eastward of vs. At nine of the clocke, this Evening we had the wind at North-North-west: we presently weighed, and set sayle, and flood to the Westward, being out of hope of find passage by the North-east: And my purpose was now to see whether *Willoughbies Land* were, as wege by the North-east: which if it were, we might finde Morfes on it; for with the Ice the *Hollenders call Costing Sarch*, discovered by *Oliver Byrwood*; and *William Barrensons* obseruation doth witness the same. It lay in plot by the *Hollander* out of his true place too farre North: to what end I know not, vnlesse to make it hold course with the Compass, not relpeeting the variation. It is as broad and like to yeeld passage as the *Voyage*; and my hope was, that by the strong streame it would haue cleered it selfe; but it did not. It is so full of Ice that you will hardly thinke it. All this day, for the most part, it was foggy and cold.

Willoughbies
Land, second
of Card-
makers: it be-
coming to be no
other then
Newland or
Greenland (as
is before obser-
ued cap. 13) as
Costing Sarch of
the others *Nova*
Zembla.
Noice.

The seventh, cleere but cold weather: in the morning the wind was at the North; from the last Evening to this morning, we set sayle and kept our course West and by South, fiseene leagues, from morning to eight a clocke in the Evening it was calme: then we had the wind againe at North, and we sayled till nine a clocke next morning West South-west, eight leagues; then the Sunne at the highest South South-west, in the latitude of 71. degrees 2. minutes. The eight, faire weather; at noone we had the wind at East North-east, we stood North three leagues till foure a clocke: then the wind being at west and by North, we stemmed North and by West one league and a halfe, till fixe a clocke in the Evening; then the wind was at North-east a hard gale, and we stood till next day at noone West and by North, by account three and twentie leagues: we had the Sunne on the Meridian, South and by West, halfe a point nereff west, in

Ddd 2

the

the latitude of 70. degrees 41. minutes. The ninth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, we sayled South-west and by West, twelve leagues, and Northward three leagues: and in these courses had these soundings, 41. 42. 46. 48. and 45. fathoms: we had the Sunne South and by VWest, halfe a point to the VWest part of the Compass. The Sea was lottie: our latitude was 70. degrees 20. minutes.

The tenth, cleere but close weather: from this till next day noone, we had little wind at West North-west: by account we made our way five leagues North-easterly. Wee had the Sun at the highest on the South and by West point, and a terce Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 55. minutes, and I thinke we had a ruffling tide vnder vs; and in this time had sounding between fortie five and fortie fathomes, white sand. The eleventh, cleere weather: from this West and by North by account five leagues; and had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by West point $\frac{1}{2}$. West in the latitude of 70. degrees 26. minutes, and found a ruffling vnder vs. This fore-noone we were come into a greene Sea, of the colour of the mayne Ocean, which we first lost the eight of Iune: since which time wee haue had a Sea of a blacke blue colour, which (both by the last and this yeeres experience) is a Sea pestered with Ice.

The twelfth, faire weather: from noone to mid-night wee had the wind shifting between the North and West; our course was between VWest North-west, and South South-west. Then we had the wind at South, we sayled till the next day at noone, West and by North, thirteene leagues: this after-noone we saw more Porpoises then in all our Voyages afore. The thirteenth, close weather: in the after-noone hauing much wind at South, with short layle we South, but most times calme till noone the next day: we stood away as afore, four leagues, which made in all twelue leagues: we had the Sunne ere it began to fall, South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 22. minutes.

The fourteenth, we stood West North-west till mid-night, seuentee leagues: then the wind scanted and came at West, we stood North-west, one league and a halfe; then the wind being more Southerly, we sayled West North-west, five leagues. From the last till this day at noone, our way was out of diuers courses North-west and by West, four and twentie leagues. We had the Sunne beginning to fall at South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 54. minutes.

The fifteenth, faire; but towards night like to be stormie with thunder, the wind between South and South South-east; from this, till the sixteenth day at noone, our course was West and by North, teuen and twentie leagues, and the Sunne then began to fall at South, three quarters of a point Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 42. minutes. The sixteenth, faire; our way was from this till next day at noone North-west, twelue leagues, out of diuers courses: and we had the wind shifting, sometimes at East, at West South-west, and West and by North; latitude by a bad obseruation, 71. degrees 44. minutes. The seuenteenth, in the fore-noone faire; the wind being at West and by North. At three a clocke this morning we saw Land beare off vs, West and South South-west, which was about *Ward-house*: this after-noone wee had a storme at West and by North, we layed it to rive till eight a clocke in the Evening, and then set sayle with the wind between West North-west, and North-west: our course till the next day at noone, was South-west and by South, twelue leagues: the Cape *Hopwell* bore off vs South South-west, and we were foure or five leagues from land.

The eighteenth, gully, with raine all the fore-noone; then we had the wind shifting till next day at noone from South South-east to East, and South-east: our course in generally was North-west, foure and twentie leagues: then did North *Kene* beare off vs West halfe a point Southward, being from vs foure leagues; and the North Cape in sight bearing West and by North, &c.

The teuen and twentieth, cold with raine and storme; this night we began to burne Candle in the Betacle, which we had not done since the nineteenth of May: by reason we were had alwaies day from thence till now. The thirtieth, we had the Sunne vpon the Meridian due South, in the latitude of 68. degrees 46. minutes; whereby we found vs to be afore our ship, ten or twelue leagues, and *Longf* bore East of vs, but not in sight.

The fouenth of August, I vied all diligence to arrive at *London*, and therefore now I gaue my companie a certificate vnder my hand, of my free and willing returne, without persuation or force of any one or more of them: for at my being at *Nova Zembla*, the sixt of Iuly, voide of hope of a North-east passage, (except by the *Voyage*, for which I was not fitted to rise or proue) I therefore refused to viall means I could sayle to the North-west: considering the time and meanes wee had, if the wind should friend vs, as in the first part of our Voyage it did, and to make triall of that place called *Lumley Inlet*, and the furious our-fall by *Cap-tayne Davis*, hoping to runne into an hundred leagues, and to returne as God should enable mee. But now hauing spent more then halfe the time I had, and gone but the shortest part of the way, by meanes of contrary winds; I thought it my due to lye *Victuall*, *Wages*, &c.

Tackie

Tackle, by my speedy returne, and not by foolish rashnesse, the time being wasted, to lay more charge vpon the action then necessitie should compell, I arrived at *Grainford* the sixt and twentieth of August.

CHAP. XVI.

The third Voyage of Master HENRIE HUDSON toward Noua Zembla, and as his returne, his passing from *Farrer Islands*, to New-found Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtee three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River meere to fortie three degrees. Written by ROBERT IVET of Lime-house.

ON Saturday the five and twentieth of March, 1609. after the old Account, we set sayle from *Amsterdam*; and by the teuen and twentieth day, we were downe at the *Texas*: and by twelue of the clocke we were off the Land, it being East of vs two leagues off. And because it is a journey vially knowne, I omit to put downe what passed, till we came to the height of *The North Cape of Finmarke*, which we did performe by the first of May (*style none*) being Tuesday. On which day we obscured the height of the Pole, and found it to be 71. degrees and 46. minutes; and found our Compass to vary six degrees to the West: and at twelue of the clocke, the North Cape did beare South-west and by South, teene leagues off, and wee steered away East and by South, and East.

After much trouble with fogges, sometimes, and more dangerous of Ice. The nineteenth, being Tuesday, was close stormie weather, with much wind and snow, and very cold: the wind variable between the North North-west, and North-east. We made our way West and by North till noone. Then we obserued the Sunne hauing a flake, and found our height to be 70. degrees 30. minutes. And the ship had our runne vs twentie leagues, by reason of the fet of the streame of *The White Sea*: and we had sight of *Ward-house*. Then at two of the clocke we tackt to the Eastward: for we could not get about the North Cape, the wind was so scant; and at eight of the clocke at night, on the one and twentieth, the North Cape did beare South-east and by South teuen leagues off. And at mid-night *Assumption* Point did beare South and by East, five leagues off vs.

The two and twentieth, gulling weather with haille and snow, the Sunne breaking out sometimes; we continued our course along the Land West South-west, and at tenne of the clocke at night we were thwart off *Zemam*. The bodie of it did beare East off vs five leagues: and the course from the North Cape to *Zemam*, is for the most part West and by South, and West South-west, fiftie foure leagues.

The three and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather; the wind at East and by South, and East South-east, wee steered along the Land South-west, and South-west and by West, fiftie leagues a Watch, for so we found the Land to lye from *Zemam* to *Lefsoe*. And the distance fiftie leagues from the bodie of *Zemam*, to the Westmost Land of *Lefsoe*. And from the one to the other, the course is South-west and by West. For the Needle of our Compass was set right leagues off.

The foure and twentieth, faire cleere Sun-shining weather: the wind variable vpon all points of the Compass, but most vpon the South-east, and sometimes calme. We continued our course West South-west as before, and at eight of the clocke at night, the Souther part of *Lefsoe* did beare South-east ten leagues off vs.

The five and twentieth, much wind at North-east, with some snow and haille. The sixth watch the wind came to the East a fine gale, and so came to the North-east, the second watch at foure of the clocke, and freshed in: And at eight of the clocke it grew to a storme, and so continued. At noone we obserued, and made the ship to be in 67. degrees 58. minutes. We continued our course South-west, twelue leagues a watch. At nine of the clocke, *Lefsoe* did beare East of vs 15. leagues off. And we found the Compass to haue no variation. The wind increased to a storme.

The sixt and twentieth, was a great storme at the North North-east, and North-east. We maintained South-west afore the wind with our fore-course abroad: for wee were able to stand, that it would haue dinged a small ship to lye vnder the Sea. So we skudded fiftie leagues in foure and twentie hours. The storme began to cease at foure of the clocke.

The teuen and twentieth, indifferent faire weather, but a good stiffle gale of wind at North.

D d d 3

3174

North-west, one Watch, and at twelve in the night, to the West, and West and by South, very much wind. So we could lie by North North-west.

The seven and twentieth, very much wind and a foare storme, the wind West. In the morning at foure of the clocke, weooke in our fore-corse, and layd it a trie with our mayne-corse low let; and so continued all the day and night, two watches to the Northward. At eight of the clocke at night, we tackt to the Southward.

The eight and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we lay a trie to the Southward till eight of the clocke in the morning. Then we set our fore-corse, and stood to the Southward a stiffe gale of wind, but faire weather and a great Sea, out of the Westward, and so continued all night.

The nine and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we stood to the Southward untill fixe of the clocke at night, and made our way South and by East, foure leagues. Then the wind came to the South-west, and wee cast about to the VVestward, and made our way VVest North-west all night. At noone, I found the height 43. degrees 6. minutes. The variation one point VVest.

The thirtieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at South-west and by VVest, we steered North-west and by VVest. And made our way 10, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At noone, I found the height to bee 43. degrees 18. minutes; we continued our course all night, and made our way North-west and by VVest, halfe a point VVestly, five and twentie leagues.

The first of July, calme, mytie and thicke weather, but a faire gale of wind at South-west, and South-west by South. We steered away North-west and by West, Westly, and made our way 10, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At eight of the clocke at night, we founded for the Banke of *New-found Land*, but could get no ground.

The second, thicke mytie weather, but little wind, and that at West and West and by South. At eight of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and when our ship was on flayes, we founded for the Banke, and had ground in thirtie fathoms, white sand and shells, and presently it cleered: and we had fight of a layle, but spake not with her. In the night we had much Rayne, Thunder and Lightning, and wind shifting.

The third, faire Sun-shining weather, with a faire gale of wind at East North-east, and wee steered away West South-west by our Compasse, which varied 17. degrees Westward. This morning we were among a great Fleet of *French-men*, which lay Fishing on the Banke; but we spake with none of them. At noone we found our height to bee 43. degrees 41. minutes. And we founded at ten of the clocke, and had thirtie fathoms gray sand. At two of the clocke wee founded, and had five and thirtie fathoms gray sand. At eight of the clocke at night, we founded againe, and had eight and thirtie fathoms gray sand, as before.

The fourth, at the fore-part of the day cleere, with a faire gale of wind, but variable betweene the East North-east, and South and by East, we held on our course as before. The after-noon was mytie, the wind shifting betweene the South and the West, till foure of the clocke. Then weooke in our top-layle and sprit-layle, and founded and had no ground in fiewente fathoms. The wind shifted still untill eight of the clocke, then it came to the North North-east, and North-east and by North, and we steered away West North-west, by our varied Compasse, which made a West way halfe point North. The Compasse varied 15. degrees from the North to the West.

The fife, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at North-east and by North, we steered away West North-west, which was West halfe a point North. At noone we found our height to bee 44. degrees 10. minutes, and founded, and had no ground in one hundred fathoms. The after-noon proved calme sometimes, and sometimes little wind, untill nine of the clocke in the night. Then the wind came to the East, and we held on our course. At mid-night I observed and found the height to bee 44. degrees 10. minutes, by the North Starre and the *Scorpion* heart. The Compasse varied 13. degrees.

The sixth, the fore-part of the day faire weather, and a stiffe gale of wind, betweene South South-east, and South-west, wee steered West and by North, and West North-west. The after-part of the day from two of the clocke, was all foggie and thicke weather; the wind a hard gale, varying betweene South-west and by South, and West and by North, we made our way North-west halfe a point Northerly, nineteene leagues, vpon many points foure Watches. At night at eight of the clocke, we founded and had no ground at one hundred fathoms.

The seventh, faire fun-shining weather, the wind varying betweene West and by North, and West and by South. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and stood for one in the after-noon. At noone we found our height to bee 44. degrees 26. minutes. At fawn of the clocke, we tackt to the Northward. At eight at night, we tackt to the South-west, and founded, and had nine and fiftie fathoms, white sand.

The eight, in the fore-noon faire weather, but the morning foggie till feuen of the clocke. At foure of the clocke in the morning we founded, and had five & fortie fathoms, fine white sand, and we had runne five leagues South and by West. Then we stood along one Glasse, and went

CHAP. 16. Store of Cods taken. Schoales of Herrings. Salvages come aboard, &c. 585

one league as before. Then we stood one Glasse and founded, and had fixtie fathoms. Then we tackt and stood backe to the Banke, and had five and twentie fathoms; and tried for Fish, and it fell calme, and we caught one hundred and eighteen great Coddes, from eight a clocke till one, and after Dinner weeooke twelve, and saw many great Schoales of Herrings. Then we had a gale of wind at South, and it shifted to the West North-west, and we stood three Glasse and founded and had fixtie fathoms, and stood two Glasse, and had two and fortie fathoms, red stones and shells. So we founded euery Glasse and had fowerall foundings 35. 33. 30. 31. 32. 33. and 34. fathoms.

The ninth, faire calme weather, we lay becalmed all day and caught some Fish, but not much, because we had small store of salt. At three of the clocke in the after-noon, wee had a gale at South-east, and South South-east, and we steered away Westly, our Compasse was West and by South halfe a point South. At foure of the clocke, we founded and had but fiftene, fowerente, and nineteene fathoms on a fishing Banke; and we founded euery Glasse. Then we could get no ground in five and twentie fathoms, and had fight of a layle on head off vs. At noone our height was 44. degrees 37. minutes. We stood to the Westward all night, and spake with a *French-man*, which lay Fishing on the Banke of *Sables*, in thirtie fathoms, and we saw two or three more.

The tenth, very mytie and thicke weather, the wind at South-west, a faire gale. We stood to the Southward, and made our way South-east and by East. At twelue of the clocke we founded, and had eight and fortie fathoms; againe at two we founded, and had fiftie fathoms. And at six of the clocke we founded: and had eight and fortie fathoms on the end of the Banke. Again, at eight of the clocke at night we founded, and had no ground in eightie fathoms, and were over the Banke. So wee stood along till mid-night. The Compasse varied 17. degrees to the Westward.

The eleuenth, very thicke and mytie weather. At twelue of the clocke at night, we cast about to the Westward, and stood 10 all day, and made our way West North-west. We founded at twelue of the clocke, but had no ground; so we stood to the Westward all the fore-part of the night, and founded but could get no ground in fiftie or sixtie fathoms till mid-night. Then I founded and had ground at fiftene fathoms, white sand.

The twelfth, was very foggie, we stood our course all the morning till eleuen of the clocke; at which time we had fight of the Land, which is low white sandie ground, right on head off vs; and had ten fathoms. Then we tackt to the Southward, and stood off foure Glasse; then we tackt to the Land againe, thinking to haue rode vnder it, and as we came neere it, the fog was so thicke that we could not see; so wee stood off againe. From mid-night to two of the clocke, we came founding in twelue, thirteene, and fowerente fathoms off the shoare. At foure of the clocke, we had 30 fathoms. At eight of the clocke at night 30 fathoms. At twelue of the clocke 65 fathoms, and but little wind, for it deeped apace, but the neerer the shoare the fairer shoaling.

The thirteenth, faire fun-shining weather, from eight of the clocke in the fore-noon all day after, but in the morning it was foggie. Then at eight of the clocke we cast about for the shoare, but could not see it; the wind being at South by our true Compasse, wee steered VVest and by North. At noone we observed, and found our height to bee 43. degrees 25. minutes; so we steered away VVest and by North all the after-noon. At foure of the clocke in the after-noon, we founded and had five and thirtie fathoms. At six of the clocke in the after-noon, Land, and saw two fyles on head off vs. The land by the waters side is low Land, and white sandie Dinkes rising full of little Hills. Our foundings were 35. 33. 30. 28. 32. 37. 33. & 32. fathoms.

The fowerteenth, full of mytis flying and vading, the wind betweene South and South-west, we steered away West North-west, and North-west and by West. Our foundings were 29. 25. 24. 25. 22. 25. 27. 30. 28. 30. 35. 43. 50. 70. 90. 70. 64. 86. 100. fathoms, and no ground.

The fiftenth, very mytie, the wind varying betweene South and South-west, we steered West and by North, and VVest North-west. In the morning we founded, and had one hundred fathoms, till foure of the clocke in the after-noon. Then we founded againe, and had one hundred five fathoms. Then in two Glasse running, which was not about two *Englishe* miles, we founded and had fixtie fathoms, and it shoaled a great pace untill we came to twentie fathoms. Then we made account we were neere the Islands that lie off the shoare. So we came to an Anchor, the for Fish, and I caught fiftene Cods, some the greatest that I haue seene, and so we rode all night.

The sixteenth, in the morning it cleered vp, and we had fight of five Islands lying North, and North and by VVest off vs, two leagues. Then we made ready to let layle, but the mytie came so thicke, that we durst not enter among them.

The seuententh, was all mytie, so that we could not get into the Harbour. At ten of the clocke two Boates came off to vs, with fixe of the *Saluager* of the Country, seeming gl.d of our coming. VVee gaue them trifles, and they ate and dranke with vs; and told vs, that there were Gold, Silver, and Copper mynes hard by vs; and that the *French-men* doe Trade with them; which is very likely, for one of them spake some words of *French*. So we rode still all day and all night, the weather continuing mytie.

Many great Cods taken. Many great Schoales of Herrings. To found is to tie the depth by Line and Lead, or Pole, &c.

Variation 17. degrees.

Land, being low, white and sandie.

43. degrees 25. minutes. Sight of Land againe, and of two Shipy.

A large River.
44. Degrees 10.
minutes.

The trade of
the French with
the Sauages.

They spoyle
Houjes of the
Sauages.

Variation 10.
degrees toward
the North-west

Variation 6.
degrees to the
West.

Variation 8. &
a half degrees.

The eighteenth, faire weather, we went into a very good Harbour, and rode hard by the shore in four fathoms water. The River runneth up a great way, but there is but two fathoms and found the height of the place to be in 44. degrees 1. minute; and the Sunne to fall at a lyeth South and North, a mile in where we rode.

The nineteenth, we had faire fun-shining weather, we rode still. In the after-noon we went with our Boate to looke for fresh water, and found some; and found a shoald with many Lobbers on it, and caught one and thurty. The people coming aboard, shewed vs great friendship, but we could not trust them. The twentieth, faire funne-shining weather, the winde at South-west. In the morning, our Scute went out to catch fresh Fish halfe an hooke before day, and returned in two hours, bringing feuen and twentie great Coddes, with two hooke and lines. In the after-noon we went for more Lobbers, and caught fortie, and returned aboard. Then we espied two French Shallops full of the Countrey people come into the Harbour, but they offered vs no wrong, seeing we flood upon our guard. They brought many Beaver skins, and other fine Fures, which they would have changed for redde Gownes. For the French trade with them for red Calcocks, Knives, Hatchets, Copper, Kettles, Treuts, Beades, and other trifles.

The one and twentieth, all myitie, the wind Easterly, we rode still and did nothing, but about our Maft. The two and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the winde all Northerly, we rode still all the day. In the after-noon our Scute went to catch more Lobbers, and brought with them nine and fiftie. The night was cleere weather.

The three and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather and very hot. At eleven of the clocke, our fore Maft was finished, and we brought it aboard, and set it into the steeple, and in the after-noon we rigged it. This night we had some little mytie and rayne.

The four and twentieth, very hot weather, the winde at South out of the sea. The fore-part of the day we brought to our foyles. In the morning, our Scute went to take Fish, and in two hours they brought with them twentie great Coddes, and a great Holibut, the night was faire also. We kept good watch for feare of being betrayed by the people, and perceived where they layd their Shallops.

The five and twentieth, very faire weather and hot. In the morning we manned our Scute with foure Muskets, and fixe men, andooke one of their Shallops and brought it aboard. Then we manned our Boat & Scute with twelue men and Muskets, and two stone Pieces or Murderers, and draue the Sauages from their Houjes, andooke the spoyle of them, as they would have done of vs. Then we set foyle, and came downe to the Harbours mouth, and rode there all night, because the winde blew right in, and the night grew mytie with much rayne till mid-night. Then it fell calme, and the wind came off the Land at West North-west, and it began to cleere. The Compasse varied 10. degrees North-west.

The fixe and twentieth, faire and cleere funne-shining weather. At fife of the clocke in the morning, the winde being off the shore at North North-west, we set foyle and came to fife, and by noone we counted our ship had gone foureteen leagues South-west. In the after-noon, the winde shifted variably between West South-west, and North-west. At noone, I found the height to be 43. degrees 56. minutes. This Evening being very faire weather, we observed the variation of our Compasse at the Sunnes going downe, and found it to be 10. degrees from the North to the VVestward.

The feuen and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the winde shifting between the South-west and West and by North, a stiff gale, we flood to the Southward all day, and made our way South and by West, feuen and twentie leagues. At noone, our height was 43. degrees 40. minutes. At foure of the clocke in the after-noon, we cast about to the Northward. At eight of the clocke, weooke in our top-fayles and our fore-bonnet, and went with a thort fayle all night.

The eight and twentieth, very thicke and mytie, and a stiff gale of wind, varying between South South-west, and South-west, and by VVest; we made our way North-west and by VVest, feuen and twentie leagues, we founded many times and could get no ground. At fife of the clocke, we cast about to the Southward, the wind at South-west, and by VVest. At which time we founded, and had ground at feuentie fathoms. At eight, we had fixe fathoms. At ten, fixtie. At twelue of the clocke at mid-night, fiftie fixe fathoms, gray sand. The Compasse varied 6. degrees the North point to the VVest.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, we flood to the Southward, and made our way South and by VVest a point South, eighteen leagues. At noone, we found our height to be 43. degrees 56. minutes, we founded off, and had there 60, 64, 65, 67, 69, 70, and 75. fathoms. At 69 we went downe 37. degrees to the North-ward of the VVest, and should have gone downe but 31. degrees. The Compasse varied 5. 1. degrees.

The thirtieth, very hot, all the fore-part of the day calme, the wind at South South-east, we steered

steered away VVest South-west and founded many times, and could find no ground at one hundred and feuentie fathoms. VVest we found a great current and many ouer-falls. Our current had deuiated vs. For at noone we found our height to be 41. degrees 34. minutes. And the current had leaued vs to the Southward foureteen leagues. At mid-night of the clocke at night, I founded and had ground in fiftie two fathoms. In the end of the eight night watch, we had fiftie three fathoms. This loft observation is not to be trusted.

The one and thirtieth, very thicke and mytie all day. VVind tenne of the clocke. At night the wind came to the South, and South-west and South. We made our way West North-west nineteen leagues. Wee founded many times, and had difference of foundings, sometimes little fones, and sometimes grosse gray land, fiftie six, fiftie foure, fortie eight, fortie feuen, fortie foure, fortie six, fiftie fathoms; and at eight of the clocke at night it fell calme, and we had fiftie fathoms. And at ten of the clocke we heard a great Rur, like the Rur of the shore. Then I founded and found the former Depths; and mistrusting a current, seeing it so full that the ship made no way, I let the lead lie on the ground, and found a tide set to the South-west, and South-west by West, so fast, that I could hardly vee the Line fo fast, and presently came an hurling current, or tyde with ouer-falls, which cast our ship round; and the Lead was so fast in the ded againe, and we had feuentie fathoms; and the strong frame had left vs.

The first of August, all the fore-part of the day was mytie, and at noone it cleered vp. We found that our height was 41. degrees 45. minutes, and we had gone nineteen leagues. The after-noon was reasonable cleere. We found a rustling tide or current, with many ouer-falls to continue still, and our water to change colour, and our tea to bee very deepe, for wee found no ground in one hundred fathoms. The night was cleere, and the winde came to the North, and North North-east, we steered West.

The second, very faire weather and hoe: from the morning till noone we had a gale of wind, but in the after-noon little wind. At noone I founded and had one hundred and ten fathoms; and our height was 41. degrees 56. minutes. And we had runne foure and twentie leagues and an halfe. At the Sun-setting we observed the variation of the Compasse, and found that it was come to be true place. At eight of the clocke the gale increased, so wee ranne fixe leagues that watch, and had a very faire and cleere night.

The third, very hot weather. In the morning, we had sight of the Land, and steered in which I, thinking to go to the North-ward of it. So we sent our shallop with five men, to found in by the shore; and they found it deepe fife fathoms within a Bow-shot of the shore; and they went on Land, and found goodly Grapes, and Rose-trees, and brought them aboard with them, at fife of the clocke in the Evening. We had feuen and twentie fathoms within two miles of the shore; and we found a shallop come from the South-east, and an ebbe from the North-west, with a very strong frame, and a great hurling and voyces. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind began to blow a fresh gale, and continued all night but variable. Our founding that we had to the Land, was one hundred, eightie, feuentie foure, fiftie two, fortie fixe, twentie nine, twentie feuen, twentie foure, nineteene, feauenteene, sometimes Oze, and sometimes gray sand.

The fourth, was very hot: we flood to the North-west two watches; and one South in for the Land, and came to an Anchor at the Norther end of the Headland, and heard the voyce of men call. Then we sent our Boat on shore, thinking they had bene some Christians left on the Land: but we found them to be Sauages, which seemed very glad of our coming: So wee brought one aboard with vs, and gave him meate, and he did eate and drinke with vs. Our Master gaue him three or foure glasse Beurons, and sent him on Land with our shallop againe. And at our Boats coming from the shore he leaped and danced; and held vp his hands, and painted vs to a river on the other side of the water we came to fife there. The bodie of this Headland lyeth in 41. degrees 45. minutes. We set foyle againe after dinner, thinking to haue got to the Westward of this Headland, but could not so we heare vp to the Southward of it, & made South-east way; and the Souther point did beare West at eight of the clocke at night. Our foundings about the Easter and Norther part of this Headland, a league from the shore are thise: The North-east point 17. degrees 18. minutes, and 10. deeper. The North-end of this Headland, thome. At the South-east part a league off, fiftene, sixteen, and feuenteen fathoms. The red Copper. The Land is very lowe, and the boles whereof are made of Earth, and the pipes of

The fift, all mytie. At eight of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Westward, and flood in till foure of the clocke in the after-noon; at which time it cleered, and we had sight of the Head-land againe fixe leagues from vs. The Souther point of it did beare West off vs; and we founded many times, and had no ground. And at foure of the clocke we cast about, and at our flying wee had feuentie fathoms. Wee steered away South and South by East all night.

A great current and many ouer-falls.

A great Rur.

Acurrence to the South-west and South-west by West, with ouer-falls.

They goe on Land neere Capiced.

Sauages.

night, and could get no ground at feventie and eightie fathomes. For wee feared a great Riffe, that lyeth off the Land, and steered away South and by East.

The sixth, faire weather, but many times myfling. Wee steered away South South-east, till eight of the clocke in the morning: Then it cleered a little, and wee cast about to the Westward. Then we founded and had thirtie fathomes, grosse sand, and were come to the Riffe. Then we kept our Lead, and had quicke shoaling, from thirtie, twentie nine, twentie euen, twentie foure, twentie two, twentie and an halfe, twentie, nineteen, nineteen, nineteen, eighteen, eighteen, feventeen; and so deeping againe as proportionally as it shoaled. For weft for so the tyde doth set. By and by it being calme we tryed by our Lead; for you shall lo the Westward you shall haue foure and five foot water, and see Rockes vnder you; and you shall see the Land in the top. Vpon this Riffe we had an obseuation, and found that it lyeth in 40 degrees 10. minutes. And this is that Headland which Captaine Bartholomew Gofnold discourse about. So we steered South-west three leagues, and came to fiftene fathomes. Then we steered West two Glaffes halfe a league, and came to fiftene fathomes. Then we steered off South-east foure Glaffes, but could not get deepe water; for there the tyde of ebbe laid on; and the streame did hurle fo, that it laid vs to neere the breach of a shoale, that wee were forced to Anchor. So at seuen of the clocke at night, wee were at an Anchor in tenne fathomes: And I giue God most heartie thanks, the least water wee had was seuen fathomes and an halfe. We rode still all night, and at a still water I founde lo faire round about our ship as we could see a light; and had no lesse then eight, nine, ten, and eleuen fathomes: The myt continued being very thicke.

The seuenth, faire weather and hot, but myflie. Wee rode still hoping it would cleere, but on the flood it fell calme and thicke. So we rode still all day and all night. The flood commeth from the South-west, and riseth not about one fathome and an halfe in nepe streame. Toward night it cleered, and I went with our shallop and founded, and found no lesse water then eight fathomes to the South-east off vs; but we law to the North-west off vs great Breaches.

The eight, faire and cleere weather. In the morning, by fixe of the clocke at flake water wee weighed: the wind at North-east, and let our fore-ayle and mayne top-ayle, and got a mile or twoer the Flats. Then the tyde of ebbe came, so we anchored againe till the flood came. Then wee set layle againe, and by the great mercie of God, we got cleere off them by one of the clocke this after-noon. And wee had sight of the Land from the West North-west, to the North North-west. Then we steered away South South-east all night; and had ground vntill the middle of the third watch. Then we had fortie fise fathomes, white sand, and little stones. So all our soundings are twentie, twentie, twentie two, twentie threen, thirtie two, fortie three, fortie three, fortie fise. Then no ground in feventie fathomes.

The ninth, very faire and hot weather, the wind a very stiffle gale. In the morning, at foure of the clocke, our shallop came running vs against our sterne, and split in all her flemme; so we were faine to cut her away. Then wee took in our mayne layle, and lay atrie vnder our fore-ayle vntill twelue of the clocke at mid-day. Then the wind ceased to a faire gale, so wee stood away South-west. Then we lay cloie by, on many courses a South by West way fiftene leagues; and three watches South-east by East, ten leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, wee took in our top-ayles, and went with a low layle; because we were in an vnknowne sea. At noone we obserued and found our height to be 38. degrees 39. minutes.

The tenth, in the morning fone raine and cloudie weather: the wind at South-west, wee made our way South-east by East, ten leagues. At noone, wee obserued and found our height to be 38. degrees 39. minutes. Then wee tackt about to the Westward, the wind being at South and by East, little wind. At foure of the clocke it fell calme, and we had two Dolphines about our ship, and many small fishes. At eight of the clocke at night, wee had a small hinging gale. All night we had a great Sea out of the South-west; and another great Sea out of the North-east.

The eleuenth, all the fore-part of the day faire weather, and very hot. VVee rode to the VVest South-west till noone. Then the wind shorted, and we could lyo but South-west and by South. At noone, wee found our height to be 39. degrees 11. minutes. And that the current of the North-east thirte two minutes contrary to our expectation. At foure of the clocke in the after-noon there came a myfl, which endured two houres. But wee had it faire and cleere all night after. The Compasse varied the North point to the VVest one whole point.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the South-west and by South, and the North little wind. In the morning we killed an extraordinary fish, and stood to the Westward all day and all night. At noone we found our height to be 38. degrees 13. minutes. And the obseuation the day before was not good. This noone, we found the Compasse to vary from the North to the West ten degrees.

The thirteenth, faire weather and hot: the wind at North-east. Wee steered away West and

by our Compasse two and twentie leagues. At noone wee found our height to be 37. degrees 45. minutes, and that our way from noone to noone was West South-west, halfe a point Southerly. The Compasse was 7. degrees and a halfe variation; from the North point to the West.

The fourteenth, faire weather, but cloudie, and a stiffle gale of wind, variable betweene North-east and South-west, wee steered away West by South; a point South all day vntill nine of the clocke at night; then it began to Thumler and Lighten, whereupon we took in all our sayles, and layd it a hull, and hulled away North till mid-night, a league and a halfe.

The fiftenth, very faire and hot weather, the wind at North by East. At foure of the 10 clocke in the morning, wee set layle, and stood on our course to the Westward. At noone wee found our height to be 37. degrees 25. minutes. Thenceforward noone passed hittle wind. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North, and wee steered West by North, and West North-west, and made our way West: The Compasse varied 7. degrees from the North to the West.

The sixteenth, faire shining weather, and very hot: the wind variable betweene the North and the West, wee steered away West by North. At noone wee found our height to be 37. degrees 6. minutes. This morning we founded and had ground in ninetie fathomes, and in fixe Glaffes running it shoaled to fiftie fathomes, and so to eight and twentie fathomes, at foure of the clocke in the after-noon. Then wee came to an Anchor, and rode till eight of the clocke at night, the wind being at South and Moone-light, we resolved to goe to the Northward to finde deeper water. So we weighed and stood to the Northward, and found the water to shoale and deepe, from eight and twentie to twentie fathomes.

The seventeenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather, the wind at South by West, wee steered to the Northward till foure of the clocke in the morning, then wee came to eightene fathomes. So we Anchored vntill the Sunne arose to look abroad for Land, for wee iudged there could not but be Land neere vs, but we could see none. Then we weighed and stood to the Westward till noone. And at eleuen of the clocke wee had sight of a low Land, with a white sandie shore. By twelue of the clocke we were come into fise fathomes, and Anchored; and the Land was foure leagues from vs, and wee had sight of it from the West, to the North-west by 30 North. Our height was 37. degrees 26. minutes. Then the wind blew to stiffle a gale, and such a Sea went, that we could not weigh; so we rode there all night an hard rode.

The eighteenth, in the morning faire weather, and litle winds at North North-east and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we weighed and stood into the shoare to see the deeping or shoaling of it, and finding it too deepe, we stood in to get a rode; for wee law as it were three lands. So wee turned to windward to go into a Bay, as it shewed to vs to the Westward of an Island. For the three lands did beare North off vs. But toward noone the wind blew Northerly, with gusts of wind and rayne. So we stood off into the Sea againe all night; and running off we found a Channell, wherein we had no less then eight, nine, ten, eleuen, and twelue fathomes water. For in comming ouer the Barre, wee had fise, and foure fathomes and a halfe, and it lyeth fise leagues from the shoare, and it is the Barre of Virginia. At the North end of it, it is ten leagues broad, and South and North, but deepe water from ninetie fathomes to fise, and foure and a halfe. The Land lyeth South and North. This is the entrance into the Kings River in Virginia, where our English-men are. The North side of it lyeth in 37. degrees 26. minutes, you shall know when you come to shoale water or sounding; for the water will looke Greene or thicke; you shall haue ninetie and eightie fathomes, and shoaling a pice till fathomes and a halfe.

The nineteenth, faire weather, but an hard gale of winde at the North-east, wee stood off till noone, and made our way South-east by East, two and twentie leagues. At noone wee cast 50 about to the Westward, and stood till fixe of the clocke in the after-noon, and went fise leagues and a halfe North-west by North. Then wee cast about againe to the Eastward, and stood that way till foure the next morning.

The twentieth, faire and cleere weather, the wind variable betweene East North-east, and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, wee cast about to the Westward, and stood till noone; at which time I founded; and had two and thirtie fathomes. Then wee tackt to the Eastward againe; and wee found our height to be 37. degrees 22. minutes. Wee stood to the Eastward all night, and had very much wind. At eight of the clocke at night we took off our Bonnet, and stood with small layle.

The one and twentieth, was a fore forme of winde and rayne all day and all night, wherefore 60 we stood to the Eastward with a small layle: till one of the clocke in the after-noon. Then a great Sea brake into our fore-corfe and split it; so we were forced to take it from the yard and mend it; we lay a trie with our mayne-corfe all night. This night our Cat ranne crying from one side of the ship to the other, looking ouer-board, which made vs to wonder; but we saw nothing.

This danger-
ous Riffe is in
41. degrees 10
minutes, and
lyeth off East
from Cape
Cod into the
Sea.

The Flats.

A current set-
ting to the
North.
Variation one
point.

Variation 10.
degrees.

37. Degrees
25. minutes

37. Degrees
6. minutes

Along Land
with a white
sandie shore;
37 degrees 26
minutes.

Barre of Vir-
ginia
Kings River.

37. degrees 22
minutes.

The two and twentieth, stormy weather, with gulls of raine and wind. In the morning at eight of the clocke we set our fore-ast, and stood to the Eastward vnder our fore-astle, mayne-astle and mizen, and from noone to noone, we made our way East South-east, fourteen leagues. The night reasonable drie but cloudie, the winde variable all day and night. Our Compasse was varied 4. degrees Westward.

Variation 4. degrees Westward.

The three and twentieth, very faire weather, but some Thunder in the morning, the winde variable betwene East by North. At noone we tackt about to the Northward, the winde at East by North. The after-noon very faire, the wind variable, and continued to all night. Our way we made East South-east, till noone the next day.

The four and twentieth, faire and hot weather, with the wind variable betwene the North and the East. The afternoon variable winde. But at four of the clocke, the wind time to the East and South-east; so we steered away North by West, and in three Watches we went thirteene leagues. At noone our height was 35. degrees 41. minutes, being farre off at Sea from the Land.

The five and twentieth, faire weather and very hot. All the morning was very calme vntill eleven of the clocke; the wind came to South-east, and South South-east; so we steered away North-west by North, two Watches and a halfe, and one Watch North-west by West, and went eightene leagues. At noone I found our height to bee 36. degrees 20. minutes, being without sight of Land.

The six and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde variable vpon all the points of the Compasse. From two of the clocke in the morning vntill noone, we made our way North by East, seuen leagues. In the after-noon the wind came to the North-east, and vering to the East South-east, we steered away North-west fiftene leagues, from noone till ten of the clocke at night. At eight of the clocke at night we were founded, and had eightene fathomes, and were come to the Banke of Virginia, and could not see the Land. We kept soundings, and steered away North, and came to eight fathomes, and Anchored there; for the wind was at East South-east, so that we could not get off. For the Coast lyeth along South South-west, and North North-east. At noone our height was 37. degrees 15. minutes. And we found that we were returned to the same place, from whence we were put off at our first lying Land.

The Banke of Virginia. The Coast lyeth South-west, and North North-west. Latitude 37. minutes. This agreeeth with Robert Tyndall.

The seven and twentieth, faire weather and very hot, the winde at East South-east. In the morning as soone as the Sunne was vp, we looked out and had sight of the Land. Then we weighed, and stood in North-west two Glasse, and found the Land to bee the place, from whence we were put off first. So we kept our looke, and steered along the Land, and had the Banke lye all along the shore; and we were in two leagues off the shore, five, sixe, seven, eight, nine, and ten fathomes. The Coast lyeth South South-west, and is a white Sandie shore, and the shore full of Bayes and Points. The streame seteth West South-west, and East North-east. At sixe of the clocke at night, we were thwart of an Harbour or River, but we saw a Barre lye before it; and all within the Land to the Northward, the water ranne with many lands in it. At sixe of the clocke we Anchored, and sent our Boate to found to the shore-ward, and found to litle then four and a halfe, five, sixe, and seuen fathomes.

The Point of the Land.

A great Bay and Rivers.

The eight and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde at South South-west. In the morning at sixe of the clocke we weighed, and steered away North twelve leagues till noone, and came to the Point of the Land; and being hard by the Land in five fathomes, on a sudden we came into three fathomes; then we were up and had but ten fathomes, and ioyned to the Point. Then as soone as we were over, we had five, sixe, seven, eight, nine, ten, twelve, and thirteene fathomes. Then we found the Land to tread away North-west, with a great Bay and Rivers. But the Bay we found shoal; and in the offing we had ten fathomes, and had sight of Breaches and drie Sand. Then we were forced to stand backe againe; so we stood backe South-east by South, three leagues. And at seuen of the clocke we Anchored in eight fathomes water; and found a Tide set to the North-west, and North North-west, and it riseth one fathome, and floweth South South-east. And hee that will thoroughly Discover this great Bay, must haue a small Pinasse, that must draw but foure or five foote water, to find before him. At five in the morning we weighed, and steered away to the Eastward on many courtes, for the Northern Land is full of shoals. We were among them, and once we strooke, and we went away; and steered away to the South-east. So we had two, three, foure, five, sixe, and seuen fathomes, and to deeper and deeper.

A small Shoal-boat needfull.

The Northern Land is full of Shoals.

Many Islands.

They thike.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, with some Thunder and showers, the winde shifting betwene the South South-west, and the North North-west. In the morning we weighed at the break of day, and stood toward the Northern Land, which we found to bee all lands to our sight, and great shoales from there, and are shoal three leagues off. For we coming by them, 60 we had but seuen, five, sixe, foure, three, and two fathomes and a halfe, and strooke ground with our Rudder, we steered off South-west, one Glasse, and had five fathomes. Then we steered South-east three Glasse, then we found seuen fathomes, and steered North-east by East, foure leagues, and came to twelve and thirteene fathomes. At one of the clocke, I went to the topmast

mast head, and set the Land, and the bodie of the Islands did beare North-west by North. And at foure of the clocke, we had nine foure leagues East South-east, and North-east by East, and found but seuen fathomes, and it was calme, so we Anchored. Then I went againe to the top-mast head, to see how farre I could see Land about vs, and could see no more but the Land. And the Souther point of them did beare North-west by West, eight leagues off. So we rode till mid-night. Then the winde came to the North North-west, so we weighed and set saile.

10

The thirtieth, in the morning betwene twelve and one, we weighed, and stood to the Eastward, the winde at North North-west, we steered away and made our way East South-east. From our weighing till noone, eleven leagues. Our soundings were eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, and thirteene fathomes till day. Then we came to eightene, nineteene, twentie, and to fixe and twentie fathomes by noone. Then I observed the Sunne, and found the height to bee 39. degrees 5. minutes, and saw no Land. In the after-noon, the winde came to North North-west by West; so we lay close by with our fore-astle and our mayne-astle, and it was little winde vntill twelve of the clocke at mid-night, then we had a gale a little while. Then I found, and all the night our soundings were thirtee, and fixe and thirtee fathomes, and we went little.

Latitude 39. degrees 5. minutes.

20

The one and thirtieth, faire weather and little wind. At sixe of the clocke in the morning we cast about to the North-east, the wind being at the North-east, little wind. At noone I fell calme, and I found the height to bee 38. degrees 39. minutes. And the freemes had decreed vs, and our sounding was eight and thirtee fathomes. In the afternoon I founded againe, and had but thirtee fathomes, so we found that we were heard too and fro with the freemes of the Tide, both by our obseruations and our depths. From noone till foure of the clocke in the after-noon, it was calme. At sixe of the clocke we had a little gale Southerly, and it continued all night, sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale; we went eight leagues from noone to noone, North by East.

Latitude 38. degrees 39. minutes. Decisfull freemes.

30

The first of September, faire weather, the wind variable betwene East and South, we steered away North North-west. At noone we found our height to bee 39. degrees 3. minutes. We had soundings thirtee, twentie seuen, twentie foure, and twentie two fathomes, as we went to the Northward. At sixe of the clocke we had one and twentie fathomes, and all the third watch till twelve of the clocke at mid-night, we had soundings one and twentie, two and twentie, eightene, two and twentie, one and twentie, eightene, and two and twentie fathomes, and went fixe leagues neere land North North-west.

September. Latitude 39. degrees 3. minutes.

40

The second, in the morning close weather, the winde at South in the morning; at twelve vntill two of the clocke we steered North North-west, and had sounding one and twentie fathomes, and in running one Glasse we had but sixteen fathomes, then fountene, and so shoalder and shoalder vntill it came to twelve fathomes. We saw a great Fire, but could not see the Land, then we came to ten fathomes, whereupon we brought our tackes aboard, and stood to the Eastward East South-east, foure Glasse. Then the Sunne arose, and we steered away North againe, and saw the Land from the West by North, to the North-west by North, all like broken lands, and our soundings were eleven and ten fathomes. Then we looke in for the shore, and fire by the shore, we had seuen fathomes. The course along the Land we found to be North-east by North. From the Land which we had first sight of, vntill we came to a great Lake of water, as we could iudge it to bee, being drowned Land, which made it to rise like lands, which was in length ten leagues. The mouth of that Lake hath many shoals, and the Sea breaketh on them as it is cast out of the mouth of it. And from that Lake or Bay, the Land lyeth North by East, and we had a great streame out of the Bay 3 and from thence our sounding was ten fathomes, two leagues from the Land. At five of the clocke we Anchored, being little winde, and rode in eight fathomes water, the night was faire. This night I found the Land to hall the Compasse 8. degrees. For to the Northward off vs we saw high Hills. For the day before we found not about 2. degrees of Variation. This is a very good Land to fall with, and a pleasant Land to see.

The Land like broken lands, three courses along the Land from the mouth of one River, to the mouth of the Northern Bay or Lake. Variation 8. degrees neere the Hills. 2. degrees variation off at Sea.

50

The third, the morning mystie vntill ten of the clocke, then it cleared, and the wind came to the South South-east, so we weighed and stood to the Northward. The Land is very pleasant and high, and hold to fall withall. At three of the clocke in the after-noon, we came to three great Rivers. So we stood along to the Northernmost, thinking to haue gone into it, but we found it to haue a very shoall barre before it, for we had but ten foote water. Then we cast about to the Southward, and found two fathomes, three fathomes, and three and a quarter, till we came to the Southern side of them, then we had five and fixe fathomes, and Anchored. So we went in our Boate to found, and they found no leffe water then foure, five, sixe, and seuen fathomes, and returned in an houre and a halfe. So we weighed and went in, and rode in five fathomes, Ozie ground, and saw many Salmon, and Mulletts, and Rayes very great. The height is 40. degrees 30. minutes.

High and a bold shoale, three great Rivers. The Northernmost barred. An excellent turned in an houre and a halfe. So we weighed and went in, and rode in five fathomes, Ozie ground, and saw many Salmon, and Mulletts, and Rayes very great. The height is 40. degrees 30. minutes.

The fourth, in the morning as soone as the day was light, we saw that it was good riding
Ecc 2 farther

A very good Harbour.

The people of the Country come aboard, they are very civil. Yellow Copper. Tall Oaks.

The great Bay is so deep and so many.

Dried Currants. Moulds of Feathers, Furs, Hempe. Red Copper.

Another River four leagues to the Northward. A narrow River to the Westward.

Colman *flaine*, and two more hurt.

Colmans Point.

Treacherous Sauges.

Good Harbour.

farther vp. So we went our Boate to found, and found that it was a very good Harbour; and foure and five fathoms, two Cables length from the shoare. Then we weighed and went in our ship. Then our Boate went on Land with our Net to Fish, and caught ten great Mullies, of a foot and a halfe long a peece, and a Ray as great as foure men could hale into the ship. So we trimmed our Boate and rode still all day. At night the wind blew hard at the North-west, and our Anchor came home, and wee droue on shoare, but tooke no hurt, thanked be God, for the ground is soft sand and Oze. This day the people of the Country came aboard vs, bringing very glad of our coming, and brought green Tobacco, and gae vs of it for Knives and Beades. They are very civil. They have great store of Maize or *Indian* Wheat, whereof they make good Bread. The Country is full of great and tall Oaks.

The fifth, in the morning as loone as the day was light, the wind ceased and the Flood came. So we heared off our ship againe into five fathoms water, and sent our Boate to found the Bay, and we found that there was three fathoms hard by the Souther shoare. Our men went on Land there, and saw great store of Men, Women and Children, who gae them Tobacco at their coming on Land. For one of them came aboard and brought some dried, and goodly Oakes, and some Currants. For one of them came aboard and brought some dried, and goodly Oakes, and some Currants. For one of them came aboard and brought some dried, and goodly Oakes, and some Currants. For one of them came aboard and brought some dried, and goodly Oakes, and some Currants.

The sixth, in the morning was faire weather, and our Master sent *Iohn Colman*, with foure or there men in our Boate out to the North-side, to found the other River, being foure leagues from vs. They found by the way shoald water two fathoms; but at the North of the River eight fathoms, and twenty fathoms, and a very good riding for Ships; and a narrow River to the Westward between two llands. The Lands they told vs were as pleasant with Grasse and Flowers, and goodly Trees, as euer they had seene, and very sweet smells came from them. So they went in two leagues and saw an open Sea, and returned; and as they came backe, they were let vpon by two Canoes, the one hauing twelve, the other foureteen men. The night came on, and it began to rayne, so that their Match went out; and they had one man *flaine* in the fight, which was an *English* man, named *Iohn Colman*, with an Arrow shot into his throat, and two more hurt. It grew so darke that they could not find the ship that night, but labored too and fro on their Oares. They had so great a fire, that their grappell would not hold them.

The seventh, was faire, and by ten of the clocke they returned aboard the ship, and brought our dead man with them, whom we carried on Land and buried, and named the point after his name, *Colmans Point*. Then we hoysed in our Boate, and raised her side with waite boards for defence of our men. So we rode still all night, hauing good regard to our Watch.

The eight, was very faire weather, we rode still very quietly. The people came aboard vs, and brought Tobacco and *Indian* Wheat, to exchange for Knives and Beades, and offered vs no violence. So we fitting vp our Boate did make them, to see if they would make any shew of the Death of our man; which they did not.

The ninth, faire weather. In the morning, two great Canoes came aboard full of men; the one with their Bowes and Arrows, and the other in shew of buying of Knives to betray vs; but we perceived their intent. We tooke two of them to haue kept them, and put red Coates on them, and would not suffer the other to come nere vs. So they went on Land, and two other came aboard in a Canoe: we tooke the one and let the other go; but he which wee had taken, got vp and leapt ouer-board. Then we weighed and went off into the channell of the River, and Anchored there all night.

The tenth, faire weather, we rode still till twelue of the clocke. Then we weighed and went over, and found it shoald all the middle of the River, for we could finde but two fathoms and a halfe, and three fathomes for the space of a league; then wee came to three fathomes, and foure fathomes, and so to seuen fathomes, and Anchored, and rode all night in soft Oze ground. The banke is Sand.

The eleventh, was faire and very hot weather. At one of the clocke in the after-noon, wee weighed and went into the River, the wind at South South-west, little winde. Our soundings were seuen, fixe, fixe, fixe, fixe, fixe, nine, ten, twelve, thirteen, and foureteen fathomes. Then it shoald againe, and came to five fathomes. Then we Anchored, and saw that it was a very good Harbour for all winde, and rode all night. The people of the Country came aboard of vs, making shew of loue, and gae vs Tobacco and *Indian* Wheat, and departed for that night; but we durst not trust them.

The twelfth, very faire and hot. In the after-noon at two of the clocke we weighed, the winde being variable, between the North and the North-west. So we turned into the River two leagues and Anchored. This morning at our first rode in the River, there came eight and twentie

twentie Canoes full of men, women and children to betray vs: but we saw their intent, and suffered none of them to come aboard of vs. At twelue of the clocke they departed. They brought with them Oysters and Beanes, whereof wee bought home. They haue great Tobacco pipes of yellow Copper, and Pots of Earth to dreffe their meate in. It bloweth South-east by South within.

The thirteenth, faire weather, the wind Northerly. At seuen of the clocke in the morning, as the flood came we weighed, and turned foure miles into the River. The tide being done wee anchored. Then there came foure Canoes aboard: but we suffered none of them to come into our ship. They brought great store of very good Oysters aboard, which we bought for trifles. In the night I let the variation of the Compasse, and found it to be 13. degrees. In the after-noon we weighed, and turned in with the flood, two leagues and a halfe further, and anchored all night, and had five fathoms soft Oze ground, and had a high point of Land, which shewed out to vs, bearing North by East five leagues off vs.

The fourteenth, in the morning being very faire weather, the wind South-east, we layd vp the River twelve leagues, and had five fathoms, and five fathoms and a quarter lesse; and came to a Streight between two Points, and had eight, nine, and ten fathoms; and it trended North-east by North, one league: and wee had twelue, thirteen and foureteen fathomes. The River is a mile broad: there is very high Land on both sides. Then we went vp North-west, a league and an halfe deepe water. Then North-east by North five miles; then North-west by North two leagues, and anchored. The Land grew very high and Mountainous. The River is full of fish.

The fifteenth, in the morning was misty vntill the Sunne arose: then it cleared. So wee weighed with the wind at South, and ran vp into the River twelue leagues, passing by high Mountaines. Wee had a very good depth, as fixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten, twelue, and thirteene fathoms, and great store of Salmones in the River. This morning our two Sauges got out of a Port and swam away. After we were vnder sayle, they called to vs in fcorne. At night we came to other Mountaines, which lie from the Rivers side. There we found very loving people, and very old men: where wee were well vied. Our Boat went to fish, and caught great store of very good fish.

The sixteenth, faire and very hot weather. In the morning our Boat went againe to fishing, but could catch but few, by reason that their Canoes had beene there all night. This morning the people came aboard, and brought vs eares of *Indian* Corne, and Pompions, and Tobacco: which wee bought for trifles. Wee rode still all day, and filled fresh water; at night wee weighed and went two leagues higher, and had shoald water: so wee anchored till day.

The seventeenth, faire Sun-shining weather, and very hot. In the morning as loone as the Sun was vp, we fet sayle, and ran vp fixe leagues higher, and found shoalds in the middle of the channell, and small llands, but seuen fathoms water on both sides. Toward night we borrowed to neere the shoare, that we grounded: so we layed out our small anchor, and heaved off againe. Then we borrowed on the banke in the channell, and came aground againe; while the flood ran we heaved off againe, and anchored all night.

The eighteenth, in the morning was faire weather, and we rode still. In the after-noon our Masters Mate went on land with an old Sauger, a Gouverneur of the Country; who carried him to his house, and made him good chere. The nineteenth, was faire and hot weather: at the flood being neere eluen of the clocke, we weighed, and ran higher vp two leagues about the Shoals, and had no lesse water then five fathoms: wee anchored, and rode in eight fathomes. The people of the Country came flocking abroad, and brought vs Grapes, and Pompions, which wee bought for trifles. And many brought vs Beuers skinned, and Otters skinned, which wee bought for Beades, Knives, and Hatchets. So we rode there all night.

The twentieth, in the morning was faire weather. Our Masters Mate with foure men more went vp with our Boat to found the River, and found two leagues about vs but two fathomes water, and the channell very narrow: and about that place seuen or eight fathomes. Toward night they returned: and we rode still all night. The one and twentieth, was faire weather, and the wind all Southerly: we determined yet once more to go farther vp into the River, to trie what depth and breadth it did beare; but much people related aboard, so wee went not this way. Our Carpenter went on land, and made a Fore-yard. And our Master and his Mate determined to trie some of the chiefe men of the Country, whether they had any treacherie in them. So they tooke them downe into the Cabin, and gae them so much Wine and *And* *via*, that they were all merrie: and one of them had his wife with him, which lite to mocke us, as any of our Country women would doe in a strange place. In the end one of them was drunke, which had beene aboard of our ship all the time that we had beene there; and that was trifles to them; for they could not tell how to take it. The Canoes and folke went all on shoare: but some of them came againe, and brought stropes of Beades: some had fixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten; and gae him. So he slept all night quietly.

The two and twentieth, was faire weather: in the morning our Masters Mate and foure more

28. Canoes full of men. Oysters and Beanes. Copper Pipes.

Variation 13. degrees.

The River a mile broad. Very high and mountainous Land.

Very loving people.

Maiz, Pompions and Tobacco.

Shoalds and small llands.

Grapes and Pompions: Beuers and Otters skinned.

Oration.

End of the Ri-
uers N. W. 1/2
S. E. 1/2
They returne
downe the
Riuer.Store of Chest-
nutsOaks, Wal-
nut trees, Chest-
nut trees, Beech
trees, &c.

of the companie went vp with our Boat to found the Riuer higher vp. The people of the Coun-
try came not aboard till noone: but when they came, and saw the Sauages well, they were
glad. So at three of the clocke in the after-noon they came aboard, and brought Tobacco, and
more Beades, and gaue them to our Master, and made an Oration, and shewed him all the Coun-
try round about. Then they lent one of their companie on land, who presently returned, and
brought a great Platter full of Venison, dressed by themselves; and they caused him to eate with
them: then they made him reuerence, and departed all fise the old man that lay aboard. This
night at ten of the clocke, our Boat returned in a shewre of raine from founding of the Riuer;
and found it to bee at an end for shipping to goe in. For they had bene vp eight or nine leagues,
and found but feuen foot water, and vncoufent soundings.

The three and twentieth, faire weather. At twelue of the clocke wee weighed, and went
downe two leagues to a shoall that had two channels, one on the one side, and another on the
other, and had little wind, whereby the tide layd vs vpon it. So, there wee fate on ground on the
space of an houre till the flood came. Then we had a little gale of wind at the West. So wee
got our ship into deepe water, and rode all night very well.

The foure and twentieth was faire weather: the winde at the North-west, wee weighed,
and went downe the Riuer feuen or eight leagues; and at halfe ebbe wee came on ground on a
Land, and gathered good store of Chest-nuts. At ten of the clocke wee came off into deepe
water, and anchored.

The fise and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale. We rode fill,
and went on Land to walke on the West side of the Riuer, and found good ground for Corne,
and other Garden herbs, with great store of goodly Oakes, and Wal-nut trees, and Chest-nut
trees, and other good fiones.

The fixe and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale, wee rode fill,
In the morning our Carpenter went on Land with our Masters Mate, and foure more of our
companie to cut wood. This morning, two Canoes came vp the Riuer from the place where we
first found louing people, and in one of them was the old man that had lyeen aboard of vs at
other place. He brought another old man with him, which brought more fropes of Beades, and
gave them to our Master, and shewed him all the Countrey there about, as though it were at his
command. So he made the two old men dine with him, and the old mans wife: for they brought
two old women, and two young maidens of the age of fixteene or feutene yeres with them,
who behaued themselves very modestly. Our Master gaue one of the old men a Knife, and they
gaue him and vs Tobacco. And at one of the clocke they departed downe the Riuer, making
where they dwelt.

The feuen and twentieth, in the morning, was faire weather, but much wind at the North,
we weighed and fet our fore top-sayle, and our ship would not stat, but ran on the Ozie bank
at halfe ebbe. Wee layed out anchor to heare her off, but could not. So wee fate from halfe
ebbe to halfe flood: then wee fet our fore-sayle, and mayne top-sayle, and got downe fixe
leagues. The old man came aboard, and would haue had vs anchor, and goe on Land to eate with
him: but the wind being faire, we would not yeeld to his request; So he left vs, being very
forrowfull for our departure. At fise of the clocke in the after-noon, the wind came to the
South South-west. So wee made a boord or two, and anchored in foureene fathomes water.
Then our Boat went on thoare to fife right against the ship. Our Masters Mate and Boat-swaine,
and three more of the companie went on land to fife, but could not finde a good place. They
tooke foure or fise and twentie Mulletts, Breames, Bales, and Barbills; and returned in an houre.
Wee rode fill all night.

The eight and twentieth, being faire weather, as foon as the day was light, wee weighed at
halfe ebbe, and turned downe two leagues belowe water; for, the freamer dole runne the list
quarter ebbe: then we anchored till high water. At three of the clocke in the after-noon we
weighed, and turned downe three leagues, vntill it was darke: then we anchored.

The nine and twentieth was drie cleafe weather: the wind at South, and South by West,
we weighed early in the morning, and turned downe three leagues by a lowe water, and an-
chored at the lower end of the long Reach; for it is fixe leagues long. Then there came certaine
Indians in a Canoe to vs, but would not come aboard. After dinner there came the Canoe with
other men, whereof three came aboard vs. They brought Indian Wheat, which they bought
for trifles. At three of the clocke in the after-noon wee weighed, as foon as the ebbe came,
and turned downe to the edge of the Mountaines, or the Northernmost of the Mountaine, and
anchored: becaufe the high Land hath many Points, and a narrow channell, and hath many
eddy winds. So we rode quietly all night in feuen fathomes water.

The thirtieth was faire weather, and the wind at South-east a stiffe gale: betweene the Moun-
taines. We rode fill the after-noon. The people of the Countrey came aboard vs, and brought
Lime

some small skinner with them, which we bought for Knives and Trifles. This a very pleasant
place to build a Towne on. The Road is very nere, and very good for all winds, faue an East
North-east wind. The Mountaynes looke as if some Metall or Minerall were in them. For the
Trees that grow on them were all blasted, and some of them barren with few or no Trees on
them. The people brought a stone aboard like to Emery (a stone vied by Glafers to cut Glasse)
it would cut Iron or Steele: Yet being bruised small, and water put to it, it made a colour like
blacke Lead glittering; It is also good for Painters Colours. At three of the clocke they depar-
ted, and we rode fill all night.

The first of October, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the West and the North. In
the morning we weighed at feuen of the clocke with the ebbe, and got downe below the Moun-
taines, which was feuen leagues. Then it fell calme and the flood was come, and wee anchored
at twelue of the clocke. The people of the Mountaynes came aboard vs, wondering at our ship
and weapons. We bought some small skinner of them for Trifles. This after-noon, one Canoe
kept hanging vnder our sterne with one man in it, which we could not keepe from thence, who
got vp by our Radder to the Cabin window, and stole out my Pillow, and two Shirts, and two
Bandeiers. Our Masters Mate shot at him, and strooke him on the breast, and killed him.
Whereupon all the rest fled away, some in their Canoes, and so leapt out of them into the water.
We manned our Boat, and got our things againe. Then one of them that swamme got hold of our
Boat, thinking to ouerthrow it. But our Cook tooke a Sword, and cut off one of his hands, and
so he was drowned. By this time the ebbe was come, and we weighed and got downe two leagues,
by that time it was darke. So we anchored in foure fathomes water, and rode well.

The second, faire weather. At break of day wee weighed, the wind being at North-west,
and got downe feuen leagues; then the flood was come strongly, so we anchored. Then came one
of the Sauages that swamme away from vs at our going vp the Riuer with many other, thinking
to betray vs. But wee perceived their intent, and suffered none of them to enter our ship:
Whereupon two Canoes full of men, with their Bowes and Arrows hot at vs after our sterne:
in recompence whereof we discharged fixe Muskets, and killed two or three of them. Then a-
bout an hundred of them came to a point of Land to shoot at vs. There I shot a Falcon at them,
and killed two of them: whereupon the rest fled into the Woods. They manned off another

30 Canoe with nine or ten men, which came to meet vs. So I shot at it also a Falcon, and shot it
through, and killed one of them. Then our men with their Muskets, killed three or foure more
of them. So they went their way, within a while after, wee got downe two leagues beyond
that place, and anchored in a Bay, cleere from all danger of them on the other side of the Riuer,
where we saw a very good piece of ground: and hard by it there was a Cliffe, that looked of the
colour of a white Greene, as though it were either Copper, or Silver Myne: and I thinke it to be
one of them, by the Trees that grow vpon it. For they be all burned, and the other places are
greenes as grasse, it is on the side of the Riuer that is called *Manah-hata*. There we saw no peo-
ple to trouble vs, and rode quietly all night, but had much wind and raine.

The third, was very stormie; the wind at East North-east. In the morning, in a gulf of wind
and raine our Anchor came home, and we droue on ground, but it was Ozie. Then as we were
about to haue out an Anchor, the wind came to the North North-west, and droue vs off againe.
Then we shot an Anchor, and let it fill in foure fathomes water, and weighed the other. Wee
had much wind and raine, with thicke weather, so we rode fill all night.

The fourth, was faire weather, and the wind at North North-west, wee weighed and came
out of the Riuer, into which we had runne so farre. Within a while after, wee came out also of
The great mouth of the great Riuer, that runneth vp to the North-west, borrowing vpon the
Northern side of the same, thinking to haue deepe water: for wee had founded a great way with
our Boat at our first going in, and found feuen, fixe, and fise fathomes. So we came out that way,
but we were deceiued, for we had but eight foot & an halfe water: and so to three, fise, three, and
30 two fathomes and an halfe. And then three, foure, fise, fixe, feuen, eight, nine, and ten fathomes.
And by twelue of the clocke we were cleere of all the Inlet. Then we tooke in our Boat, and fir-
our mayne-sayle and sprit-sayle, and our top-sayles, and steered away East South-east, and
let, did heare at noone West and by South foure leagues from vs.

The fife, was faire weather, and the wind variable betweene the North and the East. Wee
held on our course South-east by East. At noone I obserued and found our height to be 39
degrees 30. minutes. Our Compasse varied fixe degrees to the West.

We continued our course toward England, without seeing any Land by the way, all the rest
of this month of October: And on the feuenth day of Nouember, *fide nemo*, being Satur-
day: by the Grace of God we safely arrived in the Range of *Dartmouth* in *Dorsetshire*, in the
yere 1609.

Small skinner.
A pleasant
place to build
on a Towne on.
Likelihood of
Minerals.

October

Treacherie of
the Sauages.
A skirmish and
slughter of
the Sauages.A Myne of
Copper or
Silver.
The Countrey
of *Manah-hata*.The great mouth
of the great Ri-
uer.They leave
the Coast of
Virginia.

CHAP. XVII.

An Abstract of the Journal of Master HENRY HUDSON, for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, begunne the fourteenth of April, 1610. ended with his end, being treacherously expelled by some of the Companie.

April 17.



The fourteenth of April, 1610. We brake ground, and went downe from Saint Katherines Poole, and fell downe to *Blacke wall*: and so played downe with the 10 ships to *Lae*, which was the two and twentieth day.

The two and twentieth, I caused Master *Colebourne* to bee put into a Pinke, bound for *London*, with my Letter to the Adventurers, importing the reason wherefore I so put him out of the ship, and so played forth.

May.
The 11es of
Orkney.

The second of May, the wind Southerly, at Eeven we were chawt of *Flamboyant Head*. The first, we were at the 11es of *Orkney*, and here I set the North end of the Needle, and the North of the Flie all one.

The sixt, we were in the latitude of 59. degrees 22. minutes, and there perceived that the North end of *Scotland*, *Orney*, and *Shetland* are not to Northery, as is commonly set downe.

Nov.
Forelands 61
degrees 24
minutes,
Westmoy.

The eight day, we saw *Farre* Islands in the latitude of 61. degrees 24. minutes. The eleventh day, we fell with the Easter part of *Island*, and then playing along the Souther part of the Land, we came to *Westmoy*, being the fiftenth day, and still played about the mayne land, untill the last of May with contrary winds, and we got some Fowles of divers sorts.

June.

The first day of June, we put to Sea out of an Harbour, in the Westmost part of *Island*, and so played to the Westward in the latitude of 66. degrees 24. minutes, and the second day found our felues in 65. degrees 57. minutes, with little wind Easterly.

The third day, we found our felues in 65. degrees 30. minutes, with winde at North-east, a little before this we sayled neere some Ice.

Greenland.

The fourth day, we saw *Greenland* over the Ice perfectly, and this night the Sunne went downe due North, and rose North-east. So playing this night, we were in 65. degrees, 30 still encombed with much Ice, which hung upon the Coast of *Greenland*.

Frobishers
Streights.

The ninth day, we were off *Frobishers* Streights with the winde Northerly, and played vnto the South-westwards untill the fiftenth day.

Deflation.

The fifteenth day, we were in sight of the land in latitude 59. degrees 27. minutes, which was called by Captayne *John Davis*, *Deflation*, and found the error of the former laying downe of that Land: and then running to the North-westward untill the twentieth day, we found the ship in 60. degrees 42. minutes, and saw much Ice, and many Riplings or Quers-falls, and a strong streame setting from East South-east, to West North-west.

A current West
North-west.

The one and twentie, two and twentie, and three and twentie dayes, with the winde variable, we played to the North-westward in sight of much Ice, into the height of 61. degrees 40 30. minutes.

East entrance
into the
Streights.

The four and twentie, and five and twentie dayes, sayling to the West-ward about midnight, we saw Land North, which was suddenly lost againe. So we ranne still to the Westward in 61. degrees 17. minutes.

July.

The fift of July, we played vp vpon the Souther side, troubled with much Ice in seeking the shoare untill the fift day of July, and we observed that day in 59. degrees 16. minutes. Then we played off the shoare againe, untill the eight day, and then found the height of the Pole in 60. degrees no minutes. Here we saw the Land from the North-west by West, halfe Northerly vnto the South-west by West, covered with snow, a Champaigne Land, and called it, *Desire prometh*.

Desire prometh.

The fift played vp to the Westward, as the Land and Ice would suffer untill the eleventh day; when fearing a storme, we anchored by three Rockie Islands in vncertaine depth, betweene two and nine fathomes; and found it an Harbour vnsufficient by reason of Iunken Rockes, one of which was next morning two fathomes above water. We called them the *Iles of Gods Mercies*. The water howeth here better then foure fathomes. The Flood cometh from the North, flowing eight the change day. The latitude in this place is 61. degrees 9. minutes. Then playing to the South-westward the sixteenth day, we were in the latitude of 58. degrees 50. minutes, but found our felues imboyed with Land, and had much Ice: and we played to the North-westward untill the nineteenth day, and then we found by observation the height of the Pole in 61. degrees 24. minutes, and saw the Land, which I named, *Held with Hope*. Hence I played to the North-westward still, untill the one and twentieth day, with the wind variable. Here I found the Sea more growne, then any we had since we left *England*.

The 11es of
Gods
Mercies.

The three and twentieth day, by observation the height of the Pole was 61. degrees 33. minutes.

Wellmouth Hope.
A mightie
growne Sea.

The three and twentieth day, by observation the height of the Pole was 61. degrees 33. minutes.

notes. The five and twentieth day, we saw the Land; and named it *Magna Britannia*. The sixe and twentieth day, we observed and found the latitude in 61. degrees 44. minutes. The eight and twentieth day, we were in the height of 61. degrees 10. minutes, and played Southerly of the West. The one and thirtieth day, plying to the Westward, at noone we found our felues in 61. degrees 24. minutes.

The first of August, we had sight of the Northerne shoare, from the North by East to the West by South vs: the North part twelve leagues, and the Wester part twentie leagues from vs: and we had no ground there at one hundred and eightie fathomes. And I thinke I saw Land on the Sunne side, but could not make it perfectly, bearing East North-east. Here I found the latitude 61. degrees 50. minutes.

The second day, we had sight of a faire Head-land, on the Norther shoare six leagues off, which I called *Salsburies* Fore-land: we ranne from them West South-west, fourteen leagues: In the mid-way of which we were suddenly come into a great and whirling Sea, whether caused by meeting of two streames, or an Ouer-fall, I know not. Thence sayling West and by South leuen leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a Streight and founded, and had no ground at one hundred fathomes: the Streight being there not aboue two leagues broad, in the passage in this Wester part: whith from the Easter part of *Fretum Davis*, is distant two hundred and fiftie leagues.

The third day, we put through the narrow passage, after our men had bene on Land, which we had well observed there, *That the Flood did come from the North*, flowing by the shoare five thomes. The head of this entrance on the South side, I named *Cape Worstenholme*; and the head on the North-west shoare, I called *Cape Digs*. After we had sailed with an Easterly winde, West and by South ten leagues, the Land fell away to the Southward, and the other 11es and Cape Digs. Land left vs to the Westward. Then I observed and found the ship at noone in 61. degrees 20. minutes, and a Sea to the Westward.

A larger Discourse of the same Voyage, and the succeesse thereof, written by ASAECK PRICEET.

30

Our Egbour Voyage for the North-west Passage: the fourteenth of April, 1610. Thwart of *Shopsy*, our Master sent Master *Collier* backe to the Owners with his Letter. The next day we weighed from hence, and stood for *Harwich*, and came thither the eight and twentieth of April. From *Harwich* we set sayle the first of May, along the Coast to the North, till we came to the 11es of *Orkney*, from thence to the 11es of *Fero*, and from thence to *Island*: on which we fell in a fogge, hearing the Rute of the Sea shoare, but saw not the Land whereupon our Master came to an Anchor. Here we were embayed in the South-east part of the Land. We weighed and stood along the Coast, on the West side towards the

31

North: but one day being calme, we fell a fishing, and caught good store of fish, as Cod and Ling, and Butte, with some other sorts that we knew not. The next day, we had a good gale of wind at South-west, and rayled the 11es of *Westmoy*, where the King of *Denmarke* hath a Fortrefe, by which we pulled to rayle the *Snow Hill* foot, a Mountayne so called on the North-west part of the Land. But in our course we saw that famous Hill, *Mount Hecla*, which cast out much fire, a signe of foule weather to come in short time. We leave *Island* a sterne of vs, and met a Mayne of Ice, which did hang on the North part of *Island*, and stretched downe to the West, which when our Master saw, he stood backe for *Island* to find an Harbour, which we did on the North-west part, called *Derford*, where we killed good store of Fowle. From hence we put to Sea againe, but (neither wind nor weather serving) our Master stood backe for this Harbour againe, but could not reach it, but fell with another to the South of that, called by us *Englimen*.

40

Englimen, *Loufie Bay*: where on the shoare we found an hot Bath, and here all our *Englimen* bathed themselves: the water was so hot that it would kill a Fowle.

From hence the first of Iune, we put to Sea for *Greenland*, but to the West we saw Land as we thought, for which we beate the best part of a day, but it proved but a foggy banke. So we gave it ouer, and made for *Greenland*, which we rayled the fourth of Iune. Vpon the Coast thereof hung good store of Ice, in that our Master could not atayne to the Shoare by any means. The Land in this part is very Mountaynous, and full of round Hills, like to Sugar-loaves, covered with snow. We turned the Land on the South side, as neere as the Ice would suffer vs. Our course for the most part was betweene the West and North-west, till we rayled the *Deflation*, which is a great Iland in the West part of *Greenland*. On this Coast we saw store of W hailes, and at one time three of them came close by vs, so as we could hardly thinne them: then two passing very neere, and the third going vnder our ship, we received no harme by them, prayled bee God.

50

From the *Deflation* our Master made his way North-west, the wind being against him, who

60

the first of Iune, An hot Bath, The first of Iune, Iland of *Deflation*, Store of Whales.

Magna Britannia.

Angul.

Salsburies fore-land; A great and whirling Sea; A Streight, which led vs into the deepe Bay of *Gods Mercies*.

Cape Worstenholme, *Cape Digs*.

else would have gone more to the North: but in this course we saw the first great land or Mountayne of Ice, whereof after we saw more. About the latter end of June, we rayed Land to the North of vs, which our Master tooke to bee that Island which Master Davis setteth downe in his Chart. On the West side of his Streight, our Master would have gone to the North of it, but the wind would not suffer him: so we fell to the South of it, into a great Rippling or current, the which setteth to the West. Into the current we went, and made our way to the North of the West, till we met with Ice which hung on this Island. Wherefore our Master calling about, cleared himselfe of this Ice, and stood to the South, and then to the West, through flocks of floating Ice, and vpon the Ice flocks of Seales. We gained a cleere Sea, and continued our course till we met with Ice, with great Islands, and then with flocks of the smaller sort. Betweene them we made our course North-west, till we met with Ice againe. But, in this going betweene the Ice, we saw one of the great Islands of Ice ouerturne, which was good warning to vs, not to come nigh them, nor within their reach. Into the Ice we put ahead, as vs, that in the end we were driven to put her into the chiefe of the Ice, and there to let her lie. Some of our men this day fell sicke, I will not say it was for feare, although I saw small signe of other griefe.

Island of Ice ouerturneth.

Danger by Ice.

The storme ceasing, we stood out of the Ice, where we saw any cleere Sea to goe to: which was sometime more, and sometime lesse. Our course was as the Ice did lie, sometime to the North, then to the North-west, and then to the West, and to the South-west: but still inclining to the West with Ice. Which when our Master law, he made his course to the South, thinking to cleere himselfe of the Ice that way: but the more he strove, the worse he was, and the more inclosed, till we could goe no further. Here our Master was in despair, and (as he told me after) he thought he should neuer haue got out of this Ice, but there haue perished. Therefore hee brought forth his Card, and shewed all the company, that hee was entred aboue an hundred leagues further then euer any English was: and left it to their choice, whether they would proceed any further; yea, or nay. Whereupon, some were of one minde, and some of another, some wishing themselves at home, and some not caring where, so they were out of the Ice: but there were some who then spake words, which were remembered a great while after.

Hudson entred 100 leagues further then any had bene.

Discontentes.

There was one who told the Master, that if hee had an hundred pounds, hee would giue foure score and ten to be at home: but the Carpenter made answer, that if hee had an hundred, hee would not giue ten vpon any such condition, but would think it to be as good money as euer hee had any, and to bring it as well home, by the leaue of God. After many words to no purpose, to worke we must on all hands, to get our selues out, and to cleere our ship. After much labour and time spent, we gained room to turne our ship in, and so by little and little, to get cleere in the Sea a league or two off, our course being North and North-west.

Desire promises.

In the end, we rayed Land to the South-west, high Land and covered with Snow. Our Master named this Land, *Desire promises*. Lying here, we heard the noyse of a great ouer-fall of a tyde, that came out of the Land: for now we might fee well, that wee had bene embayed before, and time had made vs know, being so well acquainted with the Ice, that when night, or foggie, or foule weather tooke vs, we would seeke out the broadest Island of Ice, and there come to anchor and runne, and spore, and fill water that stood on the Ice in Ponds, both sweete and good. But after we had brought this Land to beare South of vs, we had the tyde and the current to open the Ice, as being carried first one way, and then another: but in the Bayes they lyas in a pond without mouing. In this Bay where we were thus troubled with Ice, we saw many of those Mountaynes of Ice aground, in fixe or seuenfoure fathome water. In this our course we saw a Beare vpon a piece of Ice by it selfe, to the which our men gaue chase with their Boat: but before they came nigh her, the tyde had carried the Ice and the Beare on their Boar: so with the other Ice: so they lost their labour, and came aboard againe.

Exercise of pleasure and profit on the Ice. Difference of Tydes and Bayes. Ice aboue 100 fathome.

We continued our course to the North-west, and rayed Land to the North of our course, toward which we made, and coming nigh it, there hung on the Eastermost point, many Islands of floating Ice, and a Beare on one of them, which was one to another came towards vs, till the was ready to come aboard. But when the saw vs looke at her, she cast her head betwene her hinder legges, and then diued vnder the Ice: and so from one piece to another, till the was out of our reach. We stood along by the Land on the Southside ahead of vs, we met with Ice that hung on a point of Land that lay to the South, more then this that we came vpy by: which when our Master law, he stood for the shoare. At the West end of this Island (for so it is) we found an Harbour, and came in (at a full Sea) on a Rocke, which had two fathome and an halfe on it, and was so much bare at a low water. But by the great mercie of God, we came to an Anchor cleere of it, and close by it, our Master named them, the *Isles of Gods Mercie*. This is an Harbour for need, but there must be care had how they come in. Here our Master sent me, and others with me, to discover to the North and North-west, and in going from one place to another, we sprung a Courty of Partridges which were young: at the which *Thomas Woodhouse* shot, but killed only the old one. This Land is a most barren place, hauing nothing on it but

A dangerous Rocke.

Isle of Gods Mercie.

Partridges.

plashes of water, and riuen Rockes, as if it were subiect to Earthquakes. To the North there is a great Bay, or Sea (for I know not what it will proue) where I saw a great Island of Ice aground, betweene the two Lands, which with the Spring-tide was feet afloat, and carried into this Bay, or Sea to the North-westward, but came not backe againe, nor within sight. Here wee tooke in some Drift wood that we found ashore.

Drift-wood.

From hence we stood to the South-west, to double the Land to the West of vs, through much floating Ice: In the end wee found a cleere Sea, and continued therein, till we rayed Land to the North-west. Then our Master made his course more to the South then before: but it was not long ere we met with Ice which lay ahead of vs. Our Master would haue doubled this Ice to the North, but could not; and in the end put into it downe to the South-west through much Ice, and then to the South, where we were embayed againe. Our Master strove to get the shoare, but could not, for the great force of Ice that was on the coast. From out of this Bay, we stood to the North, and were loose out of the Ice: then downe to the South-west, and so to the West, where we were enclosed (to our sight) with Land and Ice. For we had Land from the South to the North-west on one side, and from the East to the West on the other: but the Land that was to the North of vs, and lay by East and West, was but an Island. On we went till we could goe no further for Ice: so we made our ship fast to the Ice which the tide brought vpon vs, but when the ebbe came, the Ice did open, and made way: so as in ten or eight houres we were cleere from the Ice, till we came to weather: but onely some of the great Islands, that were carried along with vs to the North-west.

Hauing a cleere Sea, our Master stood to the West along by the South shoare, and rayed three Capes or Head-Lands, lying one aboue another. The middlemost is an Island, and maketh a Bay or Harbour, which (I take) will proue a good one. Our Master named them *Prince Henries Cape*, or *For-Land*. When we had layd this we rayed another, which was the extreme point of the Land, looking towards the North: vpon it are two Hills, but one (about the right) like an Hay-cocke; which our Master named, *King James his Cape*. To the North of this, lie certaine Islands, which our Master named, *Queene Annes Cape*, or *For-Land*. Wee followed the North shoare still. Beyond the Kings Cape there is a Sound or Bay, that hath some Islands in it: and this is not to be forgotten, if need be. Beyond this, lieth some broken Land, close to the Mayne, but what it is I know not: because we passed by it in the night.

Three Capes. Prince Henries Cape.

King James his Cape. Queene Annes Cape.

We stood to the North to double this Land, and after to the West againe, till we fell with Land that stretched from the Mayne, like a shewer from the South to the North, and from the North to the West, and then downe to the South againe. Being thort of this Land, a storme tooke vs, the wind at West, we stood to the North, and rayed Land: which when our Master law, he stood to the South againe; for he was loath at any time that wee should see the North shoare. The storme continuing, and coming to the South shoare againe, our Master found himselfe thort to the West, a great way, which made him muse, considering his Leeward way. To the South-west of this Land, on the Mayne, there is an high Hill, which our Master named *Mount Charles*. To the North and beyond this, lieth an Island, that to the East hath a faire head, and beyond it to the West other broken Land, which maketh a Bay within, and a good Road may be found there for ships. Our Master named the first Cape, *Saltwater*.

Note.

Mount Charles.

Cape Saltwater.

When we had left this to the North-east, we fell into a Rippling or Ouer-fall of a Current, which (at the first we tooke to bee a Shoald: but the Lead being cast, we had no ground. On we passed still in sight of the South shoare, till we rayed Land lying from the Mayne some two leagues. Our Master tooke this to bee a part of the Mayne of the North Land; but it is an Island, the North side stretching out to the West more then the South. This Island had a faire Head to the East, and very high Land, which our Master named *Deeper Cape*: and the Land on the South side, now falling away to the South, makes another Cape or Head-land, which our Master named, *Worshams Cape*. When we were nigh the North or Island Cape, our Master sent the Boat ashore, with my selfe (who had the charge) and the Carpenter, and others others, to discover to the West and North-west, and to the South-west: but we had further to it then we thought; for the Land is very high, and we were oer-taken with a storme of Raine, Thunder and Lightning. But to it we came on the North-east side, and vpon we got from one Rocke to another, till we came to the highest of that part. Here we found some plaine ground, and saw some Deere, as first, foure or five, and after, a dozen or sixteene in an Herd, but could not come nigh them with a Munket thor.

Deeper Cape. Worshams Cape.

Thus, going from one place to another, we saw to the West of vs an high Hill above all the rest, it being nigh vs: but it proued further off then we made account; for, when we came to it, the Land was so steep on the East and North-east parts, that we could not get vnto it. To the South-west we saw that we might, and towards that part we went along by the side of a great Pond of water, which lieth vnder the East side of this Hill: and there cunneth out of it a streame of water, as much as would driue an ouer-flow Mill; which falleth downe from an high Cliffe into the Sea on the South side. In this place great flocks of Fowle breed, and there is the best Grasse that I had seene since we came from England. Here wee found Sorrell, and that

Store of fowle and grasse. Sorrell and Scoury grass.

which wee call Scuty-graffe, in great abundance. Passing along we saw some round Hills of stone, like to Grasse cockes, which at the first Iooke to be the worke of some Christian. We passed by them, till we came to the South side of the Hill; we went up them, and there found more; and being nigh them, I turned off the vppermost stone, and found them hollow within, and full of Fowles hanged by their neckes. Then *Greene*, and I, went to fetch the Boat to the South side, while *Robert Billet* and hee got downe a Valley to the Sea side, where wee took them in.

Our Master (in this time) came in betweene the two Lands, and shot off some Peeeces to call vs aboard; for it was a fogge. We came aboard, and told him what we had done, and persuaded him to stay a day or two in this place, telling him what refreshing might there bee had; but by no means would he stay, who was not pleased with the motion. So we left the Fowles, and loft our way downe to the South-west, before they went in sight of the Land, which now we saw to the East from vs, being the boe mayne Land that wee had all this while followed. Now, we had loft the sight of it, because it falleth away to the East, after some five and twenty or thirty leagues. Now we came to the shallow water, wherewith wee were not acquainted since we came from *Iland*; now we came into broken ground and Rocks, through which we passed downe to the South. In this our course we had a storme, and the water did shoald space. Our Master came to an anchor in fifteene fathomes water.

Wee weighed and stood to the South-east, because the Land in this place did lye so, when we came to the point of the West Land (for we now had Land on both sides of vs) we came to an anchor. Our Master sent the Boat ashore, to see what that Land was, and whether there were any way through. They tooke returned, and shewed that beyond the point of Land to the South, there was a large Sea. This Land on the West side, was a very narrow Point. We weighed from hence, and stood in for this Sea betweene the two Lands, which (in this place) is not two leagues broad downe to the South, for a great way in sight of the East shore. In the end we loft sight thereof, and saw it not till we came to the bottom of the Bay, into fixe or seven fathomes water. Hence we stood vp to the North by the West shoare, till wee came to an *Iland* in 53. where we took in water and ballast.

From hence wee passed towards the North: but some two or three dayes after (reasoning concerning our coming into this Bay, and going out) our Master took occasion to reuise old matters, and to displace *Robert Iuet* from being his Mate, and the Boat-swaine from his place, for words spoken in the first great Bay of Ice. Then hee made *Robert Billet* his Mate, and *William Wilson* our Boat-swaine. Vp to the North we stood, till we raised Land, and then downe to the South, and vp to the North, then downe againe to the South: and on Michaelmasse day came in, and went out of certain Lands; which our Master sets downe by the name of *Michaelmasse Bay*, because we came in and went out on that day. From hence we stood to the North, and came into shoald water; and the weather being thicke and foule, wee came to an anchor in feuen or eight fathome water, and there lay eight dayes: in all which time wee could not get one houre to weigh our anchor. But the eighth day, the wind beginning to cease, our Master would haue the anchor vp, against the mind of all who knew what belonged thereunto. Well, to it we went, and when we had brought it to a peeke, a Seaooke her, and cast vs all off from the Capstone, and hurt diuers of vs. Here wee loft our Anchor, and if the Carpenter had not bene, we had loft our Cable too: but he (tearing such a matter) was ready with his Axe, and so cut it.

From hence we stood to the South, and to the South-west, through a cleere Sea of diuers founding, and came to Sea of two colours, one blacke, and the other white, fixtee or seuentee fathome water, betweene which we went foure or five leagues. But the night coming, we tooke in our Top-sayles, and stood after the wind with our Main-sayle and Fore-sayle, and came into five or six fathomes, and saw no Land for it was darke. Then we stood to the East, and had deepe water againe, then to the South and South-west, and so came to our Boat to the Bay of all, and came to an anchor neere to the North shoare. Our way was to the Westward of the Land that was next vs, when they came neere it, our Boat could not rise to the shoare: it was so shallow: yet ashore they got. Here our men saw the footing of a man and a Ducke in the snowy Rockes, and Wood good store, whereof they tooke fume and returned aboard. Being at anchor in this place, we saw a ledge of Rockes to the South of vs, some league of length: It lay North and South, couered at a full Sea; for a strong tide setteth in here. At mid-night wee weighed, and stood to goe out as we came in; and had not gone long, but the Carpen came and told the Master, that if he kept that course he would be vpon the Rockes: the Master conceiued that he was past them, when presently we ranne on them, and there stucke full twelue houres: but (by the mercy of God) we got off vnhurt, though not vnscarred.

Wee stood vp to the East, and rayled three Hills, lying North and South: we went to the furthermost, and left it to the North of vs, and so into a Bay, where we came to an anchor. Here our Master sent out our Boat, with my selfe and the Carpenter, to seeke a place to winter in: and it was time; for the nights were long and cold, and the earth couered with Snow. H-

uing spent three months in a Labyrinth without end, being now the last of October, we went downe to the East, to the bottom of the Bay: but returned without speeding of that we went for. The next day we went to the South, and the South-west, and found a place, whereunto we brought our ship, and haled her aground: and this was the first of November. By the tenth thereof we were frozen in: but now we were in, it behoued vs to haue care of what we had; for, that we were sure of; but what we had not, was vncertaine.

Wee were victualled for sixe months in good proportion, and of that which was good: if our Master would haue had more, he might haue had it at home and in other places. Here wee were now, and therefore it behoued vs to spend, that wee might haue (when time came) to bring vs to the Cape where the Fowle bred, for that was all the hope wee had to bring vs home. Wherefore our Master took order, first for the spending of that wee had, and then to increase it, by propounding a reward to them that killed either Beast, Fish, or Fowle, as in his Iournall you haue scene. About the middle of this moneth of November, dyed *John Williams* our Gunner: God parda the Masters wacharitable dealing with this man. Now for that I am come to speake of, of him, out of whose ashes (as it were) that vnhappy deed grew which brought a scandall vpon all that are returned home, and vpon the action it left, the multitude (like the dog) running after the stone, but not at the cafter: therefore, not to wrong the living nor slander the dead, I will (by the leave of God) deliuer the truth as neere as I can.

You shall vnderstand, that our Master kept (in his house at London) a young man, named *Henry Greene*, booke in Keen, of Worshippfull Parents, but by his lewd life and consuetudine hee had loft the good will of all his friends, and had spent all that hee had. This man, our Master would haue to Sea with him, because hee could write well: our Master gaue him meate, and drinke, and lodging, and by means of one Master *Vinson*, with much adoe got foure pounds of his mother to buy him clothes, wherewith Master *Vinson* would not trust him: but saw it laid out himselfe. This *Henry Greene* was not set downe in the owners booke, nor any wages made for him. Hee came first aboard at *Gravesend*, and at *Herrich* should haue gone into the field, with one *Wilkinson*. At *Iland* the Surgeon and hee fell out in *Dutch*, and hee beat him a shoare in *English*, which let all the company in a rage: so that wee had much adoe to get the Surgeon aboard. I told the Master of it, but hee bade mee let it alone, for (said hee) the Surgeon had a tongue that would wrong the best friend hee had. But *Robert Iuet* (the Masters Mate) would needs burne his finger in the embers, and told the Carpenter a long tale (when hee was drunke) that our Master had brought in *Greene* to cracke his credit: that should displease him: which words came to the Masters eares, who when hee vnderstood it, would haue gone backe to *Iland*, when he was fortie leagues from thence, to haue sent home his Mate *Robert Iuet* in a Fisher-man. But, being otherwise perswaded, all was well. So *Henry Greene* stood vpright, and very inward with the Master, and was a seruicable man euery way for manhood: but for Religion hee would say, he was cleane paper whereon he might write what hee would. Now, when our Gunner was dead, and (as the order is in such cases) if the company stand in need of any thing that belonged to the man deceased, then is it brought to the Mayne Mast, and there sold to them that will giue most for the same: This Gunner had a gray cloth gowne, which *Greene* prayed the Master to friend him so much as to let him haue it, paying for it as another would giue: the Master saith hee should, and thereupon hee answered some, that sought to haue it, that *Greene* should haue it, and none else, and so it refted.

Now out of season and time, the Master calleth the Carpenter to goe in hand with an house on shoare, which at the beginning our Master would not heare, when it might haue bene done. The Carpenter told him, that the Snow and Frost were such, as hee neither could, nor would goe in hand with such worke. Which when our Master heard, hee ferreted him out of his Cabin to strike him, calling him by many foule names, and threatening to hang him. The Carpenter told him that hee knew what belonged to his place better then himselfe, and that hee was no Houle Carpenter. So this passed, and the house was (after) made with much labour, but to no end. The next day after the Master and the Carpenter fell out, the Carpenter tooke his Peece and *Henry Greene* with him, for it was an order that none should goe out alone, but one with a Peece, and another with a Pike. This did moue the Master so much the more against *Henry Greene*, that *Robert Billet* his Mate must haue the gowne, and had it deliuered vnto him; which when *Henry Greene* saw, hee challenged the Masters promise: but the Master did so raise on *Greene*, with so many words of disgrace, telling him, that all his friends would not trust him with twenty shillings, and therefore why should hee? As for wages hee had none, nor none should haue, if hee did not please him well. Yet the Master had promised him to make his wages as good, as any mans in the ship; and to haue him one of the Princes gun when we came home. But you shall see how the deuill out of this so wrought with *Greene*, that hee did the Master what mischiefe hee could in seeking to discredit him, and to thrust him and many other honest men out of the Ship in the end. To speake of all our trouble in this time of Winter (which was so cold, as it lasted med the most of our Company, and my selfe doe yet feele it) would be too tedious.

But I must not forget to shew, how mercifully God dealt with vs in this time; for the

Space of three months wee had such store of Fowle of one kinde (which were Partridges as white as milke) that wee killed about an hundred dozen, besides a sort of linnely fowls : for with vs all the extreme cold. Then in their places came diuers fowls of other fowle, as Swanne, Geele, Duck, and Teale, but hard to come by. Our Master thought they would as haue bred in those bruck grounds, but they doe not : but came from the South, and flew to the North, farther then we were this Voyagette if they be taken forth with the wind or North, or North-west, or North-east, then they fall and flay till the winde ferue them, and then they to the North. Now in time these Fowles are gone, and few or none to be seen. Then we went into the Woods, Hilles, and Vallies, for all things that had any shew of substance to us, how much fouler : the moiste of the ground, then the which I take the powder of Toade was missered. But amongst the diuers fowls of buds, it pleased God that *The Surgeon* made a brooch to drinke, and applyed the buddees hot to them that were troubled with ach in any part of their bodies ; and for my part, I confesse, I receiued great and prent ease of my paine.

A. Saugee. About this time, when the Ice began to break out of the Bayes, there came a Saugee to our Ship, as it were to see and to be teene, being the first that we had teene in all this time: whither our Master intreated well, and made much of him, promising him his life, and his health, by his means, and therefore would have all the Knives and Hatchets (which any man had) to his private use, but received none but from *Iohn King* the Carpenter, and his felle. To this Saugee our Master gave a Knife, a *Looking-glass*, and Buttons, who received them thankfully, and made signes that after hee had slept hee would come againe, which hee did. When hee came, hee brought with him a Sled, which hee drew after him, and upon it hee drew skinnes, and two Beaver skinnies. Hee had a scrip under his arme, and said it vpon one of the Beaver skinnies, and his Glasse and Buttons vpon the other, and so gave him them to the Master, who received them; and the Saugee took the things which the Master had given him, and then hee put into his scrip againe. Then the Master shewed him an Hatchet, for which hee would have given the Master one of his Deere skinnies, but our Master would have them both, and so hee had, although not willingly. After many signes of people to the North, and to the South, and that after so many sleepes hee would come againe, he went his way, but neuer came more.

Now the Ice being out of the Sounds, so that our Boat might go from one place vnto another, a company of men were appointed by the Master to go fishing with our net; their names were as followeth: *Arnold Wilson, Henry Greene, Michael Perce, John Thomas, Andrew Muter, Benet Mathewes, and William Lofen*. They men, the first day they went, caught five hundred fish, as big as good Herrings, and some Troutes: which put vs all in some hope to haue our wants supplied, and our Commons amended: but these were the moile that euer they got in one day, for many days they got not a quarter so many. In this time of their euerling, *Henry Greene and William Wilson*, with some others, plotted to take the net and the shallop, which the Carpenter had now set vp, and so to shift for themselves. But the shallop being ready, our Master would goe in it himself, to the South and South-west, to see if hee could meete with the people; for, to that end it was set vp, and (that way) were might be for the Woods set on fire by them. So the Master rooke the Saye and the Shallop, and so much wind as would serue for eight or nine days, and to the South hee went. They that remained aboard, were to take in water, wood, and ballast, and to haue all things in a readinesse against hee came backe. But hee set no time of his returne; for he was perswaded, if hee could meet with the people, hee should haue flesh of them, and that good store: but hee returned worse then hee went forth. For, hee could by no meanes meete with the people, although they were nere them; yet they would be the woods on fire in his sight.

Being returned, he firted all things for his returne, and first, deliuered all the bread out of the bread roome (which came to a pound a piece for euery mans share) and deliuered also a Bill of Returne, willing them to haue that to helpe, if it pleased God, that they came home; and he wept when hee gaue it vnto them. But to shew vs in this poore estate with some reliefe, the Brother and Sayue went to worke on Friday morning, and stayed till Sunday noone: at which time they came aboard, and brought fourefoote (small Fish), a poore reliefe for 15 many hungry bellies. Then we wayed, and flood out of our wintering place, and came to an Anchor without, in the mouth of the Bay: from whence we wayed and came to an anchor without in the Sea, where our bread being gone, that flore of cheefe we had was to stop a gap, whereof there were few, whereas the company grudged, because they made account of nine. But those that were left, were equally diuided by the Maister, although he had counfelled to the contrary: for there were some who hauing it, would make haile to be rid thereof, because they could not geare it. I knew when *Hence*

Belly Straits.

Greene gave half his bread, which hee had for fourteen dayes, to one to keepe, and prayed him not to let him haue any vntill the next Monday: but before Wednesday at night, hee neuer left till hee had it againe, hauing eaten his first dayes bread, and then *William* the Boarshewine hath eaten (in one day) his fortnights bread, and hath bene two or three dayes sicke for his labour. The cause that moued the Master to deliuer all the Cuckewes to the cause theye were not man should haue alike the beff and the worit together, which was three pounds and a halfe for guen dayes.

The wind feruſing , we weighed and flood to the North-weſt , and on Monday night (the eighteenth day of June) we fell into the Ice, and the next day the wind being as Weſt, we lay there till Sunday in fight of Land. Now being here, the Maſter ſold *Nicholas Simmes*, that there would be a breaking up of ſchets, and a ſearch for bread, and willed him (if hee had any) to bring it to him, which hee did, and deluered to the Maſter thirty cakes in a bagge. This deed of the Maſter (if it be true) hath made me marvell, what ſhould be the reaſon that hee did not ſtop the Maſter in the beginning, but let it grow to that height, as that it ouerthrow his melme and make him ſo much the more needy. I ſhall therefore ſay ſome thing to this purpoſe, that ſome other honeſt man : but there are many denices in the hearts of man, yet the counſell of the Lord ſhall ſtand.

Bringing thus in the Ice on Saturday, the one and twentieth of June at night, *Wilson* the Boatwaine, and *Henry Greene* came to me lying (in my Cabin) late, and told me that they and the rest of their Associates, would flust the Company and turne the Master, *William Hall*, and the men into the Shallop, & let them sit for themselves. For, there was not fourteen days without the Ice for all the Company at that poore allowance they were at, and that there they lay, the Master not caring to goe one way or other: and that they had not eaten any thing these three dayes, and therefore were refulate, either to mend or end, and what they had begun they would goe through with it, or dye. When I heard this, I told them I marvelled to heare so much from them, considering that they were married men, and had wives and children, and that for their fakes they would not commit to foule a thing in the sight of God and man, as that would bee; for why should they bannish themselves from their native Country? *Henry Greene* bad me hold my peace, for he knew the worst, which was, to be hanged when he came home, and therefore of the two he thought rather to be hanged at home then flarred abroad: and for the good will they bare me, they would hate me no more. I gave them thanks, and told them that I came into her, not to forsake her, yet not to hurt me, and others by any such deed. *Henry Greene* told me then, that I must take my fortune in the Shallop. If there bee no remedie (said I) the will of God goe downe.

Away went *Henry Greene* in a rage, swearing to cut his throat that went about to disfigure them, and left *Willow* by me, with whom I had some talk, but to goe good for nothing. I saw that there was no remedie now, but to goe on while it was hot, least they should find fault with me, and the mischief they had intended to others, should light on themselves. So *Greene* came againe, and demanded of him what I said, *Willow* answered, He is in his old long, All p^{ar}sons. Then I spake to *Henry Greene* to stay three days, in which time I would fideale with the Master, that all should be well. So I dealt with him to forbear but two dayes, nay twelue houres; there is no way then (say they) but out of hand. Then I told them, that if they would stay till Monday, I would ioyne with them to share all the victuals in the ship, and would suffice it when matter they had in hand. I then made them see, and that it was bloud and reuenge he sought, or else he would not at such a time of night undertake such a deed. *Henry Greene* (with that) read was for the good of the voyage, and fware that hee would doe no man harme, and what hee The like did *Willow* sweare.

50 *Henry Greene* went his way, and presently came *Ives*, who because hee was an ancient man, I hoped to have found some reason in him ; but hee was worse then *Henry Greene*, for hee sware plainly that he would iustifie this deed when he came home. After him came *John Thomas*, and *Michel Perce*, as birds of one feather ; but because they are not living, I will let them goe, as then I did. Then came *Moter* and *Bennet*, of whom I demanded, if they were well aduised what they had taken in hand. They answered, that they were well aduised, and that they had

Now, because I am much condemned for this, as one of them that plotted with them, and that by an oath I should bind them together to do with me, I say I had begun, and thought good here to fit downe to the view of all, how well their oath and doctrine was kept, and that was, *Thou shalt ferve us truly to God, your Prince and Countrey; you shall doe nothing, but to the glory of God, and the good of the action in hand, and harme to no man.* This was the oath, without adde of any thing. It was for more of cheefe companions (although there were too many) but they came no more. I worked for them in a readinesse to put this deed of darknes in execution. I called to *Henry Greene and Willoughby*, and they came, and I went to goe in hand with it in the darke, but to stay till the morning. Now, *Francis*, I thinke, I have said, I have said.

Wilson & Green,
their wicked-
ness.

Robert M. S. S.
Widow's
no. 1.

Oath abused.

kedn't sleepeth not; for *Henry Greene* keepeth the *Master* company all night (and gaue mee bread, which his *Cabbin-mate* gaue him) and others are as watchfull as he. Then I asked *Henry Greene*, whom he would put out with the *Master*? he said, the *Carpenter John King*, and the *ticke* men. I said, they should not doe well to part with the *Carpenter*, what neede I ouer they should haue. Why the *Carpenter* was in no more regard amongst them, was; first, for that he and *John King* were condemned for wrong done in the *vicillall*. But the chieftest cause, for that he and the *Master* loued him, and made him his *Mate*, vpon his returne out of our wintering place, thereby displacing *Robert Billet*, whereto they did grudge, because hee could neither write nor read. And therefore (said they) the *Master* and his ignorant *Mate* would carry the *Ship* whither the *Master* pleased: the *Master* forbidding any man to keep account or reckoning, having taken from all men whatsoever Iured for that purpose. Well, I obtained of *Henry Greene* and *William*, that the *Carpenter* should stay, by whose meanes I hoped (after they had satisfied themselves) that the *Master*, and the poore man might be taken into the *Ship* againe. Or, I hoped, that some one or other would giue some notice, either to the *Carpenter John King*, or the *Master*; for so it might haue come to passe by some of them that were the most forward.

Now, it shall not be amisse to shew how we were lodged, and to begin in the *Cooke* room; there lay *Bennet* and the *Cooper* lame; without the *Cooke* room, on the steele-board side, lay *Thomas Wyndolfe* sicke; next to him lay *Sydack Fener* lame, then the *Surgeon*, and *John Hudson* lay with him; next to them lay *William* the *Boatwaine*, and then *Arnold Lodo* next to him: in the *Gun-room* lay *Robert Iust* and *John Thomas* on the Lar-board side, lay *Michael Bate* and *Adria Moore*, who had neuer bene well since we lost our Anchor; next to them lay *Michael Perce* and *Andrew Muter*. Next to them without the *Gun-room*, lay *John King*, and with him the *Cabbin* and the *Pumps*, lay *Henry Greene* and *Nicholas Simmes*. This night *John King* was late vp, and they thought he had bene with the *Master*, but he was with the *Carpenter*, who lay on the *Poore*, and coming downe from him, was met by his *Cabbin-mate*, as it were by chance, and so they came to their *Cabbin* together. It was no long ere it was day: then came *Bennet* for water for the *Kettle*, hee rose and went into the *Hold*: when hee was in, they shut the *Hatch* on him (but who kept it downe I know not) vpon vpon the *Deck* went *Bennet*.

In the meane time *Henry Greene*, and another went to the *Carpenter*, and held him with a talke, till the *Master* came out of his *Cabbin* (which hee loomed idly) then came *John Thomas* and *Bennet* before him, while *William* bound his armes behind him. He asked them what they meant: they told him, he should know when he was in the *Shallow*. Now *Iust*, while this was doing, came to *John King* into the *Hold*, who was prouided for him, for he had got a sword of his own, and kept him at a bay, and might haue killed him, but others came to helpe him: and so he came vp to the *Master*. The *Master* called to the *Carpenter*, and told him that he was bound; but I heard no answer he made. Now *Arnold Lodo*, and *Michael Bate* rayled at them, and told them their knauerie would thew it selfe. Then was the *Shallow* haled vp to the *Ship* side, and the poore, sicke, and lame men were called vpon to get them out of their *Cabbins* into the *Shallow*. The *Master* called to me, who came out of my *Cabbin* as well as I could, to the *Hatch* 40 way to speake with him: where, on my knees I besought them, for the loue of God, to remember themselves, and to doe as they would be done vnto. They bad me keepe my selfe well, and get me into my *Cabbin*; nor suffering the *Master* to speake with me. But when I came into my *Cabbin* againe, hee called to me at the *Horne*, which gaue light into my *Cabbin*, and told mee that *Iust* would ouerthrow vs all; may (said I) it is that villaine *Henry Greene*, and I speake it not falsely.

Now was the *Carpenter* at liberty, who asked them, if they would be hanged when they came home: and as for himselfe, hee said, hee would not stay in the *Ship* vntill they would force him: they bad him goe then, for they would not stay him: I will (said hee) so I may haue my sheft with mee, and all that is in it: they said, hee should, and presently they put it into the *Shallow*. Then hee came downe to mee, to take his leave of mee, who perished him to stay, which if he did, he might so worke that all should be well: hee said, hee did not thinke, but they would be glad to take them in againe. For he was so perished by the *Master*, that there was not one in all the *ship*, that could tell how to carrie her home: but (saith he) if we must part (which wee will not willingly doe, for they would follow the *ship*) hee prayed me, if wee came to the *Capes* before them, that I would leaue some token that wee had bene there, neere to the place where the *Fowles* bred, and hee would doe the like for vs: and so (with teares) we parted. Now were the sicke men driven out of their *Cabbins* into the *Shallows* but *John Thomas* was *Francis Clements* friend, and *Bennet* was the *Coopers*, so as there were 60 wrong betweene them and *Henry Greene*, one saying, that they should goe, and the other swearing that they should not goe, but such as were in the *Shallow* should returne. When *Henry Greene* heard that, hee was compelled to giue place, and to put out *Arnold Lodo*, and *Michael Bate*, which with much adoe they did.

In the meane time, there were some of them that played their worke, as if the *Ship* had bene

entered by force, and they had free leaue to pillage, breaking vp *Chefts*, and rifling all places. One of them came by me, who asked me, what they should doe. I answered, hee should make an end of what hee had begun; for I saw him doe nothing but flarke vp and downe. Now, were all the poore men in the *Shallow*, whose names are as followeth: *Henry Hudson*, *John Hudson*, *Arnold Lodo*, *Sydack Fener*, *Philip Staffe*, *Thomas Woodhouse*, *And Adams Moore*, *Henry King*, *Michael Bate*. The *Carpenter* got of them a *Peace*, and *Powder*, *Shot*, and some *Pikes*, an *Iron Pot*, with some meale, and other things. They stood out of the *Ice*, the *Shallow* being fast to the *Sterne* of the *Shippe*, and so (when they were nigh out, for I cannot say, they were cleane out) they cut her head fast from the *Sterne* of our *Ship*, then out with their *Top-sayles*, and towards the *East* they stood in a cleere *Sea*. In the end theyooke in their *Top-sayles*, righted their *Helme*, and lay vnder their *Fore-sayle* till they had rancked and searched all places in the *Ship*. In the *Hold* they found one of the vessels of meale whole, and the other halfe spent, for wee had but two; wee found also two firkins of *Butter*, some twentie seven piece of *Pork*, halfe a bushell of *Pease*, but in the *Masters Cabbin* we found two hundred of *bisket Cakes*, a pecke of *Meale*, of *Beere* to the quantitie of a *Butt*, one wicke another. Now, it was said, that the *Shallow* was come within sight, they let fall the *Main-sayle*, and our with their *Top-sayles*, and nye as from an *Enemy*.

Then I prayed them yet to remember themselves; but *William Wilson* (more then the rest) would heare of no such matter. Comming nigh the *East* shore they cast aboord, and flood to the *West* and came to an *Island*, and anchored in fixtene or fountene fathome water. So they sent the *Boat*, and the *Net* aboord to see if they could haue a *Draught*; but could not for *Rockes* and great *stones*. *Michael Perce* killed two *Fowles*, and heere they found good store of that *Weede*, which we called *Cockle-grasse* in our wintering place, wherof they gathered flore, and came aboard againe. Heere we lay that night, and the best part of the next day, in all which time we saw not the *Shallow*, or euer after. Now *Henry Greene* came to me and told mee, that it was the *Companies* will, that I should come vpon to the *Masters Cabbin*, and take charge thereof. I told him it was more fit for *Robert Iust*: he said, he should not come in, but I was kept in the *Masters Card*, or *Journals*. So vp I came, and *Henry Greene* gaue me the *Key* of the *Masters Chest*, and told me then, that he had laid the *Masters* best things together, which hee would vnto himselfe when time did serue: the bread was also deliuered me by tale.

30 The wind seruing, we stood to the *North-east*, and this was *Robert Billets* course, contrary to *Robert Iust*, who would haue gone to the *North-west*. We had the *Easterne* shore still in sight, and (in the night) had a stout gale of wind, and flood fore it, till wee met with *Ice*, into the which we ranne from thence to thicke, till we could goe no further back ward, nor forward: but so lay imbayed fourtene daies in worle *Ice*, then euer wee met to dole withall, for we had bene where there was greater flore, but it was not so broad vpon the water as this: for this floating *Ice* contained miles, and halfe miles in compass, where we had a deepe *Sea*, and a *Tide* of flood and ebbe, which let *North-west* and *South-east*. Heere *Robert Iust* would haue gone to the *North-west*, but *Robert Billet* was confident to goe through to the *North-east*, which he did. At last, being cleere of this *Ice*, he continued his course in sight of the *Easterne* shore, till hee raised foure *Islands* which lay *North* and *South*: but we passed them fixe or seuen leagues, the wind tooke vs so forth. Then wee stood backe to them againe, and came to an *Anchor* betweene two of the most *Northernmost*. We sent the *Boat* aboord, to see if there were any thing there to be had, but found nothing, but *cockle Grasse*, wherof they gathered flore, and so returned aboard. Before we came to this place, I might well see, that I was kept in the *Ship*: against *Henry Greene* minde, because I did not fauour their proceedings better then I did. Then hee began (very subtilly) to draw me to take vpon me to search for those things, which himselfe had stolne: and accused me of a matter no lesse then *Treason* amongst vs, that I had decuded the 40 company of *churche Cakes* of bread. Now they began to talke amongst themselves, that *England* was no safe place for them, and *Henry Greene* swore, the *Shippe* should not come into any place (but keepe the *Sea* still) till he had the *Kings* Majesties hand and *Scale* to shew for his life. They had many deuices in their heads, but *Henry Greene* in the end was their *Captaine*, and so called of them.

From these *Islands* we stood to the *North-east* and the *East* *Land* still in sight: we rayled those *Islands*, that our *Master* called *Rumme* *Islands*. Betweene these *Islands* and the shallow ground to the *East* of them, our *Master* went downe into the first *great Bay*. We kept the *East* shore still in our sight, and coming thwart of the low *Land*, we ranne on a *Rocke* that lay vnder water, and strooke but once; for if shee had, we might haue bene made *Inhabitants* of that place: but God sent vs soone off without any harme that wee saw. We continued our course and rayled *Land* a head of vs, which stretched out to the *North*: when they saw, they said plainly, that *Robert Billet* by his *Northenly* course had left the *Capes* to the *South*, and that they were best to seeke downe to the *South* in time for reliefe, before all was gone: for we had small flore left. But *Robert Billet* would follow the *Land* to the *North*, saying, that he hoped in

Thenames of
the company
expoied in this
Shallow,

L-1 fight of
the Shallow

Foure Islands

The wicked
see where
none perishes

The Carpen-
ter spared.

They bind the
Master.

The Carpen-
ter let goe.

God to find somewhat to releue vs that way, as soone as to the South. I told them that this Land was the Mayne of *Worsham* Cape, and that the shallow rockie grounds, was the fume that the Master went down by, when he went into the great Bay. *Robert* last and all said, it was not possible, vnlesse the Master had brought the ship ouer Land, and willed them to looke into the Masters Card, and their counte how well they did agree. We stood to the East, and left the mayne Land to the North, by many small lands into a narrow gut between two Lands, and there came to an Anchor. The Boat went ashore on the North side, where we found the great *Horne*, but nothing else. The next day wee went to the South side, but found nothing there, save Cockle grasse of which we gathered. This grasse was a great releue vnto vs, for without it, we should hardly haue got to the Capes for want of victuall. The wind furring we stood out, but before we could get cleane out, the wind came to the West, so that we were contrary-nd to anchor on the Nor. h. side.

The next day, wee weighed and doubled the point of the North Land, which is high Land, and so continueth to the Capes, lying North and South, some fise and twentie or thirte leagues. To the North we stood to see ffore of those Fowles that breed in the Capes, and to kill some with our shot, and to fetch them into the Boat. We raised the Capes with joy, and bare for them, and came to the Islands that lie in the mouth of the streight: but bearing in between the Rockie Iles, we ranne on a Rocke that lay vnder water, and there flucke fast eight or nine wound. It was ebbing water when we thus came on, so the flood set vs afloat, God guiding both wind and Sea, that it was calme, and faire weather: the ebbe came from the East, and the flood from the West. When wee were afloat, wee stood more neere to the East fshore, and there anchored.

The next day being the seuen and twentieth of July, we sent the Boat to fetch some Fowle, and the ship should way and stand as neere as they could: for the wind was against vs. They had a great way to row, and by that meanes they could not reach to the place where the Fowle bred: but found good store of *Gulls*, yet had to come by, on the Rocks and Cliffs, but with their Peeces they killed some thirte, and towards night returned. Now we had brought our ship more neere to the mouth of the Streights, and there came to an anchor in eighteen or twentie fathom water, vpon a Riffe or shelfe of ground: which after they had weighed their Anchor, and stood more neere to the place where the Fowle bred, they could not find it againe, nor place like it: but were faine to turne to and fro in the mouth of the Streight, and to be in danger of Rocks, because they could not find ground to let fall an Anchor in, the water was so deere.

The eight and twentieth day, the Boat went to *Diggs* his Cape for Fowle, and made directly for the place where the Fowle bred, and being neere, they saw seuen Boates come about the Easterne point towards them. When the Saugages saw our Boate, they drew them selves together, and drew their lesser Boats into their bigger: and when they had done, they came rowing to our Boat, and made signes to the Well, but they made readie for all assays. The Saugages came to them, and by signes grew familiar one with another, so as our men took one of theirs into our Boate, and they took one of ours into their Boate. Then they carried our man to a Coue where their Tents stood toward the West of the place, where the Fowle bred: so they carried him into their Tents, where he remained till our men returned with theirs. Our Boat went to the place where the Fowle bred, and were desirous to know how the Saugages killed their Fowle: he shewed them the manner how, which was thus. They take a long Pole with a snare at the end, which they put about the Fowles necke, and so plucke them downe. When our men knew that they had a better way of their owne, they shewed him the vfe of our Peeces, which at one shot would kill seuen or eight. To be forth, our Boat returned to their Coue for our man, and to deliuer theirs. When they came they made great joy, with dancing and leaping, and stroking of their breasts: they offered diuers things to our men, but they only took some Morice Teeth, which they gave them for a Knife, and two glass buttons: and so receiving our man they came aboard, much rejoicing at this chance, as if they had met with the most simple and kind people of the World.

And *Henry Greene* (more then the rest) was so confident, that (by no meanes) we should take care to stand vpon our Guard: God blinding him so, that where hee made reckoning to receive great matters from these people, he received more then he looked for, and that suddenly by being made a good example for all men: that make no conscience of doing euill, and that we take heed of the Saugage people, how simple soeuer they seeme to be.

The next day, the nine and twentieth of July, they made haste to be ashore, and because the ship rid too farr off, they weighed and stood as neere to the place where the Fowle bred, as they could: and because I was lame, I was to go in the Boat, to carrie such things, as I had in the Cabbin of euery thing somewhat: and so with more haste then good speed (and not without swearing) away we went, *Henry Greene*, *William Wilson*, *John Thomas*, *Michael Perfe*, *Andrew Mote*, and my selfe. When we came neere the fshore, the people were on the Hills, dancing and leaping: to the Coue we came, where they had drawne vp their Boates: we brought our Boate to the East side of the Coue, close to the Rocks. Ashore they went, and made fast the

Boat to a great stone on the fshore, the people came, and euery one had somewhat in his hand to barter: but *Henry Greene* swore they should haue nothing, till he had Venison, for that they had so promised him by signes.

Now when we came, they made signes to their Dogges (whereof there were many like Mongrels, as bigge as Hounds) and pointed to their Mountaine, and to the Sunne, clapping their hands. Then *Henry Greene*, *John Thomas*, and *William Wilson*, stood hard by the Boate head, *Michael Perfe*, and *Andrew Mote* were got vp vpon the Rocke, a gathering of Sorrell: not one of them had any weapon about him, not so much as a stick, save *Henry Greene* only, who had a piece of a Pike in his hand: nor saw I any thing that they had wherewith to hurt vs. *Henry Saugages* 10 *Greene* and *William Wilson* had Looking-glasses, and Lewes Trumps, and Bells, which they were chenc- shewing the people. The Saugages standing round about them, one of them came into the Boats head to me to shew me a Bottle: I made signes to him to get him ashore, but he made as though he had not vnderstood me, whereupon I stood vp, and pointed him ashore. In the meane time, another stole behind me to the fterne of the Boat, and when I saw the legge and foote of a man by mee, Wherefore I cast vp my head, and saw the Saugage with his Knife in his hand, who strooke at my breitt ouer my head: I cast vp my right arme to save my breitt, he wounded my arme, and strooke 20 me into the bodie vnder my right Pappe. He strooke a second blow which I met with my left hand, and then he strooke me into the right thigh, and had like to haue cut off my little finger of the left hand. Now, I had got hold of the string of the Knife, and had wound it about my left hand, he struing with both his hands, to make an end of that he had begonne, I found him but weake in the gripe (God enabling me) and getting hold of the fleewe of his left arme, I bore him from me. His left side lay bare to me, which when I saw, I put his fleewe off his left arme into my left hand, holding the string of the Knife fast in the same hand: and hauing got my right hand at libertie, I sought for somewhat wherewith to strike him (not remembering my Dagger at my side) but looking downe I saw it, and therewith strooke him into the bodie, and the throate.

Whiles I was thus assaulted in the Boat, our men were set vpon on the fshore. *John Thomas* 30 and *William Wilson* had their bowels cut, and *Michael Perfe* and *Henry Greene* being mortally wounded, came tumbling into the Boat together. When *Andrew Mote* saw this medley, hee came running downe the Rocks, and leaped into the Sea, and so swamme to the Boat, hanging on the fterne thereof, till *Michael Perfe* took him in, who manfully made good the head of the Boat against the Saugages, that pressed fore vpon vs. Now *Michael Perfe* had got an Hatchet, wherewith I saw him strike one of them, that he lay sprawling in the Sea. *Henry Greene* crieth 40 *Crucifix*, and layeth about him with his Truncheon: I cryed to them to cleere the Boat, and *Andrew Mote* cryed to bee taken in: the Saugages betooke them to their Bowes and Arrows, which they sent amongst vs, wherewith *Henry Greene* was slaine out-right, and *Michael Perfe* received many wounds, and so did the rest. *Michael Perfe* cleareth the Boate, and puts it from the fshore, and helpeth *Andrew Mote* in: but in turning of the Boat, I received a cruell wound in my backe with an Arrow: *Michael Perfe* and *Andrew Mote* rowed the Boate away, which when the Saugages saw, they ranne to their Boats, and I feared they would haue launched them, to haue followed vs, but they did not, and our ship was in the middle of the channell, and could not see vs.

Now, when they had rowed a good way from the fshore, *Michael Perfe* fainted, and could row no more: then was *Andrew Mote* druen to stand in the Boat head, and waite to the ship, which (at the first) flew vs not, and when they did, they could not tell what to make of vs, but in the end they stood for vs, and so took vs vp. *Henry Greene* was throwne out of the Boat into the Sea, and the rest were had aboard, the Saugage being yet alive, yet without sence. But they died all three 50 two dayes after, and then died. Thus you haue heard the Tragical end of *Henry Greene* and his mates, whom they called Captaine, these four being the only white men in all the ship.

The poore number that was left, were to ply our ship too and fro, in the mouth of the streight, for there was no place to anchor in neere hand: besides, they were to goe in the Boate to kill Fowle, to bring vs home, which they did, although with danger to vs all. For if the wind blew, there was an high Sea, and the eddies of the Tydes would carrie the ship to neere the Rocks, as it feared our Master, for so I will now call him. After they had killed some two hundred Fowle, with great labour on the South Cape, wee stood to the East: but when we were fise or seuen leagues from the Capes, the wind came ft from East. Then wee stood backe to the Capes againe, and killed an hundred Fowle more. After this, the wind came to the West, so wee were druen to goe away, and then our Master stood (for the most) along by the North fshore, till he fell into broken ground about the *Queenes Fort-Land*, and there anchored. From thence we went to 60 *Gods Mercus*, and from thence to those Islands, which lye in the mouth of our Streight, not seeing the Land, till we were ready to runne our Boatsprits against the Rocks in a fogge. But it cleered a little, and then we might see our selues inclosed with Rockie Lands, and could find no ground

Cockle grasse.

A Rocke.

Note.

July 17.

Saugages.

Saugages war-
ant of fowling.Greene confi-
dence.Trecherie iust
toss.

Greene faints.

Wicked and
wretched end
of wicked men.

Boat

Misery pur-
ethetheth.

ground to anchor in. There our Master lay arie all night, and the next day the fogge continuing, they fought for ground to anchor in, and found some in an hundred and odder fathomes of water. The next day we weighed and stood to the East, but before we came here, we had put our felues to hard allowance, as halfe a fould a day with the portage: for yet we had some meale left, and nothing else. Then they began to make triall of all whatsoeuer: we had slayed our Fowle, for they wil not pull: and *Robert Iuet* was the first, that made vie of the skins by burning of the Feathers: so they became a great dish of meate, and as for the garbidge, it was not throune away.

After we were cleere of these Ilands, which lie out with two points, one to the South-east, and the other to the North, making a Bay to the right as if there were no way through, we continued our courie East South-east, and South and by East, to raise the *Disstitutions*; from thence to escape our courie for *Ireland*. Thus we continued diuers dayes; but the wind comming against vs, made vs to alter our courie, and by the means of *Robert Iuet* who perswaded the company, that they should find great reliefe in *Newfoundland*, if our Country-men were there, and if they were gone before we came, yet should we find great store of bread and fish left ashore by them; but how true, I give God thanks, we did not trie. Yet we stood to the South-west, and then a West, almost to Riffe (seven degrees) when (by the will of God) the wind came vp at South-west. Then the Master asked me, if he should take the benefit of this wind, and shap his courie for *Ireland*. I said it was best to goe, where we knew Come grew, and not to seek it, where it was cast away, and not be found. Towards *Ireland* now we stood, with prosperous winds for many dayes together: then was all our Meale spent, and our Fowle restie and dry: but (being no remedie) we were content with the Salt broth for Dinner, and the halfe Fowle for Supper. Now went our Candles to wracke, and *Bennet* our Cooke made a messe of meate of the bones of the Fowle, frying them with Candle-grease, till they were cripe, and with Vineger put to them, made a good dish of meate. Our Vineger was shured, and to euery man a pound of Candles deliuered for a weeke, as a great daintie. Now *Robert Iuet* (by his reckoning) faith, we were within fixtie or seuentie leagues of *Ireland*, when we had two hundred thither. And sure our courie was so much the longer, through our euill steretiege: for, our men became so weak, that they could not stand at the Helme, but were faine to sit.

Then *Robert Iuet* dyed, for mere want, and all our men were in despair, and said we were 30 past *Ireland*, and our last Fowle were in the steep-butt. So our men cared not which end went forward, inso much as our Master was driuen to looke to their labour, as well as his owne: for some of them would sit and see the fore-fayle, or mayne-fayle tie vp to the tops, the theetes being either flowne or broken, and would not helpe it themselves, nor call to others for helpe, much grieved the Master. Now in this extremitie it pleased God to giue vs sight of Land, not farre from the place, our Master said he would fall wietie, which was the Bay of *Galloway*, and we fell to the West of the *Dorset*, and so stood along by the coast, to the South-west. In the end, there was a ioyful cry, a layle, a layle, towards which they stood, then they saw more, but to the nereest we stood, and called to him: his Barke was of *Fowly*, and wasst anchor a Fishing: he came to vs, and brought vs into *Bere Haugen*. Here we stayed a few dayes, and delt with the *Irish*, to supply our wants, but found no reliefe: for in this place there was neither Bread, Drinke, nor money to be had amongst them. Wherefore they aduised vs to deale with our Country-men, who were there a fishing, which we did; but found them so cold in kinde, that they would doe nothing without a present money, whereof we had none in the Ship. In the end, we procured one *Iohn Weymouth*, Master of the Barke that brought vs into this Harbour, to furnish vs with money, which hee did, and received our best Cable and Anchor in pawning for the same. With this money, our Master with the helpe of *Iohn Weymouth*, bought Bread, Berre, and Beefe.

Now, as we were beholding to *Weymouth* for his money, so were we to one Captaine *Taylor*, for making of our contracts with *Weymouth*, by whose meanes hee took a Bill for our Cable and Anchor, and for the mens Wages, who would not goe with vs, vnlesse *Weymouth* would paffe y^s his word for the same: for they made shew, that they were not willing to goe with vs for any wages. Whereupon Captaine *Taylor* swore hee would presse them, and then, if they would not goe, hee would hang them.

In conclusion, we agreed for three pound ten shillings a man, to bring our Ship to *Plimouth*, or *Dartmouth*, and to giue the Pilot five pound: but if the winde did not serue, but they were driuen to put into *Brifton*, they were to haue foure pound ten shillings a man, and the Pilot sixe pound. Omitting therefore further circumstances, from *Bere Haugen* we came to *Plimouth*, and so to an anchor, before the Castle: and from *Plimouth*, with faire wind and weather went without stop or stay, we came to the *Dowries*, from thence to *Grampden*, where most of our men *Robert Iuet* came aboard, and so had mee vp to *London* with him, and so wee came to Sir *Thomas Smith* together.

Forasmuch as this report of *Pricket* may happily bee suspected by some, as not so friendly to *Hullion*, who returned with that Company which had so cruelly exposed *Hullion* and his, and therefore may seeme

They arrive at
Plimouth.

to lay because imputation, and rip on occasion: further then they will beleene; I haue also added the report of *Thomas Widhoufe*, one of the exposed Company, who ascribeth those occasions of discord to Iuet. I take not on mee to sentence, no not to examine; I haue presented the Evidence with as I had it: let the Bench censure, hearing with both eares; that which with both eyes they may see in those, and these notes; to which, I haue first prefixed my Letter to *Master Samuel Machiam*.

After *Machiam*, I heartily commend mee vnto you, &c. I can write vnto you no newes, though I haue seene much, but such as euery English Fisherman banning these Costs can report better to you my selfe.

We kept our whie Sunday in the North-east end of *Iland*; and I think I neuer fared better in *England* then we fasted there. They of the Country are very good, and live miserably: yet we found there in store of fresh Fish and daintie Fowle. I my selfe in an after-noon killed so much Fowle, as feeded all pooten. Our Comp was, being three and twentie persons at one time, onely with Partridges; besides *Carloe*, *Plas*, our *Mallard*, *Teale*, and *Goose*. I haue seene two hot Barbes in *Iland*, and haue bene in one of them. We are resolu'd to trie the vntermost, and lyce onely expecting a faire winde, and to refresh our felues to auoid the ice, which now is come off the West Coast, of which we haue seene whole *Ilands*; but God bee thanked, haue not bene in danger of any. Thus I desire all your prayer: for vs. From *Iland* this thirtieth of May, 1610.

The crueltie
of their stay at
Iland.

A note found in the Deske of *Thomas Wydowne*, Student in the Mathematickes, hee being one of them who was put into the Shallop.

The tenth day of September, 1610, after dinner, our Master called all the Company together, to heare and beare witness of the abuse of some of the Company (in heaving beene the request of *Robert Iuet*) that the Master should redresse some abuses and slanders; as hee called them, against this Iuet: which thing after the Master had examined and heard with equitie what hee could say for himselfe, there were produced so many and great abuses, and numerous matters against the Master, and against Iuet, that there was danger to haue suffered them longer: and it was fit time to punish and cut off further occasions of the like mutinies.

It was proposed to his face, first with *Bennet Mathewe* our Trumpet upon our first sight of *Iland*, and hee confest, that hee supposed that in the action would be man-slaughter, and proue bloudie to some. Secondly, at our coming from *Iland*, in heaving of the Company, hee had threatened to turne the head of the Ship home from the action, which at that time was by our Master wisely pacified, hoping of amendment.

Thirdly, it was depofed by *Philip Staffe* our Carpenter, and *Ladie Arnold*, to his face upon the body Bible, that hee perswaded them to keepe *Manikes* charged, and Swords ready in their Cabbins, for they should bee charged with murder the next morning.

Fourthly, we being suffered in the Ice, hee had used words tending to mutinie, discouragement, and slander of the action, which easily took effect in that that we were in danger; and had not the Master in time presented, it might easily haue overborne the Voyage: and our lastely being enclosed in a deepe Bay, which the Master had desire to see, for some reason to himselfe knowne, his word tended altogether to put the Company into a fray of extremitie, by wintering in cold: lesing at our Masters hope to see *Bancum* by Candlemasse.

For these and diuers other base slanders against the Master, hee was depofed; and *Robert Bylot*, who had shewed himselfe honestly respecting the good of the action, was placed in his stead the Masters Mate.

Also *Francis Clement* the Boatman, at this time was put from his Office, and *William Wilson*, a man thought more fit, preferred to his place. This man had basely carryed himselfe to our Master and to the action.

Also *Adrian Mooter* was appointed Boatmans mate: and a promise by the Master, that from this day Iuats wages should remaine to *Bylot*, and the Boatmans overplus of wages should bee equally diuided betwene *Wilson* and one *Iohn King*, to the owners good liking, one of the *Quartermasters*, who had very well carryed themselves to the furtherance of the businesse.

Also the Master promised, if the Offenders yet behaued themselves beneuolently honestly, hee would be a means for their good, and that hee would forgiue injuries, with other adiudgements.

These things thus premised counselling *Hudsons* expoling, and Gods iust iudgements on the Expolers, as *Prophet* hath related (whom they referred as it thought, in hope by Sir *Dudley Digges* his Master to procure their pardon at their returne) I thought good to adde that wherein I haue further received from good Intelligence, that the Ship comming aground at *Digges* *Iland*, in 52. degrees 44. minutes, a great flood came from the West and set them on floate: an argument of an open passage from the South Sea to that, and consequently to these Seas. The Weapons and

Atts

Arts which they saw, beyond those of other Sauges are arguments hereof. Hee which shafted *Pricket* in the Boate, had a weapon broad and sharpe indented of bright Steele (such they vie in *Isna*) riveted into a handle of Morle tooth,

CHAP. XVIII.

The Discoveries of M. M. NICOLO, and ANTONIO ZENI, gathered out of their Letters, by FRANCISCO MARCOLINO: whereto is added QVIRINO his Ship-wrecke.

They are related by Master Harpail, in his 3. vol pag 121.

Frisland.



In the yeere 1380. Master *Nicolo Zeno* being wealthy, and of a haughtie spirit, desiring to see the fashions of the world, built and furnished a Ship at his owne charges, and passing the Straits of *Gibraltar*, held on his course Northwards, with intent to see *England* and *Flanders*. But a violent tempest assailing him at Sea, hee was carried he knew not whither, till at last his Ship was carried away upon the Ile of *Frisland*; where the men and most part of the goods were saved, like *Nephturs*, hungry geese, or, on his safe and blacke Guard, let upon the men whom the Seas had spared: but here also they found a second escape, by means of a Prince named *Zichmui*, Prince of that and many Ilands thereabout: who being nere hand with his Armie, came at the out-cree, and chasing away the people, tooke them into protection.

This *Zichmui* had the yeere before given the overture to the King of *Norway*, and was a great adventurer in feates of Armes. He spake to them in *Latine*, and placed them in his Naue, wherewith hee wonne diuers Ilands. *Nicolo* behaued himselfe so well, both in fauing the Fleet by his Sea-skill, and in conquest of the Ilands by his valour, that *Zichmui* made him Knight and Captaine of his Naue.

Saint Thomas Monasterie in Groenland. Hise Spring and hie strange effects thereof.

After diuers notable exploits, *Nicolo* armed three Barkes, with which hee arrived in *Groenland*: where hee found a Monasterie of Friers of the *Preachers* Order, and a Church dedicated to *Saint Thomas*, hard by a Hill, that casteth out fire like *Vesunius* and *Aetna*. There is a Fontaine of hot water, with which they heate the Church of the Monasterie, and the Friers chambers. 30 And putting their Breed into brasse Pots without any water, it doth bake as it were in an Oven. They haue also small Gardens, which are couered out in the Winter time, and being watered with this water, are defended from the violence of the Frost and cold, and bring forth Flowers in their due seasons. The common people assiduously with these strange effects, conceiue highly of those Friers, and bring them presents of Fish and other things. They with this Water, in the extremitie of the cold, heate their Chambers, which also (as the other buildings of the Monasterie) are framed of those burning stones, which the mouth of the Hill casts forth. They cast water on some of them, whereby they are dissolved, and become excellent white Lime, and so tough, that being contriued in building, it lasteth for euer. The rest, after the fire is out, serue in stead of stones to make walls and vaults, and will not dissolve or breake, except with some Iron tooke.

Their Winter lasteth nine moneths: and yet there is a faire Hauen, where this water falleth into the Sea, not frozen: by means whereof there is great resort of wild Fowle and Fish, which they take in infinite multitudes. The Fishers Boates are made like to a Weauers shuttle, of the skines of Fishes, fastened with the bones of the same Fishes, and being fowed together with many doubles, they are so strong, that in foule weather they will shut themselves within the same, not fearing the force either of Sea or winde. Neither can the hard-hearted Rockes breake these yielding Vessels. They haue also as it were a Sledge in the botome thereof, by which with 50 a subtil deuce, they conuey the water forth, that soaketh into them. The moit of these Friers spake the *Latine* tongue.

Effotiland.

A little after this, *Nicolo* returned and dyed in *Frisland*, whither his brother *Antonio* had before resorted to him, and now succeeded both in his goods and honour; whom *Zichmui* employd in the Expedition: 40 *Effotiland*: which happened upon this occasion. Sixe and twentie yeeres before, foure Fisher-Boates were apprehended at Sea by a mightie and tedious storme; wherewith after many dayes, they were brought to *Effotiland*, about a thousand miles West from *Frisland*: upon which, one of the Boates was cast away, and sixe men that were in it, were taken and brought to a populous Citie; where one that spake *Latine*, and had been cast by chance upon that Land, in the name of the King asked them what Country-men they were; and vnderstanding their case, hee acquainted the King therewith. They dwelt there hie yeeres, and found it once an Iland very rich, being little less than *Island*, but farre more fruitful. One of them said, see how *Latine* bookes in the Kings Librarie, which they at this present doe not vnder- stand,

stand. They haue a peculiar Language, and Letters or Characters to themselves. They haue mines of Gold and other Mettals, and haue Trade with *Engroenland*. They sow Corne, and make Beere and Ale. They build Barkes (but know not the vie of the Compasse) and haue many Cities and Castles. The King sent these Fisher-men with twelve Barkes Southwards, to a Country which they call *Drogio*: in which Voyage escaping dreadful tempests at Sea, they encountered with *Canibals* at Land, which deuoured many of them. These Fishers shewing them the manner of taking Fish with Nets, etaped: and for the presents which they made of their Fish to the chiefe men of the Country, were beloued and honoured. One of these (more expert in semeth then the rest) was holden in such account, that a great Lord made warre with their Lord 30 to obaine him: and so prauented, that he and his companie were sent vnto him. And in this order was he sent to the and *Quirino* Lord, which had warred one with another to get him, in thirteene yeeres space: wherby hee came to know almost all the secrets; which, he said, was a great Country, and (as it were) a new World. The people are all rude, and whole of goodnesse: they goe naked, neither haue they wit to couer their bodies with the Beasts skines, which they take in Hunting, from the vehement cold. They are ferre; and cate their enemies, hauing diuers Lawes and Customes. Their liuing is by hunting:

Further to the South-west, they are more quill, and have a more temperate ayre: They haue 20 Cities and Temples dedicated to Idols, where they sacrifice Men, and after eate them; and haue also some vie of Gold and Silver.

Hee fledde away secretly, and conueying himselfe from one Lord to another, came at length to *Drogio*, where hee dwelt three yeeres. After this time finding there certaine Boates of *Effotiland*, hee went thither with them: and growing there very rich, furnished a Barke of his owne, and returned into *Frisland*: where hee made report vnto his Lord of that wealthy Country. *Zichmui* prepared to send thither: but three dayes before they set forth, this Fisherman dyed. Yet taking leave of the Mariners which came with him in his fleet, they prosecuted the Voyage and encounter after many an Iland: where ten names of diuers Languages, were brought to mind, of which they could vnderstand none, but one of *Island*. He told them, that the Iland was called *Icaria*, and the Knights thereof called *Loars*, defended of the ancient pedigree of *Dedalus*, King of *Senti*, who conquering that Iland, left his Sonne there for King, and left them those Lawes, which to that present they retained. And, that they might keep their Lawes inviolate, they would receive no Stranger. Oneley they were contented to receive 30 one of our men, in regard of the Language, as they had done those ten Interpreters.

Zichmui saying hence, in foure dayes desired Land, where they found abundance of Fowle, and Birds egges, for their refreshing. The Hauen they called *Cap Twu*. There was a Hill, which burning, cast out smoke: where was a Spring, from which issued a certayne water like Pitch, which ranne into the Sea. The people of small stature, wilde, and fearefull, hid themselves in Caves. *Zichmui* built there a Citie, and determining to inhabit, sent *Antonio* backe againe, with the most of his people to *Frisland*.

This Historie I haue thus inserted at large, which perhaps, not without cause in some things, 40 may seeme fabulous: not in the *Zeni*, which thus writ, but in the relations which they receiued from others. Howsoeuer, the best Geographers are beholden to these Brethren, for the first knowledge they haue of these parts; of which none before had written: nor since haue there beene any great in-land Discoutries.

The Ship-wrecke of Master PIERO QVIRINO, described by CHRISTOFORO FIORAVANTI, and NICOLO DI MICHEL *, who were present there: beere contracted.

It seemeth to bee a conuenient dutie to make a memoriall, and not suffer to bee buried in oblivion, that most lamentable, and cruell Voyage full of innumerable and extreme miseries, which befell a *Venetian* Ship, wherein were carryed about fouen hundred Buttes of Wine, Spices, Cottons, and other Merchandies of great value, furnished in *Candia* with threescore and eight men, to goe towards the * West. The Master whereof was Master *Piero Quirino*, a *Venetian* Gentleman, in the year 1431. Who after many troubles *, misfortunes, and wants befell him, after his departure from *Candia* towards the West, on the fixth of Nouember, in the fore- 60 late yeere of the Lord, by chance came into the mouth of the Channels of *Flanders*, and went farre beyond them, by a storme from the South, towards the North-west, about one hundred and ffortie miles, running till vpon the Iland of *Isenti*, where, by agreement, were *Christoforo Fiorauanti*, and *Nicolo Michiel*, say, that at none were founded the botome of the ocean, and these parts the Ponore or West. * These are particularly related by *Quirino* the Paron or Owner. They left their Rods on a Rocke, not farre from *Gales in Spales*, and were faine to make thither to repaire it: and other dist. is followed, Sea

Drogio.

Abrah. Oriell. Clavio. Hist. 1603. Ant. Magnum. Hendrix, &c.

* There is also the relation heretofore *Quirino* himselfe, extant together with this in *Ant. Oriell. Tom. 3.* Out of which I haue beere added diuers annotations. * The *Italians* call the lying into the Mediterranean Sea, the *Leuantore* East: and the *Spanis* thence into the *Spanis* Ocean.

thing. And afterward they brought a great quantitie thereof vnto vs, who remayned in the Pinnaffe, to defend it from the beating of the Sea, of the which wee also with great greedinesse, received without measure.

And running according to our iudgement, as wee had runne in this Pinnaffe for eightene dayes, from the day that wee departed from the ship, vntill this sixth of Ianuarie, sayling alwayes betweene the North-east and the East, and not with lesse winde then after sixe miles an houre, wee had runne about two thousand five hundred miles and more, without euer seeing any Land.

On the sixth of Ianuarie, at the time of the solemne day of the Epiphany, nineteene of vs went on land in this desolate and drie place, called the Island of the *Saints*, in the Coast of *Norway*, subiect to the Crowne of *Denmarke*, leauing two other to looke to the weakie Pinnaffe, that might not bee broken with the beating of the Sea. And being landed there by means of an Oare, we endeauoured to kindle fire, and with a tynder boxe and Steele to strike fire, we retired our selues into the closest place from the winde, and at the sight of the fire, nature thereby renewed a little strength.

Findeing this Land not inhabited, and seeking to goe in the Pinnaffe to another Island five miles off, they looked, that part of vs landing, as it were all in the water, and some of vs vp to the middle in shallow water, were faine to draw her on land, and despairing to bee cure able to goe in her againe, wee determined to sit her in such sort, that there might ferre our turne to come vs, after the best manner that wee could. Wee broke her into two parts: and of the greater we made a shelter, or Cottage for thirteene of vs, and of the lesser a shelter, capable of five men, vnder the which wee entred couering them with part of our sayles, and with the rest, and the cordage of the sayd Pinnaffe, we made continuall fire to preserve our liues.

Now being vterly destitute of all sustenance of meate and drinke, wee went wandering vp on the Sea shoare, where Nature gaue vs food to maintayne life, with ceruine Periwinkles, or Shel-fish and Batracles. And of these, not as many nor when wee would, but in very small quantitie. And removing the Snow in some places, we found a certayne Herbe, which together with the Snow wee cast into the Caldron, and when wee thought it was boyled, wee ate it. Nor could wee satisfie our selues therewith, and thus wee lived for thirteene dayes together, with small charitie amongst vs, by reason of the great faurie of all things and extreme famine, leading rather a brutish life, then the life of men.

Continuing in this rude and homely kinde of life, it happened, that through the intollerable wants foue of our companions at the greater retiring place, failed euen where the afflicted Master was, with those remedies and slender comforts for their soules and bodies: so that you may thinke their bodies remaying greene vnto vs, who being very weakie had lost all our strength, wee were not able to remoue them two yardes out of sight: and yet I will say more, that wee had no sooner taken the frozen or swame water in our mouths, but presently Nature of it selfe cast it vp againe, wee were not being able to abstaine from it, nor almost to stand on our feete.

The cold season of the yeere had brought vs to such necessitie, that (to warme vs) wee stood close thronged, in such sort, that wee seemed (as it were) to bee sowed together. Wherefore entered vnder the sayles, which couered both our Cottages round aboute downe to the ground, the smoke not being able to issue forth, which proceeded (as I thinke) from the Pitch which was within certaine peeces of the Pinnaffe, which wee burned, so that our eyes were inuolue that wee could not see: neuerthelesse wee endured all, that wee might bee warme. And our garments which wee neuer put off, were full of vermine, and the Lice swarmed in such number, that taking them from our backs, wee cast them by whole handfulls into the fire, and they had entred into the flesh in such manner through the skine, euen to the bones, that finally they brought a young man of our company (that was a Notarie) euen vnto death, so that hee was neuer able to defend himselfe from so loathsome a little vermine. A thing of most manifest example, to abate and abate our pride, and taughtnesse of minde.

Now concord sayling among vs, every one vied his owne proper aduise, whereupon part of our companie wandering through the Sturge and vs-inhabited place, came to the knowledge of a solitarie and ancient searing place made by the Shepherds heretofore, for the time of their abode, and it was feated on the highest part of the Coast of the sayd Island towards the West, distant from ours about a mile and a halfe. Vnto the which, fixe of the companie of the number of those eight, which were found in that first and greater retiring place, determined to remoue themselves to that new-found solitarie habitation, for their lesse inconuenience leauing the other two, their other companions alone, in an abandoned and forsaken place, as well because they were not able to dwell, as also for that wee were altogether vnable to conduct them.

It came to passe, that those three through the gracious goodnesse and gift of God, found an exceeding great Fish, to the which I know not what name to giue, whether a Whale, or Fox

They goe on Land.

Island of *Saints* or *Saints*, being off the coast of *Norway*. See *Orbita* his Map of *Scandia*: then

glutted *Saints* and *Ruines* in 74 degrees, but too Northern.

lythen they use from the North Cape, from which this Rocks

(*Saints* *Ruines*) bare *Wich* ward 70. milles other Rocks:

not farre distant, some inhabited (some not. This is of *Ruines* three miles in compass, and called in their

Language for the extreme remotenesse, *The effect of the Wind*.

Foure dayes and others dist:

Great weaknesse.

Miserable cold

Abundance of Lice.

They find a Fish.

perle of the Sea, which wee are to thinke was sent from the Diuine and excellent bountie to feed vs. And considering that wee saw it cast vp by the Sea vpon the shoare, dead, fresh, good and great, and at the time of our great necessitie, we rendered thanks vnto our most gracious Lord God, who at that time would fufillaye our fo weakie and desolated bodies, with that foode, appaied praduature through the prayers of some vigilant and deuout soule.

With this Fish, wee fedde our selues for nine dayes sufficiently. And as it happened, those very nine dayes we temp-floous with windes, rayne and snow, that by no means the small storme would haue sufficed vs to goe one pace out of our Cottage.

The miraculous Fish being spent, the furious tempest was somewhat asswaged, wherefore not hauing wherewith to maintayne life, like Volutes that oppressed with famine, goe to seeke out other places of abode, wee arose out of the Cottage, and went wandering through the desert Rocks to finde any succour to fufillaye our life with Periwinkles of the Sea and Barnacles; with the which wee were of necessitie to bee contented, although they were very little things, and so wee maintayned our selues vntill the last of Ianuary, 1431: and theretoe wee were leane, pale, afflicted, and but halfe aliue. In which time wee finding certayne dung of Oxen scorched and dried with the cold and winde, (whereof wee gathered euery day to make a fire) wee certainly knew that place to bee frequented by Oxen: which thing gaue vs alured hope of some good end, and through this perliuion wee indulged part of our grieuous cares and sorrowes.

In the end the houre came, wherein our benigne Creator and most gracious Lord, purposed to conduct his little focke to much afflicted, into the Haue of their salte: and it was in this manner. Two young Heifers of a Fisher-man nere vnto this Island within five miles, being strayed the former yeere from the place where they hope to finde them againe, on the very first day of February, 1431. at night, one of the Sonnes of the said Fisher-man of *Ruftene* (for so the said Island was called) being of the age of sixteen yeeres, dreamed that certainly the two Heifers were eloped, and gone vp to the Island of *Saints* distant from them, where wee were lodged, at the point of the West part, vpon the which no man durst euer goe at the low water. Whereupon the Sonne who had such a vision or dreame, prayed the Father, and an elder Brother of his, that they would accompany him to goe to seeke them.

And fo, all three in a Fisher-boate tooke their way towards the sayd Island, and came to the point where wee were, and the fynd young men landing, there, leit their Father to looke to the Boate, and hauing ascended a little vpon the Cliffe, they law a smoke arise in the ayre, from their retiring place which they had formerly vied. Whereupon through faie and astonishment they marvelled, and that not a little, how, whence, and by what means it might come to passe. Wherefore, they stood a long time much amazed. And desiring to know the cause, they began to talke one with another. And although wee perceived the noyse, and heard the voyce; yet wee could not conieure whence it should bee, but rather iudged it to bee the crying of Crowes, then the voyces of men. And wee were the rather induced thereto, because some few dayes before, wee had seene (vpon the miserable Carcaffes of our eight companions cast to the winde) multitudes of Crowes, that rent the ayre with their creaking, feeling themselves vpon them: whereupon wee thought it could bee no other.

But continuing from good to better, the voyces of the children of God sent to fue vs, wee cleerly perceived that they were the voyces of Men, and not the crying of Fowles. And at that instant *Christophorus Esrauanis* arose out of the Cottage, and seeing the two young striplings, crying with a loude voyce came towards vs, saying, Reioyce, behold two come to seeke vs. Whereupon, inflamed with an earnest desire, wee rayied our selues on our feete, goeing rather with the heart then with the feete, and drawing neere vnto them, wee pursued them through the fudden and extreme strangenesse of the matter, they were pursued, and their countenances began to waxe pale. But contrariwise wee cheered our selues, and being comforted with an assured hope, they were vnto us. Diuers thoughts came in our minde, whether wee should detain one of them or both, or whether one or two of vs should goe with them. The first determination was against vs, because wee knew not with whom, nor with how many wee had to doe, for that wee vnderstood not them, nor they vs.

But being aduised by the holy Ghost, wee went downe to their Boate, in the best and most amiable manner that wee could, where the Father was, who expected them: and when he law vs, hee also remayned astonished and amazed. In this meanie space, wee looked whether there were any thing in their Boate to succour our necessities, to maintayne life: but wee found nothing there. So, they moued through pitie, seeing vs afflicted, by signes and actions which wee made vnto them, were contented to carrie with them *Gibrardo de Leone*, a Sewer, and *Cole di Otranto*, a Marriner, who had some knowledge, and were able to speake the *French* and the *high Dutch*, leauing vs in great hope of present salte and helpe.

But being aduised by the holy Ghost, wee went downe to their Boate, in the best and most amiable manner that wee could, where the Father was, who expected them: and when he law vs, hee also remayned astonished and amazed. In this meanie space, wee looked whether there were any thing in their Boate to succour our necessities, to maintayne life: but wee found nothing there. So, they moued through pitie, seeing vs afflicted, by signes and actions which wee made vnto them, were contented to carrie with them *Gibrardo de Leone*, a Sewer, and *Cole di Otranto*, a Marriner, who had some knowledge, and were able to speake the *French* and the *high Dutch*, leauing vs in great hope of present salte and helpe.

1431. Feb. 14. raines account.

Isle of *Ruftene*.

Their

A Germane
Priest.

Their Boate comming to *Ruffene* with our two companions, all the people flocked together, and seeing the countenance and habite of our companions, astonied at so great and strange a matter, they demanded among themselves, whence, & how such like fellows as these appeared, to speake vnto them in diuers Languages, but in the end an *Almaine* Priest of the Order of the were certified what we were, from whence, and how we had arriued there. The which mother of Christ, the said Priest published to all the people of *Ruffene* dedicated to the glorious through our misfortune, they would be moued to pitie and to helpe vs, according to their abilitie.

In this meane space, through the Catholike remembrance of the *Almaine* Priest, on the third day of February, 1431. at the very instant of the day of *Saint Blasius*, the courteous and pittifull Inhabitants of *Ruffene* came vnto vs with great plenty of all sustenance, which they vfe for their propitiation, to feed vs and preferre vs, being desirous to conduct vs to their kinde habitations, to refresh our weak bodies. And so we were guided and receiued into *Ruffene* vpon the sayd day, where we had great reffortations, which were rather hurtfull for vs, through the exceeding a stomackes not being able to indure it, it made our hearts to grieve, so that we thought we should haue dyed.

There were remaining in the first and greater of our two retiring places, two of the companies which were impotent and weak, who knew nothing of this our miraculous succour. Wherefore, foregiving their Catholike Country people notice of them, and likewise of the other eight ing *Palmes* and Hymnes, as well to burie those eight that were dead, as to conduct to the House of safetye the two that were remaining behinde, and arriuing at the Island of *Saints*, they performed a worke of mercy to the eight that were dead, to the which number, one of the two remaining was added, whom they found dead. Now imagine, how the other could continue being deprived of companie and all humane sustenance, and yet hee was brought to *Ruffene* with some little shew of life, where, at the end of two dayes he departed this transitorie life.

Eleuen of vs being come to *Ruffene*, wee landed and went into the house of our Guide, Host, and Lord, as hee and the rest desired, wherinto our most prudent Master, Master *Piero Quirino* entering, vining his wisdom and discretion, performed an action of exceeding great humilitie, as that hee would acknowledge her to be the Mistresse of the house, hee cast himselfe downe at her feet: but she refused and lifted him vp from the ground, embracing him and bringing him to the fire, and with her owne hand gaue him somewhat to eate.

Ruffene descri-
bed.

In this Island there are twelue little Houses, with about one hundred and twentie persons, for the most part Fishermen, and they are by nature indued with vnderstanding to know how for make Boates, Buckets, Tunnes, Baskets, Nets of all sorts, and euery other thing necessarie for their life and trade. And they are very curious one toward another and seruiciable, desirous to please rather for loue, then for hope of any gift or good turne to be done them againe. Fishes called Stock-fish, in all their payments and bartering are used in stead of coyned money, and they are all as it were of one bignesse and measure, of the which euery yere they drie an infinite number in the winde: and in the time of May fraight themselves with them, carrying them through the Realmes of *Denmarke*, that is to say, *Sweden*, *Denmarke*, and *Norway*, being all Subiect to the King of *Dacia*: where they barter and exchange the said Fish, for Leather, Cloathes, Iron, Pulse and other things, whereof they haue scarcitie.

Stock-fish in
stead of money.

Few other things for maintenance of life are found there, except Fish, yet at certaine times they haue some small quantitie of Beefe, and Milke of Kine, of the which, with Rice, and Milke, displasing vnto them, who haue not bene accustomed therunto. They vfe also Ale, that is to say, Wine drawne out of Rice. Wee eate of the Place or Halibut fish, which are exceeding great, so that you would not beleue it. Wee eate of the Place or Halibut fish, which are exceeding great of the common *Venetian* measure, about two foote broad vpon the Chaffe, and more then three quarters of a foote in thicknesse: a wonderfull thing to bee spoken. They cloath the men with redde Hides, and likewise blacke, able to defend them from the water, and they vfe cloathes very course, of azure, redde, and blacke-colour, brought from *Denmarke*, of small price and estimation.

Sinceritie.

These Country people vfe much to frequent the Church, because they are very deuout, and yeeld great reuerence to the worship and seruice of God. Aurice, is as it were altogether extinguished, for they vnderstand not in any sort, nor know not what thing of another are become theirs, but by barter: and therefore they vfe not to locke Doore, House, nor Windowes,

dowes, nor any Chest for feare to bee robbed, but only by reason of the wilde Beasts.

The Inhabitants of this place both young and old, are of so great simplicitie of heart, and obedient to the Commandement of God, that they neither vnderstand know, nor imagine in any wife, what Fornication, or Adulterie may bee: but vfe Marriage according to Gods Commandement. And to giue you a true proofe hereof I *Christopher* say, that we were in the house of our forefild Host, and slept in one and the same Cottage, where hee also and his Wife slept, and successively in one Bed neere adioyning, were their Daughters and Sonnes of twage together, neere to the which Beds we also slept, almost close adioyning to them: so that when they would to sleepe, or when they arose, or when they dripped themselves naked, and were in any manner, we iudiciously saw one and the other, and yet without that puritie, as if wee had bene little children. But I will tell you more, that for two dayes together, our said Host, with his elder Sonnes arose to goe to fishing, even at the time of the most defaughtfull hoore of sleape, leaving his Wife and Daughters in the Bed, with that securitie and puritie, as if he had properly left them in the armes and embracements of the Mother, not returning to his home in less time then the space of eight hoours.

The Inhabitants of this land, especially the elder sort, are found so vnited in their wills to the will of God, that in euery casualtye of naturall death, which befalleth Father, Mother, Husband, Wife, Children, or whatsoever other Kinsman, or Friend, when the hoore of their passage vnto another life appeareth, presently without any griefe of heart and complaining, they assemble themselves together vnto the Cathedrall Church, to thanke and praye the Heavenly Creator, who hath permitted such an one to liue so many yeeres, and at that present, as his creature vouchsafed to call him, or her into his gracious fauour, and neere vnto him: and at the appointed hoore they came then to be washed cleane, to haue them pure and caste, as if they were borne. Whereupon rejoycing and contenting themselves with his infallible will and pleasure, they giue him prayse and glorie, not shewing any passion either in words or gestures, as if properly they had but slept. Surely we may say, that from the third of February 1431, vntill the fourth of May 1432, which amounteth to an hundred dayes and one, we were within the circuit of *Paradise*, to the reproch and shame of the Countreies of *Italie*.

There at the beginning of May we saw great varietie and alteration. First, their women vfe to goe vnto the Bathes, which are very neere and commodious, as well for puritie, as for the custome they obserue, which they hold agreeable vnto Nature: they vfe to come forth of their houses stark naked, as they came out of their Mothers wombe, going without any regard to their way, carrying only in their right hand an heape of grasse, in manner of a broome, as they say, to rub the sweat from their backs, and the selfe hand they hold vpon their hips, I spreading it as it were for a shadow to couer their hinder parts, that they should not much appeare: where hauing twice sceme them, we passed away by them, as easily as their owne people, the Country was so cold, and the continual fering of them, that it caused vs to make no account thereof. On the contrary part, these very women were fene on the Sunday to enter into the Church in long and comely Garments. And that they might not by any means be seen in the face, they wear 40 on their head a thing like a compleat Morion with a Gorget, which hath an hole to fee through at the end, like the hole of a Pipe, through the which they behold within that, no further off from their eyes then the hole is long, so that they seeme to haue it in their mouths to pipe: and worse then that, they can neither see nor speake, vntill they turne themselves a yard or more, from the hearer. I thought good to note these two extreme varieties, as worthy to be vnderstood.

From the twentieth of November, vntill the twentieth of February, the night continueth and lasteth there about one and twentie hoours or more, the Moon neere wholly hiding her bodie or her rays at all. And from the twentieth of May vntill the twentieth of August, either the whole Sunne is alwaies fene, or else he beames neuer faile.

In this Countrey there is infinite plenty of white Birds, in their Language called *Musi*, but we called them Cockes of the Sea, which by nature conuerse, and willingly abide where men inhabit, whether they find them in Barkes or on the Land. And they are so domesticall and tame, as Houle-dowes are with vs.

In this land, and in the Countreies of *Suecia*, we saw very white skins of Beares as white as Arnelins, much longer then twelue *Venetian* fette. Wee abode in *Ruffene* three months and eleven dayes, expecting a fit time to passe with our Host into *Sweden*, with his viall freight of Stock-fish, which is in the time of May, when their Countrey people depart, carrying with them infinite plenty thereof through the Realmes of the foresaid King of *Dacia*.

On the fourteenth day of May 1432, came the hoore so much desired, to turne our faces to wards our amiable and beloued Countrey, as our minde and desire alwaies was, and pause the charitable place of *Ruffene*, which was the last kccour and refreshing to our miserie. So wee tooke our leaue of our domesticall friends of the House, and of our Mistresse and Hostesse, to whom in token of our loue we left, not that whereunto we were in debt bound, but what wee had remaying: and that was certayne small trifling things of little value in our opinion, as

Simplicitie. Thus the *Ita-*
lians thought
regard of their
difficultie
iudicall,
which finally
permits the
grewe Sonnes
or Brother to
crepe vnder
the same roofe
with the Mo-
ther or Sister,
in *Quirino*
which the
same Chama-
ber, their boult-
ers being build
of timber in
round forme,
with one light
in the top,
which in winter
of the vnlap-
portable cold
is covered
with shinnies of
great fithes,
which cast a
great light
Their chil-
dren after
four dayes old
are let tread
the same for
the first
on the snow
as they say,
they may bee
hardened to
the cold.
From the sixt
of Feb. to the
14 of May, it
almost alway
snows. Their
garments are
not couerish
of *London*, &c.
more then of
Leather.
Furcell,
Buckling,
Long night,
Quirino fish,
that is a fene
month night
with continual
light or least
of the Sunne.
Bred, *Itali*.
They reuer-
re.

to Malinbury. Ego Edgarus rex Anglorum, cum Albinis, Babilonis, nec non Maximianis, qui in Angliam non Regem circumdabant, etc.

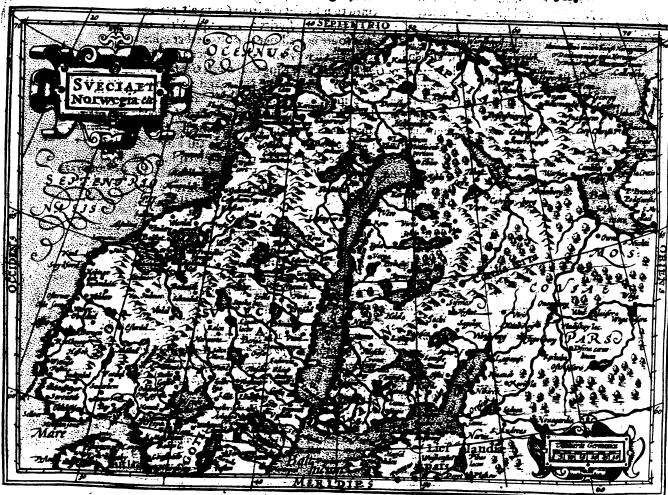
Danes, wearing Sig-a-Peato

Scams in the Churchmen, containing the Country of Norway, Sweden, etc. Men sacrificed to Thor.

M. M. W. B.

This Sunne being let, dark and stormy times followed by reason of Danish incursions. These Danes (as M. Camden saith) began to be knowne in the world about the yeere of Christ 570. for their practices called *Wicings*; or then *Dada de S. Quintino* hath this testimony, *Dani S. Scandinaviae* (that is, *Scandia*) *velut exanimi quondam consuetudine gladius origina, diversitate multitudine, etc.* The Danes, like a swarme of Bees out of their hive, and a flood out of a breach, in diversified manner and barbarous custome leaped forth from *Scandia* (or *Scandia*) after that with voracious last they had multiplied their innumerable generations. These being grown, concluded with their parents and progenitors about their possessions, and overcoming their native *Scandia*, a multitude of them (according to their ancient custome) were compelled by lot to settle forraigne places, where by force they might plant themselves. In the summing up this expulsion or expedition, they anciently sacrificed to *Thun*, not with heifers, but the blood of men, offering that the most precious Holocaust. Their Priest used to dance with yokes of Oxen, the heads of each oxen by lot being chosen asunder by his stroke, he bare some on the left side being flunged, and with the blood thereof the heads of others being anointed, they profusely for *Thun*. *Danica*, for some time since then *Dada*, mentioned a place, called *Lodorum*, where every ninth year in January, they all assembled and sacrificed nine hundred men, and many Horses, with Dogs and Cocks, in the field of *Heaven*, to pacifie their Gods. Herby wee list that by *Danes*, in our *English* Horses, are intended not onely those which now we properly call *but* *Norwegians* also, *Gutes*, *Vandals*,

HONDIVS his Map of NORVEGIA and SVETIA.



Lambert's perambulation of in the yeere 787. and in the West parts, slew the Roane of *Borrichie* King of the West Saxons, and were by the Countie people forced backe to their Ships. *Ann. 795.* a few Ships of them made the like way in *Swedland*, and loone after some of them entered *Tynemouth* Haven, in the North part of *England*, and returned with the *poyle* of the Churches of *Herne* and *Tynemouth*. This was in the yeere 800. Thirte three yeeres after, in the reigne of *Egbert*, they were beaten at *Dimmsh*, but *spoyle* *Shorpe*, with murders and robberies, entering *Thames* with thirte five

M. M. W. B.

Frislanders, and the Inhabitants generally of those North-easterne parts, three Ships of whom, in the yeere 787. and in the West parts, slew the Roane of *Borrichie* King of the West Saxons, and were by the Countie people forced backe to their Ships. *Ann. 795.* a few Ships of them made the like way in *Swedland*, and loone after some of them entered *Tynemouth* Haven, in the North part of *England*, and returned with the *poyle* of the Churches of *Herne* and *Tynemouth*. This was in the yeere 800. Thirte three yeeres after, in the reigne of *Egbert*, they were beaten at *Dimmsh*, but *spoyle* *Shorpe*, with murders and robberies, entering *Thames* with thirte five

sayle. The next yeere they prevailed in battell against King *Egbert*, and after that ioynd with the *William* to invade and destroy this Kingdome, but were both chaced by the victorious power of the King; and *Ann. 836.* another host of them was beaten. Another Fleet of thirte foure Ships landed at *South-Hampton*, *Ann. 838.* and slew Duke *Edmund*, after which they proceeded with continual incursions (two to *Hydras* heads thill succeeding, when any *English* *Hercules* had cut off one) that it breeds horror to read or think of the *poyle*, rapes, fires, murders, barbarisme, heathenisme, defolation and destruction, which they brought every where with them. And although *Alfred*, *Edward*, and *Alstan* some what healed the Land of that pestilence; yet in *Ethelred* time such a mortall relapse happened, that first he charged the people with an insupportable tribute of *Danegelt*, arising to 48000. pounds yearly (even after the account of those times) and buying herewith nothing but perdition on their part, and begger on his, by the advice of one *Hun*, the General of his Armie, he wrote Letters to all places, that on Saint *Briens* day (which is the morrow after Saint *Martin* night, the *Danes* not having digested that drunken solemnitie should be all massacred, which accordingly was effected on man, woman, and child, not sparing those which fled to the Altars. A few in *London* escaped, and called *Seygne* with a Danish Army and vnspokeable cruelty to repay that butcherie. *Ethelred* fled with his wife and children into *Normandie* (the feed of a new Conquest) for that *Swann*, having made the thespetall a hamble and the shepherdlesse, proclaimed himselfe King of *England*, which *Canutus* or *Cnut* and his two ionnes, *Harald* and *Hardkanute*, held after him some thirte yeeres pace.

And such was the Danish tyranny, that every Dane was ruled Lord *Dane*, and had at his commandment the wives, daughters, and the whole household where he became. But after the death of *Hardkanute*, that title was turned into the reprochfull terme of *Lordane*, and the day of his death (as the *Roman* *Epigalia*) was celebrated with open pastime and feasting in the streets, called *Hocktide* or *Hocktide*, as if *England* (then absolutely freed) made a mocke or scorn of her enemies. *Canutus* by treason of *Edrick Stron* obtained the Kingdome, first as partner with *Edmund Ironside*, and after his death the whole by other perfidie, slaying *Eadwy* brother of King *Edmund*, and sending *Edmund* two ionnes, *Edward* and *Edmund*, to the King of *Sweden* to be there made away. But hee hating such cruelty, sent them to *Salomon* King of *Hungary* to bring vp, where *Edmund* dyed, and *Edward* married *Agatha* daughter of *Henry* the Emperour, by whom hee had *Edgar Atheling*, and *Margaret* married to *Malcolm* King of *Scots* (the mother of *Mat* wife to *Henry* the first) and *Christine* a Nun.

Canutus divided the Kingdome into foure parts, of which hee reserved *West-Saxonia* to himselfe, *East-England* hee committed to Earle *Turkil*, *Merrie* to Duke *Edrick*, and *Northumbria* to Earle *Erke*. Soone after, he caused Duke *Edrick* (which treacherously had advanced him to the Crowne) to be slaine, (a full reward of treason) the former of which was presently after his landing in *Denmarke* slain. And now did *Canutus* seeke to win the favour of the *English* by building and endowing Monasteries, making good Lawes, and marrying *Emma* the relict of King *Ethelred*. Thus having *Denmarke* by inheritance, and *England* by conquest & treachery, his ambition next aimed at *Sweden*, where first he had the world, but after compelled *Vlf* and *Eglaif* the Kings of that Countie to composition with him, Earle *Gobwin*, the General of the *English*, provoking and animating the *English* to recover their prietime glory, and by solid vertue to overcome them, who had overcome their new Lord, whose fortune had subiected the *English*. Thus *Canutus* prevailed by *Gobwin* policie and *English* valour, that by night without the Kings knowledge, or assistance of the Danish Armie, assaulting and overthrowing the *Swedes*; hee, the next day, misting the *English*, and fearing they had turned to the Enemy, till giving the onset with his *Danes* vpon the forsaken Campe of the Enemy, hee found there nothing but carcases and spoyle.

Ann. 1027. having intelligence that the *Norwegians* contemned their King *Olave* for his simplicitie, he sent great summes of Gold and Silver to the *Grandee* of *Norway*, to corrupt them, and caused them to reject *Olave*, and to choole him for their King. For peruered with gifts they sent him word to come to them, whom he should find readie to entertaine him. *Ann. 1028.* he went with a fleet of fifty sayle to *Norway*, and expelled *Olave*, subjecting that Kingdome to himselfe. *Olave* which had bene the King, Doctor, Preacher and Apostle of the *Norwegians*, (as *Forligus* stileth him) the sonne of *Harald* King of *Norway*, was slayne, *Ann. 1030.* and cruelly butchered by his treacherous *Norwegians* with an Axe or Hatchet, for disanulling their Pagan superstitions, and hee since in there superstitiously worshipped for a Saint, whom then trayterously they permitted not to reigne or breathe. The same yeere perished at Sea, (or as some say) was slayne in one of the *Orcades*, Earle *Hacen*, whom *Canutus* tearing had banished in colour of sending him Embassadour.

His greatneesse (having to wife his sisters daughter) made him grow suspitious: And according to the deuotion of that time. *Ann. 1031.* *Canutus* or *Cnut* went to Rome on Pilgrimage, and there made magnificent Offerings, and obtained diuers Immunities of the Emperour and Pope. After his returne hee invaded the *Scots*, and ouercame King *Malcolm* with two other Kings.

Danegelt continued till Edward the Confessor. A. 1012.

This Swann, or Swann had killed his father. A. 1012.

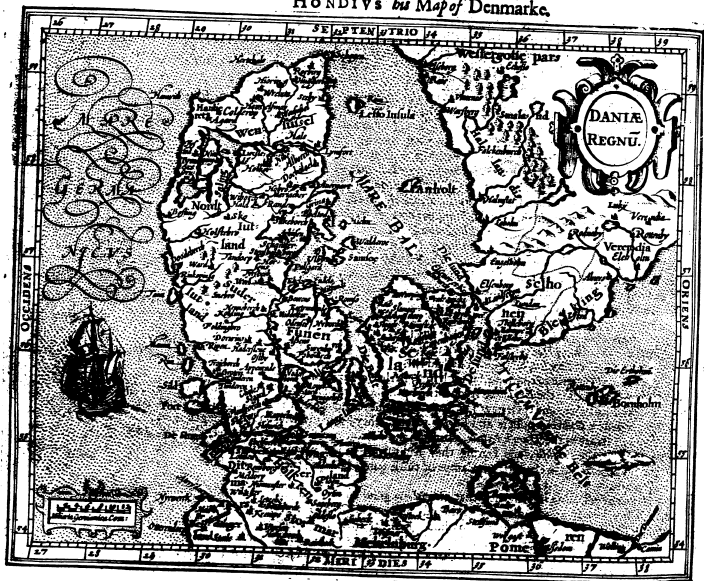
A. 1024. Hocktide I have scarce kept with publick feasting in the streets, the women also indulgencies of compelling them to loose themselves for the festival fortnight after Easter.

English Conquest in Sweden. A. 1024.

Swain Olave.

Kings. He going from Rome to Denmark, sent a Letter to his English Subjects thus beginning:
*Cnutus Rex totius Anglie, & Danemarce, & Norwegiarum, & partis Sueoniarum, Aethelredum
 Metropolitanum & Alfrico Eboracensem Archiepiscopum, quondamque Episcopum & Primateum & totius An-
 glorum gentis, tam nobilibus quam plebeijs, salutem. Nosque vobis me noster iussu Romanum, oratum
 pro redemptione peccaminum meorum & pro salute Regnum, quoniam mee subiecti regimini popula-
 ribus huc usque per fecerunt potui. Nunc autem ipse Deo mee Omnipotens vult humiliter gratias ag-
 ere, qui mihi concessit in vitam meam Sanctos & Apostolos fuisse Petrum & Paulum, & omne Sanctuarium
 quod iuxta urbem Romanam aut extra edificare potui expectare, & secundum desiderium meum presen-
 titer venerari & adorare. Ob id ergo maxime hoc paravi, quia & sapientiam didici sanctum Petrum An-
 gelorum magnam potestatem a Domino accepisse legendi atque solvendi, clauere & aperire, esse Regni Celsis-
 & ideo spectate eius patrocinium apud Dominum diligenter expectare valde utile duxi, &c.*

HONDIVS his Map of Denmarke.



Cnutus before his death set his Sonne Swenus in possession of Norway, and Hardecnutus his Sonne over the Dene. Harold and Hardecnutus divided England betwixt them after his death. Anno 1015, and Harold dying. Anno 1040, that quarrell was ended; and loone after, by the-
 50 their death the Danish Empire in England the small space of King Edward interceding that, and another Conqueror of the Norwegians descended into the Northene, namely of Norwegian Original, Canutus his Daughter Cunilda was married to Henry the Emperor, and being accused of Adultery against a Giant Champion appeared in her defence a child of English Descent which fished her, who she the Giant and presented his head to the Ladie, who thereupon divorced her

her selfe, and became a Nunne. Swene King of Norway after four yeeres deceased, and Canutus his ill-gotten English and Norwegian wings were quickly not only pulled but cut off.

The English had occasion of further insuasion to and from Norway. For Swenus decending the Norwegian chiefe Canutus the Sonnes of Saint Olave for their King; which when Hardecnutus understood (as the Danish Storrie set forth by Erlend Lundmarch testified) he manured the Soruicuous should enjoy both Kingdoms. When Harald came to composition that the Sonnes of Canutus should enjoy both Kingdoms, and Canutus King of Norway sought to obtaine his co-adjuted Kingdoms of Denmark, and overcame him, Canus did into Swenus to obtaine his till the death of Magnus, after which he recovered his Danish Septon. Hardecnutus weareth that Swenus sent to King Edward the Confessor, intreating his aide with a Naue against Magnus Earle Godwine counselled to lend fiftie ships, but Raule Lesving and the people refused; and Magnus with a great Naue fought with Swenus and expelled him his Kingdom, which hee after recovered.

Harald Haranger the Sonne of Simard King of Norway and Brother by the Mothers side to Saint Olave obtained Norway after his Nephew Magnus, and sent an Embassage to King Edward, whereby Peace and Amicitie was concluded betwixt both the Kings. He (after King Edward's death) invaded England with a great Naue of three hundred ships, and discomfited the Earles Edwin and Morcar new York; but five dayes after Harald then King (Sonne of Earle Godwin) slue his Brother Tostig and Haranger at Stamford Bridge, permitting his Sonne Olave to returne vpon conditions to Norway. But while hee consoured the people to his owne proper use, hee gave such disgust to the English, that a few dayes after in the battayle with William Earle of Northmerchie, they were lesse zealous of his cause, where a new Norwame period beganne: those Northerne quarrels having had no other end but this success.

I shall not need to adde what followed (the Norwame Acts in Italye, Politiques and other places I have handled else-where) little occurring of Mori, but Canutus, of which I haue by one Letters from King Henry the Third, the first yeares of his Reigne to Harcon or Haguen, then King of Norway, for mutuall Tussicke betwixt both their Subjects. It is remarkable that the Northerne humour of spoile, laughter and blood continued while they were Pagans, and expired in manner with their Paganisme both in Norwegiam and Danmar: as if God would first by them punish the vices of those times, and withall conquer the Conquerours, with the Religion of the conquered, and by so strange a way bring the Northerne World (by this way of destroying to saluation. Since that time, the State of Norway, Island and other parts hath decayed in numbers of shipping, courage of men, and other manner of Warlike greatness. Somewhat yet for history and in Historians sake, I will adde of Matthew Paris an Englishman his Voyage to Norway.

In the yeere 1247. Matthew Paris recordeth, that on the day of Saint Olave, a famous Saint in the Regions and Islands of Norway, Hacon was crowned King, and solemnely anointed at Bergby the Bishop of Salomon then Legate (from the Pope) in those parts. For the honour whereof the said King gave the Pope 15000. Markes sterling, besides innumerable Gifts which the Legate himselfe had; and five hundred Markes by him extorted (such our Author from the Church of that Kingdoms. The King also receiving the Croffe for the Holy Land Expedition, obtained of the Pope the third part of the Ecclesiastical Revenues of that Kingdoms towards his charges. Which Lewis the French King knowing, writ in friendly termes to Hacon, to leave him company in the said Expedition, offering him full power (in regard of his Skill) over his Naue, and over the French Army. This Letter was carried by our Author Matthew Paris, to whom King Hacon answered that hee gave great thanks to that devout King; but I say, Omnesque, superbia, impotens confusio erit. My people is impotens, indifert, impatient of wrongs, which might occasion irreparable damage; and therefore it is fitter for each to goe by himselfe. But I haue written to the King for quiet passage therow his Countrey, and provisions as need required. The Kings Answer was shewt and Lecten Patents were also delivered to him by this our Author in this forme.

*Lundonijs Dei gratia Francorum Rex, universis amicis & fidelibus suis, Balliis, Admirationibus, & Prepositis, ad quas presentes littere pervenerint, salutem. Cum clarissimus noster Imperator Hacon Rex Norwegie in subditum Terram sanctam transiret proponat, sicut nobis per sua littera intimavit, vobis mandamus, quatenus si eundem Regem vel ipsius Nominis per mare coniungamus terra nostra transire contingat, vel in Terram nostram, vel in fenda nostra altitudo applicare, ipsam & sua coniungat & bene-
 60 ficijs recipiat, permittimus eisdem in terra nostra victualia emere, & sibi per forum legationum de sibi necessarijs providere. Alio apud Sanctum Germanum in Italia. A. D. 1248.*

When the King of Norway had read this (for hee is a discreet, and modest, and well learned man) hee rejoiced much, and was grateful to the bearer, respecting him with Royall and bountifull gifts. Thus writeth Matthew Paris of himselfe, and his employment. The cause of his going into Norway he further relateth, that King Canuto (or Canutus) having founded a fa-

Historia Danica.

Second English Expedition into Norway.

Matthew Paris's suggestion.

From 1247. to 1248.

vid. sup. L. 2. c. 6. 8. 1.

Note.

Matthew Paris's offer.

The Pope and his Legate were desired to all Kingdoms. Saint Iohannis offer.

His Letter.

Matthew Paris's voyage to Norway. John Alric.

1202

Monks ignorance of their own orders. Popery, hands and Lime-fingered Appeals.

mous Monastery of Saint *Benedict*, of *Holm* in *Norway* (of which title and order hee had founded another in *England*) it happened that the said Abbe, with the appurtenances was absoht ruined by an impious Abbat, who forsaking his Order, and stealing away priuily the Seal of the Chapter, either sold, or by forged writings fraudulently engaged almost all the possessions thereof; whereon hee had the Sacril, the letters of the Seal, his copartner, both in this fugitive apostacie and treacherie. Hereupon the Archbishop of *Nidaros*, in whose Diocese the said Abbe was situate, seized the same and the appurtenances into his hands, alleging that the Monks had only the habite, but were altogether ignorant of Monastic order, and Saint *Benedict* rule, some of them also theues and fugitives. The Monks appealed to the Pope (which caused the Archbishop to suspend his proceedings) and the Prior recovering somewhat, and gathering together a summe of money, went to the Roman Court, where the Abbat had beene a little before, and intangled by writings the said house in five hundred markes; which caused the Prior to returne frustrate and full of griefe. But in his way, hearing that the said Abbat was dead, in the Abby of Saint *Alban* in *Selo* (in *Norway*) he and the Couent made choice of an Abbat, and this Prior, with another Monke, and three hundred markes in mony, together with the Kings letter, being sent to *Mathew Paris* to take paines for their freedom, it was procured happily that the temporalities of the said house were freed from the *Cannons* (the Popes Vltures) then residing at *London*, within one years space. But their Spiritualities were much maimed, they by bribes purchasing delays, lest the Archbishop should take possession of the Island which wholly belonged to the Abby, and of also, expelling the Monks.

Now the Cardinal Bishop of *Salerno* then coming Legate into *Norway*, the Monks sought to him for succour, and hee consulted them to go and petition the Pope to provide them of an Instructor and Reformer, and he would write in their behalfe.

The Abbat therefore and Prior went with Letters from the King and Legate to the Pope, who gaue them leave to chuse any man of whatsoever Region or Monasterie to be their Instructor. They answered the next day, that all the World had not Monks of that Order living in more compoiled order then *England*, nor *England* any comparable by report, to Saint *Alban* of which House they desired *Mathew* to be their Reformer, of whose wisdom and faithfulness they had had experience; a man also almost familiar and friendly to their King, and able by his meanes to order the rebellious and vnruely. Hereupon the Pope gaue them this Briefe to the Abbat of Saint *Alban*.

Innocentius, &c. Dilecto Filio Abbati Sancti Albani in Anglia Ordinis S. Benedicti, &c. Cum sit ex parte dilecti filii Abbatis Monasterij de Holm, Ordinis S. Benedicti Nidarosensis Diocesis, fuit propositum coram nobis, idem Monasterium propter Prædecessorum suorum negligentiam, sit in his que ad Monasticum Ordinem pertinent deformationis; nec innovatum in illis partibus aliqui qui statuta & discretiones eiusdem Ordinis bene sciant. Nos ad satisfactionem eiusdem Abbatis, discretione tuam rogamus, attentius & hortamur per Apostolicam tibi scriptam mandantes, potentes dilectum filium Fratrem *Mathew* Monachum tuum qui dictum probare visa & religionis expertus, ad idem Monasterium ut dilectum Abbatem & Monachos suos in regularibus disciplinis & statutis que ad eundem ordinem pertinent, informet & instruat, transmittere prædiximus & Apostolicam fidem ac nostra reverentiam non postponimus. Datum Lugduni, &c. Hereto the Abbat obeying, and *Mathew* to his Abbat, the business luckily succeeded, and Monkerie both in that of *Holm*, and other *Norwegian* Monasteries was reformed.

1 Of these see Monks.

King Harald children.

2 See p. 46, 47. Prior of Linn.

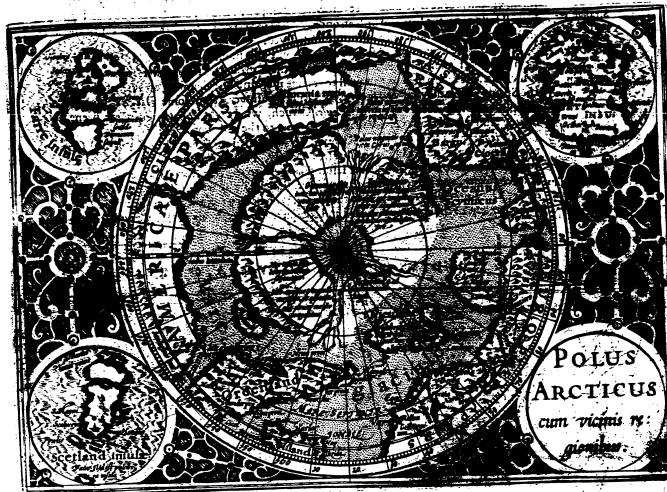
3 Hist.

4 T. of Walsley.

I might here shew the great stirres which in the first Ages after the Conquest the *Norwegians* have caused in *Ireland*, *Wales*, *Man*, *Anglesey*, the *Hebrides*, and *Orkney*: as also of *Harald* (whom the Conquerour slue) his two sonnes and daughter fleeing to *Sueno* King of *Denmarke*, who gaue the daughter in Marriage to *Terslaus*, or *Waldemar* King of *Russia*; and of *Nicolas de Lynna*, a *Franciscan* Friar and Mathematician of *Oxford*, before mentioned, of whom *Jacobs Cuyper* such in his journal that he learned of a Friar who had descended of those which King *Arthur* had left to people the Islands of *Norway*, anno 1364, that in the yeere 1360, the said Friar had come into those Islands, and proceeding further by Art, Magicke, had described those *Agrike* parts (as the * Map presents) with four Whirl-poles or In-daughts. Yes (as *Master Drexel* addeth) at the Northern Islands, the Record whereof at his returne he gaue to the King of *England*, the Booke being called *Inuentio fortunata* or *fortuna*, containing a description from fictitious degrees to the Pole. I might also add of *Thomas of Walsingham*, the Travels of *Henric* Earle of *Darbie*, (afterwards *Henric* the Fourth, King of *England*) into *Prussia* and *Lithuania*, where by his helpe especially was taken *Vilna* the chiefe Citie (*Sigge* the King of *Lithuania*, having fled thither for refuge) his Colours being first advanced on the walls, four thousand slain, of which the King of *Poland* Breather, and three thousand captured. Also I might adde the Voyages of *Thomas* of *Walsingham* Duke of *Glocester*, sonne to King *Edward* the Third, along the Coasts of *Denmarke*, *Norway*, and *Scotland*. Other Letters likewise of King *Edward* the Second to *Hakon* or *Haco*, King of *Norway* in behalfe of *English* Merchants there trafficked: with Entercourtes betwixt the *English* and the *Dutch* Knights in *Lusland*. But by using only briefe mentions of these, and then of the most of them recorded by *Master Barksley*

industrie before, I doe here but Index-wise referre the Reader thither. I rather chiooe to give new things and rare: and such may seeme these Notes which Anno 1605. I writ from the mouth of *Master George Barksley*.

HONDIVS, his Map of the Arcticke Pole, or Northern World.



CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great Travells by Sea and Land, of *Master GEORGE BARKLEY* Merchant of *London*, in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, and their Islands.

Being a child, he was transported into the East Countries, and the first place of his landing was *Schagen*, from thence unto *Elfenore*, a Towne as bigge as *Brent*, a wood, where the *Danish* Custome is taken; and where he hath seene at one time the *Dane* making stay of all shipping fourteen dayes, for ostentation to a foreign Nobleman, seven hundred Gayle. From thence to *Copenhagen*, thence to *Bornholme*, thence to *Dancke*, a Towne subiect to the Pole, being in continuall buildings, if by any meanes they may fortifie themselves against the Hilles over-looking the Towne, a Rill running betwixt, whence they haue their fresh water: they spare no time Sunday nor other. There lyeth here in the Sea by casting vp of sands a long Island called *Prizla*, where along, as on *Samoider*, is gathered by the *Danish* Officers there, and here by the *Lewes*, that farme it of the Pole, Amber, cast vp by the Sea in great abundance, pieces as bigge as *Amber* a pecke, more or lesse. The Bores that find it and gather, haue so many skins of some other

A Frogge in a piece of Amber.

STRANGE re-
pon of Swal-
lowers.
The Dyke.

High wall.

Amberg.

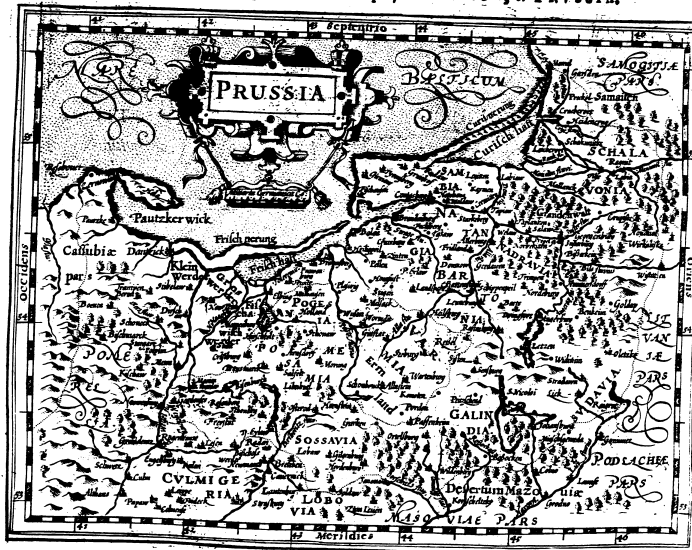
Dutch Knights
of the Linc.
m. dec Tem.
1403.

meane commoditie: and if they keepe and sell it, they dye for it. Hee hath scene one piece of Amber taken vp, in the middle whereof was to be scene through the transparent Amber a Frog in similitude and full proportion: (Master Vassal, his brother, a friend of mine, told me of a piece of amber, he found a great many Tule in the hollow thereof at Wroclaw betwixt this Frylbergh and the Land is a great water Frylbergh, where at Saint Georges day they begin to fish, of which there is exceeding plenty, and for three halfe pence one may buy a cust as much as they shall draw the next time. One here in his Net drew vp a company or heape of Swallowes as bigge as a bulbell fatted by the legs and built in onewhich being carried to their flocks, quickened and flew, and coming againe suddenly in the cold Aire dyed.)

From Danke he went to Marienburg, a Towne also standing on the Vistula, whereby it runneth in another channell, and betwixt both these makes an Hand wherein stands Nordich, which Island is compassed with a wall to fortifie it against the coming downe of the Vistula in the Spring at the thaw of the snowes, &c. This wall seemeth in some places as high as Paules Steeple, and other-where as high as Paules Church, where yett it hath sometime bene ouerflowne: full it is of Houses and Villages belonging to the Lords of Danke.

Marienburg is a free Towne for Religion (Danke then professing only Lutheran) sawe certaine Friars and Nunnes liuing in Cloysters closely. There a Lutheran when he preacheth must make an end at his house, and then a Jesuit preacheth to the Rom. Catholikes as long, the former both company, and Preacher being ayoyded of himselfe, or by force. It was built by the Kreitzheme (Das post mairer) Knights of the Crolle, who hauing lost their footing in the Holy Land, by consent of the Empire assailed and conquered Prussia, being in this Conquest sixtie foure

HONDIVS his Map of BORVSSIA, or PRVSSIA.



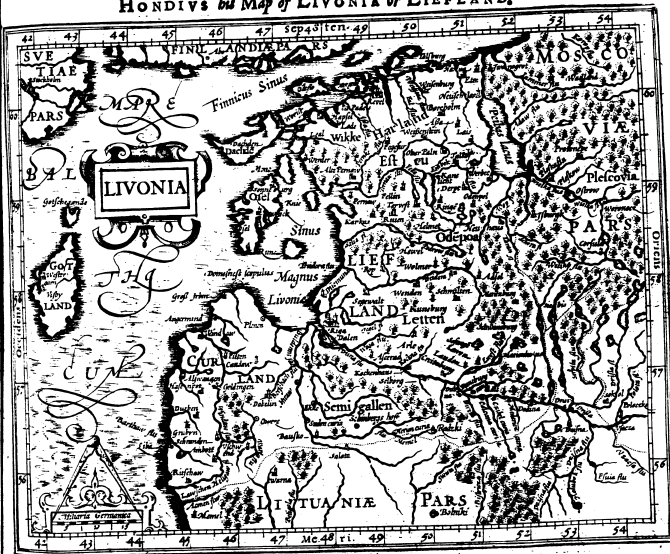
yeeres

yeeres, who after carried themselves so tyrannously, that the people yielded themselves to the Pole, and destroyed the Kreitzheme, (sawe those that made a head about the North parts, with whom after some doubtfull fights, was made a league, that This Order should cease: Their Captaynes should be married, and should have seueritie two Townes in Prussia, to him and his Heires Male, and in defect of such Heires to returne to the Pole. His Townes are not adjoynd together, but the Pole Townes betwixt. Killing surge is the Dukes Court.

Thence he went to Elbing, a faire Towne, where our Trade is now for Flaxe, which was before at Danke, thence removed for their infolencies. Here our men only pay Custome: others are free, and this they did voluntarily, and haue in this respect very much authority amongst the Lords there: the Towne still flourisheth with buildings, &c.

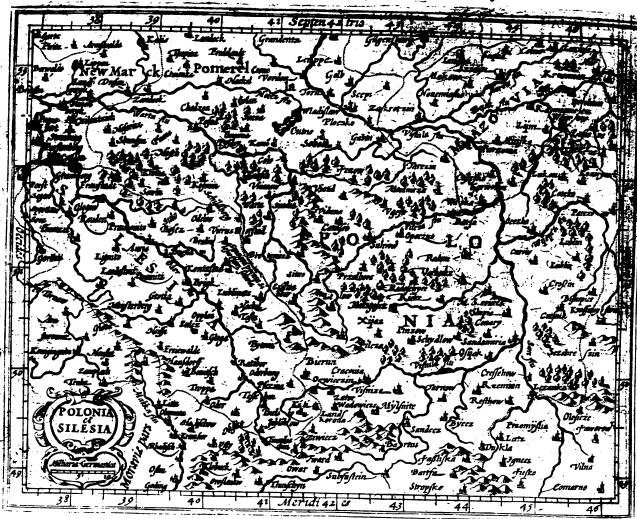
Thence he went to Braunsberg, (the Poles Towne) where is a Colledge of Iesuites: From this place to Kenningberg, and thence to Luba in Curland, thence to Semowien, and thence to Riga, or Rigas. Rie in Liefland also. (This Riga is vnder the Pole) thence to Derpi, and thence to Rensel. At Derpi he went to schoole three yeeres: it is vnder the Pole. Livonia is exceedingly distracted betwixt

HONDIVS his Map of LIVONIA or LIEFLAND.



the Sweden, Ruffe, and Pole. King Stephen recovered part from the Ruffe, who before had partly killed, and partly carried captive the Handicrafts men, in such delicate manner, that the Townes are ruinous, the stone walls of Houses and Churches (standing with trees of great bignesse growing through their vncouered roofes the Woods (whereof they have excellent stately) being throwed with bones of dead carthakes; and himselfe did once in one of those Woods eat Honey out of a Mans skull wherein a swarme of Bees were, and bred as it hanged on a Tree. Hee con-
Hhh 2 que-

HONDIVS his Map of POLONIA.



Turkes are holden to be slaine by them. No Townes very strong, but *Communiex* built within a Rocke, the light let in archoes. The *Turke* went over it but could not win it.

The *Polanders* had a great multitude of beasts attributed to the *Jewes*: two *Jewes* coming to a woman offered her money for some of her milke, she answered her child but then sucked, they left their glass there, promising to fetch it anon and to satisfy her: her husband came while coming home and seeing so strange a thing as a glass, asked from whence it came, and why; being answered two *Jewes* had left it there for milke for a medicine, bid her feed Cowes milke and fill the glass: which the *Jewes* receiving, and having entertained a Boy, caused him to climb vp one of the Ladders which there stand together with their three square gallows made of stone, with wooden rafters cross'd, and to pour it into the mouth of one of the dead men (which there alway hang after execution) his mouth, who presently cryed like a beast, as the boy revealed, and they thereupon cryed they were confind: a murmur followed which should have been a plague. Many *Jewes* executed for it: which yet the *Jewes* said to be a pretence for their money. The *Jewes* that farmed the Customs at *Sandomir* in *Curland*, killed a *Poland* Merchant without punishment, beating out his brains for delaying to open his packe. Hee returned out of *Poland* into *Prussia* to *Torne*, the first place obtained by the *Kreisherns*, where they built a Castle about an Oake which standeth there full, but is dead. Thence along the *Vistla* (where the *Poles* have their *Maks*, &c. with wares three miles thence cyed downe the streame) to *Danzick*; thence into *Pomerland* farre more barren then *Prussia*, to *Cassibus*, *Cesim*, *Colberg*. Thence to *Statin*, every way exceeding pleasant and good. Thence to *Roslin* in *Meckelberg*. Thence to *Lubek*, a fairer Citie then *Danzick*, so to *Oldisse*, to *Hamburg*, to *Breme*, to *Luneburg*, to *Amstel*, to *Bamberg*, and thence through *Bohemia* into *Silesia*, to *Breslaw*, where hee went to schoole three yeeres: whence into *Polonia* againe, and thence to *Prass*. Thence home into *England*.

Hee went againe into *Norway*, to *Nilne*, *Balsus*, &c. It is a barren soyle, as being nothing but Rockes and Vallies: the Rockes are covered with grasse, and the ground betwene they digge and sow with Corne, which yet is not able to satisfy the Country. The difference betwene the Gentlemen

Gentlemen and Bore, is in his command, being otherwise, as raggedly appparelled as hee, with twentie patches on his breech, and barefoot in winter.

In Sweden hee was, at *Stockholm* the chiefe Citie. These now under Duke *Charles*, hold warrs with their King, yet all things passing under him, but so hating the *Poles*, that though of another Nation, neither the long attire, neither their Curb, or hooked Sword can pass: lively among the Bore for suspicion of being *Poles*: and the rather because they were made beleefe that the *Pole* was ayded against them by the *Tatars* that were man-eaters. They are strong in shipping and had given the *Danes* the overthrow at the battell at *Bornholm*, had hee not bene assisted by the *Lubeckers* with money, &c. One allo of whole Ships with a shot fired and blew up the Admiral of the Sweden. The *Lubeckers* therefore pay no custome to the *Danes*, and for their costs hold *Bornholm* till they be satisfied out of the Reuenues thereof.

In Sweden (as in *England* and other those Countries) the Lord holde th the other his Tenants as Villaines and Slaues, and at his pleasure ships their Hories and Daughters to *Arnd*, and there sells them; a bushell and halfe a Culmes of Salt for a woman, which yet is of person and complexion very comely, and very able to doe works. Hee came againe to *Lesland*, and thence to *Finland*, where hee was with an *English* Captaine in a Cattle: and thence into *Lithuania*, and so into *Russia*, &c.

Besides those his Easterne travels, hee hath bin in our neerer neighbor places, as in *Belgie*, *France*, *Spain*, *Portugall*, &c. and passed to the West Indies by the Ilands of Cape Verde: in three of which *S. S. Ant on*, *France*, *Louis*, the Inhabitants cannot prosper nor live long, save in those Ilands which yet are waiked to other forrainers. Hee hath also bene in *Guinea*, in *Barbary*, in the Straits, at *Corbado*, where the old ruines remaine, and the fones of Marble, &c. worth the bringing home, in *Italy*, *Slavonia*, *Moraca*, at *Venice* often, at *Ferrara*, *Padua*, *Mal. Angelo*, thence to *Fermo*, to *Loretto* (where hee visited the Ladie of *Loretto*) it is one street, walled about, the Temple faire, and in the Temple of our Ladies house, inscriptions innumerable of diuers languages, affirming it to have fled the *Turkes* conquests from *Iury* into *Scelmunia*, and from thence allo hither. Here forthwith it was placed in a piece of ground belonging to two Brethren, which because of this new quest and request could not agree on the proprietie: and to auoyde further suite, in the night it was found remoued to a vacant place by the high-way, and there this Temple built whither resort Pilgrimes in troopes, as to a Mart from diuers Nations. The street on one side all Innes, on the other makers of Images, Beades, and such other holy hables heree sanctified by touch of *Madonne*.

The Temple is banged about with Monuments of their exploits, vpon vowes concurred in dittres of Wartes, Diseases, &c. here hang the old Swords, &c. There are two Vestries of incredible wealth, and Priests of diuers Nations for their proper Pilgrimes. The House low and meane builded with white Bricks, such as in *Barbary* they burne in the Sun. There are two rooms, in one whereof the Chimney where thees dressed her meate, and her dishes, &c. In the other her selfe, or statue with a Child, aloft of blacke colour: to whom one whose office it is, on a staffe like a Musket-rest doth lift vp Beades, &c. by her touch to bee hallowed, The French Queene sent her a Present to hang about her necke, which present would pull her in peeces by the weight. It is round, two foot in diameter made like a Sunne, in the center a Carbuncle, the rest set with Diamonds, the rayes pointed with orient Pearles, the Bricks (miraculously) cannot be remoued, to which end they report of a Bishops superstitious steale: who was not able to passe without restitution.

Trauelling in diuers places of *Italy*, *Rome*, &c. hee returned by the *Alpes*, from *Venice* to *Messine*, thence to *Treviso*, so to *Seraualle*, a Towne of Blade-smithes, which with *Waxet* works grinde and hammer their Mottles: thence vp the *Alpes* by a passage so narrow cut out of the Rocke, that sometime the Horse hoofs hang ouer it, being a steepe mile high, a Riuer running vnder. Thus to *Basil*, thence backe to *Torin*.

After all these travels in those parts of Europe better knowne, and those others in the more unknowne, 50 and in Africa and America, hee much afflicting the Virginia businesse and especially that of Bermuda, went thither to order publicke affaires. And after all this (as you haue heard) went in place of Cape Merchant to the East Indies, and being Captaine of the *English* Houe at Bantam, there aduence travelled to his long home. Thus I thought good to adde to the former relations, which I receiued many yeeres since from his owne mouth, being my loving and familiar friend, and for a generall Traveller by Sea and Land, in hote and cold Countries of the old and new world, not easily matchable. Had hee lived, I would haue better perfected these short Notes; but Death is selfe hath not taken from mee his love, shall not from the world his memory; I rather chusing to gree the world these vnperfected Notes, as hee, then either to burie them with him, or by reuising and illustrating to make them mine. The best illustration seems that of *Mappes*, some of which out of Hondius I haue added.

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of MARTIN BRONIOVIUS de Biezefceda *sent Ambassador from STEPHEN King of Poland, to the Crim Tartar: Containing a Description of Tartaria, or Chersonesus Taurica, and the Regions subject to the Perceop or Crim Tartars, with their Customs private and publicke in Peace and Warre.*

The fields *Sauran* and *Oczacow*, betwixt the Rivers *Bogus* and *Nesler*.

Long miles in those parts: and to understand the rest of this storie.

Sharpe winter.

B *Rassaw* is a Towne in *Podolia* with a Castle, numbred about five hundred Inhabitants, good Gunners, and well exercised in *Tartarian* skirmishes. They are good Guides in the Playnes to auoyde the *Tartars* and *Kozacks*. From thence they thorow Woods not very thicke, after some miles journey to the small River *Salmica*, where the *Brasslawians* keepe good guard always against the Excursions of the *Tartars* and *Walachians*. Downe the River *Bogus* or *Hipanis*, you may goe are called the Fields of *Sauran* a stone Bridge and Bathes sometimes belonging to *Violdus*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, ruines and graues, *Sinawod* Riveret, the strong rookie Ile *Probita*, a good refuge for ours against the *Tartars* (the *Brasslawians* in May and June, vie there and in the other many Ilands of *Bogus* to fish, armed with their Pieces) *Carietia* River the greater and the lesse, and that of *Capacely*, and *Hancoriciu* (the *Tartars* call it *Cham*) and the Lake *Berezania*. This Field is fittie miles, or as they call it seven dayes journey to a speedie traveller, from *Brasslaw* to *Oczacow*. There are wilde Beasts, Bisontes, Elkes, Horles, Harts, Rammes with one borne, Goates, Swine, Beares: which ten yeeres since were sayd to bee killed with the sharpnesse of the Winter, and huge heapes of their bones are found in the fields. They had also innumerable herds of Horles, *Turkies* and *Tartarian*: Kine and Sheepe which feede there, by the borders of *Russia*, *Volsinia*, *Kiew*, *Podolia*, and *Moldania*, not long since destroyed. The hills called *Mogili*, are testimonies of Burials and Warres. The Field is fertile, rich of pasture and pleasure,

HONDIVS *his* Map of TAVRICA CHERSONESVS.

Pading

Passing ouer *Prut* or *Huras*, a Riuer of *Moldania*, you come to *Stepanecia* or *Iassi*, chiefe Towne of *Valachia*: or righter to *Prutum* *Tecubia*, a Towne and Fort of the *Turkes*, not long since fortified on the *Nesler*; and there are found some *Moldavian* passages in the *Nesler*, right into the champaignes. It diffulteth it selfe into the Lake *Valdus* or *Obidus* (so called, as some fabulously conceit of *Omidus*) and loone after dissembokes into the *Euxine* Sea, ouer against *Bialograd* (named by the antients *Moncalstrum*) not long since taken by the *Turkes*, from the *Valachians* or *Moldavian* Prince, & holden by them. In the very mouth of *Tyras* or *Nesler*, bearing name of *Neopolimus* as may seeme by *Strabo*, who there-awayes placeth *Nicomia* on the right hand, and *Ophusa* on the left hand of the Riuer.

After followeth *Borishonem* with deepe and large ditches neare the Sea, washed by the Lake where sometimes was a good Port. *Adscheli* hath three Ditches, many Iles nigh the Sea, where many *Cossaks* retire, and often kill each other in mutuell warres and quarrels, which makes it terrible to Trauellers. Then followe *Dominia Dolina*, and the Lake *Berezania*, and the Bay *Carenum*. *Strabo* placeth five hundred furlongs in the Sea, from the mouth of *Tyras* the Hand *Leuca* sacred to *Achille*.

Oczacow called antiently *Olbia*, *Olbi*, and *Olbiopolis*, is seated on *Borishonem* or the *Carcenite* Bay; sometimes builded by the *Meletians*: the Tower is of Stone, the Towne but meane, is subject to the *Turkes*. *Borishonem* or *Nepes*, a deepe, wide and swift streame, runneth from the North into the Bay, and neere to *Oczacow* into the *Euxine*. Four miles higher *Bogus* empties it selfe into *Borishonem*. There the *Turkes* exact Customs. The *Isthmus* betwixt *Borishonem* and the Sea, is a dayes journey, ouer sandie plaines, with Hills, Lakes, Salt-pits; with Decrees, Beares, Goates, wilde Swine well stored. It is extended to *Perceopia* about thirtie miles in length, containing Meadowes, Riueres, and *Tartarian* Cossacks (which they call *shly*) made of small pieces of wood, laubed with mud or myre and dung of baits, and thrashed with reed. The *Tartars* liue in them in Summer and Autumne, but in April begin their progresse, with their wives, children, flaves, and houles which are round, covered with cloath, hardly commodious for foure or five men, carried on two-wheeled carres, with one or two Camels or Oxen, together with their household.

They carry with them Camels, Horles, Flockes, and Herds innumerable, leaving others in commodious pastures. They goe towards *Perceopia*, and sometimes into *Taurica*, or now have a Garrison, and a Commander. They alway trauell into the *Isthmus*, or the large Playnes which are betwixt *Borishonem*, and the Lake *Melior*, and the *Pontine* Sea, where they find best pastures. In October the raines, colds, and perpetuall windees force them to returne to their Cottages. For they are afraid of the *Nizamian* *Cossaks*, which passe downe the streame in Boats, and the Gunners, which then make incursions on them. *Nepes* is frozen ouer in Winter. *Ptoleme* calls that *Isthmus* *Zenos* *Chersonesus*, and *Strabo* writes that the *Romans* and *Ravennians* (whom we call *Russians*) captured those Fields twixt *Tauris* and *Borishonem* (describing their life like that of these later *Tartars*).

30 ouer against *Perceopia*, to *Ofow* or *Asaph*, as the *Turkes* call it, a Towne by the *Don* (a *Tanis*, a great and swift Riuer) sometimes fortified by the *Greekes*, and since by the *Germans*; where the *Turkes* now have a Garrison, and a Commander. They alway trauell into the *Isthmus*, or the large Playnes which are betwixt *Borishonem*, and the Lake *Melior*, and the *Pontine* Sea, where they find best pastures. In October the raines, colds, and perpetuall windees force them to returne to their Cottages. For they are afraid of the *Nizamian* *Cossaks*, which passe downe the streame in Boats, and the Gunners, which then make incursions on them. *Nepes* is frozen ouer in Winter. *Ptoleme* calls that *Isthmus* *Zenos* *Chersonesus*, and *Strabo* writes that the *Romans* and *Ravennians* (whom we call *Russians*) captured those Fields twixt *Tauris* and *Borishonem* (describing their life like that of these later *Tartars*).

40 *Perceopia* (antiently called *Eupatoria*, *Pompeipolis*, *Holy Grece*, *Achilles Race*, *Gracida*, *Hercules*) is seated in the confines of *Taurica*, or the *Syrian* *Chersonesus*, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the *Tartar* *Chans* have their perpetual *Palatium* or *Reg*, which keepeth the Marches and passages of *Borishonem* and *Don*, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant ouer all the *Tartars* in the Playnes adioyning. *Strabo* writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* language hath the name. When *Sachinbegier* reigned there (hee ouerthrow the *Nagay Tartars* at *Perceopia* with a memorable victory) there were threene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the Hayne, and the ditch repayed. Heere the *Tartars* keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the *Chans* Letters. And there in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling.

Coslaw is seven miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the *Chos* hath a perpetuall garrison. *Ingermanum* is hence twelue miles or more: it hath a stone Fort, a Temple; and Vails vnder the Castle and ouer against it, which wonderfull Arc cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountain; and therefore the *Turkes* giue it the name of the *Fantia*. It hath hence a wealthy Towne. Ouert against it the Promontorie trendeth some turloings broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare euident signes in the Rustie Mountains, that the antient *Greekes* thence cut huge Stones and carried them by Ships to build *Chersona* a Circle in those times famous, as the *Greeke* *Christians* still report. The *Heraclians* of *Pontus* sent thither a Colony. The Fort of *Ingermanum* was also built by the *Greekes*, as appeareth by *Greeke* Inscriptions and Scutcheons therein: and thorow all the *Isthmus* to the walls were sumptuous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-ways or Carriages of Rome. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called *Bethor*, and possessed by *Greeke* *Christians*, or *Italians*, and *Leues*, and a few *Turkes*. Of the ruines the *Tartars* and *Tartars* make great Stalls and Enclosures for their beaists. This *Chersonesus*, *Corfasum*, or *Chersonesus* the *Turkes* call *Sin* and *Eucloures* for their beaists.

50 *Perceopia* (antiently called *Eupatoria*, *Pompeipolis*, *Holy Grece*, *Achilles Race*, *Gracida*, *Hercules*) is seated in the confines of *Taurica*, or the *Syrian* *Chersonesus*, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the *Tartar* *Chans* have their perpetual *Palatium* or *Reg*, which keepeth the Marches and passages of *Borishonem* and *Don*, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant ouer all the *Tartars* in the Playnes adioyning. *Strabo* writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* language hath the name. When *Sachinbegier* reigned there (hee ouerthrow the *Nagay Tartars* at *Perceopia* with a memorable victory) there were threene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the Hayne, and the ditch repayed. Heere the *Tartars* keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the *Chans* Letters. And there in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling.

Coslaw is seven miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the *Chos* hath a perpetuall garrison. *Ingermanum* is hence twelue miles or more: it hath a stone Fort, a Temple; and Vails vnder the Castle and ouer against it, which wonderfull Arc cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountain; and therefore the *Turkes* giue it the name of the *Fantia*. It hath hence a wealthy Towne. Ouert against it the Promontorie trendeth some turloings broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare euident signes in the Rustie Mountains, that the antient *Greekes* thence cut huge Stones and carried them by Ships to build *Chersona* a Circle in those times famous, as the *Greeke* *Christians* still report. The *Heraclians* of *Pontus* sent thither a Colony. The Fort of *Ingermanum* was also built by the *Greekes*, as appeareth by *Greeke* Inscriptions and Scutcheons therein: and thorow all the *Isthmus* to the walls were sumptuous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-ways or Carriages of Rome. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called *Bethor*, and possessed by *Greeke* *Christians*, or *Italians*, and *Leues*, and a few *Turkes*. Of the ruines the *Tartars* and *Tartars* make great Stalls and Enclosures for their beaists. This *Chersonesus*, *Corfasum*, or *Chersonesus* the *Turkes* call *Sin* and *Eucloures* for their beaists.

60 *Perceopia* (antiently called *Eupatoria*, *Pompeipolis*, *Holy Grece*, *Achilles Race*, *Gracida*, *Hercules*) is seated in the confines of *Taurica*, or the *Syrian* *Chersonesus*, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the *Tartar* *Chans* have their perpetual *Palatium* or *Reg*, which keepeth the Marches and passages of *Borishonem* and *Don*, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant ouer all the *Tartars* in the Playnes adioyning. *Strabo* writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* language hath the name. When *Sachinbegier* reigned there (hee ouerthrow the *Nagay Tartars* at *Perceopia* with a memorable victory) there were threene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the Hayne, and the ditch repayed. Heere the *Tartars* keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the *Chans* Letters. And there in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling.

Coslaw is seven miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the *Chos* hath a perpetuall garrison. *Ingermanum* is hence twelue miles or more: it hath a stone Fort, a Temple; and Vails vnder the Castle and ouer against it, which wonderfull Arc cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountain; and therefore the *Turkes* giue it the name of the *Fantia*. It hath hence a wealthy Towne. Ouert against it the Promontorie trendeth some turloings broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare euident signes in the Rustie Mountains, that the antient *Greekes* thence cut huge Stones and carried them by Ships to build *Chersona* a Circle in those times famous, as the *Greeke* *Christians* still report. The *Heraclians* of *Pontus* sent thither a Colony. The Fort of *Ingermanum* was also built by the *Greekes*, as appeareth by *Greeke* Inscriptions and Scutcheons therein: and thorow all the *Isthmus* to the walls were sumptuous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-ways or Carriages of Rome. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called *Bethor*, and possessed by *Greeke* *Christians*, or *Italians*, and *Leues*, and a few *Turkes*. Of the ruines the *Tartars* and *Tartars* make great Stalls and Enclosures for their beaists. This *Chersonesus*, *Corfasum*, or *Chersonesus* the *Turkes* call *Sin* and *Eucloures* for their beaists.

70 *Perceopia* (antiently called *Eupatoria*, *Pompeipolis*, *Holy Grece*, *Achilles Race*, *Gracida*, *Hercules*) is seated in the confines of *Taurica*, or the *Syrian* *Chersonesus*, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the *Tartar* *Chans* have their perpetual *Palatium* or *Reg*, which keepeth the Marches and passages of *Borishonem* and *Don*, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant ouer all the *Tartars* in the Playnes adioyning. *Strabo* writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* language hath the name. When *Sachinbegier* reigned there (hee ouerthrow the *Nagay Tartars* at *Perceopia* with a memorable victory) there were threene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the Hayne, and the ditch repayed. Heere the *Tartars* keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the *Chans* Letters. And there in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling.

Coslaw is seven miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the *Chos* hath a perpetuall garrison. *Ingermanum* is hence twelue miles or more: it hath a stone Fort, a Temple; and Vails vnder the Castle and ouer against it, which wonderfull Arc cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountain; and therefore the *Turkes* giue it the name of the *Fantia*. It hath hence a wealthy Towne. Ouert against it the Promontorie trendeth some turloings broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare euident signes in the Rustie Mountains, that the antient *Greekes* thence cut huge Stones and carried them by Ships to build *Chersona* a Circle in those times famous, as the *Greeke* *Christians* still report. The *Heraclians* of *Pontus* sent thither a Colony. The Fort of *Ingermanum* was also built by the *Greekes*, as appeareth by *Greeke* Inscriptions and Scutcheons therein: and thorow all the *Isthmus* to the walls were sumptuous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-ways or Carriages of Rome. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called *Bethor*, and possessed by *Greeke* *Christians*, or *Italians*, and *Leues*, and a few *Turkes*. Of the ruines the *Tartars* and *Tartars* make great Stalls and Enclosures for their beaists. This *Chersonesus*, *Corfasum*, or *Chersonesus* the *Turkes* call *Sin* and *Eucloures* for their beaists.

80 *Perceopia* (antiently called *Eupatoria*, *Pompeipolis*, *Holy Grece*, *Achilles Race*, *Gracida*, *Hercules*) is seated in the confines of *Taurica*, or the *Syrian* *Chersonesus*, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the *Tartar* *Chans* have their perpetual *Palatium* or *Reg*, which keepeth the Marches and passages of *Borishonem* and *Don*, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant ouer all the *Tartars* in the Playnes adioyning. *Strabo* writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* language hath the name. When *Sachinbegier* reigned there (hee ouerthrow the *Nagay Tartars* at *Perceopia* with a memorable victory) there were threene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the Hayne, and the ditch repayed. Heere the *Tartars* keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the *Chans* Letters. And there in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling.

Germanum, or Yellow Tower of the colour of that Traff; whereof admirable ruines remaine to testifie the *quondam* splendor. There are channells or conduits of hewen stone vnder ground foure miles to the Citty walls, still containing cleere water. From a place where is a Village of note, and not farre off, nere the Sea is a Greeke Monastery of Saint George, with annuierfare deuotion frequented of the *Greekes* remaining in *Taurica* with great concourse. The Citty hath not bene inhabited the many ages; the Walls and Towers sumptuously built are yet seene entire. But the *Turks* carry thence excellent Marble and Serpentine Columns and great stones by Sea, for the vie of their publike and priuate buildings. Of the Temples the very ruines are vnto ruined, and the houses lye buried in that Monument and Selfe-sepulchre.

The walls of a Greeke Monasterie remayne very large, but without roofe, and the ornaments spoiled. The *Russian* and *Polonian* Chronicles relate that *Volodimir*, great Duke of the *Russians* or *Kians*, carried thence two doores of *Carinthian* Brasse, and some artificiall *Greeke* Images which *Braslaus* the second King of *Poland* translated from *Kian* to *Gnesia*, there yet in the great Church to be seene. *Volodimir* tooke that Citty from *Iohn Zernitsa* the *Constantinople* Emperour; but after, marrying *Anna* the sister of Emperour *Basilius*, and being baptized in that *Monastery* after the *Greeke* Rites by a certayne Patriarch, hee restored it, as is still related by the *Christian* remainders in those parts. Before the Citty was the Promontorie *Parthenium* with a Temple and Image of that Goddesse, and other Antiquities by *Strabo* related.

That which the *Greekes* called *Lamboli*, the *Turkes* have siled *Belachei*, as the *Tower* of *Siber*, in regard of the plencie in that Sea. It was fortified in a high, great and stonie Mountayne by the *Genuis*, whilst the proud cowardly *Grecians* which held that part of *Taurica* quarrelling amongst themselves, lost it to them. There they had a notable Fort, a strong and sumptuous Fortresse; and there the Towers, houses and walls with the *Genuis* Ensignes and Inscriptions, lye ruined. It is now inhabited of a few *Greekes*, *Iones* and *Turkes*, and frequented by fewer Merchants and strangers by Sea.

Marcopia stretcheth further to the Mountaynes, and Woods, and is not so nere the Sea: it hath had two Castles, *Greeke* Temples and Houses sumptuous, with many cleere Rills running out of the stone: but eighteen yeeres after that the *Turkes* had taken it (as the *Christian* affirme) it was destroyed by a sudden and horrible fire. Neither hath any thing remayne of note but the higher Fort, in which is a goodly Gate, adorned with *Greeke* writing and store of Marble, and a high house of stone. Into that house the Messengers of the *Majesties* are by the barbarous *Chans* sometimes thrust, and there endure hard keeping. There remaynes the *Greeke* house *Iones*; and *Turkes* dwell there; Oblivion and Ruine hath deuoured the rest; nor are there men or Stories of the *quondam* Inhabitants, which I with great care and diligence euery-where sought in vaine. An old Priest which I now there, said that a little before the *Turkes* besieged it, two *Greeke* Dukes of the Imperiall blood of *Constantinople* or *Trapezand*, there resided, which were after carried aliue into *Constantinople*, and by *Silua* the *Turkish* Emperour slaine. In the *Greeke* Churches on the walls are painted Imperiall Images and Habits. The Tower and Citty *Marcopia* is nigh to *Cereffigemma* a new *Turkish* Fort taking name from *Cereffigis*; but the *Turkes*, and *Tartars*, and *Greekes* all haue now lost the name. The *Greeke* Dukes are said to haue there committed much wickedness. And in that stony Hill whereon it is seated, it hath houses cut with admirable Artifice in the Rocks, which still for the most part remayne entire, although the place be become wooddie, A Temple adorned with Marble and Serpentine Pillars, now laid prostrate on the ground, testifie the *quondam* glorie.

The Palaces or Houses of the *Chans* reach vnto the *Mediterranean* *Taurica* (as *Strabo* callit.) It hath a famous Towne, and a principall Store-houle, called *Baccasfary*, wherein he perpetually resideth. That Towne is situated betwene two Mountaynes, and a little River flows betwene, whereof the Towne is named. There is a stone *Masche*, and the *Chans* Sepulchres built within the Townes Liberty of the *Christians* ruines. Not farre also from that Towne there is a *Mohometan* Monasterie, and very many *Tartarian* Graves curiously rayled out of the *Grecian* ruines. In the further end of that Towne, there is another *Tartarian* Prince of the *Chans* is sumptuously garnished by the ancient *Tartarian* Princes with Houses, Temples, Sepulchres, and exquisite Baths. When the Princes with their Wives, oft giue themselves to ease, pastimes, pleasures, and recreation, they go thither. For that place or Region is commodious for hunting, it hath Orchards, Vineyards, Gardens, and many store of good grounds, and it is watered with Chrysaline freames. There are Mountaynes and store of Woods, wherein are seene very many ruines of Houses, and large Ferts and Cities, yet they remayne desert, and are of few or none inhabited.

Amassary at the meeting of the River *Alma*, is a house of the Kings, where he is wont not often to reside, because he liues not there so commodiously, as in other places, and cannot lodge there with his Court: for there is only one safe Village. There are some more obscure bordering Townes and Fortresses, where they are wont to maintayne their Wives. All not a few Castles

Castles where the *Sultans*, the *Chans* brothers, or their sonnes and wives perpetually dwell. That part of *Cherfengis*, which the *Chans* with his *Tartarian* possesse from *Persopolis* toward the *Persopolis* Fenne or Lake to the Citty *Yemous*, is cultivated, plaine, champaign, fertile, and plentifull of *Grenus*, graffe; but toward the Sea and the Palace of the *Chans*, and his Townes, Castles, and Villages, the Country is Mountaynous, woodie, well husbanded, and very fruitful. The Mountaynes in that Coast are huge and remarkable. But the greatest is the highest of all, and hath in the top a Lake of no small quantitie. And although it did ascend it, yet it is well difcerned many miles off, and demonstrates no ordinary height and greatness. Plentie of Riues and no small ones runne from those Mountaynes. Also they haue much fish, but not of any great size (for the River is shallow) yet very saporie and dainty. But because the *Tartars* do not often feed on fish, the *Christians* only and our strangers when they come thither take paines to catch them. There is also abundance of delicious Fowles; which sometimes *Christian* or *Turkish* Counters are wont to seeke after, seldom our strangers. There is much game of Hares, Goats, Boares, and Hares nere the Sea vnder the *Tartars* and *Turkes*. Oftentimes also the *Chans* himselfe is wont to hunt some dayes there, but more often he goes into the champaign with *Turkish* and *Tartarian* hunting Dogges.

Serisius is a *Tartarian* Village adjoining to the *Chans* Regall Mansion, wherein the *Letton* *Swedes*, and *Moscouis* Ambassadors often lodge; it is spacious and delightful. But when *Taurica* and *Moscouis* Ambassadors began subject to the *Chans* Dominion, duers Italian Gentlemen *Genuis* after *Cepha* was taken by the *Turkes*, or *Tartar* Princes, hauing their Charters written and affixed of their right and propriete (which I haue seene among them) they held that Village with speciall Priuileges, or purchased it with that Gold which they carried with them out of their Country, or with their seruice to the *Chans*. In going Ambassador to *Christian* Princes, it was permitted them to build a Catholike Temple in that Village, wherein I sometimes entred while I abode there. There was in that Temple one Priest a *Franciscan* Fryer, whom those *Christians* had then redeemed with their money from *Turkish* slaues.

Cremmon or as the *Tartars* call it *Crimmon*, is a Citty and a Castle much volike in the antiquitie, magnitudo, and height of the wall, ample and renowned, to the other Cities of *Taurica*; it is vnlike the *Moscouis* (for so *Probus* calls it) perhaps this was called by *Palatinus Taphrus*, but by *Plinius Taphrus*. Now in these latter times before the coming of the *Genuis* into *Taurica*, it seems to haue bene husbanded and inhabited by a great *Mohometan* Nation, who removed thither out of *Asia*. For there are seene ancient *Mosches* or *Mohometan* Temples not only in the Citty it selfe, but also beyond the Citty very many with *Chaldiske* Characters engrauen in great stones. There are very few *Turkish* or *Tartar* Inhabitants, yet the *Greekes* are fewer, who report this, that their Ancestors haue constantly deliuered, that that Citty was wilhome dwelt in by the *Persian* Nation, and that it was a *quondam* noble and excellent Store-houle of Mechanick Mysteries. A man may certainly conieure by the ruines and largeness of the place that it hath bene a famous Citty and a great Colonie of people. The *Tartars* are now vulgarly nominated from that place *Crim*. They haue a Mint in that Citty. In the Tower which is the greatest in the Citty, the *Chans* when are alway kept and spend their liues.

Sidagis of the *Grecians*, but *Sidacoma* of the *Genuis*, was called a Castle and Citty, the *Tartars* are vnto ignorant of it. In a lofty rockie and spacious Mountaine standing nere the Sea in the top of it, it hath a higher Towre, a second indifferent, and a third of bare esteeme. The *Greekes* or *Italian* *Genuis* founded their Castles enuironed and fortified with Walls and Towers. There are seene innumerable *Grecian* Churches, and seene but few, as though they were Chapels, not a few vndermined, but very many are ruined, and lye ouerturned in the dust. The haughtie dissentious and idle *Greekes* being ouerthrowne and weakened by the *Italian* *Genuis*, lost that Citty. There are seene no contemptible figures of the *Genuis* much more illustrious then those of the *Greekes*.

But it is euident by the ruines, that it was once a famous place, & so it is reported by the *Greek*, *Christians* of whom there are a very few Reliques. Moreover, many *Christians* haue erected a multitude of Temples which they report to haue bene some hundreds. There are three great Catholike Churches, Houses, Walls, Gates, and faire Towers with Armes and Ensignes of the *Genuis*, are seene in the lower Citty. I heard from a certayne Metropolitane a *Greeke* and an honest man, who then came thither from the *Grecian* Isles to visit their Priests, and entertained mee, That when the most barbarous Nation of the *Turks* had besieged that Citty with a great Armada, it was valiantly and manfully defended by the *Genuis*; but when the *Genuis* could no more hold out the daily siege and famine, neither could longer sustaine the violence of such a great Armie of *Turkes*, some hundreds, or, as hee saued, about a thousand stout-hearted men conueyed themselves into the greatest Church which yet abides entire, and some dayes hardly and courageously preferring themselves in the lower Towre, into which the *Turkes* forceably entred, hauing made a notorious and memorable slaughter of the *Turkes*, at the length they were all slaine in that Temple. The doores and windowes of that Temple being stopp'd up with a wall by the *Turkes*, the slaine bodies lye vnburied to this day. I was prohibited by the *Sarac* of *Cepha* sometimes

times a *Turke*, that I should not enter into that Temple. The Custome of the Citie is not meane: it hath very fruitfull Vineyards and Orchards, which doe extend about two miles, now man-
nated by *Caphas*, *Turkes*, *Jews*, and *Christians*: For the best Wine of all *Taurica* grows there; all that tract abounds with pleasant Rivers, which runne downe from the highest and middle Mountaynes and Woods, which are there very frequent.

Having now passed over those upper Cities, and at the last *Sudace*, also as farre as *Theodosia*, which the *Italian Genes* call *Capha*, the banks of *Taurica* is in Longitude a thousand furlongs, craggy, mountaynous, and tempestuous with North windes. Before the Citie the Promontorie Citie is there seene, both hang out into the Sea on the South-side toward *Paphlagonia*, and the *Rammes* forehead. And there is another Promontorie *Carambis* of the *Paphlagonians* opposite to it, whereby the *Euxine Sea* is divided into the double Sea, and *Empus* straightens them both. *Strabo* sayth, that *Carambis* is distant from the Citie of the *Chersonesus*, two thousand five hundred furlongs, but from the *Rammes* forehead, a furre lesser quantitie. Behind that hilly Countrey, as *Strabo* calls it, hee affirms the Citie *Theodosia* to be less founded, and that it hath large Fields notable for fertilitye, and a Haven able to receive a hundred Ships, and that that Limt was assigned to the territorie of the *Bosphorians* and *Tauricks*.

Capha or *Theodosia*, is the excellentest and best defended Citie of all *Taurica*. It was built by the *Italian Genes*, and is placed by the Sea. It hath a Haven alway frequented. It is peripetuous, that in the times of the *Genes*, it was a wealthy and populous Citie. But after it was taken 20 from the *Genes* by the *Turkes* about a hundred yeeres since, the *Italian Christians* were brought into such a fraight, that there are but a very few and obscure remains of them left. The Citie hath in a manner lost her prime splendour. The Romish Churches of *Christians* are demolished, the Houses cast downe, the Walls and Towers, wherein are seene many tokens of honour of the *Genes* and *Latin* inscriptions, are fallen. Only two *Catholick* Temples and two *Araucian* *Armenian*, *Jews*, but very few *Italian* and *Grec* *Christian* inhabitants: Now also it is famous over all that part of *Taurica* for Navigation and the Haven. It hath almost innumerable Vineyards, Orchards and Gardens. Men sayle often to *Capha*, from all the bordering and remote I. 30 lands of *Greece*, but oftner from the Citie *Constantinople*, for with a prosperous winde they come thither by Ship, in the space of two dayes or little more.

The *Petigoren* Province, or *Colchis* is enlarged, as farre as the *Caspian* or *Hircan* Sea, and is much subject to Mountaines and very large Woods, which are now seene in these Confinces. It is a very free people, and hath many brave Commanders, to whom all the Nations and Families obey. Moreover they profess themselves *Christians*, and it is manifest in the time of the *Genes* very many of them were *Christians*, but now wanting Priests and Churches, they onely retayne the opinion of Religion. Most and the greatest part of them are Idolaters, amongst themselves rapacious and cruel, but to Strangers hospitall and free-bearded. The Parents, although they bee of the more Noble or of the Rullickes, sell their owne Children, their Sonnes 40 for Slaves, their Daughters for Wives to the *Turkes* and *Tartars*, also to many *Christians*, and those which they are wont to sell secretly among themselves, they sell closely beyond the Sea to barbarous strangers after a more then barbarous manner.

Betweene *Percepia*, *Cremnum*, and *Caspiana*, are Townes on the North. *Taurica* or the *Peninsula* is exceeding plaine, not very hilly, and altogether champaigne. It hath a very fertile foyle, in great part sonie, but great partie of good water. Yet there are found in diuers places very many extraordinarie deepe Fountaynes or Wells of a wonderfull profunditie and difficultie, in times past digged and made by the elder *Greekes*, or those great and antique Nations, who inhabited the *Peninsula* before the *Greekes*.

From *Percepia* the space of a mile, there is a great Lake congealed naturally of admirable Salt, 50 from whence the purest and best Salt is continually gathered, as if it were frozen; it hath many other Salt-lakes. In cesteigne commodious and in very many places, in Mountaynes and Groves are found in great number, ancient huge *Grecian* ruines of Castles, Cities, Temples and Monasties, which while they have many ages borne testifies of inhabitants, by reason of their antiquitie, have lost their names. All *Taurica* or that *Peninsula*, from the West and North is plaine and champaigne, and hath few Townes, many Villages; extends in length the summe of fiftie miles. But from the South and East, it is mountaynous and wooddie, and hath every where marvellous high, large, Rony Mountaynes. In which, betweene *Cremnum* and *Capha*, it is reported that veynes of Gold and Silver, and the best Iron, were whilom found by the Inhabitants. It hath a very fruitfull ground, Floods, delightfome Rivers, Fishes, Meadows, Pastures, abundance 60 of wilde Beasts, Harts, Goates, Boares, Beares, Vineyards, Orchards, Territories, Champaines, Townes, Villages, Hamlets, many large Granges. *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*, is spread in Latitude after a sort into a circle; in some places, the distance of one or two dayes journey, but in most places about the quantitie of one.

The Castles and Sea-cities, and the rest of all the *Peninsula*, which are described in their order, with many Villages and Hamlets of *Grec* *Christians*, except the Holdes and Sea-townes, and many lfe suspected walled Townes in *Percepia* and *Caspiana*, and a few Villages of *Grec* *Christians*, are subject to the *Turkish* Emperour, and all obey his bechells, and are kept with a sure Garrison. The *Peninsula*, which lyes in the middle from the East and South against *Percepia*, hath a milde winter and temperate ayre. For in the end of December is the beginning of winter, but in the midst of Februarie the sharpnes of winter, which is more snowe then cold, or subiect to Ice, neither yet doth that endure about three dayes together, neither continues it any longer then to the beginning of March. Therefore about the beginning of the Spring, and alway in the auttome the ayre is very contagious.

In *Bratishlavia*, the *Sarmen*, *Oczacovien*, and *Bialodogrod*, *Plaines* are situate betweene *Hipania* or *Bogus*, *Tyra* or *Nesher*. From the North toward *Nepes* or *Borishlone* and *Bogus*, are somewhat plaine and champaign grounds, but from the West towards the River *Neister* and *Pruth* or *Hierapoli*, more wooddie and hilly. *Podolia*, *Cammercia*, and *Moldavia* betweene the *Bryanca* and *Pruth*, every where border on the middle *Tachina* and *Bialodogrod*, which is by the Lake *Udson* or *Oshlone*, and the *Euxine Sea*, on the West confine on the *Plaines*, and on the *Euxine Sea*, on the South *Bratograd*, *Kihna*, and the River *Danubius*. *Oczacovia* hath on the North *Borishlone*, (into which *Bogus* there dischargeth it selfe) and sparious *Plaines*, on the South the *Euxine Sea*, and the overflowing Salt meere *Berezanina*, from the West the adjoining River *Neister*.

Further, that Continent which is betweene *Oczacovia* and *Borishlone* in the falshon of an Ile, hath into the West *Borishlone*, as though it were betweene *Borishlone*, the Fen *Meesta*, and the *Euxine Sea*; on the North the Rivers *Tanais* or *Danubius*, on the South the *Euxine Sea*, and that *Isthmus* or Continent, but beyond *Oczacovia* and *Borishlone*, as far as *Percepia*, that Continent is verie narrow in many places: but beyond *Percepia* to the Castle *Offomus*, a ranke foyle, and all champaign and plaine: For in that neck of Land almost all the *Percepian* and *Offomian* *Tartars* feed their stockes and Cattle, and live there all Summer and Auttume. That Contrie betweene *Offomus* from *Oczacovia*, as farre as *Offomus*, for there it is limited, is stretched out in Longitude, as is manifest out of the *Tartar* Diarier, more then a hundred miles, but in Latitude not after an equall manner. For it is larger, as well beyond *Percepia*, as toward *Oczacovia*, or *Borishlone*.

The *Taurican* or *Chersonesien* *Tartars*, who are now called *Percepian* or *Crims*, doe certainly seeme by the ancient Writers of the *Scythians* to have been the *Isanigenes*, and to have had their originall and appellation from *Rho*, or the River *Volga*. Moreover between the famous, deepe, and great Rivers of the North *Tanais*, or *Dan* and *Borishlone*, it manifestly appeare that they passed by little and little into the *Plaines*, and a hundred and fixtie yeeres since, or very little more to have come into *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*.

The stocke of the *Chans*, or of their *Tartar* Princes was anciently called *Cyngis* race, from *Cyngis*, whom was *Lochboma* a certain *Chan*, of whom all the *Chans* take their originall. Hee was the 40 fifth Emperour of *Taurica* or *Chersonesus* in *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula*. They have procreated the *Sirien*, *Bachman*, *Chagatai*, and other *Kinays* or Dukes, from whom are the *Caucasi*, who are the *Chan* Councillors and chiefe Officers, who also marry the *Chans* daughters and fillers, The *Plani*, which are anciently defended of the *Chan* blood, and (if the lawfull posteritie faile) succeed in the Regall Throne. It is very true that the *Chans* are the noblest of each, now also their posteritie remaine & other warlike *Tartars* to whom it is certaine hee had diuers Hords, of some ten thousand a piece in his company passed into *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula* with him.

The *Chans* predecessors sincerely and constantly much esteemed the *Grecian* Chiefecitizens, who inhabited at *Manecopia*, and *Ingermura*, and the *Italian Genes*, who dwell at *Lambold* and *Capha*, as also the other people they found in the *Peninsula*, with whom they had friendship, peace, and league, vntill they were overcome by the *Turkes*, and consumed in warre: they had also many 50 yeeres common money which I have seene there.

But *Selim*, Emperour of the *Turkes*, compelled and subingated *Mechmet* *Geremius* *Chan* to his *Selim*, Empire. Those Nations being weakened, almost all the Castles and Cities of the *Martime Peninsula*, being taken and possessed: *Sachmet*, the Prince of the *Lanigen* *Tartars* put him to flight, with singular and memorable laughing having destroyed his Armie of a hundred thousand. Since which time the *Chans* acknowledge, as chiefe, the Empire of the *Turkes*. The *Viceroyes*, or Princes of the *Tartars* of *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula* are constituted by them, they receive thence a Banner, and giue their sonnes and brothers *Soldans* for perpetual pledges to the *Turkes*.

Notwithstanding, after the ancient custome of their Nation, they make a *Galg* or successor to the Empire (as the *French* doe their *Dolphines*) the brother or eldest kinne more sufficient, heyre appo- 60 nant, who hath the greatest sway in peace and warre, but the *Chans* themselves perpetually depure and elect them, but with the approbation of the *Tartar* Nobles. And if also any diffention or war be raised betweene the *Soldans* or the *Chan* about the Empire, the *Turkish* Emperour neglects not to

Election of the Chan.

Sackibgerim.

Attalick.

Hamiani.

Wives and children.

Arabick letters.

Mahometan Religion.

Government and Laws. The Gall and Reg.

No Attornies nor Lawyers: they plead their own cause.

dispatch the *Soldans* pledge, with an Armie and Standard into *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*: and it is sufficient for him to be Prince, the *Chan* and *Sultan* being appeased or forced to go away by warre, for which cause he hath always many *Law-attornies* in *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula*.

The election of the *Chan*, after the ancient custome of the Nation, did whilesome consist in the free suffrages of the *Dukes*, *Murfas*, and noblest *Tartars*. Furthermore, for their frequent discord and hideous warres which were occasioned by the *Nogaians* bordering on *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula* about the Empire, *Sackibgerim* and *Doolziggerim*, being *Chan* over the *Tartars*, having by subtilty destroyed the more noble and potent *Tartars*, and cast them into fetters, began absolutely to domineere over the *Tartars*; and by force to draw the election to their posterity, the Emperour of the *Turkes* syding them.

But if the *Chan* will not constitute his brother *Galga*, but his owne sonne, as it often fortunes, by reason of those discords and reciproall butcheries among themselves, hee circumvents craftily and subtilly all the *Soldans* brothers, and courtly makes them away. Yet most of them flye to the *Turke*, of whom they are bountifullly entertained and comforted, and receive a perpetuall stipend of him.

The *Soldans* younger sonnes of the *Chans* are educated and tutored by the *Tartars*, or more noble *Murfas*, left that when they are at mans estate, by reason of their pluralitie, diffusions, or warres might arise: for each *Chan* acknowledge a supreme Dominion, and when they are growne up, those that are fit are set over certaine *Tartar* troupes, and allure many voluntary *Tartars* vnto them, notwithstanding they make leaders of the *Nogaians* *Tartars*, and remunerate with monyes and horres most of their parents, whom they esteeme more speciall and substantiall. Very often also through feare of treacheries or seditions among themselves, being ayded by their Gardians favour, they flye vnto the *Christian* or bordering Princes of their people.

The *Chan* hath *Attalick* Counsellors, whom they so terme from the care of their women, parents, or their wives, by whom those *Sultans* also are continually from their youth educated and provided for: hee hath *Hamiani*, who are the Agents for exotic Princes affaires with him, and also perpetuall Court Officers. But especially hee conuocates to him the *Dukes*, *Ceraces*, *Flani*, and the nobler *Murfa*, and alwayes vnto consult with them in weightie affaires. Hee hath principall and meet men Ministers of his Court, whose seruice hee vseth in his Ambassages, and in his diuers other necessary busineses and employments, who also are exalted to Counsellours and Court Officers. He alwayes maintaine those who are chosen out of the more renowned and illustrious *Tartarian* youth, who are conversant in his Court by monthes interchangeably, and when they are made fit, are honoured with those dignities. Yet hee is chiefly and most delighted with the *Ceraces*, *Nogaians* and *Petagerens*, who are very industrious, valiant, bold, and warlike. On the principall hee bestowes honourable gifts and annuall pensions, and of these his Court is alwayes replenished. In the Princes Court, the better reputed and nobler *Tartars*, are very richly and ciuilly decked, not to pride or superfluous luxury, but for necessitie and decency. For they are so incited by the lazie cowardice, and especially by the irreligious impiety of the neighbouring *Christians*, through making often inroads, and getting rich booties, that the greater nobel of them in priuate wealth and domestick splendor, are little inferior to the *Turkes*. They may haue as many women by the *Mahometical* Law as they will, and for the most part, they buy wives of the *Petagerens*, which although they sustaine and maintaine, not proudly, but very comely and ciuilly according to the country guise, but those by whom they haue issue very honourably and gorgeously. They deliuer their sonnes in their infancie to be instructed in the *Arabick* Letters, but they keepe not their daughters at home, but commit them to the nearest blood to be provided for. They place their sonnes growne to mans age in the *Chan* or *Sultan* seruice, their marriageable daughters in wedlock to the more honourable and nobler *Tartars* or *Turkes*.

Those *Tartars* are *Mahometans*, and haue Priests and *Moschs*, they vse the *Childanck* or *Arabick* Letters, which they haue receiued somewhat corrupted from the *Turkes*, although before they came into *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*, they seeme to haue bene a sauage and brutish Nation, and of very sauage conditions, which now also is very perpericious by the rufficks: for they wanted then altogether those Lawes, Rites, Letters, and Manners. But the *Tartars* being taught by the *Turky* humanitie, and that false worship, the more nobler now generally practise hospitality.

Law or Iustice, is administrated in the Towns or Cities of the *Chan* & other *Sultans* among the *Tartars* after the *Mahometan* Law. There are alwayes presbitrall *Cadi* or Iudges in the Villages. *Begi* or Iustices, who haue and decide particular iniuries: but causes of life, blood, theft, which we call Criminall, or of Land, which we call Ciuill or Officiall; the *Chan* himselfe decideth with his Counsellours. In refusing of which they need no Lawyer, nor vse tricks of law, calumnies, excommunications nor procraftinations. The *Tartars* or Strangers, of meane condition, lay open their felons vnto the wrongs before the Iudges and *Chan*, of whom they are alwayes heard and speedily discharge; for for any time any may haue access to him. When hee comes in publicke, men of the basest degree are not excluded, but being sence of the *Chan* are examined, to wit,

if they haue any fault, that they relate it. For they do not only performe great obedience to the Lawes: they adore and venerate their Princes in Gods stead. All spiritual luges (after *Mahomet* Law) are accounted among for Saints, men of all equite & integrity, fidelitie and opinion. The Princes and Magistrates execute and dispatch whatsoever is bidden or commanded fuddenly and faithfully, with alacrity, promptnesse, and great feare. They are far from controuersies, or imitations, in vices, vineyard and personal brawlings, stuy, barred, filthy excesses, luxury, and ambition in their vicualls and array. I abode their nine months, neither heard I Criminall or Ciuill Act to haue happened among them, or any composition by reason of enmities.

In the Princes Court they weare not, nor at home Swords, neither Bowes nor any other weapon: except Wayfarers and Trauellers, to whom they are very courteous and friendly. They are alwayes secure from Spoyleys; but except they keepe perpetuall watch, they are lesse safe from High-way-theues, and Night-robbers, who steale nothing from them but their Horles.

Although they haue a rich foyle, yet very few Gentlemen, or Plebeians prouide for the house hold estate, for many neither till nor sow their ground: they abound with Horles, Camels, Oxen, Kine, Sheepe and Flockes of all Cattle, and thereof liue. Yet the Gentlemen haue bread, flesh, meat, distilled wine and *Metheglin*; but the rufficks want bread, but vse flamp Miller, and maceated with milke and water, which they vulgarly call *Casse*, for meat (and for drinke they vse Mares milke) and cheefe. They feed on Camels, Horles, and Oxen vnprofitable for burthen, and kill them when they are about to dye, sometimes eate heere flesh.

The Gentlemen dwell not in the Plaines, but in the Villages of *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*. They which are neere Woods liue in them, although many doe not possesse proper Villages; yet they haue peculiar Lands and Manors. They vse the *Argarian*, *Kassian*, *Moschemian*, *Valachian*, or *Moldavian* slaues, which they keepe, and whereof they haue great plentie, as beasts to eury worke. Their houses are of Timber, much after the *Turkish* fashion; but the *Greek* *Christians*, who are in a few Townes, labour and till their grounds as beasts. The *Tartars* serue the *Chan* or *Tartarian* Nobles, being hired at no price, but only that they may haue meat and apparel: but the rest, and the greatest part of them are alwayes idle. In the Cities or Townes are very few Merchants: but

some few practise Mechanick crafts, and some few Merchants or Artificers are found there, either *Christian* Slaues or *Turkes*, *Armenians*, *Iews*, *Cercession*, *Persians*, (which are *Christians*) *Phylisians*, or *Cyngans*, men of obscure and lowest degree. Those *Tartars*, which liue in the Plaines beyond *Persia*, or in the *Peninsula* haue no woods, eury where digge Wells. They vse in stead of Wood Beasts dung, whereof their Bond-men gather in the Fields, and dry in the Sunne, and houses of the same forme, whereof mention is made in the former description. Those *Tartars*, which are Slaues and Subiects of the *Chan*, *Sultans*, and other Noble-men, are drudges, and alwayes keepe and pasture their Lords innumerable Herds of Cattle; and although they goe from place to place into the Plaines and Pastures, in severall Streets, Hamlets, Townes, or Villages, by separated troupes (or herds) whereof they beare the Names, and of their Masters, so that men

may easily find there, those *Tartars* Slaues which they seek to buy.

The *Chan* hath alwayes by the leagues and agreements, an annuall Donatie of the King of *Polonia*, the great Duke domo of *Lithuania*, the *Palatine* of *Moldavia*, and *Ceression*, and *Nogaians* *Tartars*. The Legats, Orators, Messengers, Truchmen of those Princes come to him yereley, whom sometimes he entertains benignely and bountifullly, but sometimes receiues, misuses, and detaynes a great while after a more than brutish manner. Where thefore they come into *Persia*, one of the *Chan* meetes them in the Summer, in the Meadow or Plaine, where they rest vnder a Tent: in the Winter they are opportunely and commodiously conuayed into the Village of *Alma*, or *Bacchasanum* more lately bordering on the Towne of the Kings Palace. But after they are lodged there, they are saluted by the Counsellours or Scrants of the Court in the

Chan name, which procure them refreshing or victuall, two oxen, or one, some sheepe, bread, wine, and barley, not liberally, but in a kind of hospitalitie, and moderately sufficient for once. But when they are called to the *Chan*, hee hears them, the *Soldans*, *Tuams*, *Vlans*, *Murfas*, chiefe Counsellours, and many other Ministers of his Court and principall *Tartars* being present, they are conducted only by one man to the *Chan* gate, but are brought in by two Counsellours.

When as therefore they are entred in, they reuerence the *Chan*, after the ancient custome of the Nation, and hauing saluted him on bended knees declare their misgife, and are admitted to eate with him. They are honoured with cups and goblets gilded and embossed with gems, filled with Mead or *Metheglin* reached from the *Chan* hand, after the order of that people, in signe of clemencie and beneuolence, which they drinke on bended knees. And when they are dispatched, the *Chan* invites them againe to Feast. The Feast being ended, they goe backe a little from the Palace doores, and are rewarded with Silke Vests wadded with Gold as low as the anckles, prepared after the guise of the Nation, with one Horle or two, not seldome with Captiues of their owne people. And so attired with those Vests they returne againe to the *Chan*, and render thanks to him for his hospitalitie and liberality, and hauing saluted him, depart from the Ban-

Great peace-ableness to the shame of alwaye lawing Gospellers.

No daily vse of weapons.

Aquaticke Mechanick drinke.

Slaues.

Merchants.

Tartar slaues.

Tribute.

Embassadors.

Alma.

Bacchasanum.

Audience.

Manner of redemption.

Arabian and.

times promised by the Prisoners; but the Agent who well knows the craft and deceitfulness of the *Tartars*, finds fault with the captives foolishness, and tell the *Tartars* that they are neither noble nor rich, and that they knew not, nor will ever be able to pay the price, and as though they were neither moved with Pity nor Religion reject them. Yet the Agent is diligent that they be inscribed in the Catalogue, and if they have a purpose to ransom any with their own money, they hold it expedient to labour *Jews* or *Tartars*, and other Merchants being corrupted with money: by whom, being as it were neglected and rejected by the Agent, they are released at a far higher rate. Nothing therefore is more frequent to the captives, than to promise and offer to the *Tartars* this price, for which they are sold to the *Turks*, *Jews*, and stranger Merchants, and others beyond the Sea, or a little more, or twice so much, if they be able to get so far: but if they cannot learn of the Rusticks or others what they are, as the *Tartars* are for the most part, went often to enquire of their captives, they are content with little. Neither do they sell them to strangers, but rather to the Agent of their Nation: but if they are not redeemed by the Agent, they command them to write to their Parents or Kinsfolk. Also many captives are delighted with the exchange of *Tartar* captives, in providing for and freeing of whom, the *Tartars* exhibit and shew farre greater pitty, friendliness and care, then our *Christians*. For disrespecting all price, they first demand their *Tartar* captives in exchange of ours, which often promising the same and not able to performe it, vie to bring upon themselves a farre greater discommodity. For they ask of them almost an unsuitable summe, wherewith they prize their *Tartars*, which when they are not able to pay, they sell them to barbarous Nations over the Sea for perpetual slaves, for as great a price as they can, and very often at an exorbitant rate, or if the *Tartars* are wealthy, they condemn them to perpetual slavery.

The *Chan* hath all his *Tartar* Armie gathered of Horsemen, except some hundred Gunners *Lancers*, Footmen, which are either *Turkish* Auxiliaries, or some of his owne which he maintaines. He is accustomed to carrie with him some smaller Ordnance to warre. From *Turkey* or the *Peninsula* the *Paragians*, and *Crimis*, *Osmanis*, *Nogais*, *Circassians*, are Tributaries and Souldiers for aide, the Duke of the *Circassians*, *Petigorens* are Stipendiaries and Mercenaries, and are wont to goe volunteers to the *Chan* warres. The *Ossaceniens* and *Bulgarians*, also they who by the continual counsaits which they have with the *Turkish* Emperour, sometimes also the *Dobruens* *Tartars* and Inhabitants of *Dardanius*, by the command of the Emperour of the *Turks* follow him to warre. All that Host collected out of those *Tartars*, is wont to make the number of a hundred and twentie thousand, sometimes also thirte thousand more, but not seldom to exceed that Summe. I have bin truly informed by many credible *Christians*, which often follow the *Chan* warres, and by some captived Gentlemen of our Nation, who have many times seen his Armie.

Their Horses.

All have according to their vie *Tartarian* Horses, neat, excellent, stomachfull, swift, and indifferent good and commodious to vndergoe great labours. The *Chan*, most of the *Selams*, and *Turks* Nobles vie in warre *Turkish*, *Caramanian*, *Arabian*, and other *Asian*, *Tartarian*, and the best Out-landish Horses. The swiftest Horses are accounted among them at a great and almost infinite price. They always feed them Summer and Winter in the Plains of *Tartaria* or the *Peninsula*, but very often as farre as the Rivers *Boristhenes* and *Tanus*: the Gentlemen nourish at home very few Horses, only for their virgint occasion, not for any arrogance or luxury. They seldom put their lades and vngovernable Horses for riding in the Waggon, for they doe all their business with Camels and Oxen.

Their Armes.

The *Tartars* vie their ancient weapons, a two-edged Sword, or *Tartarian* Cymiter somewhat long, and a *Turkish* Dart, or a *Perjian*, shorter and broader of the best Iron, and well wrought; a peculiar *Tartarian* Bow, along Arrow, and swift; a Quiver, sometimes a short Spear after the old guise of their people. They goe with Breast-plates and Helmets, and in *Perjian* or *Moslemian* Armes, wherewith they abound being enriched by the spoyle of *Christians*. They are ancient Saddles and Bridles after the custome of the Nation, very sitting, not for pride or superfluitie: the Nobles have them prepared very elegantly, strongly and commodiously for their vie. But most in the *Tartar* Armie are altogether vnarmed and cowards, and they carrie with them to warre by reason of their great Host, almost an infinite number of Horses. For a *Tartar* even of the basest condition will scarcely be content with one or two Horses, but three, four, and more, which he may have always ready with him at his hand. Therefore the Armie of the *Tartars* is made so numerous, great and terrible, which when it is seenne as farre off, is deemed by our men almost an infinite and innumerable Host.

Store of Horses.

Now when the *Tartarian* Armie is come into their enemies Country, the *Tartars* ranke not themselves in bands or troups, but all set forward and proceed leisurely. They dispose many Watchmen in all parts throughout their companies, which they make greater or lesser for their supply, but after that the foremost of them have decayed their enemy, they counterleise a flight, that they may more easily allure them into those troups, which they have laid in ambushments, and

Flight layed.

and to over-charge him. But when they espye a great Armie of enemies, they make a retreat and quickly and speedily to their Armie, Rankes, and Banners.

There is great civilitie in constituting and governing their troups, seeing that they are not ruled only by the aduertizements of the Generals and Prefects of their Regiments, but also by the shew of Whips, as is the long continued practice of the Nation: and they are subject to punishment, a becke, that they are very easily brought into their Rankes, whensoever it is necessary.

The *Chan* is alwayes fortified in warre, with a band of some thousands of noble and courageous *Tartars* in number, some hundreds of *Lancers*, Footmen, and some small Ordnance. In the *Chan* Regiment a very great white Mare's taylor, and a piece of Greene and Red Silke of the *Turkish* Emperour is carryed before on a great Pike for the Standard. There appeare in the troups of the other *Tartars*, many Antients and Emblems of various colours.

The more famous Souldiers, and they which are notable in reputation, dexterity and warlike Prowes, and have achieved in warre some Noble Spikes and Enterprises, are greatly honoured by the *Chan*, *Seldars*, *Kemans*, and *Morans*. And that respect it had to shew, that the *Chan* doth not only reward them with heywaine great benefits and such liberality, as he can shew them, but also is so mindful of their deserts and merit, that he assigns them and their successors in the Assembly, and at the division is, at his Table a perpetual place of honour among his more noble *Mamluks*. That dignity among the *Tartars* is the greatest and Hereditary, for they going to warre able and experienced men which possesse that place, are dignified by the *Chan*, with the glorie of leading the Troupes. The *Chan* also frees some *Tartar* captives with the permutation of captives, and in ransoming others he largely powres out his owne Treasure, and willingly comforts them as he is able.

His strength. The principall Emblems of Mamluks.

CHAP. XXII.

DITHMAR BLESENS his Voyages, and Historie of Island and Greenland.

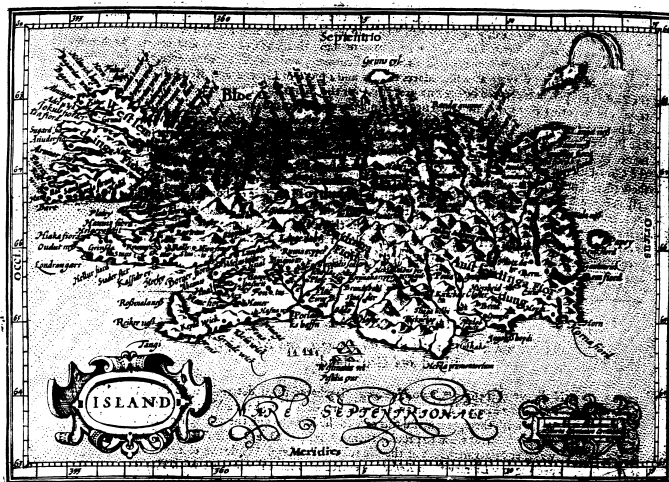
IN the year 1565. two *Hamburg* Merchants ships determined to voyle to *Island*, the Mayners, by an ancient custome, desirous to have a Minister of Gods Word with them, commend this care to the Ministers of the Church of *Hamburg*, and intreat them to provide them a Minister. One Doctor *Paulus de Erius* was then Superintendent of the Church of *Hamburg*. While therefore he layd at *Hamburg*, expecting my Library from *Rostock*, I entered into some familiaritie with *Paulus*, and the rest of the Ministers. This Office was bestowed vpon me, which I vnderooke the more willingly, because I had a longing desire to know strange things, and diuers Countries, yielding to their persuation. Taking ship therefore the tenth of April, we sayled vpon the Coast of *England* and *Scotland*, and passing beyond the *Islands Orades*, in number fifteen, whereof the most part ye vnmanured for the barrenesse; *Feruo* and *Hittland* are inhabited: Here we saw a very high Rocke, which in the top representeth the head of a cooled Monke, where also there is a safe Harbour against all winds, and this Monke deliuereth many from present danger. The fourteenth of June we decayed *Island*, which seemes as farre off, like winter clouds. The next day we attayned the Land and Haven of *Hafsfjord* toward the South.

Island is a rough, hilly and snowie Land, which is supposed to bee twice bigger then *Scitia*: it is thought to be a hundred leagues in length, which also *Olavus Magnus* testifieth in his cleven Bookes. It hath the name of the perennell Ice, and coldnesse of the Ayre, which is there most sharpe: for eight whole moeths it is troubled with Ice: It burneth notwithstanding with heat and inward fire in many places. The extremite of cold increaseth this heat in the bowels of the earth, which cold continueth the greater part of the yeere (a few Summer months excepted) and so bindeth the pores in the vpper part of the Earth, that it can have no free vent. And this Island hath so great a Latitude from the *Aequator*, that the Arctic Circle diuides it in the middle, that is to say, fixtie five degrees and a halfe. The Islands called *Ethude*, are ancient to the North part of this land. But whether that be of thele, which *Ptoleme*, and other Writers call *Thule*, or rather *Island*, that great land, I dare neither affirme, nor altogether deny, because there is no Island found where *Ptoleme* set *Thule*. Now, the later Writers make another manner of longitude about *Scotland*, and the bordering Islands, then *Ptoleme* ever thought.

I will draw the Descents of this Nation from their first original, following the track of the *Island* Chronicles. In the yeere of Christ 900. in the time of *Adrianus Bishop of Bremen*, cecyde of the Nobilitie of East *Frisia*, and of the Countrey of *Bryme*, desirous to discover the Countreys toward the North, set sayle from *Weser*, and passing beyond the *Orades*, found this land almost in the vtmost skirts of *Europe*, yet habitable, but full of Snow: which they called *Island*, for the coldnesse and roughnes thereof. And when they had sayled further towards the North about two hundred leagues, they found another land, which (by contrarie) they

in the published this Book anno 1679

HONDIVS his Map of ISLAND.



Gronland.
Mists ordinary
in those Seas.
See of Island
original the
next Chapter.
Antiquities
are often my-
thical, or my-
thical & fabulous

they named *Gronland*. Endeavouring to sayle further towards the North, through the frozen or congealed Sea, being long hindered by the Ice, at length with great labour getting out, they fell into whirl-pools of the Sea, and thicke darknesse.

In these whirle-pools and darknesse, this Fleet (one only Ship excepted) perished. They that were preferred, after many long labours and perils, sayling through the *Tartarian* Sea, came into a very hote Countrey, and coming into a large Bay, they went on shore upon the next Land. And when the Inhabitants had hid themselves in secret places, by reason of the great heate and forcing of the Summe, they saw Gold, and other precious things rest here and there, without a guard. And when they had carryed away as much as they would, and landed the Ship, they saw some pursue them with Dogs of strange bignesse. One, who was hindered and laden with a prey that hee could not escape, was torne in pieces of the Dogges. The rest, after long sayling, shunning these Whirle-pools, arrived in *Musfoua*, thence by the *Balticke* Sea returning unto *Browe*, they brought backe these tidings to *Albrand* the Bishop, with part of the prey.

Much about this time, the *Norwegians*, by example of the *Helmetians* in *Julius Cæsars* time, are supposed to have come out of *Norway*, who then long time possessed that part of *France*, which now also is call *Normandie*. And when they had performed great attempts by Sea and Land against the *Britannes*, they did not only scoure the Sea by hostile incursions, but also expelled the *Saxons*, who at that time came into *Italy*, and sought to seat themselves in *Calabria* and *Apulia*. After they brought Colonies Northward into *Holland*, *Ferow*, and *Island*: which way, they learned of the *Bromians*, by means of the Nobilitie of *Prussia* forsooke. And even the very prophecies of their speech doth testify, that they came out of *Norway*: for the pronunciation of the *Islanders* doth agree with the antient Inhabitants of *Norway*. For upon the Sea coast of *Norway*, especially where the famous *Hauen* and *Citie of Bergen* is, by reason of the resort and familiarity with the *Germanes* and *Danes*, the Language is changed.

of

Of the Islanders Religion.

IN the yeere of Christ 1398. *Waldemar*, the second of that name gouerned the *Danish* Kingdome, wherunto *Norway* was added, whose posteritie held it, vntill *Eriks* Duke of *Pomerania*, and *Christophor Baner*. Vnto this *Waldemar*, all the *Artisian* Colonies obeyed, so that now, vnder that *Waldemar*, the *Islanders* were first instructed in the Christian Religion, when before they had worshipped strange Gods. And when almost all Christian people, in that lamentable darknesse and title of a Church, as it were by Witchcraft deceived, were detayned in most deepe bonds of superstition; it could not bee but they, who were furthest removed from the societie of Learned men, and dwelling vnder an vnciuill and barbarous Climate, should fall into most foule Idolatrie, when sometimes (as hereafter shall bee declared) they had Devils to serue them, as familiar as domestical seruants. But after *Liuker* began to bee knowne, *Christians* the King of *Denmarke* procured purer Doctrine to himselfe, and purged the Churches in the Kingdome of *Denmarke*, *Norway*, and all the Lands subiect vnto him; sending Ministers into *Island*, to sow the seede of the Gospell there. Hee sent a Printer also out of *Denmarke*, to set forth the Bible, the common places of *Philip Melanithon*, the Workes of *Vrbanns Regius* and others, in the vulgar Tongue, to the Pastors who were ignorant of the *Latine*, as at that time almost all of them were. And also sent for fit and apt young men out of *Island*, whom hee maintayned in the *Haffsan* Vniuersitie at his owne coost, and gaue them charge ouer Churches and Schooles.

The Christian care of King Christian.

King *Waldemar*, as soone as they should professe Christian Religion in *Island*, ordaineth them two Bishops, one in *Scalbolden* in the East part, and another in *Heken* in the West, whose Successors at this day retayne nothing but a shadow, and a bare Title, for they have no other reuenues but Butter and Fish. But when that reformation (whereof I spake) was made by King *Christian* in the Churches of *Island*, one of the Bishops in *Scalbolden*, conspiring with the people, reiects the Doctrine of the Gospell, and making a rebellion they kill the Kings Lieutenant. The yeere following, which was 1535. the King sent a Noble man of the Order of Knighthood, one *Paul Hufelt* (whom I saw an old man in *Denmarke*) furnished with a Fleet, Souldiers, and Munition into the Island. The seditious being slaine, hee reneweth the reformation of the Doctrine of the Gospell, and returneth into *Denmarke*, leaving a certayne Noble man to take charge of the Church and Land.

Two Bishops in Island.

The greatest man in *Island* at that time was one *Tadde Bonde*. Hee, after the Kings Arme was departed, conspiring with the principall men (whom by his Authoritie hee drew to take his part) resolted from his Allegiance, and perswaded the rest of the Islanders to follow. They meete together in a place called *Walse*, and conspiring to rebell, and cast off the Kings subiection, they impart their counsels together, and *Tadde* had his pfections not in one place, and many re- tayners, and for these causes hee thought they could not easily bee suppressed. The Bishop, who dwelt in the East, had a speciall care to acquaint the Kings Lieutenant with all that was done (for the Lieutenant was absent in the West part of that Island) and the Bishop hated *Tadde* a long time. For in that first Rebellion, hee had fallily accused him to the Lieutenant as guiltie, and author of the Rebellion. This accusation only brought great and extreme calamitie vpon him.

Walse.

The Lieutenant being certified what was done, hee perswadeth by his instruments, some of the Complices of the faction, to continue in their Allegiance, propounding rewards and punishments. Then many of them when they saw the greatnesse of the danger, leauing him, came humbly to the Lieutenant, and begged pardon, and obtayne it. *Tadde* therefore is adiudged an Enemy, both of the King and of his Countrey, they promise therefore by an Oath and giuing of their Faith, that they will pursue him.

Then hee, through feare of the danger, with a few of his Domestickes which hee had gathered together, kept himselfe at the foote of *Hekelueid*, but being circumvented they were all slaine, and hee taken. They that tooke him, brought him to the Bishop, to commit him to Prison, but hee refused to receiue him. Therefore they draw him to another certaine man, of whose hee had the chiefe place in Iustice, neither would hee receiue him, fearing the hatred of the people. There was at that time there a certayne *Islander*, *Ionas* by name, a man of courage. I know (sayth hee) to whom I will commit him, that will diligently keepe him, and forthwith hee slew him and buried him. And to the Sedition was appeased. And from that time vntill this day, the Word of God is taught amongst Barbarous men, after the manner of the Countie of *Angulna*.

60

The Life and Manners of the Islanders.

IN the whole Land, there are three sorts of men, who are held in any reckoning and account: Three sorts of the common people, by reason of the Garceise of Ships wherewith they fish, make them. felues slues to the richer. Of those three sorts, the first is of them whom they call *Loeshmaders*, that

that is to say, *Men of Justice* for *Loch* in their language, signifieth *Law*. These men administer Justice, and there are many of them, but twelue of them only haue the yeerely charge of Justice. All men obey their Iudgement and Decrees. Another sort is of them, who are called *Bonden*: They are in the place of Nobles, and as euery one of them is richest in Shipping, and Cattle, so hee hath most Filthers, and followers. This only power they know. The third sort is of Bishopps and Ministers of the word of God, of the which many are found euery where throughout the whole land.

There are many of the *Islanders* very proud and high minded, especially by reason of the strength of body which they haue. I saw an *Islander*, who easily put an *Hamburg* Tunne full of Ale to his mouth, drinking off it as if he had had but one small measure.

Both Sexes in *Island* haue the same habite, so that by the garments you shall not easily discern whether it bee Man or Woman. They want Flaxe, except it bee brought vnto them by our Country-men. The Women kinde there are very beautiful, but ornaments are wanting.

The whole Nation of the *Islanders* is much giuen to Superstitions, and they haue Spirit of familiarity feruing them. For they onely are fortunate in Fishing, who are raised vp by the Deuill to goe a fishing.

And although the Ministers of the Gospell vie all diligence in dissuading them from this impietie; yet this wickednesse hath taken roote, and thicketh so deeply in their mindes, and they are so bewitched of Satan, that they can admit no sound Doctrine and Dehortation. Yea, by the Deuils meanes, if you offer them money, they promise a prosperous wind and performe it, as I know, as hereafter shall bee spoken. The like Olaf Magnus wrote of the *Finlanders* in his third Booke. They hold Ships alio by enchantment almost immouable, and that in a prosperous wind. And truly it is a wonder that Satan should sport with them. For hee hath shewed them a tempest in staying of their Ships, to wit, the Excrements of a Maide being a Virgin: if they annoynt the Prow, and certaine plankes of the Ship, hee hath taught them that the Spirit is put to flight, and driuen away with this stinke.

In the rest of the carriage of their life, they thus behaue themselves. The Parents teach their male Children (euen from their child-hood) letters and the Law of that land, so that very few men are found throughout the whole land, but they know Letters, and many Women vie our letters, and haue also other characters, with the which they expresse some whole words of 30 their, which words can hardly bee written with our letters. They giue themselves to hardnesse, and fishing from their Infancie; for all their life consists in Fishing. They exercise not Husbandrie, because they haue no Fields, and the greatest part of their foode consisteth in Fish, vsuaire Butter, Milke and Cheese. In stead of Bread they haue Fish bruised with a Stone. Their Drink is Water or Whay. So they liue many yeeres, without medicine or Physician. Many of them liue till they be one hundred and fiftie yeeres old. And I saw an old man who sayd hee had then liued two hundred yeeres. Nays, *Olaf Magnus* in his twentieth Booke sayth, that the *Islanders* liue three hundred yeeres.

The greater part of *Islanders* hath neuer sene Bread, much lesse tasted it. If our men at any time tell them Meale or Corne, they mingle it with Milke, and lay it vp for a long time, as de- 40 licates for Nobles. They call this sauce or mixture, *Drabbell*.

The *Germaines* that trade in *Island* haue a place in the Hauen of *Haffensford* fenced by Nature, where vnder Tents they set their Merchandise to sale, as Shoes, Garments, Glasses, Knives, and such kinde of Merchandise of no price. The *Islanders* haue Oyle molten out of the bowels of Fishes, knowne to our Tanners and Shoemakers: they haue Fish, Brimstone, white Foxe skinnies, Butter and other things. They barter all these for our Commodities, nor is the bargaine ratified, before they bee well stuffed with our Meat, Wine or Beere, together with their Wines and Children whom they bring with them, how many fouler they haue.

Comming into the Hauen, they haue their Daughters with them which are marriage-able: they after they haue inquired of our companie, whether they haue Wines at home, or not, they promise a nights lodging for Bread, Bisket, or any other trifling things. Sometimes the Parents 50 yeeld their Daughters freely, euen for a whole month, or as long as they lay. If shee prooue with Child by that lying with her, the parents loue their Daughter better then before, and the Child being borne, they bring it vp some yeeres, while either the Father returne, or they giue it to their Sonne in law that shall bee, for a Dowrie with their Daughter, who doth not despise it, because it is borne of the *Germaine* blood. If any Virgin haue familiaritie with a *Germaine*, shee is honoured among them, and therefore shee is sought of many Suiters. And the time was before this, that Whoordome, which was without the degrees of Consanguinitie and Affinitie, had no Infamie. And although Preachers crie out against it, and the offenders are severely punished, yet they hardly abate it.

They lay not vp Wine and Beere which they buy of our Country-men, but quaff it vp 60 house by house by course with another, and that freely or for nothing. While they drinke they sing the heroicall ads of their ancestors, not with any certaine composed order or melody, but as it cometh in euery mans head. Neither is it lawfull for any one to rise from the Table to make

make water, but for this purpose the daughter of the house, or another maid or woman attendeth alwayes at the Table, watchfull if any becken to him that bekeneth shee giues the chamber-pot vnder the Table with her owne hands; the rest in the meane while grunt like Swine, least any noise bee heard. The water being poured out, hee walther the Blason, and offereth his seruice to him that is willing, and hee is accounted vnciuill who abhorreth this fashion. They entertaine them that come vnto them with a Kisse, and they behold and looke each on other, if peraduenture they may see Lice creeping on their garments, which greatly trouble them for want of linnen: if they see any, each taketh them from the other, and as often as hee taketh away one, so often doth hee thanke him, with his head discouered, and this they doe one to the other, as long as they see Lice.

By night the Master of the house, with all his family, his wife and children lye in one room, covered with a cloth made of Wool which they make. And the like clothes they lap vnder them, without flax or hay put vnder. All of them make water in one chamber-pot, with the which in the morning they wash their face, mouth, teeth, and hands; they alledge many reasons thereof, to wit, that this makes a faire face, maintaineth the strength, confirmeth the finewyes in the hands, and preserveth the teeth from putrefaction. If Cattle perish in the waters or snow (which often cometh to passe) they say, they are killed of God, and are accounted among the delicates. And it happened in the yeere 1564. in a place called *Akersmisk*, that in the month of Ianuary some Kine strayed in the darke, and the fogge was so great, and the depth of snow, that they could not be found. In the month of April they were first found vntained, and without any euill smell, and being distributed among the neighbours, some part was brought to the Gouverneur, with whom I liued at that time, which was not lawfull for him to despise, yet he commended it to be giuen to the poore.

In the Winter time, before and after the *Saltstunne*, when the Sunne declineth, and being in *Saguerius*, *Copernicus*, and *Aquarius*, it departeth from there, neither doth it ascend above the Horizon, while it touch *Pegise*, therefore they haue no light but of the Moone and Starres. In like manner about the Summer *Saltstunne*, when the Sunne ascendeth to *Geminis*, *Cancer*, and *Leo*, it neuer goeth downe vnder the Horizon, therefore at that time they haue no Night. In the Winter time, they keep their Beds many dayes, and exercise themselves in the game of Chiefe, the inuention whereof is due to *Xerxes* the Philosopher: the meane while the seruants bring them their meate dressed to their beds. They keepe Lampes of the oyle of Fish continually burning, others burne Tallow candles.

In the month of Februarie, as soone as the Sunne ascends about the Horizon, by little and little the dayes grow longer, then they begin to Fish, whereof there is so great plentie, that it is scarce credible, for the Fishes which for three whole moneths swamme in the darke, as soone as they see a fish of Time thinned to an Iron, they ranne to it in shoales, that they are not only drawn vp by the jaywes, but wherefoer the Iron toucheth them. Hauling thence them, they plucke out the bones, and lay vp their bowels, and make Fat or Oyle of them. They heape vp their Fish in the open ayre, and the puritie of the ayre is such there, that they are hardened onely with the winde and Sunne, without Salt, better farly then if they were corned with salt. 40 And if they kill any Beasts, they preterre the flesh without stinke or putrefaction, without salt, hardened onely with the winde.

Of the wonderfull standing Pooles, Lakes and Fontaynes in Iceland.

IN diuers places almost throughout the whole *Island* are Bathes and scalding Fontaynes, which flow out in great abundance. This water as soone as it begins to coole, hath a Sulphurie substance in the top thereof. In these scalding waters, wherein I could scarce dippe my finger, Red-doppers are sene as often as if you come neerer, they vanish, if you depart, they appeare againe, (so all day long (if any please) they play boe-peeps with men. Whether they bee Red-doppers indeed, I leaue to others to decide.

At the West of this land, there is a huge Immoake Lake, and very cold, which turneth all things that are cast into it into stones, and that in few dayes, and (which is worthy of great admiration) if you put a stick upright into the bottom, the lower part which is stucke into the earth, hath the resemblance and hardness of Iron after two dayes, that which was in the water hath the hardness and clew of a stone, the upper part which remained aboue the water, keepeth his wonted forme: And I twice proued the truth of this thing, but when I put the lower part (which represented Iron) to the fire that it might melt, it burned like a Coal.

There are two Fontaynes of most different qualitie, in a place upon the Sea coast, which is called *Turlocky* Hauen, the one cold, the other hot; these Fontaynes by pipes are drawne into one place, and tempered for bathing, they make a most wholesome Bath. Not farre from these Fontaynes, there is a certaine other Fontayne, which bubbles forth liquor like Wax, which notably cureth the French disease, which is very common there.

Not farre from the Hauen *Haffensford*, there is a cleft in a Rocke like to a Fontayne of vnmeale.

Loving women, Louisfoule.

Lodging.

Long nights.

Chiefe.

Dried Fish.

Hot Bathes.

Red-doppers.

Sneemaking water.

Note.

French disease.

measurable depth. If you looke into it, you cannot see the water, but if you cast in a stone, halfe an houre after you shall heare it falling, as if it fell into brazen Vessels, and forthwith the water ariseth, and it is filled to the top of the Wells brimme, and it is a most cleere water, which notwithstanding no man dare touch, nor taste, neither doth it flow out, but so long after, as the stone which is cast in, sinketh to the bottome. There is another Lake in the middle of the land, from thenceforth a pestiferous fume, inasmuch as it killeth Birds flying ouer it with the poy-

Of the wonderfull Mountaynes in Island.

There are three Mountaynes in *Island* very admirable, the one is called the Mountayne of heads, or tops no man euer saw, nor are they euer seene without Ice and Snow; in those Lightnings and horrible Thunders are daily heard, when neuertheless, in the neighbouring Valleys *Island*, and not very high, but it hath burned very many yeeres; with what fire or matter, it is unknowne; but seeing Brimstone is digged out of the Earth throughout the whole Land, it seemeth, that the Sulphur matter is sometime inflamed. This Mountayne is not farre from the Sea, and the Sea on one side beates vpon it: it is called *Hecla*, sometimes it catcheth forth flame, sometimes ferie water, then blacke ashes and Pumis stones; neither are there any pastures about it. No man also can dwell nere it by sixe mile, neither are there any pastures about it. Sometimes bold men, and such as regard not their liues, cast stones into the hollow plaine blowes, it catcheth backe the stones flung into it with an horrible noise and sound: the common people thinke the soules of the damned to be tormented here: it is cercey that diuers and horrible spirits are obserued in this Mountayne and about it; for if a Battaille be fought in any place, the *Islanders*, especially they that layle and fish in the Sea nere to *Hecla*, know the port wicked spirits going forth, and returning, and bringing foules with them. And such a storme is rep: red all *Island* ouer.

A Fisherman sayling by *Hecla*, met with another ship, both had a prosperous wind, and when (after the manner of Saylers) he was demanded who hee was and of what place, hee answered, and when that hee had the Bishop of *Breme* in his ship, whom hee would conuay to *Hecla*: and it was for truth. If any perish by Sea, or otherwise dye, sometimes leauing their Friends and Acquaintance, they appeare very heauie, being demanded whither they goe, and from whence, they answer they are brought to *Hecla*, vnder a cruell Master the *Devill*, and so vanish. And they are bewitched of Satan, that they thinke them the foules of the departed.

But because no man that is well in his wits, will thinke that Hell is in this Mountayne, yet it may be demanded, whence the Hill hath this matter, whereby it should bring forth so many yeres flames, so many ashes, and such abundance of Pumis stones? For wee see the most foule come to passe, that the flames shall once be extingished: for the cause sayling, they deny that any effects can follow. But heere (what I thinke) I will freely speake, yet sauing other mens iudgements. It is manifest by many Meteors, that there is a continuall generation of water, by the vapours gathered together in the cunities of the Earth; which issue forth by Fontaynes; but the efficient and materiall causes abiding perpetually, the effects also continually remayne: so also in the bowels of the Earth, there are certayne places, which by their owne nature draw vnto them a hote and dry exhalation, and that it reliques it into flames, ashes, and Pumis stones, which may easily be done in this Mountayne, by reason of the Sulphur matter, which is found in *Island* throughout the whole Land. And as Fontaynes send forth more abundance of water in the Winter time, then in the Summer, nay, some of them are dry, because matter failes; so is it with this Mountayne: for sometimes matter failing, it hath neither flames, nor smoke, and all is quiet, whereby it appeareth that the matter and efficient cause faile. However it bee. I know this, that no man may come to the foot of the Mountayne without danger and feare, as hereafter shall be declared.

Strange Story.

The same yeere I was in *Island*, the nine and twentieth of Nouember, about midnight in the Sea, nere *Hecla*, there appeared a flame, which gave light to the whole *Island*, so that all of vs astonished, wondered, and carefully expected the issue thereof: the elder sort and such as were skillfull in this matter, said, that this light came out of the place: after the Earthquake followed a horrible cracke, that if all warlike Ordnance had bene discharged, it had bene nothing to this terror. It cannot be thought, much lesse exprest by word, how horrible it was. Wee thought that the whole frame of the World would fall, and that the last Day was at hand: but it was

knowne afterwards that the Sea went backe two leagues in that place, and remayned dry.

About the beginning of Iuly, at a certayn time of the yeere great flocks of Ice suddenly floeth to the *Island* about *Hecla*, and there goes a rumour through the whole *Island*, nay it is beleued, that the damned foules are tormented in this Ice by course, in the Flame, in the Mountayne, and after in the Ice. This Ice for three whole monteth swimmeth only about *Hecla*. If you take a deere part of this Ice out of the Sea, and wrap it in a linnen cloth, and lay it vp in a Chett, it remayneth so long vnmetled, as it swimmeth in the Sea; but if the Ice in the Sea vanish, which suddenly in one night happeneth, this appeareth not, nor leaueh any signe of moysture in the linnen cloth, which is not a hard thing for Satan to doe, to take away the Ice without moysture, to increase their incredulitie. *Olau Magnus maketh mention of the Ice in his cleuish Booke.* But because I determined to search out all things diligently, I layled out without great feare vnto this Ice, and I obserued, that this Ice was violently cast against the Rocks by force of the winds, and so made a mournfull sound shure off, as if miserable howlings were heard there. Hereupon the *Islanders* thinke the foules of the damned are tormented in this Ice.

Of the Riches of the Islanders.

I haue said that *Island* was a rough and snowie Country, and besides, it is full of Rocks and Stones; and so truly, that there is not a field in the whole *Island*: they haue not so much as Gardens, wherein they may haue Pot-herbes or Pulse: they know no kinde of Corne nor Apples, Peares, nor Cherries, nor any fruit of Trees. And which is almost incredible, they neither vse Bread nor Salt, yet they are well liking, and strong. There is no Citie in the whole *Island*: they seldom haue two or three dwellings together. They haue their Cottages on the Sea side for fishing, and vnder ground by reason of the fierce winde.

There is no lone of money among them, for wares are changed for wares. Brimstone groweth on the South part, and almost throughout the whole *Island*, which is digged out in great abundance: they sell this stuffe purged for a small price. Mines of Gold or Silver, nor of any other metall they haue none. They vse Iron, but such as is brought vnto them. You shall scarce finde a man, who hath not Iron Nuyles in a Bagge, wherewith Horse-shoes are fastened.

All their houses are vnder ground, for they haue no matter for building. There is not a tree in the whole *Island*, except the Birch-tree, and that in one place, which also exceedeth the stature of a man in length, and that by reason of the vehemencie of the winds, that it cannot grow higher. This Birch-tree after the Summer *Solstium* begins first to bud, the leaves haue a most sweet smell, and of so fragrant a fauour, that the *Germans* put them in their Tents, and vpon their meats for a singular delight. Yet sometimes great abundance of Firre-trees from *Tartaria*, or ellic-where carried by force of the waues and the Ice, arriued in *Island*. The chiefe vse of them is in building Cabbins vnder the ground: you shall scarcely finde a house out of the earth, by reason of the strong winds, which sometimes ouerthrow Houses and their Riders. They haue great plenty of Butter, for the fatnes of the graffe for the *Island* graffe is so fat,

that the Oxen after a certaine time are to be diuised from their Chieft with singular care for their garments. The most part (for Exercise of Vexilla) lay their Butts aside in the corners of their Houses (as we doe Linne or other matter) and that without Salt: They haue domesticall cattlie, as kine; but many of them are without homes. All their Hories are amblers & very fit for carrying of burdens. Their kine, horses, and sheepe, they haue very great sheepe, they keepe not a Hogge nor a Hen, for want of graine, if fodder or hay faile them in the Winter, they feed their cattlie with fish. They haue rough Dogs bred without tayle and eares for their pleasure, which they sell deere and greatly esteemed, when notwithstanding they offer their children to any that will aske them, and that freely. Besides, this *Island* hath white Foxes, and huge Beares of the same colour. They haue no Birds but water-fowle, whereof there are diuers kinds and sorts found there, unknowne vnto vs. Crows, Fowles are changed white; and excellent Falcons, and some among them white which being taken and gotten, with the great oile of the *Sparrow* and *Partridge* are also carried away in great number, which thing was done, while I was in *Island*, to my great profit. *Island* also hath white Partridges. There are also euery where through the whole *Island* most pleasant Riues, which yield Riues, the Inhabitants fish in great plenty, Salmon Trows, and Sturgeons. There is one only brige in all the *Island*, made of the bones of a Whale. They that goe from one part of the *Island* to another by the Continent, haue no way which they may follow, for the solitarie the: of: but as Say- lers in the Sea, so they by the helpe of the Load-stone performe their journeyes. The depth of the Sea nere *Island* is very exceeding. In these gulfs there are Whales of wonderful hignes, and many 60 Sea-monsters which cannot be killed or taken of men, the Ice only through the force of the winds dasheth them against the Rocks, and killeth them. I saw such a Monster cast vpon the shore dead, whose length was thirty ellis, his height more then a very long Warlike Pike.

A Whale being dead or killed, the Inhabitants make Buildings and Dwellinges of the Huge Whales bones thereof with great dexterie and skill, they make also seats, benches, tables, and other

R k k

ven-

Hecla a burning Hill.

Concept of Purgatorie.

Collusions of men, or Illusions of Devils. Anguine tone of *Island* is called as fabulous.

Another word.

No fruit.

Barren.

Buried.

Birch trees.

Great winds.

Fat graffe.

Their kine, horses, and sheepe.

Dogs of more price then children.

Beares and Foxes.

White Crows.

Whale-bone-bridge.

Trouell by calamitie.

Whales.

Huge Whales.

venfils, smoothing them so that they seeme like Ivory. They that sleepe in these houses, and said alwayes to dreame of shipwrack. And although it bee a huge and fearful creature, and huge great strength, yet notwithstanding oftentimes he is not onely withstood, but overcome of his hide-downe, and upon his backe very sharpe and long finnes, wherewith hee woundeth the soft of the belly of the Whale, and killeth him, and the Whale to feareth this fish, that in flunning him, he often daunteth himselfe against the thoare.

The *Iceland* Sea hath a Monster also, whose name is unknowne. They judge it a kinde of Whale at the first sight, when hee shewes his head out of the Sea, bee so feareth men that they fall downe almost dead. His square head hath flaming eyes, on both sides fenced with long homes, his body is blacke, and beset with blacke quills; if he be seene by night, his eyes are fiery, which lighten his whole head, which he putteth out of the Sea, nothing can either bee painted or imagined more fearful. *Olaus Magnus* maketh mention of this Monster in his *Historie Book*, and saith, that it is twelve cubits long. Such a Monster at that time tore in pieces with his teeth a Fisher-boate, wherein there were three Fisher-men, so that they were drowned, one of them, who held in his hand a little cord, wherewith hee used to draw the hooke, and the fishes, laid hold of the boord which floated in the Sea, so he was saved getting out of the bottom upon the plank and swam forth, and declared this to the Kings Governour in my presence, adding moreover that he was sued from heaven, that he might get maintenance for his children, who otherwise were ready to perish with hunger, when the other two though married, yet without children.

Another Monster also is often there seene and taken, of ten or twelve elles long, it is called *Harful*, it is all fat; it is taken after a wonderfull manner: they have a very long pike wherunto they fasten an Iron with a forked point, that it cannot goe backe, unto the faine a cord of a marvellous length is fastned; they sticke this speare in the Monster, which swimmeth vnto it for prey, perceiving a man in the little boates; as soone as the Monster teares himselfe forsaken and wounded, forthwith he hides himselfe in the Deepe, and there (his blood being poured out) dyes, afterward the Fishers draw him to the land by the long cords fastned to the speare.

Besides, it hath divers Sea Monsters: a Dogge fish, which putting his head out of the Sea barketh, and receiveth his wifely sport in the Sea againe into his belly, while they come to rest in expelling the shape of all earthly Creatures and Fowles in the Sea. Neither should any man perswade me that these things are true, although ten *Aristotels* should affirme them vnto me, vntill I had seene most of them with mine eyes. Let no man therefore presently cry out, that what he knowes not is fabulous.

The men of *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, and *Breme*, were often wont to goe to this Island, and lease their servants in the winter lodgings; but now it is prouided by the Kings authority, that no *Germaine*, either by reason of trading or learning of the language, leave his servants there in the winter; but upon what occasion this came to passe, the matter standeth thus. In the yeere of Christ 1561. there was a Citizen of *Hamburg*, one *Conradus Bloem*, left by an other in *Iceland* in the winter lodgings with the Bishop in *Scalvolden*, for trading and learning of the tongue: the 40 Bishops fathers find a whole Vnicorne horn in the Ice, brought out of *Groneland* (as it is thought) where yet at this day Vnicorns are said to be, & thinking it to be a Whales tooth, nor did the Bishop beleue otherwise, they bring it to their Master, who gave it to *Conradus* begging it, he being somewhat craftie, sold it after at *Amberg* for some thousands of Florins. When this thing came to the King of *Denmarke* eares, he forbade that no *Germaine* should winter in *Iceland* in any cause.

Of the iudgement of the Islanders.

There is a most pleasant place almost in the midst of the Island, you would say it were a Paradise in the Spring time, where sometimes there was a high Mountaine, which burned with inward fire, as *Hecle* doth at this day; which matter after it was consumed, made aaine a Plain, but the Rocks which were erected about the Mountaine, stand yet, therefore this place is so feared by Nature, that they enter it, must goe one by one. This place is famous for two great falls of water, where two Rivers from the highest Rocks cast themselves steepe downe one against the other, with an astonishing and horrible dashing of the waters against the Rocks. These Rivers meete together in the middle of the field, and by a great whirlepoole are swallowed vp into the ground.

Here yearly the nine and twentieth of Iune, the Inhabitants who have any controuersie, meete together: for in no other place or time Iustice is administered: after they are entred, standings are placed by the Governours guard, who admit all that desire to come in, no man hath liberty to goe out, without the consent and authority of the Governour. When they are come thither, the Governour offereth his Charter to be publicly read, whereby hee procureth credit to his Office, and having spoken before somewhat of the Kings goodwill, and his owne towards the Islanders, he exhorteth them to communicate Iustice vnto all, without respect of persons, hee after

after departure, and keeps himselfe in his Tent, hearing heard a godly Sermon, the twelue men, whom they call *Lochmaders*, as it were men of Iustice, sit downe on the ground, each of them hath a Booke in his hand, containing the Law of that land, written in the vulgar tongue. Accusation and answer being made, they goe apart into several places, eury one reads out his Booke diligently, going afterwards againe to his place, without Scribe, without replication or doubling, and sayings of such brabbling Lawyers, they confesse of the sentence and pronounce it: If any thing bee worthy of deliberation, it is brought to the Governour for consultation and for his honours sake, when notwithstanding they leaue no power of deciding it to him.

There are many accusations of Theft and Adulteries, they make no question of their Bonds, if their Fees, their Hereditary fields, or any summe of money: there are no controuersies there. These twelue men, our which one is chiefe, are greatly honoured among them. These doe determine, and diligently inquire of all publique Controuersies. If there bee any wicked Act committed that yeere, if Murder be committed any where, if Theft, if Adultery, if Cattle be stolen away (which vltioeth off to be done) then these men let downe the punishment. They that are condemned to dye, are beheaded: the rest, who are any way to be punished, they burne with a marker, this punishment which is accounted in the number of wicked men: others are beaten with roddes: and I saw when the Father and the Sonne for their (for they were Cattel dealers) were held Captiues, that the Father was compelled to beate his Sonne with roddes, and hee afterwards beheaded.

Of Groneland.

Iceland by Nature is somewhat long, it hath *Norway* on the East, the *Oreades* and *Scotland* on the South, *Groneland* on the West, and the *Hyperboreas* or *Compedes* Sea upon the North. Although I purposed to passe over *Groneland* with silence, yet feeling I touched upon the Land, and saw some few things, I thought it was to be added. There was in a certaine Monasterie in *Iceland* called *Helgafel*, a certaine little Monke left (for the Abbot of the Monasterie had conuered the Reuenues to the Kings use) who liued miserably there: hee was borne in *Groneland*, of a darke complexion and broad face. The Governour commanded him to be brought vnto him, that hee might know some certainte of the fate of *Groneland*. Hee layd, there was a Monasterie of Saint *Thomas* in *Groneland*, into which his Parents thrust him when hee was but young, and after that, hee was taken out by the Bishop of *Groneland*, when hee was thirtie yeeres of age, to saile with him into *Norway*, to the Archbishop to *Nidaros* (or *Dramen*) to whom the *Iceland* Bishops are subiect: in his returne hee was left in a Monasterie by the Bishop, whose Country *Groneland* was: this was done (as hee layd) 1546. Hee said, that land was called *Groneland*, Antiphrastically. For that it is liddome or neuer waxeth greene, and that there is a great cold there throughout the whole yeere, except Iune, Iuly and August, that being clothed and couered with Furs, they could scarce bee warme; and that they had at home certayne round peeces of wood, which being continually moued with the furs, kept their feet warme. Hee layd, it aboundeth as *Iceland* doth with Fishes, and that they had Beares and white Foxes, nay 40 *Pigmies*, and *Encornes*, and that day did not appeare, till the Sunne had runne through *Pysen*.

This Monke told vs marvellous strange things: that there was in the Monasterie of Saint *Thomas* (where hee liued) a Fontaine, which sent forth burning and flaming water, that this water was conueyed through pipes of Bone, to the severall Cells of the Monkes, and that it made them warme, as Stroues doe with vs; and that all kinde of meates might bee boyled in this Fontaine and ferrie water, nor otherwise, then if it had beene fire indeede. Hee added moreover, that the walls of the Monasterie were made of Pumice stones, out of a certayne Mountayns (not farre from the Monasterie) like to *Hecle*: for if yee powre these burning Waters upon the Pumice stones, there will follow a flmie matter, which in stead of Lime they vie for Morter.

After the Governours conference with the Monke, I came of prime vnto him, to demand certayne particular things touching the *Pigmies* and other things; hee had little skill in the *Latine* tongue, hee vnderstood mee speaking *Pigme*, but answered by an Interpreter. Hee layd, the *Pigmies* represent the most perfect shape of Man, that they are hairy to the vntremost joynts of the fingers, and that the Males haue beards downe to the knees. But although they haue the shape of men, yet they haue little sense or vnderstanding, nor distinct speech, but make those of a kinde of hissing after the manner of Geefe; that his Abbot kept two of them in his Monasterie, male and female, but they liued not long, and that they were vnsensible Creatures, and liue in perpetual darknesse. That some lay, they haue warre with the Cranes, that hee knew not.

He affirmed, that the faine manner of food was in *Groneland*, as in *Iceland*, to wit, of fish but not of cattle, because they haue no cattle, & that the country is not populous. Forthwith from *Iceland* begins the *Hyperborean* Sea, which beats upon *Groneland* and the Country of the *Pigmies*, which this day is called *Nona Zembla*, & there the frozen Sea hath a Bay which is called the *White Sea*.

N k k 2

Manner of trials and suites.

Sentence and execution.

These Pigmies are Beasts and Vnicornes, Fishes.

Pigmies, out men haue not sense but.

Of this the English Dictionary is in this and the next Booke, we will give briefe notice.

or *Mare Album*, and there are there certayne passages whereby they sayle into the *Schibian* Ocean, if they can for Ice. And the Gouverneur had the King of *Denmarke* Ship, furnished with all necessaries : but when hee heard (by the Monke) of these passages, and short cut into the Kingdome of *China*, hee affected this commendation, that hee might open these passages and there, but in vaine.

The last day therefore of March, in the yeere 1564, hee commanded that Ship to sayle to those places, and move also together with them, being willing of mine owne accord : and enjoyed me to merke diligently the litation of the places, and whatsoever wee met with worthy of sight or report. Wee were in the Ship threecore and foure men, as well *Danes* as *Islanders*, and we found no Hauens, to the which wee might safely commit our selues, and letting downe the lead, wee had sounded the depth of the Sea, it was such as wee could not anchor there, and the abundance of Ice was so great, that it was neither life nor possible to sayle neerer to the Rocks (four and twentie therefore of vs armed, with great labour and danger went on shoare in our Skiffes among whom I also was) to trie whether wee could finde a harbour, and what kinde of men *Gronland* had. In the meane time, the great Ship floated in the Sea and Ice, in a great calme, halfe of our companie abode in the shoare to keepe the Skiffe, another part (and I with them) ranne abroad to discouer : they that were left on shoare to keepe the Skiffe, gooking higher and higher, found a little man dead with a long beard, with a little Boare, and a crooked Hooke of 20 the bone of a Fish, and a leather cord : foure fish Bladders were bound vnto the Boate (as is supposed) that it should not bee drowned, whereof three were funke and fallen flat : This Boate (because it was very unlike ours) the Gouverneur sent to the King of *Denmarke*.

Olaus Magnus in his first Booke writeth, that there is a Rocky in the middle of Island and *Gronland*, called *Hutlocks*, which wee sayed by, and that there they haue Ships of leather, which bee testified by mee, but it was not such as mine : but *Petrus Bembus* in his seventh Booke, in the Venetian Historie, describeth a Ship, which was like vnto this, where hee writeth thus : While a French Ship kept her barkes of Trees syoned together, wherein there were seven men of a middle stature, *Bembus* darke coloured, of a large and broad face, marked with strange scarres of redde and violet colour ; these had their garments of Fishes skynes, full of spots, they bore a painted Crowne of redde women in, as it were with seven eares ; they did eate raw Fleish, and drinke Blood, as wee doe Wine ; their speech could not bee vnderstood, sixe of them dyed, one young man was brought alone to the Aultercos, where the King was.

It is not unlikely to bee true, that this Ship with these seven men, were driven out of *Gronland*, into the Britaine Ocean : seeing the description of *Bembus* his Ship agreeeth with that found in *Gronland*.

Wee wandered in the meane season, in a Land vnkowne vnto vs, which was covered with Snow and Ice, wee found neither footing of men, nor any habitation, nor fit Port, but the Sea was closed and fenced on euery side with craggie Rocks. Yet we met with a great white Beare, which neither feared vs, nor could bee driuen away with our cries, but came full vpon vs, as to 40 his certaine prey, and when hee came neere vnto vs, being twice shot through with a Gunne, hee flood bolt vpright with his fore-feet as a man standeth, till hee was shot through the third time, and so fell downe dead : his Skinne was sent to the King of *Denmarke*. We agreed amongst our selues before wee went on shoare, if we found a fit Harbour, or a little place, where we might dwell, that we should plucke vp our stander, which wee carried out with vs for that purpose, and that they, if they would call vs backe, should signifie the same with their Ordinance. A tempest arising in the meane while, the Master of the Ship giues vs a signe to returne, by the discharging of a peece of Ordnance, and calls vs backe vnto the Ship : all of vs therefore returned with great labour after three dayes vnto the Ship with the Beares skinne ; we sayled therefore to the other side of the land toward the North, to the Countrey of the *Pigmes* or *Nova Zembla*, that by the mouth of the *White Sea*, wee might come into the *Schibian* or *Tartarian* Sea, from whence (they say) there is a passage to the Kingdome of *China*, and *Cathay* ; but being hindered by the Ice, wee could not passe the mouth of that Sea : therefore without doing any thing, wee returned into *Island* the sixteenth of Iune.

I sayd before, that the *Islanders* the nine and twentieth of Iune yeerely came together almost in the middle of the land to Iudgement, and after our returne, the Gouverneur went thither, and I with him. Some of the next inhabitants of *Hecla* then came to Iudgement, whom the Gouverneur invited twice or thrice to dinner and supper. These men while they were at supper, reported wonderfull things of the Mountayne *Hecla*, and other things ; I was forthwith inflamed with a desire to see and heare all. Wherefore the Gouverneur commanded me to these men, that they should bring mee thither, and commanded all things that hee desired me, which they knewe there worthy to bee seen. This Gouverneur was a *Dane*, a Noble man, and excellent. I well learned to this man surely I am much bound for his great liberality towards mee, in

The Authors
Voyage to
Discouerie.

In Sir Thomas
Smiths Hall in
London a
kind of Boate
somewhat like
to Barkes found
Sealskins.

A Beare.

The Authors
Journey to
Mount Hecla.

that he caused me to be conueighed at his charge to diuers places of the land, where any notable thing was to be seen. I accompanied with two *Islanders*, and a certaine *Dane*, who carried provision, and a Tent on Horse-backe, I spent foure whole dayes, while wee go through rough places, hilly and desolate vnto this Mountayne. For some Miles about *Hecla*, all was full of blacke ashes and Pumis stones. The *Islanders* aduised me that I should go no neerer, leading away the Horse, which they had lent me.

I, because I purposed to fee, and search out all things diligently ; accompanied with the *Dane*, came neerer, as though I went to climbe the Hill, and although at the first sight we were afraid, yet I would not leaue off my purpose, and by reason of my young yeeres, not vnderstanding the danger, I went through the ashes and Pumis stones alone to *Hecla*, leaving the *Dane*. There was there at that time a wonderful calme, so that I saw neither fire nor smoke. But behold, suddenly in the bowels of the Earth, a great noise was heard, after this followed flames of a greene colour, which had almost killed me with their Sulphure and filthy stinke, so that I leaue escaped to my forsaken horses and companions. Vpon that sudden astonishment I fell into a sickness, and vehement cogitation, seeing these horrible flames were alwayes present before mine eyes : inso much that my *Island* companions were compelled to carry me away vnto their house, with whom I lay sicke two whole monethes : while in the meane time the *Dane* returned to the Gouverneur, and to the *Hamburghers*, and acquainted them with my state. I liued miserably amongst the *Barbarians*, sicke and vnkownes, they had Bisker which I sleept in Milke, and so for that time, I endured hunger, while (being stronger) I might returne to the Gouverneur.

The *Hamburghers*, by reason of the time of the yeere, least they should loose the opportunitie of sayling, despairing now of my returne, set sayle (for they depart before the foure and twentieth of August, lest being hindered after by the Ice, they cannot get out) yet with speciall care commended me to the Gouverneur (if at any time I did returne) leaving Bisker, Wine, and Beere. The Gouverneur hath a dwelling fit enough for the manner and fashion of this Countrey, on the South of this land, not farre from the Hauens of *Hafsford* : the place is called *Eskefod*. I was brought hither of the *Islanders*, to the Gouverneur, who, for our common studies, entertained me willingly and honorably. But although wee were plentifully furnished with all necessaries, yet being very wearie of that life in such darknesse, I expected the ships out of *Germany* the next yeere with great desire.

There grew then warre betwene *Erius* of *Swetia*, and *Fredericke* the Second King of *Denmarke*, which was continued with great craue for ten yeeres after. The *Lubekers* were Consorts and Confederates of Warre vnto the *Dane*. So most part of the Cities on the Sea-coast, vpon the *Baltische* Sea, hindered or intangled with this Warre, intermitted their sayling into *Island* this yeere, therefore waiting in vaine, I must stay. The yeere following, when I had wayted till the end of Iune, all hope of returning into *Germany* that yeere was taken away, and which was worse, the yeerely ship came not from *Denmarke* : and bread and Wine failed vs almost foure monethes.

There lay *Portugals* at anchor at that time in *Island* in a small ship, who came thither to fowle, 40 they caried away excellent Falcons, and white ones among them, in great number. I thought good rather to crosse ouer into *Portugall* with them, then to waite another yeere, either for *Danes* or *Germanes*. And when they gaue the Gouverneur his Custome, he dealt with them in my behalfe concerning the charge, that I might passe with them, and he liberally paid the charges, and honorably lent me away with a worthy Present. Not far from the Kings house, there was a certayn Minister, *Iomas* by name, he familiarly saluted me when I departed : for the time I was in *Island*, I had some familiaritie with him, to whom also I left my Bookes when I departed ; he for friendships sake, knie three knots in a handkerchiefe, and promised me a prosperous wind, saying, it by chance the winds at any time grow contrary at Sea, open these knots, and then remember me. When therefore about the twentieth of September we had sayled, and now *Spain* was in 50 our view, there was so great a calme, that we felt not a breath of wind, and that for three whole dayes. In this calme my friends promise came into my minde, and I desired to proue it. I loosed the first knot, by and by, after one hour, there arose a very prosperous winde, but blowing very gently, I wntye the second and the third, forthwith a Tempest beganne more and more to grow, so truly that after two dayes we ridde in the Riuer *Tagus*, which beareth vpon *Lisbon*.

His Navigator
ons on the
Coast of *Afri-
ca*, hee be-
mentions in
his Preface,
which I haue
for breuitie
omitted.

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of ARNORIM IONAS * an Islander, his
Chrymogæa or Historie of Island: published,
Anno Dom. 1609.

§. I.

Of Island, the Situation, Discoverie, Plantation
and Language.



Island is an island of the North, compassed about with the huge Ocean: whose Colmographicall latitude towards the North, to wit, at *Hola*, the Episcopall Seat of North Island, is 65. degrees, and 44. minutes: and the longitude 123. degrees and 30. minutes, or thereabouts: for I will not precisely affirm the fame, by reason of that fungle arising from the Parallax of the Moone in the observation of the Eclipses to be doubted: which only way of finding out the longitude, that most famous man, *Gudbrandus Thorlacius*, now Bishop of North Island, hath hitherto shewed: who hath imparted vnto vs this longitude and latitude of his Sea: and was the first, that I know, among our Countrymen, who hath delivered any certaintie in Writing, concerning this matter. And surely, that which at this day, and so from the first entrance of Inhabitants, beareth the name of *Island*, (while as yet it remayned barren and desolate) had diuers names allotted orgiven vnto it from diuers Discoverers: whereof three are mentioned.

For first of all it was called *Sealandia*. For a certaine Pirate called *Naddocus*, going towards the *Feresian* Islands (commonly called *Feremar*, for the multitude of Egges) was brought vnto the shoares of East Island, through a Tempest, not farre from the Mountayne *Reiderfalk*, (so called afterward) to the Bay *Reiderfard*: who ascending the Mountayne, and beholding the bordering Countrey farre and neerer, found it all Desert. And departing from the Coast about Autumne, he perceived the higher tops of the Mountaynes to bee covered with exceeding much Snow; and therefore, as the present case required, he called the Island *Sealandia*, that is to say, *The Snowie Countrey*.

Another following him, one *Gardarus* the sonne of *Suenerus* a *Suecian* borne, perswaded through the report which *Naddocus* had brought concerning *Sealandia*, went to seeke it: he found it, who arrived also neerer the Easterne shoare, and from thence being carried about the Island, he abode in the Bay of North Island called *Skjelfand*, and wintered therein the yeere of Christ 864. and called the name of the Haven, *Hjefenich*, from the wintering places, or houses built there. But the Spring beginning, *Gardarus* being about to depart into *Norway*, the ship Boat was driven away by a tempest, into an Haven neere vnto the former, and in the same Boat there was a certayne Mariner called *Narvæ*: from whom also this haven had the name of *Narvæwicke*. Moreover, *Gardarus* returning to his friends, called that new Countrey *Gardarfjelme*, as it were, the Island of *Gardarus*, neglecting the name of *Sealandia*.

Moreover, the desire also of visiting a Countrey newly discovered, possessed many. For the third also, one *Floce*, and he a most famous Pirate purposing to visit *Gardarfjelme*, set saile out of an Haven of *Norway*, which lyeth neere the watch-tower or rather *Pharus* *Flekowen*, situate in the limits of the Provinces of *Hordalandia*, and *Rogalandia*: and passing by *Hustlandia*, (misnamed by some *Schelandia*) called a certayne Haven by the name of *Flekowegor*, and there the deepest part of the Sea (where *Gairbildia* the daughter of *Floce* by chance was drowned) was called *Gairbildermata*, from her: nor otherwise then that Sea was called *Helffjuntus*, wherein by misfortune *Phryxus* lost his sister *Melle*. There was yet no use of the Mariners Compass: wherefore *Floce* leaving *Hustlandia*, tooke certayne Raues vnto him: and when hee thought hee had sayled a great way, he sent forth one Raven, which flying aloft, went backe againe to *Hustlandia*, which the faw behind. Whereupon *Floce* perceiving that he was yet neerer to *Hustland* then other Countreys, and therefore courageously going forward, he sent forth another Raven: which because he could see no Land, neither before nor behind, light into the ship again. But lastly, the third Raven was sent forth by *Floce*, and hauing for the most part performed his Voyage, through the sharpnesse of her quick flight attaying the Land, which the Mariners desired, the speedily new chitrich: whose direction *Floce* following, beheld first the Easterne side of the Island, as his predecessore did: and from thence directing his course to the South, found a very wide and open Bay twelue *Islandish* miles broad, betweene the two Promontories or high Lands, afterwards called *Renkene*, and *Snæfjellus*. And hearing by a certayne Mariner (whom hee had with him) a

Sea borne, named *Faxa*, that the Bay they now met with, was the huge mouth of a River or Flood;

Flood; *Floce* to reprove the folly of *Faxa*, supposing so huge a Bay of the Sea to be the mouth of a River, called the name of the Bay inclosed betweene the foresaid Promontories, *Faxa*, which signifieth the mouth of *Faxa*. This Bay, by reason of the multitude of Raues, was afterwards called *Hafnafjardur*: which name *Hafnafjardur* at this day is more specially vied of a most safe Haven of the same Bay.

After this, *Floce* sayling along the West side of the Island, entered somewhat within the Bay *Bredafjord*, remaining in a certaine Haven of the Province *Indellirland*, called *Watanfjordur* (for I vied the names given them afterwards) and there preparing wintering places, he liued very commodiously and well with fift of diuers kindes, wherewith that Bay doth abound. But hauing the Spring time hee was very impatient through cold, hee found a Bay (which entrench this part of the Land on the North) to be filled with Ice of the Sea, which wee call *Groenlandish* Ice. The name From which Ice, *Floce* denieth the third name for the Island, and called it *Island*. Moreover also *Island* of Ice *Floce* turning to the South side, passed another Winter in *Island*: and returning into *Norway* (from the Raues, which hee vied in stead of the Mariners Compass) he allotted it the surname of *Rafnshole*.

And surely obtained these names consequently from the finders, or discoverers thereof. *Island* is not Thule.

For as touching the fourth, *Thule*, imposed vpon this Land by some, I cannot bee perswaded to beleuee, it is true; chiefly by this argument: That *Thyle*, or *Thule* among the ancient Writers, was often in the mouth and writings not only of *Pliny* in his second booke of *Natural History* 75. Chapter and fourth booke, and sixteenth Chapter. (and *Pliny* denieth about the eightieth yeere of Christ) and of him who was more ancient then *Pliny*, *Pythias Massiliensis*: but also of *Pub. Virgilius*, who liued not above fourteen yeeres after Christ: but *Island*, till the yeere of Christ 874. remained altogether unknowne to either desert, as hereafter I shall speake. *Thule* therefore, which *Virgil* said should feare *Aurora* (*Geor. 1. tibi seruit vltima Thule*: where euen every child knoweth that *Thule* is *Synecdochically* spoken, for the Inhabitants of *Thule* not only inhabited in the times of *Aurora* and *Virgil*, but also knowne to the *Romanes*, is not *Island*, which many ages after began first to be inhabited. Besides, *Plinio* himselfe lieth in the later place recited to reckon *Thule* with the Islands of *Britaine*: for, saith hee, *Plinio* amicus quo memoratur esse *Thule*: to wit, of the *British* Islands, for hee speaketh of them. It is likeliely also that *Virgil* meant the same, who said *Thule* was the last, in the place before recited: and likewise, *Pomponius tota diuisio orbis*. *Britannos*: that is to say, the last. Let me yet vge the same argument further, from the age of *Claudius Alexandrinus*, and *Pub. Papinius Statius*, farre more ancient then he. For *Claudius* among the yeere of Christ 390. writteth thus concerning the success of the *Griek* Wars achieved by *Theodosius*.

*Famæque ingentes succintha panarus alas,
Siccam cuncta trahens, à Gædibus usque Britanniam
Ternis Oceanum: ex nostro praelio, ac remotam
Insulæ Belli, transiens inuenerunt Thulen.*

Then blackwing'd Fame Feare girt, frights all the World with Warre.
From *Cades* to *Britaine*, from Our Will shakes *Thule* farre.

But did Report and Fame cause *Island* not inhabited and desert to tremble? And *Statius* more ancient by three hundred yeeres then *Claudius*, in his third Booke *Sylas*, writteth thus.

*Quæquam esse gelidas irem manserat ad Arctos,
Vespere Hesperia vada caligantia Thules.*

Though I should dwell in Arctic frosts,
Or mystic sheldes of *Thules* West coasts.

You heare, not only a slight report of *Thule* come to *Siccas* ears, but that the shallow places, quicke sand, or sheldes found in approaching to the Island were sufficiently knowne vnto him, by the often relation of *Nauiagators*, which sort in the circuit of *Island*, there are none that I know, which experience speaketh: but in comming to the Islands of *Britaine* they are very ordinarie and common, as they say.

The Longitude thereof from the East vnto the West, hath not hitherto beene expressed by any certaine or assured measure that I know, nor yet the Latitude from North to South; save that in an ancient Codicall or Writing I found that the Longitude was twentie dayes journey: and the Latitude (where it is broadest) foure dayes, but the journeyes, as elsewhere, so also with vs are not alike, (yet here I vnderstand *Pygmalion*ed twentie, in the Authors owne hand-writing it is *dagneider*) nor is it expressely wherewith of *Horle*-men or Foot-men. But the Latitude it selfe is not euenly where the same; by reason of *Bayer* on both sides, to wit, from the South and North entering the Land it selfe with vnequall distances. The Easterly bound *Asitburn*: the Westerne *Ranfjeldur* (for the Promontory *Sna-fjellus* lyeth more toward the South, who proucheth out of *Pompeius*, *Pilemenus*, and *Precepion*, that *Island* is not *Thule* but in the name founde) *Tylomete*, a Region in *Norway*, or all *Seelandia*, of which this is a part, still retaining the name.

* This learned Islander published 4-1693, one Booke of Island, which M. Hæ. translated and fitted for the first Tome of his Voyages. This worke is larger in three Booke out of which I haue taken some things which I held conducent to our purpose. In the former worke hee comfutech the errors of diuers Authors which were fully many things of his Countrey. His 65- degrees 44- minutes. Diuers names of Island. *Sealand*. *Nadde* first Discoverer. *Ferrelands*.

Gardar second Discoverer.

AD. 864.

Gardarfjelme.

Floce third Discoverer.

Rauen Guides.

* The Author proceedeth in this dissertation, further then our Reader perhaps would permit vs. The learned and curious may there find enough: and more yet in *Ortelius* his booke, *Theatrum* and *Itinerarium*.

the

the South-west) but the North bound is *Langanen*, and the South *Reiknanes*. The Ifland alfo from the four quarters of the World, is diuided into North, South, East and West, and the Promontories *Langanen* diuideth North *Ifland* from East *Ifland*; from West *Ifland*, the Bay *Raufjordur*; from South *Ifland*, the vast and huge deserts of rough, and inaccessible places extend the whole length of the Ifland. But South *Ifland*, opposite to the North, through these rough and inaccessible places lying between the Riuer *Loefnif*, running through the deserts of *Salsimandel*, diuideth from East *Ifland*; from West *Ifland* alfo, a famous Riuer, named *Alfus*, emptying it self into the Bay *Borgarfjordur*: So that, if it pleased me to represent the Ifland in humane shape, East *Ifland* should haue the proportion of the head. The two more famous Promontories *Langanen* and *Reiknanes*, or bounds; the one Northerly, the other Southerly (as hath bene said) should serue in stead of armes. And the deserts extend the whole length of the Ifland should make the backe, or backe bone: then North and South *Ifland*, the shoulders with the sides; the two opposite Bays *Borgarfjordur* and *Karfjardur*, the one on the South, the other on the North, should diuide the forepart about the thor ribs, from both the thighs or sides. But West *Ifland* should resemble the rest of the parts in the West, should contract and straighten into the right and left foot.

The circuit alfo of the Ifland, is no more certainly knowne; yet an ancient rumour and opinion (as in another place where it is noted) reckoneth one hundred and fortie foure *Norwegian* miles (I thinke) that is to say, two hundred eighty eight *German* miles, *Chytræus* accounting the Bayes; whereof North *Ifland* is esteemed to haue eleven, East *Ifland*, twentie one, South *Ifland* fixe, and West *Ifland* leuentye.

Haraldus Pulcrimanus * swaying the Scepter in *Norway*, much neglected the chiefe Nobilitie of *Norway*: which the *Norwegian* Historie setteth downe at large, yet particular Historie of noble Families expelled by *Pulcrimanus*, more largely prosecute the same, as hereafter we purpose to write. For *Pulcrimanus* not contented with Kingly authoritie, or chiefe foveraigntie, that is to say, with the right of Lawes, Magistracie, and appeale of Warre and Peace, challenged all vnto himselfe, by the right of a proprietarie. In such sort, as very many chiefe rather to leave their Country and rich inheritances, then to exchange their Generositie for flauerie and tributes: for they thought it altogether unworthy and ill becoming their owne valour and their ancestors. Hence, for the most part arose mutuall injuries against the King, or the Kings partakers; as murdering of the Kings friends, allies, or faction; then the exercises both at Sea and Land were rapines and robberies. From these noble Families therefore, refusing the violence of *Harald*, this our *Ifland*, with the neighbouring Iflands began first to be inhabited, and that almost by these steps and voyages.

In the yeere of our Redemption 874. a certaine Inhabitant of *Norway*, one *Ingulfus*, going out of his Country, following the Steps of *Naddoem*, *Gardarus*, and *Floce* mentioned before, was made Standard-bearer of the Inhabitants which were to be conueyed into *Ifland*, and that vpon this occasion. *Ingulfus* was famous for his parentage and riches, whose father, called *Orne*, which signifieth an Eagle, was Duke of *Erdafylle* in *Norway*: the sister of *Ingulfus* was *Helga*, a Virgin indued with all womanly ornaments, and his cousin germaine *Leisfus*; who for a notable fiewd, which through his singular warlike prowess he got in *Ireland*, was named *Horleisfus*. For *Hw* is a Sword. Moreover, at that time among the Nobilitie of *Norway*, there were three naturall brothers, *Hallfenn*, *Holmfenn*, and *Herfenn*; the sonnes of *Atius*, or *Atlantes*, a certaine Baron of *Norway*: who bore certaine priue grudges to the foresaid *Ingulfus* and *Horleisfus*; which presently after the manner of that age, they inuoyed euery one to make some iourneymen Vow. *Herfennus* therefore first vowed, that he would take *Helga*, *Ingulfus* sister to wit, or marrie none. Then presently *Ingulfus* vowed, that hee would aduice none into his Fathers Inheritance with him, but only *Horleisfus*: meaning thereby that his sister *Helga*, by his consent should marry none but *Horleisfus* (contrary to the vow of *Herfennus* for the marrying of her selfe.) After that *Herfennus* vowed, that if he were chosen Arbitrator betweene the aduersie parties, hee would by no means be compelled, to suffer an vnjust sentence. And to the rest after them. Not long after succeeded the Vow of *Ingulfus*, for *Horleisfus* tooke his Cousin Germane *Helga* to wife. For at that time the Marriages of Cousin Germanes were lawfull. From hence arose the extreme hatred, and enmitie of *Herfennus*, against the foresaid *Horleisfus*, and *Ingulfus*: who therefore jynning with his Brother *Holmfenn*, with fixe ships filled with Souldiers, set vpon *Horleisfus* vnawares, having but three ships only, preparing his Voyage into foureine Countreys. Whose violence *Horleisfus* a long time, and stoutly sustaining, holpen by a certaine friend coming in the meane-while, hauing slaine *Herfennus* got the vpper hand, but *Holmfennus* providing for himselfe by flight, and not a little exasperated and grieved through the violent death of his Brother, after some few monthes, came with an armed power to *Ingulfus* and *Horleisfus* surprize them suddenly at home. Whereof they being certified by Spies, receive him with an armed force, and kill him. *Hallfennus* the third brother, wiser then the rest, who

The Circuit.

* Harald Here-
feste finding
many p. tie
Princes made
an absolute
Monarchy of
Norway, where-
upon some
thought to free
themselves by
new di. couer-
ies and hence
was the plan-
tation of Ifland

A.D. 874.
Ingulfus.Rash voyes
and bloudie
quarrells en-
suing.

comforted not with the vnjust routes of his Brethren, remayned yet alive; to whose arbitrement *Ingulfus* with *Horleisfus* commit the whole matter to be determined, holding him mindfull of his Vow, concerning equitie not to be violated. *Hallfennus* therefore pronounceth his brother *Herfennus* to be iustly slaine: But not *Holmfennus* who compelled through bitter griefe, he desired to reuenge the death of his brother, by any laughter whatsoever. For killing therefore him, he commanded them both to be banished out of the Promontory of *Erdafylle*. They readily obey his award, to whom they willingly committed the censur, & with a purpose to leave their Country, they left their Lands and Possessions for many and Merchandizes, and conceiue in their minds a worthy attempt of planting a strange people in a strange Country: and that not to gratifie *Hallfennus* (with whom through this agreement they returned into fauour; with whom they might otherwise easily haue contended in strength) but also for feare of *Pulcrimanus* himselfe, raging against his Country, and innocent Countreymen. For the obtaining (as hath bene said) not only of the Monarchie, but *Possessio*, of a iust Cities Possession: nor was that to be doubted, concerning the violence and oppression of *Harald*: for in the Historie of *Haraldus Adalfridus* his succeeding Sonne it is expressly read, that he was contented with Kingly authoritie, and restored to curie one their owne, which his Father vnjustly challenged vnto himselfe.

It was the yeere of Christ 870. wherein *Ingulfus* with *Horleisfus* first visit *Ifland*, but they inhabit it not presently, but four yeeres after, in the yeere 874. as hath bene said; bringing many Families thither.

Moreover *Ingulfus* coming within view of the Ifland, casteth the postes of the houses which he had in *Norway* into the water, after the manner of *Ethiopes* accounting it for an Oracle, that that place was fatally chosen for his Habitation, which the postes cast out vpon the shore should note or signify. That custome many of the *Norwegians* retoyed by turning vp the ground. But *Ingulfus* arrived not where he cast in the postes, but at the Promontorie of the South shore (elsewhere erroneously, the West shore) called by his name *Ingulfusfide*. Yet notwithstanding wanting the postes of the houses three whole yeeres, at length he found in that place, which is named *Reykjavick*, a man who had erected his Habitation. But *Horleisfus* more strange from *Ethiopic* superstition, feared himselfe in the Promontorie of *Reykjavick*, forsake likewise from his name. There he built great houses: one of one hundred twentie fixe, and another of one hundred thirtie five feet long: who, the first yeere being ended, began to till the ground and sow feed. In which works, when he had exercised ten seruants or slaves, which hee brought with him out of *Ifland*, they sayned that *Horleisfus* his labouring beast was slaine by a wilde Beare (for it was afterwards manifestly knowne, that *Ifland* hath no Beares), but such came thither by chance) which when *Horleisfus* (with a purpose of reuenge) sought in the next neighbouring Wood, he was deceitfully slaine by these slaves lying in ambush: together with some other companions which hee tooke with him: the seruants aswell railing the Wives as spoiling the goods of the slaine; and flying into the Iflands not very farre distant from the shore: which after of the same slaves, were called *Wistmænn*, because they were of *Ireland*. The *Norwegians* call the *Irish*, *Engilb*, and *Sauw* *Engilb*, that is, men of the West: seeing those Countries are distant from *Norway*, to the West. *Ingulfus* pursuing these Murders, set vpon them suddenly, and destroyed them every man in the same flaine, being much grieved in minde for the vnjustly and cruel death of his deere friend and allyes.

But *Ingulfus* found and possessed *Ifland* altogether barren and desolate: on euery side beset with very thicke Woods, and scarcely fertile of any but Birches, so that hee was faine euerywhere to open the Woods with the Axe, for journeyes ad habitation. Yet in the meane space, we might gather by certayne signes, I know not what Mariners had sometimes touched vpon certayne shores of the Countrey, but not inhabited them. For *Ingulfus* found little sacring Bels and wooden Crofles, and other things made by the workmanship and arte of the *Irish* and *Britannes*: but no tokens of culture, or habitation. Whereupon it is likely, that *Irish*, or *Scotish* Fishermen (as also the *Engilb* at this day) accustomed to fish neere *Islands*; as sometimes it cometh to passe, were affoord, and so by chance left sacring Bells and Crofles, the Vessells of Christian Religion. For at that time the *Irish* were instructed in Christianisme as they say. And those whofoeuer were the ancient *Islanders*, they called *Pappa*, or *Pappe*: from whom, as seemeth probable to me, the Ifland of East *Ifland* called *Pappa*, derived the name; because they were often wont to touch there: or their Monuments (such as I sayd) were chiefly found there.

This side of *Ifland*, so much as layle from *Engilb*, *Ireland*, and *Scotland*, is most exposed towards the North-west. Moreover, what and from whence these *Pappa*, or *Pappe* came, I cannot sufficiently speake: vnlesse peradventure from the Iflands of *Scotland*, whereof one is named *Pappa*, and another *Wistmænn*, as we may see in the Mapes: vnto which consigne let euery one give what credit he pleaseth. Furthermore, very many of the *Norwegians*, afterwards boldly following the steps of *Ingulfus* going into *Ifland*, with their wives and children, and great multitudes of their Kindred and friends, restored themselves to libertie, whose names and large Families are recited in the Chronicles; as by the second Booke is vnderstood. Besides it, there recounted what coasts, what shores, what middle-land places euery one possessed: and at what

Ifland first inhabited, A. 874

Superfluous.

First house,
Ifland had anciently
houses, these
now; (hauing
Timber, &c.) &
likewise: Till
age was then
in v. Use.
Horleisfus slaine,
Wistmænn and
Westmænn.

Woods.

Bells and
Crofles.

time

geth diuers Writers of the Historie of the Phœnicians. The words of Procopius are these, in his fourth Booke of the Warres of the Persians, not in one place only, cited by D. Gryneus: out of the which, among other things, I gather mine opinion. The Hebrewes (saith Procopius) after they returned out of Egypt, and ranged still in the borders of Palestine, Moises (who led them in their journey) desired: whom Iolita the sonne of Naoi succeeded, who also brought the people into Palestine, and therein strength and courage far beyond the measure of man obtained the Country, where all the Country upon the Sea-coast, from Sidon euen to the border of Egypt, was called Phenicia: great multitudes of people dwelt: as all witness, who write the ancient History of the Phœnicians; here who when they saw the Armies of the strangers to be insupportable, leaving their Country, founde went into Egypt: next aduancing, and thereby increasing in number and posteritie, when they found not sufficient, and possessed all that Coast, euen vnto the Pillers of Hercules, using the halfe Phœnician Tongue and Diallect, and built the Towne Tingen in Numidia, most strongly fortified in the situation thereof: where the Pillers of white stone are erected neere the great Pyramides, where in the Phœnician Language they call Iofus. This Procopius writeth, to which purpose the Historians of the Hebrewes are cited by Ge. in his second: Iofus (saith he) partly expelled the Canaanites, and partly slew them. The remnant of this detestable Oram, &c. Also And Iofus in that Age, that the whole world was empty and wastefull, Iane the Nations of the East came by parts, and little into the Countrey thereof, it appeareth by the often use of the Land of Palestine, by the Hebrewes, went into Iherusalem and Pannonia (to wit, by their migrations and remoues, which out of the place before alleged by Procopius, were vnderstand) as Rabbi Daniel Kimchi witnesseth at the end of Aduers.

The ancient Islander seeme to haue bene ordaind for great frugalitie, wherein first their habitations or buildings are briefly to be touched, next their food and manner of apparel: and lastly, the rest of the exercises of their common life.

For first as touching their habitations, the Islanders haue followed the first and most ancient manner of his time, they dwelt asunder, as a Field, as a Mountayne, as a Wood, as an Hill, or Valley of the World, but also of the latter Age: as the people of Athens and Laconia, in the beginning dwelt by Villages (as they write) not together or by Cities: and as in the time of Tacitus, (whereupon any man may rather iudge the like concerning the Northern World) he, nor after, mentio any works, which lasted but a while, nor yet deformed in there, the walls were sometimes made only of Turfe, sometimes of rough Stones, adding Turfe in stead of Mortar: which at more notable buildings. And so you might see the Roofs with the walls before nature did ouer-growne with greene grass every yeere, for you must vnderstand, that the Roofs and walls were covered with greene Turfe. Windows were made in the Roofs, feldome in the walls, and certaine Roofs not very high, such as is reported the building of houses with the Easterne wing of the wauens of the Sea; through the miscellaneous testimony of Coles Providence, confounde their huge houses: which yet were a great helpe also; with those which the Inhabitants, as oft as they would, fetched out of bordering Norway, and peraduenture also out of Greenland: for the Islanders layd yearly to both a long time. Every one therefore had the houses of their Villages close almost joyning together on their ground: besides the stalls of their Herds, fenced some distance from the houses themselves. Also certaine piles of fuel, not altogether joyning together, to auoid the danger of fire: peraduenture also certaine store-houses, which being solitary, might better receive the Ayre and drying winds.

Some maintayned their fires with home-growing Wood: others with clammye Turfe (as I thinke H. Iamus spely calleth it) whereof there are two kinde: with vs: the one soft and thick, and therefore more weashe; which peraduenture wee may very well call digged Turfe, by the opinion of the late Iamus: because it is taken out of the deepe Quarries or Mines, digged a great depth out of the Earth. And both kinde of Turfe (but this much more) must be first baked with the Sunne and winds, before it be fit to burne. This latter kinde we, as also some of the Germanes call it Turf: the insinuation whereof in the Oriskander a certayne Oriskander Duke is said to becomen Eimerus the Sonne of Ragnvaldus a Norwegian Duke of Mer, in the time

time of Pulericus King of Norway, who was therefore called Turfarius. He had a brother called Rolfus, whom Cranzius nameth Rollo, who possessed part of France, afterwards called Normandie of the Normans, or Norwegians. The Inhabitants chiefly wanted fowle to expell the dullness of cold, besides other vices sufficiently knowne: especially in the Winter time, when Hot-houses and Chimneys are in vse, heaped together of Rocks and stone, through which the flame might easily breake forth; which as soone as through the force of the fire they were thoroughly heat, and when the Hot-house began now to leake smoking, the cold parts of the Chimney were besprinkled with hote glowing stones: by which means heat viciu effectually to disperic it selfe throughout the whole house, which also is very well so preferred by the wall, and Roofs covered with Turfe.

Yet left the Islanders seeme through meere pueritie or want of knowledge, to haue vnder rated buildings and poore houses: I can to represente certaine houses of an hundred and twentie fixe foot long, and some of one hundred thirtie fixe, as haue before declared concerning the buildings of Ingulfrid: and some of one hundred and twentie fixe in length, and sixtie fixe broad: whereof we shall hereafter speake; some also, wholly hollowed rafters, and boarded feeling of the walls carved by art, report the ancient Historians, of worthy and memorable Acts. They therefore inclosed their habitations built after this manner, with certayne spaces of fruitful fields ordaind for tillage, which spaces through toyle some labour, they afterwards compasse with a banke of catt, to keepe out the Herds of catt. Moreover, sufficient huge pastures were assigned to euery home or plot of ground, diuided by certayne limits, or inclosures from other, wherof we shall speake in the right Chapter. And euery Earne or Habitation for the most part, and in like manner euery plot of ground receiued the name from the first Founders: sometimes also from some other: so Mountaynes and Riues as hath bene authorized before, so that by this means the places themselves, euen by their names only declared to all posteritie their first Inhabitants, and Iammas.

I proceede from buildings to their victuals, and tillage of the field and ground, which partly succeeded well to the first Inhabitants, to procure Corne and fruit from thence: but I know not whether euery where alike. Yet in the meane space, that Haruest mentioned before, exercised his flues in tillage of the ground, and one Gomerus of Loderunda, sowing his Seed, was wounded by the enemy on the ball of the cheeke: and likewise Hefthindus Harnar (saith he) employed in sowing the Seed, was slaine. Hence from the fields there are proper names of certayne places. Hence came that Law concerning the gathering together, and carrying of Corne after Haruest (where they speake of the seruices which the Lawyers call *pradali*.) All which are manifest tokens of the tillage of the ground, amongst the first Islanders: which also, euen vnto this day, I heare, is practised by some Inhabitants of South Island, but with lesse increase: the ground and temper of the Ayre degenerating from the first goodnes thereof after so many Ages: peraduenture also the care of the Husbandmen being lesse diligent, may let the cause since Corne coming from foreign parts began more to be in vse. And because that tillage of the ground seemed in the beginning either not vnto all, or lesse fruitful for Corne, and all manner of graine: a peculiar manner of tillage of the ground presently began: whereby they compassed with dunge their fields or spaces, which I said they inclosed within their owne circuit, especially with kowes dunge, at the mowing of the best hay, to the intent they may the better feede the Herds: and especially the Kine, that they might yeeld the more plenty of Milke. Which tillage of the ground is yet retained: and they only exercise the same for the most part, almost by mid-land Inhabitants: seeing fish as dwell upon the Sea-coast live most by fishing: whither also those more remote or mid-land people yearly send their Seruants to fish. Both Plains, that is to say, the ground and the Sea, was to be ploughed after a sort by the Islanders, for the comforts of life. To whom besides indies of wheat, sheepe, Oxen, Swine and Kiddees, sufficiently abounded: and also fishes of diuers kinde, besides Sea-fish out of the Floods, Lakes and Riues, they met with euery where: so that they might take them as it were out of a certayne weale, especially in that Age: also Milke and White-meate, with goodly plenty of Butter from the Herds of catt. Besides Fowle in great number, some tame, as Hennes and Domestick Geefe, or Fowle of another kind living in the open Ayre, wandering also solitarily in Mountaynes places: which the possessors marked in the first more easily demand his owne. They had also other fowle, as Partridges, and Swannes: and very many Sea-fowle, whose names and properties I do not know. But Fowle of euery kind tame or wilde, they either preferred their Eggs or themselves, or both, for the vie of men. Besides the naturall Drinke or pressed Whay of Milke (whereof the great plenty is so much the better, as the Milke is more excellent: so that half an ounce of water mixed with an ounce of Whay, doth not wholly diminish the taste thereof; but that it relitteth more of the Whay than of the water) they also boyled Barley Flowre, sometimes adding thereto the Honey Combe, or Water mingled with Honey: sometimes also a Liquore made of certayne Berries growing here, Moreover, the ancient Islanders, also

Greater houses in Island in old times.

Visk and Husbandry. Tillage and industry in island.

Beasts: Fowle: Fish.

Drinke: Whay.

Meat.

Chap. 7.
Of Magistrates
and Courts.

Idols, was called *Golems*, that is to say, *Idols*, as was also his *Idol* *Helfe*.
The publicke Offices, some of them are distinguished from hence; others have their original from some other place. Those which are taken from hence, are a *Reppagoge* (that I may deuse a word) and the administration of *Provincies*, to wit, as that partition into *Reppagoge* and *Provincies*, aswell as the *Reppagoge* (for so I may call the *Masters of Reppagoge*) as the provinciall Governours, proclaimed *Alms*, established Iudgements (every one in their Court) and punished the guiltie: whereby it is evident that they also vied the Law of Appeals in foreign Causes (for in their own, comprised vnder the Title of a Magistrate. Who is defined by *Sodamus* to be *Hic*, *Reppagoge* also were part of a publicke government. *Alms*, *bill*, cap. 16. I added, saith he, the word *publicke*, that it might be distinguished from the government of a *Magister*, or a *Father*. If therefore any would desire a more perfect distinction of a Magistrate, it should be such: A Magistrate is inferior, or for government of the *Reppagoge*, vied in every *Reppagoge* of free men, which free inhabitants choseth *gite*, next for the possell on of immovable goods; velleit concerning this latter, it seeme good to doe otherwise, by the common opinion.

A Magistrate,
who.

Moreover, the Office of the *Reppagoge*, is limited by the care of the Poore. But that which by these two means. First, that they should provide, that none should be suddenly brought to extreme poeure: as much furly as consisteth in mans pollicy. Secondly, how they might provide for such as were become Beggars, to be maintained by the common aide.
And surely, they attempted the first part of their office in three manner of wayes: first, by making Beggars of which sort are those, *titul. de exheredando*, cap. 3. *Parenibus mendicis natus*, is to say, So long as he liueth from doore to doore: The 18. chapter of the same; and the first should decaue and abuse the Lawes. *Allo*, *Altera lex de cuiusmodi mendicis impedi cassandi*, c. 30. *titul. cum errandis nesci conuictum fore*, *titul. de pupillis*, cap. 33. to wit, Left liuing from doore to doore, they might beget children like vnto the parents, which afterwards should be a burden to the Commonwealt. *Allo*, a third Law, *De iis qui mendicis non alendis*, *titul. de mendicis*, cap. 2. *Ref. 3.* and of not receiving them, so much as into their house, cap. 45. of the same: a grieuous penaltie being inflicted, if any offended against this Law: in the same place.
By which Decree, what other thing I pray you meant, then the custome of the *Athenians* in times past, among whom the *Arepagoge* inquired of the particular Citizens, by what are very one liued; and provided to cause them called in question, who gave themselves to filthie *Masculines*, who forbade them to enter their Cities, who knew no arte whereby to sustaine their life? and lest any should practise either vnprouitable or dishonest artes: they gave no place to Players, counterfeit Iesters, laughing Companions, Lawy Scoffers and Iugglers. To conclude, Whoso should owe no thanks nor fauour to their parents, by whom they had beene instructed in vnto Vertue, euen with our Countreymen, which in this last age (ah, too degenerate) you may finde waunting with griefe: as the which Constitutions being taken away. Wherefore the number them, who being void of all discipline, *de Paul* is more abundantly increased, that is to say, of some to their common Country, in filthie and filthie idleness, inuening and changing that order, furly many should fare the better.

Care of the
Poore.

The second means and way of preuenting poeure, was a Law or Edict, concerning those who desired to be admitted into a *Reppagoge*, or become Citizens of *Reppagoge*. For none was to be received into a *Reppagoge*, vntill hee had first gone vnto the solenne assembly of that *Reppagoge*, and desired or otherwise of some other time, or so poore, that therefore hee was writt to the *Reppagoge*, and But if any could not be present at this assembly, hee was bound to intreat leaue of cohabitation vnto. If any of honest fame and rich in ability, would notwithstanding goe into the *Reppagoge* without demanding leaue, hee retained his habitation, but yet was excluded from the Law and priuiledges of the *Reppagoge*. But if any wicked and dishonest person had thrust himselfe in with-

Laws against
Beggars.

ing, hee was called *Golems*, that is to say, *Idols*, as was also his *Idol* *Helfe*.
The publicke Offices, some of them are distinguished from hence; others have their original from some other place. Those which are taken from hence, are a *Reppagoge* (that I may deuse a word) and the administration of *Provincies*, to wit, as that partition into *Reppagoge* and *Provincies*, aswell as the *Reppagoge* (for so I may call the *Masters of Reppagoge*) as the provinciall Governours, proclaimed *Alms*, established Iudgements (every one in their Court) and punished the guiltie: whereby it is evident that they also vied the Law of Appeals in foreign Causes (for in their own, comprised vnder the Title of a Magistrate. Who is defined by *Sodamus* to be *Hic*, *Reppagoge* also were part of a publicke government. *Alms*, *bill*, cap. 16. I added, saith he, the word *publicke*, that it might be distinguished from the government of a *Magister*, or a *Father*. If therefore any would desire a more perfect distinction of a Magistrate, it should be such: A Magistrate is inferior, or for government of the *Reppagoge*, vied in every *Reppagoge* of free men, which free inhabitants choseth *gite*, next for the possell on of immovable goods; velleit concerning this latter, it seeme good to doe otherwise, by the common opinion.

Inordinate
men.

Moreover, the Office of the *Reppagoge*, is limited by the care of the Poore. But that which by these two means. First, that they should provide, that none should be suddenly brought to extreme poeure: as much furly as consisteth in mans pollicy. Secondly, how they might provide for such as were become Beggars, to be maintained by the common aide.
And surely, they attempted the first part of their office in three manner of wayes: first, by making Beggars of which sort are those, *titul. de exheredando*, cap. 3. *Parenibus mendicis natus*, is to say, So long as he liueth from doore to doore: The 18. chapter of the same; and the first should decaue and abuse the Lawes. *Allo*, *Altera lex de cuiusmodi mendicis impedi cassandi*, c. 30. *titul. cum errandis nesci conuictum fore*, *titul. de pupillis*, cap. 33. to wit, Left liuing from doore to doore, they might beget children like vnto the parents, which afterwards should be a burden to the Commonwealt. *Allo*, a third Law, *De iis qui mendicis non alendis*, *titul. de mendicis*, cap. 2. *Ref. 3.* and of not receiving them, so much as into their house, cap. 45. of the same: a grieuous penaltie being inflicted, if any offended against this Law: in the same place.
By which Decree, what other thing I pray you meant, then the custome of the *Athenians* in times past, among whom the *Arepagoge* inquired of the particular Citizens, by what are very one liued; and provided to cause them called in question, who gave themselves to filthie *Masculines*, who forbade them to enter their Cities, who knew no arte whereby to sustaine their life? and lest any should practise either vnprouitable or dishonest artes: they gave no place to Players, counterfeit Iesters, laughing Companions, Lawy Scoffers and Iugglers. To conclude, Whoso should owe no thanks nor fauour to their parents, by whom they had beene instructed in vnto Vertue, euen with our Countreymen, which in this last age (ah, too degenerate) you may finde waunting with griefe: as the which Constitutions being taken away. Wherefore the number them, who being void of all discipline, *de Paul* is more abundantly increased, that is to say, of some to their common Country, in filthie and filthie idleness, inuening and changing that order, furly many should fare the better.

The second means and way of preuenting poeure, was a Law or Edict, concerning those who desired to be admitted into a *Reppagoge*, or become Citizens of *Reppagoge*. For none was to be received into a *Reppagoge*, vntill hee had first gone vnto the solenne assembly of that *Reppagoge*, and desired or otherwise of some other time, or so poore, that therefore hee was writt to the *Reppagoge*, and But if any could not be present at this assembly, hee was bound to intreat leaue of cohabitation vnto. If any of honest fame and rich in ability, would notwithstanding goe into the *Reppagoge* without demanding leaue, hee retained his habitation, but yet was excluded from the Law and priuiledges of the *Reppagoge*. But if any wicked and dishonest person had thrust himselfe in with-

Our things
and hundred
in their origi-
nall, had some
resemblance
therof.

out leaue (although he had lawfully hired void and empty land from the Lord and Owner thereof) the same was to be expelled by force: *Titulus de Reppagoge* cap. 48. To the same purpose appertaint that Edict concerning seruants taken out of the *Reppagoge*, cap. 47. of the same.

The third Statute against poeure was, concerning the restitution of priuate losse in the title recited before cap. 47. we need an example (shall bee given, first in houses by chance consumed by fire, and thofe of fourts. For if a Store-house, Kitchen, Bed-chamber, or Bed, and Chappel had been burned; the losse recoued was to be valued within fourteene dayes, by five of the next neighbours, as well of the house it selfe, as of the most necessary things contained therein: as of the provision of vittuals, apparell, and household-stuffe daily vied only, properly belonging to the

10 Master of the family, excluding other mens goods, as treasures, and other things more precious; because a man might bee a sufficient Citizen of *Reppagoge* without these. Then the halfe part of the losse valued by the whole *Reppagoge*, was to be restituted within an appointed time, by Subscribes contributed in common, according to the ability of every Inhabitant. Another example of this libellous enjoyment by the Lawes, is, concerning Cattle destroyed by the Murren or Rot: for if the fourth part of any mans Cattle, or more dyed, the losse likewise being valued within fourteene dayes after the Murren ceased, was to be releued by common supplies for the halfe part, as the former was. But concerning both, there was a caution added, that this benefit should not be performed the fourth time; least any thing through too much carelesse, and retchlesse negligence, should procure damage to himselfe, *De Reppagoge* cap. 47. or 48.

20 The other part of the Office of the *Reppagoge* was employed about the care of the poore, concerning the maintaining of the same, and the contribution of almes as were now become beggars, either through sickness or age, or other casualties not in their own power: and also concerning the excluding of others, who should not appertaine vnto the almes, and diuers cases thereof vnto belonging. This almes was either priuate or publicke. Priuate, for the which a Law was made concerning the receiving of the beggars, into the number of their family by their kindred, or cousins, one or more, enabled by a certaine increase of wealth limited by law, and to be maintained by certaine lawes, according to the degree of hereditary succession: For as any was next to the inheritance of the beggar, if hee possessed goods, so was hee accounted the first that should sustaine him. But the next degree failing, or the same being poore, or not hauing wherewith to maintaine himselfe and his, besides the beggar, that necessitie was imposed vpon the second, or third degree of kindred, &c. to be releued.

Laws of
Almes.

Publicke almes was, as often as the kindred or cousins of the beggar failed, they liued by the helpe and reliefe of the *Reppagoge*: every one was to be maintained in his *Reppagoge*; whereof there are precept constitutions of lawes, to wit, what beggars should belong to what *Reppagoge*, and what not; and concerning the druing away and expelling of them by proceesse of law, who appertaine not therunto. Therefore the *Reppagoge* partakers of a publicke Office limited with these bounds, proclaimed assemblies: Some furly both in time and place, standing, or ordinary: others not standing, or extraordinary: that is to say, as often as any new matter came pertaining to their charge to be determined. *Allo* priuate men might call extraordinary assemblies, to wit, they who had any cause worthy of an assembly and indgement. But the signe and count of lauing an assembly (after the thousand yeere, when they had now sworn to the *Christian* Faith, peradventure before *Iupiter* Hammer and battle *Axe*, *Homer* per) was according to the religion of that time, a wooden Croffe, which every Inhabitant carried to his neighbour at the day, place, and occasion of the assembly proclaimed, of which signe intermitted or neglected, a certaine penaltie was inflicted. There therefore the *Reppagoge*, concerning the matters appertaining to their charge, consulted according to equitie and right, determined them, and punished the guiltie: There the guiltie person, if the injury were priuate, was cited into the Court of Iustice by him that was injured, euen without publicke authoritie (which also was reade was vied by the *Spartans*): but if the injury were publicke (or if the partie injured in a priuate offence would not cite the guiltie person, or could not) then was hee cited by some of the *Reppagoge*. Priuate men also had libertie and power to sue the *Reppagoge* negligent in their Office, or otherwise iniurious: wherea penaltie of money fell to the Citizens of the *Reppagoge* all which, and other things here belonging are handled, in *codice legum de Reppagoge*, cap. 45.

40 Now followeth the superiour Magistracy, which is distinguished into Governours of *Provincies*, and Iustices. They were each of them Governours in every *Provincia* (which before I called *Thirds*, to wit, of every *Terrade*) executing as well the publicke Offices of the Courts of Iustice, as of holy mysteries: or they were Interpreters of the Law, and matters of Religion: (although afterward the interpretation of the Law belonged more to the Iustices.) As with the *Romans*, the *Adiles* also usurped part of the *Prætorian* Iurisdiction, Among the ancient *Hebrewes* also the High Priests: also among the *Romans* the High Priests were sacrificers. Whereupon *Horatius* *carm. lib. 2. Ode 23. Victimæ Pontificum fecerunt cernicem*.
These Governours therefore, in that they had the charge of holy Mysteries, were Priests: in that they had to doe with the Court of Iustice and Iudgement, they were Iudges: we call them

Not a man

Noble-men in this place, and the Rate of the Common-wealth governed by their oversight, an *Aristocratie*. The same are called by our Country-men *Gadar*, and *Hoffigodar*; from their oversight, an or Temple (which is *Hoff*) as it were Outer-fetters of the Church, and their Office or Dignity is called *Gadar*; to wit, their name being next derived from their *Ethnik* gods, which the Duty call *God*: that even by the name it self, they (who almost represented the Name and Office of the *Gouernour*) might bee put in minde of the Vertues, Willdone, and Iustice, &c. requisite in such a

And that they might shew themselves such, I suppose the same place was appointed to judgments of the feare of Iustice, which was ordained for Sacred Mysteries; to wit, at the foretold Temple. And also therefore, because the place of holy Mysteries, was religiously thought fitter for *inhabitation*, or the taking of good counsell, whereof there is especiall vie in the Court of Iustice. Moreouer, the Prouinciall Gouernours had their two-fold assemblies, as the *Reppagologies* had yearly assemblies, containing many dayes: *ord. Reppag. cap. 8. Torn. Leg.* and that, as it is likely, yet remaineth in vie; the forme of a *Norwegian* axe of Wood, caried about after the same manner, among the prouinciall Citizens: as we said a little before, of the wooden croffe. This too Moreouer, every one paid him yearly tribute or revenue to the Temple: whereof the Guardian or Overseer of the Church was the Collector: for speaking of holy mysteries pertaining to the Church, I call every Noble man so. To him also came the penaltie of the Temple, and Court at his owne charge. Lastly, the necessity, and specially care to amend and make good what foules the Prouincials, lay wholly vpon him: so that, for the destroying of Theeues and publique Robbers, how at this day we see it every where come to passe, where they make a great conscience to crime, much more to put him to death. These are the Gouernours of Prouinces: *The Nomophylaces* or Iustices follow. The *Nomophylace* was the other kinde of the superiour Magistrate, some-what later then these: of which sort, in the whole ancient Citty of *Island* (for we yet describe it) at one and the same time, there was only one: who of pronouncing or deliuering the Law, and little to be framed: therefore the Prouinciall Lawes began not suddenly, but by little and little, not every where the same, before they had them compact, and gathered into one

trunkie and wile men, whom I call *Nomophylaces*; and whose Office I shall very well describe in the words of *D. N. N. Cragus*, declaring the Office of the *Spartan Nomophylaces*. *The Office matter it selfe, to haue charge of the custody and preservation of Lawes, was, as we perceive by the wealtie; and that they should not suffer them to be abolished, changed, or taken away by any. Moreover, they reuolued that the force of the Lawes might not grow out of use, or the memory thereof be forgotten; but they compelled the Magistrats to the often observation of them, and execution of their decrees. And further, we may thinke these very men were the interpreters of them, and execution of their decrees, doubtfully set downe, or hardly understood, should come on dispute. This Cragus writeth: the same they with the rest of the Nobility, of changing, or renewing Lawes, and also enlarging them, as nomophylaces or chiefe Iustices, tooke nothing away from the forme of an *Aristocratie*: but were, so thorow for this purpose, in whole power allof the custody of the Booke of the Lawes retained.*

But I dare proceede no further with our Author in his Law Suites and Courts, lest I be therein detained with Demour and tedious delays. I am a Traveller, and therefore I have not so much for further, but remitt the more curious in the Author himselfe, who hath added much of their Lawes, and a whole Booke of their ancient Grands, and another of their Kings, both here omitted. The Kings of Norway began to haue dominion in *Island*, A. 1261. diuers immortall referred: which Kingdomes descending vpon Margarete, by her was linked with that of Denmark, and so hath continued about 200. 60 years.

ENG.



ENGLISH NORTHERNE NAVIGATIONS, AND DISCOVERIES; RELATIONS OF GREENELAND,

GREENLAND, THE NORTH-VEST PASSAGE, AND OTHER ARCTIKE REGIONS, WITH LATER REVISION OCCURRENTS.

THE FOURTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

A Voyage set forth by the Right Worshippfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, and the rest of the Muscovic Company, to Cherry Island: and for a further discoverie to be made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in the Ship called the Amittie, of burishen seauentie tuns; in the which IONAS POOLE was Master, hauing foureteene men and one boy: A.D. 1610.



THE first of March 1609. I wayed at Black-wall and went to *Grave-send*. The third day I went downe to the *Norse-head*. The ninth, we wayed and put out to Sea (blessed bee God :) and by the fiftenth day I was in the Bay of *Rosse*, on the Coast of *Norway*, in Latitude 65. degrees: at what time the wind came Northwesterly, and blew extreme fierce, with great store of Snow and Froell. The sixteenth day, we had the like weather and winds, so that we could not maintaine a mayne-courfe, and we lost some of our Beere. The seventeenth day, we had Snow, and all the Beak-head was so laden with Ice, that it seemed a firme lump, and the wind at North, which blew so fierce that we could not maintaine a fore-courfe, and draue vs backe to the altitude 65. degrees, 56. minutes. The forme continued to exceeding violett, that I was faine to spoone before it fortie eight houres, and in that time we were driven as farre to the Southwards as *Shetland*. And being faine by the Land, and seeing no likelihood of faire weather, I got a Fisher-man to conduct mee to a good Harbour, called *Hamer-ford*, not so much to eschew the stormy weather, as to stop some leakes, and so amend our tackling. I tarried in *Shetland* till the twelfth of April 1610. at which time the wind was Southerly. The former wind came to the North at midnight, with great store of Snow, which froze as fast as it fell: which wind continued till the fourteenth at noone. At two of the clocke it came to the East north-east, and I stood to the Northwards, after many stormes, much cold Snow, and extreme Froell. I had sight of the North-cape the second day of May. Then I stood towards *Cherry Island*, the winde being at West North-west. The third day at noone, the Cape bare South South-east; seauenteene leagues off, we had much Snow with Froell. The fourth day, it was thicke weather

A.D. 1609.
Second Compt.
Aug.

* The Min-
style without
a Bonnet.

* The Per-
style without
a Bonnet.

Hamer-ford in
Shetland.

North Cape
seuenty leagues
from us.
May the us-
cond.

The three and twentieth day, at an East North-east Sunne, I was within three leagues of Cape-red: this day it was faire weather, and I took the Sunnes height at twelue of the clocke, and found it to be 32. degrees 30. minutes, the declination being 22. degrees 13. minutes, the distance of the Pole from my Zenith, was 1.1. degrees 17. minutes, the complement thereof being 78. degrees and 43. minutes, the Poles altitude. All this day it was I had a line with it this day, or the like, I should have given it another name. Here I tried to take which I called *Fayer-land*, this *Farland*, and *Cape-cold*, and *Black-point*, are all one land. At view of the clearest night, the wind came to the North North-west, then I determined to goe thereat at the Top-mall-head, neither could I see any open water in it. At a North Sun, the wind came to the North-east, and by North, then I stood to the Northwards, as before.

The four and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the wind came to the South-west, faire weather and warme. At a North North-east Sun, I took the Meridian Altitude, which was eleven degrees above the Horizon, and by working accordingly, I found the elevation of the Pole above the Horizon, to be 78. degrees, 37. minutes. The five and twentieth day, at an East-South-east Sun, I set the boat to the land, near *Fayer-land*, and it being calme I found the five fathoms and thirte, and thirte fathoms freamy ground. At a South-east Sunne, the Boat came

aboard laden with Wood, and some Whales fins. The men told me there was great Mate of Moris in the Sea, about the shore, and about thirte on Land. Immediately I sent late Mohories, and also to search what other thing they should buy to find that might prove beneficiall. Moreover I was certified, that all the Ponds and Lakes were vnfrozen, they being hauled, and my opinion is such me in hope of a milde Summer here, after to fowle a beginning as I sayed thus way, by the Poles, any unknown way whatsoever, by reason the Sun doth give a little heat in this climate, and the Ice, I mean that that freezeeth here, is nothing so huge as I have seen in 75. degrees.

The five and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the Boat came aboard againe, having slain two Moris, at twelue at midnight the wind came to the North, and blew so hard, that I was enforced to try with a Mayne-crooke, cold frothy weather, with snow. The layd wind and weather continued till a South Sun, the seven and twentieth day, at eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North-west and by West faire weather, then I stood towards the Land againe, and at a South-east Sun, the eight and twentieth day, I was within three leagues of *Fayer-land*, and standing in fountaine diuers times, and had these depths, 1. 17. 19. and 18. fathoms, within nine, fixe, and foure fathoms of the shore, and when *Fayer-land* did beare South and by East by the Compass. It being two miles from me, I saw the Land beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the which becase it was full of knotte Mountains, I called *Koot*, 40

point, and betwene *Koot*, point, and *Fayer-land*, I saw a great Bay, which becase it was foggy on the fadden, I could not discover. In the Sea, about the *Farland*, I saw great flocks of Mohories and Sea-fowle, I found in the Bay and had nine fathoms rockie ground, I stood to Sea, and had very boole weather, with snow, and fogs, and frost, which weather continued till the thirte day, at four of the clocke in the morning, at which time I was within one mile of the depths, 18. 17. 16. 14. and 13. fathoms all rocks. Then I steered South with the like depths, then did *Fayer-land* beare West and by North, about three leagues of the next call I had some fathoms, 10. 9. 8. and 7. fathoms, then I saw the Bay covered over with Ice, I turned out the wind at North. This Sound I named *Fowle-found*, for in this Bay are three Sounds; this I spake half of, which lyeth in South, and goeth out at *Black-point*: another lyeth in East South-east, which I named *Deere-found*: another goeth in North, which is called *Cloffe-come*, and some nere standing after, with a little wind at West, I found the layd point very shoale, with a ridge of Rocks, where I had these depths, 4. 5. 6. 7. 9. 10. 18. and then 30. fathoms. At a South Sun, the Boat came aboard and brought Wood, and some Whales-fins.

The last of May, at an East North-east Sun, I was within three leagues of *Koot* point, at which time I saw Ice all the Sea over betwixt the West and the Land: then I saw another Point, two leagues distant from *Koot* point, the one bearing of the other North and by East, and South and by West, and it is smooth Land, the which I named the *Gumderd*: very indifferent warme weather, and finding the Ice to be so thicke that I could not passe it, and the wind coming to the West I stood to the Southwards againe, determining to search the Sounds better for a Road, and

for

for commodities, becase I saw no good to be gotten in keeping the Sea amongst the Ice, and at a North Sun, I was in the entrance of *Cloffe-come*, where I had no ground at one hundred & twenty fathomes, and yet I was within two Cables length of a funken ledge of Rocks, that lyeth on the

Laboard side of the Bay a mile from the shore.

The first of June I found a good Road in *Cloffe-come*, on the South-west side, where I rid in June, seven fathomes land mingled with oze, at an East Sun I sent a Skiffe to a low Point, that lyeth on the North side of the Bay, where they found some Whales fins, and three pieces of Mohorie teeth, and upon a little Rocke Island, they saw nere one hundred Mohories, which were there sleeping. In this time I went towards the bottom of the Sound, and due a white Beare. At a South-west Sun, I went towards the rocke, so far if I could kill any of the Moris that lay there, and as we went by the fowle side I helped Deere, three of them I flue, and one of my company went on. But when I came to the rocke, the Ice that the beasts lay on was hollow, and the rocks that was betwixt the Ice and the sea floor sloping toward the Seaghe which when I saw, I determined to go aboard and let them alone, yet afterwards I went on the rocke betwixt the Ice and the Sea: and so I with the rest of my company were killing them, the Ice broke, and Ice and beasts fled into the Sea together, and carryed one of the men with them, so that he escaped out of that danger very hardly: for besides the weight of dead Mohories, and Ice that bruised him, the beasts that were alive brook as him in the water, and bruised him very foute. I had bene in this case, if I had not bene the nimble, and slipped on one side. I killed three Moris, whose teeth I took out of them. Then I spied the Beare, which my Mate had hurt before with a rock; her went into the Sea, when hee saw the Beare, where I flue him with a Lance, and brought him aboard.

The second day at a North and by East Sunne. At a South Sunne, I went to the South shore of *Deere-found*, where I found a good quantitie of Fins, and came aboard, at a North North-west Sunne. The third day, being Sunday, I rid full, having the wind at West South-West much wind. Then upon the side of a Hill, a mile to the Westwards of the Sound, I set vps a Croffe, which was a writing upon it, signifying the day of my arrival here in this Land, by whom I was set out, and the time of my being here. This Road I called *Croffe-road*. At a South-east Sunne the fourth day, I voyaged the wind at West South-west, and when I was almost out, the wind increased with fogs, which made me put back into the Road, where I anchored the same day at fix of the clocke, at afternoon. The fifth day, at a North-east, and by East Sunne I voyaged, and it fell calme, then I went to the East side, and killed some Fowle, which I found in great abundance: and when I was ready to go aboard, I saw foureteen Deere, at whichtime I spent all my powder, and shot but one fowle, with the which I flue a fat Buck. The same day, at a South-east, I went on Land and flue two Deere more. And at a South-west Sun I went on Land and flue a Deere, and took the Faune alive, and brought it aboard, but it dyed the next day. The same continued till the sixth day, at an East North-east Sunne, I had we down in the Bay, with a little foggy tye, that nameth there. Then I sent the skiffe to the rocke afore said, to see what flocks of Mohories were there at three of the clocke they came aboard, and told me there was nere two hundred beasts there at three of the clocke they came aboard, and with my company, and went to the rock, and in going thither I flue a Beare: but when I came to the rocke, the beasts began to goe into the Ice, then I presently went on land, with all my company, and flue eighte beasts, whose teeth I took, and in going aboard flue another Beare, and came aboard the sixteenth day, at a North-east Sun. Then I saw two white fishes, which at the first sight I supposed to be Beares, they had long frowles like Sturgeons, two fat Fins close by their gills, like bodys, small towards their tails, and a broad talle.

The tenth day, I went on shore and flue five Deere, with the which, and them that I flue before I have lengthened out my victuals, blessed be the Creator of the World, which hath not made any part thereof in vain, but to eat in these parts: (which hath seemed vpon the people our Ancestors to be troubled vnto, by reason of the extreme cold which they supposed to be here.) I find the aire temperate in the Lands, and nothing so cold as I have found at *Cherry* Island in the severall Voyages. Moreover in this Land I have seen great flocks of Deere, which have neither buy nor crye to therer: them from the spawning cold of Winter, nor yet as much as the fowle suffer to suffer them. If these fowles haue nothing but the Rocks for a house, and the Starry Canopie for a covering, doe I see where any not man, which hath all the gifts of God bestowed vpon him for his health and succour.

The eleventh day it fell morning, I sent the skiffes to Beach, that lyeth Northwards from the Rocke where we flue our beasts, but when they came to the Rocke, it began to blow hard at a North North-west; that they could not proceed any further, vpon the Rocke they found a Beare, and flue him, and came aboard. In which time I took the beare, and went to the East side, and flue two Beares and two Deere.

The twelfth day, at a North-east Sunne, I voyaged, and having very little wind, I sent the skiffe to goe to the place afore said, and at a North Sun, they came aboard, and brought fowle, Whales Fins, and a Beare, and told me that it did blow very much wind at Sea, yet I had

Two Beares, and two Deere.

store of Whales in those Seas, we are at an extraordinary charge this year, of fitting out a ship and men for that purpose, which ship is called the Marie Margaret of London, in heretofore was hundred and fifty tonnes or thereabouts: Our meaning is, that you do keepe company with the said ship, and not to leave her, till God lend you to the place, where she may keepe her Voyage: which by your report should be at a place named by you the last year 1610. Whale Bay.

And God sending you to the said place, we would have you to stay there the killing of a Whale, or two or three, for your better experience heretofore to expedite that business, if through extremity of the Ice you should be put from your Discoveries. And in the mean time while you are staying about killing of the Whale, you may cause some of your people to be searching the Coast with their Shallops for Whale finnes, Morfes teeth, Ambergreese, or any other commodities, that may be found upon that Coast. And having thus stayed a convenient time with the said great ship for the purpose above specified, we would have you then to proceed on your Discoveries for the satisfying of our expectations: formerly mentioned, which is to discover further: to the North Pole as farre as possibly you can, and how the Land already discovered doth extend, and whether there be any inhabitants in the said Land, and whether there be an open Sea to the Northward beyond the said Land. And in this your coasting the land, we doubt not but you will endeavour with your Shallops to gather up all the Whale finnes you can finde, and to kill the Morfes which you can come by on land, and to reserve the teeth and bladders to the most advantage that may be, the better to leave out the great charge which you know we are in these Discoveries. And to that end we have laden in your cleane Tunnets of emptic calke.

And having from some time in this year Discoverie, and in gathering up of such commodities as to that Coast will afford, and as the season of the year will permit you, then we would have you returne for England, and in your way homeward to touch at the place where you left the Marie Margaret, to see if she be not gone; and finding her there, and that the time of the year will permit, we would have you melt your Blubber into Oyle before your coming from thence, to avoid the great trouble and inconvenience you know we fell into the last year 1610. by bringing the same blubber in Blubber. But if the said ship should chance to be full filled, and so be gone before your coming thither, yet we would have you stay there, or at Chrictie Island some little time to melt your Blubber to which end we have appointed Thomas Edge our servant to that ship to leave a Copper, and such necessaries as shall serve your turne for the performing of that business, by himselfe him, and have delivered him likewise advertisements at that place of their proceedings in the voyage, and of their intent, what course they purpose to take, together with their opinions, what course they would have you take.

In these matters of Discoverie and victuals Voyages, the variety of occurrences and Sea dangers is such, as we cannot distinctly prescribe a course certain to be held: yet we hold it fitting to set downe Our opinions of the needfull, which are, that at your first departure out of England you keepe compass together, and agree upon your places of meeting, if by tempest of weather you chance to be separated; still keeping your course directly for Chrictie Island, where we would have you stay. And if at your coming thither, you finde the same shore of Ice, and that there be Morfes on shore, then we would have you to work upon them, at time and opportunitie will permit, alway having respect to your intended voyage. And having dispatched your business in that place, we would have you depart in company together for the Whale Bay, as aforesaid, and to follow our instructions formerly set downe to be done in that place.

And having performed what may be done in the parts beyond Chrictie Island, and so returning backe againe for England, we hold it fit you make your Rendezvous againe at the said Chrictie Island, and there to stay the one for the other, and to be killing of the Beasts there till the last of August, if neede bee. And if it happen that one ship doe arrive there before the other, and no Morfes come on shore, then we would have them spend the time in searching for the Lead Ore, or any other Mineraill matter that may be like to be of worth upon the said Land. And then having stayed at Chrictie Island till the last of August the one for the other, and not meeting together, the ship first having made her Passage, we would have her to returne directly for England, and to leave a Note in writing of the day of her departure. This is our opinion. Notwithstanding, if upon better grounds you shall among your selves finde a convenient course to be held for the good of the Voyage, and the benefit of us the Adventurers, we leave it to your selves to agree upon, at time and opportunitie shall serve.

And for the anyding of an Objection heretofore used, That the want of sufficient victuals hath bene the cause of the overthrow of the Voyages by speedier returne home, then otherwise they would; we have thought fit to set downe the quantitie of victuals delivered aboard your ship in this your Commission, to the intent to clear our selves and our dependents of that imputation, and to lay the blame on your selves, if by default the same be call husbanded. The particulars are these. Beefe, 225 lb. 3 quarters. Salt Beefe 300 lb. Butter 140 lb. Tunnets, Fish, 200 lb. of Haberdash, and half an hundred Linen. Cheese 300 lb. weight. Butter three Firkins. Oyle three Gallons. Pease ten Bushels. Oats-meale five Bushels. Candell, five dozen. Aquavite, thirrie Gallons. Kinegar one rundlet of twelve Gallons. This proportion of victuals will last you seven or eight months with good husbandry, together with the help of Fish, Fowle, and Beasts that are to be had in abundance upon those Coasts. So that we hope you shall have no cause to the contrary, but cheerfully to goe forward in your business, whereby not only the small Barky you go in, but the great Ship may come home fully laden with one commodity or other, which we doubt not but by your diligence and good endeavour you may attayne unto.

But

But if you shall chance by extremity of Ice, or otherwise to be put backe from your Discoverie, or from obeying our commands upon the coast of Greenland, whereby to lade both ships; then we would have you stay at Chrictie Island, or other lands thereabout, so long time as possibly you can, and as the season of the year will permit you, to finish the rest of your voyage. And if there be sufficient lading betweene you both to lade the bigger ship, we would have her to be dispatched from thence with all speede, and you to stay there as long as you may conveniently for the good of the Voyage: which the more beneficiall it is to us, the more it will be for your order, and we will not be unthankfull at your returne.

It would have you at every place of meeting with the Marie Margaret, to deliver to Thomas Edge our servant a particular Note of what goods you have taken into your ship. And at your last lading place we would have you make a generall inventory of the whole Carriage of goods laden in your ship, and having signed the same, to seal it up, and direct the same to our Agent resident in London. And if you doe chance to meete with the Marie Margaret at or after your last Port of lading, we would have you deliver a Copy of the said inventory to our servant Thomas Edge for our better satisfaction, whose casualties might happen by the way, and as any hand to have such an inventory ever readed sealed, and for mortallities sake put up in some safe place of custodie.

We hold it fit, that you Ionas Poole should be as grand Pilot in this voyage to the Northward, and therefore we would have you to accompany the great ship, and in being her to the places of fishing for the Whale; or to any other place, which you out of your experience shall thinke fit to bring her for the good of the Voyage and benefit of the Adventurers. And our will is, That Steuen Bennet Master of the said great ship together with the rest of the company in that ship, do follow the said Ionas Poole's directions, as they will answer the contrarie upon their perils at their coming home.

And for that heretofore the Company have bene abused by lewd and bad people, who have imbezzled part of that which by our great charges and adventures hath bene obtained: Our minds and will is, That you Ionas Poole doe make search in your own ship, that none of our Whale finnes, Morfes teeth, Oyle, or any other commodities gathered at our charge, be imbezzled or carried away by any of the Mariners, who will looke to have the vittuals of their wages paid them, and to be fed with meat and drink sufficient. And God sending you into England, we would have you suffer some of your people to goe on shore as searched: neither would we have you to leave the ship till your coming into the River of Thames, that we give you order to the contrary. And if you chance to be wadded bound upon the coast, you may send up one of your people with your Letter, but not to come your selfe on shore till our further order, as aforesaid.

The like order we would have Steuen Bennet to use in his ship, by virtue of this our Commission, which we have ordered to Thomas Edge our servant to be performed accordingly.

And in as much as we have agreed here with a Tannet for all the Morfes hides which we kill and bring into England, and have sent one of purpose for the buying, selling, and ordaining of the same, wherof we have appointed one of our men: We would have you respect the said Tannet, and shew for Morfes hides, as they will answer the contrarie upon their perils at their coming home.

And if you observe a greater quantitie then you can bring away with you, having always regard to commodities of more value, which are Oyle, Teeth, and Whales finnes, more men of them be left behind; We would have you leave the said surplus of hides in some convenient place, till the next year, that we send more force of shipping.

A Commission for Thomas Edge our servant, appointed to goe as our Factor in the Ship called the Marie Margaret, of the burthen of one hundred and fiftie Tunnies, for the killing of the Whale and Morfes upon the coast of Greenland, or any other place in the North Ocean: Given the 31. of March, 1611.

Y^O On are not ignorant of our employing you heretofore in two severall Voyages to Chrictie Land, The first wherof by reason of our Doppers going thither, together with certaine men of Hull, getting the said place, proved to us a thousand pound loss of our principal. As also in the second Voyage because you could not come to sit fishing upon the said Land by reason of the abundance of Ice lying round about the same fixtens leagues compass: till the twentie eight of July, by which occasion our whole charge of fitting out that years adventure had bene lost, if the refuge to land our ship backe againe from Saint Michael the Archangel in Russia had not helped us: yet notwithstanding that help, we lost by that voyage above five hundred pounds. We entering into due consideration of the premises, doe not impute the cause of these our losses unto you; but to the accidents then happening contrary to our expectation: yet these losses growing upon us in the times of your employment, we can doe no less then put you in minde thereof, to the intent to encourage and stirre up your minds to doe your utmost endeavour to further the business in this year your employment, that we may recover our selves of the losses formerly sustained. And for that end we have made choice of you againe to goe as our Factor in the Ship Marie Margaret, of one hundred and fiftie Tunnies, the Master being Steuen Bennet, for the killing of the Whale: And to that end, as you well know, have bin at charge of procuring of sixe me of Saint Iohn de Luz, accom-

Adventures
and losses in
first Discoverie

Further discovery
to the
North.

Thomas Edge,
see page 132.

Chrictie Island.

med

Finnes. The foure and twentie, and five and twentie dayes it was very much wind at North, which caused the Sea to goe high that we could not land. Yet at eight a'clocke at night I understood, that the said ship was cast away, and that *Mary Margaret* was man by wth bon worchipth Company, &c. with *Stephen Bennet* Master of the said ship, and to the right number of thirte perions, were arrived on the South side in three Boats, and that they parted from two Boats in *Greenland* with nine men in them.

Immediately Master *Edge* and Master *Bennet* came aboard, and I weighed and stood to the West side of the land, and anchored there, and put neere one hundred Moribundians on board, and some empty caskes, and half a vna Mallon. The fix and twentieth day about noone, we weighed anchor and stood to the South-west side of the land, and did not land to hit up two shallops, and And at mid-night I let the light for *Greenland*, carrying with mee two *Biscuits* shallops, determining there to fry the Blubber of those Mories we had killed, and bring it to Oyle, and to bring all the Oyle, Teeth, and Finnes which they had gotten in that Countrey. And after divers winds, but indifferent faire weather. I arrived at *Blacke wall* the last of July, and having the wind at North, I was perwaded by diuers that had gone that way to goberwax the land and the Mayne, but when I was almost through, and in sight of that place where the *Mary Margaret* layth sunke, I could not find water enough for the ship, yet I was told there was enough by diuers that had gone that way in the shallops. Here we stayed two dayes to busy the chunnell, which is shoald and narrow, for we had at three quarters flood, but cleare foot water.

The third of August I got ouer, and about eight of the clocke at night, I anchored neere the thicher by one *Nicholas Woodcocke*, he being in one of the Boats which layed in *Greenland*, thence came from thence that came to *Cherry* land. The ship which I called the *Right* one, *Thomas Marmaduke* being Master. Here we found that hee had slaine above one hundred and thirte Moriches, which were left on land when Master *Thomas Edge* came from *Greenland*, and the Boats *Marmaduke* and I went did determine to kill at my arrival. Altho as the ship was working, we got our Blubber, and sent it out that to be brought into Oyle, and was followed out the tenth of August at noone, at which time having Oyle by the ship side, we put out all the Blubber which was in hold, laid two tubbes and a halfe, supposing the ship had but little enough in her, for there was twelve tunnes of Elkes, which were the chieft of the loss of the ship, and nine tunnes of Oyle, and above seven tunnes of ballast, a Hoghead and a Barrell of Teeth: besides halfe a tunne of Mones, all which was about fiftie and twentie tunnes as the last But went out of her, the ship began to heave, and with all great many men went to leeward, and brought her altogether downe, then every man made shift to save his life, and I death before mine eyes two wayes, one if I layed in hold, I was sure to be drowned: the other if I went up the hatches, I was in election to be dashed for downe at the hatches full of heads. In attempting to get up, I was beaten downe twice and thrice, but I was not the will of God by swimming and crawling I got into the Sea cleere of the ship where a Boat stole me up, and Boats, went to the *Hull* ship, where we found but small comfort: for *Duke* told vs plainly, we should not come aboard his ship, and caused Pikes and Launces to be brought to keepe vs out. Then Master *Edge* and diuers others desired him to let mee come aboard, which hee did, and see the bare bones, and by mine eare I had a fore wound, likewise the ribs on my right side were all broken and fore bruiled, and the collar bone of my left shoulder is broken, besides my backe was so sore, that I could not suffer any man to touch it.

That which followeth being further accusation of Marmaduke, is omitted. And I haue here added out of this Brother Randolph Poole their returne; omitting the former part of his Relations of the same Voyages.

In this our great distress, *Thomas Marmaduke* Master of the shippe of *Hull*, protested great kindnesse towards vs, promising vs passage, and that he would try if he could recover our ship: weigh her, both her Cables burst, and so we left her to all our forrowes, without hope of recovery. Then we went aboard the ship of *Hull*, which God had for our forrowes, without hope of recovery. Merchant agreeing for the freight, we got the goods aboard, namely, about twentie, or one and twentie Finnes tunnes and an halfe of Oyle, and a Barrell of Beares Oyle, about tenne tunnes of more, five Hogheads of Mories Teeth, and one and twentie odder pairs. And if our ship had not miscarried, the Voyage had beene much better.

The

The nineteenth of August, we directed our course for *England*, the weather being reasonable faire, and the wind for the most part betwixt the North and the West: and we continued thence our course homeward all that month.

Vpon Tuesday the third of September, about two of the clocke in the morning, we were imbayed with land, and were neere the shoare before we were aware. Wee steered backe North and by East: and at twelve of the clocke we found our felues to be on the West side of the Isles of *Orkney*, and steered East into a great fould, called *Pentland Firth*, where we being entered, there came a Boat from the shoare, which brought vs fresh meat, and one of the men directed us through the Sound. The Sound lyeth in the latitude of 58. degrees and 36. minutes, and the course North-east and North: North-west halfe a ryde, nine foute high or thereabout. At the entrance in on the North side, there is an high red Mountayne, and the Sound there is twelve fathomes ouer: but farther in the land is somewhat lower, and the Sound narrower. You may sayle along the North shoare two miles off the land in forrie or fiftie fathomes; and on the said shoare about foure miles East South-east. From the red Cliffe there is a Bay, into which you may there North by West, using the West point of the entrance into the said Bay a good birth: for there the water is shoald and fowle ground: but in the middle of the entrance, 30. 20. 18. 12. 10. 6. and 5. fathomes: but we were anchored in 10. fathomes, fine sandie ground.

The first of September at an East South-east Sunne we set sayle, keeping our course about mentioned, leaving five small lands on our laboard side, and one land on our starboard side: so keeping at high Cliffe, which lyeth into the Sea on *Scotland* side, open of a low Land in the found on the same shoare, we sayled out as before is said.

Vpon the day at a North Sunne, we anchored in *Humber* mouth: there it floweth on the change day West South-west. Vpon the eight day we arrived at *Hull*, safely and well in body, but much distressed and impaired in our flutes, which God at his good pleasure can restore.

At our first coming to this Countrey of *Greenland*, the Mountaynes and Vallies thereof, except it were some few places, were all covered with snow: but as we went away, the tops of the high Hills, and the lower Plaines appeared greene with Mofes, and some little quantitie of graffe. This Countrey, and likewise the seas in their parts, are subiect to marvellous thicke and mistie weather, especially when the funne with his odde forcible heat melteth the Ice and snow, whose vapours obscure the light of the sunne, making little difference betwene the day there, and the irksome night in other places.

We found in this Countrey many fat Deere, which we killed with our Peeces and Dogges at our pleasure, which was a great refreshing to vs in that vnquoth place: many white Beares, with white, grey, and dunne Foxes. We found also abundance of Fowle: namely, Culicidines, Gulls, sea Pidgeons, white land Partridges, wild Geese, Willocks, and many other Fowles. Among which I noted the nature of one, which we called an *Allen*, who (like to the great finches, which eat up the small, or like to some great man, which deuoure all the labours of the poore) when fewer smaller Birds haue gotten any thing, then he leaueth not beating of them, till they haue cast vp what they haue eaten, which he layeth hold of deuotely: and so with little mate in their gorges, and few feathers on their backs, he leaueth them to get more, not for themselves but for him. We found on the shoares many huge Mories.

There is great store of fresh water in every Valley, which preceedeth most of the melted snow. On every Breack is great plenty of dried wood, but neuer a bush nor tree groweth in those quarters, as farre as we haue hitherto discoursed.

CHAP. III.

A Relation written by *Thomas Poole* of a Voyage to *Greenland*, in the yeere 1612. with two ships, the one called the *Whale*, the other the *Sea-horse*, set out by the *Right Worshipfull* the *Mulcocke Merchants*.



The fourth of April, 1612. wee set sayle at *Blacke wall*, and went to *Greenland*. The third of May we came to *Cherry* land, where we found a ship of *Holland*, *Cherryland*, in which one *Alan Salmer* an *Englishman* was Pilot. The same day about North Finnes we anchored on the West side of the land.

The fourth, we trimmed a shallopp which I left there the last yeere: and *Alan Salmer* went aboard our Admirall, and Master *Ruffes* sent for Master *Thomas Edge*, Master *Arbuthnot*, *John Mafon*, and my selfe: where wee had some speech about detaying him, and to haue brought him into *England*: but in the end hee was let goe. At a North Sunne we went our shallopp to the South-east side of the land to fetch a shallopp, which was left there the last yeere: but they could not get thither for Ice, and came aboard againe at an East North.

North.

Many fe
Deere, white
Beares, white
Grey, and dun
Foxes.
Abundance of
fundry Fowles,
Allen a deuour
ing Fowle.

Many huge
Mories.

North-east Sunne the fifth day: at which time we weighed, and flood to the Westward, but immediately we altered our course, and flood toward the land againe among the Ice; and West North-west Sunne we sent our Skiffe and Shallop to fetch the Shallop aforesaid. The wind was at North and by West, frostie weather with snowe.

The eight, we flood toward *Cherle* land againe, and were faire by it at a South sunne: at which time the wind came to the South-east, and we saw the *Hollander* standing with vs. Then we altered our course, and layled West North-west, determining if we followed vs, to stay for him. At ten of the clock at night hee came to vs: and the Admirall sent his shallop aboard of him to command him to be gone out of our companie: and at a North sunne hee flood away from vs, and layled North and by East, and we lay by the lee.

The twentieth at a South Sunne we saw our Comfort, and spoke with them, and they told vs, that they had almost split their ship with a piece of Ice, which brake nine of their Timbers, so that they had five foot water in hold.

The one and two and twentieth dayes, we plyed to windward, the wind being at North faire weather. And at *Blacke Point* we saw great flocks of Ice drining to the South. At eight of the clocke at night *Blacke Point* did beare from mee East and by North nine leagues. And three dayes past we saw great flocks of Whales within ten or twelve leagues off the Land.

The three and twentieth we were faire off Cape Cold; where *Matthe Edge* and *Matthe Arington* went with the *Bark* in their Shallops for *Croffs-rode*, in hope to kill some Whale.

And we saw flocks of Whales in the Sea. The five and twentieth we got into *Foule Sound*, all the Sounds being full of Ice; and the Shallops came aboard and brought some Venison, which was very lean. And at six of the clock the *Bark* went with the Shallops to *Faire Foreland*, to see if they could kill a Whale; and at a North-west Sunne *Matthe Edge* went with a Shallop, to see if *Croffs-rode* were open.

The six and twentieth, the two ships aboard laid came into *Foule Sound*: one of them was that *Hollander* before mentioned; the other was a ship of *London*, called *The Diana*, whereof *Thomas Bassin* dwelling at *Wapping wall*, was Master.

The seven and twentieth, *Alonso Salazar* came aboard of our ship, and told vs, that his Merchant had broke his necke downe a Cliffe. The same day the *Hollander* and the *Diana* rode to the Southward. The wind was at North North-west, and North-west, which kept the Ice in the Sounds. The twentie night, we sent the long Boate and our Shallop to *Brokenshiffe*, with a Shallop of ten Tunnes, there to be by vs. The wind was at West with snowe and frost. The same day the *Bark* came aboard, but could kill neither a Whale. The wind came to the South South-west, with frost and snowe.

The nine and twentieth, the wind was at South with much snowe. The same day one of our men dyed, named *John Butcher*, having layen sick about three weekes. The thirtieth, one *Michael Perkins* dyed aboard *The Whale*. The last of May, the wind was at South; and we flood toward the *Foreland* in 79. degrees. The Monday following, the Chyrurgion of *The Whale* dyed.

The first of June, we flood into *Foule Sound*, where we saw abundance of Ice drine out with the wind at East. The second day, the wind was at North and by East, cold frostie weather. All which day we lay under sail in the mouth of the Sound. The third day, we spoke with *Thomas Marmaduke* of *End*, in a ship called *The Hope*; where we sent for him to come aboard, but he answered, that he was not well, and sent his mate *Christopher Naylor*. The same day we flood to the mouth of the Sound, but it was covered with Ice. And *Marmaduke* flood to the Northward; and as we were afterward informed, discovered as farre as 82. degrees: two degrees beyond *Hakluyss Headland*. The fourth, we sent our shallop on shore in *Foule Sound*, to see if any harbour were open to ride in, and to put our Admirall on ground to stopper leakage. The same day, our long Boate came to vs from *Brokenshiffe*. And we turned into the Sound, because we saw the Ice drine out with the wind at South, and blew hard the fift. We anchored in *Foule Sound* in fourteen fathoms water and under ground, where we saw the place where both the ships lay which we lost the last yeere, covered with Ice. The same time we sent our shallop with our Carpenters, to finish the hallof shallop at *Brokenshiffe*. The wind continued at South and the *Whale* turned into the Sound by vs, and anchored there at a South-west by South Sunne.

The ninth, the Admirall Boate and our went with provision and men to work upon *Ypsa* Whale, which the *Bark* had killed; and we stood toward the *Foreland* with the ships, where the *Whale* was killed, the wind at North, thicke foggy weather. And by an East North-east Sunne we anchored in the mouth of *Foule Sound* in fifteen fathoms, gray sand with some shells. At a West sunne the Boate came aboard for caske and other provision, and told vs, that the *Bark* had killed two other Whales.

The thirteenth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The twentieth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The twentieth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The twentieth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The twentieth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The twentieth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The twentieth, one *Bark* named *Chapel*, took six of our English men to him, and they trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunne they went away, the wind at South. The twentieth, the *Byscane* shallop came aboard of vs from the *Foreland*, and told vs that they had strooken three Whales, which brake away.

The two and twentieth wee rid still, the wind being at North-west, with snowe and frost. The five and twentieth, we got the *Whale* on Boate, having shipped her brake. We were no sooner off, but it blew most fiercely, so that the Whales long Boate and our shallop brake from the Whales stern, and were split in pieces on the Ice, that lay on shore. The same day about a South sunne two men came from *Faire Foreland*, and told vs that *Matthe Edge* was come from the fount in the Pinnace, and had spoken with one *Nicolas Woodcock* an English man, which was my Mate to this Countrey of *Greenland* in the yeere 1610. The said *Pilode* was now of a ship of *Saint Sebastian* in *Biscay*, and rid in Ice Sound. Moreover, they spoke with the men of the Boate of the *Duma*, and saw the *Hollanders* Boate, but spoke not with their men. The two men aboard said told vs likewise, that *John Chapel* our *Bark* with five English men had killed a Whale; and betwixt them and another shallop they had slaine another, and had them both on shore.

The seven and twentieth wee rid still, and our Carpenter went to worke to mend the knee of our beake-head. And I went to see what *Morfes* were on Land, where I found mee one hundred and fiftie. The eight and twentieth, the shallop that had all English men in her laue one *Bark*, came aboard for provision, and told me, that they and *Isabannes Chapel*, had slain a great Whale close by our ship, which towed them off into the Sound, and our long Boate followed them. At the same time we saw five Whales close by the ships side as we rode in harbour: and we saw great flocks in the Sound, and within one houre there were so many about our ships and in the Sound, that we could not count them. About a North-west sunne our long Boate brought the men that brooke the *Whale* aboard, and towed their shallop on land: for the said *Whale* had sunke her with his taile. The same time our Carpenter went to worke on the broken hallof, and I went to the place where the *Morfes* lay, where I found about three hundred on land. Then I went aboard the *Whale* to get some harping Irons for they had all, but I could get but one, because the rest of the *Bark* had laid them by, enuying that one *Bark*, that went with all English men, had done so much, because by their good will they would not have vs to have any insight into this business. Moreover, I saw that had the chiefest command in this voyage, did greatly condemne the going of so many English men with that one *Bark*, either for fear they should kill none, and lose all their provision for the said vfe, or for fear that our men should kill the *Whale* as well, and as soone as they; yet was there none of the other Boates but had lost more then they had lost. And as for killing, there was not one *Whale* killed with one Boate alone, five ours, with all English save the *Bark* aforesaid; which lue three without the helpe of any other Boate. This day the *Bark* lue another *Whale* at the *Foreland*.

The nine and twentieth, the broken hallof was mended, and I went to the *Foreland*, to see whether the other shallops would come where the ships rode in harbour, where abundance of Whales were full. The same time the *Bark* killed another *Whale*. Then I managed my ship, and put caske on land. All this day it was calme.

The last of June, one came from the *Foreland*, and told vs, that the *Bark* had slain two great Whales. All this day likewise it was calme: and there lay abundance of huge Whales in the harbour about our ships. One of the whales aboard, *Isabannes* with the five English men lue without any of the others helpe. For they flood on the land flouting, and saying, that it was impossible for them to kill him, and would not once lanch their Boates to helpe them: yet lue was one of the greatest that were killed this yeere. All this day the whales lay so thicke about the ship, that some ran against our Cables, some against the Ship, and one against the Rudder. One lay under our beake-head and lue there a long while. At which time our Carpenter had hung a fage close by the water, whereon his tooles lay. And we durst not molest the said whale for feare he should have overthrown the fage and drowned all his tooles. In the end he went away, and carried the ships head round, his taile being foule of the Cable.

The first of July, at a North North-east Sunne, the shallops came to kill whales in the harbour where we rid, and strooke three, which all brake away. The same day, *Isabannes* strooke a whale, that smit in the side of his hallof and split it. Now were perceived the whales to begin to goe out of the Bayes. The second day, the *Bark* lue three great whales faire by our ships, in lue ten foure houre; which were vwith our long Boate and men towed into harbour, and made fast to our ship. And the *Bark* went with their shallops to *Faire Foreland*.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

The feuenth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which vwith the wind and the tyde draue out off another Sound. The eight, vverid still, and were troubled vwith much Ice, by reason of a storme that blew at South-west and by vvest, &c. The rest is omitted as having nothing of note, but ordinary accidents.

Blacke point.

Great flocks of Whales.

Cape Cold.

Foule Sound.

Faire Foreland.

The Diana of London.

Dutch Merchant brake his necke.

Six Biscayners.

June.

The Marmaduke.

Marmaduke Discoverie to 82. degrees.

Woodcock Pilot of a Biscay ship.

The fourth and fifth Whales killed.

The first whale killed.

Three hundred Morfes.

Biscayners came.

The twelfth Whale killed.

The eight Whale killed.

The ninth and tenth Whales killed.

The thirteenth and fourteenth Whales killed.

CHAP. V.

*A Journal of the Voyage made to Greenland with five English Ships
and a Pinasse, in the yeere 1613. Written by Master
WILLIAM BAFFIN.*

Ascension day.

BY the providence of Almighty God we departed from *Queenborough* the thirteenth day of May with five good Ships, viz. The *Tigre*, Admirall; the *Mathew*, Vice-admirall; the *Sea-buff*, called the *Gambel*, the Rear-admirall; the *Defre*; the *Amulet*; and the *Richard* and *Barnard*, with the *Isle* and *France* shortly to follow.

The one and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Southward, wee still making to the Northward. This morning wee had sight of Land on the Coast of *Norway*, it lying East and by North off about twelve or fourteen leagues. This day at noone, we were in the latitude of 61. degrees and 30. minutes, the variation of the Compasse at *Somerset* was eight degrees East, it being about ten or twelve leagues off: wee having made a North way latic East, about thirte leagues.

The three and twentieth at noone, in the latitude of 69. degrees and 45. minutes, in which place, the Needle of Declination doth dippe vnder the Horizon 63. degrees and 30. minutes by that Instrument which declineth 54. at *London*.

Greenland attained in eight or nine days.

The thirtieth day, about three of the clocke, wee espied the land of *Greenland*, being about eight or nine leagues off. The Southward part of it bare South-east and by East off it, which shortly wee perceived to be the Land lying in 76. degrees and 55. minutes, which is called *Horne-fund*. This Land lyeth by our common Compasse North-west. Within two hours after we had sight of Land, it began to snowe, and was very cold. This evening the Compasse was varied thirteene degrees West.

The one and thirtieth day, variable weather with snowe, and very cold, and the winde also variable; and in the afternoon the winde was at the North-east. In the morning, wee espied a ship, and about noone we spoke with her, and their Master and Pilot came aboard of vs. And we knew them to bee that ship of *Saint Iohn de Lau*, which had leaue of the Companie to fish. And they told vs, that there were eight *Spaniards* on the Coast. Also, wee espied another ship which we supposed to be a *French* man, and had one *Alan Salas* to their Pilot.

A ship of Saint Iohn de Lau. Eight Spaniards on the coast.

The second of June, in the morning, about five of the clocke, our Generall sent our shallop a small Pinke, that all this night we lay along the shoare, to bid their Master and Pilot come aboard vs, which presently they did. The Masters name was *Cluis Marin* of *Horne*, and his ship was for *Dunkirk*, and he told vs that he was comforted with another ship that was his Admirall, the Captaines name was *Fopp* of *Dunkirk*, and that he was on the Coast. We kept the Master and Pilot aboard of vs, and sent some of our men aboard of her, and brought her vnder our lee: and then, we sent their Master aboard againe, charging them to follow vs. This afternoon we took the shallop with five or six men, whereof two were *English* men, and one *Scott*, at the *Faire foreland*.

The Generall was Captaine Benjamin Ingle after his time in fight with a Caracke.

The fourth day also faire weather. This morning was the first Whale killed. Wee had no night since the three and twentieth of May. The first day, faire weather, but very cold, the winde North. Wee layd along the land being about eightene or twentie leagues in length; lying for the most part by the common Compasse North and by West halfe Westward. About nine of the clocke in the afternoon, we saw our three ships, viz. the *Gambel*, the *Defre*, and the *Richard* and *Barnard*, which lay there to and fro, because they could not goe into their Harbour by reason of the Ice: and also, because there were foure other ships in a Bay or Cote, called *Popey Bay*, or *Nickses Cote*: and also other ships on the other side in *Greene Harbour*. Wee layd along the drift Ice vntill about one or two of the clocke in the morning, at which time, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the Sound, because the Ice came drining out so fast.

Dutch ship. No night the 23. of May.

The first day, faire weather, the winde variable, till the afternoon: at which time it came to the Northward. About three in the afternoon we weighed anchor, and about ten of the clocke we came to the foure ships lying in *Popey Bay*, two of them being *Hollanders*, and one a *Rocheler*, and the other a ship of *Bordeaux*. The Masters of the *Hollanders* came aboard of our ship, to speake with the Generall, both of them being of *Amsterdam*, and brought a Commission granted by the *Grave Maurice*, for to fish in this Countrey. But, when they saw our Kings Majesties Commission granted to the worshipfull Companie, they told our Generall, that they would depart this Coast: having our Generall's Ticket to shew to their Adventurers, and that they were there, and had made their Port, and how he would not suffer them to fish. We anchored close by the *French* ship wherein was *Alone Salas*, being ready to fight, if they refused to come aboard vs. So when we sent our shallop, the Master came presently and their Surgeon, who could speake *English*. At the first, they denied that *Salas* was aboard of them: but, being hardly urged,

Dutches Bragg.

t:17

they confessed that hee and one *Thomas Fisher* an *English* man were aboard, who were both presently sent for. This *Salas* was their Pilot, and *Fisher* was their Gunner.

The fourth day faire weather, we road still at an anchor. This day I observed the latitude of the place, and found it in 78. degrees 34. minutes. The variation of the Compasse in this place 15. degrees 21. minutes West. About a North Sunne a small ship of *Biscay* came into the harbour where we roade.

Lat. 78. deg. 34. minutes. Ship of Biscay.

The eighth day, for the most part snow; the winde Southward. This day the Master of the *French* ship, being a ship of nine score, or two hundred, called the *Lagunes* of *Bordeaux*, agreed with our Generall that hee might fish on the coast: our Generall was to have halfe the Whales hee could kill. Also, this day, the Master of the ship of *Rochel*, and the Master of the small ship of *Biscay*, were agreed to depart from the coast.

The ninth day, faire weather. This morning the *Gambel* our Rear-Admirall, and the *Defre* weighed anchor to goe for *Greene harbour*, where two ships lay, one of *Dunkirk*, and the other of *Saint Sebastian* in *Biscay*. The Captaine of the *Dunkirk*, called *Fopp*, had beene with our Generall, and told him that he would depart from this Coast. Our Generall gave him leave to take the Pilot of the small Pinke, and the other *Dutch* men he had taken of his, keeping only the *English* men and the *Scott*. Also, the two ships of *Holland*, with the ship of *Biscay*, and the Master of the ship of *Saint Sebastian* aboard of vs, being brought by one of the afternoon, came the Master of the *Defre* (they having taken two of his Shallops) to know our Generall's pleasure, whether he should have them againe, or no. Our Generall gave them him againe, vpon condition, that he would depart the Coast. About a North North-west Sunne, we weighed anchor to goe for *Horne-Sound*, where we heard, that there were duers ships: the wind Northward a small gale.

Greene harbour.

The tenth day, faire weather, the winde at North, being very close weather. About a North Sunne we came to an anchor in the entrance of *Low Sound*, where we saw two ships ride at anchor. Our Generall sent our shallop to see what ships they were, who found them to be the two ships of *Holland*. Also our long Boate went on shoare to set vp the Kings Majesties Armes vpon a low point of land, lying a great way off, called *Low-nesse*. We set vpon a Croffe of wood, and nayed the Armes vpon it.

Low sound. His Majesties Armes and a Croffe set vp at Low-nesse. Snowe.

The thirteenth day, in the morning, it snowed very fast, being very thicke weather, the winde variable, we standing off from the land. About fuen of the clocke it began to cleere vp, at which time we espied three ships; and making toward them, at length we perceived them to be the three ships which came from the Bay where we roade: the winde also was at East and by South, and blew a very stifflie gale. Then we stood in for the shoare, and spent most of this day in turning vp *Horne-Sound*. And about a North North-west Sunne, at ten a clocke we espied six ships lying at anchor on the South side of the Sound, in a small Bay. The one of them was Captaine *Fopp* the *Dunkirk*, who came in before vs, and was appointed by our Generall to come into this harbour, and there to stay for vs, and to goe to the *Foreland*, to have his other ship which we kept there. Foure of them were *Biscaynes* of *Saint Sebastian*; and one of them was in the harbour where we roade and found the *French* ship: The first was a ship of *Amsterdam*, wherein *Thomas Bonner* was Master and Pilot, and about twentie *English* men more. All the *Biscaynes* came aboard of vs as soone as we were at an anchor: but *Thomas Bonner* refused to come, being sent for by our Generall. Our Generall commanded our Gunner to shoot at him, he himselfe discharging the second Ordnance. Then presently he began to *seefe* vs, and cut his cable, thinking to get from vs: but we haue shot him through three or foure times, they began to weare vs, so we sent our shallop and he came aboard. There were five or six more of the *English* men fetched aboard, and some of our men lent to bring her to an anchor, where they might ride safe: for, there was no more into shoare. This was about a North firme, or eleuen a clocke. The *Biscaynes* were charged presently to depart, so soone as they had filled their water, which, they said, they wanted; and to bring what Whale finnes they had found, or had taken, or other things.

Thomas Bonner English man, Master and Pilot.

The fourteenth day, faire weather, the winde at East North-east. This morning one of the *Biscaynes* brought a few Whale finnes aboard of vs, and the skin of a Bear, which they had killed. Then was our Boate-swaine sent aboard of them to search their ships, and to bid them depart. Our Generall kept the *Holland* ship, wherein was *Thomas Bonner*, to the view of the Companie. This day I observed the latitude of this place by a Quadrant of foure foot Semidiameter, and found it to stand in 75. degrees 55. minutes: the Declination of the Needle vnder the Horizon, is 67. degrees 30. minutes, pointing to the Northwards: but pointing to the Southwards, it is 80. degrees. The variation of the Compasse is 12. degrees 24. minutes west from the true Meridian: but from our common sailing Compasse it is 17. degrees, because the Compasse is touched five degrees and a halfe to the Eastward, and the variation is to the Westward.

76 deg. 44 min. Declination 67 deg. 30 min. Variation 12 deg. 24 min.

This day in the afternoon, the four ships of *Biscay* departed from this Harbour, which is called

Nnn 2

We set fyale
out of Mand-
len Sound and
followed the
Ice.

Prince Charles
Island in 78.
degrees 40.
minutes.
Wee flood a-
gaine for
shore.
Eleven Holland
ships.
We anchored
in Sir T. Smiths
Bay.

We went forth
of Sir T. Smiths
Bay.

We were dis-
cuss backe a-
gaine into
Crest-road.

We set fyale
out of Crest-
road.

One Shallop
to the Northward
The other into
Mandlen Sound.

The Kings
Armes set up
in Trinitie Har-
bour.

Trinitie Har-
bour is vnder
the parallel of 75.
degrees 34.
minutes.

We came to an
anchor in
Faire Haven.

No Whales
were yet come
in.

foule weather to be such, as our little weak shallop was notable to endure, therefore we returned againe to our ship into Mandlen Sound, where we killed two Female Morises, and took their Teeth, Hides and Blubber.

On the tenth of Iune we set fyale out of Mandlen Sound, and coasted along to the Northward, till we were past *Hackloys Head-land*, but then we saw the Ice lay before vs, extending we turned to the Westward, to see if we could finde passage further from the shore. Wee layed as the Ice trended West and South South-west, till the thirteenth day, and keeping full a- long it, we found it to trend north South and South South-west, we proceeded well thus far, till we came vnder the latitude of Prince Charles his land, in 78. degrees 40. minutes, being 10 eight and twentie leagues from shore, but then we altered our course, and stood in for the *Fare-land*, to goe and be helpful to the other ships there for the furthering of their Voyage according to our Instructions (as some did vnderstand them) but contrary I am sure to some of our desires. When we came neere the *Fare-land*, we saw eleuen ships of *Hollanders* vnder fyale, plying to the Southward; one of them came some towards vs, and stricke her top-laydes twice, whereby we supposed they tooke vs for some of their Fleet, which they wanted, but wee held on our course full till into Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, where we came to an anchor the fiftenth of Iune, by the *John Anne Francis*, and the *Delft*, the *Mary Margaret* being then vnder fyale to go to the *Fare-land*.

Here was yet no need of any helpe that we could make them, for they had hitherto neyther 20 killed nor seene one Whale since their first comming in hither; therefore we thought it best not to stay here, but rather goe to *Faire Haven*, where wee should be more ready to proceed on our Discouerie when the Ice would geue vs leaue, and in the meane-time wee might be helpful to the two ships thither assigned for the making of their Voyage, and so much the rather we had, because we vnderstood that the *Hollanders* also set forth a ship on Discouerie.

We set fyale the seuenth of Iune, and met with the *Progress*, that came from *Crest-road*, and was going into Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, there to get some Bricke and Lime to mend their Pot-nack, as *Nicholas Wadcocke* the Master told vs, then we went forth to Sea, and being about foure leagues from the shore, the wind began to blow so hard from the North-west, that we were forced back againe to seek Harbour, and came to an anchor the nineteenth of Iune, in *Crest-road*, 30 Here we stayed two dayes, much wind blowing at the North North-east, till the one and twentieth of Iune, and then in the after-noon the wind came to the East and by South, and the weather was faire, therefore at a North North-west Sunne, we weighed and set fyale againe, and so did the *Thomas Bonaventure*, that came to an anchor by vs this morning, being also bound for *Faire Haven*.

This next day in the afternoon we were vnder of *Mandlen Sound*, and the weather being faire and calme, we sent a shallop to the Northward, to see what alteration there was amongst the Ice, and to seeke out some good Harbour for a ship, and also to set vp the Kings Armes at *Hackloys Head-land*, or some other convenient place.

When Master *Baffin* was gone from the ship in the forefild shallop, I went presently into the other shallop into *Mandlen Sound*, there to set vp the Kings Armes, and also to see if there were any Morises come althow; when I was within the *Sound*, I found no Berches bare for Morises to come vpon, for Ice and snow lay yet vnderflooded from the shore side, but I went to the Har- bour, and there caused a *Croff* to be set vp, and the Kings Armes to be mayled thereon: vnder which also I mayled a piece of their Lead, wherein I set the *Melvin* Companies Marke, with the day of the month and yeere of our Lord. Then cutting vp a piece of Earth, which afterward I carried aboard our ship, I took it into my hand and laid, in the hearing of the men there present to this effect.

I take this piece of Earth, as a signe of lawfull possession (of this Countrey of King James his New-land, and of this particular place, which I name Trinitie Harbour) taken on the behalfe of the 50 Company of Merchants, called the Merchants of New Trades and Discoueries, for the vjth of our Sovereign Lord James by the grace of God, King of great Brittain, France, and Ireland, whose Royal Armes are here set vp, to the end that all people who shall here arrive may take notice of his Ma- jesties Right and Title to this Countrey, and to every part thereof. God save King James.

This is a good lie harbour, and is vnder the latitude of 70. degrees 34. minutes, as I haue found by good obseruation, and haue of Wetherly variation 25. degrees. When I had here set vp the Kings armes, I returned to ward our ship, which was come to an anchor at the entrance of *Faire haven*, staying till the flood came, because that at the Tide of Ebbe, there runnes a great current out of the *Sound*; so at the next flood, we came into *Faire haven* and anchored by the *Gambell* and the *Thomas Bonaventure*, the three and twentieth day of Iune.

Then *John Mafon*, Master of the *Gambell*, came aboard of our ship, and I asked him if he had 60 any worke for our men, for I would haue sent them to some shore he could me, that hitherto he had not seene a Whale come in, but his Furnaces and Coppens were already set vp, and therefore as yet he had no need of helpe, but when occasion serued he would employ them. This day about eleuen

eleuen a clocke Master *Baffin* returned in the Shallop from the Northwards: he said that he had beene at Cape Barren, which is the point of an Island three or foure leagues from *Hackloys head-land*, but further then that he could not passe for Ice which lay close to the shore, and he had not set vp the Kings armes in any place.

On Monday the seuen and twentieth day of Iune, I went forth againe in the Shallop to the Northward, partly to see what alteration there might be in the Ice, with the Easterly winds which had blowne hard since the Shallop last returned, but chiefly to let vp the Kings Armes in some place convenient, because there was none set vp to the Northwards of *Mandlen Sound*.

We rowed to Cape Barren, where formerly Master *Baffin* had bin, and finding the Ice there 10 gone from the shore, we proceeded further to an Island which now we call the *Saddle*, in respect of the forme thereof, more then a league distant from Cape Barren. In our way thither it began to snow, and grew to be a great and vehement storme from the West North-west, therefore we halted and got to the lee side of the aforesaid Island, and there made fast our Shallop with a gruppell laid vpon the Ice shore, vnder the belt meane we could with our shallop: faile to keepe vs from the extremities of cold an harbour: we had here eight hours, and the storme continued during the Ice full Eastward in great abundance and with wonderfull swiftnesse; when the weather began to cleere, I caused the men to rowe to Leewards to another land a league distant, 20 which I deemed then to be a Cape of the maine land, purposing there to set vp the Kings Armes; but afterward we found it to be an Island, and to the maine wee could not come for broken Ice.

This stormie weather continued from Monday night till Friday morning, during which time we had beene past eleuen leagues at the furthest from our ship, yet wee were so farre as we could haue gone, had the weather beene neuer so faire; for at foure leagues distance from Cape Barren, the Ice lay firme and vnbroken two or three miles from the shore, and close againe to it lay the shattered Ice thronged together with this present storme.

On Friday morning we came backe againe to *Hackloys headland*, and there I let the Kings 30 Armes in the like manner as at *Trinitie Harbour*: from thence we rowed towards our ship, and as we entered into *Faire-hauen*, there came a Whale that accompanied vs into the harbour leaving and launching his selfe almost quite out of the water, falling headlong downe againe with great noise; we halted aboard our ship, and I sent forth both our Shallops to strike this Whale if they could, and told Master *Mafon* of her comming in, who also went forth in his Shallop: but it seemed the Whale past vnder the Ice which lay yet vnbroken betwixt the North harbour and the South harbour, for they could not see her againe.

The next day there came more Whales in, and *Robert Hambleton*, our Masters mate stricke two, which vnluckily elapied; the first for want of helpe; the *Gambell* Shallop being in chafe of another Whale, and our owne little Shallop not able to row against a head-sea to assist the other: so that at length the Whale hauing towed the Shallop forth to Sea, the harpington came out: the second was also stricken within the found, and ranne vnder the Ice, which lay yet vnbroken at the East end of the Sound, and drew the Shallop vpon it cleare out of the water; by 40 which means the Harpington came forth. Here we remained till the fixth of Iulie, our men and Boates being helpfull at all times to further the Voyage.

The fixth of Iulie we set saile forth of *Faire-hauen*, intending to make triall if we could goe to Westwards of the Ice, and so proceede to the Northwards, hauing sent away one of our Shallops the day before, grounded with twentie dayes Bread, to coast alongh the shore, search the Beach for Commodities, and set vp the Kings Armes at places convenient, hoping thereby to preuent the *Hollanders*, who now rid in the North harbour of *Faire-hauen*, and were ready for the first opportunitie, to discouer and take possession of other harbours, hauing two Ships to goe forth onely vpon Discouery.

We sailed Westwards from *Faire-hauen* seuen leagues, and then met with a maine banke of Ice 50 which trended North & South, the Sea appeared to the Northwards to be open so far as we could see, therefore we played that way when we had run foure or eight leagues more, the Ice lay so thick on every side, that we were bound from proceeding any further, then we floo: in toward the shore, and being a little to the Northwards of Cape Barren, our Shallop had light of vs, & came rowing to vs through the broken Ice, Master *Baffin* told vs the shore to the Eastward was much perturbed with Ice, and he had set vp the Kings Armes at the entrance of a faire *Sound*, about foure leagues distant from Cape Barren.

Now the weather being faire and calme, Master *Sherwin*, Master *Baffin* and I, went in the Shallop to the place where the Kings Armes were set vp, purposing (because the syte was very close) to goe vpon some high mountaine, from whence we might see how the Sea was perturbed, 60 with Ice, and what likelihood there was of further proceeding. According to this our intent, we ascended a very high hill, and from thence we saw the Ice lyg vpon the Sea so farre as we could discern, so that the Sea seemed to be wholly toured with Ice, lye onely to the Eastwards: we thought that we saw the water beyond the Ice, which put vs in hope that we should ere long get passage with our Shallops along the shore, if we could not passe with our shippe. Being thus

The Shallop re-
turned to the North-
wards.
Cape Barren.

Saddle land.

A Storme.

The Whales
began now
to come in.

Two Whales
escaped.

We came forth
of Faire-hauen

We met with
Ice and flood
to the North-
wards.
Our Shallop
came to vs.

We returned
towards *Faire
hauken*.

We intended
to discover
Shallops.

I went forth
in the out Shal-
lop.

Master *Baffin*
came to meet
his other Shal-
lop.
see page.

We hailed our
Shallop upon
the ice.

We returned
to our Shallop.

We were under
false sail and
came on no
other again.

We killed
a Whale.

August.
We went to
the North-
wards with our
Shallops.

We got to the
Shore of *Red
Beach* with our
Shallops.

We walked on
our *Agd-beach*.

this satisfied, we returned aboard our ship and plyed towards *Faire hauken*, adjusting amongst our felues of the best course we could to further the business committed unto vs.

We refused to make our discovery along the shore with both our Shallops, and to carry with vs our provision for the Whale-killing, conceiving good hopes besides, of profit which the beaches would afford vs; therefore we intended when our ship was brought fast into harbour again, to goe from her with both our Shallops, and to put in practise this our late resolution. But the weather falling calmer, and a fogge following, which continued three dayes, so that our ship came not into harbour till the twentieth of July; I went from her the eleventh day, intending to search the Beaches, till Master *Baffin* came to me with the other Shallop, and then we to proceede both together: but before he came, I had gone so far as that the Ice would not suffer me to passe a Boates length further, and I had also searched a very *Faire Beach* which was altogether fruitful.

Master *Baffin* came to me at a place appointed the fourteenth day of July, in the other Shallop, and we proceeded both together to the Eastwards againe, and found passage amongst the Ice about a league further then I had lately bene, so that we came to the same Ice, that lay almost two miles from the shore of *Red-beach*, unbroken by this year. Here we hailed up our Shallops out of the water, left the broken Ice which is carried to and fro with the winde, might split them or bruise them: then Master *Baffin* and I with four men more walked ouer the firme Ice and went ashore on *Red-beach*, where we travelled about the space of three miles by the shore side, but found no commodities as we expected to have done; for here had the *Holmen* been in 1612, as we might know by fires that they had made, and gathered the fruits that many years before had brought forth. Thus as we could not finde that which we desired to looke for, so did we behold that which we wished had not bene there to be seene, which was great abundance of Ice, that lay close to the shore and also off at Sea so farre as we could discern; wherefore being thus satisfied, and more weare to know that we could passe no further, then with travelling so farre, we returned to our Shallops, and went about of our Ship in *Faire hauken* on Sunday the twentieth of July, passing the nearest way between the Islands and the maine Land, for now the Ice was broken betwixt the South-harbour where we rid, and the North harbour, where the *Hollander* rid.

The next day we sent our Shallop to the North-east side of *Faire hauken*, there to lye for the coming of the Whales over against the *Gammel* two Shallops that lye on the other side for the same purpose.

The twentieth of July, we were under false to goe forth of *Faire hauken* with the *Gammel*, purposing to have taken two Ships that rid at the entrance of *Maudslø Sound*, with *Iohn Majors*, who first desired them, supposed to be the one a *Bark*, and the other an *Englysh* man; but the winde blew right into the harbour, so that we could not get forth, and therefore we came to an anchor againe where we rid before.

On the one and twentieth of July, our Harponiers killed a Whale, which (said one of our Shallops and struck the Harponier that was in her overboard: but both hee and the rest of the men were drucke and taken into another Shallop: then we sent our Carpenter to mend the Shallop that was split: and on the five and twentieth day they help to kill another Whale.

On the sixe and twentieth of July, I drew the plat of *Faire hauken*, as it is here presented (but here too costly to insert.)

When this Schoole of Whales were past, we went out of *Faire hauken* the first of August with both our Shallops, Master *Baffin* in the one, and I in the other, with five men more in each Shallop, thinking that now we should finde the Ice broken and cleere gone from the shore, conceiving some good hope to proceede and make some new discovery, which was the chief occasion of our imployment. We passed ouer *Red cliff Sound*, which we found cleere of Ice; and from thence we proceeded to *Red-beach*, where we also found great alteration since our last being there, notwithstanding the Ice was not cleere voided from the shore; for in some places it was firme and unbroken off for the space almost of halfe a mile; so we rowed along it, till we came neere the North end of the Beach which lyeth furthest into the Sea, and there we found an open way to the shore with our Shallops, and went on land; but seeing in all places great abundance of broken Ice, we lay close to the shore, and doubting that although perhaps with much ado, we might get about the point of the Beach, yet should we still be pelted with Ice from proceeding any further, we resolved to walke ouer land, to the other side of the Beach, where we saw a hill about four miles distant, from which we thought we should be satisfied, how much further it was possible for vs to proceede: so thither we travelled, where when we came, we saw a very faire Sound on the East side of the Beach which was open within, but there lay very much Ice at the entrance of it, which although it was extended more then halfe our Sound, yet we doubted not but if we could get our Shallops about the Beach, we should finde either one way or other to passe ouer the said Sound, & from the high land on the other side, we should receive very good satisfaction if the weather continued faire and cleere as now it was, therefore we intended to make trial what we might do; but before we returned we went down to the point of the Beach, at the entrance

entrance of the Sound, and there set up a Croffe, and nailed a sixe pence thereon with the Kings Armes. This being done, we returned to our Shallops, and according to our late determination, we rowed about the point of *Red-beach*, and with many crooked windings amongst the Ice, at length we got ouer *Wiche Sound* (for so it is now named.)

As soon as we were ouer on the other side, about two leagues from *Red-beach*, Master *Baffin* and I clambered up a very high hill, from whence we saw a point of land bearing East North-east, by the ordinary Compasse eighteen or twenty leagues distant, as I supposed. We likewise saw another faire Sound to the Southwards of vs, which was much pelted with Ice, but we could not see the end of it. Here upon the mountains we set up a Warlocke, and then came downe to againe with lesse labour, but more danger then we had in getting up, by reason of the steepnesse thereof: then we walked to the shore side, and there found many beach Finnes, whereby I concluded that Master *Marmaduke* men in his first discovery, made in Anno 1612, had not bene upon this land to search the Beaches, for in all other places where we had bene heretofore, we would finde nothing at all. Now therefore we refused to make further search along the shore, and to proceede with our Shallops so farre as we possibly could: whereupon we returned to our men againe whom we left with our Shallops, where we first landed.

Having stayed here a while and observed the latitude which I found to be 79. degrees 54. minutes, we saw a Shallop come rowing towards the extremest point of this shore, therefore we hastened towards them, who were therein, and found them to be Master *Marmaduke* men, lately come from their ship the *Hartwag*, which they said they left at Sea amongst the Ice, about a league from *Red Beach*: here they were setting up a Croffe, which they said that they found where fallen downe, and had bene formerly set up in the time of Master *Marmaduke* first discovery, by one *Laurience Proffwood*, whose name I saw there engraven, with two or three names more, and it had the date of the fourteenth of August 1612. Upon this Croffe they nailed the Kings Armes.

Here we parted from them, and according to our former determination we proceeded, (some in the Shallops amongst the Ice, and others on shoare, till we went about four leagues further: in which space we found many more Finnes, and one pair of Moris teeth, but now we found the Ice so close packed together, that we could not proceede any further with our Shallops: wherefore Master *Baffin* and I intended to walke ouer land until we should be better facilitated how farre this Sound went in, for we could as yet see no end of it, and it seemed to make a separation of the land; so leaving our men here with the Shallops, we travelled almost a league further, till we came to the point of a sandie beach, that (hot into the Sound, which was wonderfully stored with drift Wood in great abundance. From this point we reckoned such satisfaction as we looked for, because we saw the end of the Sound which lies South in about ten leagues. It is a good harbour that is landlocked, and double-fire is a good place for the Whale-killing hath in it a good harbour that is landlocked, and double-fire is a good place for the Whale-killing if it be not every year as now it is pelted with Ice. Here I saw a more natural earth and clay then any that I have seene in all the *Cowen*, but nothing growing thereupon more then in other places. This Sound is that which formerly had and still retaineth the name of *Sir Thomas Smiths Inlet*.

Being thus satisfied, we came backe againe to our Shallops, and seeing no way but one, we returned towards our Ship; but before we could get to *Red-beach*, there arose a very great storme from the East North-east, after we had entered amongst the Ice in *Wiche Sound* so that we were separated the one Shallop from the other, whereby our danger was the greater: for whilst we were both in company together, the one might have bene helpfulful to the other when neede required, and more safe it seemed to face them both, then being separated to keepe either of them from wracke; but God (who in his wondrous mercie is ever ready to relieve the faithful distress) did not only so provide that we met together againe, and indeede were helpfulful the one to the other (otherwise I doubt the one Shallop had miscarried, for she was in great danger) but also delivered vs safely out from amongst these perillous rocks of Ice, which it was very hard to thus, and at the length brought vs into an open Sea, where with scant a faine as we could make, we past swiftly before the winde, the Sea coming during times ouer the shores of our Shallops, which wet our skinnes, that had fast any dry clothes on before to keepe them warme, by reason of a ditzeling of *Faire hauken*, the fifth of August, with one hundred and fiftie beach Finnes, and one pair of Moris teeth, giving thanks to God for his blessing and merciful deliverance.

The ninth of August, two ships of the *Hollander*, that were appointed for Northern Discovery, were seene thwart of *Faire Hauken*, sailing to the Southwards.

The eleventh of August, we set sayle forth of *Faire Hauken*, the winde at South South-west, intending to make tryall, if yet the Ice would admit vs to have passage to the Northwards or the North-eastwards. We held our course from Cape *Barren*, North-east and by East, till seven a clocke at night, at which time having runne eight leagues from the shore, we met with the Ice which lay East and by South, and West and by North, and bore up along it to the Eastwards, for the winde was now come to the North North-west; then we tackt about to the Westwards,

The Kings Armes were set up at *Wiche Sound*. We passed ouer

We found Beach Finns.

We met with the *Hartwag* Shallop.

Note.

The end of *Sir Thomas Smiths Inlet* discovered.

We returned towards our Ship. A storme began when we were amongst the Ice.

We got forth of the Ice.

We came aboard our ship.

The *Holland* Discoverers goe homewards. Our Ship went forth to Sea.

We met with Ice eight leagues from the shore.

We met with Ice eight leagues from the shore.

We plyed off
and on the
Ice two days.

We anchored
again in the
North Harbour.

I went to the
Eastwards in
the ship.
Ice was newly
frozen in Red-
cliff Sound.
I intended to
go once to
Point Desire.

A great snow
begin.

I could not
pass the ice.

The original
cabin office at
Sea.

I went backe
again to Red-
cliff.

I returned to-
wards our ship.

Point Welcome.

Westwards, and plyed off and on close by the Ice, till the thirteenth day at mid-night, still expect-
ing a change of the weather, that we might have made some adventure amongst the flattered
Ice, for both on the twelfth and thirteenth day, the wind blew hard at North, and the wea-
ther was cold, thick, and very winter-like with fall of snow: this wind being so contrary,
drove both the Ice and our ship to leeward towards the floare, so that we were forced to put
into Harbour againe, and came to an Anchor the fourteenth day in the North Harbour of
Fair Haven, where the Fleet of *Hollanders* lately lay, at which time the *Hartse* was there at
an Anchor.

Now was the Land both Mountaynes and Plaines wholly covered with snow, so that almost
all mens minds were possessed with a desire of returning for *England*. But to prevent a sudden
resolution for a homeward Voyage without further satisfaction, I made motion that once againe
we might go forth with our shallops, to see what alteration there might be found along the
shore: I told us that I was to goe in one shallop for this purpose, so I tooke with me eight men,
and went from our ship the fifteenth day of August.

We rowed to *Red-cliff Sound*, where we passed through much Ice that was newly congelled
being thicker then an halfe Crowne piece of silvers, notwithstanding we broke way through it,
and being out the *Sound*, we had a cleere Sea againe; then we proceeded to *Red-beach*, where find-
ing the floare cleere of Ice (which at my last being there was wonderfully pestered) I concei-
ved good hope to finde passage to the further Land from thence in sight, bearing East halfe North
point Southerly, nine, or ten leagues distant; to this end we put off from the floare of *Red-beach*, and
rowed a league and more in an open Sea, and then met with Ice which lay dispersed abroad, in
which time we had gotten more then halfe way out: but then we found the Ice to lye very
thick throughed together, so that it caused vs much to alter our course, sometimes Southward
and sometimes Northward, and even in this time, when we thought we stood in most need of
cleare weather, it pleased God to send vs the contrary, for it beganne to snow very fall, which
passe, therefore I thought good to stay here awhile, hoping that ere long the weather would be
more agreeable to our purpose: for a Grapple being laid forth upon a Land off, to hold fast our
shallop, a Tent was made of the shallops saile to keepe the weather from vs, and we remained 30
downe the Tent, and with faire termes perswaded them, that notwithstanding the wet wea-
ther, it were good to doe something, to get out to the desired floare, where we might re-
fresh our selves, and have fire to dry our wet clothes; they seemed well content with this moti-
on, and so we rowed the space of foure hours more, the Ice still causing vs to hold a South and
South South-east course, which carried vs further into *Sir Thomas Smiths* Inlet, and put vs from
the place where we wanted to be.

The thicke snowe weather continued all this time, which was very uncomfortable to vs all,
but especially to the men that rowed; and as the snow was noysome to their bodies, so did it
also begin to astonish their minds, as I well perceived by their speeches, which proceeded upon 40
this occasion. The snow having continued thus long, and falling upon the smooth water, lay in
some places an inch thick, being already in the nature of an Ice compact, though not conge-
aled, and hindered sometimes our shallops way: this I say caused some of them, not altogether
without reason to say, that if it should now freeze as it did that night when we came over *Red-
cliff Sound*, we should be in danger here to be frozen vp. Howsoever this feare might be a
meanes to discourage the rest, that considered not of such a thing till they had heard it spoken
of: yet true it is, that I saw no likelihood, by reason of the Ice, how to attire my selfe at
this time, and therefore I bade them row toward the floare of *Red-beach* againe, where I in-
tended to stay till the weather might happily be more convenient. So holding a West North-west
course, so farre as the Ice would suffer vs, we came to the East-side of *Red-beach*, having bene 50
eightene hours amongst the Ice, during all which time the snow fell, and as yet ceased not.
When we had bene here about an hour, it began to cleere vp, and the wind to blow hard at East,
which rather pacted the Ice close together in this place then to disperse it, so that I was now out
of hope to get any further then I had beene already: wherefore I returned toward our ship, in-
tending as I went to make a more particular Discouerie of *Bread-bay*, and *Red-cliff Sound*, hoping
that one place or other would afford some thing worthy of the time and labour. When we were
come to the West side of *Red-beach*, it began to blow much wind, when withall the Sea grow-
ing to be great, all men aduised to passe over *Bread-bay*, whilst the winde and weather would
suffer vs to saile, for they said it was like to be very foule weather: so feeling that it was no con-
venient time for coaling, we came over the Bay to *Point Welcome* (which I so named because 60
is a place, where we oftentimes rested, when we went forth in our shallops) it is about foure
leagues distant from the North end of *Red-beach*.

At this point the *Hollanders* had lay vp *Prince Maurices* his Armes, nere unto a Crosse which
I had caused to be set vp about a month before, and had nayled a sixe pence thereon with
the

the Kings Armes, but the men that were with me, went (without any such direction from mee)
and pulled downe the said Princes Armes, whilst I was gone vp to Mountayne to looke into the
Sea, if I could see any Ice: and when I came downe againe they told mee, that the sixe pence was
taken from the Crosse: that I had set vp, and there was another post set by it, with the *Holan-
ders* Armes made fast thereon, which they had pulled downe; so, because the sixe pence was taken
away, I caused one to naye the Kings Armes cast in Lead upon the Crosse: which being done
we rowed to the bottome of *Red-cliff Sound*, and as we coasted along the shore, we leashed
two little Beaches, which had some wood on them, but nothing that we found of better value.

About two leagues within the *Sound* on the East side there is an Harbour where shippers may
ride in good ground Land-lockt, but if other yeeres be like this, I cannot say that it can Har-
bour fitting for shippes: because it is late in the South-broke vp; for even now thereby much
Ice at the bottome of it, inasmuch, that I was forced to leave the shallop, because I could see
passe with her for Ice, and withal two miles out of *Point Welcome*, with another man in my
company: whose business concerning a point of Land that stood into the Sound, whether it were
an Island for use, as I will shortly mention, but when I came to the farthest part
of it, I saw it joyned to the mayne Land, wherefore I called it *Point Desire*, because it de-
cided me from further, from hence we proceeded toward our shippe, and came aboard of her in the
North Harbour of *Fair Haven*, on Friday night being the thirteenth of August, where the
rid alone; for Master *Marmaduke* was gone forth to Sea that day.

The twelfth and twentieth of August, *John Maffs* Master of the *Gambell*, came out from
the South Harbour for helpe to lay vs out of the Ice, which had bene faine fourteen dayes, in
one hundred and twentie tedious dayes, or else to take the *Wurpel* and *Harping* Iron out of her,
for now it was time to take her or forsake her. Master *Sherrin* our Master caused our long
boats to be vntied and went with him; when they came where the Whale was faine, they
halted, and then presently rose, bolting suddenly vp with a thundering cracke made the
burly of the *Wurpel*, and notwithstanding that he layen by long, yet had there all his finnes
fall. Whilst this was doing, the *Hartse* was coming into the Harbour from the North-
ward, and anchored by our ship in about an hour after.

Here we stayed till the seven and twentieth of August, and found my last returne, neither in
the shallop from the Eastwards, the weather had bene commonly warme, and the Moun-
taines were now more cleere of Snow, then they had bene any time this yeere, notwith-
standing their hitherto much snowe fallen from the beginning of this moneth, but it was quite
confused, and a greater signe of warmth and thaw was now to be observed than any time
of the yeere heretofore; namely, by the often falling of the Ice into the Sea from the huge
snowe banks, making a noyse like Thunder, so that the time was very hopefull, but thus we
made use of occasion offered.

The seven and twentieth of August, it was faire and warme weather, came till noone, we set saile
then had yet a gale of wind from the South South-west, wherewithall we set saile out of the
Fair Haven in the company of the *Hartse*, with whom we had bene in terms of comfort:
40 but the bottling was concluded. About five a clocke straight we were six leagues from Cape
Barrow, which is now faine vs South-westward by South. I shallop being out of the
we proceeded still to the North-westward, and on the eight and twentieth day in the morn-
ing we had runne about twentie leagues from Cape *Barrow* in an East North-east way by
the ordinary Compasse, being open of *Sir Thomas Smiths* Inlet, nine or tenne leagues from the
shore; at which time we were come to the Ice (that stretched East South-east) and West
North-west, but the Sea being very rough, we stood off againe from the Ice; in the afternoon
it fell calme, and at night we had a gale of winde at East, and the ship was steered West, and then
South-west homeward.

The nine and twentieth day, the winde Easterly and calfe pale, at three a clocke in the after-
noone *Blackbys* Head land bore from vs South-east by East foure leagues distant: the *Cliffing*
50 was very warme.

The thirtieth day, the winde at North-east an easte gale, at foure a clocke in the afternoon,
Madden Point bore East North-east halfe a Point Easterly about three leagues distant: the
the Evening it fell calme, the weather not cold.

The thirtieth day, faire Sunne-fine weather and calme till noone, and then we had a good
gale of winde from the North-east, being six leagues distant from the *Fore-land*, which bore
South-east; now were altered our course and stood to the West-west: therefore so kept vs
fill in the parallel that now we were in which was 77. degrees 8. minutes, West North-west
course was directed, in respect of the Variation, to make good our West way.

This course we held till we had runne about twentie leagues, and then we ranne twen-
tie leagues more in a West and by North course till one a clocke on Friday morning; at which
time it fell calme; and we heard the Sea make a great noyse, as if we had bene nere Land,
but we rather judged it to be Ice, as indeed it proved to be, for in the morning when it
60 was

The Kings
Armes are set
up againe at
Point Welcome.
I went into
Red cliff
Sound.

Point Desire.
I came aboard
our ship.

A Whale lay
under our
rege, dayes.
The *Hartse*
anchored by
vs.
Warne wea-
ther in the end
of August.

The *Thames*
returns to
England.

We stood to
the westwards

was light and cleere, we saw the Ice about a league from vs, which trended Southerly; having now a gale at East North-east, we steered away South and South South-east, but in the afternoon we were embayed with a long bankes of Ice, which we could not weather, therefore we were faine to tacke about, and the winde having come more Southerly then it was in the morning, we flood off from the Ice North-east and North-east by North, and then to the Southwards againe, making furdrie boardes to get forth to windwards of the Ice.

The third day before noone, we had fight againe of Ice to Westwards of vs, and at noone were vnder the parallel of 78. degrees 17. minutes, according to my Observation: then we flood away South to keepe cleere of the Ice, for we had great heaving Sea, although but little winde; and therefore durst not be to bold to edge too nere it, especially the wind being Easterly, as then it was.

On the fourth day our men saw the Ice againe from the mayne top-mast head, and therefore we still maintayned a Southerly course; the next day it began to be foggie, and continued close weather and hazy for three dayes, so that we had no more sight of the Ice; neyther could wee at this time receive any further satisfaction concerning the same: therefore we kept a Southerly course so nere as we could, although we had but little winde, and the same very variable till the ninth day, but then we had a good gale of winde at West North-west.

On the tenth day being Saturday, we were by my reckoning fiftie leagues distant from Low-foot, which bore from vs East South-east halfe a Point Southerly: this day the wind shifted to the South-west, and at night came to the South with much raine, then came backe againe to the West North-west and began a great storme.

This might the Master and others saw a light upon the Fore-bonnet, which the Saylers call a Corpo Santo; it appeared like the flame of a Candle, and (as Sea-men observe) it always presageth an ensuing storme, which to verifie, this foule weather continued the next day, and grew to be so vehement on Sunday night, that the Sea overflowed our raked out ship, and we were faine to lye a-ry with our fore-castle only, and our Mayne top-mast also broke, which last thing (as Sea-men say) is seldom done at Sea, then about one a clocke we were forced to take in our fore-castle, and to lye a-hull for fise hours.

The fourth day of October, the shippe came to Wapping with the whole number of men that they carryed forth (my selfe excepted that was come before) being fixe and twenty, all in perfect health.

CHAP. VIII.

A true report of a Voyage Anno 1615. for Discoverie of Sea, Land, and Rivers, to the Northwards; as it was performed by ROBERT FORTHELL, in a Pin-nasse of twentie men called the Richard of London: set forth at the charge of the Right Wth RICHARD SMITH, Knight, my very good Master, and Master RICHARD WICHE, Governour: and the rest of the Warlike full Company of Merchants, called the Merchants of New Trades and Discoveries, trading into Moscovia, and King JAMES his New Land.

BY the providence of Almighty God I went forth of Harwich Harbour in the foresaid Pinnafe, the twelfth of May, in the company of eight shippes of the Fleet, for King James his New Land, who in foule weather out-fayled me in the latitude 71. degrees, or thereabouts. So I proceeded alone towards King James his New Land, and met with Ice in latitude 73. degrees 30. minutes. I flood North-eastwards for the west of King James his New Land, and had Endry conflicts with the Ice in taine and wee foggie weather, and had sight of Land the eleventh of June, and on the nineteenth of the same I anchored in Faire Haven. Here I stayed till the thirde of July, for the Pinnafe had received some hurt amongst the Ice, which to amend, I was faine to hale her a-ground, besides divers other things necessary to be done, which detained me longer then willingly I would have stayed there.

From hence I layled Northward, but met with Ice in latitude 79. degrees 10. minutes, being six leagues from Hacklogie Head-land, then I coasted the leas it lay in Pointe and Bayes to the Westwards and South-westward, and being thirte leagues from the Land in latitude 79. degrees 10. minutes, I found it to trend Northward and North-westward, and coasted it to the latitude

of 79. degrees 50. minutes, but then I was embayed with Ice, and was faine to stand out againe and failed about ten leagues before I got cleere: when I was out of this Bay, I proceeded South Westerly with the Ice on the starboard to the latitude 78. degrees 30. minutes, where being forte leagues from the shore, I was againe embayed with the Ice, and having had faire Perill and Sun-shine weather all the day, which made me the bolder to stand so nere it, the weather escape, on a sudden all foggie, and the wind began to blow hard at South, which put vs to great trouble and no small perill: but the Almighty power who hath mercifully delivered vs heretofore out of so great dangers, presented vs alio from this: when we were gotten cleere off the Ice, we had the Sea much growne, and the storme increasing, but being desirous still to keepe the Sea, I flood close by the wind vnder a pyre of coarfe, till the Pinnafe waxt leake with bearing too much fayle, and there was forced to lye a-ry vnder a mayne coarfe only: and although the stormed South-east and South-east by South, yet was the huried violently to the North-eastwards, and by the merciful providence of God we fell right with the *Peregrine* in latitude 79. degrees, then I flood over Sir Thomas Smith Bay for harbour in *Croftwood*, where I anchored the thirteenth of July being Thursday. I stayed here foure dayes, in which time my men mended the Sayles and ships tackling that had received hurt by the late storme, and made a new mayne Sayle to lye in time of need, and on the fourteenth of July I weighed out of *Croftwood*, and layled Westwards from thence came to Ice againe in latitude 78. degrees 40. minutes, which I coasted as it lay nereest South-westward, but with many Points & Bayes, wherewith I was sometimes intangled, yet, God be thanked, got cleere againe, either by helpe of Oares or Sayles without any hurt. In this fort I proceeded with good satisfaction, although not with so good content, till I came to the latitude of 76. degrees, being about one hundred leagues from Pointe Look-out, but then we were crossed with a contrary storme from the South-west and South South-west, which drove me to the South-eastward, till I came in the latitude of 74. degrees, and then I made my way Westward againe, so nere as I could lye, close by the winde, and out-ran the formerly supposed Land of Gronland, which some have layd downe in plates and extended to 75. degrees. When I came into the latitude of 73. degrees, I flood West and North-west, and fell with Ice againe in latitude 73. degrees 50. minutes, and thought indeed at that time that I was nere Land by abundance of Powle, which we saw in great flocks: but such thick fogges have continued for three or foure dayes together, that we might sooner have the Land if any were, then see it, and so did we first find this Ice by bearing the ror, thinking till we saw it, that it had beene Land, so that we were embayed with it before we thought that we had beene nere it, then I flood out againe and coasted the Ice still to the Westwards Southerly, but could see no Land, as I expected to have done, untill we came vnder the latitude of 71. degrees thirte minutes, and then we espied a snowie Hill very high in the cloudes, for this day was very cleere at Sea, but the fogge was not yet cleared from the Land, so that we could see no part of it, but only the top of a snowie Mountayne, which appeared very high although we were fourtене or fiftene leagues distant from it, bearing off vs South-east and by South.

Then I flood in for the shore, supposing it had beene part of the Mayne of Gronland: for the fogge lay on each side of this Mount, as if there had beene a great Continent vnder it, but it proved otherwise, for the fogge did not cover to it, the fogge dispersed more and more, and when we were five leagues distant, the Land appeared in forme like an Island.

When I came nearer the shore, I could find no Harbor to anchor in, Notwith standing, the weather being faire & calme, I hoist out my Boat & went ashore with three men more, and let vp the Kings Armes: then we searched a Sandie Beach, which was abundantly stored with drift wood, but yielded no other fruits, that we could find worth the taking vp, so I returned aboard againe, and sent ashore my Boat to fetch home wood. But before the men had laid into her the little quantitie that she was able to carrie, they came aboard againe, for the wind began to blow hard, and the Sea to growe lofty, so that there was no place for vs to abide any longer, otherwise I was purposed to have searched further along the shore, but this gale of winde comming Northward flood from hence to the Westwards, being desirous to see more Land or find a more open Sea. And having layled about fiftene or sixtene leagues I met with Ice againe, in latitude 71. degrees, and coasted it eight or nine leagues further Westward, and South-westward as it lay, but then the wind came to the South-west, and we flood close by it a while to the Southwards, but finding the gale to increase, and considering that by the most contrary wiske which could blow against my further proceeding (for the Ice as we found did trend nereest South-west, and besides it had bene any high Land within twentie leagues of vs, we might perfectly have made it, the weather was so faire and cleere. In this respect, and for the Reasons following, I took the benefit of this wind to returne to the North-eastwards againe, being now about two hundred leagues from King James his New Land in latitude 71. degrees.

First, I purposed to layle along the South-east side of the Land that I had discovered, to be better furnished what Harbours there were, and what likelihood of profit to ensee; and from thence to proceed to the place where I first fell with Ice in latitude 73. degrees when I was driven to the South-eastwards with a Westerly storme, for I am yett verily persuaded, that being

there were not farre from Land, although wee could not see it by reason of thicke foggie weather. Then my further intent was, if I found no good occasion to spend my time there, for to coast the Ice, or try the open Sea to the Northwards, betwixt 73. and 76. degrees, where formerly I had not received satisfaction by reason of a storme that draue me off, and then I purpos'd, if time might seeme convenient, to proceed to the North Coast of King James his New Land, to have hence what hope was there had for passage Northward, or for compassing of the Land, which is most like to be an Island.

I flood away East and by South, and being neere the foresaid Land, the winde came to the West and blew a very hard gale, wherewith I passed along the South-east side of the Land vnder a pale of coarles, but without that satisfaction which I expected: for the winde blowing so stormily, and the Sea growne very great, I was forced to lide further from the shoare then I willingly I would have done, and besides there was thicke foggie vpon the Land, whereby I could not be satisfied what Harbours or Roads were about it, yet might we see three or foure Capes, or Head-lands, as if there went in Bayes betwixt them. I layd about it, and then flood to the Northward againe, and being now assured that it was an Island, I named it *Sir Thomas Smiths Island*.

Sir T. Smiths
Island.

Mount Hack-
luyt.

This Island is about ten leagues in length, and stretcheth North-east and South-west: it is high Land, and at the North end of it there is a Mountayne of a wonderful height and bignesse, all covered with Snow, which I called *Mount Hackluyt*; the base or foot of it on the East side is almost foure leagues long, it hath three such fies at the base lying out to the Sea, and from the North side doth the rest of the Island extend it self towards the South-west, which is also, as it were, a place fortified with Cables and Bulwarks, for on each side there be three or foure high Rocks which stand out from the Land, appearing like Townes and Ports. It lies in the parallel of 77. degrees, where the N-neile varrieth from the true Meridian Westwards eight degrees. The Land is generally so farre as I haue scene, Rockie and very barren, and worse then the Land that I haue scene in King James his New Land, vnder eight degrees, for there is no grasse but moss, and where I first landed vpon low ground, all the stones were like vnto a Smiths sinners both in colour and forme, the sand is generally mixed with a come like Aggres, the Beaches are abundantly strewed with drift wood and many stones, light like Pumis, which will swimme on the water. I saw many traces of Beares and the footing of Beares, but not any signe of Deere or other liuing creatures, and very small store of Bowles.

From hence I flood to the Northward according to my former purpose, but was crossed with a contrarie storme from the North-west which put me off to the Eastward; but as the wind shifted I made my way to the North-westwards all I could, and came againe to the Ice in latitude 75. degrees, from whence I proceeded towards King James his New Land, and had light of the Land the eighteenth of August, being in latitude 77. degrees 30. minutes, and having a hard gale of wind then at North-west, I stood close by it vnder a pale of coarles, but could not weather Prince Charles Island, and therefore I bore vp, intending to goe into Nucky Cove, which is on the North side of *Ice-land*, there to attend a faire winde, and in the meane time to get ballast aboard the Pinnasse, and all other things necessary. But as I was about to enter into the Harbour, I thought it not a place convenient, because I could hardly haue got out againe with a Southerly wind, which would carrie me to the Northwards, and therefore I flood out for *Green-harbor*, where I anchored at one a clocke in the morning, the nineteenth of August.

Here I caused my men to launch a shallop, and to get ballast and water aboard the Pinnasse, and before nine a clocke at night I was ready to proceed Northward with the first faire winde. I stayed here five dayes, during which time it blew hard for the most part at North and North-west, and on the foure and twentieth of August, the winde came to the East North-east as wee supposed, till we were out of the Harbour, so I set saile to proceed Northward, and had the wind Easterly out of *Ice-land*, wherewith I flood North-west towards Cape Cold, but being clere of the high Land, we found the wind to be at North North-east, therefore I refused of another course, which was this.

Hudsons Hold.
with hope que-
rioned as abo-
ve also.

Having perused *Hudsons* Journall written by his owne hand in that Voyage wherein he had fight of certayne Land, which he named *Hold-with-hope*; I found that by his owne reckoning it should not be more then one hundred leagues distant from King James his New Land, and in the latitude of 72. degrees 30. minutes or thereabouts: therefore seeing I could not proceed Northward, I purpos'd to goe to the South-westwards to haue fight of this Land, and discontinue, if wind and weather would permit. So I flood away South-west, and sometimes West South-west, till I had runne one hundred and thirte leagues, and was by account in latitude 73. degrees 30. minutes, where hauing the wind contrarie to proceed further Westward, I flood Eastward till I had runne thirte leagues, in which course I should haue scene this Land, if credit might be giuen to *Hudsons* Journall, but I saw not any. And hauing a hard gale of winde still Northerly, I conceived no course so good to be taken at this time, as to speed homewards; and so I flood to the Southwards, discharging my course for England, this being the eight and twentieth of August. After which time the wind continued Northerly till the six day of September, and then wee

were on the coast of Scotland in latitude 57. degrees, and on the eight day of September had fight of the land of England on the coast of *Torkshire*. Thus by the great mercy of God haue we escaped many dangers, and after a cold Summer haue come safe of a warme Autumne. All glorie therefore be to God the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost. Amen.

By this briefe Relation, and by the plat wherein I haue traced the flugs way vpon each furell traueiler it may plainly appeare, how faire the state of this Land is discovered betwixt 80. and 71. degrees of latitude, making difference of longitude 26. degrees from the Meridian of *Hackluyts Headland*.

Now if any demand my opinion concerning hopes of a passage to be found in thofe Seas; I answer, that it is true, that I both hoped and much desired to haue passed further then I did, but was hindered with Ice: wherein although I haue not attained my desire, yet forasmuch as it appears not yet to the contrary, but that there is a spacious Sea betwixt *Greenland* and King James his New Land, I will not much peitered with Ice; I will not seeme to diluade this workefull Companie from the yearly aduenturing of 150. or 200. pounds at the most, till some further discouerie be made of the said Seas and Lands adjacent, for which purpose no other Vefell would I aduise vnto, then this Pinnasse with ten men, which I hold to be most conuenient for that action, although heretofore I conceived otherwise, but now I speake after good experience, hauing layd in her out and in about two thousand leagues.

RO. FOTHERBY.

A Letter of ROBERT FOTHERBY to CAPTAIN EDGE,
written in *Crosse-roads*, Iuly 15. 1615.

After Edge, By the mercy of God I came into *Crosse-roads* on *Thursday* last, being driven from Sea neere *Shure* by extreme tempest. At the beginning of the storme I was vnwittingly engaged with Ice about forty leagues from Land, in latitude 78. degrees and 30. minutes, but, thanks be to God, I got cleare of it, yet not without much trouble and great danger. Having plyed vnder two courses to and againe so long till my Pinnasse was made leaky with bearing, I cryed it vnder a mayne course and staid South-east and South-east and by South, notwithstanding I was huried to the Northward, and fell right with the Forland, which by reason of the winde storme you could not see till we were within a league of it: then I flood over the Bay and came to an anchor here, where I must be forced to stay till our sailes be mended, and a new mayne course be made, if not a fure course else. Then I purpose to goe to Sea againe, and to proceed in coasting the Ice to the Westward, if it binder me to proceed Northward. I haue already consulted from *Hackluyts Headland* to the latitude aforesaid, and intend to beginne againe so neare as I can at the place where I was put off with the storme. I came from *Faire Hauens* the fourth of Iuly, and then had there beene killed twelue Whales, besides one fauind dead, and another brought in by 40 Fra. Birken, which he found at Sea before he came into *Faire Hauens*.

When I came in hither, there were three Ships and a Pinnasse of the King of Denmarks; they rid in *Crosse-roads* about a league and a halfe from the Road, but weighed from thence, and the *Admirall* came drepe water about a league and a halfe from the Road, but weighed from thence, and the *Admirall* came to an anchor close by me, and sent to intreat me to come aboard of him: I went aboard and was courteously entertained by the *Commodore*, who questioned me of the Country, and asked me by what right the English Merchants did offer and sell in this place: I told him, by the King of Englands right, who had granted a Patent to the *Mulcovic* Company of Merchants, whereby he authorized them, and forbiddeth all others to frequent these places. Then he entreated me to goe with him to *Sir Tho. Smiths Bay*, to the two Engl. Ships there. I told him, it would be losse of time to me, because I had some business here to doe, and then to goe forth presently to Sea againe to prosecute my Discouery. He said, that he would haue me goe with him to be winde what I pleased betwixt him and you, for he had matters of importance to settle with my friend, and I knew not how to answer it; but he told me peremptorily that I must goe with him. So seeing no remedie, I had the *Admirall* ready: then he presently weighed and kept me aboard him, but afterwards meeting with the two Captaines that came from you, he returned and anchored againe in *Crosse-roads*. I receiued very courteous entertainment of the *Admirall*, Vice-admirall, and of *Captaine Killingham*: but *Captaine Killingham* being aboard of me, went away as he seemed discontented, because I would not giue him a young *Storke* I haue aboard, which I denied to doe, because I writ to my *Melior* from *Faire Hauens*, that such a thing I haue, and will bring aine into England, if I may. When he went off aboard of me, he said, he would showe downe my flagge. And since after there came a ship which five or six, out of the *Admirall*, to see if any of your men that came in the *Shallop*, would goe with them into the Bay, and he swore vnto me that the *Ins* was made to call their Boat aboard, because they were ready to weigh. As farre as I can perceiue, their purpose is to see what Grant the King of England hath made

Ships of the
King of Den-
marke.

God is much displeased for the blood which was left in this place, and I fear a perpetual curse will remain yet; God I know is all-sufficient, and may, if it please him, send a Voyage in this place. News from Faïre-haueu I can write you none for as yet we have not heard from him: the reason thereof I cannot conceive; I fear his Shallop is miscarried, for certainly else we should have heard from him ere this, or some other cause there is: I pray God it be not so. I pray command me to Master John Hadland, and tell him that the Master and Pilot due set both their horse together, being very great friends; also I pray command me to my Cousin William Driver and Master Wilkinson, wishing them all happiness. I am in good hope that you have done some good upon the whales, not doubting but you will have just reward for your pains, and to help you say downwards, the which I desire may be. Other news I have none to write you. So desiring God to bless you in your proceedings in this your Voyage, I take my leave: 10
resting

Your loving friend to command
ROBERT SALMON Jun.

Nine Ships were employed Anno 1642. of which one for Discontent. Their disastrous success you may read before, page 469. The last Fleet Anno 1643. was set forth by the former Admirals, under the command of Captain William Goodlard, William Heley being Vice-admiral. Of the success thereof you may read the Letters following.

Last Dec in Faïre-Haueu, the four and twentieth
of June, 1623.

After Heley, your health wished, as also a happy accomplishment of your pretended Voyage desired. I had written you according to order, of all matters happening since our arrival, had not contrary winds and weather prevented, and therefore have sent the first opportunity offering as profuse.

We arrived at our harbour with both our Ships in safety upon the third of this present, blessed by God, finding the year past to have been a worse hard season, in regard of the great quantities of Snow and Ice, but yet not very offensive to us in respect of our good harbour. Touching our proceedings upon our Voyage, by the eighth of this present we had killed thirteen Whales, and then were all our Shallops constrained in, by reason of fowle weather, till the fifteenth, did so, and upon the fifteenth we killed two more, which being all boyled both the heads, and then estimated will hardly make past eight Tunnets, which is a very small quantity. The weather continued bad till the twenty one, did so, and upon the three and twentieth we killed three more, which by probability will make more seven Tunnets. And thus we do not see but by degrees we shall accomplish our Voyage, by the grace of God.

As touching our order for the Flemmings, we went as yesterday aboard there, supposing that we should have found the Dances there, but they are not as yet arrived, but we found there five Sailes of Flemmings, the Admirall five hundred Tunnets, the Vice-admirall of the same burthen, the other three were two hundred each Ship, having also fifty or sixty persons amongst them, having fauer and twenty Ships belonging to their fine Ships, and a building House and a Storehouse to inhabit for they make new and substantiall also they told us, they expected one or two Ships more ere this: after some time we had conference concerning the order given us by the General Conduict of Ice, and declared unto him that the time granted them to fish upon King James his New Land was expired, and thereupon he desired the hath granted to our Principals a Commission under the broad Seal of England for the depressing of any Invention or Flemming whatsoever that we shall meet withall upon this Coast: yet notwithstanding it pleased our Principals to require us to go aboard to them, and in a loving manner to instruct them hereof, which they will undoubtedly come and do with willing, you shall manifest your felmes friends to our Principals, if otherwise, you shall cause them to come by force, who had rather persuade by love. Puts which he answered, that he heard of no such matter in Holland, for if there were, it should be certified by writing: to which we answered, that Sir Nowel Cartoon their Agent was not ignorant of it, who should give information: and said he, I have a Commission from the Prince of Orange, for the making of my Voyage upon this Coast, which was procured by my Merchants for my defence: and thus it that could be gotten by words from him.

As for our first arrival, there rode two Biskie Shippes with the Flemmings, but within a day or two they went and stood for the Southward: but inquired of the Flemmings what part they were bound for, they answered, for the North Cape; but Master Mason is perswaded they are at Greene-harbour, to which purpose I wrote to Master Catches, that he give order to his Shallop that goes to Bel-found, to stand in for the harbour, to see the Captaine run information. And for present I rest, intreating you to remember me to Master Salmon and Master John Hadland: and that contraiting my faith, till the 50 words of my words come me into the Ocean of distress, here I anchor: resting

Your friend
NATHANIEL FANNE.

Master

Master CATCHERS Letter the nine and twentieth
of June, 1623.

After Heley, with my best love I salute you, wishing your health with a prosperous Voyage &c. Since our departure, we have had much fowle weather and it rained with Ice before we could get into harbour, and after we came into harbour, we never left full anchor, by reason of the Ice, till the fifteenth of this month, in which time we killed five Whales at the Fore-land, which made but eighteen Tunnets and a half, and since we have killed five Whales more, which I hope will make in all upwards of eighty Tunnets. We have five nine Shallops verie well, and I thank God we are one of our Men faine, save one that was accidentally with a Musket. I hope some of the Southerne harbours will supply our want, if there be any, which I fear there will: our harbour, manie say, is impossible to make a Voyage, by reason of the Flemmings, and blacke hark, which they Greenland take, plague from us. For Faïre-haueu I desire not but that you shall beare by the Letters of your friends, the proceedings: but Master Sherwyn writes, that there is much Flemming at the North Cape, and that they are all dead: and that they would goe for the North Cape: but I think they are in Greene-harbour, or gone to the Eastward; which if they be in Greene-harbour, our Shallop going to Bel-found, shall touch there to see, and so certify the Captaine, and know his will what he would have done in it: I hold it not fit that they should harbour there. There are no Dances in the Countrey as yet, &c.

Captaine WILLIAM GOODLARD'S Letter: Bel-found
this eight of July, 1623.

Our friend Master Heley, I kindly salute you, wishing health to you with the rest of your companions, praying the Lord for you and success in your fishing. To certify you of our proceedings, we have killed here in Bel-found three and twenty Whales, and left manie more by fowle weather, yet I hope sufficient to fill our Ships: we have boyled a hundred and eighty Tunnets, of which a hundred and forty we have sent our Ship, and make account sixtie Tunnets more will fill our hold. Our Whales here were verie wastifull and leane, which maketh bad Oyle, and bindeth us much in boyling. This present day our Shallop came from the Fore-land, as which time they had killed fifty five Whales: verie small, and are verie doubtful of a Voyage there; if God sendeth fish into this harbour, I will not spare till I have killed sufficient, to fill all our Carcks, to leave for them if there be occasion. The fowle and wastifull of these, there was killed at Faïre-haueu eighteen Whales, which going verie wastifull, by their estimation one hundred and twenty Tunnets: having there shot a Flemming with a Musket, and hope of five hundred Tunnets of them. Flemmings and two more expected thicker ere this, and which I hope will hinder much our Shoppes in their fishing this year, and in my judgement not to be removed from thence, for they having a Commission from the States, to fish upon this Coast: were our whole Element there, and could put these away, yet would they flee to one of our Southerne harbours, and so should we spend our time in following of them, and lose our Voyage, &c. There were also French Ships of Saint John de Luz at Faïre-haueu, which were put away by the Flemmings and our Ships, which they judge are gone for the Coast.

With a boane beere I write you the lamentable accident which happened here, the eighth and twentieth of June, your Shallop all was in danger, and my selfe almost perished, by reason of the fowle weather, a whole going into the Ice by fowle weather, and broke him, and his rope being now come out with knicker, which overbore his Shallop, where he lost his life with my Boy Breake, being as we think carried away with the rope (the dearest Whale to me that ever was, because in this harbour) there was never one left, I think, went so near to my heart, &c.

Many other Letters I could have added, but doubt I have already wearied you with this vncouth Coast, whereto our English Neptunes are now to wot, that they there they have found not only Venison but Pernaffow and Helwey, and have melted a Masson Mountain out of the Greenland Snows and Ice Rocks. Whole Elaborate Poems have I seen of Master Heley, as also of James Pruffin, there composed: but we have harder Discourages in hand, to which we are now shipping you. This I thought good at our parting to advertise, that, that Master Heley hath affirmed to me touching the diueritie of weather in Greenland; that one day, it hath bene so cold (the winds blowing out of some quarters) that they could scarce handle the frozen failes: another day so hot, that the pitch melted off the ship, so that but dy they could keepe their claukes from pollution: yea, he hath bene at midnight Tobacco lighted or fired by the Swaine-boome with a Glasse. Likewise for Tobacco lighted at midnight. 60
farewell to my Whale-Horie, I thought good to deliver Stowes relation touching a Whale (lamentable) differing in forme from those here usually found in Greenland: my selfe also being sick, with some diuergent views, hereof for the better to knowe, I have taken up a story, touching the same, which is in the Parish of Saint Peter, and there dying for lack of the Ice Ocean perished. Hee came on shore about six of the clocke at night, and did about six the next morning, before which time hee was reared and

houfe, which was richly decked: there he was placed in his Royall seat adorned as before: his face crowns were set before him vpon a Table: the Baron and Count of gold held by his knight of guard, with his men standing two on each side in white apparel of cloth of siluer, called Kindry with cepters and battle-axes of gold in their hands, the Princes and nobility were all placed according to their degrees all in their rich robes.

The Emperour after a short Oration, permitted every man in order to kisse his land: which being done, he removed to a princely seate prepared for him at the table: where he was seated by his Nobles in very princely order. The three out rooms being very great and large were belet with plate of gold and siluer round from the ground vpon to the vaults one vpon the other: among which plate were many barrels of siluer and gold: this solemnitie and triumph lasted a whole weeke, wherein many royall palmes were shewed and vied: after which, the chiefe men of the Nobility were elected to their places of office and dignitie, as the Prince *Boris Phedorovich* was made chiefe Counsellor to the Emperour, Master of the Horse, had the charge of his person, Lieutenant of the Empire, and warlike engines, Gouverneur or Lieutenant of the Empire of *Cacau*, and *Africau*, and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperour given him many reuenues and rich lands, as there was given him, and his for euer to inherit a Province called *Vaga* of three hundred *Englysh* miles in length, and two hundred and fiftie in breadth, with many Townes and great Villages populous and wealthy: his yearly Reuenue out of that Province, is five and thirtie thousand Markes sterling, being not the fifth part of his yearly Reuenue. Further, he and his house be of such authority and power, that in forty dayes warning, they are able to bring into the field a hundred thousand Soldiers well furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperours Coronation was a peale of Ordinance, called a Peale royall, two miles without the Citie, being a hundred and twenty great pieces of braile of all sorts, as there as any can be made, these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarke made of purple: twenty thousand hargobuts standing in eight ranks two miles in length, apparelled all in velvet, coloured silke and flammels, discharged their shot also twice ouer in good order: and so the Emperour accompanied with all his Princes and Nobles, at the least fiftie thousand horse, departed through the Citie to his palace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaves of paper to be described particularly as it was performed: it shall suffice, to understand that the like magnificence was neuer seene in *Russia*.

The Coronation, and other triumphs ended, all the Nobility, officers, and Merchants, according to an accustomed order every one in his place and degree, brought rich presents vnto the Emperour, wishing him long life, and joy in his kingdom.

The same time also Master *Ierom Horsey* aforesaid, remaining as servant in *Russia* for the Quenes most excellent Maestie, was called for to the Emperour, as he sat in his Imperiall seat, and the also a famous Merchant of *Netherland* being newly come to *Mosco* (who gaue him selfe out to be the King of *Spaines* subiect) called *Iohn de Wale*, was in like sort called for. Some of the Nobility would haue preferred this subiect of the *Spaniard* before Master *Horsey* servant to the Quene of *England*, whereunto Master *Horsey* would in no case agree, saying, hee would haue his legges cut off by the knees, before hee would yeelde to such an indignitie offered to his Soueraigne the Quenes Maestie, who by the Emperour aforesaid, was called for to the King *Sophy* subiect, or any other whatsoever. The Emperour, and the Prince *Boris Phedorovich* perceiving the controuersie, sent the Lord Treasurer *Peter Iuanovich Galanov*, and *Vasili Shilkin*, both of the Counsell, to them, who delivered the Emperour backe Master *Horsey* speech: whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented the Emperour in the behalfe of the *Englysh* Merchants trading thither, a present, wishing him joy, and long to raise in tranquillitie, and so kissed the Emperours hand, he accepting the present with good liking, and anouching, that for his Sisters sake, Quene *Elizabeth* of *England*, he would be a gracious Lord to her Merchants, in as ample manner as euer his Father had bene: and being dismissed, he at the same day sent him, fiftie thousand of sundry kinds of meates, with three carts laden with all sorts of drinke very bountifullly. After him was the foresaid subiect of the *Spanyish* King admitted with his present, whom the Emperour would be no lesse faithfull & cruceable vnto him, then the Quene of *England* subiects were & had bene, & then the King of *Spaines* subiects should receiue fauor accordingly.

All these things thus in order performed, prayles were sung in all the Churches. The Emperour and Emperesse very devoutly resorted on foote to many principal Churches in the Citie, and vpon Trinitie Sunday betooke themselves to a progresse in order of procession, to a famous Monastere called *Sergius* and the *Trinitie*, fixtie miles distant from the Citie of *Mosco*, accompanied with huge armie of Noblemen, Gentlemen, and others, mounted vpon goodly Horses with furniture accordingly.

The Emperesse of *Leucon* took this journey on foote all the way, accompanied with her Princesses and Ladies, no small number: her Guard and Gunners were in number twenty thousand: her chiefe Counsellor or Attendant, was a noble man of the blood Royall her Vncle of great authority, called *Demetri Iuanovich Gokoussa*. All this progresse ended, both the Emperour and Emperesse returned to *Mosco*: shortly after, the Emperour by the direction of the Prince

Toris

Boris Phedorovich, sent a power into the Land of *Siberia*, where all the rich Sables and Fures are gotten. This power conquered in one yeere and a halfe one thousand miles. In the performance of this warre, there was taken prisoner the Emperour of the Countrey, called *Czare Siberky*, and with him many other Dukes and Noble men, which were brought to *Mosco*, with a charge of Soldiers and Gunners, who were receiued into the Citie in very honourable manner, and doe there remaine to this day.

Hereupon the corrupt Officers, Iudges, Justices, Captaines and Lieutenants through the whole Kingdome were remoued, and more honest men substituted in their places, with expresse commandement vnder foure punishment to forbear the old bribing and extortion which they had vied in the old Emperours time, and now to execute true iustice without respect of persons: and to the end that this might be the better done, their lands and yearly stipends were augmented: the great tasks, customs, and duties, which were before laid vpon the people in the old Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholly remitted, and no punishments commanded to be vied, without sufficient and due proofe, although the crime were capital, deterring death: many Dukes and Noble men of great Houses, that were vnder displeasure, and imprisoned twentie yeeres by the old Emperour, were now let at libertie and restored to their lands: all prisoners were let at libertie, and their trespasses forgiven. In summe, a great alteration vnto the government followed, and yett all was done quietly, cuilly, peaceably, without trouble to the Prince, or offence to the Subiect: and this bred great affurance and honour to the Kingdome, and all was accomplished by the wisdom especially of *Irenea* the Emperesse.

These things being reported and carried to the eares of the Kings and Princes that were borders vpon *Russia*, they grew so fearefull and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the *Seythians* called the *Crim Tartar* or *Great Can* himselfe, accompanied with a great number of his Nobility well horsed, although to them that were Christians they seemed rude, yet they were personable men, and valiant: their coming was grateful to the Emperour, and their entertainment was honourable: the *Tartar* Prince hauing brought with him his wives also, receiued of the *Russe* Emperour entertainment, and Princely welcome according to their estates.

Not long after, one thousand and two hundred *Pashis* Gentlemen, valiant Soldiers, and proper men came to *Mosco*, offering their seruice to the Emperour, who were all entertrayed: and in like sort many *Chorkessis*, and people of other Nations came and offered seruice. And as soone as the report of this new created Emperour was spread ouer other Kingdomes of *Eurasie*, there were sent to him sundrie Ambassadors, to wish him joy and prosperitie in his Kingdome: thither came Ambassadors from the *Turks*, from the *Persians*, the *Baghians*, the *Crim*, the *Germans*, and many other *Tartar* Princes. There came also Ambassadors from the Emperour of *Almaine*, the *Poles*, the *Swethes*, the *Danes*, &c. And since his Coronation no enemy of his hath preuailed in his attempts.

It fell out not long after, that the Emperour was desirous to send a message to the most excellent Quene of *England*, for which seruice he thought no man fitter then Master *Ierom Horsey*, supposing that one of the Quenes owne men and subiects would be the more acceptable to her. The summe of which message was, That the Emperour desired the continuance of the Quenes friendship, amitie and intercourse of traffique which was betwene his Father and the Quenes Maestie and her Subiects, with other private affairs besides, which are not to be made common.

Master *Horsey* hauing receiued the Letters and Requies of the Emperour, provided for his journey ouer Land, and departed from *Mosco* the first day of September, thence vnto *Omer*, to *Torobock*, to great *Nomogrod*, to *Volskie*, and thence to *Nyboysse* in *Luennia*, to *Wenden*, and so to *Riga*: (where he was belet, and brought forthwith before a Cardinall, called *Raguel*, but yet suffered to passe in the end.) From thence to *Miro*, to *Golden*, and *Lohn* in *Carland*, to *Amel*, to *Konigburgh* in *Prussia*, to *Elling*, to *Danewick*, to *Suen* in *Pomerland*, to *Raford*, to *Leubek*, to *Hamborough*, to *Breme*, to *Emden*, and by Sea to *London*. Being arrived at her Maesties Royal Court, and hauing delivered the Emperours Letters with good fauour, and gracious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commanded to repasse into *Russia*, with other Letters from her Maestie to the Emperour, and Prince *Boris Phedorovich*, answering the Emperours Letters, and withall requesting the fauour and friendship, which his Father had yeilded to the *Englysh* Merchants: and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the Merchants of *London* themselves of that Companie, to deale in their behalfe. Being thus dispatched from *London* by Sea, he arrived in *Mosco*, the twentieth of April, 1586, and was very honourably welcomed, and for the Prince *Boris Phedorovich*, who alwayes affected Master *Horsey* with speciall liking. And hauing obtained priuiledges for the Merchants, he was recommended from the Emperour againe, to the Quene of *England* his Maestie, by whom the Prince *Boris*, in token of his honourable and good opinion of the Quenes Maestie, sent her Highnesse a Royall present of Sables,

PPP 3

Luzars,

Luzarns, cloth of Gold and other rich things. So that the Companie of *Englis* Merchants, next to their thankfulness to her Majestie, as to account Master *Herfey* paines their speciall benefit, who obtained for them those priviledges, which in twentie yeares before would not be granted.

The manner of Master *Herfey* last dispatch from the Emperour, because it was very honorable, I thought good to record. Hee was freely allowed post-horses for him and his servants, victuals and all other necessaries for his long journey: at every Towne that he came vnto from *Mosco to Polenda*, which is by Land five hundred miles, as if he came vnto from full allowances, at the Emperours charge. New victuall and provision were given him vpon the River *Dvina* at every Towne by the Kings Officers, being one thousand miles in length. When he came to the new Caste, called *Archangel*, he was received of the Duke *Koz*, *Fajis Andre*, after their life, where he was impudently feasted: from thence he was dispatched with boundless provision and allowance in the Dukes Boat, with one hundred men to rowe him, and one hundred Gunners in other Boats, and *French* ships rode, the Gunners discharged, and coming to the Road where the *Englis* *Ships*, and *French* ships rode, the Gunners discharged, and the ships shot in like manner fortie six pieces of their Ordnance, and so hee was brought to his lodging at the *Englis* house vpon *Rost* Island.

And, that which was the full and complete conclusion of the favour of the Emperour and *Boris Pheodorovich* toward Master *Herfey*, there were the next day sent him for his further provision vpon the Sea by a Gentleman and a Captaine, the things following. Sixteen Oxen, feuterie Sheepe, six hundred Hens, five and twentie fitches of Bacon, eight bulles of Oxen, five hundred loaves of bread, two thousand Egges, ten Geese, two Cranes, two Swannes, foure furlongs of Meade, fortie gallions of Aquavite, sixtie gallions of Beere, three young Beares, foure Hawks, foure Ouzons and Garleke, ten fresh Salmon, a wilde Boare.

All these things were brought him downe by a Gentleman of the Emperours, and another of Prince *Boris Pheodorovich*, and were received in order by *Le Loh* *Prise* servant to Master *Herfey*, together with an honourable present and reward from the Prince *Boris*, sent him by Master *Francis Cherry* an *Englis* man: which present was a whole very rich piece of cloth of Gold, and a faire paire of Sables.

Ivan Ostrovich is reported to have had seven Wiues, and of them to have left three children remaining, *Theodore* or *Phendore* and *Demetrius* a yongling by his last wife, and a Daughter, which was the wife of *L. Boris* afore said, whole sister *Pheodore* had married in his Fathers life time, who would have caused her divorce for her barrenness (as he had caused *Iuan* his eldest sonne divorcement to be done) and his refusing to do as he was the occasion of that angry, last and fatal blow, before mentioned) but being provoked by faire excuses for a time, the divorce of soule and body in the Father pronounced that in the marriage bed of the Sonne. Yet by his Testament he ordained, that if within two yeares the proued not fruitfull, hee should marrie another. The executors vrged this after that terme expired, but *Gernia* or *Ireana*, his wife wrought with her husband, that their counsels were frustrate: wherein she was assisted by the policie of wisdom of her brother *Boris*, who was now become chiefe Pilot, though not the Master in that *Raffin* ship: and is said formerly to have beene so small dore in those cruelledges of *Iuan* his deceased Masters: yet had he cunningly cast the blame on him now dead, and wisely insinuated into the peoples fauour, by mitigating the severity of his Decrees. You have read before of his great Reuenues and wealth, recorded by eye witnesses, *Thomas* Gaith, that three hundred of his great Reuenues, whereof the Senate of the Empire consisted, by aduise of the Executors, had distributed. *Boris* made the simple Emperor beleue, that it was a conspiracy against him: whereupon they were all committed, ten of which (whom he thought his most dangerous aduersaries) were suddenly and primly executed: to the rest, he procured the Emperours pardon and fauour, seeming very sorrowfull that this clemency had bene so much followed: and that the hasty execution had prevented his officious inducers for their deliriance. And that he might seem serious, he got their goods to be restored to their heires: so working himselfe into the good liking of all degrees.

But soon after, vpon *Demetrius* the Emperours brother was slain, as hee was going to Church betwixt two *Boiaren*, by a mad man (as he seemed) who was slain, as hee was going to church but the author which let him on worke, could not be found: whereupon *Boris* was suspected to affect the fouragery. *Thomas* elsewhere telleth, that hee corrupted those which were about *Demetrius*: and the great Bell being rung as was usual in cases of fire to bring the people together, *Demetrius* at that noile running forth, some were set in that tumult to kill him, which accordingly people (making no curious search for the doers) to kill of the Family which they met in their furie, to put the suspicion thereof from themselves: and as one which hardly exagitated the fierer tortures and terrible executions vpon them, and as one which hardly exagitated the fierer, burned the fire to expiate the parricide. This place being farre remote from the Court, whither

cher he was thought purposely to have sent him, could not admit to open evidence of manifest testimony; but that it gave occasion of other Tragedies, by another supposed *Demetrius*, as shall anon appeare. Meane while, *Boris* could not escape aportion of the tact pain, and suspicion of like intended to the present Prince, and therefore was forced to consume vp his best-wits to worke him into better reputation. He did heretofore either take occasion, or make occasion by diuers fir: in diuers Cities of the Kingdom, the Houses being of wood, and easily consumed: which loffe (made, as some deliver by his own incendiaries, hee seemed much to commiserate, and by affected bowell, repaired those ruins out of the publique Treasure: others say, out of his private purse: thus easily boln and entertained in affection to him, whiles *Theodore* lived, which was not long: hee dying in the year 1598. on twelfe day, having lived thirty sixe yeares, and reigned neere fouretee. His impotency of body and minde, you have read before in part. *Thomas* saith, meth, that *Iuan Vasilovich* his Father said, he was fitter to ring Bells in Churches, then to gouerne an Empire: aluding therein to his supereceding deuotion and much deuour superstition. His death caused a new asperion on *Boris* as procured, in some mens conceits (and reports) by payson.

His dead body was buried with his ancestors, in Saint *Michael* Temple in the Caste, and Souldiours were presently lent to the borders, to prohibit ingress or egress. *Theodore* will was read, and therein *Gernia* (or *Ireana*) his wife, and the Patriarch, entrusted with the administration of the State. Herupon a general State assembly was assembled at *Mosco*, and their speeches given to the Emprise. After this the Emprise went into a Nunerie, to passe there the fortie dayes destined to publique sorrow: in which time (whether of her owne or with her brothers accord) making (if of vnpeakeable sorrow for her deceased Lord, shee resumed weeping, and transferred the Imperiall government vpon the *Knaues* and *Boiaren*, which her Husband had bequeathed to her: that they according to their wilidome, and like to their Countie, might take care thereof. This was done by her brothers counsell, to try what the people would doe: who were so moued therewith, that they came thronging to the Nunerie gates, lamentably imploring her come in so perillous a time, whom only they were bound to serue. And when the bad them goe to the *Knaues* and *Boiaren*: they protested against them, saying, they had sworn to her, and would be ordered by *L. Boris*, her brother. Herupon *Boris Pheodorovich* went out to appease their tumult, and vnder took for the fortie dayes of mourning, together with the *Knaues* and *Boiaren* to administer the Empire. In which time, the Emprise renounced secular cares, and professed her selfe a Nunne: changing her name from *Gernia* to *Alexandrina*.

The time of mourning being past, the people were called into the Caste, and the Chancellour made an Oration, perswading them to vnder obedience to the *Knaues* and *Boiaren*, which they with out-cries disclaimed, offering roade to the Queene and *L. Boris*. The Council sitting to consider hereof, the Chancellour came forth againe and commanded them to swear to the *Knaues* and *Boiaren* the Queene should become a Nunne. Whereupon they all named *Boris* her Brother, as one worthy of the State: to whom they were ready to swear. Hee being present, rose vp and modestly excused himselfe, protesting his unwillingness and vnwillingness, and bidding them chuse some other more worthy. Answering withall into the Church, they laid in manner terrible hands on him: with loud cries and demonstrations, beseeching him not to forsake them. Whereat he wept and still refused, aluding his insufficiency: and to kinde greater desire in the people and Nobles, absented and hid himselfe with his Sister in the Nunerie the space of a month. In which space the people fearing his flight, besieged the place, and with continual clamours vrged the Queene, to perswade her Brother to accept of the Empire which he had refused. Shee againe sends them to the *Knaues* and *Boiaren*: the mention of whose names seemed to cast them into a fit of mutinie and sedition. *Boris* then cometh forth and tells them, if they were no quier, hee would take Sackcloth, and so his Sister laid downe enter into a Monasterie. They made no much greater stirres, casting out some desperate threats of looking to confound, where the Common-wealth was desperately troubled. The Queene then wrote by their importunitee praieth that her brother no longer to resist Gods will, which had put this constancie into the peoples minds, and to accept that which thus God seemed to command, praying for his blessing therein.

Boris after new excuses, at last seeming overcome by his Sisters intreaties, and to have held out sufficiently to remove enue, assenteth to her, and the signifieth as much to the people, to whom he presents him, praying them to be as loyal to him, as they had bene earnest for him. *Boris* also spake vnto them: *Forasmuch as I somewhat grieve the Diuine Grace and Providence, whereby things are gouerned, that by common consent and counsaill Prayers intreated, I take on mee the Priesthood: one you, and all the Princes of Russia, I will no longer resist, how becaue I seeke I conceale*

Some write that hee caused diuers places in *Mosco* to be burned, and then afterwards out of his owne cost repaired them.

D. Plot. Death of *Theodore*.

The Emprise succeeds.

Refuseth to be of dayes mourning for an Emperor.

The Queene renounceth Nun.

Boris is willing to be unwilling.

He is laid forth.

this burthen to my shoulders, but have determined to undertake your protection with greatest fidelity, being ready to sway the Russian Scepter and Government, as farre as Gods grace shall enable mee. On the other side bee you faithful to mee and to my command, as God may you helpe. I am your most gentle King.

loyfull acclamations followed, with all protestation of their fidelitie and future obedience. He entering into the Monasterie, after Prayers, received the first Benediction. The people returned full of joy, and the Bells (of which are numbered in *Moscow*, three thousand) resounded the publique Festivitie. All the Magistrates and Officers, as such as received Salarie of the King, presently to the Monasterie and carried Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Pearls, Bread, and Salt, (after the soleimne custome) with wives of long life & all happines, and desiring to accept in good worth his; the rest they should take to themselves. Then doth hee bid them to a Feast, and presently with *Mary* his Wife, *Theodore* his Sonne of ten yeeres old, and *Artemise* his Daughter being sixteen, he goeth out of the Monasterie with pompous Protection to the Castle. Like Prelates were offered to his Wife and Children, which accepted only the Bread and Salt, remitting the rest to the Prelaters. When he was come to the Castle, he chose his Sisters Lodging; for that of the Prince deceased, as offense by his death was destroyed, and after new built.

After Festivall entertainment of innumerable people, soleimne Oath was taken of all the Gouvernours; those things being in action till May. Then came newes that the *Crim Tartars* had entered the borders thinking to find all things troubled with an intestine warre upon themselves. 20 He sent an Armie of three hundred thousand, and went in person against them. But the *Tartars* hearing how things went, returned home and sent Embassadors to the Emperours Tent. He returned with them to *Moscow*, where the next September (which is the beginning of the *Russian* New yeere, which enters in other places with January following) hee was publicly blessed by the Patriarke, carrying a golden Crosse in his hand, and on the fourteenth of September, before the *Knazes*, *Bisshops*, Bishops and other Orders, had the Crowne set on his head by the Patriarke, and the Scepter put in his hand, with the Solemnitie in such cases accustomed.

Twelve dayes together all Orders were feasted in the Castle, and the Magistrates and Officers had a yeeres pay given them. Merchants also of other Countries had Immunities and Priviledges granted. The Rusticks had their payments to their *Seigniors* reasonably rated, and their 30 perions made more free. *German* Merchants had monies lent them to repay feuten yeeres after without Vinture. Widowes, and Orphans, and poorer persons received much Almes. *Phisicians* Obsequies were solemnly performed, and the Priests richly rewarded; and that Empire which seemed dead with the death of the house of *Beale*, now was as it were raised, and received a glorious Resurrection.

Thus have we delivered you *Thuanus* his report touching *Boris* manner of acquiring the Empire without publick enmie, and cunning wiping of the aspersions of *Phisidore* and *Demetrius* their deaths. And as every bodie is nourished by Aliments correspondent to the Principles of the Generation, so did hee seeke by politique wisdom to establish that which by wife Politics he had gotten. Wherein his care was not hitherto multiply Treasure, and as at first hee had 40 been popularly prodigall, so after a small time of his Reigne, hee became providently penurious, the wonted allowances of the Court being much thinned: from that which had bene in former times, as I have received from eye-witnesses. Likewise he was careful to hold good treatmes with his Neighbouring Princes, and as well by plots at home, as by foreigne Alliance inducured to settle on his Race this new gotten Empire. He is said for this end, to have sought a Wife for his sonne out of *England*, and a Husband for his Daughter out of *Demetria*. His Wife was a woman of haughtie spirit, who chooghe her too good for any *Helpe* (so they call a slave, and such she esteemed all the subjects) and on such termes is said to have bene denied to a great man his best Souldier and Commander of his Armie.

But while his Sonne shined now in the height of his comlie, and with brightest and war- 50 melt beames of prosperitie, there arose grosse vapours out of *Demetrius* his grave, which grew quickly into a blacke darke cloud, and not only eclipsed that Imperiall glorie, but soone engendered a blonnie storme, which with a foud sweep away that whole Family, and over-whelmed also the whole Empire. Contraries yet together cause the greater lustre; for which cause I will bring on the stage a Gentleman, which attended *St. Thomas Smith* employed in Honourable Embassage from his Majestie of Great Brittain to the then flourishing Emperour *Boris*; and out of his large Relations deliver you this which followeth in his owne words (omitting the most part 60 * to our purpose not so pertinent) in the Booke printed, *Anno 1605*.

* Where the enormous his trafficke also seemeth too much to insult on the his assistance.

His policies.

P. Reines.

§. II.

Occurrents of principall Note which happened in Russia, in the time while the Honourable Sir THOMAS SMITH remayned there Embassador from his Majestie.

Sir Thomas Smith Knight, accompanied with Sir T. Chaulson and Sir W. Wyre Knights, divers Gentlemen and his owne Attendants, repayed to the Court on the tenth of June 1604, then lying at *Greenwich*, where by the Right Honourable the Earle of *Salisbury* he was brought to His Majesties presence, killed his Hand, &c. The next day 10 he tooke leave of the Prince, and on the twelfth being furnished with his Commission, he came to *Gransford*, and next morning went aboard the *Job* and *Archangel*: and the two and twentieth of July anchored within a mile of the *Archangel*. The sixteenth of September, hee came to *Volgda*: the five and twentieth to *Perislaw*, and there staid three dayes, and then departed to *Troites* (that faire and rich Monasterie) to *Bratskoye* and *Rybnikoye*, five versts from the great Cite of *Moscow*. The fourth of October, the *Prussian* came and declared the Emperours pleasure that hee should come into the *Moscow* that forenoone: presently after came 20 Master *I. Mericke* Agent, with some twentie Horses to attend his Lordship, which forth-with was performed. Then we did ride, till we came within a little mile of the many thousands of Noblemen and Gentlemen on both sides the way, attended on horsebacke to receive his Lordship. Where the Embassador alighted from his Coach, and mounted on his foot-cloth Horse, and so rode on with his Trumpets sounding. A quarter of a mile farther, met him a proper and gallant Gentleman a-foot of the Emperours table, who with Cap in hand, declared to the Embassa- 30 dor, that the Emperour, the young Prince, and the Master of the Horse, had so farr fauoured him, as to send him a letter, very gorgeously trapped with Gold, Pearls, and Precious Stone; and particularly, a great Chaîne of plated Gold about his necke, to ride upon. Whereupon the Embassador slighted, embraced the Gentleman, returned humble thanks to them all, and presently mounted. Then he declared that they likewise had sent horses for the Kings Gentlemen, which likewise were very richly adorned, then for all his followers: which Ceremonie or State performed, and all being horsed, he departed, we riding orderly forward, till we were met by three great Noblemen, seated from the rest of the multitude, and the Emperours *Talmach* or Interpreter with them.

They being within speech, thus began that Oration they could never well conclude: Which was, That from their Lord and Master the mightie Emperour of *Russia*, &c. they had a message to deliver his Lordship. The Embassador then thinking they would be tedious and troublesome with their viall Ceremonies; presented their farther speech with this (to them a *Spell*) That it was unfitting for Subjects to hold discourse in that kind of complement, of two such mightie and renowned Potentates on horsebacke. They (hereby not only pur by their Ceremonious Siddle-sitting, but out of their Paper instructions) alighted suddenly, as men fearing they were halfe vn- 40 derstood, and the Embassador presently after them, coming very courteously all three, saluting the Embassador and the Kings Gentlemen, taking them by the hands. Thus like a Scholer, too old to learn by rote, did the Duke named King *Vladimir Ivanovich Manskiy* with his Lesson before him, declared his message; which was, that he with the other two Noblemen, were sent from the Great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Boris Phedorovich, self-typholder, great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Russia, Volademer, Moskoe and Nourogrod, King of Cazan and Astracan, Lord of Novokoe, great Duke of Smolenskoe, Tuer, Huder, Vghory, Perme, Viatsky, Bolgory, &c. Lord and great Duke of Nourogrod in the Low Countreyes, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotsky, Rostoffe, Gerallau, Bealozer, Leifland, Oudorsky, Obdorskoy, Condingsky. King of all Syberia and the North Coast, Commander of the Countreyes of Iursky, Gryfinsky, and Emperour of Kaborodinsky, of Chirkauky, and of the whole Countrey of Garsky, and of many other Countreyes and Kingdomes Lord and Emperour, to know of his Majesties health of *England*, the 50 Queene and Princes. The second, being a Captaine of Gunners (the Emperours Gun) named *Kearine Danydovich Beashetshou*, pronouncing the Emperour and Princes Title, said hee was sent from them to know his Lordships health and vialge, with the Kings Gentlemen. The third, was one of the Secretaries, named *Pheodor Boulshoe*, offering the former order did deliver what he had in command from the Emperour, Prince and Emperre, to informe the Embassador of their much fauour towards him, and the Kings Gentlemen, in providing for his Honourable entertain- 60 ty and case, a faire large house to lodge in: Also that they three were sent from the Emperour, Prince, and Emperre, to be his *Preceptors*, to supply the Emperours goodwille toward him, to procure his necessities, and deliver any late pleaied the Ambassadors to make to the Emperour. To all which the Embassador very wisely gave answer (as they made report vnto the Emperour.)

So we all presently mounted againe, the *Preceptors* on either hand of the Ambassadors his Horse and Foot-cloth being led by his Page, some small distance, his Coach behind that, and some

some fixe thousand Gallants after behind all: who at the Embassadors riding through the guard, that was made for him, very courteously bowed him selfe. This was he followed by thousands, and within the three walls of the Citie, many hundreds of young Noblemen, Gentlemen, and rich Merchants well mounted, begitt the wayes on every side: diuers on foot also, euen to the gate of the house where the Embassadors was to be lodged, which was faine two miles. Whether being come, he was brought into his Bed-chamber by the Noblemen his *Profanes*, where with many thanks for their honourable paines; they were dimitt, betaking themselves to their further affaires. The next morning came three other *Profanes* with the former, to know of his Lordships health, and how he had rested the night past: withall, that if his Lordship wanted any thing, they all, or any one of them, were as commanded, for ready to obey therein. This, with the Interpreter and two Gentlemen were most within the walls, lodged in a house ouer the gate, besides we had fixe Gunners to attend, and guard vs in our going abroad.

The eight of October being the fourth day after our coming to *Moscow*, the *Profanes* came to his Lordship to let him vnderstand, they heard he should goe vp the next day: wherefore they desired his speech and Embassage to the Emperour: and the rather, that the Interpreter might (as they pretended) translate it. To this purpose, very earnestly at several times they made demand. The Embassador answered, that he was sent from a mighty Prince, to bee his Embassador to their Emperour, and being sent to their Master, he deemed it, not only a dishonour to him, but a weaknesse in them, to require that at his hands.

The Lench of October, his Lordship being sent for by his *Profanes* there wayting, hauing excellent Ienners for himselfe, the Kings Gentlemen, and good horses for the rest: as likewise two gallant white Palerics to carrie or draw a rich Chariot; one parcell of the great Present, with his followers and the Emperours guard, carrying the rest: on each side the fifties standing the Emperours guard with Peeces in their hands well apperelled, to the numbers of two thousand by estimate, many Messengers posting betwixt the Court and our *Profanes*. Thus with much state, softly riding, till we came vnto the vtmost gate of the Court (hauing passed through the great Castle before) there his Lordship dismounted. Then met him a great Duke (named *Knag Andrius Metewich Someoderne*) with certayne Gentlemen, to bring him vp. So in order as we rode, we ascended the stairs and a stone Gallerie, whereon each side stood many Nobles and Courtiers, in faire Coats of *Perfume* Stuffe, Velvet, Damaske, &c. At the entry to the great Chamber, two Counsellors encountered the Embassador, to conduct him through that Rosome, round about which fat many graue and richly apperelled Personages. Then we entered the Prefence, whether being come, and making obediency, we staid to heare, but not vnderstand, a very gallant Nobleman, named *Peter Bassman*, deliuer the Emperours Title: Then the particular of the Presents, and some other Ceremonies: which performed, the Embassador hauing liberte, deliuered so much of his Embassage, as the time and occasion then afforded: After which the Emperour arising from his Throne, demanded of the King of *England* health, the Princes, and Queenes: then of the Embassadors and the Kings Gentlemen, and how they had bene vied since they entred within his Dominions: to all which with obediency we answered as was mette. Then the young Prince demanded the very same.

The Embassador hauing taken the Kings Letter of his Gentlemen Viceroy, went vp after his obediency to deliuer it, which the Lord Chancellor would haue intercepted. But the Embassador gaue it to the Emperours owne hands, and his Majestie afterwards deliuered it to the Lord Chancellor: who tooke it, and shewing the superscription to the Emperour and Prince, held it in his hand openly with the Seale towards them. Then the Emperour called the Embassador to kisse his hand, which he did, as likewise the Princes, and with his face towards them returned. Then did he call for the Kings Gentlemen to kisse his hand, and the Princes, which they after obediency made, did accordingly. Afterwards, his Majestie inuited his Lordship, the Kings Gentlemen and the rest to dine with him, as likewise *Maister I. Mericke* Agent by name, who gaue his attendance there on the Embassador, and was now (so diuers times) very graciously vnto the Emperour and Prince: no stranger (that I euer heard off) like him in all respects.

Being entred the Prefence, we might behold the excellent Majestie of a mighty Emperour, seated in a Chair of Gold, richly embroyded with *Perfume* Stuffe: in his right hand he held a golden Scepter, a Crowne of pure Gold vpon his head, a Collar of rich fiones and Pearles about his necke, his outward Garments of Crimfon Veluet, embroyded very faire, with Pearles, Precious fiones and Gold: On his right side, (on equall height to his Throne) standing a very faire Globe of beaten Gold, on a Pyramis, with a faire Croffe vpon it, vnto which before he spake, he turned a little and croff himselfe, Night that, stood a faire Balon and Ewer, which the Emperour often vseth daily.

Closet by him in another Throne sat the Prince, in an outward Garment like his Fathers, but not so rich, a high blacke Foxe Cap on his head, worth in that Countrey six hundred pound. A Golden Staffe like a Friars, with the likeness of a Croffe at the top. On the right hand of the Emperour, stood two gallant Noblemen in cloth of Silver Garments, high blacke Foxe Capes, great and long chaines of Gold hanging to their feet, with Pollaxes on their shoulders of Gold.

And on the left hand of the Prince two other such, but with Silver Pollaxes. Round about the benches fat the Councell and Nobilitie, in Golden and *Perfume* Coats, and high blacke Foxe Caps, to the number of two hundred, the ground being couered with Cloth of Arras, or Tapistrie: The Princes standing all the while in the Rosome, within little distance of his Majestie, where he and the Prince often viewed them. Being now by our *Profanes* and others come for to Dinner, who led vs through much preffe and many Chambers to one very faire and rich Rosome, where was infinite store of malle Plate of all sorts: Towards the other end stood the Emperours Vncle, named *Stephan Vassilewich Gedomas*, Lord High Steward, being attended with many Noblemen and Gentlemen, whom my Lord in his passage saluted, which with an extraordinary countenance of aged loy, he received, making one of their honourable Nods. The Embassador entered the dining Rosome, where we againe viewed the Emperour and Prince, seated vnder two Chaires of State, ready to dine, each hauing a Scull of Pearle on their bare heads, but the Princes was but a Conner. Also their Veiements were changed.

The former Duke, that fat that day was the Embassadors *Profane*, as, as commanded from the Emperour, and placed the Embassador at a Table, on the bench side, some twentie foot from the Emperour. Then the Kings Gentlemen, *Maister Mericke*, *Maister Edward Cherrie*, and all the rest were placed, so that our eyes were halfe opposite to the Emperour. Our against the Embassador sat his *Profanes* vppermost. Also in this large place fat the Priue Councill, to the number of two hundred Nobles at feuerall Tables. In the midst of this Hall might seeme to stand a great Pillar, round about which, a great length stood wonderful great pieces of Plate, very curiously wrought in the manner of Beasts, Fishes and Fowles, besides some other ordinarie pieces of seruicable Plate.

Being thus fat (some quarter of an hour as it were, feeding our eyes with that faire Pillar of Plate) we beheld the Emperours Table (erected by two hundred Noblemen, all in Coats of cloth of Gold. The Princes Table (erected with one hundred young Dukes and Princes of *Cassan*, *African*, *Syberia*, *Tartaria*, *Cherchess* and *Ruffes*, none above twentie yeres old).

Then the Emperour sent from his Table by his Noble Seruitors, to my Lord and the Kings Gentlemen, thre Dishes of meate, and to each a losse of extraordinary fine bread. Then followed a great number of strange and rare Dishes, some in Silver, but most of malle Gold; with boyled, baked, and roasted, being piled vp on one another by halfe dozens. To make you particular Relation, I should doe the entertainment wrong, consisting almost of innumerable Dishes: Also, I should ouer-charge my memory, as then I did mine eyes and stomacke, a little delighting the Reader, because Garlicke and Onions, must beswame many of my words, as then it did the most part of their Dishes.

For our Drinckes, they consisted of many excellent kinds of Meades, besides all sorts of Wine and Beere. Diuers times by name, the Emperour sent vs Dishes: but in the midst of Dinner hee called the Embassador vp to him, and drinke our Kings health, where the Emperour held some discourse of our King and State. But at one time (striking his hand audibly on his breast) *Oh, said hee, my deere Sister Quene Elizabeth*, whom I loue as mine owne heart, expressing this his great affection almost in a weeping passion: The Embassador receiving the Cup from his Prince, lay hand, returned againe to his owne place, where all of vs standing, dranke the same health out of the same Cup, being of faire Christall, as the Emperour had commanded, the Wine (as farre as my iudgement gaue leaue) being Alligant.

Thus passing some foure houres in banquetting, and refreshing our felues too plentifully, all being taken away, we did arise. The Embassador and the Kings Gentlemen being called by name to receiue from his Emperiall hands, a Cup (or rather as they call it a *Tendron*) of excellent Meade, a fauour among them neuer obserued before, which Cups for they were great and the Meade very strong, we often sipped at, but without hurting our memories, we could not say *Amen* vnto: which the Emperour perceiving, commanded them to be taken away, saying, *Hee*

was best pleased with what was most for our healths. Thus after our low courtesies performed, we departed from his prefence, riding home with the same former guard and attendance to our Lodgings; where our *Profanes* for that instant led vs, but shortly after they came againe, to accompany a great and gallant Duke, one of them that held the Emperours golden Pollaxes, named *Knes Romanus Poldorovich Trje Narous*, who was sent from his Majestie to make the Embassador and the Kings Gentlemen merrie: likewise hauing instructions to drinke their Emperours, our Kings and both the Princes healths, and diuers Princes else, which hee did humbly very freely and some of vs, as many of them as we could haue made tortie *Ruffes* haue stumbled to sleepe. Thus light-headed, and well laded especially if you take knowledge of the thirte yards of cloth of Gold, and the two standing Cups with coeurs, which the Embassador rewarded him withall, before he departed.

But welcome newes within foure dayes after: our audience lo vnhappily came, as not only our Affaires, but any elie, except counsell against present danger, was not regarded. For this was held for currant, that one who named himselfe *Dmitrie Enamovich Beala*, as the Sonne of their late

Strange request.

His audience.

P. Bassman.

Emperours gloire.

Princes splendour.

Pollaxes.

Commonell and Nobilitie.

Plate.

Dining roome.

Change of Rayment.

Two hundred Nobles guests.

Three hundred noble Seruitors.

Garlicke and Onions, Drinck Meade.

Memory of Q. Elizabeth.

Gifts.

Newes of D-mitting late.

amile, to give a taste of the fruit spring from so slavery a Tree. Being by a learned and well-travelled Gentleman divers times particularly alluded to; for the Prince take more (then no recreation) by which manner he might avoid prolong his life, as in trust his judgement and delight his mind: Oh, would the Emperor were now, someone is no longer: may, I am persuaded, three fons to me is but half a fons. But had I five fons, then I might safely say I had one, how then should I part with that at any time? I know not but be mine for any time! This may give satisfaction to any virtuous looking back of his fears and jealousies: his great love, Lord and father of his fons, yet without. *That he was not only his goodman, but his very fons.*

* Because he had done more for him, then might lawfully be commended.

Two policies of his fons, then to common, of his strange repaid the Emperor by which danger of his, when his people were ready to mutiny, they were created his good-Subjecs; yet did admire his not only care, but good will towards them all.

A second, was at that time the Land was visited with a mighty famine, and as great a plague (some four years since) whereas a third of the whole Nation is rated to have died: and the murthering multitude laid the cause was, their *slaying of a murderer to the Empire; wherefore God did thus visit them: Whereupon her cruel Gallies to be build round about the worst wall of the great City of Moscow, and there appointed daily to be given to the poor, twenty thousand pounds sterling: which was accordingly performed for one month, whereupon the common peoples mouths and bellies were well stopped.*

Here we lodged till the first of May, being visited with the inconvenience and ill-consequence of three reports: whereupon the time of the year requiring, the Ambassador retired England, as happily to be out of any disaster, the rumours being innumerable and vacillating.

Peter Bafman sent against Demetrius, to-morrow.

After the suspicious death of the old Emperor Boris Phedorowitch, &c. by the appointment of the Prince (then their expected Emperor) and the Council, *Peter Bafman* (that noble Spark) was speedily dispatched and sent as General into their ill-succeeding warres, as their last hope (indeed he proved so in a contrarie sense) and the only refuge to the Commons: who, her being come, hee with himselfe persecuted most of his command, as many as freely would offer themselves: Under which were all the English, Scots, French, Dutch and Flemings: whatsoever: and with him, or rather before him, (as least suspected) *Rus Fels E-nawich Guteshe*, the other General, a man of great birth, and in the prudence of place, to be received before *Peter Bafman*. All which, the now well known newly opinionated Emperor very graciously received, happily not without some trouble of many particulars.

Demetrius now sent Messengers with Letters well-entred the Suburbs, where the Commons in infinite numbers brought them, and the Emperor's Palace before the Castle gate: within which, as daily they did visit, so now were all the Counsellors in consultation; but happily not in secret. Considerable also wherein was the Imperial Court.

Tumult of the Commons.

There these *Boyers* made demand for many of the Counsellors, especially for the *Godunow*, to come to hear their right King *Demetrius E-mawich* speaking unto them by Letters: Who yet after refusal (and I cannot condemn all) many came; the Commons being resolved, life to fetch them out. Then, by the *Boyers* aloud was read the Emperours Letters, to this effect.

Demetrius his Letter.

That hee much wondered at that time, wherein expedition was to be accounted (first police, having first many Letters and Messengers to them, concerning their approaching him to be their lawful King, as being the fons of E-mawich his late Emperor, and the only brother of Phedor E-nawich selfe-repeller of happy memory, both with unwinable Arguments and direct Reasons to the manifesting thereof, they notwithstanding his long patience and gracious remission) were not so easily so proud, as not to answer his Princely Letters, but so presumptuous, as to receive his Messengers, whereby they made themselves apparently to be no less Vipers to the State in offering him, then Trayers to his selfe the true and right Emperor, by defrauding them: yet giving him a strong Argument to be their King, of their guiltiness: all allowing thereby, time and opportunity (if hee had not become their true-lawful Emperor, and with the natural all Mother, tendered the life of her deare Children) to have conquered and destroyed the whole Nation.

All which notwithstanding, hee (being confident in his own conscience, of his just Title, made the Prince of patience and humilitie from his former many great miseries and dangers) had in his Princely Wisdom and clemency againe wrote these (but certainly his last Peace-requiring, and Grace-offering Letters: yet, was content to desire them be might) and desired not shortly but he should come, only aiming at the good of the Commonwealth and State in general: as he that without much doubting of the Subjects spent, desired the Kingdom.

Alf

As to this end hee had sent men of great birth, viz. Rus Phedor, E-nawich Melchitsky, and Rus Demetre, E-nawich Sukky; and given them Commission to displace his Emperours, and Pretense the Godunowes, and others, till his further pleasure were known, concerning these most bloody juckers and Trayers, with returns of the Commons answers thereto: Likewise to demand his Messengers, and to be brought before the Commons, whom hee had reason to believe were ill-intended, and to be murdered; withall, that if they did submit themselves now to him, as to their lawful Prince and Sovereign, (which hee was truly resolved their consciences were and will be Reneger of them, and their many misdeeds towards him, as hee that had his Sword ever unsheathed to execute his vengeance on them all: and was easily persuaded they were not ignorant of the many Vices hee had obtained formerly against them, when they would seeme able and willing to fight with his Soldiers: and how afflicted and troubled beneath they all were: But that now, hee had their chiefs and strongest Heads and Armes in his own hand, the whole World might not be able him they durst once stand open against him, as assured that all (excepting a very few, and they of the worst) in hearts were his loyal Subjects, &c.

But before this Letter was half read, the Hearts and Hands of the multitude were strangely combined together, not one speaking, but all contently like fettered and chained Horles stamping; being indeed without any fear, but of not doing mischief enough, all (as one) running violently into the Cattle, where (meeting two of the pitifully tormented Messengers) they pawled to heare them as sufficiently as their insufliciency would permit them, deliver the vilde manner of their torturing, whipping, and roasting, which was in deeds a Whip and Spurre to drive them, without wit or humane, as if they had been fired like Gun-powder with the very sparkes of heate: such barbarous cruelty, beastly actions, and inhumane speeches with the very sparkes of heate: such barbarous cruelty, beastly actions, and inhumane speeches, as without the great Deuil had beene their General, no particular could have acted; laying violent hands on all they met: but not killing (the great mercy of God) any man of account.

Thus the whole Citty was in an uprore, all the Counsellors houses, sellers, and studies ransacked, beginning with the *Godunowes*; spoiling, renting, and stealing all they met with; but carrying little away but drinke, which they could not carry away.

[The Commons (no doubt) would have made this day little inferior to the massacre of *Paris*, so violent and deuilish were their fublen resolutions; but that the Nobles (best beloved and obeyed) intreated, where none could command: others perswading, all willing an end to this most miserable and new exampled mischief. But the multitude did what they were and could; especially on the greatest, which certainly were the worst: So as the Emperess flying to a safer lodging, had her collar of Pearle plucked from her necke.

Then the Prince, Emperess, and Princelle, were pressed (a second command being come from the Campe) with the *Godunowes*, and many others that were suspected most: The Nobles ioying in one counsell for the present ordering of these falden accidents, and for an answer to the Prince *Demetrius E-nawich*, who suddenly was by general consent concluded (by the particular knowledge of *Bois Bruley* a great Counsellor, that was prime to his departure, and some others) to be their right and lawful Emperor, only a few excepted. So as the young Prince was by many (but particularly by his mother) counselled to leave the Kingdom utterly, before it forsooke him: to follow his Fathers example in murdering himselfe, and herein his mother (that Map of miseries, that Cradle of crueltie) and his only deare sister would associate him.

Letters were deified, and Messengers framed to effect this desperate treachery on his innocent life: so as in very few dayes (for mischief hath the wings of Thought and Resolution) they three did consent (an inhappy conjunction) to destroy themselves; and rather to lay violent hands upon their lawfull lives, then make an Enemy (enemie cruel in executing justice on them) which yet certainly this Emperor never dreamt of, but determined the Prince should be within himselfe, not left to be Absolute, and in a very great Dukedom. The Princely Mother began the health of Death to her noble Sonne, who pledged her with a hearty draught, therein so much strength did hee add to his vile wicked obedience, that hee procured a banquerout presently, and hand in hand embracing each other, they fell, and died as one, the Mother counselling and aiding, while the child bethought and suffered: yet for Providence and Commiseration, Contiancy and Obedience: the Princelle drank, but like a Virgin temperately: so as notwithstanding (the want of which was the death of the Mother) now procured the life of the Daughter.

However it was with Boris for other things, I thought it not amiss to add this testimony of his respect to the English Nation and Merchants in Princelikes granted them, as follows,

Q q q

One

* Thus he had others ascribe to Demetrius his command, and this selfe-murder was pretended to avoid enuy of the fact. Death of Mother & Sonnes.

Emperour Boris
his Majesty's
Patent translated
white Sir 76.
Smith was
there.

*O*ne Almighty God without and before the Beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, our only God, Creator and Preserver of all things, grant every one of us by his Children with his holy Word, through our Lord Iesum Christ, the Spirit of life, the good of the Land, and the happiness of the People, together with our Enemies, and to the doing of good.

We the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Phedorowich of all Russia, late Commander of Volodimer, Molco, Nouogrod, Emperour of Cazan, King of Astracan, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Iwersko, Vhorskoj, Pernskoy, Vatskoj, Ballastskoy, and of others, Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the low Country of Chernego, Rezan, Polotskoj, Roulall Siberia, of Belzerskoj, Leetjinskoy, Owdorskoy, Obdorskoy, Condinskoy, and Country, and of Cherev, and Igarskoj Land, as also of many others Lord and Commander, with me Sir John Hart, Knight; Sir William Webb, Knight; Richard Saltanfall, Alderman; Nicolas Henrie Anderlon, John Audwart, Francis Cherie, John Merick, Anthony Marlar; Wee have granted and licensed them to come with their ships into our Dominion the Country of Dwina, with all manner of Commodities, to trade freely from the Sea side and within our Dominions, to the City of Empire of Molco. Also there made suite unto us Sir John Hart, Knight, and his Companie, to grant us them to trade to our City of Molco, and to our Heritage of great Nouogrod and Vobsko, and to the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Phedorowich of all Russia, with our Sonne Prince Phedor Borisowich of all Russia, late granted unto the English Ambassadors, Sir John Hart, Knight, his fellows, for our Sister Queene Elizabeth, free passage to come into our Kingdom of Molco, and into all the rest of our Dominions, with all manner of Commodities to trade and traffick freely at their pleasure. Also we have commanded, not to take any kinde of Customs for their goods, nor any new for Customs of their Boats or Headmugs, nor for passing over Bridges and Ferries, nor for any other of Wares: as also all manner of other Customs or Duties whatsoever we command shall not be of our Kingdom any other men's goods as their own: nor to sell or barter for other men. Neither shall paynes by them to come or colour them: Likewise they shall not send any of our Subjects to any Town or City to buy Commodities. But what City they come unto themselves they shall sell their own Commodities, and buy our Commodities. And when they shall come to our Heritage to great Vobsko and Nouogrod, or to any other City within our Dominions with their Commodities, that then our Gentlemen and Gouernours, and all other officers shall suffer and let them passe according to this our Letter, and to take no manner of Customs of them whatsoever for any of their Commodities for passing by, nor for passage over any Bridges: neither shall they take any other Custom whatsoever in all our Dominions, and wheresoever they happen to come, and doe proceed to buy and sell, as also wheresoever they shall passe through with goods, not buying of any Commodities nor selling their own, then in those Cities they shall take of them no manner of Customs whatsoever as afore said: and we have gratified and given them leave to trade in all parts of our Dominions with their goods freely without Customs. And likewise wheresoever the English Merchants shall be desirous to buy or sell, or barter their wares with our Merchants wares for wares, then shall they sell their wares whole by, and not by retale. Cloth by the pack, and by Clothes and by remnants; and Damask, and Velvets by the Piece and not by the Yard, or ellence, and such Commodities as is to be sold by weight, not to sell them by the small weight, that is to say, by the Zolotnick. Also they shall sell Wines by the Pipe and the Hogshead, but by the Gallon, Quarts or Pot or Charks they shall not sell: moreover, they shall buy, sell and exchange their own Commodities themselves, and the Russ Merchants shall not sell or exchange for them or from them their Commodities neither shall they carry any men's goods to no manner of place under colour of their own, and which of the English Merchants would, at anytime sell his Commodities as Colmogro on the Dwina, or at Volodga and at Ytallally they may, and of all other Cities and Commodities throughout all our Cities and Dominion, our Gentlemen, Gouernours, and all other Officers shall take no manner of Customs according to this our Imperiall Letter of fauour. Also through all our Dominions, Cities, and Townes they shall hire Carriers, Boats, and men to labour or rowe in the said Boats at their own will. Likewise when as the English Merchants shall desire to goe out of our Dominion into any other Kingdom, or into their own Land, and what we thinke is good for them to take with them from our Treasurie any Commodities to sell or exchange them for vs, for such Commodities as shall be fitting to our Kingdom, and to deliver them to our Treasurie and with those their and our goods, our Gentlemen and Gouernours shall suffer them to passe through all Cities and Townes within our Dominions without Customs

from as before. And when they have ended their Market, and doe desire to goe from the Mosko, then they shall appear in the Chancery to the Keeper of our Seale, the Secretarie Vasily Yacowlich Schellacou. Likewise, if there happen to the English Merchants any extremity by Sea, or that a ship be broken, and that it be nere any place of our Kingdom, then we command that all those goods shall be brought out withly, and be given to the English people that shall at that time be in our Land, or if they be not there, then to lay them up all together in one place, and when the Englishmen come into our Land, then to deliver those goods to them. Also we have bestowed on the English Merchants the House of Yonrya, in the Mosko by a Church of Saint Maxima the Martier, to dwell in it as in former time, keeping one House-keeper a Russ, or one of their own Strangers: but other Russ folk they shall not keep any. Likewise the English Merchants have House in diuers our Cities as follows: A House at Yeres, a House at Volodga, a House at Colmogro, and a House at Michael the Archangel, being the fipping place: these said Houses they shall keep as in former time according to this our Imperiall Letter of fauour, or gratified without paying any manner of Rent or any other duties whatsoever, either at Mosko, Yeretlaue, Volodga, Colmogro, or at the Castle of the Archangel, neither shall they pay any tax. Also at these Houses at Yeretlaue, Volodga, Colmogro, and at Archangel they shall have House-keepers of their own Countrymen, or Russes of a meane sort that are not Merchants, a man or two in a House: to lay up their goods in those Houses, and to take sale of their goods out of those Houses, in whom they will according to this our Imperiall Letter of fauour, but their Russ House-keepers in their absence shall not sell any of their Commodities. And the English Merchants shall come with their ships to their Port, as in former times they have done to unlade their goods out of their ships, and likewise to lade them againe with our Russia Commodities, at their own charges of Boates and hire of men, and ferrying over the said goods from their ships to their House at the Castle of Archangel. Likewise our Officers, Customers, and Swornmen shall take a just note of all such goods as they have both of Russia and English Commodities, and the note to passe under the Merchants Firma, because it may be knowne what goods passeth of the strangers and of the Russes. But they shall not lade out their goods, neither unbind any packe in any place, and when they doe find their own Englishmen from Archangel to our City of Mosko, or doe find Russia Commodities out of their own Land. Then all our Officers and Customers shall take them pass without delay, according to this our Letter of fauour. And wheresoever the Merchants shall be desirous to send any of their own Countrymen into their own Land, or into any other Kingdom over which they shall doe it freely with our Imperiall Manifests order, without carrying any Commodities over with them, and they shall have their Letters of Passe given them in the Embassadors Office. And concerning any matters of debate or controuersie in Merchandize, or inuise, then they shall be iudged by the Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie Vasily Yacowlich Schellacou, doing right and Iustice to both parties with equite and truth: and what cannot be found out by Law, or Inquisition there shall be iudged by Lot. His Lot that is taken forth, shall have right done unto him. Likewise, in what place if in all our Kingdom there doe happen any matter of discord in Merchandize or by inuise, then our men of authority, or Gouernours, and all manner of our Officers shall doe true Iustice betweene them: and what cannot be fought out by Law shall be fought out by Lot: his Lot that is taken out shall have right done unto him as before mentioned, as also they shall not take any Customs or duties of them for any Law matter, not in any place in our Kingdom. Moreover, this our Imperiall Letter in all our Realme and Dominion, our Officers, and all manner of our Subjects shall not disobey or break in any point whatsoever, but of there be any that doth disobey this our Imperiall Letter of fauour, that then those people shall be in our high displeasure, and executed to death. This our Imperiall Letter of gratitude, is given at our Imperiall Place and House in our City of Mosko, from the yere of the beginning of the World 7107. in the month of November: being under-written as follows.

By the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Phedorowich of all Russia, selfe-epholder: his Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie by name Vasily Yacowlich Schellacou.

¶ III.

One pretending himselfe to be DEMETRIUS, with the Popes and Poles helps attayneth the Russian Empire: his Arts, Acts, Marriage, fauour to the English, and miserable end.

Being thus presented you Boris his Tragedie out of that printed Author, and his Grant to the English from a written Copie; it shall not be amiss to take more largely and mature view of this Pretender, against whom Boris his desire of secrecy (permitting none guiltie of the murder to surmise) had vnsharpened him of Arguments. He produced a Psefe given him by his Mother with the Historie of his life after that tending him away and acknowledging another whom he was more willing to act that bloody

with Albanus the Treasurer, who in November came to Cracow, had audience of King Sigismund, where he with all thankfulness acknowledged the Kings forwardness with his Nobles to recover his right, whereto God had given answerable success beyond expectation; that he deplored the Turkish Intolencies in Hungary and other parts: to vindicate which, he would willingly joyne with the Pole, and other Christian Princes: meane whiles hee was willing to make an everlasting league with him, and so that end entreated his good leave to take unto himselfe a Wife out of Poland, namely, Anna Maria, the Daughter of George Muscovie the Platine gaged. The eight day after, the Contract was solemnly made by the Cardinal, Bishop of Cracow, Father, Jewels worth 200000. Crowns.

Thus farre have we followed Thuanus, and hee Iacobus Margaretus: a French Captayne of Demetrius guard of Parisians, which published a Booke herof. Now let vs present you a little English Intelligence touching this Demetrius and his respect to men of our Nation in those parts, and first his Letter to Sir Iohn Merick.

The Copie of a Letter sent from the Emperor DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwise called GRISHCO OTREAPOV: the which Letter was sent to Master Iohn Merick Agent, out of the Campe, as Master Merick was taking his Iourne to the Sea-side, the eighth of Iune, Anno 1605.

From the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia. To the English Merchant Iohn Merick, we give unto vnderstand, that by the iust judgement of God and his strong power, we are raised to our Fathers throne of Vladoimer, Mosko, and of all the Empire of Russia: the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Euan Vasilyvich of all Russia, and our Brother Theodor Euanowich of all Russia, which was bold, and kept by them and other great Christian Princes, in the same forme and manner doe we likewise intend, and purpose to hold and keep: Love and amitie: but especially, and above all others, doe we intend to send and to have love and friendship with your King James, and all you his English Merchants: we will fauour more then before. Further, as soon as the our Letter doth come to your hand, and as soon as you have ended your Markets at the shipping place of Michael the Archangell, then to come up to Mosko to behold our Maiesties presence. And for your polle Kings I have commanded (shall be given you, and at your coming to Mosko, then to make your appearance in our Chancery to our Secretarie Ofansy Vlassou. Written in our Maiesties Campe at Tolly, in the year of the world Anno sauoueth thousand and one hundred and thirtieene.

The Copie of the translation of a Passe given to Master Iohn Merick, which was given him in the time of his being in the Campe at Molodou with the Emperor DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwise called GRISHCO OTREAPOV.

From the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia: from Mosko to our Citie and Castles, as also to the Castle of Archangell at the Shipping place and haven to our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers, &c.

There did make suite unto us the English Merchant Iohn Mericke and his Company, that we would graunt them to be suffered to passe to the new Castle of Archangell, or to the shipping place or haven, in regard of traffike of Merchandise.

Also, that if he doe send some any of his fellows and servants from the shipping place, being of the English, that then they might be suffered to passe into England. Altho as to whatsoever Cause of ours the English Merchant Iohn Mericke, and his fellows, doth or shall come unto: then all ye our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers: shall suffer them to passe every where, without all delay. And as for our Customes, as for passing by or for head money, our customes of goods, you shall not take any of them nor of their servants. Likewise, when the English Merchants Iohn Mericke with his fellows and servants, shall come to the Castle of Archangell, then Timophy Matpewich Lazroue, and our permit the English Merchant Iohn and his company to trade freely. Moreover, when at the shipping place they have ended and finished their Markets, and that then the said Iohn Mericke shall desire to goe send into England any of his fellows or servants with goods, then likewise they shall be suffered to passe. But Russ: people, and other strangers of Mosko shall not be suffered to passe further: that if Iohn Mericke with his fellows and servants doe goe for England: but after their Markets ended, doe purpose to come backe againe to Mosko; that then at the Castle of Archangell Timophy Matpewich Lazroue,

Lazroue, and our Secretarie Rohmaneu Voronau; in also as all other our Castles and Cities, our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers shall let passe the English Merchant Iohn Mericke with his fellows and servants, without all stay or hindrance, and as for customes of them, their goods, or their servants, there shall not be any taken.

And after the Reading of this our Letter and Passe, you shall keep the Copie of it by you: but this you shall deliver backe againe to the said Iohn, and his company, written at our Campe at Molodou, 16 years from the beginning of the World 7113. the eighteenth of Iune.

The last of Iuly 1605. at Archangell.

The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was sent from the Maske, from the Emperor DEMETRY EVANOWICH, alias GAYSCA OTREAPOV by a Courtier named GAVARTLA SAMOTLOWICH SALMANOVE, who was sent down to the Castle of Archangell, to Sir THOMAS SMITH, then Lord Embassador: as followeth.

The great Lord Emperor, and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia, hath commanded Gauarela Samotlowich Salmanoue, to goe to Volodia, from Volodia to the new Castle of Archangell, for wherof hee shall undertake the English Ambassador: Sir Thomas Smith. Also when hee shall undertake the Ambassador, then Gauarela shall send the Ambassador his Interpreter Richard Finch, willing him to certifye unto the Ambassador, that the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Demetry Euanowich, sole commander of Russia, hath sent unto him one of his Courtiers, in regard of his Maiesties affaires: and after some two hours respite, Gauarela himselfe shall ride to the Ambassador, and deliver unto him his Maiesties speech, as followeth.

The great Lord Emperor and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia, and of many Kingdomes Lord and commander, hath commanded thee, Thomas the English Ambassador, to certifye unto James, King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, that by the iust judgement of God, and his strange power, we are come and succeeded into the place of our Father and predecessors: as also we are come to the throne of the great and famous Kingdomes of Vlodimer Mosko, and to the Empire of Cazan, Altairacan and Siberia, and of all the Kingdomes of the Empire of Russia; being an Empire belonging to the great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes of all Russia. Moreover, we calling to memorie the sending, love and amitie betwixt our Father, the great Lord and Emperour, and great Duke Euan Vasilyvich of all Russia, of famous memorie: as also our Brother, the great Lord and Emperour and great Duke Feodor Euanowich of all Russia, sole commander, with their sister Elizabeth, Queene of England: in the like manner doe we purpose to have sending, and to be in love with your Lord King James, and more then hath bin in former time. And in token of our said love and amitie, we doe intend to fauour all his subjects in our Land, and to give unto them free libertie then they have had heretofore; and you his Ambassador, we have commanded to dispatch without all delay or hindrance. Therefore we would haue you to make knowne unto your Lord King James, our Maiesties love. And as soon as God shall grant the time of our Coronation to be finished, and that we are crowned with the Imperiall crowne of our predecessors: according to our manner and worthiness; then we the great Lord Emperor, and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia sole Commander, will send our messenger to salute each other, according to the former manner. And concerning those Letters which were sent by you from Boris Godenoue, we would haue you deliver them backe againe to our Courtier Gauarela, and after the delivery of our speeches to returne him to the Emperour, under written by the Chancelour Onatsy Euanowich Vlassou.

The Copie of the Translation of a new Priuiledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperor DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwise called GAYSCA OTREAPOV, the which Priuiledge was sent into England over-land by OLYVER LYS ET Merchant, and seruant to the fore said Company.

GOD, the Trinitie, before, and without the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, enableth vs to build and keep our Scepter and Realm for the good of our Land, and the happiness of our people. Wee the resplendent and merciful, and not the miserable upholder, but sole commander, the great Duke Demetry Euanowich, by the mercy of God, Czar and great Duke of Russia, and of all the Empire of Tartaria, and many other Kingdomes; as also of the great Monarchie of Mosko, Lord Emperor and Commander, Have bestowed, and graunted unto the English Merchants, viz. Sir Thomas

the

22 From the world Anno 7113 in the month of December.

[illegible]

Promise of Ro-
mish Religion.

Demetrius his
Marriage.

Both crowned.

Conspiration.

* I suppose
this should be
Gibbes: for one
Catherine Gil-
bert I haue of-
ten hee in
this place of
Gen. e. which
will also
commemorate
the af-
faires which
I haue much
taught to this
purpose in our
Mr. haues
hands.

Bloudie day.

the great, and Vobsko, with all the Princes belonging to the same, with Counsellors, Gentlemen, and
Treasurers, and Priests, sitting for a Congregation, to rule and gouerne freely with full authority in the same
forme and manner, as if they were. And my selfe to haue no more right or rule or authority in the same
two Cities of Noougorod and Vobsko: and therewith doe I binde my selfe with this writing, and doe
wholly give and bestow all on the said Lady Maryna that is contained in this writing, as faine as by God
shall be. But if by chance we be separated by vii any children, then in those two Lordships before persued,
shee shall place more in authority of her sonne, to gouerne and to rule: and also it shall be free for
the said man in authority, to give Lands and Inheritance to their own Soules, and to trade freely
at pleasure, as shall be best liking to them, and as though it were in their own true and lawfull dominie:
on, and to build Mansions, and to set up the Romish Religion, and to haue Latine in Romish Preach-
ing and Schooles. But for her selfe to abide and remaine with us. And concerning her Treasures, so haue
many as shall be needfull to be kept for her own goodly Romish Religion, without all let or hindrance
as wee our selfe by the mercy of God are already inclined to the same. So will we likewise accom-
modate, freely by allowance to bring all the Kingdoms of Moisco to the knowledge of the Romish Religion,
and to give the Church of Rome. Also, if God should not grant vnto us good success, whereby this
performed within a yeare: then as shall be in the pleasure of our Father to separate mee and his daughter
Maryna. But if it please him to forgoe till another yeare, then doe I passe this: my Bill, with my own
hand writing, and therewith I haue sworn my selfe, and giue a vow according to the holy order, and
in this Bill to hold and keepe carefully: as also that I shall bring all the Russe people to the Latine Religi-
on. Written at Sanbore the first and twentieth of May in Anno 1604. Underneath was his firme for all
this fore said as appereth: Prince Demetrius of Owlgies.

NOW let vs returne with *Thomas* into Poland, where with his Historiical eyes we see this glo-
rious Spoule, her Father, Vncle, & trayne of women accompanying the *Rusian* Embassador
in his returne, whom many Merchants out of *Italy* and *Germany* followed in hope of gain. In
this lingring journey, they continued from the end of Iulian to the fixe and twentieth of A-
prill, before they entered *Moscow*. And the twentieth after, *Peter Basman* with a great troupe
of Courtiers and Nobles, attended the Spoule to the Court, where shee was solemnely entre-
tained by her Husband, and thence conueighed to the Monastrie where his Mother abode. The
fourth day after, all things being prepared, there was brought into the Palace, and the next day
turned to him by the Patriarch after Evening Prayer. Both of them also, solemnly commended, re-
turned with sound of Musick and Ordinance into the Castle, and the night passed with great iu-
bilation. *Demetrius* his mind being filled with standing with care. For a conspiracie which had
bene hatching fixe moneths, now growing to ripe, terrified him: against which hee had
armed himselfe with foreigne aides. At first hee had brought a guard of *Germanes* out of *Pol-
land*, which being without example of his Predecessors and being tedious of his soldiers; hee
dismissed, together with all *Polish* Souldiers. They being thus forsaken without pay, re-
turned with the calthered *Polanders* to the borders, where they commended many out rages to the
greater discontent of the *Russes*. Many of them found grieuance notwithstanding, in his too
much respect to the *Poles*: and many made question of his birth. Many were suspected of con-
spiration, and diuers tortured, which was but quenching fire with Oyle, the flame growing
greater. And now because *Demetrius* torepent of his haste dismissing his guards, and began
a new Check-roll of *Lebanians* and *Germanes*, to which hee added an hundred *English* Halber-
diers and as many *Scots* (their Captaynes hee called *Marshall Constanus* and *Albert Lane*)
and hundred *French* under *Lieut. Margery* armed with *Persian* Bow. Then also hee enlarged his
pay, but too late.

Alexander Gotsky *Cosman* was sent Embassador from Poland with rich Presents and Let-
ters from King *Sigismund* to *Demetrius*, which because they exposted not the Title of Emperor
were not received nor opened. In excuse whereof the Embassadors yeld word vnto *Demetrius*
that hee should goe and deprime the great Turke of whole Tribes: *Demetrius* dis-
dained notwithstanding in regard of his past experience, and hoped best from the *Pole*. The
then happening which they preferre before Easter. The Emperor and Emperesse were crowned
in the Hall, and made a great Feast to their owne and to strangers; in which the *Pole* Embassi-
ador refused to be present, except he might sit at the Princes Table, so the *Rusian* Embassador
had bene honoured at *Cracowia*. The *Russe* denied Ruffly, but *Demetrius* hee longer yielded.
Many peremptorie and licentious passages happened, the *Poles* carrying themselves domineering-
ly to the *Russes*, as Victors to the conquered. *Demetrius* at first ouer-bold, now beganne to feare,
and warned the *Poles* to be ware, and sent for all his guards, on Friday, the *Russe* preparing
for offence, and the *Poles* for their defence (for they and not the Prince, seemed to be then in
the Emperesse was this while secure, and made ready a magnificent Feast against Sunday. But on Satur-
day (the sixteenth of the Kalends of Iune) the Conspirators assemble early, and a great cry is
ray-

rayed to kill the *Poles* and *Demetrius*. Some greedie of spoyle runne friendly to the *Poles*
Lodgings, assault: them and embroyle all with slaughters. Others runne to the Castle. Few of
the guard were there, delay hauing bred securitie in *Demetrius*, nor were any of their Captaynes
seene. *Margery* then lay sicke as hee after told mee (*Thomas*) which did ease faul his life. Things
were done with such furie and celeritie, that many *Russe* in *Polish* attire were slaine before they
were knowne.

Peter Basman came running forth half naked, & was killed by one of his own seruants. *Switzky*
their Leader, carrying a Sword in one hand, a Croffe in the other, caught the great Bel to be rung
in token of fire that *Demetrius* might be raised & come forth of his Parlor. Hee awaked with the
noyse, now seeing a greater danger then fire, take a Turkish Sword, and suddenly slips downe
out of a window, breaking his legge with the fall, whereby he was easily taken by the people,
and by *Switzky* command carried into the greater Hall, where Embassadors haue audience.
There Iome vbraying his impostures, hee with his sword layd on the ground: and then de-
sired the Nobilitie to permit him to speake to the people, which was denyed. Some say that he
obtained of *Switzky*, that he might be tryed by the testimony of *Polish* his Wife; which
being brought out of the Munnery, offered before the Nobles on her oath, that *Some* *Demetrius*
was many yeares before murdered by *Boris* his perities, which the at first fitting the people
fauour, and iust reuenge on *Boris*, willingly dissembled, whereupon they ranne vpon him,
and with many wounds slue him. Thus writeth *Peter Paterson* of *Polish* which then was in
10 *Russia*. When they had slaine him, they thrust a rope thorow his secret parts, and drew him
thorow the myre into the Market place, where hee remained four dayes lying all gorie and my-
rie on a board, with *Peter Basman* vnder it, and an vgly Vizar ouer it, a Bag-pipe in his mouth,
with other lasciuious cruelties exercised on his dead body.

The *Palatine Semakow* (or *Sanderow*) was blocked vp in his House, and other *Polish* Hou-
ses filled, many of which died not vntersuaged, howeouer by numbers overcome. *Polish*
after much laughter of the affrayling *Russes*, when hee saw Ordinance brought, set forth a white
flagge in token of yielding, bidding his Seruants call abroad his money; which whiles the
people were gathering, heard his made way with their Swords with great laughter, & yielded to
the *Beierans* which came from the Castle. The miserable Bride was not only spoiled of in-
estimable Treasures, but of all her Apparell, and Lewels, careful only of her Father and Vncle,
and thinking it a happy purchase, if he might lose her life and recouer her Country. Meane-
while, without her Garment to couer her, without Bed to lye on, without securitie of life, shee
expected in poore Weeds the issue of the peoples fure.

Many Merchants endured like fates. *Androsy Celler*, besides the losse of thirtie thousand
Crownes, lost his life. *James Wis* was with his own Sword beheaded: *Nahom* lost one hundred
and fiftie thousand Florens: *Nicolas Limborough* fiftie thousand. Two of *Ansfing* had lent two
hundred thousand Crownes to *Demetrius*, which now was not to pay them. *Marcellus* lost an
hundred thousand Florens. Twelve hundred *Poles* lost their liues; many were fured by the *Beie-
rans*. Four hundred *Russes* were slaine. At night the tumult ceased. Scarcely would the peo-
ple giue leaue to bury the bodies after three dayes wallowing in the dirt, in the *German*
Church-yard.

After this tempest was calmed, the *Beierans* assembled in counsell about a new Election,
where *Switzky* made speech to them, professing himselfe forsworn for that had passed, in the
execution of a iust lease to the Imperiall Family and his Country, and in hatred of a cruel
Tyrant: that *Iuan Yalouich*, how euer injuriously taxed by home, had left Kingdomes annexed
to his Inheritance as Monuments of his great spirit; by whom hee had bene sent to *Stephen* King
of *Poland* to treat of peace, and euer since had so farried himselfe in the State, that none could
justly blame him: that *Isab* being dead, *Theodore* succeeded, but another ruler, who murdered
the younger brother, and as was thought: after that poyoned the other; so attaining the Empire,
which how miserable was it all his time? that *Demetrius* therefore, *Fortunius* advanced
friends, himselfe amongst others, but when their Religion was endangered, *Fortunius* advanced
Laws violated, Exoticke fashions brought in liberties suppressed, hee withstood with the peril of
his life, which it grieved him to haue enjoyed, as a Theus benefit, by his grant which had no
right to take it: yet seeing their forwardnesse in a cause so iust (would God it had not bene so
bloody) more regarding his Countreys safety then rumours and reports, hee had bene their
Captayne to doe that which God the disposer of Kingdomes by the success had approued,
so that now they were freed from a cruel Tyrant, had they any Sorcerer or Impostor to mock
them: that it remained now, seeing the Imperiall Family was extinct, they should now seeke
one of noble blood, of wisest experience, of most religious zeale, who might alittle more
to please hearts his strongest Forts, such an one as either is, or is thought to be the best man to be-
come their Prince. Thus was himselfe chosen Emperor the thirteenth of the Kalends of Iune.
A writing was published to iustifie the killing of *Demetrius*, a runnagat Fryer called *Gryffike*, or
Gregory Strapp, professed in the Monastrie in the Castle (which therefore hee would neuer en-
ter lest hee should be knowne) with other aspersions of Herefie, Sorcerie, asseffation of indu-
ing

P. Basman slaine.
Demetrius ta-
ken and slaine.

Continuall
rage.

Polish slaine.

The Queene.

Merchants
spoiled.

Russe slaine.

Switzky speech.

He is chosen
Emperour.

The Death
often blam'd:
and by his
ill will, had
it made worse.
And so per-
haps by Suiskey's
affliction was this Demo-
trius.

The former
part of this in-
teligence I
found in the
first *Black-
Papers*, the la-
ter by con-
fession, &c. See
of *Gregory Pre-
sley*, See *Suiskey's*
Letter fol-
lowing:
Occasion of
ambition
and ill go-
vernment.

Demetrius Em-
peror.

He is slain.

Suiskey Em-
peror.

* This might
be remou'd:
Others say he
was not the
last of his
line: very no-
ble blood. See
fol. in *Fleisher*
and *Thomson*.
Brecht has his
person describ'd.

Some say that
he was not like
Demetrius and
that he found
it down years
elder: but
perhaps they
mistake this for

cing Popery (the Popes Letters also challenging his promise produced) to give the le-
suits Temples, Colledges, and other necessities; with other overtures to the *Palatine, Sand-
meritz, for Smolensk, and Novogrod*; his bringing in *Poles* in *Russian* Rooms, his luxury, riot,
poverty, retaining *Boris* his Daughter in a Nunnerie with intent of incestuous lust, having mur-
dered his Mother and Brother; making a silver Throne with fixe Lions on each side, and other
pride; abusing Nunneries to lust and lasciuiousness, &c. But we will shew you hereof more au-
thenticke testimonies than this of *Thomson* in *Suiskey* Imperial Letter to his Majesty. Mean-
while touching this *Demetrius* we will produce a few English Testimonies extracted out of their
Letters and Relations: wherein if some circumstantial discrepancy appeare (in things done
both to fauor and to foule in tumultuous furie, where men had rather hide themselves then be-
come witnesses, lest while they would be Spectators, they should be forced to be Actors, and
have their parties added in that bloody Tragedy) it is no marvell I produce all Witnesses I can,
in a cause of so remarkable consequence, and choole rather to be prolix than negligent, that
the Reader out of so much euidence may better weigh and examine the truth.

The late Emperor of *Russia* called by the name of *Demetrius Emmanovich*, is now credibly said
(as some of them say) to have bene the Sonne of a *Russe* Gentleman, named *Gregory Tra-
polsky*, and that in his younger yeeres he was thorne a Prier into a Monasterie: from whence he
afterwards priuily got away, trauelled into *Germanie* and other Countreys, but had his most a-
biding in *Poland*, in which time he attained to good perfection in Armes and Military know-
ledge; with other abilities of sufficiency: Afterwards finding a conceit taken by the *Russes* of a
secret conveying away of *Demetrius Emmanovich*, brother and heire to *Pheodorus Emmanovich* Empe-
ror; and that some other should be made away in his stead: And finding also the general dislike
of the government of *Boris* then Emperor, who after a faire beginning, in his latter yeeres
uphold himselfe, and his house with oppression and cruelty: And having also many circum-
stances and opportunities of time and age, and such other likelihoods, to aduantage and second his
pretence, began first to broach his Title (as before) and by degrees found a general accepta-
tion of all sorts of people, that it so daunted *Boris*, that (as it was then rumoured about) he, first
and afterwards his Wife, and his Sonnes succeeding him, made themselves away by Poison.
Though now it seemeth for certayne, that the poisoning of them was procured by the Pretender,
to make the easier way to the Empire, which thereby he obtained, entering and continuing the
same with all the State, and greateste that such a place required: Vntill at length the *Russes*
moued rather by other certainties, then by any thing discouered by himselfe, the first day after
his marriage (which was kept with very great pompe and solemnity) being the fourteenth
of May last past, taking a time when the *Poles* stood least on Guard, came to the Court with one con-
sent of Nobilitie and Commons about three of the clocke in the morning, and murthering the
Guards, drew the Emperor out of his bed from the Emperesse, and charging him that he was
not the true *Demetrius Emmanovich*, but a false Pretender, he confessed the Deceit, and was forth-
with hewed in pieces by the multitude: *Peter Rasman* resisting was likewise slain; and both
brought into the Market place, where their bodies lay for a time to be viewed of every man.
The old Queene denied him to be her Sonne, excusing her former acknowledgement to have
proceeded from feare and the general acceptance which he found amongst the people. As many
Poles as made resistance, were slaine to the number of fourteen hundred. The new Emperour,
his Father, his brother with the other *Poles* were committed to lye keeping, to the number of
eight or nine thousand.

And then proceeding to a new Election they chose Emperor *Vassilius Emmanovich Shobsky*,
who not long before was at the Blocke to have bene beheaded, for reporting that hee had bene
the true *Demetrius Emmanovich* after he was dead, and did helpe to burie him. But the Emperor
did recall him, and afterwards aduanced him to the chieftest place of dignitie about his person. He
is the next blood being descended of the Race of the old Emperor *Ivan Vassilovich*, of the
age of fiftie yeeres or thereabouts, neuer married, but kept under during *Boris* time, a Prince of
great wisdoms, and a great fauourer of our Nation, as did specially appeare by the care hee had
to guard the English House from rising, when the late *Demetrius* was brought in by the *Poles*.

The late Pretender was of stature low, but well set, hard fauoured and of no pretence; how-
euer otherwise of a Princely disposition, executing iustice without partialities: And not re-
mitting the insolence euen of the *Poles*: well scene in martiall practices, and traying his No-
bilitie to the Discipline of warre, to make them the readier against the *Tartars*, nor giuen either
to women or drinke, but very liberal and bountifull, which occasioned some grieuous Exactions
to maintaine the same. And to conclude, a man in the opinion of such as knew him, not unwor-
thy of a better gotten, and longer continued Empire, which hee left chiefly through the great
necesse of his minde, supposing that none of his Subjects durst attempt any such matter against
his person, when as in the meane time the practice went on with such a general Coniuration,
that the *Russes* were linnoned by the ringing of a Bell to be ready to enter the Court. And

an other after Pretender, calling himselfe the same *Demetrius*, &c. as after shall appeare, a deformed man.

to shake off that Government which would haue made them a more noble Nation then former-
ly they haue bene.

It is reported by some of Ours, that hee the rather was inclinable to our Nation in the resp-
ect he bare to his Majesty, lauing read that his worthy Worke dedicated to Prince *Henric*. Hee
is said also to haue bene a resolute man of his words, to haue delighted in fighting with the
Beare; stout and strong. I haue likewise heard that hee gaue the command of his Guard con-
sisting of Strangers to Captayne *Gilberts a Scot*; to haue made one *Bachinsky* (a Learned and Religi-
ous Protestant) his Secretary; and otherwise to haue bene so altered from *Russian* manners,
and so well affected to Strangers, that they conspired at afterward. The people are said to haue
entered the Castle (which was a quadrant, having a high bricke wall of seven foories, and another
of stone, and a Market place) with stones in their pockets (which are rare thereabouts) and some
with weapons.

Some report from Captayne *Gilberts* Relation, that lying on his bed not long before his
death (as hee thought, awake) an aged man came to him, which sight troubled him to aorificand
come to Captayne *Gilberts*, and his guard that watched, but none of them had seen any thing.
Hereupon he returned to his Bed, but within an houre after he againe troubled with like appa-
ritions called, and sent for *Bachinsky*: telling him that hee had now twice seen an aged man, who
at the second coming told him, that though for his owne person he was a good Prince, yet the
injustice and oppressions of his inferior Ministers must be punished, and his Empire should
be taken from him. In this perplexitie his Secretary gaue him good and holy comfort,
saying till true Religion were there planted, his Officers would be lewd, the people oppressed,
and God Almighty offended, who perhaps by that Dreame or Vision had admonished him of
his duties. The Emperor seemed much moued, and to intend that good which that Countrey
was not so happy to recouer. For a few dayes after (as that Relation saith) his *Russe*
Secretary came to him with a Sword, as which the Emperor felt, and hee suddenly after
his wisdome speeches assaulted him, with many other *Gravities* of that Conspiracie, and (like another
Cafar) the him, crying *Liberate*, before his guards could apprehend the danger, of which some
were slaine, but the most with *Gilberts* their Captayne, got to a place called *Chinga*, which with
the help of some *Russes* they fortified and laid for their defence. *Bachinsky* the Secretary was
taken and imprisoned, the strangers murthered, and his Captayne, who haue in all changes bene
well beloved of the *Russians*; in deed they desire, having alway done good service to the Empe-
rour. And their interest faued the life of that worthy man *Bachinsky*, which they required with
much obseruance to the succeeding Emperor *Suiskoy*, who comes next to be spoken of; and first
you shall haue his Letter to our Oracious Soueraigne:

§. III.

40 SVISKAY the Successor his Letter to our King, describing the former
DEMETRIUS his Acts and Tragedie.

The Copie of the Translation of a Letter sent from the new Emperour
Vassili Emmanovich Sheskey to the Kings Maistie
by Master John Merricke.

The love and mercie of God that guideth vs in the wayes of peace,
we glorifie with the Trinitie.

50 **RE** Now the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Vassili Emmanovich of all *Russia*, *Pol-
e* Commander of Volodimer, Mosko, Novogrod, King of Cazan and Astracan, of *Ukr-
beria*, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolensk, Tveritsky, Yuharsky,
Permorsky, Vatsky, Bolsharsky, and of other: Lord and great Duke of Novogro-
d of the Low Countrey of Chernesky, Rezansky, Polotsky, Rostonsky, Yerehansky, Be-
lozersky, Leflansky, Ovdorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and Commander of all the
North parts: also Lord of the Land of Eversky, Catalinsky, and over the Empire of the Go-
rgians of the Land of Cabardinsky, and Beharsky Land, likewise of many other Lordships, Lord
and Commander.

60 To our beloved Brother James King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Whom we con-
sider and the Sigismund King of Poland, and great Duke of Letto, in Anno 1703: We find you
the late Emperor Boris, his Embassador named Lewis Sapaga, being Chancellor of the great Duke-
dome of Poland, requesting the said Emperor Boris, that the former league and peace made and
concluded upon by the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Theodore Emmanovich of all *Russia*, and
him

Captayne Gil-
berts report of
a Vision.

Captayne Gil-
berts report of
a Vision.

Another man-
ner of his
death repo-
red.

I find him cal-
led Sheskey,
Suiskoy, Zinke,
&c. the full
translation and
promissed last
being made.

League with
the Pole.

him Sigismund King of Poland, might be steadfastly bolden and continued till the time of that league were express. As also that the Emperor Boris would enlarge the said league for thirteene yeeres more, whereupon the Emperor Boris yielded thus farre unto the request of the King of Poland, that he would continue the said league till the full time were expired, and adjoint to a new league for thirteene yeeres more; and to that effect he took an Oath, to hold and keepe all the contents faithfully, mentioned in the said Writing, touching the same league; and instead of the King of Poland, his Embassador Lewis Sapagoc was sworn in the presence of the Emperor Boris. And after the Polish Embassador Lewis was departed from the Moskoe, the Emperor Boris sent unto Sigismund King of Poland his Embassador, being one of the Pruis Councell, called Michalo Zleabowich Salticocco, with some others to end and finish the aforesaid league, to the which league the King of Poland himselfe was sworn in the presence of the Emperours Embassador to hold and keepe the said league faithfully, according to the tenor of these Writinges.

Heareth the
King of Poland
Allegations
against the
preceding
Demetrius.

But not long after Sigismund King of Poland, with one Panarade, entered into such a practise, as he therron selfe did his Oath, and made way to the shedding of much Christian blood. First, by retreating and upholding one Grylycha Otreppoyue, a Runnagate, a Conuener, and one that left his profession being a Moske, and ran away out of Russia into Poland; and being come thither, took upon him to be the Son of the great Emperour Euan Vasiluwich of famous memorie; and by name Demetriy Euanowich: when as it was well knowne in your Kingdome, that before he was borne a Moske, he was commonly called Yowihco, Son to one Bowghdan Otreppoyue, dwelling at a place called Galits; and when he had committed much violence, to take his life he bore himselfe a Friar, and for name from one Monastrie to another, and lastly, came into a Monastrie called Chodow, where he was made one of the Clergie; being so placed there by the Moske himselfe: But he did not tene off his former life; for he continued still in his said Demetriy aliases, as he did before he was a forme, committing villany, forsaking God and falling by the hands of the Blacke Arme, and to many such like evils, he was inclined. After there was seld by him a Writing which showed how he was saue from God, and the same was well knowne to the holy Patriarch of Moskoe, and of all Russia, and to the Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, and to all the holy Clergie: whereupon the said Rulers of our true Christian Faith, which is from the Grecian Law, for life he must ungodly works, consulted to send him to perpetual Prison, there to end his life. Whereupon this notorious Instrument of Satan, perceiving this his overthrow, and that his vnde praisers were discovered, ran away out of the Kingdome of Moskoe, beyond the borders, and into Lettia to a place called Kereyue, thence according to the Dralls instructing of him, as one forsaken of God, he made this his living, manifestly bowing to all people, leaving off his Moske Habits, and withall his counsel and advice of our Enemies the Polish King, and one of his Palatines named Sandamerko Youpsy, with Duke Constantine, and Duke Velhmetzkoysky and his Brethren with other Polish Lords, that were by his Councell, began to call him the Son of the great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Euan Vasiluwich, by name Prince Demetriy of Owglits.

A Friar,
A Clerike.

As also by his villanous treacheries and the Devils perswading of him, he made much trouble in our Land, by sending abroad many of his instiging and prouoking Letters, to diuers places upon the borders of our Country: that is, to a place called Done, and to the Volgoe, to our Cossicks and Souldiers, naming himselfe to be the Prince Demetriy of Owglits. Moreover, there came to our Kingdome of Moskoe many Polish Souldiers, which brought and dispersed false, Cow and Treason, and in the high wayes, practising to raise dissension in the Kingdome of Moskoe. As also it is well knowne, not only to them in the Empire of Moskoe, but likewise in many other Kingdomes, that the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Euan Vasiluwich of famous memory, had a Son called by the name of Prince Demetriy, and after his Fathers decease, there was giuen unto him and his Mother the Cate of Owglits. But in the yeere 7095, being in the Reigne of the great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Theodore Euanowich of all Russia, this foresaid Demetriy was murdered by the order and appointment of Boris Godenouie. And at his Funerall was his Mother now called the Emperesse Martha, wither one Brethren by name Michals and Gregory the Sonnes of Theodore Nahouie. Likewise to his burying, there was sent from the Moskoe Metropolitan, and Archbishops, and Abbots: and the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Theodore Euanowich sent to his Funerall many Nobles and Countiers of the Land, which saw him buried in the chiefest and principall Church of Owglits. Moreover, Martha the Dutche and Emperesse his Mother is yet living, and many of her Brethren and Nephews, which doe at this present time serue in the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Vasiluy Euanowich, of all Russia sole Commander: Likewise in these last yeeres past, as in Anno 7111, and in Anno 7112, and 7113, concerning that foresaid Traytor and Heretike, the forsaken of God Grylycha Otreppoyue, many of our Gentlemen, Captaynes and others our Officers did many times write from the North parts of the borders of our Kingdome into Poland and Lettia, and to others their inferior Cities, to the Rulers and Governours of the same, also our spiritual popes, Patriarchs, the Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, wrote unto the spiritual people of Poland, declaring unto them what this Heretick and Traytor was, likewise from whence he came and what manner of person he was; as also his demerour, and likewise the occasion why he ranne away to them out of the Land, as also the manner of the making away of the Prince Demetriy, and withall requested the Rulers and spiritual people of Poland, that they knowing what Runnagate this was, would not giue credit unto him, nor to make a breach of the late league concluded upon.

Flight to Lettia.

in Gurga.

Demetriy of
Owglits.
His murthers.

Basil.

Letters to Po-
land.

But the Governours of the Dukedome of Poland and Lettia, as also the firstall men, according to the King of Poland his com mandment, gave no credit unto our writing, but began, more then before to instice and perswade men to uphold the Traytor, and to aide him. Moreover, to make trouble and dissension in our Land, they took this forsaken of God, Greulica unto them, and called him by the name of Prince Demetriy of Owglits, likewise the King gave unto him a chaine of gold, with many thought and pieces of Polish gold, to the desiring of his charge; as also sent in armes to our borders with one of the Lords, the Palatine Sandamerko, and another of his chiefe Lordes, with many troops of Poles. But when the Emperor Boris understood how that the Grylycha Otreppoyue was called, by the name of Prince Demetriy Euanowich of Owglits, and withall, that they did aide and helpe him against the Kingdome of Russia: he caused his Councell to send a messenger, as from themselves, to the Polish Lord Panametrada, which Messenger was named Smeernay Otreppoyue, being fledge to the said Grylycha Otreppoyue, being the Son of one Iamaten Otreppoyue, much resembling unto them what Grylycha was; but that Polish Lord Panametrada would not suffer him, and his Unkely to be brought face to face. But he made answer to the said Messenger Smeernay that they did not aide him, neither did they stand for him in any sort.

So after he had sent away the Messenger Smeernay, the King of Poland, and the Lord Panametrada did aide Grylycha Otreppoyue: with men and treasure more liberally then before, purposing to make great strife and trouble, and to shed much blood in the Kingdome of Moskoe. Also at the same time Sigismund, King of Poland, requested the aide of one of the Princes of Crim in Tartaria, named Cazyteera; and to that end he should aide Grylycha with his forces, against the Kingdome of Moskoe; and he in consideration, did promise to give unto the said Grylycha Crim, Prince, what he would demand. Then the Emperor Boris understood how that the said Grylycha was aided by the King of Poland, and the Lord Panametrada, and he sent to Sigismund King of Poland, another special Messenger, one named Polnickie Agartusky, likewise at the same time, the holy Patriarch of Moskoe, and all Russia, with the Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, with all the rest of the holy Clergie, sent their Messengers with Letters to the State of Poland, and to the great Dukedome of Lettia, to the Archbishops, and Bishops, and to all the spirituals. Moreover, in the said Letters, the Emperor Boris with the Patriarch, and all the holy aidings, wrote unto the Lord Panametrada concerning Grylycha, making it knowne unto him the holy aidings, and the said Poland, and likewise that if there were any one of Poland or Lettia that he was what he was, and wherefore he ranne away into Poland, and likewise that the Son of the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Euan Vasiluwich, the Prince Demetriy was dead: And to that intent, that the King Sigismund should not giue credit to the said Grylycha, and that they should not spill Christian blood, nor violate the league.

Hereupon Sigismund King of Poland wrote unto the Emperor Boris, and further, by word of mouth, both he and Panametrada delivered to the said messenger in his message; that hee did hold and keepe their League, and moreover, did not violate or break his oath no manner of way: and likewise did write, that he did not aide that foresaid Grylycha, neither did giue credit unto him: without denying that he was with him in his Kingdome; and further he did write, that if there were any one of Poland or Lettia that did aide or assist him, that then they should be executed. But after he had dispatched away the messenger of Boris, concerning his oath, still more and more did aide and helpe this Grylycha Otreppoyue. Also the Palatine Sandamerko, and Myhla Ratniko came into the Kingdome of Moskoe, to a place called the Land of Seuerusko, putting the people of that Land in feare, and perswading them there, that Grylycha was the true Prince, and that the King of Poland and Panametrada, had found out the certaintie thereof: and therefore they will have Poland and Lettia stand for him. Also from out of many other Kingdomes they goe to aide and assist him: likewise other inferior Kingdomes are willing to stand for him: moreover that Grylycha in the foresaid Land of Seuerusko, and in other places of our borders, by the means of his himselfe practise, and communication, did winne and conuince them to fall to him: likewise the people of these foresaid places of the Land of Seuerusko, and the borders, being simple people, and referring folowme to the Cate of Moskoe, and being misled by Grylycha, and the rest of the Governours, could not withstand, but yielded them unto him. Whereupon against those Polonians and Lettians, and other enemies that were already entered the Kingdome of Moskoe, the Emperour sent his Nobles with a great Arme: but by the appointment of God, the Emperour Boris deceased upon whose death, the chiefest of the Nobles departed the Campe. And after their departure, the Arme bearing of the death of the Emperour, and being draine therto by feare and otherwise, at last yielded themselves unto Grylycha, as the borders had done before.

As also the foresaid Grylycha, by the helpe of the Devil, and King Sigismund, and Panametrada, came into the Cate and Kingdome of Moskoe to the great disturbance and trouble of the whole Land; by whom the Religion was corrupted, and by him were many true Christians put to exile, for denying his right and interest to the Kingdome of Moskoe. And shortly after he was seized in the Kingdome, and he took to wife the daughter of one Sandamerko, as was appointed by the King of Poland and Panametrada: the which wife of his was in Moskoe with her Father and Brother Scatskoysky, and with one Velhmetzkoysky, with their Polish and Letto Lords, and other people, by whom Religion was prebanned: as also we were forced and driven to receive many wrongs and injuries, which by the prospering the Kingdome of Moskoe could not endure. Also, as I have said before, by the counsel of the Palatine Sandamerko his Father in Law, and by the counsel of Velhmetzkoysky, and other Polish and Letto people, which

Polish aides.

Smeernay sent.

Crim Tartar.

Another Mes-
senger.

Mutation of
Religion.

Griffins a base
coward and traitor to his
followers.

A wife Govern-
nour.

Two Ships.

Hard vlogs.

any plot, or villany intended to the place or people, yet wee knew this might be a means to endanger all our lives, how innocent soever. Our suspicion of danger fell out according to our fore the Governour, and with a face countenancing a guiltlesse and fearful destruction, told him that we came thither onely, and for no other purpose, then to surpris the Iland, kill the inhabitants, make spoile of their wives and goods, and having first set fire to their Townes and Villages, to flye to Sea againe. Yet for all this would not the Governour beleue him, telling him it was a matter very unlikely, that so small a number, so distressed for want of food, so weather-beaten and so disarmed, should venture upon an enterprise so full of dangerous euent; but she villaine replied, that all those complaints of want, were but floges to beguile the people, for that vpon the least Allarm given other ships that lay hovering at Sea, and furnished both with men and to mour, would on the suddaine, and that very shortly land for the same desire of spoyle, as these their fellows had done, and therefore counsell'd the Governour to prevent such imminent mischiefs betimes.

The Governour being thus farr vrg'd, presently called before him Lieutenant *Walton*, whole lodging was appointed in his house, and having related to him all that *Griffin* had discovered, and withall, demanding of Lieutenant *Walton* what he could say to this matter of treason and conspiracie: the Lieutenant at the first stood amazed, and vterly denied any such intended villany, pretending by the faith of a Souldiour, that this report of the Welch-man proceeded from the rancour of a vile traitors heart, and therefore on his knees intreated the Governour, not to give so credit to so base a villaine, who for the greedinesse of a little money, went about to sell all their lives, and to make all the inhabitants of the Iland become murderers: The rest lay scattered about and knew nothing of the matter. Now some after, iust as the traitor had told the Governour, that more ships were not far off, but were ready to second vs upon our arrival, it chanced that in the very heat of this businesse, and their feares of danger when heane done was, two other shippes full of armed Souldiers came to the same place of the Iland where our shippe lay in: These two ships had brought Souldiours out of the low Countries (a cessation of weather being there) and were going into *Swetland*, as we were, but by crosse windes and fowle weather, lay so long at Sea, that wanting victuals, they were driven in hither for succour. Whose suddaine approach and arrival being signified to the Lord Governour, the Welch-men were then thought treasall so the Iland was presently vp in Armes to resist the strength and furie of a most dangerous suppled enemy and so secretly did the Inhabitants put on Armes, that we who were kept like prisoners amongst them, knew not of these vplotes. But night approaching, the Generall gave special charge that secret watch should be set and kept our every Souldier that lodged in any mans house: which by the common people was as narrowly performed, for they did not onely watch vs as the Governour commanded, but amongst themselves a secret conspiracie was made, that in the dead of night, when wee should be fast asleepe, they should come and take vs in our beds, and there to binde vs with cords: it being an easie thing to doe so, when our company were divided one from another over the whole Iland. At the houre agreed vpon, the plot was put in force, for they entred our Chambers, and bound every Souldier as he lay, making them all ready like to many therpe marked out for the slaughter. For mine owne part, I had five men and three women binde me, who so cunningly tyed me fast with cords, whilst I slept, and felt nothing, nor deamp of any such matter, that with a twich only I was plucked farke naked out of my bed, and laid vpon the cold earth vnderneath a Table, with my armes bound behinde me, so extremely hard, as four men could draw them together, my feete tyed to the force of the Table, and my necke bound to the vpper part or bord of the Table.

In these miserable tortures lay I, and all the rest (in severall Ilands) all that night, and the most part of the next day, our armes and legges being pinched and wrung together in such pittifull manner, that the very blood gushed out at the fingers ends of many. The enduring of which torment was so much the more grievous, because none knew what we had done that could incense them to this so strange and spitefull cruelty, neither could we, albeit we inquired, learne of our tormenters the cause, because we understood not their language.

Whilst thus the whole Iland was full of the cries of wretched men, and that every house seemed a hables, ready to have innocents there butchered the next day, and that every Ilander had the office of a common cut-throate or executioner; Gods wonderfull working turned the frame of all their cruelty: For the two ships that came out of the low Countries, and whose arrival draue so many miserable soules almoit vpon the rocks of destruction, having in that dolefull and ruinous night, gotten some provision aboard, weighed Anchor, and departed towards *Swetland*. Which happy newes being ferred vp at breakfast to the Lord Governour betimes in the morning, and that the Shippes had offered no violence to the Countrey, but had paid for what they tooke: About eleven of the clocke the very same day at noone, wee were all like vnto fo many dead men cut downe, and bidden to stand vpon our legges, although very few had scarce legges that could stand.

Of one accident more that befell, I thinke it not amiss to take note, which began merrily, but ended

ended tragically, and in blood; and that was this: Four of our company being lodged in one Village, and they being bound to the place, as you may perceive the rest were; it happened that an Host, where one of them lay, had tumbled head, and gotten a Horse disteale, called the *Straggers*: In comes he stumbling, to the room where the poore *Englishman* was bound to the Table hand and foot: which thing the drunken Sutchellholing, drew his Hatchet, which he wore at his girdle, according to the fashion of the Countrey, and because he would be for his prisoner should not escape, with his Hatchet he clef his head. And thinking in that drunken murderous humour, he had done a glorious act, whereby he releas'd of his owne head to that house where the other three Souldiours lay bound, where beating at the doores and windowes, and the Host asking what he meant: to make such a damnable noise; he told him so well as he could, flamm't iacob, that the Lord Governour had sent him thither to put the three *Englishmen* to death. Vpon this, the disteal and he (hand in hand) were let in, the one standing so close at the others elbow, that he neuer left him till he had clef two of their heads, that lay bound: and being their wasay (it should seeme) which playing the butcher, he neuer ceased swearing and flaring, and host rishing with his bloody Axe about their heads, till the people of the house had hung the third man vpon a beam in the room: But they having left cunnin in the Hang-mans trade, then will to practise it, tyed not the disteal to his about his necke, as was his trade, but that after he had hung an houre, hee was cut downe, retires againe, well well, and afterwards was flaine in *Ruffe*.

This bloody feast being chusened, and all dornes as we well hoped, being now blowne out to our freedom, and sitting at liberty from our tormentors, on the scke of these former miseries fell a mischiefe more dangerous to vs then all the rest: For tidings were brought to the Governour, that our Auncient, who trausled with the Governours two men to the King, had truely murdered those his guides, and then ranne away himselfe vpon this rumour, nothing but thundring and lightning flew from the common peoples mouths: there was no way now with vs but one, and that one was to have all our throats cut, or our heads clef with their Axes. But the Governours pitying our misfortune, laboured both by his authority, & by faire speeches, to keepe that many-headed dege (the multitude) from running. And in the end, when he saw nothing but the blood of vs poore *Englishmen* would satisfy their thirst, because they will held vs in suspicion and feare; he moit moit, and like a veruious Magistrate, pined to the inhumane Rascals (to my knowledge) his honour, altho that he was worthy; yet, his very life vnto them, that within three dayes the messengers lent to the King, should retorne home, and that during those three dayes we should be of good behaviour to the Ilanders: and besides that, if they did not retorne in such a time, that then he would deliuer vs up into their hands. Our Auncient with the Governours two men, came home vpon the third day, to the Governours house, and brought from the King of *Denmarke* his licence, to carry vs not onely through the Countrey, but commanding that we should be allowed shipping also at conuenient place, to carry vs to *Swetland*, whither we were to go: And according to this Licence the Governour caused vs to be called all together the very next day: which time, *Thomas Griffin* the Welch *Indu*, who had all this while layen feasting in the house of the Lord Governour, began to tremble and repent him of his villanie, begging most base forgiveness on his knees, both from the Governour, and vs his Countreimen and fellow Souldiours, protesting that what he did, came out of his feare to save his owne life. But our Officers (vpon hearing him speake thus) had much more to doo to keepe the companies from pulling downe the house where *Griffin* lay, because they would in that rage have hewed the villaine in pieces.

But leaving him and all such betrayers of mens blood to the hell of their owne consciences, let vs set forward out of this unfortunate Iland, and not stay in any place else, till in small Boates wee come by water to *Elmore* in *Denmarke*, where we ioyfully got aboard once more, and are hoying vp sailles for *Swetland*. Yet even in this fun-shine day a storme fell vpon vs so too: for our Officers not having sufficient money to furnish vs with victuals, wee were enforced to pawne our Auncient and Lieutenant *Walton*, for the safe retorne of the Shippes, with condition, that they should not be releas'd vntill a sufficient summe of money was lent to defray all charges. So that we left our Officers behinde vs; but the King of *Swetland* did afterwards release them, and then they came to vs. But before their coming, wee having a good wind, landed at a place called *Nemlos* in *Swene*: and from thence were carried to *Stockholme* (the Kings seat) and there was the King at the same time; betweene which two places, it was a daies march on horse backe.

Vpon this our arrival at *Stockholme*, wee met with the rest that had gone before vs, and with diuers others of our Countreimen, that came out of the low countries, as before is related. In this place we lay long, and had such poore means, that wanting money to buy food, wee waited till we were ready to starve: till in the end, our miseries making vs deperate, we fell together by the eares with the *Burges* of the Towne: in which scrambling confusion and mutinie, every man got one thing or other, of which he made present money to releue his body withall: yet lay wee at the
SIT
walties

Effects of
drunkenness

Cruell counte-
dic and base
mischiefe.

King of *Den-
marke* bounty

Elmore.

Stockholme.

Misery after
misery.

walles of the Citie, crying our continually for money, money, till our throates grew hoarse with bawling, but the stones of the waller gaue more comfort to vs, then the inhabitants. One day (about all the rest) we heard, that the King was to ride a Hunting; and we imagining that all the abuses, wrongs, and miseries, which we endured, proceeded from some vnder-hand hand d'aling, and packing of our Captaines and Officers, resolved to gather about the King as he was coming forth, and to cry out for money: but the King being angry (as we supposed) considering amongst vs, drawing his Pistol from the Saddle-bow, as if hee purposed to haue shot some of vs: but seeing none of vs to shrink from him, nor to be dismayed, hee rode backe againe, we following him, and desiring, hee would either gaue vs money, or else to kill vs our-right: one amongst the rest (whose name was *William Attaine*) spake to the King aloud; thus: *I hold it honour to dye by the hands of a King, but safely to starue to death, I will neuer suffer it.* Vpon these our clamours, the King looking better vpon our necessities, sent money the next day, and immediately after gaue vs a monthes meates in money, and two monthes meates in cloath, to make vs apparel.

Captaines
courage.

Of the cloath we received some part, but the money being payed, was by our Captaines sent into England to their wives; no part of it euer coming to the poor common Soldiours hands: for presently vpon this, we were commanded aboard the Ships, with promise that when we were aboard, we should haue our money. But being in the Shippes vnder hatches, away we were carried with prouision only of one monthes victuals; when by reason of the weather, we were forced to lye eight weekes at Sea: in all which time, we had nothing but pickelled Herrings, and salt Strewnings, with some small quantitie of hard dried meates: by which ill dyet, many of our men fell sicke, and dyed. In the Shippes wherein I was, we liued fouretee dayes without bread, all our best foode being salt Herrings, which we were glad to eate raw; the best of vs all hauing no better sustenance.

Finland.

At the last, it pleased God to send vs to a place called *Vrsafound* in *Fynland*, where we landed. (*Fynland* being subiect to the King of *Swedenland*.) From *Vrsafound* we were to goe to *Weybroough*, a chiefe Towne in the Countrey of *Fynland*: where we no sooner arrived, but our Soldiours rannt some one way, and some another, so long that the Captaines were left alone 30 with the Shippes: This running away of them, being done only to seeke foode, so great was their hunger.

Disperging.

By this carelesse disperging themselves, they lost the command of the whole Countrey, which they might easily haue had, if they had beene vnitied together: and not onely were deprived of that benefit, but of Hories also, which were allowed by the King for them to ride vpon. So that, what by the reason of the tedious Iourney (which we were to trauell, being foure score leagues) and what by reason of the extreme cold, being a month before Christmas, at which time the Snow fell, and neuer went off the ground vntill Whitson-tide following: but all the Raine, and all the Snow that fell, freezing continually, diuers of our men were turtled to death with the Frost. Some lost their fingers, some their toes, some 40 their noses, many their lues: insomuch, that when we all met at *Weybroough*, we could make no more but one thousand and foure hundred able men; and yet when we were landed at *Vrsafound*, we were two thousand strong; the extremity of the cold Countrey hauing killed so many of our Soldiours in so little time.

Distresse by
Frost.

At our landing at *Weybroough* we had good hopes to receiue better comforts, both of money and victuals: for the Inhabitants told vs, the King had allowed it vs, and in that report they spake truth: yet contrary to our expectation, we lay there about fouretee dayes, and had nothing but a little Rice, of which we made bread, and a little butter, which was our best relief. Drinke had we none, nor money: our Captaines gaue vs certaine letherne pelches, only made of Sheepe skins, to keepe vs from the cold.

Their misfor-
tune much into
Raffia.

At this place we received armes to defend vs against the enemy, and fix Companies that were allowed by the King for Horsmen, received Hories there. From thence we were to march into *Raffia*, where our enemies continued. But the Iourney was long and uncomfortable: for we marched from N-wyeres day vntill Whitson-tide, continually in Snow, hauing no rest, but only a little in the nights. So that the miseries and misfortunes which were endured vpon the borders of *Fynland*, were almost insufferable, by reason the number of them seemed infinite. For all the people had forsaken their houses long before we came, because they were euer more oppressed by Soldiours: by which meanes we could get neither meate nor drinke, but were glad to hunt Carts, and to kill them, or any beafts we could lay hold on, and this we baked, and made them serue for daily sustenance. The greatest calamitie of all was, we could get no Water to drinke, it had bene so long frozen vp, and the Snow so deepe, that it was hard to fy, whether we marched ouer Water, or vpon Land. So that we were compelled to digge vp Snow, and with stones peddle her, to melt in rubbes, and then to drinke it.

Want of meate
and of Water.

This

This affliction continued about twelue or fouretee dayes, till we came into *Raffia*. Vpon our very first entrance into *swedish Kingdom*, we marched out an armie of the Sea, that was eight leagues ouer, many of vs hurrying to death in that passage, by the cold freezing windeles that blew the time day. In which froly Iourney, I saw to much bread as a man might buy for twelue pence, fold away in little bits, for the value of foure shillings. But this misery ended the next day, at our setting foot into *Raffia*, where we found plenty both of corne and cattle: only the people of the Countrey rannt away, leaving all their goods behind them, but so cunningly hidden, that the best policie of ours could hardly finde them out. By this meane of the peoples running away, we were glad to play the Milles, and to grinde all our corne for selues, to bake our bread, and to dress our owne victuals. Then marched we vp to *Wingrod* (a Nowgrod, chiefe Citie in *Raffia*) where we were to receiue all our meates that had bene vnpayed: but our Captaines beguiled vs, and kept it for themselves: yet to stoppe our mouths, they told vs we should goe into *Mafcony*, and there all reckoning should be made euen.

Raffia runnt
away.

Wee had scarce marched about three dayes towards *Mafcony*, but that newes came, how a certaine number of our enemies lay in a fconce by the way; the strength of them was not perfectly knowne, but it was thought they were not about seuen hundred, and that we might vife some stratagem to expell them from thence: vpon which relation, our Captaines drew forth to the number of three hundred English horsmen, and two hundred French footmen: so forth to the number of three hundred that were appointed to set vpon the supposed fconce hundred in all we were (as above) our enemies that so lay in fconce: vpon whom we went. Our chiefe Commander in that seruice was *Maister la Velle*, a French man, who valiantly led vs out, that the enemy hearing of our coming, fled ouer a water that was by the fconce: yet not with such speed, but that wee due to the number of foure hundred of their side, and lost only three men of our owne: but we tooke the fconce. About the fconce stood a faire Towne called *Arimas*, with a river called the *Polge*, running through the middle, but no bridge ouer it: only a few Boates and Sloates (made and cut out of trees) were there, to carry the people ouer from the one halfe of the Towne to the other. This fconce furnished vs not onely with great store of riches, but also with a number of Polish Hories, and as many armes as seemed to arme five hundred men: our want of that commoditie being as much as of any thing besides: for of those five hundred men that went vpon the seruice, there were not three hundred fixed armes, yet through the hand of him that deales victories, or ouerthrowes, as it pleaseth him best, the day was ours.

Polacke en-
emies.

They fled.

Scouteth forth
with store of
Armes.

ouer this river *Polge* the enemies were neuer driven before, either by the Emperor of *Raffia*, or by the King of *Swedenland*: for which cause (as afterward we heard) the next day when they departed from the other side of the River, they burnt that halfe of the Towne on which side they were themselves, and in most bloody, barbarous, and cruell manner, made huske both of men, women and children, albeit (not about halfe a yeare before) the Inhabitants on that side had revolted from their owne Emperor, and turned to them. In which tyrannical vtore, their custom was, to fill a house full of people, and then (the doores being locked vpon them, that none might come forth) the house was fired about their eares: and oftentimes were young children taken by the heeles, and cast into the middle of the flames. This inhumane tyrannie being practised not onely by the *Poles*, that were our enemies, but even by those *Ruffes* that were faithful to their owne Emperor, and served against the *Poles*, and were called *Cossakes*, whose cruelty farre exceeded the *Poles*.

Poles cruelles
most execrable

The Towne being thus burnt to the earth, all the fixe thousand English as I said before, fled ouer the River, out of the fconce, and were by vs supposed to be but leuen hundred: came downe in full battalions to the fconce side with such fiercenesse, as if presently they and their horses would haue leuen ouer, to fight with vs, which being perceived, our poore but hundred foot ready to resist them. But whether they feared our numbers to be greater then they were, and that we had some other secret forces, I know not: but away they marched, the selfsame day in which they came downe in that haughty, not doing any thing of which we, for our parts, were not much sorry: because if the battalies had toyne, we knew how, leues fure vnable to withstand them. And thus was the seruice of the most newe army, that was met vpon.

Two or three other fconces and Townes we tooke from our enemies, they not once daring to resist vs, because they knew nothing of our numbers and force. But the dishonest dealings of our Captaines, made the whole Armie discontented; insomuch, that our Soldiours would oftentimes deny to goe forth vpon seruice, because they had bene almost a yeare in the Land, and had received no more but one *Rashie* (amounting to the value of ten shillings English), that vpon that discontentment, fiftie of our men ranne away to the enemy at one time, and disco- uered to them our strength. After that we did not use to hold as before we had before. The first of a new confederacie was likewise kindling, but it was percieued, and quenched with the blood of the conspirators, of which, the chiefe were hanged. On therefore we went: when

Cossacke Cap-
taines.

Fugitives.

Stt a

we

HONDIVS his Map of Muscovia.



we came within fortie leagues of *Moscow*, newes was brought, that the enemy had beleaguared seven thousand *Ruffes* that were our friends, and that valiantly were forced the siege to breake up, the seven thousand *Ruffes* would every man be flayed where they lay. This sad report, (albeit we had resolved neuer to goe vpon any more seruice, whilst wee had our pay) lo wrought in our hearts, that wee much pitied the miseries of others, because wee our selues had tasted of the like.

Our Generall (whose name was *Euerhorke*) was a *Finlander*, and with a company of *Finland* blades (as they bearme them) well appointed on Horsebacke, was by the King of *Sweden*, sent after vs, as our Conuoy, untill wee should come to *Pontus le Guard*, who was chiefe Generall ouer the whole armie of *Strangers* that came into the Land: so that according as he was sent and charged by the King, hee ouerooke vs before we came to *Armenia*. By the intreatie therefore of this *Finlander*, and the flattering promises of our owne Captaines, we were contented to goe vpon this seruice, and to deliuer the *Ruffes*, or to dye our selues in the action. Yet with condition, that (as they promised to vs) we should by the way meete our chiefe Generall, *Pontus le Guard*, who with certaine numbers of *English*, *French* and *Dutch* (which the yeare before were come into the Land) was vpon a march out of *Moscow*, not only to rescue vs, but to reueille vs, and pay vs all for money which remained possit in vs: provided likewise, that so soone as euer wee should release the seven thousand *Ruffes*, our money should be payed downe. On these conditions (I say) wee yielded to goe vpon the businesse.

As leaugh *Pontus le Guard* met vs (according to the promise) and with him was money brought to pay vs, and his word which that presently wee should receive it. But the lamentable estate, in which the poore beleagured *Ruffes* were (within the fencie) being as the point of death for want of foode, required rather speedy execution, then deliberation: so that the necessities of their hard fortunes crazing iustie, on we went, hauing about nintene or twenty thousand

thousand *Ruffes*, that were people of the same Countrey, ioyned to our Armie, to aide them in this enterprize. But as we all were vpon a march, the enemy hauing receiued Intelligence of our approaching, let forward, to the number of eight thousand Lancers and more, to intercept vs by the way: and being within one dayes march of the place to which wee were likewise going, they let lie vpon three or foure Villages hard by the place where we lay at Grate with our Horses, for a token that they were come. And this was done vpon Midsummer day last in the morning, by break of day. Then came they thundring with shouts and cries to lye vpon vs: but no longer was the Alarm giuen, when the greatest part of thiese nintene or twenty thousand *Ruffes*, that were ioyned to vs as our aide, fled most boldly before any blow was giuen. This sudden cowardize of theirs somewhat amazed vs: but the houre being now come, wherein we were not to talke of dangers, but to goe meeete them, with our fixe companies of *English* horse, we brauely resisted the *Polanders*, and with great hurt to them, but with little losse vpon our part, charged them three severall times.

At last *Pontus le Guard* (our chiefe Generall) tooke his heeles and fled too, leauing vs utterly destitute of all direction: which much abashed vs, as not well vnderstanding what to doe: for our greatest strength (being by their flight) taken from vs, none but wee strangers were left in the field, and of vs there was not in all, about two thousand, and of that number there were about six hundred *French* horsemen, who leing both the Generall gone, and the *Ruffes* fled, turned their backs vpon vs, and ranne away too most valiantly, yet not out of the field, but to the enemy.

Then were we not about twelve or fourtene hundred at the most left to resist eight thousand at the least: vpon whom notwithstanding, our fixe companies of *English* horsemen, charged three severall times, without any great losse, but with much honor: And in the fourth time, for want of powres to second them (which the *French* should haue done) all our fixe companies were scattered, and ouerthrowne with the losse of few of our colours. The Captaines our chiefe fixe Companies of Horse, were these:

Captaine *Crale*, of whose company I was. Captaine *Kendrick*, Captaine *Benson*, Captaine *Care*, Captaine *Calver*, Captaine *Creyton*.

Which six Captaines had not in all their companies about five hundred men. In this battaile, Captaine *Creyton* was slaine in the field; Captaine *Crale* was shot in the knee, and within a short time after dyed of that wound: not about twelue of his company escaping. Captaine *Kendrick* was wounded in diuers places of the head, and dyed. Captaine *Benson* was slaine in the hand, and wounded in the head, and yet escaped, and liued: only Captaine *Care* and his Cornet escaped, but all his companie scattered and lost. Diuers other Officers were slaine, whose names I cannot remember.

Thus were all our *English* horse-men dispersed and ouerthrowne, to the number of five hundred and upwards. Our Generall *Euerhorke* with his companies of *Finland*, or *Finish* blades, were also put to retreat: so that there was not left in the field about fixe or seven hundred, which were foot-men. And of these, one halfe was *English*, one halfe *Dutch*, who kept only a certaine place by a wood side, barricadoed with wagons, hauing with them foure field pieces, with which they did great spoote to the Enemy. But their number being but few, neither durst they venture on the Enemy, nor durst the Enemy enter vpon them, but kept them still (as it were beleagued) in that place only, because they could no wayes escape. The inconuenience of which cooping vp in so narrow a roome, being looked into, and the dangers on every side well considered, it was held fittest for safetie, to summon the Enemy to a parley. In which parley, the Enemy offered, that if they would yield, and fall to their diuers, they should haue good quarter kept: And if any man had desire to goe for his owne Countrey, hee should haue libertie to goe with a Passport from the King of *Poland*. Or if any would serue the King of *Poland*, hee should haue the allowance of very good meares daily paid him. Vpon these compositions they all yielded, and went to the Enemy, only Captaine *Turke* and his Officers, with some few of their Souldiers, went backe into the Countrey, and came not to the Enemy, as the rest had done: who from thence marched vp to the *Polish* Leaguer, being ten miles distant from the place, and there they continued. But such as desired to trauele to their owne Countreys, were sent to the King of *Poland* Leaguer, which lay at that time at a place called *Smolensk*, and there accordingly had their Passe, to the number of one hundred, of which number I my selfe was one. What became of the rest I know not: but I with five more held together in trauell, untill we came to *Dantzicke*, a great Towne in *Prussia*, being distant from *Smolensk* one hundred leagues.

To make an end of this storie of the Foxe and the Beare, the pretending *Demetrius* and contenting *Smuckey* is reported, that *Demetrius* seeing the perplexities of *Smuckey*, rayled a great Armie of such *Ruffes* as voluntarily fell to him (the *Pole* hauing now recieued him, except some Voluntaries) and againe laid siege to *Moscow*; *Zolkemsky* for *Sigismund*, beleagured another part thereof with fortie thousand men, whereof one thousand and five hundred were *English*, *Scottish*, and *French*. *Smuckey* seeing no hope to withstand them, his Empire renouncing him, hee would

see me

An. 1610.

Russ. Ruffes flight.

P. le Guard's flight.

French Rec.

English honour.

Some say he had recoured.

Re

his fi- 2

Sr-

illic

fa-

50

4,

66

3.

necessarijs providere, prout antea solitum fuit: nec stipendia, Tenuras, & possessiones eorum ab ijs
abalienare.

Herodibus, Antiochis, Cubicularijs, Dapiferis, & liberis Herorum, omnib[us]; Aula Imperatoria in-
ferniensib[us], Imperatorum breuolentibus communitate, & salaria debita, secundum antiquum mo-
rem reddere, Serenissimis Imperator tenebuntur.

Quod si verò aliqui salaria multiplicauerint, possessionesq[ue] aut tenuit, supra eim[us] dignitatem, vel

Quod si vero alicuius iustitia manifestum fuerit, & de re Severissimus Imperator conferre, & consulare debet cum Heroibus Primarijs: & prout unanimes decreverint, idq; secundum equitatem, ita sit futurum.

quibus beneficia tempore praeteritorum Magnorum Imperatorum Molitovic ob merita ipsorum
debitur, illis quoque tam & stipendia pecuniaria, & alimentaria, ex Mandato Imperatoris
dantur. Cuius

In Arcibus Moscovicis, alijs, Arcibus, Indicia exequi debent, & observari ut solitum; secundum statuta Moscovitici Imperij. Quod si vero aliqua essent corrigenda, ad corroborationem Indiciorum, concederet Serenissimo Imperatori, sed cum consensu omnium Heretorum Vassalorum Moscoviae, ita tamen, ut responderent aequari.

Magnus autem Imperator Serenissimus Rex Poloniz, Magnus Dux Lithuaniz, etiam totius Regni Poloniz, Imperia, necnon Magnus Ducatus Lithuaniz, cum Magni Imperatoris filio Regis Poloniz Vla Illia, Sigismuntoviz, cum omnibus Imperij Moldoviz, in amicitia, societate, amore, eternis temporibus ininvolabiliter, nec contra se invicem exercitus colligere, & bella concitare nullis modis debeat.

Quod si autem aliquis hostium tentaverit impetus facere in Imperium Moscoviz, sine etiam in Regnum Poloniae, & Magnum Ducatum Lithuaniz: contra istiusmodi omnes hostes iunctis viribus insurgere virumq. Imperium tenebitur.

Ceterum, in Tartarorum finibus quod sinecessum fuerit formare vivisq; Imperij militis, cum ian-
coratus fuerit filius Seressimis Regis Poloniz, Imperator Imperij Molcovitarum: hac de re, collatio-
nem Heroibus insinuanda, & cum magno Imperatore Seressimo Signifundum Rege Poloniz, idq;
desuper, animo sincero, absq; ulla machinatione damni dicitur, cum Tyrannidis illationis in homines Mol-

36 *coactis Imperij: bonum, vitam, aut aliud quippiam suis modis nemini adimendo, cuiusque conditionis libe fuerit: Aut si in Polonia, vel Lithuaniam, aliq, Imperio Moscovitico Imperij homines transfundendo, aut ex Lithuania in locum eorum aliquis alterius generis homines supponendo: Vires, aut liberi aliquis dolore corrumpeudo, vel sobolis procreanda gratis sumendo, & ad externas Nationes auferendo, cum liberis regnante.*

Qui autem ex quocunque Imperio istiusmodi facioris reus, & pena dignus invenietur: Is in Imperatoris, & terrestrius iudicibus promissus meritis, puniendus est: & decretum per Imperatorem, aut Heroes, vel Capitaneos de illo ferendum.

Exores autem eorum & liberi, fratres, & qui istud faciunt nec perpetravit, nec ipsi sunt cognitum, aut illud perpetrandum consentire. Illi neminem puniendi, sed secundum aequitatem Privilegiorum suorum, patrimonium, tenetiam, vitam, aulam, retinere debent.

*Sin vitro reus non possit explorari, nemo tamen Indicio Imperatoris, at Herosum indicari, puniri, pro-
scribi, vel incarcerari, aut ad alienos transmitti debet: sed unusquisq; in suis Tennis & Anli
conseruari.*

*Steriles autem, quæ ex hac decesserint vita, bona ab illis relicta, vel sanguinibus informis, sine cuius-
cunque ipsi legaverint, tradenda : id tamen non absq. mutua collatione, & consilio esse debet.*
Porro quoniam tempore presentis seditionis multi perire, & multos ex Molcovitis prostratos constabat

Qui autem Poloni, & Lithuani Principes, Centuriones, aliq̃q. duces & sortis homines duxere capti

50 *nitatem in Imperio Moscoviae, quorum aliqui adhuc in vinculis tenentur illi ex Moscoviae Imperio red-
dendi, sine ulla pecuniaria liberatione. Tum quoque vice versa Aulici, liberi Heroum, Iaculatores, Ve-
lites, Fabri tormentarij, omnesq^{ue} sexuales & liberi homines, Aulicorum liberi, Iaculatorum, Fabrorum*

tormentariorum, Scolopariarum, & horum similium. Item Matres, Uxores, Liberi, & his similes, e-
Imperio Moscovitarum, virilis aut muliebris sexus, in presentem servitutem praesente primo Moscovi-
tarum, virilis aut muliebris sexus, in presentem servitutem praesente primo Moscovitarum Imperator

Vencellao accepti in Poloniam vel Lithuaniam, illi ab Imperatore Serenissimo Rege Poloniz, restituti
endi a minimis ad maximos vsq; absq; pecuniali redemptione. Proveniens Imperatoris ex Arabu
alysq; possessionibus, tam extenuat & arendis census, omnesq; redditus, debet Serenissimus Imperator

6C *exigere, ut antea fecerant Primi Imperatores, & prioris Magistratus mores, & statuta absq; consensu nullis immutare.*
Arces, aut Cinitates, quæ bello vastatae, ad eas mittere debet Serenissimus Imperator, & præcipere

*ut conscribantur Registra eorum, quae per visitationem perire: ut unicuique sumptis promeritis alimenta
secundum conscripta registra possint refarci.*
Quorum verò Hereditates, Possessiones, vel Tenuta spoliata, ijs lenamen dandum, sed non ab

67

consensu Heronum. Et quarecum visitata A. ces, illis quamprimum restituerent, consilio rito cum Heroibus, & Nobilibus.

Mercatores Moscovitici Imperij omnium Civitatum, in Polonia, & Lithuania, sic Poloni, Lithuani, in Moscovia, Poloni, Lithuani, mercatores comere debent more viciate, ut omnia: istud tamen ca. vendendum, ne invidiam sibi faciant negata Mercatores, & alij Christiani in Lithuania ex Russia, & ex Lithuania in Russiam, sese transportando cum mercibus Heres, & Aliis omnes, mancipia debent in servitute dimittere, prout solent.

In Vobis, Dna, & Telex Archibus, velitis, si illis opus fuerit, ferri debent: da quibus Serenissimi Imperator confecta debet cum Heroibus, & Nobilibus, postquam coronaverunt.

Arcei Moscovitici Imperij, ad Imperatorem persentiant, cum illis, que in tenuis Poloni, & Lithuania, tradita sunt, vel que iam Vor prefatus fuit postulationem suam subeant: Ego Primarius Dux exercituum Regni Poloni, & confistat cum Heroibus Moscovia, quod Serenissimus Rex Poloni, Filio sacra sue Regie Maiestatis Serenissimo Vladislao Sigmuntovici, hoc aces, cum omnibus quatuor vastatis, Moscovitico Imperio restitueret debet. Illustres vero Legati Moscovitici, hoc in negotio mittent expensis, & de persolvenda Poloni, & Lithuanis, suis quoque consiliariis, quomodo ab solus possint.

Demetrius
suppositus
secundus.

Vor autem prefatus, qui sese Cesaridem Moscovitici Imperij, Demetrium Euanovici appellat: vel mihi Primo Duci Regni Poloniæ consilium mendant, & omnia cura habenda, ut capi, vel penitus evitatis possint.

Qui postquam captus, vel necis fuerit, Ego Primarius Dux exercituum Regni Poloni, cum exercitu sacra Maiestatis primaria Arce, sedis Imperatorie, Moscovia prefata adfcedere ad Arcem mazovickam, vel ubi fuerit, post collationem cum Heroibus institutam, ibi Legatos Moscoviticos, & peroratorem arcem Moscoviam, se distat tenentem insidari, aut sedentes aliqui exierint, Ego Primarius Dux Regni Poloni, illum persigillare, & armis persequi tenebor.

Domini vero Sapientis, qui si Vor prefatus adveniat, ab illo & exercituum Polonicum, & Lithuanicum abducat: Quod si idem Vor prefatus, ex Moscovia cum Ruthenis, descenderit, militum auxilium Polonorum, & Lithuanorum quovis modo se detineant, Ego Primarius Dux Regni Poloni, cum exercitu sacra Regia Maiestatis, una cum Heroibus Moscovia, se fugiendum impolitum ex ordine, sed Imperium pace publica assecuratum stabiliter, dabimus quoniam.

Demetrius
primus
apud Russos
maior.

Mulier vero, qui cum eodem Vor prefatus per Moscoviticum Imperium, cum exercitu passim grassatur, Imperatorem Moscovia sese vitandam, illi prohibendum, ne eandem se impolitum minare, vel quovis modo offendi, aut aliquas dissensiones, contra Imperium Moscoviticum movere audeat: sed, quamprimum in Poloniam reducere possit. Imperator vero Serenissimus, filius Regi Poloniæ Vladislao Sigmuntovici in omnia antiquitus, iura sacra, & postea Magnorum Legatorum Moscovia, cum Serenissimo Sigmundo Rege Poloniæ, & confirmata privilegia mittari debet. Civitates & Arcem Smolensk prefatum quod attinet, Ego Primarius exercituum regni Poloniæ supplicat apud S. R. Maiestatem, ut prohibeat, ne milites in Civitate tanta homicidia exercent, & Arcem solent.

De Baptismo
repetendo.

De his tamen vero, ut illud Imperator Vladislao Sigmuntovici, filius sacra Regia Maiestatis, sequebatur, & baptizaret in illorum sacra Sacramentali Graecæ religionis, in illis, persequeretur, ut illi ad presentem usque, excommunicationis, & reliqui circumscriptis antiquis in Imperio Moscovitico, numquam, consilium & collatio infanti debet, ut amor, & amicitia, virginitatem, & consensum possit. Quod de re, Ego Primarius Dux militie, cum iam S. R. Maiestatis commissi, & mandata nulla habeam, consilium cum Heroibus, quid ipsi respiciant, sum daturus: sed primum cum sacra Regia Maiestate hoc in negotio, tum etiam cum Serenissimo Imperatore Vladislao Sigmuntovici filio sacra Regie Maiestatis, conferam.

Insuper, Ego Primarius Dux exercituum regni Poloniæ, in Arcem Moscoviam prefatum, Po. 50 Iones, Lithuanos, Germanos, & omni generis bellicosos, qui sunt necem, & cum Domino Sapientia, alij, permissu Heronum, vel ipsa necessitate, intrinsece non debet. In Arcem Moscoviam prefatum, regni Poloniæ, cum meum Imperialibus testimonialibus literis, non ultra viginti, vel paucos Princeps sunt promittendi: ab his, iterum a me datus testimonialibus, in Arcem Moscoviam prefatum, aut alibi, nemo proficisci debet.

Ob maiori vero robore, & confirmationem Polonorum illorum, Ego Primarius regni Poloniæ Dux exercituum, Stanilaus Stanilaides, Zolkewsky de Zolkova, sigillum meum apposui, & manum propriam subscripsi. Sic etiam Domini Principis, & Centurionum exercitus, qui tum temporis mihi aderant, ad hac mea scripta nomina sua subscribere. Datum in Cestris, apud Arcem sedis Imperatorie 60 Augusti 1610. Augusti 27. die.

Respon-

Responsum ad Paginam Primarii Ducem exercituum Regni Poloniæ, & Herois Moscovia, Serenissimi Regis Poloniæ, & Serenissimi Viceris

DISLAT SIGHVNTOVIZ Filij Sacre Regie Maiestatis.

Magni Dei gratia Imperatoris Vladislao Sigmuntovici, Filii Serenissimi Regi Poloniæ, Sue

cias, & Amplissimi Moscovitici Imperij universi venerabili Clero, Ministri Dei vi-

ciis, & Hierarchy, Capitanei, Leites Heronum, Advocatus velorum, Legationes, & Felices

10 alij, salutem in domino sempiternam. Quia cum nos, Ladislaus, filius sacra Regie Maiestatis, &

ad Imperatorem dei nostri Imperij Moscovitici, Ladislaus, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao

secum convenimus Moscovitici, Ladislaus, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam Præsentem Vladislao, & Magnam

ex mera gratia sua, vestris Imperatorum cura, & diligentia, nos Imperia Molucitico fr. mas, & reseruat, vobis pater conseruit. Dabamur Varloctis, Anno Domini 1612. 9. die Martij.

The points of the Embassage of the Russian Messenger sent to his sacred Maestie, briefly collected.

- What manner their natural Lords ruled over them, they alleged, to wit, beginning from**
Dmitry, who was of the blood of *Josephus Caesar*, Emperour of *Rome*, even unto the last
Lord and Emperour Phileas Emmanuich, in whom their Race ended.
That Boris Godunov abiding with **Phileas Emmanuich**, was created (by his own force and
 power) Emperour or Lord: but after a little time, the pleasing of God so working, being thrust
 out of the Imperial seat, departed this life shamefully, and by violent death, together with his
 Wife and Children.
That Christophorus Ortoph, the *Rofrig*, being of base descent, under the Name which he did
 beare of Emperour, otherwise *Demetrius Emmanuich*, laing at *Ortoph*, did fraudulently and by de-
 ceit (whereby he deceived the common people, and others that believed them) obtaine the
 Imperiall Seate by force, without the consent of the Spirituall, and all the chiefe Bishops and
 Lords, and great men of the Kingdome, who durst not withstand the same, (seeing the Com-
 mon to yield therunto.
How the excellent Lord Palatin of Spandem, gave his daughter in marriage to the *Rofrig*,
 and himselfe (many Gentlemen both of the Kingdome of *Poland*, and great Duchy of *Lithuania*, ac-
 companying him) came into *Moscouia*.
Then, that Vassil Emmanuich Smolensky, with his brethren, and many others associated to this at-
 tempt, and hiring vpo other great men of the Land, did kill the *Rofrig*, with many Gende-
 men of the Land, and the great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and put the rest into diuers Castles. And himselfe
 was made Emperour, although he were not elected by all the States. Whereupon many of our
 fort did not willingly acknowledge him Emperour, and many would not obey him.
How another named the War, did rise vp at *Kashin*, and caused himselfe to be named *Demetrius*,
 and so accounted. Whereof when many (both *Ruffes* and *Poles*) heard, they assembled vnto
 him, thinking him to be the true *Demetrius*: and the *Ruffes* did so much the more willingly draw
 vnto him, because of the murderers.
How others called War, did name and call themselves sonnes of the same Emperour, as *Ivan*,
Peter, *Phileas*, and by many and diuers other names: and vnder the same names, did confuse
 the State, and head much blood.
How the Kings sacred Maestie, comming to *Smolensky*, sent his Messengers the Lord of *Pras-
 missane*, and other noble men, who comming vnto the Campe, the forenamed *War* fled away:
 but diuers of the *Ruffes* came vnto his Maestie. And taking counsell with the *Danowes*, at that
 time remaining with *Smolensky* in the chiefe Citie, we sent our Messengers to his Maestie at
 that time, being at *Smolensky*, viz. *Michael Salicene*, and others, requesting that his Maestie would
 grant vs his Sonne to be our Lord.
How they were dispatched away, and what answer they brought from his Maestie, with
 conditions engroffed, and signed with his hand and seale.
How that after the depoying of Smolensky, the noble Lord Generall of the Kingdome, comming
 into *Moscouia*, consulted all the said busineses and graces: and consumed them with the oath
 of himselfe, and his fellow Souldiers. And that they after that oath, likewise made their oath
 for the same. Then, that for the great defense of the said principall Citie from the *Wars*, they
 sent Souldiers into the Citie, and sent also their Messengers from the whole Countie *Poland*, viz.
Metropolitane and *Vassil Galichin*, with others, vnto the Kings Maestie, and required an oath
 in his Maesties behalfe, of all the feuerall Princes.
**How that his Maesties Souldiers dwelled and behaued themselves in this capitall Citie of
 Mosca**, before the troubles began, without inuring any man, punishing the euill according to
 their deserts.
How the *Boiarins* handled other Gentlemen, and principall persons of the *Ruffe* Religion,
 although more inclined vnto them: but especially the Officers and Seruants of the *Wars*, as also
 such as had fled ouer.
It followeth, how they often sent word vnto the Citie of Smolensky, and willed them to de-
 liuer vp the Citie vnto his Maestie, to be vnder his prosperous government and power. As for
 the secret plots of their Messengers, *Galichin* and others, they said, they were ignorant, as also
 of some vnkowne practices, handled with the *Wars* called *Haligin*. But they said, that they had
 written very often to the Citie of *Smolensky*, and commanded them to do whatsoeuer stood
 with his Maesties pleasure, and liked him, without further effusion of blood.

How

How also it befell in the chiefe Citie to *Lepus*, and *Sa. wly*, and the other Rebels, when they
 violated their fidelitie.

That they certified his Maesties Souldiers thereof, and that they, with them, did rise a-
 gainst the Rebels, and that euen to this present, they doe keepe, and will keepe their oath
 once made, and their due obedience vnto their Lord.

And, in that *Lepus* was punished of God for his treachery, and departed this life witho
 shamefull a death, wee thinke it to bee for the good example of others, to reduce them into
 their former estate, to rrouke others vnto their fidelitie, and for keeping their oath alrea-
 die giuen.

Therefore, after many circumstances, they inferred, that they would precisely feed their
 Messengers to the generall Parliament: but moued with the perfwasion of the honorable Lord
 Generall, to wit, that his Maestie would bee contented with their fidelitie once made, and
 performed vnder oath, and with their gnefe for the same cause, and will cheerfully forgie
 them: and doth not refuse to giue his Sonne to raigne over them. Adding withall, that many
 Kingdomes, to wit, the Kingdome of *Hungary*, the Kingdome of *Bohemia*, and a great part
 of *Ruffia*, doe earnestly request, that he would receive them vnder the happy government of his
 Maestie: that they might enioy the priuilegges of *Poland*, and *Lithuania*, to wit, that none in the
 whole world can be compared.

But, because his Excellency Maestie, as a Christian Lord, reaching all other Kingdomes,
 and that he is sorry for their destruction: he therefore now admonisheth them, if they will bee
 vnder his prosperous Rule, and enter into an vnion together with the Kingdome of *Poland*, and
 the great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and lue friendly with them: if they will performe, and content there-
 vnto, his Excellent Maestie prometh to remit their offence, and to receive them vnder his
 happy government and authoritie, and refuteth, and by no means will alter or change their faith
 and conscience, or places dedicated vnto God, without foreiudice: neither will impose on
 them any other Religion, or alter their ancient Manners, or Customs, but will bestow on them
 priuilegges and offices: and that the Rights and Priuilegges, which the *Poles*, with the great
 Duchy of *Lithuania* doe enioy, shall be conferred on them: and that they shall be equalled with the
 Kingdome and great Duchy of *Lithuania*, &c. which Iurisdiccions and priuilegges, in former times,
 their Predecessors wanted.

For this perfwasion therefore of the honorable Lord Generall, which he had in charge from
 his Maestie to make, they yeeld all thanks: but notwithstanding they propound, and plainly
 adde, that their oath shall be so, that his Maesties sonnell shall succeed in their government, with
 certain additions: to wit, that they will have none other over them but only his Maesties
 sonne, and that the whole Land doth make it knowen, and propound their iugement and sen-
 tence, by way of denunciation, that by no means, but by offering his Maesties sonne, these
 troubles of *Moscouia* can be extinguished. Adding withall, that at that time, in the first trou-
 ble, when the honorable Lord Generall came into the Countie of *Moscouia*, and required the
 oath for the Kings Maesties sonne: if his Maestie had made any mention thereof, it is certaine,
 that the Commons and all the Nobilitie, would not have contented therewith by any means,
 and that greater effusion of blood had risen thereupon: And that they had taken for their Prince
Klitschinsky, called the *War*, to whom all were not assembled, who also at that time had a great
 power of men, as well of *Poles*, as *Ruffes* and *Lithuanians*. They therefore seeing the great discord
 among the people, taking counsell, did freely choofe for their Lord and Emperour his Excel-
 lent Maesties sonne, vnto whom they had a great affection, and who had a long time before
 layen in their hearts: assuring themselves also, that by this election of his Maesties sonne, many
 troubles and diffentions would be pacified, and so reiecteth the aforesaid *War Klitschinsky*: As al-
 so they receiued into their chiefe Citie the chiefe General. But, when it was heard that his Ex-
 cellent Maestie, would by no means giue vnto them his sonne for their Lord, and to rule ouer
 them, they fell into such effusion of blood and insurrections. As also the same time, the whole
 Countie of *Moscouia* looked and expected nothing else then his Maesties sonne. Calling to
 memorie, for their better aduice, that it was to be feared, that whilst his Maestie came too late
 to the Southward the Castles *Strachen* and others, to the King of *Persia*: part of *Pomerland* and *Si-*
beria, to the Kings of *Denmarke* and *England*; *Nouogrod*, *Pleser*, *Isouogrod*, and others, to the
 King of *Sweden* and that the other Cities would choofe to themselves other Lords separate from
 the rest. In the meane season, they desire his Excellent Maestie, to make a speedie end of these
 warres, according to his Obligation and promise ratified by the oath of the honorable Lord Ge-
 neral, and the whole Armie: and that his Maestie himselfe, with his sonne, would come into
Moscouia. They request also, that his Excellent Maestie would retayne with himselfe and his
 Sonne, Counsellors, and Messengers of their Commonwealth, for the ordering and concluding
 of perpetual Commissions. They request also, that his Maestie, in the name of his Sonne, would
 send vnto all the Inhabitants of the Townes, and write vnto the feuerall Cities, signifying his
 com-

T T 2

comming into their Dominions, and willing, that out of the severall Prouinces, all sorts of men send their Messengers, to treat and conclude of the affaires of all sorts of People, and of perpetual tranquillitie. Promoting after the said Charge and Letters to all people in general, and notifying from their said Lord, that (by Gods grace) there was to be throughout the whole Land of *Moscowa*, tranquillitie, peace, and securitie.

To conclude, they pray heartily vnto the Lord God, & to grant vnto his Maiestie in this business begun, a prosperous and speedy end.

Ruffian incontinency.

Thus haue we seene disolute resolutions, or resolute disolutenesse, men onely constant in incontinencie, resolved vpon irresolution. As we often see sicke persons turning every way, and no way ealed; in the night time longing for day, and in the day for night; such was now to the *Russian* sicknesse, they would and they would not, and yet would againe, and againe would not, they scarcely knew what or why; fluctuating in an inward flume of diuersified hopes, feares, desires, distracted affections, no leste then in that outward broile of State. For it was not long that they looked toward *Poland*, whether for breach of conditions of that part, or out of inueterate hate to the *Pole*, or their Nationall ialousie and distrust of Strangers, or a naturall inconstancy; they fell off from that Prince: and their Chancellor (Father to the now reigning Emperour) employed there with others in Embassage) were detayned thereupon prisoners. *Leualto* reported that they made secret ouertures to His Maiestie of Great *Britaine*, and charge and agonies of that State could not; but the strong conuulsions and sharp pangs; the wheele of Things being whirled about before such a Treatie might admit a passage of Messengers to and fro. Once that *Russian* Head grew so heady and giddy, that at last it bred innumerable Heads, yea the whole Body became Heads in the worst of tyrannies, a popular (government shall I say? or) confusion. Neither were *Hypocrites* (most notoriously multiplying two for each cut off) like this: for besides so many *Wor's* after the first hure of this *Hypocrite* (not the Nobles alone, but the baseliest had nothing but themselves, and were nothing but Numbers) became so many prodigious Heads; they also like *Pharisees* *lame knee denouncing the sin*, and upon high pretences beheading themselves in cutting off the heads and nobler Persons amongst them.

Many-headed body.

Insolent.

When they had thus made away almost all the *Grandes*, and left the South parts to the spoile of the *Poles*, which once againe were drawing neere to *Moscow* to besiege it; the *Poles* also suffered some disaster, their Soldiers mutinying for want of pay, and banding themselves to returne into *Poland*, there invaded the Mines and Custome-houses, and some governments, detaying them for their pay; sending also threatening Letters to diuers Cities and Townes, forcing diuers Nobles and Plebeians to composition. The *Turkey* and *Tartars* brake likewise into *Wallachia*, *Moldauia*, and *Pollonia*, so that *Zakiewsky* or *Salewsky* the Generall was forced to goe against them, of whom he made to great a slaughter, that the Great *Turkey* committed the *Pole* Embassadour at *Constantinople* to Ward, and threatened the *Poles* with invasion. These mutinous Soldiers continued meane while that and the next yeere to spoile *Poland*. These many damage to the King and the Bishops, challenging many millions due, as they said, for pay. Yea they passed further into *Prussia*, and made spoile in every place, on the eight of November 1613. passing with a great prey to *Thurn*, being parted into three Bands, the *Sapians*, the *Slovoniaks*, and *Smolenskians*. Another companie of them terrified *Silesia*. The *Tartars* likewise made impression and committed great spoile in *Podolia*.

Gods providence permits not the viceruine of *Russia*.

Strange alteration of affairs by a Butcher.

Properly chosen General, and a Butcher Treasurer.

Boris Lacin.

Thus an Arme diuined could not conquer, nor to utterly exterminate *Russia* as otherwise opportunity was offered: the *Pole* Soldiers being heren like angry Elephants which sometime recoyle vpon their owne troups and do more spoyle then the enemy could either have effected or expected. But while the Inuaders were thus invaded, the *Russes* were forward to worke those executions on themselves, which their enemies could haue wished to them; till at last awakened with the horror of their owne evils, some began to thinke of a better course. In the North about the *Dvina*, a bold fellow, a Butcher, rayling at the Nobilities basenesse, and the Officers corruptions, said, if they would chooe a good Treasurer and pay Soldiers well, they would first chooe a worthy General, for which place he recommended to them a poore maymed Gentleman, called *Pocarsky*, who had done good service, but being neglected, now had repayed himselfe not farre off. The multitude approved the Butchers counsell, and chose *Pocarsky* for their Leader, and that Butcher for a Treasurer, deliuering into his hands what money they had, which he so faithfully disbursed, *Pocarsky* also discharging so well the trust reposed, that a great Army was gathered, and the siege of *Moscow* thereby rayled. And joining with *Knes Demetrius Maslowsky* (a kind of *Tartar* which commanded an Army of *Cossaks* in service of the *Russes*) they tell in consultation with *Boris Lacin*, the third Great Soldier of that Country, vpon choice of an Emperour. Their mindes herein disagreeing (some naming one, some another) some named *Maslowsky* himselfe, other for further securitie against the *Poles*, and

and to recompence the sufferings and imprisonment of the *Russian* Chancellor in *Poland*, named his young Sonne *Michalowich*, vnder whose Empire (hauing a good Councell appointed) they might happily. This was first approved by the *Cossaks*, and then by the other Armies, the Butcher also was taken to become a Councillor, and those three Leaders thereof were made Militarie Commanders for the present Emperour against the *Poles*. Embassadours also were sent to diuers Princes to mediate betwixt them and the *Pole*, and betwixt them and the *Turkey*; and by his Majesty of Great *Britaine* (whom God long preferre to reigne out vs) his countenance and intercession, there hath bene some agreement, and the young Emperour hath settled his Dominions in peace, making at last a truce for fourteen yeeres with the *Poles*, obtaining also in that Treatie his Father the Chancellour his libertie and returne out of *Poland*, who since is consecrated Patriarke of *Russia*.

Michalowich Son to the Chancellor chosen.

Our Kings mediation.

Insane.

His Embassadour to the Emperour came to *Liace*, in December 1613. and thence was conueighed by the Emperours Officers to the Court, where he had solemn audience, where after rich pretensions of Furies and his Letters, he deliuered his speech, that *Michael Phiodorowich* was now by vniuersall consent advanced to the *Russian* Emperour, and willing to entertaine and continue the ancient confederacie betwixt both Empires: desiring the Imperiall Maiestie to deliuer the *Pole* from his vniuersal attempts, to deliuer the *Ruffe* Captiues, and not againe to infect the recovered *Moscow*, but to enter into peace, and abstaie from Christian bloodshed. Likewise to send an Embassadour to his Court, &c. This mediation *Cesar* promised, and gaue the Embassadour 30 liberal entertainment, and gentle dispatch.

Not long after in May 1614. the *Russian* Embassadour had audience with the States of the vniuers Prouinces at *Hages*, and before that in *England*. I was present both at his arrival at *Grainford*, and his honourable entertainment into *London*, and saw him also presently after the running at Tit at Whitehall, the foure and twentieth of March, admitted to his Maiesties presence, performing that *Russian* Rite of bowing with his face downe to or neere the ground, &c.

Ann 1615. The *Turkish* Embassadour treated with the *Casarean* Maiestie about the mediation betwixt the *Pole* and the *Muscowites*, who employed to that purpose *Erasmus Hendel* and the Baron of *Dobna*. The *Pole* notwithstanding sent an Army in his Sonnes challenge (who was shortly to follow to *Smolensky*) into *Muscovia*; *Pentus Tullagard* the *Sweden* Commander inflicting also the *Russians* at the same time. But the next yeere 1616. Sir John Merley Knight, a man of great experience in those Northerne parts, was employed his Maiesties Embassadour to negotiate betwixt those two Great Princes, the *Muscowites* and the *Sweden*, the Articles of whose composition I obtained by the mediation of Sir Thomas Smith (my ancient Benefactor in kind) and haue here communicated to thee, but in another Chapter as being now past our Tragickie Thunders: as also the following *Ruffe* China Newes, that you may see not only the face of *Russia* washed from her bloody pollutions, but her hands further then ever extended (fortunate in treaty of Commerce) as far as *China*: likewise the *Ruffe* Patent to the *Engliffe* Sweet is the name of Peace, and the thing it selfe a Heauen vpon Earth. BLESSED ARE THE PRACMATERS (his Maiesties word else where here his deed) for they shall be called (said the only begotten Son) the Children of God; even the God of peace will make them his houses of Heauen, which (models of Duty) seek to establish the peace of God vpon Earth. And let it not seeme tedious here to present these His Majesties Trauels, amongst other Trauellers, but in a more glorious manner (I ker to God vnumerable which moutheth all things) who hath not only bene our Sunne, and with lightsome heate and influence filled our *British* Hemisphere, but hath dispersed his bright rayes of Light, and warmed with sweet picking beames of heat, those remoter frozen Climates of *Sweden* and *Russia* (not to mention, but to mention the quarrels of *Denmarke* and *Sweden*) and after their long frostie Night (such is the nature, such was the state of those States) to reduce the faire day-light of Peace, the warmth whereof hath thawed the Ice hardened hearts 50 of Enmity, and filled all things with sweets, and cheere of a returning Spring. *Nolite saluo bello, pacem se possumus omnes.*

Sir J. Merley negotiation. Sir Dudley Digges was also sent Embassadour in kind, and haue here communicated to thee, but in another Chapter as being now past our Tragickie Thunders: as also the following *Ruffe* China Newes, that you may see not only the face of *Russia* washed from her bloody pollutions, but her hands further then ever extended (fortunate in treaty of Commerce) as far as *China*: likewise the *Ruffe* Patent to the *Engliffe* Sweet is the name of Peace, and the thing it selfe a Heauen vpon Earth. BLESSED ARE THE PRACMATERS (his Majesties word else where here his deed) for they shall be called (said the only begotten Son) the Children of God; even the God of peace will make them his houses of Heauen, which (models of Duty) seek to establish the peace of God vpon Earth. And let it not seeme tedious here to present these His Majesties Trauels, amongst other Trauellers, but in a more glorious manner (I ker to God vnumerable which moutheth all things) who hath not only bene our Sunne, and with lightsome heate and influence filled our *British* Hemisphere, but hath dispersed his bright rayes of Light, and warmed with sweet picking beames of heat, those remoter frozen Climates of *Sweden* and *Russia* (not to mention, but to mention the quarrels of *Denmarke* and *Sweden*) and after their long frostie Night (such is the nature, such was the state of those States) to reduce the faire day-light of Peace, the warmth whereof hath thawed the Ice hardened hearts 50 of Enmity, and filled all things with sweets, and cheere of a returning Spring. *Nolite saluo bello, pacem se possumus omnes.*

C H A P. X.

A brief Copie of the points of the Contract between the Emperours Maieftic, and the Kings Maieftic of Sweden: as it shal beava the feuen and twentieth of February, 1616.

Obliuion of
former quar-
rels.
Archdeacon
Phedorow
Chancellor
of Ruffia,
Gustauus Adol-
phus King of
Sweden.



P Nprimis, and especially that all matters be set aside, forgotten, pacified, and remoued, which pass'de the former years since the conclusion of peace at Tassima in the year 7003: betwixt the former great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes of all Ruffia, and afterwards our great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Michaelo Phedorowich of all Ruffia, Sam, the Imperial Maieftie, and Emperie of Ruffia; and betwixt their late high, mightie Lord King Charles the Ninth of Sweden, the above named King Maieftie highly be-
loved and beloved Father, especially their high mightie Lord King Gustauus Adolphus of Sweden, his Kingly Maieftie and the Crowne of Sweden: At also both the Princes their Dominions, Lands, Cities, and people, chance or hap of the Subiects, which happened or was done by robbery, burning, killing, or other emittie vnto fauour might be, or by whom it was done, that all those griefes and troubles in all matters shall be set aside, and hereafter not be reuenged or remembered of neither party, for ever and by this present strong conclusion of peace betwixt our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaelo Phedorowich of all Ruffia, Sam, and betwixt their great mightie Lord, King Gustauus Adolphus of Sweden, etc. and of other Dominions, Lands, Cities, and people thereof, as to those which by this conclusion of peace are given and yielded up, and heretofore the Subiects and people to be reuenged, established, confirmed and held vntremouable in the manner of a peace for ever and euer; and sure friend-
ship perpetually: Also that the Emperours Maieftie, and the Kings Maieftie shall desire one another less in all matters, and neither seek a better friend, but to deale faithfully and truly in all matters reciprocally.

Great No-
uogrod, decreat-
ed to the
Ruffie.

Churches re-
stored
with their goods,
&c.

Sir I. Maie-
sties Ambassa-
dor.

Libertie of
persons.

1. Item, it is given vnto our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaelo Phedorowich of all Ruffia, Sam, his heires, successours and hereafter coming great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes of all Ruffia, and the Emperie thereof, by their great Lord King Gustauus Adolphus of Sweden, for him, 30
self, his successours, and hereafter being Kings of Sweden, and for the whole Crowne of Sweden, doth deliver and cede by the power of this conclusion of peace, the Cities of the Emperie in Ruffia with the Townes and Suburbs which were taken in these years, namely, great Noouogrod, Stararoulo, Porcoue, Lodgia, Odo, with their Territories, Somerskey, Volost, with the Villages belonging to the Emperours Houhold, to Metropole, Monasteries, Gentlemens Lands, Inheritances, Farms, with all their profits and revenues according to former Borders and Limits, except those Cities which the Emperours Maie-
stie doth yield by power of this Contract of peace, as hereafter more certainly shall be exprest.

2. Item, The Kings Maieftie of Sweden doth give vnto the Emperours Maieftie, with the afore-
said Cities and Townes, all manner of Church ornaments which are in the Church of Sophia, The Sa-
pience of God, and within all Churches and Monasteries in Noouogrod, and in other Cities and 40
Townes which the Kings Maieftie hath given to the Emperours Maieftie without carrying any thing a-
way. Also the Kings Maieftie doth give the Metropole, and all the Spruwall, with all their goods, as also all manner of Ruffie people what calling, seuer they be, which are in these Townes, Cities, and Ter-
ritories, dwelling now or planting themselves there with their Wives, Children, and all their goods what-
soever any hath. Also the Kings Maieftie shall give all manner of Writing, and Books, which are in
these Cities and Townes to be found in Roletades indgement, houses, or elsewhere with all Ruffie Or-
nance, Munition, and Provisions there belonging, and the Bells in these aforesaid Cities and Townes, in
such manner as they were the twentieth of November last past, according to agreement made with the
Kings most excellent Maieftie of Great Brittaines Ambassa-
dor Sir Iohn Merick, except those Bells which the people of Noouogrod themselves did filloster that agreement, for the payment of Soldiers; and 50
were carried away from Noouogrod, but those Bells which the Kings Maieftie hath bought at Noouogrod, if shall be free for the
Noouogrod men to redeeme them backe againe at the same price they sold them; and the Kings people
hereafter shall not buy any more Bells of the people of Noouogrod by no means whatsoeuer.

3. Item, the Kings Maieftie people of Sweden at their departure out of the Emperours Maiefties
Cities and Townes aforesaid, namely, great Noouogrod, Stararoulo, Porcoue, Lodgia, Somerskey, Vo-
loico, &c. shall use no violence to the Emperours Maiefties people by burning, robbery, or killing, neither
carry any Ruffie people with them to the Kings Maiefties side, neither men, nor women, nor children, nor
any of their goods; and if any good remouer of the Swedish people, at their going out of the aforesaid 60
Townes, which at that time they cannot take all with them, such goods they kept in house, goods, or found some
bodis for them, and these people shall have free libertie to goe without all molestation or let, to come for
their goods, and to returne againe at their own conuenient time.

5. Item,

5. Item, the Kings Maiefties Generours and Officers shall deliver vnto the Emperours Maie-
sties Voyayodes and Commanders the above named Townes and Castles, to say great Noouogrod,
Stararoulo, Porcoue, with their Territories, and Somerskey, Volost in presence of the great Lords,
James King, &c. his Maiefties great Ambassa-
dor Sir Iohn Merick Knight, &c. or the said Kings
Maiefties Gentlemen, the which the above said great Ambassa-
dor shall find to that end clesing and Time of deli-
uering out the said Castles and Townes, two weekes after this contract is confirmed betwixt us both, vnto
great Commissioners by Writings, Hand, Seale, and Kissing of the Crosse of our side, and on their part,
by each vpon the holy Euangelists.

6. And after that the Castles of Lodgia and Territories, shall be delivered to the Emperours Maie-
sties Messengers by the Kings Maiefties Generours, three weekes after the confirmation of this con-
tract, in presence of the above said great Lords, James King, &c. his Gentlemen, which to that purpose
shall find, the said great Ambassa-
dor shall find, then the said Castles and Provinces to be redreemed and given up, with
all the Ruffie Ordnance, people, there belonging, none to be carried away, nor no violence to be offered
them by robbery, or otherwise, saying of them: nor no Ruffie Ordnance to be carried away. But the
Castles of Odo, and Provinces, and people to be remoued on the Kings Maieftie Gustauus Adolphus of Odo to the
Sweden, for a time, till this contract of peace be confirmed by both the Potentates, by their Writings, by mayne canons
the Emperours Maieftie with the Seale of the Emperour, and by the Kings Maiefties hand and Seale of
the Kingdom of Sweden, as also by the Emperours Maiefties Kissing of the Crosse, and the Kings
Maiefties Oath vpon the holy Euangelists confirmed, and the borders dimmed and measured on ussly.
And the Ambassa-
dor which both the Princes shall find to that effect, having taken with both the Princes
shall returne againe to the borders, having well concluded the business, as then two weekes after that time the
Emperours Maiefties Voyayodes and Commanders, which his Maieftie shall find for the receiving of the
said Castle and Provinces of Odo, from Vlasquof shall receive the said from the Kings Maiefties Gen-
erours, with all the Ruffie people and Ordnance with all their goods, and what they haue, and as long as
the Castle of Odo is on the Kings Maiefties side, all the people of Odo and the Province thereof
shall give vnto the Kings Maieftie their former Crosse, and doe service as before for the mayntaining
of those Soldiers that remaine there; the Kings Maiefties people in the meane time shall do to those people
of Odo no violence nor robbery, neither carry any Ruffie people, or Ordnance from thence, nor cause any
to be carried away.

7. Item the Kings Maieftie G.A. &c. shall bestow brother Prince Charles Phillip, Prince hereditary
of Saxe, shall hereafter lay no claims or challenge to those Castles and Townes, namely, great Noouogrod,
Porcoue, Stararoulo, Somerskey, Volost, Odo, Lodgia, and all their confines, borders and Provin-
ces; nor come upon them with no manner of Warre, to strike vnto them: nor remember any day
that oath which formerly the people of these places made to the Prince C. Ph. Also the Kings Maieftie
G.A. shall promise not to give any aide of men or money to his aforesaid brother C. Ph. against the afore-
said Castles and Townes in no wise.

8. And againe if or in lieu of the above said our great Lord Emperour, and great D.M.F. of all Ruffia,
Sam, &c. for himselfe, his successours, and hereafter being great Lords, &c. and great Dukes of all
Ruffia, &c. and for the whole Emperie of all Ruffia, &c. shall promise for the dominion of Noouogrod, great
hath given and yielded vnto their high mightie Lord King G.A. of S. &c. from the dominion of Noou-
ogrod, from himselfe and the whole mightie Lord King G.A. of S. &c. from the dominion of Noou-
ogrod, Land, following which hereafter doth appertaine to the Dominions of Noouogrod, as namely
Euanoogrod, Yam, Coporeta, Orickie, with all vnto them adioyning, Townes, Lands, and Provinces,
with all the Townes, and Villages in the Country to them belonging, and due vnto them, according to their
former, iust, and ancient borders, with the people that dwell, and plant themselves there, with all other
profits, revenues, and payments, with the flowers of Rivers, with Lakes, working exempted, the Emper-
ours Maieftie hath yielded, and given to their Kings Maieftie, G.A. of Sweden &c. as proper
and due to him and his Maiefties successours, and hereafter being Kings of Sweden, and to the Crowne
of Sweden for an everlasting possession for them to hold, without condition or any contravention, by
the Emperours Maieftie, or his Maiefties Successours, or hereafter being Emperours, and great Dukes
of all Ruffia, as also by the whole Emperie of Ruffia, and from the Dominions of Noouogrod, for ever-
lasting time, in all points, as former great Lords, and great Dukes of all Ruffia, held and kept the same;
namely the late, of blessed memory, great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Ivan Vasiluich of all Ruffia,
Sam, and the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Phedor Phedorowich of all Ruffia, Sam, and
the spiritually, as Monks, and all others in those Castles and Townes, as well Gentlemen, as other in-
habitants of the said places, two weekes after the conclusion of this contract, when it shall be revealed vnto
them, they shall have free libertie, as much as desire to goe to the Emperours Maiefties side, with their
wives, children, families, all goods and chattels, which way soeuer they will vnto the Emperours Maie-
sties Lands and Townes, and shall be all Ruffie people, in the said Castles, Townes, and Townes, might know
the same: it is here agreed and concluded, that as soon as the conclusion of this peace shall be effected and
confirmed betwixt us both, the great Potentates great Commissioners shall find their Posts and Mes-
sengers vnto all the aforesaid Townes and Castles, which they in presence of the Lord King James his
great Ambassa-
dor Messengers, shall openly reuende and proclaim, that all spiritually, with their
goods, Countries, Gentlemen, Burgesses, and Townesmen, which are desirous to goe from thence with their
two

Charles Phillip
Prince of Saxe
do not to lay
claim.

For or yet, it
is Title of the
great Duke.

Places yield-
ed to the
Dominion of
the Sweden

to be refrained from robberies. 22. For ending of quarrels, if any happen. 23. 24. Confirmation of former contracts, of *Tamsha* and *Wiburge*. 25. No private or publick practice to be dours of both sides. 27. Honorable conuoy for Ambassadors on either part. 28. And also for Interpreters free passage.

Now Ambassadors
in case of
new successes.

29. Item, It is agreed and concluded, that if by the permission and pleasure of God, there happens an alteration of government in Sweden or Russia, then that Prince which shall newly come to the government first, shall reuocate by his Ambassador to the other Prince from himself, and after that the other shall visit him by his Ambassador.

Place of Ambassadors meeting.

30. Item, If it shall out at any time that of both sides the Princes, or our great Lord, &c. or their great Lord King Guthavus Adolphus shall find one to the other their great Ambassadors, to confer of good matters, then they shall great Ambassadors upon the borders shall meet without all controuersie or strife, sitting for them on both sides, on the middle of the diuision of the borders, and there to confer of their good matters in friendly and loving sort, either by the Princes Commission or other commandment, as they shall bene.

Case of Shipwreck.

31. Item, If it happens that the Emperours Maisties, Subiells and Merchants, their Boates, Ladies, and Merchants, shall go to Ruell, Wybourgh, or other Townes and Castles of Swethen, Fynland or Liefland, or other Offells, whereupon the Emperours Maisties Ambassadors and Messengers shall begin to the Emperours Maisties, to the Pope, to the English, or any other King, to the Kingdome of Swethen, or coming backe againe by sea or by land, to the Swethish Boate, either upon the Salt Sea or the Lake of Lodiga, by tempests or other means, such people shall bene, for their life and hand, to goe from thence with all the goods they can save or shall get with the Kings Maisties Guthavus Adolphus, or Subiells, and Merchants Boats, and liuere upon the Ladiga or Pleco Lake, then these people shall have free liberty to goe away with all their goods which they can save or get to be saved without let or hinderance, and the Emperours Maisties people shall helpe them to save their goods.

Neither party to aide the Pole &c.

32. Item, It is concluded and agreed on, that our great Lord, &c. shall not aide or assist against the Kings Maisties of Sweden Guthavus Adolphus, and the Crowne of Swethland, the Kingdome of Poland and Lettow, nor his Sonne Ladislaus and the Crowne of Poland, and the Dukedome of Lettow, nor all the Dominions of Poland and Lettow, nor shall helpe him with men or treasure, nor stand for him as one himselfe, nor any other Prince for him shall not practise or seeke any thing against the King of Sweden. These Lords and Castles which belong to the Kingdome of Sweden of old, or those which now the Emperours Maisties hath yielded to the Kings Maisties of Poland and Lettow, shall not stand against the Emperours Maisties to assist the King of Poland and Lettow, and all the Dominions of Poland and Lettow, neither with men nor treasure, and not to be with him as one, neither shall the Kings Maisties by himselfe or other Princes and Governours seeke any practise against the Emperours Maisties and his Lands and Castles which belong to the Emperour of Russia, but shall they seeke to get to order him or possess the same. It is also agreed and concluded between vs, that they Ambassadors, which the Emperours Maisties shall send to the Kings Maisties, and the Kings Maisties shall send to the Emperours Maisties, for the confirmation of this conclusion of peace, shall have full authority to conferre between the Emperours Maisties and the Kings Maisties of Swethland for a union and ioynt assistance against Sigismund King of Poland, and the Crowne of Poland, and the great Dukedome of Lettow in such manner as shall be thought fit and requisite by both the Princes.

Confirmation.

33. And for more certaine and firme assurance, that all this here hath bene concluded, and agreed on between vs the above said Emperours Maisties, and Kings Maisties great, ample, and powerful Ambassadors, by the mediation and intercession of the great Lord King James his Maisties great 50 Lord, and great Duke R. F. of all Russia, Sam. and by his Successors, and hereafter being great Lord, Emperour, and great Duke, he kept faithfully, firmly, and uncommence, and shall be followed in all points, and fulfilled without all falsification or deceipt; and our great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes, &c. by his commandment, was his great Commissioners, Ochochlech and Nameitinke of Sullall Knief Dannyll Euanowich Metzkyt, I the Emperours Maisties Duke, Michicola, Mekelochlein Nououklo. I the Emperours Maisties Duke, Dobrenia Semonov, have confirmed this conclusion of peace, with the kissing of the Crosse, and therewith set our hands and Seales: also the Kings Maisties great Brittaines great Ambassadors, Sir Iohn Merricke Knight, Gentilman of his 60 Maisties private Chamber, for the more witnessing of the same, that this is also concluded here between vs, both firm with his own hand and Seale, both these obligations, and a confirmation, which were the Emperours Maisties ample Ambassadors, have given to the Kings Maisties great Commissioners; and against that we have taken the like writing of confirmation, from the Kings Maisties great Ambassadors

Names of the Commissioners.

dours. Written at Sebalbo, in the years from the creation of the world 7125, the second hundred and thirty day of February.

Having here presented the fruits of his Maisties mediation between the Ambassadors and Sweden: I thought good also to add this other testimonies of both Parties, in the peaceable fruits of his endeavours betwix the King of Sweden, and the King of Denmark, bloody warres betwix them, in which the English voluntaries were to grant a part: of whom (if I mistake not) there thousand toward the Dane, under the command of the right honorable the Lord Viscount. The Articles of agreement betwix them were these, concluded January 16. 1613. transcribed out of the Danish Copie, Printed at Copenhagen on first, and after at Amsterdam.

1. That the King of Sweden shall have againe the Citie of Calmar, with all the battlements vnto it, excepting Artillery, which shall be reuered to the King of Denmark, or to be sold for his profit.
2. That the King of Denmark shall have Bornholm and Orland, with all the fortifications and strength of Arensborch, to possesse for the space of twelve yeeres ensuing, for the sum of fifty thousand Ton of Gold; the which sum of money the King of Sweden shall pay unto the King of Denmark within the foresaid twelue yeeres, at certain times, in consideration of his charges during the said warres.
3. That the Navigation and passages by Seas and Land to Norway shall be used free without any hinderance of those of Sweden.
4. That Lapland shall be free without giuing of any contribution.
5. That the King of Denmark shall haue Groenland free without paying of any contribution vnto the King of Sweden.
6. That the King of Denmark shall haue the three Crowns without any giuing, saying, or contradiction of the King of Sweden (which was the first and principall cause of these foresaid bloody and vniuersally hurtfull warres, and continuall irreconcilable) Both Kings subscribing hereto.

CHAP. III.

Relation of two Russe Colliques translated, but of Siberia to Catay, and other Countries adjoining thereto. Also a Copie of the last Letter from the Muscovite. A Copie of a Letter writtne to the Emperour from his Governour of Siberia.

Our Lord Emperour and great Duke Michela Feodorow of all Russia, your Maisties Vassals, Enns Karaman, and Enns Karaman, he knocks their heads, &c. Lord this present 7127 yeere (or 1619) we were your Maisties by a Cosack of Tobolsk, Glemus Okolskin, that there were come to Tobolsk Ambassadors out of the Dominions of Catay, and from the King of Adram, with the people of Tobolsk, English Pettin, and Andray Madigene: And with them together doe goe to you great Lord Ambassadors out of the Dominions of Adram, the Altine Chars, from Skie you with presents, the which we dispatche to your Maisties, with Bereng Nigoune, the first of July and before them were dispatched to your Maisties English Pettin and Enns Karaman, by whom we sent you your Maisties a Letter from Tobolsk, King of Catay, and a Copie of the King Altine Letter translated, with a Card and description of the places, which way English Pettin, & Andray Madigene, passed from the Castle of Tuman, into the Dominions of Catay, as also in what other Dominions they were. The Letter it selfe which came from Altine Char, Labachschow doth carrie to your Maisties, but as for the Letter out of Catay, these is none in Tobolsk to translate it.

Ambassadors from Catay and from the King of Adram, See 50 pag. 104. 105.

Note able to translate the Altine Chars.

The Copie of the Altine Chars, or golden King's Letter to the Emperour of Russia.

TO the Lord Emperour and great Duke: The golden King received your Letter. In former times (Lord) it came to my hearing, that your Princely good Ambassadors, did seeke a way or passage to come to me, since which time it is now thirteenth yeeres, but then the people

Cutts, or Pa-
tialists.Lobes of Friers
Consecration,
fasting.Three King-
doms.

Oran.

Talguth.

Shir.

Blacke Magals,
or Cara Catay,
Shirocalga in
Cataly.
Walls of Catay.

Tower, becoms

Cara Catay.

But five gates
in the wall.

Shirocalga.

Short Ord-
nances.

Tara.

Tayh.

owne fiction. They have no Horses, only Mules & Asses in abundance; they till and plough their ground with great and small Ploughes, as we doe in *Siberia* at *Tobolske*. Their *Cutts* are in our Language *Patriarches*, and both in *Mogalla* and *Catay* are but two *Cutts*; the one was about twenty, and the other thirty years of age. Within the Churches are made for them high places with seats whereupon they sit: the King doth honour them with bowing downe before them. Their *Lobes* are in our Language *Friers*, which are thome about twenty yeeres of age, and know no women from their Mothers wombe, they eat flesh continually every day, and have both Beards and Mustachoes: their Garments are of Damask of all sorts and colours, and their Hoods yellow, they say that their Religion and ours are all one, only the *Ruffe* Monkes are blacke, and theirs white.

Beyond the Land of *Mogalla* are three other Countreyes or Dominions, stretching towards *Baghar*, the one called *Oran*, the Kings name there is *Enaken*, the Citie is oftone, and the Kingdome rich.

The other is called Dominions of *Talguth*, the Kings name is *Samelanche*, his Citie is also of stone, and his Kingdome rich.

The third Countrey where the chiefe Citie is, is called *Shir*, and the King thereof is called *Zellesey*, or Iron King, his Kingdome is rich, and not farre from *Baghar*. From this Iron King come Diamonds, and all these three Kingdomes are vnder the South, and on the other side of the blacke *Mogalla* are the yellow *Mogalla*, stretching all along the Sea, a great Townes as walking people, with their Families and Herds.

From the Countrey of *Mogalla*, where the Dutcheffe *Manchika* dwelleth, to the Citie of *Shirocalga* in *Catay*, is two dayes trauell on horsebacke: or the bordering or frontier wall stand vnder the South towards *Baghar*, two months trauell, all made of Bricke of fiftene fathome high, whereupon they told about a hundred Towers in sight, on both sides of them, but towards *Baghar*, and towards the Sea, the Towers are not to be counted, and eury Towre standeth from another about a right shot distant. The said wall stretcheth downe towards the Sea four months trauell. The people of *Catay* say, that this wall stretcheth along from *Baghar* to the Sea, and the Towers vpon it stand very thicke; it was made, as they say, to be a border betweene *Mogalla* and *Catay*. The Towers vpon it are to the end, that when any enemy appeareth, to kindle fires vpon them, to give the people warning to come to their places where they are appointed vpon the wall. At the entering without the wall dwell the blacke *Mogalla*; and within is the Countrey and Cities of *Catay*. In the wall to *Catay* are five gates, both low, and straight or narrow, a man cannot ride into them vpright on horse-backe, and except these five gates there is no more in all the wall; there all manner of people passe into the Citie of *Shirocalga*.

Within the borders or wall is a Citie or Castle of *Shirocalga*, built of stone, the Governour thereof is called Duke *Shinon*, who is sent thither for a time from *Tamboo King of Catay*, the Castle is very high walled and artificially built; the Towers are high after the manner of *Mosco* Castle, in the Loops-holes or Windows are Ordnance planted, as also vpon the Gates or Towers their Ordnance is but short, they have also great store of small shot, and the Watchmen eury-where vpon the Gates, Towers, and Walls, well appointed; and as soon as they perceive the Sunne going downe, the Watch did charge their Peeeces of Ordnance thence, as also at the break of day in the morning, they floor out of their Peeices thrice, and do not open the Castle Gates till the first house of the day. Within the Castle are shops built of stone, and painted cunningly with diuers colours, wherein they haue all manner of Merchandises, as Veluets, Damaskes, Dorogoes, Taffates, Cloth of Gold, and Tissue of diuers colours, sundry sorts of Sugars, Cloues, &c. in the Governours house is a strong Watch of *Perisaw* and Halberds, and their Drummes made like great Barrells. When the Governour goeth abroad, they carry a Canope ouer him, and make way before him with Rods, as before our Emperour in *Moscow*.

And from *Shirocalga* to the Citie *Tara* is three dayes trauell: this Citie is large, built of stone, and the circuit of it is two dayes trauell, with many Towers, and four Gates to come in at, the Markets in the Citie are well and richly accommodated, with Jewels, Merchandises, Groceries, or Spices, the Citie well inhabited having no place void or waste in it. The houses and shops are built with stone, with streets betweene; the Governours here are called Duke *Byn* and Duke *Lachake*; there they haue Post Stages as wee, their Markets haue a very odoriferous smell with Spices.

And from this Citie, to a Citie called *Tayh*, is three dayes journey, it is built of stone, large, and high walled, & is in compass two daies trauel about, at the first coming to it are five gates, and the circuit of it is two dayes trauell, with many Towers, and four Gates to come in at, the Markets in the Citie are well and richly accommodated, with Jewels, Merchandises, Groceries, or Spices, the Citie well inhabited having no place void or waste in it. The houses and shops are built with stone, with streets betweene; the Governours here are called Duke *Byn* and Duke *Lachake*; there they haue Post Stages as wee, their Markets haue a very odoriferous smell with Spices.

And from this Citie, to a Citie called *Tayh*, is three dayes journey, it is built of stone, large, and high walled, & is in compass two daies trauel about, at the first coming to it are five gates, and the circuit of it is two dayes trauell, with many Towers, and four Gates to come in at, the Markets in the Citie are well and richly accommodated, with Jewels, Merchandises, Groceries, or Spices, the Citie well inhabited having no place void or waste in it. The houses and shops are built with stone, with streets betweene; the Governours here are called Duke *Byn* and Duke *Lachake*; there they haue Post Stages as wee, their Markets haue a very odoriferous smell with Spices.

Parlinsps, Turnops, Cabbage, Limons, Poppiseeds, Nutmegs, Rice, Almonds, Pepper, Rubarbey, & many other Fruits, which we know not, so that they want nothing whatsoever groweth in the World; the shops are within the Citie, stored of all manner of Commodities as is said, as also victualling and drinking Houses, stored with all manner of Drinckes, where they haue also Theaters, and Whores, as with vs. Their Prisoners in the Citie are of stone, for cheifly they hang the thieves, and for Robberie or Murther they fluke the Murtherers, or else head them.

And from *Shirocalga* to a Citie called *Shirwan* is a dayes journey: this Citie is built of stone high walled, and large in compass, it is a dayes trauell, it hath twelve Towers; whereupon, as also on the Citie Gates is planted Ordnance and small shot great store, with a continuall Watch or Guard, night and day at the first coming are five Gates well furnished with Ordnance and Warlike Munition; and from one Gate to the other through the Citie is halfe a dayes going. The Governour of this place is called Duke *Sanbok*. For Victuals and Merchandises, here is more then in the Cities mentioned, all their shops very full, and the Citie so populous, that one can hardly passe the streets for the throng of people. The Ambassadors Houses are also faire built of stone, their Walls covered with Brasse, so that this Citie is adorned more with precious things then the former mentioned, and much more populous.

Now from the Citie of *Tayh*, to a Citie called *White Castle*, is two dayes trauell: this Citie is built of white stone, and thereof hath his name, it is high walled and large, being in compass or circuit three dayes trauell, the first entry it hath three Gates vnder one Tower, the Gates are high and wide with strong Iron barres; and the Gates fastened with Iron Nayles whited with Tinne, it hath great Ordnance in the Gates and Towers: some Peeeces carrying forth of two Poole weight, the shops within the Citie reach from Gate to Gate, and betweene them are streets paved with stone, all their shops and houses are built of stone before their shops. They haue grates painted cunningly, with all manner of colours, flowers and such like, and vpon the shops are the houses painted cunningly with Pictures and flowers in diuers colours, and the painting within is vpon Pallboard adorned with Damask and Veluets; here is more abundance of Riches and Commodities then in any of the Cities afore mentioned. The Governours names here were Duke *Toyman*, and Duke *Salan*.

From this white Citie, or Castle, to the greatest Citie of all *Catay*, called *Catay*, is two dayes journey, where the King himselfe dwelleth, it is a very great Citie, built of white stone four square, and in compass it is four dayes journey, vpon eury corner thereof are very great Towers high built, and white, and along the wall are very faire and high Towers, likewise white and intermingled with Blue or Azure, vpon the Gates, Wall, and Towers, the Loops-holes or Windows are well furnished with Ordnance, and a strong Watch. In the midst of this white Citie standeth a Castle built of *Magnet*, or Load-stone, wherein the King himselfe dwelleth, called *Tamboo*; this Castle standeth so in the midst of this Citie, that eury way you haue halfe a dayes going to it from the Gates, through the streets which hath stone shoppes on both sides with all manner of Merchandises; vpon their shops they haue their houses built of stone, cunningly painted more then the former Cities. The Castle of *Magnet* is curiously fortified with all manner of artificiall and precious devices, in the midst thereof standeth the Kings Palace, the top whereof is all gilt over with Gold. And they would not admit vs to come before their King without Presents, saying it was not *Catay*, to come before their King without some great thing.

And though (said they) your white Emperour had but sent with his first Ambassadors to our King some thing of no great value, our King would haue sent him many precious things, and dismissed you his Ambassadors honourably, and haue sent him Ambassadors with you: but now hee only sendeth his Letter to your Emperour. The Citie of *Catay*, where the King dwelleth, is built vpon an euen plain ground, and is incomparable round about with a River called *Touga*, which falleth into the blacke Sea, which is from the Citie *Catay* four dayes trauell, so that there come no ships neerer the Citie *Catay*, then fowen dayes trauell off, but all things are transported in small Vessels and shipping-boats. The Merchandises the King doth send into all parts of his Dominions of *Catay*, and from thence are carried out the borders, into the Land of *Mogalla*, to the King *Alme*, to the blacke *Kolmekie*, to the Iron King, into *Baghar* and other Dominions, their Patriarches and Friers, trauell with the Commodities, as Veluets, Sattens, Damaskes, Siluer, Leopard Skins, Turkefies, and blacke Zenders, for which they buy Horses, and bring them into *Catay*, for in *Catay* are but few horses, only Mules and Asses, and Clot: they haue none, their Horses and Siluer goeth into strange Countreyes, or as they say, *Nemisy*, the Siluer is made in Bricks, which they call *Krispy*, valued each *Krispy* at fower two Rubles, their Apparel they wear with long broad hanging sleeves, like the Gentlewomens Summer-coats or *Lorinsky* in *Russia*, the people are very faire but not warlike, ti morous & most their endeuour is in great and rich traffick. They told vs that not long

before our coming, the people of *Mogalla* had taken two Castles from them by deceit, also themselves of their journey admit no. Perhaps this chiefe Citie was but the chiefe of their Province where the Vice-roy resided, and they were willing to make the most of their Russes *Kasla* file. Yet the nereest of the Sea, there also causeth (people) I suppose rather that these Russes entered *China* but a little way, and recouered the Vice-roys Letter only (there observed with Regall Rites) and had much by Relation, of that little which they tell. How euer I haue here offered this to thy view as more iudiciall to v. e. thy more iudgement.

Now a they themselves of their journey admit no. Perhaps this chiefe Citie was but the chiefe of their Province where the Vice-roy resided, and they were willing to make the most of their Russes *Kasla* file. Yet the nereest of the Sea, there also causeth (people) I suppose rather that these Russes entered *China* but a little way, and recouered the Vice-roys Letter only (there observed with Regall Rites) and had much by Relation, of that little which they tell. How euer I haue here offered this to thy view as more iudiciall to v. e. thy more iudgement.

shall suffer them to pass with their goods in and out, without doing them any manner of hindrance.

And whosoever any of the said English Merchants or Factors shall have occasion to find outland, out of our Dominions, any of their people, or Servants, into their own Countries abroad, they shall freely pass by this our special command, and they are to take a passe letter from our Chancellour of the Office of Embassie.

And whosoever in any of our Cities, shall have any matter against the English Merchants, by way of contention, we command that none of our Governours, nor other of our Officers, nor judges, nor English Merchants, their Factors or people, neither shall they find Officers for them, except for matters of number or theft, and that all else to be done, but by themselves and their own, but the English Merchants, their Factors and people, shall only have trial, and be judged in our Imperiall Cities of Moscow, by virtue of this our gracious Letters of privilege, before our Chancellour in this Office of Embassie, and in no other place in Turke, and be to receive their causes, and to give justice between both parties, according to equitie and right: and where the truth cannot be found out by Law, it shall be referred to such and so good and wise men as we shall see fit, to whom shall the right be adjudged.

And if any of the English Merchants, in any of our Cities within our Kingdomes, doe complain of any wrong offered them by our people, for debts giving, by trade or otherwise: we command our Governours, and all other our underlieing people, that they presently minister true justice unto them. And for any wrong or other matter of contention to the English Merchants, that come against any of our Subjects, our Governours and other our underlieing people upon their complaint for all controversies (matters of debt excepted) shall give our Subjects no offending upon justice, setting them time to appear at Moscow, to answer the same with the English Merchants, face to face, before our Chancellour in the Office of Embassie: and in these matters, our Chancellour shall truly examine the business, and minister true justice: and what by examination cannot be found, shall be referred, as before, to such and so: to the three masters of Law.

We will and command, that these our Imperiall gracious Letters of privilege, be strictly observed in all points in all parts of our Dominions, and by all our Subjects, Governours, Secretaries, and other Officers, without disobeying in any thing.

And whosoever shall not obey this our Privilege and gracious Letters of privilege, but shall offer wrong to the English Merchants, whose our Subjects shall be with us in our high displeasure.

These our gracious Letters of privilege, are sealed with our Imperiall Seal of Gold in our Princely Palace of our Imperiall City of Moscow, in the year from the Worlds creation 7129, in the month of May, the eleventh day.

Subscribed by our Imperiall Maestrie Chancellour of our Office of Embassie, and our prime Chancellour Euan Corbacevich Gramotin.

It is now high time to leave Russia, and all the Barbarous fowles of Samovels and Tartars only two will borrow help of some Barbarians, to stoppe vs thence to Sea. And although vs Finch, Gourdon, and others have in the former Booke informed vs great high: yet seeing Master Marth hath entered-40 tained at our guides, we will take Sea by Ob, and thence vs forth on further discoveries.

CHAP. XII.

Notes concerning the discovery of the River of Ob, taken out of a Roll, written in the Russian tongue, which was attempted by the means of ANTONIE

MARKSH, a chiefe Factor for the Molcoue Company of England, 1584. with other notes of the North-east.



If he wrote a Letter from the Citie of Mosco, in the year 7092. after the Russe accompt, which after our accompt was in the year 1584. unto foure Russe that vied to trade from Colouge to Peckora, and other parts Eastward: whole answer was:

By writings received from thee, as also by reports, we understand thou wouldst have vs take out the mouth of the River Ob, which we are content to doe; and thou must give therefore fittie rubbles: It is requisite to goe to seek it out with two Chumias, or companies; and each Cochima must have ten men: and we must goe by the River Peckora up wards in the Spring, by the side of the Ice, as the Ice swimmeth in the River, which will take a fortnights time; and then we must fall into Onyon River, and fall downe with the streame before we come to Ob, a day and a night in the Spring. Then it will hold vs eight dayes to swimme downe the River Ob, before we come to the mouth: therefore send vs a man that can

How to find
out Ob from
Peckora.
Oyon River.

can write; and assure thy selfe the mouth of Ob is deepe. On the Russe side of Ob, situate Samovels, called Ouywikel & Shiverike, Samovels; and on the other side dwell another kinde of Samovels, called Mongenies, or Mongolensky, Samovels. We must passe by five Castles that stand on the River of Ob. The name of the first is Tefan Gorodock, which standeth upon the mouth of the Russe Part. The second small Castle is Nafura-gorodock, and it standeth hard by the side of Ob. The third is called Nechevno-gauky. The fourth is (Charemadia). The fifth is Nadesjeda, that is to say, The Castle of comfort, or trust; and it standeth upon the River Ob, lowermost of all the former Castles toward the Sea.

Heretofore your people have bin at the said River of Ob mouth with a Ship, and there was to made shipwracks, and your people were slaine by the Samovels, which thought that they came to rob and subdue them. The Treesthat grow by the River are Firres, and a kinde of white, soft and light Firre, which we call Tull. The stunks on both sides are very high, and the water not swift, but still and deepe. Fish there are in it as Sturgeons, and Cheri, and Pidle, and Nelms, a dainty fish like white Salmones, and Moucoum, and Sign, and Sterrid: but Salmones there are none. Not farr distant from the maine, at the mouth of Ob, there is an Island, whereon resort many wilde beasts, as white Badgers, and the Morisland fuch like. And the Samovels tell vs, that in the winter season, they sometimes finde there Morses teeth. If you would have vs travell to seek the mouth of Ob by Sea, we must goe by the Isles of Uygay, and Noma Zemla, and by the Land of Madomsky, that is, by Matthews Land. And assure thy selfe that from Uygay, to the mouth of Ob by Sea, is but a small matter to sayle. Written at Peckora, the year 7092. the twenty one of February.

Written at
Shiverike.

An Island at
the mouth
of Ob.

The way to find
out Ob by Sea
Matthews Land
Matthews Land
Atter our file
1584.

Master MARKSH also learned the distances of places and Ports: from Caninos to Ob by Sea.

From Caninos to the Bay of Madomsky (which is somewhat to the East of the River Peckora) is seven dayes sayling. The Bay of Madomsky is over a day and a halfe sayling. From Madomsky to Caravans, is sixe dayes sayling. From Caravans Bay to the farthest side of the River Ob, is nine dayes sayling. The Bay of Caravans is from side to side, a day and a nights sayling.

He learned another way by Noma Zemla and Matthews Land to Ob, more North-eastward, from Caninos to the land of Uygay, is a day & a nights sayling. From Colopine to Noma Zemla is two dayes sayling. There is a great Ojara or Lake upon Noma Zemla, where wonderfull store of Geese and Swannes doe breede, and in moulting time cast their feathers, which is about Saint Peters day; and the Russe of Colouge repair thither yearly, and our English men winter thither with them severall faires in money they bring home great quantitie of Doune-Feathers, dried Swannes, and Geese, Beares skintes, and Fish, &c. From Neromsky Reza or River to Matthews Land, is sixe dayes sayling. From Matthews Land to the Perovskiy Tapa, that is to say, To the warme passage over-land, compassing of sayling round about the Sands, is thirteene dayes sayling: And there is upon the Sands at a full Sea, seven fathomes water, and two fathomes at a low water. The coming in of this highing of the water, is the falling into the Sea of the three Rivers, and the meeting of the two Seas, to wit, The North Sea, and The East Sea, which make both high water and great Sands. And you must beware that you come not with your Shippe nere unto the land by the River Ob. From Matthews Land to this land, is five dayes sayling. Matthews Land is in some parts fortie Versts out, and in some parts not paxix Versts out.

The aforesaid Antonie Marth sent one Bodan his man, a Russe borne, with the aforesaid foure Russe, and a young youth, a Samovels, which was likewise his Servant, upon the discovery of the River of Ob, by Land, through the Countrie of the Samovels, with good store of commodities to traffike with the people. And these his Servants made a rich Voyage of it, and had lattered with the people about the River of Ob, for the value of a thousand rubles in fables, and other fine Fures. But the Emperour having intelligence of this Discovery, and of the way that Bodan returned home by, by one of his chiefe Officers lay in waite for him apprehended him, andooke from him the aforesaid thousand Markes worth of Sables, and other Merchandises, and delivered them into the Emperours Treasurie, being sealed up, and brought the poor fellow Bodan to the Citie of Mosco, where he was committed to prison, and whipped, and there detained a long while after, but in the end he was released. Moreover, the Emperours Officers asked of Antonie the priviledges granted to the English Nation, on part of the Emperours Dominions were exempted from the English to trade and traffike in: with which answer, they were not to be satisfied, but that they gave him a great cheque, and forfeited all the aforesaid thousand Markes worth of goods, charging him not to proceede any further in that action: whereby it seemeth they

Caninos.

Madomsky.
Caravans.
Ob.

Caninos.
Colopine.
Noma Zemla.

Neromsky.
Matthews Land.

The Sands.

The two Seas:
that is, the
North and the
East Sea.

The biggest of
the Cliffe: or
file of Matthews
Land.

Antonie Marth
sent one of his
men upon the
discovery of Ob
by land with
four Russe.

Bodan Marth
Marth his man
brought to
Mosco.

Russe Italiane
of discovery.

they are very jealous that any Christian should grow acquainted with their Neighbours that border to the North-east of their Dominions, for that there is some great secret that way, which they would referre to themselves only. Thus much I vnderstood by Master Christopher Holmes.

*The report of Master FRANCIS CHERRY a Moscouie Merchant, and
Master THOMAS LYNDSE touching a warme Sea to the
South-east of the River Ob, and a Note of
FRANCIS GAYLLE.*

MAfter Francis Chery, one of the chief Merchants of the *Majesty* Company, which was the Emperour *Lein Bolandich* his Interpreter, he was translated in perloquo into *Pepys* farre to the East in *Ruffia*, faith, That he hath eaten of the Sturgeon, and come out of the River of Ob. And that in those parts it is a common received Speech, that there are the greatest Trainers, that beyond Ob to the South-east there is a warme Sea, which they expresse in these words in the *Ruffie* tongue; *Za Obrycha moria Tupa*, that is to say, *Beyond the River Ob is a warme Sea*. Furthermore, *Mafier Thomas Lynde* an honest and discreet English Merchant, which hath report of the *Ruffie*, saith that these parts of *Majesty*, faith, That this Sea beyond Ob, is by the report of the *Ruffie*, that travellers, so warme, that all kinde of Sea fowles lye there as well in the Winter as in the Summer, which report argueth, that this Sea piertheth farre into the South parts of *Asia*.

F RANCIS GALL that passed the Ocean between *Japan* and *Nova Hifnesia*, in the Latitude of 37 degrees and a half, writeth thus. Proving a great Sea to come from the North-east parts of *Tartaria*; running thus East and East by North about three hundred leagues from *Japan*, we found a very hollow water, with the fireame running out of the North and North-west, with a wind very cold, and very low, so that we were much troubled with the ice, which we found to be a hindrance in the way that we passed. And what will we lower blue, the Sea continued all night, so that we were forced to follow water and we came, y^e so that we had passed four hundred leagues. About two hundred leagues from the Coast of *New Spain* we began to lose the laid hollow Sea, whereby I perceived my selfe that there you shall finde a Channell or strait passage betweene the fire Land of *New Spain* and the Countrey of *Asifia* and *Tartaria*. We found all this way *Whales*, *Tunnies*, *Bonozos*, which are fishes that keepe in Channells, Straits, and running Waters, thate to dilperce their feede, which surchar confirmeth me in that opinion.

But being thus we are shipped from Russia, and have again taken Sweden which we persecuted not to Stephen Burrough, Peet and Iackman, new voters, English and Dutch which have attempted that North east passage; and that which Mr. Baffin said to me, that if he might have his employment, he would adventure to discover from the Coast of China and Japan on the North of Asia to the westward; all 40 the Ball has suddenly assistance for our sufferer and payable to others, to fit us to use a new discovery by Da-
vidson and English assistance for a North-west passage; I have, not so fortunately attended, as by Reason-
ers' former profitable assistance, especially that young man Sir Th. Burton and Nelson list.
We will discover that Discoveries may be made and befitting to you, that you may get the
English ancient right, as I may say, to the place parts of the new World.

© CHAP. XIII.

*Discoveries made by English-men to the North-west: Voyages of Sir SEBAS-
TIAN CABOT, Master THORNE, and other Ancients:
and of Master WEYMOUTH.*

E have to bre give some light of the North-we, in *Hedgus* and other men
Voyage for the defence of Riches in forme, of Knowledge in others, hath long whet-
ten men industries, to finde out a more compendious way to the East Indies, by
a shorter cut then the vnaill passage, which in going to the places of principall
trade there, and the returne, is attended with enforced compassings, is made no less
a Voyage for time, cost, danger and labour, the which is the reason that the
as in Mader Candies circumnavigation (not to mention others) resident. But if either by
the North-east or North-we, or North, a passage be open, the fight at the Globe (the Image of the
the world) will really throw with how much ease, in how little time and expence the same
might be effected.

contracting themselves proportionably as they grow neerer the Pole, where that vast Line and Circumference it selfe becomes (as the whole Earth to Heaven, and all earthly things to heavenly) no Line any more, but a Point, but Nothing, but Vanitie. Hence such laborious searches from *Columbus* his first discovery (that also occasioned by a conceit of finding the East by the West, whereupon he named *Hipposia Oyster*, thinking he had then arrived at the East Indies) especially the *English*, seated commodiously for that dicouerie, and to regne over the Northern and Western Ocean, have herein been more then industrious.

[illegible]

Madoc wyf, myddic wedd, lawn Genau, Owyn Gwynedd
Ns finnew dir, fy enaid oedd Na de Mawr, ond y moroedd. that is.

Madoc I am the sonne of *Owen Gwynedd*, With stature large and comely grace adorned,
No lands at home nor store of wealth me please, My mind was whole to search the Ocean seas.

Columbus also sent his brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henrie* the seventh, to make offer of his service in the New-Worlds discovery, which fell by the way into the hands of *Pirats*, whereupon poverty assailed him with sickness in a forraine Countrie, so that hee was forced to get somewhat about him by making of Maps: one whereof had this more ancient then elegant inscription.

*Ianna cui patria est, nomen cui Bartholomaeus
Columbus de Terra Rubra, opus cedit istud
Londensj. An. Domini 1480. atq; insuper an-
Oitauo decimag, die cum tertia mensis
Februarij. Laudes Christo cantentur abunde.*

Whose Countrey *Genna* is, whose name *Bartholomew*
Calon de Terra Rubra, this worke set forth new
 At *London*, A thousand foure hundred eightie
 Februarie thirteenth, sing praise to Christ on heigh.

One of these Maps hee presented to King *Henrie* with the said offer, who cheerfully accepted the same, and sent to call his brother into *England*, who before he could effect it, was employed
40 by the Kings of *Castile*.]

Columbus his fortunes awakned others industrie, amongst the rest *John Cabota a Venetian*, and his three Sønnes *Lewis, Sebastian, and Sancio*, who obtayned a Patent of King *Henrie* the seventh for discoverye with five ships with *Englishe* Masters, Mariners, and Colours also, the same to erect in whatsoever Lands unknowne before to Christians, to hold the same to them and their Heires as Vassals and Lieutenants to the Crowne of *England*, paying the fifth part of their gaine at *Brissoll*. &c.

[illegible]

Thus wee see New-found Land discovered by English Ships, Mariners and jurisdiction. Sir
Sebastian Cabot, for his English breeding, conditions, affection and advancement, termed an Eng- Ramus.Tom.1.
 lish man, thus reported its Voyages; That upon occasion of the admiration of *Columbus* his
 voyage into the East, where Spices grew, by the West, so first then in the Court of King *Henrie* Sec Nat.Tom.1.
 the seventh, there arose in his heart a great desire to attempt some notable thing. And under- Pag.74
 standing

standing by the Sphere (saith he) that if I should fail by the North-west, I should by a shorter Track come into India; I thereupon caused the King to be advertised of my desire; who immediately commanded two Caravels to be furnished with all things appertaining to the Voyage; which was, as far as I remember, in the year 1495. in the beginning of Summer. I began therefore to sail toward the North-west, not thinking to find any other Land than that of *Cashay*, and from thence to turn toward India. But after certayne dayes I found that the Land turned toward the North, which was to me a great displeasure. Neurtherleffe, sailing along by the Coast to see if I could finde any Gulfe that turned, I found the Land still continuent to the 56. degree vnder our Pole. And seeing that there the Coast turned toward the East, despayning to finde the passage, I turned backe againe, and layed downe by the Coast of that Land toward the East, which is now called *Florida*; where my vishall sayling I returned towards England; the tumults and preparations of warres against Scotland caused that then no more consideration was had to this voyage. Whereupon I went into Spaine, &c. By the King and Queene there he was set forth and discovered the Ruer of *Plata*, and layed into it more then five score leagues. After this he made many other voyages, &c. Sir *Seb. Cabot* was after by King *Edward* the six. confuted grand Pilot of England with the annuall stipend of one hundred and sixtie six pounds thirteene shilling; and four pence; and was Author of the *Russian* and North-easterne discoueries. *Fabian* in his Chronicle A. R. Hen. 7. 14. hath this testimonye. This yeere also were brought into the King three new taken in the New-found Land, in *William Parbech* time being Major. These were clothed in beards skins; a diuise rare to behold, and spake such speech that none could understand them, and in their demeanour like to brute beasts, whom the King kept a long time after. Two yeeres after I saw two of them at *Westminster*, apperelled like English, &c.

Master *Robert Thorne* writes, that his Father and Master *Hugh Eliot* a Merchant of *Driffield*, were the first discouersers of New-found Land; and if the Mariners would have beene ruled and followed their Pilots minde, the West Indies had bene ours; so that it seemeth this Discouerie was before that of *Columbus*. Master *Hakluyt* hath published the particulars of these things more fully, as also diuers Treatises touching the North-west of *Sir Humphrey Gilbert* and others: to which I referre the Reader; and no lesse for the Voyages made by diuers English into those parts: three by *Sir Martin Frobisher*, in the yeeres 1576, 77, and 78. Two of Captaine *John Davis*, in 86, and 87. that of Master *Hore*, *An.* 1596. that of *Sir Humphrey Gilbert*, 1583. that of Master *Charles Leigh* to *Rancon*, *An.* 1597. and before in 1593. that of *George Drake*; with those of *Jacques Cartier*, and diuers others. My purpose is not to recite Master *Hakluyt*'s labours out of the World, by culling and steeing them for our purpose, but by this Index to instruct men where they may have full view in this kinde. I had rather giue you new things. Such are to the World, these that you had before in *Hudsons* voyages set together, as also those of *Greenland*; and such are those of *Waymouth*, *Knights*, *Hall*, *Baffin*, &c. And first, as Foreman of our Queue, we will giue you *Sir Humphrey Gilbert*'s Letter, written with his owne hand from *New-found Land*, whereto he tooke Iournall possession to the Crowne of England, and was as Martyr of those Discoueries. It was written to *Sir George Peckham* (a great Adventurer in that voyage, and a greater in one of longer life, his written Treatise of Westerne planting, extant in Master *Hakluyt*'s third Tome) and I have here inserted it, being hitherto vnpublished as a memorial of both their worthies; and after it (though in time before) we will recreate you with a plaine Mariner's Letter endorsed in homely phrase, To the Honorable Kings Grace of England, here (as I thinke) giue you from the Originall. I have also another written to Cardinall *Wolsey* touching the same voyage in Latin, by *Alberico de Prato*; for the antiquitie, rather than any remarkable raritie, worthy here to be mentioned.

Sir George, I departed from Plymouth on the eleventh of Iune with five sailes, and on the thirteenth the *Barker* Rawley ran from me in faire and cleere weather, blowing a large winde. I pray you, be so kind to my brother Rawley to make them an example of all knowers. On the third of August we arrived at a Port called *Saint Johns*, and will put to the Seas from thence (God willing) so soone as our ships will be ready. Of the New-found Land I will say nothing, until my next Letters. Be of good cheere, for if there were no better expectation, it were a very rich demayne; the Country being very good and full of all sorts of wild beasts, as fish, beastes, and Sea-fish, *Deere*, *Phoebants*, *Partridges*, *Swannes*, and others. Fewer of these, I am in doubt, you shall find by every Messenger, because more at large. On the fifth of August, I went here on the right of the Crowne of England; and have engrauen the Armes of England, diuers Spaniards, Portuguese, and other Strangers, witnessing the same. I can say no longer; fare you well with my good Lady: and be of good cheere, for I have comforted my self, serviceable to all my hopes. From *Saint Johns* in the New-found Land, the 8. of August, 1583.

Yours wholly to command, no man more,

H. M. GILBERT.
I ment.

I mentioned before Master *Thorne*'s fathers finding *New-found Land*, with Master *Eliot*. These animated King *Henrie* the eight to set forth two ships for discouerie, one of which perished in the North parts of *New-found Land*. The Master of the other, *Iohn Rae*, wrote this Letter to King *Henrie*, in bad English and worse Writing. Ouer it was this superscription.

Master *Croker* two ships departed from *Plymouth* the 10. day of Iune, and arrived in the *New-found Land* in a good Harbour, called *Cape de Bas*, the 21. day of Iuly: and after we had left the light of *Selle*, we had neuer sight of any Land, till we had sight of *Cape de Bas*.

Reading your Honorable Grace to heare of your seruant Iohn Rut, with all his Company here, in good health, thanks be to God, and your Graces ship. The Mary of Gilsford, with all her thanks be to God: And if it please your honorable Grace, we remaine in our course to the Northward, till we come into 53. degrees; and there we found many great flocks of Ice and deepe water, we found no founding, and then we durst not goe no further to the Northward for feare of more Ice, and then we went about to the Southward, and within foure dayes after we had one hundred and fixtie fathoms, and then we came into 52. degrees and fell with the mayne Land, and within ten leagues of the mayne Land we met with a great flock of Ice, and came hard by her, for it was standing in deepe water, and so went in with Cape de Bas, a good Harbor, and many small Islands, and a great fresh Ruer going out farre into the mayne Land, and the mayne Land all wilderness and mountains, and woods, and no natural ground but all moss, and no habitation nor no people in these parts: and in the woods we found fouling of diuers great beasts, but we saw none not in ten leagues. And please your Grace, the Samson and we kept company all the way till within two dayes before we met with all the Islands of Ice, that was the first day of Iuly at night, and there rose a great and a marvellous great storme, and much foule weather; I trust in Almighty Iesu to heare good newes of her. And please your Grace, we were considering and a writing of all our order, how we would write to you and what course we would take when God did send foule weather, that with the Cape de Bas we should goe, and he that came first should carry the piece of five weeks one for another, and watered at Cape de Bas ten dayes ordering of your Graces ship and sailing, and so departed toward the Southward to seek for the follow: the third day of August we entered into a good Haven, called *Saint Iohn*, and there we found cleere saile of Normans, and one Brittain, and two Portugall Barkes, and all a sailing, and so we are ready to depart toward Cape de Bas, and that is twentie five leagues, as shortly as we have sithed, and so along the coast till we meete with our follow, and so with all diligence that lies in me toward parts to that Islands that we are commanded by the grace of God, as we were commanded at our departing: And thus I signe and keepe your honorable Grace, and all your honorable Ruer, in the Haven of *Saint Iohn*, the third day of August, written in haste. 1527.

By your seruant *Iohn Rae*, to his vttermost of his power.

I haue by me also *Albert de Prato*'s originall Letter, in Latine stile, almost as harsh as the former English, and bearing the same date, and was indorsed, *Renoued in Christo Patri Domino Domino Cardinalli & Domino Legato Anglie*: and began, *Renouedissimus in Christo Pater* [*salute*]. *Renouedissime Pater*, placeat *Renouedissima paternitas vestra*, *scire*, *Deo fomento postquam eximus a Plenum quod fuit x. Iunij* &c. (the substance is the same with the former, and therefore omitted) *Datum apud le Baya Saint Ioban in Terris Novis, die x. Augusti, 1527. Ruer. Patr. cess. humilis seruus, Albericus de Prato.* (the name written in the lower corner of the letter.)

The voyage of Captaine GEORGE WEYMOUTH, intended for the discouerie of the North-west Passage toward China, with two fye Boates.

ON Sunday the second day of May, 1602. in the afternoon, I weighed anchor and set saile from *Redoliff* with two fye-boates, the one called the *Differance*, of Iouenice Tunnies, and the other called the *Godspeed*, of Sixty Tunnies, to discouer the North-west passage, hauing in my ships fye and thirte men and boyes, thorough victualled and abundantly furnished with all necessities for a yeere and an halfe, by the right Worshipfull Merchants of the *Masfome* and *Turkie* Companies: who for the better successe of the voyage provided mee of a great traualler and learned Minister one Master *Iohn Cartwright*. The Master vnder me in the Discouerie was one *William Cobreth*, a skilfull man in his profession; and in the *Godspeed*, one *Iohn Drevre*, and Mate in the said ship one *Iohn Lane*.

The first of Iune, we descried *Enguillones* in the Latitude of 57. degrees. The second day we saw the Point of *Enguillones* North-west from vs, being a very small land; and the land

Must. and Tur-
kie Compa-
nies. Master Cart-
wright had bin
in Persia and
Turkie. See the
former Tome,
Enguillones,
by

All the Coast
to Florida dis-
covered by the
English from
67. deg. 30. min.
as he writ to
Ramus, R. p. 10.
fat. Tom. 2.
as likewise he
was cause of
the Russian and
Greenland dis-
coveries.

See [p. 120.]

W. Parbech.

Thorne and Eliot
first finders of
America.

Mutinie.

The same night following, all our men conspired secretly together, to bear up the Helme for England, while I was asleep in my Cabin, and there to have kept me by force, vntill I had sworn unto them, that I would not offer any violence unto them for so doing. And indeed they had drawn in writing, the causes of their bearing up of the Helme, and thereunto set their hands, and would have left them in my Cabin; but by good chance I vnderstood their pretence, and preuented them for that time.

The twentieth day, I called the chiefe of my Company into my Cabin, before Master *Carver*, our Preacher, and our Master, *William Coburne*, to hear what reasons they could alledge, for the bearing up of the Helme, which might be an overthrow to the Voyage, seeing the Merchants had bin at to great a charge with it. After much conference, they declared me their reasons in writing.

Concluding, that although it were granted, that we might winter between 60 and 70 degrees of latitude, with fiftie of our lues and Vessels, yet it will be May next before we can dismore them, to lanch out into the Sea. And therefore if the Merchants should have purpose to proceede on the discouerie of these North-west parts of America; the next yeare you may be in the aforesaid latitudes for England, by the first of May; and so be furnished better with men and victuals, to passe and proceede in the aforesaid season.

Seeing then that you cannot assure vs of a safe harbour to the Northward, we purpose to leave up the Helme for England; yet with this limitation, that if in your wisdom you shall thinke good to make any discovery, either in 60 or 57 degrees, with this faire Northerly wind, so we yelde our lues with your life, to encounter any danger. Thus much we thought neede-arise.

68. deg. 53. min.

Then, wee being in the latitude of 68. degrees and 53. minutes: the next following, about cleuen of the clocke, they bare up the Helme, being all so bent, that there was no means to perwade them to the contrary. At last vnderstanding of it, I came forth of my Cabin, and demanded of them, who bare up the Helme? They answered me, One and All. So they hoied up all the sayle they could, and directed their course South and by West.

They returne to the North.

Master punished.

The second and twentieth, I sent for the chiefe of those, which were the cause of the bearing up of the Helme, and punished them severely, that this punishment might be a warning to them afterward for falling into the like mutinie. In the end, vpon the intreatie of Master *Carver*, our Preacher, and the Master, *William Coburne*, vpon their submission, I remitted some part of their punishment. At twelue of the clocke at noone, wee came hard by a great Island of Ice: the Sea being very smooth and almost calme, wee voyled out the Boates of both our Shippes: being in want of fresh water, and went to this Island to get some Ice to make vs fresh water. And as wee were breaking off some of this Ice (which was verie painefull for vs to doe; for it was almost as hard as a Rocke:) the great Island of Ice gave a mightie cracke two or three times, as though it had bin a thunder-clappe; and presently the Island began to overthrow, which was like to have sinke both our Boates, if we had not made good huffe from it. But thanks be to God, we escaped this danger very happily, and came aboard with both our Boates, the one halfe land with Ice. There was great store of Sea-Foule vpon this Island of Ice.

A great Island of Ice cracked like a thunder-clap and was overthrowne.

Great flocks of Sea-Foule vpon the Ice.

An Inlet in 61. degrees & 40. minutes.

The five and twentieth and six and twentieth, the wind being at East, did blow a hard gale, and our course was West and by South, with fogge. This day in the afternoon I did reckon my selfe to be in the centering of an Inlet, which standeth in the latitude of 61. degrees and 40. minutes.

The returne out of the Inlet.

The variation 35. degrees Westward.

The seven and twentieth, the wind was at South South-east, and blew very hard, our course was West. The eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth, our course was West and by South, the wind blowing very hard at East South-east, with fogge and raine. The thirtieth, the wind came vpon a howle by the West North-west, blowing so hard, that wee were forced to put a Shippe cleave, wee thought it good to returne with great speed, and many of our men bin the passage of more perillousitie, then through the Straight of *Danis*; because I found it too much pelted with Ice, and to be a straight of foure leagues broad. Also I dyed an hundred leagues West and by South, within this Inlet; and there I found the variation to be 35. degrees to the Westward, and the needle to decline, or rather incline 83. degrees and an halfe.

An Island on the coast of America in 55. deg. & 30. min.

The fifth of August (the wind all that while Westerly) wee were cleare of this Inlet againe. The sixth the wind was at East South-east with fogge. The seventh, eighth, and ninth, we passed by many great Islands of Ice. The ninth day in the night, we defied the land of America, in the latitude of 55. degrees, and 30. minutes. This Land was an Island, being but low land and very smooth; then the night approaching, and the weather being something foggy and darke, wee were forced to returne to the Northward againe. This night we passed by some great Islands of Ice, and some bigge peeces which did brake from the great Islands: and we were like

to strike some of them two or three times: which if we had done, it might have endangered our Shippes and lues. Our comfort, the *Godfrey*, broke a little piece of Ice, which they thought had foundered their Shippe; but thanks be to God they recovered no great hurt, for our Shippes were very strong.

The *Godfrey* broke vpon a piece of Ice.

The tenth day, the wind was at North-east and by North, with fogge and raine; and our course was to the South-eastward: for we could by no means put with the theore, by reason of the thickness of the fogge, and that the wind blew right vpon the shore, so that we were forced to beare faile to keepe our selves from the land, vntill it pleased God to send vs a cleare, which God knoweth we long wanted. At fixe of the clocke in the afternoon, it was calme; and then I judged my selfe, by mine account, to be neere the Land: for I founde, and had ground

in 160. fathomes, and fine grey Olie Sand: and there was a great Island of Ice, a ground within a league of vs, where we founde, and within one houre it pleased God to send vs a cleare. Then we saw the land some foure leagues South-west and by South from vs. This land lyeth East and by South and West and by North, being good high land, but all Islands, as farre as we could discern. This calme continued vntill foure of the clocke in the afternoon of the eleventh day: the weather being very cleare, we could not discern any Current to goe as far by this Land. This day the Sea did let vs in about a league neerer the Land, so that we judged our selves three leagues off. Here we founde againe, and had but eightie fathoms.

The variation 25. degrees to West.

The variation of the Compass we found to be 25. degrees and 10. minutes Westward. At five of the clocke there sprung up a fine gale of wind, at East South-east, and being to be neere night, wee stood to the Southward, thinking the next day to seeke some harbour. But it pleased God, the next day, being the twelfth, to send vs a storme of foule weather, the wind being at East and by South, with fogge: so that we could by no means get the theore. Thus wee were forced to beate up and downe at Sea, vntill it should please God to send vs better weather.

A Storme.

The fourteenth, I thought good to stand to the Westward to search an Inlet, in the latitude of 64. degrees. I had good hope of a passage that way, by many great and probable reasons.

The fifteenth the wind continued at East South, with exceeding faire weather, and our course was West. We were this day at noone in the latitude of 55. degrees and 31. minutes. I found the variation to be 17. degrees and 5. minutes to the Westward: And about euen of the clocke at night, we descried the Land againe, being tenne leagues off to the Eastward of this Inlet. This Land did beare from vs South-west by North higher leagues off: and about nine of the clocke the same night, the wind came to the West, which blew right against vs for putting us into this Inlet.

15. deg. 31. min. Variation 17. deg. 5. min.

They describe the land against the Inlet.

The sixteenth, the wind was at West North-west, and was very faire weather, and our course South-west: about nine of the clocke in the forenoone, we came by a great Land of Ice; and by this Land we found some peeces of Ice broken off from the said Land: And being in great want of fresh water, wee voyled out our Boates of both Shippes, and loaded them twice with Ice, which made vs very good fresh water. This day at noone we found our selves to be in the latitude of 55. degrees and twentie minutes: when we had often in our Ice and Boates, the weather being very faire and cleare, and the wind at West North-west, we bent our course for the Land; and about three of the clocke in the afternoon, we were within three leagues of the shore. As it was very plain to see the Land, but all Islands, and goodly fountaines, going betwene them, toward the South-west. This Land doth stand in the latitude of 55. degrees; and I found the variation to be to the West 18. degrees and 5. minutes. This coast is made of Ice, vntill it be some great Islands of Ice, that come from the North, and so by windes may be driven vpon this coast. Also we did lime the ayre in this place to be very temperate. Truly there is in three fourell places great hope of a passage, betwene the latitudes of 51. and 54. degrees; if the fogge doe not hinder it, which is all the fear I have. At fixe of the clocke, wee being becalmed by the shoare, there appeared vpon vs a great ledge of rocks, betwene vs and the shore, so that though the Sea did dye ouer it with a great heighe. As we all beheld it, with in one houre vpon the shoale in vntill cleare away, which seemed very strange vnto vs all. And to the Eastward of vs, some two leagues, we saw a great Rocke, lying like three leagues off the Land: with then supposing it to be shoal water, by this broken ground, fastened, but could get no ground in one hundred and fixtie fathoms. About seven of the clocke, there sprung up a gale of wind, by the South South-east, which was a very good wind to coast this Land.

15. deg. 31. min. Variation 17. deg. 5. min.

A plain to see the Land, being all Islands.

55. degrees.

The variation 18. deg. 5. min. Westward.

Temperature very.

Order hope of a passage.

Order hope of a passage betwene the latitudes of 51. and 54. degrees; if the fogge doe not hinder it, which is all the fear I have. At fixe of the clocke, wee being becalmed by the shoare, there appeared vpon vs a great ledge of rocks, betwene vs and the shore, so that though the Sea did dye ouer it with a great heighe. As we all beheld it, with in one houre vpon the shoale in vntill cleare away, which seemed very strange vnto vs all. And to the Eastward of vs, some two leagues, we saw a great Rocke, lying like three leagues off the Land: with then supposing it to be shoal water, by this broken ground, fastened, but could get no ground in one hundred and fixtie fathoms. About seven of the clocke, there sprung up a gale of wind, by the South South-east, which was a very good wind to coast this Land.

A great Rocke lying vntill.

A great Rocke lying vntill.

But the leuenteenth in the morning, the wind being at the South, it began to blow so extremely, that we durst not stay by the shore, for it was like to be a great storme: then our course was East North-east, to get vs Sea doome. This storme did murther our shipps, because of much water; for they wasted a great deale, which were of very little use for the Sea. About twelue of the clocke at noone, this day there rose up a great shower in the West, and presently the wind came out of this Quarter with a whistle, and taking up the Sea into the ayre, and blew so extremely, that we were forced always to rubbe before the Ship, Row-

A Whirlwinds taking up the Sea.

ever the wind did blow. And within twelve hours after this storme beganne, the Sea was so much growen, that we thought our Rye Boates would not have bene able to have en-

They were en-
tered 30 leagues
into an lake
in 16 degrees.
They returned
for England.
This Book was
also subscribed
by Mr. Cuthbert
and John Drew.
The lands called

The eighteenth, the wind was at North-west, and the storme increased more extreme, and lasted untill eight of the clocke in the morning of the nineteenth day, so furious, that to my remembrance, I never felt a greater: yet when we were in our greatest extremities, the Lord delivered vs his worthy servants: And if the wind, with so great a storme, had bin either Northerly or Southerly, or Easterly but one day, we had all perished against the Rocks, or the Ice: for we were entered thirty leagues within a Head-land of an Inlet, in the latitude of 56, degrees. But it pleased God to send vs the wind so faire, as we could desire, both to cleare our felues of the Land and Ice. Which opportunitee caused vs for this time to take our leasure of the coast of *America* and to improve our course for *England*.

The fourth, in the morning, we decried the land of *Silly* North-east and by East, some foure leagues off vs. Then we directed our course East and by North: and at twene of the clocke in the forenoone, we decried the Lands end, and next day were forced so put into *Dartmouth*.

CHAP. XIV.

JAMES HALL his Voyage forth of Denmark for the discovery of Greenland, the year 1605, abbreviated.

May 1605.

17th Captaine

John Knight of whom above.

Fleets.

Variation observed.

Space of tide

Variation observed.



N the name of God Amen, we set sayle from *Copenhagen* in Denmark, the second day of May, in the year of our redemption 1605, with two Shoppes and a Pinace: The Admirall, called the *Revis*, a Shippe of the burthen of thirty or forty tuns, wherein was Capitaine, and chiefe commander of the whole Fleet, Capitaine *Iohn Cunningham*, a Scottish Gentleman, servant unto the Kings Maestie of Denmark, my selfe being principall Pilot. The *Lyon* Viceadmirall, being about 30 Streemen of the time, one *Peter Kilsen* of *Copenhagen* burien. The Pinace, a Barke of the burthen Countie-man. So getting sayle from *Copenhagen*, with a faire gale of winde Easterly, we came unto *Ellmøse*, where we anchored, to take in our water.

The third day we tooke in our water, at which time, the Captaine, my selfe, with the Lieutenants, and the other Streemen, did thinke it convenient to see downe certaine Articles, for the better keeping of company one with another, so which Articles or covenants were were all generally (sworne, setting thereunto our hands.

The fixt we came to *Flævier*, into which harbour, by Gods helpe, we came at two a clocke in the afternoon. The seventh day we supplid our wants of wood and water. The eight day about two a clocke in the afternoon, we set sayle forth of the harbour of *Flævier* about three a clocke in the evening, about which time, the *Narve* of *Norway*, by the *Dutch* men, called *Lyside*, was, bare next hand North-west of vs. The leagues off, at which time I directed my course West North-west, finding the compass varied 7. degrees 10. minutes, to the Eastwards of the true North.

The thirteenth, we had sight of the land of *Faire Ile*, and also of the South-east end of *Sheland*, called *Sunderberg* head, which are high Lands: at noone, the land of *Faire Ile*, bearing West halfe a point: Northerly 3. foure leagues off: it made observation, and found vs in the latitude of 59. degrees 30. minutes. This night about seven a clocke, we came about an English league to the Northwards of the North-west end of *Faire Ile*, we met with a great race of a tide, as though it had bene the race of *Portland*, retreating North North-west. Being out of the said race, I directed my course West and by North, hauing the winde North-east and by North: this evening *Faire Ile* bearing East South-east foure leagues: *Sunderberg* head, North-east and by North eight leagues: the land of *Faire*, North-east and by East, ten leagues. I found by exact observation, the compass to be varied to the East-ward of the true North 60. degrees to minutes.

The fourteenth in the morning, the winde came to the East South-east, we steered West and by North away: this morning the land of *Faire Ile* did shew in any light to be about ten leagues off, at which time we did decrie some of the Westmost Islands of *Orény*, which did shew South-west and by South.

This evening, the whitest North-westward by West, we had in away South-west and by West, and the same South-west. This day at noone we were in the Latitude of 58. degrees 40. minutes.

40. minutes. The nineteenth day, the winde at South-west and South-west and by West, we lying as the night before, being at noone in the Latitude of 59. degrees and a halfe. The foure and twentieth day, the winde at North-east and by East, we steering still with a fresh gale West South-west, this evening we looked to have seene *Buffe* land, but I doe verily suppose the same was to be placed in a wrong Latitude in the Marine Charts. The fixt and twentieth at noone, we were in the latitude of 57. degrees 45. minutes. The thirtieth day in the morning betweene seven and eight, the weather began to cleere, and the Sea and winde to waxe leile, we looking for the *Lion* and the *Pinnace*, could have no sight of them, we supposing them to be atterne off vs, we standing still vnder our courses. This day the winde came to the North-east and by East, being very cold weather, we lying North North-west away. Making my obseruation at noone, I found vs in the latitude of 59. degrees 15. minutes, our way North North-west foure leagues. This afternoon betweene one and two a clocke we decried Land, it bearing North North-east off vs about ten leagues off North-east & by North off vs about ten leagues, it being a very high ragged land, lying in the latitude of 59. degrees 50. minutes, lying along South-east and by South, and North-west and by North.

This Head-land was named after the Kings Maesties of Denmark, because it was the first part of *Greenland*, which we did see. This afternoon about one a clocke, bearing in for the shoare we saw an Island of Ice, which bore West South-west of vs three leagues off, so hauing the wind at East South-east, we bore in for the shoare, where we found so much Ice that it was impossible either for vs or any other ship to come into the shoare without great danger: yet we put our felues into the Ice as we were thought convenient, being incumbered and compassed about with the same in such sort, as the Captaine, my selfe, the Boatwaine with another of our company, were forced to goe overboard vpon an Island of Ice, to defend it from the ship, at which time I thought it convenient to stand off into the Sea againe, and so being cleare of the Ice, so double Cape *Deflation* to the North-westwards of which I doubted not but to find a cleer coast, so standing away all this night West South-west, to cleere vs of the Ice, which lay farre from the shoare, being very thicke towards the Land with great Islands of Ice that it is wonderful. This evening, the Cape *Christen* bearing North-east and by East five leagues, I found the Compass varied 12. degrees 15. minutes to the North-westwards. Moreover, standing to Seaward from the foresaid Cape, we came in blacke water, as thicke as though it had bene puddle water, we laying in the same for the space of three houres.

The one and thirtieth in the morning faire weather, with the winde somewhat variable, we steering away North-west and by West, betweene foure and five in the morning we had sight of the *Lion* againe, but not of the *Pinnace*. They being a Sea-bird off and hauing epied vs, they stood with vs, at which time the Captaine, Lieutenant, and Streemen came aboard vs, earnestly intrating mee to bestow a Sea Chart of the Streemen, and to give him directions if by tempestuous weather they should lose vs, they protesting and swearing that they would neuer leaue vs as long as winde and weather would permit them to keepe companie with vs. By whose speeches I being perwaded did give them a Sea Chart for those Coasts, telling them that if they would follow mee, that by Gods assistance I would bring them to a part of the Land void without out peller of Ice, and also to land the flax in good Harbour, by Gods helpe, they swearing and protesting, that they would follow mee so long as possibly they could, with which catches and faire speeches I relished satisfied, thinking they had thought as they had sworn, but it fell out otherwise. So hauing made an end with vs about noone, they went aboard againe, we being this day in the latitude of 59. degrees 45. minutes, hauing stood all the night before, and this forenoone also, so nigh the shoare as we could for Ice, the Cape *Christen* South South-east and North North-west, and from the Cape to Cape *Deflation*, the Land lyeth East and by South, and West and by North about fiftie leagues. This day betweene one and two a clocke, the Viceadmirals Boat, being newly gone aboard, I fell very huse and thicke, so that we could not see one another by reason of the fog, therefore our Captaine caused to shoote off certaine Muskets with a great pece of Ordnance, to the intent the *Lion* might leaue vs, which heard of them they presently stood with vs, at which time the fogge began somewhat to cleere, we hauing sight one of another and so stood along the shoare, as nigh as we could for Ice.

The first of June, we had a fresh gale of winde at South-west, we steering North-east and by North into the shoare, about three in the morning there fell a mightie fogge, so that we were forced to lye by the lee, for the *Lion* playing vpon our Drum to the intent for them to heare vs, and to keepe companie with vs, they answering vs againe with the shooting of a Musket, we trimming our sailes, did the like to them, and so stood away North-east and by East: at last about halfe a glasse, when we were hard incumbered amongst mightie Islands of Ice, being very high like huge Mountaines, so I caused to cast about and land to the Westwards North-west and by West. About twelue of the clocke this night it being still calme, we found our felues suddenly compassed round about with great Islands of Ice, which made such a hideous noyse as was most wonderful, so that by no means we could double the face to the Westward: wherefore we were forced to stand it away to the Southwards, South South-West, item.

June 1605. The first of June, we had a fresh gale of winde at South-west, we steering North-east and by North into the shoare, about three in the morning there fell a mightie fogge, so that we were forced to lye by the lee, for the *Lion* playing vpon our Drum to the intent for them to heare vs, and to keepe companie with vs, they answering vs againe with the shooting of a Musket, we trimming our sailes, did the like to them, and so stood away North-east and by East: at last about halfe a glasse, when we were hard incumbered amongst mightie Islands of Ice, being very high like huge Mountaines, so I caused to cast about and land to the Westwards North-west and by West. About twelue of the clocke this night it being still calme, we found our felues suddenly compassed round about with great Islands of Ice, which made such a hideous noyse as was most wonderful, so that by no means we could double the face to the Westward: wherefore we were forced to stand it away to the Southwards, South South-West, item.

Xxx 3

ming the Current, for by the same Current we were violently brought into this Ice, so being incumbered much to do to keep clear of the mighty lands of Ice, there being as both I and others did plainly see upon one of them a huge rocke stone, of the weight of three hundred pounds or thereabouts, as we did suppose. Thus being troubled in the Ice for the space of two or three hours, it pleased God that we got throw the same.

The second day in the morning about three a clocke I came forth of my Cabin, where I found that the Shipper whose name was Arnold had altered my course which I had set, going contrary to my directions North North-west away, whereupon we and I grew to some speech, both for at this time and other times hee had done the like. The Captaine likewise seeing his bad dealing with we, did likewise roundly speake his minde to him, for at this instant we were high vnto a great banke of Ice, which we might haue doubled if my course had not bene altered, so that we were forced to cast about to the Southwards, South and by East and South South-east, with the wind at South-west and by South or South-west till ten a clocke, when we stood againe to the Westwards, lying West North-west and North-west and by West, being at noone in the latitude of 60. degrees 18. minutes, Cape *Deception* is, I did suppose, bearing North and by West three or foure leagues off, the weather being so thicke and halfe that we could neuer see the Land.

The fourth day betwene one and two a clocke in the morning, it began to blow a fresh gale Easterly, we steering away North and North and by West, we being at noone in the latitude of 59. degrees 50. minutes, hauing made a West and by North way foure and twentie leagues. This turning about foure a clocke we had very thicke water, and continued to about halfe an houre: about nine a clocke we did see a very high land of Ice to the windward of vs, and about halfe an houre after with some drift Ice, in the *Lion* showed the fearfullnesse of their Commanders presently call about standing away larboard tacke, till they did perceiue that I stood still away as I did before, without impediment of the Ice, they cast about againe and followed vs.

The fift in the morning, being very faire weather with the winde at East South-east, our course North North-west, some of our people supposed they had fene the Land: our Captaine and I went aboard the Pinnaffe, when after an houre of our being there wee did see the supposed Land to be an harte fogge, which came on vs so fast that we could scarce see one another. But the *Lion* being very high vnto vs, and it being very calme, wee laid the Pinnaffe aboard of her, and so the Captaine and I went aboard of them.

The sixth day about foure a clocke, it began to blow an easie gale at South-east and by South, I directed my course still North North-west, when some of our people would not be periwaded but they did see Land, and therefore I stood in North and by East and North North-east, till about three a clocke in the afternoon, when we met with a huge and high land of Ice, we steering hard to board the same, and being shot a little to Northwards of it, there fell from the top thereof some quantitie of Ice, which in the fall did make such a noyse as though it had been the report of mus Cannons. This evening we came amongst much drift Ice, being both windward and to leeward of vs, yet by Gods belee we got very well through the same, when being cleere I directed my course againe North North-west.

The tenth day the winde at South-west and by West, I steering still North-west and by North, This forenoone alio wee met with great lands of Ice, it being very harte and thicke weather, the which did drive them in the *Lion* into great feare, and calling to vs very fearfully periwaded me to alter my course and to returne homeward, saying that it was impossible for vs by any working, and course keeping to escape vpon the Land, which did drive all our companie into such a feare, that they were determined, whether I would or not, to haue returned home, had not the Captaine as an honest and resolute Gentleman fild by mee, protesting to stand by me so long as his blood was warme, for the good of the Kings Maestie, who had set vs forth, and also to the performing of the Voyage. Which resolution of his did mitigate the stubbornnesse of the Steerman, who had rather long before this time haue returned home, then to haue proceeded on the action, as before the said Steerman had done when he was employed eight yeeres before in the said action or discouerie. Therefore our Captaine and my selfe set their backwardnesse now, as before we had done, went our felues the same evening into the Pinnaffe, hauing a mighty banke of Ice of our larboard side, and spake to them very friendly, giuing order both to our owne Ship and to them, that they should keepe a Seaboard of vs (for I did suppose this banke of Ice to lye in the narrow well of the Streight, betwene *America* and *Greenland*, as indeed by experience I found the same to be) therefore I determined that I would very forcibly through the said driuen and fall away, by reason of the swift current that I saw very forcibly through the Ice Strait, and then by the grace of God to let our for a cleere part of the coast of *Greenland*, so all this night we coasted the Ice as close aboard as we could, East North-east and North-east and by East, till about midnight, when we found the said banke to fall away.

The eleuenth day, being cleere of the Ice, I stood away North North-east till fixe a clocke, when

A huge high
land of Ice.

Noyse by the
fall.

Our people
determined to
returne backe
againe.

Former discou-
eries.

A mighty
banke of Ice.

when we met with another great banke of Ice, at which time the Commanders of the *Lion* being now againe very fearefull as before, came vp to our Ship, periwading the Shipper and Com-
paine to leaue vs, and to stand to Seaboard with them. But the Shipper who was also Lieutenant of Ice, of the ship, being more honestly minded, said, that he would follow vs so long as he could: with which answer they departed, vnto many pitifull wordes, both of the Captaine and mee, saying we were determined to betray the Kings ships, at which time they shot off a peece of Ordnance, and so stood away from vs. I seeing their peruerse dealing let them goe, we coasting along the Ice North North-east with a fresh gale, it being extreme cold with snow and harte, the Sea also going very high by reason of a mightie current, the which I found to lye very force-
ably through this Straite, which being high vnto *America* side, fetherth to the Northward, and on the other side to the contrary, as by prooffe I found. So coasting along this myne banke of Ice, which seemed as it had bene a firme Continent till about eleven a clocke, when we epyed the Ice to fetherth so windward, on our weather bow wee tetter our Harbord tacke aboard, stood away East and by South with the winde at South and by East, till wee had doubled a Seaboard the Ice, at which time I directed my course directly ouer for the cleere coast of *Greenland*, East and by North, which course I directed all the *Proff* to goe, we standing away our course all this night, it being very much snow and Ice.

The twelfth day in the morning about foure a clocke, we epyed the Land of *Greenland*, be-
ing a very high ragged Land, the tops of the Mountains being all couered with snow, yet wee found all this coast vnto without Ice, wee standing into the Land epyed a certaine Mount a-
bout all the rest, which Mounts the best mark on all this Coast, the which I named Mount *Cape-
Cunningham*, the Land lying betwene them North and by East, and South and by West, the Southmost of which Forlands I named *Queene Anne*, after the name of the *Queene Ma-
rie of Denmark*, and the Northmost of the two I called *Queene Sophie* Cape, after the name of the *Queene Mother*.

So standing into the Land, we came amongst certaine Ilands, where sayling in still amongst
the same vnto the Southernmost foot of the forland Mount, we came into a goodly Bay, which
wee did suppose to be a Riuer, being on both sides of the same very high and steepe Mountains,
wee named this Bay the King *Christianus Fourth*, after the name of the Kings Maestie of *Denmark*,
So sayling vp this Bay, which wee were supposed to be a Riuer, the space of fixe or seuen *English*
leagues, finding in all that space no anchoring, being marvellous deepe water, till at the length
we had sayled vp the Bay the foresaid distance, at length I brought the Ship and Pinnaffe to an
anchor in sixteene fathom shelly ground, at which time our Captaine and I went land, giuing
thanks vnto God for his vnspokeable benefites, who had thus dealt with vs as to bring vs to
this desired Land into so good an Harbour; which done, the Captaine and I walked vp the
Hills, to see if wee could see any of the people, hauing our Boat to row along with vs. Hauing
gone along the Riuer side vpon the tops of the Hills the space of three or foure *English* miles,
at length looking towards our Boat, wee saw vpon the Riuer side foure of the people hand-
ing by their Houses, or rather Tents, couered our with Seale-skins. Wee comming downe the
Hills towards them (they hauing epyed vs) three of them ranne away vpon the Land, and
the otherooke his Boat and rowed away leauing their Tents. Wee being come downe the
Hills called to our men in the Boat, and entering into her rowed towards the Saunge who was
in his Boat made of Seale-skins. Hee holding vp his hands towards the Sunne, *cryed Tota*;
wee doing the like, and shewing to him a knife, hee presently came vnto vs and took the
same of the Captaine. When hee had presently rowed away from vs, we rowed a little af-
ter him, and seeing it was but in vaine we rowed land againe and went into their Tents,
which wee found couered (as is aforesaid) with Seale-skins. Wee finding by the houses two
Dogs being very rough and fat, like in shape to a Foxe, with very great abundance of Seale filth,
so lying round about their Tents a drying, with innumerable quantities of a little fish like vnto a
Smelt (which fish are commonly called *Sardenes*) of which fish in all the Riuer are wonder-
full skils, their filthes also lay a drying round about their Tents in the Sunne in great heapes, with
other sundrie kindes. Then entering into their Tents, wee found certaine Seale skins and Foxe
skins very well drest; also certaine Coates of Seale skins and Fowle skins with the feather side
inward: also certaine Velliss boyling vpon a little Lampe, the Velliss being made after the
manner of a little Pan, the bottome whereof is made of stone, and the sides of Whales finnes;
in which Velliss was some little quantitie of Seale fish boyling in Seale oyle; and searching
further, wee did finde in another of their Velliss a Dogs head boyled, so that I periwaded my
selfe that they eat Dogs flesh. Moreover, by their houses there did lye two great Boates, be-
ing couered vnder with Seale skins, but aloft open after the forme of our Boates, being about
twenty fittes in length, hauing in each of them eight or ten toles or fates for men to sit on,
which Boates, as afterwards I did perceiue, is for the transporting of their Tents and baggage
from place to place, and for a faile they haue the guts of some beast, which they dresse very fine
and thin, which they lye together.

At/o

Our first lan-
ding in *Grin-
land*.

Our first sight
of the people.

Boat of Seale
skins.

Our entering
into their
Tents.

Our first sight
of the people.

Boat of Seale
skins.

Our entering
into their
Tents.

Our first sight
of the people.

Boat of Seale
skins.

Our entering
into their
Tents.

Of the other
forts of Boats.
There is one
in the Boats
in the Straits
Hall.
The manner
of killing of
their great fish
or Seales.

Their com-
mings to our
ships.

Observation
of the latitude.
Observation
of the tides.

Our departing
in the Pinnace
from the ship.

The Saugues
begin to sing
songs at vs.

They sing
songs againe.

Also the other sorts of their Boats are such as Captaine *Frabhyer*, and Master *Iohn Dani* brought into *England*, which is but for one man, being cleane covered over with Seale skins artificially dried except one place to sit in, being within set out with certaine little ribs of Timber, wherein they vie to row with one Oare more swiftly, then our men can doe with ten, in which Boats they fish being disguised in their Coates of Seale skinner, whereby they deceive the Seales, who take them rather for Seales then men; which Seales or other fish they kill in this manner. They shoot at the Seales or other great fish with their Darts, vnto which they vie to throw a bladder, which doth boy vp the fish in such manner that by the said means they catch them. So coming aboard our ships hauing left certaine tridles behind vs in their Tents, and taking nothing away with vs, within halfe an houre after our coming aboard, the Saugue to whom we had given the Knife with our others, which we did suppose to be them which we saw first, came rowing 16 to our ships in their Boats, holding vp their hands to the Sunne, and striking of their breasts, crying *Tee*. We doing the like, they came to our shippe or Captaine: giuing them bread and Wine, which, as it did seeme, they made little account of, yet they gave vs some of their dried fishes, at which time there came foure more, who with the other battered their Guns, and some Seale skinner, with our folke for old Iron Nails, and other trifles as Pinnes and Needles, with which they seemed to be wonderfully pleased, and hauing so done, holding their hands towards the Sunne they departed.

The thirteenth, there came fourteen of them to our ship, bringing with them Seale skinner, Whale Finnes, with certayne of their Darts and Weapons, which they bartered with our people as before. This day I made obseruation of the latitude, and found this Roadstead in the latitude of 65. degrees 25. minutes, and the mouth of this Bay or Sound, lyeth in the latitude of 66. degrees 30. minutes. Also here I made obseruation of the tydes, and found an East and West Moone to make a full Sea, vpon the Full and Change, more it floweth, three fathome and an halfe water, right vp and downe.

The fourteenth and fifteenth dayes we rode fill, the people comming to vs, and bartering with vs for pieces of old Iron, or Nails, Whale Finnes, Seale skinner, Morfe Teeth, and a kind of Horne which we doe suppose to be Vnicorne Horne, at which time the Captaine went with our Boat, to the place where we had sene their Tents, but found them removed; and the other fish and the Seale fish lying fill a drying: the Captaine taking a quantitie of the Sea fish into the Boat, caused some of the Mariners to boyle it aloare, the Saugues helping our men to doe the same, the Captaine vnto them very friendly, they hauing made about a barrell and an halfe of Oyle, leaving it alone all night, thinking to bring the same aboard in the morning. But the Saugues the same night let the same forth. Yet notwithstanding, the Captaine shewed no manner of discontent towards them.

The sixteenth day, I went into the Pinnace, to discover certaine Harbours to the Northwards, the wind being at East South-east, I looked and felt saile, but instantly it fell calme, and so continued about an houre. When the wind came opposite at the West North-west, a steele gale, we spending the tide till the flood being come, I put roome againe, and came to an Anchor a little from the *Pyg* in twelve fathomes landie ground. About one in the afternoon, the *Pyg* departed from vs further vp the Bay, which we did suppose to be a Ruier, promising to abide our returne two and twentie dayes.

The seventeenth day, the wind continuing at the West North-west blowing very hard, we rode fill, the people comming and bartering with vs.

The eighteenth day, the winde and weather as before, the tide fill. This forenoone there came to the number of thirte of them, and bartered with vs as they had done before, which done, they went aloare at a certaine point about a flight-shot off vs, and there vpon a sudden began to throw stones with certaine slings which they had without any injury offered at vs; yea, they did sling so fiercely, that we could scarce stand on the hatches. I seeing their brutish dealing, caused the Gunner to shoot a Falcon at them, which lighted a little ouer them, at which time they went to their Boats, and rowed away. About one a clocke in the afternoon, they came againe to vs crying in their accustomed manner, *Zim*, they being fixtie three in number, the slipper inquired of me whether they should come to vs or not. I willed him to haue all things in a readinesse, they comming in the meane time nigh to the Pinnace, I did perceiue certaine of them to haue great bagges full of stones, they whispering one with another began to sling stones vnto vs. I presently shot off a little Piſtol which I had for the Gunner, and the rest of the folke to discharge, which indeed they did; but whether they did hurt or kill any of them or not, I cannot certainly tell, but they rowed all away making a howling and hideous noise: going to the same point, whereas in the forenoone they had beene, being no longer come on Land, but from the Hill they did assault vs with stones, with their flings, that it is incredible to report, in such sort that so man could stand vpon the hatches, still such time as I commanded for to loafe fall and bonnets two men heighe, to shield vs from the force of the stones, and altho I had vs from their sight; so that we did ply our Muskets and other Peeces such as we had at them: yet their subtiltie was such, that as soone as they did fee fire giuen to the Peeces, they would suddenly 20

ducke downe behind the Gliffes, and when they were discharged; then fling their stones fiercely at vs againe. Thus hauing continued thus till foure o'clock, they departed away.

The nineteenth day in the morning, about foure o'clock it being calme, I departed from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twentieth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-first day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-second day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-third day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-fourth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-fifth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-sixth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-seventh day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-eighth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The twenty-ninth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirtieth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-first day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-second day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-third day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-fourth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-fifth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-sixth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-seventh day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-eighth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The thirty-ninth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

The fortieth day, in the morning the weather being very stime with a little breeze of wind, I looked and caused to row forth the foreland Harboure, and comming forth betwixt the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, as if they had heard from this Roadstead, so causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full, at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by East, we turning about till about two o'clock, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in the excellent Harour, on the South side of *Cummiaphan* *Moun*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Demouris* *Hauen*.

Of the other
forts of Boats.
There is one
in the Boats
in the Straits
Hall.
The manner
of killing of
their great fish
or Seales.

Their com-
mings to our
ships.

Observation
of the latitude.
Observation
of the tides.

Our departing
in the Pinnace
from the ship.

The Saugues
begin to sing
songs at vs.

They sing
songs againe.

Of the Country,
people, beasts,
fishes of Greenland.

Of the Country,
people, beasts,
fishes of Greenland.

Of the Country,
people, beasts,
fishes of Greenland.

Of the Country,
people, beasts,
fishes of Greenland.

Of the Country,
people, beasts,
fishes of Greenland.

Their Shallops
not sufficient
They could
not pass the
great Island
Ice.

great fears to plunge in what extremity we were, because we did want our Master and three of our best men, and our Ship lay funk; and we had nothing to trust to but our Shallops, which were not at that time half finished. This night lying on shore in our Tent, which was between two Rocks, we kept very good watch, for fear of any people's sudden assaulting night; or if our Master and his company had staid so far, that they could not come againe that night; and we would have a Musketeer, that we might have them. But they came not at all.

The next day being Friday, and the fourth and twentieth of June, we consulted to goe over foun of vs with our Boate, to try if we could get to leeward any newes of our Master, or of any of our men; for we were afraid that they were either surpris'd by the Savages of the Countrey, or else deuoured by the wilde Beasts. So we rooke with vs foun Musketeers, and Seward, and Targett, and such prouision as we had in the Ship, and went downe to the Sea-side, but we could not get out for Ice. At length we returned, with much adoe to get on shore, and went to our Ship, to see what things we could all that day.

On Saturday, the eighth and twentieth, we did likewise see what things we could; and gave all our thing out of our Ship, and made her cleane in hold, haue faire weather; hoping in God to faue her, and to mend all things, as well as we could; for the lay vpon hard rocks: wherefore we kept her as light as we could, for beating and bruising of her hull. That night about nine of the clocke, it began to raine very fore, and so continued all night; and about one of the clocke at night, our Boate-Swaine and our Steward being at watch, and their watch almost out, the Steward went aboard the Ship to pump, leaving the Boate-Swaine at watch foun Musketeer short length from our Tent: while he was in pumping, there came over the rocks a great force of the Countrey people toward the place where the Boate-Swaine was; who when they saw him, they thot their arrows at him, running toward him as fast as they could. Whereupon he discharged his Musketeer at them, and fled to our Tent as fast as he could, thinking they had beten vs, they were so many of them in fight. The Steward hearing his Musketeer go off, came out of the Ship, and as he was coming, saw the Savages running to our Shallop, and cryed out to vs that we were asleep in our Tent, to come to rescue the Boate-Swaine, and the Shallop. We made what haste we could; when we came toward them, and saw so many of them in our Shallop, we were afraid we were betrayed. At this time it rained very fore, yet calling our wits together, we sent two of our men backe vnto our Tent, the rest of vs made toward them, and thot at them some three or foure Musketeers: who when they saw vs shoote, they stood in our Shallop, and held vp their hands vnto vs, calling one to another. Then thought we with our Idles, that we were better to dye in our defence in pursuing of them, then they vs, being but eight Men and a great Dogge. When they lay vs marching toward them so fiercely, our Dogge being formost, they ran away: but we durst not pursue them any further, for it was in the night, and they were in fight about fiftie men. Thus we rescued our Shallop. Then we sent some more of our men to our Tent to keepe it; and the rest followed toward the place whither they fled. But before we could overtake them, they were gotten into their Boates, and were rowing away through the Ice; which was so thicke, that they could not passe away, but stuck fast; for their Boates were very great: we seeing them stuck fast in the Ice, some setting with Oares, and some rowing, came to nere them, as we could, and thot at them some dozen thot, before they could get cleere: which caused them to cry out very fore one to another; for their Boates were full of men: As farre as we could iudge, they were very little people, rawne coloured, thin or no heads, and flat nosed, and Man-eaters.

On Sunday, the nine and twentieth, all day long we get such things as we could aboard our Shippe, for feare they should come out with more men, and beten vs, our Ship lying between two great Rocks, and all without full of Ice, that we could not passe any way to Sea, so not with a Boate. That day, two of our men kept watch vpon the Rocks, to giue vs warning, if they did come out with Boats. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could with our Shallop, and did tencer her in some places, but neither calked her, nor pitched her. Then did we take her, and bring her downe clost to the Shippe, and there shee did stand all night.

On Monday, the thirtieth day in the morning we went to worke to cut the Ice with Axes and Pick-axes, to get our Shippe; for all about the land was nothing but Ice, and no place to ride free neither with Shippe nor Boate. That night it pleased God, that we got her out, and came away rowing with our Oares; but she was exceeding leake, and our Shallop too; and which was worke, we had neuer a Rudder to stirre our Ship withall. We rowed all that night among the Ice.

The first and second dayes of July, we continued also rowing vp and downe among the floring and drining Ice, with little hope of recouering our Countrey.

The third of July, we had a gale of winde at North, and a great current setting to the South-west. Then made we fast our Ship to an Island, and went to worke, and to flow her things within board, to make her stiff; for we had neuer a whit of ballast in her. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could, to hang our Rudder, having nothing convenient in our Shippe

to faue her, and to mend all things, as well as we could; for the lay vpon hard rocks: wherefore we kept her as light as we could, for beating and bruising of her hull. That night about nine of the clocke, it began to raine very fore, and so continued all night; and about one of the clocke at night, our Boate-Swaine and our Steward being at watch, and their watch almost out, the Steward went aboard the Ship to pump, leaving the Boate-Swaine at watch foun Musketeer short length from our Tent: while he was in pumping, there came over the rocks a great force of the Countrey people toward the place where the Boate-Swaine was; who when they saw him, they thot their arrows at him, running toward him as fast as they could. Whereupon he discharged his Musketeer at them, and fled to our Tent as fast as he could, thinking they had beten vs, they were so many of them in fight. The Steward hearing his Musketeer go off, came out of the Ship, and as he was coming, saw the Savages running to our Shallop, and cryed out to vs that we were asleep in our Tent, to come to rescue the Boate-Swaine, and the Shallop. We made what haste we could; when we came toward them, and saw so many of them in our Shallop, we were afraid we were betrayed. At this time it rained very fore, yet calling our wits together, we sent two of our men backe vnto our Tent, the rest of vs made toward them, and thot at them some three or foure Musketeers: who when they saw vs shoote, they stood in our Shallop, and held vp their hands vnto vs, calling one to another. Then thought we with our Idles, that we were better to dye in our defence in pursuing of them, then they vs, being but eight Men and a great Dogge. When they lay vs marching toward them so fiercely, our Dogge being formost, they ran away: but we durst not pursue them any further, for it was in the night, and they were in fight about fiftie men. Thus we rescued our Shallop. Then we sent some more of our men to our Tent to keepe it; and the rest followed toward the place whither they fled. But before we could overtake them, they were gotten into their Boates, and were rowing away through the Ice; which was so thicke, that they could not passe away, but stuck fast; for their Boates were very great: we seeing them stuck fast in the Ice, some setting with Oares, and some rowing, came to nere them, as we could, and thot at them some dozen thot, before they could get cleere: which caused them to cry out very fore one to another; for their Boates were full of men: As farre as we could iudge, they were very little people, rawne coloured, thin or no heads, and flat nosed, and Man-eaters.

On Sunday, the nine and twentieth, all day long we get such things as we could aboard our Shippe, for feare they should come out with more men, and beten vs, our Ship lying between two great Rocks, and all without full of Ice, that we could not passe any way to Sea, so not with a Boate. That day, two of our men kept watch vpon the Rocks, to giue vs warning, if they did come out with Boats. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could with our Shallop, and did tencer her in some places, but neither calked her, nor pitched her. Then did we take her, and bring her downe clost to the Shippe, and there shee did stand all night.

On Monday, the thirtieth day in the morning we went to worke to cut the Ice with Axes and Pick-axes, to get our Shippe; for all about the land was nothing but Ice, and no place to ride free neither with Shippe nor Boate. That night it pleased God, that we got her out, and came away rowing with our Oares; but she was exceeding leake, and our Shallop too; and which was worke, we had neuer a Rudder to stirre our Ship withall. We rowed all that night among the Ice.

The first and second dayes of July, we continued also rowing vp and downe among the floring and drining Ice, with little hope of recouering our Countrey.

The third of July, we had a gale of winde at North, and a great current setting to the South-west. Then made we fast our Ship to an Island, and went to worke, and to flow her things within board, to make her stiff; for we had neuer a whit of ballast in her. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could, to hang our Rudder, having nothing convenient in our Shippe

A great Current
setting to
South.

Ship to make Godgins, nor Pintels. Then were we forced to breake open our Masters Chell, and to take all the Iron bands off it, to make fast two Pick-axes, for two Pintels, and to binde our Rudder with a Cable through the middle of it, to keepe it to with two tacks. Then were we in good hope to get cleere of the Ice, because wee had some fteage, though it was but bad: for before, we durst bear but little layle, our Ship being so leake, and her Item to fore beaten with the rocks and Ice, and haue no fteage, but were forced to rowe with our Oares, till we were all fore and weay.

The next day about tenne of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the West North-West, and was faire weather: so we fteered away East and by North, to get vs out of the Bay. And at noone, the watch being out, which was the third watch that we had after we came out of the Countrey (for before, continually we did watch all, to keepe our Shippe cleere of the Ice, as there as we could) we began to Pumpe our Shippe, but could not make her (stuck in a thousand strokes, if she had stood but one halfe houre vntumped. Then were we forced to vntomage our Ship, to see if we could finde our leakes. We founde found a great many of leakes, but not that which caused vs to Pumpe so fore. At the last, we found it clost abast our forefoot, where her keele was splinted in two or three places, where the Sea came running in so fast, that it was not possible to keepe her free with both our Pumps, and wee could not come to it to stop it; for it was vnder the timbers. Then did we take our maine Bonnet, and baited it with Oocum, and put it on board, right against our leake, which did vs some tyme or fux hundred strokes in an houre. Then vpon consultation had among our Idles, we resolved to shape our course towards Newfound Land, to see if we could get any place to mend our Ship, hoping there to meete with some English French men. At this time we had one of our men very sicke, and another had his hand very fore splinted; and most of vs all were so fore with rowing and pumping, that we were scarce able to stirre, but that we must perforce.

The fift of Iulie, wee shaped our course for Newfound Land, with the winde at West South-west.

The one and twentieth, the winde was at South South-west; and we fell with the Land, being nothing but broken Islands. Then we stood to the Westward, being in the latitude of 49. degrees and an halfe.

The two and twentieth was faire weather, and the winde very variable: and about fixe of the clocke at night, the winde came to the West North-west. Then we fteered in among the Islands, to see if we could finde any harbour to mend our Shippe; for the was very leake. When we were come in among them, we found nothing but broken Islands, and a great current, which did set from Island to Island, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms. That night we were very fore intangled with sunken Rocks, and in great danger of casting away our Ship, haueing very thicke weather: wherefore we kept to and fro all that night.

The foure and twentieth of Iulie in the morning, we spied some dozen Shallops, which were fishing some two leagues from vs. Then we made what way we could toward them, &c. We remained in the Bay of Fages, in repairing our Shippe, and refreshing of our Idles, vntill the two and twentieth of August. Then taking our leaues of our kinde and loving friends, with giuing them most heartie thanks for their goodlye towards vs, we put forth to the Sea, and with an indifferent and reasonable good passage we arrived safely in Dartmouth in Devonshire, and sent word to London vnto our owners, of the losse of our Master and his three companions, and of the dolefull successe of our Voyage, the foure and twentieth day of September, 1606.

The rest of this Iournall, from the death of Master John Knight, was written by Oliver Browne one of the Company.

Broken Islands in 49. degrees and a halfe latitude. Many broken Islands which were the Isles de Fages. Sunken Rocks, Twelve Shallops of Fishers men.

The fourth Voyage of JAMES HALL to Greenland, wherein he was first hurt by English aduenturers, Anno 1612. andaine by a Greenlander. Written by WILLIAM BARRIN.

Ednesday, the eight of Iuly, 1612. in the morning I perceived the Sunne and the Moone, both very faire about the horizon, as I had done duers times before. At which time I purposed to finde out the longitude of that place by the Moones coming to the Meridian. Most part of this day I spent about finding of the Meridian line; which I did vpon an Island nere the Sea, hanging at the extreames of my Meridian line two threads with Plummetts at them, instead of an index and sights.

Thursday, the ninth day very early in the morning I went on shore the Island, being a faire morning,

Pintels are small Iron pins made fast to the Rudder, and being the Rudder, the Stern-pole, &c.

They get out of the Bay, where they rode.

Our Shippe was so splinted in two or three places, where the Sea came running in so fast, that it was not possible to keepe her free with both our Pumps, and wee could not come to it to stop it; for it was vnder the timbers. Then did we take our maine Bonnet, and baited it with Oocum, and put it on board, right against our leake, which did vs some tyme or fux hundred strokes in an houre. Then vpon consultation had among our Idles, we resolved to shape our course towards Newfound Land, to see if we could get any place to mend our Ship, hoping there to meete with some English French men. At this time we had one of our men very sicke, and another had his hand very fore splinted; and most of vs all were so fore with rowing and pumping, that we were scarce able to stirre, but that we must perforce.

Broken Islands in 49. degrees and a halfe latitude.

Many broken Islands which were the Isles de Fages.

Sunken Rocks,

Twelve Shallops of Fishers men.

morning, and observed till the Moon came just upon the Meridian. At which very instant, I observed the Sunnes height, and found it 8. degrees, 53. minutes, North: in the elevation of the Pole 65. degrees 20. minutes. By the which, working by the doctrine of spherical triangles, having the three sides given, to wit, the complement of the Poles elevation; the complement of the Almacantar; and the complement of the Sunnes declination, to find out the quantity of the angle at the Pole: I say, by this working, I found it to be four of the clock, 17. minutes, and 34. seconds. Which when I had done, I found by mine Ephemerides, that the Moon came to the Meridian at London that morning at 25. 34. leuent 8. 10. of time, for the difference of longitude betwixt the Meridian of London (for which the Ephemerides was made) and the Meridian passing by this place in Greenland. Now the Moones motion that day, was 12. degrees 7. minutes; which converted into minutes of time, were 48. minutes, 39. seconds; which working by the rule of proportion, the works is thus: if 48. minutes, 39. seconds; the time that the Moon cometh to the Meridian sooner that day, then she did the day before, give 360. the whole circumference of the earth, what shall 8. minutes 10. seconds give, to wit, 60. degrees 30. minutes, or there about: which is the difference of longitude betwixt the Meridian of London, and this place in Greenland, called *Cockins Sound*, lying to the Westward of London.

46. degrees 30. minutes difference of longitude between the meridians of London and Cockins Sound in Greenland.

Objection.

Answer.

This finding of the longitude, I confess is somewhat difficult and troublesome, and there may be some small error. But if it be carefully looked unto, and exactly wrought, there will be no great error, if your Ephemerides be true. But some will say, that this kind of working is not for Mariners; because they are not acquainted to work propositions by the table of figures, and an instrument is not precise enough to finde out the hours, minute, and second. For the sake of one minute of time, is the loss of 7. degrees of longitude. I answer, that although the most part are not used to this work, yet I know some of the better sort, which are able to work this and the like propositions exactly. And those which yet cannot, and are desirous to learn, may in short time attain to such knowledge as shall be sufficient for such things. Anyhow necessary it is, that the longitude of places should be knowne, I leave to the judgement of all skillfull Mariners, and others that are learned in the Mathematicks.

This afternoon it was agreed by the chief of our Company, that our Master, *Lance Hall*, 39 should goe in the smaller Ship, farther to the Northward.

Cockins Ford in 65. deg. 30. min. Variation 13. deg. 15. min.

The forelast Thursday in the evening, he departed out of the *Patience* into the *Harf-edge*, to get forth of the Harbor, which our Master called *Cockins-ford*, in remembrance of Alderman *Cockins* one of the Adventurers: which place, is in the latitude of 65. degrees, 30. minutes. And the variation of the compass is 13. degrees, 15. minutes, to the Westward. That evening was very calme, and we towed our Shippe forth with the Sullaples and Ships Boat. But within an hour or two after we were got into the Offing; the wind being at North, it blew a great, home, which continued all that night.

Many good Roads.

Great footing.

The fourteenth, our Master turned the Ship vp to the River againe, toward the River where the supposed mine should be. But the tyde was so farre spent, that we could not get to Sea, but 40 were constrained to Anchor in a roade at the South side of the River, some three leagues from the *Patience*, in which place are many good Roads, fitts to be found.

Thursday, the sixteenth day, the wind was at North-west, and blew in bluffs gales, that we could not get to Sea that day. That night eightene of vs went into the lands to look for some Deere, but found none. But we petitioned the fowle, for some great, Beale, which we supposed to be of some great Elk: the fowle was as big as any of the *Cockins*.

Tuesday, the twentieth one, the weather still continued in such sort, that we could not, by any means get to the River, where the supposed Myne should be. Wherefore our Master bare room for *Ramsford*, being a River Southward of another, called *Cunninghams River*, some twelve leagues. And we came to an Anchor at the entrance on the South side of the Ford, about seven of the clocke.

Ramsford River.

Wednesday, the twenty and twentieth day, about nine or ten of the clocke, the Saunges came to batter with vs, being about fiftie of them, and continued about an hour and an halfe: At which time our Master *Lance Hall* being in the Boate, a Saung with his Dare-brooke him dead by which wound the right side, which our Surgeon disfigure did pierce his willers. We all mused that he should strike him, and offer no harme to any of the rest: unless it were, that they knew him since he was there with the *Danes*; for out of that River they carried away five of the people, whereof never any returned againe: and in the next River, they killed a great number. And it should seeme that he which killed him, was either brother, or some neere kinsman to some of them that were carried away: for he did it very resolutely, and came within four yards of him. And, for ought we could see, the people are very kinde one to another, and ready to reuinte any wrong offered to them. All that day he lay very pained, looking for death every hour, and resigned all his charge to Master *Andrew Barker*, Master of the *Harf-edge*, willing him to place another in his room Master of the small Ship.

Thursday

Thursday, the three and twentieth, about eight of the clocke in the morning he dyed, being very penitent for all his former offences. And after we had shrowded him, we carried him in the Sullap, to burie him in some outland, according to his owne request while he was living. After we had buried him, we went in the Sullap to seek for the mine, which we had expected to find. All that day we rowed along toward the North, passing by a Cape called *Queen's Sepulchre* as Cape.

The death of Lance Hall.

Queen's Sepulchre as Cape.

That night we staid at an Island, some three leagues short of the River, Friday, the foure and twentieth, in the morning, we rowed along, and came to the place, which is on the South side of the entrance of *Cunninghams River*: And we found divers places, where the *Danes* had digged; it was a kinde of Chasse, which when our Goldsmith, *James Carle*, had used, it was found of no value, and had no metall at all in it: but was like unto *Myfence* heide, and of a glistering colour. That day after we had dyed, we rowed vp the River some foure leagues, where divers of our company went vp into the Mountains, and found a Valley more pleasant, then they had seen in the Country. That evening we returned, and came to the place where the *Danes* had digged their supposed Mine, and took some of it in our Boats to carry with vs, and returned toward our Ship. That night we rowed and sailed, and the next morning about nine of the clocke, we came to our Ship.

Cunninghams River.

The supposed Mine found to be of no value. A Chasse Valley.

Saturday, the five and twentieth, being *Saint Lames* his day, in the forenoon, we came to our Ship, lying on the South side of the River, called *Ramsford River*. And as soon as our Master found, that the people came no more to trade with vs, he determined to depart with the Shippe toward the Kings Sound, and rowing about the harbour, where we lay to finde some better way out to the Sea, we found among the Lands, where many of their winter houles had been, and some of their Tents were but lately carried away. In which place we also found one of their long Boates, made of wood, and bound together for the most part, with flayers of Whales fins, and covered with Seales skines, being some two and thirtie foute in length, and some fise foute broad, having tenne thoughts or fates in it: that day about twelue of the clocke we weighed anchor, and departed out of *Ramsford River*, which lyeth in the latitude of 65. degrees, and the variation of the compass is 13. degrees 15. minutes, being a very faire River, and one of the most principall, which was low in that Country, stretching in East and East and by South. This night, about one of the clocke, we came to the *Patience*, lying in the Kings Ford.

Sunday, the six and twentieth, Master *Andrew Barker*, and our Merchant, Master *William*, with other of the Company, were in conference about returning home, because that since our Master was slain, none of the Saunges would trade with vs, as they were wont.

Many of their winter houles in the Kings River. The fashion of their greatest Boates.

Ramsford Ford in the latitude of 65. degrees. The variation is 13. degrees 15. minutes.

Wednesday, the nine and twentieth, we were likewise occupied about taking in of ballast for our Shippe was very light: and that evening it was agreed, that *Andrew Barker*, Master of the *Harf-edge*, should goe Master of the *Patience*, which was fore against the minds of *William Grouden* and *William Hunsicke* was appointed Master of the *Harf-edge*, and *John Garbush*, one of the quarters Masters of the *Patience*, was Masters mate of the *Harf-edge*.

William Hunsicke Master of the Harf-edge.

Tuesday, the fourth of August, in the morning the wind being Northerly a very small gale we got to Sea, where the wind came to the Southward, and we tacked sometime on the one board, 40 and sometime on the other, making small way on our course.

They came out of harbour.

Munday the tenth, was raine and foule weather, as it had continued every day since we came from harbour, faine the feuenth day, which was somewhat faire: For commonly while the winds in South, it is very thick and foule weather. We tacked sometimes on one board, and sometimes on the other, making a South by West way, at noone fise leagues.

Thick and foggy weather, the wind being South.

Wednesday, the twelfth, it waxed calme, we being somewhat Southward of a Cape, called *Ramsford Cape*: and about three or foure of the clocke in the afternoone, the wind came to the North and by West, an easie gale, with faire weather.

Ramsford Cape.

The eighteenth at noone we were in 58. deg. 30. min. The feuenteenth day, I took the variation of the compass, finding it to be 13. degrees 15. minutes, contrary to the observations of 10. then in this place. And if any doe doubt of the truth thereof, they may with a little paines prove it. The eighteenth of August, the declination of the Sunne was 9. degrees 58. minutes, for the Meridian of London. But we being almost foure houes of time to the Westward thereof, there are three minutes to be abated from the rest: and so the declination was 9. degrees 55. minutes: and his height above the horizon was 24. degrees 40. minutes in the latitude of 59. degrees 0. min. and his distance from the South to the Westward, by the compass, was 81. degrees. And for truth of the first observation, I took another shortly after, finding them not to differ about 4. minutes.

Variation 13. deg. 15. min.

Wednesday the nineteenth, the wind still continued with thicke and huffe weather, we being at noone in the latitude of 58. degrees 30. minutes, or thereabout, making a South South-east 60 way about ten leagues.

Thursday the twentieth, was faire weather, the wind at East North-east, wee steered away South-east and South-east and by East, making at noone a South-east by South way, about thirtie leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 57. degrees 30. minutes. This day in the afternoon I took the variation of the compass, and found it about 11. degrees 10. minutes.

Variation 11. deg. 10. min.

Friday,

- Friday the one and twentieth, fair weather, with the wind at North and North by East, and we made an East South-east way, half South-easterly twenty four leagues, being at noon by observation, in the latitude of 56. degrees 50. minutes.
- Saturday the two and twentieth, fair weather, the wind at North and North by East, we made an East way half South-easterly, some twenty two leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 56. degrees 47. minutes.
- Sunday the three and twentieth, fair weather, the wind at West North-west, we making an East and North by North way about twenty four leagues. This day I took the variation of the Compass, and found it to be 7. degrees 23. minutes, being at noon in the latitude of 57. degrees 56. minutes.
- Monday the four and twentieth, being *S. Bartholomew's day*, fair weather with an North North-west, we making an East North-east way, half North-easterly about twenty four leagues, and were at noon by observation in the latitude of 58. degrees 4. minutes. This day I observed and found the Compass to be varied 7. degrees 20. minutes.
- Tuesday the five and twentieth, fair weather and calm: the wind at North, we made a North-east and by East way fourteen leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 58. degrees 30. minutes. This day I found the common Compass to be varied one point, and the true variation to be 6. degrees 4. minutes.
- Wednesday the six and twentieth fair weather also, with the wind North North-west, we made a North-east and by East way half about twenty two leagues, being in the height of 59. 20 degrees 10. minutes.
- Thursday the seven and twentieth indifferent fair weather, with a stiff gale of wind at the North North-west, we making a North-east way about thirty one leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 60. degrees 10. minutes.
- Friday the eight and twentieth, the wind at South-east with a stiff gale, we made good about noon a North-east and by East way about twenty nine leagues. This day in the afternoon we lay to great a storm, that we were in great distress, the wind at East South-east. But about eleven of the clock it came to the North-west, and North-west by 1. wind. And we ranne some twenty leagues.
- Saturday the nine and twentieth, it blew so stiff, that we could bear none but our fore-30 sail, making an East and by South way half South-easterly, about thirty leagues.
- Sunday the thirtieth, all the forenoon it blew a very stiff gale, and about noon the wind came South-easterly and it blew a very great storm, which continued all that day and that night in such force, that we could not sail at all, but all that night lay at hull.
- Monday the one and thirtieth in the morning about four of the clock, the wind came to the South-west a very stiff gale. At which time we let our fore-sail. The wind continued all this day and night, we steered away East and by South, making at noon an East North-east way about thirty four leagues.
- Tuesday the first of September, the wind still continued at South-west, blowing a very stiff gale, we steered away East and by South, making an East way about fifty leagues. This day at 40 noon we were in the latitude of 60. degrees 45. minutes.
- Wednesday the second fair weather with the wind at South-west, we made an East and by South way half a point South-easterly about forty two leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 60. degrees 10. minutes. This day I observed, and found the Compass to be varied three degrees to the Westward.
- Thursday the third day fair weather, the wind at South-west: we made an East by North way at noon about twenty leagues. This day in the afternoon, the wind being at North North-west, it blew a very stiff gale for two Watches, and toward seven or eight of the clock the storm so increased, that our shippe was not able to bear any sail. And all that night we lay at hull.
- Friday the fourth, the storm still continued, and we could bear no sail all that day till about four of the clock in the afternoon, at which time we let our fore course, and our maine course. The night before in the storm, we lost *The Harf-cupe*. This day we made some twelve leagues East and by North. And we fell to lee-ward lying at hull some five leagues South by West.
- Saturday the fifth calmer weather, but very thick and close all the forenoon: the wind continued still at North North-west, we making from the time we let our course, the day before, about twenty leagues East half South-easterly; being at noon in the latitude of 59. degrees 53. minutes.
- Sunday the sixth, fair weather, the wind at North North-west, we steering away East North-east, and East and by North, made an East by North way, half North-easterly some 29. leagues, 60 being at noon in 60. degrees 10. minutes. This day the Compass was varied to the East six degrees. This afternoon it was almost calm: and we founded, and found ground at sixty eight fathomes. This Evening about ten of the clock the wind came to the South-east.
- Monday the seventh, very fair weather, the wind South-east and South-east by East, we 50 racked

They lost company of their consort, *The Harf-cupe*.

Variation 6. degrees to the East.
Ground found.

- racked in the morning to the North-ward, and ranne East North-east and East by North until seven or eight in the afternoon, at which time we tacked up to the Southward and went away South-west till toward twelve a clock that night twenty leagues.
- Tuesday the eight, in our morning Watch I found our felues to be in 59. degrees 20. minutes: And about five of the clock I espied Land, which we supposed to be the Iles of Orkney, at 10 afterward we found them to be the same. And toward three of the clock, we came to an Anchor in a Channell running between the Ilands; where the people came to vs, and brought vs Hennes, Geefe, and Sheepe, and told them to vs for old clothes and shoes, desiring rather than then money. There are about eighteene of these Ilands, which are called by the name of the 10 Orkneys.
- Wednesday the ninth, it was thicke weather, and the winds so Easterly that we could not weigh Anchor.
- Thursday the tenth, fair weather, and the wind came to the North-west, and about noon we weighed Anchor, and toward five of the clock we were cleere off the Iles. The Channell for the most part lyeth North-west and South-east. All that night we flood away South-east.
- Friday the eleventh, fair weather, with the wind at North North-west. And about nine of the clock in the morning, we steered away South South-east. At which time we had fight of *Baqham-nesse*: And about two of the clock we were thwart of it. The fourteenth, we came to an Anchor in *Hull Road*, for which the Lord be praised.
- 10 Here I thinke it not amiss briefly to relate the state and manners of the people of Greenland, forasmuch as I could learne: As also what likelihood there is of a passage into the Sea, which lyeth by *Tartarie* and *China*.
- The North-west part of *Greenland* is an exceeding high Land to the Sea-ward, and almost nothing but Mountaynes; which are wonderfull high all within the Land, as farre as wee could percieve: and they are all of stone, some of one colour, and some of another, and all glistering, as though they were of rich value; but indeed they are not worth any thing. For our Goldsmith *Jamus Carle* tryed very much of the Ve, and found it to be nothing worth. If there be any metall, it lyeth so low in the Mountaynes, that it cannot be well come by. There are some Rocks in these Mountaynes, which are exceeding pure Stone, finer, 30 and whiter then Alabaster. The sides of these Mountaynes continually are covered with Snow for the most part, and especially the North sides, and the North sides of the Vallies, having a kind of Mofe, and in some places Grasse with a little branch running all along the ground, bearing a little blacke Berrie, it runneth along the ground like Three-leaved Grasse here in *England*. There are few or no Trees growing, as farre as wee could percieve, but in one place some forty miles within the Land, in a River, which we called *Zale River*. There I saw on the South side of an high Mountayne, which we went up, and found (as it were) a young Grove of small Wood, some of it five or seven foot high like a Coppice in *England*, that had become fowle or three years out. And this was the most Wood that wee saw growing in this Countrey; being some of it a kind of Willow, Juniper, and such like.
- 40 We found in many places much *Angelica*. We suppose the people ate the Root thereof, for some causes. For we have seene them have many of them in their Boats.
- There are great flocks of Foxes in the Ilands, and in the Mayne, of sundry colours: And there are a kind of Hares as white as Snow, with their fure or haire very long.
- Also there be Deere, but they are most commonly vp within the Mayne very farre; because the people doe so much hunt them, that come neere the Sea. I saw at one time fowen of them together, which were all that we did see in the Countrey: But our men have bought divers Coates of the people made of Deeres skines, and have bought of their Hornes also. Besides, we have divers times seene the footstepps of some beast, whose foot was bigger then the foot of a great Ox. Furthermore, the Inhabitants have a kinde of Dogges, which they 50 keepe at their Houles, and Tents, which Dogges are almost like unto Wolves, lying by fire, as the Foxes doe. But one thing is very strange, as I thought: for the Pizzels of both Dogges and Foxes are bone.
- The people all the Summer time vie nothing but fishing, drying their fish, and Scales fleshy upon the Rocks for their Winter Provision. Every one both man and woman have each of them a Boate made with long small pieces of Firre-wood, covered with Scales skines very well dreft, and sewed so well with linnens or cork, that no water can pierce them through, being some of them about twenty foot long, and not past two foot, or two foot and an halfe broad, in forme of a Weavers shuttle, and so light, that a man may carrie many of them at once for the weight. In the Ice Boates they will row so swiftly, that it is almost incredible for no ship in the World is able to keepe way with them, although they have neuer so good a gale of wind, and yet they vie but one Oare, who fitting in the middle of their Boate, and holding their Oare in the middle, being broad at each end like our Oares, will at an instant goe backward and forward, as they please.

Land delayed.

The Iles of Orkney.

The lying of the Channell in Orkney.

Baqham-nesse. They arrive at Hull.

High Mountaynes of those very pure.

No profitable.

Continuall Snow. Grasse. No Trees. *Zale River*. A young Grove of small wood.

Foxes. Hares. Deere.

These be some of the Iles, or Lothes. Dogges like Wolves. The pizels of Dogges and Foxes are bone.

Boats: so light, as the Muske pizels, of which I have by me some of some.

The great swiftnesse of their Boats. Their Oares broad at both ends.

Salmons and
Morles, &c.
Angles and
Lines.

Their great
Boats 30, 40
long.

They worship
the Sunne.
Their saluta-
tion.

Their burials.

They burne
the weapons
and all other
Furniture of
the dead.

They visit.

They are not
Man-eaters.

Nails & old
Iron greatly
desired of the
Savages.
Men are not
to goe among
Savages with-
out the weapons.

In these Boates they catch the moll part of their food, being Seales and Salmons, Morles, and other kinds of fishes. Some they kill with their Darts, and other some with Angles, having a Line made of small thins of Whales Fines, and an Hook of some fish bones: with which Line and Hookes, we alio have caught very much fish.

Alto they have another kind of Boate, which is very long. For we have seene one of them thirte two foot in length, open in the topple like our Boates; having tenne feates in it. In which when they remove their Dwellings, they carrie their Goods or House-hold-stuff: for they remove their Dwellings very often, as their fishing doch ferre, lying in the Summer time, in Tents made of Seales skinned, and in Winter in Houses some-what in the ground.

Wee could not particularly learne their Rites or Ceremonies: but generally they worship the Sunne, as chief Author of their Felicity. At their first approach unto vs they vied with their hands to point vp to the Sunne, and to strike their hands upon their breasts, crying *Ihous*; as who would say, I meane no harme: which they will doe very often, and will not come neere you, vnill you doe the like; and then they will come without any feare at all.

They burie their dead in the Out-lands neere the Seaside. Their manner of Buriall is this. Upon the tops of the Hills they gather a company of stones together, and make thereof an hollow Caue or Graue, of the length and breadth of the bodie, which they intend to burie, laying the stones somewhat close like a wall, that neither Foxes, nor other such beasts may deuoure the bodies, couering them with broad fiones, shewing steele off like a pile of fiones. And neere vnto this Graue where the bodie lyeth, is another, wherein they burie his Bow and Arrowes, with his Darts and all his other Prouision, which hee vied while hee was liuing. Hee is buried in all his Apparell: and the coldnesse of the Climate doth keepe the bodie from smelling and flaking, although it lye about the Ground.

They eat all their food raw, and vie no fire to dreffe their Victuals, as farre as wee could perceiue. Also we haue seene them drinke the Salt-water at our shippes side: But whether it bee vsuall or no, I cannot tell. Although they dreffe not their meate with fire, yet they vie fire for other things, as to warme them, &c.

Diuers of our men were of opinion, that they were Man-eaters, and would haue deuoured vs, if they could haue caught vs. But I doe not thinke they would. For if they had bin so minded, they might at one time haue caught our Cooke, and two other with him, as they were filling of water at an Island, a great way from our ship. There three lay wete in the ships Boate without eyther Musket, or any other Weapon, when as a great company of the Savages came rowing vnto them with their Darts, and other Furniture, which they meane goe without, and stood looking into the Boate for Nuyles, or any old Iron, which they so greatly desire, while our men were in such a fere, that they knew not what to doe.

At length our Cooke remembered that hee had some old Iron in his pocket, and gaue each of them some, as farre as it would goe, with his Key of his Chest. And presently they all departed without offering any harme at all. But this I speake not, that I would haue men to trust 40 them, or to goe among them vnprovided of Weapons.

CHAP. XVIII.

A true Relation of such things as happened in the fourth Voyage for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, performed in the
yeere 1615. Written by WILLIAM
BARRETT.

The fifth by
Bodine in
which hee pe-
ried, the fo-
cond by Sir
Thomas Barre,
the third by
Cyprian Gib-
bin.



FTER three sundry Voyages towards the North-west, to the great charge of the Adventurers: the last being vnder the command of Captaine *Gibbins* (in which was little or nothing performed.) Yet the Right Worthfull Sir *Dudley Digges* Knight, Master *Wesholme* Esquire, Master Alderman *Lowes*, with others being not therewith discouraged, This yeere 1615 againe set forth the Discoverie, a ship of fiftie five tonnes or thereabouts, which ship had bene the three former Voyages on the action. The Master was *Robert Blieth*, a man well acquainted that way: having bene employed in the three former Voyages: my selfe being his Mate and Associate, with fowerteen others and two Boyes.

The sixteenth, we weighed Anchor at Saint *Katharines*, and that tyde came to *Blackwall*, the 60 wind being at South South-west. The seventeenth, we went downe to *Greenland*, and the eighteenth to *Lar*, where we anchored that night.

Vpon

Vpon the fixth of May, we saw Land on the Coast of *Greenland*, on the East side of Cape *Farewell*; and that night we had a great storme: so we kept a Southerly course to get about the Ice which lay on that shore, and then kept our course vntill the sixteenth day of May, all which forenoone we layed by many great lands of Ice, some of which were about two hundred foot high above water (as I proued by one shortly after) which I found to be two hundred and fortie foot high, and of report of some men be true, which affirme, that there is but one fourth part of the Ice above water, then the height of that piece of Ice, which I obserued was one hundred and fortie fathomes, or one thousand five hundred and eighty fote from the topple to the bottome: this proportion I knowe doth hold in much Ice, but whether it doe so in all, I know not.

This fourteenth of May, about noone we were come to the firme Ice, as one would suppose, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 26. minutes or thereabout, being the latitude of the South part of the *Ile of Resolution*: we comming to this Ice, our Master asked my opinion concerning the putting into the Ice. My iudgement was it would be best for vs to stand, and ply it vp to the Northwards. Hee answered, we were on the North side of the South Channell, and much Ice we must passe through, and if that we could get some two or three leagues within the Ice, it would euerie tale open, and we should get some thing onward of our way, hauing all the Channell to the South-wards of vs. So with this resolution we put within the Ice, the wind being at East North-east: this first entrance I liked not very well, scarce finding any place to put in our ships head, and being neere chitric leagues from the shore, towards Euening wee were fast amongst 30 the Ice.

But sometimes each day the Ice would a little open, we making what way we could towards the North-west in for the shore till the two and twentieth day, hauing had the wind all Southerly. Yet we plainly saw that we let to the Southwards, for all that we could doe.

The two and twentieth day, the wind came vp at North North-west: then our Master determined to stand forth againe. For if the wind should haue come to the North-east, it would be vnpossible for vs to fetch any part of the Channell, being we droue so fast to the Southwards, with Southerly winds, and having to fare into the shore, not hauing seene the Land.

Our Master was also determined to spend some twentie, or foure and twentie dayes in *Fraunce Darts*, to see what hopes would be that wayes, supposing there would be little good to be done in *Hudsons Streights* for this time limited: then we plying to get to Sea-ward, and lo by 30 eight a clock at night, the three and twentieth day we were cleere of the thick Ice: againe, the Lord made vs thankfull, the wind at North-west and by North faire weather: but no longer were we forth of the Ice, but that our Master changed his opinion: and being cleere of this thicke Ice we stood to the Northward as much as the Ice and winde would geue vs leaue, running some thirteene leagues true North-east by North, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 50. minutes. The foure and twentieth day faire weather: the five and twentieth day, also faire weather, the wind at North and by West, till fixe a clocke, we hauing made a North-east by North way about twelue leagues and an halfe, our latitude at noone 62. degrees 20. minutes, at fixe a clocke the wind was at the North North-east. The fixe and twentieth day, all the forenoone 40 faire weather and cold: but in the afternoon it blew very hard, being close haffe weather, that about two a clocke this afternoon we tooke in our sailes and hulled with our ship till the next morning at foure a clocke, all the time that we layed this day we past through many ledges of Ice hauing great quantitie to the Northward of vs, and hauing runne about twelue leagues true vpon a West course. And now where I put this word *true*, I meane the true course, the variation of the Compass, and other accidents allowed.

The fuen and twentieth day close foggy weather with much snow freezing on our thrownds and tackling: the like we had not all this yeare before: but towards foure a clocke in the afternoon it began to cleere vp, and about fixe a clocke we saw Land, being the *Ile of Resolution*, and bearing West from vs about thirteene or foureteene leagues. This morning we let lye, and stood 50 to and fro as the Ice would suffer vs, and at ten at night, wee moored our ship to a piece of Ice, the wind being at West.

The eight and twentieth day being Whitfunday, it was faire weather, but the winde was at the West and West by North all the day we were fast to the piece of Ice. Yet we plainly perceived that we set a great deale more into the Streights with the flood. Then we let forth with the ebbe the nine and twentieth day, the wind was variable, and faire weather: about eleuen a clock we let saile and tacked to and fro along by the Land. And about two a clocke the next morning, the wind came to the South South-east, but we had so much Ice that we could doe but little good with a faire wind, the wind continued all this day and night a stiffle gale: this night (or rather Euening, because it was not darke at all) we were yet within the point of the Land: for 60 that now we were within the Streights.

The one & thirtieth day also faire weather, the wind for the most part at North North-west, the afternoon being cleere we saw the point of the South shore, called *Batters In*, to beare from vs due South by the Compass, which is indeed South South-east, somewhat Eastward, because here the Compass is varied to the Westwards twentie foure degrees.

Zzz 2

The

Variation 16
degrees.

Greenland,
Cape Farewell,
High Ice
lands.

Ile of Resolution

two Starrs before named: at the instant I took the altitude of the South ballance, which was 2, degrees 58, minutes, because I would have the time: but in this it is good to waite a time, as to haue her in a right line, with two Starrs not farre distant, and thofe not to be much different in longitude, because the Moon will sooner alter the angle or position, and such a time must be taken when the Moone is in the ninthieth degree of the ecliptike above the horizon, for then there is no parallel of longitude, but only in latitude: but who is so painefull in these busineses, shall sooke (see what is preedifall, and what is not: my obseruations were as followeth:—

Right ascension 13 deg. 37 min. 30 sec. Right ascension 16 deg. 53 min. 00 sec.
Declination --- 11 deg. 57 min. 30 sec. Declination --- 16 deg. 53 min. 00 sec.
Longitude --- 24 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. Longitude --- 5 deg. 53 min. 45 sec.
Latitude --- 00 deg. 36 min. 00 sec. Latitude --- 14 deg. 30 min. 00 sec.
Almicantar --- 33 deg. 40 min. 00 sec.
Parallax --- 0 deg. 47 min. 46 sec.
Moons' Latitude --- 03 deg. 70 min. 00 sec. North.
Almicantar --- 37 deg. 00 min. 00 sec.

These notes I haue let downe, that if any other be desirous to trie, they may spend a little time therein; my selfe haue spent some therein, and more I would haue spent, if leisure would haue permitted: but finding it not to my minde, I haue not here let downe my particular worke: the working of this obseruation I receiued from Master *Kendish*.

But if it had pleased God, we had performed the action we were bound for, I would not fear but to have brought so good contentment to the Adventurers, concerning the true situation of notable places, that small doubt should have been thereof: but seeing so small hopes are in this place, I have not set down so many observations as otherwise I would.

We lying here inclofed with the Ice with faire & calme weather (as before is laid) till the feuen and twentieth day at euening, at which time we fet fayle; the winde at South-eaft, an easie gale, all the eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth dayes, we made the beft way through the Ice we could; but the nine and twentieth day, the Ice was more open then it had beene thefe ten dayes before, and at noone we faw *Salisbury* land, it bearing due Weft from vs.

The first of July cold foggy weather, with much rain, the winds at South South-west: by 30 none this day we were some three leagues from the Land; but having much Ice by the throat, we flood along the land to the Northward: and the next morning we were fair by another small Ice, or rather a company of small lands, which after we called *Mild* land, by reason of driving the Ice, at this night we made proof thereof: at none, being close to this Ice, we took the latitude thereof, which is near 64 degrees. Here driving to and fro with the Ice all this day, we were obliged to sail, as we had time, the Ice began to open and separate: The Ice, as it began, beginning to open: we had time to sail, and the Ice, as it began to open, an hour; and the Ice came driving with the tide of flood from the South-east, with such swift violence, it overwent our Shippe hauling all our voyles abreast with a reasonable gale of winds, and put her out of the frame, into the day of this day.

This land or lile, lying in the middle of the channell, having many fowles running through them, which many points or headlands, encountering the force of the tide, caused such a rebound of water & Ice (which ran one way, and the fraime another) our ship hauing met the Ice with the first of the flood, which put her so neere the shoare, that she was in the partition betwene the Ice, which the eddy cauled to runne one way, and the fraime the other, where she endured great diffirence ; but God, which is still stronger then either the Ice or fraime, preferred vs above our Shippe from any harme at all. This continued till towards a high water, which was about one a clocke ; then with no small trouble we got into the channell, and flood away to the North-west ward. After we had past some distance from this land, we had the Sea more open then it was since we pur first into the Straits ; and failed all the next day through an indifferent place, yea Sea, with the winde at South-west : but towards eight a clocke at night, we were come againe into much Ice : this Ice being more thicker and bigger then any wee had beene among : this place where we began to be inclosed againe, is fixte and twenty leagues distant from the small land we were at last : and our true course North-west by West : after we were left in the Ice, we made fire with us, yet we perceived a great fyre to lefey and fro. The next day, we were forced, and had morning fogge, we considered & gave tytle to lefey and fro. The next day, we were forced ; the next morning we sawe a country a eighth part of a league distant from the Northward ; the next morning we sawe a country a eighth part of a league distant from the Northward, and we letting somewhat Southward, had ground at a hundred and ten fathoms. Thus seeing the great abundance of Ice in this place, and the more we got to the North-west ward, the shoaler it was, the Ice also being foule and durrie, as not bred farre from shoare : our Maister determined to stand to the Eastward, to be certainly informed of the ride.

60

The first day in the morning, we brake in a planke and two timbers in our Ships bow, which after we had mended, we proceeded for to get to the East side, which we called the North shore, because it is the Land stretching from the *Religion*, on the North side of the Straits.

The fteenth day we saw the land; it being but low land, and the Sea is shoald, in respect of
other places, having ten or twelv fathoms at a league off from thoe, some thirty fathoms
or fix leagues off from thoe, but further off some twenty or eightene leagues, there is a hundred or
hundred and twenty fathoms; having very good channell ground, as small fittes & shels, some twel
to three leagues from thoe, but the further off the more Orey; and all o here is a very great
runneth to the Northward, which this evening we found to be the tyde of ebbe, for comming
with our Shippe neere the thore, about fene a clocke, we hoyled out our Boats, then I
went other went on thore, and found to be a low water, and comming about an houre and a halfe
in which time the water fell about ten fathoms, as Sea men account: we saw no signe of people to be
here at this abundance, for all these wherefore they have bene, as we might well see by divers places;
where the trees had stood, and perchance their time of falling was not yet come, there being
a great quantity of Ice as yet.

The eight day the wind was at West and the ninth almost calm: we were recking near to this shore the tenth day, our Master determined to stand for *Nottingams* land, to make trail of the tide there; yet the wind was at South-west, so that we were forced to turne, but towards night it came to the North-North-west, so that then we stood away to the West wards, leaving the reach of *Nottingams* lnd., hauing a great swelling Sea, come out of the West with the wind which had blowne, which put us in some hope: the eleuthen day in the morning, we saw Land which had blowne, which put us in some hope: the eleuthen day in the morning, we saw Land which had blowne, which put us in some hope: the eleuthen day in the morning, we saw Land which had blowne, which put us in some hope:

20 Well from us, but had no ground to stand on. By North, the next morn we were thwart of a Bay: in
which here lay several Islands, and a small Bay, where we lay till the next morn, when we
went on to the Northwards towards a faire Cape or head land which we law, in the after-
noon it was almost calme, and being about a league from shore, we hoisted out our boats, and
some of our men in here, to see what was the matter. The boat came about againe at first, they
went from the Ship, and saw that it had eb'd while they were on shore, forerward about two foot: all
the while they were on shore, the boat came about againe, and they saw that it had eb'd
they affirmed, that the flood came from the Northward in this place, the wind
blew from the Northward, and the water was nowfaine: this put vs in great comfort and
also we might see by the colour, that the water was nowfaine: this put vs in great comfort and
also we might see by the colour, that the water was nowfaine: this put vs in great comfort and

thens of a passage in this place.
 30 Then our Matter called this Cape or head Land, *Cape Comfort*, for the reasons before said; also *Comfort*
 we had one hundred and thirty fathoms in depth, not a *League* from the shoare: and here a South
 by East *W*ind, and a little Sea: the latitude of this Cape is 65 degrees 00. min. and 85 degrees
 00. min. West from *London*. But this our *Udaine* comfort was as soon quelled, for the next
 day having doubled the Cape, and proceeded not path ten or twelve miles, but North-east by East, and very
 trending from the Cape to the Northward, till it was noon, when we were forced to tack
 for water and small thing at any time. At fix a clocke this afternoon, we found, & had ground
 in a hundred and thirty fathoms. Off *Orey*, having had at noon, 65 degrees 16. min. and longi-
 tude 85 degrees 45. min. and 86 degrees 45. min. and longi-

40 This was the farthest of our voyage, being in the latitude of 54 degrees North-east by East, from vastitude West from London 86 degrees 10 minutes: forseeing the land North-east by East, from vastitude about nine or ten leagues off, and the Ice so thicke: our Master was fully perswaded, that this was nought else but a Bay, and so tacked and turned the Shippes head homewards, without any farther search.

The fourteenth day, the winde was for the most part at South-east, that we could make but small way backe againe: and the next morning very foule weather, we comming to an Anchor in a small Inlet, neere the *Cape Comfort*, on the North-west side thereof; here wee found, as on the other side, a South by East Moone, to make a full Sea; but from whence the flood came, we could not well tell, it being so foule weather at Sea: in the afternoon the winde came to North-west, then we waied, and flood along to the Southwards by the shoare, with a stiff gale of

30 by Wettihren was wedded. By the sixteenth day at noon we met with a great quantity of Ice, lying
winds and very heavy. By the sixteenth day at noon we met with a great quantity of Ice, lying
some few leagues within the place of the Land: among this Ice we saw a great number of
Sea Horses, not seeing any more in all the Straits but here, and these very Fearfull, not suffering a
Ship or Boat to come neere them: by eight a clock we were come to this Southernmost point, which
I called *Sea Horse point*, where we came to anchor, and our companies light, that in this place the tide of flood doth
here most appaerantly come from the South-east, and the ebb from the North-west. We weighed, and stood out with
a stiff gale of wind, which continued all this day, and toward night very foule weather, & a forte
flume: by tenne a clock we were come to Anchor on the North-west side of *Noring Bay*, where
60 where are two or three small Iles, lyeth off from the greater, which is called *Noring*, and the
bays about this Ile, had full of Ice, but nothing so much as the last Sound, & the
about this Ile, had full of Ice, but nothing so much as the last Sound, & the
fogs and vncertaine winds, many times we weighed anchor to goe that side of the Ile, where
this ship road when Captaine *Bates* was in her: finding in other places of this Ile the tyde of

And concerning what the Shore will yield, as Beach finnes, Morfe teeth, and such like, I can little say, because we came not on shore in any of the places where hopes in of finding them.

But here some may object, and ask, why we thought that could be better, rather than to have been there, while the weather was so exceeding foule we could not, for just we anchored in Wollenholme Sound. Where presently our ship drove with two anchors a head, then were we forced to stand forth with full sail. The next day in Whale Sound, we lost an Anchor and Cable, and could fetch the place no more; then we came to anchor near a small land, lying between Sir Tho. Smiths Sound, and Whale Sound, but the wind came more outward, that we were forced to weigh againe: nevertheless if we had been in a good harbour, having but our Ships Boat, we durst not find her farre from the ship, having a few men (as fourteen or all) and some of them very weak; but the chief cause we spent so little time to seek a Harbour, was our great desire to performe the Discoverie, having the Sea open in all that part, and full likelihood of a passage: but when we had coasted the Land so farre to the Southward, that hope of passage was none, then the year was so farre spent, and many of our men very weak, and wished we having some helpe that ships the next year would be sent for the killing of Whales, which might better doe it then we.

And seeing I have briefly set downe, what hope there is of making a profitable voyage, it is not unfit your Worships should know what let or hinderance might be to the same. The chiefest, and greatest cause is, that some yeere it may happen by reason of the Ice, lying between 72. degrees and a halfe, and 76. degrees no minutes, that the ships cannot come into those places, till toward the middle of July, so that want of time to stay in the Country may be some let: yet they may well tarry till the last of August, in which space much business may be done, and good flocks of Oile may be brought home in Baidler, as (as no farre to the contrary) what cannot be made in Oile may be brought home in Baidler, and the Fumes will arise to good profit. Another hinderance may be, because the bottom of the Sound will not be so some cleere as would be wished, by means thereof now and then a Whale may be left (the same case sometime chances in Greenland) yet I am persuaded those Sounds before named, will all be cleere before the twentieth of July: for that year were in Whale Sound the fourth day among many Whales, and might have strake them without let of Ice. Furthermore, there is little wood to be expected, either for fire or other necessities, therefore Coles and other such things must be provided at home, they will be so much the readier there.

Thus much I thought good to certify your Worships, wherein I trust you will excuse, that much time hath not bene spent in vaine, or the business ever carefully neglected, and although we have not performed what we desired (that is, to have found the passage) yet what we promised (as to bring certaintie and a true description) truth will make manifest, that I have not much erred.

And I dare boldly say (without boasting) that more good discoverie hath not in shorter time (to my remembrance) bene done, since the alliance was attempted, considering how much Ice we have passed, and the difficultie of sayling so neere the Pole (upon a transe) and above all, the variation of the Compass, whose wonderful operation is such in this Bay, increasing and decreasing so suddenly and swift, being in some parts (as in Wollenholme Sound, and in Sir Tho. Smiths Sound) varied above five Points or 56. degrees, a thing almost incredible and matchlesse in all the world besides, so that without great care, and good observations, a true description will not be borne home. In fine, what from my labours are or shall be, I conceive them too little, to express my thankfull minde for your favours, wherein I shall become find more, to supply my other wants by my best endeavours, and ever rest at

Your Worships command,

WILLIAM BAFFIN.

Variation of the Compass admirable.

A briefe and true Relation or Journall, containing such accidents as happened in the first voyage, for the discoverie of a passage to the North-west, set forth at the charges of the right Worshipsfull Sir Tho. Smith Knights, Sir Dudley Digges Knights, Master John Wollenholme Esquire, Master Alderman Tones, with others, in the good ship called the Discovery, under the command of our selfe Pilot, performed in the yeere of our Lord 1616.

March 16.

In the Name of God, Amen. The forenamed ship being in full readinesse upon the twentieth of March, we set sail at Gravesend, being in number leuteneants persons, having five gay 62 weather, which continued till the second of April: by that time we were off Portland, then the wind comming Westward with foule weather, we kept Sea till the fourth day, then being not able to fetch Plymouth, bore round for Dartmouth, where we staid eleven dayes, in which time was much foule weather and westerly winles.

The

The fifteenth day of April, being cleere of Dartmouth, we were forced the next day to put into Plymouth. The nineteenth day we set sail from thence, and the twentieth in the morning we past between the Lands end and Sisy with a faire wind. Continuing our course, as in the briefe Table or Journall is set downe, with every particular from noon to noon, that here I need not make a tedious repetition, nothing worthy of note hapning, but that we had a good passage, and the first Land we saw was in *Frans Drake*, on the coast of *Greenland* in the latitude of 65. degrees 20. minutes. On the fourteenth of May in the forenoone, then fix of the people being a sailing came to vs, to whom we gave small pieces of Iron, they keeping vs companie being very joyfull, supposing wee had intended to come to anchor: but when they saw vs stand off from 10 shoare they followed vs a while, and then went away discontented, to their fteeming.

We prosecuting our Voyage, were loth to come to anchor as yet, although the wind was contrarie, but still plyed to the Northward, vntill we came into 70. degrees 20. minutes: then we came to anchor in a faire Sound (neere the place Master *Danis* called *Lunden Cape*). The twentieth of May at evening, the people clying vs fled away in their Boates, getting on Rocks wooding and getting as vs, but after this night we saw them no more, leaving many Dogs running to and fro on the Land. Men and dogs;

At this place we staid two dayes, in which time weooke in fresh water and other necessities: here we had some dislike of the passage, because the Tydes are so small as not arising above eight or nine foot, and keepe no certaine course, but the nearest time of high water on the change 20 day is at a quarter of an hour past nine, and the Flood commeth from the South.

The two and twentieth day at a North Sonne, we set sail and plyed full Northward, the wind being right against vs as we stood off and on. Upon the fix and twentieth day in the forenoone, we found a small Land, about fix and twentie leagues from shoare, having all her Dead Whale. The next making our ship halt, we reefed the best meanes we could to get them, and with much toyle got a hundred and sixtie that evening. The next morning the Sea went very high and the wind arising, the Whale broke from vs, and we were forced to leave her and set sail, and having not stood past three or foure leagues North-westward, came to the Ice, then were tacked and stood to the shoareward, a fore forme enlied.

By the thirtieth day in the afternoone, we came faire by *Hope Sanderfon*, the farthest Land Master *Danis* was at, lying between 72. and 73. degrees; and that evening by a North Sonne we came to much Ice, which we put into, plying all the next day to get through it.

The first of June, we were cleere of the Ice before named, and not farre from shoare, the wind blowing very hard at North North-east, then we put in among idlers of the land, the people seeing vs fled away in all haste leaving their Tents behinde, and upon a small Rocks they hid two young Maides or Women. Our ship riding not farre off, we espied them, to whom our Master with some other of our companie went in the Boate, they making signes to be carried to the Land where their Tents were close adioyning. When they came thither, they found two old women more, the one very old, to our esteemment little lesse then fourecore, the other not so old. The next time we went on shoare, there was another Woman with a child at her back, who had hid her selfe among the Rocks, and the other had told her how well we had reefed them, in giving them pieces of Iron and fustlike, which they highly esteemed, in change thereof they gave vs Seales skinn, other riches they had none, save dead Seales, and fat of Seales, some of which fat or blubber afterward we carried aboard, the poore women were very diligent to carry it to the water side to put into our caskie, making shew that the men were over at the Mayne, and at an other small Land something more Eastward. Then making signes to them that we would then them our ship and let them where the men were: the foure youngest came into our Boate; when they were aboard they much wondred to see our ship and furniture: we gave them of our meat, which they talking would not eate. Then two of them were set on the Land, where they appointed the men to be; the other two were carried to their Tents againe. Those that went to take the men could not find them, but came as neere the ship as they could, and at evening we let them out to the other.

This place we called *Womans* Lands; it lyeth in the latitude of 72. degrees 45. minutes: here the Flood commeth from the Southward, at nept Tydes the water ariseth but fixe or seven foot, and a South South-east Moone maketh a full Sea. The Inhabitants very poore, living chiefly on the flesh of Seales, dried, which they eate raw, with the skinnies they cloath themselves, and also make coverings for their Tents and Boats which they dreffe very well. The Women in their apparell are different from the men, and are marked in the face with diuers blacke strokes or lines, the skin being siled with some barbe instrument when they are young, and blacke colour put therein, that by no means it will be gotten forth.

Concerning their Religion, I can little say: only they have a kinde of worship or adoration to the Sonne, which continually they will point unto and strike their hand on their breast, crying *Thous*; their dead they burie on the side of the Hills, where they lye (which is commonly on small Islands) making a pile of stones over them, yet not so close but that we might see the dead body, the aire being so piercing that it keepeth them from much stinking favour. So likewise I have seene their Dogs buried in the same manner. Religion. Burial of Men and Dogs. Upon

Men and dogs;

Dead Whale.

Hope Sanderfon

Tents, Men and Women

Womans Lands

The people dressed. Women.

Vpon the fourth day we set sayle from thence, hauing very faire weather, although the winde were contrary, and plyed to and fro betweene the Ice and the Land, being as it were a channell of fouen or eight leagues broad: then on the ninth day, being in the latitude of 74. degree 4. minutes, and much pestered with Ice, nere vnto three small Ilands, lying eight miles from thore, we came to anchor nere one of them.

These Ilands are vnto be frequented with people in the latter part of the year, as it seemed by the houses and places where the tents had stood: but this year as yet they were not come: here the tides are very small, especially the flood, which ariseth not above five or six foot, yet the ebbe runneth with an indifferent streame, the cause thereof (in mine opinion) is the great abundance of Snow, melting on the Land all this part of the year.

The tenth day we set sayle from thence, and stood through much Ice to the Westward, to try if that further from the thore, we might proceede: but this attempt was foone quailed, for the more Ice we went through, the thicker it was, till we could see no place to put in the Ships head.

Seeing, that as yet we could not proceede, we determined to stand in for the thore, there to abide some few dayes, till such time as the Ice were more wafted and gone (for we plainly saw that it consumed very fast) with this resolution we stood in, and came to anchor among many Ilands, in the latitude of 73. degrees 45. minutes. On the twelfth day at night here we continued two dayes without thore or signe of any people, till on the fifteenth day in the morning, about one a clocke, then came two and fortie of the Inhabitants in their Boares or Canoes, and gave vs Seale skinnies, and many peeces of the bone or home of the Sea Vnicorne, and shewed vs diuers peeces of Sea Mors teeth; making signes that to the Northward were many of them: in exchange thereof, we gave them small peeces of Iron, Glasse Beads, and such like: at foure feuell times the people came to vs, and at each time brought vs of the aforesaid commodities, by reason thereof we called this place *Horne Sound*.

Here we layed six dayes, and on the eighteenth day at night, we set sayle, hauing very little winde; and being at Sea, made the best way we could to the Northward, although the winde had bene contrary for the most part this month, but it was strange to see the Ice so much consumed in so little space, for now we might come to the three Ilands before named, and stand off to the Westward almost twenty leagues, without let of Ice, vntill we were more North (as to 74. degrees 30. minutes) then we put among much scattered Ice, and plyed to and fro all this month, still in the fight of thore, and many times fast in the Ice, yet every day we got something on our way, nothing worthy of note happening, but that at diuers times we saw of the filles with long hornes, many and often, which we call the Sea Vnicorne: and here to write particularly of the weather, it would be superfluous or needlesse, because it was so variable, few dayes without Snow, and often freezing, in so much, that on Midsummer day, our throwes ropes and sailies were so frozen, that we could scarce handle them; yet the cold is not so extreme, but it may well be endured.

The first of Iuly we were come into an open Sea, in the latitude of 75. degrees 40. minutes, which I now renewed our hope of a passage, and because the winde was contrary, we stood off twenty leagues from the thore, before we were the Ice, then began to melt in againe when we were nere the Land, we let fall an anchor to see what tyle went, but in that we found small comfort. Shortly after the winde came to the South-east, and blew very hard, with foule weather, thicke, and foggie: then we set sayle, and ran along by the Land: this was on the second day at night. The next morning we past by a faire Cape, or head land, which we called *Sir Dudley Digges Cape*, it is in the latitude of 76. degrees 35. minutes, and hath a small Iland cloe adioyning to it, the winde still increasing, we past by a faire Sound twelue leagues distant from the former Cape, hauing an Iland in the midst, which maketh two entrances. Vnder this Iland we came to anchor; and bad not rid pnt two hours, but our Ship droue, although we had two anchors at the ground, then were we forced to set sayle, and stand forth: this Sound we called *Whale Sound*: it is hath many Inlets or smaller Sound in it, and is a fit place for the killing of Whales.

The fourth day at one a clocke in the morning, the forme began againe at West and by South, so vehement, that it blew away our forecourse, and being not able to beare any sayle, we lay a drift: till about eight a clocke, then it cleared vp a little, and we saw our selues imbayed in a great Sound; then we set sayle and stood ouer to the South-east side, where in a little Coue or Bay we let fall an anchor, which we lost with cable and all, the winde blowing so extremely from the tops of the hills, that we could get no place to anchor in, but were forced to stand to and fro in the Sound, the bottome being all frozen ouer; toward two a clocke it began to be less winde, then we stood forth.

In this Sound we saw great numbers of Whales, therefore we called it *Whale Sound*, and doubtless if we had bene prouided for killing of them, we might haue strooke very many. It lyeth in the latitude of 77. degrees 30. minutes. All the fifth day it was very faire weather, and we kept along by the Land till eight a clock in the euening, by which time we were come to a great banke of Ice, it being backed with Land, which we seeing, determined to stand backe some eight leagues,

the fourth day at one a clocke in the morning, the forme began againe at West and by South, so vehement, that it blew away our forecourse, and being not able to beare any sayle, we lay a drift: till about eight a clocke, then it cleared vp a little, and we saw our selues imbayed in a great Sound; then we set sayle and stood ouer to the South-east side, where in a little Coue or Bay we let fall an anchor, which we lost with cable and all, the winde blowing so extremely from the tops of the hills, that we could get no place to anchor in, but were forced to stand to and fro in the Sound, the bottome being all frozen ouer; toward two a clocke it began to be less winde, then we stood forth.

In this Sound we saw great numbers of Whales, therefore we called it *Whale Sound*, and doubtless if we had bene prouided for killing of them, we might haue strooke very many. It lyeth in the latitude of 77. degrees 30. minutes. All the fifth day it was very faire weather, and we kept along by the Land till eight a clock in the euening, by which time we were come to a great banke of Ice, it being backed with Land, which we seeing, determined to stand backe some eight leagues,

leagues, to an Iland we called *Hackbus Ile*, it lyeth betweene two great Sounds, the one *Whale Sound*, and the other *Sir Thomas Smiths Sound*: this last runneth to the North of twenty eight degrees, and is admirable in one respect, because in it is the greatest variation or the Compass of any part of the World known: for by diuers good Observations I found it to be aboute eight or fifty six degrees varied to the Westward, so that a North-east and by East, is true North, and is of the rest. Also this Sound seemeth to be good for the killing of Whales, it being the greatest and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the winde and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

So we stood to the Westward in an open Sea, with a stiff gale of wind, all the next day and till the tenth day at one or two a clocke in the morning, at which time it fell calme and very foggie, and we were nere the Land in the entrance of a faire Sound, which we called *Alderman Bay Sound*. This afternoon being faire and cleere, we went our Boat to the thore, the ship being vnder sayle, and althoone as they were on thore, the wind began to blow; then they returned againe, declaring that they saw many Sea Morses by the thore among the Ice, and as farre as they were, they saw no signe of people, nor any good place to anchor in along the thore. Then hauing an easte gale of wind at East North-east, we ranne along by the thore, which now trendeth much South, and beginneth to flow like a Bay.

On the twelfth day we were open of another great Sound, lying in the Latitude of 74. degrees 20. minutes, and we called it *Sir Lame Lankers Sound*: here our hope of a passage began to be less every day then other, for from this Sound to the Southward, we had a ledge of Ice betweene the thore and vs, but cleare to the Sea ward, we kept close by this ledge of Ice till the fourteenth day in the afternoon, by which time we were in the latitude of 71. degrees 16. minutes, and plainly perceived the Land to the Southward of 70. degrees 30. minutes, then we hauing so much Ice round about vs, were forced to stand more Eastward, supposing to haue bene soone cleare, and to haue kept on the off side of the Ice, vntill we had come into 70. degrees, then we had stood in againe. But this proued quite contrary to our expectation: for we were forced to runne about threefoore leagues through very much Ice, and many times to fall, that we could go no wayes, although we kept our course due East; and when we had gotten into the open Sea, we kept so nere the Ice, that many times we had much adoe to get cleare, yet could not come nere the Land, till we came about 68. degrees, where indeede we saw the thore, but could not come to it by eight or nine leagues, for the great abundance of Ice. This was on the fourteenth and twentieth day of Iuly: then spent we three dayes more to see if conveniently we could come to anchor, to make trial of the tides, but the Ice led vs into the latitude of 65. degrees 40. minutes. Then we left off seeking to the West thore, because we were in the infract of *Cumberland Iles*, and should know no certaintie, and hope of passage could be none.

Now seeing that we had made an end of our discovery, and the years being too farre spent to goe for the bottome of the Bay, to search for deef Finnes; therefore we determined to goe for the Coast of *Greenland*, to see if we could get some refreshing for our men: *Master Hatters* and two more, hauing kept their Cabins about eight dayes (besides our Cooke *Richard Wynn*, which died the day before, being the twenty six of Iuly) and diuers more of our company so weak, that they could doe but little labour. So the winde fauouring vs, we came to anchor in the latitude of 65. degrees 45. minutes, at six a clocke in the euening, the eight and twentieth day, in a place called *Caskin Sound*.

The next day going on thore, on a little Iland we found great abundance of the herbe called *Scurvy Graffe*, which we boyled in Beere, and dranke thereof, wing it also in Sallets, with Sorrell and Oregan, which here groweth in abundance; by means hereof, and the blessing of God all our men within eight or nine dayes space were in perfect health, and so continued till our arrivall in *England*.

We rode in this place three dayes before any of the people came to vs; and then on the first of August, six of the Inhabitants in their *Canoes*, brought vs *Salmon Pease*, and such like, which was a great refreshment to our men: the next day following, the same faxe came againe, but after that we saw them no more vntill the first day, when we had wayed anchor, and were almost cleare of the harbour: then the same faxe and one more, brought vs of the like commodities, for which we gave them Glasse Beads, Counters and small peeces of Iron; which they doe as much esteeme, as we Christians doe Gold and Siluer.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Sir Thomas Smith Sound in 78. d. 49. v. of the compass and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the thore, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let fall an anchor, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing a company of Ilands ly off from the thore twelue or thirtene Leagues, we minded to goe to some of them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs by storm; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the wind and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

Plenty of Salmon.

In this Sound we saw such great Scales of Salmon (swimming to and fro, that it is much to be admired: here it floweth about eighteen foor water, and is at the highest on the change day at seven a clocke: it is a very good harbour, and easie to be knowne, having three high round hills like Pyramides close adjoining to the mouth of it, and that in the middle is lowest, and as long as this coast are many good harbours to be found, by reason that so many Islands lye off from the maine.

The six of August, by three a clocke in the afternoon, wee were cleere of this place, hauing a North North-west winde, and faire weather, and the Lord went vs a speedy and good passage homeward as could be wished: for in nineteene dayes after, wee saw Land on the coast of *Indiana*, it being on the five and twentieth day; the four and twentieth at noone we were two leagues from *Sully*, and the thirtieth day, in the morning wee anchored at *Dover* in the road, for the which and all other his blessings the Lord make vs thankful.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Discourse of the probability of a passage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with testimonies: and a briefe Treatise and Mappe by Master BRIGGES.

I Thought good to add somewhat to this Relation of Master *Bassin*, that learned-vilearned Mariner and Mathematician; who wanting art of words, fully rewarded himselfe to those indifferents, whereof I see you fee so euident fruits. His Mappes and Tables would have much illustrated his Voyages, if trouble, and cost, and his owne despaire of passage that way, had not made vs willing to content our selues with that Mappe following of that thrice learned (and in this argument three times thrice indutrious) Mathematician, Master *Briggs*, so famous for his readings in both Vniuersities, and this honourable Citie, that I make no further Voyage of Discouery to finde and follow the remote Passage and extent of his name. Master *Bassin* told mee, that they supposed the tyde from the North-west, about *Digger* Island was misreported, by making the hoare, eight for eleuen: and that he would, if he might get employment, search the passage from *Japan*, by the coast of *Assia*, or (as *qua datur*) any way hee could. But in the *Indies* he dyed, in the late Ormus buifenne, slain in fight with a shot, as hee was trying his Mathematicall proiects and conclusions.

Bassins death.

Now for that discouery of Sir *Thomas Button*, I haue solicited him for his Notes, and received of him gentle entertainment and kinde promises: but being then forced to stay in the Citie vpon necessary and vrgent affaires, he would at his returne home, seeke and impart them. Since I heare that weightie occasions haue detained him out of *England*, and I cannot communicate that which I would not receive: which if I doe receive, I purpose rather to giue thee out of due place, then not at all. Once he was very confident in conference with me of a passage that way, and said that he had therein satisfied his Maistie, who from his discouise in private, inferred the necessity thereof. And the maine argument was the course of the tyde: for wintering in *Pert Neysen* (see the following Mappe) hee found the tyde rising every twelue houres fifteene foor (whereas in the bottom of *Hudon* Bay it was but two foor, and in the bottom of *Fretum Davis* discouered by *Bassin*, but one) yea and a West winde equalled the nee tydes to the spring tydes; plainly arguing the neighbourhood of the Sea, which is on the West side of *America*. The Summer following hee found about the latitude of 60 degrees a strong race of a tide, running sometimes Eastward, sometimes Westward; whereupon *Iohannes Hubbard* in his plat, called that place *Hubbarts Hope*, as in the Map appeareth. Now if any make scruple, because this discouery was not pursued by Sir *Thomas Button*, let him consider, that being Prince *Henries* Seruant, and partly by him employed (whence I thinke hee named the Country *New Heles*) the untimely death of that Prince put all out of ioint; nor was hee so open, that others should haue the glory of his discouerie.

The King failed reaching the passage.

Hubbarts hope.

And if any man thinke that the passage is so farre, as the Maps vlt to expresse *America*, running out into the West: it is easily answered, that either of negligence, or ouer-busie diligence, Mapps by *Portugall* in the East, and *Spaniards* in the West, haue bene falsely protected. Hence do that fabulous trait of *Anian*, as before by *Francis Gaudes* testimonie and nauigation is euident: And hence the *Portugall* to bring in the *Moluccas*, to that moity of the world agreed vpon betwixt the *Spaniards* and them, are thought to haue much curtailed *Assia*, and the longitude of those Islands, giuing fewer degrees to them then is iust longitude is requisite. So the older Maps

of *America* make the Land from the *Mogellan* Straits to the South Sea, runne much West, when as they rather are constructed somewhat Easterly from the North. The like is iustly supposed of these false placing, *Quesada*, and I know not (nor they neither) what Countries they make in *America*, to run so farre North-westward, which Sir *Francis Drake* Voyage in that Sea (his *Negus* *Albion*, being little further Westward then *Aguaylen*) plainly euince to be otherwise. Yea the late Map of *California* found to be an Island, the Saues discourses in all the Countries Northwards and Westwards from *Virginia*: fame whereof filled my friend *Master Derner* with so much confidence, that heering of strange Ships which came thither for a kinde of Vre or earth, the men vining forkes in their diet, with Caldrons to dress their meate, &c. things nothing incredible to any parts of *America*, hee supposed them to come from the East neere to *China* or *Japan*, and therefore hee made a Voyage purposely to discouery: but crossed with diuers diffulties, hee returned to *Virginia*, frustrate of accomplishment that year, but fuller of confidence, as in a Letter from *Virginia* hee signified to me, where death ended that his designe soone after. But how often are the viall Charts rectified by experience in these Nauigations, in this worke recorded? Painters and Poets are not alwayes the best Oracles.

For further proofes of a passage about these parts into the West Sea (or South, as it is called from the first discouery thereof to the South, from the parts of *New Spaine*, whence it was first deliered by the *Spaniards*) there is mention of a *Portugall* (and taken in a Carriacke in Quene *Elizabeths* dayes, of glorious memory) confirming this opinion: Sir *Matthias Erasther* also from so to *Portugall* in *Guinea*, received intelligence of such a passage, hee saying hee had put it. The Pilot of *Lisbon* are said generally to acknowledge such a thing, and the Aymall of *D. Garcia Geoffrey Louco* of *Ciut-Rod*, in the time of *Charles* the fifth, is reported by the Coast of *Bacalan* and *Las brador*, to haue gone to the *Moluccas*. *Felso de Coronado* writ to the Emperour, that at *Cibola* hee was one hundred and fiftie leagues from the South Sea, and a little more from the North. *Antonio de Herrera*, the Kings *Cronycle* *Manus* (part of whose worke followeth) maketh with vs also, in the distances of places by him described. But to produce some authority more full, I haue here presented *Thomas Cowles* a Mariner, and Master *Michael Locky* Merchant, and after them a little Treatise ascribed to Master *Briggs*, together with his Map. And if any thinke that the *Spaniards* or *Portugall* would haue discouered such a passage: these will answer, that it was not for their profit to expose their East or West *Indies* to English, Dutch, or others, whom they would not haue flatters in those remote treasuries by no means a passage. First, *Thomas Cowles* saureth thus much.

Some of our Merchants are said not to be so willing for the causes with this discouerie.

I Thomas Cowles of *Bolmesfer*, in the Countie of *Somerset*, Mariner, doe acknowledge, that six yeares past, at my being at *Lisbon*, in the Kingdome of *Portugall*, I did heare one *Martin Chacke*, a *Portugall* of *Lisbon*, made a Booke of his owne making, which hee had for out six yeares before that time, in Print, in the *Portugall* tongue, declaring that the said *Martin Chacke* had found, twelue yeares now past, a way from the *Portugall* Indies, through a gulfe of the New found Land, which hee thought to be in 50. degrees of the elevation of the North Pole. By means that hee being in the said *Indies*, with four other Shippes of great burden, and hee himselfe in a small Shippe of fiftie foure tonnes, was driven from the company of the other three Shippes, which were fifty faine, after which, hee past along by a great number of Islands, which were in the gulfe of the said New found Land. And after hee saw that the gulfe, hee saw no more signs of any other Land, until hee fell with the Northern part of *Iceland*, and from thence hee took his course homeward, and by that meanes hee came to *Lisbon* foure or five weekes before the other three Shippes of his company that hee was separated from, as hee said. And since the same time, I could neuer see any of those Booke, because the King commanded them to be called in, and no more of them to be printed, lest in time it would be to their hindrance. In witness whereof I set to my hand and make, the ninth of April. Anno 1579.

50

A Note made by me MICHAEL LOCK the elder, touching the Strait of Sea, commonly called *Fretum Anian*, in the South Sea, through the North-west passage of *Meta incognita*.

When I was at *France*, in April 1596, happily arrived there an old man, about threescore yeares of age, called commonly *Iuan de Fuca* but named properly *Apollonius Valerianus*, of Nation a *Greeke*, borne in the Hand *Cephalonia*, of profession a Mariner, and an ancient Pilot of Shippes. This man being come lately out of *Spain*, arrived first at *Ligorno*, and went thence to *Florence* in *Italy*, where hee found one *Iohn Drogula*, an Englishman, a famous Mariner, ready comming for *Venice*, to be Pilot of a *Venetian* Ship, named *Rafaela* for *England*, in whose company they came both together to *Venice*. And *Iohn Drogula* being well acquainted with me, before, hee gaue me knowledge of this *Greeke* Pilot, and brought him to my speech: and in so doing

talk and conference between us, in presence of John Douglas: this Greeke Pilot declared in the Italian and Spanish languages, thus much in effect as followeth.

First he said, that he had bin in the West Indies of Spaine by the space of fortie yeeres, and had sailed so and from many places thereof, as Mariner and Pilot, in the service of the Spaniards.

Also he said, that he was in the Spanish Shippe, which in returning from the Ilands, *Philippinas* and *China*, towards *Nova Spania*, was robbed and taken at the Cape *California*, by Captaine *Candido Englishman*, whereby he lost fixtie thousand Duckets, of his owne goods.

Also he said, that he was Pilot of three small ships which the Viceroy of *Mexico* sent from *Mexico* armed with one hundred men, Soldiers, under a Captain, *Spaniard*, to discover the Straits of *Anian*, along the coast of the South-Sea, and to fortifie in that Straite, to resist the passage and proceedings of the English Nation, which were feared to passe through those Straits into the South Sea. And that by reason of a mutinie which happened among the Soldiers, for the Sodomie of their Captaine, that Voyage was overthrowne, and the Ships returned backe from *California* coast to *Nova Spania*, without any effect of thing done in that Voyage. And that after their returne, the Captaine was at *Mexico* punished by iustice.

Also he said, that shortly after the said Voyage was so ill ended, the said Viceroy of *Mexico*, sent him out againe Anno 1592, with a small *Caravella*, and a Pinace, armed with Manners ordnance, to follow the said Voyage, for discovery of the same Straits of *Anian*, and the passage thereof into the Sea which they call the North Sea, which is our North-west Sea. And that he followed his course in that Voyage West and North-west in the South Sea, all alongst the coast of *Nova Spania*, and *California*, and the *Indies*, now called North *America* (all which Voyage he figured to me in a great Map, and a Sea-card of mine owne, which I laid before him) until he came to the Latitude of fortie seven degrees, and that there finding that the Land tended North and North-east, with a broad Ilet of Sea, betweene 47 and 48 degrees of Latitude: hee entered thereupon, laying therein more then twentie dayes, and found that Land trending still sometime North-west and North-east, and North, and also East and South-eastward, and very much broader Sea then was at the said entrance, and that hee passed by divers Ilands in that lying. And that at the entrance of this said Strait, there is on the North-west coast thereof, a great Headland or Land, with an exceeding high Pinacle, or spired Rocke, like a pillar 30 thereupon.

Also he said, that he went on Land in divers places, and that hee saw some people on Land, clad in Beasts skins: and that the Land is very fruitful, and rich of gold, Silvers, Pearle, and other things, like *Nova Spania*.

And also he said, that he being entered thus farre into the said Strait, and being come into the North Sea already, and finding the Sea wide enough every where, and to be about thirtie or fortie leagues wide in the mouth of the Straits, where hee entered: he thought he had now well discharged his office, and done the thing which he was first to doe: and that hee not being armed to resist the force of the Salvage people that might happen, hee therefore let sayle and returned homewards againe towards *Nova Spania*, where hee arrived at *Acapulco*, Anno 1602. he was rewarded greatly of the Viceroy, for this service done in this said Voyage.

Also he said, that after his coming to *Mexico*, hee was greatly welcommed by the Viceroy, and had great promises of great reward, but that having lived there two yeares time, and obtained nothing to his content, the Viceroy told him, that hee should be rewarded in *Spaine* of the King himselfe very greatly, and willed him therefore to goe into *Spaine*, which Voyage hee did performe.

Also he said, that when he was come into *Spaine*, hee was greatly welcommed there at the Kings Court, in wordes after the Spanish manner, but after long time of suite there also, hee could not get any reward there neither to his content. And that therefore at the length he stole away out of *Spaine*, and came into *Italy*, to goe home againe and live among his owne Kindred and Countreymen, he being very old.

Also he said, that hee thought the cause of his ill reward had of the Spaniards, to bee for that they did not understand very well, that the English Nation had now given over all their voyages for discovery of the North-west passage, wherefore they used not fear them any more to come that way into the South Sea, and therefore they needed not his service therein any more.

Also he said, that in regard of this ill reward had of the Spaniards, and understanding of the noble minde of the Queene of England, and of her waies maintayned so valiantly against the Spaniards, and hoping that her Maiestie would doe him iustice for his goods-lost by Captaine *Candido*, he would be content to goe into England, and to suffer her Maiestie in that voyage for the discovery perfectly of the North-west passage into the South Sea, and would put his life into her Maiesties hands to performe the same, if life would furnish him with onely one ship of fortie tunnes burden and a Pinacle, and that he would performe it in this dayes time, from one end to the other of the Straights. And he willed me to write into England.

And vpon this conference had twice with the said Greeke Pilot, I did write threeth accordingly into England, vnto the right honourable the old Lord Treasurer *Cecil*, and to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and to Master *Richard Hakluyt*, that famous Cosmographer, certifying them thereof by my Letters. And in the behalfe of the said Greeke Pilot, I prayed them to disburse one hundred pounds of mooney, to bring him into England with my selfe, for that my owne purse would not stretch so wide at that time. And I had answer hereof by Letters of friends, that this action was very well liked, and greatly desired in England to bee effected: but the money was not ready, and therefore this action dyed at that time, though the said Greeke Pilot perchance hith till this day at home in his owne Countrey in *Cefalonia*, towards the which place he went from me within a fortnight after this conference had at Venice.

And in the meane time, while I followed my owne businesse in Venice, being in Law suite against the Companie of Merchants of Turkey, and Sir *Iohn Spencer* their Gouverneur in *London*, to recover my pension due for my office of being their Counsell at *Allegro* in Turkey, which they held from me wrongfully. And when I was (as I thought) in a readinesse to returne home into England, for that it pleased the Lords of her Maiesties honourable Prisme Councill in England, to looke into this Cause of my Law suit for my reliefe: I thought that I should be able of my owne purse to take with me into England the said Greeke Pilot. And therefore I wrote vnto him from Venice a Letter, dated in Iuly 1596, which is copied here-vnder.

Al Magro. Signor. Capitan IVAN DE FVCA Piloto de Indias, amigo mio charo. en Zefalonia.

Muy honrado Senor, siendo yo para buelverme en Inglaterra dentro de pocos meses, y acordandome de lo tratado entre my y V. M. en Venecia, sobre el viage de las Indias, me ha parecido bien de servir esta carta a V. M. porque si tengo animo de andar con miyo, podria escrivirle presto, en que manera querria confesarse. T podria tambien vuestros carti, en esta mi legacion que faze al Zante (sin ballas: otra cosa para meter) con el fidejussorio que digo, en casa del Senor Eleazar, llamado Merceder Ingles, al trayecto de San Thomas en Venecia. T Dios guarde la persona de V. M. Fecha en Venecia al primer dia de Julio, 1596. anno.

Amigo de V. M. Michael Lok Ingles.

And I sent the said Letter from Venice to Zante, in the ship *Cherubin*. And shortly after I sent a copie thereof in the ship *Myson*. And also a third copie thereof by *Mance Orlando Paron* de *Nave Venetian*. And vnto my said Letters he wrote me answer to Venice by one Letter which came not to my hands. And also by another Letter which came to my hands, which is copied here-vnder.

Al Illmo. Signor. MICHAEL LOCH Ingles, in casa del Signor. L. ASOR Merca. der Ingles, al trayecto de San Thomas en Venecia.

Muy Illustre Signor. la carta de V. M. recibi a 20. dia del Mes de Setiembre, por loqual voso Loch V. M. me manda, si tengo animo de cumplir Lochte tengo prometido a V. M. y no solo yo, mas tengo veinte hombres para llevar con miyo, porque son hombres valientes; y assi essi escriviendo, por otra carta che anise a V. M. para que me embiasse los dineros che tengo ofrecido a V. M. Porque bien faze V. M. como lo vine poner, porque me glexo Capitan Candis mas de sessenta mille ducados, como V. M. bien faze: embiandome lo dicho, ire a servir a V. M. con todos mis companeros. I no faze otra cosa mas de la voluntad e carta de V. M. I con tanto nostro Signor. Dios guarde la Illustre persona de V. M. muchos annos. De Cefalonia a 24. de Setiembre del 1596.

Amigo & feruor de V. M.

Iuan Fucas.

And the said Letter came to my hands in Venice, the 16. day of November, 1596. but my Law suite with the Companie of Turkey was not yet ended, by reason of Sir *Iohn Spencers* suite made in England at the Queenes Court to the contrarie, seeking onely to haue his money discharged which I had attached in Venice for my said pension, and thereby my owne purse was not yet ready for the Greeke Pilot.

And neuerthelesse, hoping that my said suite would have shortly a good end; I wrote another Letter to the said Greeke Pilot from Venice, dated the 30. of November, 1596. which came not to his hands. And also another Letter, dated the 24. of Iannurie, 1596. which came to his hands. And thereof he wrote me answer, dated the 28. of May, 1597, which I received the first of August

AAAA 3

1597.

Captaine Candido

Land trending in 47. degrees

The mouth of the Straights where the entered 30 or 40. leagues broad.

The first light hee discovered in 30 dayes

The Ship *Santa Anna*,
doth.

The Straights
of *Nova Spatia*
thirty daies
journey in the
Straights.

1597. by *Thomas Norden* an *English* Merchant yet living in *London*, wherein he promised still to goe with me unto *England*, to performe the said voyage for discouerie of the North-west passage into the South Sea, if I would lend him money for his charges according to his former writing, without the which money, he said he could not goe, for that he said he was rindone utterly, when he was in the Ship *Santa Anna*, which came from *China*, and was robbed at *California*. And yet againe afterward I wrote him another Letter from *Venice*, whereunto he wrote me answere, by a Letter written in his *Greek* language, dated the 20. of October, 1598. the which I have still by me; wherein he promitteth still to goe with me into *England*, and performe the said voyage of discouerie of the North-west passage into the South Sea by the said Straights, which he calleth the Straights of *Nova Spatia*, which he saith is but thirty daies voyage in the Straights, if I will lend him the money formerly written for his charges. The which money I could not yet send him, for that I had not yet recovered my pension owing mee by the Companie of *Turke* aforesaid. And so of long time I stayed from any further proceeding with him in this matter. And yet lastly, when I my selfe was at *Zante*, in the month of June 1602. minding to passe from thence for *England* by Sea, for that I had then recovered a little money from the Companie of *Turke*, by an order of the Lords of the Prinsse Counsell of *England*, I wrote another Letter to this *Greek* Pilot to *Cefalonia*, and required him to come to me to *Zante*, and goe with mee into *England*, but I had none answere thereof from him, for that as I heard afterward at *Zante*, he was then dead, or very likely to die of great sicknesse. Whereupon I returned my selfe by Sea from *Zante* to *Venice*, and from thence I went by land through *France* into *England*, whereto I arrived at Christmas, An. 1602. lastely, I thank God, after my absence from thence ten yeeres time, with great troubles had the Companie of *Turke* balliffe, which hath cost me a great summe of money, for the which I am not yet satisfied of them.

A Treatise of the North-west passage to the South Sea, through the Continent of Virginia, and by Fretum Hudson.

THE noble plantation of *Virginia* hath some very excellent prerogatives above many other famous Kingdomes, namely, the temperature of the aire, the fruitfulness of the soile, and the commodiousness of situation.

The aire is healthfull and free both from immoderate heate, and from extreme cold; so that both the Inhabitants and their Cattell doe prosper exceedingly in stature and strength, and all Plants brought from any other remote climate, doe there grow and fructifie in as good or better manner, then in the soile from whence they came. Which though it doe manifestly proue the fruitfulness of the soile, yielding all kinds of Graine or Plants committed vnto it, with a rich and plentiful increase; yet cannot the fatnesse of the earth alone produce such excellent effects, unless the temperature of the aire be likewise so favourable, that those tender sprouts which the earth doth abundantly bring forth, may be cherished with moderate heate and seasonable moisture, and freed both from scorching drought, and nipping frost.

Theſe blessings are so much the more to be esteemed, because they are bestowed vpon a place situated so conveniently, and at so good a distance both from *Europe*, and the *West Indies*, that for the mutuall commerce betwixt these great and most rich parts of the habitable world, there cannot bee deſired any place more convenient for the succour and refreshing of those that trade from hence thither: whether they be of our owne Nation, or of our Neighbours and Friends, the multitude of great and navigable Rivers, and of late and spacious Harbours, as it were inviting all Nations to entertaine mutuall friendship, and to participate of those blessings which God out of the abundance of his rich Treasures, hath so graciously bestowed some vpon these parts of *Europe*, and others no lesse desired vpon those poore people: which might still have remayned in their old barbarous ignorance, without knowledge of their owne miserie, or of Gods infinite goodness and mercy; if it had not pleased God thus graciously both to draw vs thither with desire of such wealth as those fruitful Countries afford, and also to grant vs so easie, certaine, and safe a meanes to goe vnto them: which passage is in mine opinion made much more secure and easie by the commodious Harbours and refreshing which *Virginia* doth reach out vnto vs. The coasts of *Florida* to the West, being not so barbarous; and of *New England* to the East, somewhat more out of the way, amongst so many Flats and small Harbours not so safe. Neither is the commodiousness of *Virginia*'s situation only in respect of this *West Atlanticke* Ocean, but also in respect of the *Indian Ocean*, which we commonly call the *South Sea*, which lyeth on the West and North-west side of *Virginia*, on the other side of the Mountaines beyond our Falls, and openeth a free and faire passage, not onely to *China*, *Japan*, and the *Moluccas*; but also to *New Spaine*, *Peru*, *Cekil*, and those rich Countries of *Terra Australis*, not as yet fully discovered. For the Sea wherein Master *Hudson* did winter, which was first discovered by him, and is therefore now called *Fretum Hudson*, doth stretch so farre towards the West, that it lyeth as farre Westward



ward as the Cape of Florida: So that from the Falls above *Henrico* Citie, if we shape our journey towards the North-west, following the Rivers towards the head, we shall undoubtedly come to the Mountaines, which as they send diuers great Rivers Southward into our Bay of *Chesapeake*, so likewise doe they send others from their further side North-westward into that Bay where *Hudson* did winter. For so wee see in our owne Countrey, from the ridge of Mountaines continued from *Dorchester* into *Seotland*, doe issue many great Rivers on both sides into the East *German Ocean*, and into the Westerne *Irish Seas*; in like sort from the Alpes of *Switzerland* and the *Grizans*, doe runne the *Danube* Eastward into *Pontus Euxinus*, the *Rhene* into the North *German Ocean*, the *Rhose* West into the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the *Po* South into the *Adriatick* Sea. Thus Bay where *Hudson* did winter, stretcheth it selfe Southward into 49. degrees, and cannot be in probability so farre distant from the Falls as two hundred leagues; part of the way lying by the Rivers side towards the Mountaines from whence it springeth; and the other part on the other side cannot want Rivers likewise, which will conduct vs all the way, and I hope carry vs and our piousions a good part of it. Besides that Bay, it is not vnlikely that the Westerne Sea in some other Creeke or River commeth much neerer then that place: For the place where *Sir Thomas Button* did winter, lying more Westwardly then *Master Hudson* Bay by one hundred and ninetie leagues in the same Sea, doth extend it selfe very neere as farre towards the west as the Cape of *California*, which is now found to bee an Island stretching it selfe from 22. degrees to 42. and lying almost directly North and South; as may appeare in a Map of that Island which I haue seene here in *London*, brought out of *Holland*; where the Sea vpon the North-west part may very probably come much neerer then some doe imagine: who giuing too much credit to our vniuersall Globes and Maps, doe dreame of a large Continent extending it selfe farre Westward to the imagined Streight of *Anian*, where are seated (as they fable) the large Kingdomes of *Zebela* and *Oziris*, hauing great and populous Cities of ciuill people; whose houses are said to bee nine stories high, and to haue some pillars of *Tyrus* wood. Which relations are cunningly set downe by some vpon yet purpose to put vs out of the right way, and to discourage such as otherwise might be desirous to search a passage by the way aforesaid into those Seas.

Gerardus Mercator, a very industrious and excellent Geographer, was abused by a Map sent vnto him, of foure *Euripi* meeting about the North Pole; which now are found to bee all turned into a mayne Ice Sea. One demonstration of the craftie fallhood of these vniuersall Maps is this, that Cape *Mendocino* is set in them West North-west, distant from the South Cape of *California*, about fouenteene hundred leagues, whereas *Francis Drake* that was employed in those discoveries by the Vice-roy of *New Spaine*, doth in *Hugo Lincolnbotten* his booke set downe their distance to be only five hundred leagues.

Besides this, in the place where *Sir Thomas Button* did winter in 57. degrees of latitude, the constant great Tydes euery twelue houres, and the increase of those Tydes whensoever any strong Westerne winde did blow, doe strongly perswade vs that the mayne Westerne Ocean is not farre from thence; which was much confirmed vnto them the Summer following; when sailing directly North from that place where they wintered, about the latitude of 60. degrees, they were crossed by a strong Current running sometimes Eastward, sometimes Westward: So that if we finde either *Hudson* Bay, or any Sea more neerer vnto the West, we may ascribe our hopes that from thence we may with great ease passe to any part of the East *Indies*: And that as the World is very much beholding to that famous *Columbus* for that hee first discovered vnto vs the West *Indies*; and to the *Portugall* for the finding out the ordinarie and as yet the best way that is knowne to the East *Indies*, by Cape *Bona Speranza*: So may they and all the world be in this beholding to vs in opening a new and large passage, both much neerer, safer, and farre more wholesome and temperate through the Continent of *Virginia*, and by *Fretum Hudson*, to all those rich Countreies bordering vpon the South Sea, in the East and West *Indies*. And this hope that the South Sea may easily from *Virginia* be discovered our Land, is much confirmed by the constant report of the Sauiages, not onely of *Virginia*, but also of *Florida* and *Canada*; which dwelling far remote one from another, and all agreeing in the report of a large Sea to the Westward, where they describe great ships not vnlike to ours, with other circumstances, doe giue vs very great probability (if not full assurance) that our endeours this way shall by Gods blessing haue a prosperous and happy successe, to the encrease of his Kingdome and Glorie amongst these poore ignorant *Heathen* people, the publike good of all the *Christian* world, the neuer-dying honour of our most gracious Soueraigne, the vniuersall benefit of our Nation, and the admirable and speedie increase and aduancement of that most noble and hopeful Plantation of *Virginia*; for the good successe whereof all good men with mee, I doubt not, will powre out their prayers to Almighty God.

H. B.



VOYAGES AND TRAVELS TO AND IN THE NEW WORLD, CALLED

AMERICA, RELATIONS OF THEIR PAGAN ANTIQVITIES AND OF THE REGIONS AND PLANTATIONS IN THE NORTH AND SOUTH Parts thereof, and of the Seas and Islands adjacent.

THE FIFTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

A Description of the West Indies, by ANTONIO DE HER-
NANDEZ his Maiesties Chiefe Chronicker of the Indies,
and his Chronicker of Castile.

To the Licentiate PAVO DE VEGARA, Prefident of the Royall and
Supreme Council of the Indies.



The Licentiate Iohn of Obando, Predecessor of your Lordship (to
whose care the Office of chief Chronicker of the Indies was intru-
sted, for writing with greater authority, foundation, and truth,
the Acts of the Castellians in the New World, and to see and examine
that which the other Chronickers should write (for I finde that
almost in all that is written by them could be given, for ever much
science, what could be said, this is now done) his use of great diligence
in gathering the most certain Relations; that were found as well in
the Indies, as in Spaine, of that which happened in the Disorders
of these Regiones, the foundations of these Townes and Castles of
the people. And many years being past after his death, without making
any beginning of this History, your Lordship being provided for Prefi-
dent of the Royall and Supreme Council of the Indies, knowing how much it behoved, that deeds so worthy

of the Royall and Supreme Council of the Indies, should be written in such a
manner, as to be in every many places vnderstandable. But having more to write for once than many hands, I rather cho-
se to amend this, as I could, than to translate it anew. I have seen it also in French. The Latin is exceeding full in some numbers, as
1000, for 10000, 100000, &c. which I note for their times which reads that and buyes not the Spanish I have not corrected this
all these double errors (which Relations) because it is a little contrarious to the Spanish Indian Customers, perceiving that
Don Francisco, Colon, Cortes, Ojeda, and Guzmanes Spiritual and Temporall in the Indies, this Author hath written
of the Decades of the Spanish Acts in the West Indies, which give great light to those parts, but would be too long for this Work.

* I found this
Work transla-
ted in M. Ma-
jors Papers,
but I can cer-
tainly call it Ex-
tra, it had
so much of the
Spanish style,
in the old and
verbal affec-
tion and obicu-
rity. I have
examined it
with the Span-
ish Original,
and compared
it also with the
Latin Transla-
tion, with great
pains for my
greater plea-
sure & profit,
correcting and
illustrating the
phrase and
sense; being
before very

Ramusio was
not so much
taxed for
being doct
but blame
the fol
of Spani
Authors which
are more curi
ous to let
downe the
names, &c. of
those which
have there
done any thing
through but re
bellions, then
the description
of the bea
sties, fowls,
plants, Earth,
Heavens, &c.
in the Indies:
for which hee
there com
mends. Outside.

Chap. 1.
Of the bounds
and division
of the West
Indies.

I The Spaniards
have surprised
all Nations of
the World in
Navigation of
high built
ships. Remem
ber that a Span
iard kept a
Palis.

Palis, is to
say flames, or
sticks.

m The Spa
niards did not,
or would not,
know any Pal
lis.

n How the de
grees of longi
tude are rec
orded.

of memorie should no longer be buried, and that they should be written by a Royall Chronicler (seeing so much from the great of History, that it exceeds by much the Pillars, as the fables, the fables, against the opinion of a moderne writer.) Providing all the means necessary with liberality and diligence, have beene the more and more improved, following the opinion of St. Augustine, that the History, and the Description thereof, should both come to the present estate. And because it hath bene of last importance to honour the Author, announcing him to goe forward with so great a labour, conference, by which it appeared the making mestree of their Father's, and Professors with their Names and Country, all that hath bene possible, against the barbarous and most vnusall opinion of Iohn Baptista Ramusio, in his *Tractate in the third Volume of the Navigations*, where hee saith to be a vaine thing, and ridiculous, that the Spanish Authors should take pains in writing the names and Country of those which served in the matters of the Indies. Wherein hee bereth the wrongs of the same conceits of the glorious deeds of these Catholike Kings, and of the Castilian Nations, seeing the Chronicles doe seeme to honour the good, and to reprove the euill, for an example of those to come; which could not be obtained with the opinion of this Ramusio, whom the saying of Cato against the Grecians doeth fit. But the opinion of your Lordship hath bene according to your prudence and valour, of the which as it is, there will be a perpetual memorie, and for that which this Nation is indebted unto you for the same, you shall bee acknowledged of it eternally. God keepe your Lordship, from Vallyadolid the fifteenth of October 1601.

The compass of the Earth is 360 degrees, which being reduced to leagues of Castile are 6300. and by the compass of the Earth is understood the Sea together with it, which two Elements make the Globe; whose upper face in part is Earth, and in part is Sea: The Ancients diuided the Earth in three parts, and gave to every one his name. The first they called *Europe*, more celebrated then any of the other. The second *Asia*, which is greater then the rest, and containeth the great Kingdome of *China*. The third *Africa* And men being in a supposition that the World contained no more then was rehearsed, not contenting themselves with it, entered in the Art of Navigating, and in the invention of ships of high building, fitting them in such order that they might abide the waves of the Sea, & in this Art the Spaniards haue surpassed all the Nations of the World. For whilst there reigned Ferdinand in Castile and in Lyon, the famous Kings Catholike Ferdinand the Fifth, and Isabella a most wise, prudent, and most pious Queen; and Don Iohn the Second, called the *Pellican*, reigned in Portugal, (see that euer will be worthy of memory) Don Christopher Colom, first Admiral of the Indies, having liued many yeeres married in Spain; with the counsell of Martin of Bohemia, a Portugall borne in the land of *Foyat*, a famous Astrologian; and especially a Iudicarie, and of others with whom he communicated it, gave a beginning to the Discouery of that which at this day is counted the fourth part of the World, and the greatest of them all, and taking his course toward the Summe setting, going from *Padas* a Village of the Countie of *Beuenda*, in the Coast of *Andalusia*, he sailed so much by the Ocean, that hee found this great Land, which the Equinoctial Line cutteth in the middle, and it goeth so farre toward the South, that it reacheth to fiftie two degrees and an halfe, and goeth so high to the North, that it hides it selfe vnder the Pole Arctick, without = knowing any end.

The greatness of this fourth part hath set the people in great admiration, whose description shall here be handled, vnder the name of *Islands*, and firme Land of the Ocean Sea, because they are compassed with this Sea, and placed to the West, and are commonly called, the *West Indies*, and the *New World*, and comprehended within the limits of the *Kings of Castile and of Lyon*. Which is an Hemisphere, and halfe of the World, of 180. degrees, beginning to reckon from Meridian Circle, which passeth by thirte nine, or by fortie degrees of longitude, Occidental from the Meridian of *Toledo*, through the mouth of the River *Magnum*, and to the Oriental, through the Citie of *Malacca*, in sort, that at twentie leagues lying for a degree, these bounds haue from the one part to the other 3900. Castilian leagues, euey one of 3000. paces, of five foot of a Castilian yard, which men say are fixtie Italian milles, from the Orient to the Occident, which the Sea-men doe call East and West. And this account of twentie leagues to a degree, is according to *Ptoleme*, and to the opinion of many curious men. It hath seemed to others that the miles of euey degree are fiftentie, and that they make no more then seuentene leagues and an halfe of *Castile*, which is held for the truest account.

The degrees of longitude, which are those that are reckoned by the Equinoctiall, which goeth from East to West, through the middle of the Orbe, and Globe of the Earth, haue not bene able to be taken well, because there is no fixed fige in the Heauen. Degrees of latitude are those which are taken, and reckoned from the Pole which fall out certayne, because it is a fixed

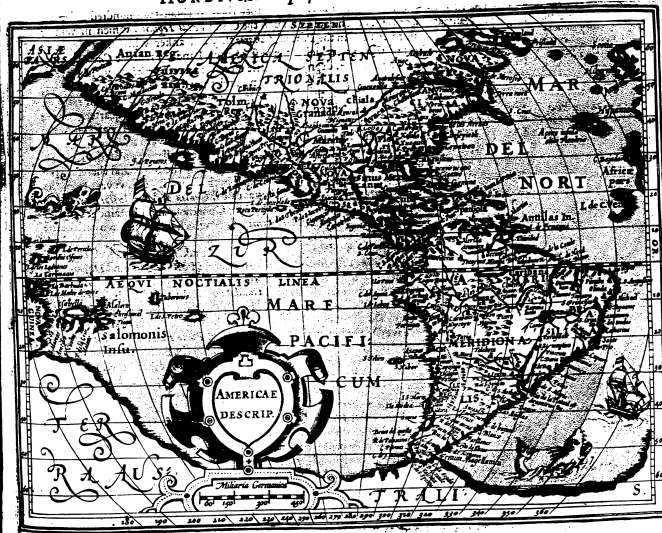
fixed point, which is the marke that is taken, by the which it shall be shewed in this description.

There is discouered, and naugated from the North to the South, from 60. degrees of Septentrion, and altitude, vnto fiftie three Austral, which are 1977. leagues of ground, which hath in breadth, at the broadest 1300. and thence downe towards vnto righte line, which is the narrowest by *New*, the *bre de Dios*, or *Portobelo*, vnto *Panama*, whereby Nature diuided this Land, leaving almost the halfe of it to the North, and the rest to the South, which are the two parts of these bounds. The third, is the *Islands* and firme Land, that lye to the East of *Malacca*, where through passeth the Line of the partition, betwene the two Crownes of *Castile* and *Portugall*, the which although they are part of the East India, they are named of the West in respect of *Castile*, as shall bee seen in the general Map that followeth.

And because the Discouerie of all these Regions, from whence so great Riches haue bene brought to these Kingdomes, is due vnto the Loadstone, I will set downe here a wonderful effect of his, discouered by Don Antonio Officio, a Gentleman of *Valladolid*, and it is, that it doth communicate to the Iron, more attractive vertue then naturally it hath of it selfe; seeing that applying an Iron to the part of the stone that hath most force, much more weight will bee ray-fied with the Iron, then with the stone it selfe; so it bee ioyned with it, in sort that to a Loadstone, that weigheth no more then two pound one quarter, and hath no naturall vertue for to lift more then fixe ounces weight, it made the Iron in my presence to lift foureteen pound of 1. lift more then fixe ounces weight, not the Loadstone of *Spain*, a thing that causeth the Philosophers to wonder much vpon.

The Author had here inserted a Table or General Map of America; the defect of which wee haue supplied with this farre more complee of Hondius.

HONDIVS, his Map of AMERICA.



Chap. 2.
Of the Naviga-
tion of the
Indies.

How many
Navigations
there be to
these Indies.

Difficultie in
going out of
the Barre of
Saint Iago.
In what times
these Naviga-
tions are to be
made.
Months.

The voyage of
the Fleets till
they come to
the place where
they goe.

What thing
the Brises are.

They take wa-
ter already in
the Ile of Gu-
adalupe, where
the Counties
are divided.

Which is the
best Naviga-
on from that
Cape of S. An-
tonio to S. Iago
de Ulva.

The Ocean that is toward the East, is called the *North Sea*, and that which falleth to the West, *Mar del Sur*, or the *South Sea*: this washeth *Nova Hispania* and *Terra*: that washeth those Regions which are situated on the South coast of *Brasil* toward the *Magellan* Strait: and especially the North coast from *Brasile* toward *Casile*, and other *Septentrional* parts. These two *Vall Seas* are divided into other lesser Seas and Gulles, and are sayled by four principal Navigations. The first and most ancient, from *Casile* to *Terra firme*, and to *Nova Hispania*. The second, from *Casile* to the River of *Plate*, and the Strait of *Magellan*. The third, from the coast of *Nova Hispania* to *Guatemala*, and *Panama*, to *Pern*, *Chili*, and the Strait. And the last, and newest, from *Nova Hispania* to the lands of the West, and traffick of *Colum*, as it is seen in the Table preceding.

The first Navigation, because it is most used, called *Carrera de las Indias*, *The course of the Indies*, is divided in two, one to the port of *Saint Iohn* of *Ulva* in *Nova Hispania*, whither from *Spain* is sayled about one thousand and seven hundred leagues in two months and an half: and another to *Nombro de Dios*, and now to *Porto bello*, which is in the Kingdom which they call *Terra firme*, of one thousand and four hundred leagues in two months large, and both goe by one course, till they come to the lands of the North Sea from *Saint Lucar* of *Barrameda*, whence yet cannot take Sea without a Pilot skillful in the Channell, a fit wind and spring Tyder, and light of the day, or lights, for to see the marks of the Barre.

The Times for to begin these Navigations, are divers. For *Nova Hispania*, the winter being past, from the beginning of April unto the end of May, and not after, that they may not go to the lands of the North Sea after August, when the North winds begin to reigne, and the *Praecomes* doe begin, which are stormes and great gulls arising of contrarie winds. And to *Terra firme*, the Navigation is before the entering of the Winter, in all August and September, that they may come to *Porto bello* from November forward, when by the beginning of the North winds that Coast is already least diseased, and more healthfull.

From *Saint Lucar* they goe to the *Canaries*, whither there is about two hundred and fiftie leagues of Navigation, of eight or ten dayes, through the Gulfe *de las Tetinas*, which in winter is very dangerous for stormes: and in the Port of *Campo* they cast anchor when they thinke it good, or else in the Port of *Gomera*, which is the best of those lands. From the *Canaries* they goe to *Defcelda*, which stands in 15. degrees and little more; and to *Dominica*, whither they make seven hundred leagues, through the great Ocean, and they stay five and twentie dayes, whereby they cannot returne, because the Brises are ordinarie, and contrarie at their returne. The Brises are winds which comprehend all the Easterne winds with all their quarters, and are so ordinarie and firme, because the swift motion of the *Pris Mouer*, doo carry after him the Element of the Aire, at the other *superior* Orb: and so the effectfull motion of the Aire carrieth after him all the vapours and exhalations that doe arise from the Sea, and therefore the Brise wind which runneth from the East, is so continuall in those parts. This voyage from the *Canaries* to *Dominica*, *Pater Aris* of *Anila*, which was called *Genitil* and the *Isleir*, made the first, the yeere of 1514, when hee went with an Armie for Gouverneur and Capitaine general of the Kingdom of *Golden Casile*, now called *Terra firme*, since which the Navigation hath been ordered, that untill then went out of order.

Because it is now ordered that fresh water and wood be not taken in the land of *Defcelda*, and in *Dominica*, the Fleet of *Nova Hispania* goe hence to *Oviera*, a Port of the land *Hispayola*, to take refreshing, and they stay long, because the stormes from *Casile* doe overtake it. And they that goe for *Nova Hispania*, doe water in the land of *Guadalupe*, and there they divide the courses. The fleet of *Nova Hispania* goeth in demand of the Cape of *Saint Antonio*, which is in the furthest part and most Occidentall of the land of *Cuba*, to which place they faile about five hundred leagues in twentie dayes ordinarie, in sight of *Saint Iohn* of *Porto Rico* and of *Espanola*, two leagues off the Port of *Saint Domingo*, running along the coast by the Point of *Nizao*, and betweene the lands of *Cuba* and *Lamayca*, they goe with great heede of the shoales, which are called the *Lardines*, neere to the middle of the coast of *Cuba* where many ships have beene lost, passing afterward in sight of the land of *Pinar* and Cape *Corrientes* twelve leagues short of the Cape of *Saint Antonio*. From whence there are two courses to the Port of *Tenasser*, both of ten or twelve dayes; one which they call *Within Land*, of two hundred and fiftie leagues, for the Summer time from May to September, when there be no North winds which are croffe winds on the coast of *Tucatan*, whereby they passe; and another which they call *Without*, for the time of Winter, of about two hundred and eightie leagues somewhat higher in altitude: and the best Navigation, for to goe to the Port of *Saint Iohn* de *Vina*, is to leave to the coast of *Florida*, and the Playes of *Almeria*, that no contrarie wind flay him from seasonable attayning the Port of *Saint Iohn* de *Vina*.

The fleet that went from *Dominica*, and now goe from *Guadalupe* to *Terra firme* (whither is about four hundred leagues voyage of fiftene dayes) they goe in demand of *Cariacou*, farre off the

the coast of *Terra firme*, where the Brises are almost perpetuall; and contrarie to the returne, and the Southerne winds continuall in Summer; and the Northerne in Winter; which are croffe winds. They doe acknowledge by the way the Cape of *Vella* (between *Santa Martha* and *Pernambuco*), and the Cape of *del Aguije* neere *Cariacou*, where they visit the merchandize that are to goe to *Nova Kingdom*; and those which are to passe to *Pern*, are carried to *Porto bello*, whither they come from *Cariacou* are nine leagues, four or five dayes sayling, reknowleging the Point of *Casile*, and from thence *Cariacou* to *Cariacou* is five and thirte dayes sayling.

Those that goe to *Handarab* and *Guatemala*, goe in companie with those of *Nova Hispania*. The voyage of vnto Cape *Tibur*, the vmoost Westerne part of *Espanola*, from whence running along by the land of *Lamayca* on the North side, vnto the Point of the *Negrito*, the vtermoost of it, they put to Sea in demand of the Cape of the *Camaron*, the beginning of the Gulfe and Province of *Handarab*, from whence they goe to ankert to *Traville* fiftene leagues to the West from the Cape, where the merchandize are vnto the shore to remaine there; and the rest doe passe to the Port of *Canabala*; and to *Gosio Dulce*, along the coast by the Gulfe of *Handarab*, to transport them to *Guatemala*.

The returne from the *Indies* to *Spain*, cannot be made by the course which they take in going thither; and therefore they must come to a greater height, going out of the Tropicks to keepe fresh winds which doe blow from towards the North: all the Fleets doe meete in the Port of *Havana*, about the month of Iune, to come to *Spain* before Winter; for the East wind is against them, and is truest in the Channell, and the South also is truest in the Channell. The fleet of *Terra firme*, departed from May forward from the Cape *Saint Vincent* to *Saint Lucar*. The fleet of *Nova Hispania* departeth from May forward from *Porto bello*, whither the North winds doe already cease; and returneth to *Cariacou* to take the freight of Silver and Gold from the new Kingdom of *Granada*; and also for to avoid the Coast of *Trinidad*, and the streame of *Nicaragua*, whence they can hardly get out if they ingulfe themselves by reason of the Brises, and contrarie and dangerous Currents that are in the way. From *Cariacou* they goe for Cape *Saint Antonio*, the further West of *Cuba* about two hundred leagues, voyage of ten dayes, with care of the shoales that are in the way of *Serrana* and *Serranilla*, and of *Quintana*, and from the Cape of *Saint Antonio* to the *Anas*, are neere fiftie leagues; and the ships that come from *Handarab*, doe come also to reknowleging the Cape of *Saint Antonio*.

The fleets of *Nova Hispania* doe depart in the beginning of May, while the North winds doe last, which doe last for the returne to the *Anas*, ascending a little in altitude vnto the Sound, which they call *la Tortuga*, vnto which place they faile about three hundred leagues in fiftene dayes.

The ships of *Santa Martha* and *Venezuela*, to come to *Casile*, are sent out betweene *Cuba* and *Hispayola*, to reknowleging the Cape of *Saint Nicholas* in the Western part of it, from whence through the middle of the Iles of the *Lucayas*, they goe take the course of the fleets, and when they come in sight of the Cape of *Saint Antonio*, they goe to the *Anas* for fear of Pirates.

From the *Anas* to *Casile*, having past the Channell of *Bahama* (whence the Pilot *Antonio de Alaminos* sayled first all, the yeere 1519), they doe faile through the Gulfe which is called of the *North*, or of the *Saguer*, about nine hundred or a thousand leagues or more (a sayling of five and twentie or thirte dayes with ordinarie winds) by two ways, one for the Summer, in a greater height, till they come to thirte eight or thirte nine degrees, in which stand the lande of *Acuer*; and another for Winter, by a lesser height, because of the stormes and it shewes which doe come alwayes neere vnto it, whereby they goe vnto thirte nine degrees no more, whither in flanderth the land of *Santa Maria*, one of the Iles of *Acuer*, and they ascend one degree more for to touch in the *Terrera*, where the fleets doe alwayes come to take refreshing, without permitting any one to goe aloofe. And from the land of *Acuer*, vnto *Saint Lucar* of *Barrameda*, the Mariners make three hundred leagues of Navigation in fiftene dayes, others in thirte for the many Brises that doe reigne in this Gulfe of the *Acuer*, whereby they faile till they come vnto the Coast of *Portugal*, and the doubling of the Cape *Saint Vincent*; and after in sight of the Coast vnto the Port of *Saint Lucar*.

The Navigation from *Casile* to the River of *Plate* (whitherto there is one thousand and fiftie hundred leagues, and to the Strait of *Magellan* neere two thousand) hath beene much longer in the time then in the distance of the way, because being necessarie to come to those Provinces in their Summer, which is from September forward, they cannot depart from *Casile* at such time as not to passe the Equinoctiall by Iune or August, when in it the Calmes are many and very great, and therefore they stay five months in the Voyage, which might be made in two or three, if from *Spain* they did depart by August or before; and touching in the *Canaries* they goe North and South, to eight or nine degrees on the other side of the Equinoctiall, from whence Iune doe faile East and West, to reknowleging the Cape of *Saint Augustine* in *Brasil*, and afterward in sight of the Land vnto the River of *Plate* and the Strait. Others from the eightie leagues haue gone straight through the South Sea to the Strait, although few haue come to passe

Offside
of the
Needle.

Handarab
and
Guatemala
Or little
black Moores.

Chap. 2.
Wherewith
proceedeth
the Naviga-
tions of the
Indies.

The Fleets doe
returne to co-
ast by another
way.

When the fleets
ought to depart
to come for
Casile.
Whither the
fleets doe goe
from Cariacou.

Or take a
way fitter.
The ships of
Handarab re-
knowleging the
Cape of Saint
Antonio.

When the
Fleets of Nova
Hispania doe
depart thence.
The voyage of
them of Santa
Martha and
Venezuela.
Navigation from
the *Anas*
to *Casile*.
Navigation from
the lande of
Acuer more
to Saint Lucar.

Naviga-
tion of
the
Indies.

with the Provinces of *Dorado*, to the south of this Government, wherein falleth by the Coast the Province of *Maracapan*, in the bounds of *Venezuela*, where the mouths of *Santa Fe* were inhabited, in whole Bordered is the knob of *Umar*, and neere unto it a great Lake with great store of fish and sale, and the *Indians* which are called of *Paria*, twentie leagues within the Land and the *Indians* *Palesques*, so called for the Poles where with they fortified themselves, and the Province of *Cumana*, North and South with the *Indians* *Guayana*, where is a Towne of *Spaniards*, which is called *San Geronimo*, the Captaine *General* of *Ocampo* built, when he went to chastise the *Indians* of *Cumana*, for the destruction of the Monastery of the Religions *Franciscan*. And to the East or the Island of *Trinidad*, and the River of *Santa John* of the *Amazons*, is the Province of the *Indians* *Arawacs*, part of the *Caribbels*, and all Warlike, that neuer are quiet or peaceable.

After the point of *Paria*, which stands in seven degrees, and the *Dragons Mouth* neere unto *Trinidad* (stands the point *Del Gallo*, or *Anagada*, to the South of the *Trinitie*; and the River of *Paria*, or *Orinoco*, which some call *Tayapari*, and others will have that chiefe two, and the River of *Santa John*, and of *Orellana* be all one thing, and also the *Mayanay*; but in this they are deceived. There be other Rivers in the Province of the *Arawacs* that are well knowne, the River of *Santa John*, or of *Orellana* springeth in the *Andes* of *Peru*, right against *Cuzco*, from whence it runneth fiftene hundred leagues, or more, winding vnder the Equinoctiall, by Countreys well inhabited, though not well discovered, till it came to run into the North Sea, whose mouth hath in breadth fiftie leagues; and in the first five hundred from the mouth vppward, many Islands inhabited; and eightie or a hundred leagues more to the West, stands the River of *Mayanay*, almost in the bounds whereby passeth the Line of the Diuision betweene *Cafila* and *Paraguay*, and is great and terrible, hauing fiftie leagues of mouth, and the streame commeth from the parts of the South, and the Provinces of *Brasil*, and they say that the spring is vnder *Papeyas*, and the bounds of the new Kingdom of *Grenada*.

Seven leagues from *Cumana* stands the Island of *Cubagua*, where flood as was said, the new *Cadiz*, which was inhabited becaufe the fishing for *Perles* failed: this Island had no water that could be drunke, nor trees, nor beasts, except those *Hogges* that haue the Nautil in their backe-bone, and some small Conies, and haung fo great inhabiting, they went seven leagues to the river of *Cumana* for water, although there was an opinion that it bred webbes in the eyes. In this River and coast, hapned in the year 1530. the first of September, the haue being cleare, the Sea did rise foure fadomes from his ordinary course, and entering into the earth it began to shake, and the fortresse which the Captaine *Iacome* of *Castellon* had built by order of the Count of *Hispainia*, fell, and the earth did open in many places, whereout sprang much salt water as blacke as inke, and did stinke of brimstone, and the mountain of the gulfe of *Caracas* remained open with a great rift: many houses fell, many people died drowned, and with feare, and taken with the earth quake. *Margarita* one league from *Cubagua* a more pleasant land, the *Bachiller* *Marcello* of *Florentina* did people it.

The Province and Government of *Florida*, bordering on the Count of *Hispainia*, according to the Government of *Peter Melendez*, is all that which lyeth from the River of *Palmes*, which doth confine with the Government of *Panama* in new *Spain*, limits of the Count of *Mexico*, which is neere the tropicke in 23 degrees, unto the point of *Bacallias*, which falleth in 48 degrees, and a halfe, in the which are 1248 leagues of Coast, and from thence to 73 degrees of altitude to the North by the Coast, and within the Land all that which he discovered. Of this haue beene coasted and discovered from the River of *Palmes* unto the Point of *Santa Helena*, and the River *Iordan*, which are about 600 leagues, it is a firme Land of a good climate, plentifull and well inhabited in many places, as those that went through it with *Hernando de Soto* did know it, the year 1536. and 1537. *Iohn Pardo* borne in *Cuenca*, went by Land from *Florida* to new *Spain*, in less then two yeares, and it is the nearest Europe of any part of the *Indies*, &c. from the Bay of *S. Ioseph*, which is eightie leagues from *Panama*. There is also discovered vnto New found Land, but that which is particularly taken for *Florida*, is the point that goeth into the Sea North and South, with the Island of *Cuba*, of a hundred leagues in length, and twentie leas in breadth East and West, and when it is most thirte. *Iohn Ponce* of *Lyon* discovered it Anno 1512. on Easter day, and for this cause he called it *Florida*; and afterward returned the year 1521. and returned to *Cuba*, where he dyed, leaving a report that he fought the Fountain of a River which the *Indians* said that old men walking their clute therein, became young. This Province is according to the temperature of *Cafila*, and many fruits were found there like the fruits of *Spain*, and it seemeth fit for Cattle and Corne. There is no Gould, neither seemeth that the *Indians* did know it, nor Silver; for it hath bene seeme that they haue found the Chelts with bars of it and money in their coates, and made no account of it: yet *Hernando de Soto*, within the inward parts of the great River, found great abundance of *Perles*.

There are but two Fortresses in this Province with men in Garrison, both in the Coast that looketh to the East: the one is called *Santa Marke*, in the point of *Santa Helena*, about one hundred leagues from the *Heane*, and another of *Santa Angustin*, which is the principall, because the

HONDIVS his Map of Florida.



40 the haue is good, and is neere the channell of *Bahama*. It stands about fiftie leagues from *las Marteyres*, which are many little Islands inhabited, which are neere the point of *Florida*, where by it is openeth moit with the Island of *Cuba*, a league and a halfe, and less; the one from the other, with a ranke of shelves with moithes, in twentie three or twentie foure leagues, which chiefe *Marteyres* haue in length; whose beginning on the West side, it is called the Point of the *Marteyres*, and to the East, the Head of the *Marteyres*; and there is an Island of foureteen leagues in length, and very narrow, the Point of it is the fifth of *Terra firme* to the East, in 22 degrees and a halfe, where a Towne of *Spaniards* was built, which continued not, and to the North, almost direct the River *Orinoco*, and more Northward in 28 degrees, the Point of the *Cause*, and forward the River of *Guay*; before the River of *Malanca*, which is so called by that which *Peter Melendez* did to the Captaine *Ribas* and his *Frenchmen*; and the Point of *S. Angustin* in 29 degrees three quarters, and 50 ten leagues from thence the River of *S. Matheo*, from whence the Coast turneth to the North North-east, all with the Islands and Bays leaning vnto it vnto the Cape, or Point of *Santa Helena*, which stands in 35 degrees and a halfe, which was discovered by chance the year 1520.

In all the rest of the Coast that is betweene the point of *Santa Helena*, by New found Land, and the *Bacallias*, vnto the Land of *Labrador*, which reacheth and passeth the height of *England*, there is no Towne nor Government of *Spaniards*, although by diuers times and Nations, it hath bene discovered and Navigated, and it is knowen there is about one thousand leagues iourney of Land without gold, and the more in height the worse, and lesse habitable. There be many Rivers, and Ports, that because they are not well knowen nor frequented, there is no mention made but of the River of the *Staggies*, by another name of *Santa Marie*, which is a very great and 60 the River of *Rine*, almost in the midst of the Coast betweene the *Bacallias*, from whence the great River *Ochelega* entrench within the Land toward the West, which diuers times the strangers haue navigated, beleeing to haue found that way passage to new *Spain*. And in the Coast of *Florida*, which looketh to the West, are the *Tortugas*, known or eight Islands together: and to the

Port, Capes, and Point of *Florida*.

* Or *Molquina* Slough, or of the French in *Florida*. See Hist. to 3.

The Coast of the North vnto the *Bacallias*.

* Or *Les Games*. The great River *Ochelega* entrench within the Land toward the West, which diuers times the strangers haue navigated, beleeing to haue found that way passage to new *Spain*. And in the Coast of *Florida*, which looketh to the West, are the *Tortugas*, known or eight Islands together: and to the

* Or *Les Games*. The great River *Ochelega* entrench within the Land toward the West, which diuers times the strangers haue navigated, beleeing to haue found that way passage to new *Spain*. And in the Coast of *Florida*, which looketh to the West, are the *Tortugas*, known or eight Islands together: and to the

Der Schatz
 Kaurer
 brought in the
 breeding and
 ploughing
 Government
 of Paris.

Los Angeles.

The Bishop
Don Sebastian
Romero built
the City of
the Angels

d Vulcan' or
Balcan, 'is a
place whence
fire issueth, as
Etna, Hecle, &

Tlaftala.

**La Veracruz,
San Juan de
Ulu.**

CHAP. I. Veracruz. Indian *Doctrines*, or *Parishes*. *Bishopricks* of Guaxaca. 873

to the v

to the

40 w

50 fe

60 b

Chap. 10.
Of the Bishop-
ricks of Guat-
emala, Mechoacan
and Yucatan:
& of the Pro-
vince of Tabas-
co, which is the
rest of the
bounds de-
scribed.

Max Title
of the Mar-
quis of the
Valley.

Stinking Rich
Talepeque.

S. Alfons of
the Zaporozhye.

S. James of
Nexapa,
El Espirito San
to.

Golden Rivers

**Cash-money
and Wine.**

**The Indians
Should pay no
Taxes**

River of *Abasco*.

Günzke

The Bishop-
pricke of Me-
chacore.

Pezcultriv

Zingales

Guatemalteco.
* *Realiz.*
Village of S.
Michaell.
The Concep-
tion of Salaya.

**The Village of
S. Philip.**

Zaccaria

Colima.

The Treasurer *Alfonso de Echeaga*, when he did gouerne in *Mexico*, inhabited the Village of *Saint Alfonso* de la *Sagrada*, twente leagues from *Antequera*, toward the North-east. They live in by Gold, Cotton-wool, and Millett, there are aboute thirtie thousand *Indians* tributaries. It staueth betweene high Hills. *Saint lago* de *Xecapaca* in the Valley of *Nezaca*, twente leagues from *Antequera* to the East, in the way of *Chiapa*, and *Guatemala*. The Village of the *High Ghoß* in the Prouince of *Guacacoles*, at the Coalt of the North Sea, in the Confines of *Toluca*, is nineteene leagues from *Antequera*. *Captayn de Sordaniell* inhabited it in the yere of 1590. It is a Village of *Indians* tributaries, and is situated in the Valley of the River, on the side of *Chiapa*: this Ruer springeth in the Mountaynes of the *Mixes*, and *Chontales* were to *Teocapetene*, and with the waters of the Neighbour Prouinces of *Chiapa*, and the *Chontales*, it is

In all this Bihoprickere there is no Ruxer that doth nor yield Gold, nor the *Indians* doo live without want if they will worke, for they lacke nothing for backe nor belly : and they haue the *Cacao*, a Fruit like Almonds, which ferueth for Money, and they make Wine of it, and it is eaten tolled, and is held for a great sustenance. They are whollome Countreys, & pleasant. The Silke was before foured by the *Cathilians*, with the Mulberrie Trees of the Countrey, wherewith the *Indians* ferueth these Trees, to make Paper of the seconde bark: and to make also many of *Caylle*, that is the best way of dyeing, if the *Indians* did pay the title of it, and of other things, fow Bihoprickers might be made; but none doo pay the title the *Cathilians* onely.

This Bhiphokate hath three hundred and fiftie Head-townes of *Indians*, and in them, and in three hundred Granges more then an hundred & fiftie thousand tributary *Indians*; & one hundred and twentie Monasteries of *Dominicke* Friars, and the reit Schools of Priests for Doctrine. The Coast of the North Sea of this Bhiphokate, beginneth in the River of *Alameda*, that cometh from the Mountaynes of the *Zapoteca*, and betweene many other it goeth to the Province of *Chinualta*, and crossing overwart the Mountaynes whence it sprung, goeth our into the Bay of *San Mateo*, and there it falleth into the Sea. The River of *Alameda*, and there is also the River called *Guasaleto*, whose mouth may serve for a Haven; and the distance of the Land that cometh from the Mountaynes of *Saint Martine*, namely by fhips that have bin lost upon a shoale full of Rocks under water, which lye along the Coast right against them in the Coast of the South Sea. This Bhiphokate hath the Haven of *Guasaleto* in difference degrees and an half; great, good, and frequented. The President *Don Peter of Alameda* left this Province of *Guasaleto* in obedience, and the Port of *Tecomanque* is neere, which also is reasonable; and the Towne is great, and there is in it a great filling for Shrimps, and other fish which they carrie to *Guasaleto* and in the high way of *Coyazaco* to the Towne of Chirrital-bon. *Tecomanque* is fortie leagues from *Alameda*, they call by the Mountaynes of *San Mateo*, *Nizapa*, and *Mesapapapap*, whitherto this Bhiphokateke extendeth, and hath many Townes subied by the Coast of fhip-Sea.

The Bithprovinces of *Mechacana* (which is a Province between the Archbishops of *Me-*
xtica, and the new *Galicia*) hath in breadth by the Coast of the South Sea, about eighty leagues, 40
and sixty within the Land, with open bays, by the Septentrional parts: in it are included
the Provinces of *Zacateca*, and of *Colima*, both in the Coast of the South Sea. The Cities
of *Mechacana*, or *Pascuana*, in little more than nineteen degrees, and forty five leagues from
Mexico, of plain way. In *Guanajuato* called *Palladeno*, in Resident the Cathedral Suffragane
of *Mexico*, and the Bithprovinces of *Francisco*, and *Ayutlan* Friars. The Master of the field
of the *Old* built *Mechacana*, the Church of the *Old* Bishop in *Francisco*, in the year
1544, that he removed it to *Pascuana*. The Bishop was *Don Belasco de Zúñiga*, a viceroy
Monastery of *Francisco* Master of *Ayutlan* Friars, and it stands seven leagues from *Me-*
chacana, to the East.

The Mynes of *Guanato*, are twenty eight leagues from *Mechoacan*, to the North, toward the *Zacacuan*, wherein there are about six hundred *Cafiteles*, in two Campes a 50
which have with their chief *Aleado* or Comissioner, and the lease and dwelling of those that follow the Mynes is a *Real* or Campes. The Village of *Saint Michell*, in the Province of *Me-
choacan*, is thirtie lye leagues from *Pascuaru*, to the North-east, in a rough Country. And the Village of the Conception of *Solaya*, which was built by commandement of the Vice-roy, *Don
Martin Enriquez*, is aboute four leagues from the Village of *Santhome*, and the Village of
the *Santhome*, is aboute four leagues off *Mechoacan*, toward the North, and the Village two from *Me-
choacan* to the North, wyle with one *Monasterie* of *Antoine Friars*, ind barren fygile and cold; it was built
for the securitie of the way of the *Zacacuan*.
The Prouincier and Village of *Zacacuan*, in the Coast of the South Sea, fands in more then 8 de- 60

degrees, and forty leagues from *Michoacan*, to the South-west, neere the Sea; *Iohn Rodriguez de Villalvorte*, and *Simon de Cuenca*, built it the year 1523. it stands ninetie leagues from Mexico, and the Province and Village of *Calima*, in little more then 8. degrees, in the Coast of the South Sea, and in the confines of new *Galicia*, fiftie leagues from *Michoacan*, to the South-west, with a chieftie

CHAP. I. No Crosses in America till the Spaniards came. A Man 300. years old. 875

chiefe Commissioner, in a hot soyle, and plentifull of *Cacao*, and *Cassia Fittola*, with Gould, and well conditioned people. *Gongalo* of *Sandonal* built it in the year 1522. All the Countrie of *Merobocan* is most plentifull of Wheate, Millet, and all kinde of *Spanish* fruites, and Cattle, stored of Fish: it hath Graine, Cochinilla, and Cotten wooll, and the people is industrious, and giuen to labour.

There are in this Bilphiphike one hundred and thirtie Townes; whereof some are in the Coast of the Sea of the North, in the West Indies, and others in the South Sea. There are also many Rivers, and in the furthest West of the Province, almost in the border of the new *Galecia*, is the port of *Nauadid*, in the height of 19 degrees, good and frequented, from whence the Navigation is made to the *Philippinas*; and more to the East, near the Port of Saint *Lamer*: there are very good Copper Mines in their bounds, of which the *Inians* make some curious Vessels, for it is pleasant, and other hard that they digge the ground with it instead of Iron.

The Province and Government of *Yucatan* (which took this name when the Captain *Francisco Fernandez* discovered it, and our *Ladies of the Remedies*, when *John of Grijalva* discovered it) was at the first held for an Island, because it was almost compassed with Sea, in fort that it may be called *Peninsula*, and it compasseth more then two hundred and fiftie leagues: it is in the North side of the Gulf of Mexico, about one hundred leagues, and as many North

length where it extends its East End to the North, unto the part that doth confine with the
South, from the Coast whereto it hath overwatch about five and twentie leagues. The tem-
Provinces of this Coast, whereby it hath overwatch about five and twentie leagues. The tem-
peratures of the Air is very moist, and though there be no River, nor running water in it all, the wa-
ter is near to Wells, and they finde to many helps of Sauer-vnder the flowers, that they draw
Coast being to low, hath given occasion to fallowes, and the people of this Coast, who are
most compaffed with Wood: and therefore is knowne the inuention (or deceit) of thole which faie
any other kindes of Wood, and therefore is knowne the inuention (or deceit) of thole which faie
that the people of this Coast, who are most compaffed with Wood: and therefore is knowne the inuention (or deceit) of thole which faie
was neuer found in any Province of the Indies: it is very plentifull of game, especially wa-
Boares and Deere, they breed vpon it in great numbers of all kinde of fowles, as of the wild
and Azure, the people multiplie and increase, and the number of men there which was attained to three hun-
dred and fiftie, and the Castle of Saguenay and good Horfes.

[illegible]

40 and that it was a *Village* of *Indians* with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 41 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 42 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 43 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 44 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 45 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 46 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 47 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 48 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 49 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500
 50 Indians, towards the North-west with a most famous Monasterie of *Franciscan* Fryers, and 1500

[illegible]

Cccc 3

[illegible]

The coast of this Province is all in the North Sea, in the Gulf which they call *la Hiondora*, which is all the Sea coast between this Province and *Tacuman*, to the place where they call *la Hiondora*, which it is by *Verapaz*, where was called the Gulf of *Guanaja*, the first Point is of the *Turra*, so called, because they first found many pompioms on the Sea, which they call *Turra*; in the Language of *Hispallana*; it is lands in sixteen degrees of height. Neere to the *Presb Omba* a Port called *la Guadalupe*, a small *Sig* of *Benaula* was built, neere to the Cape of *Terra Point* to the East from the *Presb Omba*, and the Gulf of *Benaula* was built, neere to the Cape of *Terra Point* to the River *Piche*, and *Rio Bava*, and the River of *Olma*, by another name, where is the Port of *Horset*, which lands in fifteen degrees. And afterward the River and Point of *la Sol*, and *Triunfo de la Cruz*, a Cape of three points, where the year 1534, the Master of the ship *Cristopher* of *Olid* planted; and the River *Huama* or of *Xegua*, and to the North of his mouth the I-land of *Prila*; and to the North-east, *Guajana*, *Helon*, and *Guanaja*, and Saint Francis North 30
of which fourth with the Gulf of *Prila*, which are the lands of the *Guanajas*. The said Point is called by another name, *Cabo Delgado*, the small Cape of *San Blas*, from whence to the Cape of *Cameras*, in search where they goe from *Jamaica*, are thirtie leagues; from whence to the Cape of *la Azuela* a small gulf of more than twenty leagues into the Sea, and in the middle of it neere to the Coast a great land, which is called the land of *la Bana* (of the fishes) and another to the North, neere the shelle called *San Millan*, and having passed the Belles, the Bay of *Cortage*, and the *Depe Bay*, before the Cape of *thunke* by the God, which stands in fourteen degrees of height, and the Cape of *San Blas*, three lands, which they call the *Praslas*, and *Quita sueno* or *Taky avar* *Uepa*, and *Reuandor*, the same two dangerous, and the Cape of *Taky avar* the Cape, the Gulf of *Nawaja*, where hee was of the year 1510, and in 1511, and 1512, thirtie degrees, where the Governments of *Honduras* and *Nicaragua* are joined.

The lands of the *Guangas*, which are the rehear'd, the first Admirall *Don Christopher Colon* discovered 1502. in the last voyage he made to the *Indies*, when he discovered *Terra firma* in the coast of *Veragua*, where his ill lucke appeared; for if as he went to *Veragua*, hee had gone to the other side, he had discovered *New Spaine*.

Nicaragua. The Province and Government of Nicaragua, which the Governour *Lamé* Lloves called *Salsedra*, called the *New Kingdom of Leon*, on the West joyneth with *Gatemala*, and on the North with *Honduras*, and on the South with " *Cofea Rica*. It is of one hundred and fiftie leagues East and West, and eightie North and South, a plentiful Countrey of Millers, Cacao, Cotton wool, Rote of Cattrell, without Corn or Sheepe, it hath five *Spanish Townes*; *Leon de Nicaragua* is one hunte dred and foure leagues from *Saint James de Guatemala* about the South-east, and twelue from the South Sea, neere to the great Lake of *Nicomera*, where the Governour is resident; the *Royal Cities*, and the three *Capital Cities* are *Managua*, *Comayagua*, and *Jinotega*. It hath five Monasteries, six Universities, and in *Lake Bayamo* a small City.

The City of *Granada* is thirteen leagues from *Madrid*, which is a twentieth thousand tributary Indians. *Francisco Hernandez*, 1532, and *Granada* stands by the border of the great Lake, and four and twelve leagues from the *Puerto de Realdo*, besides the great Lake, stands the Lake of *Lindiri*, and the famous *Pelican* or *Fierro* mouth of *Mellagona*. The great Lake ebboth and floweth, it hath many Islands, it runneth into the North Sea, by the River which is called *El Defagadero*, or *The Payling*, it hath great flocks of Fish and many Lizards. At two leagues from it, and eleven from *Granada*, is the great City of *Manabuco*, very high with many Groves of diuers trees, of which much Timber is cut yearly, and Carrying himselfe, that *State* made of fire thins in many years burnt without consuming within the mass of *Clay*, they have gold, having many by a certaine arte certaine Cauldrons with their chaines to draw it, theye scarcely came at the fire, when the Cauldron and the Chaines were melted like Lead.

[illegible][illegible]

In the Coast of *Nicaragua*, on the South Side, the Village of *Brassiles* was peopled 1529, and *Brassiles*, *James Lopez* of *Salcedo* disinhabited it, because they had received in it *Pedro de los Rios*, Governor of *Castilla del Oro*, which went to take the Government of *Nicaragua*, where *Salcedo* had thrust himself, and had gone from *Honduras* his own Government, whither, *Captaine Francisco Hernandez*, planted it 1534, in the doubtful Streight, in the face of *Frislan*, and on the one Side had the Sea, on the other the Playnes, and on the third Side the Mountain of the Mynes, and in all this Orbe there are no *Indians* more export in the *Castilian* tongue then those of *Ni-*

30 *caragua*. The Province and Government of *Cañiz Roca*, the furthest East of the Northern *Indies*, and *Cañiz Roca*
 Council of *Guatemala*, hath in length East and West nineteen leagues from the Confines of *Petate*
Petate votes choth of *Nicaragua*, with which it joyneth by the North, and by the West. In it
 are two Townes, it is a good Countrey, with many fflowes of Gold, and fowme of Siluer. The
 one Towne is the Village of *Ararajues* fowr leagues from *Chimel* *Indians*, a Towne of the iu-
 ridiction of *Guatemala*, the Citie of *Caragua*, forte leagues from *Nizaya*, and twentie from the
 mididion of *Guatemala*, the Citie of *Caragua*, forte leagues from *Nizaya*, and twentie from the
 South Sea, in the middle of the Province, hath a Port and landing place in the Coast of the
 South Sea, and the North Sea, wherein there is fowme Ruers betweene *Nicaragua* and *Petate*,
 common to this Governement, and the Bayes of *Saint Ierome* and of *Caribaco*, neere the limits
 40 of *Petate*.

[illegible]

Hon.

and at the end foure, and five leagues within was the Citie of *Santa Marie*, the auncient
of *Darien*.

In the South Sea (the Gulf of *Savilla* Marten and point (de *Guerra*) of Warre, and toward *Panama*, the Gulf of *Paria*, or *Paris* where lands *Nata*, the point of *Chama*, the Countrey of that *Cacique Chiapa*, the friend of *Belis Nuanco*, of *Belis* which helps him in his discovery: and called the Port of *Panama*, the River of *Chico*, and the *Bajio* of *Conger* in the inner part: the Gulf of Saint *Adelmo*, North and South from the Island of *Parita*, and the Point or Port of *Pmy*, at the entrie of the Gulf on the South side, which is fittle leagues from *Panama*, and twentie ourthward to the Gulf of *Fraba*, and *Puerto Quemado*, or *Burro Flanco*, neere to the Cape of *Corrientes*, in 5 degrees of altitude *Sepententrional*.

Chap. 16.
The limits of
the Countie
of Santa Fe of
Bogota: which
is the new
Kingdome of
Granada.

* *Help Faith.*

Lake of Gurgutaita.

Saint Michael

Tocotrienol

The *Trinitie*.
 * Or *Flies*.

The Palms

Taxia

Examples

* Or crying.

Meade.

The bounds of the *Kingdom of the New Kingdom* hath in length East and West, three hundred leagues, and as many North and South; and the Towns and Cities, which are comprehended in the Provinces of the *New Kingdom*, the governments of *Santa Maria* and *Cartagena*, and part of that of *Papaya*; & the borders the Provinces of the *Orada*, or *new Stramada*; and part of *Val de Viento*, the *New Kingdom*, which is that which the Councille gourneth; hath in length from East to West, three hundred leagues, and eightie in breadth North and South; plaine ground for the most part with Valleys, hills, and good Pastures for all sort of Cattle, which are in abundance, and in many places, Wheat, Millet, and the fruits of *Cassia*, and generally much Gold and very fine, and Mines of Copper & Steele: and the Countre men for the most part are able men, great traffickers, and doe wear Coate of cloth. And the Townes that be in the Kingdom of *Spaniards*, are the Citie of *Santa Fe de Bogota*, which was built at the foot of *Bogota*, & called by the *Casique* which was called *Bogota*, which the President *Gonzalo Ximenez de Velazquez* built, and gaue the name to the Citie and to the Kingdom, because he was of *Granada*, though in the discouery the President *Belalcázar*, and *Niñola*, which by a greater circle may be said to be four hundred and fortie leagues, and 4 degrees on this side of the Equinoctiall, it hath more than four hundred households, in it is resident the Councille, the Kings Officers and Royall treasure, and Melting house, the Cathedral Metropolitane, whose suffragans are, *Papaya*, *Cartagena* and *Santa Maria*; the Bishopricke of *Medinaceli*, and another of *Paniscane* Priests, and in her borders more then fiftie thousand tributarie *Indians* and the Lake of *Guatavita*, which was a worshipping place of the *Indians*, where it is reported that they did cut great fumes of Gold in offering to the Idols.

The Village of *Santa Michael* in the bounds of *Santa Fe*, twelve leagues from it to the North, was built for traffike with the *Pauca Indians*, because being of a hot Countrey it did them hurt to go to *Santa Fe*, which is cold. The Citie of *Tocoma* fifteen leagues from *Santa Fe*, to the West, somewhat inclined to the North, with a Monastery of *Drumicke Friars*, was inhabited the year 1545, by the Captaine *Hernando Vazquez*, in the border of the maine River *Rio*, which runneth into the River *Magdalena*. It hath no gold, and is moist hot, and by night there falleth much snow in it. In all the Kingdome there is no general tongue, that which is most vnderstood, are called *Panche*. In the Prouince of the *Majlo*, and *Colman*, which by another name are called *Cama*, five and twentie leagues in length, to the North-west of *Bogota*, a rough Countie, full of small hills of *Bathurs*, Gold, and Emeralds: there are two Townes; the Citie of the *Trainta*, twentie leagues from *Santa Fe*, to the North-west, which the Captaine *Labrador* inhabited the year 1582, when hee was sent to the North-west with the Indians' *Nofcas*, a quick and careful Nation: and in these bounds standeth the rich Mine of the Emeralds, with many *Indians* which yet are peaceable, and in the Prouince of *Chiguacachi*, which signifieth *Snailes*, for there be many.

The Village of *Palma* in the *Cimas*, of a temper hotter then cold, differs leagues from *Santa Fe* to the North-west, the Captain *Don Gutierrez* of *Onelle* built it 1731, in the Province of *Tonia*, which took the name of the *Casique*, almost to the North, direct to that of *Bogota*, and in all like vnto it: The Citie of *Tonia* stands two and twentie leagues from *Santa Fe*, to the North-east, on a high hill, a strong situation, for the warre with the *Indians*. There goe out of this Citie about two hundred Horle-men, and it is the most abundance of Viuals of all the Borders, and there is the greatest Marke in all the Realme: it hath one Monasterie of *Dominique*, another of *Franciscane* Friars. The Captain *Gonzalo Ximenes* Randone built it, for the President *Gonzalo Ximenes* of *Fuallade*. The Citie of *Pampulla* twenty leagues from *Santa Fe* to the North-east, hath one Monasterie of *Dominick* Friers; much Gold is gotten in it, it hath abundance of Cattle: the Bachiller *Matheo Diaz* of *Armarandia* peopled it. The Village of *Saint Christobal* is the head-quarters from *Pampulla* to the North, the Capraine *Francisco* of *Caceres* built it neere the Province of *Chiriqui*, and because the *Indians* came out of the high wayes to fight and crise after the *Spaniards*, and to kill them: little Gold is gotten in it, and it hath commoditie, for to breede Cattle.

The City of *Merida*, in the bounds of the government of *Venezuela*, and the *New Kingdom*, forty leagues from *Pamplona* to the North-east : it is a plentifull Countrey of Mines of Gold.

Gowd, and of Wheate, the Citee of *Bela*, thier league from *Sauila* to the North, and likewise from *Tuma*, hath one Monastery of *Franciscan* Fryers: the Captaine *Comate Ximenez* *Rendon* inhabited it. It is a Countrey where many thunderbolts fall, and there fall not for many ynce the holy Sacrament of the Altar is there abiding: it is likewise a Countrey that suffeth with many bones. The Citee of *Yaguar* is another name *Saint Sebastian* of the *Gauls* is called. The Citee of *Yaguar* to the North-west, the Captaine *Pedro* peopled it 1551. In certaine Meadows, leaning to the hill, the temper is very hot. The Citee of *Thagur* is three hundred leagues from *Sauila* Fe, almost to the West: it is the chief Towne of the *New Realme*, that doth conaign with *Papagan*, the Captaine *Andreu Lopez* of *Yaguar* in 1555 by the commission of the Countreil, for to cleave the harmes of the *Indians* had with thier thier *Taymas*, and for to open the way to the government of *Papagan*, it hath a Monastirie of *Franciscan* Fryers.

The City of the *Pilgrims of the Remedies*, fights leagues from *Santa Fe*, to the North-west, in very dry hills. Mines. The City of *Saint John of the Plains*, fights leagues from *Santa Fe* to the South, is a Country of much Gould. The City of *Tudela* which the Caprine *Peter of Vespas* built, by order of the Bachiller *Don Michael Días de Armerindis* was disinfinitibed, because the *Indians* *Moxtes* received hurt by it. And there ate of the limits of the Council of the new Realm, (seven Townes of the government of *Papayan*, *Santa Fe* of *Antiochia*, *Caramanta*, *Arma*, *Anzerma*, *Carrage*, *Saint Sebastian of the Silver*, and *Saint Vincens delas Paces*.

20 The Merchandize entreth this Kingdome, by the great River of *Magdalen*, from the *Baranca* of *Malemba*, of the iurisdiction of *Carsaga*, and the first that fent to discover this River, was *Garcia de Lerma*, Gouverneur of *Santa Martha* 1531. It encreth into the Sea to broad and deep from that at the pailling, the Ships are wont to be laden, if they will, for some that discharge, for the combat of the current, and working of the wind, and in more then three hundred it is not waded: it cometh then one hundred and fifty leagues, and in more then two hundred leagues it is not waded: it cometh from about *Magdalen*, and in more then two hundred leagues it is not waded: it cometh from about *Magdalen*, because on that day was the first that discovered it, in 1531, hearts of hie hie, he and six and twenty leagues from *Carsaga*.

The Province and Government of *Sancta Marthin* the coast of *Terra firme* is fertilee lakes *Sancta Marthin* is therein and length, between *Cariacoua* and the River of *Habo* is a plentifull Countrie of Millet, and Potatoes, much Gould, and Copper, and some Emerals, and other Stones: in it tate live *Spanish* Townes; and though there be many of the Countre-men, the most are in warre, The President *Bahula* peopled the Citie of *Sancta Marthin* 1693. there is the Sea, in 10. degrees of latitude, and 74. of longitude, one thousand four hundred and twentie furlonges from *Tolde*, where is resident the Governor and Officers Royall, and the Cathedral suffragan to the *New Kingdom* of *Porto Rico* is rectorable. This Government hath four Provinces, *Pacajay*, *Batona*, *Chimica*, and *Tayrona*, which signifieth a *Forge*, and with great reason, because in that Countreie are an infinite quantitie of diversitie of Metalls, and Stones of great elsme and value.

46 *Tenirife* stands by the border of *Rio Grande* or the great River (which is that of *Magdalena*) *Tenirife*.
fortie leagues from *Santa Martha* to the South-west, part by the Sea, and part Land: *Francisco*
Enriquez did people it, by order of *Gonzalo Perez*, which governed in *Santa Martha*, by
Tandemones.
Commission of the President *Luis Tondalongo*, or Village of the *Palmer*: it fixtie liue leagues
from *Santa Martha* to the South, and twentie from *Tenirife*, two leagues from the Great River:
the Capaine *Barbolorow* *Daina* peopled it 1567. The Citie of *Los Reyes* in the Valley of *Pani*,
The King's
is plentiful of Millet, Prouision, and Cattle, and of much Copper, to the South-east of *Santa*
Martha, fiftie leagues from it, thirtie from the River of *Haber*: the Capaine *Sanct Anne*
peopled it, by commandement of the Bachellor *Muñoz Daza*, **La Ramada* was built be-
fore, called first *nau Salamancea*, fortie leagues from *Santa Martha* to the East, and againe
40 *La Ramada* is the name of a Village in the Valley of *Pani*, in the Province of *Magdalena*, in the Valley of
the River of *Plate*, at the overthrowing of the Snowe *Sanct Antonio*, it is the Village of *Pani*,
where there is as much Copper as Stone. **Merchandise* of this Government growp v
to the *New Kingdom* by the mouth of this Citie, which is eight leagues from it by the Sea, and
afterward twelue vnto the Bay of *Malambano*, in the great River. *Ocumbe* is also in this Go-
0 *ocumbe*
vernment, vnto the Capaine *Francisco Hernandez*, inhabited 1573, and was first called
Sanct Anne. Thise Citie is in the Coast of this Government the River of *Bubia*, neere *Ramada*,
b o Tene P
and, and the River of *Pani*, and that of *Palumina*, where a Capaine of this name was downe-
d, and the Ruer of *Don James*, the *Aconces* of *Burica*, and the Cape of *Agua* neere *Santa*
d o R N
the right about the bill of *Bonda* and the River of *Gaya*, to the Well.

60 The Province and Government of *Cartagena*, in the Coast of *Terra Firma*, and the North Sea hath in length East and West, from the River of the *Magdalene*, unto the River of *Darien*, exceeding the leagues North and South, and as many unto the confines of the *New Kingdom*, though men say it is more in Voyage. The Countrey is Mountainous of Hills and Valleys, of high Trees, rained and moist: the feedes of *Cassia* beare no feede, there is no Wheate, nor Gould, but in some places

There is much rozen made in some Mountains of this Government, and Gums aromaticke, and other liquors which they get out of the Trees, and great quantitie of *Sanguis Draconis*, and a very fragrant balme of great vertues.

Citie of Car-
tagena.

The Citie of *Cartagena* stands neare the Sea, two leagues from the Point of *Canoe*, to the West, in tenne degrees of latitude, and feutentie six of longitude, one thousand foure hundred and fixtie leagues from *Tiende*, of more then five hundred households, among them about two thousand women. In it is resident the Governour, the Kings Officers, & treasure: and the Cathedral suffragan to the *New Realme*, with Monies of *Domnick* and *Francis* Friars. The situation is plain, and almost like an Island, the Sea compasseth it on the North side, & it is a rough coast, and very hollow, and on the land side it hath an arme of the Sea which reacheth to a Marsh, which is the Lake of *Canope*, which ebboeth & floweth after the order of the Sea, & at the same houre, and they passe from the Citie to *Terra firme*, by a Bridge and a manner of a Cause, which hath about two hundred and fiftie paces. The Citie is built on Sand, & within two fathoms they finde fresh water, though sometimes it is vvwholosome, not so much as the coast of *Nombro de Dios*, for the ayres in respect of the Marsh are wont to cause diseases, but for the most part it is wholosome. The Haven is one of the least of the *Indies*, though the great Ships do ride safe from the Citie. It hath at the entrie an Island like that of *Escombrera* in *Cartagena* of *Calife*, whereby they called it *Cartagena*, and the Island was called *Colegopou* they call it *Caue*, it hath two leagues in length, & little more then halfe a league in breadth: it was wont to be inhabited with *Indians* Fishers, & it hath no ware. The first that saw *Cartagena*, in the year 1502, was *Roderick Belizade*, & in the year 1504, 20 *Juan de la Cosa* or *John of the Thing* went a shore, and found *Lopez Guerra*, and they were the first that began the ware with the *Indians*, which were proud and bould, and both men and women fought, with venomed arrows. Afterward returned *Alonso* of *Ondas* with *John of the Thing* for Pilot Major, & *Americo Vesputio* for Mariner, & some years after *Gregorio Ojeda* took voyen to inhabit *Cartagena*, & performed it not. The year 1532, went *Don Pedro de Heredia* born in *Madrid*, and inhabited it, and pacified a great part of the Countrey, though with labour and cunning, because the people were very warlike, and there was a woman that before they could take her, being about eighteen yeeres old, flew with her Bow eight *Spaniards*.

Amazonian
women.

Valiant Virgins.

Saint James of
Tela.

The Village of
Maria.
Holy Cross.

San Sebastian.

The Barracks.
O Water-
course.

El Dorado.
Guinea.

The Village of *Saint James of Tela*, is six leagues from the Sea to the South-west of *Cartagena* two leagues from it, part by Sea (for by Land it cannot be gone) and part by the Mountains and Mountains. It is a found Countrey, of great breedings, and Cattle, and fruits of the *Proficient* *Don Pedro de Heredia* peopled it. The Village of *Maria* thirtie two leagues from *Cartagena*, to the South, is also the inhabiting of *Don Pedro de Heredia*, in the year 1534. The Village of *Sancta Cruz de Moxos* is feutentie leagues from *Cartagena* by the Sea and River of *Magdalena*, neere whose border it stands, & whereby they goe about, more then halfe the way it is not found being among *Quagmires*. A Captaine of *Don Pedro de Heredia* peopled it 1535. The year of 1509, the Bachiller *Euficio* (as hath been said) inhabited *Sancta Maria*, the ancient of the *Darien*, which is in this Government, forsaking the Village of *Saint Sebastian* of *Bona villa*, which the same Captaine *Alonso Ojeda* had inhabited. On the fourth place of *Francia*, & afterwards the Captaine *Alonso de Heredia* inhabited *Saint Sebastian* againe for the President his Brother, in certaine 40 hills, almost halfe a league from the Sea, and in the year 1537, the Bachiller *John of Padilla* went out of *Saint Sebastian* with a good number of Souldiours, and passing many troubles, & most rough Mountains, & thick woods, came to the Citie of *Antioquia*, of the government of *Popeyan*, & there was a Souldier that from thence came to the Citie of the Plate, in the *Chacra*, which is 1200. leagues.

The *Barranca* of *Malambo*, which is a Customed house of the iurisdiction of *Cartagena*, thirtie leagues from it, on the border of the great River, and twenty from *Sainta Martha*, & is from the Sea, where the Merchandise that are carried by Land to the *New Realme* are vvoladen, & from the *Barranca* are carried by the River in *Canoes*. Lower then *Nepoy* between the River of *Caue* into the River of *Magdalena*, which also spingeth about *Popeyan*, & more toward *Cartagena* and to the West, Randeth the *Knobs*, and the point of *Zamba*, and *Barranca de la Gato* or *Arbolera*, and 50 feuten Cottages, and the point of the *Canoe*, two leagues from *Cartagena*, and the point of *Yacusi* at the entrie of the port, right against the Island of *Carex*, and the point of the Ship in *Terra firme*, at the other lesser entrie of the port, and almost to the North is a little Island which is called *Sardana*, and in the coast of *Tela* the Islands of *Baru*, which are six, and at the entrie of the Gulfe of *Paraba* the six, which are called of *Saint Bernard*, right against the River *Zenu*: and more within the Gulfe, the strong Island, and the *Tortoyis*. The port of *Zenu* stands five and twenty leagues from *Cartagena*, it is a great Bay that hath his entrance by the East: it is secure: here they make store of Salt, and it took the name of the Towne *Zenu*, which stand on the River.

In the Provinces of the *Derade*, or new *Esmeraldas*, which circuit pertaines to the bounds of the Countie of the *New Realme* many Captains have entred by Sea, & by landry parties of the Land, and have neuer found the riches, which the same prometh. They fall on the other side of the River of *Saint John* of *Amazonas*, by another name *Orellana*, (which some erroneously will have to be the *Marayon*) and here is the *Orinoco* and other great Rivers, and the Gulfe of *Paria* which maketh the firme land, with the Land of the *Trinidad*, & the mouthes of the *Serpens*, & the *Dragon*, which

which the first Admirall named; where he saw himselfe in great danger, for the conflict which the fresh waters make there with the salt, whereof he had yet no notice, and here beginneth the Great Tyden flowing of the Sea to be very great, vnto the streight of *Magellan*, and goeth continuing through all the coast of *Piru*, and *New Spaine*.

The Provinces of *Piru* (whose name hath extended it selfe more then it was at the beginning) *Piru*, or *Pari*, include all the Empire of the *Incas*, or more; for when it was won it was diuided in two governments, that of *Don Francisco Pizarro*, called the *New Castile*, from the *Caue* vnto the *Cones*, fixtie leagues below the *Chincha*; and that of *Don Innes de Almagro*, called the *New Toledo*, two hundred leagues toward the Streight from *Chincha*; which governments were distinct vnto 10 the Council de *los Reyes* was established, and a Vice-roy prouided for the Kingdomes of *Piru*, in whose government are included, the Council of *Saint Francis* of the *Quito*, that of *Lima* (or de *los Reyes* of the *King*) that of the *Chancas*, the government of *Chile*, & countries of the *Streights*, the Islands of *Salomon* to the West, and for borders the Provinces of the Riuer of *Plate*, and that which determinately is comprehended vnder the government of the Vice-roy. It hath in length North and South from two thousand leagues upward, and East and West, that which is discussed from the South Sea to the North Sea. The two *Rowes* that have been spoken of, doe passe through all the Provinces of *Piru* North and South, that of the *Andes* from *Popeyan*, and yet many will haue, that from *Terra firme* and *New Spaine*, till it ends in the *Streight*, and the other *Rowe* from the *Quito* vnto *Chile*, along the coast, twelve leagues distant, little more or lesse.

The two Rowes
of the Indies
of the South.
Of *Magellan*.

The two wayes passed betweene these two Mountains, the one which they called of the *In*. Thence great 30 *gas*, by the *Andes* from *Paito* vnto *Chile*: which hath nine hundred leagues in length, and fise wayes of *Piru*, and twentie footes of Cawtie, and every foure leagues very lumpuous houses, which they call *Tambo*, where was prouision of victuals and apparell, and every halfe league men that were in postes for to carry messages, and orders from hand to hand. The other way went through the *Polica*, middlest of the Playnes, along the coast of *Chile*, and thence to the South, betweene two walls of middlest of the Playnes, along the coast of *Chile*, where both the wayes met. And it is to be noted, that a mans height, from *Piru* vnto *Chile*, where both the wayes met. And it is to be noted, that all the *Indies* of the South are not to be vnderstood by *Piru*, for as hath been said, it is not but that which beginneth from *Saint Francis* of *Quito*, which is vnder the Equinodall Line, and runneth along, vnto *Chile*, going out of the Tropicks, which may be five hundred leagues, and fiftie in breadth, though toward the *Chacabapora* there is more, and it is diuided in three parts: The Playnes, which haue ten leagues in breadth, and in parts lesse, they are the coast of the Sea: The Hills, which haue about twentie, and is all Hills and some Valleys; and the *Andes* other twentie, which are most shooke Croues and Woods, and in fiftie place as fise leagues equally distant from the Line and Pole: there is to great diuersitie, that in the one place almost it rayneth alwayes, and in the other almost neuer; which is the Coast, and in the third which is the Mountains that fall in the middlest of these mountains, sometime it rayneth, and sometime noe, for it hath his Summer and Winter as in *Castile*: and the causes of not rayning in the Coast, and rayne in the *Andes*, are spoken of in the beginning of the Historie.

Los Llanos.
Los Tierras.

Diuersitie of
nature.

The bounds of the Councill resident in *Quito*, and confining Northward with that of *Panamá*, in the Port of *Bonaventura*, and on the North-east with the *New Realme*, and on the South with that of *Lima*; hath in length by the South-east, which is the place where it leng- 40 thens most, about two hundred leagues from the Port of *Bonaventura*, which is in the Gulfe of *Panamá*, or of *Saint Michael*, the Port of *Poya* in the coast of *Piru*, and from thence curd to the vntermost of *Popeyan*, more then other two hundred and fiftie, the limits remaying open on the East side: in it is included three Governments, besides those of the Councill, which are *Papeyan*, *Quinica*, *la Cancha*, and that of *Innes de Salinas*, of the *Pacamarra*, and *Gusfango*, diuided in two Bishopricks.

Chap. 17.
Of the Coun-
sell of *Saint*
Francis of the
Quito.

O Crys-
mon.

The Province and Government of *Quito*, which the Councill governeth hath in length eightie 50 leagues, from neere the Equinodall to the North pole, and in breadth from the Equinodall to the North pole, long. The heauen and earth thereof, although it is a vale vnder the Equinodall, is like to that of *Calicut*, cleere and faire, rather cold then hot, and in parts where the low continueth all the yeere, it rayneth from October to March, which they call the winter; and in the other months they cut their Grass, which though it be not long as fit for the Cattell of *Castile*, whereof there is great store; and of Wheat and Barley, and gold in some places: and in this Region they live pleasantly, for there is nothing more pleasant for humane life, then to enjoy a wholesome and cleere sky, for they have no Winter to trouble them with cold, nor Summer to molest with heat. The Townes are, the Citie of *Saint Francis* of *Quito*, where *Athabasca* Emperour of *Piru* 60 was borne, it stands in halfe a degree of height from the Equinodall, and eightie two from the *Equinodall* of *Tiende*, by a greater circle one thousand fixe hundred eightie fixe leagues from it, and fixtie from the South Sea: it is of five hundred households: In it is resident the Councill for matters of Iustice, for those of the Government are at the Vice-roy his charge. There are also in this Citie the Officers of the Kings Rent and treasure Royall, and the Cathedral of this Bi-
D d d 3
shopricke,

at *Quito*.

Aire and fa-
sons.

At *Quito*.

At *Quito*.

In how many
sorts the gold
is gotten out
in *Piru*, and o.
ther places.

being holden for the Supreme power in the World. It is gotten in these Mynes in three manners: The first is in *Pippens*, which are whole pieces without mixture of any other Metals, that need not to be purified by fire, and these grains commonly are like a Pompon Seed, and are found in the bottom of rivers, but little, in respect of the left. The second sort is in *Jams*, which is a saine that groweth in the flower of the Salina, and is found in the government of Iaku found in Pits and Mynes, and it is hard to worke. The third, is gotten in the salt Gole, the which is left quaitere, and this is found in Ruers, or in places where some fream of water hath been the greater part of the year, and is called *Salema*. These grains are found in the Kingdoms of *Chiu, Quin, New Realms, Granada*, and in the beginning of the world, there were many in the *Western Islands*: The highest touch is that of *Cordageba* in the island of *Faldisia* in *Cible*, for it reacheth to twentie three Charraets and an halfe, and yet it is perfect.

Leukémie

Chap. 19.
Of the bounds
of the Council
or Audience of
The Kings, or
les Rois.

Mountaines
cause that it
rayneth not in
the *Playnes* of
Pitt.

h Some are of opinion that all plants and trees are nourished by vapours: yea that the vapours of the blood nourish living Creatures, So Gen. 2. 2 mist in Paradise, &c. The Sunne as Head of the World, the Hart as Sunne in the Body, causeth nourishment by vapours.

The Citie of
The Kings, or
las Reyes.

Such holiness of
faith, such
meane to e-
stablish it, force
gluing lips and
Lettice toge-
ther, as *Acosta*
complayneth.
Vniuersitie and
desuites.
Sea conleth.

That which is call'd *Puna*, is properly and particularly the bounds of the Councell of *la Reya*, which are two hundred and twentie leagues, though in Voyage they pass three hundred from the point of *Aguia*, beyond *Paya*, whereby it joyneth with the Councell of *Quetzaltenango*. The Cite and Port of *Arecupe*, where beginneth the Councell of the *Cheraca*, Eastward and Westward the chief part of this Councell hath about one hundred leagues from the Coast of the South Sea. The towne of *San Pedro* is the chief towne, and remaine open unto the Princes of the River of the Plate of *Brasil*, that which is from the *Plains* of *San Pedro* to the Coast of the South Sea, they call the *Plaines of Puna*, in the which it is heene laid, it rayneth continually, unto the great height of the Mountain doth filter the *Plaines* in such sort, that it permitteth no wind from the Earth to blow, whereby the Sea wind reigneth, which having no countenance to represse the vapours that doe arise to make rain, in fort that the filter of the Hill hindereth not the rising of the vapours : and this want of matter causeth that in that Coast the vapours arise the thinnest, and then a moyty for dankish mist, which is profitable for their sowings, which have not without the mountain, but they never so much watered. The that defend from the Mountayne, where much Corn is gathered by courtes of the *Ries*, *Oyle*, *Sugar*, and the other Seeds, and Fruits, of *Calile*, and of the Country. In the Westward his hills of the Mountayne, are great Pastures and breedings of cattell, and the temper vantage and the cold desired for the heighe is cold, and the low hot, and the middelmott partakers of *Quito*, and of the *Cheraca* are in the charge of the Vice-roy, and there are the Townes following in the circuit of this Councell.

The City of the Kings (or of Lima, because the Valley is so called, which was the name of the *Cuzco*, and it is the greatest and broadest Valley, of all those that are from 7 *Unkas*, vnto 81 flands nere the South Sea, in twelue degrees of South latitude, and eighty two vnto the Meridian of *Toledo*, distant from it about one thousand eight hundred leagues by a straight greater circle: it hath about three thousand households: the Marques *Don Francisco* de *Pizarro* built it, in the beginning of the year 1534, because suspecting that the President *Don Peter de Toledo* would come downe to the Sea coast, when he went with an Host from *Guatemala* to intercept him: the Marques *Don Aluado* went to resist him to the Prouinces of *Quito*, he went to intercept him the passage of the *Andes*, and he was forced to returne backe againe: he went thence all the houses do take water, and the *Andes*, wherein are excellent founts of *Cafila* mine nor perfumage; nor doth it rayne or thunder, nor fall there any thunder-bolts or lightnings, but the Heauen is always cleare and very faire.

In this Cite is resident the Vice-roy, the Royall Councell, an assembly of chiefe Iudges, the 30 Officers of the Kings Rents, and treasure Royall, the Tribunal of the holy and generall Inquisition, which was founded when the Inquisition of *New Spaine* was. The Inquisitor general in these Kingdomes was then the Cardinal *Dn James of Eslipava* Bishop of *Sigüenza*, it hauing beene before that time the Bishop of *Durango*. In this Cite is also the Cathedricall Church of the Christian Religion. There is also a Cite of the holy and Christian Fathers of the Company of Iesus where very diligent, to reape fruit in the preaching of the Gospel. In this Cite is also an Episcopall resident, whose Suffraganes are the Bishops of *Cuba*, *Chorazan*, *Canco*, *Queto*, *Pana*, *Negreague*, and the *River of Plate*. There are three Parishes, and five Monasteries of the female Order, and of the Company of Iesus, and two of Nunnkes. *Callao* which is her Port, is two leagues from the Cite, great, capabull, and very good, where are houses, one of Iustice, a custome House, one of the great, and one of the *Sancti Francis*: there hath bene scene the Wine of the Ocean beat to coale in the Sea in flaggons, where the Ocean hath the credit to be the vertue to temper and rectifie the ouer-much heat. Many doe affirme that in this Cite are

CHAP. I. Herera's description of Peru, S. James, S. John, Guamanga, &c. 89

twelve thousand Women of all Nations, and twentie thousand blacke-Moores.

Women and Negroes.

[illegible][illegible]

bunches, and some *Spaniards* do eat where they have no other life. Guamany.

The *Cities of Guamany*, or *Saint Lucie* of the *Victories*, fixt together from *Lima* to the *South-east*, in the way of the *Inga*, *Bishoprick of Cuzco*, hath *Mansions of Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, and *Mercedarians*, of *Numbers* and in *buildings* more than three thousand tributary *Indians*: it is so fruitful of *Wheat* and *Wine*, and rich of silver *Myne*s. The *Marques Don Francisco Pizarro* built this *City* 1539. and placed it the first time in a towne of *Indians* called *Guamany*, neere to the great *Riv* of the *Andes*, and left for his Lieutenant the *Captaine Francisco de Cardenas*. Afterward it was removed to the *Playne* where now it is, neere to certaine small *Hills* on the *South* side, and high to a *Brooke* of good water. In this *City* are the best *houses* of *Peru*, of stone and brick; the *leste* is healthfull, without *fever*. In the towne are the *Church*, the *Aire*, the *Draw*, or the *Molitor*, or the *leste* is healthfull, without *fever*. In her borders certaine great buildings of the *Indians*, which differ from the building of the *Inga*: the moit of the *Countrimen* of this did build the *houses* of *white men* with *beards*, which came thither before the *Inga*, and the *Countrie* are *Adams*, which is to say, *Transplanted*, for the *Inga* did vife for the greater *Recreation* of the *Empire*, to take from one *Province* the people they did not trust, and lend them to live in another. Great build-
ings.
Transplanted
of the
Indians.

60 *Guanamanga* is sixtie leagues from *Cusco*, and in the way are the hills and a valley of *Ambo*, where *Vaca de Castro*, and *Don James de Almagro* the younger did fight; and forward are the build- ings of *Vitafu*, in the high way in *Andabuylla*, eleven leagues from *Guanamanga*, which was the centre of the *Incas*; and here was the great Temple of the Sunne. The Province of the *Anda- 17. James*
b. c. *buylla* is long and hath much time Castell, and victuals; from thence they come to the River of *Abacay*, nine leagues neerer *Cusco*, where the President *Don James de Almagro* the elder over- threw

is *mirrored*.

ed *Chrysomelidae*

en Faire *Indians*.

the Valleys.

**These Qualities of
the Millet.**

Arch. Gynecol.

ings Great boi-
dines

Transplant
as of Egypt
Gen. 42, 21.
Israelites, 2
17. Jews
Bab. &c.

Temple of
Sunne.

VIEW

Chap. 22.
Of the bounds
of the King-
dome of Chile.

Rio de la Sal.

Saint James.

The Strand.

Rising Golden
and silver
Coppermine.

Mount-
Santal
the Frontiers.

and the Summer are at such times as in Spain: it is a healthfull Countrey and of a good temper, and the first that entered in it, were the Captaine *Diego de Rojas*, *Platillo Guzman*, and *Nicolas de Heredia*; they discoursed on this side the River of *Plato* unto the Fortresse of *Gabin*.

DOn *Diego de Almagro* was provided the yeere 1534. in *Teledo* for Gouernour of two hundred leagues of ground beyond the Government of the Marques *Don Francisco Pizarro*, toward the Streight of *Magellan*, intitling this part, *The new government of Teledo*. He went to pacifie this Countrey, and because he forooke it, it was given in charge to the Marques *Don Francisco Pizarro* 1537. and he commended it 1540. to the Captaine *Peter of Valdivia*; who went thither with one hundred and fiftie *Spaniards*. All the Countreys of this Kingdom lye to the South of the Equinoctiall, in a more Southerne altitude then the Kingdoms of *Pern*, and her Provinces within the Torridle, from the Equinoctiall unto the Tropick of *Cancer*, which passeth a Degree, which they call of *Araucano*, which is from twentie three to twentie fixe degrees, and then betwene the Kingdoms of *Chile*, which the *Indians* call *Chile*, and before the inhabited Countreys is the River of *Te Sal*, in three and twentie degrees and three quarters, which from the East side of the *Rew* of *Mouraine*, runneth to the West into the Sea, through a very deepe Valley, and though it hath the water very cleere; all that the *Horfes* are wet with it when they drinke, is congealed with the heate of the Sunne; and it is so meere salt that it cannot bee drunke, and in the borders it is congealed: the River is before the entering in the first Province of *Chile* two and twentie leagues where the *Xagueres* are, which are Wells of water, for there is no other in the two and twentie leagues, and all the Kingdome stands within the Zone, which the ancient men called *Deserte*, which is inhabited with white *Indians*, and it is situated on the borders of the South Sea, which is *Mare Magnum*, which is included betwene her Coast and the Coast of *China*.

This Government taken largely unto the Streight, hath in length North and South, from the Valley of *Coyape* where it beginneth in seven and twentie degrees, five hundred leagues, and in breadth East and West, from the South Sea to the North Sea, from four hundred to five hundred of ground to be pacified, which doth fraughten it selfe, till it remayneth by the Streight in ninetie or in an hundred leagues. That which is inhabited of this Government, may bee three hundred along the North Sea coast, and the breadth of it twentie leagues and lesse, unto the *Rew* of the *Andes*, which doe and nere the Streight, and it passeth through this Kingdom very high, and almost covered at all times with snow. All the Countrey is plaine, at the least there is great roughnesse, except where the *Rew* of *Pern* doth reach, and doth end within two or three leagues of the Coast.

The temper and qualitie of it (though it bee not without some difference for the varieties of the heights it standeth in altogether) is of the best, and most inhabitable that is in the *Indies*, in temperature like unto *Castile*, in whole opposite altitude in health almost all, and in abundance and goodnesse of victuals, and plenty of all things, riches of *Myrras* and Metals, and force and vigour of the Countreines, which for being to great warriors have alwayes bene able to pacifie, and there bee many out in the Mountaines, and Braethes of the end of the *Rew*, the Provinces of *Arauco*, *Tucapel*, and the Valley of *Pern*, the bounds and borders between the Citie of the *Conception*, and *San Cosme*, and *La Imperial*.

In this Government are eleven Spanish Townes, with a Gouernour placed in the matters of the Government to the Vice-roy, and Councell of *Pern*, after the Councell that was in the Countrey was taken away; and therewith it two Bishoppicks Suffraganes to the Archbishoppick of the *Kings*. In the Bishoppick of *Saint James* are four Townes. The Citie of *Saint James* in the time of the first inhabiting of *Chile*, founded by Captaine *Peter of Valdivia*, it stands in thirte four degrees and a quarter of altitude, leuente seven of longitude, one thousand nine hundred and sixtie leagues from *Teledo* by a direct Line, fiftene from the Sea, and ten beyond the Valley of *Chile*, which they named at the first *New Escombra*. In it is the Cathedral resident 50 with Monasteries of *Dominicke*, *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie* Friars; in a plentifull foile of wheat, Wine, and other things, and of very rich Mines of gold, and in her iurisdiction more then thirte thousand *Indians* in fixe and twentie repartitions: This Citie is formed of the Port of *Valparaiso* at the mouth of the River *Topocalme*, which passeth nere unto it.

Captaine *Valdivia* peopled also *la Serena* in the yeere 1544. nere to a good Haven; it is the first Towne of *Spaniards*, at the entrie of *Chile* sixtie leagues from the Citie of *Saint James*, somewhat North-west nere to the Sea in the Valley of *Cogumbo*, with Monasteries of *Franciscan* and *Mercenarie* Friars. It stayneth in it but three or four times a yeere, and in the Countreies before it is to be pacified. The Port which they call of *Cogumbo*, stands in two and thirte degrees, it is a good Nooke where the ships of *Pern* doe make a stay. In the Province of *Chilcutu*, which is on the other side of the *Rew* of the *Andes*, in a cold and barren Countrey, doe stand the Citie of *Mendoza*, and of *Saint Iohns* of the Frontier; for *Don Garcia de Mendoza* peopled them both. The Citie of *Mendoza* is of the same height with *Saint James*, about fiftie leagues from it, of a difficult way, for the know that is in the *Andes*. The Citie of *Saint Iohns* of the Frontier stands to the South of the Citie of *Mendoza*.

In the Bishoppick of the Imperiall are seven Spanish Townes, which are the Citie of the *Conception* in seven and thirte degrees of height, leuente leagues to the South of the Citie of *Saint James*, nere to the Sea, *Peter Valdivia* inhabited it in the yeere 1550. The Gouernours are resident in it, since the Councell (that was there from the yeere 1567. unto 1572) was taken away. There are Monasteries of *Dominicke*, *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie* Friars. The Port of this Citie stands in a nooke at the shelter of an Island. The Countrey the new village of *San Iustino*, or *San Cosme*; *Don Garcia de Mendoza* peopled it; and the Gouernour *Valdivia* now village of 10 commanded it to be called *de los Confines*. It stands sixtente leagues from the *Conception* to the side of the Streight, eight leagues from the *Rew* of the *Andes*, and twenty from that which goeth along the Coast. It hath two Monasteries of *Dominicke*, another of *Franciscan* Friars. The waste- 15 like *Indians* come to the bounds of this Citie, and the myrie River *Bibio* they them, and others which doe enter into it, and the River *Natiquen*.

Peter of Valdivia peopled the Citie of the Imperiall 1572, which is in nine and thirte degrees of height, nine and thirte leagues from the *Conception* toward the Streights side, three leagues from the Sea, where the Cathedral is resident with one Monasterie of *Franciscan*, another of *Mercenarie* Friars; and in her bounds are more then eightie thousand *Indians*, with many other that in her bounds are in armes. The River *Cauten* passeth nere it, which is notable to the Sea, though the Haven bee not good nor secure. Captaine *Valdivia* peopled 20 also the *Rio Village*, where he leuente leagues from *Imperiall*, about the South-eastward, with all the *Rio Village* force from the *Conception*, nere to the *Sunny Rew*, with one Monasterie of *Franciscan*, another of *Mercenarie*, in a Countrey cold and barren of Bread and Wine.

The Citie of *Valdivia* is two leagues off the Sea, and fiftie from the *Conception* to the Streight ward; peopled also by Captaine *Valdivia*, with Monasteries of *Dominicke*, *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie*, in a plentifull Countrey of Wheat, and Seedes, and in places of good pastures for Cattel, and without Vine. The merchandize comes up by the River of *Valdivia*, which passeth nere it, and the Port stands in the mouth of it in four degrees of *Oforno* height. The Citie of *Oforno*; *Don Garcia de Mendoza* peopled, sixtie leagues or more from the *Conception* to the port of the Streight, seven leagues from the Sea. It hath one Monasterie 30 of *Dominicke*, another of *Franciscan*, with another of Nunnas, in a cold Countrey, scarce of victuals, but of much gold, and in her bounds two hundred thousand *Indians* of repartition. The Citie of *Castro*, which was inhabited by the Licenciado *Lopo Garcia de Castro*, being *Go. Castro*, remour of the Kingdoms of *Pern*, the which is called in the *Indian* tongue *Chilne*, which is the last of the inhabited in *Chile*, in an Island of those that are in the Lake of *Ancud*, or *Chilne*, and the *Archipelago* stands in three and fortie degrees of altitude, one and fortie leagues to the South of *Oforno*, with a Monasterie of *Franciscan*, with twelve thousand *Indians* of repartition in her bounds, for it is an Island of fiftie leagues in length, and from two vntill 40 of Millet, and Mines of flying a Gold, on the Strand a few few times, or less. One Island, doe fenee.

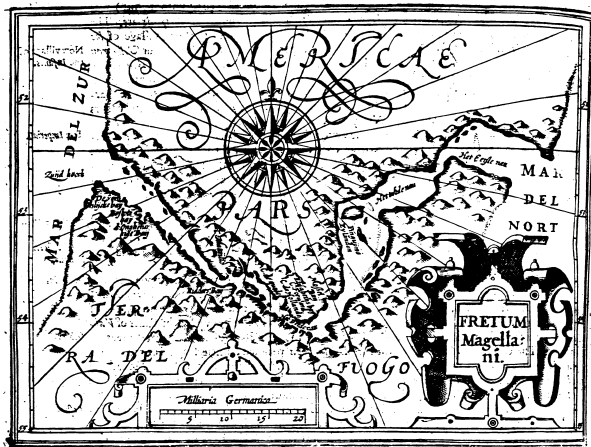
The Gouernour *Nuñez* took away the name of the Citie which was *Cauete*, that *Don Garcia de Mendoza* inhabited, and commanded to call it *Tucapel*, and afterward disinhabited it. There are in this Government which beginneth in two and twentie degrees, the Port and River of *Coyape*, and to the South of it, the Port of *Gusfane* another River, and the River of *Cogumbo* in two and thirte degrees; and passeth this Port of the *Cigua* in the River, and the Port of *Quintero* at the mouth of the River of *Cogumbo*, before the Port of *Saint James*, or *Valparaiso*, and the Port of *Topocalme* in the River of *Mappa*; and passeth the River of *Malle* the Port of the *Herradura*, at the mouth of the River *Isata*, before the Port of the *Conception* 50 in the great River of *Bibio* to the North, the land of *Saint Maria* right against the State of *Arauco*, and the Port of *Cauete*, and the land of *Macha* more to the South, and the Port of *Cauten*, which is that of the *Imperiall*, and to the South the landing place and the River of *Tel-tel* before the Port of *Valdivia*, and passeth this Point of the Gallies, and more to the South the great Bay or Port of *Oforno* in the River of *La Canoa*, and to the South of it about thirte leagues to the Lake of *Los Coronados* the broadest River of this Realme, and at the end of this Realme the Lake of *Ancud*.

MEn doe call the Streight of *Magellans*, that which is past the River of *Plato* by the South Sea; from the last of *Chile*, vnto the Streight two hundred leagues before it, from two and fortie or three or fortie degrees of altitude, vnto two and fiftie and more, for although 60 men have sayled through both the Seas diuersely, and some people in there unto the Streight itselfe, it hath not bene pacified, nor made inhabitable, but that which the *Reere* that *Don Pedro Flores de Valdes* carried to the Streight left in the mouth of the Streight on the North side, in the yeere 1582. which was called the Citie of *Saint Philip*, which for being in so much altitude could

Chap. 24.
Of the Frontiers
of the Countrey.

Or Hofs-
dooc.

HONDIVS via Map of the MAGELLAN Straights.



Ports, Capes,
and Points of
the two
Coasts.

High, Alter-
cations, of the
colours of the
Antichoke.
Or Periscope
of Gallia.

Sir Richard
Hawkins.

Straights of
Magellan.

not be preferred for the great cold, and therefore that navigation is difficult and dangerous for the continual tempests, and great stormes of winds that are at all times.

The Ports, Capes, and Points of the Coast of the one and the other Sea vnto the Straight, although they be many, and some are not pointed in the Cardes of Navigation, it appeareth not wholly, neither is there any certain relation of all. And the most knowne of the Coast from the Straight, which runneth from *Valdivia* about an hundred leagues to the West South-west are, the Cape of *Saint Andrew* in feuen and fortie degrees, from whence the Coast turneth directly to the South vnto the Straight, by the Cape of *Saint James* in eight and fortie degrees, and nere vnto it the Iland of *Saint Catalina*, nere to the great Bay which they call *Sancti Spiritus*, and within it the Bay of our Lady, and the Iland of *Santa Barbara*, and more forward the Ports of *Herman Gallego* in eight and fortie degrees two third parts, and the Bay of *The Kings* eighteen leagues from the Port of *Herman Gallego*, and the Bay of *Saint John* in fiftie degrees one third part, the Cape of *Saint Francisco* in one and fiftie, whereby some Channels doe enter into the Land, and the Iland of *la Campana*, or of the Bell, eleven leagues from *Saint Francisco*: also with some Channels which haue not bene navigated within the Land, and the Bay of *Saint Lucas* in two and fiftie degrees, with Channels on the sides, which enter very broad and long to the one and the other parts, which haue not bene navigated, and a great Sea of Ilands which alwayes was first to be at the South side nere to the mouth of the Straight, the which Sir Richard Hawkins denyeth; for he saith, That at the mouth of the Straight on the South side, he found no more then foure small Ilands, and one in the middle like a Sugarloffe, and that the least they are distant from the mouth of the Straight fix leagues, and the great Sea is on the one side, and he holdeth for certaine it is that which they say is the firme Land of the South side of the Straight, and that there is no firme Land. The Straight though they haue putt it from the South to the North side, by order of the Vice-roy Don Francisco de Toledo, Pedro Sarmiento, and Antonio Pablo Corso, and it is knowne it stands from 52. to 53. degrees of altitude, where it draweth most to the South, and that in length it hath one hundred and ten leagues,

leagues, or one hundred and fiftie, little more or lesse, and in breadth from one to tenne: it hath neuer bene navigated to an end from the South Sea to the North Sea, nor the Pyrats that haue putt it from the North to the South, are vnderstood to haue returned by it. The about said Sir Richard Hawkins saith, that he failed many dayes by the Straight, and affirmeth that all the Countrey on the South side is no firme Land, but many Ilands which reach to 56. degrees; the which he might know, because he sayled to the same 56. degrees through the middle of those Ilands, and seeing he found nothing but Sea, hee followed his course againe through by the Straight, and that this cannot be so farre, the differences of Seas, which the many entrie doe cause that are among those Ilands, and that the habiting of them is of people on the North side, which doe passe to those Ilands to sustaine themselves of fishing, and in their seasons returne to their Countrey; and that he comprehended this of many things especially of not hauing seene any feared inhabiting, but some Cabbins which the Indians doe make for a time. The same said Sir Francisco Drake, that it hapned him when he passed the Straight, the year 1579. who after his coming out into the South Sea, he ran along with tempests compassing this Sea, vnto the mouth of the North Sea, and by the same way he had runne, he made sure his navigation to the South Sea.

The parts most famous of the Straight at the entrie of the South are the Cape *Desseado*, or *Disfired*, in 53. degrees, and the Channell of all *Santos*, two and twentie leagues from the mouth, very broad, and large, and passeth the Port of the *Treasure*, and afterward another great large Channell which runneth to the North-west and *Romulo*, a great Rocke in the middle at the beginning of a Channell. They gave it this name of one of *Magellanes* fellows called *Romulo*, who went to reach knowledge, which was a Gunner: the point of possession which is foure leagues from the Cape of *Virgen*, at the entrie of the North Sea in 52. degrees and a halfe of altitude, when *Peter Sarmiento*, and *Antonio Pablo Corso* by order which they had to reknowledge the Straight, for it had bene commanded long before for to test it were a more easie navigation to the South Sea, then that of *Panama*: they viewed the two narrow places, that at the entrie of the North, and it seemed to *Peter Sarmiento* that the one was too narrow, that with Artillerie might be kept, and so much he periwilled it, that although the Duke of *Alca* affirmed it was impossible, the Armit which *James Florin* carried victoriously was sent about it, and in the end was knowne that the navigation is dangerous, and the flowing of two Seas which come to meete in the middle of the Straight, doe withdraw themselves with such furie, ebbing in some places more then fixtie fathoms, that when the Shippes doe carry nothing, but Cables to preserve themselves from looting that which they had sayled, they would goe full freighted.

In foure hundred leagues, there is of Coast from the mouth of the Straight, vnto the Riuer of *Plate*, which runneth altogether North-east and South-west, there is the Riuer of *Saint Ilesio*, twelve leagues from the Cape of the *Virgen*, the *Gallatin* Riuer, and the Bay of *Saint James*, foureteen leagues from the Riuer of *Santa Cruz*, in 50. degrees, and at the mouth an Iland called *Lyons* and the Port of *Saint Ilesio* in 49. degrees, and the Riuer of *Iabu Serrano* to the South of the Ilands of *Duckey*, in 47. degrees, the Riuer of *Canasur* in 45. degrees, the Cape of *Saint Dominick*, before the Cape of three Points, and the Land of *los Hornos* or of the *Smoke*, in 38. degrees, the Point of *Santa Helena*, and of *Saint Apollonia*, in 37. degrees before the White Cape, at the entrie of the Riuer of *Plate* on the South side.

Don Diego de Salis discovered the Riuer of *Plate* 1515. and *Sebastian Gabo* an English-man, going with an Armit by order of the Emperour, in pursuit of the Fleet which *Friez Garcia de Loyosa* Commander, had carried to the Ilands of the *Madagascars*, and concerning hee could not ouertake them, he thought good to buse himselfe in something that might be profitable, and entered the year 29. discovering that which he had found, returned to *Castile*, hauing gone many leagues vp the Riuer, he found *Plate* or *Siluer* among the Indians of those Countreys, for in that place it is called the *Riuer of Plate*, for before it was called the Riuer of *Salis*. These Provinces are ioyned with those of *Brasil*: by the line of the markes they haue no determined bounds, but by the Coast of the Sea that falleth to the North, and entrance of the Riuer of *Plate* of the which the Countrey hath taken the name, and the mouth of this Riuer may Rand sixteen hundred leagues from the Bay of *Saint Lucas* of *Barrameda*.

All these Provinces are very plentifull of Wheate, Wine, and Sugar, and all other feedes and fruites of *Castile* doe grow well: they haue great Pastures for all sorts of Cattle, which haue multiplied infinitely, especially the Horses, and though they haue bene many yeares without, thinking there were any Mines of Gold, or of *Siluer*, they haue already found a shoue of them, and of Copper, and Iron, and one of very perfect Amathists. All these Provinces are of one Government, with title Royall, subordinated for nearnesse to the Vice-roy of *Pirra*, with one Bishopricke wherein are three Spanish Townes, and a great multitude of the Countreys men, of big bodies,

This is not true: for *Castile* winter & others haue done it, which howeuer he calls *Pirra*, yet they haue better discovered the Straights then the Spanish.

Or *Vine* Turg.

Or *Ordinamus*.

* *Hisp. Gall.* 80.

Chap. 24. Of the Provinces of the Riuer of *Plate*, & of *Brasil*. *Sebastian Gabo* came in the Riuer of *Plate*, which is called of the *Plate*. He was an English man by breeding, borne a *Portuguese*, but being in England and in *Spain* by his employment. See the former Book. Thinking that the Provinces of the Riuer of *Plate*.

The Assump-
tion.

Note.

Circled red.

Fallor Cata-
racts very ter-
rible.

* Or Good bye

Ports and
Points of this
Coast.Hills, Port cer-
vato, Rio de
Baba, and

River of Plate.

The chance of
the Captain
Salazar with
a Tigre.Tigre killed
and is killed.

bodies, and well conditioned. And the Townes are the Citie of our *Lady of the Assumption*, the first inhabiting, and the head of this Province, it stands in 25. degrees and a half of altitude; the Capitaine *John of Salazar* built it by order of the Governour *Don Peter Mendez*. The territory thereof was first called *Caramora*; it hath *Brasill* at the right hand two hundred and eighty leagues, and in this compass it hath the *Citie Royall* at eight leagues, which the *Indians* call *Guayra*. And on the side of *Pern*, which is East and West, at each at four hundred and eighty leagues, the Citie of *la Plata*, and at two hundred and eighty, the Citie of *Santa Cruz de la Sierra* or of the *Hill*, which *Nusco of Chame* built. To the South side which is toward the Strait of *Magelane*, it hath very great and rich Countries, and this Citie stands three hundred leagues from the mouth of the River of *Plate*, built neere to the River *Paraguay*, on the East side, with four hundred *Spanish* Households, and more then three thousand children of those that were borne to them in the Countrey (which they call *Mestizos*) in it are resident the Governour, and Officers Royall, and the Cathedral which is called the *Bishopricks of the Plate*, subject to the Archbishopricke of the *Kings*, and in her jurisdiction more then 400000 *Indians*, which doe increase daily.

Citie Royall was called by another name *Ontiveros*, built by *Rodrigus de Melgarejo*; it stands eighty leagues from the *Assumption* North-east, toward the Land of *Brasill*, neere to the River *Parana*; it stands in a good soyle of Viduals, and Vines, and much good Copper, and great number of *Indians*, which also doe much increase. In this River *Parana*, neere the *Citie Royall*, there is a great fall, that no man dare come neere it by Land within two hundred paces, for the great noyle, and mist of the water, and by the River no Canoe, nor Boate dare come neere by a league; for the furie of the water doth carry it to the fall, which is about two hundred fathomes off a steep Rock, and it is so narrow, and the water goeth so close, that it seemes you may throw over it with a dart.

* *Good bye* is a Towne which in old time was inhabited neere the place where now it is built againe, in the Province of the *Moragues*, in the borders of the River of *Plate*, in a plentiful soyle, where all things of *Castile* doe grow very well; the Governour *Don Peter de Mendez* built it 1535, which caused all that which *Gaboto* forsooke to be discovered. All this Countrey is commonly plaine; for except the *Cordillera de Roves* (which are on the Sea coast, and may be twenty leagues toward *Brasill* afterwards compassing all the Countrey toward the River *Mazumay* in the *Roves* of the Kingdomes of *Pern*, all is plaine, except some small hills.

There are knowne in the Coast of these Provinces from the Land of *Brasill*, unto the River of *Plate* five or six reasonable Ports; the Port of *Saint Vincent*, in 33. degrees height, right against *Buenavista*, an land where the line of the repartition passeth; and six leagues to the South the River *Ptoy*, and the Port, and the Land of *la Canana* in 35. degrees; and forward the River of *la Barca*, before the Port of *Baba* or River of the *Duck* of *la Traya*; and the Port of *Don Rodrigo*, twenty leagues to the South from *Santa Catalina*, an land 29. degrees and more to the South, five leagues, *Clofe Haven*, and fiftene the *Inhabited River*, and as much the *Depe* Bay from this, and the River *Taquari*, in 2. degrees and a half, before the Cape of *Saint Mary*, which is in 35. 40. degrees at the entrie of the River of *Plate*.

This River is called in the *Indian* language *Paraguayana*, and commonly *Pern*, hath his entrie and mouth in the South Sea, from thirtie five unto thirtie six degrees of altitude, between the Capes of *Saint Marie*, and Cape *Blanco*, which is from the one to the other about thirtie leagues of mouth, and from thence inward other tenne leagues in breadth, with many Islands in the middle, and many very great maine Rivers, which enter into it by the East and West side, unto the Port of the *Kings*, which is a great Lake called of the *Xarages*, little lesse then three hundred leagues from the River of *Plate*, where enter many Rivers that come from the skirts of the *Andes* and they may be of those Rivers that proceede in the Provinces of the *Chirac* and *Cusco*, which hath given occasion to thinke that this River doth communicate with the River of *Saint John* of the *Amazon*; others say that it cometh from the Lake of the *Derado*, which is fiftene journeys from the Lake of the *Xarages*, though there be opinions that there is no *Derado*.

The Capitaine *Salazar* governing in these Provinces by the death of *Don Peter Mendez* in the year 1545, a *Spaniard* being in his bed and his wife by him on the our side, in the night there came a Tigre and gave the man a blow that he killed him, and carried him away, and between certain Causes he did deuote him: in the morning the Capitaine *Salazar* went forth with fiftie *Souldiours* to seeke the Tigre, and going through a wood, he went alone by a path, and as soone as hee discovered the Tigre, hee being dead, hee upon him, and at the time hee lifted up the pawe for to strike him, the Capitaine let the Shaft out of his Cross-bow, and strooke him on the heart, and it fell downe dead: an exploit of great courage, heede and dexterity.

The

THE Provinces and Countrey of *Brasil* in the Coast of the North Sea, and *Terra firme* is called all that which falleth to the East from the line of the repartition; from twenty nine degrees of longitude from the Meridian of *Toledo*, unto thirtie nine, which are two hundred leagues from East to West, and four hundred and fiftie North and South, from two degrees of Southerne altitude, by the Cape of *Humer* or of *Smaque*, unto five and twenty, by the land of *Buenavista* or *Good-harbour*. And from the first inhabiting, unto the last of *Brasil*, there are three hundred and fiftie leagues. *Vicent Pinson* discovered first this Countrey by commandement of the Kings Catholicke, and presently after him *James de Lepe*, in the year 1500, and the Coast of *Guinea* did put to much to the Sea that he found this Countrey, and called it *Santa Cruz*, because on that day hee discovered it. All of it is very hot in Winter and Summer, and very tame, and compassed with Woods and Mounts, vnhalshill, and full of venomous Wormes, plentiful in Pastures for Cattle, and not for Wheat, nor Millet; there are in it great thowes of Siluer and Gold, but as the *Portugals* have no stocke to make any profit of the Mines they leave them as they are.

The principall food of this Countrey is the *Casabi* which they make of the *Tuca*, and the greatest traffike is Sugar, and Corten Bumball, and *Brasil* Wood, which was it that gave it the name. There are in all the Province nine Governements, which are called Capitainships, in them fouteene *Portugall* Townes: in it may be about threethree hundred hundred households, and great multitude of warlike *Indians*, which have not suffered the *Portugals* to build but on the Coast, in which are many Rivers, Landings, and many Ports, and very late, where any Ships may come in they neerer to Babel.

The Coluane of the first Capitainship, and the most ancient is *Tamara*, the second *Pernambuco*, five leagues from *Tamara* to the South, in eight degrees of altitude, and there is a house of the Fathers of the Companie of *Iesu*; the other is, that of all *Saints*, one hundred leagues from *Pernambuco* in thirteenth degrees, and there the Governour, the Bishop, and the Auditor general of all the Coasts are resident, and it hath a Colledge of the Companie; the fourth Capitainship of the Islands is thirtie leagues from the Bay of *All Saints*, in fourteen degrees & two third parts, it hath a House of the Fathers of the Companie. In this Capitainship is found a Tree where out they take a precious Balm.

The Capitainship of the *Sure-haven* is thirtie leagues from *Puerto Seguro*, in twenty leagues in sixteenth degrees and a half; it hath three Inhabiting, and a House of the Fathers of the Companie. The Capitainship of the *Holy-Ghost* five leagues from *Puerto Seguro*, in twenty three degrees and one third part, with a house of the Fathers of the Companie, and they live in their jurisdiction much *Brasil* Wood; the River is very faire, with fine and profitable borders. The last Capitainship is *Saint Vincent*, five leagues from the River of *Guayra*, in four and twente degrees; it hath a fortress in an land for a defence against the *Indians* and Pirates, and a house of the Fathers of the Companie.

The Cattle that are in these Provinces are many and great breeding of Swine, and their libertie. The Cattle that are in these Provinces are many and great breeding of Swine, and their libertie. The Cattle that are in these Provinces are many and great breeding of Swine, and their libertie.

The Cattle that are in these Provinces are many and great breeding of Swine, and their libertie. The Cattle that are in these Provinces are many and great breeding of Swine, and their libertie. The Cattle that are in these Provinces are many and great breeding of Swine, and their libertie.

There are in this Coast eight or tenne Ports more principall then the rest, which are the River of *Saint Dominick* and *de la Trinidad* to the North-east of *Pernambuco*, and *Tamara*, which is an Island, and as it is said, the first Plantation, and before the Cape of *Saint Augustin*, which stands in nine degrees, the River of *Saint Francis* in ten degrees and a half, which is great and mightie; the Bay of *All Saints* three leagues broad, and thirteenth into the Land unto *Saint Sebastian*, the River and Port *Trinidad*, where the Ships doe roach that goe this Voyage, and the River of *Canamum* in thirteenth degrees and a half, the River of the *Beade* or *Saint Augustin* is fourteenth degrees and a half; and the River of the *Virgin* in sixteenth. *Porto Rico* in fourteenth degrees; the River of *Parana* in twente degrees, neere to *Santa Espirito*; the River of *Guayra* neere to *Saint Sebastian*, and *Gold Cape* in three and twente degrees beyond *Saint Vincent*.

INther of the West, at all the Lands and firme Land comprehended within the markes of the Crowne of *Castile* and of *Lyon*, at the Occidental end of the said borders; whose line is the said nation on the other side the world, through the Citie of *Malacca* from whence toward the East, and *New Spaine*, is a great Gulfe of infinite Islands great and small, and many pieces of Coasts, and firme Land, which are divided into the Islands of the *Spicerie*, or of the *Malucces*, *Indies Philipinas*, the Coast of *China*, Islands of the *Leguins* and *Lepous*; Coast of the new *Guinea*, Islands

Chap. 35.
Of the Provinces
and Countreys
of Brasil.

1500. Vincent
Pinson borne
in the Village
of Pado de
Covadonga, and
then Diego de
Lepe.

Inhabiting of
the Coast of
Brasil.

Many Iesuites
Colledges.

Puerto Seguro.

Amazon.

The principall
left Ports of
this Coast.

Caba Fria.

Chap. 26.
Of the cities
which are
called the
Indies of the
West, which are
the Islands
Philipinas, the
coast of
China, and the
Leguins.

Ilands of *Solomon*, and of *Ladrones* or the *Theores*: the temper of all these Ilands and Lands in general is moist, and temperately hot, plentiful of *Viñals*, and *Bafts*, with some *Gold*, but little, no *Silver*, store of *Wax*, and the people of sundry colours, and the ordinary colour like *Indians*, and some white among them, and some coal-black.

The Ilands of the *Spicerie* (which properly are called so, because all the *Pepper*, *Cloves*, *Sitamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, and *Masticke* that is spent in *Europe*, is brought from these Ilands) are many, though the most famous of that *Gulfe* are five small Ilands under the Equinoctiall in one Emperor *Charles*, the fit made of them to the King of *Portugall* for three hundred and fiftie thousand *Duckets*, which are *Ternate* of eight and nine leagues compasse, with a Port called *Taloro*, and in it is raised *Corala*, which yielded him selfe to the King of *Castile*, when the Shipps that remained of *Magelans* fleets found these Ilands. The Iland of *Tidore* stands one league from *Ternate* to the South, it hath tenne leagues compasse. The Iland of *Mallu*, or *Muier* is of foure leagues compasse, and is vnder the Equinoctiall, and *Macian* three leagues to the South, of seven in compasse, and tenne leagues to the South. *Batan* or *Baqian* is three leagues in compasse. In the Iland of *Tidore* reigned *Almanzor*, which also gave him selfe for tributary to the King of *Castile*, which and *Carala* did write and *Iohn Sebastian* of the *Cerro*, borne in the Village of *Guitare*, in the Province of *Guspucaca* brought their Letters; the which departing from *Tidore* in the year 1522, touched in the Iland of *Zemata*, and going up to the most foure two degrees toward the Antipode Point, he arrived at the Iland of *Saint Iames* of the *Greene Cape* or *Cabo Verde*, and from thence to *Souil* with the Shippe called the *Vidua*, having spent seven months time little less in coming from the Iland of *Tidore*. *Patim* is the fit Iland like the other; *Moors* inhabited in it, and *Gentiles* also, which knew not the immortality of the soule. And when the Shippe of the fleet of *Fryer Garcia* of *Loaysa* came, *Reiam* reigned in *Tidore* of thirteen years of age, and againe acknowledged the King of *Castile*, and also the King of *Gilelo* called *Sultan Adertiamenian*, and confirmed it with an oath. *Gilelo* is an Iland vnder the line foure leagues distant from those rehearsed; it is of two hundred leagues compasse, without *Spicerie*: the Iland of *Ambon* in three degrees and a halfe to the South, from the Iland of *Gilelo* without *Spicerie*. The Ilands of *Bandan* are in foure degrees of Southerne altitude, where the *Nutmegs* is gathered, and *Mace*; and the *Burro*, which is to the West of *Ambon*, and *Tinor*, another Iland to the South-west from *Bandan*, almost one hundred leagues without *Spicerie*, but rich of *Sandal*, *Zinziba*, fittie leagues from *Tinor*, to the North-west of forty leagues compasse, plentiful of *Pepper*, and the Iland of *Cadzer*, which is very great, & *Borney* greater, neerer the straight of *Malacca*, which is made in the firme Land; & *Zemata*, which in old time they called *Taprobana*. There be other manie great Ilands, and small, which remaine to the South side, neere *Iana Maior* & *Miuor*, and to the North toward the coast of *Ceylon*; the *Portugals* have a fortress in *Ternate*, and another in the Citie of *Malacca* at the entrie of the *Archipelagus*.

The Ilands *Philippinas* are a Sea of thirtie or fortie great Ilands, besides many other small ones which are together in lesse then two hundred leagues in length North and South, and one hundred in breadth between *New Spaine*, and the *Gulfe* of *Bengala*, and they are about fiftie hundred leagues from the Port of the *Natiuite* in *New Spaine*, from fix to fiftie or fixtente degrees of Septentrional altitude, of a reasonable temperature; and plentiful of *Viñals*, specially of *Rice*, and some base *Gold* in some places, and in some Ilands are *Cinnamon* trees, and long *Pepper*. The Countre men are of a good shape, and in some Ilands they are blacke, and those which live in the center of the Countrie are whiter then those that live in the Sea coasts. There are good Ports, and Timber for Shipping, the names of the principall Ilands are *Chilman*, which is the greatest, and most Southward, of a hundred leagues in length, and three hundred in compasse, a rough Countrie, but plentiful of *Miller*, *Waxe*, *Rice*, *Ginger*, and some *Cinnamon*, and *Mires* of *Gold*, with good Hauens, and Rodes: the Iland of *Good taken*, and *Saint Iohn* leaning to *Mindanao*, on the East side of twenty leagues in length North and South; *Bebol*, ten leagues more to *Mindanao* on the North side, nineteene leagues in length.

The Iland of *Bagian* or of *Negros*, by reason of those that are in it, is in the middle of that Sea to the West of those leagues in length North and South, and fiftie in breadth, and in her coast are some Pearles: the Iland of *Zulu* in the middle of all, of thirtie leagues in length North and South, and in it a Spanish Towne, called the Village of *Iesús*, on the East side, with one good Hauen, besides other that are in the Iland, the Captaine *Bartholomeo Magelans* discovered this Iland, in the year 1520, the King yielded then him selfe for tributary to the Crowne of *Castile*, and before he discovered the Ilands, which he called *de las Pala Latinas*, because they sailed in their Shipps with sayles of Mats made of *Palme* tree leaues after the *Latins* fashion; and from *Zulu* *Magelans* went with the King, to warre against the King of *Matan*, in a little Iland close to that of *Zulu* on the South side, where being too valiant and confident he was slain; and the Spaniards following their Voyage in demaund of the Ilands of the *Spicerie*, they discovered *Guinea*, *Puluan*, and *Borney*, which is a great, rich, and plentiful Iland of *Rice*, *Sugar*, *Guinea*, *Sowne*, *Cannels*, & it makes *Vinnet*, *Alfay*, and *Sheepe*; in hath *Ginger*, *Campfire*, *Mirabolans*, and

Of these see I. c. and other English Voyages in the first Tome. See *Magelans* Voyage, Tom. 1. l. 1. Certaine Tree bearing in the kind of Date.

Cinnamon and long Pepper.

In *Matan* is was when re-ordained *Magelans* was slain.

and other *Dugges*. *Aluaro* of *Saundera* discovered also the *Philippines*, and took possession of them in the year 1527, for the Crowne of *Castile*, which by order of the Marquess of the *Ustly* went from the Port of *Cantlanes* in *New Spaine*, in demaund of the Ilands of the *Spicerie*, and presently he was in *Mindanao*: and this digestion hath not bin out of purpose.

Returning to the order of the *Philippines*, there followeth the above said *Aluaro* or *Baby* thirtie leagues in length North and South, and tenne in breadth, in which are good *Mines*, and *Pearles*, in her coast: *Tandayala* most famous of all, which for being first discovered, is called *Philippine*, of which all take the name, in memory of the invincible King. *Don Philip* the second, the *Prudent*. It hath foure leagues on the North side, and of the East North North-east, and South South-west, and twelve leagues in breadth where most, with good Hauens and Rodes: *Masbat* a meane Iland to the West of *Tandayala*, of fiftie leagues in length, and fiftie in breadth, with one Hauen: *Mindoro* of five and twentie leagues in length North and South, and halfe in breadth; there is *Pepper* in it, and *Mines* of *Gold*: the Iland of *Lucan*, called the *New Cebille*, as great or greater then *Mindanao*, the most Septentrional of the *Philippines*, in the which is built *Manila*, a Citie of *Spaniards*, with title of *Famosa*, where the *Gouernour*, *Officers* of the goods, and chiefe *Royall*, and the *Cathedral* are resident; it is a plentiful foyle of *Viñals*, with many *Mines* of *Gold*: the Hauens of this Citie is bad, and for all that there is great traffike with the *Chynas*, which bring *Porcelaine* Vessells, *Tinells*, coloured silkes, and other Merchandize: *Lupon* hath in length two hundred leagues, and it is very narrow.

In all these Ilands are many *Mahometanes*, whither they came by the East India, and could easily plant their faith amongst those blinde *Gentiles*. Captaine *Magelans* as above said discovered these Ilands, the year 1520, going with an Armie of the Crowne of *Castile*, in search of the Ilands of the *Molucces*, and took possession of them, and afterward *Michael Lopez* of *Legazpi* made an end of discovering them, the year 1564, with an Armie which hee tooke from *New Spaine*, by order of the Vice-roy, *Don Lewis* of *Ustalo*: it is iudged that those Ilands doe amount to eleven thousand great and small. There are pacified about fortie of them, and conuered more then a Million of men unto the Catholike Faith, with so many expences of the Crowne *Royall*, not having had until now any profit from those Countreies; for every Religious man of those that are first thither, doth cost to live one thousand *Duckets*. Those which hitherto haue laboured in that Vineyard, and made most fruit of the soules, are the Religious *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, *Barcelos*, and *Alfons* *Fryers*; and the Company of *Iesús*; and from these Ilands hath bene begun to bridle the *Mahometans*, which from the Coast of *Asia* went by little and little exceeding through these, and other Ilands, and also to the *Chilman* and *Lapuan*, and the *Portugals* had already lost the Ilands of the *Molucces*, if the *Spaniards* of the Provinces of the *Philippines* had not helped and bestowed them diuerse times and many wayes.

There is already a plainer notice had of the *Chynas*, by the commerce of the *Philippines*, and their riches and plenty is knowne: it is the richest and mightiest Kingdome of the World, and from *Manila* may be to the coast of *China* three hundred leagues, of eight dayes flying, and the coast of that Countreie goeth running as to the North-east, more then four hundred leagues, from twentie one to twenty two degrees of Septentrional latitude, and upward, and it is known that crosse over the Countreie inward is a Voyage of fix or fixe months, to the confines of *Tartaria*; being a Countreie of great Cities, with many Townes, and the people politicke, and prepared for their defence, but not warlike, and the Coast much inhabited with maine Rivers, and good Hauens: it extends from fiftie unto fiftie degrees North and South, and East and West: it occupieth two and twentie: the Citie of *Papua*, where the King hath his Court, stands in foure eights degrees of our Pole, it is diuided in fiftie Provinces, fix *Morinas*, and nine *Mahometanes*; and the one is diuided from the other with certaine Mountaines like the *Pyrenies*, and there are but two passages whereby they doe communicate.

Thomas Perez, Ambassadour of the King of *Portugall*, was from *Canton* to *Nankin* foure Moneths, travelling alwayes to the North: and to the largesse of this Kingdome is ioyned the plenty of the Countreie, which is great for the which the multitude of the navigable Rivers, that do water it, are a help, where whither it keemes a pleasant Forrest or Garden, and the abundance is doubled by many wayes, for the Kings spare no coit to make the Countreie watered in every place, cutting great hills, and making great Valleys plaine; and the heate not wanting in any place, for all the Countreie is encompassed in the bounds of the temperate Zone, nor the most flusky by the cleuentwoof *temper*, and by the industrie of men it is incredibly all multiplied, and all being compell'd to busie themselves in something, there is not one foyle of ground left unprofitable. In *Canton* among other notable things they say there are a great number of blinde men that doe labour in something, every one as he is able, and being forbidden the going out of the Kingdome without licence, the which is neuer granted, but for a limited time it is necessary that the propagation increaseth continually, the number of the people be without end, especially that they hold for a certaine, that for five persons that doe dye, there are foure borne, and the purchase of the ayre is so much, that they doe not remember, there hath bene any vi-

Aluaro of *Saundera* was the first discoverer of the *Philippines* for the Crowne of *Castile* in the year 1527.

The Citie of *Manila*.

His voyage you have before, 11000. Ilands.

Since, the *Mahometans* have expelled the *Portugals*.

China: see our former Relation.

The Kingdoms and Provinces of *China*.

Mari's.
Saint Peter, and
Saint Paul.

Chap. 28.
Of the upper
Council of the
Indies, and of
the spiritual
governments,
and Ecclesiasti-
cal Royall Pa-
tronage.
Council of the
Indies.

How many
Archbishops,
Bishops,
Monasteries,
and Schools of
Doctrine are
in the Indies.
So the number
is said to
signify the
transitorie
state of the
Indies.

How the Ec-
clesiastical
Patronage is
governed.

* Of Images
or Pictures.

See Letter.

toward new Spain, the *Shelmas*, look how thou goest, Take away sleep, or See thou sleep not; & neere to them: the land of *Mariette*, and Saint Paul, another small land with theles, and the *Indians* the most Eilward to ward new Spain, *Aluara* of *Saandra* was also in the land of the *Tucunas*, in the year 1537, returning from the land of *Spicerie* to new Spain.

The Catholic King of *Castile*, and of *Lyon* continuing in their ancient, and Christian pietie, presently after these new Countries were discovered, and joyed with this faire Monarchie, procured to plant, and settle the Catholic Religion in them, and temporall policie, with to much care and aduice of the wisest men of these Kingdomes. For as the discoverie did increase the businesse, they formed a particular Council with President and Councillors, that busying themselves in no other thing, with more diligence they might refer to that which so much pertained to the service of our Lord God, and government of that Orbe. And because heretofore mention had been made of the persons which from the beginning have laboured, and served in the supreme Council of the *Indies*, which hath carried so great a weight vnto this present house, that the order of that Monarchie may be understood, and the rest worth the knowings.

The first thing that these godly Kings did charge and command the first Discoverer, and from man to man commanded the other Discoverers and Governours of that new World with very straight orders, was, that they should procure that the people which they carried, with the Christian life, and with their good customes, should give such example to the *Indians*, that they might be beglad to imitate them, and should binde them vnto it, entering first according to the Evangelical Law, the religious men preaching it, that so rather with the sweetnesse of it, then with the force and noyle of Armes it should be admitted, and that iustice should be administered with such equallitie to all men, that it might be much respected & esteemed. All went forward, the townes had come to such a point, that at this day there are found built and established in all that Orbe two famous Universities, where with great learning and doctrine all the Sciences are read, more than three hundred Monasteries of religious *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, *Augustines*, *Mercenaries*, and *Primitives*, innumerable flore of beneficed Curres, which are called *Dioceses*, for to teach those new Conuerts, and *Heremites*, and *Chapels in the high way crised on pillars*, bearing *Crosses* in them, eth forward where there is no maintenance for it. In effect, this Catholicke pietie by the clemencie of God goeth from good to better, augmenting with to much reuerence and honour of God, that in no place of Christendome it is done with more order or care, by the care of the supreme Council of the *Indies*. Of the which is inferred, that the *Councils* of the *Apostolike Roman See* was a very great reuerence in the which our Lord God (as Hee which only is Hee that seeth, and experience that if this had beene governed otherwise, it had beene impible to have proceeded with so much obedience and quietnesse.

The Ecclesiastical Patronage is governed in the same manner that in the Kingdoms of *Granada*, the Kings Cath. like presenting to the chiefe Bishop onely the Archbishops, and Bishops, that from his holy hand they may receive these Prelacies, and may dispatch their Bulls, procuring necessities are provided by the King, and consultation of the *supreme Council* of the *Indies*, and they no not to *Rome* for Bulls: and their rents consist in tithes and first fruits which arise of the *Spanish* inhabitants. For in the most places of these *Indies* the Countre men pay not, and where the tithes are to be paid, many ordinances and rates are made according to the stile of these Kingdomes, that the men of each Colony, it is iust it should follow her customes. And though the Kings of *Castile*, and of *Lyon* are Lords of the tithes by *Apostolike concession*, & might take them to himselfe, displaying where it wanteth with that which in other places doth exceede, he leaues them to the Prelates & Churches, providing of his own goods, Royall with the liberality of a Catholicke Prince, to all the necessities of the poore Churches, giving to every one that is built anew the greatest ease of that which is spent in the building, with a Chalice, Bell, and a painted Table.

That the distribution of that which proceedeth of the tithes, and of that which is bestowed out of the goods Royall in maintenance of the Prelates, Dignities, and Canons of the Cathedral Churches, and Benefices, Cures and persons that are occupied in the diuine Service, and instructing of the *Indians*, may be fruitfully imployed according to the holy intention of the Kings, the supreme Council hath made good ordinances. First, that all the said persons be of an approved life and customes, & especially those that doe meddle in the *De Trinitate*, being first examined touching

learning, and after in the language of the *Indians*, for it would little asuite, that the Disciples should not understand the Master: and that these do continually read: and that our Curates, or Teacher may haue two Benefices; and that those which shall from their parts passe to the *Indies* be more approved, it is commanded that no Priest doe passe without licence of his Prelate and of the King, and that if any be there found without it, presently they should send him to *Spain*.

And that the manner how the Royall Patronage is governed may better be understood, seeing it appertaineth to this Crowne, because that it hath discovered and acquired that New World, and hath also built and endowed out of the goods Royall, many Churches, & Monasteries, as by the *Apostolike* concession, that for no cause the said patronage nor any part of it, either by custome, or prescription, or other title may be separated from its origin, is ordained what care the Vice-royes, Counts, Governours, & Rulers, are to haue in it, and what penalties the transgressors should incur. First, that no Cathedral or Parish Church, Monastery, Hospital, or vniuersitie Church, should be founded without consent of the King. That when in the Cathedral Churches there are not four Beneficed men, resident, provided by royall presentation, & canonical provision of the Prelate, because the other Prebends be void, or absent for more then eight months (though for a lawfull cause.) The said Prelate, till such time as the King doth present, may chuse to the accomplishing of the foure Clarke, (besides those that are prouided and resident) of the most sufficient of those that shall offer themselves, without that the said prouision be in *Tribute* (to be remouable at pleasure) & that they haue no seate in the Quire, nor voice in Council. That no Prelate may make conuocall in case that without delay they make the prouision and command to refer with the fruits. This in all the dignities, & Prebends, the learned be preferred before the vnlearned, and those which haue served in the Cathedral Churches of *Castile*, and haue more exercise of the seruice of the Quire, before them that haue not served in them. That at the least there be presented for every Cathedral Church a graduate Lawyer, & a Diuine for the Pulpit, with the obligation that in these Kingdomes the doctore Canons, & Magistrates haue, & another learned Diuine to read the sacred Scripture and another Lawyer or Diuine for the Canonship of Penance, according to the sacred Council of *Trent*. That all the theother Benefices, Cures and imple, secular, and regular, and the Ecclesiastical Offices that shall be void, or prouided anew. That they may be made with little delay, and the Royall patronage may be preferred, it is commanded that they be made in the forme following.

That any of the absurd Benefices, or Offices being void, the Prelate shall command to make edicts with a competent terme, and of those that shall offer themselves haueing examined them, and being informed of their behavior, shall name of the best and the Vice-roy or Governour of the Province, shall chuse one and remit the election to the Prelate, that he make the prouision, Collation, and Canonical institution by way of recommendation, and not in a perpetual title, so that when the King doth make the presentation, and in it shall be expressed that the collation be made in a perpetual title, the Canonical institution shall be in title, and not in recommendation. That in the exortations and Townes of the *Indians*, and other places where they haue no benefices, he shall send the nomination to the Ministers Royall, that they do present him one of the two nominated, and if there be but one, that, and in the vertue of such a presentation the Prelate shall make the prouision, giving him the instruction how he is to teach, and commanding him to give notice of the fruits. That in the presentations of all the dignities, offices, and benefices, the best deserving, and that most exercised in the conuersion of the *Indians*, and the administration of the Sacraments shall be preferred, which, & those that best speak the language of the *Indians*, shall be preferred before the other. That he which shall come or lend to request his Maistie to present him to some dignitie, office, or benefice, shall appeare before the Ministers of the Province, and declaring his petition, he shall giue information of his kindred, learning, customes & sufficiency, and the Minister shall make another of his office, and with his opinion to send it, and that the pretendant do bring also an approbation from his Prelate; for without these diligences those that come shall not be admitted. That none may obtaine two Benefices, or dignities in one, or in sundry Churches. That the pretendant not appearing before the time contained in the presentation before the Prelate, it shall be void, and they may not make him a Canonical institution.

Besides that which is rehearsed, it is provided that they do not permit any Preliminary in the Cathedral Churches, to enjoy the rents of it, except it be serving & being resident; and that the Benefices of the *Indians* be Cures, and not imple, and that in the new discoveries, and plantations that shall be made, there be presently an Hospital built for the poore, and sicke persons of sicknesses that are not contagious, which shall be placed neere the Temple, and for a Cloyster of the same; that for the sicke of contagious diseases, the Hospital shall be set that no hurtfull wind passing by it doe strike in the other inhabiting, and if it be built on a high place it will be better. And because the King being informed that goods of the deceased in those parts do not

be conuincible
the govern-
ments to the
Ecclesiastical
Patronage.

* Or Penitentiary

Prouision of
the Prebends,
and Benefices

Chap. 29.
Of the spiritu-
all Govern-
ment, Goods
of Mendicant
orders, and
of the boy-
fies of the holy
and general
quintion.
Building of an
Hospital

faid Judges, or Bayliefs, haue any charge in which they are to make any abfence from their offices: neither fhall any office of iuftice be giuen to the fones, fonne in law, brothers in law, nor fathers in law of Presidents, Iuftices, nor Solicitors, nor to the Officers of the Courts, and of the goods Royall, neither to feruants nor allies of the Courts, and of the And that none of the abouefaid Miniſters, doe accept warrant for recoveries nor other things, nor ferue themſelves of the *Indians* without paying them. That no Advocate, Scrivener, nor Bayliefs, doe dwell in the houſe of Iudge, nor Bayliefs, nor the Suters ſerue the Iudges. That the Iudges of *Panama*, doe not accompanie themſelves with the Deales, nor give leave to their wives to accompanie them. And that no Iuftices of all the Courts, ſhall haue much communication with the Suters, Advocates, nor Attorneys: neither in body of a Court to goe to Marriages, Funerals, nor Spouſals, except it be a very weighty matter: neither write any Neighbour for any cauſe. That they doe not meddle in matters of the Commonwealth, nor any Iuftice, nor other miniſter of the Court, may haue two offices in it. And beſides theſe many other Ordinances, and good Lawes, which are all concerning adminiſtration of iuftice.

Chap. 22.
Wherein bee continued the manner of the good government of the *Indies*.

Interpreters.

Schools for *Indians* to learne the Spaniſh tongue.
* See of the *Caſtilians*, and the *Catholics*.

* Or accomps of the Iudges, or Iuftices.
That they be not Bayliefs.

And becauſe theſe Catholike Kings haue left nothing which moſt wiſely they haue not promiſſers in general and particular is, the good viage of the *Indians*, and their preferation, and the accompliſhing of the Orders which are made as touching this, for to puniſh the Offenders with great rigour: and as the *Indians* doe learne the *Caſtilian* polities, and can compaign, and place that the ordinarie writings be made in the ſuites betwene, or with the *Indians*, neither make any delayes, as it is wont to happen, by the malice of ſome Advocates, and Attorneys, neither that ſummarily they be determined, keeping their vies and cuſtomes, nor bring manifeſt iniuriſt, and that for all manner poſſible, they doe prouide the good and ſhort diſpatch of them. And hauing notice that in the interpretation of the *Indians* languages, there were ſome fraudes, for to prevent all, it was ordained, that every interpretation be made by two Interpreters, which ſhall not confer both together about that which is controverted by the *Indian*: and that before they be received to the vie of the office, they ſhall take their oath to adminiſter it faithfully, and that they receive no gifts of the *Indians* ſuters, nor of others. That they doe aſſiſt at the Agreements, Courts, and viſitations of the Priſons. That in their houſes they heare not the *Indians*, nor to carry them to the Court. That the Interpreters be not Solicitors, nor Attorneys of the *Indians*. That they aſke them nothing. And for their greater good, it is prouided, that the Attorney of the ſupreme Councell of the *Indies*, be Protector of the *Indians*, and defend them in law and poſſible life: and now there are appointed Protectors in the Kingdomes of *Pera*, and *New Spain*, with new orders for their better viage.

It is alſo commanded, to ſet up Schooles of the *Caſtilian* tongue, that the *Indians* may learne it, and may doe it from their childhoode, and that no vagabond Spaniard doe dwell or remaine in the Townes of the *Indians*, nor among them, but that the Vice-royes and the Courts, doe put all diligence in driving ſuch out of the Land, ſhipping them for *Caſtile*: and the Countie borne Courts, Gouernours, and Rulers, and other whatſoeuer Iudges, as to the Vice-royes, ſhall they doe accompliſh it, that they doe prouide how the offences that were done to God the *Catholic* marrying with more then one woman, though he be an Infidel: in hindering that minable vie, that they ſhould kill another to be buried with him, and other like abſolts, as free men, and exempted from all manner labour, though it ſhall be proued that they doe labour and not be idle, and may haue libertie to diſpoſe of their goods, the Lands being ſet to ſale by out-cry thirty dayes, and the moſt able nine, the Iuftice being preſent. That the Lands remaying of any *Indian* deceaſing without a Will, ſhall remayne in the Townes where they dwell. That they make the Markets freely, and ſell in them their merchandize. That their good vies and ancient cuſtomes be approved. That they may ſend to theſe Kingdomes *Indian* Attendants and demand iuftice. That in every Towne of the *Indians* there be an Hoſpittall with the things neceſſary.

In this matter of the *Indian* flauers, there were in the beginning of the Diſcoveries diuers opinions, and orders, governing themſelves as the time required and the ſtate of the things: but after the Biſhop *Don Sebastian Ramirez* came for President of *New Spain*, this vie was abſolutely aboliſhed, notwithstanding the ancient one which the *Indians* had to make themſelves flauers one to another: neither might they buy of them, nor receive them, neither that any perſon may bring to theſe Kingdomes any *Indian* in title of a ſlave, though he be taken in lawfull warre: and for this are ſo ſtraight orders giuen that they are effectually kept, and ſo in no place of the *Indies*

are *Indian* flauers, though they be our of the bounds of *Caſtile* and *León*. And to ſhew this inconuenience the more, the bringing *Indians* to theſe parts for whatſoeuer title it be, is forbidden.

And the quietneſſe for the Commonwealth being about all very neceſſary, ſciſtice is giuen to About quietneſſe the Vice-royes, Preſidents, Gouernours, and other Iuftices, that they may diſcuse away, and baniſh from the *Indies* all inquiet perſons, and ſend them to theſe Kingdomes, ſending it ſo to be conuenient for the quietneſſe of choke, but that it be not for hatred or paſſion, nor for ſuch reaſon.

And that it may be ſome bridle to the Superiors, they are commanded, that they ſhould not man the writing to the King, to his Councell, and to other perſons: what they will: neither ſhall they, nor take any papers, or letters, vnder great ſeals, and that they permit to paſſe and repaſſe through the Countie them that will, prouiding wayes and bridges in the places where they are wanting.

As touching the matters of Warre, it is alſo provided with great deliberation: for the Vice-royes greater authoritie, ſciſtice is giuen them to haue a Guard on foot, and on Horſe-backe: to make a caſting place for Ordnance and Bullets, and a building for munitions, to leuie men, arme ſhips, and make fortifications, and prouide all the reſt neceſſary for the defence of theſe Kingdomes, and how the exceſſes of the Southerly may be detoured, as well by Land as by Sea, and to them that goe in the Fleets, committing the puniſhing of them to whom it beſideſteth, for to exculce competencies of ſurrounding.

It hath lately bene ſaid how all the Government of this Orbe, depends of the ſupremie and Royall Councell of the *Indies*, that are the Perſon Royall. But as it is neceſſary that the executions of theſe parts haue correſpondence in theſeſide here alſo there they place may prouide in effecting that it be chooſefull for the matters there: it was neceſſary to thin in *Spain*, where all the traffike of the *Indies* doth come, a houſe Royall of Contratacion of it, that neſteth not but in the diſpatching of thoſe buſineſſes, and dependants of them, without any perſon nor Iuftice doe intermeddle in any thing belonging to the *Indian* affairs: and it is in ſubſtitute a Tribunal of great authoritie, in the which is a Preſident, which now is *Don Bernardino Delyado de Anelamede*, a Teller, a Treſurer, one Father, ſix learned Iudges, one Solicitor, one Relator, one Sergeant, Scriveners, Porter, Layes, and other Officers. In the Iſlands of *Teneriffe* and *Palma*, are placed two learned Iudges, called Officers Royall, or Judges of the Regiſters, to cauſe Orders to be kept that are giuen for the lading and Regiſters of theſe Iſlands, and Navigation of that voya-ge. The houſe of the Contratacion hath her Iſtridictiō and ordinances, how her iuriſdiction is to be governed and exerciſed, and the learned Iudges haue it alſo for their vie and exerciſe. Keeping in the leing of the plea, betwene parties, the order that is held in the Courts of *Valledad*, and *Granada*: and becauſe the particular care of the officers of this houſe, is the diſpatch of the Fleets and Armes, that they may depart in due time, they employ themſelves in it with great diligence, and in reconciling them in due time, and ſetting in ſafeguard the Gold, Silver, Jewels, and other things that doe come, with a diſtinction of the weight and carats, charging themſelves alſo with all that there may be more account and reaſon, and for to make the prouisions of the Fleets and Armes. There are ſo good orders giuen, that neither the Miniſters doe exceed, nor the Subjects receive wrong, for all paſſeth very conformable to the intention of theſe Godly and Catholike Kings, by means of the great diligence of the ſupreme Councell of the *Indies*.

And becauſe the buſineſſes of the *Indies* haue increaſed ſo much, that the ſupreme Councell could not diſpatch them with the breuitie conuenient to the good government of that Orbe, and the benefit of the Suters, with the aduice of the Preſident and ſupreme Councell, the King *Don Philip* the third our Lord, in imitation of his Catholike and Godly Predeceſſors, for the greater good of his ſubjects, hath inſtituted a Prime Councell, where all the buſineſſes of ſpiritual and temporal warrants, fauours and rewards may be conferred and diſpatched: and beſides this, there are two Halls inſtituted, where on dayes appointed they may intrate matters of Warre, with the Preſident and three Counſellors of the *Indies*, and two or three of the Councell of warre, and other dayes, of the matters of the goods, by the Preſident and Counſellors of *Indies*, and two of the Councell of the goods, Attorney, and Secretarie of the Councell of the *Indies*, the Preſident naming thoſe that he ſhall thinke beſt for it.

And as theſe Catholike Kings doe alwayes looke to the benefit of the people of that Orbe, conſidering that the propagation of the holy Goſpell in no part of it could goe more proſperouſly by any other hands than his, nor be attended for his preferation, and to haue the Conquerours and Inhabiters of thoſe parts more ſatiſfied, ſeing all were his Subjects, and borne in theſe Kingdomes, declared by their Royall warrants, dated they were 1530, in *Valledad*, and in the yeere 1532, in *Pamplona*, that their Maieſties, nor any of their Heires, in no time ſhall alienate from the Crowne Royall of *Caſtile* and *León*, the Iſlands and Prouinces of the *Indies*, Towne, or any part of them, and ſo they promiſed it and gae their Royall word.

The houſe of Contratacion of *Spain*.

Inſtitution of the Councell of *Emerra*, or of *Houabold*.

That the *Indies* ſhall not bee alienated.

CHAPTER II.

Observations gathered out of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth books of
JOSEPHUS ACOSTA a learned Jesuite, touching the natural hi-
story of the Americans, Ayre, Water, and Earth at the West Indies.
Also of their Beasts, Fishes, Fowles, Plants, and other
remarkable rarities of Nature.

Of the fashions and formes of Heaues, at the new-found World, and
of the Ayre and Windes.

Lib. 1. 6435.

Pseudoscorpiones.

See *My Father's Voyage*.

Height taken by the Sunne.

Via LaBee

Shewing the reason why the Sunne without the Tropicks, causeth greatest quantitie of waters when it is farthest off; and contrariwise, within them it breedeth most, when it is nearest. *L. 3. chap. 7.*

Any in *Europe* demand, of what forme and fashion *Heaven* is in the Southerly parts, for that there is no certainie found in ancient Booke, who although they grant there is a *Heaven* of this other part of the World, yet come they not to any knowledge of the forme hereof, although to truth they make mention of a goodly great *Starre* in these parts, which they call *Croceus*. Those which of late times have lately written of these parts, have recounted to strange things of this *Heaven*; that it is very bright, having a round body like a Sunne, which come farre, are commonly deceived with error. But it is likewise contrarie to reason, finding it certain, that in our Region of the North, there is a greater number and bigger *Stars*, finding no *Stars* in these parts, which exceede the *Filber* or the *Cherie* in brightness. It is true, that the *Croce* in these parts is very farre and pleasing to behold: we call the *Croce*, four-named *Starre*, because of the forme of a croffe, let equally and with proportion. The ignorant suppose this croffe to be the *Starre* of the North, which the Navigators take their heighth thereby, as were accustomed to doe by the North *Starre*. And therefore, why sayest thou it in this sort, is for that in the South parts there is no fixe *Starre* that markes the Pole, as the North *Starre* doth to our Pole. And therefore they take their heighth by the *Starre* at the foote of the *Croffe*, distant from the true and fixe Pole Antarticke thirteene degrees, as the North *Starre* is distant from the Pole Arcticke three degrees or little more, and therefore the heighth is not so true, as if they had taken it by the *Starre* which is at the foote of the *Croffe* might be right, the which chanceth sometimes, for that the *Starre* at the foote of the *Croffe* is not so fixe, as the North *Starre* is, and therefore it appeareth not so true. And therefore, if thou wilt take the heighth, And therefore the most expert *Ellens* regard not the *Croffe*, taking the heighth of the Sunne by the Altitudes, by which they know in what heighth they are: wherein commonly the *Portugall* are more expert, in a Nation that hath more discourse in the use of the Instrument then any other. There are also other *Stars* in both the Southerly parts, which in some sort resemble the North. The which they call the *Midway* *Starre*, is larger and more replenished in the South part, appearing there with admirable blacke spots, whereof we have made mention.

Considering with my selfe oftentimes, what should caule the Equinoctiall to bee so moitt, as I haue said: to refute the opinion of the Ancients, I spide no other reason, but the great force of the Sunne in those parts, whereby it drawes vnto it a great abundance of vapours from out of the Ocean, which in those parts is: very great and spacious: And hauing drawne vnto it this great abundance of vapours, doth suddenly disforme them into raie, and it is appearyed by many true experiences, that the raie and great stormes from Heauen proceed from the violent heat of the Sunne: first (as we haue said before) it raiues in those Countreys; wher as the Sunne caeth his greatest heat, and heate most violently, as at which time he hath most force: but when the Sunne retiries, the heat is lesse, and the force less, till all the world be cooled, and the heat of the force and heate of the Sunne is the cause of the raie in those Countreys. Moreover, the raines, both in *Fern new Spaine*, and in all the burning Zone, that the raie doth viciually fall in the afternoon, when as the Sunne beames are in their greatest force, being farther to see it raie in the morning. And therefore Trauersles forcing it, begin their journey early, that they may end and rest before noon, for they hold that commonly it raiues after noon. Such as haue frequented and trauelled those Countreys, can sufficiently speake thereof. And there are, that (hauing made much study therof) say, that the greatest abundance of raie is, when the Moone is at set full: & to say the truth, I could neuer haue sufficient proofe thereof, although I haue offered it. Moreover, the yearre, and the moonnity, shee the truth herof, that the violence heat of the Sunne caueth the raie, is manifestly shewed by this: that in the burning zone, where things, as in a Limbecke, whither they dige waters from brackish and wyte, they brackish

CHAP. 2. § 1. *Strange effects in naturall causes. Exceptions to generall rules.* 919

[illegible]

But this is not to hinder the exceptions which Nature hath given to this Rule, making some Regions of the burning Zone extremely dry. The which is reported of *Ethiopia*, and we have seen it in a great part of *Penn.* where all that Land or Coast, which they call *Playnes*, wants fire, yea, land waters, except some Vallies where Rivers fall from the Mountains; the rest is a fandie and barren fole, where you shall hardly finde any Springs, but some deeper Wells. But with the helpe of God, we will shew the reason why it rayneth not in these Playnes (the which many demand;) for now I only pretend to shew, that there are many exceptions to naturall Rules, whereby it may happen, that in some part of the burning Zone it raipest not when the

Sunne is nearest, but being farther off, although vnto this day I haue neither seene nor heard of it: but if it be so, we must attribute it to the particular qualitie of the Earth: And also, if sometimes the contrarye doth change, we must haue regard that in natural things there happens many contrarieties and lites, whereby they change and disfigure one another. For example, it may be the Sunne will cause raine, and that the winde will hinder it; or else cause more abundance then hath bene vsuall.

The Authors
experience.

When I passed to the *Indes*, I will tell what chance vnto mee: hauing read what Poets and Philosophers write of the burning Zone, I persuaded my selfe, that coming to the Equinoctiall, I should not indure the violence heate, but I felt out otherwise: for when I passed, which was when the Sunne was there for Zenith, being entered into *Arto*, in the month of March, I felt to great cold, as I was forced to goe into the Sunne to warme me: what could I elsedoe then, but laugh at *Arifotle* Meteors and his philosophie, seeing that in that place, and at that season, when as all should be scorched with heat, according to his rules, I, and all my companions were as cold: In truth there is no Region in the world more pleasant and temperate then vnder the Equinoctiall, although it be not in all parts of an equall temperature, but haue great diversities.

Various and
discrified
temperatures of
the Torrid Zone.

The burning Zone in some parts is very temperate, as in *Quito*, and on the playnes of *Pera*; in some parts very cold, as at *Potosi*, and in some very hot, as in *Ethiopia*, *Dryff*, and the *Molucces*. This diversitie being knowne and certaine vnto vs, wee much of force seeke out another cause of cold and heat then the Sunne beames, seeing that in one season of the yeere, and in places of one height and distance from the Pole and Equinoctiall we finde to great diversities, that some are inured with heat, some with cold, and others tempered with a moderate heat.

Causes of tem-
peratures
vnder the Line
and within the
Tropicks.

Considering this matter generally, I finde two generall causes, which maketh this Region temperate: the one is that before mentioned; for that this Region is very moist and subiect to raine, and there is no doubt but the raine doth refresh it, for that the water is by nature cold; and although by the force of the fire it be made hot, yet doth it temper this heat proceeding onely from the Sunne beames. The which wee fee by experience in the inner *Asia*, the which is burnt with the Sunne, hauing no howers to temper the violence thereof. The clouds and mists are the cause that the Sunne offends not so much, and the frowes that fall from them, refresh both the Aire and the Earth, and moisten likewise how hot soeuer it be. They drinke raine water, and it quencth the thirst, as our men haue well tried, hauing no other to drinke. So as reason and experience doth teach vs, that raine of it selfe doth temper the heat; and hauing by this means heuied, that the burning Zones much subiect vnto raine, it appeares that there is matter in it, to temper the violence of the heat: To this I will adde another reason, which deserves to be knowne, not onely for this matter, but for many others; for although the Sunne be very hot and burning vnder the Equinoctiall, yet is it far long, so as the heat of the day being there shorter and of less continuance, it causeth not so violent a heate; the which it be- comes to specify more particularly. Such as are practised in the knowledge of the Sphere teach very well, that the more the Zodiac is oblique and trauesing our Hemisphere, the more vnequall are the dayes and nights; and contrariwise, where the Sphere is straight, and the signes mount directly, there the dayes and nights are equall. And therefore in that Region 40 which is betweene the two Tropicks, there is little inequality then without them, and the more wee approach the Line the less inequality wee finde, the which wee haue tried in those parts. Those of *Quito*, for that they are vnder the Line, haue not throughout the whole yeere the dayes and nights more short at one season then at another, but are continually equall. Those of *Lima* being distant almost twelve degrees, finde some difference betwixt the dayes and the nights, but very little, for that in December and Ianuarie the dayes increase an hour or little less. Those of *Potosi* finde much more difference both in Winter and in Summer, being almost vnder the Tropick. But those that liue without the Tropicks finde the dayes in Winter shorter and in Summer longer: the more remote they are from the Equinoctiall and come neere the Pole, as wee see in *Germanie* and in *England*, the dayes are longer in Summer then in *Isle* and in *Spain*. It is a thing which the Sphere doth teach, and experience doth plainly teach vs. Wee must adde another Proposition, which is likewise true and very considerable for all the effects of Nature to vnderstand the performance and continuance of the efficient cause to worke and moue. This presupposed, if any one demand of me, why vnder the Equinoctiall Line the heat is not so violent in Summer, as in some other Regions (as in *Andalusia* in the months of Iuly and August) I will answer, that in *Andalusia* the dayes are longer and the nights shorter, and as the day being hot, inflames and causeth heat; so the nights being cold and moist, give a refreshing. According to the which, as *Pera*, where is no such great heat, for that the dayes in Summer are not long, nor the nights short; so as the heat of the day is much tempered by the freshnesse of the night.

Therethere
other be-
sides the
former
men-
tioned,
which
show, that
the
burning
Zone
is temperate,
especially a-
long the O-
cean. Chap. 11.

Being a thing concluded, that the two fore-named properties are common and vniuersall to all the Region of the burning Zone: and yet in the same are to be found some places very hot, and others exceeding cold: Also, that the temperature is not there equall in all places, but vnder one climate, one part is hot, another cold, and the third temperate, as at one season; wee are forced

forced to seeke out other reasons, whence this great diversity should proceede in the burning Zone. Discouraging therefore vpon this question, I doe finde three apparent and certaine causes, and a fourth more obliant and dark. The apparent and certaine causes bee: The first, the Ocean; the second, the situation of the Land; and the third, the nature and properties of many hidden and lesse apparent, which is the properties of the same Land inhabited, and the particular influence of the Elements. Among the speciall causes and reasons, I haue first placed the Sea, for without doubt, the nearnesse thereof doth help to temper and coole the heat: for although the Water be salt, yet is it alwayes water, whose nature is cold.

But if wee shall yet search more particularly, wee shall not finde in all this Land an equall temperature of heate, although it be in equall distance from the Sea, and in the same degree, seeing the same part there is great water, and in some very little. Doubtless, the cause thereof is, that the one is lowely, and therefore higher; which causeth that the one is hot, and the other cold. Is somewhat more, that the tops of the Mountaines are colder then in the bottomes of the Vallies, the which proceeds, not onely for that the Sunne beames haue greater repercussions vpon lower places, although it be a great reason; yet there is another, which is, that the Region of the aire is colder when it is farthest from the ground. The cause why the middle Region of the aire is more cold, hath bene shewed before: for that the Region of the aire next to the fierie exhalation, the which (according to *Arifotle*) is vpon the Sphere of the aire, repells and thrusts backe all the cold, the which retires it selfe into the middle Region of the aire, by *Antiphrastes*, as the Philosophers speake: Now, if any one should question with me in this manner: If it be so that the aire is hot and moist, as *Arifotle* holds, and as we commonly say, whence then proceeds the cold which is congealed in the middle Region of the aire, seeing it cannot come from the fierie Sphere? For if it come from the Water, or the Earth, by this reason the lower Region of the aire should be colder then the middle.

To answer truly what I thinke, I will confesse, that this Argument and Obiection is so difficult, as I am almost ready to follow the opinion of such as reprove the qualities, agreements and disagreements, which *Arifotle* gaue vnto the Elements, laying, they are but imaginations, who for this occasion hold the aire to be cold and well knowne, leaving the qualities and reasons, whereas wee will propose to be cold, the aire with a fan, and wee finde that it doth refresh vs, so as these Authors asseme, that there is no private properties of any other Element, but of fire only, which is dispersed and mingled with all things (as the great Lib. 1. 40. 41. doth teach vs.). But whether it be so, or otherwise (for I will not contradict *Arifotle*, but in that which is most certaine) in the end they agree all, that the middle Region of the aire is colder then the lowest next to the Earth, as experience doth shew vs; seeing that in this middle Region are congealed, Snow, Hail, Froste, and other signes of extreme cold. The middle Region then which they call the burning Zone, haue on the one side the Sea, and on the other the Mountaines, we must hold them for sufficient causes to temper and coole the heate.

The temperature of this Region might chiefly to be attributed to the properties of the winde that bloweth in that Country, the which is temperate and fresh. The prouidence of the great God Creator of all things hath bene such, as he hath ordained fresh and coole winde in that Region where the Sunne makes his course (which foemes should be burnt up) that by their coolnesse the excellent heate of the Sunne might be qualified. Wee see in one climate, some Regions and Cities hotter then others, onely for that they feele lesse winde to refresh them. The like is in other Countries where no winde blowes, the which are all on fire like vnto a furnace. If we shall neerly looke into the consideration of the winde, wherof we haue spoken, we may tell us many doubts: which some obiect, and which seeme strange and wonderfull: wherfore the Sunne calling his beames vpon the burning Zone; and particularly at *Pera*, and the more violently then in *Spain* in the Canicular dayes, yet they defend the heat with a light covering, so as with a slender covering of mats or straw, they are better preferred from the heat, then in *Spain* vnder a roote of wood, or a vaul of stone. Moreover, why are not the nights in Summer at *Pera* as hot and troublesome as in *Spain*? Wherefore on the highest tops of Mountaines, even amongst the heapes of snowe, you shall sometimes finde great and insupportable heat? Wherefore in all the Province of *Chilo*, when yee come into the shade, how little cooler, you feele cold? But coming into the Sunne beames, you presently finde the heate excessive? Every morning the winde from the Sea doth come; and the Sunne begins to cast his beames; and for this reason they feele the greatest heat in the morning, vntill the returne of the same winde; which otherwise they call the tyde or winde of the Sea, which makes them first to feele cold. Wee haue tried all this, which wee were at the Islands of *Burianante*, where in the mornings wee did suffer for heat, and at noone wee felt a fresh aire; for that then, a North Easterly winde which is fresh and coole, doth commonly blow.

Considering with my selfe, the pleasing temperature of many Countries at the *Indes*, where they know not what Winter is, which by his cold doth freeze them, nor Summer which doth

Thus the cold
winde is the
principal cause
to make the
burning Zone
temperate.
Chap. 11.
It is found by
travellers that
there is a hot
winde from the
Sea, and other
winde from
the land.

The Fleets parting from *Stul*, have more difficulty to passe the *Canaries*, for that the gulf of *Tynga* or of *Mora* is variable, being beaten with divers winds, but having passed the *Canaries*, they sail with a Western wind until they come to the burning Zone, where presently they finde an Easterly wind, and so they sail on with full wind, so as they have scant any need to touch their sails in the whole voyage: for this reason they called this great gulf, the gulf of *Damer*, for the calmness and pleasantness thereof. Then following their course, they come to the Islands of *Guadalupe Dominigue*, *Desired*, *Margaritana*, and the rest, which in that place, be as it were, the Suburbs of the *Indies*. There the Fleets separate and divide themselves, whereof some (which goe to new *Spain*) take to the right hand towards *Hispaniola*; and having discovered Cape Saint *Anthony*, they passe vnto Saint *John Dela*, always vying the same Easterly winds. Thence for the mayne Land, take the left hand, discouering the high mountain of *Torrey*, then having touched at *Caribague*, they passe vnto *Nombro de Dios*, from whence they goe by Land to *Panama*, and from thence, by the South Sea to *Pera*. But when the Fleets returne to *Spain*, they make their voyage in this fort: The fleets of *Pera* discouer Cape Saint *Anthony*, then they enter into the *Huana*, which is a goodly Port in the Island of *Cuba*. The fleet of new *Spain* doth likewise touch at the *Huana*, being parted from *Pera* from the Island of Saint *John Dela*, the which is not without difficulty, for that commonly Easterly winds blow there, which is a contrary wind to goe to the *Huana*. These fleets being joined together for *Spain*, they seeke their height without the Tropicks, where presently they finde Westerly winds, which leaue them vntill they come in view of the *Azores*, or *Torrey*, and from thence to *Stul*. So as their voyage in going, is of a small height, not above twentie degrees from the Line, which is within the Tropicks. But the returne is without the Tropicks, in eight and twentie or thirte degrees of height at the least, for that within the Tropicks, the Easterly winds continually blow, the which are fittest to goe from *Spain* to the West *Indies*, for that their course is from East to West; and without the Tropicks (which is in three and twentie degrees of height) they finde Westerly winds, the which are the more certaine and ordinate, the farther you are from the Line, and more fit to returne from the *Indies*; for that they are winds blowing from the South and West, which serue to runne into the East and North.

The like discouery is of the Naigation made into the South Sea, going from new *Spain* or *Pera*, to the *Philippines* or *China*, and returning from the *Philippines* or *China* to new *Spain*, the which is easie, for that they sail always from East to West, neere the Line, where they finde the Easterly winds to blow in their Poope. In the yeere 1584, there went a ship from *Cadix* in *Lima* to the *Philippines*, which sayled two thousand and seven hundred leagues without sight of Land, and the first it discouered, was the Island of *Lassow*, where they took Port, having performed their voyage two monthes, without want of wind or any torment, and their course was almost continually vnder the Line; for that from *Lima* (which is twelue degrees to the South) he came to *Manila*, which is as much to the North. The like good fortune had *Aluaro de Mendana*, when as he went to discouer the Islands of *Solomon*, for that he had alwayes a full gale, vntill he came within view of these Islands, the which must be distant from that place of *Pera*, from whence he parted, about a thousand leagues, having runne their course alwayes in one height to the South. The returne is like vnto the voyage from the *Indies* vnto *Spain*, for which which returne from the *Philippines* or *China* to *Mexico*, so the end they may recouer the western winds, they mount a great height, vntill they come right against the Islands of *Lepu*, and discouering the *Calippones*, they returne by the coast of new *Spain* to the Port of *Acapulco*, from whence they parted. So as it is proued likewise by this Naigation, that they sail easily from East to West, within the Tropicks, for that their Easterly winds doe raine; but returning from West to East, they must seeke the Western winds without the Tropicks, in the height of fifteen and twentie degrees. The *Portugals* proue the like in their Navigations to the East *Indies*, although it be in a contrary course.

Let vs now speake of that which toucheth the Question propounded, what should be the reason why vnder the burning Zone we sail easily from East to West, and not contrarie: wherein we must presuppose two certaine grounds. The one is, that the motion of the first Mouer, which they call *Diurnal*, not onely draws and mooues with him the celestiall Sphaeres, which are inferior vnto him, as we see daily in the Sunne, the Moone, and the Starres; but also the Elements doe participate of this motion, inasmuch as they are not hindered. The Earth is not mooued, by reason of her heauynesse, which makes it immouable, being farr from this first mooue. The Element of water mooues not likewise with this Diurnal motion, for that it is vnto the Earth and make one sphaere, so as the Earth keeps it from all circular motion, but as the other two Elements of Fire and Aire, are more subtil and neerer the heauy Regions, so as they participate of their motion, and are driuen about circularly, as the same celestiall bodies. As for the Fire, without doubt it hath his sphaere (as *Aristotle* and other Philosphers haue held) but for the Aire (which is no point of our sphaere) it is most certaine that it mooues with a motion Diurnal, which is from East to West, which wee see plainly in Comets that moue from the East vnto the West, mounting, descending, and finally turning in the hemisphere in the

Saying 1700.
leagues without sight of Land in two monthes. See *Candides* voyage.

Cause of the Brise.

Motion of the Primum Mobile carrieth the inferior sphaere with it.

same sort as the Starres moue in the firmament; for otherwise these Comets being in the region and sphaere of the ayre, whereas they ingender, appeare confusion. It should be impossible for them to moue circularly, as they doe; if the element of the ayre doth not moue with the same motion that the first mooue doth. For these elements being of a burning substance, by reason they should be fier, without mouing circularly, if the sphaere where they are did not moue; if it be not as we imagine, that some Angell or intellectuall Spirit doth walke with the Comet, guiding it circularly. In the yeare 1577, appeared that wonderful Comet (in forme like vnto a feather) from the horizon almost to the middelt of heauen, and continued from the first of Nouember, vntill the eight of December: I say from the first of Nouember, for although in *Spain* it was noated but the ninth of Nouember (according to the testimonie of Writers of that time) yet at *Pera*, where I was then, I remember well, we did see it, and observe it eight dayes before, and all the time after. Touching the cause of this diuinitie, some may debate vpon it particularly: I will int only shew, that during those fourte dayes which it continued, we all observed (both such as were in *Spain*, and we that liued then at the *Indies*) that it moued daily with an vniuersall motion, from East to West, as the Moone and other Planets, whereby it appeares that the sphaere of the ayre, being its Region, the element it lieth most of necessity moue after the same fort. We noted also, that besides this vniuersall motion, it had another particular, by which it moued with the planets from West to East, for every night it turned more Eastward, like vnto the Moone, Sunne, and Planets of *Venus*. We did also observe a third particular motion, whereby it moued from the Zodiacke towards the North: for after some night this it was found neerer vnto the Septentrional lynes. And it may be this was the reason why the great Comet was sooner seene by those that were Southerly, as at *Pera*, and later discouered by them of *Europe*: for by this third motion (as I haue said) it approached neerer the Northern Regions. Yet every one may well observe the differences of this motion, so as we may well perceiue, that many and sundry celestiall bodies, give their impressions to the sphaere of the ayre. In like fort it is most certaine, that the ayre mooues with the circular motion of the heauen, from East to West, which is the first ground before mentioned. The second is no lesse certaine, which is, that the motion of the ayre in those parts that are vnder the Line, or neerer vnto it, is very swift and light, the more it approacheth to the Equinoctiall; but the farther off it is from the Line, approaching neerer the Poles, the more slow and heauie this motion is. The reason herof is manifest, for that the mouing of the celestiall bodies, being the efficient cause of the mouing of the ayre, it must of necessity be mote quicke and light, where the celestiall bodies haue their swiftest motion.

Aristotle *Socrates* was of opinion that this motion of the ayre was not a wind, but the ayre moued by the Sunne. This is learnedly spoken, yet can we not deny it to be a wind, seeing there are vapours and exhalations of the Sea; and that we sometimes see the Brise, for Easterly winds stronger, sometimes more weak, and placed in that fort, as sometimes they can hardly carry all their sayles. We must then know (and it is true) that the ayre moued, draweth vnto it the vapours it findes, for that the force is great, and findes no resistance, by reason whereof the Easterne and Western winds are continual, and in a manner alwayes alike, in those parts which are neerer the Line and almost vnder all the burning Zone, which is the course the Sun followeth betwixt the two circles of Cancer and Capricorne.

Who so would needly looke into what hath bin spoken, may likewise vnderstand, that going from the West to the East, in altitude beyond the Tropicks, we shall finde Western winds, for that the motion of the Equinoctiall being lo swift, it is a cause that the ayre moueth vnder it according to this motion, which is from the East to West, drawing after it the vapours and exhalations that rise of either side the Equinoctiall or burning Zone, in countering the course and motion of the Zone, are forced by the repercussion to returne almost to the contrary, whence growe the South-west winds for ordinary in those parts. Even as wee see in the course of waters, the which if they be incouraged by others of more force) returne in a manner backe: So it seemes to be like in vapours and exhalations, whereby it grows that the windes doe raine and separate themselves from one part to another. These Westerly windes doe commonly raine in a meane altitude, which is from twenty and leuen to thirty and seuen degrees, though they be not so certaine nor foregular as the Brise that are in a lesse altitude. The reason is, for that the South-west winds are no causes of this proper and equall motion of the heauen, as the Brise are. Being neerer to the Line. But (as I haue said) they are more ordinary, and often more furious and tempestuous. But passing into a greater altitude, as of furtie degrees, there is as small affluence of windeless Sea as at Land; for sometimes the East or North windes blowes, and sometimes the South, or West; whereby it happeneth their navigations are more vncertaine, and more dangerous.

That which we haue spoken of windes, which blow ordinarily within and without the Zone, must be vnderstood of the maine Sea, and in the great gulphes; for at land it is otherwife, where we finde all sorts of windes, by reason of the inequality which is betwixt the Mountaines and the vallies; the great number of Riuer and Lakes, and the diuers situations of Countries, whence the grosse and thick vapours arise, which are moued from the one part to the other, according

The Comet 1577, seemed eight dayes longer in *Pera* then in *Spain*.

The Brise (or motion of the ayre) which the heauens) is a wind.

Why without the Zone; the greater altitude we finde about the West, by reason of the

Of the exceptions to the forefard Rules, & of the windes both at Land and at Sea. Chap. 7. Cause of the variety of windes.

Simile.

Narr:

ording to the diuerſitie of their beginnings, which cauſe theſe diuers windes the motion of the
ayre, cauſed by the heauen, hauing not power enough to draw and moue them with it. And
this varietie of windes is not onely found at land, but alſo vpon the Sea coaſt, which is vnder
the burning Zone, for that there be forraine or land windes which come from the land, and ma-
ny which blow from the Sea; the which windes from the Sea, are commonly more wholeſome
and more pleaſant then thoſe of the land, which are contrariwiſe troubleſome and wholeſomeleſſe,
and ſometimes ſo violent, that they cauſe ſuch diuerſitie. And commonly the Land windes
blow from mid-night to the Sunne riſing, and the Sea windes vntill Sunne ſetting. And
perhaps may be, that the earth, as a groſſe troubleſome, fumes more when as the Sunne ſhines not
vpon it, euen as greene wood, or ſeaſie dree, ſmoakes moſt when the flame is quenched. But
the Sea, which is compounded of more ſubtile parts, engenders no fumes, but when it is hot,
euen as ſtraw or haire, being moiſt and in ſmall quantity, breeds ſmoake when it is burnt, and
when the flame flares, the ſmoke ſuddenly ceaſeth. Whatſoeuer it be, it is certaine that the Land
windes blowes by night, and that of the Sea by day. So that euen as there are often contrary vici-
tudes, and diuerſities of windes, ſo alſo there are diuerſities of ſeaes. And ſometimes by reaſon
of great experience report, that hauing ſailed many great paſſages at Sea vnder the Line, and
they neuer ſee any calmes, but that they alwayes make way little or much, the ayre being
moued by the celeftiall motion, which is ſufficient to giue a Shippe, blowing in poepe, as it
doth. I have alſo ſaid, that a Shippe of *Lemaing* going to *Marilla*, failed two thouſand furlong
hundred leagues, alwayes vnder the Line, or not aboute two degrees from it, and that in the
moneths of February and March, when as the Sunne is there for Zenith, and in all this ſpace they
found no calmes, but were ſo ſure of the way, that they performed this voyage in ſixty dayes.
And ſometimes the burning Zone, and without it, you ſhall viſually ſee great calmes vpon
the Sea, where the vapours come from the lands, or maine land. And therefore ſtormes and tempeſts,
and the ſudden motions of the ayre, are more certaine and ordinary vpon the coaſts, whereas
the vapours come from the Land, then in full Sea, I meane vnder the burning Zone, for with-
out it and at Sea, there are both calmes and whirlewinds. Notwithſtanding, ſometimes be-
twe:xt the two Tropiques, yea, vnder the Line, you ſhall haue great raine and ſudden ſhowers,
yea farre into the Sea; for the working whereof, the vapours and exhalations of the Sea, are
ſufficient to cauſe ſuch ſudden ſtormes, and ſometimes ſuch ſudden calmes. And ſometimes
it is more ordinary neere to the Land and vpon the Land. When I ſailed from *Peto* to *Spain* 30
I obſerued, that all the time we vnder the coaſt of *Peto*, our voyage was (as it was
ordinary) very calme and eaſie, by reaſon of the Southerne wind that blowes, hauing alwayes
a fine wind, returning from *Spain* and *New Spain*. As we paſſed the gulph, lan-
ching farther into the Sea, almoſt vnder the Line, we found the ſeaion coole, quiet, and pleaſant, with
a full wind, but coming neere to *Nicaragua*, and to all that coaſt, we had contrary
windes, with great force of raine and fogges. All this Nauigation vnder the burning Zone
for the ſpace of ſixty dayes, we ſailed ſo ſafe, that we ſuffered the leaſt harme, and *Gaspar*
ſaid, a port of new *Spain*: and I beleue, that ſuch a ſea ſhall obſerue their nauigations, made
vnder the burning Zone, ſhall finde what I haue ſaid, which may ſuffice for the windes which raigne
at Sea, vnder the burning Zone.

It were a very difficult matter, to report particularly the admirable effects which some winds cause in diuers regions of the world, and to giue a reason thereof. There are winds, which naturally trouble the water of the Sea, and make it grey and blacke, others cleere as Christsall, some comfort and make glad, others trouble and breede heauinesse. Such as northwylde-wormes, haue great care to shut their windowes, when as the South-wylde-windes doe blow, and to open them to the contrary: hauing found by experience, that the North-windes blowe cold and drye weather, and the South-windes blowe warme weather with other: and who fo will nerely observe it, shall finde in himselfe, that the diuerties of windes, cause notable impressions and changes in the body, principally in sicke patients and ill disposed, when they are most tender and feeble. The holy Scripture calleth one burning wind, another, a winde full of dewe and sweetnesse. And it is no wonder if we see such notable effects of the winde, in Plants, Beastes, and Men, seeing that wee see it influe in Iron, which is the hardest of all mettalls. I haue bene Grates of Iron in some parts of the *Indus*, so rusted and consumed, that the prelinging of ones fingers, is diffused into the fire, as if it were a burning wind. And in some places, which produce cold winds, the coldness of the winde which doth corrupt it, hauing no meanes to withstand it, but leaving apart many other good and notable effects, I will only make mention of two. The one, although it caueth paines greater then death it selfe, yet doth it not breede any further inconvenience. The other takes away life without feeling it. The ficklenesse of the Sea, wherewith scall is troubled as first begin to goe to Sea, is a matter very ordinary: and yet if the nature thereof were vnkowne to men, we should take it for the pangs of death, seeing how it afflicts and torments while it doth last, by the continuall shaking of the body, and the heauy and other trouble which it causeth. And yet this sicknesse so common and ordinary happens vnto men by the change of the ayre and Sea. For although it be true that the motion of the Ship helpe much,

Of some marvellous effects
of the windes, which are in
some parts of the Indies.
Chap. 9.
Silkwormes kill'd with
South-west windes.
Exac. 10. & 11.
Job 17.
Isa. 4.
Ose 13.
Dan. 3.
The like Linckbeens obser-
ueth in the
Terceras.

Sea sickness
whence.

Agitation and Seayre.

CHAP. I. S. I. *Are bow operative in mens bodies. At Pariacaca too subtle.* 927

[illegible][illegible]

Strange pass.
on at Pariscap
by the ayre
there.

Year.	Height of Fairs.
1864.	6666.

the
ca-
use
un-
and
com
one
in-
all

Vicuna.

Great Defile.

Puna ayre
killing.

Strange Story.

The same con-
firmed by a
fairer report,
and a Dama-
can.Such effects
of cold w. have
observed in
Raffa, and o-
ther Northern
Parts: and the
like Master
Kraus will tell
vs at the Ma-
gellan Straits.

ridge of mountains is, for the most part, desert, without any Villages or habitations for men, so as you shall scarce find any small Cortages to lodge such as do so pass by night: there are no Beasts, good or bad, but some *Vicunas*, which are their Country Muttons, and have a strange and wonderful property, as I shall shew in his place. The Grafs is often burnt, and all black with the ayre, and this Defile runs due and twenty or thirty leagues outward, and in length above five hundred leagues.

There are other Defiles or places inhabited, which at *Peru* they call *Puna* (speaking of the second point we promiss'd) where the quality of the ayre cutteth off man's life without feeling. In former time the *Spaniards* came from *Peru*, to the Realm of *Chile* by this Mountain, but at this day they do pass commonly by *Seas*, and sometimes along the side of it: and though there may be laborious and troublesome, yet is there not so great danger as by the Mountains, where there are Plains, on the which many men have perished and dyed, and sometimes have escaped by great-bye, where some have remained lame. There runs a small brook, which is not very strong nor violent, but proceeds in such sort, that men fall down dead, in a manner without feeling, or at the least, they loose their feet and hands: the which may seeme fabulous, yet is it most true. I have knowne and frequented long the General *Terme Cosile*, the ancient people of *Cusco*, who had lost it ere or fourte years, which fell off in passing the Defile of *Chile*, being perished with this ayre, and when he came to looke on them, they were dead, and fell off without any paine, cutt as by a rotten Apple falleth from the tree. This Captaine reported, that of a good armie which he had conduced by that place, in the former years, since the discovery of this Kingdom by *Almagre*, a great part of the men remained dead there, whose bodies he found lying in the Defile, without any stinks or corruption: adding thereto one thing very strange, that they found a young Boye alive, and being examined how hee had lived in that place, hee said, that he lay hidden in a hole Cave, wher he came to cut the flesh of a dead Horke with a little Knife, and thus had he nourished himselfe a long time, with I know not how many companions that lived in that sort, but now they were all dead, one dying this day, & another to morrow, saying that he desired nothing more then to dye there with the rest, seeing that hee found not in himselfe any disposition to go to any other place, nor to take any safe in any thing. I have understood the life of others, and particularly of one that was of our company, who being then a young man, had passed by their Defiles, and it is a strange thing, the quality of this cold ayre, which kills, and also preserves the dead bodies without Corruption. I have also understood it of a reverend religious man, of the Order of *Saint Dominick*, and Prelate thereof, who had seen it passing by the Defile: and which is strange, he reported, that travelling that way by night, was forced to defend himselfe against that deadly wind which bloweth there (hauling no other means) but to gather together a great number of shofe dead bodies that lay there, and made thereof, as it were, a rampire and sholter for his head: in this manner did hee escape, the dead bodies giving him life. Without doubt this is a kinde of cold so piercing, that it quickeneth the will, better, cutting off his sense, and being by exceeding cold, yet doth not corrupt nor give any putrefaction, but rather preserveth the earth, and causeth it to growe more heaten and moistened. As for the other kinde of ayre which thundereth the earth, and causeth earthquakes, most at the *Indies*, then in any other Regions, I will speake thereof in treating the qualities of the Land at the *Indies*. We will content our selves now with what we have spoken of the wind and ayre, and passe to that which is so to be spoken of the water.

§. II.

Of the Ocean that inuades the Indies, and of the North and South Seas, their ebbing, flowing, Ebbes, fissions, Lakes, Rivers, and Springs.

Among all waters the Ocean is the principall, by which the *Indies* have beene discovered, and are inuaded; therewith, for either they be Lands of the Ocean Sea, or maine Land, the which wheresoever it ends, is bounded with this Ocean. To this day they have not discovered at the *Indies* any Mediterranean Sea, as in *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Africa*, into the which there entere somearme of this great Sea, and makes distant Seas, taking their names from the Provinces they walk: and almost all the Mediterranean Seas continue and ioine together, and with the Ocean it selfe, by the straights of *Gibraltar*, which the Ancients called the Pillers of *Hercules*, although the *Rab Barbe* separates from the Mediterranean Sea, entere also into the *Indian Ocean*, and the *Calpis* Sea ioines not with any other: so that at the *Indies* we finde not any other Sea then this Ocean, which they divide into two, the one they call the North Sea, and the other the South; for that the *Indies* which were first discovered by the Ocean, and reacheth unto *Spain*, lies all to the North, and by that Land thereafter discovered a Sea on the other side, the which they called the South Sea, for that they decline vntill they have passed the Line, and having lost the North, or Pole-archie, they called it South.

For

For this cause they have called all that Ocean the South Sea, which lieth on the other side of the East *Indies*, although a great part of it be fitted to the North, as all the coast of new *Spain*, *Nicaragua*, *Guatemala* and *Panama*. They say, that the first discoverer of this Sea, was called *Blasco de Albornoz*, the which he do by that part which we now call *Adam Land*, where it grows narrow, and the two Seas approach it more the one to the other, that there is but five leagues of distance: for although they make the way eighteene from *Nombre de Dios* to *Panama*, yet is it with turning to seeke the commoditie of the way, but drawing a direct line, the one Sea shall not be found more distant from the other. Some have discovered and propounded to cut through this passage of fifteen leagues, and to ioine one Sea to the other, to make the passage from *Peru* more commodious and easie, for that these eighteene leagues of Land betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Panama*, is more painefull and chargeable then 3000 by Sea, wherupon some would say, it were a meanes to drowne the Land; one Sea being lower then another. As in times past we finde it written, that for this cause conflicteth, they gave out the enterprise to winne the red Sea into *Nile*, in the time of King *Sesostris*: and since, in the Empire of the *Ottomans*.

But for my part, I hold such uncourtesie and propositions for vaine, although this inconvenience should not happen, the which it will not hold for assured. I believe there is no humane power able to beate, and breake downe those strong and impenetrable Mountains, which God hath placed betwixt the two Seas, and hath made them most hard Rocks, to withstand the furie of two Seas. And although it were possible to men, yet in my opinion they should feare punishment from heauen, in seeking to correct the workes, which the Creator by his great providence hath ordained and disposed in the framing of this vniuersall world.

Leaving this discourse of opening the Land, and ioining both Seas together, there is yet another like rash, but very difficult and dangerous to search out. Whether shall two great gulles doe ioine in any other part of the world, which was the enterprise of *Fernando Magellan*, a *Portugall* Gentleman, whose great courage and confidence in the research of this fubiekt, and happy successe in the finding thereof, gave the name of eternall memory to this straight, which iustly they call by the name of the discoverer *Magellan*, of which straight we will intreare a little, as of one of the greatest wonders of the world. Some have beleued, that this straight which *Magellan* had discovered in the South Sea, was none, or that it was straightened, as *Don*

Alonso d'Arila writes in his *Auances*; and at this day there are some that say, there is no such straight, but that they are illuised betwixt the Sea and Land, for that the maine Land ends there, at the end whereof are all lands, beyond the which the one Sea ioines fully with the other, or to speake better, it is all one Sea. But in truth it is most certaine, there is a straight and a long stretched out Land on either side, although it hath not yet beene knowne how farre it stretcheth of the one side of the straight towards the South. After *Magellan*, a Shippe of the Bishop of *Plasencia* passed the straight, *Don Guiserez Carnal* (whose Maile they say is yet at *Lima*, at the entrie of the Pallace) they went afterwards coasting along the South, to discover the straight, by the commandement of *Don Garcia de Mendoza*, then Governor of *Chile*, according to that which Captaine *Ladrillero* found it and passed it. I have read the discourse and report he made, where he saith, that he did not hazard himselfe to land in the straight, but being in doubt, which caused the wanes coming from the North to grow great and swelling, and the Sea continually foming with rage. In our time, *Franco Drake* an *Englishman*, passed this straight. After him, Captaine *Sarmiento* passed it on the South side. And lastly, in the yeere 1587, other *Englishmen* passed it, by the instruction of *Drake*, which at this time run along all the coast of *Peru*.

Euen as *Magellan* found out this straight vpon the South, so some have pretended to discover another straight, which they say is in the North, and suppose it to be in *Florida*, whose coast runnes in such sort, as they knowe me end thereof. *Peter Melander*, the *Admirall*, a man very expert at Sea, is of this opinion, that there is a straight, and that the King had commanded him to discover it, where in he shewed a great desire: he propounded his reasons to prove his opinion, saying, that they have sene some remainders of Ships in the North Sea, like unto those which the *Chinois* vie, which had beene impossible, if there were no passage from one Sea unto another. Moreover, hee reported, that in a certaine great Bay in *Florida* (the which runs 300 leagues within the Land) they see Whales in some season of the year, which come from the other Sea.

One of the most admirable secrets of Nature is the ebbing and flowing of the Sea, not only for this strange property of rising and falling, but much more for the difference there is thereof in diuers Seas, yea in diuers coasts of one and the same Sea. There are some Seas that have no daily ebbing nor ebbing, as we see in the inner Mediterranean, which is the *Thyrne* Sea, and yet it flows and ebbs every day in the vpper Mediterranean Sea, which is that of *Venice*, and iustly giueth cause of admiration, that these two Seas being Mediterranean, and that of *Venice* being no greater then the other, yet hath it his ebbing and flowing as the Ocean, and that other Sea of *Italy* none at all. There are some Mediterranean Seas, that apparently rise and fall every month;

Straights of Land
but eight leagues
betwixt North
& South Seas.

Hercules.

Iam.

Experience in
Drake and
Others voyage
hath found
them no
straights but
broken lands
to the South,
conuery to
our Author
here.

See of this Sea
Francis Drake
Voyage, p. 16. 168
I have omitted
Sarmiento's
voyage, &c.

The supposed
straight in
Florida.

Of the ebbing
and flowing of
the Indian Ocean,
chap. 1. The Philo-
sophers in search-
ing the cause
of ebbing and
flowing have
causely err'd,
following the
Greater and La-
tiner Sea, yea in
diuers coasts of
one and the same
Sea, and know not
their error, for
they know the
cause.

defend, yet very little : and that Land is alwayes much higher then that along the Sea coast.

The Indian
mountainous,
and thereby
temperate.

Of the propertie
of the land
of Peru. Chap. 20

One winde
only.

The Plains,
the hills, and
the Andes. See
supra. interea.

Raine almost
ever, and al-
most neuer.

Diet: Beasts.

All the Land about *Mexico* is of this nature and situation; and that which is about the *Valley*, can, which is the best soile of the *Indies*, as also in *Peru*, *Atacama*, *Chamanga* and *Cajao*, although more in one then in the other. But in the end, all is high ground, although they descend into deeper Valleys, and climb vpon high Mountaines the like is spoken of *Quito*, *Santo Foy*, and of the best of the *New Kingdoms*. To conclude, I doe beleue that the wisdome and providence of the Creator would have it so, that the greatest part of this Countrey of the *Indies* should be hillie, that it might be of a better temperature : for being low, it had bene very hot vnder the burning Zone, especially being farr from the Sea. Also all the Land I have sene at the *Indies*, is neere to the Mountaines on the one side or the other, and sometimes of all parts : So as I have oftentimes said there, that I would gladly see any place, from whence the horizon did shew it selfe and end by the heauen, and a Countrey stretched out and even, as we see in *Spain* in a thousand champaigne fields; yet doe I not remember that I have euer sene such sights at the *Indies*, were it in the llands, or vpon the maine Land, although I have travelled about seven hundred leagues in length. But as I have said, the neereesse of the Mountaines is very commodious in this region, to temper the heate of the Sunne. To conclude, the best inhabited parts of the *Indies* are as I have said : and generally, all that Countrey abounds in Grasse, Pastures, and Forests, contrary vnto that which *Aristotle* and the ancients did hold. So as when we go out of *Europe* to the *Indies* we wonder to see the Land so pleasant, greene and fresh. Yet this rule hath some exceptions, and chiefly in the Land of *Peru*, which is of a strange nature among all others,

We meane by *Peru*, not that great part of the world which they call *America*, seeing that therein is contained *Brazil*, the Kingdom of *Chile*, and that of *Granada*, and yet none of these Kingdomes is *Peru*, but only that part which lies to the South, beginning at the Kingdom of *Quito*, which is vnder the Line, and runs in length to the Realme of *Chile*, the which is without the Tropiques, which were six hundred leagues in length, and in breadth it contains no more then the Mountaines, which is fiftie common leagues, although in some places, as at *Chachapaya*, it be broader. This part of the world which we call *Peru*, is very remarkable, and contains in it strange properties, which serue as an exception to the generall rule of the *Indies*. The first is, that vpon all the coast it blowes continually with one only winde, which is South and South-west, contrary to that which doth vially blow vnder the burning Zone. The second is, that this winde being by nature the most violent, tempestuous, and vnhelthfull of all others, yet in this Region it is marvellous pleasing, healthfull, and agreeable : so as we may attribute the habitation of that part thereunto, without the which it would be troublesome and inhabitable, by reason of the heate, if it were not refreshed with the winde. The third properties, that it neuer raines, thunders, howes, nor hailes in all this coast, which is a matter worthy of admiration. Fourthly, that a little distance from the coast it raines & snowes terribly. Fifthly, that there are two ridges of Mountaines which runne the one as the other, and in one altitude, notwithstanding on the one there are great Forests, and it raines the greatest part of the years, being very hot; and the other is all naked and bare, and very cold : so as winter and summer are diuided on those two Mountaines, and raine and cleerenesse it selfe. For the better vnderstanding hereof, we must consider that *Peru* is diuided as it were into three parts, long and narrow, which they call *Lanos*, *Sierra*, and *Andes*; the *Lanos* runs along the Sea coast, the *Sierra* be all hills, with some vallies; and the *Andes* be steepe and craggie Mountaines. The *Lanos* on the Sea coast, have some ten leagues in breadth, and in some parts a litle more. The *Sierra* contains some twenty leagues in breadth : and the *Andes* as much, sometimes more, sometimes lesse. They run in length from North to South, and in breadth from East to West. It is a strange thing, that in so small a distance as fiftie leagues, equally distant from the Line and Pole, there should be so great a contrarie, as to raine almost continually in one place, and neuer in the other. It neuer raines vpon the coast or *Lanos*, although there falls sometimes a small dew, which they call *Guano*, and in *Cajal* below, the which sometimes thickens, and falls in certaine drops of water, yet is it not troublesome, nor such as they neede any conuenient. Their countreys are of mats with a litle earch vpon them which is sufficient. Vpon the *Andes* it raines in a manner continually, although it be sometimes more cleere then other. In the *Sierra* which lies betwixt both the extremes, it raine in the same season as it doth in *Spain*, which is from September vnto April, but in the other season, the time is more cleere, which is when the Sunne is farthest off, and the contrary when it is neereest. That which they call *Andes*, and *Sierra*, are two ridges of most high Mountaines, which runne about a thousand leagues, the one in view of the other, and almost equall. Vnto an infinite number of *Viscayas*, which breede in the *Sierra*, and are properly like vnto wilde Goats, very nimble and swift. There are also of those beasts which they call *Guanoes* and *Pacas*, which are sheepe, which we may well terme the Allies of this Countrey; whereof we full make in their place. And vpon the *Andes* they finde Apes, very gentle and delightfull, and Parrots in great numbers.

numbers. There also they finde the herbe or tree which they call *Coca*, that is so greatly esteemed by the *Indians*, and the traffike they make of it, is worth much money.

That which they call *Sierra*, cauleth Vallies, where as it opens, which are the best dwellings of *Peru*, as is the Valley of *Lamas* of *Andagaples*, and *Tucay*. In these Vallies there growe Wheat, Maize, and other sorts of fruits, but little in one then in the other. Beyond the Crie of *Cajao* (the ancient Court of the Lords of those Realms) the two ridges of Mountaines separate themselves one from the other, and in the midst leaue a Playne and large Champaigne, which they call the Prouince of *Calao*, where there are many Riues and great fount of fertile Pastures: there is also that great Lake of *Titicaca*. And although it be a full fole, and in the same height and intemperature, that the *Sierra*, having no more Trees nor Forests, yet the want they haue of bread is counteruailed with the rootes they flow, the which they call *Papa*, and they grow in the earth. This roote is the *Indians* fode; for drying it and making it cleane, they make that which they call *Chugra*, which is the bread and nourishment of those Prouinces. There are other rootes and small herbes which they eate. It is a healthfull fode, best people, and the richest of all the *Indies*, for the abundance of Cattell they feede, as well of those that are in *Europe*, as Sheepe, Neat, and Goates, as of those of the Countrey, which they call *Guanoes* and *Pacas*, and there are fere of Partridges. Next to the Prouince of *Calao*, is that of *Chacabaca*, where there are hot Vallies very fertile, and very high Rocks; the which are very rich in mynes, so as in no part of the World shall you finde better nor fairer.

Their bread.

For that it is rare and extraordinary to see a Countrey where it neuer raines nor thunders; The reason men desire naturally to know the cause of this strangeness. The reason which some giue, that haue neuer looked into it, is, that vpon that Coast there sit no vapours, sufficient to engender raine for want of matter; but only that there be small and light vapours, which cannot breede any other then mists and drowes, as we see in *Europe*, oftentimes vapours doe rise in the morning, which are not turned into raine, but into mists only, the which growes from the substance, which is not greffe and sufficient enough to turne to raine. They say, the reason why that which happens but some times in *Europe*, falls out continually vpon the Coast of *Peru*, is, for that this Region is very drie, and yields no greffe vapours. The dridnes is knowne by the great abundance of Sands, having neither Wells nor Mountaines, but of fiftene Stades deepe (which is the height of a man or more) and that is neere vnto Riues, the water whereof, piercing into the Land, giues them means to make Wells. So as it hath bene found by experience, that the couke of Riues being turned, the Wells haue bene dried vp, until they returned to their ordinarie course; and they giue this reason for a materiall cause of this effect, but they haue another efficient; which is no less considerable, (and that is the great height of the *Sierra*, which coming along the Coast, shadowes the *Lanos*; so as it suffers no winde to blow from the Land, but about the tops of these Mountaines. By means whereof, there reynes no winde, but that from the Sea, which finding no opposit, doth not presse nor straine forth the vapours which rise to engender raine; so as the shadow of the Mountaines keeps the vapours from thickning, and conuerts them all into mists. There are some experienced agree with this discourse; for that it raines vpon some small Hills along the Coast, which are least shadowed, as the Rocks of *Atico* and *Atacama*. It hath rained in some years when as the Northerne or Easterly winde haue blowen. It hath rained in some years when as it happened in founte sight, vpon the *Lanos* of *Trigile*, where it rained abundantly, the which they had not sene in many ages before. Moreover, it raines vpon the same Coast in places, where as the Easterly or Northerne winde be ordinarie, as in *Guayaquil*, and in places where as the Land riseth much, and turns from the shadow of the Mountaines, as in those that are beyond *Ariqua*. Some discourse in this manner, but let every one thinke as he please. It is most certaine, that coming from the Mountaines to the Vallies, they doe vially see as it were two Heauens, one cleere and bright above, and the other obscure, and as it were a gray vyle spread vnderneath, which covers all the Coast; and although it raine not, yet this mist is wonderful profitable to bring forth Cattell, and to raise vp and nourish the feed; for although they haue plenty of water, which they draw from the Pooles and Lakes, yet this moisture from Heauen hath such a vertue, that ceasing to fall vpon the Earth, it breeds a great commoditie and defect of graine and feedes. And that which is more worthy of admiration, the drie and barren Sands are by this dew so beautified with grasse and flowers, as it is a pleasing and agreeable sight, and very profitable for the feeding of Cattell, as we see in the Mountaine called *Sandis*, neere to the Citie of *King*.

New *Spain* passeth all other Prouinces in pasture, which breeds infinite troops of Horses, Kine, Sheepe, and other Cattell. It abounds in fruit and all kinde of graine. To conclude, it is a Country the best furnished and most accomplished at the *Indies*. Yet *Peru* doth surpass it in one thing, which is Wine, for that there growes fere and good; and they daily multiply and increase, the which doth grow in very hot Vallies, where there are waterings. And although there be Vines in new *Spain*, yet the grape comes not to its maturity, fit to make Wine. The reason is, for that it raines there in Iuly and August, when as the grape ripens; and therefore it comes not

Of the propertie
of new
Spain, of the
Lands, and of
other lands.
Chap. 23.
Peru wine.

Sugar works
and Hides.

Indians willed.

Of the
known Land,
and the dis-
tance of it,
between
them of the
East and the
West, Chap. 43.

not to his perfection. And if any one through curiosity would take the pains to make wine, it should be like to that of *Genoa* and *Lombardy*, which is very small and sharp, having a taste like unto *Verjuice*. The lands which they call *Barlouten*, which bee *Hijpania*, *Cuba*, *Pere Roca*, and others thereabouts, are beautified with many greene pastures, and abound in Cattell, as Neat, and Swine, which are become wilde. The wealth of these lands, bee their Sugar-works and Hides. There is much *Caffia fistula* and Ginger. It is a thing incredible, to see the multitude of these merchandizes brought in one fleet, being in a manner impossible that all *Europe* should waste so much. They likewise bring wood of an excellent qualitie and colour, as *Ebone*, and others, which serve for buildings and *loyners*. There is much of that wood which they call *Lignum Indicum* or *Guaia*, fit to cure the pox. All these lands and others thereabouts, which are many, have a goodly and pleasant aspect, for that throughout the yeere, they are beautified with grasse and greene trees, as they cannot discern when it is Autumne or Summer, by reason of continuall moisture ioyned to the heat of the burning Zone. And although this Land bee of a great circuit, yet are there few dwellings, for that of it selfe it engenders great *Arachnes*, as they call them, which be *Groves* or very thicke *Coppies*: and on the *Playnes* there are many *manihes* and bogs. They give yet another notable reason, why they are so finally peopled, for that there have remained few naturall *Indians*, through the inconsideration and disorder of the first Conquerors that peopled it: and therefore, for the most part, they vie *Negros*, but they cost dare, being very fit to till the Land. There grows neither bread nor wine in these lands, for that the too great fertilitye and the vice of the soile, suffers them not to feede, but casts all forth in grasse, very vepually. There are no *Olive trees*, at the least, they beare no *Olives*, but many greene leaves shallower to the view, which beare no fruit. The bread they vie is of *Cocoe*, whereof we shall hereafter speake. There is gold in the *Riuers* of these lands, which some draw forth, but in small quantitie. I was little lesse than a yeere in these lands, and as it hath bene told me of the mayne Land of the *Indies*, where I have not bene, as in *Florida*, *Nicaragua*, *Guatemala*, and others, it is in a manner of this temper, as I have described: yet have I not let downe every particular of Nature in their Provinces of the firme Land, having no perfect knowledge thereof. The Countrey which doth most resemble *Spain* and the Regions of *Europe*, in all the West *Indies*, is the Realme of *Chile*, which is without the generall rule of these other Provinces, being situate without the burning Zone, and the Tropicke of *Cancer*. This Land of it selfe is coole and fertile, and brings forth all kinds of fruits that bee in *Spain*; it yields great abundance of bread and wine, and abound in Pastures and Cattell. The aire is wholsome and cleare, temperate betwixt heat and cold. Winter and Summer are very distinct, and there they finde great store of very fine gold. Yet this Land is poore and finally peopled, by reason of their continuall warre with the *Americans*, and their Associates, being a rough people and friends to libertie.

There are great conjectures, that in the temperate Zone at the *Antarctic Pole*, there are great and fertile Lands: but to this day they are not discovered, neither do they know any other Land in this Zone, but that of *Chile*, and some part of that Land which runneth from *Ethiopia* to the Cape of *Good Hope*, as hath bene said in the first Booke: neither is it knowne if there bee any habitations in the other two Zones of the Poles, and whether the Land continues and stretcheth to that which is towards the *Antarctic* or South Pole. Neither do we know the Land that lyes beyond the Straight of *Magellan*, for that the greatest height yet discovered, is in fiftie fixe degrees, as hath bene formerly said; and toward the Arctike or Northerne Pole, it is not known how farr the Land extends, which runneth beyond the Cape of *Mendocin* and the *Californes*, nor the bounds and end of *Florida*, neither yet how farr it extends to the West. Of late they have discovered a new Land, which they call *New Mexico*, wherethy they say is much people that speake the *American* tongue. The *Philippines* and the following Islands, as some report that know it by experience, ranne about nine hundred leagues. But to intreat of *China*, *Cochinchina*, *Siam*, and other Regions which are of the East *Indies*, were contrary to my purpose, which is only to discourse of the West: say, they are ignorant of the greatest part of *America*, which lyes betwixt *Pere* and *Bresil*, although the bounds be knowne of all sides, wherein there is diversitie of opinions; some say it is a drowned Land, full of Lakes and waterie places; others affirme there are great and flourishing Kingdomes, imagining there be the *Fajiti*, the *Dorado*, and the *Cajati*, where they say are wonderful things. I have heard one of our companie say, a man worthy of credit, that he had seene great dwellings there, and the wayes as much beaten as those betwixt *Salamancea* and *Madrid*, the which he did see, when as *Peter d'Osca*, and after, those that succeeded him, made their entrie and discovery by the great Riuer of *Amaricon*, who beleuing that the *Dorado* which they sought, was farther off, cared not to inhabit there, and after went both without the *Dorado*, which they could not finde, and this great Province which they left. To speake the truth, the habitations of *America* are to this day unknowne, except the extremities, which are *Pere*, *Bresil*, and that part where the Land begins to straighten, which is the Riuer of *Siluer*, when *Tucuman*, which makes the round to *Chile* and *Charcas*. Of late we have vnderstood by Letters from some of ours which goe to Saint *Croix* in the *Sierre*, that they goe dis-

CONJECT.

covering of great Provinces and dwellings, betwixt *Bresil* and *Pere*. Time will reuelle them, for as at this day the care and courage of men is great, to compass the World from one part to another; so we may beleue, that as they have discovered that which is now knowne, they may likewise lay open that which remayneth, to the end the Gospell may be preached to the whole World, seeing the two Crownes of *Portugal* and *Cassia* have met by the East and West, ioyning their discoveries together, which in truth is matter to be observed, that the one is come to *China* and *Lapon* by the East, and the other to the *Philippines*, which are neighbours, and almost ioyning unto *China*, by the West: for from the lands of *Lapon*, which is the chiefe of the *Philippines*, in the which is the Cite of *Manila*, unto *Macas*, which is in the Ile of *Canton*, are but foure score or a hundred leagues, and yet we finde it strange, that notwithstanding this small distance from the one to the other, yet according to their account, there is a dayes difference betwixt them; as is Sunday at *Macas*, when as it is but Saturday at *Manila*, and so of the rest. Those of *Macas* and of *China* haue one day advanced before the *Philippines*. It happened to fether *Alonso Sanchez*, of whose mention is made before, that parring from the *Philippines*, hee arrived at *Macas* the second day of May, according to their computation, and going to say the arrived at *Macas* an *Advent*, he found they did celebrate the feast of the *Inuention of the holy Croffe*, for that they did then reckon the third of May. The like happened unto him in another voyage beyond it.

Some haue found this alteration and diversitie strange, supposing that the fault proceeded from the one or the other, the which is not so: but it is a true and well observed computation, for according to the difference of wayes where they have bene, we may necessarily say, that when they meet, there must be difference of a day: the reason is, for that sayling from West to East, they alwayes gaine of the day, finding the Sunne rising sooner: and contrariwise, those that saile from East to West, doe alwayes lose of the day, for that the Sunne riseth later: unto this, and from East to West, doe alwayes lose of the day, they have the day longer or shorter. In *Pere*, as they approach neerer the East or the West, they have the day longer or shorter. In *Pere*, which is Westward in respect of *Spain*, they are about fixe hours behinde; so as when it is noone in *Spain*, it is morning at *Pere*; and when it is morning here, it is mid-night there. I have made certaine proofe thereof, by the computation of Eclipses of the Sunne and Moone. Now that the *Portugals* haue made their navigations from West to East, and the *Cassians* from East to West, when they came to ioyne and meet at the *Philippines* and *Macas*, the one hath gayed twelve hours, and the other hath lost as much; so as at one instant, and in one time, they finde the difference of foure and twentie hours, which is a whole day.

Although we finde vents of fire in other places, as Mount *Arma* and *Ysma*, which now they call Mount *Soma*, yet is that notable which is found at the *Indies*. Ordinarily these *Volcanes* or Vents of fire, or Rocks or Pikes of most high Mountaines, which raise themselves about the tops of all other Mountaines; vpon their tops they haue a Playne, and in the midst thereof a pit or great mouth, which defends euen unto the soote thereof; a thing very terrible to behold. Out of these mouths there issues smoke, and sometimes fire: some call little smoke, and haue in a manner no force of *Volcanes*, as that of *Arquaga*, which is of an vmeasurable height, and almost all foud. It cannot be mounted vpon in lesse then two dayes, yet they haue not found any fiew of fire, but only the reliques of some sacrifices which the *Indians* made while they were Gentiles, and sometimes it doth cause a little smoke. The *Volcan* of *Mexico* which is neere to the *Palace of Angels*, is likewise of an admirable height, whereas they mount thirtie leagues in turning: from this *Volcan* issueth not continually, but sometimes, almost euery day, a great exhalation or whilwind of smoke, which ascends directly vpon like to the shot of a Croffe-bow, and growes after like to a great plume of feathers, vntill it ceaseth quite, and is presently converted into an obscure and dark cloud. Most commonly it riseth in the morning after the Sunne rising, and almost when it seetheth, although I haue seene it breake out at other times. Sometimes it doth cast forth great store of ashes after this smoke. They haue not yet seene any fire come from it; yet they feare it will issue forth and burne all the Land round about, which is the best of all the Kingdomes. And they hold it for certaine, that there is some correspondence betwixt this *Volcan* and the *Sierre* of *Taxcala*, which is neere unto it, that causeth the great thunders and lightnings they doe commonly heare and see in those parts.

Some *Spaniards* haue mounted up to this *Volcan*, and giuen notice of the myne of sulphur to make powder thereof. *Cortez* reports the care he had to discover what was in this *Volcan*. The *Volcan* of *Guatemala* more renowned, as well for their greatneesse and height: which doth fall in the South Sea discover asse off, as for the violence and terror of the fire it casts. The three and twentieth day of December, in the yeere 1586, almost all the Cite of *Guatemala* fell with an Earthquake, and some people flaine. This *Volcan* had then fixe moneths together, 60 day and night cast out from the top, and vomited as it were, a flood of fire, the substance falling vpon the sides of the *Volcan*, was turned into ashes like unto burnt earth (a thing passing mans iudgement, to conceiue how it could cast so much matter from its centre during fixe moneths, being accustomed to cast smoke alone, and that sometimes with small flaes). This was written unto me being at *Mexico*, by a Secretarie of the Audience of *Guatemala*, a man worthy of credit.

Terrible earthquake at Guatemala.

Plin. l. 33. c. 6.

Symptomatic
with gold.

Plin. l. 33. c. 6.

Of the place
where they
find quick-
silver, and how
they discov-
ered their rich
myne in Gu-
atemala.
Chap. 11.

barrell of quick-silver, the which did swimme about like unto Wood or Cork upon the Water. Plinie gives an exception herunto, saying, That gold alone doth sink and not swimme about it. I have not seen the experience; but it may be this grooves, by reason that quick-silver by nature doth inuoin gold, and covers it, which is one of the most important properties it hath; for it joyne with gold in a strange manner, it seekes it where it lies, and inuoin it in such sort, as is doth distinguish and separate it from any other body or metall where it is mixt: for this reason such take gold as will seuer themselves from the dangers and difcommodities of quick-silver. They have used a remedie to this dole (in whose eares they had put quick-silver, to cause them to die secretly) to put little plates of our these plates all white with the Gold hath the vertue to draw out Mercury) and after they drew out these plates all white with the quick-silver, it did thicke unto them. Being one day at *Medi*, I went to see the exquisite workes which *Lacome de Treco*. (a rare workman of *Michlan*) made for *Saints Connerce the Royal*, which was my lap to be there one day, when as they gilded certaine pieces of countertable of brasse, which is done with quick-silver; and for that the fume of Mercury is mortal, he told me that the workmen preferred themselves from this venome, by swalloweing a double Duckett of gold rolled up; the which being in the stomacke, drawes vnto it all the quick-silver that enters in fume by the Eares, Eyes, Nostrils, and Mouth, and by this meanes freed themselves from the danger of quick-silver, which the gold gathered in the stomacke, and after cast out by the excrements: a thing truly worthy of admiration. After the quick-silver hath purified and purged gold from all other metals and mixture, hee likewise separated from the gold his friend by the heate of the fire, the which purifies it from all quick-silver. Plinie sayes, that by a certaine arte and invention they did separate gold from quick-silver. It seemes to me the Ancients had no knowledge to refine silver by quick-silver, which at this day is the greatest vice, and chiefest profit of quick-silver: for that he sayes plainly, that quick-silver joyne with no other metall but with gold; and when hee makes mention of refining of silver, hee speaks onely but of the manner of melting; whereby wee may inferre that the Ancients had no knowledge of this secret. In truth, though there be a league and simpathy betwixt gold and quick-silver, yet where as the Mercury findes no gold, it joyne with silver, though not in the like manner as with gold; but in the end, it joyne with silver from Earth, Copper, and Lead, amongst which the silver growes, without any neede of fire to melt it: yet must they use fire to separate it from the silver, as I will shew hereafter. Quick-silver hath no account of other metals, but of Gold and Silver; but contrariwise, it doth corrupt them, force and confound them, and flyeth from them as much as may be. The which is likewise admissible, and for this cause they put it in earthen vessels, or in beaues skins. For if it be put in vessels of Copper, of Iron, or other metall, it presently pierceth and corrupts them. And therefore Plinie calleth it the poison of all things, for that it consumes and spoiles all. Wee finde quick-silver in the graves of dead men, which after it hath consumed the bodies, comes forth pure and whole. There hath beene likewise found in the bones and marrow of Men and Beasts, who having received it in time by the mouth and nostrils, congeales within them and pierceth one vnto the bones: Therefore it is a dangerous thing to frequent for venereal and mortal a creature. It hath another property, which is, to runne and make a hundred thousand small drops; whereas no one is lost; see they neuer so little, but they retorne every way to their lapine. It is almost incorruptible, having nothing in a manner that may consume it. And therefore Plinie calleth it the eternall sweat. It hath yet another property, that although it doth separate Gold from Copper, and all other metals; yet they that will gold Copper, Brasse, or Silver, use quick-silver as the meanes of this victory: for with the helpe thereof they gild metals. Amongst all the wonders of this strange liquor, that seemes to mee most worthy observation, that although it be the weightiest thing in the world, yet it is converted into the lightest of the world, which is smoke, and suddenly the same smoke which is so light a thing, runnes againe into so heauie substance, as is the proper liquor of quick-silver, whereinto it is dissolved; for this smoke encountering the metall on high, being a solid body, or coming into a cold Region, suddenly it thickens and is converted into quick-silver; and if you fix him once againe to the fire, hee doth likewise retorne into smoke, to be refuted againe into quick-silver.

Quick-silver is found in a kinde of stone, which doth likewise yeeld Vermillion, which the Ancients called *Minium*, and at this day they call the Images of cryfall *Minerals*, which are painted with quick-silver. The Ancients made great account of this *Minium* or Vermillion, holding it for a sacred colour, as Plinie reports, saying, That the *Romans* were accustomed to paint the face of *Iupiter*, and the bodies of those that triumphed in *Etiquia*; yea, their Idols and their Countresses likewise had their faces coloured with this *Minium*. And this Vermillion was so esteemed at *Rome* (which they brought onely from *Spain*, where they had many pits and mynes of quick-silver, which continues there to this day) that the *Romans* suffered it not to be refined in *Spain*; lest they should steale some of it, but they carried it to *Rome*, sealed up in a maffe as they drew it out of the myne, and after refined it. They did yearly bring from *Spain*, especially from

from *Andalusie*, about ten thousand pound weight, which the *Romans* valued as an infinite treasure. I have reported all this out of that Author, to the end that those which doe see what palke at this day in *Peru*, may have the content to know what chanced in former ages among the mightiest Lords of the world. I speake for the *Inguas* Kings of *Peru*, and for the natural *Indians* thereof, which have laboured and digged long in these Mines of Quick-silver, not knowing what Quick-silver was, seeking only for *Cinnabrum* or Vermillion, which they call *Limp*, the which they esteeme much, for that same effect that Plinie reports of the *Romans* and *Etiquians*; that is, to paint the face and bodies of themselves and their Idols; the like hath beene much practised by the *Indians*, especially when they went to the warres, and wile it at this day in their feasts and dancing, which they call lubbering, supposing that their faces and visage so lubbered, did much terrifie, and at this day they hold it for an ornament and beautifying: for this cause there were strange workes of Mines in the Mountains of *Guacacilica*, which are in *Peru*, neere to the Citie of *Guamanga*, out of the which they drew this Metall: it is of such a manner, that if at this day they enter by the caves or *Socobanos*, which the *Indians* made in those dayes, they looke themselves finding no passage out: but they regarded not Quick-silver, which naturally is in the same substance or metall of Vermillion, neither had they knowledge of any such matter.

The *Indians* were not alone for so long a time without the knowledge of this treasure, but likewise the *Spaniards*, who vntill the years 1566. and 1567. (at such time as the licentiate *Castro* gouerned in *Peru*) discovered not the Mines of Quick-silver, which happened in this manner. A man of iudgement called *Herrique Guarece*, a *Portugall* borne, having a piece of this coloured Metall, as I have said, which the *Indians* call *Limp*, with which they paint their faces, as he beheld it well, found it to be the same which they call Vermillion in *Castile*; and for that hee knew well that Vermillion was drawne out of the same metall that Quick-silver was, hee conuicted these Mines to be of Quick-silver, went to the place wherunto they drew this Metall, to make trail thereof. The which hee found true, and this sort the Mines of *Yelaca*, in the territiue of *Guamanga*, being discovered, great numbers of men went thither to draw out Quick-silver, and so to carry it to *Mexico*, where they refine Silver by the meanes of Quick-silver, wherewith many are innoched. This Countrie of Mines which they call *Guacacilica*, was then peopled with *Spaniards* and *Indians* that came thither, and come still to worke in these Mines of Quick-silver, which are in great numbers, and very plentiful: but of all these Mines, that which they call *Amador de Cabrera*, or of *Saints*, is goodly and notable. It is a Rocke of most hard Stone, intercealed all with Quick-silver, and of that greatesse, that it extends about foure score *Vares* or yards in length, and fortie in breadth; in which Mine they haue many pits and ditches, of three score and tenne fathoms deepe; so as three hundred men may well worke together, each in the capacie thereof. This Mine was discovered by an *Indian* of *Amador de Cabrera*, called *Neuqueno* of the Village of *Acoz*, the which *Amador de Cabrera* caused to be registered in his name. He was in suite against the *Procurer* fiscal, but the *Justitie* was addiessed to him by sentence as the discoverer. Since he sold his interest to another, for two hundred and fiftie thousand *Ducates*; and afterwards thinking he had bin deceived in the sale, hee commenced an action against the buyer, being worth; as they say, about five hundred thousand *Ducates*; yea, some hold it to be worth a Million of Gold: a rare thing to see a Mine of that wealth.

When *Don Francisco de Toledo* gouerned in *Peru*, there was one which had bin in *Mexico*, and observed how they refined Silver with Mercury, called *Pero Fernandez de Pallo*, who offered to refine Silver at *Potosi*, with Mercury; and having made trial thereof in the year 1571 performed it with credit; then began they to refine Silver at *Potosi* with Quick-silver, which they transported from *Guamacacilica*, which was a goodly helpe to the Mines; for by the meanes of Quick-silver they drew an infinite quantitie of metall from these Mines, wherof they made no account, the which they called *Serapies*. For as it hath beene said, the Quick-silver purifies the Silver, although it be drie, poore, and of base alloy, which cannot be done by melting in the fire. The Catholike King drawes from it Quick-silver mines, without any charge or hazard, al-fore, besides the rights that lie in *Potosi*, where it is employed, the which is a great price. They doe yearly one with another, draw from these Mines of *Guacacilica*, eight thousand quintals of Quick-silver, yea and more.

Let vs now speake how they draw out Quick-silver, and how they refine Silver therewith. They take the stone or metall where they finde the Quick-silver, the which they put into the fire in pots of earth well luted, being well beaten, so as this metall or stone coming to melt by the heate of the fire, the Quick-silver separates it selfe, and goes forth in exhalation, and sometimes euen with the smoke of the fire, vntill it incoincurs some body where it flakes and congeales, and it is passe up higher, without meeting of any hard substance, it mounts up vntill it be cold, and then congeates, it falls downe againe. When the melting is finished, they stop the pots and draw vntill the metall, sometimes staying vntill it be very cold, for it there remained

Labyrinthian

Mines of
Quick-silver
found.The manner
how to draw
out Quick-silver,
and how
they refine
Silver.
Chap. 11.

remained any fume or vapour, which should encounter them that should vnloofe the poos, they
were in danger of death, or to be benumbed of their limbes, or at the least to loofe their teeth.
And for that they fpend an infinite quantity of wood, in the melting of these mettals, a Miller
called *Rodrigo de Torres* found out a profitable inuention, which was, to gather certaine fume
which grows throughout all those Mountains of *Pera*, the which they call *Tobo*, it is like vn-
to those flames wherewith they make their fire. It is a strange thing to see the force which this
dewy fume hath, to dissolve the mettals, and to melt them, as *Platina* fays, that there is gold
which melts more easily with the flame of *frax*, then with the flame of coales. They put the
Quick-silver thus melten into skinnes, for that it keeps best in leather, and they lay it
into the Kings flore-houfe, from whence they carrie it by Sea to *Astorga*, and thence they lay
by Land vpon their shore. There is yearlyely spent in *Potosi* for the refining of Mettals, about
fix or seuen thousand quintals of Quick-silver, besides that they draw from the *Plates* (which is
the earth or dross of the first washings of these Mettals, which are made in caldrons). The
which plates they burne in chiefe furnaces, to draw out the Quick-silver which remains in
them. There is also a little quantity of Quick-silver in *Cile* of *Potosi*, and in *Tarapoa*. The
quantity of mettals which they refine, (as some men haue counted) made the account) doe
amount yearlyely to about three hundred thousand quintals, from the earth they drawe thereof
being melt and refined, they may draw yearlyely about two thousand quintals of mettals. We
must vnderstand there are diuers sorts of mettals, for some yeelde much Siluer, and waste little
Quick-silver: others consume much Quick-silver, and yeelde little Siluer: and there are others
which consume much Quick-silver, and yeeldes much Siluer: and others that consume little
Quick-silver, and also yeelde little Siluer: and as men encounter in these mettals, so they grow
more acquainted with the nature of them, and know which is rich in mettals yeeldes much Siluer, and
consumes much Quick-silver: and likewise that which is rich in mettals yeeldes little Siluer, and con-
sumes a little Mercurie. They first beate and grinde the mettall very small, vntill they haue
other instruments, which beate this Stone like vnto tanne Mill, and as being well beate they
force it in a copper fearch, making the poulis as small and fine, as if it were horse haire: these
feares being well fitted, doe sift thirte quintals in a day and anight; then they put the poulde
of the mettall into the vessels vpon furnaces, whereas they aenight it and mortifie it with brine,
putting to every five quintals of poulde, four quintals of Saltr. And thus they doe for that the
Siluer vnioe it. After they put Quick-silver into a peece of Holle the mettall, and lay it out vpon the
metall, which goes forth like a dewe, alwayns turning and flaring the mettall, to the end it may
be well incorporate.

Before the invention of these furnaces of fire, they did often mingle their metall with Quick-silver, in great troughs, letting it settle some days, and did then mix it, and stir it again; vntill they thought all the Quick-silver were well incorporate with the Silver, the which continued twentie daies and more, and at the least nine daies. Since they discovered (as the desire to get is diligent) that to shorten the time fire did much helpe: to incorporate Silver the former with Quick-silver, they invented these furnaces, whereon they set vessels to put in their metall, with Salt and Quick-silver, and underneath they put fire by little and little, in furnaces made for that purpose, first they put in the fire the Quck-silver is incorporate with the Silver, and then they put in the fire the Metall in such done his part, and after all the Silver, leaues. And when they find that the Metall is in such done his part, and after all the Silver, leaues, they use nothing behinde, but is well imbured as a Sponge doth water, drawing it from the earth, Lead and Copper, with the which it is engendered. Then they after they separate it likewise from the Quick-silver, the which they doe in this sort; they put the Metall in Galladons, and vessels full of water, where with certaine wheelies they turne the metall round about, as if they should make Muffins; and to the earth and droffe goes from the Metall with the water that runnes away: The Silver and Quick-silver as most ponderous remaining in the bottome; the Metall which remains, is like unto Sand; then they take it out and wash it again in great platens of wood, or keeles full of water, till drawing the earth from it, vntill they leaue the Silver and Quick-silver well cleane. These flippes are first full of water, and then of Silver and Quick-silver, with the earth and droffe, which they call washes, the which they stir with a stick, and draw out the remainder. When the Silver and Quick-silver are cleaned and begin to shine, and that there remains no earth, they put all the Metall into a cloth, which they straine out very forcibly, so as all the Quick-silver passeth out, being not incorporate with the Silver, and the rest remains as a loafe of Silver, like to a marke of Almonds puffed to draw Oyle. And being thus pressed, the remainder contains but the fixt part in Silver, and fine in Mercurie. So as if there remains a marke of threecore pounds, ten are of Silver, and fiftie of Mercurie. Of these marke they make pinnies (as they call them) like pine apples, or sugar loaves, hollow within, the which they make of a hundred pound weight; then to separate the Silver from the Quick-silver, they take the pinnies, and put them in a vessel, like to a sugar-loaf, like to a sugar-loaf, or vnto a cupbord or hood, the which they connect with sand, and set fire vnto it; whereby the Quick-silver arises in smoke, the which (liking again the capuchon of earth,

Dangers by
Quick-filuer.
Force of Straw
Pl. 1.33.4.
Abundance of
Mortals.

Manner of working.

CHAP. 2. § 4. *Triall and Alloy of Silver. Engines and order of working.*

[illegible][illegible]

to get Silver, which is tried by deputies appointed by the King. To the *Affy Master*, who give to every one his weight, for that they carry the bars of Silver into the *Affy*, where he give to every one a piece of money, and hee casts a small peece of euerie one, the which he weighs truly, and puts them into a *Crafft*, which is a small vefell made of burnt bones beaten: after hee placeeth euerie cruffle in his order in the furnace, giuing them a violent fire, then the *Melt* is melted, and that which is lead, goes into fmoake, and the copper and the rest diffules, the Silver remaining most fine, of the colour of fire. It is a strange thing, that being thus refined, although it be liquid and molten, yet it neuer pines, were the mouth of the cruffle turned downwards; but it remaineth fixed, without the losse of a droppe. The *Affy Master* knoweth by the colour and other signes, when it is refined, then hee drawes the cruffles from the fire, and weighs euerie peece causally, observing what euerie one wants of his weight; for that which is of high alloy, hee sees what alloy hee bears, according to the which he markes euerie cruffle with the hand, but with a small pair of pincers: and this trial hee make by candle-light, so that aye might moue the balance. For of this little the price of the whole barre dependeth. In truth it is a very delicate thing, and requires a great dexterity.

Fine Silver for
work, must be
alloyed.

Mat. 3.
Eccles. 24.
Psal. 11.

Of their En-
gins to grinde
the Metall,
and of their
triall of Silver
Chap. 13.

d. V.

vile salt to temper this *Asi*, having great force to correct it, and so they moderate one with the other by the contrariety: that is in them. They vie also *Tomates*; which are cold and very wholesome. It is a kind of graine greater and full of iyce, the which gives a good taste to fowes, and they are good to eat. They have generally throughout the *Indies* of this *Indian Pepper*, at the *Hand*, new *Spaine*, *Peru*, and all the rest that is discovered. And as *May* is the general graine for Bread, so *Asi* is the most common spice for lawces.

The thing wherein was most resemblance, in my opinion, betwixt the *Planes* at the *Indies*, and those which the Ancients did celebrate, is the greatness of the leaves, for that these have them very great and cool. But in truth there is no more comparision nor resemblance of the one with the other, then there is (as the *Proverbe* faith) betwixt an Egge and a Cheese. For first, the ancient *plane* carries no fruit, at the least, they made no account thereof, but the chiefest reason why they esteemed it, was, for the shadow, for that there was no more *Summe* vnder a *plane* than vnder a roafe. And contrariwise, the reason why they should regard it at the *Indies*, a *Yea* make great account thereof, is by reason of this fruit, which is very good; for they have little shade. Moreover, the ancient *Plane* had the body too bigge, and the boughs so spread, that *Plinio* reporteth of one *Licinius a Roman* Captaine, who with eighteene of his companions dined at ease in the hollow of one of these *Planes*; and of the Emperor *Cassius Caligula*, who with eleven of his guests feasted vpon the top of another *Plane*, where he made them a sumptuous banquet. The *Indian* *Planes* have neither too great nor hollow bodies, nor too broad boughs.

The leaves of the *Indian Plane*, are of a wonderful bignesse, and are, in a manner, sufficient to couer a man from the foot to the head. It is a Plant that makes a flocke within the earth, out of the which springs many and lundy fens and spriggs, diuided, and not ioynted together. These spriggs grow bigge, every one making a small tree apart, and in growing they cast forth these leaves, which are of a fine, greene, smooth, and great as I haue said. When it is growne to the height of a fadde and a halfe, or two, it puts forth one only bough of fruit, whereon sometimes there are great numbers of this fruit, and sometimes little. I haue told vpon some of these boughs three hundred, whereas others of this fruit are a fpace long more or lesse, and two or three fingers bigge; yet is there a small difference here, betwixt some and others, they take away the rinde, and all the rest is a firme kernell and tender, good to eat, and nourishing. This fruit inclines more to cold then heat. They are accustomed to gather the boughs or clusters, as I haue said, being greene, and put them into vessels, where they ripen, being well couered, especially when there is a certaine heate mingled with it, which serues for this effect, if they suffer them to ripen on the tree, they haue a better taste, and a very good smell, like to *Cinnamon* or *Sweete Apples*. They last almost all the yeare, for that there are alwayes young ones that grow out of this flocke; so as when one ends, another begins to yelde his fruit, the one is halfe ripe, and the other begins to bud anew, so no one looses another, and the fruit continues the whole yeare. In gathering the clusters, they cut the spriggs or stalks, for that it is better but one, and neuer but once; but as I haue said, the stalk remaining, and cutteth new fens or stalks, vntill it regrowes old and dies. This *Plane* continues many yeares, and requires much moisture, and a very hot ground. They put ashes at the foote of it, for the better entreating thereof, and they make small grooves and very thicke: the leafe is as broad as a sheete of Paper, or little lesse, and four times as long.

Although the *Plane* be the most profitable, yet that *Cacao* is most esteemed at *Mezico*, and the *Coca* in *Peru*, in which two trees they haue great superstition. The *Cacao* is a fruite little lesse then almonds, yet more fat, the which being roasted hath no ill taste. It is so much esteemed amongst the *Indians* (*Yea*, and among the *Spaniards*) that it is one of the richest and the greatest traffiques of new *Spaine*: for being a drie fruit, and that keeps long without corruption, they carrie whole Ships loaded from the Riuozine of *Guaymalla*. The last yeare an *English* Pirat did burne in the Port of *Guaymala* in new *Spaine*, about a hundred thousand charges of *Cacao*. They vie it instead of money, for with fiew *Cacao* they buy one thing, with thirtie another, and with a hundred another, without any contradiction; and they vie to giue it to the poore that beg for almes. The chiefe vicer of this *Cacao*, is a drinke which they call *Chocolate*, whereof they make great account in that Country, foolishly, and without reason; for it is loathsome to such as are not accustomed with it, hauing a stum or fruite that is very vnplesant to taste, if they be not very well conuited thereof. Yet it is a drinke very much esteemed among the *Indians*, whereas they feast Noble men as they passe through their Countie. The tree whereon this fruite growes, is of a reasonable bignesse, and well fashioned, it is so tender, that to keepe it from the burning of the Sunne, they plant neere vnto it a great tree, which serues only to shadow it, and they call it the mistery of *Cacao*. There are places where they are like to the Vines and Olive trees of *Spaine*. The Province where there is greatest abundance for the traffique of Merchandise, is *Guaymalla*. There growes none in *Peru*, but *Coca*, wherein they hold another great superstition, which seems to be fabulous. It is a kinde of Marchandise, by the which all their Markets and Faires are made with great expedition. This *Coca* whereof they make fiew account, is a small greene leafe, which groweth vpon small trees about a fadome high, and in hot and moist ground;

euery four months it casts forth this leafe, which they call *Trefuino* or *Tremoy*; it requires great care in planting, being very tender, and much more to keepe it, when it is gathered. They lay it in order in long and narrow baskets, and so lade the sheepe of the Gountrey, which goe in troopes, with one, two, or three thousand baskets of this marchandise.

They bring it commonly from the *Andes* and *valleys*, where there is an extreme heate, and where it raines continually the most part of the yeare: for that the *Indians* endure much cold labour and paine to asseruaine it, and often many die; for that they goe from the *Sierre* and cold places to vall and gather them in the *Andes*. Their vie is to carry it in their mouths, chewing it, and sucking out the iuice, but they swallow it not. They say it giues them great comfort, and is very pleasing vnto them. They willingly imploy their money therein, and vie it as money.

Magney is a tree of wonders, whereof the Notaries or Chapetons (as the *Indians* call them) are wont to write miracles, in that it yeldeth Water, Wine, Oyle, Vinegar, Honie, Sierrey, Thimble, Needles, and a thousand other things. It is a tree which the *Indians* esteeme much in new *Spaine*, and haue commonly in their dwellings some one of them for the maintenance of life; it growes in the fields, and hath great and large leaves, at the end whereof is a strong and sharpe point, which serues to fasten little pins, or to sew as a needle: and they draw out of this leafe as it were a kinde of thred which they vie. They cut the body which is bigge, when it is tender, wherein is a great hollownesse, by which the substance mounts from the roote, and is a liquor which they

drinke like water, being sweete and fresh. This liquor being foddren, turnes like Wine, which growes to Vinegar, suffering it to foure, and boiling it more, it becomes as honie, and boiling it halfe, it serues as liqore: which is healthfull enough, and of good use; in my iudgement, it is better then the liqore of Raisins. Thus do they boile this liqore, and vie it in some fashion they draw daily fiew pots of this liqore. There are also of these trees in *Peru*, but they are not so profitable as in new *Spaine*. The wood of this tree is hollow and soft, and serues to keepe fire, like to the match of a harquebuzze, and preserues it long. I haue seene the *Indians* vie it to that end.

The *Tumali* is another famous tree in new *Spaine*: if wee may call a tree a heape of leaues gathered together one vpon another, it is the strangest fashioned tree of all other: for first they growes one leafe out of the ground, then another vpon it, and so one vpon one, till it cometh to his perfection; but as the leaues grow vp, and on the sides, those vnderneath doe become great, and loose in a manner the forme of leaues, making a boldy and branchy, which is thicke, prickling, and deformed, so as in some places they doe call it *T. billy*. There are *Thistles* or white *Tumalis*, the which doe carrie no fruit, or else it is very prickling without any profit. There are like-wise planted *Tumalis* which yelde fruite much esteemed amongst the *Indians*, the which they call *Tumal*, and they are much greater then *Plombes*, and long. They open the shell which is fat, and within it is meate and small graine, like to those of *Beggs*, which is very sweete; they haue a good taste, especially the white, which haue a pleasing smell, but the red are not vually so good. There is another sort of *Tumalis*, which they esteeme much more, although it yeldes no fruit, yet it beares another commoditie and profit, which is of the graine, for that certaine small worms breede in the leaues of this tree, when it is well husbanded, and are thereunto fastned, couered with a certaine small fine web, which both compass them in dauntily; and this is that *Indians Cocobillo*, so famous, and wherewith they die in graine. They let it drie, and being dried, carrie it into *Spaine*, which is a great and rich marchandise. The robe of this *Cocobillo* or graine is worth many ducats. In the flecte, the yeare 1587, they did bring fiew hundred fix hundred flecte (seuen arrobes, which amounted to two hundred fourescore three thousand fien hundred and fiftie peeces, and commonly there comes euery yeare as great a wealeh.

This *Tumali* growes in temperate grounds inclining to cold. In *Peru* there growes none to this day, I haue seene some *Planes* in *Spaine*, but they deserve not estimation. I will speake more of this likewise of the *Asi*, although it comes not from a tree, but from an herbe, for that it serueth for the dying of cloth, and is a marchandise which agrees with the graine; it groweth in great abundance in new *Spaine*, from whence there came in the flecte I mentioned 5263 arrobes, or thereabouts, which amounted to so many peeces. *Costen* likewise growes vpon small shrubs, and great trees like to little apples, which doe open and yelde forth this weebe, which being gathered, they spinne to make stufes: and the yeare that I spake of, there came 64000. arrobes.

These *Planes* we haue spoken of, are the most profitable of the *Indies*, and the most necessary for the life of man: yet there are many other that are good to eat, among the which the *Amamoy* are esteemed, being in fashion like to great *Peaches*, and bigger; they haue one or two stones what fower, and haue the rinde hard. They make confitures of the meate of this fruit, which is like to Marmelade. The vie of this fruite is reasonable good, but the confitures they make thereof, are better. They grow in lands. I haue not seene any in *Peru*. It is a great tree, well fashioned, and a reasonable faire leafe. The *Guanyano* be other trees which commonly

Of Magney Tree
see Cocobillo
And, and
see Chap. 2.

Manifold commodities
of the
Magney.

Tumal tree.

I thinke here
meaneth And
Indico, of
which see
Lib. 1. in
Fishes
Istres.

Of Mamoy,
Guaymala, and
Palm. Chap. 2.

carries an ill taste, full of sower kernels, and are like to little Apples. Is a tree little esteemed vpon the firme Land and as the Islands, for they say it smells like to the *Tamarisks*. The taste and sauer of this fruit is very grosse, and the substance vnholefome. In Saint *Domingo* and other Islands, there are whole Mountains full of these *Guayanas*, and they say, there was no such kindes of trees before the *Spaniards* came there, but that they brought them they know not from whence. This tree hath multiplied infinitely, for that there is no Beast that will eat the kernels or the graine, so as being thus scattered on the earth being hot and moist, it multiplies in this sort. In *Pera*, the *Guayana* differs from others, for that the fruit is not red, but white, neither hath any ill smell, but is of a very good taste; and of what sort of *Guayana* is fouer: it is, the fruit is as good as the best of *Spain*, especially of those which they call *Guayana de Mado*, and of other little white *Guayanas*. It is a fruit reasonably holefome, and agrees with the stomach, being of a strong digestion, and cold. The *Palma* commonly are bore and delicate. The *Palma* is a great tree, and carries a large leaf, which hath a fruit like to great Peares: within it hath a great stone, and all the rest is soft meate, so as when they are full ripe, they are as it were Butter, and have a delicate taste. This fruit is most viual in *Mexico*, having a thinnish skinne, which may be pulled like an Apple: they hold it for a very holefome meate, and as I have said, it declines a little from hence. These *Mamoyes*, *Guayanas*, and *Palmas*, be the *Indians* Peaches, Apples, and Peares; and yet would I rather chioice them of *Europe*.

Ecopates.

The Marmal is that which they call *Capotes*, or *Chiccapotes*, which have a sweete taste, and neere vnto the colour of Marmalade. Some *Crolos* (for so they called the *Spaniards*) come at the *Indies*; say that this fruit passeth all the fruites of *Spain* in excellence: yet an I lack of the opinion. Those *Chiccapotes* or *Capotes*, wherein there is little difference, grow in the hottest parts of new *Spain*, neither haue knowledge of any such fruit in the firme Land of *Pera*. As for the *Blackmango*, it is that *Amma* or *Guanamano*, which grows in the firme Land, which is fashioned like vnto a Pear, a little sharpe and opened, within it is white, tender and soft like Butter, sweete and of a pleasing taste: It is no white meate, though they call it *Blackmango*.

Of many forts of fruit trees of the use, Almonds of the Andes, and Almonds of the Chiccapotes, the use is such.

There are some grosse fruites, as those which they call *Lacunas* (of which fruit they speake in a Prologue, that it is a counterfeite pear). The *Guanas*, *Pacays*, *Habas*, and the Nuts which they call *Imprimel*: which fruites come many, to be the same kinde of Nuts we haue in *Spain*. I do not thinke it good to passe a vnder silence the *Cocos* or *Indian Palmes*, by reason of a verte notable propertie it hath. I call them *Palmes*, not properly, or that it beares Dates; but that they are trees like to other Palmes. They are high and strong, and the higher they grow, the broader they stretch out their branches. These *Cocos* yeeld a fruit which they likewise call *Cocos*, whereof they commonly make vessels for drinke in, and some they say haue a vertue against poison, and to cure the paine in the side. The nutte and meate being dried, is good to eate, and comes neere in taste to greene Chestnuts. When the *Coco* is tender vpon the tree, the substance within it, is as it were Milke, which they drinke for chaineuse, and to refresh them in time of heate. I haue fene of their trees in Saint *Leon de Port Rico*, and other parts of the *Indies*, as they report a wonderful full thing, that every month or Moore, this tree casts forth a new branch of this *Coco*; so as it yeeldes fruit twelve times in the yeare, as it is written in the *Apocalyp*; and in truth this seemes like vnto it; for that all the branches are of different ages, some beginning, others being ripe, and some halfe ripe. These *Cocos* are commonly of the forme and bignesse of a small Melon. There is of another kinde, which they call *Caguellos*, the which is a better fruit, whereof there be some in *Chile*. They are somewhat lesse then Nuts, but more round. There is another kinde of *Coco*, which haue not the kernell so oyle, but within they haue a great number of small fruits like Almonds, like vnto the graine of a Pomgranat.

Almonds.

These Almonds are thuse as bigge as those of *Cassida*, and resemble them in taste, though they be more sharpe, and likewise moist and oyle. It is a good meate, they vie it also in feasting, for lacke of Almonds to make Marchpanes, and such other things. They call them *Almonds of the Andes*, for that these *Cocos* grow abundantly vnder the *Andes* of *Pera*; they are so strong and hard, as to open them, they must beate them with a great stone, when they fall from the tree. If they chance to hit any one on the head, he hath no more need of any Surgeon. It is an incredible thing, that within the hollow of these *Cocos*, which are no bigger than the rest, or little more, there are such a multitude of these Almonds. But as touching Almonds and other fruits, all trees multiplie to the Almonds of *Chiccapotes*, which I cannot otherwise call. It is the most pleasing, delicate and wholesome fruit of all that I haue fene at the *Indies*.

Of many and diuers flowers, and of some trees which yeelde only a flower, as how the Indians doe yielden, &c.

The Indians are great louers of flowers, and in new *Spain* more then in any other part of the world, and therefore they are accustomed to make many kindes of Nosegayes, which there they call *Sacabilis*, with fish prettie varietie and art, as nothing can be more pleasing. They haue a custom amongst them, that the chieftest man offer their *Sacabilis* or nosegayes in honour to Noblemen, and to their guests; and they presented vs with such abundance as wee pised through that Countrey, as wee know not what to doe with them; and at this day they vie

the principall flowers of *Cassida*, to that end, for that they grow better there than here, as *Gilliflowers*, *Roses*, *Iasmine*, *Violets*, *Orange flowers*; and other sorts which they haue transported out of *Spain*. The Rose tree groweth too fast in some places, so as they beare no Roses. It chanced one day that a Rose tree was burned, and the same which sprouted out, presently bare abundance of Roses, and thereby they learned to prune them, and to cut off the superfluous branches, so as at this day they yeelde reasonable store of Roses. But besides these kindes of flowers, which haue beene transported from hence, there are many others, whose names I doe not know, whereof some are red, blew, yellow, violet and white, with a thousand different colours, which the *Indians* did only vie to carry on their heads, as feathers for ornament. True it is that many of these flowers are very pleasing to the sight, having no good sauour; either they are grosse, or else they haue none at all; and yet there be some of an excellent fene. As those which grow vpon a tree termed by them *Plampandis* or *carry flower*, which beares no floure, but only these flowers, which are greater than the Lillie, and are like to little Bels, all white, which haue within them small threads, as wee see in the Lillie: it leaues not all the yeare to beare these flowers, whose smell is wonderfull sweete and agreeable, especially in the coole of the morning. The Viceroy *Don Francisco de Toledo* sent of these trees vnto King *Philip*, as a thing worthy to be planted in royall Gardens. In new *Spain* the *Indians* esteeme much of a flower, which they call *Valdefuhal*, which signifieth flower of the heart, for that it beates the forme of a heart, and is not much lesse. The flower of *Granadilla* is held for an admirable thing; and they say, it hath in it the markes of the Passion, and that therein they note the nails; the pillar, the whips, and crowne of thistles, and the wounds, wherein they are not altogether without reason, and yet to find out and observe these things, it requires some pietie to cause beleefe: but it is very exquisite and faire to the eye, although it haue no smell, &c.

The balme which comes from the West Indies, is not of the same kinde of right Balme which they bring from *Alexandria* or *Cairo*, and in old time was in *India*, which *Indes* (as *Plinius* writeth) did of all the world possesse this greatesse, vntill the Emperour *Augustus* began to see it to come into *Rome* and into *Italie*. At the *Indies* I haue fene the Tree from whence they draw the Balme, which is as big as a Pomgranat tree, and something neere the fashion: and if my memorie faile me not, it hath nothing common with the Vine, although that *Strabo* writeth, that the ancient Balme was of the bignesse of a Pomgranat tree. But in their accidents & operations, their liquors are alike, as likewise they be in their admirable (meles) in the cure and healing of wounds in colour and substance, seeing they report of other Balmes that there is some white, yermillion, Greene and blacke, the which is likewise fene in that of the *Indies*. And as they drew forth the ancient in cutting and making incisions in the burke, to cause the liqueur to distill out, so doe they with that of the *Indies*, although it distills in greater abundance. And as in the ancient there is one kinde which is pure, the which they call *Opobalsamum*, which be the verte target that distill, so as there is another sort which is not so exquisite, the which they call *Xiballamm*. The like is also in the *Indies* Balme: there is one pure that distills from the tree, and others that the *Indians* draw out by straining and boiling the leaues and wood. The Apostolike Sea hath giuen liberte to giue Creame of Balme at the *Indies*, and that they should vie it in Confirmation and other ceremonies which they vie.

Next to Balme, Amber holds the second place: it is another liquor which is likewise sweet and medicinall, but more thicke, and turns into a pale of a hot complexion, and a good perfume. This Amber comes from new *Spain*, which hath that advantage about other Prouinces in Gummies, Liquors, and iunces of Trees, whereby they haue such abundance of matter, for perfume and physick, as the *Arabs*, whereof there comes great store, *Opal* or *Sacchapel*, which is another kinde, *Storax* and *Iuncus*, which haue excellent operations and haue a very good smell fit for fumigations. Likewise the *Tucamahaca* and *Cereana*, which are also very medicinall. They bring likewise from this Prouince oils of *Amyx*, which the Physicians and Painters vie much, the one for plaisters, the other to varnish their pictures. They bring also for the Physicians *Cassia fistula*, the which grows plentifully in Saint *Domingo*. It is a great Tree, which carries the Canes as its fruit. They brought in the fene wherein I came from Saint *Domingo* for the Quintals of *Cassia fistula*. *Salsipareilly* is not lesse knowne, for a thousand remedies wherein it is vied. There came in the same fene best fiftie Quintals from the same Land. There is much of this *Salsipareilly* at *Pera*, and most excellent in the Prouince of *Guayagui*, which is vnder the Line. Many goe to be cured into this Prouince, and it is the opinion of some, that the pure water one which they drinke, giues them health, for that it paceth by rootes as I haue said, from whence it drawes this vertue, so as there needs no great couering or garments to make a man sweat in that Countrey. The wood of *Guayac*, which they call *Lignum sanctum*, or *Indian wood*, groweth abundantly in the same Islands, and is as heauie as Iron, so as it presently sinks in the water: hereof they brought in the same fene three hundred and fiftie Quintals, and they might haue brought if they were vied of this wood, if there were life for it. There came in the same fene, and from the same Land, one hundred and thirtie Quintals of *Brasil* wood, the which is

Of Balme.

Plin. lib. 12. c. 25.

Strab. lib. 16.

Cassia.

Of Amber, and other Oyles, Gummies, and Drugs, which they bring from the Indies.

Cassia fistula.

Salsipareilly.

Lignum vitae.

It was told me, that the engine for Sugar in *Nassau*, was worth yearly about thirty thousand pieces of revenue. That of *Chimay* saying to *Trinidad*, was likewise of great revenue, and those of new *Spain* are of no less; and it is a strange thing to see what store they consume of the *Indies*. They brought from the land of *Saint Domingo*, in the fleet wherein it came, eight hundred ninety eight chests of Sugar, which being (as I did see) shipped at *Port Rico* (every chest in my opinion) weighed eight Arrobes, every Arrobe weighing five and twenty pounds, which are two hundred weight of Sugar) is the chief revenue of these lands, so much are men given to the desire of sweet things. There are likewise Olives and Olive trees at the *Indies*, I say in *Mexico* and in *Pern*, yet hath there not been to this day any Mill for Oil, for that they eat all the Olives, and dress them well: they find the charge is greater to make Oil than the profit, and therefore they carry all the Oil they do spend from *Spain*. And here we will end with plants, and will pass to such beasts as be at the *Indies*.

B. VI.

Of Beasts and Fowles in the Indies.

Of beasts be-
ring well, and
of Kine, Cap. 53.

European
beasts.

Store of sheep.

Store of Kine.

Wilde birds.

Killed only for
the hides.

Almost 10000
hides trans-
ported at
once. How
rich might
the Spaniards
be coming, &c.

Horses.

Finde there are three kinds of beasts at the *Indies*, whereof some have been carried from *Spain*; others are of the same kinde we have in *Europe*, and yet not carried by the *Spaniards*; and others are proper to the *Indies*, whereof there are none in *Spain*. Of the first kinde are Sheep, Kine, Goats, Swine, Horses, Ases, Dogs, Cats, and other such beasts, for there are of all these kinds at the *Indies*. The smaller Cattell have greatly multiplied, and if they could make profit of their wools by sending them into *Europe*, it were one of the greatest riches the *Indians* had, for these the flocks of sheep have great pasture, where as their feeding falls not. In *Pern* there is such store of pastures and feedings, as so man hath any proper to himself, but every man feeds his troups where he pleaseth. For this reason there is commonly great store of flesh, and very good cheape, and all other things that come from sheepe, as Milke, and Cheese. For a time they lost their wools, vntill that some began to husband, and to make cloth and coverings, which hath bene a great helpe for the poorer sort of the Countrey, for that the cloth of *Cashmere* is very deare there. There are many Clothiers in *Pern*, but more in new *Spain*, yet the cloth that comes from *Spain* is farre better, whether the wool be more fine, or the workmen more expert. In former times there were men that did possesse threecore and ten, yea a hundred thousand sheepe, and at this day they have not many less. If this were in *Europe*, it were a very great substance, but in that Countrey it is but a meane wealth. In many parts of the *Indies* and I thinke in the greatest part, small Cattell doe not increase and profit well, by reason that the grass is high, and the soile too vicious, that they cannot feed so well as great Cattell.

And therefore there is an infinite number of Kine, whereof there are two kinds. Some are tame and goe in troups, as in the land of *Chocoma*, and other Provinces of *Pern*, as also in all new *Spain*: from these tame Kine they draw such profit as they doe in *Spain*, that is, the Flesh, Butter, Calves, and Oxen to till the ground. The other kinde is wilde, which live in the Mountains and Forests, and therefore they came them not, neither have they any matter to whom they are proper, both for the roughnesse and thicke-ness of the Forest, as also for the great multitude there is, and be that first kill them is the master, as of any wilde beast. These wilde Kine have I multiplied in *Saint Domingo*, and thereabouts, that they troupe together in the fields and woods by thousands, having no matter to whom they appertaine. They hunt these beasts only for their hides, they goe to the field on horse-backe with their weapons to hough them, counting the Kine; and when they have stricken any and flayed them, they are their owne, they flay them and carry the hides home, leaving the flesh, which carry one neglects for the abundance there is, for so some have testified in this land, that in some places the are hath bene corrupted with the abundance of these stinking carcasses. The hides they bring into *Spain*, is one of the best revenues of the lands, and of new *Spain*. In the fleet the yere 1587, there came from *Saint Domingo* 35444. hides, and from new *Spain* 64350. which they value at 96321. pieces, so as when they discharge one of these fleets, it is admirable to behold the River of *Senile*, and in the Arcevall (where they vialde) so many hides, and so much merchandize. There are also great numbers of Goats, whose chief profit is their tallow, besides their Kid-milke and other commodities, for that both rich and poore vie this tallow for lights. For as it is a great quantitie, so doo they make very good account of it; yea, more then of oile, but all the tallow they vie is onely of the Males. They vie their skins for shoes, yet I hold them not so good, as those which are carried from *Cathile*.

Horses have multiplied there, and are very excellent in many places; yea in many parts there are Races found as good as the best in *Spain*, as well for passing of a Carrier, and for pompe, as also for travell: and therefore they vie Horses most commonly, although there bee no want of

Moyle,

Moyle, whereof there are many, especially where they make their carriages by land. There is no great numbers of Ases, having no great vie for them, neither for travell nor ferule. There are some few Camels; I have bene some in *Pern*, that were brought from the *Caracter*; and have multiplied there a little. In *Saint Domingo*, Dogs have I multiplied in number and bignesse, as at this day it is the courage and affliction of that land: for they eat the Sheepe, and goe in troups through the fields. Such that kill them are rewarded like to them that kill Wolves in *Spain*. At the first there were no Dogs at the *Indies*, but some beasts like unto little Dogs, by the time which the *Indians* call *Alse*, and therefore they call all Dogs that goe from *Spain*, by the time name, by reason of the resemblance that is between them. The *Indians* doe so love these little Dogs, that they will spare their meat to feed them, so as when they travell in the Countrey, they carry them with them upon their shoulders, or in their bosoms, and when they are sick, they keepe them with them, without any vie, but onely for companie.

It is certaine that they have carried from *Spain* all these beasts whereof I have spoken, of which kinder there were some at the *Indies*; when they were first discovered about a hundred yeres since; for besides that it may be well approved by witnesses at this day living, it is also sufficient argument to see that the *Indians* in their tongue, have no proper words to signify these beasts, but they use the same Spanish words, although they be corrupted; for being ignorant of the words, they took the word common to those places from whence they came. I have found this a good rule, to discern what things the *Indians* had before the *Spaniards* came there, and what they had not: for they gave names to those they had and knew before, and have given new names to these that are newly come vnto them, which commonly are the same Spanish names, although they pronounce them after their manner, as for a Horse, Wine, and Wheat. They found of some sorts of beasts that are in *Europe*, and were not carried thither by the *Spaniards*. These are Lions, Tigers, Beares, Boares, Foxes, and other fierce and wilde beasts, whereof we have treated in the first Booke, so as it was not likely they should passe to the *Indies* by Sea, being impossible to swim the Ocean: and it was a folly to imagine that men had imbarked them with them. It follows therefore that this world ought with the new in some part by which these beasts might passe, and so by little and little multiplied this world. The Lions which I have seene, are norred, neither have they such haire as they vntill paint them with. They are grey, and not so furious as they seeme in pictures. The *Indians* assemble in troups to hunt the Lions; and make it as it were a circle, which they doe call *Chaco*, wherewith they intreat them, and after they kill them with stones, staves, and other weapons. These Lions vie to climb trees, where being mounted, the *Indians* kill them with Lances and Cross-bowes, but more easily with *Harquebuzes*. The Tigers are more fierce and cruel; and are more dangerous to meet, because they break forth and affile men in treason: They are spotted, as the Historiographers describe them. I have heard some report that these Tigers were very fierce against the *Indians*, yet would they not adventure as all upon the *Spaniards*, or very little; and that they would choise an *Indian* in the middle of many *Spaniards*, and carry him away.

The Beares which in *Cusco* they call *Osinimo*, be of the same kinde that ours are, and keepe Beares in the ground. There are few (warms of Bees, for that their hony-combs are found in Trees, or Bene vnder the ground, and not in Klins as in *Cathile*). The hony-combs which I have seene in the Province of *Chocoma*, which they call *Chigumani*, are of a grey colour, having little joyce, and are more like unto sweet straw, then to hony-combs. They lay the Bees are little, like unto Flies; and that they forsake vnder the earth. The hony is thicke and blacke, yet in some places there is better, and the combs better; as in the Province of *Tacuman* in *Chile*, and in *Carabona*. I have not seene nor heard speake of wilde Boares, but of Foxes and other wilde beasts that eat their Cattell and Fowle, there are more then their Shepherds would willingly have. Besides these beasts that are furious and hurtfull, there are others that are profitable, and have not bene transported by the *Spaniards*, as Stags and Deere, whereof there is great abundance in all the Forests. But the greatest part is a kinde of Deere without homes, at the least, I have not seene nor heard speake of other, and all are without homes like unto *Cervus*. It seemes not to beleeue, but is almost certaine, that all these beasts for their lightnesse, and being naturally wilde, have passed from one World to another, by some parts where they loyne, (seemg that in the great lands farre from the mayne land I have not heard that there are any, though I have made diligent inquirie).

We may more easily beleene the same of birds, and that there are of the same kinds that wee have, as Partis, geese, Turtles, Pidgeons, Stock-doves, Quales, and many sorts of Falcons, which we have seen from new *Spain* and *Pern*, to the Noble-men of *Spain*, for they make great account of them. There are also *Herons* and *Eagles* of diuers kinds; and there is no doubt but these birds, and such like, have sooner passed thither then Lions, Tigers, and Stags. There are likewise at the *Indies* great numbers of Parrots, especially upon the *Andes* of *Pern*, and in the lands of *Pern*, *Rioja*, and *Saint Domingo*, where they flye by flocks, as Pidgeons doe here. To conclude, birds with their wings may goe where they will; and truly, many kinds might well passe the Gulfe, seeing it is certaine, as *Plinie* affirmeth, that there are many that passe the Sea, and goe into *Arabia*, &c.

It range

Alces.
Camels.
Dogs multi-
plied to my-
lonnesse.

Indies Dogs.

Of some beasts
of *Europe*,
which the
Spaniards
founde the
Indies, and
how they
should passe
thither. Cap. 54.
Note.

But where?
our *Naviga-
tors* on beyond
So, have these
of open and
wide Seas be-
lieved.
Lions.
Circles are v-
sed in hunting
by *Perisus*,
Tigers, &c.

Beares and
beasts of
spoule.

Deere without
hony-combs.

Of Fowles
which are
here and
at the *Indies*,
and how they
could passe
thither. Cap. 55.

strange Regions, although I have not read that any Fowle hath passed by flight to growe a Gulfe, as is the *Indian Ocean*, yet hold I it not altogether impossible, seeing the common opinion of Mariners, that you shall finde them two hundred leagues and more from the Land. And as *Aesop* doth teach, that birds endure the water easily, having little respiration, as wee see in *Sea fowle*, which doe remayne long vnder the water. Euen so wee may say, that the Fowle which be at this present vpon the mayne land, and in the lands at the *Indies*, might passe the Sea, resting themselves in some small Islands, or vpon some land which they discovered by a natural instinct (as *Plinius* reporteth of some) or peradventure falling into the water, when they were weary of flying, and after began their flight again when they had a little rest. As for the Fowles which were in the lands, where there are no beasts, I beleue certainly that they passed by one of the fore said meanes. But for other birds which we finde vpon the mayne land, especially those whose flight is short, it is more credible that they came thither as the beasts did, which are of the same kindes that we haue in *Europe*. For at the *Indies* there are great birds, very heauie, as *Asfridges*, whereof there are many in *Pera*: which doe vie sometimes to terrifie the *Indian* sheepe as they doe goe with their burthen.

But leaving these birds that gouerne themselves without the care of man, but onely for hauing, let vs now speake of tame Fowle. I wondered at *Hennes*, seeing there were some at the *Indies* before the *Spaniards* came there, the which is well approved, for they haue a proper name of the Countrey, and they call it *Hen Gualpa*, and the Egge *Peto*, and they vie the first proeuerbe we doe, to call a Coward, a *Hen*. Those that were at the discouerie of the lands of *Salomon*, doe report that they haue seene *Hennes* there like vnto ours: wee may conceiue that the *Hen* being so tame a Fowle, & so profitable, men might carry them with them when they passed from one place to another, as wee see at this day the *Indians* in their trauell carry their *Hen* with them, or chicken vpon the burthen they haue on their shoulders: and likewise they carry them easily in their Cages of reedes or wood. Finally, there be at the *Indies* many kindes of beasts and birds, such as wee haue in *Europe*, as I haue specified, and other sorts which I leaue to others to discouerie of.

It were a matter more difficult, to shew, and proue, what beginning many and fundrie sorts of beasts had, which are found at the *Indies*, of whose kindes we haue none in this Continent. For if the Creator hath made them there, we may not then alledge nor tie to *Noads Ark*, neither was it then necessary to haue all sorts of birds and beasts, if others were to be created anew. Moreover, we could not asseme, that the creation of the World was made and finished in sixe dayes, if there were yet other new kindes to make, and specially perfite beasts, and no lesse excellent then those that are knowne vnto vs: If we say then that all these kindes of Creatures were preferred in the *Arke* by *Noad*, it folloves, that those beasts, of whose kindes we finde none any but at the *Indies*, haue passed thither from this Continent, as we haue said of other beasts that are knowne vnto vs. This supposed, I demand how it is possible that none of their kindes should remayne here? and how they are found there, being as it were Trauellers and Strangers? Truly it is a question that hath long held me in suspense. I say for example, if the sheepe of *Pera*, and those which they call *Pacos* and *Guanacas*, are not found in any other Regions of the world,

The first preeminence which brought all beasts and fowles from all their native distressed regions, is that they were all brought to the *Arke* (which no naturall instinct in such antiquitie and age, could doe) and kept them in the *Arke* did also dispose them to their designed ends. For he that held it in readiness with *Antenor* to say, *America* was not discovered with the Flood, and the same scruple might be made for beasts, &c. in other parts; the temper of the *Arke*, or of the place where the *Arke* rested, not agreeing naturally to the Zebra, Elephant, Rhesus, &c. and many other beasts creatures of *Affricke*, or to the other peculiar creatures of many other Regions. In things above nature (as in both the historie and my Reske of the *Arke*) we must be necessarily to a super-naturall cause. For except we would imagine the most part of the Sea to haue bene lands & lands from beyond the cold *Magellan* to the coldest *Purche* far vnto that is from 17. South latitude, to about 81. North latitude, the Sea is known, and voyagers may in this world deliuer which ex-hides all possibility of such passages of beasts, especially such as cannot endure cold, as our *Antenor* imagineth. For men in boats, that might happen accidentally which voluntarily had bene sent by *Ours*, shall be comming home from *Bermuda* to England, that the Dutch open boats from *Nine Zambrato* Norway, further and longer distances then is needfull from land to land for crossing from *Europe* to some parts of *America* than I mention not the *Carthaginians* and *Omnia* voyagers, and other casual respects, &c. in which by fishing, fishermen might line long at Sea with their wives, and be euen a day his better working over-ruling propensity to people this new World, which is liberty as diuers times and by diuers meanes recurred by inhabiting God which made all men of one blood, alotted to all *Adams* founes their portions and the fittest bounds of their habitation, A.B. 17. 20.

other Regions, at the least if they be any where else, they are knowne to be carried from thence. Seeing then these Creatures came out of the *Arke*, as for example, the Elephant which wee finde only in the East *Indies*, and from thence haue bene imported to other Regions, wee may say as much of these Creatures of *Pera*, and of others of the *Indies*, which are not found in any other part of the World.

We may likewise consider well vpon this subiect, whether these beasts differ in kinde, and essentially from all others, or if this difference be accidental, which might grow by diuers accidents, as wee see in the linages of men, some are white, others blacke, some Giants, others Dwarfs: and in Apes, some haue no taile, others haue: and in Sheepe some are bare, others haue fleeces: some great and strong with a long necke, as those of *Pera*: others weak and little, hauing a short necke, as those of *Cassile*. But to speake directly, who so would by this Discourse shewing onely these accidental differences, pretence the propagation of beasts at the *Indies*, and reduce them to those of *Europe*, hee shall undertake charge hee will hardly discharge with his honour. For if wee shall iudge the kindes of beasts by their properties, those of the *Indies* are so diuers, as it is to call an Egge a Chelmut, to seeke to reduce them to the knowne kindes of *Europe*.

Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and *Pension*.

There are many kindes of notable Fowles at the *Indies*, either of the same sort that ouri be, or of different. They bring certaine birds from *China*, that haue no feete, and all their bodies are almost feathers. They fit not vpon the ground, but hang vpon boughs, by strings or feathers which they haue, and so rest themselves like *Elms* or *ayrie* things. In *Pera* there are birds which they call *Tamamors*, so small, that oftentimes I haue doubted seeing them fle, whether they were Bees or Butter-flies; but in truth they are birds. Contrariwise, those which they call *Candores*, be of an exceeding greatnesse, and of such a force, that not onely they will open a sheepe and eate it, but also a whole calfe. Those which they call *Aurora*, and others *Pandoras* (which in my opinion are of the kinde of *Rauens*) are of a strange lightnesse, and haue a very quick flight, being very fit to clefte Cities, for that they leaue no Carion nor dead thing. They pass the night on Trees or vpon Rocks, and in the morning they come to the Cities and Townes, sitting on the tops of the highest buildings, where they attend their prey. Their yong kind white feathers, as they report of *Rauens*, and so change into blacke.

The *Guanacayas* be birds bigger then Parrots, and resemble them something; they are esteemed for the varietie of their feathers, which be very fine and pleasing. In new *Spain* there are abundance of birds with excellent feathers, so as there be not any found in *Europe* that be so neere them, as we may see by the Images of feathers they bring from thence. And which are (with great reason) much valued and esteemed, giuing cause of admiration, that which they properly be the true colours of a Painter, and haue so lively and pleasing a regard, as the Painter cannot exceede it with his pencil and colours. Some *Indians* which are good and expert workmen in this Art, will represent perfectly in feathers, whatsoever they see drawne with the pencil, so as the Painters of *Spain*, haue in this point, no advantage ouer them. *Don Philip* the Prince of *Spain* his Schoole-master, did giue vnto him three figures or portraiture made of feathers, as it were to put in a *Breueria*. His Highnesse did then them to King *Philip* his father, the which his Maiesty beholding artfully, said, that he had neuer seene in so small a worke, a thing of so great excellency and perfection. One day as they presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*, another figure bigger then it, wherein was the figure of Saint *Francis*, and that they had told him it was made of feathers by the *Indians*, he desired to make triall thereof, touching the table with his fingers, to see if it were of feathers; for that it seemed strange, to see them so properly fixed, that the eye could not iudge nor discern whether they were naturall colours of feathers, or artificiall done with the pencil. It is a goodly thing to see the future which a greene, or orange tawny like gold, and other fine colours doe cast, and beholding them another way they seeme dead colours. They make the best and goodliest figures of feathers in the Province of *Atacama*, and in the village of *Puercos*. The manner is with small delicate Pinions they pull the feathers from the dead fowles, and with a fine paste they cunningly ioyne them together. They take the small and delicate feathers of these birds, which in *Pera* they call *Tamamors*, in others like vnto them, which haue the most perfect colours in their feathers. The *Indians* (besides these Images) did vie feathers in many other most excellent works, especially for the ornament of Kings and Noblemen, their Temples and Idols.

There are also other great birds, which haue excellent and fine feathers, whereof they make plumes of landrie colours, especially when they goe to warre, enriching them with gold, and they use very artificially, which was a matter of great price. They haue the same birds fill, but they are not so curious, neither doe they make so many genril deuices as they were wont to. There are other birds at the *Indies*, contrarie to these of so rich feathers, the which (besides that they are

The like is in the East Indies.

Of beasts for the Chafes. Chap. 38.

* These might come from the East parts this by means of those Islands which you see in Solomon voyage.

Dentes.

Armadillo.

Tiguan.

Chinchilla.

Coy.

Vizcach.

Light Dogg.

Of Micos or Indian Monkeys. Chap. 39.

ill-favoured) fur to no other use but for dung, and yet perchance they are of no less profit. I have considered this, wondering at the providence of the Creator, who hath so appointed, that all Creatures should serve Man. In some lands or *Phares*, which are joyning to the coast of *Peru*, we see the tops of the Mountains all white, and to fight, you would take it for Snow, or for some white Land, but they are heapes of dung of Sea fowle which goe continually thither; and there is so great abundance, as it riseth many Elles, yea, many Lances in height, which fowles but a fable. They goe with boates to these Islands, only for the dung, for there is no other profit in them. And this dung is so commodious and profitable, as it makes the earth yield great abundance of Fruit. They call this dung *Guano*, whereof the Valley hath taken the name, which they call *Limagana*, in the valleys of *Peru*, where they use this dung, and it is the most fertile of all that Country. The Quince, Pomegranates, and other fruits there, exceed all other in bountie and greatness; and they say, the reason is, for that the water wherewith they water it, is pulsed by a Land compassed with this dung.

Besides the Beasts of Chafe, whereof we have spoken, There are beasts called *Sauins*, made like small Hogs, which have this singular to themselves, to have their Naill upon the ridge of their backs: these goe by troups through the Woods, they are cruel and nothing fearful, but contrariwise they asile, and have their tallents sharpe as Razors, wherewith they make dangerous wounds and incisions, if such as hunt them put not themselves in safeties. Such as hunt them (for the more faster killing of them) climb up into Trees, whether the *Sauins* or Hogs come presently in troups, biting the Tree when they cannot hurt the man, and then with their Lances they kill what they will. They are very good to eat, but they must of necessity cut off the round piece where the Naill grows upon the back; for otherwise, within a day they corrupt. There are another kinde of little beast like to sucking Pigges, and they call them *Guadainas*. I am in doubt whether there were any Swine at the *Indies*, before the *Spaniards* came thither, like to these in *Spain*, for that in the discouerie of the Islands of *Solomon*, it is said, they found *Hennes* and Swine of *Spain*. But howsoever it be, it is most certaine, that this Cattell hath greatly multiplied at the *Indies*. They eat the flesh fresh, and hold it to be as wholesome and as good, as if it were of Mutton; as in *Caribague* in some parts, they are become wilde and cruel, the which they hunt like wilde Boats, as we see in Saint *Domingo*, and other lands where the beasts live in the Forests. In some places they feede them with the graine of Maize, and they grow wonderfully fat, to have the grease, which they use for want of Oile; in some places they make Gamons, as in *Tulima* of new *Spain*, and in *Paria* at *Peru*. Returning then to such beasts as are peculiar there, even as the *Sauins* are like unto Swine, though somewhat lesse; even so the *Dentes* resemble small Kine, but more unto Mules, having no horns. The Hides of these beasts are much esteemed for jerkins and other coverings, they are so hard as they resist any blow whatsoever. And as the *Dentes* are defended by the hardness of their Hides, so those which they call *Armadillos* are by the multitude of their scales, which open and shut as they please like to a Card. These bee little beasts which goe through the Woods, called *Armadillos*, by reason of the defence they have hiding themselves within their scales, and opening when they list: I have eaten of them, and doe not hold it for a meate of any great worth; but the flesh of the *Tiguan* is a better meate, but more horrible to the eye: for they are like to the very *Licardes* of *Spain*, although they bee of a doubtful kinde, for that they goe to the Water, and coming to Land they climb the Trees upon the banks; and as they cast themselves from the Trees into the water, the Boates watch underneath to receive them. The *Chinchillas* is an other kinde of small beasts, like Squirrels, they have a wonderful smooth and soft skin, which they wear as a healthfull thing to comfort the stomacke, and those parts that have neede of a moderate heat; they make Coverings and Rugs of the haire of these *Chinchillas*, which are found on the *Sierre* of *Peru*, where there is likewise a small beast very common, which they call *Coy*, and which the *Indians* hold for a very good meate, and they are accustomed often to feede these *Coyes* in their factories. They are like small Conies, and have their borrowes in the ground, and in some places they have undermined all the Land: some are grey, some white, and some speckled. There are other small Animals which they call *Vizcachas*, and are like to Hares, although they bee bigger, they hunt them and eat the flesh. Of common Hares there are great store in some parts. There are also Conies in the Realme of *Quito*, but the good are come from *Spain*. There is another strange beast, which for his great heaviness, and slownesse in moving, they call *Peru-ligers*, or the little light Dogg, hee hath three nailes to every hand, and mooves both hand and feet, as it were by compasse, and very heavily: it is in face like to a Monkey, and hath a small crine in clime: there, and eats Ants.

Throughout all the Mountaines, either of these Islands of the firme Land, or of the *Andes*, there are infinite numbers of *Micos* or Monkeys, which are a kinde of Apes, yet very different, in that they have a tale, yea a very long one. And amongst them there are some kinds which are chace, yea four times bigger than the ordinarie; some are all blacke, some bay, some grey, and some spotted. Their agilitie and manner of doing is admirable, for that they seeme

seeme to have reason and discourse to goe upon Trees, wherein they seeme to imitate Birds. Going from *Nombres de Dios* to *Panama*, I did see in *Cayana*, one of these Monkeys leape from one Tree to another, which was on the side of a River, making me much to wonder. Little heape. The leape where they list, winding their tales about a branch to shake it: and when they see things will leape further then they can at once, they use a pretie device, tying themselves by the tails one of another, and by this means make it as were a chaine of many: then doe they lanch themselves forth, and the first holpen by the force of the rest, takes hold where he list, and so hangs to a bough, and helps all the rest, till they be gotten up. If were long to report the fooleries, tricks, traufferies, and pleasant sports they make when they are taught, which seeme not to come from brute beasts, but from a manlike understanding. I saw one in *Caribague* in Monkey house the Gouvernours house, so taught, as the things he did seemed incredible: they first take to the rest. Taume for wine, putting the pot in one hand, and the money in the other; and they could not possibly get the money out of his hand, before he had his pot full of wine. If any childen met him in the street, and threw any stones at him, hee would set his pot downe on the one side, and cast stones against the children till hee had assured his way, then would hee returne to carry home his pot. And which is more, although he were a good Bibber of wine (as I have oftentimes seene him drinke, when his Master hath given it him) yet would hee neuer touch it vntill leane was given him. They told me moreover, that if he saw any women painted, hee Zealous would fall upon them, pull off their attire, and would seek to bite them.

Amongst the most rare beasts of these parts, be the *Vicuñas*, and *Taraguas* of *O'Vizcago*, the *Conuince*, as they call them, which are tractable beasts and of great profit; the *Vicuñas* are wilde, and the *Sheepes* are tame. Some thinke that the *Vicuñas* are those which *Argyle*, *Florie*, and other Authors call *Copras*, which are wilde Goats, and in truth they have some resemblance, for the lightnesse they have in the Woods and Mountaines, but yet they are no Goates, for the *Vicuñas* have no horns, as those have; whereof *Argyle* makes mention; neither are they the Goates of the East *Indies*, from whom they draw the *Beaver* floss; for if they be of that kinde, it were a double one, as in the race of Dogs, the Mastiff is double from the Grey-hound. The *Vicuñas* of *Peru* are not those beasts which carry the *Beaver* floss, in the Province of new *Spain*, which there they call *Reinards*; for that they are a kinde of Staggs and Vansons; yet doe I not know in any part of the World there live any of these beasts, but in *Peru*, and in *Chile*, which are Countries joyning one to another. These *Vicuñas* are greater then Goates, and lesse than Calves. Their haire is of the colour of dried Ruffs, somewhat cleerer; they have no horns like Stags and Goates. They feede upon the highest tops of the Mountaines, which they call *Paguan*. The Snow nor Frost doe not offend them, but contrariwise they seeme to delight in it. They goe in troups; and runne most lightly; when they meete with any Travellers or Beasts, they fly away; seeming very fearful, and in flying they drive their yong ones before them. They doe not finde that they multiply much; and therefore the Kings *Incas* did defend the hunting of *Vicuñas*; if it were not for their furs, or by their commandment. Some complaine, that since the *Spaniards* entered there, they have given too much libertie to hunt the *Vicuñas*, and by this means they are much diminished.

The manner the *Indians* use in their hunting, they assemble many men together, to the number of a thousand or two thousand, yea more, and unioining a great circuit of wood, they hunt their game vntill they have compassed it in on all parts, and by this means they commonly take three or foure hundred, and so choosing what they list, they let goe the rest, especially the Females for breede. They are accustomed to these chace beasts, and of their fesse to make Coverings and Rugs of great value, for that this wooll is like to white felle, which lasts long; and as the colour is natural and not dyed, so it is perpetuall. The fesses that are made of this wooll, are very fresh and good in Summer, and they hold them profitable for the inflammation of the reimes, and other parts, tempering the excessive heat. This wooll hath the like vertue when it is made in Quills, and therefore some use it to that end, for the trial they have made thereof. They say moreover, that this wooll or coverings made thereof, is physical for other indispotions, as for the gowt: yet doe I not know that they have made any certaine trial thereof. The flesh of these *Vicuñas* is not good, although the *Indians* eat it; and doe it. For the effects of physick, I will say what I have seene upon the *Sierre* of *Peru*, coming one night into a *Tumbe* or lane, being much afflicted with paine in mine eyes, thinking they would fall out (the which doth commonly happen in those parts) for that they passed through places covered with snow, which is the cause of this accident. Being troubled with this paine, and out of patience, there came an *Indian* woman which said to me, *Father, lay thy so thin eyes, and thou shalt be cured*. It was a piece of the flesh of *Vicuñas* newly killed and all

blowd. I used this medicine, and presently the paine ceased, and I soonere went quite away. Besides these *Vicuñas* which is the most common manner of hunting at the *Indies*, they have used another more curious to take them, which is, that committing netts to the wind, they doe cast certaine lines with plumets of lead, which intangle their legges, so as they cannot runne, and by this means they take the *Vicuñas*. The chiefe reason why this beast is esteemed, is, by reason of

writ his General Historie, enlarging what he had written before this Summarie; and in the ending in three Parts: the first of which containing principally the Spanish ails and a true observation in the Islands, in twelve Books, was borne in Ramonius third Tome of Voyages: the second (in which he writ of the Continent of New Spain, and the third of Peru and the Southern America, with above four hundred pictures of the Plants, Beasts, and other Creatures of these parts, were never published to the great life of natural knowledge of these parts. As for the Spanish ails we have them sufficient, by written by others. But Acosta and Oviedo have best deferred of the Indians of Nature, thus is, of the knowledge of Gold in his works. In which respect I have added many things omitted by Master Eden, and Master Willes in the former publication, both examining this, and translating the rest from Ramonius Indian edition.

CHAP. III.

Extracts of GONZALO FERDINANDO DE OVIEDO his Summarie and General Historie of the Indies.

Of the mynes of gold, and the manner of working in them.

In particular of the mynes of Gold, is a thing greatly to be noted, and I may much better speake hereof then any other man, forasmuch as there are now twelveten years past since I served in the place of the Surveyor of the melting shop, pertaining to the gold mynes of the firme Land, and was the Governor of the mynes of the Catholike King Don Ferdinand, after whole departure from this life, I followed long in the same roome in the Name of your Maiestie. The myne or veine which ought to be followed, ought to be in a place which may stand to faue much of the charges of the Labourers, and for the administration of other necessarie things, that the charges may be recompensed with gwynes. The greatest part of the wrought gold which the Indians haue, is bafe, and holdeth some what of Copper: of this they make Bracelets and Chaines, and in the fame they close their Jewels which their Women are accustomed to wear, and esteemed more then all the riches of the World. The manner how gold is gathered, is this, either of such as is found in *Zanama*, that is to say, in the Playnes and Riuer of the Champanie country being without Trees, whether the Earth be with grasse or without, or of such as is sometimes found on the Land without the Riuer in places where Trees grow, so that to come by the same, it shall be requisite to cut downe many and great Trees. But after which fouer of these two manners it is found, either in the Riuer or Breaches of waters, or else in the earth, I will shew how it is found in both these places, and how it is separate and purged. Therefore when the myne or veine is discovered, this chaunceth by searching and prouing in such places as by certaine signes and tokens doe appeare to shew all men up for the generation of gold, and to hold gold: and when they haue found it, they follow the myne, and labour in it, whether it be in the Riuer, or in the Playne, as I haue said. And if it be found on the Playne, first they make the place very cleare where they intend to digge, then they digge eight or ten foot in length, and as much in breadth: but they goe no deeper then a span or two, or more, as shall seeme best to the Master of the mine, digging equally, then they wall all the earth which they have taken out of the said space, and if therein they finde any gold they follow it, and if not, they digge a span deeper, and wash the earth as they did before: and if then also they finde nothing, they continue in digging and washing the earth as before, untill they come to the hard rocke or stone: and if in hie they finde no gold there, they follow no further to seeke gold in that place, but goe to another part. And it is to be vnderstood, that when they haue found the myne, they follow it in digging, in the fame measure in leuell and depth, untill they haue made an end of all the myne which that place containeth, if it appeare to be rich. This myne ought to consist of certaine feet or paces in length or breadth, according to certaine orders determined, and within that compass of earth, it is not lawfull for any other to digge for gold: And where as endeth the myne of him that first found the gold, immediately it is lawfull for any other man that will, with a staffe to assigne himselfe a place by the side of the same, inclosing it with stakes or pales as his owne. These mynes of *Zanama* (that is, such as are found in the Playnes) ought euer to be sought neere to some Riuer or brooke, or Spring of water, or Dike, or standing Pools, to the end that the gold may be washed, for the which purpose they vte the labour of certaine Indians, as they doe other in digging of the myne. And when they haue digged out the myne, they fill certaine Trayses with that earth, which other Indians haue the charge immediately to recenne at their hands, and to carry those Trayses of earth to the water, where it may be washed: Yet doe not they that bring it wash it, but deliuer it to other, putting it out of their owne Trayses into theirs, which they haue ready in their hands to receive it. These Washers for the most part are the Indian women, because this worke is of lesse paine and trauell then any other. These women when they wash, are accustomed to sit by the water side, with their legges in the water euen vp to the knees, or else, as the

place serueth their purpose: and thus holding the Trayses with earth in their hands by the handles thereof, and putting the same into the water, they moue them round about, after the manner of sifting, with a certaine appelle, in such sort that there extreth no more water into the Trayses then serueth their turne, and with the selfe same apt mouing of their Trayses in the water, they euer avoid the foule water with the earth out of the one side of the Vellil, and receive in cleane water on the other side thereof, so that by this meane it little and little, the water without the earth as the lighter substance of the Trayses, and the Gold as the heavier matter resteth in the bottome of the same, being round and hollow in the midst like unto a Barben Basen. And when all the earth is auoided, and the Gold gathered together in the bottome of the

Tray, they put it a part, and returne to take more earth, which they wash continually as before. Furthermore it is to be noted, that for euer two Indians that wash, it is requisite that two other men come to bring earth from the Mine, and other two to breake the same small, and fill fill their Trayses therewith. Also beside these Labourers, it is necessarie that there be other people in the place where they worke and rest in the night: there are such as make their bread, and provide for victuals, and other necessaries. So that to conclude, there are in all, six persons ordinarily assigned to euer Tray of washers.

There is another manner of working the Mines, in Riuer or Brookes of running waters: and this is, that in auoiding the water of his course, after that the beds of the Riuer are dry and venterly emptied, they find Gold among the breches, chifts, and rifts of stones, and among all that is in the bottome of the Channell; and where naturally the Riuer runneth of greatest force, so that it chaunceth sometimes, that when the bed of the Riuer is gold and rich, they find in it great quantitie of Gold. And therefore your Maiestie ought to vnderstand for a general rule, as it appeareth in fact, that all Gold is ingendered in the tops and high places of the Mountaines, and incontinence of time why little and little brought downe to the Vales and Playnes by howers of raine, and the fall of Spring, Riuer, and Brookes, hauing their original in the Mountaines, and descending from the same, notwithstanding it is oftentimes found in the Playnes farre from the Mountaines. But when it chaunceth to be found in great quantity, it is for the most part among the Mountaines, and in the Riuer, or their branches, more then in any other part of the Playne: and in these two manners it is commonly found most abundantly. And for the better proofe

that Gold is ingendered on high, and is brought downe into the low places, I haue one great token thereof, which causeth me to beleue it for certaine: and this is, to consider that coles neuer putrifie nor corrupt vnder the ground, if they be made of strong wood. Whereby it chaunceth, that digging the earth by the foules or indented places of the Mountaines, or in the sides, and breaking a Mine in the earth, where it had been broken before, and hauing now digged one or two or three Poles in measure, the Miners found certaine coles of wood vnder the same leuell where they found Gold, and this I say in the earth which was taken for a Virgin, that is to say, such as had not before beene opened for any Mine: the which coles could not naturally be ingendered there, or enter in by any means, but when the superficiall part of the earth was equalled with the leuell where the coles were found, it is like that the coles were left there by some occa-

sion of fire, and that they fastned there in time, and that afterward in long continuance of time they were by little and little leuered with the earth, which the often howers of raine washed downe the Mountaines, so that the shroude of yeres the earth ouerwore the coles vnder the said leuell and measure, which had before time beene the superficiall part of the earth, where the coles and Gold were found together: whereby it may appeare that the Gold was no more ingendered there then were the coles, but brought thither from the Mountaines by the falls of waters as we haue said, forasmuch as the Mountaines are the Matrices and bowels of all rich Metals. Further and beside this, I say that in how much more the Gold is gone farre from the natural place of his generation to the place where it is found, it is so much the more purified and fined, and of a better carcase, and the nearer that it is found to his proper Mine or veine where it is ingendered, it is so much the baser, fouler, and more crude, and of a baser clay and carcase, and doth waste so much the more in melting, and remaineth more brittle.

Sometimes there are found graines of Gold of great quantitie, and of great weight about the earth, and sometimes also vnder the earth: And the greatest of all other that was found to this day in the Indies, was that which was lost in the Sea about the Island *Ysola*, which weighed three thousand and two hundred of Castells of Gold, which are in value four thousand and hundred thirtie and eight Ducats of Gold, which weigh one *Arena* and thien pound, or thirtie and two pound, after twelve ounces to the pound, which make threefoore and four Markes of Gold. And I say in the century 15. in the lands of *Atcheli* *Paffimone* Treasurer of *Ysola* *Mar* *Ysola*, two graines, of the which one weighed seven pounds, which are fourteen Markes, and 60 are in value about threefoore and five Ducats of Gold euerly Marke: the other was of ten Markes, which are five pounds of like value, and of very good Gold of two and twentie carcases, and better: There are also found many other great graines, although not equall vnto these in bignesse. And forasmuch as I haue spoken of Gold, I haue thought good to declare somewhat how the Indians can very excellently find such Vellils of Copper and bafe Gold as they make: for they can

Other Labourers.

First to a tray,

Gold in Riuer or powder.

Gold engendered on hill tops.

His reason.

Some may thinke these coles, these other Indians mine, naturally grow there.

Gold in graines. One thousand and two hundred Castells of Gold.

A Marke is a pound of 8 ounces *Span*, 16 pound weight, eight ounces *Span* is 12 ounces *Span* the pound, 12 ounces *Span* is 16 ounces *Span*.

Gold of Indian bafe.

Manner of mynes and searching for gold.

Gold in mynes.

Spanish cu stones for vage of mynes.

Water a good neighbour.

Women gold washers.

place

give them fo faire and flourishing a colour, that all the mafle which they gilt, appeareth as though it were Gold of two and twentie carats, and better. This colour they give with a certaine hearbe, as though it were wrought by the art of any Gold-Smith of *Spaine* or *Indie*, and would of them be esteemed as a thing of great riches and a secret manner of gilding. For the desire that our men have to Gold, they nothing esteeme the Copper, although there might great commodity and profit be had thereby, and also by other Metals, which they nothing regard, excepte Silver, which is found abundantly in that part of the firme Land which is called *New Spaine*.

Of the manner of fifhing for Pearles.

The *Indians* exercise this kind of fifhing for the most part in the Coasts of the North in *Cubagua* and *Cumaná*, and many of them which dwell in the Houses of certaine particular Lords in the Ilands of *San Domingo* and *Santí Iohannis*, resort to the Iland of *Cubagua*, for this purpose. Their outcome is to goe fise, fixe, or seven, or more in one of their Canoes or Barques, early in the morning to some place in the Sea thereabout, where it appeareth unto them that there should be great plenty of those shell fishes (which some call *Muckles*, and some *Oysters*) wherein Pearles are ingendred, and there they plunge themselves under the water, even unto the bottome, fusing one that remaineth in the Canoe or Boat, which hee keepeth still in one place as neere as he can, looking for their returre out of the water: And when one of them hath bene a good while vnder the water, hee riseth vp, and commeth swimming to the Boat, entering into the same, and leaving there all the *Oysters* which he hath taken and brought with him (for in these are the Pearles found) and when he hath there rested himselfe a while, and eaten part of the *Oysters*, hee returneth againe to the water, where hee remaineth as long as hee can endure, and then riseth againe, and swimmeth to the Boat with his prey, where hee refecteth him selfe, and then continueth counte by counte, as doo all the other in like manner, being all most expert Swimsmen and Divers: And when the night draweth nere, they returre to the Iland to their houses, and present all the *Oysters* to the Maister or Steward of the house of the Lord, who hath the charge of the said *Indians*, and when hee hath given them somewhat to eat, hee layeth vp the *Oysters* in fine custodie, untill hee have a great quantitie thereof, then hee cauleth the same Fishermen to open them, and they find in eury of them Pearles, either great or small, two, or three, or foure, and sometimes five or fixe, and many small graines, according to the beralitie of nature. They faue the Pearles both small and great which they have found, and either eat the *Oysters* if they will, or callt them away, having fo great a quantitie thereof, that they in manner abhorre them. Their *Oysters* are of hard bell, and not so pleasant in eating as are some of *Spaine*. This Iland of *Cubagua*, where this manner of fifhing is exercised, is in the North Coast, and is no bigger than the Iland of *Zeland*. Oftentimes the Sea increaseth greatly, and much more then the Fishers for Pearles would, because wherthe place is very deepe, a man cannot naturally rest at the bottome, by reason of the abundance of airie substance which is in him, as I have oftentimes proved. For although he may by violence and force defend to the bottome, yet are his feet lifted vp againe, so that hee can continue no time there: and therefore where the Sea is very deepe, these *Indian Fishers* use to tie two great stones about them with a cord, on each side one, by the weight whereof they defend to the bottome, and remaine there untill them liveth to rise againe, at which time they vnbelt the stones, and rise vp at their pleasure. But this their sportfull and agile in swimming, is not the thing that causeth men most to marvell: But rather to consider many of them can lye in the bottome of the water for the space of one whole houre, and some more or lesse according as one is more or less accustomed to other. An other thing there is which seemeth to me very strange: and this is, that wherthe have oftentimes demanded of some of these Lords of the *Indians*, if the place wher they are accustomed to fish for Pearles, being but little and narrow, will not in short time be utterly wasted: our *Oysters*, if they consume them so fast: They all answered mee, that although they be consumed in one part, yet if they goe a fifhing in an other part, or an other Coast of the Iland, or at some other contrary wind, and continue fifhing there also untill the *Oysters* be likewise consumed; and then returre againe to the first place, or any other place where they fished before, and emptied the same in like manner, they find them againe as full of *Oysters* as though they had never bene fished. Wherby we may iudge, that these *Oysters* either remove from one place to another, as doe other fishes, or else that they are ingendred and increafe in certaine ordinarie places. This Iland of *Cumaná* and *Cubagua*, where they fish for these Pearles, is in the twelfth degree of the part of the said Coast which inclineth toward the North. Likewise Pearles are found and gathered in the South Sea, called *Mara del Sur*, and the Pearles of this Sea are very bigge, yet not so bigge as they of the Iland of Pearles, called *delas Perlas*, or *Margarita*, which the *Indians* call *Torarequi*, lying in the Gulfe of Saint *Michael*, where greater Pearles are found, and of greater price, then in any other Coast of the North Sea, in *Cumaná*, or any other part. I speake this as a true testimony of fight, having bene long in that South Sea, and making curious inquisition to be certainly informed of all that pertayned to the fifhing of Pearles. From this Iland of *Torarequi*, there was brought a Pearle of the fashion of a Pearle, weighing thirte and one Carats,

Men continue
an houre vnder
water.

Naturall succedion.

Of this read
more largely
in the Decade.

These Pearles

Carats, which *Petrus Arias* had among a thousand and so many pounds weight of other Pearles, which he had when Captaine *Galper Morales* (before *Petrus Arias*) piloted to the said Iland in the year 1515, which Pearle was of great price. From the said Iland also, came a great and very round Pearle, which I brought out of the Sea, this was as bigge as a small peller of a Stone-lew, and of the weight of twentie and fixe Carats: I bought it in the Citie of *Panama*, in the Isea of *Sur*, and paid for it fixe hundred and fixe times the weight thereof of good Gold, and ad it three yeeres in my custodie, and after my returre into *Spaine*, sold it to the Earle of *Vincennes*, the Ladie *Mencia de Mendoza*. I thinke verily that this Pearle was the greatest, fairest, and roundest that hath bene seene in those parts. For your Maistie ought to vnderstand, that in the Coast of the Sea of *Sur*, there are found a hundred great Pearles round after the fashion of a Pearle, to one that is perfectly round and great.

Of the familiaritie which certayne of the Indians haue with the Deuill, and how they receive answer of him of things to come, and other Superstitions.

When the *Indians* beginne their batraille, or goe to any combate, or attempt any other great matter, they haue certaine eldest men whom they reuerently esteeme, and call them *Tecunas*, which in their tongue is as much to say as Masters: notwithstanding that they call every man, that is cunning in any Science, by the same name, as Fishers, Fowlers, Hunters, or makers of Nets. These *Tecunas* therefore, they call the Masters of their answers, because they speake with *Teyra*, that is, the *Deuill*, and bring them answere what hee faith, either as touching such things as they haue to doe, or shall chaunce to them the day following, or many dayes to come. For the *Deuill*, being fo ancient an Astronomer, knoweth the times of things, and seeth how they are naturally directed and inclined, and maketh them beleue that they come fo to passe by his ordinance, as though he were the Lord and mouer of all that is and shall be: and that hee giueth the day light, and rain, causeth tenpest, and ruleth the fluxions of times, giuing life, or taking away life, at his pleasure: By reason whereof, the *Indians* being deceived of him, and seeing also such effects to come certainly to passe as hee hath told them before, beleue him in all other things, and honour him in many places with Sacrifices of the blood and lyes of men, and odorous Spices: And when God disposeth the contrary, so that the *Deuill* hath spoken in Oracle, wherby he is proued a Lye, hee causeth the *Tecunas* to perswade the people that hee hath changed his mind and sentence for some of their fins, or causeth some such lye as liketh him best, being a skilfull Maister in such subtil and craftie deuices, to deceive the simple and ignorant people, which hath small defence against fo mightie, and craftie an Adversarie. And as they call the *Deuill* *Teyra*, so doe they in many places call the Christians by the same name, thinking that they greatly honour them thereby, as indeed it is a name very fit and agreeable to many of them, having laid apart all honestie and vertue, liuing more like Dragons then men, among their simple people.

Before the Inhabitantes of the Iland of *Hispantola* had receiued the Christian Faith, there was among them a Sect of men, which liued solitarily in the Deserts and Woods, and led their life in Silence and Abstinence: more strictly then euer did the Philosophers of *Pythagoras* or *S. Ch. Pythagoras* obtaining in like manner the eating of all things that lye by blood, contented only with such Fruits, Herbes, and Bees, as the Deserts and Woods minished vnto them to eat: The Professors of this Sect were called *Piaces*. They gaue them felles to the knowledge of newall things, and vied certayne secret and small Operations and Superstitions, wherby they had familiaritie with Spirits, which they shewed vnto their owne bodies, as such times as they would take vpon them to tell of things to come, which they did in manner as followeth. When any of the Kings had occasion to call any of these men of the Deserts for this purpose, their custome was to send them a portion of their fine Bread of *Casabi* or *Mais*, and with humble request and suite to desire them to tell them of such things as they would demand. After the request granted, and the place as they appointed, the *Piaces* commeth with two of his Disciples wayting on him, where the one bringeth with him a Vessel of a secret Water, and the other a little Silver Bell. When hee commeth to the place, hee stretcheth vpon a round stone made for him of purpose: where his Disciples also one standing on the one hand, and the other on the other, euen the presence of the King and certayne of his Nobles (for the common people are not admitted to these Mysteries) and turning his face toward the Desert, he becometh his Inchantment, and calleth the Spirit with loud voyce by certaine names, which no man vnderstandeth but hee and his Disciples. After hee hath done thus a while, if the Spirit yet dete his coming, hee drinketh of the said Water, and therewith wazeth hot and furred, and inwardly and turneth his Inchantment, and letteth himselfe bound with a thorne, naturally tormoluing himselfe, as we read of the furious Sybils, not ceasing until

By the computation of
twentie, foure
graines make
a Carat.

Deuill Impos-
ture.

Pythagoras
Fruits.

Indian contin-
ence or con-
sultations.

Good against
the wind and
stone Collick.

Great Trees.

Great Canoa.

A marvellous
Tree.

when the meate of this fruit is taken from the Vessell thereof, the vessell remaineth as faire and neate as though it were polished, and is without of colour inclining toward black, and thinneth or glistereth very faire, and is within of no lesse delicatenesse. Such as haue accustomed to drinke in these Vessels, and haue bene troubled with the Dificale called the fretting of the guts, say that they haue by experience found it a marvellous remedie against that Dificale, and that it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine. This fruit was called *Coca*, for this cause, that when it is taken from the place where it cleaureth fall to the Tree, there are fene two holes, and aboute them two other natural holes, which altogether doe represente the posture and figure of the Cates called *Mammou*, that is, Monkeyes, when they cry, which cry the *Indians* call *Coca*, but in very deed, this Tree is a kind of Date Tree, and hath the same effect to heale fretting of the guts, that *Pinie* describeth all kinde of Date trees to haue. There are furthermore in the firme Land, Trees of such biggnes that I dare not speake thereof, but in place where I haue so many witnesseth which haue seene the same as well as I. I say therefore, that a league from *Dariena* or the Citie of *Santa Maria Antigua*, there passeth a Riuer very large and deepe, which is called *Cusi*, ouer the which the *Indians* laid a great Tree, so trauesing the same, that it was in the stead of a bridge, the which I my selfe with diuers other that are at this present in your Maiesties Court, haue oftentimes passed ouer. And forasmuch as the said Tree had liuen long there, and by the great weight thereof was so shrunke downward, and partly couered with waters, that none could passe ouer it, but were wet to the knee, I being then in the yeere 1522, the official or Justice in that Citie at your Maiesties appointment, caused another great Tree to be laid in that place, which in like manner trauesed the Riuer, and reached more then fiftie foorse ouer the further side: This Tree was exceeding great, and rested aboue the water more then two Cubits, in the fall, it cast downe all such other Trees as were within the reach thereof, and discouered certaine bynes, which were so laden with blacke Grapes of pleasant taste, that they fastised more then fiftie persons which ate their fill thereof. This Tree, in the thickest part thereof, was more then fiftie fpannes thick, and was neuertheless but little in respect of many other trees which are found in this Prouince. For the *Indians* of the Coast and Prouince of *Carimagua*, make Barkes or Boates thereof (which they call *Canoa*) of such biggnes, being all one whole, haue neuertheless such void space within the same, that there is left sufficient roome to passe to and fro throughout all the *Canoa*. Some of these are so large, beside the length, that they contene more then tenne or twelue spannes in breadth, and laie with two failes, as with the Maister saile and the trincket, which they make of very good Cotton. The greatest Tree that I haue seene in these parts, or in any other Regions, was in the Prouince of *Guaturo*, the King whereof rebelling from the obedience of your Maiestie, was puriued by me, and taken Prisoner: at which time I with my company, passed ouer a very high Mountaine, full of great Trees, in the top whereof, we found one Tree, which had three roots, or rather diuisions of the roote aboue the Earth, in forme of a Triangle, or Trunet, so that betwene euery foot of this Triangle or three feet, there was a space of twentie foot betwene euery foot, and this of such height aboue the Earth, that a laden Cart of clothe wherewith they are accustomed to bring home Corne in time of Haruest in the Kingdome of *Teledo* in *Spain*, might easily haue passed through ouery of those partitions or windoors which were betwene the three feet of the said Tree. From the Earth vpward to the trunke of the Tree, the open places of the diuisions betwene these three feet, were of such height from the ground, that a Footman with a lauelin was not able to reach the place where the said feet ioyned together in the trunke or bodie of the Tree, which grew of great height in one piece, and one whole bodie, or euer it spread in branches, which it did not before it exceeded in height the Tower of *Saint Romane* in the Citie of *Teledo*: from which height and vpward, it spread very great and strong branches. Among certaine *Spaniards* which climbed this Tree, I my selfe was one, and when I was ascended to the place where it begonne to spread the branches, it was marvellous thing to behold a great Countrey of such Trees toward the Prouince of *Abrayma*. This Tree was ealie to climbe, by reason of certaine *Bafachi*, (whereof I haue spoken before) which grew wreathed about the Tree, in such sort that they seemed to make a scaling Ladder. Euery of the foreaid three feet which bore the bodie of the Tree, was twentie fpannes in thicknesse, and where they ioyned together about the Trunke or bodie of the Tree, the principall Trunke was more then fortie and fise fpannes in circuite. I named this Mountaine where these Trees grow, the Mountaine of three ioined Trees. And this which I haue now declared, was seene of all the company that was there with mee when (as I haue said before) took King *Guaturo* Prisoner in the yeere 1522. Many things more might here be spoken as touching this matter, as also how there are many other excellent Trees found of diuers sorts and difference, as sweet Cedar Trees, blacke Date Trees, and many other, of the which some are so heauie that they cannot float aboue the water, but sinke immediately to the bottoome, and other againe as light as a Corke. As touching all which things I haue written more largely in my general Historie of the *Indes*.

And for as much as at this present I haue entred to entreate of Trees, before I passe any further

ther to other things, I will declare the manner how the *Indians* kindle fire, only with Wood kindling of and without fire, the manner whereof is this. They take a peece of wood, of two fpannes in length, as bigg as the least finger of a mans hand, or as an arrow well pulled, and of a strong kinde of wood which they keepe only for this purpose: and where they intend to kindle any fire, they take two other peeces of wood, of the driest and lightest that they can finde, and binde them fast together one with another, as close as two fingers ioyned: in the middle or betwene these, they put the point of the first little flake made of hard and strong wood, which they hold in their hands by the top thereof, and turne or rubbe it round about continually in one place betwene the two peeces of wood which lie bound together vpon the earth, which by that vtter rubbing and chafing, are in short space kindled, and take fire. I haue also thought good here to speake somewhat of such things as come to my remembrance of certaine Trees which are found in this Land, and sometime also the like haue bene seene in *Spain*. These are certaine putrified trunks, which haue lien long rotting on the earth, that they are very white, and shene in the night like burning firebrands, and when the *Spaniards* finde any of this wood, and intend priuily in the night to make warre and invade any Prouince, when case is required that it shall be necessarie to goe in the night, in such places where they know not the way, the foremost Christian man which guideth the way, afflicke with an *Indian* to direct him therein, taketh a little barre of the said wood, which he putteth in his cap, hanging behinde on his shoulders, by the light whereof he that followeth next to him, directeth his journey, who also in like manner beareth another barre behinde him, by the shining whereof the third followeth the same way, and in like manner doe all the rest, so that by this meane none are lost or straggle out of the way. And for as much as this light is not seene very farre, it is the better police for the *Christians*, because they are not thereby discouered before they invade their enemies. Furthermore, as touching the natures of Trees, one particular thing seemeth worthy to be noted, whereof *Pinie* maketh mention in his naturall Historie, where he saith that there are certaine Trees which continue euer greene and neuer loose their leaues, as the Bay-tree, the Cedar-tree, the Orange-tree, and the Olive-tree, with such others, of the which in altogether he nameth not putrified or rotten trees, and the Olive-tree, which is in the Islands of these *Indes*, and also in the firme Land, it is a fix. To this purpose, I say, that in the Islands of these *Indes*, there are in the firme Land, it is a fix. I haue diligently searched to know the truth hereof, yet haue I not seene any that lose their leaues, either of them which we haue brought out of *Spain* into these regions, as Orange-trees, Limons, Cedars, Palmes, or Date-trees, and Pomegranate-trees, or of any other in these regions, except only *Cassia*, which loseth his leaues, and hath a greater thing appropriate to it selfe only: which is, that whereas all other Trees and Plants of *Indie* spread their roottes no deeper in the earth then the depth of a mans height, or somewhat more, not defending any further into the ground, by reason of the great heate which is found beneath that depth, yet doth *Cassia* percie further into the ground, vntill it finde water: which by the Philosophers opinion should be the cause of a thinn and watry radicle moisture to such things as draw their nourishment thereof, as fat and vntuous grounds with temperate heate, yelde a fat and firme moisture to such things as grow in them, which is the cause that such Trees lose not their leaues, as the said thinn and watery moisture is cause of the contrarie, as appeareth by the said effect which is seene only in *Cassia*, and no other Tree or Plant in all these partes.

Of Reedes or Canes.

IN the firme Land there are many sorts of Reedes, so that in many places they make their houses thereof, couering them with the tops of the same, and making their walls of them in like manner, as I haue said before: and among these kinde of Reedes, there is one so great, that the Canes thereof are as bigg as a mans legge in the knee, and three fpanns in length from ioyn to ioyn, or more, in so much that euery of them is of capacite to containe a little bucket of water. In this kinde, there are found some greater, and some lesse, of the which some they vse to make quaiers for arrows. There is found another kinde, which surely is marvellous, being the bigger then a lauelin, the Canes whereof are longer then two fpannes: these Reedes grow one farse from another, as sometimes twenty or thirty paces, and sometimes also two or three leagues: they grow in manner in all Prouinces in the *Indes*, and grow neere to very high Trees, wherunto they leane, and creepe vp to the top of their branches, which they embrace, and defend againe downe to the earth. Their Canes are full of most cleare water, without any manner of taste or sauour, either of the Canes, or of any other thing, and such as if it were taken out of the freshest Spring in the world, nor yet is it knowne that euer it hurt any that drinke thereof. For it hath oftentimes beene shewed, that as the *Christians* haue trauesed in these regions in delicate waies, where for lacke of water they haue bene in great danger to dye with thirst, they haue escaped that perill by reason that they found the said Reedes, of the water of which Canes they haue drunke a great quantity, without any hurt thereof ensuing. Therefore when they finde them in any place, they make water vessels of the Canes thereof, and carry

M m m 3

Kindling of
fire without
fire.

Purified wood
burning in the
night.

Pinie.

Almond *Indian*
trees euer
greene.

Cassia.
It is not belowe
or then a fiddone.
A creeping thing.
Radicle moisture.

Reed-springs
or fountain
of water.

Oxe, with alke like eyes, and hath in the place of armes, two great flumps wherwith he swimmeth: It is a very gentle and tame beaft, and cometh oftentimes out of the water to the neare shoare, where if he finde any herbes or grasse, he feedeth thereof. Our men are accustomed to kill many of these, and divers other good fishes, with their Croffe-bowes, pursuing them in Barkes or Canoes, because they swim in manner above the water: the which thing when they see, they draw them with a hookes tyed at a small corde, but somewhat strong: As the fish fleet away the Archer launcheth goe, and prolongeth the corde by little and little, untill he have let it goe many fathoms: at the end of the corde, there is tyed a corke, or a piece of light wood, and when the fish is gone a little way, and hath coloured the water with his blood, and feeleth himselfe to faint, and draw toward the end of his life, he resorteth to the shoare, and the Archer followeth, gathering vp his corde, wherof while he yet remaine fixe or eight fathoms, or somewhat more or lesse, he draweth it toward the Land, and draweth the fish therewith by little and little, as the waues of the Sea helpe him to doe it the more easily: then, with the helpe of the rest of his company, he lifteth this great beaft out of the Water to the Land, being of such bignesse, that to convey it from thence to the Citie, it shall be requisite to have a Cart with a good yoke of Oxen, and sometimes more, according as these fishes are of bignesse, some being much greater then other some in the same kinde, as is seene of other beastes: Sometimes they lift these fishes into the Canoe or Barke, without drawing them to the Land as before, for as soone as they are laide, they floe about the water: And I beleue verily that this fish is one of the best in the world to the taste, and the least vnto fish, especially to like vnto beeste, that who to hath none other whole, can iudge to be none other when hee seeth it in pieces then very Beefe or Veale, and is certainly to like vnto beeste, that all the men in the world may herein be deceived: the taste likewise, is like vnto the taste of very good Veale, and lasteth long, if it be powdered: so that in fine, the Beefe of these parts, is by no means like vnto this. This *Manate* hath a certaine bone, or rather bone in his head within the braine, which is of qualitie greatly appropriate against the disease of the stone, if it be burnt and ground into small powder, and taken fasting in the morning when the paine is felt, in such quantitie as may lye vpon a penny, with a draught of good white wine: For being thus taken three or foure mornings, it acqueth the grieve, as diuers have told me which haue proued it true, and I may selve by testimonie of sight, doe witnesseth that I haue seen this stone fought of diuers for this effect.

The fish Manate.
A remedie against the stone.

The Sword fish.

Tunny.

Turbot.

Note.

The Sea some where fertile, somewhere barren.

Flying fishes.

There are also diuers other fishes as bigge as this *Manate*, among the which there is one called *Vibula*. This fish beareth in the top of his head a sword, being on euery side full of many teeth: this sword is naturally very hard and strong, of foure or five spans in length, and of proportion according to the same bignesse: and for this cause is this fish called *Spada*, that is, the *Sword fish*. Of this kinde some are found as little as *Sardines*, and other so great, that two yokes of Oxen are scarcely able to draw them on a Cart. But whereas before I haue promised to speake of other fishes, which are taken in these Seas while the ships are vnder saile, I will not forget to speake of the *Tunny*, which is a great and good fish, and is oftentimes taken and kild with Trout speares, and hookes, cast in the water, when they play and swim about the ships. In like manner also are taken many *Turbots*, which are very good fishes as lightly in all the Sea. And here to be noted, that in the great Ocean Sea, there is a strange thing to be considered, which all that haue bene in the *Indies* asseme to be true: And this is, that like as on the Land there are some Princes fertile and fruitful, and some barren, even so doth the like chance in the Sea: So that at some windes the ships fall idle, or a hundred, or two hundred leagues and more, without taking or seeing of one fish: and againe, in the selfe same Ocean in some places, all the water is teeming by the mouing of the fishes, where they are taken abundantly. It cometh further to my remembrance to speake somewhat of the flying of fishes, which is double a strange thing to behold, and is after this manner. When the ships saile by the great Ocean, following their vage, there cometh sometimes on the one side or on the other, many companies of certaine little fishes, of the which the biggest is no greater then a *Sardine*, and so dimmish lesse and lefe from that quantitie, that some of them are very little: these are called *Pelicans*, and this, *flying fishes*: they rise by great companies and flocks, in such multitudes that it is an astonishment to behold them: Sometimes they rise but little from the water, and (as it chanceth) continue one flight for the space of an hundred paces, and sometimes more, or lesse, before they fall againe into the Sea, sometimes also they fall into the ships. And I remember, that on an evening when all the company in the ship were on their knees, singing *Salus Regina*, in the highest part of the Castle of the poepe, and sailed with a full winde, there passed by vs a flocke of these flying fishes, and came so nere vs, that many of them fell into the ship, among the which, two of them fell hard by me, which Iooke aloue in my hand, so that I might well perceiuaunt they were as bigge as *Sardines*, and of the same quantitie, hauing two wings or quills growing out of their finnes, like vnto those wherewith all fishes swim in Rivers: these wings are as long as the finnes themselves. As long as their wings are moist, they beare them vp in the aire, but as soone as they are drie, they can continue their flight no further then as I haue said before, but fall immediately into the Sea, and so rise againe, and the as before from place to place. In the yeere 1515, when I came first to enforme

your Maiestie of the state of the things in *India*, and was the yeere following in *Flanders* in the time of your most fortunate successe in these your Kingdomes of *Arreagon* and *Castile*, whereas at that voyage I layd about the land *Bermuda*, otherwise called *Garcia*, being the furthest of all the lands that are found at this day in the world, and arriving there at the depth of eight yards of water, and distant from the Land as farre as the thor of a piece of Ordinance, I determined to send some of the ship to Land, as well to make search of such things as were there, as also to leave in the land certaine Hogs for increase. But the time not serving my purpose by reason of contrary winde, I could bring my ship no neerer the Land, being twelve leagues in length, and fixe in breadth, and about thirtie in circuit, lying in the three and thirtieth degree of the North side. While I remained here, I saw a strife and combat betweene these flying fishes, and the fishes named *Gilt heads*, and the fowles called *Sea-mewes*, and *Cormorants*, which furly feasted vpon me a ching of as great pleasure and iolice as could be deuised, while the *Gilt heads* swam on the brim of the water, and sometimes lifted their shoulders above the same, to raise the flying fishes out of the water to diuine them to flight, and follow them swimming to the place where they fall, to take and eate them suddenly. Againe on the other side, the *Sea-mewes* and *Cormorants*, take many of these flying fishes, so that by this meanes they are neither safe in the Aire, nor in the Water. In the selfe same perill and danger do men lye in this mortal life, wherein is no certaine securitie, neither in high estate, nor in lowe. Which thing I fully ought to put vs in remembrance of that blessed and false setting place which God hath prepared for such as loue him, who shall acquiet and finish the troubles of this troublesome world, wherein are so many dangers, and bring them to that eternal life where they shall finde eternal securitie and rest.

Not too hie for the Pie,
Nor too low for the Crow.

Of the increase and decrease (that is) rising and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Sea of Sur.

I Will now speake of certaine things which are seene in the Prouince, or at the least in the Citie of *Golden Castile*, otherwise called *Beragua*, and in the coasts of the North Sea, and of the South Sea, called the Sea of *Sur*, not omitting to note one Angular and marvellous thing which I haue considered of the Ocean Sea, wherof hitherto no Cosmographer, Pilot, or Mariner, or any other, haue furnished me. I say therefore, as it is well knowne to your Maiestie, and all such as haue knowledge of the Ocean Sea, that this great Ocean caletteth from it selfe the Sea *Mediterranean*, by the mouth of the Straight of *Gibraltar*, in the which the water, from the end and furthest part of that Sea, euen vnto the mouth of the said Straight, either in the East toward the coast commonly called *Leuant*, or in any other part of the said Sea *Mediterranean*, the Sea doth not so fall nor increase, as reason would iudge for so great a Sea, but increaseth very little, and a small space: Neuerthelesse, without the mouth of the Straight in the mayne Ocean, it increaseth and falleth very much, and a great space of ground, from fixe houses to fixe houses, as in all the coasts of *Spain*, *Britaine*, *Flanders*, *Germany*, and *England*. The selfe same Ocean Sea in the firme Land newly found, in the coasts of the same lying toward the North, doth neither rise nor fall, nor likewise in the lands of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, and all the other lands of the same lying toward the North, for the space of three thousand leagues, but only in like manner as doth the Sea *Mediterranean* in *Italy*, which is in manner motionless, in respect to that increase and decrease which the said Ocean hath in the coasts of *Spain* and *Flanders*. But this is yet a greater thing, that also the selfe same Ocean in the coasts of the said firme Land lying toward the South, in the Citie of *Panama*, and also in the coast of that Land which lyeth toward the East and West from that Citie, as in the land of *Panama* or *Morgana*, which the *Indians* call *Tarapaca*, and also in *Tadaga* and *Otagua*, and in all other lands of the South Sea of *Sur*, the water riseth and falleth so much, that when it falleth, it goeth in manner out of sight, which thing I my selfe haue seene oftentimes. And here your Maiestie may note another thing, that from the North Sea to the South Sea, being of such difference the one from the other in rising and falling, yet is the Land that diuideth them not past eighteen or twentie leagues in breadth from Coast to Coast: So that both the said Seas, being all one Ocean, this strange effect is a thing worthy greatly to be considered of all such as haue inclination and desire to know the secret workes of Nature, wherein in the infinite power and wisdom of God is seene to be such, as may allure all good Natures to reuerence and loue to diuine a Majestie.

The West Ocean.
The Sea North.

Hispaniola.
Cuba.
Ocean without ebbing and flowing.

The ebbe at Panama fallith two leagues or face miles.

The South Sea.

Of the straight or narrow passage of the Land lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much sooner and easilier be brought from the lands of Molucca into Spain by the West Ocean, then by that way wherewith the Portugals saile into the East India.

The firme Land in some parts thereof is so straight and narrow, that the *Indians* say, that from the Mountaines of the Prouince of *Espiqua* or *Princa* (which are betweene the one Sea and the other) if a man ascend to the top of the Mountaines, and looke toward the North, *Princa*

he

The River of
Chagre.The Island Be-
limenta.The marvell-
ous Bridge.Natural stone
Bridge.

Tigres.

Plants and
herbes.

Birds.

Men.

Sheepe.
Bulls.

Lucas.

Bats.

he may see the Water of the North Sea of the Province of *Beragua*: and againe looking the con-
trary way, may on the other side (towards the South) see the Sea of *Sur*, and the Provin-
ces which confine with it, as does the Territories of the two Lords or Kings of the said Provin-
ces of *Vrucas* and *Ejaguya*. Some measure this way in this part, to be from Sea to Sea eight-
eigne leagues, which I suppose to be rather twentie, not for that it is any more by measure,
but because it is rough and difficult, as I have said, and as I have found it by experience; ha-
ving now twice passed that way by foot, counting from the Port and Village of *Nombe de
Dios*, vnto the Dominion of the *Cajique* of *Imanaga*, otherwise called *Cajira*, eight leagues,
and from thence to the River of *Chagre*, other eight leagues. So that at this River, being five
leagues from the said Port, endeth the roughness of the way: then from hence to the
marvellous Bridge are two leagues, and beyond that, other two, vnto the Port of *Panama*:
So that all together, in my judgement, make twentie leagues. It is a marvellous facilitie to bring
Spices by this way which I will now declare. From *Panama* to the River of *Chagre*, are four
leagues of good and faire way, by the which Carts may passe at pleasure; by reason that the
Mountaines are but few and little, and that the greatest part of these four leagues is a plaine
ground void of Trees: and when the Carts are come to the said River, the Spices may be carried
in Barkes and Pinasles. For this River entrench into the North Sea five or six leagues lower then
the Port of *Nombe de Dios*, and emptieth it selfe into the Sea neere vnto an Island called *Zafamonta*,
where is a very good and safe Port. Your Maiestie may now therefore consider, how great a
thing, and what commoditie it may be to conuey Spices this way, forasmuch as the River of
Chagre, having his originall only two leagues from the South Sea, continueth his course, and
emptieth it selfe into the other North Sea. This River runneth fast, and is very great, and is
commodious for this purpose as may be thought or desired: the *marvellous Bridge* made by the
worke of Nature, being two leagues beyond the said River, and other two leagues on this side
the Port of *Panama*, fo lying in the mid way betweene them both, as framed naturally in
such sort, that none which passe by this voyage doth see any such Bridge, or thinke that there
is any such building in that place, untill they be in the top thereof, in the way toward *Panama*:
But as soon as they are on the Bridge, looking toward the right hand, they see a little Ri-
uer vnder them, which hath his Channell distant from the feete of them that walke ouer it,
the space of two furlongs or more. The water of this River is very shallow, not passing the
depth of a mans legge to the knee, and is in breadth betweene thirte and ffortie paces, and fil-
leth into the River of *Chagre*. Toward the right hand, standing on this Bridge, there is a
thing like a great Tree. The largenesse of the Bridge containeth fiftene paces, and the
length thereof about threecore or fourecore paces: The Arch is so made of most hard stone, that
no man can behold it without admiration, being made by the High and Omnipotent Creator
of all things.

How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the
nature of the place where they are engendered or grow, and
of the beasts called Tigres.

IN the firme Land are found many terrible beasts, which some thinke to be Tigres. Which
I thinke neuertheless I dare not affirme, considering what Authors doe write of the lightnesse
and agilitie of the Tigre, whereas this Beast, being otherwise in shape very like vnto a Tigre,
is notwithstanding very slow. Yet true it is, that according to the manerles of the World, and
differences which natural things haue in diuers Regions vnder Heauen, and diuers constellations
of the same, vnder the which they are created, wee see that some such Plants and Herbes
as are hurtfull in one Countrey, are harmelesse and wholesome in other Regions. And Birds
which in one Province are of good taste, are in other so vnauourable that they may not yet be eaten.
Men likewise which in some Countreies are blacke, are in other places white: and yet are both
these and they men. Euen so may it be, that Tigres are light in some Region, as they write,
may and neuertheless be slow and heauie in these *Indies* of your Maiestie, whereof wee speake,
and may haue their haire growing toward their heads: yet are those Sheepe, and these Bulls. Men
in some Countreies are hardie and of good courage, and in other naturally fearful and blinsh. All
these things, and many more, which may be said to this purpose, are easie to be proued, and
worthy to be beleued, of such as haue read of the like in Authors, or trauelled the World,
whereby their owne fight may teach them the experience of these things whereof I speake. It
is also manifest that *Lucas*, whereof they make their bread in the Island of *Hispamola*, is deadly
poison if it be eaten greene with the iuyce: and yet hath it no such property in the firme Land,
where I haue eaten it many times, and found it to be a good fruit. The Birds of *Spain*, although
they be, yet are they not venous: but in the firme Land, many the that are bitten of them.
And in this forme may so many things be said, that time shall not suffice to write, whereas my
intent is only to proue that this beast may be a Tigre, or of the kinde of Tigres, althought
be

bee not of such lightnesse and swiftnesse, as are they whereof *Plinius* and other authors speake, *Plinius*.
describing it to be one of the swiftest beasts of the Land, and that the River of *Tygra* for the
swift course thereof was called by that name. The first *Spaniards*, which saw this Tigre in the
firme Land, did so name it. Of the kind of this, was that which *Don Diego Columbus*, the Admiral
sent your Maiesty out of *New Spain* to *Toledo*. Their heads are like to the heads of Lions, or Lion-
nesses, but greater: the rest of all their bodies, and their legs, are all of blacke spots one neere vnto
another, & diuided with a circumference, or fringe of red colour, shewing (as it were) a faire work
and correspondent picture, about their crookes or hinder parts, they haue their spots biggest and
lesse & lesse toward their bellies, legs, & heads. I haue seen some of three spans in height, and more
then five in length. They are beasts of great force, with strong legs, and well armed with nayles
and fangs, which we call Dog-teeth: they are so fierce, that in my judgement, no reall Lyon of
the biggest sort is so strong or fierce. Of these, there are many found in the firme Land, which de-
uoure many of the *Indians*, and doe much hurt otherwise: but since the coming of the *Christi-
ans*, many haue beene killed with Croft-bowes after this manner. As soon as the Archer hath
knowledge of the haunt of any of these *Tygers*, hee goeth teaching their trace, with his Croft-
bow, and with a little Hound or Begle, & not with a grey-hound: because this Beast would faine
kill any Dogge that would venter on him: When the Hound hath found the Tigre, he runneth
about him baying continually, and approacheth so neere him, snapping and grinning, with so
quicke flying and returning, that he hereby fo molesteth this fierce Beast, that hee drieth him
to take the next Tree, at the foot whereof hee remaineth still baying, and the Tigre grinning
and shewing his teeth, while in the meane time the Archer cometh neere, and twicke or four-
ticke paces off, drieth him with the quereil of his Croft-bow in the breast, and smyth incon-
tinent, leaving the Tigre in his trauell for life and death, byrting the Tree and eating out of
the fire: then within the space of two or three houres, or the day following, the Archer re-
turneth thither, and with his Dogge findeth the place where hee lyeth dead. The *Indians* (and
especially they of the firme Land in the Province which the Catholike King *Don Ferdinando*
commanded to be called *Golden Calitie*) call this Beast *Ochi*. This thing is strange that chanced
of late: that whereas the Tigre whereof we haue mention before, would haue killed
his keeper that then kept him in a Cage, was in few daies after made to tame, that he led her by the
only with a small cord, and plaid with her so familiarly, that I marvelled greatly to see it, yet
not without certaine beleife that this friendship will not last long, without danger of life to the
Keeper, forasmuch as surely these Beasts are not meet to be among men, for their fiercenesse and
cruell nature that cannot be tamed.

Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the firme Land,
and of their women.

THE manners and customes of these *Indians*, are diuers in diuers Provinces. Some of them
take as many Wives as them list, and other live with one Wife, whom they forsake not
without consent of both parties, which chanceth especially when they haue no children. The
Nobilitie of men as women, repute it infamous to ioyne with any of base Parentage or Strangers,
except Christians, whom they count Noblemen, by reason of their valiantoutie, although
they put a difference betweene the common sort and the other to whom they shew obedience,
counting it for a great matter and an honorable thing, if they be beloved of any of them: in-
fomuch that if they know any Christian man carnally, they keep their faith to him, so that hee
be not long absent farre from them, for their intent is not to be Widowers, or to live chaste like
religious women. Many of them haue this custome, that when they perceiue that they are
with child, they take an Herbe wherewith they destroy that is conceived: for they say that
only well aged women should beare children, and that they will not forebare their pleasures,
and deforme their bodies with bearing of children, whereby their Teates become loose and
hanging, which thing they greatly disdaine. When they are deliuered of their children, they
goe to the River and wash them, which done, their blood and purgation ceaseth immediately:
And when after this they haue a few daies abstinent from the company of men, they become lo
freight, as they say which haue had carnal familiaritie with them, that such as vie them, cannot
without much difficultie satisfie their appetite: They also which neuer had children, are euer as
lo as to their knees and hammes, wherewith they couer their priuy parts, and are naked all
their bodie beside. The principall men beare their Priuities in a hollow Pipe of Gold,
but the common sort haue them inclosed in the shells of certaine great Walkes, and are be-
side vtterly naked: For they thinke it no more shame to haue their Gods fence, then any other
part of their bodies: and in many Provinces both the men and women go vtterly naked, with-
out any such couerture at all. In the Province of *Cuena* they call a man *Choy*, and a woman *Ira*,
which name is not greatly disagreeable to many both of their women and of ours.

The *Indians* giue great honor and reuerence to their *Cajiques* (that is) their Kings and Ru-
lers.

The Tigre.

The hunting
of Tigres.A Tigre made
tame.The Indian
women.Vnusuall ab-
ortions.
Large breasts
Child-birth.The men of
India.

Parrichter.

alike, but that first dyeth with them: neither are they good for any thing, except their quills to feather arrows. They are desirous to live about places inhabited to feede on Carcen. The *Parrichter* are gray, as fauourie as those of *Spaine*, and as great as the *Spanish* Hens: they haue their brawnes or flesh double, one ouer the other. Their egges are as bigge as Hens egges, but rounder, and coloured like a fine Turkeish stone. The *Indians* making a sound like theirs, draw them to their nests. There are also a little kinde, The *Phosphans* are not in feathers like those of *Spaine*, nor so goodly, but very fauourie meate like the great *Parrichter*, but are not so great; they are gray, haue long legs and talles, make a loud whistling noise, and are easily shot.

Phosphans.

Fies are not there so many as in these parts of *Europe*. Their *Wasps* are greater and sting more dangerously. Their *Bees* are almost as small as flies, and sting not. They haue great Hives and Combes which hold four times as much Honie as ours: then Honie is white. *Ants* are great, many, and doe much damage to the Trees, Sugars, and other productions. There are of many sorts, some little and black (of which and the Ant-bear is spoken before) some called *Cimex* halfe Ant, halfe Worme, very hurtfull; they carry earth on their heads, and therewith on their walls, or where they please build their nests, three or foure spans large, and are as hurtfull to houses as Moths to clothes. There are others greater of diuers sorts, some as bigge as Bees with vs, so payntfull that herewith the *Indians* infect their arrowes for remedie, that not foure of an hundred which are wounded escape: and if this Ant bite a Man he presently falls into a grievous feauer, and the place swellth much. There are others red, yellow, and some winged. Of the *Hornes* or *Heads* (*Tafans*) are many sorts, tedious to expell. There are also *Scorpions* in *Hispania*. An. 1519, and two yeeres after the *Ants* destroyed in *Hispania* their *Cannibals*, Oranges, and fruit Trees, neither in their houles could they keepe victuals for their multitudes, destroying all like the *African* Grasshoppers, in so much that *Saint Domingo* was nigh depopled by them.

Hornes or Heads. Scorpions.

They laugh in *India* to heare the disease called *French* by the *Italians*, and *Neapolitan* by the *French*, which may indeed be called *Indian*, where the best remedie *Lignum Sanctum*, and *Guaiacum* grow; God in iudgement remembering mercy, that where our finnes produce a punishment, he also lends a remedie. I had acquaintance with diuers which went in the first and second voyages of *Columbus*: of which was *Peter Martyr* Consonator in the second voyage, of most respect with the King and Queene, who complained of those pains. Some after, in the yeere 1496. began the disease to arrest some Courtiers; but in those beginnings, it was only amongst bairer persons of small authority: and it was thought that they got it with hauing to doe with common women. But afterwards it extended to principall Persons, and the Physicians could not tell what to thinke of it, so that many dyed. When after this *Gonzalo Fernandez de Cordoba* was sent with a great Armie by the Catholike Kings, in behalfe of *Ferdinand*, the second King of *Naples*, against *Charles* the French King, some diseased persons went with that Armie, and by dealing with the women, and by conuarsing, spread the disease to the *Italians* and *French* men, which thence got the names of *St. Iohn*, and *Ramulo* in his Preface to the *Indians*, which were before he had heard of this disease: in so much that of 1600000. *Indians* in that *Iland* there are now left, as by and by you shall heare. The *Nigra* also, creatures lesse then Fleas, which rate in the flesh very dangerously, are rife in that *Iland*. The people of that *Iland* when first they were diuided amongst the *Spanish* Planters, were deemed a Million or more (some say 1600000. of which and of their posteritie in the yeere 1535, were not about five hundred left, little and great, the rest which then were there being Slaues brought thither from other parts. The countenaince of the Mysen-workers, neglect of Diet, change of Governours growing worse and worse, caused them to peyson, kill, and hang themselves, besides those which were consumed by infectious or pestilentiall pocks* and other diseases: Their own vice, also Sodomitie, Idolatry, &c. prouoked diuine Iustice against them. No prouision could hinder their consumption. The King sent Religious men of diuers Orders, but this I know that the *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* contradicted each other, and what one approved the other disallowed, although after the other had left that opinion, the Contradictors would embrace it, still agreeing in disagreeing: which caused much danger not only to new Conuerts, but also to old Christians: while one Order would not absolve them except they franchised the *Indians*, and the other absoled them neuertheless. Much dissipation hath bene also the *Indians* truste amongst the *Thomists*, *Canonists*, and famous Lawyers and Diuines, but their differences haue done little good to the *Indians* or the plantation; and in a short time both this *Iland* and the three adioyning, *Saint Iohn*, *Lemania*, and *Cuba*, remayned desolate, being by the Friars meane (which I thinke, meant well) dispersed throw the *Iland*, to lessen their labours, which the Gentlemen imposed on them. I am of opinion that if a Christian Prince had this *Iland* of *Hispaniola* only, hee might make it as good as either *England* or *Sicily*: such is the store of Gold, the prosperous successe of things carried from *Spaine*, the Bees (which I knew first carried thither from *Spaine*) being already so multiplied that they kill them for the Hides, leaving the flesh in the fields of five hundred at once:

* The disease mentioned under the name of Ranazo. Priars quarrels.

Lib. 3. c. 1.

Lib. 3. c. 11.

and *Rodrigo de Boffada* Bishop of *Venezuela* hath therein 16000. Bees, and the Treasurer *Pafamante* as many; others 8000. or more, likewise in other Beatts, Seeds, Oranges, Limons, &c. 85, Pomgranets, &c.

Of their *Zemets*, *Idols*, *Squalchers*, and other things concerning their Religion, the Reader may see *Quinto* fifth enough in the ninth Booke and fourteenth Chapter of my *Pilgrimage*; and of the *Spanish* first voyages thither in the beginning of this worke, which *Quinto* handled in his former Booke.

Their *Huracans* (so they call tempests of wind and rainge together) are very excellent. An. 1508. on the third of August, all the thatched houses in *Saint Domingo* were throwne to the ground, and some also of stone; all the houted all in the Towne *Buenaventura*, which might thence be named *Malaventura*: in the *Hauens* were sinkt twentie Ships and Canals, a North-west wind and after a South-wind playing their furious prizes, one carrying out the Vessels in despite of all propinations to Sea, and the other as terribly forcing them againe to the Haven (if the liffe of ships and men may permit that name) yea on Land many men were carried in the streets and fields diuers bow-shots before they could fly thence. Hell seemed to haue bene opened, and the Devils to haue carried things to and fro. Yet in Iuly following was a worke, which now are allayed and not so violent tince the Blessed Sacrament hath bene placed in Churches. I haue seene the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground covered with Trees plucked vpb by the Windes from the Rootes, and ours haue sometime by dangers of the wycke forced to climbe from tree to tree such a passage, with fluting and in perils enough.

The Cocks in *Spaine* crow at mid-night and towards day; but herein the running in the evening, or two houres within night, and two houres before day, and not at all at mid-night: some crow in the first watch and not else all night. Their Cats also vlie their lusts all the yeere and without walling noise, which in *Spaine*, *France*, *Sicily*, and other places in *Europe* and *Africke* which I haue bene gone on Carter-walling only about Februarie. In the Ile of *Nauaca* Weltward from *Hispaniola* in the waye thence to *Lemania*, the Rocks are seene vnder the water: and amongst them a fatiome and five foute vnder the salt water there ariseth a spring of good fresh water vnder the Sea, spouting vpb bigger then a mans arme, higher then the salt water that it may easily be taken in. I haue not tasted it, but *Stephen Roca* a person of credit testifieth this of his own sight and taste. But I haue seene in the *Riuert* *Demencia* at the *Riuert* *Acuata*, twentie paces wide, and not deeper then the arme pits, there is a hog spring, that if one take vpb the Sands they seeme like embers in his fist, and so is the water a span deepe about the Sands, which on the top is fresh and like other water.

Quinto 8. 9. 10. and 11. Booke are of Plants and Trees in those parts. The 12. of Creatures before mentioned: the 13. of Fishes, in which he telleth that An. 1539. going from the Gulfe of *Orizaba* to *Panama* two hundred leagues Eastward, neere the mouth of the Gulfe, we saw a Fish or great Water-monster, which at times lifted it selfe right vpb above the Water so farre that the head and both the armes might be seene, which seemed higher then our Caruall and all her Maits. Thus did hee rise and fall diuers times beating the water strongly, not casting any water out of the mouth. A younger or lesse of the same kinde did likewise, swimme a little distant from the greater. Some iudged it to bee a Whale with her young one, which others denied, saying, a Whale had no armes. To my iudgement each arme might be five and twentie foute long, and as bigge as a Butte or Pipe: the head fourteen or fifteen foute high and much more in breadth; and the rest of the body larger. That other which appeared about *Panama*, was about five times the height of a mens man, which make five and twentie paces. *Lorenz*, a *Marine* Canon of the Church of *Golden Castle*, *Sancio de Tudela*, &c. were with me: and we were all affraid when she came neere our small Caruall. She seemed to disport herselfe at a tempest approaching, which suddenly arose much to our purpose, from the West, and brought vs in few dayes to *Panama*.

In *Hispaniola* and the neighbouring *Ilands* is a strange bird of prey, as bigge as a great *Ganis* and much like it: it preyeth on the Land on birds, &c. and on fish in the Water, there is a footed like water-fowles and goeth like a Goose, but hath talons like Hawkes, and flutts as therewith on the fishes which hee eates (so taken) either in the Water or on the Rocks, or as they flyeth in the Aire holding it betweene her feete. The Christians call them *Asp* *di* *agua*.

What hath the *Ants* did in *Hispaniola*, is before mentioned, in the yeere 1519, and the next 1521. following, and the Cite of *Saint Domingo*, was almost dihabited by this great Armie of little Creatures, as in *Spaine* a Cite was dispeopled by Conier, which lately belongeth to the Ile *Puerto Santo*; in *Thessalia* (which almost fell to the *English* Colonie in *Bermuda*) to another Cite by *Rate*, to the *Astrakhan* by *Frogs*, to the *Admirantes* by *Fleas*, to the *Indians* by *Locusts*; Serpents, and to another part thereof by Sparrowes; to diuers places of *Africa* vainglorious men, so can the Great God arme the least creatures to the destruction of proud vainglorious men, and this milite so perplexed the *Spaniards*, that they sought as strange a remedie as was the disease, which

Superstitious conceit of the Sacrament, it was ordaind against the Sacrament of the eucharist, the use of the waiber.

Lib. 3. c. 10. Cocks & Cats diffusing from the Spanish: wherein our English agree with the Indians: much agree with the Indians: Suruage water spout.

Sea Monster stupendous.

* 55. puffs, which sometimes signifies falcons.

Lib. 3. c. 7.

* An Indian fowle.

* *Quido* write
other Books
of the same
Land, which
are thus extant.

foole. Yet will I imitate a little this foolish *Portugall*, and leape out of *Quido* Spanish Ship (for who will not feare fuch dreadful shipwrackes as this Booke, the last which hath come "to our hands, is full of) and swim ashore, or seeke other passage with *Aleixo*, in a new or rather an old Voyage for Discouerie of the *Mexican* Antiquities.

CHAP. IIII.

Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the Writings of Iosaphus Acosta a learned Iesuite.

L. 17.
Ecclesi.



Every Historie well written is profitable to the Reader: For as the *Wiseman* saith, That which hath bene, is, and that which shall bee, is that which hath bene: *Humane things* haue much resemblance in themselves, and some grow wise by that which happens to others. There is no Nation, how barbarous soeuer, that haue not something in them, good, and worthy of commendation; nor Common-wealth so well ordered, that hath not something blame-worthy, and to bee controlled. If therefore there were no other fruit in the History or Narration of the Deeds and Gifts of the Indians, but this common vtilitie, to be a Relation or History of things, the which in the effect of truth haue happened, it is so deserveth to be received as a profitable thing, neither ought it to be rectified, for that it concerns the Indians: as if we were to seeke the truth of naturall things, write not only of generous Beasts, notable and rare Plants, and of precious Stones, but also of wilde Beasts, common Hearbes, and beaſts and vniuersal Stones, for that there is alwayes in them some proper worthy distinction. If therefore there were nothing else in this Discouery, but that it is a History, and no fictions nor fables, it were no unworthy Subject to be written, or read. There is yet another more particular reason, which is, that we ought herein to esteeme that which is worthy of memorie, both for that it is a Nation little esteemed, and also a Subject different from that of our Europe, as these Nations bee, wherein we should take most pleasure and content, to understand the grounds of their beginning, their manner of life, with their hapys and vnbappy Adventures. And this Subject is not only pleasant and agreeable, but also profitable, especially in such as haue the charge to rule and gouerne them: for the knowledge of their *Antiquities* will to guide credit, and haue partly taught how they ought to be instructed: yet, it takes away much of that common and foolish contempt wherein they of Europe hold them, supposing that these Nations haue no feeling of reason. For in truth we cannot chuse this error better, than by the true reports of the *Antient* deeds of this people. I will therefore as briefly as I can, intreat of the beginning, proceedings and notable deeds of the *Mexicanes*, whereby we may know the time and the disposition that the high God would chuse, to send vnto these Nations the Light of the Gospel of Iesu Christ by his Sonne our Lord, whom I beseech to second our small Labour, that it may bee to the glorie of his Divine greatness, and some profit to these people, to whom he hath imparted the Law of his holy Gospel.

B. I.

Of the ancient Inhabitants of New Spaine, and of the six Linages of the Nauatlacas. Of the Mexican Exodus, and Adventures by the way: the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tribute.

L. 2. 1.

Chichimecas,
their language
couste of life.

The ancient and first Inhabitants of those Provinces, which we call New Spaine, were men very barbarous and savage, which liued onely by hunting, for this reason they were called *Chichimecas*. They did neither sow nor till the ground, neither liued they together; for all their exercise was to hunt, wherein they were very expert. They liued in thorough parts of the Mountaynes beaſt-like, without any policie, and they went all naked. They hunted wilde Beasts, Hares, Conies, Weezels, Mowles, wild Cats, and Birds, yea vncleane beaſts, as Snakes, Lizards, Locusts and Wormes, wherein they fed, with roots and roots. They leapt in the Mountaynes, in caves and in bushes, and the wiues likewise went hunting with their husbands, leaving their young children in a little panier of Reeds, tyed to the boughes of a Tree, which desired not to fucke vntill they were returned from hunting. They had no Superiours, nor did acknowledge or worship any god, neither had any manner of Ceremonies or Religion.

There is yet to this day in New Spaine of this kind of people, which liue by their Bowes and Arrowes, the which are very hurtfull, for that they gather together in troopes to doe mischief,

chiefe, and to rob: neither can the *Spaniards* by force or cunning reduce them to any policie or obedience: for hauing no Townes nor places of residence, to fight with them, were properly to hunt after favage beaſts, which scatter and hide themselves in the most rough and couered places of the Mountaynes. Such is their manner of liuing euen to this day, in many Provinces of the *Indies*. Those in New Spaine, which they call *Otomies*, were of this sort, being commonly poore *Indians*, inhabiting a rough and barren Land, and yet they are in good numbers, and liue together with firme or on an, and such as do know them, find them no lesse apt and capable of matters of Christian Religion, then others which are held to be more rich and better gouerned. Comming therefore to our first birth, the *Chichimecas* and *Otomies* which were the first Inhabitants of New Spaine, for that they did neither till nor sowe the Land, left the belt and most fertile of the Countrey vnpeopled, which Nations that came from farre did possesse, whom they called *Nauatlacas*, for that it was a more ciuill and policie Nation; this word signifies a people that speaks well, in respect of other barbarous Nations without reason. These second peoples *Nauatlacas*, came from other farre Countreys, which ly toward the North, wher they now they haue discouered a Kingdome they call *New Mexico*.

There are two Provinces in this Countrey, the one called *Aztlan*, which is to say a place of Aztlan. The other *Tzucuilcan*, which signifies a Land of such, whose Grandfathers were diuine. Tzucuilcan. The Inhabitants of these Provinces haue their houses, their Lands tilled, Gods, Customs, and Ceremonies, with like order and government to the *Nauatlacas* and are diuided into seven Tribes or Nations and for that they haue a custome in this Prouince, that eury one of these Linages hath his place and priuate Territorie, the *Nauatlacas* paint their beginning and first Territorie in figure of a Cause, and say that they came forth of *from Cues* to come and people the Land of Mexico, whereof they make mention in their Histories, where they point *from Cues* and men comming forth of them. By the supputation of their Bookes, it is about eight hundred yeeres since these *Nauatlacas* came forth of their Countrey, reducing which to our account, was a little more than the yeere of our Lord 720. When they left their Countrey to come to Mexico, they stayed about the yeere of our Lord 720. and the cause of this their long stay in their Voyage, was, that their Gods (which without doubt were Devils, and spake visibly vnto them) had persuaded them to seeke new Lands that had certaine figure. And therefore they came discouering the whole Land, to search for these tokens which their Gods had giuen them; and in places where they found any good dwellings, they peopled it, and laboured the Land, and as they discouered the aged, sicke folkes, and the wearie, they did plant and build there, whereof wee see the remanent of this day. In the way where they passed, they spent foure score yeeres in this manner of infinitely trauell, the which they might haue done in a moneth. By this means they entered the Land of Mexico, in the yeere 902. after our computation.

These seven Linages I haue spoken of, came not forth altogether: the first were the *Suebimil*, which signifie a Nation of the flocks of fowles. Those peopled the banks of the great Lake of Mexico towards the South, and did build a Citie of their name, and many Villages. Long time after came they of the second Linage called *Chalca*, which signifies people of impetuous, the third built a Citie of their name, diuiding their limits and Territories with the *Suebimil*. Those who were the *Tepanecas*, which signifies people of the bridge: they did inhabit vpon the banks of the Lake towards the West, and they increased so, as they called the chiefe and Metropolitane of their Province, *Acapulcan*, which is to say, an *Ant Nest*, and they continued long time mightie. After them came those that peopled *Tefcaco*, which be those of *Culhuca*, which is to say, a crooked people: for that in their Countrey there was a Mountaine much bending. And in this sort this Lake was enured with these four Nations, these inhabiting on the East, and the *Tepanecas* on the North. These of *Tefcaco*, were held for great Courtesies, for their tongue and pronunciation is very sweet and pleasant. Then arrived the *Tlailhuacas*, which signifies men of the Sierr or Mountaine. These were the most rude and grosse of all the rest, who finding all the Plains about the Lake possessed euen vnto the Sierr, they passed to the other side of the Mountaine, where they found a very fertile, spacious and warme Countrey, where they built many great Villages, calling the Metropolitane of their Province *Quauhmetacan*, which is as many to say, as a place that sounds the voice of an Eagle, which our common people call by corruption, *Quauhmetacan*, and at this day they call this Prouince, the *Martinez*. Those of the sixth Generation, which are the *Tlaxcaltecas*, which is to say, Men of bread, passed the sixth Generation towards the East, crossing all the Sierr, or Mountaine of *Merenda*, where that famous *Olmeca* is betwixt Mexico and the *Citie of Aztlan*, where they did find a good Countrey, making many buildings. They built many Townes and Cities, whereof the Metropolitane was called by their name *Tlaxcala*. This is the Nation which fauoured the *Spaniards* at their entrie, by whose helpe they did winne this Countrey, and therefore to this day they pay no Tribute, but enjoy a generall exemption. When all these Nations peopled their Countreys, the *Chichimecas* being the ancient Inhabitants, made no resistance, but fled, and as people amazed, they hid themselves in the most obscure of the Rockes. But those that inhabited on the other side of the

How the six
Linages of the
Nauatlacas
people the Land
of Mexico.
Chalca,
Suebimil,
Tepaneca,
Acapulcan,
Tefcaco,
Culhuca.

Tlailhuaca.

Quauhmetacan.

Tlailhuaca.

Giants.

Note of Giants.

Beginnings of civilize.

Of the Mexicans departure of their journey and promising the Province of Mex.

Demits emulation of the works of God in bringing Israel out of Egypt, and passing through the desert to Canaan. Tabernacle. Arke.

Met their Meis.

Machucan.

Towns.

Mountain where the *Tlafalcateans* had planted themselves, did not suffer them in quiet, as the rest of the *Chichimeques* had done, but they put themselves in defence to preserve their Country, and being Giants as the Historians report, they fought to expell the last Commers, but they were to a great banquet, and when they were built in their diabolical place with them, invited them in ambush, who secretly stole away their weapons, which were great Clubs, Targets, Swords of wood, and other such arms. Then did they suddenly let upon them, and the *Chichimeques* seeking to defend themselves, they did want their arms, so as they fled to the Mountains, and forests adjoining, where they pulled down Trees, as if they had bene stalks of Lettuce. But in the end, the *Tlafalcateans* being armed, and marching in order, they defeated all the Giants, not leaving one alive. We must not hold this of the Giants to be strange, or a fable; for at this time we find some bones of an incredible bignesse.

When I was in *Mexico*, in the yeere 1566. they found one of those Giants buried in one of our Farms, which we call *desa de Mono*, of whom they brought a tooth to be seene, which (without augmenting) was as big as the fist of a man, and according to this, all the rest was proportionable, which I saw and admired at his deformed greatness. The *Tlafalcateans* by this victory remained peaceable, and so did the rest of the *Lingages*. These six *Lingages* did always entertaine amitie together, marrying their children one with another, and dividing their lands quietly: then they studied with an emulation to encrease and beautifie their Commonweale. The barbarous *Chichimeques*, seeing what passed, began to vie some government, and to apparell themselves, being ashamed of what had passed: for all then they had no shame. And having a things of them, building small Cottages, having some policy and government. They did also chooe Lords, whom they did acknowledge for their Superiors, by means whereof they did in a manner quite abandon this brutish life, yet did they always continue in the Mountains divided from the rest.

Three hundred and two yeeres after the former two *Lingages* had left their Country, to inhabit New Spain, the Country being now well peopled, and reduced to some forme of government, Those of the seventh Cause or Line arrived, which is the *Mexicane Nation*, the which like unto the rest, left the Province of *Azulan*, and *Tenacalhuacan*, a politike, courtlike, and warlike Nation. They did worship the Idoll *Puculaputsi*, the Deuill that was in this Idoll placed, and governed this Nation easily. This Idoll commanded them to leave their Country, promising to make them Princes and Lords over all the Provinces which the other six Nations did possess, that he would give them a Land abounding with gold, silver, precious fishes, feathers, and rich mantles: whereupon they were forth carrying their Idoll with them in a Coffe of Reedes, supported by foure of their principall Priests, with whom he did talke and reuerse vnto them in secret, the successe of their way and voyage, aduising them of what should happen. He likewise gaue them Lawes, and taught them the customs, ceremonies, and sacrifices they should observe. They did not aduance nor moue without commandement from this Idoll. He gaue them notice when to march, and when to stay in any place, wherein they wholly obeyed him. The first thing they did wherefoer they came, was to build a House or Tabernacle for their false god, which they set always in the middle of their Campe, and there placed the Arke vpon an Altar, in the same manner as they haue vied in the holy Christian Church. This done, they loved their land for bread and pillage, which they vied: and they were so addicted to the obedience of their god, that if he commanded them to gather, they gathered, but if he commanded them to raise their Campe, all was left there for the nourishment of the aged, sicke, and wearie, which they left purposely from place to place, that they might people it, pretending by this means, that all the Land should remain inhabited by their Nation.

We may well iudge what this *Puculaputsi* was, for that there was neuer seene nor heard speake of customs more superstitious, nor sacrifices more cruell and inhumane, than those which he taught them. To conclude, they were invented by the enemy of mankind. The Chiefe and Captaine whom they followed, was called *Meis*, whence came the name of *Mexico*, and of the *Mexicane Nation*. This people marching thus at leisure, as the other six Nations had done, peopling and tilling the Land in diuers parts, whereof there is yet some fewes and ruins: and after they had endured many travells and dangers, in the end they came to the Province of *Machucan*, which is as much to say, as a Land of fish, for there is great abundance in goodly great Lakes, where contenting themselves with the situation and temperature of the ground, they refused to stay there. Yet having consulted with their Idoll vpon this point, and finding him vnwilling, they demanded license to leave some of their men to people so good a Land, which he granted, teaching them the means how to doe it, which was, that when the Men and Women should be entred into a goodly Lake called *Pucumaro*, to bathe themselves, those which remained on Land, should flee away all the clothes, and then secretly raise their Campe, and depart without any bruit, the which was effected, and the rest which dreamt not of this device (for the pleasure they tooke in bathing) coming forth and finding themselves spoiled of their garments,

garments, and thus mocked and left by their Companions, they remayed discontented and vexed therewith: so as to make them of the hatred they had conceived against them, they say that they changed their manner of life and their language. At the least it is most certain, that the *Mexicaneans* haue bene alwayes enemies to the *Mexicans*, and therefore they came to congratulate the Marquess *De Valle*, after his victorie obtained when he had conquered *Mexico*.

From *Mexican* to *Mexico*, are about fiftie leagues, and vpon the way is *Malinalco*, where it happened, that complying to their Idoll of a woman that was a notable witch, which came in their company carrying the name of their filer to their god, for that with her wicked artes they did them much harme, pretending by certain means to be worshipped of them as their goddesse: the Idoll spake in a dreame to one of those old men that carried the Arke, commanding him to comfort the people, making them new and great promises, and that they should leave this his filer with her family, being cruell and bad, rayling their Campe at mid-night in great silence, leaving no shew what way they passed. So they did, and the Witch remaining alone with her family in this fort, peopled a Towne which they call *Malinalco*, the Inhabitants whereof, are held for great Sorcerers, being issued from such a mother. The *Mexicans* for that they were greatly diminished by these diuisions, and by the number of sicke and wearied persons, which they had left behinde, meant to repaire themselves, and to stay in a place called *Tula*, which signifies a place of Reedes. There their Idoll commanded them to stop a great River, that it might couer a great Playne, and by the means he taught them, they did murther a little Hill called *Coyote*, making a great Lake, the which they did plant round about with Willows, Elmes, Spines, and other Trees. There began to breede much fish, and many birds came thither: so as it became a very pleasant place. The situation of this place, seeming pleasant vnto them, and being wearied with travell, many talked of peopling there, and to passe no farther: wherewith the Deuill was much displeased, threatening the Priests with death, commanding them to re-turue the River to their course, saying, that he would that night chastise those which had bene disobedient as they had defended. And as to doe ill in proper to the Deuill, and that the diuine Iustice should often suffer kill to be deliuered into the hands of such a Tormentor, that choode him for their god: it chanced that about mid-night they heard a great noise in one part of the Campe, and in the morning going thither, they found those dead that had talked of staying there.

The manner of their death, was, that their stomacks were pierced, and their hearts pulled out. And by that means, this good god taught these poore miserable Creatures, the kindnes of sacrifices that pleased him, which was, in opening the stomack, to pull out the heart, as they haue since practised in their horrible sacrifices. Seeing this punishment, and that the Playne was dried, the Lake being emptied, they asked counsell of their god what to doe, who commanded them to passe on, the which they did by little and little, vntill they came to *Chapulaputsi*, a league from *Mexico*, famous for the pleasantnes thereof. They did forsake themselves in these Mountains, fearing the Nations which inhabited that Country, the which were opposite vnto them, especially for that one named *Coyotl*, sonne to this Sorcerer, left in *Malinalco*, had blamed and spoken ill of the *Mexicans*: for this *Coyotl* by the commandment of his mother, awhile after followed the *Mexicans* course, labouring to incense the *Tapacates*, and other neighbours against them, euen vnto the *Chichimecs*: so as they came with a strong Armie to destroy the *Mexicans*. Coyotl in the meane space stood vpon a little Hill in the middle of a Lake, called *Asclepipe*, attending the destruction of his Enemies, and they by the aduice of their Idoll, went against him, tooke him suddenly, and flue him, carrying his heart to their god, who commanded them to cast it into the Lake, saying that thereof did grow a plant called *Amame*, where since *Mexico* was built. They came to fight with the *Chichimecs* and other Nations, having chosen for their Captaine, a valiant man, called *Uitzilimilli*, who in an encounter, was taken and slaine by the *Chichimecs*. But for all this, they were not discouraged, but fought valiantly: and in despite of their Enemies they brake the squadrons, and carrying their Aged, their Women, and young Children in the middle of their battaile, they passed on to *Atzacanapala*, a Towne of the *Calhuicans*, whom they found solemnizing a Feast, in which place they fortified. The *Chichimecs*, nor the other Nations did not follow them, but grieved to be defeated by so small a number of men; they being in so great multitudes retired to their Townes.

The *Mexicans*, by the aduice of their Idoll, sent their Messengers to the Lord of *Calhuacan*, to demand a place to dwell in, who after he had imparted it to his people, granted them the place of *Tenacapan*, which signifies white waters, to the end they should all perith there, being full of Vipers, Snakes, and other venomous beasts which breed in a Hill nere adjoining. But being perished and taught by their Deuill, they accepted willingly what was offered, and by their deuillish arte, tamed these beasts, so as they did them no harme: yea, they vied them as meate, eating them with delight and appetite. The which the Lord of *Calhuacan* seeing, and that they had killed and fowed the Land, he resolved to recure them into the Cite, and to contraine amitie with them. But the god whom the *Mexicans* did worship (as he was accustomed to do no good, but ill) did vnto his Priests, that this was not the place where he would haue them stay, and that they must go forth making warres. Therefore they must seeke forth a Woman, and name her

Of that which happened in *Malinalco*, Tula, and in *Chapulaputsi*. Chap. 5.

Witch forth.

Deuils proud emulation in punishing disobedience, and teaching murtherous sacrifices.

Chapulaputsi.

Metamorphose.

Atzacanapala.

Of the warres the *Mexicans* had against them of *Calhuacan*, Chapulaputsi, *Tenacapan*.

much effected amongst them, did rise vp, speaking in this manner, *My Sonne, our Lord and King, thou art welcome to this poore Houfe and Cite, amongst these weeds and mud, where I am a Father, Grand-father, and Kinsfolke, endure what is pleases the Lord of things created. Remoue Lord thou comest hither to be the defence and support of the Mexican Nation, and to be the resemblance of our god Xitlaphatz, whereupon the charge and government is giuen thee. Thou knowest we are not in our Country, seeing the Land we possesse at this day is anothers, neither know we what shall become of us to morrow, or another day: Consider therefore, that thou comest not to rest or recreate thy selfe, but rather to induce a new charge vnder so heavy a burden: wherein thou must continually labour, being Iuue to this multitude, which is fallen to thy lot, and to all this neighbour people, whom thou must serue to gratifie, and give them contentment, seeing thou knowest we live vpon their Land, and within their limits. And ending, he repeated these wordes; Thou art welcome, Thou and the Queene our Mistress, to this your Realme. This was the speech of the old man, which with other Orations (which the Mexican Historiies doe celebrate) the Children did vse to learne by heart, and so they were kept by Tradition, some of them defense well to be reported in their proper termes. The King answering, thanked them, and offered them his care and diligence in their defence and aide in all he could. After they gaue him the Oath, and after their manner set the Royall Crowne vpon his head, the which is like to the Crowne of the Dukes of Venice: the name of *Acem-pacalli* their first King, signifies a *handfull of Reedes*, and therefore they carry in their Armouries a hand holding many arrowes of Reedes.*

How Orations
were kept
in minorie.

Crowne and
curation.

Of the strange
use the
Mex. cato payed
to them of
Acem-pacalli
Chap.

Garden in the
water.

How made.

New Phoenix
all times.

Acem-pacalli
died.

The *Mexicans* hapned to well in the election of their new King, that in short time they grew to haue some forme of a Commonweale, and to bee famous among strangers; whereupon their neighbours moued with feare, practised to subdue them, especially the *Tepanecis*, who had *Acem-pacalli* for their Metropolitan Cite, to whom the *Mexicans* payed tribute, as strangers dwelling in their Land. For the King of *Acem-pacalli* fearing their power which increased, fought to oppresse the *Mexicans*, and having consulted with his subiects, he sent to tell King *Acem-pacalli*, that the ordinarie tribute they payed was too little, and that from thenceforth they should bring Firre trees, Sapines, and Willowes for the building of the Cite; and moreover, they should make him a Garden in the water, planted with diuers Kindes of Herbes and Pulses, which they should bring vnto him yearly by water, dried in this manner, without fayling; which if they did not, he declared them his enemies, and would roote them out. The *Mexicans* were much troubled at this commandment, holding it impossible: and that this demand was to no other end, but to seeke occasion to ruine them. But their god *Vitzilpachli* comforted them, appearing that night to an old man, commanding him to say to the King his sonne in his name, that he should make no difficultie to accept of this tribute, he would helpe them and make the meanes easie, which after happened: for the time of tribute being come, the *Mexicans* carried the Trees that were required, and moreover, a Garden made and floating in the water, and in it much *Mays* (which is their Corne) already grayned and in the eare: there was also Indian Pepper, Bettes, *Tomatoes*, which is a great Paye and fauourie graine, *French Pease*, Figs, Gourds, and many other things, all ripe, and in their season. Such as he brought to the Garden in the Lake of *Mexico*, in the middle of the water, will not beleue it, but will say it is an incantment of the Deuill which they worship: But in truth it is a matter to bee done, and there hath bene often fene of these Gardens floating in the water; for they cast earth vpon Reeds and Grasse, in such sort as it neuer waies in the water; they sow and plant this ground, so as the graine growes and ripens very well, and then they remove it from place to place. But it is true, that to make this great Garden easie, and to haue the fruits good well, is a thing that makes men iudge there was the worke of *Vitzilpachli*, whom otherwise they call *Patillas*, specially having neuer made nor sene the like. The King of *Acem-pacalli* wondered much when he saw that accomplished which he held impossible, saying the time of tribute, that this people had a great god that made all easie vnto them, and he said vnto his subiects, that this people had a great god that made all easie vnto them, and he said vnto the *Mexicans*, that seeing their god gaue them all things perfect, he would the yeres following, at the time of tribute, they should hatch their young ones as they should assure, without fayling of a minute, vpon paine of his indignation. The *Mexicans* were much troubled and heauie with this proud and strit command: but their god, as he was accustomed, comforted them in the night, by one of his Priests, saying, that he would take all that charge vpon him, willing them not to feare, but beleue that the day would come, when as the *Acem-pacallis* should pay with their liues this deafe of new Tributes. The time being come, as the *Mexicans* carried all that was demanded of their Gardens, among the Reedes and Weedes of the Garden, they found that a Ducke and a Heron bathing their egges, and at the same instant when they arrived at *Acem-pacalli* their young ones were disclosed. Whereat the King of *Acem-pacalli* wondering beyond measure, hee said againe to his people, that these were more then humane things, and that the *Mexicans* began as if they would make themselves Lords ouer all those Prouinces. Yet did hee not diminish the order of this tribute, and the *Mexicans* finding not themselves mightie enough, endured this subiection and lauerie the space of fiftie yeres. In this time the King *Acem-pacalli* died, having beautified the Cite of *Mexico* with many goodly buildings, streets, Conduits of water,

water, and great abundance of munition. He reigned in peace and rest fortie yeres, having bene alwayes zealous for the good and increase of the Commonweale.

As he drew neere his end, he did one memorable thing, that hauing lawfull children to whom he might leave the succession of the Realme, yet would hee not doe it, but contrariwise hee spake freely to the Common-wealth, that as they had made a free Election of him, so they should freely to the Common-wealth, that as they had made a free Election of him, so they should chiole him that should seeme fittest for their good Government, adding them therein to haue a care to the good of the Common-wealth, and seeming grieued that he left them not freed from Tribute and subiection, he dyed, having recommended his wife and children vnto them, he left all his people forsworn for his death.

§. II.

Of the second King VITZILPACHLI, and of his Successors and their Acts vntill the Reigne of MOTEZYMA their last King.

HE Obsequies of the dead King performed, the Ancients, the chiefe of the Realme, and some part of the people assembled together, to chiole a King, where the Ancients propounded the necessitie wherein they were, and that it was needfull to chiole for chiole of their Cite, a man that had some of *eye*, of *whiteness*, and *Orphan*, and to be a father of the Common-wealth: for in very deed they should be the fathers of his wing, the eye-brides of his eyes, and the heart of his face, that was necessary hee were valiant, being needfull for to vse their forces, as their God had prophesied. Their resolution in the end was to chiole a sonne of the Prodecessor, vnto the like good office in accepting his sonne for Successor, as hee had done to the Common-wealth, relying thereon.

This young man was called *Vitzilpachli*, which significth a rich feather. They set the Royall Crowne vpon his head, and anointed him which they haue bene accustomed to do to all their Kings, with an Ointment they call *Dumme*, being the same vntion wherewith they did anoint their Idoll. Presently an Orator made an eloquent speech, exhorting him to arme himselfe with courage, and free them from the trouble, *flourish* and *warlike* they suffered, being oppressed by the *Acem-pacallis*: which done, all did him homage. This King was not married, and his Council held opinion, that it was good to marry him with the Daughter of the King of *Acem-pacalli*, to haue him a friend by this alliance, and to obtaine some diminution of their heauie burthen of Tributes imposed vpon them, and yet they feared lest he should dislaine to giue them his Daughter, by reason they were his Vassals; yet the King of *Acem-pacalli* yielded thereunto, having hombly required him, who with courteous wordes gaue them his Daughter, called *Ayotlapanalli*, whom they led with great pompe and toy to *Mexico*, and performed the Ceremonies and Solemnities of Marriage, which was to tie a corner of the mans Glucke to a part of the womans Veile, in signe of the band of Marriage. This Queene brought forth a sonne, of whose name they demanded the advice of the King of *Acem-pacalli*, and calling Lots as they had accustomed (being greatly giuen to Southerly iuggs, especially vpon the names of their children) hee would haue his Grand-child called *Chimelpacalli*, which significth *A Target casting smoke*. The Queene his Daughter seeing the contentment the King of *Acem-pacalli* had of his Grand-child, tooke occasion to intreate him to relieve the *Mexicans*, of the heauie burthen of their Tributes, seeing hee had now a Grand-child *Mexican*, the which the King willingly yielded vnto, by the aduice of his Council, granting (for the Tribute which they paid) to bring yearly a couple of Duckes and some fish, in signe of subiection, and that they dwelt in his Land. The *Mexicans* by this meanes remained much eased and content, but it lasted little, For the Queene their Protesitrix died soone after: 50

and the yeres following like wife *Vitzilpachli* the King of *Mexico* died, leaving his sonne *Motemya* tenne yeres old; he reigned thirteene yeres, and died thirteene yeres old, or little more. He was held for a good King, and careful in the seruice of his Gods, whose Images hee held Kings to be; and that the honour due to their God, was done to the King who was his Image. For this cause the Kings haue bene so affectionate to the femite of their Gods. This King was careful to winne the loue of his neighbours, and to traffike with them, whereby he augmented his Cite, exercising his men in Warlike actions in the Lake, disposing them to that which hee pretended, as you shall see presently.

The *Mexicans* for Successor to their deceased King did chiole his sonne *Chimelpacalli*, by common consent, although hee was a child of ten yeres old, being of opinion that it was alwayes necessary to keepe the fauour of the King of *Acem-pacalli*, making his Grand-child King. They then let him in his Throne, giuing him the Ensignes of warre, with a *Bow* and *Arrows* in one hand, and a *Sword* with *Rafers* (which they commonly vse) in the right, significyng thereby

0000 3

Of Chimelpacalli
the third
King, and his
cruell death, &c.
the occasion
of warre which
the *Mexicans*
(as made, Chap. 11.)

**Ceremonies
of defiance.**

Of the battaile
the *Mexicans*
gaue to the
Tapanecans, and
of the victorie
they obtained.
Chap. 13.

The Bataille.

Mexicans con-
quer.

Division of spoyle.

purpose, yet could be not obtain any, but that he should use his best skill: with this he returned to *Adaxay*, giving his words to the guards to return. And although the King of *Atacapan* desired peace, being of a mild disposition, yet his Subjects did so incite him, as his answer was open warre. The which being heard by the Messenger, he did all his King commanded him, declaring by this ceremony, to give armor, and announcing the King with the vocation of *Atacapan* to the King of *Atacapan*, who being kneeling ended all, the King of *Atacapan* suffering himselfe to be anointed and crowned with Feathers, and giving good armes to his Subjects, he returned to his King, and his Subjects, who were all in the same manner in recompence to the Messenger, wishing him not to returne by the Pallace gate, but to attempt to cut him in peeces, but to goe out secretly by a little false Portinne that was open in one of the Courts of the Pallace. This young man did so, and turning by secret waies, got away in safetie in sight of the Guards, and there debred them, saying, *Tapanecans* and *Azcapotzalans*, you see your *office* *is*, *understand* *you* *shall* *all* *doe* *well*, *and* *not* *one* *Tapanecan* *shall* *remaine* *alive*. In the mean time he was going to the King, and his Subjects, who were all in the same manner: and seeing many more of them come running, he retired himselfe gallantly to the Citie, where he brought news, that warre was proclaimed with the *Tapanecans*, and that he had defied their King.

The defeke being knowne to the Commons of *Mexico*, they came to the King, according to their accustomed cowardice, demanding leave to depart the Citie, holding their ruine certaine. The King did comfort and incourage them, promising to giue them libertie if they vanquished their enemies, willing them not to feare. The people replied, *And if we are vanquished, what shall we doe?* If we be overcome, (answered the King) we will be bound presently to payde our selves into your hands to suffer death, *each one self in your dshes and beneuolence of vs.* It shall be so thin (ye say) if you lose the victorie, and if you obtaine the victorie, we doe presently offer our selves to be your Tributaries, to labour in your busines, to sowe your grounds, to carrie your armies and baggage, when you goe to the warres for ether, use and our dependants after vs. These conditions made betwixt the People and the Nobilitie (which they did after fully peruse, either willingly or by constraint, as they had promised) the King named for his Captaine-General *Tlaxcelte*: the whole Campe was put in order, and into quarters, giuing the places of Capitaines to the most valiant of his kinfolkes, which they did make them tooo fully perceive, whereby he did greatly incourage them, and now well prepared, charging all his men to be ready, and to be ready to the most valiant and hardie, to give the first charge with him, and that all the rest should remaine with the King *Texcala*, vntill they should fee the first assault their enemies. Marching then in order, they were discouered by some of *Acapulco*, who presently came stoutly forth the Citie, carrying great riches of Gold, Silver, and Armes of great value, as those which had the Emperre of all that Countrie. *Texcala* gave the signal to battaile, with a little Drumme he carried on his shoulders, and presently they raised a generall shout, crying, *Mexico, Mexico*, they charged the *Tapanacans*, and although they were farr more in number, yet did they defeat them, and force them to retire into their Citie, then advanced they which remained behinde, crying *Tlaxcala, Viceroy, Viceroy*, all suddenly entered the Citie, where (by the Kings commandment) they pardoned not any map, no not old men, women, nor children, for they flew them all, and spoiled the Citie being very rich. And not content herewith, they followed them that fled, and were retired into the craggie rocks of the *Sierre* or neere Mountains, striking and making a great slaughter of them. The *Tapanacans* being retired to a Mountaine next to the Mountains of *Acapulco*, they demanded their lues, and offering to fene to *Texcala*, to giue them all the Lands and Gardens, Stone, Lime and Timber, and other things, which they desired, vpon this condition *Tlaxcelte* retired his men, and he himself created the battaile, granting them their lues vpon the former conditions, which they did solemnely sweare. Then they returned to *Acapulco*, and so forth assembled the Nobilitie and the People, to whom he laid open the accord the Commons had made, demanding of them, if they were content to perfitt therein: the Commons made answer, that they had promised, and they had well defamed it, and therefore they were content to fene them perpetually. Whereupon they took an oath, which since they have kept without contradiction.

contradiction. The *Spanish* are united to *Azcapotzalco* (by the advice of his Council) he divided all the Lands and Goods of the conquered among the conquerors, the chiefest part fell to the King, then to *Tlacahuel*, and after to the rest of the Nobles, as they best deserved in the Bataille. They also gave Land to some Plebeians, having first made them their own servants. They appointed Lands in common for the Priests of *Mexico*, to tye one his part, for the Service and Sacrifices of their Gods. This was the order which afterwards they always kept, in the division of the Lands and spoils of those they had vanquished and subdued. By this manner they they *Spanish* were able to keep their Kingdom, and they laid the foundation of their Empire. *Cortez* took their Kingdom from them, and they lay to power to shew any other than him of *Mexico*.

Although

[illegible][illegible]

The day following, the King *Ixcoult* went vnto the Citie of *Suchimiles*, causing himselfe to

Not his pier-
ced.

They pierced his nostrils, and for an ornament put an Emerald therein: and for this reason, in the Mexican Books, this King is noted by his nostrils pierced. Hee differed much from his Father and Predecessor, being noted for a coward, and not valiant. He went to make warre for his Coronation, in a Province that had rebelled, where hee lost more of his owne men then hee tooke captiues: yet he returned saying, that he brought the number of captiues required for the Sacrifice of his Coronation, and so hee was crowned with great solemnitie. But the Mexicans disconcerted to haue a King so little disposed to warre, persuaded to hasten his death by poison. For this cause he continued not above foure yeeres in the Kingdom. But this kinde was well repaired by a Brother of the deceased, who was also sonneto great *Axtayacatl*, called *Axtayacatl*, who was likewise chosen by the aduice of *Tlatalelles*, wherein hee happened better then before.

Now was *Tlatalelles* very old, who by reason of his age, was carried in a chaire vpon mens shoulders, to assist in counsell when businesse required. In the end hee fell sicke, when as the King his Father, and the Father of his Country, *Tlatalelles* did most affectionately recommend his children vnto him, especially the eldest, who had shewed himselfe valiant in the former warres. The King promised to haue regard vnto him, and the more to comfort the old man, in his presence hee gaue him the charge and ensignes of Captaine Generall, with all the preeminences of his Father; wherewith the old man remained so well satisfied, as with this content he ended his dayes.

The Mexican King his Funerall as the Founder of that Empire, more sumptuous and stately, then they had done to any of their former Kings. And presently after *Axtayacatl* (to appease the sorrow which all the people of Mexico shewed for the death of their Captaine) resolved to make the voyage necessary for his Coronation. Hee therefore led his Arme with great expedition into the Province of *Tlaxcala*, two hundred leagues from Mexico, where hee gaue battell to a mighty Army, and an infinite number of men assembled together, as well out of that Province, as from their Neighbours, to oppose themselves against the Mexicans. The first of his Campe that advanced himselfe, to the combat was the King himselfe, defying his enemies, from whom hee made them to flye when they charged him, vntill hee had drawne them into an Ambuscado, where many Souldiers lay hidden vnder straw, who suddenly issued forth, and they which fled, turned head: so as they of *Tlaxcala* remayned in the midst of them, whom they charged furiously, making a great slaughter of them: and following their victorie, they razed their Citie and Temple, punishing all their Neighbours rigorously. Then went they on farther, and without any stay, conquered to *Guatemala*, the which is a Port at this day well knowne in the South Sea. *Axtayacatl* returned to Mexico with great and rich spoiles, where hee was honourably crowned, with sumptuous and stately preparation of Sacrifices, Tributes, and other things, wherewith many came to see his Coronation. The Kings of Mexico received the Crowne from the hands of the King of *Tlaxcala*, who had the preeminence. Hee made many other Enterprises, where hee obtained great victories, being alwayes the first to leade the Arme, and to charge the enemy; by the which hee purchased the name of a most valiant Captaine: and not content to subdue strangers, hee also suppressed his Subjects which had rebelled, which neuer any of his Predecessors euer could doe, or durst attempt. Wee haue already shewed how some fonditions of Mexico had diuided themselves from the Common-weale, and built a Citie neere vnto them, which they called *Tlatelulco*, whereto now Saint Iago is.

These being reconciled, held a faction apart, and increased a multiplied much, refusing to acknowledge the Kings of Mexico, nor to yield them obedience. The King *Axtayacatl* sent to aduise them, not to lye diuided, but being of one blood, and one people, to ioyne together, and acknowledge the King of Mexico: wherupon the Lord of *Tlatelulco* made an answer full of pride and disdain, defying the King of Mexico, to single combat with himselfe: and presently mustred his men, commanding some of them to hide themselves in the weeds of the Lake; and the better to deceiue the Mexicans, hee commanded them to take the shapen of Raues, Greets, and other Beasts, as Frogs, and such like, suppling by this means to surprize the Mexicans as they should passe by the wayes and cawies of the Lake. Having knowledge of this deite, and of his Aduersaries policy, hee diuided his Arme, giuing a part to his Generall, the sonneto of *Tlatalelles*, commanding him to charge this Ambuscado, in the Lake; and hee with the rest of his people, by an unfrequented way, went and incamped before *Tlatelulco*. Presently hee called him who had defied him, to performe his promise, and as the two Lords of Mexico, and *Tlatelulco* advanced, they commanded their Subjects not to moue, vntill they had seene who should bee Conquerour, which was done, and presently the two Lords encountered valiantly, where hauing fought long, in the end the Lord of *Tlatelulco* was forced to turne his backe, being vnable to endure the furious charge of the King of Mexico. Those of *Tlatelulco* seeing their Captaine feyly faint, and fled likewise, but the Mexicans following them at the heeles, charged them furiously; yet the Lord of *Tlatelulco* escaped not the hands of *Axtayacatl* for thinking to save himselfe, hee fled to the top of the Temple, but *Axtayacatl* followed him so neere, as hee leized on him with great

Royall com-
bats.

great force, and threw him from the top to the bottome, and after set fire on the Temple, and the Citie.

Whilst this passed at *Tlatelulco*, the Mexican Generall was very hote in the revenge of thos that persecuted and tormented him by policie, and after hee had forced them to yield, and to cry mercy, the Generall said he would not pardon them, vntill they had first performed the Offices of those figures they represented, and therefore hee would haue them cry like Frogs and Raues, every one according to the figure which hee had undertaken, else they had no compassion: which thing hee did to mocke them with their owne policie. Feare and Necessitie bee perfect Teachers, so as they did sing and cry with all the differences of voices that were commanded them, to save their liues, although they were much grieved at the sport their enemies made at them. They say that vnto this day, the Mexicans vie to jall at the *Tlatelulco*, which they beare impatiently, when they put them in minde of this singing and crying of beasts. King *Axtayacatl* tooke pleasure at this toorne and display, and presently after they returned to Mexico with great joy. This King was esteemed for one of the best that had commanded in Mexico. Hee reigned eleven yeeres.

Among the foure Electors that had power to choose whom they pleased to be King, there was one ended with many perfections, named *Axtayacatl*. This man was chosen by the rest, and this election was very pleasing to all the people: for besides that hee was valiant, all held him courteous and affable to euery man, which is one of the chiefe qualities required in them that command, to purchase loue and respect. To celebrate the Feast of his Coronation, hee refused to make a Voyage, and to punish the pride of those of *Quauacatlan*, a very rich and plentiful Province, and at this day the chiefe of New Spain. They had robbed his Officers and Stewards, that carried the Tributes to the Mexican and Mexicanall were rebeld. There was great difficulty to reduce this Nation to obedience, lying in such sort, as an arme of the Sea kept the Mexicans passage: to passe the which *Axtayacatl* (with a strange deuice and industry) caused an Island to be made in the water, of faggots, earth, and other matter; by means whereof, both hee and his men might passe to the enemies; where giuing them battell, hee conquered them, and punished them at his pleasure. Then returned he vnto Mexico in triumph, and with great riches, to be crowned King, according to their custom: *Axtayacatl* extended the limits of his Kingdom farre, by many Conquests, euen vnto *Guatemala*, which is three hundred leagues from Mexico. Hee was no lesse liberall then valiant: for when as the Tributes brought in such (as I haue said) came in great abundance, hee was content of his Palace, gathering together all the people into one place, then commanded hee to bring all the Tributes, which hee diuided amongst his Nobles. To the poor hee gaue Suffice to make them apparel, and meate, and what they had need of in great abundance, and shings of value, as Gold, Silver, Jewels, and Beaters, were diuided amongst the Captaines, Souldiers, and Seruants of his House according to euery mans merit. This *Axtayacatl* was likewise a great Politician, hee pulled downe the houses ill built, and built others very sumptuous.

It seemed vnto him that the Citie of Mexico had too little water, and that the Lake was very muddy, and therefore hee resolved to let in a great course of water, which they of *Cuyoan* vied. For this cause hee called the chiefe man of the Citie vnto him, being a famous Sorcerer, hauing propounded his meaning vnto him: the Sorcerer wished him to be well satisfied what hee did, being a matter of great difficulty, and that hee understood, if hee drew the River out of her ordinary course, making it passe to Mexico, hee would drown the Citie. The King supposed these excales were but to frustrate the effect of his Designe, being therefore in choler, hee dismissed him home, and a few dayes after hee sent a Prouost to *Cuyoan*, to take this Sorcerer: who hauing vnderstanding for what intent the Kings Officers came, hee called them to enter his house, and then hee presented himselfe vnto them in the forme of a terrible Eagle, wherewith the Prouost and his companions being terrified, they returned without taking him. *Axtayacatl* intended herewith to touch others, to whom hee presented himselfe in forme of a furious Tigre, so as they durst not touch him. The third came, and they found him in the forme of a horrible Serpent, whereto they were much afraid. The King moued the more with these doings, sent to tell them of *Cuyoan*, that if they brought not the Sorcerer bound vnto him, hee would razed their Citie. For feare whereof, or whether it were of his owne free will, or being forced by the people, hee suffered himselfe to be led to the King, who presently caused him to be strangled, and then then did hee put his resolution in practice, forcing a channell whereby the water might passe to Mexico, whereby hee brought a great course of water into the Lake, which they brought with great Ceremonies and Superstitions, hauing Priests casting incense along the banks, others incensed Quiles, and with the blood of them sprinkled the channell banks, others sounding of Cornets, accompanied the water with their Musick. One of the chiefe went attired in a habit like to their Goddiffe of the water, and all fluted her, saying, that the water was come. All which things are painted in the Annalls of Mexico: which Booke is now at Rome in the holy Library, or Vatican, where a Father of our Company, that was come from Mexico, did see it, and other Histories, the which hee did expound to the Keeper of his Holinesse Library,

Tlatelulco
fired.

Of the deeds
of Axtayacatl,
the eighth King
of Mexico. Chap. 9
The Picture
story call him
Tlatalelles.

Famous Sor-
cerer, or Indian
Priest.

Mexico An-
nals in the
Vatican.

[illegible]

It chanced that *Mary Magdalene* reigned many yeeres in great prosperitie, and forsooke vp in his conceit, as he caufed himselfe to be serued and feared, yea to be worshipped as a God, that the Almighty Lord began to chastise him, and also to admonish him, suffering euen the very Deuils whom he worshipped, to tell him these heauy tydings of the ruine of his Kingdome, and to torment him by Visions, which had neuer bene seene; wherewith hee remained in melancholy and troubled, as he was void of judgement.

[illegible][illegible]

which is here
witnessed in
the Bible, while
Gods justice
and his know-
ledge is mani-
fested in the
punish-
ments which
punish the
unbelieving
people
of the world.
The
A.C. Sect
by

At the same time there appeared in the Element of great darkness and
of Pyramide, which began to appear at midnight, and went still mounting until the Sunne
rising in the morning, where it layed at the South, and then vanished away. It throwed it
self in this fort the space of a whole yeere, and euer as it appeared the people call forth great
cries as they were acclimated, believing it was a prodge of great misfortune. It happened also
that in the night there was no light, nor no light in the day, nor no light in the night, nor
lay any lightning or thunders: whereupon the Guard of the fort, and the people running
with water, but nothing could help, for it was all consumed; and they lay the night
to come forth of pieces of timber, which kindled more by the water that was crafpen in
it, there was a Concer scene in the day time, running from the West to the East, calling
after the number of sparkles, and they lay the forme was like to a long taylor, having
three heads.

CHAP. 4. §. 2. Prodigious Foul. Laborers vision. Spaniards arrival certified by picture. 102

two men in pain, which said sometimes, *O my children, the time of your affliction is come: and*
otherwise it is laid, O my children, whether shall I carry you there perih, one sister? Toet appeared
 likewise many Monifors with two heads, which being carried before the King, suddenly
 vanished. There were two that exceeded all other Monifors, being very strange; the one was
 the Fishers of the Lake took a Bird as big as a Crane; and of the same colour, but of a
 strange and vntene forme. They carried it to *Admetus*, who at that time was in the palace
 of feares and mourning, which was all hang'd with blacke; for as be had many Pillores for his
 recreation, so had he also others for times of affliction, where with he was then heauily charged
 and tormented, by reason of the threatnings his gods had giuen him by these forerowell aduer-
 titements. The Fishers came about noon telling this Bird before him, which had on the top
 of his head a thing bright and transparent, in forme of a Looking-glas, wherein he did be-
 hold a warlike Nation coming first in the East, and fighting with all the world. He called his
 vntes and Astrologers, who after long time, there was a great number, they hauing seen these things
 not able to yeeld any reason of what was demanded of them, the Bird vanished away, so as it
 neuer more came to be seen: whereupon *Admetus* remained very heauy and sorrowfull. The other
 which happened, was a Laborer, who had the report of a very honest man; he came vnto him,
 telling him, that being the day before at his worke, a great Eagle flew towards him, and took
 him vp in his talents, without hurting him; carrying him into a certaine Cave, where it left
 him: The Eagle pronouncing these words, *Woe mihty Lord; I haue brought him whom thou*

*He bowed commanded me: This Indian Laborer looked about on every side, to whom he spake, but he saw no man. Then he heard a voice which said unto him; I dooft: thou dost know this man, who thou feell'ing vpon the ground? and looking thence, he perceived a man to lye very heavy all-people, with royl enignes, bowes in his hand; and a staffe of perfumes burning, as they are accustomed to vie in that Country: whom the Laborer beholding, knew it was the great King *Motacuma*, and answered perceiving: Great Lord, this befolding me King *Motacuma* the voice said againe, *Thou sayst true, bebold thou, and bebold mee like thyselfe, the voice said of the great mischiefes which are prepared for him. It is now time that he pay the great number of sinners which he hath done to God, and that he receive the punishment of his synnes, and great paine, and yet thou seest how careless he lye, he plays in his own sinners, and without any feeling, thus to be, and thou thyself the better for mee, take the life of perfumes: he holds burning in his hand, and put it to his face, thus he thus finde him without feeling. The poore laborer durst not approach neere him, nor doe as he was commanded, for the great feare they all had of the King. But the voice said, *Have no feare, for I am without compare greater than this King: thus he drave him, and defend him, and the King where I command thee.* Whereupon the Laborer tooke the life of perfumes out of the Kings hand, and put it burning to his nose, but he moued not, and so he was a while feeling. This done, the voice said unto him, that feeling he had found the King, he should be wise, and he should say, and tell him what he had done. The King *Eagle eye*, the father of the countrey, tooke the man by the shoulders, and first in the same place where he found him; and for accomplishment of that which he had spoken, he came to aduertise him. They say, that *Motacuma* looking on his face, found that he was burnt, the which he had not felt: till then; wherewith he continued exceeding heauie and troubled.**

Of the newest
Moteczuma re-
ceived of the
Spaniards arti-
ual in his Coun-
try, and of the
Ambassage he
sent them,
Chap. 24.

Relation of
writing by P^r.
Aurea.

Effects of superfluous legends.

Cortes wishes
divine worship
agreeing more
with his coun-
ter designs
then Christian
religion, which
thured there
according to
these begin-
nings.

Exegimus vero
Laudis.

Needs must
they goe where
Deuill dwines.

Procan fluite.

Of the Spani-
ards entrie in
to Mexico,
Chap. 5.

with rich presents, to congratulate his coming, saying, they knew well that their great Lord *Quetzalcoatl* was come, and that his servant *Motezuma* sent to visit him, for so he accounted himselfe. The Spaniards vnderstood this message by the means of *Marina*, an Indian woman, whom they brought with them which vnderstood the Mexican tongue. *Fernando de Cortes* finding this a good occasion for his entrie, commanded to decke his Chamber richly, and being set in great state and pompe, he caused the Ambassadors to enter, who omitted no shewes of humilitie, but to worship him as their god.

They deliuered their charge, saying, that his servant *Motezuma* sent to visit him, and that he held the Country in his names as Lieutenant, that he knew well it was the *Teptacan* which had beene promised them many yeeres since, who should returne againe vnto them. And therefore they brought by him such Garments as he was wont to weare, when he did conuerse amongst them, beseeching him to accept willingly of them, offering him many presents of great value. *Cortes* receiving the presents, answered, that he was the same they spake of, wherewith they were greatly satisfied, feeing themselves to be courteously received and intreated by him. To conclude, the day after this Ambassage, all the Captaines and Commanders of the Fleet, came vnto the Admirall, where vnderstanding the matter, and that this Realme of *Motezuma* was mighty and rich: it seemed fit to gaine the reputation of braue and valiant men among this people, and that by this means (although they were few) they should be feared and received into *Mexico*. To this end they discharged all their Artillery from their Shippes, which being a thing the Indians had neuer heard of, they were amazed, as if heauen had fallen vpon them. Then the Spaniards beganne to decke them to fight with them: but the Indians not daring to hazard themselves, they did beate them and intreate them ill, fliewing their Swords, Lances, Petticoats, and other armes, wherewith they did terrifie them much. The poore Indians were by reason hereof so fearefull and amazed, as they changed their opinion, saying, that their Lord *Teptacan* came not in this troupe, but they were false gods (their enemies) came to destroy them. When as the Ambassadors returned to *Mexico*, *Motezuma* was in the house of audience; but before he would heare them, this miserable man commanded a great number of men to be sacrificed in his presence, and with their blood to sprinkle the Ambassadors (supposing by this ceremony) which they were accustomed to doe in (tolerate Ambassadors) to receive a good answer. But vnderstanding the report and information of the manner of their Shippes, Men, and Armes, he flood perplexed and confounded: then taking counsel thereon, he found no better means, then to labo- 30
r to stop the entrie of these strangers, by Coniurations and Magicke Arts. They had accustomed often to use this means, hauing great conference with the Deuill, by whole helpe they sometimes obtained strange effects. They therefore assembled together all the Sorcerers, Magicians, and Inchanters, who being persequed by *Motezuma*, theyooke it in charge to force this people to returne vnto their Country. For this consideration, they went to a certaine place which they thought fit for the imocation of their Deuils, and practising their Arts (a thing worthy of consideration) They wrought all they could; but seeing nothing could preuaile against the *Christians*, they went to the King, telling him that they were more then men, for that nothing might hurt them, notwithstanding all their Coniurations and Inchantments. Then *Motezuma* 40
made a second helpe of another policie, that fasting to the very well contented with their coming, he commanded all his Countries to leue these lifeles gods that were come into his Land. The whole people was in great heauinesse and amazement, and often neuer came that the Spaniards inquired for the King, of his manner of life, of his house and means. He was exceedingly vexed herewith: some of the people and other Negromancers aduiled him to hide himselfe, offering to place him whereso no creature should euer finde him. This seemed base vnto him, and therefore he refused to attende them, although it were dying. In the end he left his Houses and royall Pallaces to lodge in others, leaving them for their gods as he said.

I pretend not to intreate of the acts and deedes of the Spaniards, who conquered New Spaine, 50
nor the strange aduentures which happened vnto them, nor of the courage and inuincible valour of their Captaine *Don Fernando Cortes*: for that there are many Histories and Relations thereof, as those which *Fernando Cortes* himselfe did write to the Emperor *Charles the first*, although they be in a plaine stile, and farre from arrogancy, the which doe giue a sufficient testimony of what did passe, wherein he was worthy of eternall memory, but only to accomplish my intention: I am to relate what the Indians report of this action, the which hath not to this day beene written in our vulgar tongue. *Motezuma* therefore, hauing notice of this Captains victories, that he aduanced for his conquest, that he was confederate and ioyed with them of *Tlascalla*, his capital enemies, and that he had seuerely punished them of *Cholula* his friends, he studied how to deceiue him, or else to try him in sending a principall man vnto him, attyred with the lake ornaments and royall enignes, the which should take vpon him to be *Motezuma*, which 60
fiction being discovered to the Marquise by them of *Tlascalla* (who did accompany him) he sent him backe, after a mild and gentle reprehension, in seeking fo to deceiue him: wherupon *Motezuma* was so confounded, that for the feare thereof he returned to his first imaginations

and practises, to force the *Christians* to retire, by the imocation of Coniurers and Witchel. And therefore he assembled a greater number then before, cheateing them, that if they returned without effecting what he had giuen them in charge, no man should effect, wherunto they all promised to obey. And for this cause, all the Deuils offered them to the way of *Cholula*, by the which the Spaniards should passe, when mounting to the top of a hill, *Tescapupa*, one of their principall gods, appeared vnto them, as coming from the Spaniards campe, on the haire of *Cholula*, who had his paps bound about eight fold with a cord of reedes, he came like it from beside himselfe, out of his wits, and drunke with rage and furie. Being come to this troupe of Witchel and Coniurers, he stayed and spake to them in great choller, *Why come you hither? what doth Mo-* 10
tezuma pretend to doe by your meanes? He had aduiled himselfe too late for it is now determined, that his Kingdom and honour shall be taken from him, with all that he possideth, for punishment of the great tyrannies he hath committed against his Subjects, hauing gouerned not like a Lord, but like a traitor and tyrant. The Inchanters and Coniurers hearing these words, knew it was their Idoll and humbling themselves before him, they presently built him an Altar of Stone in the same place, con- 20
sisting with flowers which they gathered thereabouts, but he contrariwise, making no account of these things, began againe to chide them, saying, *Why come you hither to doe, O ye traitors? Returne presently and behold Mexico to behold it, they did see it flaming on fire.* Then the Deuill vanished away, and they not daring to passe any farther, gave notice thereof to *Motezuma*, whereto he remained long without speaking, looking heauily on the ground; then he said, 30
What shall we doe if god, and our friends leave vs, and contrariwise, they helpe and fauour our enemies? I am now reuelance, and we ought all to resolve in this point, that happen what may, we must not flye nor hide our faces, or shew any signe of cowardise. I easily patie the aged and infirme, who haue neither force nor hands to defend themselves. Hauing spoken this, he held his peace, being transpor-
ted into an extasie. In the end, the Marquise approaching to *Mexico*, *Motezuma* refused to take of necessity a vantage, going three or foure leagues out of the Citie to receive him with a great maine, carried upon the shoulders of foure Noblemen, vnder a rich Canopy of Gold and Feathers. When they met, *Motezuma* defended, and flattered one another very courteously. *Don Fernando Cortes* said vnto him, that he should not care for any thing, and that he came not 40
to take away his Realme, nor to diminish his authority. *Motezuma* lodged *Cortes*, and his companions in his royall Palace, the which was very stately, and he himselfe lodged in other private houses. This night the Souldiers for ioy discharged their Artillery, wherewith the Indians were much troubled, being vnaccustomed to heare such Musicke. The day following, *Cortes* caused *Motezuma* and all the Nobles of his Court to assemble in a great Hall, where being set in a high Chaire, he said vnto them, that he was seruant to a great Prince, who had sent him into these Countries to doe good worke, and that hauing found them of *Tlascalla* to be his friends 50
(who complained of wrongs and grieuances done vnto them daily by them of *Mexico*) he would vnderstand which of them was in the blame, and reconcile them, that hereafter they might no more afflict and warre one against another; and in the meane time, he and his brethren (which were the Spaniards) would remaine still there without hurting them: but contrariwise, they would helpe them all they could. He laboured to make them all vnderstand this discourse, vying his Interpreters and truchmen. The which being vnderstood by the King and the other Mexican Lords, they were wonderfully well satisfied, and shewed great signes of loue to *Cortes*, and his company. So it is, that by some occasions, many complaints, grieues, and ialousies grew on ei-
ther party. The which *Cortes* finding, & that the Indians mindes began to be distracted from them, he thought it necessary to assure himselfe, in laying hand vpon King *Motezuma*, who was seized on, and his legges fettered. Truly this act was strange vnto all men, and like vnto that other of his, to haue burnt his Shippes, and shut himselfe in the midst of his enemies, there to vanquish or to dye. The mischief was, that by reason of the vnexpected arriuall of *Pamphilo Narvaez* at the true crosse, drawing the Country into mutiny, *Cortes* was forced to absent himselfe from 60
Mexico, and to leaue poore *Motezuma* in the hands of his companions, who wanted discretion nor had not moderation like vnto him: so as they grew to that diffension, as there was no means to pacifie it.

When as *Cortes* was absent from *Mexico*, that he remained his Lieutenant, resolved to punish the Mexicans seuerely, causing a great number of the Nobilitie to beaine at a maske, which they made in the Palace, the which did so farre exceed, as all the people mutined, and in a furious rage, tooke Armes to be reuenged and to kill the Spaniards. They therefore besieged them in the Palace, pressing them so neere, that all the hurt the Spaniards could doe them with their Artillery and Crosse-bowes, might not terrifie them, nor force them to retire from their enter-
prise, where they continued many dayes, stopping their vituals, not suffering any one to enter or issue forth. They did fight with stones, and cast Darts after their manner, with a kind of Lances like vnto Arrows, in the which there are foure or six very sharpe Razors, the which are 60
such (as the Histories report) that in these warres, an Indian with one blow of their Razors, all-
molt cut off the necke of a Horse, and as they did one day fight with this resolution and furie,

Tescapupa a
Deuill-god.

Good fighting
in troubled
waters.

Cortes his two
strange ac-
tempts.

Of the death
of *Motezuma*,
and the Spani-
ards departing
out of Mexico,
Chap. 5.

Indian armies
the

Idol worship
rise the same
to all their i-
dols with words
different.
Lovers as Ro-
pish mediators
of intercession.
Adoration
h d then me
of ad and i
kling the
hand with
bowing or the
body Rec. See
Jain. 4.
Job 31.

Of the Idolat-
ry the Indians
use on partic-
ular things.
Chap. 5.

to be the same wherewith he hath deceived the *Greeks* and *Romans*, and other ancient *Gentiles*, giving them to understand that the noble creatures, the *Sunne*, *Moon*, *Stars*, and *Elements*, had power and authority to doe good or harme to men. Their manner to pray to *Idols*, to the *Sunne*, the *Stars*, and the rest of their Idols, was to open their hands, and to make a certaine sound with their mouths like people that kissed; and to aske that which every one desired in offering his Sacrifices; yet was there great difference betwixt the words they used in speaking to the great *Tecuacacua*, to whom they did attribute the chief power and commandment over all things; and those they used to others, the which every one did worshipping privately in his house, as Gods or particular *Earth*, saying, that they were their Intercessors to this great *Tecuacacua*. This manner of worship, opening the hands, and as it were *"kissing"*, hath something like to that which *Job* had in horror, as he for Idolaters, saying, *If I have kissed my hands much my mouth, be- holding the Sunne when it shineth, or the Moon when it is light, the which is a great iniquity, and to deny the most great God.*

The Devil hath not beene contented to make these blinde *Indians* to worshipping the *Sunne*, *Moon*, *Stars*, *Earth*, and *Sea*, and many other general things in nature but he hath paid on further, giving them to God, and making them subiect to bale and shewd things, and for the most part, both and infamous: for they worshipped *Emers*, *Fountains*, the *members of Rivers*, *entrances of Mountains*, *Rocks* or great *Stones*, *Hills*, and *Mountains*, which they call *Apachitas*, and they hold them for matters of great devotion. To conclude, they did worship all things in nature, which seemed to them remarkable and different from the rest, acknowledging some particular deity.

These held me in *Caxamalca* of *Nasca* a little hill or great mount of Sand, which was the chiefest Idoll or *Gueza* of the *Ancients*. I demanded of them what divinity they found in it: They answered, that they did worship it for the wonder, being a very high mount of Sand, in the midst of very thicke Mountains of Stone. We had neede in the Citie of *Kings*, of great store of great wood; for the melting of a Bell, and therefore they cut downe a great deformed Tree, which for the greatness and antiquity thereof had bene a long time the Oratore and *Gueza* of the *Indians*. And they beleeved there was a certaine Divinity in any thing that was 30 extraordinary and strange in his kinde, attributing the like unto small Stones and Minerals: yea unto rootes and fruites of the earth, as the rootes they call *Papa*. There is a strange kinde which they call *Lakulama*, which they kissed and worshipped. They did likewise worship Beares, Lyons, Tygres and Snakes, to thend they should not hurt them: and such as their gods be, such are the things they offer unto them in their worship. They have used as they goe by the way, to cast, in the crocke ways, on the hills, and toppes of Mountains, which they call *Apachitas*, *old bones*, *Feathers*, and *Coca* chewed, being an herbe they use much. And when they have nothing left, they call a *Stone* as an offering, that they might pray freely, and have greater force, the which they say is necessary by this means, as it is reported in a provinciall Councell of *Peru*. And therefore they finde in the *ways* great waies of *Stones* offered, and in the *ways* of the *Indians*. They vied another offering no lesse pleasant and ridiculous, pulling the haire from the eyebrows to offer it to the *Sunne*, *Hills*, *Apachitas*, to the *Windes*, or to any other thing they feare. Such is the misery that many *Indians* have liued in, and doe to this day, whom the Devil doth abuse like very Babes, with any foolish illusion whatsoever.

They report of one of the *Kings Inga*, a man of a subtle spirit, who (seeing that all his predecessors had worshipped the *Sunne*) said, that he did not take the *Sunne* to be God, neither could he be, for that God was a great Lord, who with great quiet and leisure performed his workes, and that the *Sunne* doth never cease his course, saying, that the thing which laboured for much could not seeme to be God.

They came to the height of Idolatry by the same meanes the Scripture maketh mention of: 50 first they had a care to keep the bodies of their Kings and Noblemen whole, from any illuent or corruption above two hundred yeeres. In this sort were their Kings *Inga* in *Cusco*, every one in his Chappell and Oratory, so as the Marquesse of *Canete* being Viceroy, to root out Idolatry, caused three or foure of their Gods to be drawne out and carried to the Citie of *Kings*, which bred a great admiration, to see these bodies (dead many yeeres before) remayne so faire and alive whole. Every one of these Kings *Inga* left all his Treasure and Revenues, to entertaine the place of worship where his body was laid, and there were many Ministers with all his Family dedicated to his service: for no King Successor did vspage the Treasurer and Place of his Predecessor, but he did gather all new for himselfe, and his Palace. They were not content with this Idolatry to dead bodies, but also they made their figures and representations: and every King in his life time caused a figure to be made wherein he was represented, which they called *Guaguas*, which signifieth *Brethren*, for that they should doe to this Image, during his life and death, as much honour and reverence as to himselfe. They carried this Image to the warres, and 60 so procession for *raies* or *faire weather*, making sundry Feasts and Sacrifices unto them. There have beene

Caillimiffa
pachapa.

Of another
kinde of Idolat-
ry vpon the
d-d-chap. 6.
p. 1044.

been many of these Idols in *Cusco*, and in that Territory, but now they say that this Superstition of worshipping of stones hath altogether ceased, or for the most part, after they had bene discovered by the diligence of the Licentiate *Pello*, and the first was that of the *Inga* *Rocha*, chief of the faction or race of *Huano Capac*. And we find that among other Nations they had in great estimation and reverence the bodies of their Predecessors, and did likewise worship their Images.

The *Indians* of *Peru* beleeved commonly that the Soules liued after this life, and that the good were in glorie, and the bad in paine; so as there is little difficultie to persuade them of these Articles. But they are not yet come to the knowledge of that point, that the bodies should rise with the Soules. And therefore they did vse a wonderful care, as it is said, to preserve the bodies which they honoured after death: to this end their Successors gave them Garments, and made Sacrifices unto them, especially the Kings *Inga*, being accompanied at their Funerals, with a great number of servants and women for his service in the other life: and therefore on the day of his decease, they did put to death the woman he had loved best, his Servants and Officers, that they might serve him in the other life.

When as the *Guanoapa* (yea) (who was father to *Atahualpa*, at what time the *Spaniards* entered) they put to death above a thousand persons of all ages and conditions, for his licence to accompany him in the other life, after many fonges and drunkenness he flew them; and these 10 that were appointed to death, held themselves happy. They did sacrifice many things unto them, especially *yong children*, and with the blood they made a stroake on the dead mans face, from one eare to the other. This superstition and inhumanity, to kill both men and women, to accompany and serve the dead in the other life, hath bene followed by others, and is at this day vied amongst some other barbarous Nations. And as *Pello* writes, it hath bene in a manner general throughout all the *Indies*. The reuerent *Beda* reports, that before the *Englishmen* were 150 vied amongst the *Gospeil*, they had the same custome, to kill men to accompany and serve the dead. It is written of a *Portugall*, who being captiue among the *Barbarians*, had bene hurt with a dart, so as he lost one eye, and as they would have sacrificed him to accompany a Nobleman that was dead, he said unto them, that those that were in the other life, would make small account of the dead, if they gave him a blinde man for a companion; and that it were better to give him an attendant that had both his eyes. This reason being found good by the *Barbarians*, they let him goe. Besides this superstition of sacrificing men to the dead, being vied to great Personages, there is another faire more generall and common in all the *Indies*, which is, to set meate and drinke vpon the grave of the dead, imagining that it feeds thereon: the which hath likewise bene an error among the *Americans*, as Saint *Ambrose* writes, and therefore they gave them meate and drinke. At this day many *Indian* Infidels do secretly draw their dead out of the Churchyard, and bury them on hills, or vpon passages of Mountains, or elsie in their owne houses. They have also vied to put Gold and Silver in their mouth, hands, and bofomes, and to apparel them with new Garments durable, and well lined with 40 herie. They beleeve that the Soules of the dead wandred vp and downe and indure cold, thirst, hunger and trauel, and for this cause they make their annuities, carrying them clothes, meate and drinke.

Having reported what many Nations of *Peru* have done with their dead, it shall not be from the purpose, to make particular mention of the *Mexicans* in this point, whose mortuaries were much solemnized and full of notable follies. It was the office of the Priests and religious of *Mexico* (who liued there with a strange obsequance, as shall be said hereafter) to interre the dead, and doe their obsequies. The places where they buried them, was in their Gardens, and in the Courts of their owne houses: others carried them to the places of sacrifices which were 50 done in the Mountains: others burnt them, and after buried the ashes in their Temples; and they buried them all, with whatsoever they had, of Apparell, Stones and Jewels. They did put the ashes of such as were burnt into pots, and with them, the Jewels, Stones, and Ear-rings of the dead, how rich and precious soeuer, they did sing the Funerall offices, like to answers, and did often life vp the dead bodies, doing many ceremonies. At these mortuaries they did eate and drinke; and if it were a person of quality, they gave apparell to all such as came to the interment. When any one dyed, they hid him open in a chamber, untill that all his kind-folks and friends were come, whereupon he presents vnto the dead, and saluted him as if he were liuing. And if he were a King or Lord of some towne, they offered him flutes to put to death 60 with him to the end they might serve him in the other world. They likewise put to death his Priest, or Counsailler (for every Nobleman had a Priest) which administered their ceremonies within his house) and then they killed him, that he might execute his office with the dead. They likewise killed his Cook, his Butler, his Dwarfes, and deformed men, by whom he was most trusted; neither did they spare the very brothers of the dead, who had most served them for it was a greatness amongst the Noblemen, to be served by their brethren and the rest. Finally, they

Of Superstitions
they vied to
the dead.
Chap. 7.
Immortality of
soules beleeved
but not resurre-
ction of the
bodies: as
at 17.

1000. Indians to
attend one
dead man.

Superstitions
of the old
Indies.
Portugall writes

Purgatory
lies as in Po-
pish legends.

Of manner
of burying the
dead among
the *Mexicans*
and sundry
of their Nations.
Chap. 8.
Places of bur-
iall.

Chaplen and
other Officers
killed.

put to death all of his traine, for the entertaining of his house in the other world: and left poverty should oppresse them, they buried with them much wealth, as Gold, Silver, Stones, Curtins of exquisite worke, Bracelets of Gold, and other rich peeces. And if they burned the dead, they vfed the like with all his Seruants, and ornaments they gave him for the other world. Thenooke they all the almes they buried with very great solemnity. The obsequies continued tenne dayes with songs of plaint and lamentations, and the Priests carried away the dead with so many ceremonies, and in great number, as they could scarce accompanie the dead with so many ceremonies. They were in great troopes and marks of honour, according to their enterprizes and valor in the wars and governments for this effect they had armes and particular blasons. They carried these marks or blasons to the place where he desired to be buried or burnt, marching before the body, and accompanying it, as it were in procession, where the Priests and officers of the Temple went with diuers furnitures and ornaments, some casting incense, others singing, and some sounding of mournfull Flutes and Drums, which did much increase the sorrow of his kinfolkes and familie. The Priest who did the office was decked with the markes of the Idoll which the Noblemen had represented; for all Noblemen did represent Idols, and carried the name of some one; and for this occasion they were esteemed and honored. The order of Knight-hood did commonly carry these different marks. He that should be burnt, being brought to the place appointed, they inuironed him with wood of Pine trees, and all his baggage, then they fire vnto it, increasing it fill with goomie wood, vntill that all were converted into ashes, then came these forth a Priest attired like a Deuil, hauing mouthes vpon euery ioynt of him, and many eyes of glasse, holding a great staffe, with the which he did mingle all the ashes very boldly, and with so terrible gesture, as he terrified all the assistants. Sometimes this Minister had other difference in his attire, according to the quality of the dead.

The fourth and last kinde of Idollary the Indians vfed, especially the Mexicans to I-mages and I-dols, they Images the fourth kinde of Indian Idols.

There last besta great curiousey at the Idollary in making of Idols and Pictures of diuers formes and matters, which they worshipped for Gods; and in Peru they called them *Guanac*, being commonly of foule and deformed beastes, at the least, such as I haue forme, were so. I beque verily that the Deuill, in whose honour they made these Idols, was pleased to cause himselfe to be worshipped in these deformities, and in truth it was found so, that the Deuill spake and answered many of these *Guanac* or Idols, and his Priests and Ministers came to these Oracles of the father of lies, and such as heis, such were his Counsels and Prophecies. In the Provinces of New Spaine, Mexico, Tefuco, Tlafcala, Cholula, and in the neighbour Countries to this Realme, this kinde of Idollary hath beene more practised than in any other Realme of the world. And in a prodigious thing to heare the superstitions rehearsed that they haue vfed in that point, of the which it shall not be vnplesant to speake something. The chiefe Idoll of Mexico was, as I haue said, *Tefuco*, he was an image of wood like to a man, fer vpon a stoole of the color of azure, in a beaurd or lirtre, at euery corner was a piece of wood in forme of a Serpents head. The stoole signified that he was fit in heauen: this Idoll had all the forehead Azure, and had a band of Azure vnder the nose from one eare to another: vpon his head he had a rich plume of Feathers, like to the beake of a small Bird, the which was couered on the top with Gold burnished very browne: he had in his left hand a white Target, with the figure of four fine Apples, made of white Feathers, like a croce: and from aboute issued forth a crell of gold, and at his sides he had foure darts, which the Mexicans say had bene sent from heauen to doe those acts and prodiges which shall be spoken of. In his right hand he had an Azure staffe, in fashion of a wauning Snake. All these ornaments with the selfe had, carueth thus (since as the Mexicans doe shew the name of *Tefuco* signifieth the left hand of a flying Feather.

I will speake hereafter of the proud Temple, the Sacrifices, Feasts and Ceremonies of this great Idoll, being very notable things. But at this present we will onely shew, what this Idoll thus richly appareled and deckt, was set vpon a high Altar, in a small peece or boxe, well couered with linnen clothes, Jewels, Feathers, and ornaments of Gold, with many roundes of Feathers; the fairest and most exquisite that could be found: he had alwaies a curtaine before him for the greater reuerence, lying to the chamber or chappell of this Idoll, there was a peece of lisse worke, and not so well beautified, where there was another Idoll, they called *Tlalca*. These two Idols were alwaies together, for that they liued them as companions, and of equal power. There was another Idoll in Mexico much esteemed, which was the god of repentance, and of *Tlalca* and *Tefuco* for their sinnes. They called this Idoll *Tefuco*, he was made of a blacke shining stone like to *Isop*, being attired with some Gentile deuils after their manner; it had earerings of gold and silver, and through the necker a small canon of Chriftall, in length halfe a foote: in the which they sometimes put a greene feather, and sometimes an azure, which made it resemble sometimes an Emerald, and sometimes a Turquois: he had the haire broided and bound vp with a haire lace of Gold burnished, at the end whereof did hang aneace of gold, with two firebrands of smoke painted therein, which did signify the prayers of the afflicted and sinners that he heard, when they recomended themselves vnto him, because the two eares hangd a number of small herons. He had a Iewell hanging at his necke, so greene that it covered all his stomacke: vpon his armes bracelets of Gold, at his nauiel a rich greene stone; and in his left hand a Fanne

The Deuils Fanne misty.

Raine of precious Feathers, of Greene, Azure, and Yellow, which came forth of a Looking-glasse of Gold, shining and well burnished, and that signified, that within this Looking-glasse he saw whatsoeuer was done in the world. They called this Glasse or Chiffon of gold *Tefuco*, which chaifienise he glasse for to look in. In his right hand he held four darts, which signified the chastisement he gave to the wicked for their sinnes. And therefore they feared this Idoll most, least he should discouer their faults and offences. At his feet they had pardon of their sinnes, which was made euery foure yeares, as shall be declared hereafter. They held this Idoll *Tefuco* for the god of drought, of famine, barrenesse and pestilence: And therefore they painted him in another forme, being set in great maiesty vpon a stoole compassed in with a red Curtaine, and wrought with the heads and bones of dead men. In the left hand it had a Target with five Pines, like vnto pine Apples of Cotton: and in the right a little darte with threatening countenance, and the arme strecher out, as if he would cast it; and from the Target came foure darts: It had the countenance of an angry man, and in choller, the body all painted the blacke, and the head full of Chagles feathers. They vfed great superstition to this Idoll, for the feare they had of it. In Cholula which is a Commonwealthe of Mexico, they worshipt a famous Idoll which was the god of Marchandise, being to this day greatly giuen to traffike. They called it *Quetzacoatl*.

Their Nemesis

Peru makes this difference betweene Religion and Superstition. Quetzacoatl was worshipt as a demoniacal spirit.

This Idoll was in a great place in a Temple very high: it had about it, Gold, Silver, Jewels, very rich Feathers, and habits of diuers colours. It had the forme of a man, but the visage of a little Bird, with the bill and above acombe full of warts, hauing rankes of teeth, and the tongue hanging out. It carried vpon the head a pointed myter of painted paper, a little in the hand, and many toyces of gold on the legges; with for that he enriched whom he pleased, as *Almon* and *Placitas*. In truth this name which the Chaldeans gave to their god, was very fit, although they vnderstood it not: they called it *Quetzacoatl*, signifying colour of a red Feather, for such is the Jewell of countenellie. These barbarous people contented not themselves to haue gods onely, but they had goddesse also, as the Fables of Poets haue brought in, and the blinde gentility of the Greekes and Romans worshipt them. The chiefe goddesse they worshipt was called *Tlalca*, which was to say our Grandmother, who as the Historiies of Mexico report, was daughter to the King of the Mexicans, who was the first they slayed by the commandement of *Tefuco*, whom they sacrificed in this sort, being his sister and then they began to slay men in their sacrifices, and to clothe the liuing with the skins of the sacrificed, hauing learned that their gods were pleased thereof, who pulled as also to pull the hearts out of them they sacrificed, which they learned of their god, who pulled out the hearts of such as he punished in *Tlalca*, as shall be said in this place. One of these goddesse they worshipt had a son, who was a great hunter, whom they of *Tlafcala* afterwards tooke for a god and thole were enemies to the Mexicans, by whole side the Spaniards won Mexico. The Province of *Tlafcala* is very fit for hunting, and the people are much giuen therunto. They therefore made a great fast vnto this Idoll, whom they painted of such a forme, as it is not now needfull to say in the description thereof. The feast they made was pleasant, and in this full to loose any time in the description thereof. They taught their children that they all assembled for: They found a Trumpet at the brake of day, at the found whereof they all assembled for their Bowes, Arrows, Spears, and other instruments for hunting: then they went in procession with their Idoll, being followed by a great number of people to a high Mountaine, vpon the top whereof they had made a bowser of leanes, and in the middle thereof an Altar richly deckt, where vpon they placed the Idoll. They marched with a great truit of Trumpets, Cornets, Flutes & Drums, and being come vnto the place, they inuironed this Mountaine on all sides, putting fire to it on all parts: by means whereof many beaues flew forth, as Stags, Conies, Hares, Jacks, and other beasts, which they followed after Foxes, and Woolles, which went to the top flying from the fire. These hunters followed after Foxes, and Woolles, which went to the top flying from the fire. These hunters followed after Foxes, and Woolles, which went to the top flying from the fire. These hunters followed after Foxes, and Woolles, which went to the top flying from the fire.

Goddesse.

See former Chap.

They then fled with a number of beaues, in so great a peffe, that they leaped one vpon another, vnto the people, and vpon the Altar, wherein they tooke great delight. Thenooke they a great number of these beaues, and sacrificed them before the Idoll, as Stages and other great beaues, pulling out their hearts as they vfe in the sacrifice of men, and with the like ceremony: which done, they took all then preyon their shoulders, and retired with their Idoll in the same manner as they came, and entered the City laden with all these things, very ioyfull, with great store of musick, a banquet to all the people; and after dinner they made their plays, representations, and dances after the Idoll. They had a great number of other Idols, of gods and goddesse; but the chiefe were of the Mexican Nation, and the neighbour people as it said.

They fled out to cite and drinke and to play.

As we haue said that the Kings *Incas* of Peru caused Images to be made to their likenesse, which they called their *Guanac* or *Idols*, causing them for to be honored like themselves: even so the Mexicans haue done of their gods, which was in this sort. They tooke a captive, such as they thought good, & afore they did sacrifice vnto him their Idollary they gave him the name of

Of a strange manner of Idollary practised among the Mexicans. Ch. 10.

the Idoll, to whom he should be sacrificed, and apparelled him with the same ornaments like their Idoll, saying, that he did repretent the same Idoll. And during the time that this representation lasted, which was for a year in some Feasts, in others six months, and in others less: they reuerenced and worshipped him in the same manner, as the proper Idoll, and in the same time he did eat, drinke, and was merry. When he went through the streets, the people came forth to worship him, and every one brought him an almes, with children and sickle folks, that he might cure them, and blesse them, suffering him to doe all things at his pleasure, only he was accompanied with ten or twelve men left he should vye. And he (to the end he might be reuerenced as he passed) sometimes sounded vpon a small Flute, that the people might prepare to worship him. The feast being come, and he gronesat, they killed him, and ate to him, making a Solemn sacrifice of him. It folloves that we treat of their Religion, or rather Superstition, which they vie in their Sacrifices, Temples, Ceremonies, and the rest.

That which God by his wisdom hath decreed for his honour and service, and for the good and health of man, the Deuill strives to imitate and to pervert, to be honored, and to cause man to be damned: for as we see the great God hath Sacrifices, Priests, Sacraments, Religious Prophets, and Ministers, dedicated to his diuine Service and holy ceremonies: so the Deuill hath his Sacrifices, Priests, his kinds of Sacraments, his Ministers appointed, his seduced and fained holiness, with a thousand sorts of false Prophets.

Beginning then with their Temples, such as the great God would have a house dedicated to his service; his holy name might be honoured, and that it should be particularly vowed to his worship; even to the Deuill, by his wicked practices, persuaded Indians to build him proud Temples, and particular Oratories and Sanctuaries. In every Province of Peru, there was one principal *Gwica*, or house of adoration; and besides it, there was one General throughout all the Kingdoms of the *Inguas*; among the which there hath beene two famous and notable, the one which they called *Pachamama*, is foure leagues from Lima, where at this day they see the mines of a most ancient and great building, out of the which *Francis Pizarre* and his people drew infinite treasure, of vessels and pots of Gold and Silver, which they brought when they took the *Inga* of *Atahualpa*. There are certain memories and discourses which say, that in this Temple the Deuill did speak vnto, and gave answers by his Oracle, and that sometimes 30 that they did see a spotted Snake: and it was a thing very common and approved at the *Indies*, that the Deuill spake and answered in these false Sanctuaries deceiving this miserable people. But where the Gospel is entered, and the Crosse of Christ planted, the father of lyes becomes mute, as *Plinius* writes of his time, *Cur cessauerit Prius fudere oracula*: and *Inigne Martyr* treats amply of the silence which Christ imposed to Deuils, which spake by Idols, as it had beene before much prophesied in the holy Scripture. The manner which the Infidell Ministers and Inchanters had to confute with their Idoll, and to went being their bodies and head, after an vgly manner, and so they consulted with him. The answer he made, was commonly like vnto a fearful hissing, or to a grulling which did terrifie them; and all that he did aduise or command them, was but the way to their perdition and ruine. There are few of these Oracles found now, through the mercy of God, and great power of Iesus Christ. There hath beene in Peru another Temple and Oratory, most esteemed, which was in the Citie of *Cusco*, where at this day is the Monastery of *Saint Dominick*. We may see it hath beene a goodly and a stately worke, by the pavement and stones of the building, which remaine to this day. This Temple was like to the *Parthenon* of the *Romans*, for that it was the house and dwelling of all the gods; for the Kings *Inguas* did there behold the gods of all the Nations and Provinces they had conquered, every Idoll hauing his priuate place, whether they of that Province came to worship it with an excofine charge of things which they brought for his seruice, And thereby they supposed to keepe safely in obedience, those Provinces which they had conquered, holding their gods, as it were in hostage. In this same house was the *Pachayacha*, which signifies the *Creator of Heaven*. They say, that at the spoile of this so rich a Temple, a Soldier had for his part this goodly place of gold the Sunne. And as play was then in quest, he lost it all in one night at play, whence came the proverbe they haue in Peru for great gamesters, saying, that they play the Sunne before it is rifed.

The Superstitions of the *Mexicans*, haue without comparison beene greater then the rest, as well in their ceremonies, as in the greatness of their Temples, the which in time the *Spaniards* called by this word *Ch*, which word might be taken from the Islanders of *Saint Dominick*, or of *Cuba*, as many other words that are in vye, the which are neither from *Spain*, 60

Of the proud
T-les at
Necropolis.

nor from any other language now viall among the *Indians*, as is *Maya*, *Chica*, *Yagmeco*, *Chapaton*, and other like. There was in Mexico, this *Ch*, the famous Temple of *Uitzilpachti*, it had a very great circuit, and within a faire Court. It was built of great stones, in fashion of Snakes tyed one to another, and the circuit was called *Cauapachti*, which is, a circuit of Snakes: vpon the top of every Chamber and Oratory where the Idols were, was a fine Pillar wrought with small stones, blacke as iast, set in goodly order, the ground rayed vp with white and red, which below gave a great light. Vpon the top of the Pillar were battlements very artificially made, wrought like Snakes, supported by two *Indians* of stone, sitting, holding Candle-sticks in their hands, the which were like Croissants garnished and enriched at the ends, with yellow and Greene 10 feathers and long fringes of the same. Within the circuit of this Court, there were many Chambers of religious men, and others that were appointed for the seruice of the Priests and *Papas*, for they call the fouraine Priests which fence the Idoll. This Court is so great and spacious, as was eight or ten thousand persons did dance easily in round, holding hands, the which was an viall culture in that Realme, although it seeme to many incredible.

There were foure Gates or Entries, at the East, West, North, and South; at every one of these Gates began a faire Cawley of two or three leagues long. There was in the midst of the Lake where the Citie of Mexico is built, foure large Cawleys in crosse, which did much beautifie it; vpon every Portall or Entry, was a God or Idoll, hauing the visage turned to the Cawley, right against the Temple gate of *Uitzilpachti*. There were thirtie steps of thirtie fathom long, and they diuided from the circuit of the Court by a street that went betwixt them; vpon the top of these steps there was a walke of thirtie foot broad, all playsterd with shalke, in the midst of which walke was a Pallisado artificially made of very high Trees, planted in order as if some one from another. These Trees were very bigge, and all pierced with small holes from the foote to the top, and there were rods did run from one Tree to another, to the which were chayned or tyed many dead mens heads. Vpon every rod were twentie Skulls, and these ranks of Skulls continue from the foote to the top of the Tree. This Pallisado was full of dead mens Skulls from one end to the other, the which was a wonderfull mournfull sight and full of horror. These were the heads of such as had beene sacrificed; for after they were dead, and had eaten the flesh, the head was deliuered to the Ministers of the Temple, which tyed them in this sort vntill they 30 fell off by morsels; and then had they a cue to see them in their places. Vpon the top of the Temple were two Stones or Chappels; and in them the Idols, which I haue spoken of, *Uitzilpachti*, and his companion *Tlaliti*. These Chappels were carved and graven very artificially, and so high, that to ascend vnto it, there was a steepe of sixscore steps. Before these Chambers or Chappels there was a Court of foure foot square in the midst whereof, was a high stone of foure hand breadth, pointed in fashion of a Pyramide, it was placed there for the sacrificing of men; for being laid on their backs, it made their bodies to bend, and so they did open them and pull out their hearts, as I shall hereafter. There were in the Citie of Mexico, eight or nine other Temples, the which were ioyned one to another within one great circuit, and had their priate Scayres, their Chambers, and their Dortoirs. The entries of 40 these were to the East, some to the West, others to the South, and some to the North. All these Temples were curiously wrought, and compassed in with diuers forts of Battlements and Pictures, with many figures of stones, being accompanied and fortified with great and Large Spikes or Plat-forms. They were dedicated to diuers gods; but next to the Temple of *Uitzilpachti*, was that of *Tzotzilpaca*, which was the god of Penance and of Punishments, very high and well built.

There were four steps to ascend on the top was a Flat or Table of sixscore foot broad, and ioyning vnto it was a Hall hanged with Tapistrie and Curtins of diuers colours and workes. The Doore thereof being low and large, was alwayes covered with a vail, and none but the Priests might enter in. All this Temple was beautified with diuers Images and Pictures most curiously; 50 for that these two Temples were as the *Cathedral Churches*; and the rest in respect of them as *Parishes* and *Hermities*; they were so spacious, and had so many Chambers, that there were in them places for the Ministers, Colleges, Schooles, and Houses for Priests, whereof wee will intreat hereafter.

The Deuill counterfeiting the vice of the Church of God, hath placed in the order of his Priests, some greater or superiours, and some lesse, the one as *Acletes*, the other as *Leuites*, and that which hath made me most to wonder, was, that the Deuill would vturpe to himselfe the seruice of God; yea, and vnto the same name for the *Mexicans* in their ancient tongue call their high Priests *Papas*, as they should say *Sometime Bishops*, as it appeares now by their Histories. The Priests of *Uitzilpachti* succeeded by Linages of certaine quarters of the Citie, deputed for that 60 purpose, and those of other Idols came by election, or being offered to the Temple in their infancy. The daily exercise of the Priests was to cast Incense on the Idols, which was done foure times in the space of a natural day. The first at breakes of day, the second at noone, the third at Sunne setting, and the fourth at mid-night. At mid-night all the chiefe officers of the Temple did rise, and in stead of Bells, they sounded a long time vpon Trumpets, Cornets, and Flutes

Of the Priests
and their
offices ch. 14.
The Deuill
had his Popes
or Vicars at
Mexico for the
new World, as
at Rome for the
old, and now
for both.
Mid-night:
Mossins.

themselves out the foulders with certayne stones. This blind Nation, by the perswasion of the Deuill, did transport themselves into craggy Mountaynes, where sometimes they sacrificed themselves, calling themselves downe from some high Rocks.

Of the Sacrifices made to the Deuill, & whereof Chap. 8. Sacrifices of things infinitely. Sacrifices of beasts.

We may draw all the Sacrifices the Infidels vse into three kindes, one of infinite things; another of beasts, and the third of men. They did vse in *Pera* to sacrifice *Coca*, which is an hearse they esteeme much, of *Mays*, which is their Wheate, of coloured feathers, and of *Chaguira*, which otherwise they call *Melle*, of shels or Oysters, and some time Gold and Silver, being in figures of little beasts. Also of the fine stufte of *Cumby*, of carued and sweet wood, and most commonly Tallow burnt. They made these Offerings or Sacrifices for a prosperous winde, and faire weather, or for their health, and to be deliuered from some dangers like Robbers, the which the *Indians* eat commonly. And in matters of importance, or when they were rich men, they did offer *Faces*, or *Indian* heepe, bare, or with Woolle, obsequiously the numbers, colours, and times. The manner of killing their Sacrifices, great or small, which the *Indians* did vse according to their ancient Ceremonies, is the same the *Mexicans* vse at this day, the which they call *Alpulle*, hanging the beast by the right fore-legge, turning his eyes towards the Sunne, speaking certayne words, according to the qualitie of the Sacrifice they slue: for if it were of colour, their words were directed to *Chiquila*, and to the Thunder, that they might want no water: if it were white and smooth, they did offer it to the Sunne with certayne words: if it had a face, they did likewise offer it him with some others, that he might shine vpon them, and fauour their generation: If it were a *Chonaca*, which is gray, they directed their sacrifice to *Uranocha*. In *Cufes* they did euery yeare kill and sacrifice with this Ceremony, a thorne sheepe to the Sunne, and did burne it, clad in a red Wolfe-coate, and when they did burne it, they cait certayne small baskets of *Coca* into the fire, which they call *Uiciorana*; for which Sacrifice, they have both men and beasts appointed which serue to no other vse, they did likewise sacrifice small Birds, although it were not so vsual in *Pera* as in *Mexico*, where the sacrificing of Quales was very ordinary. Those of *Pera* did sacrifice the Birds of *Pana*, (for so they call the Defeat when they should goe to the Warres, for to weaken the forces of their aduersaries *Guaica*.) They called these Sacrifices *Cusconica*, or *Conterica*, or *Huallanca*, or *Sophanica*, and they did it in this manner: they tooke many kinds of small Birds of the Defeat, and gathered a great deale of a thorny wood, which they call *Tanili*, the which being kindled, they gathered together their small Birds. This assembly they called *Quico*, then did they cait them into the fire, about the which the Officers of the Sacrifice went with certayne round stones carued, whereon were painted many Snakes, Lions, Teades, and Tygres, uttering this word *P. Iachum*, which signifies, *Let the victorie be giuen vnto vs*, with other words, whereby they ayd the forces of their enemies *Guaica* were confounded. And they drew forth certayne blacke sheepe, which had beene kept close some dayes without meate, the which they called *Pera*, and in killing them they spake these words: As the hearts of these beasts be weakened, so let our enemies be weakened. And if they found in these sheepe that a certayne piece of fish behind the heat were not consumed by fasting and close keeping, they then held it for an ill Augure. They also brought certayne blacke Dogges, which they call *Apuraca*, and did slue them, casting them into a Playne, with certayne Ceremonies, calling some kinde of men to eat this flesh, the which Sacrifices they did, lest the *Yaguas* should be hurt by payson: and for this cause they fasted from morning vntill the starres were vp, and then they did glut and desire themselves like to the *Moorcs*. This Sacrifice was most fit for them to withstand their enemies Gods: and although at this day a great part of these customes haue ceased, shewarres being ended, yet remaynes there some Reliques, by reason of the priuate or generall quarrels of the *Indians*, or the *Caciques*, or in their Cities. They did likewise offer and sacrifice shels of the Sea, the which they call *Melle*, and they offered them to the Fountaynes and Springs, saying, that these shels were daughters of the Sea, the mother of all waters. They gaue vnto these shels sundry names, according to the colour, and also they vse them to diuers ends. They vied them in a manner in all kinde of Sacrifices, and yet to this day they put beates shels in their *Chica*, for a superstition. Finally, they thought it convenient to offer Sacrifices of euery thing they did low or raise vp. There were *Indians* appointed to doe these Sacrifices to the Fountayne, Springs, and Rivers which passed through the Townes, or by the their *Charcas*, which are their Farmes, which they did after Seed time, that they might not cease running, but alwayes water their grounds. The Sorcerers did conuise, to knowe what time the Sacrifice should be made, which being ended, they did gather of the contribution of the people, what should be sacrificed, which being ended, they did gather of these Sacrifices. They made them in the beginning of Winter, at such time as had the Fountaynes, Springs, and Rivers, did increase by the snowflutes of the weather, which they did attribute to their Sacrifices. They did not sacrifice to the Fountaynes and Springs of the Defeat. To this day continues the respect they had to Fountaynes, Springs, Pooles, Brookes, or Rivers, which passe by their Cities or *Charcas*, euen vnto the Fountaynes and Rivers of the Defeat. They haue a speciall regard and reuerence to the meeting of two Rivers, and there they

Sacrifices of Birds.

Blacke sheepe.

Artificiall Blacke Dogge.

Fasting till stars appeared.

Shel-offerings.

they wash themselves for their health, annoynting themselves first with the flower of *Mays*, or some other things, adding thereunto diuers Ceremonies, the which they doe likewise in their Bathes.

The most pittifull dissembler of this poore people, is their deuery vnto the Deuill, sacrificing men vnto him, which are the Images of God. In many Nations they had vied to kill (to accompany the dead, as hath beene declared) such persons as had beene agreeable vnto him, and whom they imagined might best serue him in the other World. Besides this, they vied in *Pera*, to sacrifice young children of foure or fixe yeeres olde vnto ten: and the greatest part of these Sacrifices were for the affaires that did import the *Ingua*, as in sicknelle for his health: and when he went to the warres for victory, or when they gaue the wreathie to their new *Ingua*, which is the mark of a King, as here the *Scripter* and the *Chronicle* be. In this Solemnitie they sacrificed the number of two hundred children, from foure to ten yeeres of age, which were a shell and inhumane spectacle. The manner of the Sacrifice was to drowne them and bury them with certayne representations and ceremonies: sometimes they cut off their heales annoynting themselves with the blood from one eare to another.

Of the Sacrifices they made of men, Chap. 9.

Two hundred children sacrificed.

They did likewise sacrifice Virgins, some of them that were brought to the *Ingua* from the Monasteries, as hath beene said. In this case there was a very great and generall abill: If any *Indian* qualified, or of the common sort, were sicke, and that the Diuine told him confidently that he should dye, they did then sacrifice his *owne sonne* to the Sunne, or to *Viracocha*, desiring them to be furnished with him, and that they would not deprive the father of life. This custome is like to that the holy Scripture speaks of, which the King of *Mach* vied in sacrificing his first-born Sonne vpon the wall, in the sight of all *Israel*, to whom this seemed so mournfull, as they would not preile him any further, but returned to their houles.

Particulae.

Although they of *Pera* haue surpased the *Mexicans* in the laughter and Sacrifice of their Children (for I haue not read nor vnderstood that the *Mexicans* vied any such Sacrifices) yet they of *Mexico* haue exceeded them, yea all the Nations of the World, in the great number of men which they had sacrificed, and in the horrible manner thereof. And to the end we may see the great misery wherein the Deuill holds this blind Nation, I will relate particularly the custome and inhumane manner which they haue observed: First the men they did sacrifice were taken in the warres, neyther did they vse these holme Sacrifices but of Captiues: so as it seemes therein they haue followed the custome of the Ancients. For as some Authours say, they called the Sacrifice *Uictima*, for this reason, because it was of a conquered thing; they also called it *Hestia quasi ad hoste*, for that it was an Offering made of their enemies, although they haue applied this word to all kinds of Sacrifices. In truth the *Mexicans* did not sacrifice any to their Idols, but Captiues, and the ordinary warres they made, was only to haue Captiues for their Sacrifices; and therefore when they did fight, they laboured to take their enemies alive, and not to kill them, to enioy their Sacrifices. And this was the reason which *Moteczuma* gaue to the *Marquis de Val*, when he asked of him, why being so mightie, and hauing conquered so many Kingdomes, he had not subdued the Province of *Tlafcala*, which was to be neerer to *Tezcuacan* and himselfe him, than for two reasons he had not conquered that Province, although it had his ease, if he would haue undertaken it: the one was for the exercise of the youth of *Mexico*, lest they should fall into idleness and delight: the other and the chief cause why hee had refused this Province, was to haue Captiues for the Sacrifices of their Gods. The manner they vied in these Sacrifices, was, they assembled within the Pallisadoe of dead men skulls (as hath beene said) such as should be sacrificed, vnder a certayne Ceremony at the foot of the Pallisadoe, placing a great guard about them. Presently there steept forth a Priest, attyred with a short Surplice full of talles beneath, who came from the top of the Temple with an Idol made of Pale of Wheate and Mays mingled with Honey, which had the eyes made of the graines of Greene glasse, and the teeth of the graines of Mays, he descended the steps of the Temple with all the speed he could, and mounted on a great stone planted vpon a high Terrasse in the midst of the Court. This stone was called *Quauicalli*, which is to say, the stone of Eagle, whereon he mounted by a little Ladder, which was in the fore-part of the Terrasse, and descended by another staire on the other side, still embracing his Idol. Then did he mount to the place where those were that should be sacrificed, throwing this Idol to euery one in particular, saying vnto them: *thus is your God*. And hauing ended his w, he descended by the other side of the staires, and all such as should dye, went in procession vnto the place where they should be sacrificed, where they found the Ministers ready for that Office. The ordinary manner of sacrificing was, to open the stomake of him that was sacrificed, and hauing pulled out his heart half alive, they tumbled the man downe the staires of the Temple, which were all imbrowed and defiled with blood: And to make it the more plaine, fixe Sacrificers being appointed to this dignitie, came into the place of Sacrifice, foure to hold the hands and feet of him that should be sacrificed, the fifth to hold his head, and the sixth to open his stomake, and to pull out the heart of the sacrificed. They called them *Chalcab*.

Of the horrible Sacrifices of men which the *Mexicans* vied. Chap. 10.

Captiues only sacrificed. Virgins & youths.

Manner of this sacrifice (imposed) sacrificing.

Bloudie Rites.

chalm, which in our Tongue is as much, as the Ministers of holy things. It was a high dignitie, and much esteemed amongst them, wherein they did inherite and succeeded in a Fee-simple. The Minister who had the Office to kill, which was the last amongst them, was esteemed and honoured as the *Souueraine Priest* and *Bishop*, whose name was different, according to the difference of times and Solemnities. Their habits were likewise diuers when they came forth to the Sacrifice, according to the diuersitie of times. The name of their chiefe dignitie was *Pope* and *Tepealin*, their Habite and Robe was a Red Cartyane after the *Dalmatike* fashion, with tallels belowe a Crowne of rich Feathers, greene, white, and yellow vpon his head, and at his eares like pendants of Gold, wherein were set greene stones, and vnder the lip vpon the middell of the beard he had a Pece like vnto a small Canon of an aured Stone. These Sacrificers came with their faces and hands coloured with a shining blacke. The other six had their haire much curled, and fastened vpp with Laces of Leather, bound about the middell of the head; vpon their forehead they carried small Roundels of Paper painted with diuers colours, and they wore their forehead in a *Dalmatike* Robe of white, wrought with blacke. With this attyre they represented the very figure of the Deuill, so as it did strike feare and terror into all the people, to see them come forth with so horrible a representation. The Souueraine Priest carried a great Knife in his hand, of a large and sharpe flint: another Priest carried a collar of wood wrought in forme of a Snake: All six put themselves in order, ioyning to this Pyramidall stone, wherof I haue spoken, being directly against the doore of the Chappell of their Idoll. This stone was so pointed, as the man which was to be sacrificed, being laid thereon, vpon his backe, did bend in such sort, as letting the Knife butt fall vpon his stomack it opened very easily in the middell. When the Sacrificers were thus in order, they drew forth such as had beene taken in warre, which were to be sacrificed at that Feast, and being accompanied with a guard of men all naked, they caused them to mount vpon the large stairst in ranke, to the place where the Ministers were prepared: and as every one of them came in their order, the six Sacrificers tooke the Prisoner, one by one force, another by the other, and one by one hand, another by the other, calling on his backe vpon this pointed stone, where the fist of these Ministers put the collar of wood about his necke, and the High Priest opened his stomack with the Knife, with a strange dexterite and nimbleness, pulling out his heart with his hands, the which he shewed smoking vnto the Sunne, to whom he did offer this heate and fume of the heart, and presently he turned towards the Idoll and did cast the heart at this face, then did they call away the body of the sacrificed, tumbling it downe the stairst of the Temple, the stone being set so neere the stairst, as there were not two footes space betwixt the stone and the first step, so as with one purne with their foote, they cast the bodie from the top to the bottom. In this sort one after one they did sacrifice all those that were appointed. Being thus flaine, and their bodies cast downe, their Masters, or such as had taken them, went to take them vp, and carried them away: then hauing diuided them amongst them, they did eate them, celebrating their Feast and Solemnitie. There were euer fortie or fiftie at the least thus sacrificed, for that they had men very expert in taking them. The neighbour Nations did the like, imitating the *Mexicans* in the Customes and Ceremonies of the Service of their Gods.

There was another kind of Sacrifice which they made in diuers feasts, which they call *Caacaxtli*, which is as much as the *Feast of men*. They call it so, for that in some Feasts they tooke one or more flaves, as they pleased, and after they had flayed him, they with that skinn apparelled a man appointed to that end. This man went dancing and leaping thorow all the houles and Market places of the Citie, every one being forced to offer something vnto him: and if any one flayed, he would strike him ouer the face with a corner of the skin, desiling him with the congealed blood. This inuention continued vntill the skinn did flinke; during which time, such as went, gathered together much almes, which they employed in necessary things for the Service of their Gods. In many of these Feasts they made a Challenge, betwixt him so that did sacrifice, and him that should be sacrificed thus: they tied the flane by one foote so that did sacrifice, to a Wheele of stone, giuing him a Sword and Target in his hands to defend himselfe: then presently they forth he that sacrificed him; armed with another Sword and Target: if hee that should be sacrificed defends himselfe valiantly against the other, and refitteth him, hee then remained freed from the Sacrifice, winning the name of a famous Captayne, and so was reputed: but if hee were vanquished, they then sacrificed him on the stone whereunto hee was tyed. It was another kind of Sacrifice, when as they appointed any flane to bee the representation of the Idoll, saying that it was his Tribute: They every yeere gaue one flane to the Priests, that they might neuer want the liuely Image of their Idoll. At his first entry vnto the Office, after he had bene well washed, they attyred him with all the ornaments of the Idoll, giuing him the same name. Hee was that while yeere reuerenced and honoured as the Idoll itselfe, and had alwayes with him twelve men for his Guard, lest hee should fyre, with which Guard they suffered him to goe freely and where he would: and if by chance he fled, the chiefe of the Guard was put in his place to represent the Idoll, and after to bee sacrificed. This *Indian*

had the most honourable lodging in all the Temple, where hee did eate and drinke, and whither all the chiefe Ministers came to serue and honour him, carrying him meate after the manner of great Personages. When hee went through the streets of the Citie, hee was well accompanied with Noblemen, hee carried a litle Flute in his hand, which sometimes hee sounded, to giue them knowledge when hee passed: then presently the women came forth with their little children in their armes, which they presented vnto him, saluting him as God. All the rest of the people did the like at night: they put him in a strong Prison or Cage, lest he should fyre; and when the Feast came, they sacrificed him, as hath bene said.

By these and many other manner haue the Devils abused and entaynted the poore wretches, and such was the multitude of those that had bene sacrificed by this infernal crueltie, it seemed a matter incredible, for they affirme there were some dayes five thousand or more, and that there were aboute twentie thousand sacrificed in diuers places. The Deuill to entaine this number of men, vied a pleasant and strange inuention, which was, when it pleased the Priests of Satan they went to their Kings, telling them how their Gods dyed for hunger, and that they should remember them. Presently they prepared themselves, and advertised one another, that their Gods required meate, and therefore they should command their people to bee Captiues, for the feeding of their Gods, seeming vnto them a matter insupportable: yet left they not to follow and execute their rigorous Lawes, for the great awe the Ministers of these Idols kept them in, and the cunning wherewith they abused this poore people. But inwardly they desired to be freed from so heauie a yoke. And it was a great providence of God: that the first which gaue them knowledge of the Law of Christ, found them in this disposition: for without doubt it seemed to them a good Law, and a good God, to be serued in this sort. Heretupon a graue religious man in *New Spaine* told me, that when he was in that Countrey he had demanded of an ancient *Indian*, a man of qualitie, for what reason the *Indians* had so long receiued the Law of Iesus Christ, and left their owne, without making any other proofe, tryall, or dispute thereon, for it seemed they had changed their Religion, without any sufficient reason to moue them. The *Indian* answered him, *Beloeue not Father, that we haue embraced the Law of Christ so easily as they say: for I will tell you, that we were already wearie and discontented with such things as the Idols commanded vs, and were determined to leaue it, and to take another Law. But when as we found that the Religion that you preached had no cruelties in it, and that it was fit for vs, and but not a god, we understood and beleneed that it was the true Law, and so we receiued it willingly.* Which answere of this *Indian* agrees well with that we read in the first Discourse, that *Fernand Cortes* sent to the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, wherein hee reports, that after hee had conquered the Citie of *Mexico*, being in *Mexico*, there came Ambassadors to him from the Province of *Commonwealth of Mexico* requiring him to send them his Law, and that hee would teach them to vnderstand it, because they intended to leaue their owne, which seemed not good vnto them, which *Cortes* granted, and at this day they are the best *Indians*, and the truest Christians that are in *New Spaine*. The *Spaniards* that saw these cruell Sacrifices, and refused, with all their power to abolish the detestable and cursed butchering of men, the rather, for that in one night before their eyes they saw threecore or threecore and tenne *Spaniards* sacrificed, which had bene taken in a battaile giuen at the Conquest of *Mexico*: and another time they found written with a Coale in a Chamber in *Tenexco* these words, *Hecce such a miserable man was Prisoner with his Companions whom they of Tezcucio did sacrifice.*

Where happened a very strange thing vpon this subiect, and yet true, being reported by men worthy of credite, which was: that the *Spaniards* beholding these Sacrifices, hauing opened and drawne out the heart of the liuely young man, and cast him from the top of the flayres (as their custom was) when hee came at the bottom, hee fied to the *Spaniards* in his language, *Knights, they haue flaine me*, the which did greatly moue our men to horreur and pitee. It is no incredible thing, that hauing his heart pulled out, hee might speake, seeing that *Galun* reports that it hath oftentimes chanced in the Sacrifice of beausts, after the heart hath bene drawne out, and cast vpon the Altar, the beausts haue breathed, yea, they did bray and cry out aloud, and sometimes did runne.

Incredible numbers sacrificed.

Deuill hungrie for mens blood.

How the *Indians* grew weary, and could not endure the crueltie of Satan.

Spaniards sacrificed.

A man speaks after his heart is out.

In

How the De-
vils hith la-
boured to imi-
tate and coun-
terfeite the Sa-
cerdotes of the
holy Church.
Chap. 15.
Indian Com-
munion.

In the first moneth, which in Peru they called *Rayme*, and answereth to our *December*, they made a most solemn feast, called *Caparayme*, wherein they made many sacrifices and ceremo-
nies, which continued many dayes: during the which, no stranger was suffered to beate the
Court which was in *Cusco*. These dayes being past, they then gave licence to strangers to enter,
that they might be partakers of the feast and sacrifices, ministering to them in this manner. The
Mamamcos of the Sunne, which were a kinde of Nunnes of the Sunne, made little loaves of
the flower of Mays, dyed and mingled with the blood of white Sheepe, which they did sacrifice
that day: then presently they commanded that all strangers should enter, who let themselves
in order, and the Priests which were of a certaine Linage, descending from *Lumapungo*, gave
to every one a morzell of these small loaves, saying unto them, that they gave these pieces, to the
end they should be united and consociate with the Ingua, and that they desired them not to speake
any ill against the Ingua, but always to beare him good affection, for that this piece should be a
witness of their intentions and will, and if they did not as they ought, hee would discover them and be a
gainst them. They carried these small loaves, in great Platters of gold and silver appointed for
that vie, and all did receive and eate these pieces, thanking the Sunne infinitely for so great a fa-
vour which hee had done them, speaking wordes and making signes of great contentment and de-
votion: professing that during their lives, they would neither doe nor thinke any thing against
the Sunne nor the Ingua: and with this condition they received the feast of the Sunne, the which
should remaine in their bodies for a witness of their fidelitie which they observed to the Sunne
and to the *Ragna* their King. This manner of deuillish communicating they likewise vied in the
tenth moneth, called *Caparayme*, which was *September*, in the solemn feast which they called
the *Cyru*, deuillish like the ceremonies. And besides this *Communion* if it be lawful to vise this word
to deuillish a matter) which they imparted to all strangers that came, they did likewise send
of these loaves to all their *Caciques*, Santhones, or Idols of the whole Realme, and at one instant
they found people of all ages, which came expely to receive them, to whom they said (in de-
livering them) that the Sunne had sent them that, in signe that hee would haue them all to worship
and beare him, and likewise did send them in honor of the *Caciques*. Some perhaps will hold this
for a fable and a fiction: yet is it most true, that since the *Ingua Yupay* (the which is hee that
hath made moe Lawes, Customs, and Ceremonies, as *Nama* did in *Rome*) this manner of *Com-
munion* hath continued, vntill that the Gospell of our Lord Iesus Christ thrust out all these super-
stitions, giuing them the righte food of life, which vnites their soules to God: who fo would
tiasine himselfe more amply, let him reade the Relation which the Licentiate *Pelle* did write.

It is a thing more worthy admiration, to heare (speake of the Beast and solemnitie of the *Com-
munion* which the Deuill himselfe, the Prince of Pride, ordained in *Mexico*, the which (al-
though it be somewhat long) yet shall it not be from the purpose to relate as it is written by men
of credite. The *Mexicanes* in the moneth of May, made their principal Feast to their god *Vite-
scaputzi*, and two dayes before this Feast, the Virgins whereot I haue spoken (the which were
that vp and secluded in the same Temple, and were as it were *Religious women*) did mingle a
quantitie of the feede of Beetes with roasted Mays, and then they did mould it with honey, ma-
king an Idoll of that paste, in biggness like to that of wood, putting in stead of eyes, graines
of greene glass, of blue, or white: and for teeth, graines of Mays, let forth with all the ornament
and furniture that I haue said. This being finished, all the Noblemen came and brought in an ex-
quisite and rich garment, like vnto that of the Idoll, wherewith they did attire it. Being thus
clad and deckt, they did let it in an azure Chaire, and in a Litter to carry it on their shoulders.
The morning of this feast being come, an houre before day, all the *Maidens* came forth attired
in white, with new ornaments, the which that day were called the fillers of their god *Vite-
scaputzi*, they came crowned with Garlands of Mays roasted and parched, being like vnto Azahar
or the flower of Orange, and about their necks they had great chaines of the same, which went
bauldrickwise vnder their left arme. Their cheekes were dyed with Vermillion, their armes
from the elbow to the wrist, were covered with red Parrots feathers. And thus attired, they
tooke the Idoll on their shoulders, carrying it into the Court, where all the young men were, at-
tired in garments of an artificiall red, crowned after the same manner, like vnto the women.
When as the *Maidens* came forth with the Idoll, the young men drew neere with much reue-
rence, taking the Litter wherein the Idoll was, vpon their shoulders, carrying it to the foote of
the staires of the Temple, where all the people did humble themselves, laying earth vpon their
heads, which was an ordinarie ceremonie which they did obserue at the chiefe feast of their gods.
This ceremonie being ended, all the people went in Procession with all the diligence and speede
they could, going to a Mountayne which was a league from the Citie of *Mexico*, called *Chapul-
tepec*, and there they made sacrifices. Presently they went from thence with like diligence, to go
to a place neere vnto it, which they called *Atlatlayanca*, where they made their second sta-
tion: and from thence they went to another Burgh or Village a league beyond *Coyacan*, from
whence they parted, returning to the Citie of *Mexico*, not making any other station. They
went in this sort about foure leagues in three or foure houres, calling this Procession *Tpyana Vite-
scaputzi*.

Being come to the foot of the staires, they set downe the Brancard or Litter with the
Idoll, tying great Cordes to the armes of the Brancard, then with great obtrunance and reuerence,
they did draw vp the Litter with the Idoll in it to the top of the Temple, some drawing aboue,
and others helping below, in the meane time there was a great noyse of Flutes, Trumpets, Cor-
nets, and Drummes. They did mount it in this manner, for that the staires of the Temple were
very steepe and narrow, so as they could not carry vp the Litter vpon their shoulders, which
they mounted vp the Idoll, all the people flood in the Court with much reuerence and feare.
Being mounted to the top, and that they had placed it in a little Lodge of Rofes, which they did
make realde, presently came the young men, which flattered many flowers of sundrie kinde,
wherewith they filled the Temple both within and without. This done, all the Virgins came
out of their Couent: bringing pieces of paste compounded of Beetes, and roasted Mays,
which was of the same paste whereof their Idoll was made and compounded, and they were
of the fashion of great bones. They deliuered them to the young men, who carried them vp
and laid them vp, and laid them at the Idols feet: wherewith they filled the whole place,
that it could receive no more. They talled these morcells of paste, the flesh and bones of *Vite-
scaputzi*. Having laid aboue these bones, presently came all the Ancients of the Temple, Priests,
Leuites, and all the rest of the Ministers, according to their Dignities and Antiquities, for
hereth these was a diuisi on amongst them, one after another, with their vailes of diuers
colours and workes, every one according to his Dignitie and Office, having Garlands vpon
their heads, and Chaines of flowers about their necks: after them came their gods and goddes
whom they worshipt, of diuers figures, attired in the same lincerie: then putting themselves
in order about those morcells and pieces of paste, they vied certaine ceremonies with singing
and dancing. By meanes whereof they were blessed and consecrated for the flesh and bones of
this Idoll.

This ceremonie and blessing (whereby they were taken for the flesh and bones of the Idoll) be-
ing ended, they honored these pieces in such sort as their god. Then came there the *Sacri-
ficants*, who began the sacrifice of men, in the manner as hath beene spoken, and that day they
did sacrifice a greater number then at any other time, for that it was the most solemn feast
they obserued. The sacrifices being ended, all the young Men and Maides came out of the Tem-
ple attired as before, and being placed in order and ranke one directly against another, they
danced by Drummes the which sounded in praise of the Idoll, and of the Idoll which they did
celebrate. To which song all the most ancient and greatest noble-men did answer, dancing a-
bout them, making a great circle as their vfe is, the young Men and Maides remaying alwayes
in the middelt. All the Citie came to this goodly spectacle, and there was a commandement ve-
ry stricly obserued throughout all the Land, that the day of the feast of the Idoll *Vite-
scaputzi*, they should eate no other meate, but this paste with honey, whereof the Idoll was made. And
this should be eaten at the point of day, and they should drinke no water nor any other thing till
after noone: they held it for an ill signe, yea for sacrilege, to doe the contrary: but after the
ceremonies ended, it was lawful for them to eate any thing. During the time of this ceremonie,
they hid the water from their little children, admonishing all such as had the vfe of reason, not
to drinke any water: which if they did, the anger of God would come vpon them, and they
should die, which they did vnderstand very carefully and stricly. The ceremonies, dancing, and
sacrifice ended, they went to obsecrate themselves, and the Priests and Superiours of the Temple
tooke the Idoll of the feast, which they joyled of all dayes, and made many sacrifices, as
well of the Idoll as of the Tronchons which were consecrated, and then they giue
them to the *Communion*, beginning with the greater, and continuing vnto the rest, both Men,
Women, and little Children: who received it with such teares, feare, and reuerence, as it was an
admirable thing, saying, that they did eate the flesh and bones of God, wherewith they were grie-
ued. Such as had any sicke folkes demanded thereof for them, and carried it with great reue-
rence and veneration.

All such as did communicate, were bound to giue the tenth of this feede, whereof the Idoll
was made. The solemnitie of the Idoll being ended, an old man of great authoritie stopt vp into
a high place, and with a loud voice preached their Law and Ceremonies.

The father of Iyes would likewise counterfeite the *(Romish)* Sacrament of Confession, and in
his Idolatries lecke to be honored with ceremonies very like to the manner of Christians.
In Peru they held opinion, that all diseases and adulteries came for the finnes which they had
committed: for remedie whereof they vied sacrifices: moreover, they confessed themselves ver-
bally, almost in all Prouinces, and had Confessors appointed by their Superiours to that end, there
were some finnes referred for the Superiours. They received penance, yea sometimes very sharply,
especially when the Offender was a poore man, and had nothing to giue his Confessor. This of-
fice of Confessor was likewise exercised by Women. The manner of these Confessors Superiours
whom they call *Tzucos* or *Tzucos*, hath bene most general in the Prouinces of *Colima*. The
hold opinion, that it is a haynous sinne to conceale any thing in confession. The *Tzucos* or Con-
fessors

The Deuill li-
king that va-
christian. An-
dichristian
prodigious
of the
familiari-
and the con-
fession, eleu-
ation aduoca-
on, reueren-
on, *Corpus Chri-
stian* solemn-
tians and ido-
latries pro-
cessions with
their beards
any former
paganism, in
deluge of the
true Sacra-
ment, fully
calling this
their Idoll an
vnto the
of the
which hath
cost so many
thousands
their blood in
fire and obse-
vise the Pa-
pists at once
disputing of
Christe nau-
rally body and
despising and
rending his
myrical body
which hath found
nothing there
to transport
into the *Infir-
mities*.
Nothing more
contrarie to
sense, reason,
religion, hu-
manitie, or
matrimony,
wherewith
to triumph
over sinne
in all these
in this brau-
try opinion
and bloudie
solemnitie,
here decri-
bed.

Communicat-
ion. Of Con-
fessors and Con-
fession which
they had
in the In-
dies.
Chap. 16.
Refered ea-
sily in Papall
penance.

fellows discouraged by lots, or by the view of some beast hides, if any thing were concealed, and punished them with many blows with a stone upon the shoulders, till they had revealed all, then after they gave him penance, and did sacrifice. This hee, or his wife, vntill this confession, when their *Inga* was sicke, all the Prouinces confided themselves, chiefly therein of the Prouince of *Colias*. The Confessors were bound to hold their Confessions secret, but in certaines of the Prouince the fines that they chiefly confesse d, was first to kill one another out of warre, then to be limited, to take another mans wife, to give payson or force to doe any harme; and they held it to be a gracious fine, to be forgetfull in the reuerence of their *Gueues*, or Oratories, not to offend the Peasls, or to speake ill of the *Inga*, and to disobey him. They accused not themselves of any secret acts and sinnes. But according to the report of some Priests, after the Christians came into that Country, they accused themselves of their thoughts. The *Inga* confided himselfe to no them. After the *Inga* had beene confessed, he made a certain oath both to cleanse himselfe in a running Riuer, saying these words: *I haue said my sinnes to thy Sonnes, excuse them, O thou Riuer, and bathe with certain ceremonies very like to those the *Americs* at that time, which likewise they called *Quaday*, and the Indians call them *Opacama*. When it chanced that any mans children dyed, hee was held for a great inner, saying, that it was for his sinnes that the sonne dyed before the father. And therefore those to whom this had chanced, after they were confited, were bathed in this bath called *Opacama*, as is said before. Then some deformed *Indian*, crooke-backed, and counterfeit by nature, came to whip them with certain Nettles. If the Sorcerers or Inchanters by their lots and diuinations, affirmed that any sicke body should die, the sicke man makes no difficulty to kill his owne sonne, though he had no other, hoping by that means to escape death. And thus, though they be not so farre from sacrifice, And thus cruelly haue beene practised in those places, euen since the Christians came into that Country. In truth it is strange, that this custome of confiding their secret sinnes, hath continued amongst them, and to dole this first penance, as, *to fast, to give apparell, gold and silver, to ransom amongst them, and to receive many stripes upon the shoulders*. Out men say, that in the Prouince of *Chimagney*, and to the Country of *Chimagney*, they were as the Confessors of *Ychuray*, where as many like persons prepare vnto them: but now, by the grace of God, this people begins to see clearly the effect and preparatiue of our Confession, whereunto they come with great deuotion.*

I will report the manner of a thrange concs from the Decull which occurred at *Japan*, as appeares by a Letter that came from thence, which is thus: There are in *Orizaba* very great and high and deepe Rocks, which have prices or points on them, about two hundred fathoms high. Amongst these Rocks there is one of these pikes or points to terribly high, that when the *Xamulafis* (which be *Pilgrims*) doe but looke vp vnto it, they tremble, and their haire flares, to fearefull and horrible is the place. Vpon the top of this point there is a great *rool* of three fathom long, placed there by a thrange deuce, at the end of this *rool* is a b lanced yve, whereof the scales are so bigge, as a man may sit in one of them: and the *Goguis* (which be *Deuils* in humane shape) 40 command these *Pilgrims* to sit in the scales, and after they haue sate, not leaving one of them: then with an engine or instrument which moueth, by means of a wheel, the *rool* is turned round about, so that wherewhen the balance is hangd, to hang in the aire, one of these *Xamulafis* beinge in one of the scales of the balance. And as that wherewhen the man is fet hich no counterpoise in the other side, it presently hangeth downe, and the other sideh vntill it meets with, and toucheth the *rool*, then the *Goguis* tellect them from the Rocks; that they must conteile themselves or all the finnes they haue committed, to their remembrance, and that with a loud voyce, to telle that all the reit must heare him. Then presently hee beegins to confesse, wylsome of the flanders by hee caught at the finnes that hee hath committed: and then hee sayeth, wylsome they conteile, the other scale of the balance falls a little, till that hauing told all his finnes, hee sayeth, wylsome with the 50 other, wherewhen the forworfull penitent dies: then the *Goguis* turnes the wheele, and the scale was the *rool* and balance vnto him, and the *Pilgrime* comes forth, then enters another, vntill all have p-fied. A *Japones* reported this after he was christned, saying, that hee had beene in this pilgrimage, and entered the balance seuen times, where hee had confessed himselfe publicly. Hee said moreover, that if any one could conceale any finne, the empire calke yielded not: and if hee grew diuinate after iustice came to confesse himselfe, refusing to open all his finnes, the *Goguis* call him downe from the whele, and then hee sayeth, wylsome hee hath committed a thousand finnes, saye this Christian, who was called *Jain*, told vs, that commonly the men that are in this place is to great 60 to all such as enter thence, and the danger they see with their eyes, to fall out of the balance, and to be taken in pieces, that teldom there is any one but discouers all his finnes. This place is call'd by another name *Sanguenacora*, that is to say, the place of Confession.

The Priests of the Idols in Mexico were anointed in this sort; they anointed the body from the foot to the head, and all the haire likewise, which hung like tresses, or a Horse mane, for that they applied this Vnction wet and moist. Their haire grew lo, as in time it hung

hung downe to their hummes, so heauly, that it was troublesome for them to beare it, for they thinke-
d neuer cut it, vntill they dyed, or that they were dispent with for their great age, or being flisen
employed in governments or some honorable charge in the Commonwealth. They carried their
haire in tresses, of sixe fingers breadth, which they dyed blacke with the fume of Sapine, of Firre
trees, or Roſin, for in all Antiquite it hath bene an offering they made vnto their Idols, and
for this cause it was much esteemed and reuerenced. They were alwayes dyed with this tincture
from the foot to the head, for they were like vnto the Indians, who had their haire soe ordinary
tincture, which was to be sacrifice and glue Inuincible in the Mountains. The Indians were
thereof, or in any lake and obscure Caves, where their Idols were, they wiled an other kind of
tincture very different, doing certaine ceremonies to take away leafe, and to give them courage.
This tincture was made with diuers little venomous beaſts, as Spiders, Scorpions, Palmers, Sala-
manders and Vipers, the which the Boyes in the Colleges tooke and gathered together, where-
in they were so expert, as they were alwayes furnished when the Priests called for them. The
chiefe care of these Boyes was, to haue after these beaſts; if they went any other way, and by
chance met with any of them, they they flayed them, and they flayed them, and they flayed them,
their liues depended on it. By the reason whereof the *Indians* commonly feared not these veno-
mous beaſts, making no more account them if they were not so, having bene all bred in this ex-
ercise. To make an ointment of these beaſts, they tooke them all together and burnt them vpon
the harth of the Temple, which was before the Altar. vntill they were consumed: *Palles* : then
did they p it them in Morters with much Tobacco or *Petum* (being an herbe that Nature vifich
much, to benum the Nefe, that they may not feeble their traueily) with the which they mingle the
aſhes, making them lose their force; they did likewise mingle with these aſhes, Scorpions, Spi-
ders, and Palmers, and a little glue, and mingle all together, and they made a tincture, as we
sawed, which they the *Oleoglybe*, whereof the *Indians* make a drinke to face venitions, and
the vertue of this herbe is to deprive man of sense. They did likewise mingle with these aſhes
blacke and hairye worms, whose haire only is venomous, all which they mingled together
with blacke, or the fume of Roſin, putting it in small pots, which they set before their god, fay-
ing it was his meat. And therefore they called it a *diuine* meat. By means of this ointment
they became Witches, and did fee and spake with the Dwell. The Priests being flibbered with
this ointment, lost all teare, putting on a Spirit of cruelty. By reason whereof they did very
boldly kill their neighbours, and consumed all alone in the Mountains, and in the
figure Cause, consuming all wild beaſts, and holding it for certaine and approved, that both
Lions, Tigers, Serpents, and other venomous beaſts which breed in the Mountains, and Forests,
fled from them, by the vertue of this *Petum* of their god.

And in truth, though this *Petam* had no power to make them die, yet was the Devils picture sufficient wherewith they were transformed. This *Petam* did also ferue to cure the sick, and for children: and therefore all called it the *diuine Physicke*: and so they came from all parts to the Superiors and Priests, as to their Sauours, that they might apply this diuine physicke, wherewith they anointed those parts that were hurt. They said that they felt hereby a notable ease, which might be, for that *Petam* and *Oleum* haue this property of themselves, to benum the flesh, and make it insensible to paine after it hath beene rubbed in. And thus they were mingled with poysons, and for that it did appease and benum the paine, they held it for an oyle of health, and a diuine vertue. And therefore ran they to the Priests as they men, who kept the blinde and ignorant in this error, perfwading them what they pleased, and making them runne after their inuentions and deuillish ceremonies, their authoritie being such, as their wordes were sufficient to induce belief as an article of their Faith. And thus made they a thousand fupercutions among the vulgar people, in their making of the *Incense*, in cutting their haire, tying small towes about their necks, and strings with small bells, and making them to lachie at a certaine time; and that they should watch all night at the laish, left the fire should die, that they should eate no other bread but that which had been offered to their gods, that they should vpon any occasion repaire vnto their Witches, who with certaine graines lost fortunes, and diuined, looking into Keelers and Pailles full of water. The Sorcerers and Ministers of the D-vill used much to bewelcome themelues. There were an infinite number of these Witches, Diuiners, Enchanters, and other false prophets. There raymeyes yet at this day of this infection, although they be few, yet they are so publickly to exercise their iuglemes, should they particularly and superfluous, but their abuses and wickednesse are discouraged more at large and particularly in the confessions made by the Prelates of *Pernu*.

There is a kinde of Sorcerers amongst the *Indians* allowed by the Kings *Inguas*, which are as Strange Sor-
 60 cers. They are Sooth-fayers, they take upon them what forme and figure they please, lying far and
 the aire is a short time, beholding all that was done. They talke with the Deuill, who anwereth
 them in certaine fables or other things which they reuerence much. They fure as Conju-
 rers, to tell what hath palled in the farthest parts, before any newes can come. As it hath
 chanced since the *Spaniards* arrived there, that in the distance of two or three hundred leagues,
 they haue knowne the Mutinies, Arraides, Rebellions, and Deaths, both of Tyrants, and of

Vision ointment

Like lips, lil
Lecture.

Benumbing
force of To-
day.

Divinazioni.

Strange Sources

those of the Kings partie, and of priuate men, the which haue bene knowne the same day they chanced, or the day after, a thing impossible by the course of nature. To worke this diuination, they thut themselves into a house, and became drunke vntill they lost their senses, a day after they answered to that which was demanded. Some affirm they vie certaine Visions. The *Indians* say, that the old women do commonly vie this office of witchcrafts, and specially those of one Province, which they call *Cashila*, and of another Towne called *Manabuy*, and of the Province of *Guacabuco*. They likewise shew what is become of things stolen and lost. There are of these kindes of Sorcerers in all parts, to whom commonly doe come the *Anacoana*, and *Cyua*, which serue the *Spaniards*, and when they haue lost any thing of their Masters, or when they desire to know the success of things past or to come, as when they goe to the *Spaniards* Cities for their priuate affaires, or for the publique, they demand if their voyage shall bee prosperous, if they shall be sick, if they shall die, or retaine life, if they shall obtaine that which they pretend; and the Witches or Conjurers answer, Yea, or No, hauing first spoken with the Deuill, in an obscure place: so as these *Indians* doe well heare the found of the voyce, but they see not to whom these Conjurers speake, neither doe they vnderstand what they say. They make a thousand ceremonies and sacrifices to this eff. &c., with the which they mocke the Deuill and gorge exceedingly drunke, for the doing whereof, they particularly vie an herb called *Ylita*, the ioyce whereof they mingle with their *Cuca*, or take it in some other fort.

Of other Ceremonies
and Customs
of the
Indians,
which are
like
vnto ours.
Chap. 37.
Mexican
Baptismes.

Marriage
ceremonies.

The *Indians* had an infinite number of other ceremonies and customs, which resembled to the ancient Law of *Moses*, and some to those which the *Moorish* vie, and some approached nere to the Law of the Gospel, as their Bathes or *Opacuna*, as they call them: they did wash themselves in water, to cleanse them from their finnes. The *Mexicans* had also amongst them a kinde of *Baptism*, the which they did with ceremony, anointing the eares and members of young children new borne, countenancing in some sort the Circumcision of the *Jewes*. This ceremony was done principally to the sonnes of Kings and Noblemen: presently vpon their birth the Priests did wash them, and did put a little Sword in the right hand, and in the left a Target. And to the Children of the vulgar sort, they put the markes of their offices, and to their Daughters instruments to spin, knit, and labour. This ceremony continued foure dayes, being made before some Idoll. They contracted marriage after their manner, whereof the Licenciado *Polo* hath writt a whole Treatise, and I will speake somewhat thereon hereafter. In other things their customs and ceremonies haue some shew of reason. The *Mexicans* were married by the hands of their Priests in this sort. The Bridegroome and the Bride stood together before the Priest, who tookes them by the hands, asking them if they would marry, then hauing vnderstood their wills, heooke a corner of the vail wherewith the woman had her head couered, and a corner of the mans gowne the which he tyed together on a knot, and soled them thus tyed to the Bridegroomes house, where there was a harth kindled, and then he cauled the wife to goe ten times about the harth, and so the married couple late downe together, and thus was the marriage contracted. The *Mexicans* were very jealous of the integritie of their wiues: so as if they found they were not as they ought to bee (the which they knew either by signes or dishonest wordes) they presently gaue notice thereof to their fathers and kinsfolkes of their wiues, to their great shame and dishonor, for that they had not kept good guard ouer them. When they went to the house they made an Inuentorie of all the men and wife brought together, of provisions for the house, of linc, of jewels and ornaments, which Inuentories every father kept, for if it chanced they made any diuorce (as it was common amongst them when they agree not) they diuided their goods according to the portion that every one brought, every one hauing libertie in such a case, to marry whom they pleased: and they gaue the Daughters to the Wife, and the Sonnes to the Husband. It was defended vpon paine of death, not to marry againe together, the which they observed very strictly. And although it seeme that many of their ceremonies agree with ours, yet diffit they much for the great abomination they mingle therewithall. It is common and general to haue usually one of these three things, either Cruelty, Filthinesse, or Slouth: for all their ceremonies were cruell and hurtfull, as to kill men and to spill blood, or filthy and beastly, as to eate and drinke to the name of their Idols, and also to pisse in the honour of them, carrying then vpon their shoulders, to anoint and besmeare themselves filthily, and to doe a thousand sorts of villanies, which were at the least, vaine, ridiculous, and idle, and more like the deuotions of children, then of men. Whereas the temporall power was greatest, there superstition hath most increased, as we see in the Realmes of *Mexico* and *Cusco*, where it is incredible to fee the number of Idols they had: for within the Citie of *Mexico* there were about three hundred. Amongst *Inga* *Tapanqui*, amongst the Kings of *Mexico*, was he that most augmented the seruice of their Idols, inuenting a thousand kindes of sacrifices, feasts, and ceremonies. The like did King *Spinda* in *Mexico*, who was the fourth King. There was also a great number of superstitions and sacrifices in other Nations of the *Indians*, as in the Province of *Guatemala*, at the hands in the new Kingdome, in the Province of *Chile*, and others that were like Commonwealths and Commonwealths. But it was nothing in respect of *Mexico* and *Cusco*, where Satan was as in *Rome*, or in his *Ierusalem*.

100. Mexican
Idols.
Amongst man-
gled deuoti-
ons.

The *Inga* Lords of *Peru*, had two kindes of Feasts. Some were *ordinarie*, which fell out in certaine moneths of the yeere, and others *extraordinarie*, which were for certaine causes of importance, as when they did crowne a new King, when they legatize some warre of importance, when they had any great need of water or drought, or other like things. For the ordinarie Feasts, we must vnderstand, that every moneth of the yeere they made Feasts, and diuine Sacrifices, and although all of them had this alike, that they offered a hundred sheepe: yet in colour, and in forme they are very diuers. In the first moneth which they call *Rayme*, which is the moneth of December, they made their first Feast, which was the principall of all others, and for that cause they called it *Capacmaye*, which is to say, *A rich and principall Feast*. In this Feast they offered a great number of sheepe and Lambes in Sacrifice, and they burnt them with fower wood, then they cauled Gold and Silver to bee brought vpon certaine flure, setting vpon them three Images of the *Sonne, and three of the *Thunder*, the *Father*, the *Sonne, and the *Brother*. In these Feasts they dedicated the *Inga* children, putting *Guano*, or Ensignes vpon them, and they pierced their eares: then fowr old man did whip them with flings, and annoynted their faces with blood, all in signe that they should be true Knights to the *Inga*. No stranger might remaine in *Cusco* during this moneth, and this Feast, but at the end thereof they entred, and they gaue vnto them pieces of the palfe of Mays with the blood of the Sacrifice, which they did eate in signe of contentation with the *Inga*, as hath bene said before. It is strange that the Deuill after his manner hath brought a *Trinitie* into Idolatry, for the three Images of the *Sonne called *Apamari*, *Churumari*, and *Intayacapi* which signifieth *Father*, the *Sonne, and the *Brother Sonne*. In the like manner they named the three Images of *Chunguila*, which is the God that rules in the Region of the Ayre, where it Thunder, Raintes and Snowes. I remember, that being in *Cuzco*, an honourable Priest shewed me an information, which I had long in my hands, wherewith was procured that there was a certaine *Guano* or Oratory, whereas the *Indians* did worship an Idoll called *Tungatanga*, which they laid was one in three, and three in one. Comming then to the Feast of the second moneth, which they called *Comey*, besides the Sacrifices which they made, they did cast the almes into the Riuer, following fowr or six leagues after, praying it to carry them into the Sea, for that the *Floods* should there receiue this present. In the third, fourth and fifth moneth, they offered a hundred blacke sheeps, speckled and grey, with many other things, which I omit for being too tedious. The sixth moneth is called *Huacacapi* or *Aymory*, which is anwereth to May, in the which they sacrificed a hundred sheepe more, of all colours: in this Moone and moneth, which is when they bring May from the fields into the house, they made a Feast, which is yet very viall among the *Indians*, and they doe call it *Aymory*.****

This Feast is made comming from the *Chaca* or Farme vnto the house, laying certaine Songs, and praying that the Mays may long continue, the which they call *Mamaca*. They take a certaine portion of the most fruitfull of the Mays that growes in their Farmes, the which they put in a certaine Granary which they doe call *Pirua*, with certaine Ceremonies, watching three nights: they put this Mays in the richest garments they haue, and being thus wrapped and dressed, they worship this *Pirua*, and hold it in great veneration, saying it is the Mother of the Mays of then Inheritances, and that by this means the Mays augments and is preferred. In this moneth they make a particular Sacrifice, and the Witches demand of this *Pirua*, if it hath strength sufficient to continue vntill the next yeere: and if it answere No, then they carry this Mays to the Farme to burne, whence they brought it, according to euery mans powerthen make they another *Pirua*, with the same Ceremonies, saying, that they renew it, to the end the Seed of Mays may not perill, and if it answere that it hath force sufficient to last longer, they leaue it vntill the next yeere. This foolish vanitie continueth to this day, and is yet very common amongst the *Indians* to haue these *Piruas*, and to make the Feast of *Aymory*. The fourth moneth anwereth to Iune, and is called *Anacacapi* or *Intayacapi*, in the which they made the Feast that is called *Intayacapi*, in the which they sacrificed a hundred sheepe called *Guano*, and laid it was the Feast of the *Sonne*. In this moneth they made many Images of *Quina* wood carued, all attired with rich garments, and they made their dances which they doe call *Capa*. At this Feast they call flowers in the high wayes, and thither the *Indians* came painted, and their Noblemen had small plates of Gold vpon their beards, and all did sing, we must vnderstand that this Feast falleth almost at the same time, when as the Christians obserue the Solemnitie of the holy Sacrament, which doth resemble it in some fort, as in dancing, singing and representations. And for this cause there hath bene, and is yet among the *Indians* (which celebrated a Feast somewhat like to ours of the holy Sacrament) many Superstitions in celebrating this ancient Feast of *Intayacapi*. The eighth moneth is called *Chaba* or *Huano*, in the which they did burne a hundred sheepe, all grey, of the colour of *Uscacha*, according to the former order, which they burnt three and answere to Iulie. The ninth moneth was called *Tapagani*, in the which they burnt an hundred sheepe more, or a Chestrut colour; and they doe likewise kill and burne a thousand *Cuyes*, to the end that neither the Frost, the Ayre, the water, nor the *Sonne* should hurt their Farmes: and this moneth doth answere vnto August. The tenth moneth was called *Coyarami*, in the which

Feasts celebra-
ted by them of
Cuzco, where
the Deuill
would imitate
the mystery of
the holy Trini-
tie. Chap. 38.
Ayme Feast.

Ind. as Trinity.

Corny-cast.

Aymory Feast.

Intayacapi Feast.

Capus Christi:
day sacrament.

Situa-fact.

they burst a hundred ways there that had fleeces. In this month which anwereth to September, they made the Feast called *Situa*, in this manner. They assembled together the first day of the Moone before the rising thereof, and inefecting it they cryed aloude, carrying Torches in their hands, and singing. All had harme goodly, and takinge one another with their Torches, they went about the woods, where they were best lodged, and they were wont to singe, to the praise of the Riuers and Fontaines, and euerie one to his owne Bath, lettingt themselves to drinke foules together. In this month the *Mamamucos* of the Sunne made a great number of small Loues with the blood of the Sacrifices, and gave a piece to euerie stranger; yea, they lent to euerie *Oncas* a little of the same, and euerie *Quacac*, in signe of confection and loyaltye to the Sunne, and the *Agua*, as hath bene said.

[illegible]

Among the extraordinary Feasts which were very many, the most famous was that which they called *Tin*. This Feast *Tin* hath no prefixed time nor season, but in time of necessity. To prepare themselves therunto, all the people fasted two days, during the which they did neither company with their wives, nor ate any meate with Sale or Garlicke, nor drinke any *Chica*. All did assemble together in one place, where no stranger was admitted, nor any beast: they had Garments and Ornaments, which served only for this Feast. They marched very quietly in Procession, their heads covered with their Veils, founding of Drumes, without speaking one to another. This continued a day and a night; then tie day following they danced and made good cheer for two days and two nights together, saying, that their Prayer was accepted. And although that this Feast is not vied at this day, yettill this ancient Ceremony, yet commonly they make another which is very like, which they call *Ayua*, with new Garments that serve only to that end, and they make this kinde of Procession with new Drummes, having first before them, and after they make good cheer, which they usually do in their visitant societies. And afterwards they are obliged to forebare to sacrifice bealls, or other things publicly, which cannot be taken from the Spaniards, yett doe they still vie many Ceremonies that haue their beginnings from their Feasts and antiquities. In some of these they doe courtly make this Feast *Tin*, at the dances of the Feast of the Sacrament, in making the dances of *Lyamallema*, and of *Gnacoo*, and of others, according to their ancient Ceremonies.

Of the feast of
Jubilee which
the *Mexicans*
celebrated.
Chap. 29.

The *Mexicans* have been no less curious in their Feasts and Solemnities, which were of small charge, but of great effusion of mans blood. We have before spoken of the principal Feast of *Uixtaccipalli*, after the which the Feast of *Tescualcapa* was most solemnized. This Feast fell in May, and in their Kalender they called it *Tozoztli*: it fell every fourth year with the feast of Penance, where there was given full indulgence and remission of finnes. In this day they did sacrifice a Captive which resembled the Ioll *Tescualcapa*, it was the nineteenth day of May: upon the Euen of this Feast, the Noblemen came to the Temple, bringing a new Garment like unto that of the Ioll, the which the Priest put upon him, having first taken off his other Garments, which they kept with as much, or more reverence than were doo our Ornaments. There were also brought unto the Temple, a new pair of Slippers, a new pair of Girdles, a new pair of Bracelets, and precious Feathers which issued to no other vye, but to be put there, and was worshipped as their God it did. Besides the Garment wherewith they worshipped the Ioll that day, they put upon him certayne enignes of Feathers, with fannes, shadowes and other things, being thus attired and furnished, they drew the Curtayn or Velle from before the doore, to the end he might be leene of all men: then came forth one of the chiefe of the Temple, attyred like the Ioll, carrying flowers in his hand, and a Flute of earth, having a very sharpe blade and turning towards the East, he founde it, and then looking to the West, North and South he did the like. And after he had thus sounded towards the four parts of the World (shewing that both he and they were profane and absent from there) he put his finger into the Aie, and then gave the red vipers which he had brought with him, to the Priest, who gave them to the Noblemen, who said that they were prent, and weeping, they fell flat to the ground, imitating the *blacke of the night*, and the *winds*, intreating them not to leave them *not to forget*, etc. *all this to the*

CHAP. 5. *Regations for rain. Tezcalipuas Litter-procession. Manguey whippings.* 1047

and their lues; y and free them from the labours they endured therein. Thence, Adulterers, and Murders, and all other offenders had great feare and heauynesse, whilste this Flate founde; y some could not diflembe nor hide their offences. By this means they all demanded no other thing of their God, but to haue their offences concealed, powing forth many teares, with great repentance and sorrow, offering great store of Incense to appeale their Gods. The courageous and valiant men, and all the old Souldiers, there offered up much more incense, as also the young men, and all the old women, and children, *of the Lord for whom we live, of his Son, and* of others besides, so that they would giue them victory against their enemies, & strenght to take backe againe their Captiues, therewith to honour their Sacrifices. This Ceremony was done ten dayes before the Feast: During which ten dayes the Priest did found this Platte, to the end that all might see this worthip in eating of earth, and demand of their Idoll what they pleased; they euer day made their Prayers, with their eyes lift vp to heauen, and their hands extended toward the gods: where grieuous for their sinnes, they were troubled, although this contrition was only for ease of the gods: yet grieuous for their sinnes, they were troubled, although this contrition was only for ease of the gods: yet grieuous for their sinnes, they were troubled, although this contrition was only for ease of the gods:

to
the corporal punishment thereof there was no such fure punishment in the other life. And therefore they offered themselves voluntarily to death, holding opinion that it is all men an assured rell.

The first day of the Feast of the Idoll *Taxcalipuca* being come , all they of the Citee assembled together in a Court, to celebrate likewise the Feast of the Kalender, whereof we have already spoken, which was called *Taxacahitl*, which signifies *Abyding*: which Feat was made also to any other end, but to demand a rain, in the time that they have most need of same in our country; and this Feast was always celebrated on the ninth of May, ending the nineteenth. The last day of the Feast the Priests drew forth a Litter well furnished with Curtaines and Pendants of divers fashions. This Litter had to many arms to hold by as there were Ministers to carry it. All which came forth befermed with blacke and long haire, halfe in tresses white with strings, and attyred in the livery of the Idoll. In this Litter they let the perfume of the Idoll, appointed for this Feast , which they callen the remembrance of the *Tezcatlipoca*. And taking up the young men of the Maydenes of the Temple, carrying a great coard wreathed of chaires and flowers, they went before the Litter, and brought it openly to the foot of the flaires: then came forth the young men of the whiche they enuironed the Litter , and putting a chaine of the fame about the Idols necke, and a Garland vpon hishead. They called the coard *Taxcala*, signifying the drought and barrenesse of the time. The young men came wrapped in red Curtaines, with Garlands and chaines of rosted Mays; and the Maydes were clothed in new Garments, wearing chaines about their neckes of rosted Mays; and their beards and hairthers, and their armes and cheekes painted with Mays, they had their faces painted with the same. Then they began to sing and dance with Mays, they flowred the Idoll, and the chiefe men put it vnder their heals, and about their waists, taking flowers in their hands. The Idoll being placed in his Litter, they strewed about a great quantitie of the boughes of Manguey , the leaues whereof are large and prickling.

[illegible]

No feare but of
temporall pu-
nishment.

other women, who had made a vow that day to ſerue the Idoll. And therefore ſuch as had made this vow, came by the point of day, offering themſelues to the Deputes of the Temple, that they might command them what they would haue done, the which they did carefully performe. They did prepare ſuch variety of meates, as it was admirable. This meate being ready, and the houre of dinner come, all theſe Virgins went out of the Temple in proceſſion, euerie one carrying a little baſket of bread in her hand, and in the other, a diſh of theſe meates; before them marched an old man, like to a ſeruant, with a pleaſant habit, he was clothed in a white Surples downe to the calves of his legges, vpon a doublet without ſleeues of red leather, like to a iacker, he carried wings inſtead of ſleeues, from the which hung broad ribbands at the which did hang in it, and within it were many iuperfluous things. This old man thus attyred, marched very humbly and haueily before the preparation, with his head declining: and comming neere the foote of the flaires, he made a great obeiſance and reuerence. Then going on the one ſide, the Virgins drew neere with the meate, preſenting it in order one after another, with great reuerence. This ſervice performed, the old man returned as before, leading the Virgins into their this meate, the which they carried to the Chambers of the chiefe Priests of the Temple, who had faſted hie dayes, eating only once a day, and they had alſo abſtained from their wines, nor once going out of the Temple in theſe hie dayes. During the which they did whip themſelues rigorouſly with cords; they did eate of this diuine meate (for ſo they called it) what they could, was it lawfull for any other to eate thereof. All the people hauing dined, they aſſembled againe in the court to fee the end of the feaſt, whether they brought a captiue, which by the ſpace of a whole yeare, had repreſented the Idoll, being attyred, decked, and honoured, as the Idoll it ſelfe, and doing all reuerence vnto him, they deliuered him into the hands of the ſacerdies, who at that inſtant preſented themſelues, taking him by the ſteele and hands. The Pope did open his ſtomacke, and pull out his beere, then did he liſt vp his hand as high as he could, ſhewing it to the Sunne, and to the Idoll, as hath beene ſaid. Hauing thus ſacrificed him that repreſented the Idoll, they went into a hie place appointed for this purpoſe, whither came the young Men and Virgins of the Temple, with their ornaments, the which being put in order, they danced and ſung with Drummes and other inſtruments, on the which the chiefe Priests did play and ſound. Then came all the Noblemen with enſignes and ornaments like to the young men, who danced round about them. They did not vſually kill any other men that day, but him that was ſacrificed, yet euerie fourth yeare they had others with him, which was in the yeare of Iubile and full pardons. After Sunne ſet, euerie one being ſatiſfied with feasting, eating, and drinking, the Virgins went all to their conuent, they tooke great diſhes of earth full of bread mixt with hony, couered with ſmall panners, wrought and faſhioned with dead mens heads and bones, and they carried the collation to the Idoll, mounting vp to the Court, which was before the doore of the Oratorie: and hauing ſet them downe, they retired in the ſame order as they came, the ſeruant going till before. Preſently came forth all the young men in order, with canes or rods in their hands, who began to runne as faſt as they could to the top of the flaires of the Temple, who ſhould come firſt to the diſhes of the collation. The Elders or chiefe Priests obſerued him that came firſt, ſecond, third, and fourth, without regarding the reſt. This collation was likewiſe all carried away by the young men, as great Relicks. This done, the foure that arrived firſt were placed in the middle of the Ancients of the Idoll, bringing them to their chambers with much honour, praiſing them, and giuing them ornaments. The taking of this collation being ended, and the feaſt celebrated with much noyſe and noyſe, they diſmiſſed all the young men and maides which had ſerued the Idoll; by meanes whereof they went one after another, as they came forth. All the ſmall children of the Colledges and Schooles, were at the gate of the court, with botomes of rufes and hearbs in their hands, which they caſt at them, mocking and laughing, as of them that came from the ſeruire of the Idoll: they had liberty then to diſpoſe of themſelues at their pleaſure, and thus the Feaſt ended.

Of the Feaſt
of Marchants,
which thoſe of
Colchester did
celebrate.

Although I haue ſpoken ſufficiently of the ſeruire the *Mexicans* did vnto their gods; yet will I ſpeake ſomething of the feaſt they called *Quetzacoatl*, which was the god of riches, the which was ſolemnized in this manner. Fortie dayes before the *Marchants* bought a ſlaue well proportioned, without any fault or blemiſh, either of ſickenneſſe or of hurt, which they did attire with the ornaments of the Idoll, that he might repreſent it forty dayes. Before his cloathing they did cleaneſe him, waſhing him twice in a lake, which they called the lake of the gods; and being purged, they attyred him like the Idoll. During theſe forty dayes, he was much reſpected for his ſake whom he repreſented. By night they did impruſon him (as hath beene ſaid) ſo he ſhould ſtaye, and in the morning they tooke him out of priſon, ſetting him vpon an eminent place, where they ſerued him, giuing him exquisite meates to eate. After he had eaten, they put a chaine of flowers about his necke, and many noyſes in his hand. He

had a well appointed guard, with much people to accompany him. When he went through the Citie, he went dancing and ſinging through all the ſtreets, that he might be knowne for the reſemblance of their god; and when he began to ſing, the women and little children came forth of their houſes to ſalute him, and to offer vnto him as to their god. Two old men of the Ancients of the Temple, came vnto him nine dayes before the feaſt, and humbling themſelues before him, they ſaid with a low and ſubmiſſive voyce, *Sir, you muſt vnderſtand that nine dayes before the exerciſe of dancing and ſinging doth end, and ſhow muſt then dye;* and then he muſt anſwer, *In a good houre.* They call this ceremony, *Neyola Maxiliteſta*, which is to ſay, the aduerſement: and when they did thus aduerſe him, they tooke very careful heed whether he were ſaid, or if he danced as ioyfully as he was accuſtomed, the which if he did not ſoche fully as they deſired, they made a ſolliſh ſuperſtition in this manner. They preſently tooke the ſacerdies ſaſors, the which they waſhed and cleaneſed from the blood of men, which remained of the former ſacrifices. Of this waſhing they made a drinke mingled with another liquor made of *Cacao* giuing it him to drinke; they ſaid that this would make him forget what had bene ſaid vnto him, and would make him in a manner inſentible, returning to his former dancing and mirth. They ſaid moreover, that he would offer himſelfe cheerefully to death, being enchanted with this drinke. The cauſe why they fought to take from him this heauineſſe, was, for that they held it for an ill augur, and a fore-telling of ſome great harme. The day of the Feaſt being come, after they had done him much honour, ſung, and giuen him incenſe, the ſacerdies tooke him about midnight and did ſacrifice him, as hath beene ſaid, offering his heart vnto the Moonne, the which they did afterwards caſt againſt the Idoll, letting the body fall to the bottoome of the flaires of the Temple, where ſuch as had offered him tooke him vp, which were the Marchants, whole ſeaſt it was. Then hauing carried him into the chiefeſt mans houſe among them, the body was dreſt with diuers lawces, to celebrate (at the breake of day) the banquet and dinner of the feaſt, hauing firſt bid the Idoll good morrow, with a ſmall dance, which they made whileſt the day did breake, and that they prepared the ſacrifice. Then did all the Marchants aſſemble at this banquet, eſpecially thoſe which made it a trafficke to buy and ſell ſlaues, who were bound euerie yeare to offer one, for the reſemblance of their god. This Idoll was one of the moſt honourable in all the Land: and therefore the Temple where he was, was of a great authoritie. There red in all the Land: and therefore the Temple where he was, was of a great authoritie. There were threeſcore flaires to aſcend vp vnto it, and on the top was a Court of an indifferent largeneſſe, very finely dreſt and platered, in the middle whereof, was a great round thing like unto an Ouen, hauing the entrie low and narrow: ſo as they muſt ſtoope very low that ſhould enter on it. This Temple had Chambers and Chappels as the reſt, where there were conuents of Priests, young Men, Maides, and Children, as hath beene ſaid: and there was one Priſt alſo reſident continually, the which they changed weekly: For although there were in euerie one of theſe Temples, three or foure Curates or Ancients, yet did euerie one ſerue him weeke without parting. His charge that weeke (after he had inſtructed the children) was to ſtrike vp a Drum euerie day at the Sunne-ſetting, to the ſame end that we are accuſtomed to ring to Euenſong. This Drum was ſuch as they might heare the houſe ſound thereof throughout all the parts of the Citie, then euerie man ſhould ſing his merchaundie, and retired vnto his houſe, and there was ſo great a ſilence, as there ſeemed to be no liuing creature in the Towne. In the morning when as the day began to breake, they began to ſound the Drum, which was ſigne of the day beginning, ſo as trauellers and ſtrangers attended this ſignall to begin their journeyes, for till that time it was not lawfull to goe out of the Citie.

There was in this Temple a Court of reaſonable greatneſſe, in the which they made great dances, and paſtimes, with games or comedies the day of the Idols feaſt, for which purpoſe there was in the middle of this court a Theatre of thirty foure ſquare very finely decked and trimmed, the which they decked with flowers that day with all the art and inuention that might be, being inuironed round with Arches of diuers flowers and feathers, and in ſome places there were tied many ſmall Birds, Conies, and other tame beaſts. After dinner all the people aſſembled in this place, and the Players preſented themſelues and played Comedies, ſome counterfeited the deafe, and the rheumatike, others the lame, ſome the blinde, and without hands, which came to ſeek for cure of the Idoll, the deafe anſwered conſuſedly, the rheumatike did cough, the lame halted, telling their miſeries and griefes, wherevnto they made the people to laugh; others come forth in the forme of little beaſts, ſome were attyred like Snakes others like Toades, and ſome like Lizards: then met together, they ſung ſome together, they told their offices, and euerie one reſtring to his place they ſounded on ſmall flutes, which was pleaſant to heare. They likewiſe counterfeited Butterflies and ſmall Birds of diuers colours, and the children of the Temple repreſented theſe formes, then they went into a little Forreſt planted there for the nonce, where the Priests of the Temple drew them forth with inſtruments of muſicke. In the mean time they vied many pleaſant ſpeeches, ſome in propounding, others in defending, wherevnto the aſſiſtants were pleaſantly intertained. This done, they made a Maſke or Mummerie with all theſe perſonages, and ſo the Feaſt ended: the which were vſually done in their principall Feaſts.

ſcarce Temp-
ple.

Drums vſed in
ſtead of Bells

Comedies

very easily in their Language, were they of our proper names: yes, I have had some of their Writing shew'd me, whereby it seemes they should have some kinde of Letters, although the greatest part of their Writings, bee by the Characters and figures, as hath bene said of the *Chinois*.

An *Indian* of *Peru* or *Mexico*, that hath learned to read & write, knowes more then the wisest *Mandarin* that is amongst them: for that the *Indian* with foure and twentie Letters which hee hath learned, will write all the words in the World; and a *Mandarin* with his hundred thousand Letters, will be troubled to write some proper name, as of *Martin*, or *Alonso*, and with greater reason he shall bee lfe able to write the names of things he knowes not. So as the writing in *China*, is no other thing but a manner of painting or ciphering.

Of the fashion
of Letters and
writings which
the *Mexicans*
vied. Chap. 7.

Bookes of
leaves of trees
hence follow
liber, or codes,
from the inside
in which the
Ancient writ.
Blind zeale.

WE find among the Nations of New *Spain* a great knowledge and memorie of antiquities and therefore searching by what means the *Indians* had preferred their Histories, and so many particularities, I learned, that although they were not so subtile and curious as the *Chinois*, and those of *Japan*, yet had they some kind of Letters and Bookes amongst them, whereby they preferred (after their manner) the deeds of their Predecessors. In the Province of *Tecatan*, where the Bishopricke is, which they call *de Honduras*, there were Bookes of the leaves of Trees, folded and squared, after their manner, in the which the wise *Indians* contained the distribution of their times, the knowledge of the Planets, of beasts and other natural things, with their Antiquities, a thing full of great curiositie and diligence. It seemed to me Pends that all this was an Inchantment and Magicke Arte, who did obstinately maintaine, that they ought to be burnt, so as they were committed to the fire. Which since not only the *Indians* found to be ill done, but also the curious *Spaniards*, who desired to know the secrets of the Countrey. The like hath happened in other things: for our men thinking that all was but Superstition, have lost many memorials of ancient and holy things, which might have profited much. This proceedeth of a foolish and ignorant zeale, who not knowing, nor seeking to know what concerned the *Indians*, say preiudicially, that they are all but Witch-crafts, and that all the *Indians* are but Drunkards, incapable to know or learne any thing. For such as would be curiously informed of them, have found many things worthy of consideration. One of our company of *Jesuits*, a man very wittie and well experienced, did assemble in the Province of *Mexico*, the Ancients of *Tolome*, of *Tulla*, and of *Mexico*, conferring at large with them, who shewed unto him their Bookes, Histories and Kalendar, things very worthy the sight, because they had their figures and Hieroglyphicks, whereby they represented things in this manner: Such as had forme or figure, were represented by their proper Images, and such as had not any, were represented by Characters that signified them, and by this means they figured and wrote what they would. And to obtruse the time when any thing did happen, they had those painted Wheelles, for every one of them contained an Age, which was two and fiftie yeeres, as hath bene said; and of the side of those Wheelles, they did paint with figures and Characters right against the yeere, the memorable things that happened therein. As they noted the yeere when as the *Spaniards* entered their Countrey, they painted a man with a Hat and a red Jerkin, upon the figure of a Reed, which did rule then, and of other accidents. But for that their Writings and Characters were not sufficient to write Letters and Writings be, they could not so plainly expresse the words, but only the substance of their conceptions. And forasmuch as they were accustomed to rehearse Discourses and Dialogues by heart, compounded by their Orators and ancient Rhetoricians, and many *Captains* made by their Poets (which were impossible to learne by their Hieroglyphicks and Characters) the *Mexicans* were very curious to have their Children learne those Dialogues and compositions by heart. For the which cause they had Schooles, and as it were, Colleges or Seminaries, where the Ancients taught Children these Orations, and many other things, which they preferred amongst them by tradition from one to another, as perfectly, as if they had bene written: especially the most famous Nations had a care to have their children (which had any inclination to be Rhetoricians, and to practise the Office of Orators) to learne these Orations by heart: So as when the *Spaniards* came into their Countrey, and had taught them to read and write our Letters, many of the *Indians* then wrote these Orations, as if some great men doe wifelynesse that had read them. Which I say, for that some which I happily reade these long and eloquent Discourses in the *Mexican* History, will easily beleue they have bene invented by the *Spaniards*, and not really taken and reported from the *Indians*. But having knowne the certaine truth, they will give credit (as reason is) to their Histories. They did also write these Discourses after their manner, by Characters and Images: and I have seenne for my better satisfaction, the *Pater noster*, *Ave Maria*, and *Symboll*, or generall Confession of our Faith, written in this manner by the *Indians*.

Confession by
picture.

And in truth whosoever shall see them, will wonder thereat. For, to signifye these words, I sawe one doe confesse my selfe, they painted an *Indian* upon his knees, at a religious posture, as one that confesseth himselfe; and for this, *To God myghtie*, they painted three faces with their Crownes, like to the *Trinitie*, and *To the glorious Virgin Marye*, they painted the face of

our Lady, and halfe the bodie of a little child: and for Saint *Peter* and Saint *Paul*, heads with crowns, and a Key with a Sword: and whereas Images failed, they did fee Characters, as wherein I have signed, &c. whereby we may conceive the quicknelle of spirit of these *Indians*: seeing this manner of writing of our Prayers and matters of Faith hath not bene taught them by the *Spaniards*, neither could they have done it, if they had not had an excellent conception of that was taught them. And I have seenne in *Peru*, a confession of finnes brought by an *Indian*, written in the same sort with Pictures and Characters, painting every one of the tenne Commandments, after a caryaine manner, where there were caryaine markes like Ciphers, which were the finnes hee had committed against the Commandments. I nothing doubt but if 10 any of the most sufficient *Spaniards* were employed to make memorials of the like things by their Images and markes, they would not attayne unto it in a whole yeere, nor not in tenne.

BEFORE the *Spaniards* came to the *Indies*, they of *Peru* had no kind of writing, either Letters, Characters, Ciphers, or Figures: like to those of *China* and *Mexico*: yet preferred they the memory of their Antiquities, and mayntaine an order in all their affaires, of Peace, Warre, and Police, for that they were careful observers of Traditions from one to another, and the young ones learned, and carefully kept, as a holy thing, what their Superiors had told them, and taught it with the like care to their Posteritie. Besides this diligence, they supplied the want of Letters and Writings, partly by painting, as those of *Mexico*, (although they of *Peru* were very grosse and blockish) and partly, and most commonly by Quipps. These Quipps are Memorials or Registers, made of Bowes, in the which there are diuers knots and colours, which doe signifye diuers things, and it is strange to see what they have exprested and represented by this means: for their Quipps were them selfes of *Bookes of Histories*, of *Laws*, *Ceremonies*, and accounts of their affaires. There were Officers appointed to keepe these Quipps, the which at this day they call *Quipcamayu*, the which were bound to give an account of every thing, as *Notaries* and Registers doe here. Therefore they fully beleued them in all things, for according to the varietie of businesse, as Warres, Policies, Tributes, Ceremonies and Lands, there were sundry Quipps or branches, in every one of the which there were so many knots little and great, and strings tyed unto them, some Red, some Greene, some Blue, some White; and finally, such diuersitie, that even as wee deriue an infinite number of words from the foure and twentie Letters, applying them in diuers sorts, so doe they draw innumerable words from their knots, and diuersitie of colours. Which thing they doe in such a manner, that if at this day in *Peru*, any Commissary come at the end of two or three yeeres, to take information upon the life of any Officer, the *Indians* come with their small reckonings verified, saying, that in such a Village they giuen him so many Egges which he hath not payed for, in such a house a Henne in another, two burthens of grasse for his Horse, and that he hath payed but so much money and remained debtor so much. The proofe being presently made with these numbers of knots and handfuls of cords, it remaines for a certaine testimonie and register. I did see a handful of these strings, wherein an *Indian* woman carried written a general confession of all her life, and thereby confessed her selfe, as well as I could have done it in written Paper. I asked her what those strings meant that differed from the rest: she answered me, they were certaine circumstances which the sinne required to be fully confessed. Beside these Quipps of thread, they have another, as it were a kind of writing with small stones, by means whereof they learne punctually the words they desire to know by heart. It is a pleasant thing to see the old and the impotent (with a Wheellemade of small stones) learne the *Pater noster*, with another the *Ave Maria*, with another the Creed; and to remember what stone signifies, which was conceived by the Holy Ghost, and which, Suffered under Pontius Pilate.

It is a pleasant thing to see them correct themselves when they doe erre; for all their correction consisteth only in beholding of their small stones. One of these Wheelles were sufficient to make me forget all that I doe know by heart. There are a great number of these Wheelles in the Church-yards for this purpose. But it seemes a kind of Witch-craft, to see another kinde of Quipps, which they make of graines of Mays, for to call vpon a hard account, wherein a good Arithmetician would be troubled with his Penne to make a diuision: to see how much every one must contribute: they doe draw so many graines from one side, and add so many to another, with a thousand other inventions. These *Indians* will take their graines, and place five of one side, three of another, and eight of another, and will change one graine of one side, and three of another: So as they finish a certaine account, without erring in any point: and they sooner submit themselves to reason by these Quipps, what every one ought to pay; then wee can doe with the Penne. Hereby wee may judge if they haue any understanding, or bee brutish: for my part, I thinke they passe vs in those things, whereunto they doe apply themselves.

Of Registers
and the man-
ner of re-
cording which
the *Indians* of
vied. Chap. 6.

Quipps.

Writing with
small stones.

Accounts by
graines of
Mays.

On the order
the Indians
hold in their
Writings. Chap.

Diuers writ-
ings of mil-
itary.

Diuers forms
of govern-
ment.

Whether the
Mexican or
Peru Kingdome
was greater.

Of the govern-
ment of the
Kings and In-
guas of Peru.
Chap. x. x.
Incestuous
Marriages.

Diadem.

It shall be good to adde hereunto what we have obserued, touching the *Indians* Writings: for their manner was not to write with a continued line, but from the top to the bottom, or in circle-wise. The *Latines* and *Greekes* doe write from the left hand vnto the right, which is the vulgar and common manner wee doe vie. The *Hebrewes* contrariwise beganne at the right to the left, and therefore their Bookes began where ours did end. The *Chinois* write neither like the *Grekes*, nor like the *Hebrewes*, but from the top to the bottom, for as they bee no Letters but whole words, and that euery figure and Character signifieth a thing, they haue no neede to assemblie the parts one with another, and therefore they may well write from the toppe to the bottom. Those of *Mexico*, for the same cause did not write in line, from one side to another, but contrary to the *Chinois*, beginning below, they mounted upward. They vied this manner of writing, in the account of their dayes, and other things which they obserued: Yet when they did write in their Wheelles or Signes, they began from the middelt where the Sonne was figured, and so mounted by their yeeres vnto the round and circumference of the Wheelles.

By words, Pictures, and these Memorials, the Kings were often aduertised of that which passed. For this cause there were men of great agilitie, which serued as Carriers, to goe and come, whom they did nourish in this exercise of Running from their youth, labouring to haue them well breasted, that they might runne to the top of a high Hill without weariness. And therefore in *Mexico* they gaue the Prize to three or foure that first mounted vp the Hayres of the Temple, as hath bene said in the former Booke. And in *Cusco*, when they made their Sollemne Feast of *Capacmayta*, the Nouices did runne who could fastest vp the Rocks of *Yncacani*. And the exercise of running is generally much vied among the *Indians*. When as there came chanced any matter of importance, they sent vnto the Lords of *Mexico*, the thing painted, wherof they would aduertise them, as they did when the first *Spanish* ships appeared to their sight, and when they took *Tapachula*. In *Peru* they were very curious of Footmen, and the *Inguas* had them in all parts of the Realme, as ordinary Posts called *Chasquis*, wherof shall bee spoken in this place.

Many Nations of the *Indies* haue not indured any, or absolute and souereigne Lords, but lue in Comminalities, creating and appointing Captaynes and Princes, for certaine occasions only, to whom they obey during the time of their charge, then after they returne to their former estates. The greatest part of this New World (where there are no singled Kingdomes, nor established Common-weales, neither Princes nor succeeding Kings) they gouerne themselves in this manner, although there bee some Lords and principall men raised above the common sort. In this sort the whole Countrey of *Chile* is gouerned, where the *Araucans*, those of *Tucapel* and others, haue so many yeeres resisted the *Spaniards*. And in like sort all the new Kingdome of *Granado*, that of *Guaimalla*, the Islands, all *Florida*, *Brisill*, *Luson*, and other Countreys of great circuit: but that in some places they are yet more barbarous, scarcely acknowledging any head, but all command and gouerne in common, haue no other thing, but will, violence, industry and disorder, so as hee that most mayest command.

They haue onely found two Kingdomes or settled Empires, that of the *Mexicans* in New *Spain*, and that of the *Inguas* in *Peru*. It is not easie to be said, which of the two was the mightiest Kingdome, for that *Moteczuma* exceeded them in *Peru*, in Buildings, and in the greatness of his Court: but the *Inguas*, did likewise exceed the *Mexicans*, in treasure, richer, and greater of Provinces. In regard of Antiquitie, the Monarchie of the *Inguas*, had the aduantage, although it be not much, and in my opinion, they haue bene equal in feats of Armes and Victories. It is most certaine, that these two Kingdomes haue much exceeded all the *Indian* Provinces, discovered in this New World, as well in good order and government, as in power and wealth, and much more in Superstition and Seruice of their Idols, haueing many things like one to another. But in one thing they differed much, for among the *Mexicans*, the succession of the Kingdome, was by election, as the Empire of the *Romanes*, and that of *Peru*, was hereditary, and they succeeded in blood, as the Kingdomes of *France* and *Spain*.

The *Inguas* which ruled in *Peru*, being dead, his lawfull Sonne succeeded him, and so they held him that was borne of his chiete Wife, whom they called *Coya*. The which they haue alwayes obserued since the time of an *Inguas*, called *Tapachula*, who married his sister: for these Kings held it an honour to marrie their Sisters. And although they had other Wives and Concubines, yet the succession of the Kingdome appertained to the Sonne of *Coya*. It is true, that when the King had a legitimate Brother, he succeeded before the Sonne, and after him his Nephew, and Sonne to the first. The *Curacas*, and Noblemen, held the same order of succession in their goods and Offices. And after their manner they made excellent Ceremonies, and obsequies for the dead. Being dead, they presently held him for a God, making Sacrifices vnto him, Images and such like. By this means, there was infinite Treasure in *Peru*: for euery one of the *Inguas*, had laboured to haue his Oratorie and Treasure surpass that of his Predecessors. The mark or enigne, whereby they took possession of the Realme, was a red roll of *wool*, more than nine filkes, the which hung in the middelt of his forehead: and none but the *Inguas* alone might weare

were it, for that it was as a Crowne and Royall Diademe: yet they might lawfully weare a Roll hanging on the one side, neere vnto the eare, as some Noblemen did, but only the *Inguas* might carrie it in the middelt of his forehead. At such time as they took their Roll or Wreath, they made Iollemne Feasts, and many Sacrifices, with a great quantitie of vessell of Gold, and Silver, a great number of small formes or Images of sheepe, made of Gold and Silver, great abundance of the stufes of *Cambay*, well wrought, both fine and coarser, many shels of the Sea of all sorts, many feathers and a thousand diuers, which must bee of diuers colours. Then the chiefe Priest took a young Child in his hands, of the age of sixe or eight yeeres, pronouncing chiefe words with the other Ministers (speaking to the Image of *Oracocha*, Lord we offer this vnto thee, that thou mayest maintayne vs in quiet, and helpe vs in our warres, maintayne our Lord the Inguas in his greatness and estate, that hee may alwayes increase, giuing him much knowledge to gouerne vs.

There were present at this Ceremonie and Oath, men of all parts of the Realme, and of all *Guacas* and Sanctuaries. And without doubt, the affection and reuerence which this people bare to their Kings *Inguas*, was very great, for it is neuer found, that any one of his subjects treated Treason against him, for that they proceeded in their governments, not only with an absolute power, but also with good order and Iustice, suffering no man to bee oppressed: The *Inguas* placed Gouernours in diuers Provinces, amongst the which, some were Supersours, and did acknowledge none but himselfe, others were of lesse command, and others more particular, with goodly an order, and such grauntie, as no man durst be drunke, nor take an eare of Mays from his Neighbour. That *Inguas* held it for a Maxime, that it was necessary to keepe the *Indians* alwayes in action: and therefore we see it to this day, long cawies and workes of great labour, the which they say were made to exercise the *Indians*, lest they should remayne idle. When hee conquered any new Province, hee was accustomed presently to send the greatest part, and the chiefe of that Countrey into other Provinces, or else to his Court, and they call them at this day in *Peru*, *Atiminas*, and in their places he sent others of the Nation of *Cusco*, especially the *Ouzimes*, which were as Knights of an ancient house. They punished fault rigorously. And therefore such as haue any vnderstanding hereof, hold opinion, that there can be no better government for the *Indians*, nor more assured, then that of the *Inguas*.

To relate more particularly what I haue spoken before, you must vnderstand, that the distribution which the *Inguas* made of their vassals, was so exact and distinct, as he might gouerne them all with great facilitie, although his Realme was a thousand leagues long: for haueing conquered a Province, he presently reduced the *Indians* into Townes and Comminalities, the which he diuided into bands, he appointed one to haue the charge ouer euery ten *Indians*, ouer euery hundred another, ouer euery thousand another, and ouer ten thousand another, whom they called *Huao*, the which was one of the greatest charges. Yet about all in euery Province, there was a Gouernour of the house of the *Inguas*, whom all the rest obeyed, giuing vnto him euery yeere particular account of what had passed, that is, of such as were borne, of those that were dead and of their troups and grane. The Gouernours were euery yeere out of *Cusco*, where they remayned, and returned to the great Court of *Bayne*, at the which they brought the tribute of the whole Realme to the Court; neither might they enter but with this condition. All the Kingdome was diuided into foure parts, which they called *Tahuantinsuyu*, that is, *Chinchaysuyu*, *Collasuyu*, *Andisuyu*, and *Cundisuyu*, according to the four wayes which went from *Cusco*, where the Court was resident, and where the general assemblies of the Realme were made. Their waies and Provinces being answerable vnto them, were towards the four quarters of the world, *Collasuyu* to the South, *Chinchaysuyu* to the North, *Cundisuyu* to the West, and *Andisuyu* to the East. In euery Towne and Village, there were two lots of people, which were of *Huanasuyu*, and *Ynisuyu*, which is as much to say, as *sheep* and *sheep* lot. When they commanded any worke to be done, or to furnish any thing to the *Inguas*, the Officers knew pretty well how much euery Province, Towne, and Family, ought to furnish: so as the diuision was not made by equal portions, but by Cotization, according to the qualities and wealth of the Countrey. So as for example, if they were to gather a hundred thousand *Fanegas* of Mays, they knew pretty well how much euery Province was to contribute, were it a tenth, a fiftenth, or a sit part. The like was of Townes and Villages, *Adors*, or Linages. The *Quipocamays*, which were the Officers and Intendants, kept the account of all with their strings and knottes, without fayling, setting downe what euery one had payed, euen to a Henne, or a burthen of wood, and in a moment they did see by diuers Registers what euery one ought to pay.

The Houses and Buildings which the *Inguas* made in Temples, Fortresses, wayes, Countrey houses, and such like, were many in number, and of an excellent labour, as doth appeare at this day by their runnes and remaynders, both in *Cusco*, *Tahuantinsuyu*, *Tambo*, and other places, where there are stones of an vneatable greatness: as neen cannot conceiue how they were

Exact Iustice.

No idleness permitted.

Transmigration.

Of the distribution the *Inguas* made of their Vassals. Chap. 13. Gouernours.

Tribute yeerely paid at *Cusco*.

Fourfold prouincial partition.

Of the Offices and manner of building at the *Inguas*. Chap. 14.

cur, broughe and set in their places. There came great numbers of people from all Prouinces, to worke in these Buildings and Fortresses, which the *Inguas* caused to bee made in *Cusco*, or other parts of the Realme. As these Workes were strange, and to amaze the beholders, wherein they used no Morter nor Cement, neither any Iron, or Steele, to cut, and set the stones in worke. They had no Engines or other Instruments to carrie them, and yet were they so artificially wrought, that in many places they could not see the ioynts: and many of these stones are so bigge, that it were an incredible thing, if one should not see them. As *Tiguanaco*, I did measure a stone of thirtie eight foot long, of eighteen broad, and sixe thicke. And in the wall of the Fortesse of *Cusco*, which is of *Mosallen*, there are stones of a greater bignesse. And that which is most strange, these stones being not cut nor squared to ioyne, but contrariwise, very vnquall to one with another in forme and greatnesse, yet did they ioyne them together without Cement with an incredible manner. All this was done by the force of men, who endured their labour with an invincible patience. For to ioyne one stone with another, they were forced to handle and trie many of them often, being vnquen. The *Inguas* appointed every yeere what numbers of people should labour in these stones and buildings, and the *Indians* made a division amongst them, as of other things, so as no man was oppressed. Although these Buildings were great, yet were they commonly all appointed and vsuit, almost like to the Mosques or Buildings of the Barbarians.

They could make no Arches in their Edifices, nor Morter or Cement to build them withall: when they lay Arches of wood built vpon the River of *Xanra*, the Bridge being finished, and the wood broken downe, they all began to runne away, supposing that the Bridge which was of stone should presently fallbur when they found it to stand firme, and that the *Spaniards* went on it, the *Cacique* said to his companions. *It is reason you should see these men, who in truth I take to be the children of the Sunne.* The Bridges they made were of Reedes pleited, which they tyed the banks with great stakes, for that they could not make any Bridges of stone or wood. The Bridge which is at this day vpon the current of the great Lake *Chiguita* in *Colara* is admirable; for the course of that water is so deepe, as they cannot fettle any foundation, and so broad, that it is impossible to make an Arch to passe it: so as it was altogether impossible to make a Bridge either of wood or stone. But the wit and industry of the *Indians* invented a meane to make firme and assured Bridges being only of straw, which seemeth fabulous, yet is it very true: For as 30 we have said before, they did bundle together certaine bundles of Reeds, and Weeds, which doe grow in the Lake that they call *Taura*, and being a little matter that sinks not in the water, they cast it vpon a great quantitie of Reeds, then haung tyed those bundles of Weeds to either side of the River, both men and beastes goe over it with ease: passing over this Bridge I have wondered, that of so common and easie a thing, they had made a Bridge, better, and more assured then the Bridge of Boates from *Senile* to *Triane*. I have measured the length of this Bridge, and as I remember, it was about three hundred foorer, and they say that the depth of this Current is very great: and it seemes about, that the water hath no motion, yet they say, that at the bottoime it hath a violent and very furious course. And this shall suffice for Buildings.

The *Inguas* riches was incomparable, for although no King did inherit the riches and treasure of his Predecessor, yet had hee command of all the riches of his Realme, as well Silver and Gold, as the stuffe of *Cumbi*, and cattell, wherein they abounded, and their greatest riches of all, was their innumerable number of vassals, which were all employed as it pleased the King. They brought out of every Prouince what he had chosen for tribute. The *Chicas* sent him sweet and rich wooies; the *Lucanai* lent Brancas to carry his Litter; The *Chumbiblicas*, Dancers; and in the other Prouinces sent him what they had of abundance, besides their generall Tribute, whereunto every one contributed. The *Indians* that were noted to that end, laboured in the Mines of Gold and Silver, which did abound in *Pera*, whom the *Inguas* entertained with all 50 they needed for their expenses: and whatsoever they drew downe, of Gold and Silver, was for him. By this meane there were no great treasures in this Kingdome, as it is the opinion of many, that what fell in the hands of the *Spaniards*, (although it were very much, as we know) was not the tenth part of that which they hid and buried in the ground, the which they could never discover, notwithstanding all the search courtousnesse had taught them. But the greatest wealth of these barbarous people, was that their vassals were all slaves, whose labour they used at their pleasure: and that which is admirable, they employed them in such sort, as it was no servitude unto them, but rather a pleasing life. But to understand the order of Tributes which the *Indians* payed vnto their Lord, you must know, that when the *Inguas* conquered any Cities, hee diuided all the Land into three parts, the first was for Religion and Ceremonies, so as the *Pachayachaycu*, 60 the dea, and other *Guacas* and Sanctuaries, had every one of their proper Lands, the fruits whereof were hoyleed and consumed in Sacrifices, and in the nourishing of Ministers and Priests; for there were *Indians* appointed for every *Guaca*, and Sanctuaries, and the

All slaves and none.

Lands sacred.

Of the *Inguas* reuenues, and the order of Tributes they imposed vpon the *Indians*, Chap. 15.

the greatest part of this reuenue was spent in *Cusco*, where was the vniuersall and generall sanctuaries, and the rest in that Citie, where it was gathered: for that after the imitation of *Cusco*, there were in every Citie, *Guacas*, and Oratories of the same order, and with the same functions. Orders their on, which were looked after the same manner and ceremonies to that of *Cusco*, which is an admirable thing, and they have found it by proofe in about a hundred Townes, some of them distant about two hundred leagues from *Cusco*.

That which they sowed or reapt vpon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or store-houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the *Indians* paid. I cannot say how much this part amounted vnto, for that it was greater in some parts then in other, and in some places it was in a manner all: and this part was the first they put to profit. The second part of these Lands and inheritances was for the *Inguas*, wherewith he and his household were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garriſons and Souldiers. And therefore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the *Guacas*. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to *Cusco*, or vnto such places where it was needfull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelve yeares, vntill a time of needefulle. The *Indians* tilled and put to profit the *Inguas* Lands, next to those of the *Guacas*; during which time they lured and were nourished at the charges of the *Inguas*, or of the *Guacas*, according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, and old folks were released and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatsoever they gathered vpon those Lands were for the *Inguas*, the Sunne, or the *Guacas*, yet the proprietie appertained vnto the *Indians* and their fucellours. The third part of these Lands were given by the *Inguas* for the Communitie, and they haue not yet discovered, whether this portion were greater, or lesse, then that of the *Inguas* or *Guacas*. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man possessed any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the *Indians* ever possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the *Inguas*: yet might it not be enuied nor diuided amongst his heires, they euer yeare diuided these Lands of the communitie, in giving to every one, that which was needfull for the nourishment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for euerie person. The *Indians* paid no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them: For all their tribute was to till and keepe in good order the Lands of the *Inguas*, and the *Guacas*; and to lay the fruits thereof in their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gaue of these fruits thus referred to the neede, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The *Inguas* did likewise make distribution of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and diuide them: then to appoint the pastures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the *Guacas* and to the *Inguas* and to euerie Town: and therefore one portion of their reuenues was for religion, another for the *Inguas*, and the third for the *Indians* themselves. The like order was observed amongst the hunters, being forbidden to 40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the *Inguas* and *Guacas*, were in great numbers and verie fruitful, for this cause they called them *Kapacillama*, but those of the common and publicke, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them *Bacchallama*. The *Inguas* tooke great care for the preferation of Cattell, for that it hath bene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countre; and as it is said, they did neither sacrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did they take them when they hunted. If the mangle or the fureau which they call *Cacache* take a mangle, they were perfectly commended to burye it quickly, lest it should infect others. They did these their cattell in their season, and distributed to euerie one to fomme and weare. Stuffs for the service of his Family. They had searchers to examine if they did employ themselves in these works, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffs of the wooll of the *Inguas* cattell, 50 for him and for his family, one sort very fine, which they called *Cumbi*, and another grolier, which they likewise called *Abasca*. There was no certaine number of these Stuffs and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to euerie one. The wooll that remained was put into the store-houses, whereof the *Spaniards* during them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of iudgement but doe admire for excellencie & well belid a government, seeing the *Indians* (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after this manner, this perfect chon, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, entertaining with such abundance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

10 That which they sowed or reapt vpon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or store-houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the *Indians* paid. I cannot say how much this part amounted vnto, for that it was greater in some parts then in other, and in some places it was in a manner all: and this part was the first they put to profit. The second part of these Lands and inheritances was for the *Inguas*, wherewith he and his household were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garriſons and Souldiers. And therefore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the *Guacas*. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to *Cusco*, or vnto such places where it was needfull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelve yeares, vntill a time of needefulle. The *Indians* tilled and put to profit the *Inguas* Lands, next to those of the *Guacas*; during which time they lured and were nourished at the charges of the *Inguas*, or of the *Guacas*, according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, and old folks were released and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatsoever they gathered vpon those Lands were for the *Inguas*, the Sunne, or the *Guacas*, yet the proprietie appertained vnto the *Indians* and their fucellours. The third part of these Lands were given by the *Inguas* for the Communitie, and they haue not yet discovered, whether this portion were greater, or lesse, then that of the *Inguas* or *Guacas*. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man possessed any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the *Indians* ever possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the *Inguas*: yet might it not be enuied nor diuided amongst his heires, they euer yeare diuided these Lands of the communitie, in giving to every one, that which was needfull for the nourishment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for euerie person. The *Indians* paid no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them: For all their tribute was to till and keepe in good order the Lands of the *Inguas*, and the *Guacas*; and to lay the fruits thereof in their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gaue of these fruits thus referred to the neede, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The *Inguas* did likewise make distribution of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and diuide them: then to appoint the pastures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the *Guacas* and to the *Inguas* and to euerie Town: and therefore one portion of their reuenues was for religion, another for the *Inguas*, and the third for the *Indians* themselves. The like order was observed amongst the hunters, being forbidden to 40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the *Inguas* and *Guacas*, were in great numbers and verie fruitful, for this cause they called them *Kapacillama*, but those of the common and publicke, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them *Bacchallama*. The *Inguas* tooke great care for the preferation of Cattell, for that it hath bene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countre; and as it is said, they did neither sacrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did they take them when they hunted. If the mangle or the fureau which they call *Cacache* take a mangle, they were perfectly commended to burye it quickly, lest it should infect others. They did these their cattell in their season, and distributed to euerie one to fomme and weare. Stuffs for the service of his Family. They had searchers to examine if they did employ themselves in these works, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffs of the wooll of the *Inguas* cattell, 50 for him and for his family, one sort very fine, which they called *Cumbi*, and another grolier, which they likewise called *Abasca*. There was no certaine number of these Stuffs and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to euerie one. The wooll that remained was put into the store-houses, whereof the *Spaniards* during them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of iudgement but doe admire for excellencie & well belid a government, seeing the *Indians* (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after this manner, this perfect chon, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, entertaining with such abundance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

10 That which they sowed or reapt vpon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or store-houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the *Indians* paid. I cannot say how much this part amounted vnto, for that it was greater in some parts then in other, and in some places it was in a manner all: and this part was the first they put to profit. The second part of these Lands and inheritances was for the *Inguas*, wherewith he and his household were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garriſons and Souldiers. And therefore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the *Guacas*. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to *Cusco*, or vnto such places where it was needfull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelve yeares, vntill a time of needefulle. The *Indians* tilled and put to profit the *Inguas* Lands, next to those of the *Guacas*; during which time they lured and were nourished at the charges of the *Inguas*, or of the *Guacas*, according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, and old folks were released and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatsoever they gathered vpon those Lands were for the *Inguas*, the Sunne, or the *Guacas*, yet the proprietie appertained vnto the *Indians* and their fucellours. The third part of these Lands were given by the *Inguas* for the Communitie, and they haue not yet discovered, whether this portion were greater, or lesse, then that of the *Inguas* or *Guacas*. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man possessed any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the *Indians* ever possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the *Inguas*: yet might it not be enuied nor diuided amongst his heires, they euer yeare diuided these Lands of the communitie, in giving to every one, that which was needfull for the nourishment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for euerie person. The *Indians* paid no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them: For all their tribute was to till and keepe in good order the Lands of the *Inguas*, and the *Guacas*; and to lay the fruits thereof in their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gaue of these fruits thus referred to the neede, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The *Inguas* did likewise make distribution of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and diuide them: then to appoint the pastures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the *Guacas* and to the *Inguas* and to euerie Town: and therefore one portion of their reuenues was for religion, another for the *Inguas*, and the third for the *Indians* themselves. The like order was observed amongst the hunters, being forbidden to 40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the *Inguas* and *Guacas*, were in great numbers and verie fruitful, for this cause they called them *Kapacillama*, but those of the common and publicke, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them *Bacchallama*. The *Inguas* tooke great care for the preferation of Cattell, for that it hath bene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countre; and as it is said, they did neither sacrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did they take them when they hunted. If the mangle or the fureau which they call *Cacache* take a mangle, they were perfectly commended to burye it quickly, lest it should infect others. They did these their cattell in their season, and distributed to euerie one to fomme and weare. Stuffs for the service of his Family. They had searchers to examine if they did employ themselves in these works, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffs of the wooll of the *Inguas* cattell, 50 for him and for his family, one sort very fine, which they called *Cumbi*, and another grolier, which they likewise called *Abasca*. There was no certaine number of these Stuffs and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to euerie one. The wooll that remained was put into the store-houses, whereof the *Spaniards* during them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of iudgement but doe admire for excellencie & well belid a government, seeing the *Indians* (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after this manner, this perfect chon, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, entertaining with such abundance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

10 That which they sowed or reapt vpon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or store-houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the *Indians* paid. I cannot say how much this part amounted vnto, for that it was greater in some parts then in other, and in some places it was in a manner all: and this part was the first they put to profit. The second part of these Lands and inheritances was for the *Inguas*, wherewith he and his household were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garriſons and Souldiers. And therefore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the *Guacas*. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to *Cusco*, or vnto such places where it was needfull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelve yeares, vntill a time of needefulle. The *Indians* tilled and put to profit the *Inguas* Lands, next to those of the *Guacas*; during which time they lured and were nourished at the charges of the *Inguas*, or of the *Guacas*, according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, and old folks were released and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatsoever they gathered vpon those Lands were for the *Inguas*, the Sunne, or the *Guacas*, yet the proprietie appertained vnto the *Indians* and their fucellours. The third part of these Lands were given by the *Inguas* for the Communitie, and they haue not yet discovered, whether this portion were greater, or lesse, then that of the *Inguas* or *Guacas*. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man possessed any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the *Indians* ever possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the *Inguas*: yet might it not be enuied nor diuided amongst his heires, they euer yeare diuided these Lands of the communitie, in giving to every one, that which was needfull for the nourishment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for euerie person. The *Indians* paid no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them: For all their tribute was to till and keepe in good order the Lands of the *Inguas*, and the *Guacas*; and to lay the fruits thereof in their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gaue of these fruits thus referred to the neede, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The *Inguas* did likewise make distribution of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and diuide them: then to appoint the pastures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the *Guacas* and to the *Inguas* and to euerie Town: and therefore one portion of their reuenues was for religion, another for the *Inguas*, and the third for the *Indians* themselves. The like order was observed amongst the hunters, being forbidden to 40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the *Inguas* and *Guacas*, were in great numbers and verie fruitful, for this cause they called them *Kapacillama*, but those of the common and publicke, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them *Bacchallama*. The *Inguas* tooke great care for the preferation of Cattell, for that it hath bene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countre; and as it is said, they did neither sacrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did they take them when they hunted. If the mangle or the fureau which they call *Cacache* take a mangle, they were perfectly commended to burye it quickly, lest it should infect others. They did these their cattell in their season, and distributed to euerie one to fomme and weare. Stuffs for the service of his Family. They had searchers to examine if they did employ themselves in these works, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffs of the wooll of the *Inguas* cattell, 50 for him and for his family, one sort very fine, which they called *Cumbi*, and another grolier, which they likewise called *Abasca*. There was no certaine number of these Stuffs and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to euerie one. The wooll that remained was put into the store-houses, whereof the *Spaniards* during them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of iudgement but doe admire for excellencie & well belid a government, seeing the *Indians* (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after this manner, this perfect chon, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, entertaining with such abundance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

10 That which they sowed or reapt vpon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or store-houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the *Indians* paid. I cannot say how much this part amounted vnto, for that it was greater in some parts then in other, and in some places it was in a manner all: and this part was the first they put to profit. The second part of these Lands and inheritances was for the *Inguas*, wherewith he and his household were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garriſons and Souldiers. And therefore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the *Guacas*. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to *Cusco*, or vnto such places where it was needfull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelve yeares, vntill a time of needefulle. The *Indians* tilled and put to profit the *Inguas* Lands, next to those of the *Guacas*; during which time they lured and were nourished at the charges of the *Inguas*, or of the *Guacas*, according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, and old folks were released and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatsoever they gathered vpon those Lands were for the *Inguas*, the Sunne, or the *Guacas*, yet the proprietie appertained vnto the *Indians* and their fucellours. The third part of these Lands were given by the *Inguas* for the Communitie, and they haue not yet discovered, whether this portion were greater, or lesse, then that of the *Inguas* or *Guacas*. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man possessed any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the *Indians* ever possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the *Inguas*: yet might it not be enuied nor diuided amongst his heires, they euer yeare diuided these Lands of the communitie, in giving to every one, that which was needfull for the nourishment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for euerie person. The *Indians* paid no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them: For all their tribute was to till and keepe in good order the Lands of the *Inguas*, and the *Guacas*; and to lay the fruits thereof in their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gaue of these fruits thus referred to the neede, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The *Inguas* did likewise make distribution of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and diuide them: then to appoint the pastures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the *Guacas* and to the *Inguas* and to euerie Town: and therefore one portion of their reuenues was for religion, another for the *Inguas*, and the third for the *Indians* themselves. The like order was observed amongst the hunters, being forbidden to 40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the *Inguas* and *Guacas*, were in great numbers and verie fruitful, for this cause they called them *Kapacillama*, but those of the common and publicke, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them *Bacchallama*. The *Inguas* tooke great care for the preferation of Cattell, for that it hath bene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countre; and as it is said, they did neither sacrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did they take them when they hunted. If the mangle or the fureau which they call *Cacache* take a mangle, they were perfectly commended to burye it quickly, lest it should infect others. They did these their cattell in their season, and distributed to euerie one to fomme and weare. Stuffs for the service of his Family. They had searchers to examine if they did employ themselves in these works, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffs of the wooll of the *Inguas* cattell, 50 for him and for his family, one sort very fine, which they called *Cumbi*, and another grolier, which they likewise called *Abasca*. There was no certaine number of these Stuffs and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to euerie one. The wooll that remained was put into the store-houses, whereof the *Spaniards* during them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of iudgement but doe admire for excellencie & well belid a government, seeing the *Indians* (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after this manner, this perfect chon, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, entertaining with such abundance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

60 The *Indians* of *Pera* had one perfection, which was, to teach their children all arts and occupations necessary for the life of man: for that there were no particular Trade-men, as amongst vs, Taylors, Shoemakers, Weauers, and the rest; but every one learned what was needfull for their persons and houses, and provided for themselves. All could weaue and make their garments, and therefore the *Inguas* entrusted them with wooll, gave them cloathing. Every man could till the ground, and put it to profit, without lying of any labourers. All built their own houses

Orders their Religion.

Royall domestices.

Lands of the communitie in common.

No proprietie.

Their Tributes, what.

Carelessly distributed.

Hunted lawes.

Provisions for cattell.

Negligence punished.

Of Arts and offices which the *Indians* did exercise.

All men of all trades.

houses, and the women, which vnderstood most were not brought vp in delights, but ferued their Husbands carefully. Other Arts and Trades which were not ordinary and common for the life of man, had their proper Companies and workemen, as *Goldsmiths, Painters, Potters, Water-men, and players of Instruments*. There were also *Weavers* and workmen for exquisite workes, which the Noblemen used: but the common people, as hath beene said, had in their houses all things necessary, hauing no neede to buy. This continues to this day, so as they haue no neede one of another for things necessary: touching his person and family, as shoes and garments, and for their house, to fowle and trape, and to make Iron workes, and needefull instruments. It is worthy obseruation, although the *Indians* be simple in their manner and habits, yet doe we see great diuertise among the Provinces, especially in the attire of their head, for in some places they carried a long peece of cloth, which went often about, in some places large peece of cloth, which went but once about, in some places were little morters or hats, in some others as were higs and round Bonnets, and some like the bottome of sacks, with a shoule-der difference. They had a straight and middellie lawe, that no man might change the fashion of the garments of his Province, although he were to live in another. This the *Inga* held to be of great importance for the order and good government of his Realme, and they doe obserue it to this day, though not with so great a care as they were accustomed.

Diuerfite of
head tires.

Vniformity of
habits.

Of the Polts
and Cloutings
the Indians did
vse. Chap. 17.

There were many Polts and couriers which the *Inga* maintained throughout his Realme, whom they called *Chafquis*, and they carried commandments to the Gouernours, and returned their aduises and aduertisements to the Court. These *Chafquis* were placed at euery country, which was a league and a halfe one from another in two small houses, where were four *Indians* of euery Country, and they were changed monthly. Hauing receiued the packet or message, they ranne with all their force vntill they had deliuered it to the other *Chafquis*, such as were so running, being ready and watchfull. They ran fiftie leagues in a day and night, although the greatest part of that Countrie be very rough. They ferued also to carry such things as the *Inga* desired to haue with speede. Therefore they had alwaies Sea-fitt in *Cusco*, of two liues old or little more, although it were about a hundred leagues off. Since the *Spaniards* entered, they haue vied of these *Chafquis*, in time of seditions, whereof there was great neede. *Don Martin* the Viceroy appointed ordinary Polts at euery foure leagues, to carry and recarry dispatches, which were very necessary in this Realme, though they run not so swiftly as the ancients did, neither are there so many yet they are well paid, and ferue as the ordinaries of *Spain*, to whom they giue Letters which they carry foure or five leagues.

Of the Indits,
Lawes and pun-
ishments
which the In-
gians made
vnto their
children, and of
their marriages.
Chap. 18.

Adultery.

Marriage Ge-
lemities.

Even as such as had done any good seruice in warre, or in the government of the Common-wealth were honoured and recompensed with publike charges, with Lands giuen them in proper, with armes and titles of honour, and in marrying wiues of the *Inga* lineage: Euen so they gaue seuerer punishments to such as were disobedient and offenders. They punished murder, theft, and adultery, with death, and such as committed incest with ascendants or descendents in direct line, were likewise punished with death. But they held it no adultery to haue many wiues or concubines, neither were the women subiect to the punishment of death, being found with any other, but only the that was the true and lawfull wife, with whom they contracted marriage; for they had but one whom they did wedde and recieue with a particular solemnitie and ceremony, which was in this manner: The Bridegroom went to the Brides house, and led her from thence with him, hauing first put an *Oteya* vpon her foote. They call the shoe which they vfe in those parts *Oteya*, being open like the *Franciscan* Frase, if the Bride were a maide, her *Oteya* was of Wool, but if she were not, it was of Redden. All his other wiues and concubines did honour and ferue this as the lawfull wife, who alone after the decaie of her husband carried a mourning weede of blacke, for the space of a yeare; neither did the marry vntill that time were put; and commonly she was younger then her husband. The *Inga* himselfe with his owne hand gaue this woman to his Gouernours and Captaines: and the Gouernours or Captaines, attended all the way menand maides, in one place of the Citie, where they gaue to euery one his wife with the aforeaid ceremony, in putting on the *Oteya*, and in this manner they contracted their marriages. If this woman were found with any other then her husband, she was punished with death, and the adulterer likewise: and although the husband pardoned them, yet were they punished, although dispensed withall from death. They inflicted the like punishment on him that did commit incest with his Mother, Grandmother, Daughter, or Grandchild: for it was not prohibited for them to marrie together, or to haue of their other kinsfolke for concubines; only the first degree was defended, neither did they allow the brother to haue the company of his sister, wherein they of *Peru* were very much de- ceived, beleeuing that their *Inga* and Noblemen might lawfully contract marriage with their sisters, yea by father and mother: for in truth it hath beene alwaies held vntill among the *Indians*, and defended to contract in the first degree; which continued vntill the time of *Topa Inga Yupangui* father to *Guanacapa*, and grandfather to *Atahualpa*, at such time as the *Spaniards* entered.

Incest indit-
den.

entered *Peru*, for that *Topa Inga Yupangui*, was the first that brake this custome, marrying with his daughter, his sister by the fathers side, decreeing that the *Inga* might marrie with their sisters by the fathers side, and no other.

This he did, and by that marriage he had *Guanacapa*, and a daughter called *Coya Cusillimu*: finding himselfe at the point of death, he commanded his children by father and mother to marrie together, and gaue permission to the Noblemen of his Countrie, to marrie with their sisters by the fathers side. And for that this marriage was vnlawfull, and against the law of nature, God would bring to an end this Kingdome of the *Inga*, during the reigne of *Guanacapa Inga*, and *Atahualpa Inga*, which was the fruite that sprang from this marriage. Who fo will more exactly vnderstand the manner of marriages among the *Indians* in *Peru*, let him reade the Treatise Polo hath writtten at the request of *Don Iuanno Louis* Archbishop of *King*; which Polo made a very curious search, as he hath done of diuers other things at the *Indies*.

BY the commandment of *Don Philip* the Catholike King, they haue made the most diligent and exact search that could be, of the beginning, customes, and priuiledges of the *Ingas*, the which was not so perfectly done as was desired: for that the *Indians* had no written Records: yet he haue recouered that which I shall write, by means of their *Quippos* and Registers. First there was not in *Peru* in old time, any King or Lord to whom all obeyed, but they were Communitaries, as at this day there is in the Realme of *Chile*, and in a manner, in all the Provinces which the *Spaniards* haue conuered to the west Weftene *Indies*, except the Realme of *Mexico*. You must therefore vnderstand, that they haue found three manner of Governements: a. *Indies*. The first and best, was a Monarchie, as that of the *Inga*, and of *Atahualpa*, although for the most part they were tyrannous. The second was of Communitaries, where they were gouerned by the adulte and authority of many, which are as it were Councillors. Thele in time of warre, were choise of a Captaine, to whom a whole Nation or Province did obey, and in time of peace, euery Towne or Communitie did rule and gouerne themselves, hauing liue chiefe men whom the vulgar did respect, and sometime (though not often) some of them assemble together about shourt matters of importance, to consult what they should thinke necessary. The third kinde of Government, is altogether barbarous, compoised of *Indians* without Law, without King, and without any certaine place of abode, but goe in troopes like savage beastes. As farre as I can conceiue, the first Inhabitants of the *Indies*, were of this kinde, as at this day a great part of the *Floridians*, *Chiriguans*, *Chunches*, *Tzefeguans*, *Pilecomers*, and the greatest part of the *Floridians*, and all the *Chichimaques* in new *Spain*: Of this kinde the other sort of government by Communitaries was framed, by the industry and wisdom of some amongst them, in which there is some more order, holding a more staid place, as at this day those of *Araucans*, and of *Tucapel* in *Chile*, and in the new Kingdome of *Granado*, the *Moscos*, and the *Orizimites* in new *Spain*: and in all these there is less fiercenesse and incivillitie, & much more quiet then in the rest. Of this kinde, by the valour & knowledge of some excellent men, grew the other government more mighty and potent, which did institute a Kingdome and Monarchie.

It appears by their Registers, that their Government hath continued about three hundred yeares, but not fully foure, although their Seigneurie for a long time, was not about five or six leagues compass about the Citie of *Cusco*: their original and beginning was in the valley of *Cusco*; where by little and little they conquered the Lands which we call *Peru*, passing beyond *Quito*, vnto the riuer of *Pallo* towards the North, breaching euen vnto *Chile*, towards the South, which is almost a thousand leagues in length. It extended in breadth vnto the South Sea towards the West, and vnto the great champaigns which are on the other side of the *Andes*, where at this day is to be seene the Castell which is called the *Puaca* of the *Inga*, the which is a fortresse built for the defence of the frontie towards the East. The *Inga* advanced no farther on that side, for the abundance of water, Marshes, Lakes, and Riueres, which runne in those parts.

They the *Ingas* puffed all other Nations of *America*, in policie and government, and much more in valour and armes, although the *Casaries* which were their mortall enemies, and fauoured the *Spaniards*, would neuer confesse it, nor yett else this advantage: so as euen at this day, if they fall into any discorde or comparifons, and that they be a little chafed and incensed, they kill one another by thousands vpon this quarrell, which are not so many, as it hath happened in *Cusco*. The practice and manner which the *Ingas* had to make themselves Lords of all this Countrie, was in insaining that since the general deluge (whereof all the *Indians* haue knowledge) the world had beene preferred, restored, and peopled by their *Ingas*, and that seuen of them came forth of the Cae of *Pacacambó*, by reason whereof, all other men ought them tribute and vassalage, as their progenitors. Besides they said and affirmed, that they aloue held the true religion, and knew how God should be ferued and honoured: and for this cause they should instruct all men. It is a strange thing, the ground they gaue to their customes and ceremonies. There were in *Cusco* about foure hundred *Oraucans*, as in a holy land, and all places were filled with their murthers. As they continued in the conquests of Provinces, so they brought in the like ceremonies and customes. In all this Realme the chiefe Idiots

Of the Original of the Ingas, Lords of Peru, with their Conquests and Victories. Chap. 19.

Continuance of their Monarchy.

Strife twixt Ingas and Casaries.

400. Oraucans in Cusco.

they did worship, were *Viracocha*, *Pachayachachi*, which signifies the Creator of the World, and after him, the *Sunne*. And therefore they said, that the *Sunne* received his virtue and being from the Creator, as the other Idols doe, and that they were intercessors to him,

Of the first
Ingas, and his
Successors.
Chap. 2.

THE first man which the *Indians* report to be the beginning and first of the *Ingas*, was *Manu*, *gecapa*, whom they imagine, after the deluge, to have issued forth of the Caves of *Tambo*, which is from *Cusco* about five or six leagues. They say that hee gave beginning to two principall Races or Families of the *Ingas*, the one was called *Huancanese*, and the other *Orinose*: of the first came the Lords whom subduged and governed the Province, and the first whom they made the Head and Stemme of this Familie, was called *Ingavaca*, who founded a Familie or *Atta*, as they call them, named *Pisacapurcan*. This although he were no great Lord, was leued notwithstanding in wealth of gold and silver. And dying he appointed that all his treasure should be employed for the service of his Body, and for the feeding of his Familie. His Successor did the like: and this grew to a generall custome, as I have said, that no *Ingua* might inherit the goods and house of his Predecessor, but did build a new Palace. In the time of this *Ingavaca*, the *Indians* had Images of gold; and to him succeeded *Yaguarquaque*, a very old man: they say, hee was called by this name, which signifies *teares of blood*, for that being once was afflicted and taken by his Enemies, for griefe and sorrow he wept blood. Hee was buried in a Village called *Panlo*, which is vpon the way to *Omogaga*: he founded a Familie called *Aucallipanaca*. To him succeeded his sonne *Viracocha Inga*, who was very rich, and made much vessel of gold and silver: he founded the Line or Familie of *Cocapana*. *Gonzales Pizarro* sought out his body, for the report of the great treasure buried with him, who after hee had cruelly tormented many *Indians*, in the end he found it in *Xaquixaquana*, where as they said *Pizarro* was afterwards vanquished, taken, and executed by the President *Gusca*. *Gonzales Pizarro* cauled the body of *Viracocha Inga* to be burnt; the *Indians* did afterwards take the ashes, the which they preferred in a small vessel, making great sacrifices thereunto, vntill *Polo* did reforme it, and other Idolatries which they committed vpon the bodies of their other *Ingas*, the which hee suppressed with an admirable diligence and dexteritie, drawing these bodies out of their hands, being whole, and much imbalmed, whereby hee extinguished a great number of Idolatries which they committed. The *Indians* took it ill, that the *Ingua* did intitle himselfe *Viracocha*, which is the name of their God: and he to excuse himselfe, gave them to vnderstand, that the same *Viracocha* appeared to him in his dreame, commanding him to take this name. To him succeeded *Pachacuti Inga Tupangui*, who reigned seuentie yeeres, and conquered many Countries. The beginning of his conquests, was by means of his eldest brother, who having held the government in his fathers time, and made warre by his content, was over-throwne in a battaile against the *Changas*, a Nation which inhabites the Valley of *Andaguaylla*, thirte or fortie leagues from *Cusco*, vpon the way to *Lima*. This elder brother thus defaied, tetyred himselfe with few men. The which *Ingua Tupangui*, his younger brother seeing, denued and gave forth, that though hee were vniuersall Lord and Creator of all things, and that he had made the *Heavens*, the *Sunne*, the *World*, the *Men*, and that all was vnder his command, yet did they not yield him the obediences they ought, but contrariwise did equally honour and worship the *Sunne*, *Thunder*, *Earth*, and other things, which had no vertue but what he imparted vnto them: giuing him to vnderstand, that in heauen where hee was, they called him *Viracocha Pachayachachi*, which signifieth vniuersall Creator; and to the end the *Indians* might beleue it to be true, he doubted not although hee were alone, to raise men vnder this title, which should giue him victorie against the *Changas*, although they were then victorious, and in great number, and make himselfe Lord of those Realmes, for that hee would fend him men to his aide inuicibly, whereby hee perswaded in such sort, that vnder this colour and conceit, he began to assemble a great number of people, whereof he made a mightie Armie, with the which hee obtrayned the victorie, making him selfe Lord of the whole Realme, taking the government from his father and brother. Then afterwards hee conquered and ouer-threw the *Changas*, and from that time commanded that *Viracocha* should be held for vniuersall Lord, and that the Images of the *Sunne* and *Thunder*, should doe him his reuerence and honor: And from that time they began to let the Image of *Viracocha* about that of the *Sunne* and *Thunder*, and the rest of the *Guscas*. And although this *Ingua Tupangui* had giuen *Farmes*, *Lands*, and Cartell to the *Sunne*, *Thunder*, and other *Guscas*, yet did hee not dedicate any thing to *Viracocha*, saying, that he had no neede, being vniuersall Lord and Creator of all things. Hee informed his Souldiers after this absolute victorie of the *Changas*, that it was not they alone that had conquered them, but certaine bearded men, whom *Viracocha* had sent him, and that no man might see them but himselfe, which were since conuered into stones; it was therefore necessarie to take them out, whom hee would know well. By this meanes hee gathered together a multitude of stones in the Mountaines, whereof hee made choice, placing them for *Guscas*, or Idols, they worshipped and sacrificed vnto: they called them *Pururanaues*, and carried them to the warre with great deuotion, beleuing for certaine, that they had gotten the victorie by their help. The imagination

and fiction of this *Ingua* was of such force, that by the meanes thereof hee obtrayned goodly victories: Hee founded the Familie called *Tuacapanaca*, and made a great Image of gold, which hee called *Indiyalla*, which he placed in a Brancard of gold, very rich, and of great price: of the which gold the *Indians* tooke great store to carry to *Xacamalca*, for the libertie and ranfome of *Atahualpa*, when the Marquell *Francis Pizarro* held him prisoner. The Licentiate *Polo* sent this body in his house in *Cusco*, his seruants and *Manacomas*, which did seruice to his memorie, and found that the body had bene transported from *Patallalla* to *Tuacapanca*, where the *Spaniards* haue since founded the Parish of Saint *Blas*. This body was to be whole and preserved with a certaine Roine, that it might shew, he had his eyes made of a fine cloth of gold, so artificially set, as they seemed very natural eyes, he had a blow with a stone on the head, which hee had received in the warres, hee was all grey and hayrie, hauing lost no more haire then if hee had dyed but the same day, although it were seuentie and eight yeeres since his deceale. The foresaid *Polo* sent this body with some others of the *Ingas*, to the Citie of *Lima*, by the Vice-royes command which was the Marquell of *Canete*, and the which was very necessarie to roote out the Idolatrie of *Cusco*. Many *Spaniards* haue seene this body with others in the Hospitall of Saint *Andrew*, which the Marquell built, but they were much decayed. Don *Philip Cortesado*, who was grand-child or great-grand-child to this *Ingua*, affirmed that the treasure hee left to his Familie was great, which should bee in the power of the *Tuacamas*, *Amara*, *Tata*, and others. To this *Ingua* succeeded *Tuacapanca*, to whom his sonne of the same name succeeded, who founded the Familie called *Cusco* *Atta*.

TO this latter *Ingua* succeeded *Guanacapa*, which is to say, *A young man*, rich and valiant, and so was he in truth, more then any of his Predecessors, or Successors. He was very wise, planting good orders throughout his whole Realme, he was a bold and resolute man, valiant, and very happy in warre. Hee therefore obtained great victories, and extended his Dominions much further then all his Predecessors had done before him; hee dyed in the Realme of *Quito*, the which hee had conquered, four hundred leagues distant from his Court. The *Indians* spent him after his deceale, leaving his heart and entrails in *Quito*, the body was carried to *Cusco*, the which was placed in the renowned Temple of the *Sunne*. Wee see yet to this day many *Cave* 30 30ys, Buildings, Fortresses, and notable workes of this King: hee founded the Familie of *Tambo*. This *Guanacapa* was worshipped of his subjects for a god, being yet alive, as the old men affirme, which was not done to any of his Predecessors: When hee dyed, they flue like a thousand persons of his household, to seeue him in the other life, all which dyed willingly for his seruice, inasmuch that many of them offered themselves to deathe besides such as were appointed: his riches and treasure was admirable. And so much as the *Spaniards* entered *Quito* after his death, the *Indians* laboured much to conceale all, as though a great part thereof were carried to *Xacamalca*, for the ranfome of *Atahualpa* his sonne: Some worthy of credit, affirme that hee had about three hundred tonnes and grand-children in *Cusco*. His mother called *Manacalla* was much esteemed among them. *Polo* sent her body with that of *Guanacapa* very well imbalmed to *Lima*, rooting out infinite Idolatries. To *Guanacapa* succeeded in *Cusco* a sonne of his called *Tuacapanca*, who since was called *Gusca Inga*, his body was burned by the Captaines of *Atahualpa*, who was likewise sonne to *Guanacapa*, and rebelled in *Quito* against his brother, marching against him with a mightie Armie. It happened that *Francis Pizarro*, being Captaine to *Atahualpa*, tooke *Gusca Inga* in the Citie of *Cusco*, being returned for Lord and King (for that hee was the lawfull successor) which caused great sorrow throughout all his Kingdom, especially in his Court. And as alwayes in their necessities they had recourse to sacrifices, finding themselves unable to fet their Lord at libertie, as well for the great power the Captaines had that tooke him, as also, for the great Armie that came with *Atahualpa*, they refused (some say by the commandement of this *Ingua*) to make a great and sollemne sacrifice to *Viracocha Pachayachachi*, which signifieth vniuersall Creator, desiring him, that since they could not deliver their Lord, hee would send men from Heauen to deliver him from prison. And as they were in this great hope, vpon their sacrifice, newes came to them, that a certaine people come by Sea, was landed, and had taken *Atahualpa* prisoner. Hereupon they called the *Spaniards*, *Viracocha*, beleueing they were men sent from God; as well for the small number they were to take *Atahualpa* in *Xacamalca*, as also, for that it chanced after their sacrifice done to *Viracocha*, and thereby they began to call the *Spaniards* *Viracocha*, as they doe at this day. And in truth, if we had giuen them good example, and such as we ought, the *Indian* had well applied it, in saying they were men sent from God. It is a thing very worthy of consideration, how the greatneesse and prouidence of God, disposed of the chiefe of our men in *Peru*, which had bene impossible, were not the diffiction of the two Brethren and their Partisans, and the great opinion they had of *Christians*, as of men sent from Heauen, bound (by the taking of the *Indians* Country) to labour to win souls vnto Almighty God.

Of the greatch
and most fa-
mous Inga
called *Guanacapa*, Chas.

Guanacapa
worshipped
for a god.

His 300. tonnes
etc.

Spaniards g.
referred men
Gos.

Polo could not
haue beene
conquered
by diffusion
of his blood.

Of the left
Successors
Inga, Chap. 15.

The rest of this subject is handled at large by the *Spanish* Writers in the Histories of the *Incas*, and for that it is not my purpose, I will speak only of the fuceffion of the *Ingas*. *Atahualpa* being dead in *Xacamaila*, and *Guzman* in *Cusco*, and *Francis Pizarro* with his people having laid on the Realme, *Mangocapa* sonne to *Cuzco*, and cryed himselfe in *Cuzco* very thrashly; but in that he was banished, i. e. whole Country, and retired himselfe to *Pisla Bambas*, where he kept himselfe in the Mountains, by reason of the rough and difficult access, and there the Successors *Ingas* remained, untill *Amare*, who was taken and executed in the market place of *Cuzco*, to the *Indians* incredible griefe and sorrow, seeing iustice done vpon him publicly whom they held for their Lord. After which time, they imprisoned others of the Linage of these *Ingas*. I have knowne *Don Charles*, grand-child to *Guaynacapa*, and sonne to *Pelo*, who was baptiz'd, and always fauoured the *Spaniards* against *Mangocapa* his brother, when the Marquies of *Caceres* gouerned in this Country *Sartapungua*, went from *Ylacabamba*, and came vpon assurance to the Citie of *Kings*, where there was giuen to him the Valley of *Tucay*, and other things, to whom succeeded a daughter of his. Behold the fuceffion which is knowne at this day of that great and rich Familie of the *Ingas*, whose raigne continued aboue three hundred yeeres, wherein they reckon eleven Successors, untill it was wholly extinguished. In the other Linage of *Vinacaca*, which (as we haue said before) had his beginning likewise from the first *Mangocapa*, they reckon eight Successors in this sort: To *Mangocapa* succeeded *Cincobaca*, to him *Capac Tupacgu*, to him *Ilagu Tupacgu*, to him *Majaca pass Tupacgu*, vnto whom succeeded his sonne, whom they name not, to this sonne succeeded *Don Jean* 20 *Tambo*, *Majapangaca*, this fuceffeth for the originall and fuceffion of the *Ingas*, that gouerned the Land of *Peru*, with that that I haue spoken of their Lawes, Government, and manner of Life.

Of the manner
of the Mexi-
cans Com-
monweale,
& Republi-
cisme.

Although you may see by the Historie written of the Kingdome, fuceffion, and beginning of the *Mexicans*, their manner of Commonweale and Government, yet will I speak briefly what I shall thinke fit in general to be most obserued: whereof I will discourse more amply in the Historie. The first point whereby wee may iudge the *Mexican* government to be very politike, is the order they had kept inuoluable in the election of their King: for since their first, called *Acamapach*, vnto their last, which was *Moteczuma*, the second of that name, there came none to the Crowne by right of fuceffion, but by a lawfull Nomination and Election. This election in the beginning was by the voice of the Commons, although the chiefe men managed it. Since the time of *Itzabal* the fourth King, by the aduise and order of a wife and valiant man, called *Tlacael*, there were tounge certaine Electors appointed, which (with two Lords or Kings) subject to the *Mexican*, the one of *Tzifco*, and the other of *Tzucba* had power to make this election. They did commonly chioose young men for their Kings, because they went alwayes to the warres, and this was in a manner the closest cause why they desired them so. They had a special regard that they should be fit for the warres, and take delight and glorie therein. After the election they made two kinds of feasts, the one in taking possession of the Royall Estate, for the which they went to the Temple, making great ceremonies and sacrifices vpon the *Altar*, called *Dimme*, where there was a continual fire before the Altar of the Idol, and after some Rhetoricians praised therein, made many Orations and Speeches. The other feast, and the most solemn, was at his Coronation, for the which hee must first come in battell, and bring a certaine number of Captiues, which they must sacrifice to their gods: hee entered in triumph with great pompe, making him a solemn reception, alwell they of the Temple, who went all in procession, sounding on sundrie sorts of instruments, giuing Incense, and singing like secular men, as also the Courtiers, who came forth with their deuities to receive the glorious King. The Crowne or royall Ensigne was before like a Myter, and behinde it was cut, so as it was not round, for the forefront was higher, and did like a point. The King of *Tzifco* had the privilege to crown the King of *Mexico*. In the beginning when the *Mexicans* were but poor and weak, the Kings were very moderate in their expences and in their Court, but as they increased in power, they increased likewise in pompe and state, vntill they came to the greatest of *Moteczuma*, who if he had had no other thing, but his house of Beasts and Birds, it had bene a prodigious thing, like whereof hath not bene teene: for there was in this house all sorts of fish, birds of *Xacamaila*, and beasts, as in other *Noble* Arkes for Sea fish, there were Pools of salt-water; and for Ruer fish, Lakes of fresh-water; birds that doe prey were fed, and likewise wilde beests in great abundance: there were very many *Indians* employed for the keeping of these beasts: and when he found an impossibility to nourish any sort of fish, fowle, or wilde beest, he caused the Image or likenesse to be made richly cut in precious stones, silver, or gold, in marbles, or in stone: and for sundry entertainments, he had his feasts of *Honour* and *Pleasure*, some of pleasure, others of sorrow and mourning, and others to treat of the affaires of the Realme. There was in this Palace many Chambers, according to the qualitie of the Noble men that seru'd him, with a strange order and distinction.

House of li-
uing Crea-
tures.

His Palace.

The

The *Mexicans* haue bene very curious, to diuide the degrees and dignities amongst the noble men and Lords, that they might distinguish them to whom they were to giue the greatest honor. The dignitie of their four Electors was the greatest, and most honorable, next to the King, and they were chioosen beforely after the King election. They were commonly brothers, or very neere kinmen to the King, and were called *Tlacateacalli*, which signifies *Prince of Arts*, the which they call, being a kinde of armes they vie much. The next dignitie to these, were those they doe call *Tlacateacalli*, which is to say, *Counsellors* or *Courtiers* of men. The third dignitie were of those which they called *Ezabacacalli*, which signifies; *A Iudger of blood*. All the which Titles and Dignities were exercised by men of warre. There was another, a fourth intitled, 10 *Tlacateacalli*, which is as much to say, as, *Lord of the blacke house*, or of *darknesse*, by reason of certaine Inke wherewith the Priests anointed themselves, and did serue in their Idolatries. All these four Dignities were of the great Counsell, without whose aduise the King might not doe any thing of importance: and the King being dead, they were to chioose another in his place out of one of those four Dignities. Besides these, there were other Counsellors and Audieners, and for by these were as many as in *Spain* and that there were diuers Seates and Iurisdiccions, with their Counsellors and Iudges of the Court, and others that were vnder them, as *Corregidores*, chiefe Iudges, Capraines of Iustice, Lieutenantes, and others, which were yet inferior to these, with a very goodly order. All which depended on the foure first Princes that assisted the King. These four onely had authoritie and power to condemne to death, and the rest intire their instructions 20 of the Sentences they had giuen. By means whereof they gaue the King to vnderstand what had passed in his Realme.

There was a good order and settled policie for the Reuenues of the Crowne, for there were Officers diuided throughout all the Princeships, as Receiueurs and Treasurers, which received the Tributes and Royall Reuenues. And they carried the Tribute to the Court, at the least euerie month; which Tribute was of all things that doe grow or ingender on the Land, or in the water, as well of Jewels and Apparell, as of Meat. They were very careful for the well ordering of that which concerned their Religion, Superstition, and Idolatries: and for this occasion there were a great number of Ministers, to whom charge was giuen to teach the people the custome and ceremonies of their Law. Hereupon one day a christen Priest made his complaint that the 30 *Indians* were no good Christians, and did not profit in the Law of God; an old *Indian* answered him very well to the purpose, in these termes: *Let the Priest* (said he) *imply as much care and diligence to make the Indians Christians, as the Admirall of Idals did to teach them their ceremonies: for verily he sayeth that care they will make to the best Christians in the world, for that the Law of Iesvs Christ is much better; but the Indians leaue it not, for want of men to instruct them.* Wherein he spake the very truth, to our great shame and confusion.

The *Mexicans* gaue the first place of honour to the profession of Armes, and therefore the Noble-men are their chiefe Souldiers, and others that were not noble, by their valour and reputation gotten in warres, came to Dignities and Honors, so as they were held for Noble-men. 40 They gaue goodly recompences to such as had done valiantly, who inuoyed prizes, as none else might haue, which they called *Armes* of *Radors* or *flame* of *flame*, which they set on either side of a hauff, which was so furious a weapon, as they affirmed that with one blow, they would cut off the necke of a Horse. They had strange and heauy Clubs, Lances, fashioned like Pikes, and other manner of Darts to cast, wherein they were very expert; but the greatest part of their combat was performed with Heades. For defensive armes they had little Rondaches or Targats, and some kinde of Morions or Iron-pieces inuoyed with feathers. They were clad in the skinnies of Tigris, Lions, and other fuaage Beasts. They came presently to hands with the Enemie, and were greatly praised to runne and wrestle, for their chiefe manner of combat, was not to much to kill, as to take Captiues, the which they vied in their sacrifices, as hath bene said. *Moteczuma* for Knight-hood in his high and splendide ordi- 50 nary certain military orders, as Commanders, with certaine markes and ensignes. The most honorable amongst the Knights, were those that carried the crowne of their haire tied with a little red Ribband, hauing a rich plume of feathers, from the which, did hang branches of feathers vpon their shoulders, and rolls of the fame. They carried fo many of these rolls, as they had done worthy deeds in warre. The King himselfe was of this order, as may be seene in *Chapultepec*, where *Moteczuma* and his sonnes were attyred with chiole kinds of feathers, cut in the Rocke, the which is worthy the sight. There was another order of Knight-hood, which they called the *Lions* and the *Tigris*, the which were commonly the most valiant and most noted in warre, they were attyred with their Markes and Armes. There were other Knights, as the 60 *Grey Knights*, the which were not so much respected as the rest: they had their haire cut round about the care. They went to the warre with markes like to the other Knights, yet they were not armed, but to the girdle, and the most honorable were armed all ouer. All Knights might carry gold and silver, and wear rich Cotton, vey painted and gilt vestell, and carry shooes after their manner: but the common people might vie none but earthen vestell, neither might they carry

Of the Titles
and Dignities
of the *Indians* v.
Id. Chap. 15.
Four Titles
of the *Indians*.

Miscreatures,
Blood-thed,
gers.
Lord of darke-
nesse.

Other Offi-
cers.
See the pic-
ture historice.

Priests and
Teachers of
the Law.

How the *Indians*
made their Or-
ders of knight-
hood, Chap. 6.

Their Armes.

Eagle-ordres.

Order of Li-
ons, and of Ti-
gris.
Gray Knights.

Knights prin-
cipall.

carry shoes, nor attire themselves but in *Nagen*, the which is a grosse stute. Every order of these Knights had his lodging in the Pallace noted with their markes; the first was called the *Princes lodging*, the second of *Eagles*, the third of *Lions and Tigers*, and the fourth of the *grey Knights*. The other common officers, were lodged underneath in meaner lodgings: if any one lodged out of his place, he suffered death.

There is nothing that gives me more cause to admire, nor that I finde more worthy of commendations and memory, then the order and care the *Mexicans* had to nourish their youth: for they knew well, that all the good hope of a Common-weale, consisted in the nurture and instruction of youth, whereof *Plato* treats amply in his bookes *De Legibus*: and for this reason they laboured and took pains to leaquetter their children from delights and liberties (which are the two plagues of this Age) employing them in honest and profitable exercises. For this cause there was in these Temples, a private house for children as Schooles, or Colleges, where they were sepeate from that of the young men and maidens of the Temple, whereof we have discoursed as large. There were in these Schooles a great number of children, whom their fathers did willingly bring thither, and which had teachers and masters to instruct them in all commendable exercises, to be of good behaviour, to respect their superiours, to serve and obey them, giving them to this end, certaine precepts and instructions. And to the end they might be pleasing to Noblemen, they taught them to sing and dance, and did practise them in the exercise of warre; some to shoote at Arrows, to call a dart or a staffe burnt at the end, and to handle well a Target and a Sword. They suffered them not to sleepe much, to the end they might accustom themselves to labour in their youth, and not be meane giuen to delights. Besides the ordinary number of these children, there were in the same Colleges, other children of Lords and Noblemen, which were instructed more privately. They brought them their meate and ordinary from their houses, and were recommended to ancient and old men to have care over them, who continually did aduise them to be vertuous and to live chastly: so to be sober in their diet, to fast, and to march gravely, and with measure. They were accustomed to exercise them to trauell, and in laborious exercises: and when they fee them instructed in all these things, they did carefully looke into their meditation: if they found any one addicted vnto warre, being of sufficient years, they sought all occasions to make trial of them, sending them to the warre, vnder colour to carrie victuals and munition to the Souliers, to the end they might there see what passed, and the labour they suffered. And that they might abandon all feare, they were laden with heauie burthens, that shewing their courage therein, they might more easily be admitted into the company of Souliers. By this meane it happened, that many went ladens to the Armie, and returned Captaines with markes of honour. Some of them were desirous to be noted, as they were either taken, or laine: and they held it lesse honourable to remaine a prisoner. And therefore they sought rather to be out in peeces, then to fall captiues into their enemies hands. See how Noblemen children that were inclined to the warres were employed. The others that had their inclination to matters of the Temple, and to speake after our manner, to be *Ecclesiasticall men*, having attained to sufficient years, they were drawne out of the collegie, and placed in the Temple, in the lodging appointed for religious men, and then they gave them the order of *Ecclesiasticall men*. There had they *Prelates and Masters*, to teach them that which concerned their profession, where they should remaine being destined thereunto. These *Mexicans* took great care to bring up their children: if at this day they would follow this order, in building of houses & colleges for the instruction of youth, without doubt Christianitie should flourish much amongst the *Indians*. Some godly persons have begunne, and the King with his Council have fauoured it: but for that it is a matter of no profit, they aduance little, and proceede coldly.

We have not disscouered any Nation at the *Indians*, that live in communalities, which have not their recreations, in playes, dances, and exercises of pleasure. At *Pera* I have seenne plaies in manner of combats, where the men at both sides were sometimes clothed, that often their *Palla* (which was the name of this exercise) fell out dangerous. I have also seenne diuers sorts of dances, wherein they did counterfeit and represent certaine trades and offices, as shepherds, labourers, fishers, and hunters, and commonly they made all those dances, with a very great loud and pale: there were other dances and maskes, which they called *Guaucos*, whose actions were pure representations of the deuill. There were also men that dance on the shoulders of one another, as they doe in *Perisopol*, the which they call *Pactas*. The greatest part of these dances, were superstitious, and kindes of Idolatries: for that they honoured their Idole and *Guaucos* in that manner. For this reason the Prelates have laboured to take from them these dances, all they could: but yet they suffer them, for that part of them are but sports of recreation: for alwayes they dance after their manner. In these dances, they use sundry sort of instruments, whereof, some are like Flutes, or little *Canons*, others like Drums, and others like Cornets: but commonly they sing all with the voyce, and first one or two sing the song, then all the rest answer them. Some of these songs were very wittily compoled, containing Histories, and others were full of

superstitions, and some were meere follies. Our men that haue conversed among them, haue laboured to reduce matters of our holy faith to their tunes, the which hath profited well: for that they employ whole dayes to rehearse and sing them, for the great pleasure and content they take in their tunes. They haue likewise put our compositions of Musike into their Language, as Oduets, Songs, and Rondels, the which they haue very aptly turned, and in truth it is a goodly and very necessary meane to instruct the people. In *Pera*, they commonly call Dances *Tagu*, in other Prouinces, *Arantos*, and in *Mexico*, *Mutates*. There hath not bene in any other place any such curiosity of Playes and Dances, as in *New Spaine*, where at this day we see *Indians* to excellent Dancers, as it is admirable. Some dance vpon a Cord, some vpon a long and stright flake, in a thousand lundie foyles; others with the soles of their feet and their hammes, do handle, cast vp and recieue againe a very heauie blocke, which seems incredible but in seeing it. They doe make many other shewes of their great agility, in leaping, vaulting, and tumbling, sometimes bearing a great and heauie burthen, sometimes enduring blowes able to breake a barre of Iron. But the most viuall exercise of recreation among the *Mexicans* is the folowme *Mutatte*, and that is a kind of dance they held to be true and to honourable, that the King himselfe danced, but not ordinarily, as the King *Don Pedro of Aragon* with the Barber of *Valencia*. This Dance of *Mutatte*, was commonly made in the Courts of the Temple, and in those of the Kings houses, where were more spacious. They did place in the midst of the Court two Instruments, one like to a Drumme, and the other like a Barrell made of one piece, and hollow within, which they

set vpon the torne of a man, a beast, or vpon a Pillar. These two Instruments were so well accorded together, that they made a good harmony and with these Instruments they made many kinds of Ayres and Songs. They did all sing and dance to the found and measure of these Instruments, with so goodly an order and accord, both of their feet and voyces, as it was a pleasant thing to behold. In these Dances they made two Circles or Wheelles, the one was in the middle nere to the Instruments, wherein the Ancients and Noblemen did sing and dance with a swift and slow motion; and the other was of the rest of the people round about them, but a good distance from the first, wherein they danced two and two more lightly, making diuers kinds of paces, with certayne leaps to the measure. All which together made a very great Circle. They attyred themselves for these Dances with their most precious apparel and Jewels, every one according to his ability, holding it for a very honourable thing: for this cause they learned these Dances from their infancie. And although the greatest part of them were done in honour of their Idols, yet was it not so instituted, as hath bene said, but only as a recreation and pastime for the people. Therefore it is not convenient to take them quite from the *Indians*, but they must take good heed they might not their superstitions amongst them. I haue seene this *Mutatte*, in the Court of the Church of *Tlapachula*, a Village situate leagues from *Mexico*: and in my opinion, it was a good thing to studie the *Indians* vpon Festiual dayes, seeing they haue need of some recreation: and because it is publique, and without the prejudice of any other, there is lesse incommence, then in others which may be done privately by themselves, if they tooke away these.

To the Reader.

Reader, I here present vnto thee the choicest of my Jewels. My travelling fancy hath invited me to Readers to see my labours in strange birthes already. So, I ego in terra noni non plura habeo: Japonian and China rarities, far remote from our world, were at my work, and their choice Elers communicated here to the Reader; not their arts alone. Thou hast here also Indian, Arabike, Persian, Turkish, add other Letters, and not onely the transcriptions from their languages. At for translations and collections, thou hast them here also out of the Hebrew, Auncient and Moderne Greeke, Abissine, Tartarian, Russian, Polonian, Egyptian, and innumerable other Nations: Christian, Iewish, Mahometan, Ethiolike, Ciuill, Barbarian and Savage, innumerable wher diversified. Yet all these in letters, or characters. In heretofore mystical pictures the ancient Egyptian and Ethiopians, haue by way of Emblemme shew'd, and largely declared their obscure mystices, wacets, pleasant conceits to the world: few of which our Pilgrimage hath mentioned. But a full treatise, as a Political, Ethicall, Ecclesiasticall, Oeconomick History with iust distinctions of times, places, acts, and yet, haue not their sense of theirs, nor of any other Nation, but of this which our light, and sight apprehendeth: seeme not barbarous alone, but wilde and savage. Such as we here present, a present thought fit for him whom the faders esteemed the greatest of Princes; and yet now presented to thy hands before could arrive in his presence. For the Spanish Governour having with some difficulty (as in the Spanish Preface imports) obtained the Booke of the Indians, with Mexican interpretations of the Pictures (but ten dayes before the departure of the Ship) committed the same to one skillfull write Mexican Language to be interpreted: who in a very plaine stile and inordinate performed the same, before all the Spaniards words, as Aluquán of Mezquiques (for Priest and Temples) imports. The Historiographer, first to Charles the fifth Emperor, was together with the Shipps that carried it taken by Frenchmen of war, from whom Andrew Thueset the French King's Geographer, obtained the same: after whose death,

The beaine of Plinutions is expectation of present and external gain.

Plaies and dances. Military games.

Idoll games. Ex. g. a thing viual to Hea- thens, as their Comedies, &c. Musick.

Curious Dances.

Great agility.

Master Hakloyt (then Chaplaine to the English Embassadour in France) bought the same for 20. French crownes, and procured Master Michael Locke in Sir Walter Raleighs name to translate it. It seems that none were willing to be at the cost of cutting the Pictures, and so it remained among his papers till his death, whereby (according to his last will in that kinde) I became possessor thereof, and have obtained with much scrupulous cutting thereof for the Presse. The rubric was I eagerly vobis Gentleman, our Ecclesiastical Secular, the Churches champion, Sir Henry Spelman, Knight; whom for honor sake I name, that his name may honour our ruler line, a name fit sitting to the Man, as who which has, in regard of his wife (spell and science in divine & humane learning, and is ready with much courage and alacrity to fow himselfe the Churches Man, and to exhibit himselfe in deeds whatsoever; any man can spell, one of Spelman. The commendation from such a friend (let the Master impute pardon for so bold a name) was a commanding unto me, which here I againe commend to Him and thee.

It is divided into three parts; the first being the *Annales* and Mexican Chronicle: the second, their Exchequer or the Account of their (several Tributes paid them from the Nations and peoples tributary, whereby may be seen the Natural riches of those parts peculiarly fortified: the third the Mexican Oeconomia and Police in warre and peace, religious, and secular, their private and public rites from the grasse of the wombe, to the wombe of the grasse, Obscure places I have explained (besides what before in Acolla thou hast read) comparing the translation with the original, adding many of mine owne: and perhaps there is not any one History of this kinde in the world comparable to this so fully expressing so much without Letters, hardly gotten, and easily lost, that thou maist here finde it.

CHAP. VII.

The History of the Mexican Nation, described in pictures by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated into Spanish, and thence into English, together with the said Picture-historie, are here presented.

P. I.

The Mexican Chronicle.

Here beginneth the Historie and foundation of the Citie of Mexico, founded and inhabited by the Mexican, who at that time were called *Mexitzi*, whose original beginning of being Lords, and their acts and liues are declared briefly in this Historie, according as it is signified and set out successively by the pictures and paintings following.

In the yeare 1324, after the coming of our Lord and Saviour Iesus Christ, the Mexican people first arrived at the place of the Citie of Mexico, and because they liked well the greatnesse and the situation of that place, after that they had traueled in their Iournies, and wandered many yeares from Country to Country, & in some of them had made their abode, for some yeares, being come from far Countries in following their Iournies, and not being contented with the other places where they had made their abode, they came and settled themselves in the place of Mexico. The which place at that time was all drowned with water, and was covered with great boggs and banks of moorish thegs and bulrushes, which they call *Tuli*, and it had *Carrizales*, and great plats of dry ground covered with shrubbes, bushes, and briars like woods. And through all the space of that place there went a spring & stream of fair cleere water which was free from all legges and bulbes, which water streame went through the middle of that place of that water-streame, the *Mexitzi* found a great rocke of stone, and growing thereon a great Tree or bull called *Tumal*, wherein a great Eagle *Caudal* had her haunt and abode for her foode, so as all about that place was scattered full of bones and feathers of diuers Birds and Fowles of diuers colours. And they hauing gone throughout all that place and Countie therabout, and finding it very fruitful and full of wilde beasts, wilde Fowles, Birds, and Fishes, and things of the water, wherewith to sustaine themselves and to profit themselves in their businesse in dealing with the Townes therabouts, and finding the water-courses of that place to be commodious, and that their Neighbours could not trouble nor hurt them, and for other things and causes to their good liking they determined to passe no further on their Iournies in traueling, but to settle themselves and dwell still.

themselves and dwell still. And according to their determination, they did settle themselves there effectually. And made themselves a strong Citie of defence with banks and walls about the waters, and on the plats of ground among the legges and bulbes of *Tuli* and *Carrizales*. And for a beginning of their habit and habitation, it was determined by them, to giue name and title to that place, calling it *Tenultitlan*. By reason and cause of the *Tumal* growing out of the Rocke (for *Tenultitlan* interpreted in our *Castilian* Spangish Tongue is *Tumal* growing upon a Rocke.)

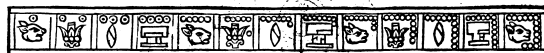
The armie of the Mexican people had with themselves three Countie-hunters ten persons named, *Ocelotlan*, *Quapan*, *Acacili*, *Ahuacatl*, *Tenachi*, *Tenachitlan*, *Acacatl*, *Xacacatl*, *Eucacatl*, *Acacatl*, as it is shewed in the Pictures. And hauing settled themselves, they did giue *Tenach* for their chiefe Governour and Lord to gouerne them, as appeared especially ghostly thereto and fit seeing hauing in him all parts and abilities to exercise Lordship. And they appointed the other three Governours, that they should be *Agencies* and *Captaynes*, Governours vnder him.

And after some yeeres were passed their dwelling in that place, and the people multiplied, the Citie likewise was named *Mexico*, so named and derived of the *Mexican*, calling it the place of sitting of the Mexican people.

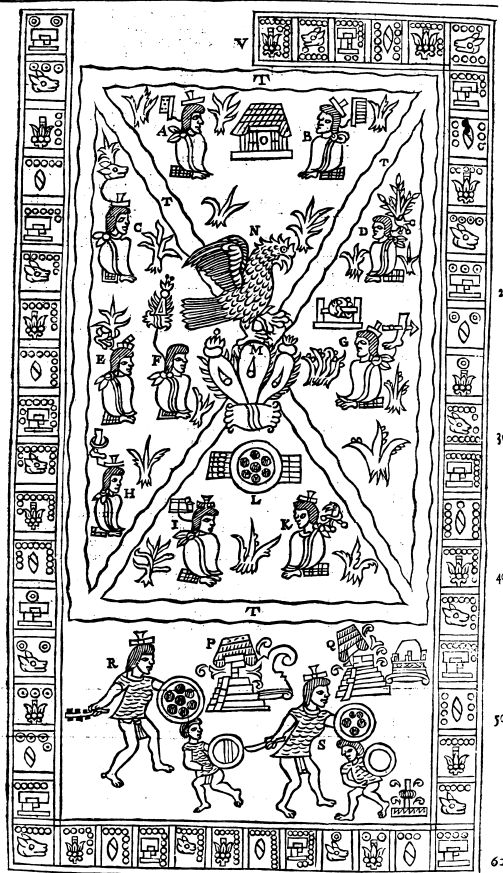
And when the people were come what multiplied like bold and warlike people, they took beginning of courageous mindes in preuailing over their Neighbour, and so shewed themselves in force of armes, whereby they subdued and made tributary to them two Townes next adjoining to Mexico, named *Calhuacac*, and *Tenacac*; as likewise is set forth in the pictures: the which doings passed in the time of the gouernment of the chiefe Lord *Tenachi*, which was the space of fiftie one yeeres, at the end whereof he died.

Concerning the Pictures of blew in the margins of this Historie, it is to be vnderstood that euery (seuall space or partition, doth signifie one yeere, and they be the numbering of years; as it is to be vnderstood that euery (seuall space be partitions signifie the one (seuall) yeere, and so they accounted & numbered euery yeere (seuall) proceeding by the number of runles or prikes therein contained, beginning at one, and proceeding to thirteene runles. And from thence they began againe at the beginning in their account from one prike or runle, and so accordingly they did proceede in numbering againe, till they came to thirteene. And although that in the partitions or spaces seuerally there be diuers seuerall figures, yet the principall account of numbering is that account of the pictures or runles therein contained. And although the names of the yeeres that they giue to euery partition from the number of the first prike till the thirteenth be to some purpose, yet for to aduertise the Reader thereof; here is made by it selfe a declaration of the names, with their interpretations.

In the order and rule of the partitions which are numbered for years, that partition where there is a branch with a foote like a flower, it doth signifie a bitter and vniuertuate yeere which the Mexican had, and did feare, saying that their predecessors time out of minde did giue them warning that such yeeres which befell euery two and fiftieth yeere were dangerous, and vnfurnate, and bitter yeeres, because that in such yeeres there were floods generally, and likewise darkenesse of the eclipses of the Sunne, and vniuertual earthquakes. And likewise in such yeeres they made great sacrifice and ceremonies to their gods, and gaue themselves to repentance, and did abstine from all viues againe the very day and houre of such a yeere. In the which day generally they put out all their lights and fires till that day were past; and being past they kindled new lights being had out of a Mountain by a Priest.

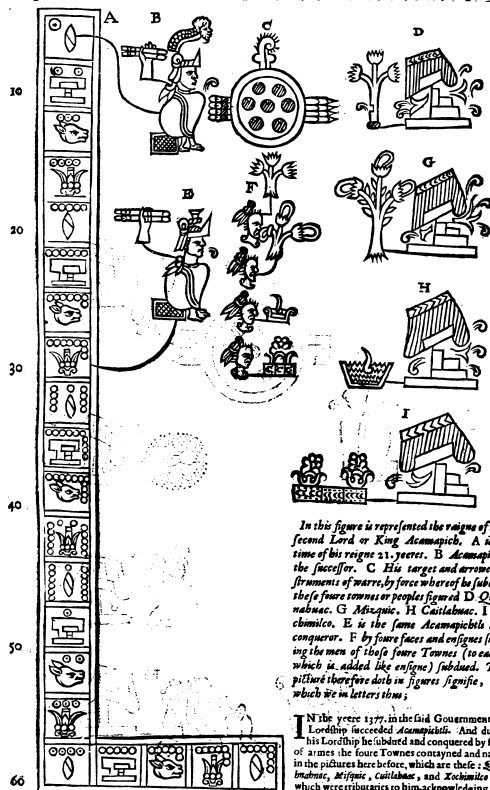


This is a weeke of yeeres after the Mexican computation (all coloured blew, the Mexican names written over in red) the first of which they call *Setuachiti*, that is, one *Come*; the second *Omeacatl*, or two *Canes*; the third *Yeytepatl*, three *Flints*; the fourth *Maculituchtili*, which signifies four *bonfires*; the fifth *Ciquacemacatl*, that is five *Canes*; the sixth, six *Canes*; the seventh, seven *Flints*; the eighth, eight *Houses*; the ninth, nine *Canes*; the tenth, ten *Canes*; the eleventh, eleven *Flints*; the twelfth, twelue *Houses*; the thirteenth, thirteene *Canes*.



This Picture professes the number of 51 years: that is, the time of Tenuchs reign: in this whole or square (which, as all the like representations, are in the original picture, coloured blue) the picture of men 1/2 life the ten Lords or Governors before mentioned; their names are inscribed in the original pictures, which here are not by the letters named as (A) to a following, G. A. Acemapi, B. Quana, C. Oclama, D. Agacat, E. Teneuh, F. Tenuch, G. Ximint, H. Xocoy, I. Xocoy.

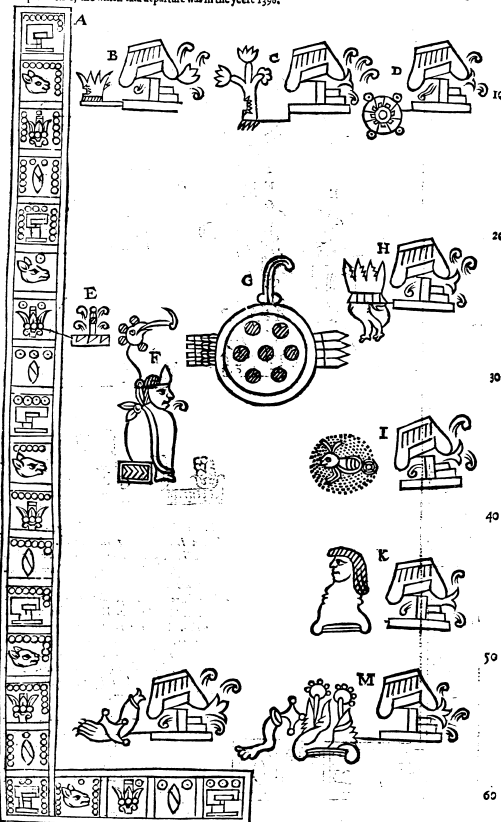
caqui, K. Atel, L. Tenochtitlan, representing the armies which they used in the conquest of that place, which they is inscribed in the final (painted green) painting out of a line. N. the Eagle. O. their sailing or initiation. P. the people of Culhuacan. Q. Tenuchitlan: both which Nations. R. Tenuch compared by force of arms, as appears S. their subjection or bringing under. T. is the blue square and Saint Andrews cross. The former relation does more fully lay open these things.



In this figure is represented the reign of their second Lord or King Acemapi. A is the time of his reign 21 years. B Acemapi the successor. C His target and arrows instruments of war, by force whereof he subdued the four towns or peoples named D Quana, E Acemapi, G Acemapi, H Acemapi, I Acemapi. E is the same Acemapi as a conqueror. F by four faces and ensignes showing the men of this four Townes (to each of which is added the ensigne) subdued. This picture therefore does in figure signifie, that which we in letters show.

IN the year 1377, in the said Government and Lordship succeeded Acemapi. And during his Lordship he subdued and conquered by force of arms the four Townes contained and named in the pictures here before, which are these: Quana, Acemapi, Acemapi, and Acemapi, the which were tributaries to him, acknowledging their subjection. In the years that the said Acemapi lived in the said Lordship: his inclination and will was to have many wives, the which were daughters of all the principal men of Mexico, by whom he had many sons which were the beginning and increase of many Caciques, and Capitanes, and warlike people, by means of whom the City of Mexico was enlarged and augmented in great might, as is figured hereafter in the discourses by the picture.

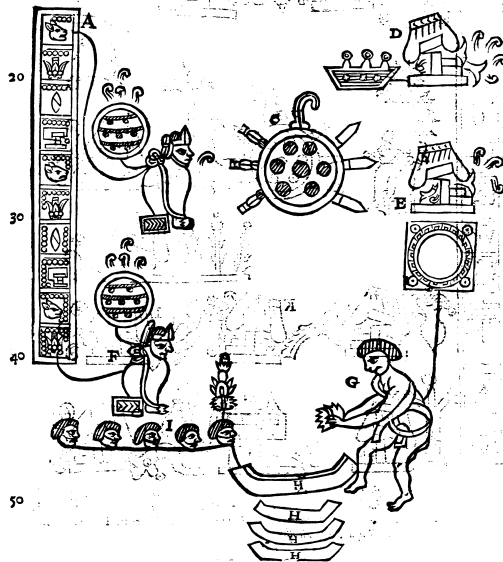
tures, with their declarations. The two pictures with their titles & names of *Acamapich* be one same thing to divers effects, for the first sheweth his beginning and succcession of the said Lordship, and the second sheweth the yeere after his succcession in the said Lordship, when hee began to conquer and subdue the said foure Townes. And in the said Lordship he had his courtesie one and twentie yeeres, at the end whereof the said *Acamapich* dyed and departed this present life, the which said departure was in the yeere 1398.



A 21. yeeres. B Towne and People of Toltitan. C Quauacatlan. D Chalco. H Tulaucine. I Xalisco. K Ompa. L Acama. M Texcoco. E The Cutter bath set letters to diuers figures
writing

whereof I can give no interpretation: and such is this, except perhaps it signifieth that in his seventh yeere he began his conquests. For I doe here interpret diuers in which the Spanis is silent, if the coniecture seeme easier. E is King Huicilbuitl. G the instruments of warre.

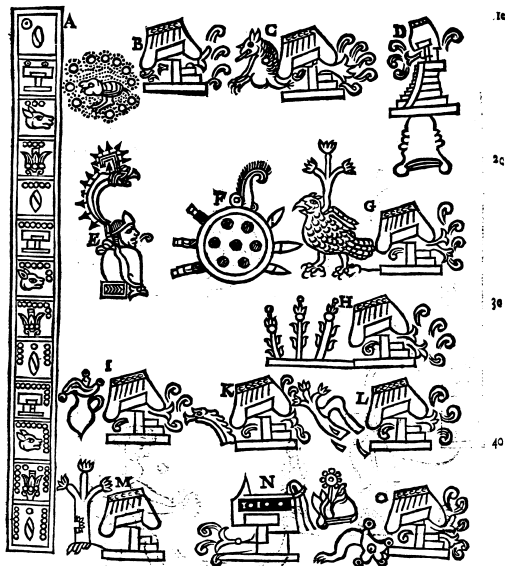
IN the yeere 1396. in the said Lordship succeeded Huicilbuitl sonne of *Acamapich*, and during the time of his reigne in his Lordship, he conquered by force of armes eight Townes, which are contayned in the pictures here before, with the names of the same Townes intituled, the which were made tributarie to the Mexican Lordship acknowledging seruitude. The said Huicilbuitl was valiant in warres, and inclined to haue many wives by whom he had many sons, 10 wherewith the power of the Mexicans was augmented. The time of the Lordship and life of the said Huicilbuitl therein was 27. yeeres; at the end whereof he dyed and departed this present life, according as by the pictures of blue are numbered.



A 27. yeeres. B Chimalpucpa. C Tegan and Darts, to intimate his forcible conquest of D Teganacac and E Chalco. F sheweth his death. G the Towne of Chalco in rebellion. H the foure Canas and I the five men about said of Mexico, which the Rebels slue. You see this King and every other both King and Towne distinguished by speciall Armes or Stanchions, with other particulars, which here and on all the rest I leave to each Reader's owne industrie and search.

IN the yeere 1470. after the death of Huicilbuitl succeeded Chimalpucpa in the said Lordship of Mexico, sonne of the said Huicilbuitl, and during his time hee subdued by force of armes the Townes of Teganacac, and Chalco, which Chalco is a great Towne and acknowledging seru-
itude

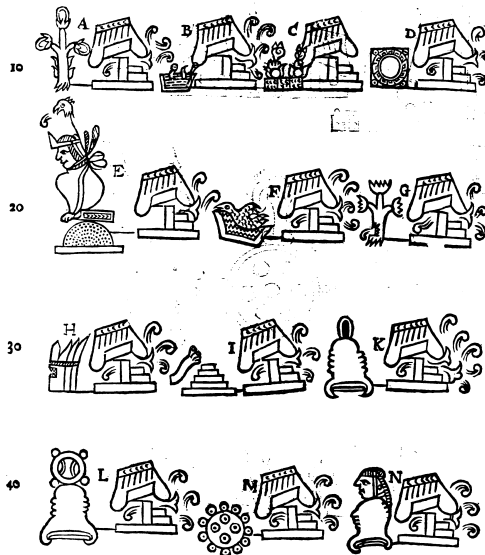
uitude: they paid tribute to the Lordship of Mexico, according as the pictures doe shew. And hauing the said Townes thus in subiection, at the end of certaine yeres the said Towne of Chalco, being mightie, rebelled against the Mexicans, and in the rebellion there grew danger to the Mexicans, inasmuch that they slue five of them, and brake them foure Canoes, according as here is signified by the pictures. The time of the life and Lordship of the said Chimalpucpa was ten yeres, at the end whereof hee dyed, according as is numbred by the blue pictures in the margent. And like wise the said Chimalpucpa, in the time of his life had many wiues and sons; for it was accounted a matter of reputation.



The explanation of the first Table A 23. yeres. Yzcoatzi. F by force of Armes (signified by this Target and Dart) subdued the Townes and Territories of B Acapulcalco, C Coyacan, D Tecuallucayan, G Guaymas, H Tlacopan, I Atlacuibugan, K Mixcoac, L Quauximallapan, M Quauhuitlan, N Tapan, O Acuilhuacan.

In the yere 1427. in the said Dominion of Mexico, after the death of Chimalpucpa, succeeded Tzacoatzi, Sonne of Acamapich, which had bene Lord of Mexico; and during his time hee conquered by force of Armes foure & twenty Townes which are here pictured, which Townes he made subiect to the Lordship of Mexico; at one invasion which he made for he was a valiant and warlike in Armes as the said Acamapich, and was a man of good iudgement, and wise in many matters, and by his good industrie he subdued the said Townes which gave him tribute, and did acknowledge feuerdute. The said Tzacoatzi had many Concubines, by whom he had seuen Sonnes and Daughters and he reigned in the said Lordship thirteene yeres at the end whereof the said Tzacoatzi dyed and departed this present life.

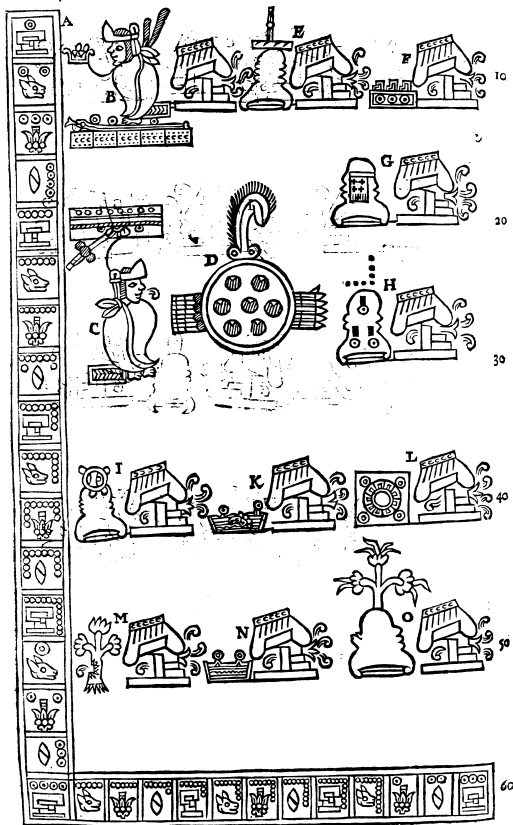
In the other Table (in the original being another Page) follow A Mexqua B Cuicuilmac, C Xochimilco, D Chalco, E Quauhuitlan the Lord of Tlatilco, the Towne also added, F Huicilapan, G Quauhuitlan, H Cuicuilmac, I Caguapan, K Xicotepetl, M Tzolan, N Tepicauitlan.



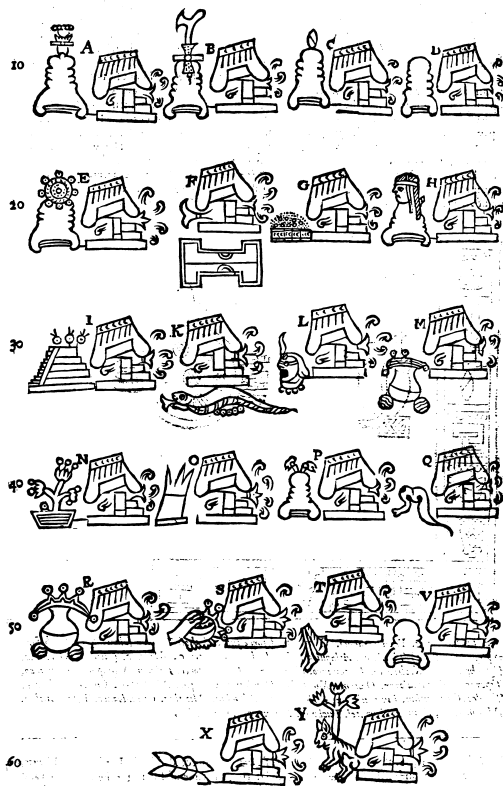
In the yere 1440. after the death of Tzacoatzi succeeded Gueguemoteguma in the Lordship of Mexico, the Sonne of Guicuilmac which had bene Lord of Mexico; and during his time, he conquered by force of Armes three and thirte Townes according as they are pictured in that compasse where the Picture of Gueguemoteguma standeth. And hauing subdued them to the said Lordship of Mexico, they payed him tribute, acknowledging their subiection.

This Gueguemoteguma was a very feure and graue Lord, and giuen to verue, and was a man of a good nature and vnderstanding, and an enemy to all euill vices; and being of a good inclination, let downe Orders and Lawes in his Common-wealth, and to all his Seruants how they ought to liue, and also ordayned grievous penalties for the breach of them: which penalties were executed without any remission vpon those that brake the Lawes. He was not crouell, but rather gentle, and desirous of the welfare of his Subiects, not vicious in women; hee had two Sonnes, hee was very temperate in drinking, for in all his life time hee was neuer seene to bee drunke as the naturall Indians which are extremely inclined to drunkennelle, but rather he commanded him to be corrected and punished that committed such a fact. And by his feueritie and Justice and good example of life, hee was feared and reuerenced of all his Subiects, all his life time, which was the space of nine and twentie yeres. At the end whereof he dyed, and passed out of this present life.

A nine and twenty years. C Huahmotsucuma. D by force of Arms subdued. B Lord Atual and his Towne Coaxtilahuacan. E Mammahuastepec. F Tenasco. G Tezuchitepec. H Chicomquimbco. I Xubitepec. K Totolapan. L Chalco. M Quauhnahuac. N Atlatlanco. O Huastecpec.



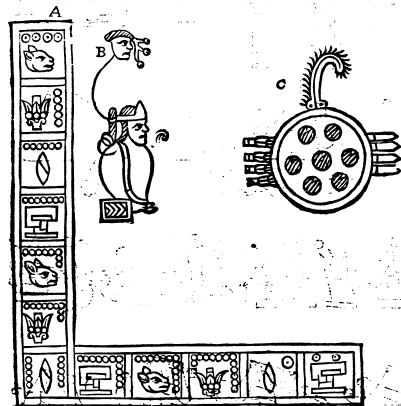
In the second Table. A Tautecpec. B Tepozatlan. C Tepozacoine. D Tacapachilan. E Toluca. F Tlaxco. G Tlalcoacachilan. H Tepozacoine. I Quiancoapan. K Chimalcoacatlan. L Huapachilan. M Atotonilco. N Axocapan. O Tulan. P Xilitepec. Q Tequicuilaplan. R Atotonilco. S Tlapacoyan. T Chapulxula. V Tlatlahuaptec. X Cuiclan. Y Quauhnahuac.



See the storie
before in A
espe.

Tlaxcala sub-
dued by force
as shall saith
the stream
were subiect
to them.

In the yeere 1479. after the death of *Guicemotocuma*, succeeded in the Lordship of *Mexico* *Axayacatl* sonne of *Tezomocotiquetz*, which was the sonne of *Tzucalt* Lord of *Mexico*. And during the time that the said *Axayacatl* was Lord, he conquered and won by force of armes fifteen and thirtie Townes, as hereafter are pictured and named. Amongst which Townes hee subdued vnder his Lordship by force of armes the Towne of *Tlaxcala*, a thing of great importance. *Tezomocotiquetz* was Lord of *Tlaxcala* at that time, who being a mightie person of great strength and of a proud nature, began to give occasion of dissention and warres to the Lords of *Mexico*, having heretofore held them for friends: by occasion whereof hee had great encounters and battailes, wherein the said *Tezomocotiquetz* Lord of *Tlaxcala* dyed in throwing himselfe downe from a *Ca* (or a high *Mesa*, or Temple) for hee seeing himselfe so hard beset in the battaile, being almost overcome, entered into a *Mesa* to save himselfe, because hee would not be taken prisoner. And an *Ajagui* (or Priest) which was in the *Mesa*, or Temple, reproving him for it and imputing cowardise vnto him, he threw himselfe downe as aforesaid. At which time the *Mexicans* had the victorie. And thenceforth the Towne of *Tlaxcala* was subiect to the Lord of *Mexico*, paying tribute and acknowledging subjection. *Axayacatl* was very valiant and warlike in armes, and was viciously given to women, having had many wives and fowmes: he was also proud and warlike, whereby all his subiects feared him extremely: hee did maintaine and hold for good all the Lawes and Ordinances that his predecessor *Guicemotocuma* had made, according as hath bene mentioned in his Historie; and hee continued the space of twelue yeeres in the said Lordship of *Mexico*, at the end whereof he dyed and departed out of this present life.



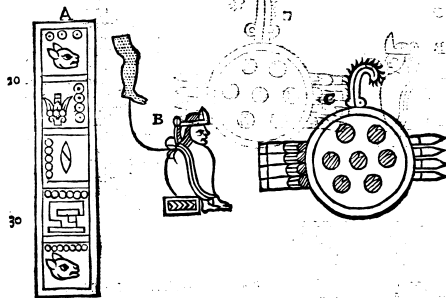
A Twelue yeeres. B *Axayacatl*. C By armed force subdued these Townes following (not as before expressed in picture) *Tlaxcala*, *Alequillo*, *Xalatlambis*, *Tlacatepec*, *Melipic*, *Capulhuac*, *Oyomehuac*, *Quaquapanoyan*, *Xochimilco*, *Tecotepec*, *Calixmoyan*, *Cuicatatepec*, *Tulcan*, *Xicmipile*, *Tenancino*, *Tepeyacac*, *Tlacamalayan*, *Oxotlan*, *Oxotepac*, *Mallatlan*, *Cuicatmalayan*, *Tecolco*, *Cuicatlan*, *Pucambatlan*, *Aleuizapan*, *Tlanlan*, *Mixtlan*, *Cuicatlan*, *Tetzapotlan*, *Miquizatlan*, *Tamoa*, *Tampacal*, *Tecolcan*, *Tonacapan*, *Quauhtlan*.

Tlaxcala.

Tlaxcala
subdued
by force
as shall
saith
the
stream
were
subiect
to them.

In the yeere 1485. after the end and death of *Axayacatl*, succeeded in the Lordship of *Mexico* *Tizoc*, sonne of *Tlaxcala*, and during the time of his reign he conquered and won by force of armes fourteen Townes. The said *Tizoc* was very valiant and warlike in armes, and before that hee succeeded in the Lordship of *Mexico*, hee had done dangerous feates of valiantie in his owne person in the warres, whereby hee obtained the title of *Tlacatecatl*, which

which they esteemed for a Title of great honour and estate: and it was a degree whereto that the Lordship of *Mexico* being vacante, he which had the same degree and title succeeded in the place of the same Dominion of *Mexico*, which title in like manner his Predecessors, Brothers, and Father, and Grand-father had, whereby they came to be Lords of *Mexico*. Also the said *Tizoc* by the estate and authoritie of the said Lordship of *Mexico*, had many Wives and Sonnes which hee had by them, and he was a grave and seuerer man in commanding and was feared and reuerenced of his Subiects, hee was likewise enclined to good and vertuous things, and was good for his Commonwealth. He commanded the Lawes and Statutes to be kept and approued for good, that his Predecessors had amplified and kept since the time of *Guicemotocuma*. And he was zealous in punishing and clashing the euill vices and offences that his Subiects committed. And so the *Mexican* Commonwealth was well ordered and gouerned the time of his life, which was the space of five yeeres, at the end whereof he dyed and departed this present life.



A Five yeeres. B *Tizoc*. C By armed force subdued these Townes: *Tonacapan*, *Tlacatecatl*, *Tlacatepec*, *Zilan*, *Tecotepec*, *Tulcan*, *Tancatlan*, *Tlanlan*, *Aleuizapan*, *Mallatlan*, *Xochimilco*, *Tampacal*, *Calixmoyan*, *Miquizatlan*.

In the yeere 1485. after the death of *Tizoc*, succeeded *Ahuizotl*, brother to his Predecessor *Tizoc*, in the Signorie of *Mexico*. And during the time of his Lordship hee conquered by force of armes flus and forte Townes, according as hereafter are pictured and named. The said *Ahuizotl* was like to his Predecessor and Brother *Tizoc* in valiantie and feates of warre, whereby hee got the title of *Tlacatecatl*, which signifieth a great Captain, and from the same title he came to be Lord of *Mexico*. The said *Ahuizotl* was by nature of a good inclination, and given to all vertue, and likewise in the course of his life hee had his Commonwealth ruled and gouerned well, and hee fulfilled and kept the Lawes and Statutes that his Predecessors had maintayned since the time of *Guicemotocuma*. And as the state of the Lordship of *Mexico* was brought to great Majestie, and had the greatest part of this *New Spaine* subiect, acknowledging their seruice, and by the great and rich tributes which they gaue the said *Mexican* Lordship came to much renowne and mightinesse. And he like a mightie and great minded Prince, gaue great things and preferments to his seruants, and he was temperate of condition and mercifull, whereby his seruants loued him exceedingly, and yielded him great reuerence. And likewise hee had many wives, and children by them, because it was a thing adioyned to the Lordship, and a point of great estate. He was of a merrie condition, whereby his seruants did feele him continually in his life time with great and diuers kindes of feasts, and musicke, and songs, and instruments, as well in the night as in the day: for in his place the Musicians and Singers neuer ceased with many Instruments of musicke. The course of his life in that Signorie was sixteen yeeres, at the end whereof he dyed and passed out of this present life.

Vuuu

A 150

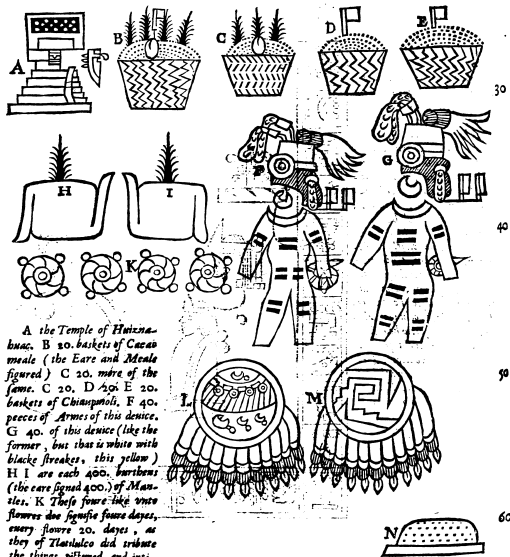
Gouernour, *Acalhuacan*, *Tlacachitli* a Gouernour, *Huacac*, *Tzitzeycan*, *Cuatzilac*, *Huacachitlan*, *Tlacachitli* a Gouernour, *Zozolan*, *Poetepet*, *Cuatzilac*, *Acalhuacan*, *Papulan*, *Tzitzeycan*, *Tlacachitli* a Gouernour, *Tlacachitli* a Gouernour, *Ozotoma*, *Atzacan*, *Atlan*, *Omequib*, *Tzacacacatl* a Gouernour, *Tlacachitli* a Gouernour, *Xocomeco*, *Tecapulan*.

§. II.

The second part of this Book containing the particular Tributes which every Towne subdued paid vnto the Lords of Mexico.

Here follow pictured and intitled the kinds of things, that they of *Tlatilcalco* (which at this day is called by the Spaniards, *Saint James*) did pay in tribute to the Lords of Mexico, and the said tribute summed here, is that which followeth.

They were charged for tribute, alwayes to repaire the Church called *Huicacahuac*. Item, fortye great Baskets (of the bignesse of halfe a Buell) of *Cacao* ground, with the Meale of Maize (which they called *Chicampolli*) and eury Basket had fixteene hundred Almonds of *Cacao*. Item, other fortye Baskets of *Chicampolli*. Item, eight hundred burthens of great Mantels. Item, eightie pieces of Armour, of flight feathers, and as many Targets of the same Feathers, of the deuices & colours as they are pictured. All the which tribute, except the said armes and targets they gaue eury 24. dayes, and the said armes and targets they gaue for tribute but once in the whole yeere. The said tribute had his beginning since the time of *Quauhtlaton* and *Moquibux*, which were Lords of *Tlatilcalco*. The Lords of Mexico, which first enjoyed to thole of *Tlatilcalco*, to pay tribute, and to acknowledge their tributary, were *Tzacacatl* and *Axiacatl*.



A the Temple of *Huicacahuac*. B 20. baskets of *Cacao* meale (the Eare and *Adale* figured). C 20. more of the same. D 20. E 20. baskets of *Chicampolli*. F 40. peeces of Armes of this deuice. G 40. of this deuice (like the former, but this is white with blacke streakes this yellow). H I are each 400. burthens (the eare signed 400.) of Mantels. K These foure like vnto flowers doe signifie foure dayes, eury foure 20. dayes, as they of *Tlatilcalco* did tribute the things pictured and intitled by taxacum of the Lords of Mexico. L 40. Targets of this deuice (to expresse the difference of colours)

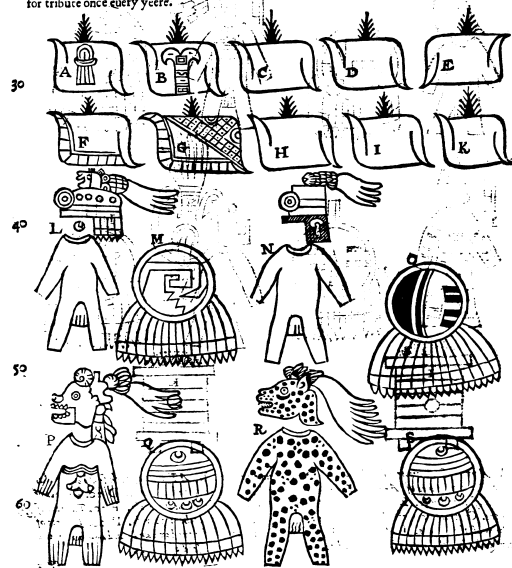
colours in each particular were too tedious.) N *Tlatilcalco*. The names of *Quauhtlaton* and *Moquibux* Lords of *Tlatilcalco* are added, because in their times it began; as also of *Tenaxtilan*, *Ixcacatl* and *Apayacan* to intimate that these two Lords of Mexico or *Tenaxtilan* subdued them. The Pictures of them (as of many Townes before) were omitted: being but such descriptions of men and Townes as you haue seene already.

The Townes pictured in the two Pieces following, and summed heere be twentie three Townes as appareth by their Titles, and they had a chiefe Gouernour appointed by the Lords of Mexico, called *Petlacacatl*, although neuerthelesse, eury Towne had his *Calpixaque*, which is at it were a Steward or Bayliffe, whose charge was to gather the Rents & tributes that the said Townes did tribute to the Dominion of Mexico, and all the said Stewards came to the said *Petlacacatl* as their Gouernour, and the things and kinds that the said Townes did tribute, are these which follow: 1400. burthens of great Mantels of twisted Yarne. Eight hundred burthens of little Mantels, rich attyre, of the colours as they are pictured. Four hundred burthens of *Maxtlat*, which serued for little clothes. Four hundred burthens of *Huipiles* and *Naguar*, all the which they gaue for tribute eury sixe moneths.

Item, They gaue five peeces of Armour, of rich Feathers, and as many Targets of the colours and deuices as they are pictured.

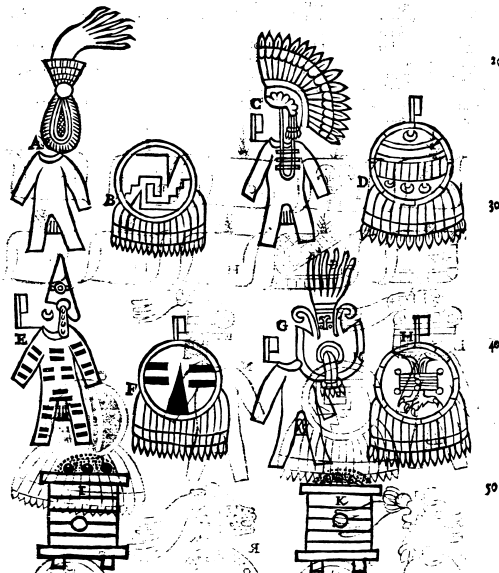
Item, They did tribute seuentie peeces of Armour of Feathers of small account, and as many Targets of the colours and deuices as they are pictured.

Item, They tributed one *Trox* of *Huipiles*, and another *Trox* of *Chicac*, and another *Trox* of *Maxtlat*, and another of *Gumilis*, which is the seed of *Beles*. All the which things of the said Armour and Targets, and *Trox*es of *Huipiles*, and the other feeds the said Townes did pay for tribute once eury yeere.



Petlacalcoit a Governor (the pictures of men and towne are here and in the following named, being no other then as you have already scene) The towne are Xaxalpan, Tapan, Tepetlacalco, Tachopan, Tepetopan, Tequimacan, Huicila Pachon, Cokinacacua, Cocanlan, Tepetopan, Olac, Chapam, Cuilabana, Tezacaqua, Mequiqui, Acchapanco, Tapanatlan, Xico, Tapan, Tezaca, Tlacaximban, Xaxitlan.

A 400. burthens of Mantles of this worke, which be little clothes. B 400. burthens of Nagua, and Humples of this worke. C 400. burthens of great Mantels. D 400. burthens of great Mantels. E 400. burthens of little Mantels, of this worke each division of several colours, Red, Blue, Yellow, Greene. G 400. burthens of little Mantels of this worke. H 400. burthens of great Mantels. I 400. burthens of little Mantels. K 400. burthens of great Mantels. L A piece of Armour of this device of rich Feathers yearly. M A Target of rich Feathers of this device. N A piece of Armour of this device of rich Feathers yearly. O A Target of rich Feathers of this device. P A piece of Armour of rich Feathers of this device yearly. Q A Target of rich Feathers of this device. R A piece of Armour of rich Feathers, of this device yearly. S A Target of rich Feathers of this device.



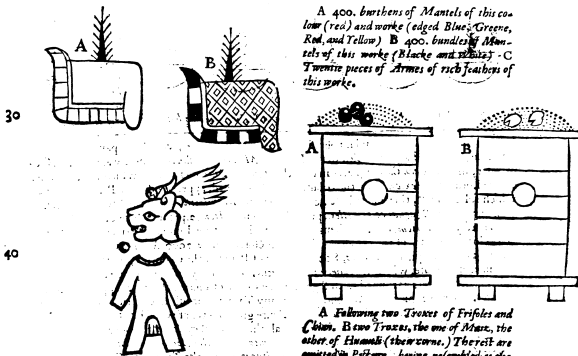
A A piece of Armour of rich feathers of this device yearly. B A Target of rich feathers of this device. C 20. pieces of Armour of this device yearly, they were of red feathers. D 20. Targets of feathers of this device. E 20. pieces of Armour of feathers of this device yearly. F 20. Targets of feathers. G 20. pieces of Armour of this device, blue, of light feathers yearly. H 20. Targets of feathers of this device. I A Target of Frisles and Chian, one of the one kind and another of the other kind. K A Target of Mauc and another of Guanah, which is seed of Blisbon.

The

These Townes pictured and named, ensuing and summed here, are fixe and twentie townes, wherein from the time of their conquests by the Lords of Mexico, they had let Calpaques, as it were Bayliffes in every of them, and in the principall Towne a Gouverneur bare rule above all the reit, because he should maintaine them in peace and iustice, and make them performe their tributes, and that they should not rebell. The tributes that all the laid towne hereafter containe, did pay together, are these which follow.

Two thousand burthens of great Mantels twilled. Item, 1200. burthens of Camalmax, which be rich Mantels, wherewith the Lords and Calpaques were clothed of the colours as they are pictured. Item, 400. burthens of Maxilacil, which be little clothes. Item, 400. burthens of Huipiles and Naguas, all the which they paid for tribute twice a yeere. Item, they gave more tribute three pieces of Armour garnished with rich feathers, and as many Targets of the colours and devices as they are pictured, the which they gave in the space of one yeere. Item, one hundred pieces of Armour garnished with feathers of small value, and as many Targets of the devices and colours as they are hereafter pictured, the which they tributed once a yeere. Item, four great Trunks of wood, full, the one of Frisles, and another of Chian, and another of Maiz, and another of Guanah, which is the seed of Blisbon. Every Trunk might containe foure or five thousand Hangea, the which they tributed once a yeere.

Acobmatel. Calpaque. Acobhuacan, Huicila, Tlachihualco, Tepetopan, Aztacameca, Tezaca, Tomatila, Zempalan, Tepetlacalco, Acobmatel, Tapan, Cocanlan, Tequimacan, Matixco, Tezacaclapin, Tzauacan, Tepetopan, Calahuacan, Tecuacan, Ilahuacan, Quauque-mecan, Epacmican, Amajaco, Quauhyacan, Etzapepe.



A 400. burthens of Mantels of this colour (red) and worke, (the one of Blisbon, Red, and Yellow) B 400. burthens of Mantels of this worke (black and white) C Twentie pieces of Armour of rich feathers of this worke.

A Following two Trunks of Frisles and Chian. B two Trunks, the one of Blisbon, the other of Guanah (the worke.) There is an amantla picture, being resembled as the former, and for the Blisbon on them is before.

The towne pictured and named, ensuing here are sixtee towne, the which towne did pay for tribute to the Lords of Mexico, the things pictured and intitled. And because they should be well ruled and governed, the Lords of Mexico had let Calpaques in every towne, and above all them for Gouverneur, a principall man of Mexico; the Calpaques also were men of Mexico: which was done by the laid Lords for the securitie of the towne, that they should not rebell, and also because they should minister iustice, and live in policie. And the laid Tributes that the laid towne gave as appeareth by the laid Pictures, and summed here, are those which follow.

First, they did tribute twelve hundred burthens of great Mantels of twilled Yarne.

Item, Eight hundred burthens of small white Mantels, of the apparel which they did wear.

Item, Twelve hundred burthens of small white Mantels, richly wrought, which is apparel that the Lords and Calpaques did wear.

Item, Four hundred burthens of Maxilacil, which are small clothes that they wear.

Item,

Item, Four hundred burthens of *Huipiles* and *Naguar*, which is apparell for women, all the which they tribute twice a yeere; to wit they gave tribute every fixe moneths.

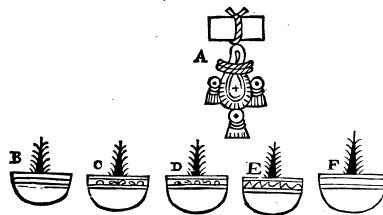
Item, They did tribute eight pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of diuers colours as they are pictured, the which they paid for tribute once a yeere.

Item, Four great *Troxes* of wood, full of *Matz* and *Frisles*, and *Chuan*, and *Huanuli*, which is the seed of *Blethos*, every *Trox* might containe 5000. *Huang* or *Buñels*, the which they did tribute once a yeere.

Item, Eight Reames of Paper, of the Countrey, which they tributed twice a yeere; so that in all it was every yeere sixteen thousand sheets of Paper.

Item, In every tribute 2000. *Xicbaras*, or drinking Cups, which they gave twice a yeere.

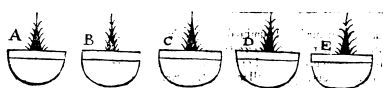
The Townes were *Quauhnahuac*, *Tecolcaco*, *Chimalco*, *Huicilapan*, *Acatlapac*, *Xochitlac*, *Miacatlan*, *Molalla*, *Quailon*, *Xuchitlac*, *Xocoxtla*, *Amacoxitlan*, *Tzilan*, *Ocpayacan*, *Tzilep*, *Aticholapan*.



are Yellow and Red. The rest need no presenting in Picture, being but as formerly is scene.

The townes following, and numbred here are six and twentie, which did pay tribute of the things pictured and entituled to the Lords of Mexico and likewise there was resident a Governour, and Mexican *Calpixque*, as in the other townes afore mentioned, which were ordained by the Lords of Mexico. And the tributes that they payed, appearing by the Pictures are these which follow. First, they did tribute 400. burthens of *Matz*, which are little clothes, *Item*, 400. burthens of *Naguar* & *Huipiles* apparell for women, *Item*, 240. burthens of great Mantles, of twisted yarne. *Item*, 800. of rich Mantles, that the Lords and Principals of Mexico were clothed with, of the colours as they are pictured. *Item*, 2000. *Xicbaras* garnished, of the colours as they are pictured. *Item*, 800. Reames of Paper of the Countrey, all the which they gave in every tribute, which was twice six moneths. *Item*, They tributed 40. pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with eight feathers of diuers colours, as appeareth by the Pictures. *Item*, Six pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of the deuces and colours as they are pictured. *Item*, Four great *Troxes* of wood like those afore said, full of *Matz* and *Frisles*, and *Chuan*, and *Huanuli*, all the which they tributed once a yeere.

The townes names are *Huastecac*, *Xochimilcac*, *Quauhnahuac*, *Ahuacatlan*, *Ahuacatlan*, *Otlantecac*, *Quauhnahuac*, *Zumpango*, *Huicilapan*, *Tlalilcapan*, *Cocacac*, *Tecamachitlan*, *Tepoztlan*, *Tehuacan*, *Tecapacatlan*, *Tlacapacan*, *Xalapa*, *Tecapacan*, *Nepotlac*, *Atlatlan*, *Tzilep*, *Amilnac*, *Aticholac*.



are each of them four hundred *Xicbaras* or Cup-disks.



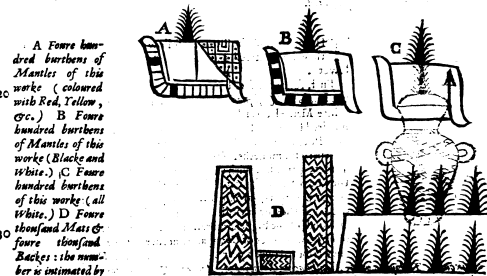
F Eight thousand sheets of Paper, the Pictures of the rest are omitted.

The

The Townes pictured and named here are seven, which paid tribute to the Lords of Mexico, as in the other parts afore said have bene mentioned, and the things they tributed are these that follow.

First, Four hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workes, and four hundred burdens of plaine Mantels, of the colour as they are pictured. *Item*, Four thousand *Petates*, which are Mats, and other four hundred baskets with their leaves made of Segs and other Herbs, the which they did tribute every six moneths. *Item*, Two peeces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich Feathers of the deuces and colours as they are pictured. *Item*, Fortie peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with sleight Feathers. *Item*, Four great *Troxes* of wood of the bignesse of those afore said, full of *Matz*, *Frisles*, *Chuan* and *Guanuli*, which they gave for tribute once a yeere.

The Townes are *Quauhnahuac*, *Tehuacan*, *Ahuacatlan*, *Xalapa*, *Tecapacan*, *Cuicatlan*, *Xilapac*.



are the figures following, somewhat like ones of Corne, each of which signifyeth one hundred.

The Townes pictured and named are tenne, which did paie tribute to the Lords of Mexico, as afore said, and the things that they did tribute doe follow.

First, eight hundred burdens of rich Mantels, and wotnot as appeareth by the sides and pictures. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their borders of blacke and white. *Item*, Eight hundred burdens of white Mantels. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of *Naguar* and *Huipiles*. *Item*, Four hundred great Pots of thicke Honie of *Maques*, all the which they tributed every six moneths. They did tribute two peeces of Armour, garnished with rich Feathers, and as many Targets of rich Feathers, of the deuces as they are pictured and intitled. *Item*, Fortie peeces of Armour, garnished with sleight Feathers, and as many Targets, of the deuces as they are pictured. *Item*, Four great *Troxes* of wood, of the bignesse of those that are signified in the parts before, the one of *Matz*, and the other of *Frisles*, another of *Chuan*, and another of *Guanuli* (inde of *Bleds*). All the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are *Ahuacatlan*, *Ahuacatlan*, *Tecapacan*, *Xochimilcac*, *Tehuacan*, *Tecapacan*, *Miquianahuac*, *Tehuacan*, *Tehuacan*, *Tehuacan*.



A Four hundred Pots of thicke Honie of *Maques*: to wit for the number figure pictured, the rest not, being as the former in their forme.

The number of the Townes ensuing, are seven, and they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico, after the order declared in the parts afore said; and the things which they did tribute are those which follow.

First, Four hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workes, which was apparell that the Lords and Caciques did put on. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their borders of white



white and black. *Item*, Eight hundred burdens of great Mantels of twisted Yarn. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of Chalk; all the which they did tribute every six months. *Item*, they did tribute two pieces of Armour garnished with rich Feathers, and two Targets, as appeareth by the deuces and pictures. *Item*, Fortie peeces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with light Feathers, as appeareth by the pictures, deuces and titles. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, of the bignesse of those before, the one full of *Maize*, another of *Frisoles*, another of *Chian*, and another of *Guaniti*; all of the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Townes are *Atotonilco*, *Guapacalco*, *Quacalmacan*, *Acocotlan*, *Tehuacan*, *Otlazapan*, *Xalac*.

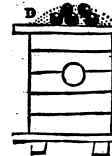
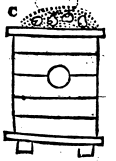
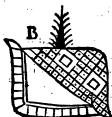
A 400. burdens of Chalk or Lime: the marks on the top signifieth 400. the figure is the forme of their burthen. Other figures needs not be presented.



The number of the Townes following, are nine, according as they be pictured and named. And they paid tribute as followeth.

First, four hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workes, which the Lords and *Captayns* did put on. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their edge of white and blacke. *Item*, eight hundred burdens of white Mantels of *Eneguen*. *Item*, Four hundred Pots of thicke Honie of *Maguac*. All the which they tributed every six months. *Item*, Two peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich feathers, of the colours and devises they be pictured and intailed. *Item*, threescore peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with light feathers, of the colours and devises as they be ensigned and pictured. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, of the bignesse aforesaid full, the one of *Maize*, and another of *Frisoles*, another of *Chian*, and another of *Guaniti*. All the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are *Huapochila*, *Xalac*, *Teguisemil*, *Tetlapacoyan*, *Xicallhuacan*, *Xonayotlan*, *Atotonilco*, *Tehuacan*, *Atzacapan*.

A 400. Pots of Honie of *Maguac*, paid every six months.



The number of the Townes following be six: and they paid tribute as followeth.

First, Eight hundred burdens of rich Mantels of cloth, which the Lords of Mexico did cloath themselves with, as appeareth in the said side by the pictures and titles. *Item*, One thousand six hundred burdens of white Mantels of *Eneguen*; all the which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico every six months. *Item*, Four peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich feathers of the colours and devises as they are pictured and intailed. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, of the bignesse of the other, full of *Maize*, *Frisoles*, *Chian*, and *Guaniti*. All the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Townes are *Atotonilco*, *Acacochila*, *Xuacpacaloyan*, *Huapochila*, *Atzacapan*, *Itzamalguiclan*, *Tulancinga*.

A Four hundred burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. B Four hundred burdens of rich Mantels of this worke.

C Two traxes, one of *Maize*, the other of *Chian*. D Two traxes, one of *Frisoles*, the other of *Guaniti*. Other pictures are omitted, being like the former.

The

The number of the Townes are seven: and they paid tribute as followeth. First, 400. burdens of very rich *Maguac* and *Huapochila*, which is apparell for women. *Item*, 400. burdens of rich Mantels, Lords apparell. *Item*, 400. burdens of *Neguen* wrought. *Item*, 800. burdens of rich Mantels. *Item*, 400. burdens of rich small Mantels. *Item*, 400. burdens of Mantels drawne through the middle with red: all the which they tributed every six months.

Item, A living Eagle, two, three, or more, according as they could finde them. *Item*, two peeces of Armour and two Targets, garnished with rich feathers, of the deuce and colour as they are pictured. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, full of *Maize*, *Frisoles*, *Chian*, and *Guaniti*: all the which they tributed once a yeere. The townes names are *Xilotepetlan*, *Tlacochan*, *Teguisemil*, *Atzacapan*, *Atotonilco*, *Acacochila*, *Tecacuilan*.



A 400. burdens of very rich *Maguac* and *Huapochila*. B 400. burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. C 400. burdens of *Neguen* of this worke. D 400. burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. E 400. burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. F A live Eagle that they brought in every tribute sometimes three, other times four, and other times more or lesse.

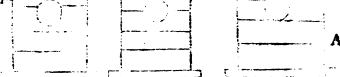
The number of the Townes following are thirteene. And they payed tribute as followeth.

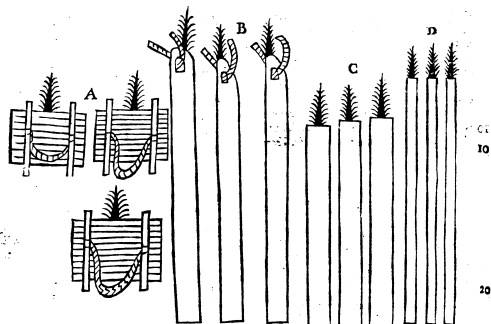
First, 800. burdens of rich small Mantels of this worke, as they be pictured. *Item*, 800. burdens of small, of *Eneguen*: all the which they did tribute every six months.

Item, A piece of Armour and a Target garnished with rich feathers. *Item*, Fortie peeces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with light feathers: the which Armour they tributed once a yeere.

Item, Four great Traxes of wood of the bignesse aforesaid, full of *Maize*, *Frisoles*, *Chian*, and *Guaniti*, which likewise they tributed once a yeere.

Item, 1200. burdens of wood, which they tributed every four dayes. *Item*, 1200. great Beames of Timber, which they tributed every four dayes. *Item*, 2400. great Boards or Planks, which they tributed every four dayes. The Townes are, *Quahuacan*, *Tetza*, *Checholoyan*, *Tlatlacan*, *Atzacapan*, *Atotonilco*, *Otlazapan*, *Huapochila*, *Atzacapan*, *Atotonilco*, *Atzacapan*, *Atzacapan*, *Atzacapan*, *Atzacapan*, *Atzacapan*.

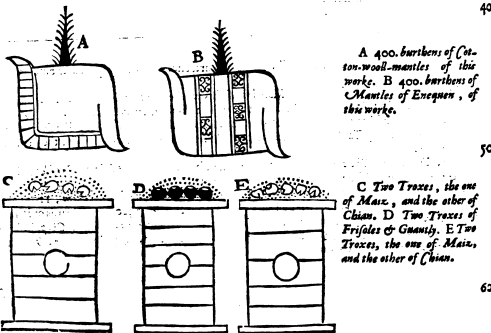




A 400. burthens of wood. A 400. burthens of wood. A 400. burthens of wood. B 400. great beams, or pieces of timber. B 400. great beams. B 400. great beams. C 400. great planks of timber. C 400. great planks of timber. C 400. great boards of timber. D 400. quarters of timber. D 400. quarters of timber. D 400. quarters of timber.

The number of the townes pictured are twelve. And they tributed as followeth. First, 400. burthens of Cotton-wool. Mantles white with an edge of Greens, Yellow, Red, and Olive colour. Item, 400. burthens of Mantles of *Enequen*, wrought and spotted, with Red, White and Blacke. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of *Enequen*, all the which they tributed every six moneths. Item, two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of the colours and devices as they are pictured. Item, twenty pieces of Armour, with as many Targets, garnished with flight feathers of the colours and devices as they are pictured. Item, six great Troxes of wood of the bignette aforelaid, full of *Frisoles*, *Maiz*, *Chian*, and *Guanily*: All the which they tributed once a yeere.

The townes names are *Tuluba*, *Calixtlahuacan*, *Xicaltepec*, *Tepetl*, *Mixtlan*, *Mixtepec*, *Capuliteopan*, *Mixtepec*, *Cacalahuacan*, *Calmayacan*, *Totenance*, *Zepemalco*, *Zuquiltlan*.



A 400. burthens of Cotton-wool-mantles of this worke. B 400. burthens of Mantles of *Enequen*, of this worke.

C Two Troxes, the one of *Maiz*, and the other of *Chian*. D Two Troxes of *Frisoles* & *Guanily*. E Two Troxes, the one of *Maiz*, and the other of *Chian*.

The

The number of the townes incircled and pictured, are fixe. And they paid tribute as followeth.

First, they did tribute 800. burthens of rich Mantles of *Enequen*, of the workes as they he pictured A.

Item, 400. burthens of Cotton-wool Mantles rich, of the worke as they be pictured. B.

Item, 400. rich Mantles of *Enequen*, of this worke pictured. C.

Item, 2000. Loaves of fine white Salt refined & made in long moulds, as letter D each of which figure 400. (as the Earre above declares.) It was spent only for the Lords of *Mexico*, all the which they tributed every sixe moneths.

Item, a piece of Armour with a Target of rich feathers, of the colours and devices as they be pictured.

Item, Twenty pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with flight feathers of the devices and colours as they are pictured. Item, Four great Troxes of wood, of the bignette of those before full of *Maiz*, *Frisoles*, *Chian*, and *Guanily*. All the which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes, *Oculan*, *Tenancingo*, *Tegualayan*, *Tenancingo*, *Cotapepec*, *Zucuarcan*.

The Townes, *Oculan*, *Tenancingo*, *Tegualayan*, *Tenancingo*, *Cotapepec*, *Zucuarcan*.

The number of the townes pictured are three. And they paid tribute as followeth. First, 1200. burthens of great white Mantles of *Enequen*, A B C.

Item, 400. burthens of wrought Mantles of *Enequen*, all the which they tributed every sixe moneths.

Item, They tributed once a yeere eight great Troxes of wood, of the bignette aforelaid, two of *Maiz*, two of *Frisoles*, two of *Chian*, and two of *Guanily*. The townes were *Maly-nalco*, *Zompahuacan*, *Xocotlan*.

The number of the Townes following are ten, of a hot Country, and they paid tribute as followeth.

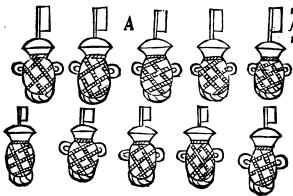
First, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wool, of the worke as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of *Nagual* and *Huipiles*. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of smooth and late *Enequen*, All the which they did tribute every six moneths.

X x x x

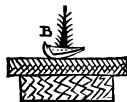
Item,

Item, 200. pots of Bees Honey. Item, 1200. *Xicaras* varnished Yellow. Item, 400. Baskets of white *Copals* for perfumes. Item, 8000. lumps of vntrefined *Copals*, wrapt in the leaues of a *Palme* tree. All the which they tributed every 400. dayes. Item, Two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers, of the deuice and colour as they are pictured. Item, Two great *Traxes* of wood of the bigneſſe of thoſe aforeſaid, full, the one of *Mais*, and the other of *Chian*. All the which they doe tribute once a yeere.

The Townes are, *Tlacotal*, *Acomphaxtlahuacan*, *Chontalcoatlán*, *Tetipac*, *Nechitpec*, *Tonhuacan*, *Tlacamalco*, *Tepexahualco*, *Tlaxcapulco*, *Teteneuco*.



A 200. pots of Honey, the markes on each pot ſignifieth the number of twenty.



B 400. Baskets of Copal refined.



C 8000. lumps of Copal vntrefined, wrapped in the leaues of a Date Tree: the upper Figure ſignifieth the Copal, the later (like a Purſe with three Taffels or Targets annexed) is the Character of eight thousand, as before in the ſheets of Paper is ſeene.

The number of the Townes of the hot Country pictured, are fourteen Townes. And they paid tribute as followeth,

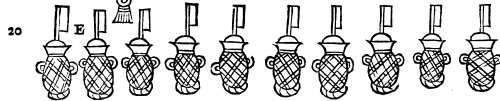
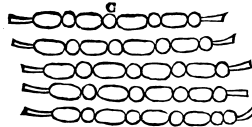
First, 400. burthens of quilted Mantles. Item, 400. burthens of Mantles ſtriped with blacke and white. Item, 400. burthens of rich Mantles. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguas* and *Hopiles*. Item, 400. burthens of white Mantles. Item, 1600. burthens of great Mantles. All the which they did tribute every fixe moneths.

Item, They tributed 100. Hatchets of Copper. Item, 1800. *Xicaras* of yellow varnish. Item, 200. pots of Bees Honey. Item, 400. little baskets of white *Copals* for Perfumes. Item, 8000. lumps of *Copals* vntrefined, which was ſpent likewise for Perfumes. All the which they tributed every four dayes.

Item, Two pieces of Armour, with their Targets garnished with rich feathers of this deuice, as they be pictured. Item, Twentie pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with light feathers.

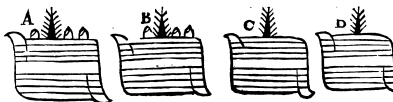
Item, Five ſtrings of rich Bead-ſtones, which they call *Chalchihuitl*. Item, Four great *Traxes* of wood, of the bigneſſe of thoſe before full of *Mais*, *Frijoles*, *Chian*, and *Guanity*; all the which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes names are *Tepexahuacan*, *Chilapan*, *Ohnapan*, *Huixtlan*, *Tlachimalac*, *Tonhuacan*, *Acomphaxtlahuacan*, *Tlaxcapulco*, *Oaxtepec*, *Tlaxitlan*, *Ahuacatlan*, *Cuicatan*.



A The Hatchets, the forme below, the number above, each ſignifying 100. B 400. little Baskets of white Copal, C Five ſtrings of Bead-ſtones, D 8000. lumps of Copal vntrefined, E 200. Pots of Honey.

The number of the Townes of the hot Countreies pictured, and intitled in the next diſſion, are twelve. And they paid tribute as followeth.



First, ſixteene hundred burthens of great Mantles, liſted with Orange-tawnie, as is ſeene in the letters A B C D each marked



400. Item, 1400 burdens of great Mantles of twiſted yarne. Item, 400. burthens of *Cacas* of brown colour as in letter E. Item, 400. packages of Cotton-wooll, marked Letter F. Item, 400. *Conchas*, which are red ſhells of the Sea, (marked G H. each 400.) after the faſhion of *Veneras*, all the which they tributed every fixe moneths.



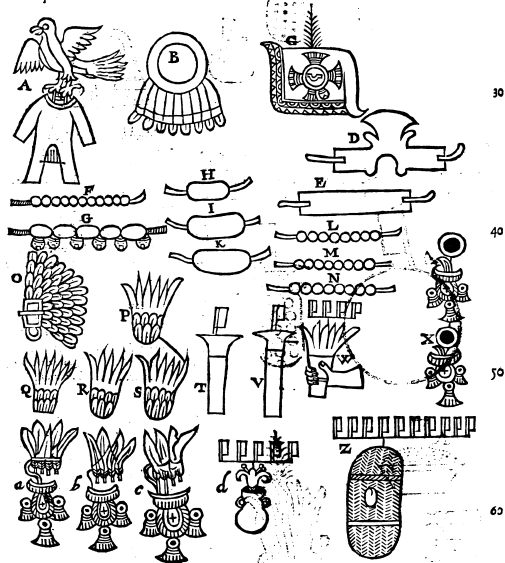
X x x x 2

The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countries, pictured and intituled in the next figure, are two and twentie. And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

Target of gold.

Emerald stones.
Amber.
Crystal.

First, they did tribute 1600. burthens of rich Mantels, apparell which the Lords and *Casiques* did wear. Item, 800. burthens of Mantels listd with red, white, and greene. Item, 400. burthens of *Nagases* and *Hupiles*: all the which they tributed every sixe moneths. Item, They tributed a piece of Armour with a Target garnished with rich feathers, with this device of a Bird and colours as are pictured letter *A*. Item, a Target of gold, letter *B*. Item, a device for Armour like a wing of rich yellow feathers, letter *O*. Item, a Diadem of gold of the fashion as is pictured letter *D*. Item, a border of gold for the head of a hand breadth, and of thicknesse as parchment, letter *E*. Item, two strings of Beades, and a collar of gold *F* *G*. Item, three great rich stons of *Chalchibuitl* *H* *I* *K*. Item, three strings of round beades rich stons of *Chalchibuitl*. *L* *M* *N*. Item, four strings of beades of *Chalchibuitl*, rich Bones. Item, twenty *Begues* of cleere Amber garnished with gold, letter *T*. Item, ovese-wentie *Begues* of *Beriles* or crystal *V*. Item, 80. handfols of greene rich feathers, which they call *Quepaly W.* Item, four pieces of greene rich feathers like hands full, garnished with yellow rich feathers *P* *Q* *R* *S*. Item, 8000. hands full of rich Turqued feathers *a*. Item, 8000. hands full of rich red feathers *b*. Item, 8000. hands full of rich greene feathers *c*. Item, 100. Pots or Cauters of fine liquid Amber *d*. Item, 200. burthens of *Cacao*, letter *Z*. Item, 1600. round lumps like balls of *Oy*, which is a gumme of trees, and fallinge the said balls on the ground, they deeelepe up very high, letter *X*, all the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are *Techape*, *Xayots*, *Oxtilan*, *Coyamotlan*, *Mexatlan*, *Michapan*, *Ayotlan*, *Apizotlan*, *Oxtilan*, *Tzucacatlan*, *Tototlan*, *Chimulan*, *Ayotlan*, *Coyamotlan*, *Pucatan*, *Tecapalan*, *Ximatlilan*, *Ayotlan*, *Totlan*, *Tlacotalpan*.



The

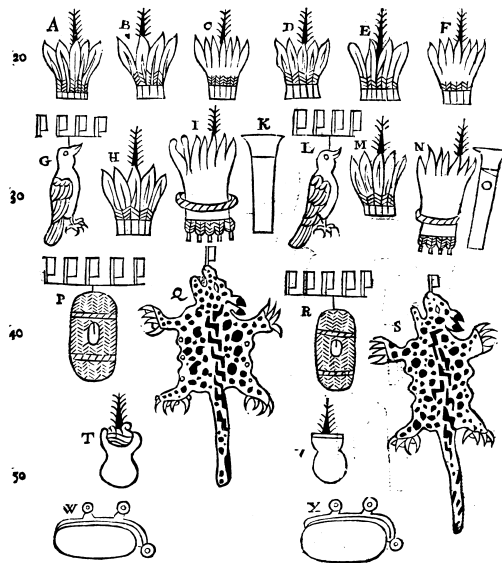
The number of the Townes of the warme Countries, pictured and intituled in the next partition are eight. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

First, two great strings of *Chalchibuitl* rich stons. Item, 1400. handfols of rich feathers blue, red, greene, turkised, red and greene, as they are pictured in six handfols, *A* *B* *C* *D* *E* *F*. Item, Four whole skinned of birds of rich turkised feathers, with murrey beards, of the colours as they are pictured *G*. Item, other four whole skinned of the said birds *L*. Item, 800. handfols of rich yellow feathers *H* *M*.

Item, 800. hands full of large rich greene feathers, which they call *Quepaly I N*. Item, Two *Begues* of cleere Amber garnished with gold *K O*. Item, 200. burthens of *Cacao* *P R*.

Item, Fourte Tigres skinned *Q S*. Item, 800. rich *Tecomates* wherein they drinke *Cacao* *T V*. Item, Two great pieces of cleere Amber of the biggnesse of a bricke *W X*. All which they tributed every sixe moneths.

The Townes names are *Xocomechol*, *Oyotlan*, *Coyotlan*, *Mapachitlan*, *Macatlan*, *Huicatan*, *Acapitlan*, *Huacatlan*.

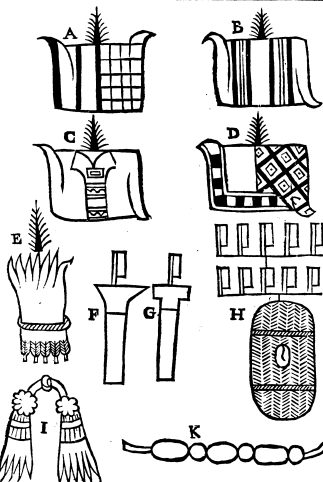
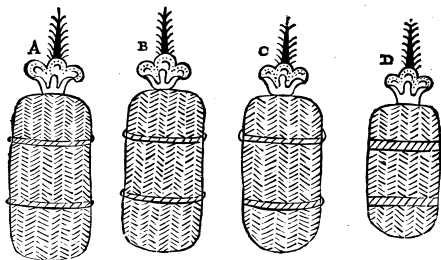


The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countries in the next picture, are seven. And the things that they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

First, 400. burthens of great Mantels, which they tributed every sixe moneths. Item, Twentie burthens of *Cacao*.

Item,

Cotton wooll. Item, 1600. Packs of Cotton wooll (represented *A B C D*, each marked foure hundred) all the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are *Quauhquechilco*, *Tenochtitlan*, *Tototlan*, *Tuchco*, *Amilxapen*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tetzoyacan*.



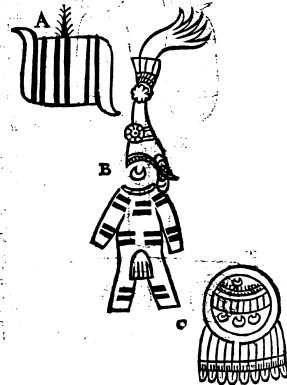
feathers, according as they are pictured. Item, A string of *Chalchihuitl* rich stones *K*. Item, 400 handfuls of rich large green feathers, which they call *Quacaly*. Item, Twenty *Begones* of *Baviler* or *Crifall* shadowed blue, and set in gold *F*. Item, Twenty *Begones* or clere Amber garnished with gold *G*. Item, 200. burthens of *Cacao* *H*. Item, a *Quauhquechilco* of rich green feathers of *Quacaly*, which served to the Lords of *Mexico* for a Royall Embrace, of the making as it is pictured *I*. All the which they tributed once a yeere.

Crifall,
Amber.

The Townes are *Quauhquechilco*, *Amilxapen*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tetzoyacan*, *Oxican*, *Acotlan*, *Tenochtitlan*.

The number of the Townes, containd, pictured, and intituled in the next division, are seven Townes. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

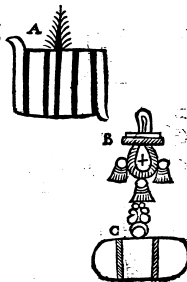
First, 400. burthens of Mantels lifted blacke and white *A*. Item, 800. burthens of great white Mantels, the which they tributed every sixe moneths. Item, They tributed once a yeere two pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with rich feathers of the deuce and forts as they are pictured. *B* Armour, *C* Shield. The Townes are *Tetzoyacan*, *Amilxapen*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tuchco*, *Copan*, *Acotlan*, *Acotlan*.



The number of the Townes pictured next are seven. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow. First, 1600. burthens of Mantels lifted blacke and white *A*. Item, 8000. loaves or lumps of liquid Amber for perfumes, which they call *Xochimocotl* (*B* is 8000. *C* the lump of Amber) all which they tributed every sixe moneths.

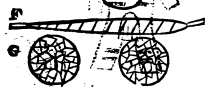
Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour with their Shields, garnished with rich feathers, of the fashion as they are pictured, which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes are *Tetzoyacan*, *Amilxapen*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tuchco*, *Copan*, *Acotlan*, *Acotlan*.

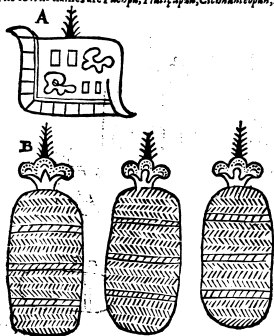


The

The number of the Townes pictured and entituled in the next side are seven Townes. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these which follow.



Pepper.
Precious
Stones.



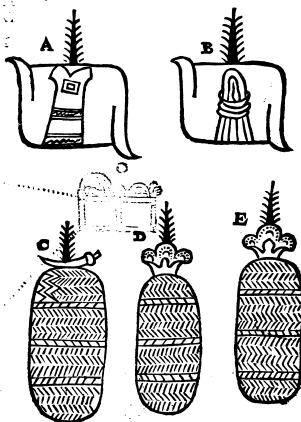
Atlas and Tezpozitlan take vp
the next diuision, which they did
tribute to the Lords of Mexico. First,
800. burdens of rich Mantels wrought
red and white, with an edge of green,
red, yellow, and blew. *A. item,*
400. burdens of *Maxtlatli. Item,*
400. burdens of *Maxtlatli. Item,* 200.
burdens of great white Mantels, of
four braças a Mantell: all the which
they tributed euery six moneths. *I-*
tem, They tributed euery a year
1200. pacques of Cotton Woll. *Yete*

The Towne of *Oxitipan*, did tribute to the Lords of *Mexico*, First, 2000. burdens of great Mantels of two bracas *A. Mantell. Item, 800.* burdens of great Mantels, lifted with yellow, blew, red, and Greene, of four bracas *A. Mantell.* All the which apparel they tributed every six months. *Item.* They tributed 400. burdens of *Axli*, which is their Pepper *A. Item, A lue Eagle,* and sometimes two or three, as they could catch them. *B.* All the which they tributed once a yeare.



Республика

30 **C**acacoac, Molencu, Cuscacacatan, Tobacaton and Teogocan, paid their tributes to the Lords of Mexico, 400 burdens of white Mantles with their edge of red, blew, greene and yellow. *Item*, 400. burdens of *Maxtlatli*, which are leather cloathes. *B. Item*, 800. burdens of great white Mantles of three bracas every Mantell. *Item*, 400. burdens of *Nagui* and *Huipiel*, which is womens apparel. *A. All* the which they tributed every fix months. *Item*, they tributed two pieces of *Armour* with their *Shields* decked with rich Feathers of the fashion that they are pictured. *Item*, 800. burdens of Cortes. *A. All* the which they tributed once a year. *Item*, 400 burdens of *Axtridic*. *C.*



Yyyŷ

p. III.

The third part of this Booke containeth the private behaviour in Mariages, education of Children, and Trades; with the Martiall, Ecclesiastick, and Civill policie of the MEXICAN people.

Relation of the manner and custome that the naturall *Mexicans* had when either a Boy or Girl was borne *vnto* them: The wife and ceremonies in giuing names to their children, and afterwards to dedicate and offer them either to the Church, or else to the warres, according as by the pictures is signified, and briefly declared.

The Woman being delivered, they laid the child in a Cradle, according as is pictured, & foure dayes after the birth of the child the Midwife tooke it in her armes naked, & brought it forth to the yard of the child's house, and in the yard were prepared Bulrushes or Seiges, which they call *Tule*, and they lay upon them a little pan of water, wherein the said Midwife washed the said child: after it is washed, three Boyes, which are set by the said Bulrushes, eating tosted *Maze*, mingled with folded *Frijoles*, which they called *Texco* food, the which food made

A kinde of Baptisme with the naming of their children.



A The woman that is delivered. **B** These four Roses signify foure dayes wherein the Midwife brought forth the child that was lately borne to wash. **C** The cradle with the child. **D** The Midwife. **E** The signes, instrument, and the bond (Shield and Darts): **F** **G** **H** the three Boyes which name the child. **I** The Bulrushes with the pan of water. **K** The Broome. **L** The Spindell and the Distaffe. **N** The Basket. **O** The child in his cradle which his Parents offer in the Temple. **P** The Master or Teacher of boyes and young men. **Q** The child's Father. **R** The child's Mother.

ready

ready, was set in a little pan before the said Boyes, that they might eat it. And after the said bathing or washing, the said Midwife advertised the said Boyes, that they should with a loud voice give a new name vnto the child that she had so washed, and the name that they gave it was that which the Midwife would impose.

When the child was brought forth to wash, if it be a man child they bring him forth with his signe in his hand, and the signe is the Instrument wherewith his Father did exercise himselfe, as well in the Military art, as other arts, as of a Goldsmith, a Grauer, or any other office whatsoever: And after they had done all the aforesaid, the Midwife brings the child to his Mother. And if it be a woman-child, the signe wherewith they bring her to wash, is a Distaffe, a Spindell, a Basket, and a handfull of Broome; which are the things wherewith she should exercise her selfe, being of age thereto.

And the bond of the Man-child with a Shield and Darts for a signe which he brings with him when they bring him for to wash; they offer it to that part and place where are likely to happen warres with his enemies, where they burie it vnder ground. And so likewise of the Woman-child, her bond they buried vnder the *Masie*, which is a stone to grinde Cakes upon.

And after the aforesaid, at the end of twenty dayes, the child's Parents went with the child to the Temple or *Mixquica*, which they called *Calmeac*, and in the presence of the Priests they presented the child with his offering of Mantels, and *Mastelles* and some meate: And after the child being brought up by his Parents, and being of age, they committed the child to the high Priest of the said Temple, because there he might be taught that hereafter he might be a Priest.

And if the child's Parents were determined that he (being of age) should serve in warlike affaires, then straight way they offered him to the Master thereof, making him a promise of him (the Master of Boyes and young men they called *Tenachca* or *Telpachlate*) which offering was made with his present of meate and other things for the celebrating thereof. And the child being of age, they committed him to the said Master.

Presentation in the Temple

The declaration of the pictures contained in the deuision following, wherein is declared at what age, and in what manner the naturall Parents did giue counsell to their children, how they ought to live, as successively is pictured in foure partitions, and so the foure partitions of this fide are declared in order which are these that follow.

1 The first partition, wherein is declared how that the Parents corrected their children, in giuing them good counsell when they were three years of age; and the portion of meate that they gave them every male was halfe a cake of bread;

2 The second partition wherein is pictured in what things the Parents did instruct their children when they were of the age of foure yeares, and how they began to exercise them to serve in small things. And the portion of meate which they gave them at a meale, was a whole Cake.



A The Boy his Father. **B** Three yeares of age. **C** The Boy. **D** Halfe a Cake. **E** The Girl her Mother. **F** Halfe a Cake. **G** A Girl of three yeares of age. **H** The Father of the Boy. **I** A Boy of foure yeares of age. **K** A Cake. **L** The Mother of the Girl. **M** A Cake. **N** A Girl of foure yeares of age. **O** A Spindell with a larkie of cotton wool lying on a Mat.

Yyy 2

The

3 The third partition, wherein is shewed that the Parents did exercise their children in bodily labour at five years of age, in loading their Sonnes with Wood and other things in small burdens, of small weight, and to carry packes of small weight to the *Tjangues*, or Market place. And they exercised their Daughters of that age, in shewing them how they should handle the spindle and Distaff for to spin. And their allowance of meate was a whole Cake of Bread.

4 The fourth partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents instructed their children of six years old, and exercised and occupied them in bodily service, that they might profit their Parents in some thing, as in the *Tjangues*, which are Market-places that they might gather from the ground, the cornes of *Maize* and *Peas* that were sown there by him, and other small things that the buyers and others had left and left there. And this was the Botes work. But the Girls were put to spinne and to doe other profitable services, because in time to come, by means of the said services and occupations, they should not spend their time idly, and should avoid cull vices that are wont to grow through idleness. And the allowance of meate that they gave to their children was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.



O The Father of the Boyes. R Two Boyes of five yeeres of age. Q A Cake. R A Cake. S The Mother of the Girls holding the Spindle and Rocks. T A Cake. V A Girls of five yeeres old. W The Father of the two Boyes. Two Boyes of six yeeres old. X A Cake and a halfe. Y The mother of the Girls. Z A Cake and a halfe. A Girls of six yeeres old spinning Cotton wool.

A Declaration of the figure following, wherein is shewed, at what age and in what things the naturall people of Mexico did instruct their children, and in what manner they corrected them, that they should avoid all idleness, and alwayes should be exercised in some profitable things, as successively is pictured in four partitions.

1 The first partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents vie their children of seven yeeres old that is the men children they applied them in giuing them their fishing Nets. And the Mothers did exercise their Daughters in spinning and in giuing them good counsel that they should alwayes apply and occupy their time in doing some thing for to avoid idleness. And the allowance of meate that they gave to their children at every meale was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.



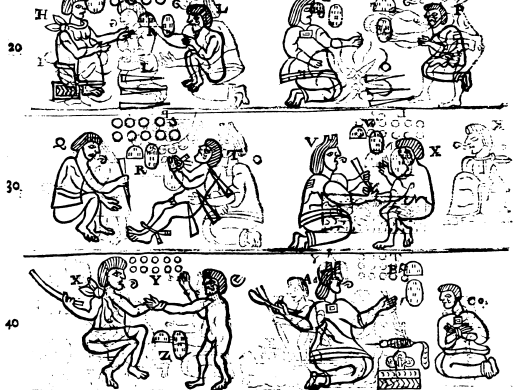
A The Father of the Boyes. B The seven spots of blew signifie seven yeeres. C F A Cake and a halfe. D A Boy of seven yeeres old, whose Father sheweth him how he should fish with the net he hath in his hand. E The mother of the children. G A Girls of seven yeeres old, whose mother is teaching her to spinne.

2 The

2 The second partition: Wherein is pictured, how the Parents did chasten their children of the age of eight yeeres, in laying before them with reproaches and leases the thornes of *Maguac*, that is being negligent and disobedient, so their Parents they should bee chastised with the said thornes, and to every teare they wept, they the pictures of this partition is figured. And their allowance was for meate, which they gave them by measure, was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.

3 The third partition, wherein is pictured, how the parents punished their children of nine yeeres of age, because they were disobedient and rebellious to their fathers, they did chastise them with the said thornes of *Maguac*, binding their naked hand and foot, they thrust the said thornes into their body and shoulders. And they pricked only the wrist and hands of the Girls with the said thornes, as in the said partition is pictured. And their allowance every meale was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.

4 The fourth partition, wherein is pictured, how the parents chastised their children of ten yeeres of age, because being rebellious they did chastise them in beating them with a cudgell, and threatening them otherwise, as in the fourth partition is pictured, and the allowance which they had giuen them at a meale, was a Cake and a halfe.



H The father of the children contained in this row. I These eight spots signifie eight yeeres. K N a cake and a halfe. L A Boy of eight yeeres old, whose father is threatening him that he do not disobey, because he will chastise him in thrusting thornes of *Maguac* into his body. M The mother of the children contained in this row. N O Thornes of *Maguac*. P A Girls of eight yeeres old, whom her mother doth chastise with her wrist thornes of *Maguac*, that she be not naughty. Q The father of the children contained in this row. R W A Cake and a halfe. S These nine spots signifie nine yeeres. T A Boy of nine yeeres old, because he is rebellious, his father thrusteth thornes of *Maguac* into his body. V The mother of the children contained in this row. X A Girls of nine yeeres old, that for her negligence and idleness, her mother did chastise her in pricking her hands with thornes of *Maguac*. Y These ten spots signifie ten yeeres. Z The father of the children contained in this row. A A Cake and a halfe. B The mother of the children contained in this row. C A Boy of ten yeeres old, whom his father is chastising with a cudgell staffe. D A Girls of ten yeeres, whom her mother is chastising in beating her with a cudgell staffe.

A Declaration of the first partition of the picture following. The Boy or Girl of eleven yeeres old, which would not bee reformed with wordes nor stripes, their parents did chastise, giuing them into the Nose the smoke of *Axi*, which was a grievous and cruel torment, to the intent they should be reformed and not be vicious perions and vagabonds, but should em, play and spend their time in profitable things. And to the children of that age they gave bread, which are cakes, by measure, only a cake & a halfe at a meale, because they should not be gluttonous.

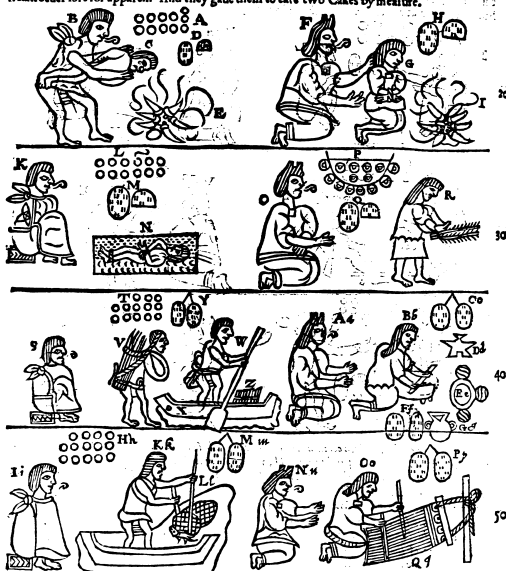
Yyyy 3

11

3. In the second partition; The Boy or Girl of the age of twelve years, which would receive quietly counsel nor correction at their Fathers hands; the Father took that Boy and tied him hand and foot naked, and stretched him on the ground in a dirty wet place, where he lay so a whole day, because he should be chastised and feared thereby. And the Girls of that age, his Mother made her serve, so that in the night before it were day they should sweep all the house and the street, and that always she might be occupied in bodily service. And so likewise their Parents gave them meat by measure a Cake and a half every meal.

3. In the third partition, the Boy or Girl of thirteen years old, their Fathers employed in bringing wood from the Mountains, and with a Canoe boat to bring bought and other herbs for the service of the house. And the Girls should grind and make Cakes and other meats for their Parents. And they gave their children meat by measure, two Cakes every meal.

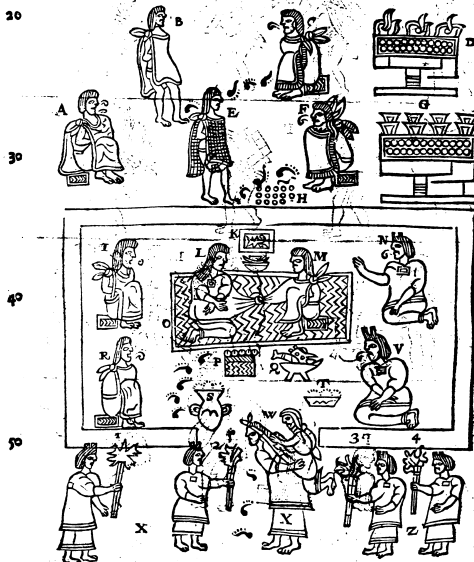
4. In the fourth partition; The Boy or Girl of fourteen years old, their Parents did employ in fishing in Lakes and Rivers with his Canoe. And the Girls was set to weave yams of whatsoever for apparel. And they gave them to eat two Cakes by measure.



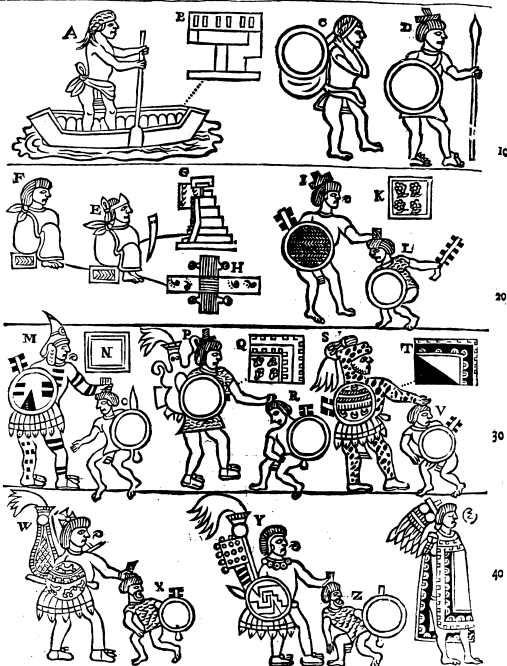
A. These eleven spots of blue signify eleven years. B. The father of the children. C. A Boy of eleven years old, whose father is chastising him, looking him at the heels with Axi dried. D. A cake and a half. E. A fume or smoke of Axi or Pepper, which the Currier hath not so well expell'd. F. The mother of the children. G. A Girl of eleven years old, whose mother is chastising her for touching her at the heels with Axi. H. A cake and a half. I. A perfume of Axi. K. The father of the children. L. Twelve years. M. A cake and a half. N. A boy of twelve years old, tied hand and foot and laid whole day on the wet and mud ground. O. The mother of the children. P. This picture signifies the night. Q. A cake and a half. R. A Girl of twelve years old that is sweeping in the night time. S. The father of the children. T. Thirteen years. U. A Girl of thirteen years old, carrying wood from the Mountains to her Canoe. V. A Canoe with burden of Y. Canoe Y. Y. Two cakes. A. A. The mother of the children. B. B. A Girl of thirteen years, which is grinding and making of Cakes, and drying meat. C. C. Two cakes. D. D. A Perenger. E. E. Comedy. F. F. Two cakes. G. G. A set of twisted meat. H. H. Thirteen years. I. I. The father of the children. K. K. L. L. A boy of fourteen years, which is fishing in his Canoe. M. M. Two cakes. N. N. The mother. O. O. A Girl of fourteen years weaving. P. P. Two cakes. Q. Q. The cloth that first weaves.

That which is pictured in the first partition, doth signify that the Father having two sonnes young men, of yeeres able to serve, brought them to the two houses that are pictured, either to the Masters house that did teach and instruct young men, or else to the Temple, according as the youths were inclined, and so committed them either to the high Priests, or else to the Master of Boyes to the end they might be taught; the youths being fifteen yeeres of age.

In the house of instruction is pictured; the manner and law they had and kept in their Marriage, that they made lawfully. The celebration thereof was, that an *Amatista* (which is a Broker) carried the Bride on her back at the beginning of the night, and there went with them four women with Torches of Pine-tree refined burning; where with they lighted her. And being come to the Bridegroom's house, the Parents of the Bridegroom came out to the Courtyard of the house to receive her, and they carried her into a Hall or time place where the Bridegroom tarried for her. And the betrothed folks were set on a Mat with their seats near a pan of fire, and they eyed the one to the other with a cord of their apparel; and made a perfume of *Copale* to their gods; and two old men and two old women were present as witnesses. Then the married folk dined, and afterwards the old folks. And when dinner was done, the old men and women separated the married folks by themselves, giving them good counsel how they should behave themselves and live, and how they should manage the charge and calling they had taken upon them, that they might live with quietness.



A. The father of the two youths. B. A youth of fifteen yeeres old committed to an high Altar or Priest. C. The house of instruction, which is an high Priest. D. A Temple or Altar, which they called *Calamaca*. E. A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father putteth him to the Master to be taught. F. The house of instruction. G. A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father putteth him to the Master to be taught. H. The house of instruction. I. An old man. K. The birth. Copale. L. The women. M. The man. N. An old woman. O. The perfume. P. The mat. Q. The mat. R. An old man. S. A Center or pot of justice. T. The Cup. U. An old woman. V. The bride. W. The bride. X. The bride. Y. The bride. Z. The bride.

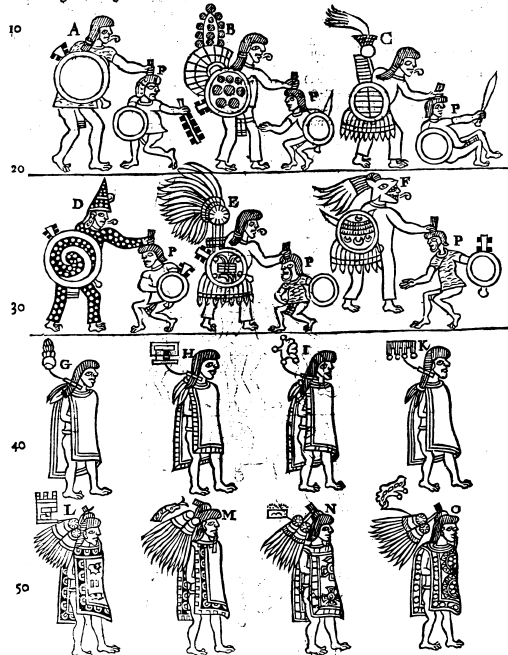


This Picture expresseth the Priests employments. A A novice Priest accepted in carrying of Bones in his Canoe, for the reuerence of the Temples. B The Temple called Ahuacahual. C A novice Priest that goeth to the warre with a chiefe Priest carrying in his pocket. D A chiefe Priest that goeth to the warre, for to receive and beholden the Warriors, and to see what Ceremony is in the Warre.

Their Armes, which signes of Armes were made of more authoritie from degree to degree, according as the worthinesse of the men of warre was knowne, and the number of the Captiues that they tooke. As is shewed sufficiently in the Pictures with their signes and Armes, and fashions of attire, and the degrees whereby they came to be valiant men in Warre. The first degree.

E Tecuhtli, Captaine and Iustice of the Lords of Mexico. F An Officer that followeth the Tecuhtli, as his Sergeant, G A Temple called Ahuacahual. H The high way or street with a bridge of wood. I A young man, who if hee tooke any Prisoner in the Warre, they gave him for reward a Mantle of the fustian, of the quadrangle with his followers, as a token of his valiant offe. K The abuse said Teztlit, in this Picture signifie, that he is occupied in preparing the streets and he degrees that go to the Temple. L A Captaine. M This valiant man all in red, because hee tooke two enemies, they rewarded him with the fustian of a Mantle, and more (N) the fustian Mantle of Orange colour with a red tinge, in token of his valiant offe. O A Captaine. P This valiant Champion with a reward of the fustian hee hath on, and the (Q) Mantle of red was for a token that hee tooke three enemies in the Warre. R A Prisoner. S This valiant Champion with the fustian hee hath on, and the fustian Mantle. T Of two colours (White and Orange) colour with a tinge, in token that hee had taken five enemies in the Warre. V A Captaine. W This valiant man with the fustian hee hath on, and hee fustian Mantle of fustian for his valiant offe, and because hee tooke five or six enemies in the Warre, the which valiant man was that in a short time, who had his beginning of any enemy hee tooke in the Warre, and is from degree to degree, hee hath come to this degree. X A Captaine. Y This valiant man called Quauhtli with the fustian hee hath on, in token that hee had taken five of the Warre of Guexo, besides that in other Warre hee tooke many of his enemies. Z A Captaine. A and this valiant man named Tlacatecatl, with the fustian of the apparel hee hath on, and hee fustian Mantle of fustian, do shew that hee had done all the valiant acts afore pictured and declared, and in fustian to have more rule of valiantnesse of person there are pictured.

The chiefe Priests did exercise warlike affairs, & according as they proved in valiant acts, and as the number of the Captiues were that they tooke, so the Lords of Mexico gave them titles of honour, and Blasons of Armes with devices of their valiantnesse, as is shewed by the Pictures, and by the Armes they haue on. In the third partition are the titles of honour, which they obtained by the exercise of war, whereby they came to a higher degree, the Lord of Mexico making them Captaines and Generals of the Soldiers. And those of the one side shew for Mefingers and Executioners of that which the Lords of Mexico determined and commanded, as in things touching the Common-wealth of Mexico, as also in other townes of their dominions.



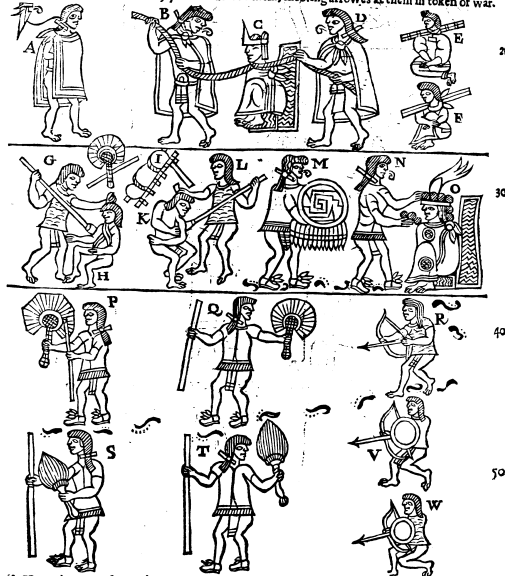
A A Priest that captured one enemy in the warre. B The same Priest afore said, because hee tooke two enemies in the warre, he is rewarded with the device of Armes hee hath on. C The first Priest, because through his valiantnesse hee tooke three enemies, he is rewarded with the device of Armes hee hath on. D The same Priest afore said, because hee tooke four enemies in the warre, for a token of his valiantnesse, he is rewarded with the device of Armes hee hath on, blacke and white. E The same Priest because hee tooke five of his enemies in the warre, for a token of his valiantnesse, he is rewarded with the device of Armes hee hath on, all of red. F The first Priest, because hee tooke six enemies in the warre, for a token of his force and valour, the Lord of Mexico rewarded him with the device of Armes hee hath on. It is a peacock yellow, feathers green, a target red, a green, yellow. G Quauhtli, an Officer which put Mexlits in execution. H A Captaine. I A Captaine. J A Captaine. K A Captaine. L A Captaine. M A Captaine. N A Captaine. O A Captaine. P A Captaine. Q A Captaine. R A Captaine. S A Captaine. T A Captaine.

Telle fauor on this time are valiant men in warre, and Captains of the Armies of the Mexicans and persons which executed the charge of Generals over the Mexicans Armes.

The *Cafique* (that is, a Lord of a Towne) because hee rebelled against the Lordship of *Mexico* by the Executioners afore containyd, had a rope cast about his necke wherewith for his rebellion, he was condemned by the Lords of *Mexico* to die, and his wife and children to be taken and brought prisoners to the Court of *Mexico*. And for the accomplishing of the condemnation the officers are executing the penalties wherein he was condemned, as is signified by the pictures.

2 He together with his servants and townes are condemned to be destroyed. And so the Executioners, by the commandment of the Lords of *Mexico*, are giving him to understand of the said condemnation, in token whereof they marke him with the signes that they put on his head, and the Target that they present him with, because he should not be ignorant of his destruction. And the pictures of men with mortall wounds, doe signifie that they were Merchants and Occupers of *Mexico*, which came with things to the Countrey and Towne of the said *Cafique*; and the servants of the *Cafique* assaulted them on the high-way, killing them and taking away the merchandise they carrie, which was the occasion of the destruction of the Towne.

3 In the third partition: The four Officers or Ambassadors of the Towne, doe signifie that they have warned the said *Cafique* containyd in the second partition before this, as is above laid, at the returning of the Executioners towards *Mexico*, there came out to the high-way certain servants of the said *Cafique* to misse-vse them, shooting arrowes at them in token of warre.



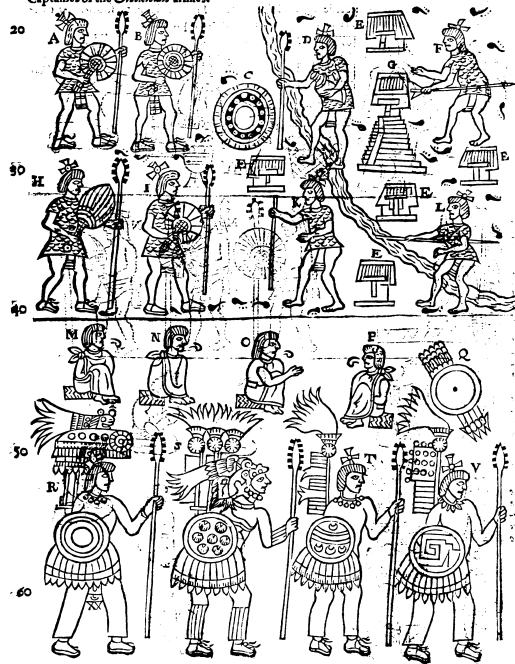
A Huacabustlan officer and executioner as a Sergeant. B Executioner. C *Cafique*. D Executioner. E The wife of the *Cafique* imprisoned with a yoke of Iron about her necke. F The same of the *Cafique* taken prisoner with a yoke of Iron. G The servant of the *Cafique*. H The merchant. I a bundle of merchandise. K The merchant. L The servant of the *Cafique*. M Executioner. N Executioner. O *Cafique*. P An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. Q An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. R a servant of the *Cafique*. S An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. T An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. V a servant of the *Cafique*. W a servant of the *Cafique* which boweth at the Ambassadors of the Lords of *Mexico*, for more occasion of warre.

The

1 The *Tequichna* signifieth Spies, sent to the Towne of the *Cafique* by the Lord of *Mexico*, that in the night time they might goe and walke secretly unknowne to their enemies, to aduertise and give warning vnto the Souldiers, where they should enter with the battaile. And so the *Tequichna* goe round about the Towne, Houses, Market place, and Church, at the time that they of the Towne are asleep and at rest, for to finde a place where they may give the onset with the lesse trouble and resistance.

2 A destruction of the pictures in the second partition. The *Mexicans* that is pictured and at his house, as a Target and Darts, doe signifie the *Mexicans* being moved to destroy a certaine Towne by warre, because they had rebelled against the Lordship of *Mexico*. And the other three that are pictured and set out against the *Mexicans* are servants of the *Cafique*, which doe signifie that the whole Towne of the *Cafique* being afraid of the warres and destruction that the *Mexicans* would bring upon them, they come to *Mexico* to entreat a peace, submitting themselves for servants of *Mexico*, and protesting to acknowledge the Lordship, by means whereof they receive them in friendship and for their servants, laying aside that which was determined by their counsell.

The four valiant men pictured and intitled, with their Speares in their hands, and made ready for the warres, and the devices of Armour that they have on, doe signifie that they are Captaines of the *Mexicans* armies.



A *Tequichna*. B *Tequichna*. C *Tequichna*. D *Tequichna*. E *Tequichna*. F *Tequichna*. G *Tequichna*. H *Tequichna*. I *Tequichna*. K *Tequichna*. L *Tequichna*. M *Tequichna*. N *Tequichna*. O *Tequichna*. P *Tequichna*. Q *Tequichna*. R *Tequichna*. S *Tequichna*. T *Tequichna*. U *Tequichna*. V *Tequichna*. W *Tequichna*. X *Tequichna*. Y *Tequichna*. Z *Tequichna*.

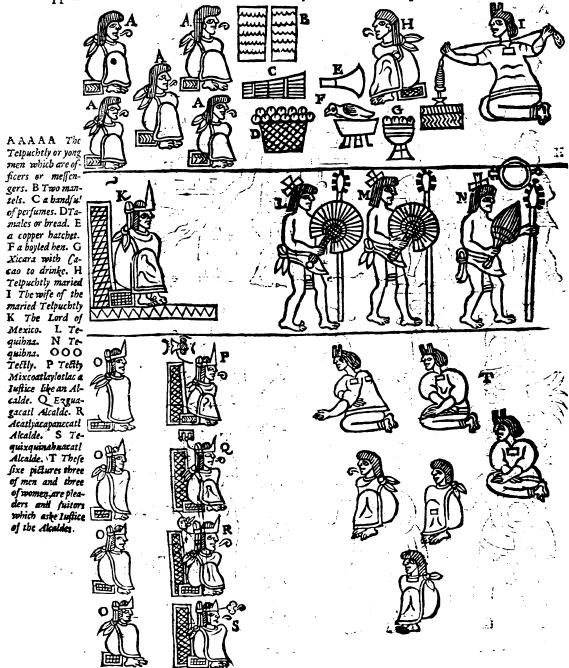
Zzzz

He

1 **H**ere that is set and at his backe a woman spinning, signifieth that it is his wife new married, and because he had taken the state of marriage upon him, having been a Messenger with the rest that are pictured before him, which are five, named *Telpuchty*, which are Messengers likewise. The married mangetteth them a reason why he leaveth the charge of a Messenger by reason of his marriage, and that hee will rest and leave off his service y^ell. And to please them more, and that they should grant his request, hee maketh them a banquet in giving them well to eate and drinke, and moreover the present that bee giueth them is a handfull of perfumes, a copper Hatchet and two Mantels, as by the pictures of these things are intitled. And by this solemnitie the married man is free from the said Office.

2 In the second partition: Hee that is set downe and intitled, doth signifie the Lord of *Mexico*, that when any Messenger *Telpuchty* pictured in the partition before this had given a good account of his office, and having taken upon them the state of marriage, the Lords of *Mexico* from that they were but Messengers, did promote them to a better title and degree, in so much that he made them *Tequima*, which is signified by the pictures and titles of *Tequima*, with their Spears and Fanes, giving them authority to bee his Ambassadors and Officers in the warres, which they hold for an office of great honour.

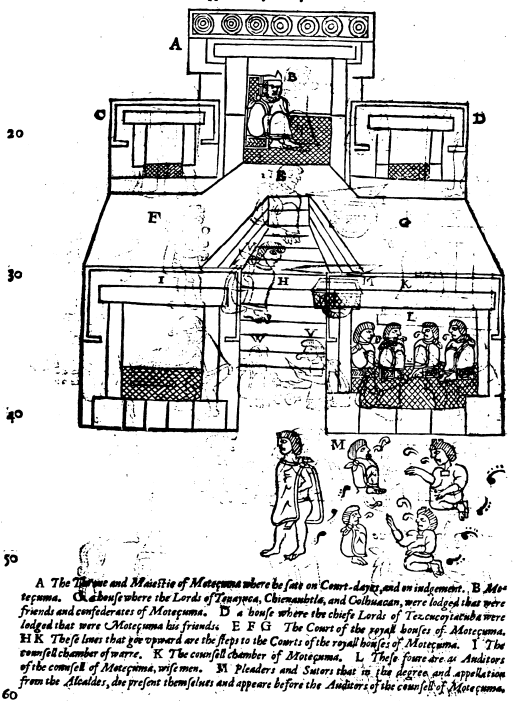
3 The *Alcaldes* doe signifie Justices, appointed by the Lords of *Mexico*, that they should heare matters as well Civill as Criminall. And the pictures of men and women which are before them, are Pleaders and Suitors which doe aske justice. And the four pictures that are intitled *Teoth*, that are behind the *Alcaldes*, are principally young men that joine with the *Alcaldes* in their audience, to learne and instruct themselves in matters of judgement, and afterwards to succede in the Offices of the *Alcaldes*. From these *Alcaldes*, there was an appellation before the councill Chamber of *Motepuma*, as hereafter is pictured.



AAAAA The *Telpuchty* or young men which are officers or messengers. B Two messengers. C A handfull of perfumes. D A copper hatchet. E A boyed hen. G A messenger with a case to drinke. H *Telpuchty* married. I The wife of the married *Telpuchty*. K The Lord of *Mexico*. L *Tequima*. N *Tequima*. O O *Teoth*. P *Teoth* *Mixcoatl* *Teoth* a Justice like an *Alcalde*. Q *Tequima* *Alcalde*. R *Tequima* *Alcalde*. S *Tequima* *Alcalde*. T These five pictures three of men and three of women, are pleaders and suitors which aske Justice of the *Alcaldes*.

The fashion of the Councill Chambers of the Lord or King of *Mexico*, and of his Royall Houses and Courts, and the steps where they entered in, and the Throne and State of *Motepuma*, and in the spaces of every thing is declared and intitled what they signifie, and in this declaration it is not repeated. But that in one Councill Chamber, when that by way of offence they were agrieved, and having a just cause not being sentenced and determined by the *Alcaldes*, then by degree of appellation they appealed from the *Alcaldes* before the Councill. And if it were a matter of importance they appealed from the Councill Chamber before *Motepuma* the King himselfe, where the matter was concluded.

In the Chamber, that is intitled, The Councill Chamber of warre, were provided Captaines and Armies for the warres, as was appointed by *Motepuma*.



A The Throne and Maistie of *Motepuma* where he sits on Court-Lords and on indigenous. B *Adotepuma*. C A house where the Lords of *Tenayuca*, *Chicomulco*, and *Colhuacan* were lodged that were friends and confederates of *Motepuma*. D A house where the chief Lords of *Texcoacatlan* were lodged that were friends of *Motepuma*. E, F, G The Court of the royal houses of *Motepuma*. H, K The steps that go upward are the steps to the Courts of the royal houses of *Motepuma*. I The councill chamber of warre. L The councill chamber of *Motepuma*. L These five are auditors of the councill of *Motepuma*, wife men. M Pleaders and Suitors that in this degree and appellation from the *Alcaldes*, do present themselves and appear before the Auditors of the councill of *Motepuma*.

The father and the sonne that sit against each other face to face, signifie that the father giueth his sonne good counsell, that he be not vicious, laying before him for example, that those which come to vertue come afterwards in credit with the Lords and *Casiques*; in that they give

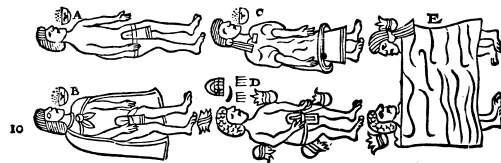
them honest offices, and doe vñe them to be their Messengers, and they doe admit Musicians and Singers vnto their feasts and weddings for the credit they beare.

2 The pictured in the house, where they meane to talke and prouide for publike affaires, and the Steward that sitteth therein, doth signifie that there are before him weeping, because it hath happened vnto them to be occupied in bodily labour, that the *Cow* and *Guinea* doe represent. And the Steward in giuing them good counsell, and exhorting them to flee idleness, is the cuill that they come to be Theues and players at the Ball, and players at *Patol*, after the manner of Dice, from which Games doe spring theft for to satisfie and fulfill such vices.

3 The Carpenter, Lapidare, Painter, Goldsmith, and garnisher of feathers, signifie that those Artificers teach their sonnes their occupation from their childhood, that when they are men they might follow their Trade, and spend their time in things of vertue, giuing them counsell that of idleness cometh euill vices, and fo euill tongues, tale-bearing, drunkenness, and theeuerie, and many other euill vices.



A A Messenger. B C D The father counsell his sonne to apply himselfe to all vertues. E One having a ghost, enterjageth a Musician. F G I A house where they meet for publike affaires. H The Petlicallit. K M Cow and Guinea. L N Tonibee. O A gambler. P A player at the ball. Q R Thief. S A player at *Patol* or Dice after their manner. T The Carpenters sonne. V A Lapidary. W The Lapidaries sonne. X A Painter. Y The Painters sonne. Z A Goldsmith. & The Goldsmiths sonne. Aa An illtongued man and tale-bearer. Bb An artificer that garnisheth with feathers. Cc The artificers sonne. Dd A drunkard. Ee A drunkard and thief, the last worke like a halter seemes to signifie the euill ends which such come to. The particular punishments follow in the next picture.



A These two Pictures signifie that the young men that were drunke with Wine, dyed for that according to the Law. B A young man that was drunke. C A young woman of free were drunke with Wine was killed here according to the Lawes of Mexico. D A Thief, they flayed him to death according to the Lawes of the Lords of Mexico. E These two Pictures layed and covered with clothes, doe shew that if any man had carnall dealing with a married woman, they flayed them both to death, according to the Lawes of the Lords of Mexico. F An old man of 50 threescore and tenne yeres, hath licence to drinke Wine and to bee drunke offwell publicly as privately because he is so old, and hath Sonnes and Nephewes, at which yeres Wine and drunkenness was not forbidden them. G An old woman, wife to the old man above pictured, had prouidence to bee drunke as well as her Husband, because free had children, and childrens children and to all those of the age, drunkenness was not forbidden them.

CHAP. VIII.

Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine by HERNAN-

DO CORTES.

a Gomara his third part of the Conquest of the West Indies, translated into English by T. Nicolson.



Erwando * Cortes was borne at Medellin in Andalusia, a Province of Spaine, Anno 1485. When he was nineteen yeeres old, he sayled to the land of Saint Domingo, where Ovando the Governour kindly enterprayed him. He went to the conquest of Cuba in the year 1511. as Clerke to the Treasurer, under the conduct of Lames Velasquez, who gave vnto him the Indians of Manicorao, where hee was the first that brought vp Kine, Sheepe and Mares, and had heads and flocks of them: and with his Indians he gathered great quantitie of Gold, so that in short time he was able to put in two thousand Castlins for his flocks, with Andre de Duera, a Merchant. At this time Christopher Morante had sent (Anno 1517.) Francis Hernandez de Cordoba, who first discouered Xucatan, whence he brought nothing (except the relation of the Country) but stripes: whereupon Lames Velasquez in the yeere 1518. sent his Kinsman Iohn de Grijalua, with two hundred Spaniards * in four ships: he traded in the Riuer of Tanasco, and for trifles returned much Gold, and curious workes of feathers, Idols of Gold, a whole iarnesse or furniture for an armed man of Gold thin beaten, Eagles, Lions, and other pourtraictures found in Gold, &c. But while Grijalua deferred his returne, Velasquez agreed with Cortes to be his partner in the Discouery, which he gladly accepted, and procured licence from the Gouverneur in Domingo, and prepared for the Voyag.

b Of this voyage. Read P. Martyr fourth Decade: and Gomara part 1. & of all which follows in this Chapter. P. Mart. Dec. 4. Gom. viii. lxxix. and Gou. lib. 1. c. 1. & of all which follows in this Chapter. P. Mart. Dec. 4. Gom. viii. lxxix. and Gou. lib. 1. c. 1. & of all which follows in this Chapter. P. Mart. Dec. 4. Gom. viii. lxxix. and Gou. lib. 1. c. 1.

Velasquez afterward vied all meanes to breake off, in so much that Cortes was forced to engage all his owne stocke, and credit, with his friends in the Expedition, and with five hundred and fifty Spaniards in eleven ships, set saile the tenth of February 1519. and arrived at the Island of Acosimili. The Inhabitants at first bid, but by the kind entertainment of some that were taken, they returned, and received him and his with all kind offices.

They told him of ceratayne beaust men in Yucatan, whence Cortes fencit: and one of them, Gerónimo de Aguilar came vnto him, who told him, that by shipwrecke at Iamaica, their Carrell being lost, twentie of them wandered in the Boat without sayle, water or bread, thirteene or fourteene dayes, in which space the violence of the current had cast them on shoare in a Province called Chelma, where, as they trauelled, seuen dyed with famine; and their Captayne Valdania and other foure were sacrificed to be Idols by the Cacike, or Lord of the Countrey, and eaten in a soleme Banquet, and he with fixe other were put into a Coope or Cage, to bee fatted for another Sacrifice. But breaking Prison, they elcaped to another Cacike, enemy to the former, where all che rest dyed, but himselfe, and Gonzalo Guerrero a Mariner. Hee had transformed himselfe into the Indian cut, boring his nose full of holes, his eares jagged, his face and hands painted; married a Wife, and became a Captaine of name amongst the Indians, and would not returne with this Aguilar.

Cortes with this new Interpreter passed vp the Riuer Tanasco, called of the former Discouerer, Grijalua; where the Towne that stood thereon, retuing to vidual him, was taken and sacked, the Indians herewith enraged, assembled an Armie of Horie thousand, but Cortes by his Horie and Ordnance pressed; the Indians thinking the Horie and Rider had bene but one creature, whole gaping and swiftnesse was terrible vnto them, whereupon they submitted themselves. When they heard the Hories say, they had thought the Horie could speake, and demanded what they said: the Spaniards answered, These Hories are fore attended with you, for fighting with them, and would haue you corrected: the simple Indians offered Roses and Hens to the beaust, desiring them to eat, and to pardon them.

Cortes purposed to discouey further Westward, because hee heard that there were Mines of Gold, having first received their Vassallage to the King his Master, to whom (he said) the Monarchie of the Vnueralls did appertayne. These were the first Vassalls the Emperour had in New Spaine. They named the towne, where these things were done, Oxtoria, before called Potomchen, containing nere five and twentie thousand houses, which are great, made of Lime, and Stone, and Bricke, and some of mud-wals and rafters, covered with straw: their dwelling is in the vpper part of the house, for the moystnesse of the soyle. They did eat mans flesh sacrificed.

Potomchen called Oxtoria.

The Spaniards sayled Westward, and came to Saint Iohn de Villana, where Teuacalli the Gouverneur of the Countrey, came to him with foure thousand Indians. Hee did his reuerence to the Captayne, burning Frankincense (after their custome) and little straws, touched in the blood of his owne bodie, and then presented vnto him vnuall and Jewels of Gold, and other curious workes of feathers; which Cortes requited with a Collar of Glasse, and other things of small value. A woman-flaue, giuen him at Potomchen, vnderstood their language, and shee with Aguilar, were his Interpreters. Cortes presented himselfe the seruant of a great Emperour, which had

sent him thither, whose power he so highly extolled, that Teuacalli marvelled, thinking there had bene no such Prince in the World, as his Master and Soueraigne, the King of Mexico, whose Vaill he was named, Mutezuma. To him he sent the representations of the bearded men, and their Hories, Apparell, Weapons, Ordnance, and other Rarities, painted in Cotton-clothes, their ships and numbers. These painted Cottons he sent by Poits, which deliuered them from one to another with such celeritie, that in a day and night the messag came to Mexico, which was two hundred and ten miles distant. Cortes had demanded, whether Mutezuma had Golus? Teuacalli affirmed, and Cortes replied, That he and his fellows had a disease of the heart, whereunto Gold was the best remedie.

Spanish incense, sicknesse.

Mutezuma sent him many Cotton-clothes of diuers colours, many tufts of Feathers, two Wheelles, the one of Siluer, with the figure of the Moone, and the other of Gold, made like the Sunne, which they hold for Gods, and giue vnto them the colours of the Metals molt like them. Each Wheelle was two yards and a halfe broad. These with other parts of the Present were esteemed worth twentie thousand Duckets. Mutezuma also professed ioy, to heare of so greata Prince, & so strange people, & promised prouision of all necessaries, but was very unwilling that Cortes should come to see him, as he pretended. Yet Cortes persisted in that his desire of seeing Mutezuma, that he might further acquaint himselfe with the knowledge of those parts.

The silly Indians hauing neuer seene such strange things, came daily to the Campe to see them and when they heard the Ordnance discharged, they fell downe flat, thinking the Heauens had with faile: the ships they thought were the God of the Ayre, called Quetzacoatl, which came to the Temples on their backs, for they daily looked for him. Amongst the rest, or rather aloofe off from the rest, were ceratayne Indians of differing habit, higher then the other, and had the grittles of their noses filis, hanging ouer their mouths, and Rings of Iet and Amber hanging thereat: their neither lips all bored, and in the holes, Rings of Gold and Turkie-stones, which weighed so much, that their lips hung ouer their chins, leaving their teeth bare. This yllnesse they accounted gallantry, and such vncouth deformitie to be the only brauery. And thou Gallant, that reasle and deridest this madnesse of Fashion, if thine eyes were not dazzled with lightnesse (light I cannot call it) of life-reflected Vanitie, mightest see as Monster-like fashions at home, and make thy more fashionly Monster of thy filthy thy clothes and outres, thy gestures and vestures, make thy more Deformitie worse then theirs: if there may bee bodily representation of that olde Serpent in celued some hellish Character (if there may bee bodily representation) of that olde Serpent in these new fashions, strutting who shall shap himselfe, nerrell to that misle-shapen yllnesse, wherein the Indian jugges himselfe out of humane lineaments, the other fawsgers himselfe further out of all Ciuill and Christian ornaments. But these Fashion-mongers have made mee almost out of my fashon, and to forget my selfe, in remembering their forgetfulness.

Not for fallow, om-mongers.

The Indians of this New-cut, Cortes caused to come to him, and learned that they were of Zempoalla, a Citie distant thence a dayes journey, whose their Lord had sent to see what Gods were come in those Teuacalli; that is Temples (so, it seemeth, they called the ships): which had no conueration with the other Indians, as being not subject to Mutezuma, but only as they were holden in by force. He gaue them certaine toys, and was glad to hear that the Indians of Zempoalla, and other Neighbouring were not well affected to Mutezuma, but ready, as farre as they durst, to enterpraye all occasions of warre with him. Hee sayled from thence to Panuco, and passed the Riuer further, till he came to a little Towne, in which was a Temple, with a little Towre, and a Chappell on the top ascended by twenty steps, where they found some Idols, many bloudy Papers, and much mans blood, of whose which had bene sacrificed, the blocke also whereon they cut open their Sacrifices, and the Razors made of flint, wherewith they opened their breasts, which strucke the Spaniards with some horreour and feare. They passed a little further, and there hauing taken possession, in the Emperours name, of the whole Countrey, they founded the Towne De la Nueva Cruz. Cortes resigning his authoritie, and Officers being elected, and lastly, all which generally consent appointing Cortes their Captaine.

Zempoalla.

Cortes went forward to Zempoalla, where hee was solemnely received and lodged in a great house of lime and stone, whitened with playster, that shined in the Sunne, as if it had bene Siluer; so did the Siluer-conceits of the Spaniards imagine, the desire of that Metall hauing made such an impression in their imagination, that they told Cortes before hee came at it, they had seene a house with wals of Siluer. Here, and at Chianatlan, Cortes incited them to rebel against Mutezuma, and to become seruants to the Spaniards, which they did and hee vnderstand to wrought, that Mutezuma tooke him for his friend.

Panuco.

All his intent was to fill in troubled waters, and to set them both by the eares, that hee might watch opportunitie to benefit himselfe. His owne people rebelled, some of whom hee chastised with the halter and the whip for example to the rest; and after caused all his ships to be sinke closely, that they should not minde any returne. He left 150 men for the guard of the new Towne, vnder Pedro de Henrico, and with 400 Spaniards, fifteen Hories and fixe Peeces of Artillery, and 1300 Indians, they went from Zempoalla, and came to Acosimili, the Lord wherof was Olimar the subiect of Mutezuma, who to tell his joy, and to honour Cortes, commanded fifty men to be sacrificed, whole blood they saw, new and fresh.

Panuco.

They

They carried the *Spaniards* on their shoulders, sitting on Beers, such as wherein they vie to carry dead men. He braged as much of the power of *Adenacoma*, as his *Spaniards* of their Emperor. He said he had thirty Vassals, each of which was able to bring into the field an hundred thousand men of Warre, and sacrificed 20000. men yearly to the gods : in this he somewhat exceeded ; the other was true, although some times, the Sacrifices also were thought to amount to 90000. This Towne was great, and had thirteene Temples, in each of which were many Idols of Itons, of diuers fashions, before whom they sacrificed Men, Dogs, Quails, & other things with great perfume, and incense, and burnt incense here. *Monacoma* had 1000. Soldiers in Garrison. *Cortes* passed from thence to *Ateuco* by the Frontiers of *Tascalucan*, where were enemies to *Adenacoma*, whom he might easily have overcome, but refused, partly for the exercise of his Subjects to the Warre, partly for the Sacrifices to his gods.

They joyed an hundred and fifty thousand men againſt *Cortes*, taking him for *Montezuma's* friend; and yet every day ſent him Gunney-cockes and Bread, partly to cſpize his ſtrength; and partly in a brauery, left their glory ſhould be obſcured in the conqueſt of men already ſlaved. But when in many ſkirmiſhes and fights they could not preuail againſt that handfull of *Spaniards*, they thought they were preferred from harme by incantments: and ſent him three preſents with this meſſage: That if he were that rigorous god which eateth man's fleſh, he ſhould eat thoſe five blaues which they brought him, and they would bring him more: if he were the meeke and gentle god, behold *Frankincenſe* and *Feathers*: if he were a mortal man, take here *Fowle*, *Bread*, and *Cheerres*. At laſt they made peace with him, and ſubmitted their City to him. This *City* *Maxallan* was ſo ſplendidly planted by a River ſide which iſſued into the South-Sea. It had four *Streets*, each of which had their Captaine in the time of *Warre*. The government was an *Ariſtocracy*, hating Monarchy no leſſe than tyranny. It had eight hundred Villages, and in them an hundred and fifty thouſand Houſholds, very poor, but good warriors. They had one Market-place ſo ſpacious, that thirty thouſand perfons in a day came thither to buy and ſell by exchange: for money they had none.

Moteczuma had sent before to *Cortes*, and promised tribute to the Emperor, whatsoever should be imposed; only he would not have him come to *Mexico*. And now, *first* again, that he should not trust that new friendship with the beggerly Nation of *Tlascalans*; and they again counselled him not to adventure himself to *Moteczuma*. *Cortes* held his determination for *Mexico*, and being accompanied with many of the *Tlascalteaux*, he went to *Cholula*, a little from whence *Moteczuma* had prepared an Army to intrap him in the way; but finding the treachery, it redounded upon the *Cholulans*, the lame day they had thought to have executed the deed upon him. Four hundred of them had been slain, and many of the *Tlascalans*, males, and as many females, three years old, to *Quetzalcoatl* their god, which was their chief deity, and they began their Wars. He out-going them in their own care of flattery, intrapped their Captains in Councils, and sent his Army to Spoile the City, where were lame thousands. There were twenty Gentlemen, and many Priests which ascended up to the high towers of their Temple, which had an hundred and twenty steps, where they were burned, together with their gods and Sanctuary.

This Citee had twenty thousand Houfhold within the Walls, and 40 many in the Suburbs. It 40
shewed outwardly very faire and full of Towers, for there were as many Temples as dayes in the
year, and every one had his House. The *Spaniards* counted four hundred Townes. It was the
seat of most deuotion in all *India*, whither they travelled from many places far distant in *Pila-*
grimage, there came the *Tourons* with their Cattle, and the *Indians* with their *Carriages* of wood
dred and twenty *steps* up to it. Their chief god was *Quetzalcoatl*, god of the Ayre, who was
(they say) founder of their Citee being a Virgin, of holy life and great penance. He instituted
fasting, and drawing of blood out of their eares and tongues, and left precepts of Sacrifice. He
neuer wear but one garment of Cotton, white, narrow, and long, and vpon that a Mantle, befeet
with certaine red cordes, They haue certaine green Iones which were his, and are kept for
great reliques: one of them like an *Apes head*. Eight leagues from *Cholula* is the hill of *Popo-* 50
tepec, or *Imoake* hill, which the *Earth* fenneth to haue created as a *Fort* to encounter and de-
faule the Ayre: now with smoky mists endeavouring to choake his purer breath, another while
with violent flames, and natural fire-works threatening to ioyne league with his elder and fir-
e furious brother to disinherit him: sometimes with flowers of ashes and embers, as it were, put-
ting out the eyes, and sometimes with terrible and dreadful thunders, rending the eares of that
Element, always with such variety of strange and new sights, as were fitt to inflame the
enemy. The *Indians* thought it a place of Purgatory, whither transgressors and wicked Offenders
were punished after their death, and after that purgation passed into glory. The *Spaniards* ad-
ventured to see it, but twosonly held on their journey, and had there beene confumed, had
they not by a *Rocke* bin shadowed from the violent eruption of the fire which then happened. 60
It chanced that the *Earth*, weary its fenneth of the war, as hauing spent her force and munici-
pality on a troubled people, was at length wearied in the year 1549. it brake forth into
more violent hostility then before, quaking and rending it with such violence and confusion,
wherreas the *Earth* had alwayes a *knowe* Garrison about her high tops and frontiers, to conle and
q.unch

Mans Greafe, of such as had bene slain in the Warres. For so the *Indians* vied, to take out the Greafe of their Sacrifices. *Cortes* had bene nine hundred *Spaniards*, of which fourecore and six were Horse-men, three cast peeces of Iron, fifteen small peeces of Brasse and a thousand weight of Powder, and 10000 *Indian* Souldiers on his side. He made a floure or trench aboue twelue foot broad, and two fathome deepe, halfe a league long, in which 40000. men wrought fifty dayes. He lancht his Vessels, and foone ouercame all the Canoes of the Lake, of which were reckoned in all foure thousand. The *Spaniards* brake the Conduits of sweet water, wherewith the City was wont to be suted.

Quahutimoc, now the new King of Mexico, receiving incouragement from the Deathlike O. racle, coulted to breake downe the Bridges, and to exercise whatsoeuer wit or strength could doe in defence of his Citie, sometimes conquering, sometimes (as is doubtfull chance of warre) con- quered. *Cortes* had in *Tecameco* obtained a new King, a Christian *Indian*, of the royall blood, who much assisted him in this sieg. The *Spaniards* being Lords of the Lake, and of the Caulesy, by helpe of their Gallies and Ordnance, they fired a great part of the City. One day the *Mexicans* had gotten some auantage, and thereupon celebrated a Feast of Victory. The Priests went vp into the Towers of *Tlatelcalco*, their chiefe Temple, and made there perfumes of sweet Gums, in token of victory, and sacrificed forty *Spaniards* (which they had taken captiues, opening their breists, and plucking out their hearts) sprinkling their blood in the Ayre; their fellowes looking on, and notable to reuenge it. They flew likewise many *Indians*, & foure *Spaniards* of *Aluarado's* company, whom they sawe in the open sight of the Army. The *Mexicans* danced, drantkethemselues drunke, made benefices, brucke vp their Drums, and made all solemne expressions of ioy. Dread, Disfaine, and all the Furies that Passion or Compassion could conture vp, had now filled the *Spaniards* hearts and their *Indian* partakers; and *Cortes*, that heebere had hoped to reuerse some part of the Citie, now did the worst that Rage and Reuenge could effect, helped no lesse with in with Famine and Pestilence, then with Sword and Fire without. At last *Mexico* is razed, the Earth and Water lining betwixt them what the Fire had left, and all which had sometime challenged a lofty inheritance in the Ayre. Their King also was taken; all that mightie State subuerbed. And as the *Mexicans* before had prophesied, That the *Tlacateacalli's* should gaine a hundred thousand houses, fairer and stronger then before. The Sieg lasted three Moneths, and had therein two hundred thousand *Indians*, nine hundred *Spaniards*, fourecore Horses, seuenteen peeces of Ordnance, thirtene Gallies, and five thousand Canoes. Fifte *Spaniards* were slaine, and six Horses: of the *Mexicans*, a hundred thousand, besides those which died of Hun- ger and Pestilence.

This was effected *Anno* 1521. on the thirteenth day of August, which for that cause is kept festiuall every year. For the Description of the Country wherein *Mexico* is situate. *Cortes* in his second Narration to the Emperour saith, it is enuironed with hills; (He telleth of those hills also in his journey, wherein diuers of his people died with cold) in the middlest is a plaine of 70. leagues compasse, and therein two Lakes which extend the circuit of 50. leagues; the one salt, which obbeeth and floweth (an argument for *Parricidius* his opinion, that saltnesse is a chiefe cause 40 of that vicissitude of ebbs and flowings, in the Ocean) the other fresh: When the water of the Salt Lake increaseth, it sunneth 1/2 a winters fire into the fresh Lake, which when it decreaseth, is repaired againe by the like issue of this into the former.

Nuemo di Conmado hath writteth his expeditioun into *Mexico* and other Countries of New Spain 1530. subduing and taking possession for the Emperour: He found some of them Sodomites, others Sacrificers of mens flesh, and some clofly practising this butcherie after they had professed themselues Christians: none of them which durst looke a Horse in the face; but were a- fraid that that Beast would eat them. The severall peoples by him reckoned, would here be re- dicious to name; which we may say of the like made by *Guday* and *Aluarado*. Of the Customs of the *Aurienne Mexicans*, one of *Cortes* his Gentlemen hath writteth a Treatise extant in *Re- 50* *compila*, wherein are described their Citie, Temples, Rites of Sacrifice, and the like; as after follo- weth our of him and others.

b. N. di. Gof.
ap. Ram. col. 1.

c. L. I. B. V.
tudo di Diego.
Guday ap. Ram.
vols. 1.
di Relat. del Te.
mple de la.

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkable observed by the Spaniards at their first coming: Cholollas bolies; Popocatepecs ashes. Mutezumans multiforme mag- nificence and maiestic. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis Lopez * de Gomara.

10



Hololla is a Citie as *Tlacateacalli*, and hath but one person who is Gouernour and generall Captaine, choiten by the content of all the Citizens. It is a Citie of twenty thousand houholds within the wals, and in the suburbs as much more. It is the weth outwards very beautiful, and full of Towers, for therewith many Temples as dayes in the year, and every Temple hath his Tower. Our men counted four hundred Towers. The men and women are of good disposition, well fauoured, and very wittie. The women are Goldsmiths and also Carvers, the men are war- riers, and light fellows, and good Maisters for any purpose: they goe better apparelled then a- ny other *Indians* yett seen. They wear for their vpper garment, clothes like vnto Moriscos, but 20 after another sort. All the Country round about them is fruitful and erable ground, well wa- tered, and so full of people, that there is no waite ground, in respect wherof, there are some poore which begge from doore to doore. The *Spaniards* had not seen any beggers in that Coun- try before they came thither.

Chololla is a Citie of most deuotion and religion in all *India*, it is called the Sanctuary, or ho- ly place among the *Indians*, and thither they trauelled from many places farre distant in Pilgrim- age, and for this cause there were so many Temples. Their Cathedral Temple was the best and highest of all the New Spain, with a hundred and twenty steps vp vnto it. The greatest I- doll of all their gods was called *Quezacualcoatl*, God of the Aire, who was (say they) the foun- der of their Citie, being a Virgin of holy life, and great penance. He instituted fasting, and 30 drawing of blood out of their eares and tongues, and left a precept, that they should sacrifice but onely Quiles, Doves, and other foule. He neuer wore but one garment of Cotton, which was white, narrow, and long, and vpon that a mantle beset with certaine red cooles. They haue cer- taine greene Stones which were his, and those they keepe for reliques. One of them is like an Apes head. Here they abode twenty dayes, and in this meane while there came so many to buy and sell, that it was a wonder to see. And one of the things that was to be seene in those faires, was the earthen vessell, which was exceeding curious and fine.

The hill called Popocatepec.

40 There is a hill eight leagues from *Chololla*, called *Popocatepec*, which is to say, a hill of smoake, many times it catcheth fire, and the *Indians* call it *Popocatepec*, and fire. *Cortes* first thither ten *Spaniards*, with many *Indians*, to carry their victuall, and to guide them in the way. The ascending vp was very troublesome, and full of craggy rocks. They approached to nigh the top, that they heard such a terrible noise which proceeded from thence, that they durst not goe vnto it, for the ground did tremble and shake, and great quantity of ashes which disturbed the way: but yett two of them who seemed to be most hardie, and desirous to see strange things, went vp to the top, be- cause they would not returne with a feeble answer, and that they might not be accounted cowards, leaving their fellows behinde them, proceeding for wards. The *Indians* said, what meane these men? for as yett neuer mortall man tooke such a journey in hand.

50 Thise two valiant fellows passed through the Deface of Ashes, and at length came vnder a great smoake very thicke, and standing there a while, the darkenesse vanished partly away, and then appeared the vulcan and concavity, which was about halfe a league in compasse, out of the which the ayre came abounding, with a great noise, very thrill, and whistling, in such sort that the whole hill did tremble. It was to be compared vnto an Ouen where Glasse is made. The smoake and heate was so great, that they could not abide it, and of force were constrained to returne by the way that they had ascended: but they were not gone farre, when the vulcan be- gan to lath out flames of fire, ashes, and imbers, yea and at the last, stones of burning fire: and if they had not chosen to take a Rocke, where vnder they haluowed themselves, undoubtedly they had there bene burned. When with good tokens they were returned where they left 60 their fellows, the other *Indians* killed their garments as an honour due vnto gods. They presen- ted vnto them such things as they had, and wondred much at their feat.

The simple *Indians* thought, that that place was an infernall place, where all such as goe to Purgatory ned not well, or viol tyrannie in their offices, were punished when they died, and also beleued, that after their purgation, they passed into glory. This Vulcan is like vnto the Vulcan of *Sicilia*.

* This part of Lopez was long since transla- ted and pub- lished by Tho. Nicols. I haue bene in diuers places and find it by the Ita- lian translation of *Agulino di Craziale*; for the Spanish ori- ginal haue not.

it is high and round, and neuer wanteth snow about it, and is seene afarre off in the night, it flasheth out flames of fire. There is neuer about this Hill many Cities, and *Huacacoma* is one of the neighest. In tenne yeeres past this strange hill of working did expell no vapour or smoke: but in the yeere 1540, it began againe to burne, and with the horrible noyse thereof, the Neighbourhood was seene, the like to their Predecessors had not bene fene. The ashes that proceeded from thence came to *Huacacoma*, *Quelacopan*, *Tepiacas*, *Quahguachicola*, *Chetella*, and *Tlacotalan*, which standeth ten leagues from thence, yea some say, it extended fiftene leagues distant, and burned their hearbes in their Gardens, their Fildes of Corne, Trees, and clothes that lay a drying.

He lete the way that the *Mexicans* had perswaded him to come, for it was both euill and dangerous, as the *Spaniards* which went to the Vulcan had fene, he went another plainer way, and neerer. He ascended vpon a Hill covered with snow, which was six miles of height, where the great cold: and from the top of that Hill, they discouered the Land of *Mexico*, and the great Lake, with his Villages round about, which is an exceeding goodly sight. But when *Cortes* saw that beautiful thing, his joy was without comparison.

There came twelve Lords from *Mexico*, among whom was *Cacamas*, Nephew to *Mutezuma*, who was Lord of *Tecozaco*, a young man of five and twentie yeeres of age, whom the *Indians* did much honour: he was carried vpon their shoulders, and when they set him downe, one went before with Broomes to sweepe the dust out of his way. In this order he came to *Iztacalapan*. Every two houres came messengers betwixt *Cortes* and *Mutezuma*: then came *Cacamas* Lord of that Towne, with the Lord *Cuicacama* his Kinsman to receive him, who presented vnto him sluaes, garments, and feathers, and to the value of foure thousand Duckets in Gold. *Mutezuma* receiued all the *Spaniards* into his owne house, which hath very faire Lodgings all of stone, and Carpenters worke, exceeding well wrought, with high and low roomes, with all kind of furniture: The chambers were langed with cloth of Corton very rich, after their manner. There were faire Gardens replenished with many sweet flowers, and sweet trees garnished with Networke, made of Canes, and covered with Roles and other fine hearbes, with fuddry ponds of sweet water. There was another Garden very beautiful of all sorts of fruits and hearbes, with a great pond walled with lime and stone, and was foure hundred paces square, made with faire steps to descend vnto the bottom: many places, and was tall of diuers kinde of fishes, and many kind of water Birds, which sometimes covered the pond, as Gulls, and *Mewes*, and such like. *Iztacalapan* is a Towne of 10000. households, and is planted in a Lake of Salt-water, the one halfe of the Towne built on the witer, and the other on the Land.

From *Iztacalapan* to *Mexico* is two leagues all vpon a faire Callicy, vpon which eight Horlemen may passe on ranke, and so directly straight as though it had bene made by line. And whosoever hath good eye-sight might discerne the gates of *Mexico* from thence. *Coyacan* is a Towne of fixe thousand dwellers, *Pixcotepec* is of five thousand. These Townes are planted in the Lake, and are adorned with many Temples, which haue many faire Townes, that doe besurround exceedingly the Lake. There is great contradiction of Salt, which is made there, and from thence is carried abroad to Faires and Markets, which thing was great rent to *Mutezuma*. Vpon this Callicy are many drawne Bridges built vpon faire arches, that the water passeth thorow.

Cortes passed this Callicy with 400. *Spaniards*, and 6000. *Indians* his friends: their passage was with much ado, by reason of the great multitude of *Indians*, which came to see him, and coming neere the Cite, there alioyed another Callicy with a broader passage, where standeth a strong Bulwarke of stone, of the height of two fathome with two Towers on each side, and two gates very strong. Here at this Fort came three thousand Countreies and Citizens to receive him, and every of them touched the ground with his right hand and kissed it, and passed forwards in the order as they came. Their salutations endured an houre and more. From the Bulwarke the Callicy lyeth directly, and before the entrance into the street there is another draw Bridge made of timber ten paces broad, vnder the which the water passeth too and fro: At this Bridge came *Mutezuma* to receive *Cortes* vnder a Canopie of greene feathers and gold, with much Auentury hanging thereat, which Canopie foure Noble-men did carrie. And the two Princes *Cuicacama* and *Cacamas* his Nephewes, did leade him by each arme: all three were rich apparelled and all of one fashion, except *Mutezuma*, which had a paire of shooes of gold beate with precious Stones, and the fides were tied to the upper part with Litchies, as is painted of the Antikes. His Gentlemen went by two and two, laying downe and taking vpon Mantles and Couersles vpon the ground, because his feet should not touch the same: then followed him as in Procession, 60 Noble men bare-footed, with garments of a richer Luty then the fift three thousand. *Mutezuma* came in the middle of the street, and the others came behind him as high the wall as they might, their faces towards the ground, for it was a great offence to looke him in the face. *Cortes* alighted from his Horse, and according to our vie went to embrace him, but the Princes who led him

The folemne pompe where with *Cortes* was receiued into *Mexico*.

Mutezuma his wife and Maiestie.

him by the armes, would not suffer him to come so nigh, for they held it for sinne to crouch him, but yet saluted each one the other.

Cortes put about *Mutezuma* his necke a collar of *Margarites*, Diamonds, and other stones all of glasse. *Mutezuma* receiued it thankfully, and went before with one of the Princes his Nephewes, and commanded the other to leade *Cortes* by the hand: next after him in the middle of the street: and proceeding forward in this order, then came the Gentlemen in the richest Luty to welcome him, one by one, touching the ground with their hands, and after returned to their standing. And if the Citizens had come as they requested, all that day would not haue lasted for salutations. The collar of glasse pleased well *Mutezuma*, and because he would not

take without giuing a better thing, as a great Prince, hee commanded to be brought two collers of red Prawnes, which are these much esteemed, and at every one of them hanged eight Shrimps of gold, of excellent workmanship, and of a finger length every one, he put these collers with his owne hands about *Cortes* his necke, the which was esteemed a most great fauour, yea and the *Indians* marvelled at it. At this time they were come to the street end, which was almost a mile long, broad, straight, and very faire, and full of houses on each side, in whose doores, windows and tops, was such a multitude of *Indians* to behold the strangers, that know not who wondred most, you men to see such a number of them, or if they to see our men, their Ordnance and Houses, a thing so strange vnto them. They were brought vnto a great Court or house of 2. dolls, which was the Lodging *Asuacata*, at the doore whereof, *Mutezuma* tooke *Cortes* by the hand, and brought him into a faire hall, and placed him vpon a rich Carpet, saying vnto him, Sir, now are you in your owne house, eat and take your rest and pleasure: for I will shortly come and visit you againe. Such (as you heare) was the receiving of *Hernando Cortes* by *Mutezuma* a most mightie King, into his great and famous Cite of *Mexico*, the eight day of November, 1519.

The house where the *Spaniards* were lodged was great and large, with many faire chimneys sufficient for them all: it was neate, cleane matted, and langed with Cloth of Corton, and Feathers of many colours, pleasant to behold. When *Mutezuma* was departed from *Cortes*, hee beguone to let his house in order and placed the Ordnance at his doore, and hauing All his things in good sort, he went to a sumptuous Dinner that was prepared for him. Assoone as *Mutezuma* had made an end of his Dinner, hearing that the Strangers were risen from the Table, and repoled a while, then came hee to *Cortes*, saluting him, and fate downe by him. He gaue vnto him diuers Jewels of Gold Plate, Feathers, and many Garments of Corton, both rich, well woven, and wrought of strange colours; a thing comely, that did manifest his greatness, and also confirme their imagination. This gift was deliuered honourably, and then beganne his talke as followeth: *Lords and Gentlemen, I doe much reioyce to haue in my house such valiant men as ye are, for to life you with courtesie, and intimate you with knowe, according to your desires and my estate. And where heretofore I desired that you should not come hither, the only cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gestures and grimme beards did terrifie them, yea, they reported that ye had such beasts as swallowed men, and that your coming was from Heaven, bringing with you Lightning, Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith you made the Earth to tremble and to shake, and that yee shew therewith whom yee pleased. But now I doe see and know that you are mortal men, and that ye are quiet and hurt no man: all I haue feared your Forces, which are but your Seruants, and your Gunnes like vnto shooting Trunkets. I doe not hold all for Gold and Lutes which haue bene reported of you, and I doe desire to see your mynre Kinsmen. My Father told me that hee had heard his Brethren say, of whom I doe discord, that they held opinion how they were not Naturall of this Land, but came hither by chance, in company of a mightie Lord, who after while that hee had abode here, they returned to their naturall soyle: After many yeeres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left behind them, but they would not goe with them, because they had bene imbrained, and had Wines and Children, and great government in the Land. Now these mightie Lords seeing that they were so fruitlesse, and would not returne with them, departed from them fore displeased, saying, that hee would send his Children that should build rail and gouernethem, in Lutes, Peace, and ancient Religion. And for this consideration, we haue alwayes suspected and believed, that such a people should come to rule and gouerne vs, and considering from whence you come, I doe thinke that you are they whom we looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for vs, who hath now sent you hither. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well assured, that we will obey you, if there bee no feyned or deceitful matter in your dealings, and will also diuide with you and yours all that we haue. And although thus which I haue said were not only for your vertue, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Tualco, Tecuacanco, and Chollolla, being so far, so ouercome so many.*

Now opene, if ye see in me that I am a God, and the walls and cofferes of my houses, and all my vessel of seruice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempallan, Tlacotalan, and Huacacoma haue named you, it is not so, and I vnder you see howe, that you give no credit to such Fables. You shall also note, that through your coming hither, many of my subiects haue rebelled, and are become my

enemies. And where heretofore I desired that you should not come hither, the only cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gestures and grimme beards did terrifie them, yea, they reported that ye had such beasts as swallowed men, and that your coming was from Heaven, bringing with you Lightning, Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith you made the Earth to tremble and to shake, and that ye shew therewith whom yee pleased. But now I doe see and know that you are mortal men, and that ye are quiet and hurt no man: all I haue feared your Forces, which are but your Seruants, and your Gunnes like vnto shooting Trunkets. I doe not hold all for Gold and Lutes which haue bene reported of you, and I doe desire to see your mynre Kinsmen. My Father told me that hee had heard his Brethren say, of whom I doe discord, that they held opinion how they were not Naturall of this Land, but came hither by chance, in company of a mightie Lord, who after while that hee had abode here, they returned to their naturall soyle: After many yeeres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left behind them, but they would not goe with them, because they had bene imbrained, and had Wines and Children, and great government in the Land. Now these mightie Lords seeing that they were so fruitlesse, and would not returne with them, departed from them fore displeased, saying, that hee would send his Children that should build rail and gouernethem, in Lutes, Peace, and ancient Religion. And for this consideration, we haue alwayes suspected and believed, that such a people should come to rule and gouerne vs, and considering from whence you come, I doe thinke that you are they whom we looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for vs, who hath now sent you hither. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well assured, that we will obey you, if there bee no feyned or deceitful matter in your dealings, and will also diuide with you and yours all that we haue. And although thus which I haue said were not only for your vertue, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Tualco, Tecuacanco, and Chollolla, being so far, so ouercome so many.

Now opene, if ye see in me that I am a God, and the walls and cofferes of my houses, and all my vessel of seruice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempallan, Tlacotalan, and Huacacoma haue named you, it is not so, and I vnder you see howe, that you give no credit to such Fables. You shall also note, that through your coming hither, many of my subiects haue rebelled, and are become my

enemies. And where heretofore I desired that you should not come hither, the only cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gestures and grimme beards did terrifie them, yea, they reported that ye had such beasts as swallowed men, and that your coming was from Heaven, bringing with you Lightning, Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith you made the Earth to tremble and to shake, and that ye shew therewith whom yee pleased. But now I doe see and know that you are mortal men, and that ye are quiet and hurt no man: all I haue feared your Forces, which are but your Seruants, and your Gunnes like vnto shooting Trunkets. I doe not hold all for Gold and Lutes which haue bene reported of you, and I doe desire to see your mynre Kinsmen. My Father told me that hee had heard his Brethren say, of whom I doe discord, that they held opinion how they were not Naturall of this Land, but came hither by chance, in company of a mightie Lord, who after while that hee had abode here, they returned to their naturall soyle: After many yeeres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left behind them, but they would not goe with them, because they had bene imbrained, and had Wines and Children, and great government in the Land. Now these mightie Lords seeing that they were so fruitlesse, and would not returne with them, departed from them fore displeased, saying, that hee would send his Children that should build rail and gouernethem, in Lutes, Peace, and ancient Religion. And for this consideration, we haue alwayes suspected and believed, that such a people should come to rule and gouerne vs, and considering from whence you come, I doe thinke that you are they whom we looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for vs, who hath now sent you hither. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well assured, that we will obey you, if there bee no feyned or deceitful matter in your dealings, and will also diuide with you and yours all that we haue. And although thus which I haue said were not only for your vertue, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Tualco, Tecuacanco, and Chollolla, being so far, so ouercome so many.

Now opene, if ye see in me that I am a God, and the walls and cofferes of my houses, and all my vessel of seruice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempallan, Tlacotalan, and Huacacoma haue named you, it is not so, and I vnder you see howe, that you give no credit to such Fables. You shall also note, that through your coming hither, many of my subiects haue rebelled, and are become my

enemies. And where heretofore I desired that you should not come hither, the only cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gestures and grimme beards did terrifie them, yea, they reported that ye had such beasts as swallowed men, and that your coming was from Heaven, bringing with you Lightning, Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith you made the Earth to tremble and to shake, and that ye shew therewith whom yee pleased. But now I doe see and know that you are mortal men, and that ye are quiet and hurt no man: all I haue feared your Forces, which are but your Seruants, and your Gunnes like vnto shooting Trunkets. I doe not hold all for Gold and Lutes which haue bene reported of you, and I doe desire to see your mynre Kinsmen. My Father told me that hee had heard his Brethren say, of whom I doe discord, that they held opinion how they were not Naturall of this Land, but came hither by chance, in company of a mightie Lord, who after while that hee had abode here, they returned to their naturall soyle: After many yeeres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left behind them, but they would not goe with them, because they had bene imbrained, and had Wines and Children, and great government in the Land. Now these mightie Lords seeing that they were so fruitlesse, and would not returne with them, departed from them fore displeased, saying, that hee would send his Children that should build rail and gouernethem, in Lutes, Peace, and ancient Religion. And for this consideration, we haue alwayes suspected and believed, that such a people should come to rule and gouerne vs, and considering from whence you come, I doe thinke that you are they whom we looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for vs, who hath now sent you hither. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well assured, that we will obey you, if there bee no feyned or deceitful matter in your dealings, and will also diuide with you and yours all that we haue. And although thus which I haue said were not only for your vertue, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Tualco, Tecuacanco, and Chollolla, being so far, so ouercome so many.

Now opene, if ye see in me that I am a God, and the walls and cofferes of my houses, and all my vessel of seruice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempallan, Tlacotalan, and Huacacoma haue named you, it is not so, and I vnder you see howe, that you give no credit to such Fables. You shall also note, that through your coming hither, many of my subiects haue rebelled, and are become my

enemies. And where heretofore I desired that you should not come hither, the only cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gestures and grimme beards did terrifie them, yea, they reported that ye had such beasts as swallowed men, and that your coming was from Heaven, bringing with you Lightning, Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith you made the Earth to tremble and to shake, and that ye shew therewith whom yee pleased. But now I doe see and know that you are mortal men, and that ye are quiet and hurt no man: all I haue feared your Forces, which are but your Seruants, and your Gunnes like vnto shooting Trunkets. I doe not hold all for Gold and Lutes which haue bene reported of you, and I doe desire to see your mynre Kinsmen. My Father told me that hee had heard his Brethren say, of whom I doe discord, that they held opinion how they were not Naturall of this Land, but came hither by chance, in company of a mightie Lord, who after while that hee had abode here, they returned to their naturall soyle: After many yeeres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left behind them, but they would not goe with them, because they had bene imbrained, and had Wines and Children, and great government in the Land. Now these mightie Lords seeing that they were so fruitlesse, and would not returne with them, departed from them fore displeased, saying, that hee would send his Children that should build rail and gouernethem, in Lutes, Peace, and ancient Religion. And for this consideration, we haue alwayes suspected and believed, that such a people should come to rule and gouerne vs, and considering from whence you come, I doe thinke that you are they whom we looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for vs, who hath now sent you hither. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well assured, that we will obey you, if there bee no feyned or deceitful matter in your dealings, and will also diuide with you and yours all that we haue. And although thus which I haue said were not only for your vertue, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Tualco, Tecuacanco, and Chollolla, being so far, so ouercome so many.

Now opene, if ye see in me that I am a God, and the walls and cofferes of my houses, and all my vessel of seruice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempallan, Tlacotalan, and Huacacoma haue named you, it is not so, and I vnder you see howe, that you give no credit to such Fables. You shall also note, that through your coming hither, many of my subiects haue rebelled, and are become my

Spaniards this gawdy glasse for gold and glory.

The Orator of *Mutezuma* to the *Spaniards*.

A strange

mostall enemies, but yet I purpose to break their wings. Come seele you my bodie, I am of flesh and bone, a mortal man as other are, and no God, although as a King I doe otherwise my selfe, of greater dignity and preeminence than others. My house is you also see, which are of timber and earth, and the principall of Majestie works, therefore you see the birds know and see what odorous fyers these Tables beere were. But truth it is, that Gold, Plate, Jewels, Armour, Jewels, and other riches, I have in the Treasury of my Forefathers a long time preferred, as the use of Kings is, all that which you and yours shall enjoy at all times. And now it may please you to take your selfe, for I know that you are weary of your journey. Cortes with joyfull countenance humbled himselfe, saying some teares full from Mutezumaz his eyes, saying unto him, upon the trust I have had in your clemencie, I unjustly to come both to see, and take with your Highnesse, and now I know that all are eyes which hath bene told me. The like your Highnesse hath bene reported of vs, assure your selfe, that the Emperour King of Spaine is your natural Lord, whom yett have expected, hee is the only beere from whence your Louage doth proceed, and as touching the offer of your Highnesse treasure, I do most heartily thank you.

A loving answer.

After all this communication, Mutezumaz demanded whether the bearded men which came with him; were either his vassals, or his slaves, because hee would entertrayne each one according to his estate. Cortes answered, that they were all his brethren, friends, and fellows, except some that were his servants.

Then he departed, and went home to his Palace, and there informed himselfe particularly who were Gentlemen, and who were not, and according thereto, sent every one particular gift or present. To the Gentlemen he sent his reward by his Comptroller, and to the Mariners and other Servitors, by a Page of his household.

Mutezumaz described.

Mutezumaz was a man of a small stature, and leane, his colour tawny as all the Indians are. Hee had long hair on his head, five little hairs upon him, as though they had bene put in with a Bodkin. His shinne beard was blacke, Hee was a man of a faire countenance, and a doer of Justice, well spoken, graue and wise, beloved and feared among his subjects. Mutezumaz had five signets.

Cin.

To the proper names of Kings and Lords, they doe adde this syllable *Cin*, which is for courtesy and dignity, as we vie Lord. The Turke vleit *Zulhan*. The Moore or Barbarian calleth his Lord *Mulay*, and to the Indians say *Mutezumaz*. His people had him in such reverence, that hee permitted none to sit in his sight, nor yet in his presence to wear shooes, nor looke him in the face, except very few Princes. Hee was glad of the conuention of the Spaniards, and would not suffer them to stand on foote, for the great estimation hee had of them, and if hee liked any of the Spaniards garments, hee would exchange his apparel for theirs. Hee changed his owne apparell foure times every day, and hee neuer clothed himselfe againe with the Garments which hee had once wore, but all such were kept in his Guardrobe, for to give in Presents to his Servants and Ambassadors, and vnto valiant Soldiers which had taken any enemy Prisoner, and that was esteemed a great reward, and a title of priuilege. The costly Mantles whereof had bene diuers sent to Cortes, were of the fine Guardrobe.

Change of Apparell.

His Wardrobe. His attendants.

Mutezumaz went alwayes very neate and fine in his attire. Hee bathed him in his Hot-bath foure times every day. Hee went fildome out of his Chamber, but when hee went to his meate. Hee ate alwayes alone, but seldennely, and with great abundance. His Table was Pillow, or else a couple of colourd Skins. His Chaire was a four-footed floode made of one piece, and hollow in the middle, well wrought and painted. His Table-clothes, Napkins, and Towels, were made of Cotton-wooll, very white and new, for hee was neuer senced but once with that Naperie. Foure hundred Pages brought in his meate, all fennes of great Lords, and placed it vpon a Table in his great Hall. The meate being brought in, then came Mutezumaz to behold the Dishes, and appointed those Dishes that liked him best, and Chafing dishes were prepared to keepe that meate warme, and seldennely would hee eat of any other Dish, except the Lord Steward or Comptroller should highly commend any other Dish.

Majesties attendances.

His wines.

Before hee sate downe, came twentieth of his Wines of the fairest and best esteemed, or else thole that senced weekly by turne, brought in the Baron and Ewe, with great humilitie. This done, hee sate him downe, and then came the Lord Steward, and drew a wooden Net before him, because none should come nigh his Table. And this Noble man alone placed the Dishes, and also took them away, for the Pages who brought in the meate, came not neere the Table, nor yet spake any worde, nor no man else.

Base-foules used.

Musicks.

While the Lord Mutezumaz was at his meate, except some Ieaster, they all senced him base-foules. There assisted alwayes somewhat a farr off, five ancient and Noblemen, vnto whom hee vied to give of the Dish that best liked him, who received the same at his hand with great reverence, and ate it incontinent, without looking in his face, which was the greatest humilitie that they could vie before him. Hee had musicks of Fiddle, Flute, and of a

Snails.

Snails-shell, and a Cauldron couered with a skine, and such other strange Instruments. They had very cuill voyces to sing. Alwayes at dinner time he had Dwarfs, crooke-backes, and other deformed counterfeits, all for maiestie and to laugh at, who had their meate in the Hall among the Iesters and Idiots, which were fed with part of the meate that came from Mutezumaz his Iesters. All the rest of the meate was given to three thousand of the guard, who attended ordinarily in the yard or Court, and therefore they say that there was brought for his Table three thousand dishes, and as many pots of wine, such as they vie, and that continually the Buttery and Pantery stood open, which was a wonder to see what was in them. The platters, dishes, and cups, were all of earth, whereof the King was fured but once, and so from meate to meate new. He had likewise his service of Gold and Plate very rich, but hee vied not to bee senced with it (they say) because hee would not bee senced twice therewith, the which hee thought a base thing.

Mans selfe.

Some asseme, that young children were faine and dressed in diuers kinde of dishes for Mutezumaz his table, but it was not so, onely of mans flesh sacrificed hee fed now and then. The table being taken vp, then came againe the Gentlewomen to bring water for his hands, with the like reverence as they vied at the first, and then went they to dinner with the other wines, so that then the Gentlemen and Pages waited at their counsil fell.

State ceremonies.

When his table was taken vp, and his Seruitors gone to meate, Mutezumaz sate still: then came in the Iesters that had any affaires to deale with him, bare-footed, for all the persons did vie that reverence, except some Princes his Kinsmen, as the Lords of *Tefenco*, and *Tlacopan* and a few others: and being cold weather, they vied to wear old ragged clothes vpon their rich garments. All Iesters vied to make three or foure courties, not looking toward his face, and speaking vnder his head downwards, and in that order retired backe againe. Mutezumaz answered his Iesters very gently, with low voyces, and in few words, and not to all Iesters, for others his Secretaries or Counsellors that stood by, answered for him, and lausing their answers, they returned backwards, not turning their talles to the Prince. After their businesse done, hee vied home recreation, hearing Iesters or Songs, wherein he delighted much, or else to looke vpon the Players, who play with their feet, as we doe with our hands. These haue a cudgell like vnto a Pailleur rowler, which they tolle high and low as it were a ball in the Ayre, strange to behold. They vie other Playes to passe the time, in such an order, that it seemed marvellous to the lookers on. Cortes brought into Spaine some of these Players. All they vie *Matachoca*, in which fort they doe play, that there stand each vpon other shoulders, and hee that standeth highest, sheweth many faces. Sometime Mutezumaz did behold the Players, who played at a game called *Tachalacatz*, which is much like our Tables, and they play with beames, squared like Dice, which they call *Pachols*, and throw them out of both their hands vpon a matre, or else vpon the ground, where are made certain strikes, vpon which they set downe the chance that it throwne: and at this game they play all that they haue, and many times they value their owne bodies, and play that into captiuitie, and to remoyne a slave, I meane, such as are common Gamblers of small estate.

Iesters and Players.

Games.

Sometimes Mutezumaz went to the Tennis Court. Their ball is called *Pilamandatz*, and is made of the gumme which cometh from a tree called *U.B.* This tree groweth in a hot Country. The gumme being kneaded together, and so made round, is as blacke as pitch, and somewhat heauie, and very hard for the hand, but yet good and light to rebound, and better than the wind-balls. They play not at Chafes, but at Bandy, or at Chafes, that is, if the ball touch the wall it lootheth. They may strike the ball with any part of their body, but there it alwayes a penaltie if they only strike not with the buttocke or side, which is the finest play: whereof they vie a skinn vpon each buttocke. They play so many to so many for a packe of Mantles, or according to the abilitie of the Players. All they play for gold and feathers, and sometime for their owne bodies, as they vie at *Pachols*, which is there permitted and lawful. The Tennis Court is called *Tlachco*, and is a Hall long and narrow, but wider upwards, then downwards, and higher on the sides then at the ends, which is an industry for their play. The houses alwayes white and smooth in the walls they haue certain stones like vnto Millstones, with a little hole in the middle that passeth through the stone, the hole is so small, that scarcely the ball may passe through, but hee that chanceth to strike the ball into the hole, which seldennely happeneth, winneth the game, and by an ancient Law and custome among Tennis Players, he ought to haue the Cloakes of all thole that stand and behold the play, on that side that the ball went in, and in some Tennis Courts, the halfe of the garments of them that stand looking on. The Winner is then bound to make certaine Sacrifice to the God of the Tennis play, and to the stone where the ball ended. The beholders of the play would say, that such a Winner should be a Thiefe and

The Tennis play in Mexico.

an Adulterer, or else that hee should die quickly. They vied in the Temple of the Tennis play, two Images of the God of the Ball, which stood vpon the two lower walls. The Sacrifice was celebrat at mid-night, with many Ceremonies and Witch-crafts, and Songs for that purpose. Then came a Priest from the Cathedral Church, with other Religious persons to beseech the Sacrifice, saying certain deathly Prayers, and throw-

God of the Ball.

Aaaaaa

The Court and
Guard of *Mutezumaz*.

men, and each of them three or four servants, and some had twenty servants or more, according to his estate; and in this manner he had three thousand men attendant in his Court, and some six more, all the which were fed in his house of the meate that came from his table. The serving men always abode below in the Court all the day, and went not from thence till after Supper.

Great Vassals.

It is to be thought that his Guard was the greater, because the strangers were there, although in effect of truth it is most certain, that all the Lords that are vnder the *Mexical* Emperour (as they say) are thirtie persons of high estate, who are able to make each of them a hundred thousand men. There are three thousand Lords of Townes, who have many vassals. These Noblemen did abide in *Mexico* certaine times of the yeare, in the Court of *Mutezumaz*, and could

State-caution.

not depart from thence without especial licence of the Emperour, leauing each of them a faine or brother behinde them for security of rebellion, and for this cause they had generally houses in the Citie: Each and a great was the Court of *Mutezumaz*.

Tributes and

subiection of
the Indians to
their Kings.

There is not in all the Dominions of *Mutezumaz* any subiect that payeth not tribute vnto him. The Noblemen pay their tribute in perforall seruice. The Husbandmen called *Maceualtin*, with body and goods. In this sort they are either Tenants, or else haue to their possession, Those which are *serres*, doe pay one third part of all their fruite and commoditie that they doe reape or bring vp, as Dugges, Hennes, Foules, Conies, Gold, Silver, Stones, Salt, Waxe, Hone, Mantels, Feathers, Cotton, and a certaine fruite called *Cacao*, that serueth for money, and also to eat. Also all kinde of Graue, and Garden Herbes, and frutes, whereof they doe maintaine themselves.

Poverty of the

Tenants.

The Tenants doe pay monthly, or yearly, as they can agree, and because their tribute is great, they are called *diues*, for when they may haue licence to eate *figges*, they thinke it a great fauour. It was reported that they were taxed what they should eate, and all the residue was taken from them. They went verie poorly clothed, yea and the most of their treasure was an earthen Pot, wherein they boyled their Herbes, a couple of Millstones to grind their Come, and a Mat to lye vpon. They did not onely paie this Rent, and Tribute, but also serued with their bodies at all times when the great King should command. They were in such great subiection to their Prince, that they durst not speake one word although their daughters should be taken from them to be sold at pleasure. All the aforesaid rents they brought to *Mexico* vpon their backs, and in Boates, I meane so much as was necessary for the provision of the House and Court of *Mutezumaz*, all the rest was spent among Souldiers, and barded for Gold, Plate, Precious stones, and other rich Jewells, esteemed of Princes, all the which was brought to the Treasury. In *Mexico* was larger and great Barnes and Houses to receive and keepe the Come for provision of the Citie, with Officers, and vnderofficers, who did receive the same, and kept account thereof in Bookes of painted figures.

See compendious

bookes.

Receivers.

And in every Towne was a Receiver, who bare in his hand a rod or a staffe of Beethers, and those gaue vp their accounts in *Mexico*. If any such had bene taken with deceit and falshood, death was his reward, yea and his kinned punished with penalties, as of a linage of a traitour to his Prince. The Husbandmen, if they paid not well their Tribute, were apprehended for the same, and if they were found to be poore through sicknesse and infirmities, then they were borne withall, but if they were found to be lazie and slothfull, they should be vied accordingly: but in conclusion, if they paid it not at a day appointed, then they should be sold for slaves to pay their debt, or else be sacrificed.

Tribute of

menialours.

There were many other Provinces, which paid a certaine portion, and acknowledged seruice, but this Tribute was more of honour then profit. In this sort *Mutezumaz* had more then sufficient to provide his house and wars, and to heape vp great store in his Treasury. Moreover, he spent nothing in the building of his houses, for of long time he had certaine Townes that paid no other Tribute, but only to work and repaire continually his Houses at their owne proper cost, and paid all kinde of workmen carrying vpon their backs, or drawing in sleds, Stone, Lime, Timber, Water, and all other necessities for the worke. Likewise they were bound to provide all the firewood that should be spent in the Court, which was a great thing, and did amount to two hundred and thirty weight a day, which was five hundred mens burdens, and some dayes in the winter much more. And for the Kings Chimneys they brought the barks of Oake trees, which was best esteemed for the light thereof, for they were great Sorcerers. *Mutezumaz* had one hundred Cities with their Provinces, of whom he receiued Rents, Tributes, and Vassalage, where he maintained Garrison of Souldiers, and had Treasurers in each of them.

His dominion did extend from the North fea to the South fea, and six hundred miles in longitude within the maine Land, although in very deece there were some Townes, as *Tlaxcala*, *Amecameacan*, *Panuco*, and *Tenotitlan*, which were his enemies, and paid him neither Tribute nor seruice: but yet the Ransome was much, when any of them was taken. Also there were other Kings and Noblemen, as of *Texcoco*, and *Tlacopan*, which were not in subiection vnto

to him, but onely in homage and obedience, for they were of his owne linage, vnto whom *Mutezumaz* married his Daughters.

Description of Mexico as it flourished in those times.

Mexico at the time when Cortes entered, was a Citie of fixtie thousand houses. The Kings house, and o her Noblemens houses were great, large, and beautiful, the other were small and meane, without either doores or windowes: and although they were small, yet there dwelt in some of them, two, three, yea and ten persons by reason whereof, the Citie was wonderfully replenished with people.

This Citie is built vpon the water, even in the same order as *Venice* is: All the body of the Citie standeth in a great large Lake of water. There are three fores of freetes very broad and faire, the one fort are onely water, with many Bridges: another fort of onely earth: and the third of earth and water: that is to say, the one haue earth to walke vpon, and the other haue for Boates to bring provision of all sorts. These freetes are kept alwayes cleane, and the most part of the houses haue two doores, the one towards the Cawley, and the other towards the water, at the which they take Boate to goe where they list. And although this Citie is founded vpon water, yet the same water is not good to drinke, whereof there is brought by conduit water from a place called *Capotepec*, three miles distant from the Citie, which springeth out of a little hill, at the foote whereof standeth two Statues or coered Images wrought in stone, with their Targets and Lances, the one is of *Mutezumaz*, and the other of *Axatoca* his Father. The water is brought from thence in two Pipes or Canals in great quantity, and when the one is foule, then all the water is conueied into the other, till the first be made cleane. From this Fontaine all the whole Citie is prouided, so that they goe filling the same water from freete to freete in little Boates, and doe pay a certaine tribute for the same.

This Citie is diuided into two freetes, the one was called *Tlacotal*, that is to say, a little land, and the other *Mexico*, where *Mutezumaz* his dwelling and Court was, and is to be interpreted a Spring. This freete is the fairest and most principall, and because of the Kings Palace there, the Citie was named *Mexico*, although the old and first name of the Citie was *Tenochtitlan*, which doth signifie *Frame out of stone*, for the name is compounded of *Ten*, which is, Stone, and *Nuchdi*, which is a Frute in *Cuba* and *Thysia* called *Timas*, the Tree (or to speake properly, the Thistle) that beareth this frute, is named *Nopal*, and is nothing almost but leaves of a foot broad and round, and three inches thicke, some more, and some lesse, according to the growth, full of thornes which are venomous: the leafe is Greene, and the thorne or pricke russet. After that is planted, it increaseth, growing leafe vnto leafe, and the foote thereof cometh to be as the body of a tree, and one leafe doth onely produce another at the point, but at the sides of the same leaves proceede other leaves. In some Provinces where water is scant, they vse to drinke the iuice of these leaves. The frute thereof called *Nuchdi*, is like vnto Figges, and euen sooth his little kernels or graines within, but they are somewhat larger, and crowned like vnto a Medler. There are of them of sundry colours, some are Greene without, and Caraticlike within, which haue a good taste. Others are yellow, and others white, and some speckled: the best fore are the white: it is a frute that will last long. Some of them haue the taste of Peares, and other some of Grapes: it is a cold and a fresh frute, and best esteemed in the heate of Summer. The Spaniards doe more esteeme them then the Indians. The more the ground is laboured where they grow, the frute is so much the better. There is yet another kinde of this frute red, and that is notching esteemed, although his taste is not cuell, but because it doth colour and dye the exerts mouth, lippes, and apparel, yea, and maketh his vrine looke like pure blood. Many Spaniards at this first coming into *India*, and eating this frute, were in a mazz, and at their wits end, thinking that all the blood in their bodies came out in vrine: yea and many Phisitians at their first coming were of the same belief: for it hath happened, when they haue bin sent for vnto such as haue eaten this frute, they not knowing the cause, and beholding the vrine, by and by they ministred medicine to flanch the blood: a thing ridiculous, to see the Phisitians so deceived. Of this frute *Nuchdi* and *Ten*, which is a Stone, is compounded *Tenochtitlan*. When this City was begun to be founded, it was placed nere vnto a great Stone that stood in the midst of the Lake, at the foote whereof grew one of the *Nopal* trees, and therefore *Mexico* glush for armes and denise the foot of a *Nopal* tree springing from a Stone, according to the Citie name.

Mexico is as much to say, as a Spring or Fontaine, according to the property of the vowell and speech. Others doe affirme, that *Mexico* hath his name of a more ancient time, whole first Founders were called *Mexiti*, for vnto this day the *Indian* dwellers in one freete of this Citie are called *Mexiti*. The *Mexiti* tooke name of their principall Idol called *Mexitli*, who was in as great veneration as *Pitalcopuchtli* god of the warre. *Mexico* is enuironed with sweet water, and hath three wayes to come vnto it by cawley, the one is from the West, and that cawley is a mile and a halfe long. Another from the North, and containeth three miles in length. Eastward

Three fores of
Streets.

It groweth al-
to in *Artemida*

The name of
Mexico.

vnto whom it represented very Hell, with that vgly face and monstrous teeth,

Temple-hall.

Idoll-holes.

Bloweth wll.

Deuillish

Piaitie.

1000. refi-

dent.

The Idolls of

Off. xix.

1000. gods.

A wicked at-

tye.

A mad off-

ting.

The Charnell

hous, the place

of the dead

men's skulls.

The Charnell

hous, the place

of the dead

men's skulls.

The Charnell

hous, the place

of the dead

men's skulls.

The Charnell

hous, the place

of the dead

men's skulls.

The Charnell

hous, the place

of the dead

men's skulls.

They had other darke houles full of Idols, great and small, wrought of sundrie metals, they are all bathed and washed with blood, and doe shew very blacke through their daily pinching and anointing them with the same, when any man is sacrificed: yea, and the walls are all in such like with blood, and the ground is a foot thick of blood, so that there is a deuillish stink. The Priests or Ministers goe daily into those Oratories, and suffer none others but great perfonages to enter in. Yea, and when any such goeth in, they are bound to offer some man to be sacrificed, that stouthe Idollie Hangmen and Ministers of the Deuill may wash their hands in blood of those so sacrificed, and to pinke their houle therewith.

For their seruice in the Kitchen they haue a Pond of water that is filled once a yeere, which is brought by conduit from the principall Fontaine. All the residue of the forsaide circuit serueth for places to breede fowle, with Gardens of herbs and sweet trees, with Roses and flowres for the Altars. Such, so great and strange was this Temple of Mexico, for the seruice of the Deuill who had deceiued those simple Indians. There doth reside in the same Temple continually five thousand persons, and all they are lodged and haue their liuing there, for that Temple is maruelous rich, and hath diuers Townes only for their maintenance and reparation, and are bound to sustaine the same wayes on foot. They doe sowe Corne, and maintaine all those five thousand persons with bread, fruit, flesh, fish, and fire-wood, as for such they neede, for they spend more fire-wood than is spent in the Kings Court: these perfonages doe liue at their hearts ease, as seruants and vassals vnto the Gods.

The Gods of Mexico were two thousand in number, as the Indians reported, the chiefest were *Vitzilicuechtli*, and *Tescalcipueca*, whose Images stood highest in the Temple vpon the Altars: they were made of stone in full proportion as bigge as a Giant. They were covered with a lawne, called *Nacar*. These Images were beset with pearles, precious stones, and pieces of gold, wrought like birds, beastes, fishes, and flowres, adorned with Emeralds, Turques, Calcedons, and other little fine stones, so that when the lawne *Nacar* was taken away, the Images seemed very beautiful to behold. The Image had for a girdle great Snakes of gold, and for Collars and Chains about their necks, ten heards of men made of gold, and each of those Idols had a counterfait viard with eyes of glasse, and in their necks death painted: each of these things had their considerations and meanings. These two Gods were brethren, for *Tescalcipueca* was the God of Providence, and *Vitzilicuechtli* God of the Warres, who was worshipped and feared more than all the rest.

There was another God, who had a great Image placed vpon the top of the Chappell of Idols, and he was esteemed for a speciall and singular God about all the rest. This God was made of all kinde of feedes that groweth in that Country, and being ground, they made a certaine paste, tempered with Childrens blood, and Virgins sacrificed, who were opened with their Ralors in the breasts, and their hearts taken out, to offer as first fruits vnto the Idoll. The Priests and Ministers doe consecrate this Idoll with great pompe and many ceremonies. All the *Commoners* and *Citizens* present at the consecration, with great triumph and incredible deuotion. After the consecration, many deuot persons came and flicked in the downe Image precious stones, wedges of gold, and other jewels. After all this pompe ended, no secular man may touch that holy Image, no nor yet come into his Chappell, say carly religious persons, except they were *Tenecacalli*, who are Priests of order. They doe renew this Image many times with new downe, taking away the old, but then blessed is he that can get one piece of the old ragge for reliques, and chiefly for Soldiours, who thought themselves sure therewith in the warres. Also at the consecration of this Idoll, a certaine vessell of water was blessed with many wordes and ceremonies, and that water was presented very religiously at the foot of the Altar, for to consecrate the King when he should be crowned, and also to bless any Captaine generall, when he should be elected for the warres, with asoly going him a draught of that water.

Without the Temple, and ouer against the principall doore thereof, a founes call distant, standeth the Charnell house only of dead mens heads, prisoners in warres, and sacrificed with the knife. This monument was made like vnto a Theater, more larger then broad, wrought of lime and stone, with ascending steps, in the walls whereof was gratted betwixt froune and froune a Scull, with the teeth outward. At the foot and head of this Theater, were two Towers, made only of lime and skulls, the teeth outward, and this wall hauing no other stiffe, seemed a strange sight. At and vpon the top of the Theater, were seuerall Poles, standing the one from the other some in due foot distant, and each of them was full of flauers, from the foot to the top. Each of these flauers had others made fast vnto them, so that euery of them had full flouers brocht in out of the Temple. *Admirer* of *Tapia* did certaine me, that he and *Gonzalo* de *Fuigila* did rec-

kon them in one day, and found a hundred thirtye and fixe thousand skulls on the poles, flauers, and steps. The other Towers were replenished out of number, a most cruell custom, being one by men heads (sine in sacrifice, although it hath a shew of humanitie for the remembrance thereof placed of death. There are also men appointed, that when one skull falleth, to let vs another in his place, so that the number may neuer want.

Other Mexican Antiquities, Letters, Numbers, Yeeres, Dayes, Weekes, &c.

Here hath not bene found Letters at any time in the West India, only in new Spaine were used Letters, Express which found for letters, with the which they kept in numbers and professed their Antiquities. The figures that the Mex. cans used for letters are great, by reason wherof they occupy great Volumes: they engrave them in stone or timber, and paint them vpon walls, and also vpon a paper made of cotton wool, and leaves of the tree Metl. Their bookes are great and folded up like vnto our broad cloathes, and written vpon both sides. There are some bookes rolled up like a piece of flannel. They pronounce not v, g, t, f, y, therefore they use much p, c, l, x. This is the Mexican speech and Nahuall, which is the best, playnest, and the most eloquent, in all new Spaine. There are some in Mexico that doe understand each other by whistling, which is ordinarily used among Louers, and Tencers, a speech truly to wonder at, and none of our men could come to the knowledge thereof.

Their reckoning by numbers was in this fort.

Ce,	One,	Chicane,	Six,	Matlatlilote,	Eleuen,	Matlatlilote,	Sixteen,
Oce,	Two,	Chicome,	Seven,	Matlatlilome,	Twelue,	Matlatlilome,	Seuente,
Ex,	Three,	Chicnes,	Eight,	Matlatlilome,	Thirteenth,	Matlatlilome,	Eighteen,
Nau,	Four,	Chiconau,	Nine,	Matlatlilome,	Fourteenth,	Matlatlilome,	Nineteen,
Matlatl,	Five,	Matlatl,	Ten,	Matlatlilome,	Fifteenth,	Matlatlilome,	Twentieth.

Every number is simple vntill you come to fixe, and then they count, fixe and one, fixe and two, fixe and three. Ten is a number by himselfe, then you must count ten and one, ten and two, ten and three, ten and foure, ten and five. Then you count, ten, fixe, and one; ten, fixe, and two; ten, fixe, and three. Twentie garth by himselfe, and all the greater numbers.

The Mexican yeere is three hundred and fixe days, for they haue in their yeere eighteenth months, and every month containeth twentie dayes. They haue other fixe odder dayes, which garth by themselves, in the which they used to celebrate great feasts of cruell and bloody sacrifices, with much deuotion. And reckoning after this sort they could not choose but erre, for they could not haue equall the punctual course of the Sunne. Yea the Christiān yeere is not perfect, although wee haue learned Affronomers. But yet these simple Indians went were the mark.

The names of the monthes. *Tlacaxipalatl*, *Tozozatl*, *Huiz Tozozatl*, *Toxcatl*, *Ecalcoatl*, *Iztl*, *Tecuilicuitl*, *Huicuilicuitl*, *Micailicuitl*, *Yemuncuitl*, *Pachtl*, *Huiz Pachtl*, *Ogcheltl*, *Parquecalatl*, *Hatemucatl*, *Tititl*, *Izcali*, *Cox Vitlucatl*.

The names of Dayes, were *Capitli*, A Spade; *Hecatl*, Aire or Winde; *Calli*, A House; *Cuau* *Pali*, A Lizzard; *Cuauatl*, A Snake; *Mixquintl*, Death; *Macatl*, A white Hart; *Totchtli*, A Cony; *Atl*, Water; *Izcynthl*, A Dogge; *Ouematl*, An Ape; *Malinali*, A Broome; *Acatl*, A Cane; *Ocelotl*, A Tigre; *Cuauatl*, An Eagle; *Cocacauatl*, A Buzzard; *Olin*, A Temple; *Tepatl*, A Knife; *Quauatl*, Raine; *Xuchitl*, A Role.

Although the twentie names serue for the whole yeere, and are but the dayes of every month, yet therefore every month beginneth with Capitli, which is the first name, but as they follow in order, and the fixe odder dayes is the cause thereof. And also because their week is of thirteenth dayes, which changeth the names, as by example, *Cocacatl* can goe no further than vnto *Matlatlilome* *Cocatl*, which is thirteenth, and then beginneth another week: and we doe not say *Matlatlilome* *Ocelotl*, which is the fourteenth day, but we say *Cocacatl*, which is one, and then reckon the other fixe names vnto twentie. And when all the twentie dayes are ended, begin againe to reckon from the first name of the twentie, but not from one, but from eight. And because they may better understand the matter, here is the example:

Cecipatl, *Omehcatl*, *Ex Calli*, *Nau Cuauatl*, *Maculicatl*, *Chicome* *Mizquintl*, *Chicome* *Macatl*, *Chicome*, *Totchtli*, *Chiconauatl*, *Matlatlilome* *Cuauatl*, *Matlatlilome* *Acatl*, *Matlatlilome* *Malinali*, *Matlatlilome* *Acatl*. The next week following darth begin his dayes from one. And that one is the fourteenth name of the month and of the dayes, and saith: *Cocacatl*, *Omehcatl*, *Ex Calli*, *Ecozacauatl*, *Nau Olin*, *Macul Tepatl*, *Chicome* *Quintl*, *Chicome* *Xuchitl*, *Chicome* *Capitli*. In his second week, *Capitli* came to fall on the eight day, being in the first week the first day. *Cemacatl*, *Omehcatl*, *Exatl*, *Nau Izcynthl*, *Macul Omehcatl*. And so proceede on to the third week, in the which this name *Capitli* entred not, but *Macatl*, which was the sixteenth day in the

first

first week, and had no place in the second, and is the first in the third. The reckoning is no darker than ours, which we have in a, b, c, d, e, f, g. For they also change with time, and run in such sort, that a, which was the first letter of this month, commeth to be the fifth day of the next month, and the thirteenth to be the third day, and so orderly doth the other five letters.

The accounting of years.

The Mexicans had another order to reckon their years, which exceeded not above four in number, as one, two, three, four, whereunto they account a hundred, five hundred, a thousand, and so many more at their list. These four figures or names, are, Tochli, Acatli, Tepcalli, Calli, and do signify a Coy, a Cane, a Knife, and a House, saying: Ce Tochli, One year; One Acatli, Two years; Ei Tepcalli, Three years; Nani Calli, Four years; Macuil Tochli, Five years; Chiconac Acatli, Six years; Chicane Tepcalli, Seven years; Chiconac Calli, Eight years; Chiconani Tochli, Nine years; Matlatilome Acatli, Ten years; Matlatilome Tepcalli, Eleven years; Matlatilome Calli, Twelve years; Matlatilome Tochli, Thirteen years. So that the reckoning passeth not above thirteen, which is one week of the year, and endeth where he began.

The second week, (Ce Acatli, one year; One Tepcalli, two years; Ei Calli, three years; Nani Tochli, four years; Macuil Acatli, five years; Chiconac Tepcalli, six years; Chiconac Calli, seven years; Chiconac Tochli, eight years; Chiconani Acatli, nine years; Matlatilome Tepcalli, ten years; Matlatilome Calli, eleven years; Matlatilome Tochli, twelve years; Matlatilome Acatli, thirteen years. The third week of years. Ce Tepcalli, one year; One Calli, two years; Ei Tochli, three years; Nani Acatli, four years; Macuil Tepcalli, five years; Chiconac Calli, six years; Chiconac Tochli, seven years; Chiconac Acatli, eight years; Chiconani Tepcalli, nine years; Matlatilome Calli, ten years; Matlatilome Tochli, eleven years; Matlatilome Acatli, twelve years; Matlatilome Tepcalli, thirteen years.

The fourth week, Ce Calli, one year; One Tochli, two years; Ei Acatli, three years; Nani Tepcalli, four years; Macuil Calli, five years; Chiconac Tochli, six years; Chiconac Acatli, seven years; Chiconac Tepcalli, eight years; Chiconac Calli, nine years; Matlatilome Tochli, ten years; Matlatilome Acatli, eleven years; Matlatilome Tepcalli, twelve years; Matlatilome Calli, thirteen years. Each of these weeks, which one men call Inditions, doth containe thirtene years, so that all the four weeks make two and fiftie years, which is a perfect number in their reckoning, and is called the year of grace, for from fiftie two years, to fiftie two years, they used to make some feasts, with strange Ceremonies, as hereafter shall be declared. And when fiftie two years are ended, then they begin afresh, by the same order before declared, until they come to as many more, beginning at Ce Tochli, and so forward. But always they begin at the same figure. So that in the forme of reckoning they keep and have in memory, things of eight hundred and fiftie years: and by this Chronicle they know in what year every thing happened, and how long every King reigned: how many children they had, and all things else that importeth to the estate of the government of the Land.

The Indians beleeved that five ages were past, which they called Sunnes.

The Indians of Culhuac believed that the Gods had made the world, but they knew not how, yet they beleeved that since the creation of the world, four Sunnes were past, and that the fifth (and last) of the Sunne that now gleasheth to the World. They held opinion that the first Sunne perished by water, and at the same time all living creatures perished likewise. The second Sunne (say they) fell from the heavens, with whose fall all living creatures were slain, and then (say they) were many Giants in that Countrey, and certain monstrous Beasts, which one man found on opening of graves, by proportion whereof, from himselfe he was to be men twenty faine high. The third Sunne was consumed by fire, which burned day and night, so that then all living creatures were burned. The fourth Sunne, finished by tempest of Ayre or Winde, which blew down Houses, Trees, yea, and the Mountains and Rocks were blown a funder, but the Image of Manlynde perished not, saving that they were converted into Apes, and touching the fifth Sunne, which now reigneth, they know not how it shall consume. But they say, that when the fourth Sunne perished, all the world fell into darknesse, and so remained for the space of five and twenty years continually, and as the fiftieth year of that fearful darknesse, the Gods did forme one man and woman, who brought forth children, and at the end of the ten years, appeared the Sunne which was newly borne upon the figure of the Countrey, and therefore they begin their account of years at that day, and reckoning from the year of our Lord 1552, they say, our Sunne is 888, so that it appeareth that they have lived many years in their writing, in figures: and they had not only this of our Countrey, which is the beginning of their year, month, and day, of their fifth Sunne, but also they had the same order and yfte in the other four Sunnes which were past; but they list many things, slip out of memory, saying that with the new Sunne, all other things should be likewise new. They held also opinion, that three dayes after this last Sun appeared, all the gods did dye, and in that proceffe of time, the gods which now they have, and worship, were borne.

Although one brother was borne to another among the Mexicans, and after their decease, did inherit the Sunne of the first Brother, yet they took no possession of the state or name of King, until they were appointed and crowned upon.

The Coronation of the Kings of Mexico.

As soon as any King of Mexico deceased, and his Funerals ended, then were called to Parliament the Lords of Texcoco and the Lord of Tlacopan, who were the chiefe officers, and then in order all other Noblemen, who owed any service to the Mexican Empire. And being come together, if any doubts of the inheritance

heritance of the Crowne happened, then the matter was decided with all haste: then the new King being knowne, he was stripped stark naked, except a cloth to cover his private parts, and in this sort was carried among them, to the great Temple of Vitzilopuchli with great feasting, and without any joy or pleasure: Two Gentlemen of the Cite, whose office it was, led him up the staires of the Temple by the armer, and before him went the Prince of Texcoco and Tlacopan, who that day did weare their robes of Coronation, whereupon they painted their armes and title. First few of the Ladies went up into the Chappell, but only those few were appointed to attend the new King, and some in other Ceremonies. For all the residue stood upon the steps and below, to behold the Coronation. These Magistrates being above in the Chappell, came with great humility and reverence, kneeling down upon their knees before the Idoll of Vitzilopuchli, and touched the earth with one finger, and then kissed the same. Then came the high Priest clothed in his pontifical vestments, with many others in his company, who did weare Surples: and without speaking any word, they painted or coloured the Kings person, with lake made for the purpose, as blacke as any coal. After this Ceremonie done, they blessed the anointed King, and sprinkled him four times with a certaine holy water, which was made at the time of consecration of the God made of dove or pidge, with a sprinkle made of bones of Cameleons, Cedar, and Willow bones. Then they put upon his head, a cloth painted with the bones and joints of dead men, and were they clothed him with a blacke garment, & upon that another blew, and both were painted with the figures of dead mens skulls and bones.

Theointment.

Then they put about his necke certaine laces, whereat did hang the armes of the Crowne. And beside his backe they did hang certain little bottles full of powders, by vertue whereof he was delivered from pestilence and diseases, according to their opinion: yea, and thereby Witches, or Witchcrafts could not hurt him, nor yet could men deceive him. In fine, with these relicks he was sure from all perill and danger. Upon his left arme they bound a little bagge of Incense, and then brought unto him a chaffin dish of incense made of the bark of an Oke tree. Then the King arose, and with his arme did burne the same Incense, into the chaffin dish, and with great reverence brought the same to the god Vitzilopuchli, and after he had smoked him therewith, he sat him down, then came the high Priest and twenty his assistants to maintain the religion of the gods, to keepe also all the lawes and customes of his predecessors, to maintain justice, and not to aggravate any of his vassals or subjects, and that he should be valiant in the warres, that he should cause the Sunne to give his light, the clouds to yelde raine, the rivers to runne, and the earth to bring forth all kinds of graine, fruites, and other needfull hearbs and trees. These and many other things impossible things the new King did sweare to performe: and then he gave thanks to the high Priest, and commended himselfe to the god, and to the lookers on, and they who brought him up in the same order, carried him downe againe.

Then all the people cried, the Gods preferre the new King, and that he may reign many years in health with all his people. But then some began to dance, other to play on their instruments, showing outwardly their inward joy of heart. And before the King came to the face of the steps, all the Noblemen came to yeelde their obedience, and in token of loving and faithful subiects, they presented unto him Feather, strings of Beale shells, Collets, and other Jewels of Gold and Silver, also Mantels painted with death, and bare him company unto a great hall within the compass of the Temple, and there left him. The King sitteth downe under his cloth of estate, called Tlacatecco, and in four dayes departeth not out of the circuit of the Temple, the which he spends in

prayer, sacrifice, and penance; he eateth there but once a day, and every day he bathes himselfe, and againe in the night in a great pond of water, and then letteth himselfe bound in his eares, and yeareth thereunto the god of his death. Then the high Priest, with whom he abode, with whom he offered, the Flower, Paper, and little Cames, did the blood of his own tongue, nose, hands, and other parts of his body. After the four dayes expired, then came all the Noblemen to bear him company to his Palace, with great triumph and pleasure of all the Cite, but after his consecration for no more dare looke him in the face.

And now with the declaration of the Alt and Ceremonies that the Mexican Kings are crowned, I shall not neede to rehearse of other Kings, for generally they all doe use the same order, saving that other Princes goe not up to the top of the Temple, but abide at the foot of the steps to be crowned, and after their Coronation they come to Mexico for their confirmation, and then at their returne to their Countrey they made many drunken feasts and banquets.

The opinion of the Mexicans concerning the Soules of Nobles.

The Mexicans did beleeve that the Soules were immortal, and that they received either joy or paine according to their deserts and living in this world, unto which opinion all their religion did attaine, and chiefly appeare at their burials. They held for an assured faith, that there were nine places appointed for soules, and the chieffest place of glory to be neere unto the Sunne, where the soules of those which were dead borne to one place, thence they which died of age or other accident went to another, those which died of sudden death to another, those which died of wounds or contagious diseases went to another place, those which were drowned went to another, those which were put to death by offence of order of lawles, as for robbery and adultery to another: Those which flew their Fathers, Mothers, Wives or Children, to another place by themselves: also those who flew their Masters or any religious person went to another place. The common sort of people were buried, but Lords and rich men had their bodies burned, and their ashes buried. In their burials they had a great difference, for many dead bodies were buried better apparelled.

led then when they were on line. Women were shrouded after another sort. And hee that suffered death for adultery, was shrouded like unto the God of Ictheche, called Tlazoultcutli; he that was drowned like unto the god of water, named Illoco; and he that died with drunkenness was shrouded like unto the god of wine, called Omotochli. But the Soldier had an horrible shroude like unto the attire of Vitzilpuchli, and the lord in all other sorts of deaths.

The buriall of Kings in Atzac.

When any King of Mexico happened to fall sick, they used forthwith to put a visor upon the face of Tezetzitlica, or Vitzilpuchli, or some other Idol, which Visor was not taken away, until they saw whether the King did amend, or else dye: But if he chanced to dye, then word was sent throughout all his Dominion to bewaile his death, and also other people were sent to call the Noblemen that were his neighbours, and to warne them without foure daies to come unto his buriall.

The dead body was laid upon a furs Mat, and was watched foure nights, with great lamentation and mourning: then the body was washed, and a locke of haire cut from the crowne of his head, which was preserved as a great relicke, saying that therein remained the remembrance of his soule. This done, a fine Emerald was put in his mouth, and his body shrouded in founteine rich Mantels, of colours, both rich and costly wrought. Upon the upper Mantle was set the dense or armes of Vitzilpuchli or Tezcalipuca, or some other Idol, in whom the King had great confidence in his life time, and in his Temple should the body be buried. Upon his face they put a visor, painted with fume and Demitils insignes, beset with many jewels, precious stones, and Pearles. Then they killed his soule, whose office was to light the Lampes, and make fire unto the gods of his Palace. These things done, they carried the dead body unto the Temple: some followed him with white fullen tapers, song the death of the King by note for it was the custom.

The Noblemen and Gentlemen of his household carried Targets, Arrows, Maces, and Esquizes to throw into the fire where the body should be buried in the Temple. The high Priest and all the Clergie received him at the Temple gate, with a frownsfull song, and after he had said certaine words, the body was thrown into a great fire made for the purpose, with all the jewels that he had about him, and all the other things which were brought to honour the buriall: also a Dogge newly strangled with an Arrow, which was to guide him by way. In the meane while that the King and Dogge were burning the Priests sacrificed two hundred persons, bount in his Ceremonie there was no ordinary taxe, for sometimes they sacrificed many more: they were spent with a Rofor of flint in the breast, and their beards taken out and thrown into the fire where the Kings body was. These miserable persons being sacrificed, and their bodies thrown into a hole; they likewise affixed that they should serve for his fumes in another world: some of them were Dwarfes, monstrous and deformed persons, with some women. They placed about the dead body of the King before his buriall, Roses, Flowers, and fowle dishes of meate and drinke, and no creature darst touch the same, but only the Priests, for it seemed to be an offering.

The next day following, all the allies were gathered together, and the teeth with the Emerald that was in his mouth, the things which were put into a Chest, painted on the inside with horrible figures of devils, and the locke of haire which was cut from his crowne, and another locke of haire which was preserved from the time of his birth. Then the Chest was locked, and an Image of wood made and calked like unto the Kings person, which was set on the top of the Chest. The subjects endured foure daies, in the which the wives and daughters of the King offered great offerings at the place where his body was buried, and before the Chest and his Image.

On the fourth day after the buriall, fifteen flames were sacrificed for his soule, and on the twentieth day, other five persons were also sacrificed; likewise on the sixtie three and foure score, which was like unto the yeares minde.

The order of buriall of the Kings of Atzac.

The Kingdom of Mechucan is almost as great as the Empire of Mexico, and when any King of that Country happened to be visited with sickness, and brought to such extremity, that hope of life were past, according to the opinion of Physicians, then would he name and appoint which of his Sonnes should inherit the estate; and being knowne, the new King or heire, accompanied first for all the Governours, Captaines, and valiant Soldiers, who had any office or charge to come unto the house of his Father, and so they came next, from thenceforth was held for a Tristowe, and he passed, when the death of the old King was certaine, then came all degrees of Estates, and brought presents to the new King, for the approbation of his Kingdom, but if the King were not thoroughly dead, but at the point of death, then the gates were shut in, and none permitted to enter; and when his life was departed, then began a generall cry and mourning, and they were permitted to come where their dead King lay, and to touch him with their hands: this being done, the carcase was washed with sweete waters, and then a flaxen shirt put upon him, and a paire of shooes made of a Deeres skynne put on his feet, and about his anckles were tied certaine Beils of Gold, about his wristes of his hand were put Manillas of Turkeys, and other Bracelets of Gold, likewise about his necke they hung other collers of precious stones, and gold, and rings in his eares, with a great Turke in his necker rope. Then his body was laid upon a large heere, whereon was placed a good bed under him: on his one side lay a Bowe with a quiver of Arrows, and on his other side lay an Image made of fine Mantels of his owne colour or highness, with a great tuffe of fine feathers, shooes upon his feet, with Bracelets, and a collar of gold. While his body was a doing, others were busied in washing the men and women

men which should be singing for to accompany him into Hell: these wretched folke that should be flume were banqueted and filled with drinke, because they should receive their death with less paine. The new King did appoint those who should dye for to serve the King his Father, but yet many of them had rather a thing of immortall glory. First, fifteen Gentlemen of noble parentage were appointed to death for to have the office of keepers of his soule which was wont to wear, another for the office of Cup-bearer, to take his Cotte, and another to serve for Laundresse. They flew also many women flume, and free to die. When all these that were appointed to dye were waited, and their bellies full with meate and drinke, then they went in order of procession before the heere whereon the dead King was carried, some went playing on Instrumens made of Snails shells, others played upon flutes and flutes of Sea-tur-tles, others went whistling, and the most part weeping: the Sonnes of the dead King and other Noblemen towards the Temple of the god Citicauac: his kinsmen went round about the heere, singing a frownsfull song. The officers and household servants of the Court with other Magistrates and Souldiers of warre.

About midnight they departed in the order of field, out of the Kings palace, with great light of Corse passed, attended to make cleane the streete. And when they were come to the Temple, they went four times round about a great fire made of the wood of Pine tree, which was prepared to burne the dead body: then the heere was laid upon the fire, and in the meane while that the body was burning, as they were appeared to burne the flume, and afterward buried them by foure and foure.

The next day in the morning, the altar, stones and levels, was gathered and laid upon a rich Mantle, which was carried to the Temple gate, where the Priests attended to blisse those which they desired, whereof they made a dough or paste, and thereof an Image which was apperelled like a man, with a visor like to his. At the foot of the Temple flumes they covered a grave ready made, which was square, large, and six foot deep: it was also hanged with new Mats round about, and a furs bed therein, in the which the wale, Targets of Gold and Silver, with Bowe and Arrows, and many gallant tuffes of Feathers, with covered with Leathers, Apparel, smelt, Meate Drinke, and Armor. This done, the grave was shut up, and made se with beams, boards, and stoned with earth on the top.

All these Gentlemen which had served or touched any thing in the buriall, washed themselves, and went to dinner in the Court or yard of the Kings house without any table, and having dined, they wiped their hands upon certaine lockes of Cotton wool, hanging down their heads, and not speaking any word, except it were to aske for drinke. This Ceremonie endured five daies, and in all that time no fire was permitted to be kindled in the Citie except in the Kings house and Temples, nor yet any Games ground, nor Market, nor none darst goe out of their houses, leaving all the former that might be possible for the death of their King.

In Mexico were twelve Judges, who were all Noblemen, grave, and well learned in the Mexican Iudges Lawes. These men lived only by the rents that the properly appertained to the maintenance of Iustice, and in any cause judged by them, it was lawfull for the parties to appeal unto other twelve Iudges, who were of the Prince blood, and always abode in the Court, and were maintained at the Kings owne cost and charge. The inferior Iudges came ordinarily once a month to confult with the higher. And in every foure score daies came the Iudges of every Province within the Mexican Empire, to confult with the Iudges of Mexico, but all doubtful causes were referred to the King, and to be pass by his hand, twice or thrice passed above foure score daies without finish end determination. There were in many were painted Attwels, whereby they were knowne a frowns off. The Prisoners were under ground, Prisoners must and durst, the cause whereof, was to put the people in feare to offend. If any misdeed were called to take in oath, the order was, that he should touch the ground with one of his fingers, and then to Winckles and his fingers, taking himselfe thereof, of the earth which he had sworn and promised to feake the truth with oaths, and thus the Prisoners were not true but then he might come to such extremity, as to eat earth, some of the Kings name, and call upon the God of the crime, whose cause it was to eat earth, some of the Kings name.

The Iudges that taketh bribes or gifts, is forthwith put out of his office, which was accounted a most vile and shameful reproach. The Indians did affirme that Neacualpimecine did hang a Iudge in Tezcalco, for taking an unjust sentence, he himselfe knowing the contrary. The Murderer was executed without

Bribery.

without

Altar a peeple of Tartars, called
 Accas or Akas, they are Chris-
 tians of the Greeke Church.
 They use Greeke Bookes. They
 pray for the Dead. A simple
 peeple, 10.10.20
 Albania the Countrey, where, 16.
 20
 Albace or Albas, one of the King-
 domes of Georgia. Albas a Ki-
 ner of Island, 656.1
 Albori or Albior the Mountaine,
 110.30
 Alcatraz, an Indian Cormorant de-
 scribed, 979
 Alchum much studied in China,
 369.30. And noted upon, 996.
 50
 Ale of Rie, 616.50
 Alehouses in Russia pay tribute,
 429.30. The wicked abuses there-
 upon, 431.40
 Aleppo women by the Tartars,
 117.1
 Alhacen his storie of Tamerlane,
 140.40
 Allaying of Silver the curiosity,
 951.40
 Allen, the Fowle in Greenland, the
 nature of it, 713.40
 Almanackes in China, 346.10
 Almshouses for the Dead in China, 274.
 1.20.30
 Almshouses the Chinois will give none,
 175.20
 Almonds of Coco Nuts, March-
 pape made of them, 958.50
 Allome in Turkie, forestalled by the
 Italians, 51.20
 Allome separates Gold from Drasse,
 942
 Alphabet of Gotish Letters, 658
 Alphabet the Chinois have none,
 384.40. nor Syllables, ibid.
 Altair the Mountaine, where all the
 Tartar Princes are buried, 78.
 20
 Altars in the Russian Church, 450.
 20.452
 Altars and Altar Cloathes in Chi-
 na, 296.30
 Altars in China revered,
 263.1
 Altar in Fort the Nestorians had,
 ibid.
 Altar of Leather, 37.40

Amacoo in China, what, 319.30
 The Portugals build a Cite
 there; it is made a Bishops See,
 ibid. How situated, ibid.
 Aman a Cite in Syria taken for
 the Christians, 123.60
 Amathitis a Mine of them, where,
 901.50
 Amazonas, where antiently, 55.1
 Amber store of it in Brazil; how
 gotten, 903.49
 Amber great store and great
 price, where, 615.60. A
 Frogge inclosed in a peece of it,
 626.1
 Amber eaten by the King of China,
 to sustaine life, 186.50
 Amber liquid, where, 878.40
 Ambergrece taken in the Whale,
 place where it lies, and the co-
 lour, 710.30. & 471.50
 Ambassadors how entertained by
 the Crim Tartars, 639.40.50
 Ambassadors divers resident in the
 Tartarian Countrey, 45.40
 Ambassadors counterfeite painted
 with Death by the Tartars, 8. to
 Their libertie of speech in Tartar-
 rie, 43.20
 Ambassadors how honoured and
 privileged in China, 189.10
 Ambassadors how entertained in
 Russia, 747
 Ambassadors, when first sent hither
 from Russia, 222
 Ambassadors counterfeite to China,
 335.30
 America Discovered, in 61.62. &
 63. Degrees, the Coast and Sea-
 sons there described, 811. 10.64.
 Degrees, 823.20. Frost there in
 July, 811.60. An Island there
 in 55. Degrees 30. Minutes, 812.
 60
 America first discovered by the
 English before Columbus, 808.
 20
 America described by Herrera,
 how much of it under the Spani-
 ards, 856. How farre discove-
 red, by the Spaniards, and by the
 English, 857.1. and in madrigals,
 The Seas of it, the Spanish Na-
 vigations, Course and Customs
 in them, 858. Named by a wrong

50. 1007 in the Sea, found a
 gaine, ibid.
 Anchorites in China, 637.40
 Ancon an Island dispeopled, 308.
 10
 Andabaylas the Province in Peru,
 the Temple of the Sunne in it,
 893.60
 Andanico and Azzao Minerals,
 where, 71.1
 Andes the Mountaines of India,
 the diversitie of their tempera-
 ture, length, Beasts, Soyle, &c.
 881. 50. 887. 20. 30. Covered
 with Snow, where: their March,
 898
 Angaman, where Men have Daggies
 heads, 104.10
 Angle lines of 13 bale finnes. An-
 gle hookes of Fish bones in
 Greenland, 836.1
 Aman Straights, some fabulous re-
 ports of them, 848. 60. & 853.
 20. A note of them by Master
 Lo ke, 849.50. Discovered by
 a Greeke Pilot for the Spani-
 ards: hopes of the North-west
 Passage that way, the ascription
 and wisdom of them, 850
 Anian Island by China, the many
 Fords and Pearle-fishings there,
 905.20
 Anill or Indico, how it grows,
 957.40
 Annoynting, the King of Nor-
 way annoynted at his Coronation,
 623.30
 Annoynting of the Mexican Kings,
 1009.30
 Answer a strange one of a Mahu-
 metan, 253
 Antarcticke Starre the Indians saye
 by, and not by the Compass, 139.
 30
 Antereda the Ile, 123.30
 Anthony March, his diligence for
 the Discovering to the River
 Ob, 804.805
 S. Anthonies, the West of Cuba,
 858. The best way thence to
 the Port of Saint Iohn de Vlue,
 858.60
 Antigur Islands, 260.45
 Antients or Engines, of Silke in
 China, 296
 Antioch women from the Christians

40. Of Goethland, find the
 Kuenland, 059
 Ants of India, there aduise
 vsing themselves against
 Beares,
 Ants of West India, there
 some are posseyd, 996. 10.
 Ant they desire, ibid. & 947.
 Spaniards chuse a San-
 tron against them,
 Apes in Peru, on the Mountaine
 9
 Apes performed in Boxes, used
 for Pigmies, 103.40. 10.
 bigger as men, 10
 Apollon Pictures mounted in
 na,
 Apparell of the Chincies, in
 Gownes,
 Apparell of Tartars,
 Apparell of the Russians, Men
 Women,
 Apparell the uniformes of
 Peru, 10
 Apparell of Fish skins,
 10
 Appales onely to the Emper
 Russia,
 Apples of India posseyd by
 some posseyd with them
 sells these that sleepe in
 Tree,
 Apram, or a drink of Claret
 in Tartarie,
 Aqua-vitæ, a Russe Wine,
 Arabacha the Tartarian, the
 session of Christ,
 Arabian Letters used in Chi-
 na,
 Arabicks Letters in Tur-
 key,
 Aracci the Plants,
 Ararat is not all Ararat
 10
 Ararat Mountaine, almost
 red with Snow,
 Araxis the River, 49. 10.
 with Cur. 40. 20. The be-
 10
 Arbor Secen, where, 68. 20.
 50 &
 Archbishop of Niderosia
 way,
 Archbishops of Russia, 4. 10.
 is the true Metropolitan
 they to the Patriarch, 4.
 Their annuities

Theft.

Disguise of
sexe.

Duels capitall.

without exception. The woman with child that wilfully castrish her creature, suffereth death for the same. The Theefe for the first offence, was made a slave, and hanged for the second. The Traitor in Maas the King and Common-weale, was put to death with extreme torments. The Woman taken in Maas appaer'd dead for the same, and likewise the Man taken in Woman's attire. Every one that challengeth another to fight, except in the warres, was condemned to dye. In Tezcuco the sume of Sotome was punished with death, and that Law was instituted by Necualpincinthe, and Necualcoo, who were Iudges, which abhorred that filthy fiene, and therefore they deserved great praise, for in other Provinces that abominable fiene was not punished, although they have in those places common Sietes, as in Panuco.

The end of the fift Booke.

ENG.



AN ALPHABETICALL
TABLE OF THE PRIN-
CIPALL THINGS CONTAI-
NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES
of the third Part of PVRCBAS
his Pilgrims.

THe first Number notes the Page, the second Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margin of the Pages, Right against which or betwixt that and the next number, the note is to bee found. Observe, that whereas many words may bee well written with I. or with Y. the Reader is to looke to both. Observe also, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not set under S. but in the Alphabet of their proper Names.

A



Bacco, in the Caspian

Sea, 69.60. The

largesse of it,

70.1

Abasie, or Habab-

sin, in India we-

st, 106.50. in Marg. Rich in

Gold.

Abdelcarria,

Abortion caused by an Herbe, 99.1.

40

Acapulco, the Province and Port in

the West Indies; its Latitude,

87.1.60

the Alutian Caribbees, 10.10.

Enemies to the Tartars, 12.40

Achbaloch Mangi, which in Tar-

tars Language is, the White Cu-

rie of the Mangi,

90.1

Acornes as big as Apples, 510.50

Accents the Chinois have five seve-

rall,

384.20

Accounts call by grains of Corne,

1063.50

Accord between Poles and Russes,

about changing their Emperours,

788.789

Acquaintance the Ceremony of be-

giving it,

374

Acacron the Armenian Prophet,

49.50

Accon the Citie; Arabick and

Syrrack understood there, 13.50

Adams Sepulchre in Zeilan, 106.20

More of that Fable, ibid.

Adams Apples grow in Persia, 71.

20

Adders of India, their severall sorts

and names, 976.1

Adam, the Sildan of it described,

106.50

Admirals Island, 474.40. Sea bor-

fathere,

512

Adoration, the manner of it in

Mexico, 1027.30. & 1028.1.

& 1040.60

Adoption, practised in Russia, 740.

40

Adulterie punished with Death in

Peru,

1058.40

Adulteresses Dowries given to poore

Giles,

278.10

Adulterie & Winaldis, the punish-

ment,

182.40

Adulterers how punished in Chi-

na,

102.10

Edgar the King, his mightie Na-

me, 619.40. Emperours of the O-

cean, ibid.

England and Halgeland discom-

red,

212.1

Equinoctiall, under it mayst and

rayne, and why, 918.40. Not

so be: as the Antients held it:

very cold in March, causes of

the temperate; though the

Summer bee very late; the dayes

and nightes equal, 910. No

Calends under the Line, 923.60.

926. The Ayre wider or narrower

posseth then the Ayre about the

Poles, and why, 925.30. Ea-

rther and severer winteres conti-

nuall under the Line, 925.40.

See Terrible Zone.

Equinoctiall, whether deathfull li-

ving under it, 889.10

Ethiopian Patriarch, 327.30

Affirmie in a different Sirname bin-

ders not Matrimony in China,

394.10

Age, foile Saracens stile the Mecca

Pilgrims,

311

Age, much honoured in China, 193.

1. & 369.20. Olde Age begins

at fiftie,

394.1

Age of three hundred yeres attained

in, in the West Indies, 875.20

Ages of the world, the Mexicans

represent by so many Sunnes,

1126.40. Their oddie signment,

ibid.

Agility of the Mexicans, excel-

lent,

1065.10

Ague, a Severaigne Ayre for the

Cure of it,

73.60

Ajax or Glazzo, the Heaue, where

abounds,

5140

Aingharin the Region, 512.10

Aini

THE TABLE

Aim, the *Cite* in Armenia, 50
 Aitau, near, on Chirchik, 319, 50
 320, 40
 Alania, a people of Tartary, 1
 Aciaor Akia, they are called
 Rhina of the Greek Church,
 They use Greek Books. They
 pray for the Dead, of few
 people, 10, 10, 20
 Albania the Country, where, 16
 20
 Albcair or Albcais, one of the King-
 doms of Georgia. Albis a Ri-
 ver of Poland, 656, 1
 Alborz or Albor the Mountains,
 110, 30
 Alcazar, an Indian Ceremony
 forbidden, 979
 Aleicum a much fished in China,
 369, 30. And dried upon, 396
 Ale of Rice, 616, 50
 Aleichous in Russia pay tribute,
 4, 59, 30. The wheat called there, 410
 Aleppo, mouse by the Tartars,
 117, 1
 Alhacen his Stories of Tamerlane,
 140, 40
 Allaying of Silken the curtains,
 951, 40
 Allent, the People of Greenland, the
 nature of, 112
 Almonches in China, 715, 40
 Alms for the Dead in China, 254
 220, 30
 Almes the Chinois will give none,
 375, 20
 Almonds of Cass Nut, March,
 pain made of, 948, 50
 Allome in Turkey, first called by the
 Italians, 57, 20
 Allome, operates Gold from Druff,
 943
 Alphabet of Gothic Letters, 638
 Alphabet the Chinois have none,
 384, 40. see Syllables, ibid.
 Altai the Mountains, where all the
 Tartar Princes are buried, 70
 Altars in the Russian Church, 450
 20, 45
 Altars and Altar Clothes in Chi-
 na, 296, 30
 Altars in China reserved, 267, 1
 Altars in Fore the Nestorians had,
 376
 Altar of Leather, ibid.
 Altar of Russian Ceyne worth life
 peace, 410, 3. See also page, 553
 20
 Altine King, dome, 797, 50. Called
 the golden King. See the
 story to the Right, and the
 same, ibid.
 Altine, the Convent of, 1018, 50
 Amaco in China, where, 319, 30
 The Portugals build a Cru-
 zery; it is made a 24th of Sea,
 the Sea, 112, 40
 Amam a City in Syria taken by
 the Christians, 133, 60
 Amathus a Mine of them, where,
 902, 50
 Amazon, where anciently, 58, 1
 Amber store it in Brailly; how
 guised, 1003, 49
 Amber great loss of, and great
 price, 615, 60. A
 Frogge included in a piece of,
 626, 1
 Amber eaten by the King of China,
 to sustain life, 186, 50
 Amber liquid, where, 878, 40
 Ambereggie taken in the Whale,
 place where it is, and the cal-
 culation, 710, 30 & 471, 50
 Ambassadors how entertained by
 the Crim Tartars, 639, 40, 50
 Ambassadors under resident in the
 Tartarian Courts, 450, 40
 Ambassadors, how entertained by
 with Death by the Tartars, 8, 20
 Their the chief of such in Ita-
 ly, 451, 40
 Ambassadors how honoured and
 privileged in China, 182, 30
 Ambassadors how entertained in
 Russia, 747
 Ambassadors, when first sent hither
 from Russia, 122
 Ambassadors counter to China,
 314, 30
 America discovered, in 16, 63, &
 67 Degrees, the Coast is 1820
 furlongs de long, 81, 40
 Degrees, 82, 30. Frost there in
 July, 81, 60. And, the land there
 in 55 Degrees 30. Months, 81, 60
 America first discovered by the
 English before Columbus, 808
 America defended by Heivins,
 how much of it under the Spani-
 ards, 896. How far de-
 fended, by the Spaniards, and by the
 English, 857, 1, and in many
 The Sea of, the Spanish Na-
 vigation, 896. And by Chinese
 navigation, 896. A Navel by the
 Father, 808
 America, and discovered within 60,
 818, 60
 Amid, the Japonians God, 326, 40
 Amu the Prance, much called there,
 9400
 Anchors upon for a fleet, 271, 1
 50. English the Sea, 70, 1
 gaine,
 Anchorites in China, 437, 40
 Ancan an Island discovered, 308,
 10
 Andabayas the Promise in the
 the Temple of the Sunne in
 893, 60
 Andanico and Azzao Minerals,
 where, 71, 1
 Andes the Mountains of India,
 the diversity of their tempera-
 ture, length, Beasts, Style, &c.
 881, 50. 887, 20, 30. Covered
 with Snow, where their March,
 898
 Angaman, where Men have Digger
 beads, 141, 40
 Angle ring of it hake forms, a
 single basket of Fish bones in
 Greenland, 836, 1
 Aman Strights, some fabulous re-
 port of them, 88, 60. & 839,
 20. A note of them by Major
 Lo-ke, Sagoy, Discovered by
 a Greek Pilot for the Spani-
 ards: hopes of the North-west
 Passage this way, the description
 and variety of them, 850
 Aman flaid by China, the many
 Errors and Fables flowing there,
 905, 30
 Amil or Imico, how it grows,
 95, 40
 Annoying, the King of Persia,
 was annoyed at his Ceremony,
 623, 40
 Annoying of the Mexican King,
 1009, 30
 Answer a strange one of a Maho-
 medan, 253
 Antartick Sea, the Indians find
 by, and how the Comp. is, 80
 Antares the life, 123, 30
 Antonic March, his difference for
 the Discouring in the River
 Cl, 804, 805
 S. Archambos, the 17th of May,
 838. The fall was there in
 the Port of Saint Iohnde Vluz,
 838, 60
 Antiger Nader, 260, 40
 Antients or Ensignes, of Silk in
 China, 296
 Antioch, where from the Christians
 the name, 118, 40
 Antiquities, the Chinese find
 of, 285, 1

THE TABLE

[illegible]

[illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible]

THE TABLE

[illegible]

THE TABLE

[illegible]

THE TABLE

in their Cases, *ibid.*
Buryall of the Iaponians, 327, 10
Buryall of the Chinoiz, 39, 30, 52
Funerals and Mourning
Buryall of Tartars without their *Ci-*
ties, 84, 1
Buryall of the Grondelancers, 835
1. & 836, 10
Buryall the Chinoiz *Superfluous*
me, 357, 10
Buryals of the Mordwat Tartar,
442, 40
Buryals of the Mamoules of *Ar-*
land, 88, 10
Buryals of the Mexicans, 1029, 40
Buryals of the Wet Indians, 994,
40
Bulle *Land discovered*, 582, 0
Bulle *Land* *placed* *in the Carib*,
815, 1 & 812, 40
Bullfarms *where*, 282, 40
Buckins *more* *in Russia*, *instead of*
Steeles, 459 & 460
A *Butcher in Russia*, *chief* *of*
Treasures, *Author of his Coun-*
try's *Industry*, 791
Butter-*wecke* *in Russia*, 791
Butter *made* *in Tartaria* *Philo-*
sophically, 5, 60. *Kept in Rammer*
skins, 5, 60
Buxtons *lit.* *The Variation there*,
87, 60

Catempley, *an Island*, 260, 30
Celtic *of the Saxons* *in* *England*,
Baladh, 70, 10. *How to be*
of the Tartars, *ibid.* *How to*
become the Christians *by removing a*
Monastery, 70, 30
Caliph of Baladh, *his* *infinitive*
number, 116, 30
California *Provinces in the West*
India, *the Latitude*, *not much*
discovered, *the Rivers and lands*
of, 877, 40, 50. *See* *also*, *page*
873, 10
Caliso *Proves the riches of the*
West Indies, 910
Calles of *Herf-bare* *in China*,
366, 40
Callinos & Candinas, 537, 10, 40
Calicut *discovered by the Spaniards*, 543, 20
Calicut *its* *own* *in* *the* *university*, 538, 50
Came the *River* *close* *to*, 222, 30
Canna, *a City*, 232
Carnath, *a River*, *where* *Euphrates*
divides to the South, *towards*
Havata, 511
Carnath *the Cape*, *by* *Hindurans* *is*
in *India*, 819, 10
Cambalu *a* *Penguin* *in China*, 342, 30

9

Cabal, a *Mari Tome*, 311, 30
 Cacabe, a *Cajile* in Syria, 12
 Cacao or West Indian fruit, dyed
 of red, by reason of money, and
 to make drink of, the tree and
 juice, 956, 40, 30
 Cacao nuts, of which is made mo-
 ney, one and made for the In-
 dians, 874, 10. The tree is called,
 878, 40
 Caicoes, the Priests of Calcar, 313
 30
 Caesar, the title first given by the
 Emperor of Rome, 760, 30 (by
 the *Septims* inscription) & 781,
 40 & 787, 10
 Caffa owned by the Turk, 88, 10
 Crim Tartar, 44, 10. Upon the
 Euxine Sea, ibid.
 Change, or Kangira, a people, 18
 AGreat Country, 19, 10
 Chaiu the great City, 96, 30
 Chaidu the Province, 90, 60
 Calcia, where Chamblots are made,
 80, 10
 Calamba wood for houses, where
 and the price, 410, 20
 Calcia, the people described, 312, 10
 Cambricks and Laines where
 made, 89, 10
 Camellins, for Lighted, 89, 10
 Camfire new, 101, 30. Sold weight
 for weight with Gold, 104, 10
 Campon, the chief City of Tan-
 zar, 77, 10
 Can, why the Tartarian Prince, 38,
 10, 10
 Canabally, sold by toshiak, where
 they were, 661, & 663
 Canaries, the distance from Spain,
 88, 20
 Candle-light many months toge-
 ther, 64, 70
 Candles in the Greek Church, 18
 20, & 17
 Candles of Birch, 416, 40

Candles *burning without flame*, in
a *Cordill* State, 799, 800
Candlemas day, *feasting the*, 799
China, 799
Cinnabar, the *East point of the*,
White Sea, 485, 606; 515, 606
See, 533, 110
Canguis, the *Province and man-*
ner of the people, 54, 100
Cannibals or *Man-eaters*, where, 869
Cannibal *lives in the* West Indies
their general names, 869
Cannibals, *inhabited by* *Man-eaters*,
trader, *inhabited by* *Man-eaters*,
Cannibals *found a* *vastant* man,
they live eating of men, *their*
defiance from *Saint Domingo*,
869
Censor as *Ensign*, of *deputes* in
China, 184, 185
Confucius *Catho*, *what*, 184, 185
Canton the *Cities* *defcribed*, 170, 171
Canton the *Cities* *defcribed*, 170
100, 171, &c. *The* *Maga-*
phras *traveller* *defcribed*, 171
30. *their* *humane* *Humor* *de-*
scribes, 171
Cimron, *the true name of*, 61, 120
Canutus the *King*, *his* *power*, 60
See, 61, 120
Cape Cod, *the* *latitude*, 588, 589
The *Sandwich* *by it*, 588, 589
Cape Baxo, 474, 10
Cape Swetinos, 532, 10
Cape Comfort *the latitude*, and
distance from *London*, 641, 10
No ships of the *Norfolk* *made*
for *that* *place*, *ibid.*
Cape Cant by *Nova Zembla*, *the*
latitude, 513
Cape de Bas in *New-found-land*,
800, 1
Cape Nassau, 475, 40. *The* *lati-*
tude, *ibid.*
Cape Truff, *ibid.*
Cape Deflaido, or *Defield* in the
Magellane *Streights*, *the lati-*
tude, 501, 10
Cape Christi in *Greenland*, 815, 10
Cape Deflation, *the latitude*, 816
to. of *Queen Anne* & *Green-*
land, *Sophian* *Greenland*, 817, 10
Cape of *King James*, *the*
latitude, *ibid.*
and of *Prince Henry*, 899, 30
Cape Regor, 225, 10. *Sweetinos*,
and *Grace*, 253, 40
Capha or *Theodora* in *Asia*, 63, 6
Caphors, *the Tartars* *call* *Chir-*
lians, 225, 10; & 258, 50, 10
Caphors, *the* *same* *as* *Chir-*
lians, *ibid.*

THE TABLE

Capheritane a *unit* not *enter* it, the
 Sarcenites *can* *not* *enter* it, 11
 Cap on Imperial Ornament of Bu-
 lia, 421.10
 Cap offered in China at *Chang*
 chiao, 394.10 *The falshon of*
the cap of *Chang*, 394.30
 Caps of their Learned, *Sung*, 389.30
round, 389.1
 Cap of the Learned in China,
 348.1
 Cap of China Scholars *the falshon*,
 329.1
 Cap on *Ensigns of dignity* of Bu-
 lia, 184.10 & 200.10
 Cap on *Graduates*, 189.10
 Cap of the Loutass *dignities*, 20
 Cap, *Girdles and Boots* of the
 Chinese Officers, 390.10
 Cap on, a *Philosophical conviction*
 390.10
 Cappadocia, in the *work* of Ar-
 menians the *Greatest*, *dignity*
 by the Ephraites, 53.60
 Cathaph, the Tartarian name for
 the Comanians, 11.1
 Captivity elict, in the *Ornaments*
 of Indian, *the* *prisoners*
of *war*, *paraded* *and* *made*
 1023.10 & 1028.10
 The *monner*, 1026.10
 Captives why the Mexicans de-
 fired *isside*, then to kill, 30
 Care in Tartarian *furnish* *black*
 340.6 & 14.10
 Car-Cathay, 314.1
 Carriage of the Tartars *great*
sign, 404.10
 Caracorum a *mystic* *Cite*, 77
 Carachorum *defeated*, 39
 Caracorum the City of *Mangu*
 Chien, 35.40 *His* *Prin-*
ces, *the* *Em*, *His* *Palace* *these*
 36.11 *a* *Nestor-*
ian Church *there*, 36.20 *Se-*
veral Nations of Chriftian-
ity, 37.1
 Caracorum, two *monies* *and*
three *journey* *from* *the* *Volge*, 47
 Caraxes, the *promises* *in* *the* *Will*
 of India, 866.60 *The* *chief*
Tamars *and* *their* *dignity*, *dif-*
ferent, *tributary* *India*, *Portu-*
gals, *Paints*, *Lakes*, *Quays*,
Rivers, *Sight*, *People*, *medicines*,
the *Stones*, *Caracorum*, 85.70
 Caracorum, *where* *Kome* *died*, 47
 40

Cannibis the Promontory, 836
Cannibals
Caramontam the River, 89
Caren the people, 280, 40
Caratus a married people, 71, 20
their inhabitants, 71, 20
Caribou or Robie, imitating the
 Summer, 802, 1
Card-pipe frequent in Tartarian, 243
Caribbean the Princess, 91, 30
Carantia the City; the Command
 thereabouts, 89, 40
Carates in the West Indies, the
 City, Seyle, Reaux, Gumme;
 Balm, Ge. Latitude of the
 island, and description of it, 88, 5
Carriage the goods travel by, 61, 20
Carls with fiery wheels, 61, 20
five hundred Elephants, 167, 50
Canaville, in the West Indies
 the distance from Venezuela
 where built, 867
Caraswood, used in Tartarian, 243
Carazavilla the Country and City, 91, 30
90, Gold found in the Rivers and
 Mountains.
Catalne, now called Bahia, 54, 40, in
 margin.
Cataln compared by the Ratio, 740
Caskiter the Province, 740
Caskiter the Country, 740
Catharine Prince, 314, 50
Cathian, the Chief-governor, 80, 10
 Tartarian Prince, 80, 10
Chakata a City, 240, 40
Chalpin Sea, or the Hyrcanian Sea,
 and why 53, 50. Whence first
 led, 16, 1
Chalpin Sea, well defined, the extent
 is, 100, 40. Half Jernale's Gulf, 216, 50
216, 50. The Journal of it, 161, 1
 216, 50.
Chalpin Sea, well defined, 247, 60
Flow from the Buxine, and into
 The water, both fresh and Salt
 ibid. See also pp. 245. Tartarian
 247, 60
Calafia or Calafia, a Province or
 Island of Spain, 87, 70
led by Gires, ibid. The City
 thence of the people, 2, 10
the Taurea Cherifone, 2, 10
Cafia Pitula in the West Indies
 87, 70
Calfia the tree, the roots farthest
 downward for Sale, 98, 30
30. Where and how is grown, 99, 30
Cattle milk of Sheen, 87, 70
Cattles, fine in the Banks of
 bbb

[illegible]

THE TABLE.

by his Eunuchs, or by Petition,	392.40.	His Arms or Ensigns	reverted, <i>ibid.</i> , 405. They that speak to him, <i>ibid.</i> 405. His dominions preference, <i>ibid.</i> 410. He is a King, and none else may be, <i>ibid.</i> 410. He rules and Palace, <i>ibid.</i> 410. They reckon by his Reign, 391. Why he comes not abroad, 396. 30.	397.10
China words,				
Hiam-xan, a Mayor,	327.30	Hiem, the same that Hiam-xan,	327.30	
Aniam, a City, and Ci-lien Governor of a City,	327	Chien a Governor of a City,	327	
Aitao, the Admiral,	327.50.	He is Governor over all Strangers: See Stranger,		
Chien, the Provincial Officer,	327			
Cia, yuen, the same that Chien,	327.50.			
Ci, a Governor. So Ci-chien, the Governor of the City,	327.30	Ci-fu, the Governor of Siau-chin,	328.1	
Thien Chin, the Lord of Heaven,	328.30			
Lin-ci-tau, a Governor of three Provinces,	329.60	Tutan a Vicar, or Lord Deputy,	330.30	
Sinci, three Voyages,	332.60	Orlai, or Scila, the Judge of the Country of Warre:	336.10	
Neugban, The Southerne Inn,	336			
Sciepathau, Eighteen Streames,	336.50	Yamtu, the Stone of the Sea,	337.40	
La Pu, the Council of Magistrates,	337.40			
Chian, the greatest River,	340.39	Cho, a River,	340.39	
Hofes, a fitter sort of ships,	341			
Ly, the Tartars,	342.40	Pa, or Pe, the North parts,	342.40	
Sin, holy or Saint,	342.40	Scingy, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,	388.50			
Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement,	388.50			
Cioli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary,	388.60			
Qin, the Court of the King: and also Niquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Pequiu the Northern Court,	389.30	Nang South, or Southward, 389.30		
Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates,	389.40			
Tauli, an order of Magistrates, <i>ibid.</i>		Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcar,	390.10	
Totoqui, the Law,	390.10	Oficine, a Set of Priests,	398.10	
Cicum, a Father,	398.30	Laun, the eldest Philosopher,	398.40	
Hoci, Set of strange habits,	400			
Fit, a fhire in a Province,	402.40	Scandiari, on the Sea,	406.50	
Xi Fiat, 407.40. (So the King figure.)		Ti Cam. Pluto,	407.60	
A China-prouber English, <i>see</i>				
Foc, God,	409.10			
20 ye: Cringing,	373.30			
Paytre, a paper of Visitation,	373			
Thin, exceeding large,	380.30	Yui, Reif,	380.30	
Chien, a Saint: the greatest tribe given to some learned in China,	344.19.	30		
Li, used for N, in some Dialects,	344.19.			
B, before used by them,	344.20	Holy Pan, God,	345.10	
Sin, my, holy Mother,	345.10	Xi, a Mother,	345.10	
Nian a Queen,	345.10	Van van Siu, A thousand thousand		
years,	347.10	Tanta, the Priests of the learned,	347.40	
Cafia, a Caravan or company of Merchants,	361.1.	Canagers, a Coin worth seven farthings,	365.39	
Colay, the Council of State,	374.40	in marg., & 386. 50. & 388		
Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory,	373.20			
Pu, a Tribunal or Court,	388.30	They make B.D.R. 383.50. They and no words any Consensus but M and N,	408.40	
Ciam Chu, a President of a Court,</				

THE TABLE

Christians in China, the *summe* of
their Religion, 367, 38. & 369.
50. A *Christian Martyred* in
China, 269, 50.
Christians in Cathay & Retat, 311
1. Their *habits, Blacke and Red*,
ibid. *All these are fabulous re-
ports*, 311, ibid.
Christians many in Cauchinchina,
44, 30
Christians, *well mannered* of ones the
Weit Indians are, 998, 40
Christian Chapell, & Orgel, found
in Tartarie, 263, 50. An Arme-
nian *Moske* in, 311, ibid.
Christians of the *East* will not
Beit, and why, 21, 4
Custians of Saint Thomas, in
India, 116, 1
Christianitie decayed in Tartarie,
63, 20-30
Christianitie by what means decayed
in Tartarie, 63, 20-30
Christianitie by the Letitians in China,
401, 1-10. The way to Preach
it in China, 197, 30
Christianitie received in Ilun, 4
645, 1
Christianitie, why the Weit Indians
embraced it so freely, 1039, 40
Christall of the Rocks, where it is
found, 546, 42
Christall, beryl, *Admet* of it in the
Weit Indies, 874, 30
Christall day, December 25, in
Russia, 124, 40
Cronicles of China, how written,
and by whom, 389, 10-20
Cronicles for the Indies in Spain,
853
Chronologie of the Mexicans,
1090, 105, 1. And of the Peruvians,
1053, 10
Cissals the Kingdoms, 371, 10. The
 utmost bounds towards China,
314, 50
Cianganla the Cu, 94, 60
Cintra the Province, where it
is, *how dunn* the present Slaves, 75,
10
Cinnabar how it came to be called
Armenia, 111, 1
Cinnamon not yfed in the Stone-work
of the Indians, 1056, 10
Cinnimora, the Etimon of it, 661
Cinnimorah darknesse, 110, 40
Cinnimorah, 107, 10
Cinnimorah a Title of the Mexican, 123, 60
Cinnamon reed described, 118, 30
Cissals, wonderfull, 12000, in China
in 99, 60. with Garrafon, ibid.
Cissals mouleable, on the Water, 270,
50
Circles of Russia the chief, 418, 50
Cities of India, 477, 40
Clergie of Russia their Parliament,
10, 10. *in their Parliament*,
413, 10-20. Called the *Archie-
bishops* in Russia, 428
Clergie of Russia unlearned, they
Preach but twice a week, the
fulfillance of their Sermon, ibid.
They purposely keepe out Learn-
ing, 428
Clerke of the Council in Russia,
428, 40
Clete Island, and of the Orkneyes,
847, 30
Clete, the chiefe Cite of the Ru-
thensien, 63, 40
Cliff falling, like some English, 74
Cloaths made in China, 367, 1
Cloath made of Bark, 94, 40. Of
Gold and Silver, 228
Cloath made in the Weit Indies,
962, 30
Cloath made of the Cocoe Nut in
the East Indies, 981, 30
Cloath of Cambray and Flanders,
1128, 10. Of Featheres alone,
ibid.
Cloath made of Earle, which au-
dacious fire, 76, 40
Clothes here, 91, 10
Clockes & Lottaries in China, the
manner, 99, 40
Clockes takenne to the Chinois,
356, 40. They learne to keepe
them, ibid. And the learners
advanced, 357, 30
Coach much it belee in China,
343, 10
Coopersworne by the Greeke Cle-
rgie, 448, 20
Coopers of the Russian Clergie, 227,
10
Cobanin a great Cite in Periu,
72, 10
Coca Tree described, continually
cheereth by the Indians of Peru,
the vertues, 895, 1
Coca Tree and fruit described, 981,
10
Coca Medicinale for whom, yfed
in China, 10, 10
Coca, a heile of Peru, & of the
Indies, they cure it continually, & oft
for money, 957
Coco trees of the Weit Indies, like
to a Palm tree, the excellency of
the Nut, and medicinale use of
the Shell, the Nuts have Al-
monds in them. The Tree
beare hearte times a year, 958
Cocks of Hispaniola, when they
Crome, 997
Cockins found in Greenland, the

difference between London and it,
833.10; *The Lullaby*, 976
certain flies there, ibid., 547.50
Cochian floor where, 507.10
groves of Hermes, ibid.,
921
Casa Intorcata an Indian Poet,
his fighting for Pichard, 579
Ottom for burial, the China ca-
niff about whom, 388.30, 40
Confite of Camphor, 10
Campei, 181. Cognito, no
men in Armenia, 69.40
Chohlozu's Case in China con-
troversy with as Earthquake,
for Maryage & Christian, 269.50
60. & 270.1
Asia Acem, the Pirar, his Story,
257
Cotta, the Tartarian word for
Maizer of the Ceremonies,
210
Zogianze the City, 96.30
Doolac, a City of Marichans in Ca-
taly, 20.50
Coynce of Ruffia with a Horfman
and his Wife, the occasion of a
fight, 119.40
Collan in England, 556.40
Collan, the Tartarian name for
Alchi, 305.50
Coffin, the extent, 10
Mountains, called the Prigen-
ten Province, 63d. *Dalater*,
their Customs, ibid.
old extreme, in the uttermost of
the Tervise Zone, where one could
be hot or temperate, 896.40
old under some place in the Ter-
ridig Zone, 920.60 In the
Tervise Zone, 921.20
old near the North Pole, was so
valuable as the Nerds Point, 702.
20
old extreme in Tartarie, 27.
old thinking the breath, 415.1
the forcing men to dead, and
cutting off their Noses, 702.1
ibid.
old raises blisters on men's faces,
497.60
old unincubed, where, 497.60
When he began to relate in Noua
Zembra 499. And increase fa-
gawee, 502. & 503.50
of Russia, the experiments of
old Dragger then Fire, 406.20
old, 415.
old, 416. Irremediably flying, ibid.
old freeing the Clinates on mens
back, ibid.
old dipping the breast, 212.1
old prevents from Pariticism,
216.50
old in Noua Zembra, what the
Breast

THE TABLE

Bears and Foxes and Deer,
Snow-white.

Coldgiene Island, the Latitude, 533.
50. *Deferibed*, 536, 10.

Colima: the Province and Village
in the Wet Lands, the Latitude,
and distance from the Chocoma,
874, 60. The Commerce, 875, 1.

Collars worn in Head of Bands,
459, 40.

College in China, 386, 1 & 389,
20. & 398. The credits of the
Doctors therein, ibid.

Collins Cape in Greenland, 747,
10.

Colmache, the Country, 252, 30.

Colmans Point, 539, 30.

Colmogro in Russia, 214, 10 &
223, 30.

Colours abundance in Iapon and
China, 374, 10.

Colors the Towns, 575, 30.

Colt, what, 102, 10.

Columbus his Proposition to our
Henry the fourth, 807, 20, &c.

Comannas, are the Cumani, 53,
40. Whence they have their
name, 114, 30.

Commerce, where anciently was
situated, 575, 30.

310. & 12, 50. Confessions by
the Tartars, ibid. & 114, 30.

Called Valaxos and their Coun-
try Valania by the Dutch,
111, 1.

Combats for trial, still in Musco-
vey, 216, 60. The Combats
open upon the Crucifixion, 216,
60.

Combustions about the Suez-gate
in Russia, 430, 30.

Comedies of the Mexicans, 1049,
40. Birds, Elys, Tonder, &c.
Performed in them, 1049, 50.

Cometes in China, 18110

Comet seen by Day in Iapon,
1020, 60.

Comet seen in Iapon, Anno 1595,
326, 30.

Comet 1577, seven times days
fewer in Peru than in Spain, and
why, 925, 10. Its motion,

Cometa's Port, 556, 40.

Commencement in China, 500,
38, 40. And its Commence-
ment Henfu, 386, 1. The man-
ner of their Examination, ibid.

Common, all is enough! Tartars,
443, 1.

Common wealth first to be re-
stated, 443, 1.

Commonities of Pechora, Siberia,
Permia, Ougoria, and among
the Tungusies, 224, 40.

Commodities exported out of Chi-
na, 365, 10.

Communism, received but once a
year in the Russian Church,
452, 1. Confession before the,
order first to give both in a
Spouse, and then both receive
thereon, 455, 10. Their moun-
tain, 455, 10.

Complex Land, 239, 30.

Common beautiful Flowers, 242,
30.

Compacts made to go false by Iron
Nagles, 574

Compacts, the off-spawn, 242, 30.

Compact parties met in Shooland
lies, 667, Nor in Lofooter, 581,
50. See Variation.

Complements in China, 391, 20.

& 373, 30.

Completion in Ethiopia, 253, 10.

Completion between Spain and
Portugal, 330, 10.

Concha in China, 100, 10.

Concomites an Indian fruit, the
firsts and condiments, 955, 10.

Conducibus freely kept in Poland,
639

Confession how extorted in Rus-
sia, 54, 30.

Confession Sacramental, not known
to the Nestorians or Armenians,
38, 30.

Confession antiquary, initiated by
the Devil in his Hell Gynimes-
nos, 1041, 50. See Antiquaries.

Confession almost of self in Rus-
sia, 54, 30. See Story of the self.

Confutius, the Prince of the Law
in China, 347, 40. Honored
with a Holiday Sacrifices, Temple
and Mulckys, wine, &
397, 30. His Age, age, manners
and Authority, 345, 50 & 389,
30. His Country, 345, 30.
and in China, 365, 40. The
Confutius of his own, ibid. & 307.

Conquerors are to provoke the En-
emy to fight suddenly, but the
Defendants in to protract time,
148, 60.

Constellations in Asia, numbered
in China, 430, 30.

Contagion in Summer, occasioned
by mild winters, 657, 30.

Contaminate, a people at Turkey,
20, 60.

Contrast causing producing the
effects, 519, 10.

Contractions ended by killing
their wives, 437, 30. The Order
of the women, 437, 30.

Covertures of the Indians by the

Spaniards, who, 1035, 20, *Merc.*
 Conquered by Law, are freed to the
 Emperor of Russia, 459, 20;
 How much, 433, 20. How after-
 wards of, 434, 30
 Cooks in Cathay, 30, 10
 Corps of *Pavane kept in China*,
 337, 30
 Copper Mines very rich in, 337, 30
 Well known, 377, 10
 Copper worker, 299, 10
 Coppered by the Indians for
 to make their *Attitude* of,
 941, 50. *defiled* *new*. Copper
 was with Gold in the Mine,
 943
 Cuzco River in the, 943
 Cora's Kingdom, 334, 20. En-
 tred in hostile manner by the
 Indians, 335, 30. They wanted
Arrietas, *ibid.*
 Corstine the City and Kingdom,
 108, 30. *Wolfe's Learning* or
 Religion, *ibid.*
 Cossack Land, 308, 10
 Crag of *Reider*, 377, 10
 Corral of a *Maid*, very fine, 308, 10
Jane: from in piece, 965, 30;
 991, 10
 Gorge of *Wend* and *Har*—*be-
 lieved* in Tartary, 640
 Coats the Mountains people, of
 federal Religion, 70, 10
 Coats, under the Chimon, 965, 30
 377, 10. *Maiden* *believed* *in*
 and *believed* by the Chi-
 nes again, *Japan*, *ibid.*
 ready the China King, *ibid.*
 Coers in Russia, granted to the
 Swedes, 795, 20
 Coetsvone Country, 1243, 40
 475, 10. The *Filipino* *King* of,
 165, 80
 Coetsvone Fishing in China, 30
 309
 Coes fling on the new *Maid*,
 the meeting, 455, 50
 Coes was grown in the cold parts
 of Russia, 214
 Coes by with the Indians to
 from the new world, 297, 30
 Coes, *King*, only when, 297, 30
 Coes, 297, 30
 Coes on the ground, the Indians
 Caravans for the growing of,
 294, 40
 Coesation of the Emperor of
 Russia, the former *King* of,
 297, 30
 Coes—The *Coetsvone* State of,
 1243, 40
 Coes, *ibid.*
 Coesation of the King of,
 297, 30

THE TABLE.

20, 10. 160. *Hu Ching*, *ibid.*
 & 160. 10. *Hu Oath*, *ibid.*
 of *hu Cromie*, and *Enfigns*,
 1006, 1010. *Hu Amusing*,
 1009, 1010. *Hu Turned* and *En-
 figns of Wars* *there given him*,
ibid. 60. *Orations made to him*,
 of *hu Ching*, 1008, 11. 109, 9. 10.
 more *chastity*, *ibid.* 109, 10.
 1014, 40. *He is led to the Temple*
 in the continual *Fire before*
hu Coronation, *ibid.* *The Feast*
 and other *Ceremonies*, *ibid.* *They*
maile goe to see before their
Coronation, *insects in Prisoners*
 to sacrifice to their God, at the
Inauguration, 1008, 109, 1017
 20. *The King offers Incense* and
Prayers, *ibid.* 1017, 10.
Griffins *landed*, 1014, 40. 1018.
 40. *Hu Rakes*, and *Emerald*
hang on his Nephew, *ibid.*, &
 1016. 1. *Marker*, *etc.* at their
Coronation, 1019, 40.
Coronation of the Ingus of Peru,
the Ceremonies, 1055, 10.
Corpo Santo *shown at feast* at *Sea*,
 73, 20.
*Corpus Christi Feast of the Pa-
 pists*, *initiated by the Pope*,
 1040 40. 50. and in *Peru*,
 1045, 50.
Corrientes the Cape in the West
Indies, the distance from the Equi-
noctial, 891, 40.
Cortez the Spaniard *his frange at*
temple in Mexico, 1013, 40. *Hu*
affits there, 1034, & *hu*. *His va-*
lour, *see also the Page*, 1118.
 1119, 40.
Cosacka of Russia, 766, 777.
 40. *They are barbers* *and* *etc.*
 11, 243, 30. *Of the Law of Mil-*
lunet, 140, 40. *Of their Civil*
Wars, 33, 10. *Fights with*
Tatars, *ibid.*
Cotin German *married in Norway*,
 656, 40.
Cotton and Caracoms, a drink
of Mars milk, *here prepared*
Tatars, 530, & *of Mars*
Mars milk for these *Princes*,
 530. *The effects of Colima*
drunk by a Stranger, 9, 10.
Colima *phonetic* for a *hunger-*
fed man, 40, 30.
Colima *affits poured out to their Li-*
bers by the *Tatars*, *before their*
liberty, *drinks of it*, 4, 30, 40, &
 39, 10.
Colima *affits* *Mars*, *on the*
most dangerous, 830, 40. *The Prince*
Sacrifices with, on the 28, of
 40, 30. *ibid.*
 Colmas, the *Christians* of the
 Greek Church, *hold themselves*
Economic *that they drink it*
 9, 50. & 10. 30. *And think*
themselves damned for it, 10.
They hold that and Carven ac-
countable, as *things frangled* and
offered unto *Idols*, *ibid.* 10. *The*
signific of this Drink, keeps
the Tatars from being *Christi-*
ans, *ibid.*
 Colma the River, 335, 40.
 Cotam the Province where, 74, 60.
 Coran the Kingdom, 311, 50.
 Where, 313, 20.
 Corian Marble or *lapis*, *deare*
fold in China, 363, 20.
 Costa Rica, the *sunniest part* of the
 West Indies towards the North,
 the centre of its Jurisdiction, *see*
Tonnes, *Mars*, *ibid.*
 Coiting Surch, *on Nio Zemba*,
 579, 40. *merc.*
 Cotton Tree described, 106, 20.
 Cotton grain first of, 70, 10.
 Cotton itself grows like Apple,
 957, 50.
 Cotton infinite flow in China, 381,
 60.
 Coulam, 106. *Christians* & *Jews*
miss there. *The Commodities*,
 106, 20.
 Council of Wars in Tartary, 68,
 40.
 Counsellors of State, *embodied in*
Russia, 455, 1. *Some used only*
for State, and *not for Council*,
 427, 50. *Their Names in*
Dutch *Fletchers* *time*, *ibid.* *Their*
Office, *Sitting days*, and *houses*,
 438, 10.
 Countries *between* *Russia* and *Ca-*
stary, 799.
 Court of the Tartarian Prince, 16,
 40.
 Court of the China Kings *styled*
vous, 393.
 Courtiers the use of them, 523, 1.
 Courtship of Tartars, 88, 60.
 Courtier required, 219, 1.
 Courtier in the Fifth Cardinal's
 house, 391, 10.
 Cows with lumps on their backs,
 877, 30.
 Cowes sung to, at milking, 740, 10.
 Cow-horns Garments in Russia,
 460, 30.
 Cowes *taile* for a Present, 242, 10.
 Crane, a Portraile of the Temples
 in the Holy Land, and 39, 10.
 Cranes of *fine* *generals*, for 36, 30.
 Crane Feathers *newes* for *Knights* of
 Tartars, 629.
 Crasneyar, 243, 39.

Creatures of the *same kind*, *different*
in form and quality, according
 to their natural places, 371-2
 Creation not heard of in China, 371-2
 Creeples how few to work in China, 371-2
 Crime the *Land*, and Crime
 Tatars, they see Mahometans, 376.1
 376.6
 Crim Tatars their Country, 414-4
 418-419
 Crim Tatars inhabit the Taurica
 Chersonesus, 632. Called Per-
 cepotians, 632. They inhabit
 the Country of Moldavia. Po-
 sitive *Account*. Amongst the Tukes
 and the Genghis, 633. Their
 Castles, Forts, and Garrisons, 633.
 They marry the Genghis, 633.
 Their Diet, of their Chief
 Tatars, 633. The chief Palace
 of their Chan, 634-40. Their
 Sepulchres, 634. Their Country
 and the Commodities, their *Cute*
 Commerce (whence their name of
 Crim), 635. Their *Manners* and
 Customs, 635. Their *Language*, 635.
 How and when they came to
 Taurica, 637-39. Disputed
 from Gengis Chan, their Nobil-
 ity, Princes, and their subjec-
 tion, and their *alliance* to the
 Turke, 640. Enriched of their
 Chan, 638-40. The Princes
 Chan, 638-40. Their *Arms*, 639.
 Their *Weapons*, they have
 640. 641. 638-40. They have
 Artillery, the education of their
 Children, 641. Their *Reli-
 gion*, Laws without Lawyers, no
 delays, &c. 641. No wages, or
 excise, 641. 639. Till now
 amongst their Diet, *Love*, *Love*, *Love*,
 amongst them, 641. Their *Reli-
 gion*, 641. Their *Religion*, 641.
 Their *Companions* with his Neigh-
 bours, 641. 40. And with the
 Turke, 640-1. Their *Warres*, and
 what brings it to the end, 641.
 Their *Love* of *Honour*, their
Arms, *renewed* of *Princes*,
 and *renewed* of *Princes*,
 Ensigns, 642. 642. Discipline,
 Ensigns, Military *trains*, 643
 643
 Crim Tatars, their *War* with the
 Ruffia, 439-40. The cause of
 their quarrel, 439. His *Hosts*
 enter Oates out of the Russian
 Empire, Cap 440-1. Theimes
 of his *making* the *Rube*, 440-1
 440-1. The *War*, 440-1. *Ap-
 prell* like the *Rube*, 440-1.
 Though *path* a *River*: is their *hard-
 ness*, 440-1.

affligit, Isachias, ibid. A *Store*
of *the* *destruction* the Hungarians
and *with* *their* *vows* *Sold.* 440.
30. *Their* *Seigns*, *Strangers*,
and *contempt* *of* *Death*, *ibid.*
Desire *of* *Captives*, *their* *proudest*
to *carry* *them*. *Their* *Religion*,
ibid., *reuerence* *to* *their* *Princes*,
Myrrour, *Succours*, *Marrriages*,
Nobility, *Dynst.* *and* *deuelings*,
441. *They* *in* *their* *Horse* *bild*
and *drinke* *in* *the* *same* *manner*
or *wandering* *Gites*, 442.
Frontiers, *Complexions*, *Poisons*,
Speech, *Songs*, *Archery*, &c.
ibid. *The* *finest* *forts*, *Tribes*,
and *appellations* *of* *Tatars*, *ibid.*
They *naturally* *bare* *the* *Ruffe*,
451, 50. *And* *that* *binders* *the*
Conversion, 460, 60.
Crimians. *Citie* *of* *the* *Crim*
Tatars, 635. *The* *Siens* *of* *the*
ibid.
Crimnall matters *how* *proceed*,
in *Russia*, 474
Crimson colour, *the* *derivation*
of *the* *word*, 447 50
Crying *of* *Commodities* *about* *the*
Affairs *in* *China*, 209
Curlew or Curleu, *Nefflorion* *Cors-*
ary *in* *Italy*, 75, 10
Crocodiles, *for* *Lizards*, *Their* *Cre-*
atures, *their* *manner* *of* *feeding*:
their *battles* *with* *the* *Tygers*:
Storie *of* *an* *Indians* *killing* *a*
Crocodile, 911, 10, 10
Crocodiles dipping *the* *Canon*,
875, 50
Crown Staffs carried before *the*
Flags *of* *Russia*, 447, 7
Cruel much used *in* *the* *Chinese*
Church, 455, 10. *They* *flog*
themselves *with* *it*, *ibid.* *Which*
is *their* *ordinary* *Thawking* *for*
Sleeps, *Meats*, &c. *They* *arm*
themselves *with* *it*, *and* *accuse*
in *this* *usage* *of* *a* *true* *Chri-*
tian, *ibid.* *They* *incure* *no* *pen-*
itence, *ibid.*
Crosses of Choke made *upon* *their*
Doors *on* *Twelfth-day*, 455,
50
Croße used *at* *the* *Ordination* *of*
Priests *in* *the* *Greek* *Church*,
447, 50
Croße the figure used *at* *the* *Bap-*
tismation, *at* *a* *Coronation*, 431, 10
Croße, the Magistrate Priests *bless*
within, 227. Yet *in* *the* *Baptisme*,
239, 50
Croße carryed *at* *Assemblies* *for* *in-*
dication, 667, 40

THE TABLE.

Crocodile *in bed and Contrapunctus*,
43 f. *In his bed the Crocodile*
is performed, thus: This is done
by Corporal and books; Oath, ibid. See
Crucifixion.
Croffle made by the Negroians and
Armenians without Christ upon
Cf., 13.50-67 32.10
Crown, Riches, and Holy-water,
how they served a Tartarian Lady
Croffle addressed on an Ensign by a
Tatar Prince : The flowers de-
vise, and Coubai Chan desires it,
82.30
Croffle, the Chinese asseple by the
Character Tan, 90.1. Reven-
dence, ibid.
Croffles of Latemar in the Well in-
ferred, where the Spaniards came
thither, 87.5-20
Croffle Conflagration scene in the
Landscape, Landscape taken by, but
includes, 100.1. The distances
from the South Pole.
Croffle Island described, 47.30-30
53.1. Croffle Land, 233.30
Croffle Road in Greenland, the
Latitude, 70.4. And variation
of the Compass, ibid., 67.
53.1
Croffling after the Japonian manner,
335.10
Crowes, whose dang is the
Warmer, 99.3
Crowes fix of the Russian Em-
peror, 741.30
Crowes of the Kings of Peru,
1059.1. Of speech of Mexico,
the King of Mexico,
like that of the Duke of Venice,
1005.10
Crucifixe fourre upon, 217.1-10.
See Crucifix.
Crucifixe, the Chinese sapfirous
Crucifixe, 13.35.40. The
judgment upon it was, ibid.,
report that were drawn of it,
ibid.
Crucible made of burnt bones; heat-
ed, 951.49
Crusado Preach against the Tar-
tars, 66.1. 67.1. To, 67.10
The Emperor's, 67.10. 67.10
Cuba Land, the first Name, 67.10
Discovered, the length and
breadth, Latitude, Description,
Manners, their people, Cities, Trees,
Miner, first planting, Villages,
Rivers, Caves, distance of place,
865
Cabangu Island, but three Legues
completing, 999.30. The Pearlf-
ishing remore thence to Mar-

garia. <i>The Isles by</i> , 866.	2
<i>The Lattinids; and</i> , <i>See also</i> 866.	2
Dublii Chan, <i>the chief of</i> , 10.	68.4
Tatarian Prince, 66.10.	68.4
nico and Muffio <i>their Journey</i>	68.4
yers long, <i>in his Court</i> , ibid.	68.4
Tatar, <i>entertainment</i> , <i>Hu quae</i>	68.4
<i>fluorite</i> <i>them about</i> <i>the</i> <i>Christi</i>	68.4
ans, 68.30. <i>Sends to</i> <i>the</i>	68.4
for Preacher, ibid. <i>Hu</i>	68.4
Dublii Chan, <i>signify Lord</i>	68.4
Lord, 81.40. <i>A most mighty</i>	68.4
and, <i>Hu</i> <i>defeat</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	68.4
Wydow, <i>etc.</i> , <i>ibid.</i> <i>Hu</i>	68.4
scription, 82.40. <i>Hu</i>	68.4
Dublii Chan, 114.10. <i>A</i>	83.1
an, <i>Christi</i>	83.1
an, <i>Christi</i>	83.1
Dublii Chan, <i>82.10</i> <i>the</i>	83.1
lately, 82.20. <i>How</i> <i>the</i> <i>re</i>	83.1
to <i>Soldiers</i> , 82.30.	83.1
uchimimicos <i>who</i> <i>in</i> <i>China</i>	83.1
umani <i>or</i> <i>Comania</i> <i>the</i>	83.1
des, <i>defeated</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
umberlands <i>lit.</i> , <i>the</i>	83.1
unethers <i>the</i> <i>Lake</i> ,	83.1
unethers <i>Mans</i> <i>in</i>	83.1
land, <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
unethers <i>Force</i> , <i>a</i> <i>Silv</i>	83.1
<i>Mans</i> , 824.20. <i>The</i> <i>Lai</i>	83.1
tsu, <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
ups of <i>China</i> , <i>like</i> <i>Nat</i>	83.1
of <i>Cave</i> <i>Nat</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
tsu, <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
or <i>Cyrus</i> <i>the</i> <i>River</i> , <i>their</i>	83.1
names <i>name</i> <i>to</i> <i>the</i> <i>Curg</i> , <i>or</i> <i>Ge</i>	83.1
origins, 40.10. <i>Fall</i> <i>into</i>	83.1
raczes, <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
an <i>of</i> <i>Ham</i> <i>of</i> <i>Cilicia</i> , <i>where</i>	83.1
tsu, 51.50. <i>or</i> <i>70.50</i>	83.1
indistinct <i>in</i> <i>Peru</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
birds <i>dryed</i> <i>as</i> <i>herd</i> <i>in</i> <i>tr</i>	83.1
tsu, 5.60. <i>How</i> <i>up</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
tsu, <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
of <i>a</i> <i>Tartarian</i> <i>Lady</i> <i>by</i>	83.1
Armenian <i>Man</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
Arifler, <i>Beil</i> <i>in</i> <i>Cambalu</i> ,	83.1
Armenia, <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
62.8. <i>Calid</i> <i>Curand</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
Armenian <i>Curand</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1
Armenians <i>in</i> <i>China</i> , 373.10.	83.1
Armenians <i>payed</i> <i>by</i> <i>Mercen</i>	83.1
Armenians <i>in</i> <i>China</i> , <i>Corsets</i> <i>taken</i>	83.1
Armenians, 30. <i>How</i> <i>of</i> <i>the</i>	83.1
Armenians <i>by</i> <i>the</i> <i>Officer</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	83.1

Customers

THE TABLE.

Customs of the West Indians,
China, 395.40
Corrupts their punishment, 391.40
Cuzco, the chief City of Peru, de-
scribed, the Style and Commem-
oration about it, 894.40

D

D, the Chinois want it, 328.
Dacia is not Denmark, 60. 20
Darius, is comprehended Tran-
silvania, Walachia, and Molda-
via, ibid.
Dart or the Vo in Iapon, the Of-
fice, 324.10. *Tutelar King*, ibid.
Daman the Island, 168. 20. *Heb*
the Damask, the Chinois leave
to make them, 321
Damasque were by the Tartars
for the Christians, 122. 30. Be-
trayed again by Calicut to the
Saracens, 123. 10. Besieged a-
gain, but in vain, 124
Dampes and darkness of the Sil-
ver Mines, 946. 30
Dancing curious in Mexico, on the
Kaps, 1065. 10. 10
Danes Fishing in Greenland, 731
Danes come out of Scandinavia 630. 10.
When first: their humane Sa-
crifices and Dismanters, ibid.
The extent of the word Danes,
and their general invasions of
England, ibid. &c. Their sym-
ptoms of England. Their Mas-
sacre, and revenge, 621. More of
their Stories, ibid.
Danegelt, 611. 10
Danielus Stolbe, on the Coast of
Lapua, 540
Darkness in the day time, 499.
494. 50. How long it held, 499.
Darize a City in Armenia, 69. 30
Date is not medicinal for the
Plasque, Dropsie & Splene, 103.
30
Dates the best, where, 70. 10
Daughters dissolute, a shame to
the Parents, 1044. 40
Daisy, but three Voyages, 465. 30
Day of time strongly felt within a
very short space, 929. 10. The
Philosophical reason for it, ibid.
Day and Night of many Months
long, 107. 10
Day light, three Months together,
617. 40
Day long time together, 574. 37.5.
576. &c.
Daytime weeks long, 580. 50

Days good or bad, observed in
China, 395.40
Days many Months long in He-
land, 647. 30
Days names of the Mexicans,
1135.40
Days, the fine old ones lost every
year at Mexico, 1050. 10
Days and Nights made longer or
shorter, by the Obliquity or
rightitude of the Zenith, why
longer in England than in Italy
or Spain: *Discusses about the*
Proposition, 920. 40. 50.
Day, see Night.
Daytime means neglected by the
Tartars, 443. 10
Deacon, one under every Parish
Priest in the Greek Church,
448. 30. His Office, ibid. *Mat-*
ter in the Catholic Church, ibid.
Deacons of the Rutenian Chris-
tians married, 38. 50
Dead not spoiled by the Tartars,
94.1
Dead bodies and their figures wor-
shipped by the Indians, 1028. 50
Dead eaten in the Indies, where,
890. 30
Deformed people kept by the Mex-
ican Kings, 1128
Dead, the Tartars abomination of
them, 36. 60. And these that
touch them, 38.40. & 8.30
Dead, the Chinois burne in secret,
368. 10. How carried to the bur-
iall, their Superstitions about
their Coffins, ibid.
Dead, their Household Gods purged
with Fire in Tartars, 441
Dead how consumed whole by the
West Indians, a Philosophical
way, 994
Dead kept unborn all winter in
Russia, Prayers said over their
Graves, 456.40
Dead worshipped by the West Indi-
ans, and their Figures also, 1028.
50. Children Sacrificed to them,
1059. 30. People killed to serve
them in the next World: their op-
inion of the State of the Dead,
Gold and Garments buried with
them, and meates brought to their
Graves, ibid. Their buryall of the
Dead, ibid.
Deacons the Russian Church, 447.
10
Dearth, the Tartars promise a-
gainst it, 87. 50. Fatherly Re-
vile, ibid.
Dearth provided against, 276. 20
Debtors cruelly sold, 434. 20. En-
forced to sell Wives and Children,

and to see their Creditors Bond.
fines, ibid.
Debtors, a Circle draws about
them, which they pass not, till
they have payed all, 109. 10
Debtors how sold in China, 204. 10
Deerpes Cape, 599.40
Deere all without Horns in the
West Indies, 963
Deere tame, and why, 270.40
Deere in Greenland, 703
Deere white, in Nova Zembla, 577.
50
Degrees of Learned men, three in
China, 385. 30. Their habits,
how distributed into the Provin-
ces and Cities, ibid. & 386. 60
Degree, in 20 Spanish leagues, 8. 56
Dely and Chytor, the Kingdoms,
280. 30
Demetrius, divers others, supposers
of that name after him, 70.
The Story of the second Demetrius,
770. 30. 30. Counterfeits the
hand-writing of the former. His
speech to the Scottish Captains
of his Guard, Upholden by the
Poles, ibid. Foraken by the
King of Poland, besieges Molo
with an Army of Russians, 779.
60. The Poles and Russes join-
ing against him, he is mortu-
red by a Tartar, 780. 1. His
true name was Vor, 786. 10.
The Poles promise to kill him,
ibid. He marries the Wife of
the former Demetrius, and his
leader an Army of Russes and
Poles, ibid. Other pretenders of
that name, 788. 30
Demetrius the Greek, 707
311. &c. Stayes at Cabul, 312.
Comes out to Hianchin, 313. In
danger there, ibid. Threatened to
be flame, ibid.40
Derbent, or the Porta Ferrea, 12.
Derbent is Miralis, 110. 30
Derbent in Media, a City of
Turkes. The English Mer-
chants trade thither, 245. & 246.
Variation of the Compass there,
247. 10. The Wall described, ibid.
Derbent at the foot of Caucasus, 113
30. Destroyed by the Tartars, ibid.
Demetrius Prince of Russia mur-
thered, 744. 50. Boris suspected
for it, 745. 1. Hee or an Ang-
lisher in his name, eludes the Em-
peror in Boris his name, 750. 1. A
false Philisur over him crucified at
Moscow, His Letters to the No-
bilities at Moscow, after the death
of Boris, 753. His Messengers
tormented, 753. 20. Acknowled-
ged for the true Demetrius by a
Prince, *Consequenter*, ibid. 40.
His pretences, 755. 60. His
Aide from the Pope and Po-
land, 756. Makes himself
known first, to the Jesuites in
Poland, 576. 10. The Conditions
of Assistance, is aided by Po-
land: is his first fortune, A
Priest's ballard, his prayer be-
fore any Battle, is defeated, and
defeated. Some places yield to
him, 757. He proffer to Boris
refused, hee and Boris impeach
one another of Magicke, ibid. 30.
Get the Empire, his first Acts
in favour of the Poles, and Jesu-
ites, 757. Sends for a Wife into
Poland, offers a League a-
gainst the Turkes. His dis-
sent to the English Agents, and
pass to him, Favors the Eng-
lish, 758. His true name, ibid.
20.40. Sends to certify the
King of England of all. Com-
mends the Emperor Boris his
Letter to King James, from Sir
Thomas Smith, Grants a new
Commission to our Merchants,
759. & 760. His Articles of
Contract with his Wife, 761. 30.
&c. Her Sentence. He promises
to bring in Poperie: both Crow-
ned, a Confiracoe against him,
his Guards of forerunners, quar-
rels betwixt the Polish Ambas-
sador and him, 761. Proves an
impostor by his own witness,
land, 761. In a Confiracoe, his
Carcase continually used:
his Wife & the Poles ill used, 763.
His vice script up, his Parentsage
and Education, His person, and
manners, 764. His intention for
change of Religion, his treas-
surers, his Ojions before his
death, which is reported another
way, 765. His Acts and death
described by his Successor, which
begin, Page, 765
Derbent, new Fortifications built by
it, by the Tartars, 126. 50
Deolation, false laid downe in the
Cart, 596. An Island in the West
of Greenland, 97. 60
Deolation or Groineland, 465. 60
Dele promontory: the Land, 556.
40
Deffada, the Latitude, 85. 40
Diadem of the Kings of Peru,
1054. 60. What and how worn,
1055. 1. Of the Mexicans,
1062. 50

THE TABLE.

Dall in China, 246. 30
Diamonds fore in Shar by Bactria
800
Diamonds found, 109. 30
Diamonds where, and how found,
105.40
Dice play frequent in China, 595.
30
Digges Island, the Latitude, 609.
60. The South-Sea open to
that, ibid.
Dingo a Russian Coy worth a Pen-
sion, 52. 30
Dinic a Frini, sates for Driocke,
226.40
Disaford in Island, 597.40
Discoveries of Spain and Portu-
gall by East and West, meete at
China and the Philippines, 939
Discoverie of a Passage in 47. Or-
ient, from the South Sea to the
North Sea, 830
Disease of the Spaniards hearts, cre-
ated by Indian Gold, 1111. 1
Disputation of Frier William with
the Malatras & Nestorians, 41.
50. & 42. 10. &c.
Displing used by the Mexicans in
their Laws, 1035. 60
Distances of the chief Harbour
betwixt Spain and the Indies,
85. 8. 59
Dithmar Bleskins, his Travels to
Island, 643. Into Greenland,
651. Almost killed with the
Mountain Hecla, 635. Passes
into Portugal, ibid.
Duc-doppers strange ones in life-
hold their brack, 597. 1
Duell could do nothing, when a
Christian was by, 45. 20
Duell invoked in a Temple, 308.
60. Answers to the Chinois,
309. 1. 10. Worshipped, 283. 10.
109. 30. And why, 201. 50
The West Indians familiarize
with him, his imposture, and Sa-
crifices: but both his Confessors,
and Pythagorean Monks, the
manners of their Conversations,
973. 974. Images of his, his
threatning of Temples, &c. 974.
For what end hee foretells things
to come, 1020. 30. in margin.
Hungry for Mans flesh, 1039. 10
Duels carrying away men in Ca-
thays, 246.
Duell painted white, and their Idols
black, where, 105.40
Duels consulted with in China,
395. 60
Duels carrying away Men, 75. 30.
1062. 50

Duell how worshipped a Ship-
board by the Chinois, 318. 20.
30.40. His power in Island,
646. 10
Duine Apuleague of the King of
France, 612. 30
Duinitie thought by the Indians, to
be in any thing that was rare in its
kind, 1028. 30
Duination of the West Indians,
1043. 50. Their trickes, 1044. 1
Duinites, are the Tartarian Priests
8. 20. Called Can, 14. 40
Duination used in China, 309.
70
Duinoce for barrenesse urged in
Russia, 744. 30
Duinoce in Mexico, and the Con-
ditions, 1044. 40
Duell is irreparable, 1026. 10
Duinoers are the Tartar Priests,
22. 10. Like banished Chaplains,
ibid. Their Offices, ibid. 40
Duinations by juring of Duell, 38.
50
Duination in Tartary, by the
Jeweller bones of Hammer, 31.
20. 30. &c.
Duell imitates Christian Cere-
monies, 331. 30
Dial, going with water, strength,
409. 30
Dialling first brought into China,
329. 60. & 329. 20
Diet of the Chinois, 305. 50
Dying of Colours in the West In-
dies a strange way, 388. 1
Dyes of China, nange, 366.40
Dyets for the Chinois, how long they
hold their brack, 597. 1
Dyeing an house together, 972.
40
Doctors title, before their doors in
China, 370. They are the No-
blest people, 371. 10. Their res-
tation is due easily, ibid.
Doctship, a great Dignitie in
China, 372. 20
Doffical Mountain in N. 60. 27
661. 20
Dogs eaten in China, 381.40
Dog-Fish, barkes, 605. 30
Dogs used, to expell Poison,
92. 10
Dogs of Groneland described. u-
feful, as the like Horses, 838.40
Dogs deare then Children in He-
land, 649.40
Dogs drawing in Stids, their swift-
ness, 524
Dogges, the Indians companions,
961. 10
Dogs how deest and eaten in Chi-
na, 179. 10
Dogs

THE TABLE.

Dogs, *draw their Carts in* Albania, 16, 20
 Diggon Island, upon the River of Pechora, 53. See *also* pag. 318.
 50. Two of that name, *ibid.* 20
 Domingo City in Hispaniola, described, the distance from Spain, Latitude, Villages about it, and their several distances, first peopling, Commodities, &c. 861.
 St. Domingo City in Hispaniola, described, 993
 Dommes Hall, a Bay, 223, 20
 Dano, a title of Hoveat in Japon, 324, 20
 Dax a Cathayan King, and his Race Court, 89, 20. His Penance, *ibid.*
 Dolnabak or Boates in Russia, 243, 10
 D swines great in Russia, 454, 1
 Dragon, the Armes of the King of China, 392
 Dragons in the West Indies, 976
 Dragons, the Chinese superstition about them, 391, 60
 Dragoons, 91, 50. How taken, 91, 1.
 Their Oil medicinal, *ibid.*
 Drie Sea, by the River Pechora, 53, 60
 Drinks made of Rice, Mill and Honey, 4, 50. And of Mares milk, 5, 30. And of Cowes Churne milke, 9, 10
 Drinks hot in China, 366, 1
 Drinks Offerings in China, 391, 1
 Drinking games, 392, 30
 Drinks of Rice, excellent, 25, 50
 Lake white wine, 27, 50
 Drinks of the Mexicans in practice insupportable before Death, 1049, 10
 Drinks hot in China, good for the Stomack and the Stone, 391, 50
 Drinking Feasts of the Tartars, 4, 30, 40, &c. Musick at them, 4, 60
 Drinking Feasts of the Islanders, 646, 60
 Drinking away ones selfe & Children, 225, 60
 Doina River in Russia Navigable one thousand miles, 744, 10
 Drondan in Norway in Nordfria. An Archipelago Sea, 651, 30
 Drugs of the West Indies the kinds, and uses, 959, 40, 50, 960, 1
 Drums huge ones, 438, 1
 Drums, to make their Horses goe, 226, 1

Drummes used in stead of Bell, 10, 9
 Drunkards are for the Emperours service in Russia, 431, 40. Why they increase, 432, 40
 Drunkenness not painful in Tartarie, 432, 30
 Ducks going and returning, at a sound of Drumme, 270
 Ducks how fed in China, 374, 40. Artificially bred, *ibid.*
 Sir Dudley D eggs his Cape, the Latitude, 846, 40
 Duina the River, 213, 60, & 223, 50. Duina the River, 415, 40
 Duina the River, where it falls into the white Sea, 522, 20
 Duke of Brabant's Stile, in the year 1241.
 Duties in Russia of the fourth degree of Nobility: their degrees from younger Brothers, 425, 30. They have no inheritance, glad to be Serving-men, *ibid.*
 Duing a good Commodity in China, 189, 40
 Dung, Bread baked in it, 24, 20
 Dung brought by the River of Taber, 270, 40
 Dung of Birds a strange report of it, 266
 Dutch disturb the English at Greenland, 466. See Netherlands. And againe, 467, 1. & *ibid.* 2, 1. The English take some of their Fox from them, *ibid.* At difference with the English there, *ibid.* 60. They Fish perverse, braues and threatens the English, and is surprised, 468, 1, 10. They returne to Greenland to drive away the English, *ibid.* 40. They assault the English, *ibid.* Boat and rifle them, and overthrow their Voyage, 569, 1, 10. So doe they the next two or three years after, they spoiled the Greenland Discoverers, 472, 60. Some Discoveries of theirs, towards New Zembila, 473, &c. Their hard Voyages thither, *ibid.* 474, &c. They are forced to Winter and build a House thereabout, 490, &c. They often and dangerous Fights with the Beavers, *ibid.* The Election under which they Winced, 497, 10. They live upon Foxes, 494, &c. They get to Sea againe, 508, 1. Their dangerous Voyage into Russia, 508. Their admirable returne into Holland, 518
 Dutch men in Tartarie, fit to

E

Eagle found by the Mexicans by Oracle, and worshipped: the Story of it, 1004, 40. Strange form of another Eagle there, 1021
 Earthquakes in Island, 649, 1
 Earth in China strong like Gold, 265, Marg.
 Earth brought to be sown, 339, 40
 Earth why it does not alone with the Primus Mobile, 924, 10
 Earthquake in China, 269, 60
 Earthquakes, a Philosophical discourse of them, 940, &c. Affinities between burning Mountains and them: they happen nearst to the Sea, and in by some runne a hundred leagues, *ibid.* Their effects, why they make before, when they mostly happen, 941
 Earthquakes in China, 198, 10, 20, &c.
 Earthquakes frequent in Peru, whenever they proceed, 895, 20
 Earthquake a prodigious one in the West Indies, 868, 10
 Earrings generally worn by the Rustle women, 460
 East wind raises within the burning Zone, 923, 50. Heatful, called the Brise, Cause of the Brises, 924
 East the Russes have a Festival greater then it, 763, 50. This is about the fourteenth or sixteenth of May. Confers the place page 764, with page 764.
 East in Russia how kept, 227, 60. They salute and kiss one another, 228, 1. On the Eve they sleep in the Church, 227, 50
 Eastern people generally have little Eyes, 23, 50
 Eating meere, a Tartarian House, 228, 20
 Eating of Men sacrificed in Mexico, 1073
 Ebbs: and flowe much or little, what Sea

Sea due, and what do not, 989, 50
 Ebbing and flowing of several Seas. A great secret, 929, 50. Opinions of it.
 Ebony wood whence brought, 938
 Edibles the Chinese opinion of them, 345, 40, 346, 1
 Edibles the Chinese opinion of them, 345, 10. Bells beaten there, *ibid.*
 Edges hard discovered, 732, 10
 Elenborow in Scotland more Northerly then Mosco, and yet not so cold, and why, 472, 40
 Edessa the City, or Robats, 110, 50
 Eddie winds, 923, 40
 Egges at Easter given to the People, 227, 50. Dried or gilded, and carried in the hand, *ibid.* Exchanging them with their friends, 228, 1
 Egeria the Province, 80, 10
 Elements worshipped by the Mexicans, 1057
 Elements fire in China, 345, 50
 Elephants carrying wooden Coffers, 91, 20
 Elkes or Lothes, men ride upon them, 523, 60
 Elbing the English trade for Flaxe there, 627
 Elfenore in Denmarke, how bigge, 625, 50
 Emanuel Sina his mischance, 318
 Ember-weekes of the Heathen Mexicans, 1035, 40
 Embassy of the Russian Lords to the King of Poland: the points of it, 788
 Emeralds a Myne of them where, 884, 40, & 885, 50. How they grow, 889, 20
 Emeralds have the third place amongst Precious Stones: his value now. A prettie story of them, where in the Indies is the greatest store, and how used by the Indians: the Myne and manner of growing: greatness of some modern and ancient, 892
 Enchanted sleep, 45, 10. Sleeps enchanted, of three dayes long, 45, 10
 Enchantments of the Islanders: how they hinder ships from sailing, 646, 20
 Engines of battery, 97, 1
 Engines of wood to two ships, 341, 1
 English eyes first seen in Sweden, 772, 1. The conditions of their entertainment, 771, 1, 10. In di-

THE TABLE.

Arise at Sea, and landed in Luit-lan, *ibid.* Relieved by a Dane: the ship that brought them falls awaie. They are belicted in several Houses, in danger of the people, 773. Easily assayed by Gul-hin a Welchman, 774, 1. Bound in their beds, & bound, 774, 40. &c. Four of them layne, all in danger againe, relieved by the King of Denmark, offered to payne their Lieutenant, arrives in Sweden, 775. Full scale with the Burgers of Stockholm for escape, *ibid.* Relieved by the King, sent into Finland, and distress there at Sea, 776 of cold in Finland. Their miserable march into Russia, 776. They defeat the Chevaliers, 777. They meet the Russian Army, being engaged upon an Enemy, their own Army and Generall forsakes them, their valour, their Horse defeated, the first receive quarter, 779
 English right to the North-west passage, 86, 40. Their Difficulties that way, 80, 20
 English requests in Sweden, 621, 40. And Norway, 623. Two other places, 624, 50
 English finde America before Columbus his Voyage thither, 86, 20
 English flags advanced in the Colipian Sea, 241
 English houses in Russia, 755, 10
 English Merchants laine in a tumult at Mosco, 763, 30
 An Englishman his strange Adventures amongst the Tartars, 63, 40. His relation of them, *ibid.* Sent to the Tartars Messenger and Interpreter to Hungrie, 64, 10. His travels, 64, 10, 20, &c.
 English Voyages to the River Obi, 530, 40
 English Voyage to the West Indiae, 999, 40
 English ships on the Coast of China, 399, 40. Seized by the Chinese, The Spaniards would punish them as Enemies, 310, 40
 English suffer shipwreck in Meus, 246, 40
 Ensigne of the Tartars, 643, 1
 Entertainments in China: the fashion, 373, 20. A particular garment for it, *ibid.*
 Entertainments in China, 392, 1
 Epiphany of the several European Nations, 63, 1
 Epitaphia a Monastery in Cyprus, 125, 50
 Era reckoned by in Japon, 323, 40
 Etiboul the Kingdom in Tangut, 79, 50
 Etiboul the 11: Latine spoken there, 610. Their Language, Myne of Gold, trade &c. 611, 1
 Etiboul in Peru terrifies the People, 564
 Ethicks the Philosophy of China, 359, 2
 Ethicks and Politicks are the learning of Chinese, 343
 Ethicks the learning of China, 384
 Etoile or Volga dwelt in fesse, and where, 48, 10. Frozen over, 48, 10
 Etoile or Edel is Volga, 54
 Evilus the River Volga, 124, 40
 Everlasting punishment, notwithstanding by the Indians, 1247, 10
 Eunuchs in China, and why, 183, 30
 Eunuchs great men in China, 346, & sepe.
 Eunuchs are bed-chamber men to the Tartarian Emperour, 310, 60
 Eunuchs serve the Kings of China how made, &c. Their numbers, and choice, *ibid.*
 Eunuchs their authority in China, 349, 20, & 349, 40. Their baseness, 353, 20. And contentment, 355, 10, 20
 Euphrates the head of it, 450, 40
 Euphrates sends Southward at Carmath, 451, 1
 Europe when first peopled, 661, 50
 And whence, *ibid.*
 Europe parted from Asia, by the Don, 415
 Examination in Russia, is all by torture, 434. The cruelties, *ibid.*
 Examinations how taken in China, 188, 20, & 192, 50. & 203, 50
 Excess in luxury, dyet and apparel, unknowne to the Tartars, 639, 1
 Execution done by freeing to death, 373, 10
 Executions of death in Russia, 435, 1
 Exorcism in Baptisme used in the Russian Church, 451, 10
 Exorcising of Devils in China the manner, 398
 Extreme-vnction, a Russian Sacrament, 455
 Extreme-vnction, not knowne to the Nestorians or Armenians, 38, 30
 Eye-falce a prison one, 967, 50
 Eyes all the Chinese have blacke, 367

THE TABLE.

367.10. Their opinion of grey
471.
Ezra the Cite, where, 77.20

F

Faces square, 394.20
Faction in Russia raised by the
Emperor, 424.1. The wicked
eye beside of it, and his reason
for it, ibid.
Falks what, in Chinese, 319.20
Falks the best in the World, 71.1
Fall of a River very terrible, where,
902.20
Famine a mighty one in Russia, 752.
20
Famur, 'a Kingdom of Iaua, 104
Fam used in China, 183.50. How
made, ibid. The ordinary present
ibid.
Faria bio Alcantara, 252. 10. 263
Wracked and relieved by a Kite,
256. Elsewhere admirably.
Fist of the Neobrians three weeks
before Lent, 31.1. When begun
and ended, ibid. They eat flesh on
Fridays, ibid. Other of their
Rites, ibid.
Fist of the Armenians, five days
before Lent, for Saint Sorkis,
31.1
Fasting from flesh not observed in
Mugila, 800.1
Fasting in China from flesh, fish,
&c. 398.20
Fasting before visitation of Sepul-
chres, 393
Fasting broken by necessity, 19.30
Fasting of the Mexicans in honor of
their Gods: the extreme
strictness, 1025
Falls in time of drought in China,
406.10
Fate, all ascribed to it in China,
396.1
Faxiba Giogendono, & others all in
Japan: his doing, & intended
conquest of China, 224.0. His
Letters to the Spanish Viceroy,
ibid. Viceroy the Iaponian De-
luminis, ibid. He forbids the Je-
suists to preach, 325.1. Calls him-
self Taieloma, 225.30. Mu-
sters his men for China, ibid. He
desires to his Nephew, ibid. De-
fests the Coratians by his Leon-
tinae Augustine, ibid.1. Sends
200000. Iaponians to subdue
Corat, ibid. And it yet same to
give it over, 325.60. Recites: to
China Amab's doors with plates,
326. Builds most huge Palaces,
ibid. His palace to keep the la-

ponian Lords about him, 326.50
His building overthrown with
Earthquake, 326. Recites a
Crown sent by the Chinois, ibid.
Refuses to restore the Kingdom
of Corat, 327.1. Dyer, 327.1
Would be made a God: His Image
and Temple, ibid. His posterity
rested out, ibid.
Faite-foreland in Greenland, the
latitude, 719. Sun's refraction
there, ibid. & 720.1
Fayre-hauen, and whale-fishing
there, 467.1
Fayres, begun in the New Moone,
270.50
Féals, the order of the Tartar
Princes at them, 84.10. 20.30
Served on the knee, ibid. Muske
might be drakes, ibid.
The Tartarian Prince gave
change of Raiments when they
scold, 45.10
Féals their festival in China, 180
Feasts in China: vid. Banquets.
Feats of Altimite, 349.40
Feathers, the trade for them in Ru-
ssia, 805.30
Feather-pictures, see Pictures.
Feathers rich ones at the West In-
dies, 965
Feather work of the Indians, 1132
40
Feathers gotten by the bying of an
Ass, 995.10
Feet been warmed in Groneland,
65.130
Feet, a great beauty for women to
have them little in China, and
why, 376.1. How the Chinois
make them little, 182.20
Felon good confessor, 429.40
Felt much used in Tartaria, 3.40
& 4.20. & 6.40. Images of it,
4.30. How made, 6.40
Ferdinandus the Isenite, recovers
Goetz his goods, by eating of
Pork, 216.20
Fertile without rain, 89.40
Festivals in Peru, the occasion
of them. The Sacrifices offered,
1045. And in Mexico, 1046
Fidelity of an Infidel, 1047.0.
Fight of the Indian Jontes for fish,
979
Finmack Coast described, 223.1
Fist-tree, most useful for Russia,
419.20
Fishes and fishing of the West In-
dies, 986.987. The varieties,
9.90

Fish lined upon, 223.20
Fish used for Bikes, and Beasts,
meats, 106.60
Fish stained with Ox dung in Chi-
na, 205.60. Pandred with Pe-
per, 106.60
Fish for feeding of Cattle, 649.40
Fish that give suck, ibid. 8. in
marg.
Fishes that fly, 923
Fishes strange ones, 226.60. 20.1
Fishes charmed for denouncing
Pearle-fishers, 104.40
Fishes delight in the light, 647.30
The abundance in Island, with the
manner of preserving them, ibid.
Fishing with a fish in India, 694.20
Fishing with a fish of time in Island,
647.30
Fishing for the whale in India, the
strange manner, other fashions of
Indian Fishings, 931.50. 932.1
Fish skins for covers of houses, they
use a little, 617.30. marg.
Fifty Cities, the Chinois and their
quarters withall, 181.50
Fiunga the Kingdom, 322.30
Fighting of men, and putting others
in their skins, used in Mexico,
1031.30. & 1038.40
Flushing their land, where, 488.20
Flutes of earth in Mexico, 104.90
I made malefactors confess their
finnes, 1047.1
Floco discover: Island by Raines,
654.50
Flokawogur, a Haven in Shelfe
land, 654.40
Flood known to the Chinois, 376
10
Florida discovered first by the Eng-
lish, 8.8
Florida the extent of the govern-
ment of it: the altitude discov-
ered and peopled. A firm Land
next to Europe of all the Indies,
yates journey by Land thence in-
to Spaine: occasion of the name;
Fable of a Spring with the refresh-
ment, the Air, Soil, Fruits,
gold, Fairs, &c. 868. 40. &c.
The Haven, Ports adjacent from
Los Martyres and Cuba: salu-
taries of places, the places where
newer Gold nor People is: the
Rivers and Isles of it. 869. Begin-
ning of that Country properly
called Florida. No passage that
was out of the North nor up
South Seas, 870.1, 870.1
Flowers the plenty in China, 581
20
Flowers

THE TABLE

Flowers much esteemed in the West
Indies. Flowers of Europe thence
better there, the variety there,
959. 1.10
Flies infuse store, come to the fish,
233.30
Flies, wasps, &c. Of the West
Indies, 996.10
Flying fishes described, 988.50. A
bope of a Northwest passage that
way, 843.20. Store of Whales
there, ibid. The latitude, 845.1
Flying in the Air, the Mexican
Sorcerers believe they do, 1043
60
Fogge proceeding from Ice, 521.10
Fogges at Sea looking like the land,
566.50
Fogo Islands: the latitude, 831.30
Foolish Sparrows of India de-
scribed, their admirable Naits
to escape off the Monkeys, 980
49
Foot-prints of the Indians, 1054.
1058
For-doers of them/selves, how buried
in China, 189.1
Fortresses extreme over, 282.50
Fortifications in China, the man-
ner, 301.50. &c.
Fortune-telling in China, 395.50
Fort in Groneland, 824.50
Fount of Baptisme, the blessing,
229.30
Fount of Baptisme, wherein the Em-
perours use to be christned, kissed
& sworn upon in Russia, 783.20
1059
Fowls a story of strange flights of
the, 998.0. &c.
Fowles carefully kept by the Mexi-
can Kings, and why, 1128.40
Fowles of the West Indies, their
kinds, 963
Fowles proper to the West Indies,
965
Foxenole headland, 223.40
Foxes white: good meats, 492.10
The times of their roving abroad,
ibid. & 499.50
Foxes black in Groneland, 819.40
Frankes, why the Western Chris-
tians are all called so, 319.20. in
marg.
Frank tongue spoken in Turkey, &
what it is, 140.50. Why so called,
ibid. in marg.
Frederick the second Emperour
married our Henry the third
fister, 62.40
Free-Schools in China, 276.1
French Pease the first beginning of
it, 996
French Disease and cure common
in

Island, 647.60
Fretonia in Iapon, 323.60
Fresh fish freely carried about in
China, 179.20. & 205.50
Fretum Hudon, the extent of it
towards, 832.60. And South-
wards, 835.10
Fretum Davis discovered, 484.1
Fretum Davis, a great Bay: no
bope of a Northwest passage that
way, 843.20. Store of Whales
there, ibid. The latitude, 845.1
Freezing violent and incredible,
to see the Viceroy, ibid. Not
suffered to buy Bikes of China,
309.50. Suffered for Spain,
304.1. Discouraged, ibid. & 304.1
(Cowell called concerning them,
ibid. Commanded to returne to
fisherie: what Limahon, 305.1
Ships prepared for their depart-
ure, 305.50. They depart, 306
20. Provision for their Voyage,
ibid. & 307.10. A storme takes
them at sea, 308.309. They
recover our Manila in the Phi-
lipines, ibid.
Fryers in Russia their numbers, none
admitted but that brings them
some maintenance, 448.40. The
manner of their meeting, they
come to abstine from marriage &
flesh, they receive and exercise of
Merechidise, 448.50. 60. Their
ignorance, 449.10
Friday much observed in Russia,
422.60
Fridays fasted by them, 21.1
Except the week after Lent,
17.1
Fucates Discoveries: of a Passage,
830.1. Is rewarded in Spaine,
830.40
Funerals of the Chinois, 393.30
See Buriall and Mourning, 29.
30
Funerals and mourning of China,
367.60. & 368.20. & 181.50
Funerals of the Norwegians, 617
20
Funerals Feasts of the old Indians,
664.1
Funerall Rites in Tanguth, 75.50
& 76.1.10
Funerals of the Mexicans, 1029.50
continued ten days. Their Funer-
all Sacrifices, Muske, &c.
1030.1.10
Futongs in China, their proportion,
346.60
Furniture of the China House,
392.1
Furres great store, 107.1.10. Where
each best, 416.10
Furres

THE TABLE.

Furres of Ruffia, 213.60. Paid to the Emperor of Ruffia, 430.20
 Furres in Groneland, 521.10
 Furres and Beaver in New-Holland land, 586.10
 Furres, black Foxe is best, 459.40
 Frydaylice a Duskden in Norway, 656.40
 Eyre, where it is not so bright or late, as in other places, 74.10
 Eyre worshipping in Tery, 242.50
 Killed by rubbing of stick 933
 Eyre perpetual in the Mexican Temples, 1014
 Eyre put out every fifty two years at Mexico, 1050.40. & 1067.40
 Fyres on the Earls in Island, the reason, 643
 Fyres scene after a storme at China, 728.20
 Fyre-blower of Hell, 267.1
 Fyre-brands frozen, 210.60

G

Game of the Prince, the Tartars forbidden to destroy, 86.20
 Ganges the Citie, where, 49.20
 Gardens floating on the water, 1006.40
 Garlike much used on the Russian Cookes, 457
 Gardasholme, a name of Island, 654.40
 Gates are the strength of the China Cities, 301
 Gau a people, the posterity of those that Jew Saint Thomas the Apostle they cannot come, or be carried were by Tombe, 105.1
 Gaul-kind in Ruffia, 422.1
 Geese perfect red, where, 484.50
 Things to be Barrekes, ibid.
 Geese pretty catch by the Indians, 994.40
 Gehennon, the place of Moloches Sacrifices described, 665.30
 Geirudawarta, whence so named, 654.50
 Gelding of Beggars in Island, 666
 Gelding of themselves in Faffings were fed, 1015.50
 G-niti, 2.6. Naturally expounded, 892.20. & in marg. See also p. 805.40 & 937.50
 Genoeft inhabits Taurica Chelonefus, 615.66
 Genz als in China their people, 593.10
 G-n-rals in Ru-ta, properly chosen, 20.1
 G-n-rals in China, and why, 416.10
 How that remedied, ibid. How the

der Officers, Marshalls, Colonells, and Captaines, ibid.
 Generals of the field, embodied in Ruffia, their children write themselves Generals, 425.30. Their precedences, ibid.
 Gentiles where, 232.1.10
 Gentlemen their Estates in Ruffia, 415.50
 Gentlemen in Ruffia name but Soldiers, 425.20
 Gentry of Norway described, 631.1
 Georgians, their name is Curgi, 49
 Saint George is the Duke of Mulcousie Seale, 221.40
 Saint Georges Armes is the Hel-lepon, 55.10
 George Barkley, his travels, 625.50. His going into Denmark, ibid. Into Prussia, the East-landings and Ruffia, 628. Into Poland, 629. Into Bohemia, Silesia, Prussia, and backe into England, Norway, &c. 630. His other travels, 631. Dyel at Bantam, 661
 Georgia called Zorania, 69.50
 The King is always called David Meliz, ibid. The Inhabitants described, 702.1
 Georgians overcome by the Tartars, 213.40
 Georgia divided into two kingdoms, 110.30. Whence called Alania, or Albania, ibid. The Chimmerian darknes in Georgia, ibid.
 Geologists in Georgia, 296.1
 Germanes forbidden to winter in Island, 650.40
 Germany when first peopled, 662.20
 Gets the River on the Frontiers of Catau, the way thither, out of Ruffia, 530.10.20
 Ghospeff expounded at dinner time, 218.10
 Giants bones found in Peru, 889.40
 Giants, the land of them where, 992.51
 Giants of old in Mexico, 1002.1
 Giants first Inhabitants of the North, 661. Their original from Canaan, Some in Norway, Denmark, Suecia, Luitland, Island, &c. ibid. & a discourse whence and when they came, one lately found fifteen Cubits long, ibid.
 Giants described, 261.20
 Gizzards, the Hancn where, 51.40
 Gizzards in Armenia, 66.60. The

Marebandse there, 69.40
 Giddi, 211.50
 Gilhidai in Ruffia some from the Tartars, 318
 Gilan the Frainee, 244.30
 Gilding Gold saiver with an herbe, 972.1
 Gilbert a Scottish Captaine, his office in Ruffia, 704. & 770
 Ginger where it grows, 282.50
 Ginger elopes, 101.10
 Ginger, a Root when first peopled in the Indies, 86.1
 Gincocogiana, the great Gut of Pegu, 269.20
 Girdles of the Louteates described, 292.20
 Girdle is an Ensigne of dignity in China, 184.1.10
 Girdles made by the Monkes of Barium, 70.50
 Glasse of Mulcousia, how gotten, 417.10
 Globes first brought into China, 339.60
 Globocke in Ruffia, the altitude, 545.20. Variation of the Com-passe there, 554.50
 Glovvernes that women work by their light, 993.40
 Glue of sand and Dais blond, 1159.40
 Goat sacrificed in China, 397.1
 God esteemed the Anima mundi, 397.10
 God punishes not with both hands, 225.20
 God holden to be the Anima mundi, 348.39
 Godfathers in the Russian Church, 491
 Gods of the Mexicans, were 2000
 The descriptions of their two chief Idols, 1134. The Sacrifices to them, &c. ibid.
 Goddes of the Mexicans, 103.1
 Goddes of the patient Family in Ruffia, 244.40. Their adornings and practices, ibid. & 25
 Gocan the land, the Commodities, 284.50. The people goe naked, ibid.
 Gog and Magog shut up within Deuben, 56.1
 Gog and Magog their Country, 80.20. They call themselves Yng & Mongul. (Mongul prevails after the Eastern pronunciation of the Hebrew Y gins.)
 Gog-Cham the Tartarian, 58.50
 Forms of his Election, ibid.
 Gold exchanged for twice the weight in silver, 411.10
 Gold

Gold esteemed by the Spaniards for the Supreme Power in the world, 892.1. Several ways how it is in the Mines, and manner of getting it, ibid.
 Gold, other descriptions of the finding of the Mines, working in them, washing the Adellat, &c. See pag. 970. All Gold grows in the Mountaynes, and how it comes into the Rivers, further from the Mines the finer &c. 971
 Gold Mine rich, 253.49
 Gold in the Philippines, 285
 Gold why not ordained to be the business of man, 943.1. Why chosen, ibid. How used by the Indians, ibid.
 Gold much to be bought in China, 366.30. Not used for Money, ibid.
 Gold, the close of Metals, and when the Indians had begun to melt, Chores, Lutes and Images of molten Gold, 943.20
 Gold found of three sorts, where the best and the worst Gold is found: the manner of refining and the quantity that come yearly into Spaine from the Indies, 943.40.50
 Golden Tables of the Tartarian Emperours, 39.40
 Golden Ball of the Tartars, 66.50
 The Authority of it, ibid. & 68
 Goldsmiths curious ones in Mexico, 1132. They call all kind of Creation in Metals, which move like the life: they enamell and fix stones, they were 2000
 Gonneta, the best of the Canary Islands, 858.30
 Goncaldon Mountaynes, 280.20
 Gool-dribbe, a Story of it, 410.50
 Gool-Friday how kept in Ruffia, 227.50. They let loose a Prisoner then, ibid.
 Goothes, some in Tartaria, 210
 They be the Dutch, ibid.
 Goothe-Langage remaynes pure in Island, 668
 Goots & Getux their Etymon, 661
 Goto Islands, 257.10. Submit to China, ibid.
 Goutz, the City in Cathay, 89.10
 Governours record no Profits, 302.50
 Governments, the severall formes in the West Indies, 1054.30

THE TABLE.

Gownnes of Dogges skins in Tartaria, 630
 Grain of Gold worth 4138. Duckets, 971.50
 Graines of Gold found, weighing twelve pound and more, where, 888.30
 Granada the New Kingdom in the West Indies, the limits of the Jurisdiction, the extent, naturall Commodities, Mines, the distance from the Equinoctiall and Spaine, the chief City and number of Spaniards in it, &c. Villa, City about it, ordinary Indians, Style of the Country, 884.88
 Grand-dile an Indian tower, which hath the markes of our Saviours Passion. Accotates Indgement upon it, 959.20
 Grapes ripen not kindly in the West Indies, and why, 961.30. Ripe all the yeare long, ibid.
 Grapes of China not good, 381.20
 Grasse ordinary from watering in Island, 649
 Greeke Christians in Taurica flaves to the Tartars, but few, 639.20
 Greeke Church unworthy blamed for misunderstanding Saint Paul, 447.60
 Greeke Christians in Costine, 109.40
 Greeke Christians in Ingerm-nun, 633.50. In most Townes of Taurica Chelonefus, 657
 Greekes put not off their Caps, 34.50
 Greenland, the elevation, on part of it, 717. His there, ibid.
 Greenland a Willoughbies land, 729.30. The opening of the Land, The Helles, Thine, Dues and Beasts of the Greenlanders, 817. Their pretty ways to catch Seale-fish, 818.1. A Topographical description of Greenland, the beasts, and fishes there. Their people's complexion, 819. Their Dyet, dispersed Weapons and Religion, 820. Their houses and graner, 826. The true name of Greenland, their report of their King. They intercept some English on shore, 829. And attempt the English shallop, their performance, 830. The Northwest part of it is divided, 835. The fish and fowls of their Baire, ibid. Their Images, 838.30. They will not eat our meate: their women

riden altitude and declination of the Sunne there about, 701.50 & 702.1. Soundings along the Coast, ibid. &c. More temperate then Chitty land, 703.50
 Whales, Sea-horfs, 704. Older Creatures, ibid. 707. & 713
 &c. Names of places, 714 &c.
 Greenland attained in eightene dayes, 716. 20. Our Kings Armes set up in divers places there, 723.74.725. &c. August weather there, 727.20. Sudden alteration of beate and cold there, 737.50
 Grecope beards of Tartars or Icelanders, 105.20
 Griffin a Witchman falls by the way in the English in Luitland, 774.4
 His valley almost confirmed, Discovered, his bewitching, 775.40
 Griffons painted, and reported to be in about Mexico, 1128.20
 Griffons talons, 1014.50
 Groneland called Desolation, 403.60
 Groneland now sold to Norway at Island, the naturall Commodities there, 520.40. & 521.1
 Advice for Travellers thither, ibid.
 Groneland, a description of the Coast and Chaefts, Herons, Cranes, &c. At large, 518. &c. Chilianities and Bishops there, 519.20.49
 Groneland and Gronelanders, Greenland nothing greene, 661.30
 Their Buildings, burning Mountaynes, boyling Fontaynes, Fountains of Pygmies and Viceroyes, ibid. Inhabited in Sea Chaefts, 729.30. The opening of the Land, The Helles, Thine, Dues and Beasts of the Greenlanders, 817. Their pretty ways to catch Seale-fish, 818.1. A Topographical description of Greenland, the beasts, and fishes there. Their people's complexion, 819. Their Dyet, dispersed Weapons and Religion, 820. Their houses and graner, 826. The true name of Greenland, their report of their King. They intercept some English on shore, 829. And attempt the English shallop, their performance, 830. The Northwest part of it is divided, 835. The fish and fowls of their Baire, ibid. Their Images, 838.30. They will not eat our meate: their women

THE TABLE.

women marked on the face, 845
10
Groves, and trees, venerated in
Curland, 628
Ground not to be tamed, 491.60
Gry-u, or Tartarian Curlew, 6.1
Guldianians, in the West In-
dies, the bounds of its juris-
diction: the latitude and distances
of its islands from Tobelo. The
City of that name. Villages about
it, &c. 876.30
Guamange the City in Peru, de-
scribed, 893.40. Good tempe-
rature, &c. 458.50
Guard of the Emperor of Russia,
154.50
Grazul, the Haven and Province
in the West Indies, the latitude,
874.30
Guatemala in the Indies the
Spaniards may thither, 859.
10
Guatemala Province in the West
Indies, the introduction of the
Cane, 877.60. The latitude,
Provinces and Languages under
it, Commodities, great Rivers,
Winds, Spanish Towns, and
their latitude, chief City, and
distances of other Cities from it,
Ports of it, latitudes of some of
them, 878
Guisarato Mines in the West
Indies, the Villages of Spani-
ards about them, 874
Guisco the Village and River in
Peru: the fruitful Valleys and
plains about it, 895.40
Guixaca the Bishoprick and Pro-
vince in the West Indies, the
extent, the beginning of the
bounds: the Language, Silks,
Gold, situation of the City,
Arre, Towns, &c. 873.30. &c.
Other Towns and Rivers join-
ing Gold. Indian Towns join-
ing it, &c. 874.10
Guaymas and Guaymiles, fruits
of India, 958.1
Gudderi, are the Mark-cats, 90
50
Guco, the Nation, 260.30
Guet placed in the chief place, 373
20.374.10
Guefts have the chief place, 391
90
Guiana or El Dorado in the West
Indies, the great River, 886.60
Great Tydes there, and how far
they sit, 887.1
Guiana or El Dorado, the admi-
rable and dissimilar passage of the

Spaniards to find it, 934.1
10
Guinea the New, where it be-
gins, it is all lands: the extent
and latitude, 906.60. Colours
of the people, the Isles, Ports,
Rivers, &c. Of Guinea Coast,
907.10
Guintoo an Isle, 256.50
Guidelines of Metals, how they pre-
serve themselves from the fumes
of Quicksilver, 968.10
Gulic a wall one, 103.1
Gulie of New Spain, by Florida
a miserable Country: the two
entrances of the Gulfe, with the
Currents and the Channels, 870
90
Gummes of the West Indies, 959
40
Gumme of Tabernacul, where it
grows, the use of it, 864.50. O-
ther Gummes, 878
Gunnies of China, as long as Pi-
sels, but unfermeable, 403
60
Gunnies of China but a span long,
369
Gunnies of wood, 260.60
Gun-powder much in China, 382
30
Guinea, Nose in Greenland, the
latitude, 704
Gulavus succeeds his Father
King Charles of Sweden, 780
His warres and accord with the
Russe, 791.792
Guts of beafts sowed together for a
Sagle to Boats in Greenland,
817.60

H

Habit of the China-Indies,
187.40
Habits and fashions of Europe, ri-
diculous to the Chinoies, 406.1
Habitations how anciently built,
662.30
Hacall a Sea-monster, the manner
of taking, 958.1
Hackluyts Head-land, 714.40. 67
721.50. 723
Hackluyts Headland, 464.40
Hackluyts River, 531.30
Haffensford Haven in Island, 643
40. See also, 655.1
Halappi, or Aleppo, 116.60. &c.
Halongien Province in Nor-
way, 660.1
Halufin the Russe, an Impostor, 98
60
Hamerfound in Shetland, 699
50

Hamecu in China, where, 409.10
Hance, the City, ibid, Aue-
rice. The delicate situation,
ibid, is higher at the Quay or
not, ibid.
Hamlet, the dark Country, 110
10
Hand and Eye for a Governours
Ensigne, 319.50
Hinds elaps together in salutation,
373.30
Hands joined in Marriage by the
Russe, 920.921
Haidin College in China, 384
20
Hancie Townes upon the Balliche
Sea, 462.30. Their Confrate-
ries to keep in the Northern Na-
tions, their Priviledges there-
upon, 409
Haoa, a Chinese word, 186.60
Harlots, have a Corporation at
Cambalu, 84.1. Their order,
ibid.
Harts, or Raine Drive their suffi-
ness in drawing the Sleds, 480
50
Harefts two or three a year in
China, 381.30
Haldices, or a Nation of Hallic-
nates or Murders in Cathay,
30.20
Hat, the Mogores and Saracins
fashion, 307
Hauteike River runneth from Ru-
fia-mand into Cathay, 545.30
Christians dwell there, 551
30
Hawkes store in Russia, 523
30
Hawkes snow-white in Russia, 523
60
Hawkes whistled to the fift, 8
80
Hawkes the plenty, and the manner
of Hawking in Tartary, 6
20
Hawking at the Horse, 237.20
Hawking at the Bucke and Hare,
368.30
Hayre dyed yellow, 296.60
Hayre how the Indians wear it,
929.40
Hayre how the Prussis of Mexico
wear it, and assist it, 1043.1043
1
Hayre, let grow in Russia, by
those in disjuncture with the Em-
peror, 459.30
Hayres rained in Iapon, 326
60
Haython the Armenian, how pre-
pared to write his Story, 107.50
His Story begins, pag. 108. He
was present in the warres which

he writes off, 122.30. He
swees Mowke, 125.50. The
credit of his Story, 125.60.
&c.
Heate beyond 80. degrees North,
571.30
Heate in Tartary, extreme in Sum-
mer time, 11.30
Heate under the Line, compared
with the cold under the North
Pole, 474.1
Heate under the Torrid Zone,
but alway, 920.921
Hearts of men to be sacrificed, pluckt
out by the Mexicans, 1031.30
The manner, 1033.30. & 1037
60.1038.1
Heart of a Man being pluckt
out, hee speaks after it 1039
60
Heaven and Earth sacrificed once
as China, 397.2
Heavens sevenness, and thirteene
Hefts, by the Bramenes account,
167.1
Heavens two scene at once in Peru,
and the manner, 917.50
Hebrew Pentateuch 600. yeares
old, 400.40
Hecla Mountain casteth out fire
against fowle weather, 507.40
Hecla the burning Mountains in
Island, the fabulous reports a-
bout it, 648. Dangerous to bee
approached, the Philosophical
reason of the burning. Strange
Story about it, &c. 649. The Sul-
phurous flames proceed contin-
ually, 653.10
Heights first taken by the Swene
in the West Indies, and why, 918
40
Hellicke Islands, 222.50
Hell described in China, 408.1, 10
20
Hell, thought to bee in Mount Ve-
cla, 648. &c.
Hell, the capacity Geometrical of it,
940
Hellepont, called Saint Georges
Arme, 53.10
Hempe and Flaxe in Russia, stories
why the Trading is decayed, 417
20
Hens without feathers and barrie
like Cats, 101.20
Hennes that smell like Manks,
but dying lose their scent, 995
60
Hennes in the West Indies, the In-
dians enry where carry with
them, 964.20
Henry Greene a Villaine: ha-

THE TABLE.

ken into the Shippe by Hen-
rie Hudson, betrays him, 605.
605. Slane by Sanger, 607
30
Henrie Hudson his Voyage to
the East Indies by the Pole,
567. He set out, ibid. Findex
no passage between 78. degrees
and an halfe, & 82.572. & 573
10. His second Voyage by the
North-east, 574.10. Findex no
passage by Nova Zembla, 577
30. His third Voyage, 581.
His Voyage for the North-west
Passage, 596. Sayles a hundred
leagues further then an English-
man before him, 598.20. His
hard wintering and dyet at Sea,
602. Bound in his own Ship,
604.30. Turned out by his
men into the Shallop, 605.1
Inet the cause of the first mutiny,
609.30
Heraldry of the West Indies, 994
50
Herbes which eaten by beasts, make
them call their bootes, 76.60
Hermities in Russia, their hardnesse
believe, and opinion of holynesse,
449.30. Canonized for Saints,
and counterfeits Muscovite
gers, ibid. A halfe of one
of them to the Emperor, took
well, 450.1. Sometimes secretly
murdered, ibid.
Hexall what, in Chinese, 319.50
Heices at Common Law to any
man substance, were to may-
taine him, if hee felt the confu-
ltery, in Island, 667.20. 30
Hiachien the chief City of Cat-
chay, 112. The way from thence to
Cathay, 313.50
Hiden, a people in Tartary, 320
Hietas, the River Prut, in Molda-
via, 632.1
Hielandia, misnamed Schetland,
648. &c.
Himilau, a Chinese Pyrat, why
he turned from Christianity, 255
40. His Story.
Hitache the Province, 70.40
Hiapaniola an excellent land, and
the Commodities of it, 993. The
bound, jurisdiction, nature com-
modities, latitude, &c. The na-
tural name, figure, and myner,
860.40. The Village of it, ibid.
& 862. The Paris, ibid. The
chief places where the Spaniards
enue there, in their Indian Na-
negations, 359.10
Histories of China for 4000.
yeares, 376.10
add 2

Histories recorded three wayes,
1051.40. How in Peru, 1053
20
Historie of the Mexican in Pi-
blan, begins at Page, 1067.
And continues to Page, 1117
Hydes of Russia, 416.50
Hydes of Kanes, abundance brought
from the WorkIndies to Spaine,
961.50
Hyperborean Sea, 651.60
Hycrania, where, 49.20
Hoquan, an Isd with three eyes,
The God of Eye-fight in China,
406.1
Hocate-Chan the Tartar, 113
30
Hocktyde, when and why institu-
ted, 612.20
Hogge sacrificed in China, 307.1
& 196.20
Hogges with their navels on their
backes, their description, fierce-
nesse, and manner of hunting
them, 906.10.20. & 868.20
Hohi an Indian Tree, the excel-
lent nature of it, 986.1
Hola, the Bishops Sea of North
Island, 654
Hold with hope, the Land, where,
or whether any such, 730.50
& 596. The Latitude, 568
60
Hollanders denied entrance into
China, 406.30. They take
the Jesuits Shippe of Japon,
ibid.
Holten, a Character used in Ar-
menia, shew from the Arme-
nian Character, 1200.40
Holy dayes in Tartary, how
kept, 29.50. Christian Priests
then blisse the Princes Chap-
lain, ibid.
Holy Ghost, the Greekes Heresie
about him, 452
Holy Land, the Tartars often
attempt the Recovery for the
Christians. See Pages, 116
117. 118. 119. The Defense
given over, upon the Chan
Tartars turning Saracen, 122
10. The Christians much affi-
cted by the alteration, ibid. The
Defense set on foot againe, 422
30. &c. &c. An Expedition, shew
their ground over, 123.20.30. add
another, 123.50
Holy water used in Russia, 455
40. Sent to the Emperours farr
and neere, 457.30
Holy water, the Armenians use
Frankincense in stead of it, 50
30
Holy

THE TABLE.

Holy-water of the Mexicans, 1134
 Holy-water not known in the East, 3240
 Honey abundant in Russia, 41660
 Honey in Russia, whereabouts most, 23150
 Honey bred in a most thick, 65760
 Honey made of the sap of a tree, 91720
 Honduras, the extent of its territory, 23060
 Glue, Commodities, Myrror, Lac-sticks of the chiefe City, and of the other Townes, 87940
 Gulf and Coast of it, Ports, Bayes, all in the North Sea, &c. 880
 Honors wearing out in China, 387
 Hope Island discovered, 46640
 Hope Sanderlon in the North-west, the latitude, 843.30 & 845.30
 Horda, in Tartarian signifies the middle, 1640. Why the Cans Court is called so, 11850
 Hornblasia promontory in Norway, 65
 Horda of a Sea-fish, mistaken for an Unicorn, 69040
 Horn-pellie the East part of Island, 11850
 Horse-Sound in Greenland, the latitude & variation of the Compass, 717.50. Altitude of the Sun there, Lun. 174. 718. See also pag. 846.20
 Horse-Sound, and Whale-fishing there, 4671
 Host consulted withall in Tartary, 71440
 Hosts of China unferocious in warres, 381
 Hosts-fish who eaten by the Tartars, 441.50. They let their Hosts bleed and drinke it, ibid.
 Hosts-fish of silver, for want of it run to the Indies, 94320
 Hosts for the warres, the Tartars bring time, one to cater, 44140
 Hosts to carry their Hosts-lives, ibid.
 Hosts must excellently beed, 73
 Hosts of the Spaniards; the Indians thought they could reach, 11840
 See Jerome Hostes Russian Sea, 740. An honeste All of his, 743.30. Saw Ambassadors by the Emperor to Quene Elizabeth, 743. Returnes, ibid.
 Hu famous in the Russian Court, 743.50.60. Returnes honourably againe into England. The factours here did for the Muscovite Company. The Emperors fa-

mours towards him, 744
 Hoiana sung on Palme Sunday in Russia, 456
 Hospitals and Free-Schools for Children their fathers, 20540
 In China, 276.1. Put to traders, ibid. & 99.50
 Hospitals for lame Soldiers, 272
 Hostia, the Etymon of it, 1037.30
 Hot-houses, the Russian Physicks, 23060
 Hour-glasses going with water or fire, 383.30
 Houses of Tartars described, 370
 Their largesse, 340. Carried upon Carts drawn by two and twenty Oxen, 340. Their order of placing, 340. and one several quarters of men and women, 430
 Houses of the Indians of Cuba, 9460
 60. Dwelling on the tops of trees, where, ibid. & 995.1
 Houses covered with Elkes skynes, 322.50
 Hoyce Hill in Orkney, 827.30
 Hubbards Hope, the latitude, 848
 Hudon his Discovery, 46440
 Hull men trade to Greenland, 46750
 How they first came thither, 465.30. They bring backe the Zealanders to molest the Londoners fishing, 468.1. Their Voyage to the River Obi, 530. To Cherry Land, 562. Other Discoveries, 71440
 Humane Sacrifices of the Mexicans, 1014.1015.30
 Sir Humphrey Gilberts Voyages to Newfoundland, 808.50
 Humvu, a valiant Chinoise who expelled the Tartars, 387.40. The Kingdomes continues in his Line, ibid.
 Hunduras in the Indies, the Spaniards may thinke, 850.10. The chiefe places along the Coast, ibid.
 Hungary overrun by the Tartars, 6140. When they departed from it, 65.50. They returne, 112440
 Hungaria the Estate in Rubruquis his time, 5210
 Hungarians how surprised by the Tartars, the Story of it, 440.30
 Hunnes whome defended, 18.50
 Hunting used by the great Court, described, 85.50. And his hunting, ibid.
 Hunting in Lithuania, the manner, 659
 Hunting of the Mexicans, the manner of it, 103140

I
 Iaci the Cite, 9140
 Iacobite heretic in Africa, 377
 Iacolt the Eastern Patriarch, and his jurisdiction, 702
 Iacoltu a River in Island, the course, 656
 Iager, a mighty River, where and whence it riseth, 18.50
 Iaic or Iagac, the River, where, 18
 Iajayca the Island on the North of Hispaniola, 859.10
 Iamayca Island in the West Indies, when first discovered, altitude, distance from Cuba and Hispaniola, Pilages, Plantations, Ports, distances of places in it, &c. 864
 Iamboli or Blachie, the City, 634
 10
 James Hillaine by a Greenland Land, 822.50
 Sir James Lancasters Seward, the latitude, 847
 Iang, in the Coverts of Tartary, 38
 Iangumur or Ciangumur in the Tartarian, who Lived, 80.20
 The single City, 9650
 Iacon, in three leagues, 254.10
 Iapan in sundry Isles, they containe above three Kingdomes; their Princes upon China, distance from China and the Philippines, colour of the people, 906
 Iapon, how and when discovered, 318.10. Distance betwixt that and Malacca, 318.10. The Sea troublesome, 31840
 Iaponian Ambassadors to the Pope, 322.10. What lands goe under that name, 322.50. The habit of these Ambassadors, their entertainment at Rome, 323.10. Quibus condono, 323.10. Maces the Princes there, 32340. Maces the chiefe City, 324. The three chiefe men there, 324.20. Their change of titles, &c. Their Popes, The Lords of Tents command all there, ibid. It conveyeth alone justice

justice jurisdiction, 32440
 Their Theologie, ibid. 60 & 325.1. Their manner of sending their Letters, ibid. 10. And their curious workmanship, ibid. The number of Jesuites there, ibid. Parted from China by Corsi, ibid. Earthquake; Comets, and prodigious Raines there, 326. They burne their Dead, 327.10. They are fewer. Committed to Christianitie, then the Chinoise, 332.10. Taught to paint, ibid. A poor Country, 344.30. Their Alphabet, 384. But few and rusticall houses, sayle from China, 408.50
 Iarullace Cite, the situation, 419
 20
 Iasot of Gold, worth ten Markes in Tartarie, 21.50 & 34.10
 Iasidi, a great Cite of Trade in Persia, 711
 Iasip, deare sold in China, 362.20
 Iasip the chiefe Towne in Walachia, 363.10
 Iau maior, the greatest Island of the world, 103.10. Gold there, ibid. The description and Commodities, ibid.
 Iauogelies, ancestors to the Crim Tartars, 637
 Ice passed over in Sleds, 10720
 Ice with Ponds of sweet water in Sea, 59840
 Ice one hundred and fortie fathome deep, ibid.
 Ice at Sea, the originall cause of it, 72640
 Ice 1680, foote thick, 837. The English traveller in it, 248.10
 Ice fine and fiftie fathome thicke, 487.10. Makes a boulder as it breaks, ibid. Left up Shop, 488
 Ice as bigge as Townes, 50440
 Ice breaking like a Thunder clap, 812. It makes a last-fine noise, 81140
 Ice, a Market upon it, 225.30. Condemned persons thrust under, 435.1
 Ice preserved in China, and why, 347.30
 Iceoxos whar, in Iaponian, 32360
 Idilia in Tartary, 3030
 Idelensie not permitted in Peru, 1055.20
 Idelensie inuagied as a still, 66640
 Idelensie hated in China, 174.30
 Idelensie all over betwixt the Mountains of Caucasus, &c. 24.1
 Idolaters in Cayay, 20.60
 Idolaters in Colchia, 636.30

THE TABLE.

Idolaters diners in the Persian Princes, 74
 Idolaters in Curland, and Prussia, 658.10
 Idolaters in Tangur, their Customs, 7710.2
 Idols, are the Oldest men in the house, where, 92.30
 Idols sent two dayes Journey off, 20.30
 Idols of the Mexicans, their beauty of face, 1030.20. And dekam, ibid.
 Idols their Temples & Sacrifices of old in Island, 66440. Altars, &c. 665.110
 Idols bellies filled with Jewels, 408
 20. How the Chinoise maintaines their Idolatry, 419
 Idols, Sacrifices of China, 369.1. In filthy stinking places, ibid.
 Idols one hundred and eleven in one Chappell, 302.60
 Idols huge ones, 77.1
 Idols, in an kill themselves in honour of them, 104.60
 Idols of the Greenlanders, 838.30
 Idols in Mytars & wheeles, 263.20
 Idols of the Mead Tartars, 79940
 Idols made to speake by Magicks, 74.1
 Idols, why used in China, 33430
 Ilegut a strange Cowe, 32640
 Ientice, a mighty River, 527.30. Ouerflows like Nilus, ibid. Two Rivers of that name, 530.10. The journey thither out of Russia, ibid. See Venice, 33430
 Ierallue in Russia, 214.10
 Idolaters lived twenty years in it, 410
 Idolaters, the number of a Jew, 42040
 Idolaters in China, 314.30. In Iapan, 316. The same fimsy dressed, 317
 Idolaters; whips to death in China, 40640
 Idolaters change their Names, 339
 Idolaters, 36
 Idolaters sit on the Pillorie in China, 33940
 Idolaters Colledges in Brasil, 90340
 Idolaters make Conuerses in China, 320.40. Their first Station there, 31150
 Idolaters, the Abettors of an Imposture in Russia, 750.1040 & 768
 1. Idolaters in China their proceedings: See in Roggiectus, & in Riccius,
 Jewels of the Mexicans buried with them, 1029
 Jewes kept within houses, 49.10
 Igh the land, 285.50
 Ilacians or Ilacians, 18.60

Islands of Men alone, and of Women alone, 10630
 Islands 17300, in the Indian Sea, ibid.
 Islands of Hispaniola, 86240.50
 Island Santa Clara one of the Azores, the Latitude, 39.40
 Island of Saints in Norway, subject to Denmark, not inhabited, 614
 20. The Latitude, ibid. in many Five miles from Ruffene, 615.20
 Islands of Thebes or Ladrones in the West Indies, their Latitude, number, pastore, reference to the Philippines, the People, names, Divers other Islands there about, and their Latitude, 907.30
 Islands of Farris, on the South-east part of Island, 59730
 Islands of Moluccas, their severall names and Latitudes, 904
 Islands of Mathos and Delgey, 302.60
 Ile of Relolution, the Latitude, 827.10. The variation, and grand from London, 828.1
 Ile of Merchants, 23240
 Ile of Saint Iohn of Porto Rico, in the West Indies, the first name, distance from Hispaniola, &c. Commodities, temperature of the Ayre, Townes, first Discovery, Ports, Rivers, &c. 864.60
 Isles of God Mercus, 598.50
 Isles of Farris, their Latitude, 574.1
 Misplaced on the Carre, 583.1
 Illicium where first peopled, 662
 28
 Illocos the Islands, 283.10
 The English traveller in it, 248.10
 Idolaters, the number of a Jew, 42040
 Images with their Heads in China, 303.1. And with eight Armes, and other Members, ibid.
 Image in China like that of our Lady, 195.50
 Image of Christ, most solemnly worshipped in China, 3402
 Images of their Kings worshipped by the Indians, 1028.50
 Images Painted and not Carved, numbered, 217.30. Christened, ibid.
 Images offered in Temples of China, 372.1
 Image Point, 479.10
 Images of the Tartars, made of felt, 4.30. Many in one house, ibid.
 The Tartars Lat, or buskined God, 430
 Images great fire in Russia prayed unto, 218. Very rich, ibid. 20 & 229.1. Children committed to them, ibid.
 Images

THE TABLE.

Images *worshiped with divine hon-*
ours, 452. *Fainted, not earned,*
in the Greek Church, ibid. *Called*
Miracle-workers, 453. *Image*
made without hands, 456. *In*
agitation the strength of it, 395.
 60
 Imperial *Confines of the Rites*,
 741. 30. 30
 Incense *when it grows*, 105. 10.
 Inconquered *by the Mexicans, in*
giving of welcome, and in Sa-
crifices, 1004. 10. 101. 60. 66.
 Ineffable *Marriages of the Kings*
of Peru, 1054. 50. 1058. 60.
The Swiftness, 1059. 1
 India *the bounds of it*, 110. 1
 Indians *white and fair*, where, 893.
 1
 Indies *of the West, are not the West*
 Indies, the Countries *which they*
contain properly, 501. *in mar-*
ine, *Their temper, colors of the*
Indians, &c. 904. 1
 Indian *delays for advantage*, 285.
 50
 Indians 60000, *to Guard the pas-*
sage to Persia, 68. 30
 Indians *of the West, their Statue*
and Complexions, 594. 50
 Indian *to give to whom one*
and returns another, 303. 40. 50.
 66. *The twice* *thither* *thither*
when he returns, *The Spaniards*
resides in Nidaiation thither,
 62. 52. *And to the Philipin-*
ines, ibid. *The Seasons of the*
Florida Fleet, 889
 Indies *of the South described*, 587.
 7. *The extent, Provinces, Govern-*
ments, &c. 588. 10. 590. 44
 Indies *South Sea* *Indies* *Quarry*
of Pearls, 168. 10. 20. 34
 Indies *of the South, how it grows*,
 200. 587. 50
 Indies *called the Kingdom*, *the old*
Names, 397. 50
 Indies *former, lays its State in*
presence of this Superior, 297. 1
 Indies *interior waters, made for the*
service of their *heaps* *Superior*
 942. 1
 Infants *consecrated as Oracles*, 391.
 60
 Information *of all, monthly given*
to the King of China, 185. 30.
 His *Spies*, ibid.
 Impermanence *the Title of Sweden*
of, 795
 Impermanence *in the Grim Tartars*
built by the Greeks, 633. 50.
 Incubated *by Clarks* *Clarks*
and, ibid.
 Inevitable *Sund*, 223. 10
 Iniquity *the Kings of Peru* *Peru*
their Diadem, Gravel, Silver,
clothes, Honours after death, 804.
 10. *Their Coronation cere-*
monies, exact *Italy, Policy, &c.*
 1055. *Their public buildings,*
revenues, &c. 1050. *The haunts*
the third part of the Land, 1957.
 10. *Their Original, Conquest*
of Peru, 1059. *Excess of Ingu-*
isita, a new Planet, &c. 1060.
 10. *Their Succession for 3*
ded years together, 1062. 10.
Their Aims, Duty, &c. 1126. 40.
 Steps, 1130
 Inguisus *of Norway, his fortunes,*
 656. 657. *Peoples Island first*
 657. *The Story*, ibid.
 Influence *the manner of it in*
China, 371.
 Inheritances *in Peru were* *the*
Spaniards, 371.
 Brothers *and next were* *the*
 1054. 50
 Ink-making *a liberal Art*, 383. 50
 Innes *in China*, 185. 50
 Innes *or Lodging in Tartarie* *new*
 810
 Innes *in Tartarie, the preparation*
of them, 87. 10. 20. *General*
of the Tartars, 384. 50
 Inquisition *Spanish in the*
Indies, where exercised and how
 910. 911. 871. 50
 Inquisition *Spanish, gotten into the*
West Indies, 871. 50
 Inquisition *for Religious new*
in Russia, 453. 50
 Instruments *fringe in China, made*
of silk, 383. 20
 Intelligence *given by Birds, &c.*
 136. 60
 Institutions *the Ceremony of*
na, 374. 30
 Institutions *to the Feast, the forms,*
 391. 40
 Job, 31. *Urfp* *26* *26* *1028.*
 10
 Jogover *the people*, 109. 1
 Sir John Hawkins, *his Judgement*
of the Illagelance *Strait*, 900
 1
 John Knight *slains by the*
landers, 289. 40
 Jonas *poole his Voyage*, 404. 60
 Jonas *poole his Voyage to Green-*
land, 599. *How far he dis-*
covered, ibid. *His Commis-*
sion for a second Voyage, 707. *How*
first, 707. *His third Voyage*,
 713
 John Prince *of Denmark*, 713
 Queen Anne's *Brother* *gave*
young into Russia, after the
 710. 30

[illegible]

THE TABLE

The shape like a Man, the Circus,
dispute, first Plantations,
698. It hath no River, 697-30.
Their Language, an Alphabet of their
old letter called, Pwll; Their ancient
Monars, Caphmer, Ewell, Buiding,
Twiff, 662. Their large
Hemles, Stone, assignement of
land, Hinkabury, Beakly, Fennis
Fifh, 662. Their deatly, 663.
Their Banquet, Menny, previous
Religion, Founder, 664. Their
great old Ethnicity, their
name Sacrifices, and Christiani-
ties, 665. Magistrates Court,
praiseworthy for the Poor, diuisions
of the Provinces, Hundred, rye-
stone, 666 & 667. The danes
of their nobility and influ-
ence, 668
Illand (some of the Casls) described,
518. The Courtes from thence to
Gronelandt, 520-60
Illand, the North-east side full of
dramatick wild-fowle, 609-10
Istances, dispersed, some into
China, 400-40
Van Vaindwich his Creeket, 422.
Ussan Veilichow of Russia, a Regu-
lar of his admiral's Creekets, 739.
His good parts, 740-1. His famous
theology, 741. He saved himself
by the Russians, And Death,
ibid. Had seven Wives, and
issue, 744-30
Ivanogrod the only City in Russia
built of stone, 618-90
Jungang the River, 619-10
Judaea, 275-60
The stability of the Mexicans, 104-10
The time and manner, 104-10
Judas Thaddus where Martyred,
40-50
Judges corrupt punished with death
in Mexico, 1020-10
Judges their corruption in Russia,
434-40
Judges Spiritual accounted Saints,
639-1
Judicatures and consulations, 640-1
Cherobon Island, woe, 668-1
Lugures, an Isaland group people, 21-1
Their Ceremonies, 21-10-0
They have Images, Authors and
Bells, 21-10
Judges their Temples, 21-10
21-40. Their Language and
Writing downwards at the Chi-
nese, 21-10. Their Infidelity,
Cao, 22-10. Their Images, re-
present their dead Friends, 22-10.
Their Country, 22-60. They
have the original of the Turkish

Language, 23-10
Iceland, named so of the Giants,
698-90
Ireland under the King of Den-
mark, 598 good crops there.
The peoples ignorance of monar-
chy, 600
An Island, the number of the
men there, 773. They were axes
at their Giralls, 775-1. The Go-
vernment's Wisdom and Noble-
ness to the English distressed,
774-775
Lucky Table, worse over the King
of China, his Crime, 302-9
That they speak to him, 310
before their monarch, ibid.
Justices itinerant in China, 184-10.
Their place in the Circuit, 185
Justice over-acted in Russia,
422-30
Justice and Mercy, the primary ob-
ligements of men, 275-9
Justice to the dead but towards her
owne, the Tartarian Maxims,
440-50
Justice the manner in Island,
651
Justices resolve yearly in Island,
646-1
Justice exact in Peru, 1055-10
Justice as it sits, the Russes error a-
bout it, 453

K

Kait Castle, 237-40
Kalendar of the Mexicos, the
primary manner of it, 1050-0
of the Peruvians, 1051-10
Kingstire or Changle, a people, 18
40-50
Kartalla River in Catay, salted
to Ob, 80-1
Ken-Cham a Tartarian Town,
25
Kenchat, a Tartarian Town,
19
60
Kerkis the people, 33-40
Keris the Country, 630. Christi-
anity, 11-40
Kerfua the chiefe City in Califor-
nia, 685-90
Kentlewie Island, 223-1
Kildwin in Lapland, 516-40
and
531-1
Kill themselves, why the Indian
Savants doe, when their Master
dies, 974
Killed and slain in the West In-
dies of the world, kids away for their
bodies, 974
King of Armenia perfidiously
Tartary, 47-20. Relieve Ki-

brigoups companions,	47-50
King of Mexico his charge,	10
Kings carried on mens shoulders,	992-1
Kings of Peru made Gods after death,	1040-60
Kings, 1-1stter people,	240-40
Kings of Zedekins a Silera, full- fied to the Rule, 778, 20, 20, why thence into Catty, though the Moall Tartary Court, 778	
Kille, the Patriarch of Moutcou kuffet the Emperor,	423-1
Killing at entertainments in Ilund,	647-1
Killing ofed in the Greek Church,	138-1
Klutziuzins the Ruffe impudently knewledged Empress,	789-40
Kneeld,	311-
Kneeling to great Officers in Chi- na,	184-20
Kneeling on one knee, more due to one than to barb, to God, 17-10	
Knife first by the Grim Tartary to the Ruffe. Empress to kill him- self,	216-6
Knights fee in Moutcou,	419-1
Knights lands in Groneland, 83	25
Knighthood in Mexico carried the marke or Armes of some Idols, 1030-10. And fo in Peru, 1040	
Knighthood the feveral Orders of Mexico,	1063-40
Kuenland the Country,	659-50

L

L ^Y ed for N, by some Chinoits,	338-10
Laches Father of the Polanders,	429-30
Lakes of two hundred mile long Ruffia,	415-20
Lake without a botisme where, 878	50
Lake a huge one, where Rubies and Saphires grow,	799-1
Lake that kills and Aulages in Petu,	894
Lake that kills Birds flying over it,	648-1
Lake admirable one,	337-10
Lakes their originals from Snoues and Springs, Rivers flow one of them, why they breed little fish, a woman they should be to lose, why they neither increase nor de- crease. Varieties of their tem- pers and tastes,	932-30
Lambri, a Kingdom of Iaua, 1041	Lampis

THE TABLE.

Lumps before Tombs in China, 265 & 266.1
Land in 73. degrees North : not mentioned in any Sea Chart, 568.
40. Called Haid with Europeans.
A temperate land, ibid. The Sun is long together above the Horizon there, 569.30
Lands set apart for sacred uses in Peru, 505.50
Lands in Peru, how the profits are distributed, according to each necessity, 507.30
Linga and Solanga, a Tartarian people, 23.20. Their habits, ibid.
Lingones, in Nova Zembla, 474.30 & 513.1
Land-lords, Judges over their Tenants, 216.40
Language of China discomfited upon, 384
Language and writing, the same throughout China, 101.50
Language of Island, is the pure old Goth or N. v. origin, 678.1
Languages forty several ones, taken in so many Castles in Kettow, 1
Languages diverse, in Persian Provinces, 74
Language of Russia, different from the Polish, 761.30
Lions Stones Maons a great Kingdom, where, 168.20. Hath *Mauke* and *Gild*, ibid. Their complexion and habit, ibid. A mighty River amongst them : & a wonder of that, 169.1.10
Laplans, the length and breadth, 443.50. It hath two sorts of people, ibid. To whom subject, Their poor lawine, some are wild, and the great of witches in the world, 444. Excellent Beeswax and Gums, their Commodities and Fairs, 444.1.10.23.30
Laplans, their miserable Language, 216.1. Their justice, 517.20
Laque a Perfume in China, 106.1
Latitudes which the Spanish Fleets observe in going and coming to the West Indies, 924. See *Concord* and *Navigations*.
Lau River in Russia, his mouth and fall into the Lake Lodoga, 794.40
Laulo the Island, 307.10
Lautumey in China fired by the Tartars, 278.40
Law of Nature : the Infants hope, that the Chinoos were judged by it, 396.60
Law altogether studied in Chi-

na, 185.20
Laws made by Kings in China, 387.40
Law-futes in China, most about short Barrells, 365.50
Laws of Island some released, 666.667 & 674
Laws in Russia, 435.20. Name written, but all breaking Laws, ibid.
Laws of the Tartars, 443.1
Lawyer, none may plead in the West Indies, where his King's men is Judge, 913
Lawyers Judges taken, and given to benevolence, 276
Lawyers forbidden to go to the Spanish Indies, and why, 998.30
Laws of the Russes, the order, 433.40. Their several Courts and Judges, ibid.
Laws, unknown to the Tartars, 639.1
Saint Lawrence in Canada discovered, 493
Saint Lawrence Bay, 477.20. The Island, ibid.
Luzon, a China Sea, 398.40. Their Legends and Fables, their Practices, ibid.
Lay-Commissaries 20 Bishops in Russia, appointed by the Emperor, 446.40. They enslave the Clergy, ibid.
Lead Mine in Cherry Island, 538
Leaf in India, that beats a broken Army presently, 986.40
Learning only goes Wealth, Honour, and Nobility in China, 367.40
Learning feared by Tyrants, 447.30
Lease-rices in Curland, 628.10
Lechia, a rare Fruit in China, 178.50
Left-hand most honourable, where, 371.20
Left-hand not used to touch their meats with it, where, 105.1
Legends and Prophecies, the effects of them, 1021
Letter of Huimfuns, killing the Dragon, and flying into Heaven, 337.20
Legend of Leus, 398.40
Legges, Armes, heads, &c. Offered by sick Men to their Idols, 271.1
Lent-time to the people of the East, 34.20
Lent, the Armenians and Nestorians, eat no fish in Lent, 35.20

Lents four in a year, 217.60. Of 227. They begin on Monday, the ending of all four, 218.1. No fish nor white-comest eaten in Lent, 218
Lents five in Russia, and when and how, 436
Leopards used like Hounds, 80.50
Leprous people are Told-gatherers in Tartary, 16.30
Lequios Islands by Japan and China, rich in Gold, &c. 906.50. See Luzon.
Leigi, a Tartarian people, 12.50
Their border, 16.10
Leary of the Tartars for their Princes, 85.10
Letters of the Islanders, 645.30
Letters of Demetrius of Russia, to the Nobility, 752. Of him to the English Agent, 758.20
Letters of Mexico, their manner, 1135.10
Letters of Almeida in Rio Sand, 330.40. Of Longboard, 340.40. 344. Of Pantao to Loyde the Guaman, 350
Letters of the Viceroy of Conchona China, to the Governor of the Philippines, 309. The answer to them, 310. Of Lerome Guare, 310.50
Letters of the Russian Emperor, 222
Letter of the Duke of Brabant, concerning the Tartars, 604.0
And of the Emperor to the King of England, 90.60
Letters of the Tartars to the French King, 45.50. To the Pope, 59.30. Of one Tartarian Prince to another, 59.50
Letters, the West Indians say, range of them, they thought the Spanish Packets of Letters could first, 724.30
Letters of the business of Greenland fishing, 731.732.733.734. 735.736.737
Letters unknown to the West Indies, 1051.40
Letter of Sir Humphrey Gilbert from New-found-Land, 808.50
Of John Rot a Mariner to King Henry the Eighth, 809. Of Albert de Prato to Cardinal Wolley, 809. Of William Baffin to Master Wootenholme, 843
Letters of Master Locke to a Greeke Pilot, and their answer, 851
Letters of Suisky Emperor of Russia, to our King James, 705
Of English Merchants concern-

THE TABLE.

ing Russian troubles, 780. Of Deider Hall, 781
Letters of Xavier the Jesuite, 318.10. Of the King of Bungo to the Pope, 322.30. Of the King of Ambo to the Pope, 323.30. Of the Iaponian Tyrant, to the Spanish Viceroy, 324
Lettow, a Livonian, 624.50
Lessa Island, where, 633.10
Leuconia, where, 52.40
Lewis Islands, 211.10 & 212.50
Lewis in Orkney, 827.40
Lezards are Crocodiles, 190.50
Lampo, where, 190.50
Lampoo a Portugall Town in China, read by the Church, 259.50
Libanus inhabited by Christians, 122.20
Lice sold for meats in Mexico, 1135.10
Lice eating men to the bones, 614.40
Lice for sale, and finde them againe coming to the same place, 615
Licence written on a board, 292.30
Licence where, described, 213.1
Lice had how divided, between the Russes, the Swedes, and the Pole, 627.60
Light-Dogge of the Indies, his strange behaviour, described, 986.50. Sing. musically, 978.10
Lignum Aloe where it grows, 102.60 & 103.10
Lignum Guaiacum, or Sandum-ple, where it grows, 938.10
Lignum Sandum, better for the French Pease than Guaiacum, 998.30
Lignum vite or Guayac, where brought, 999.60. See Guaiacum.
Life, much studied in China, 369.20
Lying in China is prudence, 339.10
Lima City in Peru. See Los Reyes.
Limahon a Chinese Pirate, 286.50. His Story, 287. & many of his Letters made out against him, ibid. How hee came to the Philippines, ibid. Goes to surprise the Spaniards there, ibid. Comes before Manila, 288.1
Burnes the City, ibid. Seates himselfe on the River Pangasinan, and erects a Fort, ibid. 40.
The Spaniards say against him, ibid. They set upon him at two several places, 289. How fleet to his Fort, they besiege him, ibid. His first Stratagem to escape, 289.30 & 308.30. Omoucon the Chinese comes with Commission to take him, ibid.
Lime and Stone built without China, 292.10
Lincins in China, 356.40
Lima or the Fruit of Linnee, his Story, 624
Linnen and napery of the Cotton-trees, 1132.40
Lions taught to Hunt like Hounds, 85.20. And Leopards and Wolves, ibid. The manner of it, ibid.
Lions how tamed, 94.40.50
Lions of West India see *Leopard* as one, ordinarily tamed by men, 962.30
Liquor the people, where, 168.1
Lutes Islands in Greenland, 719.10
Literary Self of China, their fine Dialects, 397
Lithuanians, their Marriages, Relations, families of One sort, and of Snakes, Hunting, &c. 619
Lithuania, what Towns the Russes have in it, 438.60. The Names destroyed, and Russes placed there, 439.1
Liturgie or Service of the Russian, 450. Read at the Altar, ibid.
Livonia, till to the Pole by the Russes, 438.60
Lizard or Crocodile, a strange sort of one of them, 883.30
Loate divided in the Russian Marriage, the Ceremony and meaning, 454.30
Loadstone found in the Indies, 890.50
Loadstone, a Paine-bearer of it, 807.30
Loadstone communicates more strength to Iron touched with it, then the Stone it selfe hath, 857.70
Lobbers in New found Land, 586.10
Lodoga Lake and Tames in Russia, 794.40
Lofocon on the Coast of Finmark, 601.10 & 581.40
Logiecke, the Chinoos name, 348.30
Lombay described, 474.40
London Castle, by Petrus Daus, the Latitudes, 845.30
Longitude, how the Degrees are to

be reckoned, 856.50. An uncertain reckoning, ibid.
Longitude of Places, how to be found by Air and Instruments, 859.840
Longitude, the Degrees are longer shorter as they are furthest or nearer to the Poles, 500.50
Lop, a great City where, The Desert of Lop, 75.40. Spirit dead there, ibid.
Lore in Persia, 780.50
Lords Prayer in the beginning of the Russian Service, 450
Lords Spiritual named before the Lord Temporal in Russia, 769.10. 784.1. 785.3. 787
Loretto in Italy, the Towns, Temple and Idolatry there, described, 613.20
Los Reyes, the Archbishop and Livonia, the Siles come fixed with vapours, the native Count d'Arce, Latitude of the chiefe City, distance from Toledo, number of Houses, excellency of the Climate, the Christian Monasteries, &c. 892. Number of Women and Negroes, Privileges to the Countrey, with their Land-titles, and differences of Colonies, Mines, Complexions of people, &c. 893. Vermilion and Quicksilver, Springs, Barres, admirable high water, no vine-moss Wormes, &c. 894. Full of Chalcas under it. Earthquake, &c. 895. The Harbours, Ports, Rivers, Coves, &c. 896.1.10. Five Ports
Los Reyes, the City in the West Indies, 886.30
Los Angeles or Thalsala, the Bishopricke in the West Indies, the chief, the Commodities of the Soyle, and Townes thereof, the numbers of Spaniards in them, 872.30. 40.50. The Rivers, and Townes in it, 873.10.20
Los Martyres, the City in Florida, 860.40
Lost things, an Officer for them, 86.1
Lose of the Chinoos, 300.1 & 218.20.40. If the Lost be voluntary, they leave their Idols, 219
Lose, the Emperor of Russia desired by them, 769. The manner, ibid.
Lots in China, 196. The manner, ibid.
Lots

THE TABLE.

Lots *determiners of Controversies*, 414.10
 Lot *law* in Russia, 757.30
 Lourea, *what Office*, and *how Created* in China, 184.20. & 200.
 Lowmies in Greenland, *our King's* *Arms* *step* *there*, 717.30
 Lowlie *Law* in Island, 647.1
 Lubbeckers *pay* *no Customs* to Denmark, *why*, 631
 Lucayas *Isles* of the *West Indies*, *where* *their Names*, *All* *islands*, *Distances*, 805.10. See *Leguons*.
 Lumleys *Inlet* in America, *the Latitude*, 811.1
 Lulus the Chinese, *his Legend*, 334.1. *How put* *into* *his* *sub* *again*, *ibid.* *His Spirit*, 334.20
 Lutheranism in Island, 645.10. See *Leguons*.
 Luxitay *an Island*, 216.60
 Luzon *the Kingdom*, 309.10. The *Chinese* *same* *there* *by* *the Spaniards*, *ibid.* & 310

M

MACAO in China, *how far* *from* *Malaca*, 410
 Macas and *Rods* *borne* *before* *the* *China Officers*, 187.10
 Magalar *the great Island*, 106.
 Magdalene, *the River* in the *West Indies*, *the head*, *Current*, *mouth*, *length*, and *Latitude*, 885.20. Called *Rio Grande*, *ibid.* *His Head*, 890.1
 Magellane Straights, *the Spanish* *Indians* *Provinces* in them, *where* *the Straights* *begin*, *the Captain*, 899.60. *The Ports*, *Capes*, *Bays*, *Islands*, and *their* *Latitudes*: *What* *degrees* of *Latitude* *this Straights* *is* *between*: See *John Hawkins* *Judgment* of *these Straights*, 900. *Whence* *they* *had* *the Name* of *Magellanes*: *why* *the Navigation* *through* *it* *is* *dangerous*, *the Rivers*, *Points*, *Capes*, *Islands*, and *their* *Latitudes* *by* *it*, 901
 Magellane Straights, *ibid.* & 901
 Magellanus *Martyred*, 285.50
 Magellane Straights, *the distances* and *Seasons* of *Navigation* *from* *Castile* *thither*, 859.50. *Difficult* *to* *pass*, 860
 Magi *that* *came* *to* *Christ*. See

Tarfa.
 Magical *Image* in Russia, 757.
 Magicians *knaweries*, 92.50
 Magistrates called *Lords* or *Fathers* *of* *the King*, *ibid.*
 Magistrates *how* *honoured* in China, 393.10. *Being* *deposed*, *they* *lose* *not* *all* *Honour*. *They* *have* *Temples*, *Altars*, and *1* *magas* *erected* *to* *them*, 393.
 Magistrates of China, *the first* *Chief*, 388.30. *Their* *manner* of *proceedings*, *ibid.* *Then* *honor* and *Ensignes*, 390.10
 Magistrates of China *Sacrifices* *they* *perform*, 397.30
 Magnificat, at *Evening* *prayer* in the *Russian Church*, 450.
 Maguey, *the wonder Tree* of *West India*, *described*: *it* *yields* *Water*, *Wine*, *Oyle*, *Uinegar*, *Honey*, *Syrup*, *Theriac* and *Needles*: *and* *how* *they* *get* *all* *these* *out* of *it*, 937.10.30
 Mahometanism *the extent*, 327.
 Mahometanism in the *Moluccas* and *the Philippines*, 905.20. *How* *they* *gave* *thence* and *further*, *ibid.* 30
 Mahometanism *many* in China, 399.50. *But* *ignorant* and *contemned*, *ibid.* *When* *they* *gate* *in*, *ibid.*
 Mahometanism *wisdom* of *Temple*, 334.20. *Counted* *high* *there*, *for*, 235.10
 Mahometanism *difficulties* *for* *liberty* *to* *drink* *Wine*, 71.1
 Masters *much* *honoured* in China, 395.10
 Master of the *Ceremonies* in China, 300.53. 88.40
 Master of the *House* in Russia *his* *Greatness* and *reverence*, 426.
 Malabar, called *India* *the Greater*, 104.30. *Four* *Kingdoms* *in* *it*, 104.30
 Malaca, *how* *far* *from* *Malaca*, 410.20
 Malacca *Islands*: *the* *War* *there* *between* *the* *Spaniards* and *Portugals*, 282.20
 Malacca, *the* *Navigation* *thither* *from* *Spain*; 860.10. *The* *distance* and *Seasons*, *ibid.*
 Mameys *an* *Indian* *fruit* *described*, 957

Mamofes, *the old people* of *Cinland*: *Idolaters*, *barbarous*, *their* *Rites*, *Marriages*, *Customs*, *Habits*, *Hospitalities*, *&c.* 638
 Manate a *West Indian* *Fish* *described*, *how* *taken*: *hee* *beat* *a* *Stone* *good* *against* *the* *Stone*, 987.988
 Manatia *a* *Fish* *that* *gives* *Jaundice*, 930.
 Manichoe, *the chief* *Cite* of *the* *old* *Tartars*, 15.30. *Where* *they* *still* *elect* *their* *Great* *Chan*, *ibid.*
 Mandarines, *their* *honour* in China, 370.30. *Sets* *up* *Flags* *before* *his* *House*, and *Arches* *triumphal*, *ibid.* *Some* *examples* of *their* *Nobility*, 371. *Disposed* *in* *all* *Cities*, 372. *There* *he* *is* *of* *them* *chief*, 372.50
 Mangat or Marcopia *the Cite*, 634.30
 Mungi *what* *part* of China, 404.
 Mungi *accounted* *barbarous* *by* *the* *Chinese*, 345.1
 Mungi *built* *his* *Place* *royal* *under* *the* *Great* *Tartar*, 99.50
 Mungi or China, 95.30. *The* *province* *of* *its* *summits*, *ibid.* *Invented* *by* *the* *Tartars*, 95.60. *And* *taken*, 96.10. *The* *name* of *Mungi* *described*, 96.10. *in* *margin*. *And* *see* *especially* *page* 103.
 Mungi *the Kingdom*, 89.10. *It* *is* *the* *most* *Summit* *Province* *of* *China*, 345.10
 Mungu Chan *his* *message* *to* *the* *King* of *France*, 20.30. *His* *golden* *Bull*, and *the* *authority* of *it*, 29.40
 Mungu *chief* of *Cham* of *Tartaria*, 25.10. *Kid* *Siremen*, 25.30. *His* *conference* *with* *Fraser* *William*, 27.50. *His* *description*, *ibid.* *His* *Court* and *Feasts*, *ibid.* 30. *His* *pride* *Answered*, 28.1
 Mungu Chan *his* *Proclamation* *concerning* *a* *Disputation* of *Religion* *held* *before* *him*, 45.50. *His* *last* *discourse* *with* *Fraser* *William*, 45.50. *His* *letters* *to* *the* *French* *King*, 45.50
 Mungu or Mango-Chan, 114.10. *Expelled*, 115.60. *Died*, 117.
 Mangani, *what*, 97.5
 Mungu-Chans *Inflict* *due* *upon* *his* *enemies*, 44.50. & 45.1
 Mungulane,

Mungulane, *a* *Port*, 235.30. *The* *people* *described*, *ibid.*
 Mulla *the* *Land*, 286.10. *A* *Bay* *Ship* *Sea* *there*, *ibid.*
 Muna-hota *the River* in *Virginia*, 599
 Munst and Taute, *landlords* of *Guayana*, 34.10
 Munst *held* *in* *the* *Siege* of *Melico*, 780.20
 Map-makers and *Globe-makers*, *create* *Land* and *Islands* at *pleasure*, 461.10
 Map of China, *the best* *with* *notes*, 40.1.402. &c.
 Mappes of China *their* *Errors*, 168.10
 Maps *purposely* *made* *false* *by* *the* *Spaniards*, 853.30
 Maragon, *or* *the River* of *Amazon* *in* *the* *West* *Indies*, *the* *chiefest* *of* *the* *World*, 933.60. *Strategic* *leagues* *broad* *at* *the* *mouth*, 934.20
 Marble *a* *kind* of *it* *much* *found* *in* *China*, 315.312.1. *Like* *to* *Lapis*, *ibid.* *Given* *out* of *the* *Ruins*, and *forced* *with* *Fire*, 313.1
 Marchpane in China, 292.50. & 298.40
 Marcopia or Mangat *the Cite*, 634.
 Marcus Paulus Venetus, *made* *use* of *Cubla* *Chau* *Clerk*, 67.40. *He* *learned* *four* *Languages*, *ibid.* *Sent* *Ambassadors* *by* *him* *to* *Catharian*, *ibid.* 50. *Writes* *a* *Journal* of *his* *travels*, *ibid.* *Continues* *a* *long* *time* *with* *the* *Great* *Chan*, *ibid.* *Went* *to* *Argon* *in* *India*, 68.30. *To* *Trebe* *fontaine*, *Constantinople*, *Nephtopolis*, and *to* *Venice* *again*, *ibid.* 40. *There* *he* *was* *born* *again*, *ibid.* 50. 60. *Taken* *Prisoner* *by* *the* *Genowayes*, *might* *not* *be* *redeemed*, 69.1. *He* *writes* *his* *travels*, *ibid.* *Marcus* *Paulus* *Venetius* *his* *Book*, 65.40.
 Mares *taile*, *the* *Tartars* *Ensign*, 443.1
 Mares *white*, *all* *Consecrated* *in* *Tartaria*, *when* *and* *how* *44.10*. *Which* *like* *to* *the* *Papists* *fast* *Robruquis*, *ibid.*
 Margarita *Island* in the *West Indies*: *the* *distance* *from* *Hispagnols* and *Trinidad*, *the* *Villages* *in* *it*, *Pearls* *found* *there*, *the* *Latitude*, 866.20
 Margarites *Sold* *in* *Orkeny*, 827.
 Marjenberg *by* *Danzke*, *the* *Lu*

THE TABLE.

theran and *Roman* *Religions* *exercised* *there*, 626.20. *Build* *by* *whom*, *ibid.*
 Market-wares of Mexico, 113.2.
 Mermalades of *West* *Indian* *fruit*, 957.60. 98.20
 Marriages of the *Chinese*, 367.50. *One* *wife*, and *many* *Concubines*, *which* *they* *buy* and *sell* *again*: *1* *their* *Children* *inherit* *ibid.* *They* *Marry* *not* *any* of *their* *own* *name*, *ibid.*
 Marriages, *publicke* *Venficles* *for* *them* in China, 99.10
 Marriages of the *Mamofes* of *Cinland*, 638. Of *the* *Lithuanians*, 68.60
 Marriages in China, 182.30
 Marriages of the *Chinese*, 393.60. See *Wedding*.
 Marriages of the *Mexicans*, 1009.
 Marriages of the *Samoieds*, 555.
 Marriages *the* *third* or *fourth*, *not* *well* *advised* *in* *the* *Greek* *Church*, 435.36. *The* *manner* of *Solemnization* *in* *Russia*, 453. *Held* *unlawful* *without* *consent* of *Parents*, 454.1. *Large* *Dowries* and *no* *logoters*, *ibid.* 10. *They* *go* *on* *Horbecke* *to* *Church* *like* *ours*, *ibid.* *Performed* *at* *the* *Altar*, *with* *Rings* *and* *laying* *of* *hands*, *five* *knights* *her* *Head* *upon* *his* *Shoe*, and *he* *thence* *the* *top* of *his* *Garment* *near* *her*, *ibid.* *The* *Ceremony* of *the* *Loose*, and *Meade*, and *Come* *flung* *upon* *them*, and *the* *Bride* *flung* *upon* *them*, *The* *Marriage* *Feast*, and *the* *Bridegroom* and *Bride* *called* *Dalk* and *Duckoff*, 456.1
 Marriages of the *Crim* *Tartars*, *what* *degrees* *are* *forbidden* *to* *them*, *their* *Dowries*, 441.30
 Marriages of the *West* *Indians*, 991.40. & 993.40. & 998.40. Of *the* *Mexicans*, 1044
 Marriages *mediums* of *the* *King* of *Pegu*, 1054. &c.
 Marriage *Solemnities*, 1058
 Marriage *Rites* of Mexico, 1107.
 Martau in *Pegu*, 281.40
 Santa Martha *Province* in the *West Indies*, *the* *Extent*. *Site*, *name* *Commanders*, *Minis*, *precious* *Stones*, *Laws*, *&c.* 281.40
 Martyrs of the *Dinels* *making*, 70.50

Makes *&c.* at the *Coronation* of the *King* of Mexico, 1019.40
 Making in China, 349.40
 Malibus *the Mountains* *where* *Noahs Ark* *rested*, 50.20
 Malibus *the Island*, 285.20
 Mathematickes *first* *taught* *in* *China*, 329.60. & 339.20.30
 The *meanest* of *their* *former* *skill* *that* *they* *had*, 344.20. *There* *is* *no* *Grammar*, 346.20
 Matins *the City*, *where*, 2.10
 Matrimony, *the* *forms* in *Russia*, 219.50. & 230.1
 Matphone or Mathews *Land*, 805
 Matfuchan *Yar* in *Russia*, *the* *way* *thence* *to* *Ob*, 805.30
 Maudlen *Sound* in *Greenland*, 721.40
 Maudley Thursday, *the* *Russian* *Emperor* *receives* *the* *Sacrament* *upon*, 227.50
 May-festivals and *May* *Flowers* *brought* *by* *the* *Indians*, *to* *their* *banquets*, 1045.30
 May-pole of *Swiss*, 493.10
 Mayst or *Indian* *idolatry*, *makes* *no* *sensible*, *how* *it* *grows*: *difficulties* of *the* *grains*, *how* *drift* and *eaten*, *maliced* *for* *Beer*, 953
 Is *strict* *for* *Butter*, *Bread*, *Wine*, and *Oyle*, and *for* *man* & *beast*, 954.1
 Meani, *are* *Temples* in China, 301.1
 Meades of *several* *forts*, 231.1
 Meates, *some* *higher* *than* *others* in *Russia*, 453. *Their* *superstition* *difficulties*, *ibid.*
 Meates *prepared* *for* *Idols* in *Mexico*, 104.60
 Meate-forges of *Gold*, 242.50
 Mechouan, *the* *Subprelate* of *Provence* *in* *the* *West* *Indies*, *the* *Extent*. *Altitude* of *the* *Cite*, and *their* *Towns* *under* *it*, 874.40. & 875
 Mechouan *for* *seen* *by* *the* *Indians* *of* *Mexico*, *how*, 1002.60. *They* *hate* *the* *Mexicans* *therefore*, 1003.1
 Mecriit, or *Medica*, *a* *Tartarian* *people* of *Burgu*, 79.40
 Media, *now* *called* *Sieruan*, 245.40. *Conquered* *by* *the* *Turks*, *ibid.* *Possessed* *by* *the* *Turkes*, 244.40
 Mediator, *the* *Russians* *erroneous* *about* *him*, 452
 Medica or *Mecriit*, in *Tartaria*, 79.4
 Mediterranean *Sea*, *none* of *notes* *all* *America* 926.50
 Megra,

THE TABLE.

M. goa in China, *played by five*
pointa, &c. 309
 M. has of West India, *described*,
 255-30
 Men with tails, 104-1
 Men, *beasts, & fowls, how they*
came into America, & discourse
of it. 964
 M-n-eaters, 101-20. & 103-50
eating their own kindred, 101-
60
 Mendez, his designs and *perils*,
made, 281-20
 Merchants poor in Russia, 431-50
 Merchants Feast of Mexico, the
 manner of it, 1048. &c. They
 eat the Men which they had Sa-
 crificed. 1049-20
 Merlas, so the Tartars call the
 Merdu, 12-30
 M. n. a people, in Tartarie, *ibid.*
 Mergrate, *Straght,* 388-90
 Merila Cite in the West Indies,
 the Latitude, 875-30. The de-
 scription, *ibid.*
 Merdin the Province, where, 69,
 50
 Me To'n Merike *Agents* in Russia
 748-749. Sent Ambassadors
 thither, 791. Makes the Peace
 betwixt Russia & Sweden, 793-1
 Merites only advance in China,
 388-1
 Merkle or Crit, Nestorian Christi-
 ans in Catay, 15-10
 Mermay scene and described,
 575-60
 Mesopotamis the bounds, 110-50
 Meslans or Children gotten by Spu-
 rits upon Indian women, 3. How
 found in one Province, 3
 Meta incognita discovered by St.
 Martin Frobiher, 465-20
 M-tall, held by the Chinese for an
 Element, 345-50
 Metals grow like Plants, a Philoso-
 phical discourse of their produ-
 ction, 941-943. Their diversities
 and uses, of the quality of the
 earth where they grow: in bar-
 ren places, the finest Metals on
 the top of the Altire, 946-40.
 All Metals but Gold summer in
 Quicksilver, 948-1
 Metempsychosis, or the transmi-
 gration of Souls in China, 368,
 60-369
 Metempsychosis, the opinion of it,
 cast by Mothers to kill their
 Children, 396-10
 Metempsychosis, the Judge for it,
 408-10
 Methodius the Armenian Pro-
 phet, 49-50
 Metropolitan of Muscovy, his
 State, bet first while the Empe-
 ror stands, 226-50. The Empe-
 ror leaves his Hof, 227-30.
 The people spreads their garments
 under him. Hee blesteth them,
ibid.
 The Emperor does
 with him on Palm-sunday, 227-
 40. All matters of Religion
 the Emperor refers to him,
 228-1
 Metropolitan of Mosco, made a
 Patriarch, 445-40-50. The ma-
 nor, *ibid.* He imagined Jurisdic-
 tion over the whole Græke
 Church, 446-20
 Metropolitan of Nougoud and
 Roffow, under the Patriarch of
 Mosco, *ibid.* 30
 Mexico in the West Indies, the li-
 mits of the Council, the Arch-
 bishoprick and its Jurisdiction:
 the Indian Names of Mexico,
 the Longitude and Latitude, dis-
 tance from Toledo: bones of
 Sun-rise: situation and descrip-
 tion of the Cite, 870. Suffra-
 gane Bishops to the Archbishop:
 Monasteries and the Unversities;
 the Spanish Inqui-
 sition, 871
 Mexico the new, where, 1001-10
 Mexico, how and when first peo-
 pled, *ibid.* Their general com-
 munes, Plantations, & Accidents:
 led by the Dineil: their Con-
 quests, they tame the Snakes,
 1003. Their Idol Toci, how
 Consecrated.
 Mexico Cite founded by an Ora-
 cle: the odd Story of it, 1004-10
 The four quarters of the Cite
 divided by Oracle: their other
 Gods, A new Colony goes out:
 they chuse a King, 1005. His
 reigning, Coronation, & charge,
 becauseth Mexico, 1006-60.
 Their sacred King: they are gi-
 ven to Sun-daying, 1009
 Mexico Cite built in a Lake, they
 quarrell with their Neighbours,
 upon which their King is war-
 theral: their League with their
 other Neighbours to revenge it,
 1010. They proclaim Warre a-
 gainst the Murtheers of their
 King, 1011. Their victory, 2013.
 Provoked by other Neighbours,
 they overthrow them too, *ibid.*
 And other Neighbours, 1013.
 And others, 1014. And others,
 1015
 Mexico as well an ordered King-
 dome, as any in Europe, *ibid.* Or
 the colonies of the Mexicans,
 1016. Other Conquests, 1017.
 They force a River to their Cite,
ibid. Which being almost des-
 troyed by it, the King rebuilds the
 another Venice, 1018-1.
 The greatness of their Empire, *ibid.*
 60. The stately Service of their
 Kings, 1019, 30. & 1126-1130.
 Strange prodiges foretelling the
 ruine of their Empire, 1020. The
 Spaniards arrive there, whom
 they supposeth to tellene to be
 their old King, 1021. Their an-
 cient Religion, 1026-1027. &c.
 Their Idols, flaps, ornaments,
 Sacrifices and Festivals, 1030-
 1031. &c. They imitated Gods
 (beest heras), 1035-50. Their
 Superstition remarkd, 1041-40.
 Their Sorcerers, *ibid.* Conquer-
 ed by Cortes the Spaniard,
 1118. The Cite destroyed by
 him, 1123-20. And rebuildd,
ibid. Description of Mexico as
 it flourishd at the Spaniards
 coming thither, 1131-1132.
 &c. Their Markets and Wares,
ibid. 1133. Their Temple, *ibid.*
 40. Other Antiquities of their
 Letters, Number, Times, &c.
 1135. &c. Their Chronologie,
 1136
 Mexicans, their Marriage, Cre-
 monies, 1044-30. Their Festi-
 val dayes, 1046. & 1048. &c.
 Their civil Customs, Act, Ka-
 lender, &c. 1050. Their Books,
 Writing, Schools, &c. 1053
 Their Fort-places, 1054. Their
 Kings chosen by Election, how,
 1065. Their diversity of Natio-
 ns, Officers, Priests, Knights,
 Warfairs, &c. 1066. Education
 of their Youth, Playes, &c. 1069.
 Their Rope-dancing and agility,
 1065. Their Story in Pictures,
 begun at Page 1067. And con-
 tinued to page 1117. The tributes
 of their Kings, 1080. &c.
 How they die with their new
 borne Children, 1102-1103.
 Their Marriage rite, 1107. &c.
 The Kings Armes, 1128-20.
 Their Policy & Common wealth
 1129-1130
 Mezen in Russia, 538. The way
 thence to Pechora, Obi, and Ye-
 nisse Rivers, and through Siberia
 to Catay, 539. & 540. From
 thence to Can-moa, &c. to Pe-
 chora, 538. Furres trading for
 there,

THE TABLE.

there, 540-10
 Michailowich, foretold to be Empe-
 ror of Russia, 770
 Micen the Kingdoms and Cite, 93-
 20-50. Conquered by the Tar-
 tars, *ibid.*
 Miles long ones in Podolia, 612-10
 Miles of Norway, 616-20
 Military honours amongst the Tar-
 tars, 643-10
 Military degrees how given in Chi-
 na, 387-10
 Military rewards, 387-60
 Milke stirred up by Snakes, *lost up*
by men, 639-40
 Millet, a chief Diet of the Tar-
 tars, 640-40
 Millet Mayze or Indian wheate, the
 qualities of it, 893-40. Grown
 in Canes, 896-1
 Minooos the Cite: the Commodi-
 ties, 896-1
 Mines of Silver in Xolor, 281-40
 Mines of New Spain, the names
 of them, Their distance from
 Mexico, 872-10
 Mines in China kept up, till the
 King had need of money, 348-40
 Minuties what Images they are,
 948-50
 Miracles believed to be wrought by
 the dead in Russia, 769-30
 Miracles, believed foolishly by the
 Spaniards in their Conquest of
 Mexico, 1024. &c.
 Miracle-worker in the Indie
 bunge afterwards by his own Spu-
 rits, 897-20. in marg.
 Miracles of the Devil in Mexico,
 1030
 Miralis, in Porta ferrea, or Des-
 bene, 110-20
 Mirebulans grow in Cauchin Chi-
 na, 410
 Mists make the Earth more fruit-
 full then the raine, 937-50
 Mites in China, 263-20. & 274-
 50. Mites of the Patriarch of Mosco
 with a Ball on the top, and w-
 ing, 455-40
 Moal, the name of the Tartarian
 Nation, 14-40. Whence derived,
 15-10
 Moal Tartars where and who, 799-
 30. See Tartars of the East.
 Moan the Plains, where, 49-10
 Molokas, some place in it, 633
 Molokas, or the Hands of Tartary,
 which fine of them bee the chief;
 they are under the Equinoctiall,
 their height, &c. Names and
 latitudes of the rest, pawned to
 the Portugals, 904
 Mogor how divided from China,
 362-40
 Mogores their ancient bounds, 360-
 30
 Monarchie, a great assistant to pla-
 nation of Religion, 1055-10
 Monasteries in Russia, the Natio-
 ns thrust into them, 422-30, 50
 Suffered to bee made rich for the
 Emperors Sacrifice, 430
 Monasteries are Sanitariums in Rus-
 sia, 448-40. The greatness and
 wealth of some of them, 449-1
 Monasteries in Island and Gron-
 land, 641-20
 Monastery of S. Bennet of Holm
 in England and Norway, 624
 1. A Story of it, *ibid.* Monaste-
 ries of Peru for women, their Or-
 ders and Revenues, 1034-10. For
 men, 1035-1. Their Habits, Sher-
 tings, Officers, Orders, Penances,
 Begging, &c., 1037
 Morcellum, or Biologos in
 Moldavia, 633-1
 Monfarts Relation of China, 410
 Mongant, Samoeds on the Ob,
 805-1
 Monginoco the Empire, 248-40
 Mongozey in Russia, the Trade
 thence, 537-30. See also pag. 538
 & 539. &c. What it is, 540-1
 Furres there, *ibid.* See Mul-
 gomsey, 551-1
 Mongozey, writes Mulgomsey,
 543
 Monks of Russia, how provided for,
 228-10. More of them, *see, ibid.*
 Merchants, *ibid.* They enter-
 taine the Emperors, *ibid.*
 Monks in China, 196-50. Stan-
 les, *ibid.* Their habit, 274-50
 Monks in China had Conventes,
 and were highway Thieves, 314
 10
 Monkish Religion, 2640
 Monkish Order of Saint Francis
 on Catholike or universally suc-
 cessing all places, 455-40
 Monkeys of India, their kind,
 966. Strange varieties of them:
 one taught to bay wine & to be
 painted women. How they passe
 Rivers admirably, 967-1. Their
 feats and features, 995
 Monkeys hunt for Fards Ngys
 98-40. & 981-1. They feare
 the water, *ibid.*
 Money of Paper, or Bark in Tar-
 tary, 863-30
 Money of Paper in Catay, 34-
 10. How made, *ibid.* Of printed
 skins, *ibid.*
 Moneyes of the Crim Tartars, 640-
 30
 Money of Paper, Bark, or Porcel-
 lane, where the Gold grows, *see*
pag. 91. 92. 94. 96. 98
 Money out of Gold where Gold
 grows: 942. Of Fruits, leaves,
 Coats, liver, *ibid.* Of Leather,
 Catons, &c. 943-956. Of Silver
 by weight weyced, *ibid.*
 Money out of Gold but of Fruits,
 in the Indies, 942
 Money answers to all things, 942
 10
 Money of Silver hooves in China,
 366-30. Of Brasse, *ibid.*
 Money of Silver Rods weighed, 164
 60. & 166-1
 Money of twigs of Gold, 91-30. Of
 Salt, *ibid.* Of Porcelaine, 91-50
 & 92. Of Paper, 108-60
 Money of Porcelaine, 94-30
 Money of Corall, 90-50
 Money reckoned, the advantage
 made of it, by the Tartar, 442
 10
 Money makes the Jesuits prelate
 in China, 318
 Monks of the Sea, a supposition
 one, 997
 Monks of Brasse, 266-10
 Monks of Statues, 267-1
 Monks, 367-50
 Months of the Country, 105-40
 Months of the Mexicans, 1135-
 30
 Month of the Mexicans of twenty
 dayes, 1050-10
 Months of Peru, which of them
 answer to weeks of ours, 1045
 1046
 Moore gone continually after Ombi-
 ber the 24, where, 404-40
 Moore: the Chancle keeps the
 Change, *see,* 392-40
 Moore, accounted Heanen, 277-1
 Moore, at the Full, welcomed with
 Fire-works, 394
 Moore, the years reckoned by it, in
 Tangut, 77-10. In Japan, 333-
 10. 40. In China, 199-10. 244-
 50. The Tartars reckon by it, 285-50
 Moors Trade in China, 207-10
 Slaves trade into China, 364-1
 Moors given to cozenage, 285
 40
 Moruyon, the River in the West
 Indies, the head, course, and
 mouth, 868-10
 Morwit Tartars, with Harke-
 bow, 442-40. How worship and
 sweare by, for a God, that
 which

THE TABLE.

which he meets first in the morning, <i>ibid.</i> Kills his best horse with his Friend dyes, & why, <i>ibid.</i>	Molcoby the people, 280,30	Murders of the poor, not accounted for by the Nobility in Russia, 435
M. Joints, the Country, receives Christianity, 232.1	Molcumbia a Lake, 261.1	Musie is a Prince in Tartaria, 233
Mories, or Sea-horse-fishing, 465	Moful the Province, where, 69,50	Mus, or Meridin, the Nation, 70
20. His description, and manner of killing him, 473	Moful the City, near Selucia, 110	Musautes, a Name of the Jewes, 23
Mollet roars and makes a noise, 557	Mourners are a trade in Ormuz, 71	Musick in China, and their several Instruments, 181. 10. Crano, <i>ibid.</i>
10. They catch their teeth, <i>ibid.</i>	Mourners have an Office in China, 60	Musick of China, the manner of, 383.2
30. They come not on land while any Ice is near the shore, 559	Mourning the time of forty days in Russia, 741	Musick of the Chinois, <i>ibid.</i>
One brings alone into England, 560	Morning Religion in China, 345	Musick of the Mexicans, 1065.1
Mories teeth where taken, 214.1	Mourning in China, with course Women wear the sky, 184.10	Musicks to comfort the dead, 277
417.49	Morning in Russia, 368.1	Musket Mountains, 16.1
Mortar unknown to the Indians, 1095.10	For three years in China, <i>ibid.</i>	Mulcousa Merchants, first selling, 463.10
Mortar made of Pumice-stones, 651.40	And why, 393.30. The manner of it, They change their Habits, Unstiff, Paper, and names, <i>ibid.</i>	Mulcousa Company, their Name, Patent, and Privileges of trade in Russia, 754. & 760. They pay no Customs. They are to sell whole sale, and not by retail, <i>ibid.</i>
Moteczuma King of Mexico, but granite seems to refuse the Kingdom, 1018. Is elected, but valour and extreme pride, 1019	Mourning Garment in Spain is blacke Bayes in China white linen, 368.1	To sell their wares themselves, <i>ibid.</i>
His prodigality, severity, and justice, would be worshipped as a God, is a friend of his room, his Virtues and Prudencies, 1020. Taken by the Spaniards, pag. 1023	Mountaine the highest in the world where, 74.20	Wreck as Sea not to be taken of them, 755.1. English business in the Cause, Their pack not to be opened. Injustice to burden them by law. Disturbance of them to be punished, 755. See also, 758
40. Forfeaken of his Subjects, & flames, 1025. See also, pag. 1121	Mountayne remounted by a Shoemaker: A Holyday in memory of it, 70.40	Mulcousie Merchants their losses at Sea, 709. & 712
1135. & 1137	Mother and her Daughters, 478	Mulcousia Merchants, and East India Company were in a Voyage, 468.30. The Mulcousia Company lay by it, <i>ibid.</i>
Mother kindred married without in China, 394	Mothers kindred married without in China, 394	They sell, and deliver over the trade, 469.30
M. of the City and Country, 214	Mothers kindred married without in China, 394	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
20. Described, 225	M. of the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
Mofco the City, the beginning and description of it. Situated in the edge of Europe and Asia, 418	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
40. Burnt by the Tartar, <i>ibid.</i>	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
Greatest town London, <i>ibid.</i>	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
The miserable spectacle at the burning, 439.50. Claymed by the Tartar.	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
Mofco greater then London, 214	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
30. Stands in 55. degrees 10 minutes, 415	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
Mofco the City the government, 427	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
20. Taken in by the oldes. Last againe, 780.1. The way by land from thence to Emden, 743.50	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
The distance from Volodga, 744.1. &c. 747.10	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
Mofcote River, before his name in the Occa, 231.30. The River before and the manner, 455.40	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50
Given to sick folks, <i>ibid.</i>	Mofco the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. From thence to Boghat in Bactria, 331	Mulcousia Company of Merchants, their last Patent from the Emperor, 802. &c. Denied to trade for Furs, 805.50

THE TABLE.

and the Ceremony and state of it. He changes his imperial Crown three in a meal, 215.10. See also in pag. 224.40. & 225. Served by Duke, 225. His forces all his forces, no Husbandmen nor Merchants. Their Arms, discipline, their hardy bodies and their hardy Horses, *ibid.* Goes no pay, 216.1. The reason of it, 225.60. Their Law and Statute, 226.40. Without Lawyers, *ibid.* Trial by Combat, 216.60 In case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 217. They hang none for the first offence, 217.10 Very deservful, and various in case of debt, 2

THE TABLE.

minutes, 17, 50. In 77. degrees
40. minutes, 7, 19. In 61. de-
grees 40. minutes, 81. 50. In 88.
degrees 10. minutes. 83. 50.
Nightline in *fermans* *fermans* 70.
night, 186. 20.
Nipet, in the Burithnes, 633
20.
Nederich an Island in the River Vi-
tula, 656. 10. Escampotted
with a wall as high as Paules
Single.
Nether the River in Moldavia, the
Course and Fall, 633. 1. Called
Tyvas and Macoptolema, ibid.
Nether an Heretic, the extent, 317
40. Disposed through all India,
138. 40.
Nestorian Priests in Tartary, 27
10. They use the Syrian tongue,
24. 1.
Nestorians in Tartary, 14. 60.
Great Lewis, 14. 60. Some in 168.
char, 74. 40. And in Carchan,
74. 50.
Nestorians in Tanguth, 75. 40. In
Chinchintalas, 76. 30. In Suc-
cur, 76. 50. In Campion, 77. 1.
Nestorians near M. Labar, under
the Bishop of Succotera, 106. 30.
Great Enchanter, ibid.
Nestorians give way to the Tatar-
ians, 33. 30.
Nestorians, Siracons, and *delandars*
dwelt together in Tartary, 21. 1.
Nestorians in Erginul, 79. 50. In
Erginul, 80. 10. 20. In China,
97. 40. & 100. 40. In Chaldes,
110. 50. In Carianul, 89. 40.
In Iaci, 91. 40.
Nestorian Christians many in Ca-
thy, 24. 1. Their rites, 24. 10. 20.
Nestorians drunk at Church, 31. 1.
Their fall of three weeks before
Lent called the Fall of Ionas, 31.
1. They ate no fish in Lent, 35
20.
Nestorians baptize at Easter, and
baptize the Fanns solemnly, 30.
40.
Nestorians how they make and com-
secrate the bread for the Sacra-
ment, 27. 10. Their manner of gi-
ving the bread, ibid. They hap-
tize upon Easter Eve, 37. 10.
Their Patriarch resides at Bal-
dach, 37. 40.
Nestorians sing Mattens their Sa-
lomon's at Church in Tartary,
20. 10. 40. 50. The Tartarian
Emperor and Ladies come to
their Service, 30. 30. 40. & 70. 1.
Beads, and sing their Prayers, 15

40. Known not Extreme-widion,
nor Confession, 38. 20.
Nestorian Patriarch gives Orders
even to Infants, 58. 10.
Nestorian Chronicles omit the Pas-
sion of Christ, 41. 30.
Netherlanders, when they first
traded into Muttocua, 404. 10.
Forbidden by their own Sove-
reign to interrupt the English
there, ibid. Their intercourse, 1-
bid. & 466. 30. Forbidden by
the English, ibid. See Dutch.
Neulhat besieged by the Tartars, 63
50.
Newleas in Sweden; how far from
Stockholme, 775
New Age of the Mexicans, 1050
See also, pag.
1067. 40.
New Bizike in the West Indies,
the Sinker Myces in it, the lati-
tude, 877. 20.
New-found-land discovered, 80. 50.
20. Taken possession of for Eng-
land, ibid.
New-found-land, the Banks, 84
20. The Variation of the Com-
pass there, ibid. First by French-
men, ibid. Cods and Herring
there, 85. 1. The breath, ibid. The
people report of Gold and Sil-
ver Mines to be there, ibid. Fine
Islands by it, ibid. Ladlers there,
586. 10. And Ferres and Rea-
ners fought by the French, ibid.
New-found-land, the Latitudes,
Variation of the Compass,
and Soundings amongst the Coast,
584. 185. 586. 587. 588
New-land in Greenland, 463
10.
New Moones kept Fastland in Tar-
tary, 82. 40.
New Moones Fastland in China,
203
New Moone masters in China, 305
10. Held good to begin business
upon, 305. 50.
New Moone, brings tempests, in
China, 256. 50. Best saying
there, at the Fall and Change,
258. 30.
New Moone, welcomed with fire-
works, 345. 30. How welcomed
in Peru, 1046. 1. Bell rung on it,
275. 30.
New-years feasting (like to our
Christmas) lasts fiftene days,
374. 60.
New-years gifts, 343. 30.
New-years gifts in China, 203
10.
Nicaragua Province in the West
Indies, the Jurisdiction, Commu-

Emperours Villaines, ibidem.
How full kept under, and made
away, 424. The Names of the
chiefe families, 424. 50. The
second degree of Nobles, 425. 10.
The third and fourth degrees,
425. 30.
Nobilitie of Russia, are sometimes
made Bishops. They change their
names then 769. 10. Slaves 770
780. 20.
Nobilitie and power not suffice
more in Russia, 426. 40.
Nobilitie of the Grim Tartars,
their Service in the Emperours
Warres with two Hostes, 441
Nobilitie of China, 346. 50.
Nocera, a Savage Island of Spices,
104. 10.
Nombre de Dies first peopled and
discovered, distance from Porto
bello, 883. 1.
Noone sacrificed unto in Mexico,
1049. 20.
North not always the coldest, and
why, 472. 30. & 474. 10.
North parts of Europe, last peopled,
661. 40.
North-stare from about the Ae-
quinoctial Line, it some very low,
973. 1.
North-stare not seen in Asia
Major, 103. 30. Where some a-
gaine, 106. 30.
North wind causes Raine in Afri-
ca, 92. 2. Where, misty and un-
bolesome, 923. 10. & 92.
North winds at certain Months,
307. 50. & 308. 40.
North Sea which, 88. 1. The first
rail courses of Navigation in it,
ibid. 660. 10. In it, 86. 50.
North and South Seas of the West
Indies but eight leagues distant,
why not let one into another,
where each begins, 929. The
Isles of Antioch, encounter, and
retire at the same time, 930. 20.
Northern Sea and Passages, why
they are concealed, the action of
discovering that way, 452. 40.
North Cape, 223. 10. The latitude,
699. 60. marg.
North Cape, the variation there, 574
68. 20.
Northern Passages beyond 84. de-
grees, the probability of it, it hap-
pens convenient to discover it,
731. 10. Voyages and Observations
towards the North Pole, 699
700. & 700.
North-east Passages given over,
463. 20.
North-east parts, the right way to

THE TABLE.

discover them, 529. 40.
North-west Passages attempted,
463. 20. The commodity of it,
806
North-west Passage, the greatest
hopes of it, 811. 1. & 813. 40. &
841. 30. Discovered as far as the
latitude of 56. Deg. 26. Min.
by Britin, 841. 40. Hopes another
way, 843. marg. Sir Thomas
Button justified the King con-
cerning the hopes of the Passage,
843. 40. A Discourse about the
probabilities, 848. 49. Conclu-
sion by the Spaniard, 849. A
Treatise of it by M. Briggs, 852
Norw, the manner of Norway, 659
40.
Norway, some of the Coasts de-
scribed, 518. Barren, 630. 60.
Norway, sometimes subject to Eng-
land, 68. 1. 50. Several Expedi-
tions of the English Kings thither,
632. The King of Norway in-
vades England, 633. 20. Tra-
fick between England & Nor-
way, 632. Matthew Paris his
Voyage thither, ibid. Norwegi-
ans Expedition to the Holy-
Land, ibid. A most full History
and Orders destroyed there, and
reformed, 624. Popled by King
Arthur out of Britaine, 624. 40.
Norwegian Isles peopled by Brit-
tains, 619. 30. The people seized
here, ibid.
Norwegian Antiquities, some 656
40. & 661. 20.
Norwegians their first breaking
own, and their exploits, 644. 50.
Nolgyes a great present in India,
ibid. 658. 60.
Nofegay of Saluer, given for a Re-
ward, 293. 30.
Noua Albion of Sir Fran. Drake,
849. 1.
Noua Hispania, first discovered,
why so named, it is the North
India, the Native Commodities
of it, 860. 30. 40.
Noua Zembla called the best Coun-
try in the World, a high Land,
935. 60. Rich pastures, 937. 60.
The temperature, Graine, Silver,
Mynes, &c. 870. 40. The cu-
stomer of the people, 1000
Noua Zembla discovered, 463. 20.
The Sea from there, 474. 1. How
farre from the Low Countries,
474. 30. Why so cold, 527. 50.
And why that way unpessable,
528. 1. No passage that way to
the East Indies, 577. 30. See al-

so, 578. 40. & 579. 50. The Hol-
landers misplace it, in their
Maps, 579. 40. Called Goting
Sarchy, ibid. & before the Ice comes
thither, 579. 10. The Elevation
and Destination of the Sun there,
474. 30. &c. lies there in July
and August, 477. 10. Islands by
it, 478. 60. The length of it, 498
60. The difference in longitude
from Venice, 500. 30. The longi-
tude from Noua Zembla, ibid. The
distance from Russia, 514. 50.
Day and Night for many Mo-
neths together there, 494. & 505
The frisk of the Land from one
point of the Coast to another ex-
actly fit distance, and so forth to
Russia, 509
Nouda in China taken by Portu-
gals, 58. The rich style, 259
Nouette, China will admit none,
197. 10.
Nouogrode, or Gratuncore, 214
10.
Nouograd in Russia, as bigge as
London, 418. 60. The sipping
Slaves defeated here by their Wp,
419. 10.
Noytes horrible in Island, whence,
642. 1.
Nuneez the Jesuite his landing in
China, 319. 40. His reports of
China, ibid.
Nunnes of the Gentile Indians,
1034. 30. They were first sacri-
ficed to make Conquerors, ibid.
And in Mexico, and their Offi-
ces, ibid. By what the people,
grieved that the Nunne had him
disposed, ibid.
Nunnes of the Chinois, 274.
40.
Nunnettes in the Greeke Church,
449. 20. Noble women thrust
into them, ibid.
O
O Come let us worship, &c. The
Tylame laid before the
Platform for the Day, in the
Russian Service-book; as we do,
450
Oates like fishes finnes, 354. 50.
Oathes of several Nations, 203
50
Oath of old Island, the manner,
664. 10.
Oath of the Chinois, 258. 30.
Oathes, witness in China not
examined upon, and why, 188. 20.
101. 50
Oath

THE TABLE.

Oath upon the Crofs, 4, 10.
 Oath upon the Crofs and the Euangelists, 785.
 Oath upon the holy Point, 793.
 Oath upon Wheate Eares, 164-30.
 Oathes taken in Temple, 397.
 Ob, the River in the Samoisles
 Country, 532. & 523-30. The
 Rufles first paffe it, ibid. The
 strange creatures there, ibid.
 They suffer the Rufles to build
 Castles upon it, 524-40. Boats
 draunge upon it, 526-40. Na-
 tions, two kindes of, 527-30.
 The Countryes inhabited
 upon it, 528. The consequence of
 passing by it, through the Sa-
 moisles Country, 529-30. See
 also pag. 530-60. A Summers
 day playing on it, 543.
 Ob, the way and charges of discon-
 ting from the River Pecho-
 ra on Russia by Land, 16-60.
 The Inhabitants on each bank
 it, and the five Castles the
 wood on it, 516-21. It will be-
 freaquening in the way to discover
 it from Pechora by Sea, 505.
 The way thither from Caninos
 by Sea, ibid. A warne Sea be-
 yond it, 806-10.
 Obsequies to Parents, 344-60.
 Obedience of the Tartars to
 Prince and Spirituall Judges,
 619-1.
 Obligations the forme in Russia,
 434-40. No interest mentio-
 ned till the forfeiture, ibid.
 Speedy Iustice upon Bonds, ibid.
 Occa the River, 321-30. Falls in-
 to the Volga, 322-30.
 Ocha, a China City, 109-20.
 Ocha, the Cattera, 106-7.
 Officers their Voyage, 619-30.
 Oculas Tauri by Elevation and
 Declination in Nouz Zembla,
 499-10.
 Occazions in Podolia, the old
 names of it, 631-10.
 Offenders fowed up in ransome,
 105-40.
 Offerings of Paper, 106-50.
 Offices none Hereditary in Russia,
 422-20.
 Officers of the Household to the
 Emperour of Russia, 458-20.
 Officers the foure chief in Russia,
 and Princes, 471. The Ambassadors
 missives and Under-Officers,
 ibid. They put none to death,
 They are of no authority, and

are often changed, ibid. Suffered
 to style, that may be dyed,
 430. They come to the ship,
 427-1.
 Officers Names kept upon Record,
 388-20.
 Officers continue but three years,
 390-30. The Crimes for which
 they are condemned, ibidem.
 None is Judge in his own Coun-
 try, ibid. Their Children and
 Servants prevented from taking
 of bribes, ibid.
 Officers of Mexicans killed to
 serve their Lords in the new
 world, 1039-60.
 Ogash, Japan, seizes the Son of
 the reigning Prince, 1037.
 Olous the King and Saint of
 Norway where buried, 618.
 10. Honoured, ibid. His Sto-
 ry, 621-50.
 Old Testament undervalued by
 the Rufles, 452.
 Olmets Province in Russia by No-
 vograd, 754-50.
 Ololoquo, a feed of Mexicans, a
 bewitching quality of it: vifed in
 their Deathly Oymment, 1043.
 20-40.
 Omittofoffs, the Gods of China,
 195-1. Their Offerings, ibid.
 They raise on them, ibid.
 Omithofon, ibid., 201-60.
 Omomon first carrier of the Span-
 ish fire into the towne of China,
 290-20. He falls out with
 Sinsay, 304-20. They are
 made Loyalls, 307-40. Re-
 turnes to the Philippines, 308.
 30.
 Omur the Prince of it, comes to
 the Pope, 322.
 Ommen Kuralo, the Court of Pro-
 gress-chance, 330.
 Ommen Kuralo, the Court of the
 Country of the Tartars, ibid.,
 33-40.
 One God acknowledged by the Me-
 xicans, 1026.
 Oneclo the Russe, his Story,
 522. His Trading with the
 Samoisles for their furs, and
 his growing rich, ibid. Builds
 Churches, 521. Discovers
 the Secret to the Emperour,
 is honoured in Court, 523-10.
 10. The entrance of his Ho-
 nours, 524-30. Their Land-
 ships in the Ouse Olloff, &c.
 524-523.
 Oppobalsum what properly, 559.
 Oppreffion publicke in Russia, 427.
 427-1.

Oppreffors punished, and the op-
 pressed not released, 427-1.
 Oracles of the Drull in the Mexi-
 cans, 1005-1. Of Peru, 1032-30.
 The paffage on which bu-
 Priest: come to confute with
 him: the manner of the An-
 fwers, ibid. See also, pag. 1043-10.
 Orange Island, the latitude there,
 476-1. 477-1.
 Oranges great store in China, 130.
 Oranges, Lemons, and Pome-
 granes in China, 381.
 Oranges flow in the West In-
 dies, how they first grew, 901.
 10.
 Orange, a people in Tartary, 33.
 Orations made by Indians
 their Kings, 1005-40. 1006.
 1. 1010-40. 1011-20. 40. 1018-10.
 Oration of Erner William to Man-
 go-chan, 275-50.
 Orator the King of Mexico,
 to Hernando Cortes his be-
 liefe, 1123-30.
 Orca the Fish, kills the Whale,
 650-1.
 Orchards infinite in Russia,
 295-1.
 Orders of Knighthood in Mexico,
 their Dignities, Engifes, and Pri-
 viledges, 1003-30.
 Ordinance made in China, 303-30.
 & 305. marg. Short notice of
 Catay, 800-40.
 Orellana, the Russe in the West
 Indies, the beard, course, and
 length must, 888-10. & 886-10.
 Orefice Towne in Russia, by Lo-
 dol, 794-40.
 Organs blown with the mouth, 547.
 10.
 Organum, a Country in Catay,
 20. 20. 60. The Nefortians
 there still called Organi, by
 their skill on the Organs, ibid.
 Organ, the Country and Island,
 their Commodities, 71-30.
 40. Oronus the Russe, is be-
 lieved of Clermain, ibid. The descrip-
 tion, ibid.
 Ornaments of the Mexican Idol,
 1030. 1032.
 Orphans provided for in China,
 276-1.
 Orus the Kingdome betwixt Ma-
 galla and Bateria, 80-10.
 Osseous Tartars, 637-20.
 Otachies the people, where, 527-10.
 Otchoy,

THE TABLE

Orca, or the *Bride/fove* in
Petry, or the *Century of*, 1058
40
Orcaia a City, 241.40
Olan man of the *Commanoy*,
Paradee, 71.30.40.40. *Feels*
Paradee, 71.40. *Delivered*,
71.60. *The wife made of*, 72
30
Old *more than never* *called*, 33
much *conquered* in China, 33
20
Oule *River* in Russia, 553.40
The River that *falls into it*,
ibid. And, 554. *It falls in*,
55 Peshora, and *where*, 554
30
Oufon *the River*, by Ob, 80
80
Ouli-Zilma in Russia : *Forest*
there, 557.40 & 544.10. *De-*
scribed, 544.30
Owies *used for Hawks* in Tar-
tary, 86.20
Owies-feathers, *why the Tartan*
was, 111.10
Owies of Russia *fringe ones*, 111
10
Oxen *sacrificed* in China, 307.1
Oxen *fringe ones*, *which draw*
the Tartan boats, 25.71.20
70.90
Oxin *the River*, *both changed by*
conflict, 219.30
Oyle *in Capisfine*, 236.20
Oyle *in Baptifine* in the
Church, 451
Oyle of Olives *most precisely*
accounted of, 108.50. For
this reason *presents a Tartan*
Prince was the more diffi-
cult to have of the Oyle of the
Campeche *heraldism*,
Oyle of Balugos in Russia. *The*
manner of fishing for them, 549
30
Oyle of Aspick *whence brought*,
the oyle, 959.50
Oyle *made of the sap of a tree*, 957
20
Oyle *from Apples* in China, 382
40
Oyle of Sealo or *Trane oyle*, 46
50. *How made*, 147.10. *Use*
made of it, ibid.
Oyle of the Lamp *before Chris-*
topher, *Desired by the Tartan*
Prince, 65.40. *He*
receives it *renewerly*, 67.
40
Oymant of the Mexican
which make them. *See the*
Drull *it made of* *Perjan* and
Tobacco. *It made them*,
fear no wild Beasts, 1043
30
P
Patebenam, a River, 261
10
Pacamoros and Gualingo, *the*
Province in the West Indies,
the extent of its Jurisdiction,
its natural Commodities, *Mynes*,
Townes and *their Latitudes*,
897.60
Pacauca, Pacauca, Pacauca, *are*
the King of Malabars Prayers,
104.30
Pachin, *what* in Chinese, 199
10
Padou, a River by the Ob, 80
10
Pagodes, *the Temples* in China.
Palace of the King of Mangi *de-*
scribed, 100.10. *His Concu-*
bines, ibid.
Palingindones, or Tartarian
Trumpets, 278.10
Palms *the Island in the West In-*
dies, *the distance from the Ca-*
panzuel, 821.40
Palace Profile, or *halfway upon* *Pa-*
laris, 265.50
Palme-funday *Provision* in Russia,
237.20
Pamer, the Plateau, 74.30
Pampilla in Clucia, 51.60
Pan, a Province, 255.50
Panama in the West Indies, *the*
Province and *Province*, *the Juris-*
isdiction of the Council, *the ex-*
tent of it ; *the Soyle*, *Ayres*,
Latitude and *Longitude* *from*
Telexo, *when first peopled*, 882
10
Panama in it, 831.10
Parana *the Navigation too and a-*
gates to the City *De los Reyes*
and Chile, 860
Panakes at *Shrometide* in Russia,
227.1
Panghin the City, 96.30
Pannoma *where first peopled*, 662
30
Pancoras or China Skipper, 260
30
Pantogia *his being* in China, 407
10
Pancuo Province in the West In-
dies, *the extent*, *the difference* *of*
the Soyle, 873.20, 30
Papa, the Samois Priests, 443
40. And the Rufians, 447
40
Papus Roots, *are the bread of* *the*
Isle, 894.30
Paper *made of the second bark*
Fif 2
of the Mulberry Tree, 874
10
Paper of *downs matters made* in
China, 177.60
Papers or *water* *first before* *the*
times and *finding of* *Pre*
sent, 391.30
Paper-sacrifice of China, 369.
Paper of Japan, 325.10
Paper or East Island, *whence* *first*
came, 657.40
Pappons skins *used for clothing*
Tartary, 361.10
Pappa and Pappa, *what*, 55
10
Paps, *how the Indian wives bear*
them up, 992.40
Paque *described*, 272.20. *Be*
Tartars, 280.10
Paradise, *the Chinese would go*
to, 349.
Parents *owned* in China, 33
10
Parents *married* in China, 33
30
Parents *much restricted* in China,
33
Parents *first creating their own*
Children, 713.40
Paratiaca Mountains in the West
Indies, *the Province* *faithfully*
the Auteurs, and *the admi-*
nable office, *One of the higher*
lands in the world, 926.20, 30
Paras
Parties *usually divided*, *the*
consequence, 447.60
Parties a *Crack breaker*, 272.60
Partments *their order* in Russia,
422.50. *Begin commonly* *in*
day, *ibid*. *The meeting* *sitting* and
confuting, 427
Parots *bred on the Mountains* *in*
Peru, 93
Parrot *first first* by *complex*, 99
40
Par-benium the Promontory, 63
10
Parthia is now called Sactaria
Zagerei or Sochaty, 141.10
Parrigins of the West Indies, *are*
described, *how taken*, 996.
Partridges *white and plenty* in
Russia, *their Feathers* *sold*, 53
10
Partridges *flying into* a Ship, 14
10
Parum, the bounds of the Mogore
Demmon towards Catay, 31
10
Pascatic, *shake the Hungarian*
people, 18.50. *Their trades* and
habits *ibid*. *The Hunnes came*
out of, 18
10

THE TABLE.

Polatari, that is, Hungary the greater, 630
Palcha, a *Christian woman* of Mentz, *found* in Tartary, 28
Pellus *the Ispah* his travels, 321
His *fortunes and death*, 322
Pelport to Hela, 406, 30
Pelilage *by the Pole*, the *Isopos*, 703
Pelage *probably* between *New Spain*, and *Asia* or *Tartaria*, 806, 30
Pellaur a *City*, 311, 40
Pellur for *Transilers*, the *forms used* in *Russia*, 78, 49
Patanes *the people and Kingdom*, 162, 50
Patching of *clothes*, one of *Tartarian Commandments*, the *Isopos* for, 443, 10
Petriarch bearing in *Judge*, 202, 1
Petriarch of *Contantinople* negotiates a *league* against the *Turks*, 445
A *league* between *Spain* and *Moscou*: *That* *broke* *off*, *ibid*. He *colourably* *rejoins* *the Patriarchate*, *to the Metropolitan* of *Moscow*, *ibid*, *Gees* and *various* *times*, 445
Patriarch of *Moscow*, the *Emperours Father* *chose* *to be*, 791, 10
Patriarch of *Moscow*, *gent* *Patents with the Emperours*, &c. 802, 20
30
Patriarch of *Russia* made to *play* *on a Bagpipe*, 739, 40. *Crowns the Emperours*, 743, 10
Patriarch of *Moscow*, *when first* *made* *Archbishop*, *His Jurisdiction over the Russian Church*, *ibid*, *Archbishops* *of*, 445, 30
His *revenues*, 445, 60. *His habit*, 447, 1
The *Emperours* *holds* *his wife* *bride*, 456, 10
Paving *not* *Pitch*, 199, 40
Paying *upon* *Past-board* in *Ca-tay*, 800, 10
Paying in *China*, *without* *issuance*, 371, 1
Paying in *China*, *357*, 10
Paying *of their* *beds*, *by* *the* *Indians*, 992, 10
Paying *off* *by the* *Russ* *women*, *their* *base* *allowance* *from* *their* *Husbands* *to* *buy* *their* *Colours*, 459, 30
Painted *women*, 203, 20
Peacocks *of the* *West* *Indies* *described*, 995, 50
Peace *mediated* *between* *the* *Russ* *and* *Poles*, and *the* *Russ* *and* *Sweden*, and *by* *whom*, 791
Peace *between* *the* *Russ* *and* *Swed-*

[illegible]

20 *Peas found in Florida*, 868, 66
 20 *Peas, found in two former soldiers' filter, and which is left,* 30
 20 *Peas, green flower,* 91, 21
 20 *Peas, when they came, 70*, 20
 20 *Peas, filling, 554, 50. A ship of*
 20 *Strangers' honor, that comes from,* *ibid.*
 20 *Peas, the filling for them, and,* *ibid.*
 20 *the manner, 1, 104-40. Fiddling*
 20 *Trade 1749 upon*, 222, 20
 20 *Pelicanus Maryland*, 222, 20
 20 *Pechingo in Lapland,* 558, 10
 20 *Pechora, the river for*, 548, 20
 20 *the Trade was thence once*, 548
 20 *to Ob, 551, 60. And the land*
 20 *and course of the River, 552, 2*
 20 *The River that fall into it,* 552
 20 *554. The way thence to Tumen*
 20 *to the Casary,* 556, 20
 20 *Pechora, 554, i. health 22, 556*
 20 *553, 2. The Ruffles that*
 20 *inhabit, 554, 20. The Commodi-*
 20 *ties there to be had, 553, 20. Com-*
 20 *munications of transportation, ibid.*
 20 *The Indians Thence to trade*
 20 *with Strangers, ibid. Trade*
 20 *from thence to Mongolozsy,* 553
 20 *543*
 20 *Pechora, the Town described,*
 20 *and how they live there, 556, 20*
 20 *they in August, 556, 20. Summ-*
 20 *er at Chymfisk, scarce less,* 556
 20 *Pechora now by the Ruffe,* 549
 20 *The Language derived from*
 20 *the Ruffe,* 549
 20 *Pechora the River, discovered,* 545
 20 *549*
 20 *Pechora the Lake in Liefland,* 658
 20 *Peim, their adulterous liberty*
 20 *and custom,* 705
 20 *Penance of the Mexicans,* 103
 20 *40*
 20 *Pencils of hairs, hair for writing,*
 20 *383*
 20 *People decayed in the Indies by the*
 20 *Spaniards, 935, of 938, 10*
 20 *Presentment taken away from unfor-*
 20 *tunate Indians,* 877, 20
 20 *Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney*
 20 *Islands, 827, 20*
 20 *Pentlow-frith in Orkney Islands,*
 20 *the latitude, 713. The country and*
 20 *sydes thereof,* 713
 20 *Pepper infinite flora of,* 101, 20
 20 *Pepper the daily expence in one Ci-*
 20 *ty, 98, 10*
 20 *Pepper Trade discovered, 120*
 20 *Pepper of West India, the several*
 20 *sorts, qualities and uses of, 985, 50*
 20 *60. Salt corrects the ill quality*

THE TABLE

of 956, 1. The common Spies
and of India, ibid., 110.
Pequim, China, see Cambalaja 114.
Pequim, other names of it, 201-5.
Pequim in China, is a, in a burrow
1096, 241. Very bare, ibid., 110.
of, Degrete, 341, 502. The way
from Canton to Nanchang
from Canton, ibid., 1262 described and
compared with Quinsay, 342.
unpacked and dry, ibid., 110.
ride the freeze in Vojles, ibid., 110.
They bring Ser-cade, called Red
made with Brick, like Sumer,
ibid., The people there, ibid., 110.
Pequin & Cambal, the Epyms of
5, 124, & 361, 6. It is 100
hundred leagues from Macao
361-50. It is very dry and by night
the Court was remarkable, ibid.,
from Nanchin, 389, 30.
P-quim, in the Northern Chinese
ibid., The King forces to reside
there, 375.
Participa, inhabited by the
Tartars, 633. The old Name,
Perfumes burnt in the Sacrifices to
the Deity in China, 364-50.
Permia passed by the Ruffe, 430-50.
Of Tartarian Origin, 443, 50.
Perrin contains eight Kingdoms.
The names of them, 70, 70. The
Country, 71.
Perris, was made by Tartars, 121.
Perris, first traded into by English,
250-3.
Perrin & Arificers, 700, 706.
Perrins were rude, Tartarian,
166.
Perrian Town overtook the Turk,
244-5.
Perrin tradivo Syria and Arabia,
242. Why the trade was
small, ibid., English Clouth
there, ibid., 110.
Perris, the strange properties of
Lend, one winds only there,
and the nature of it, no Temples
were the Coast, but terrible one
by the Hills, and it Rains constant,
198, 199. The Rains, 198, 199.
Rain of the Rains, 198, 199.
It is one in Perris, ibid., The
Perris, 198.
Perru, the heat kept it there
thence, 241. The Night is
bitter here in Spain, 921-50.
It never Rains there, It is
always the same Wind, 238.

Petu, the fourfold partition of, *see*
 and the tribute which each party
 pays, 105, 140. *Lands* in Com-
 munity, 107, 120. *Every man*
 there of all Trades paid, 120.
 Loves, rewards for public Ser-
 vices, *see* *Almshouses*; *alms-*
houses, 108. Compared by the Spa-
 niards where they had *Civil* wars, 105, 106.

Petu in the West Indies, *see* *Dis-*
tribution of the Inhabitants; *War*,
 against, *Discavery*, *Prisoners*, *war-*
riors, *Manuages*, *two* greater
 Highways, *Pests* for *Leprosy*, *see*
Lepra, 106.

Petu comprehends not all the *Indies*
 of the South, *regard*, *the* *Wells*
of the *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells*
of *the* *Indies*, *the* *Wells* *of* *the*
Indies, *the* *Wells* *of* *the* *Indies*,
the *Wells* *of* *the*

Civil wars in the Ilands, hidden
conquest named as King
Philip's. The reason
of time, 284.60 & 284.40
the war the Spanes and Monks;
287.20 The Franciscans go abro-
ad there, alfo the Dominicks de-
livered, 289.10 The Priesthood
were common at this time,
would not go to beards, becoming
the Dominicans more than
1. The first of the year, 294.10
& 289.1. The first
there, ibid. They overtook the
Mulanay Tangu, 284.60. The
defiance from China, 291.10
And from Mexico, 291.10
Philippines called the Kingdom
of Luzon, by the Chinos, 290.
29.30 & 291.0. Spanish
history to China, 297.30
Philippines, the swift
from Lima in Peru, without
the Line, 294.30
Philippines Ilands, the lastness
defiance from Spain. Discrepancy
and Native Commodities, 294.
few of them, 294. There has been
10000. of them many times
fiants there and Malaccas, 294.

Philology little known in Chi-
na, 343.60 & 345.00 & 346.
Philosophical Differences of heath-
en and civil, 919.20 & 921.00
the Indians, 923.90
Philosophers sacrificed unto, 34
Physicians of Mexico speak
Hebrew, 2133.
Physicians in the East Indies, 900.
Physicks taught in Holland, 960.

Physick not much esteemed in Chi-
na, 285.20. Degrees taken
in, 287.30
Physique nature (or mind) of the
Mexicans,
Piacra, or Indian Medicines,
Life and Art, 973.40. That
dwell and true answers to the
Spaniards, 87.40
Pantlu the Cure, 89.20
Pictures of strange Creatures in
precious Gems or Gold, in Mexi-
co, 973.40
Physic of Exorcism of Infants
terrible Persons, 271.0
Pictures the King of China affords
of 356. He thought them divine
ibid
Pictures of Feathers the Chinese
making them, and their curio-
sities, 965.40

THE TABLE.

P. *Scaris, that is, Hungaria the greater*, 630
Palcha, a Christian Woman of
Menz, found in Tartary, 28
 40
Pafius the Iefuite his travels, 321
His fortunes and death, 326
Passport to Hell, 406, 3
Passage by the Pole, the bores, 701
 30
Passage probable betwixt New
Spain, and Asia or Tartary
 806, 30
Passau a City, 311, 40
Paffs for Travellers, the forms of
in Russia, 758, 40
Patanes the people and Kingdom,
 29, 40
Patching of clothes, one of Tartar
Customs, the reason, 443, 30
Patient bearing in Judges, 103, 1
Patriarch of Constantinople negotiates
a league against the Turk,
 443, 30
A league betwixt Spain
and Molcoia: That law broke
off, ibid., *He colourably resigneth*
his Patriarchate, to the Metropolitan
of Molco, ibid., *Goes*
away enriched, *ibid.*
Patriarch of Molco, the Emperours
Father in law to, 791, 1
Patriarch of Molco, signs Patents
with the Emperour, &c., 802, 20
 30
Patriarch of Russia made to play
on a Bagpiper, 739, 40. *Crowns*
the Emperour, 743, 30
Patriarch of Molco, when first
made, 443, *His jurisdiction over*
the Russian Metropolitan,
Aethiops, &c. 446, 30
His revenues, 445, 60. *His habit*, 447
 1. *His Emperour holds his staff*
in both, 456, 10
Pausing untill Pitch, 199, 40
Paynting upon Pash-board in Ca-
tay, 800, 10
Paynting in China, without be-
lowing, 371, 1
Paynting in China, 357, 1, 30, 30
Paynting of their bodies, used by
the Indians, 992, 10
Paynting used by the Ruffe women,
they have allowed from their
Husbands to buy their Colours,
 459, 30
Paynted women, 230, 30
Peacocks of the West Indies de-
scribed, 995, 40
Peace mediated betwixt the Ruffes
and Poles, and the Ruffes and
Sweden, and by whom, 791
Peace betwixt the Ruffes and Swe-

den, 792. *The conditions of the*
assize as follows. Forgetful-
ness of injuries, 2. The Sweden
yields up the Cattle before cattle,
3. Sweden was to restore Church
Ornaments & Bells, 4. Persons
and goods to be free from all
sides, 5. The time for Sweden's
delivery of the Tunes, six down,
6. Lodia Cattle to be recovered,
and Odoro to remain in Swede-
nary 7. Sweden, 7. Sweden
to give his brother his place
to Noungrud, 8. & 8. What
place the Rulle yields to Sweden,
9. And what money, 10. Sweden
to keep the Ordinance which he
had taken, 11. Sweden to retain
the Signory of Corelia, 12.
Where the Commissioners on both
sides are to meet, & determine
of the bounds, and confirm the
Articles, 13. The Rulle to give
owner his title to Lifland, the titles
of both Princes to be agreed up-
on, 14. Commerce of goods to con-
tinue, 15. Merchants on both
sides to have free exercise of Re-
ligion, 16. Personal warranty, &c.
And a small article, but here
ordered: From the 6, to the 29.
Article, 30. Ambassadors where
29 articles, 31. Peace, 32. And not
to be taken of each other, 33. And
34. No other parties to be
Polish, to treat of a league
against him, 35. The Confir-
mation, and name of the Commis-
sioners. All which is acknow-
ledged to be effected by the media-
tion of his King James.
Peace between Denmark and
Sweden: and the Conditions,
797. 10.
Peaches weighing two pounds a
piece, 95. 1.
Pears weighing ten pounds each,
98. 30.
Peattle-fishing largely discrib'd,
972. The Oyfter they are found
in, nam'd. Whether they grow
where they are found or remove
thither: where the best Pearles
are found, ibid. Mention of
great and round Pearles: mist
be falsified like a Pearle, 977.
3. 10.
Peatles, found in flint, two foldness
of one bigness: Stories of some
Peatles. Where in the Indies are
the mist and best, 992. 50. 60.
The manner of digging for them,
993. 1.
Peatle-fishing in Marraz, 3. 366.

20. And in Florida, 868. 66
 Pearles found in true feralish shells,
 filters, and which is best, 999
 Pearles great size, 91
 Pearles whence they come, 70, 20
 Pearle-fishing, 234-50. Ships of
 Strangers turn, then come there,
 ibid.
 Pearles the fishing for them, and
 the manner, 104-40. *Yfokike*
 Reads to prove, 109, ibid.
 Pechinco and Pechos, 232-30
 Pechingo in Lapland, 558, 10
 Pechora, the name for Furest there,
 546. The way thence over-land
 to Ob, 551-60. And the head
 and course of the River, 552-1
 The Rivers that fall into it, 553
 554. The way thence to Tumna
 in Tartary, 556-30
 Pechota, 550. 1. *Itabz* 22. months,
 533. The Ruffes that trade
 thence, 534-20. The Commu-
 nities that trade thence, 535-30. Co-
 munities of Transiberia, trade
 The Inhabitants faine, trade
 with Strangers, ibid. The way
 from thence to Mongozey, 539
 543
 Pechora the Tumna deferred, and
 how they thus deferred, 536. Ruffes
 there in August, 542-30. Summ
 at Chrysmiff's feveres fane,
 Pechora named by the Ruffes, 439
 20. Their Language differs from
 the Ruffes, ibid.
 Pechora the River, discovered, 463
 Peibus the Lake in Liefland, 638
 Peim, their adulterous liberty and
 custom, 75, 1
 Penance of the Mexicans, 1035
 40
 Pencils of haire, haire for writing,
 35
 People decayed in the Indies by the
 Spaniards, 935. & 938. 10
 Penitons taken away from unfer-
 viceable men, 216, 20
 Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney,
 827. 10
 Pentlow-frith in Orkney Land, the
 latitude, 713. The course and
 tides there, ibid.
 Pepper infinite store of, 101
 20
 Pepper the daily expence in one Ci-
 ty, 98. 10
 Pepper Tree deferred, 128. 50
 Pepper of West India, the several
 sorts, qualities and uses, 955. 50,
 60. Sale, carried off, and the weight

of 1956, 1. The
and *source* of In-
Pequim in China, 1.
Pequim, *other name*
Pequim in China,
1916, 341. Un-
40. Degree, 34
from whence 1.
Canton, *ibid.*,
compared with
unpaved and di-
vide the street.
They burn Sea-
made with Bri-
ibid. The peep
Pequim is Cimbai
43, 42. 361.
hundred league
363, 50. It born,
the Camr was
from Nanquin,
Pe-quin, is the N
ibid. The King
there,
Pericopia, *inhabit*
Tartars, 633.
Perfumes burnt in
the Dead in Chi-
Permia *name* by the
Of Tartarian in
Perlia contains a
The names of the
Commodities,
Perlia worn by the
Perlia, first traded
Persian Artificers
Persians wear
Persian Queen on
Persian trade into
uant, 242. W
small, *ibid.* Eng
Peru, the strange
Lands, one *W*
the nature of it
were the Coast,
by the Hills, an-
nually on the
Reason of the
one in Peru, w
Peru, the best be-
thence Mats :
bote there as in
It never Rains
always the fa

common Spice ibid.
Cambaſſa 374
of it, ſee 361-30
it is a *heron*
in *bite*, ibid. In
Nanguan and
of *dried* and
Quincy, 342-
ibid. *Allomen*
in *Peyto*, ibid.
the *Siam* Sea,
the *Siam* Sea,
the *Siam* Sea,
the *Siam* Sea,
ibid.
in, the *Eryman*
So. It is *fixe*
from Macao,
by and by upon
their *cannock* their
389-30
Tartarum Coſta
Turvane to *refide*
275-1
led by the *Crim*
The *elde Names*,
ibid.
the *Sacrifice* to
na, 364-50
To Ruſſe, 439-20
443-10
the *Kingdoms*,
na, 70-50. The
71-1
Tartars, 116-1
into by length, 30
good, 70-60
cede. Turbans,
166-1
the Tuſks
244-20
Myria and the *L*-
y the trade is
with Chinas, ibid.
properties of the
one only there, and
no Timeſt
but terrible one
It Rames conti-
downſtairs, 936
Amians, 937-20
bid., the *Taffie*,
938-1
if there was ſo
the Night were
Spain, 921-50
there: It *Iaba*
re Windy, 923-

Peru, the *fauvelous*
and the *tribute*
pages, 105-40
more there, 105-7
there it all *Toſſes*
Lawer, rewards
ſome, &c. Mary
ſhips 88 Congru
ſhips 88 Congru
ſhips 88 Congru

Petition in the *Weſt*
diſpenſary in the
again, Diſpenſary
again, Diſpenſary
Hag-wings, 30
30-10-10

Peturcomphred
of the South, by
quintennial, the
into three parts
wonder kinds of
Lo Keyte.

Pemalock a *Tulle*
own Ruſſe,
Pellence in the
World.
Peter Baſman a
748-30. A *breve*
20. Sent the *ſ*-
Demetrius, his
757-30. Where
prefire to *Crom*

Petigrens in Tai
Petigren Promen
Petition in China
407-10 How
Petition not as ſure
denied,
Petitor River, the

Petum, ſee Tobac
Pharaohs Eats, it
Phœants as *baggs*
three a Croas,
Phœants three a
Phœdore Juſſow
Ruſſe, 740-40
January to the *E*-
his good
neighbour Prime
with him, and
of England, 74
and Death,

Philippines, the
them from Spain
distance, and ſea
Philipine Islands
concerned by Ma
ſecond Voyage
third Voyage

portion of it, which each part
 Lends in Com- 240. Every man
 member bids. Their
 for possible for- 241. The
 geance, followed, 242. The
 by the Span- 243. The
 And Civil wars, 244. The
 245. 60. 246. 60. 247. 60.
 The confeder- 248. The
 of the Nation, 249. The
 of France, was, 250. The
 two, the great 251. The
 gifts for Letters 252. The
 at all the Indies 253. The
 as the A- 254. The
 Conquest, Dis- 255. The
 256. 10. 257. 10. 258. 10.
 The 259. 10. 260. 10. 261. 10.
 the signifi- 262. 10.
 North of the 263. 10.
 738-30. 264. 10.
 Russian Gen- 265. 10.
 of General, 750. 266. 10.
 and times, 751. 267. 10.
 268. 10. 269. 10. 270. 10.
 the New Em- 271. 10.
 52-20. Slaves, 272. 10.
 Africa, are Chris- 273. 10.
 274. 10. 275. 10. 276. 10.
 or Colchis, 277. 10.
 278. 10. 279. 10. 280. 10.
 a form of one, 281. 10.
 the King fight 282. 10.
 ibid, 283. 10.
 ed, is granted for 284. 10.
 285. 10. 286. 10. 287. 10.
 bad and fall, 288. 10.
 289. 10. 290. 10. 291. 10.
 292. 10. 293. 10. 294. 10.
 295. 10. 296. 10. 297. 10.
 298. 10. 299. 10. 300. 10.
 301. 10. 302. 10. 303. 10.
 304. 10. 305. 10. 306. 10.
 307. 10. 308. 10. 309. 10.
 310. 10. 311. 10. 312. 10.
 313. 10. 314. 10. 315. 10.
 316. 10. 317. 10. 318. 10.
 319. 10. 320. 10. 321. 10.
 322. 10. 323. 10. 324. 10.
 325. 10. 326. 10. 327. 10.
 328. 10. 329. 10. 330. 10.
 331. 10. 332. 10. 333. 10.
 334. 10. 335. 10. 336. 10.
 337. 10. 338. 10. 339. 10.
 340. 10. 341. 10. 342. 10.
 343. 10. 344. 10. 345. 10.
 346. 10. 347. 10. 348. 10.
 349. 10. 350. 10. 351. 10.
 352. 10. 353. 10. 354. 10.
 355. 10. 356. 10. 357. 10.
 358. 10. 359. 10. 360. 10.
 361. 10. 362. 10. 363. 10.
 364. 10. 365. 10. 366. 10.
 367. 10. 368. 10. 369. 10.
 370. 10. 371. 10. 372. 10.
 373. 10. 374. 10. 375. 10.
 376. 10. 377. 10. 378. 10.
 379. 10. 380. 10. 381. 10.
 382. 10. 383. 10. 384. 10.
 385. 10. 386. 10. 387. 10.
 388. 10. 389. 10. 390. 10.
 391. 10. 392. 10. 393. 10.
 394. 10. 395. 10. 396. 10.
 397. 10. 398. 10. 399. 10.
 400. 10. 401. 10. 402. 10.
 403. 10. 404. 10. 405. 10.
 406. 10. 407. 10. 408. 10.
 409. 10. 410. 10. 411. 10.
 412. 10. 413. 10. 414. 10.
 415. 10. 416. 10. 417. 10.
 418. 10. 419. 10. 420. 10.
 421. 10. 422. 10. 423. 10.
 424. 10. 425. 10. 426. 10.
 427. 10. 428. 10. 429. 10.
 430. 10. 431. 10. 432. 10.
 433. 10. 434. 10. 435. 10.
 436. 10. 437. 10. 438. 10.
 439. 10. 440. 10. 441. 10.
 442. 10. 443. 10. 444. 10.
 445. 10. 446. 10. 447. 10.
 448. 10. 449. 10. 450. 10.
 451. 10. 452. 10. 453. 10.
 454. 10. 455. 10. 456. 10.
 457. 10. 458. 10. 459. 10.
 460. 10. 461. 10. 462. 10.
 463. 10. 464. 10. 465. 10.
 466. 10. 467. 10. 468. 10.
 469. 10. 470. 10. 471. 10.
 472. 10. 473. 10. 474. 10.
 475. 10. 476. 10. 477. 10.
 478. 10. 479. 10. 480. 10.
 481. 10. 482. 10. 483. 10.
 484. 10. 485. 10. 486. 10.
 487. 10. 488. 10. 489. 10.
 490. 10. 491. 10. 492. 10.
 493. 10. 494. 10. 495. 10.
 496. 10. 497. 10. 498. 10.
 499. 10. 500. 10. 501. 10.
 502. 10. 503. 10. 504. 10.
 505. 10. 506. 10. 507. 10.
 508. 10. 509. 10. 510. 10.
 511. 10. 512. 10. 513. 10.
 514. 10. 515. 10. 516. 10.
 517. 10. 518. 10. 519. 10.
 520. 10. 521. 10. 522. 10.
 523. 10. 524. 10. 525. 10.
 526. 10. 527. 10. 528. 10.
 529. 10. 530. 10. 531. 10.
 532. 10. 533. 10. 534. 10.
 535. 10. 536. 10. 537. 10.
 538. 10. 539. 10. 540. 10.
 541. 10. 542. 10. 543. 10.
 544. 10. 545. 10. 546. 10.
 547. 10. 548. 10. 549. 10.
 550. 10. 551. 10. 552. 10.
 553. 10. 554. 10. 555. 10.
 556. 10. 557. 10. 558. 10.
 559. 10. 560. 10. 561. 10.
 562. 10. 563. 10. 564. 10.
 565. 10. 566. 10. 567. 10.
 568. 10. 569. 10. 570. 10.
 571. 10. 572. 10. 573. 10.
 574. 10. 575. 10. 576. 10.
 577. 10. 578. 10. 579. 10.
 580. 10. 581. 10. 582. 10.
 583. 10. 584. 10. 585. 10.
 586. 10. 587. 10. 588. 10.
 589. 10. 590. 10. 591. 10.
 592. 10. 593. 10. 594. 10.
 595. 10. 596. 10. 597. 10.
 598. 10. 599. 10. 600. 10.
 601. 10. 602. 10. 603. 10.
 604. 10. 605. 10. 606. 10.
 607. 10. 608. 10. 609. 10.
 610. 10. 611. 10. 612. 10.
 613. 10. 614. 10. 615. 10.
 616. 10. 617. 10

be Slaves, ibid.
named by King
recovers Bag-
283.40. They
me and Moore,
accuse you ibi:
ominicks &c.
Their Priests
ibid. ibid. They
cease, because
on their, 284.
the Her, 284. 10
first Plaidition
understand the
n. 285.60. The
China, 292.10
co, --ibid.,
and the Kingdom
Chinois, 309.
Sometimes tri-
377.30
corse, ibidem
ru, as first under
974.30
s, the last end of
aine. Descrip-
Commodities of
904. There had
many Christi-
Mahometans,
905
known in Chi-
45.50. & 346.i
scourges of heate
to, 321.60. Of
923.923
sferred unto, 347
40.359.50
tico cure all warts
1133.1
of East Indies, 960.f
in Island, 960.f
30
effected in Chi-
degrees taken in
ibid.
or directly) of the
1043
Magicians, their
973.40. Their
answers to the
974.1
89.20
Creatures cut in
Gold, in Mexi-
1064.50
tion of Justice, to
1, 271.60
of China afraid
ought them alive,
ibid.
others the Art of
and their curiosity,
965.40

THE TABLE.

of 4,955.1. *The common Spin* 40
and *several* of India, *ibid.* 302
Pequim China; = Cambalu; 314.
Pequin, other names of it, 361.50. 40
Pequin in China, it is a *barren* 302
joyle, 341. *Very bare*, *ibid.*
40. Degree, 341.50. *The way*
from thence to Nanquin and
Canton, *ibid.* *Well defended*, 341.
compared with Quifu, 341.
unpopulated and dirty, *ibid.*
Almen ride the street, in *Yngli*, *ibid.*
They burn Sea-cable; *their Beds*
made with Bricks, *the Spaniards*
ibid. *The people suffer there*,
ibid.
Pequin = Cambalu, *The Etymon of*
314.2. & 361.60. *It is five*
hundred leagues from *Macao*,
361.50. *It lies very dry*, *whereby*
the Comrs was removed thither
from *Nanquin*, 389.30
P-quinn, is *the Noribike Coms*,
ibid. *The King swears to reside*
there, 375.3
Periopia, inhabited by the *Crim*
Tartars, 633. *The old Name*,
ibid.
Perfumes *burnt in the Sacrifices to*
the Dead in *China*, 364.50
Permia *means* by the *Russ*, 439.30
Of *Tartarian* Origin, 443.10
Perlia *contains eight Kingdoms*,
The names of them, 70.50. *The*
Commodities, 71.1
Perlia *was by* the *Tartars*, 116.1
Perlia, *first traded into* by *English*,
ibid. 250.30
Perlian *Artificers*, 70.60
Perlians *were* *good*, *Turkists*,
ibid. 166.1
Perlian *Queen overborn* the *Turks*
ibid. 244.20
Perlian *trade into* *Syria* and the *Licant*,
ibid. 242. *Why the trade is*
small, *ibid.* *English Cloath there*,
ibid.
Petro, *the strange properties of the*
Land, *one Wind* *only* *there*, *and*
the nature of it; *no Tempest*;
where the Coast, *but terrible* *noise*
by the Hills, *and it* *Keats continually*
on the Mountains, 936.
Fearful *the Rains*, 937.20
It is in *Perry*, *whith*, *ibid.* 938.1
The
Perry, *the boats kept off there* *with*
shime *Mail*; *the Night* *not so*
hot *there* *as in Spain*, 921.50.
It never Rains there; *It blows*
always the same Wind, 923.
ibid.

Petu, the fourfold partition of it, and the tribute which each part pays, 1055-40. *Lands in Common there*, 1057-20. Every man there is of Tradeable. Their *Lovers*, rewards for public Service, &c. *Marriage*, *plumets*, &c. 1058. Compared by the Spaniards when they had Civil wars, 1059-60.

Petu in the West Indies, 1061-60. *Disunion of the Jurisdiction*, *the cause against*, *Alouques*, *Princes* &c. *the*, *Monkeys*, *two great High-ways*, *Poets for Letters* &c. *them*.

Petugemehs not all the Indies of the South, *begin*, at the *Equinoctial*, the *Continent*, *Division into three parts*, 887-10. The *proper bounds of Petu*, 892-10. See *Lojey*.

Pernalock & Tombe, the significance in Ruffe, 243.

Petrelline in the North of the World, 738-30.

Peter a Baffan a Russian King, 748-30. A *brave General*, 750-30. *Sent the first time against* the *Semir*, *his second time*, 751-2. 757-30. *Plots the way* *Empress to Court*, 762-20. *Slaves*.

Petigorens in Taurica, are Christian, 619-30.

Petigoren France, or Colchis, 616-30.

Petition in China, a King of, 407-10. *How the King gives*, &c. *it*, *ibid*.

Petition not answered, is granted for deny'd, 354-41 & 358-30.

Pettora River, the bread and salt, 515-20.

Petum, for Tobacco.

Pharaohs Rats, their force, 107-1.

Pharants as bigge as Peacocks, and three a Groat, 86-40.

Phasants exceeding great, 90-40.

Phasants three a groat, 89-40.

Phaulcon Juanovich, *Emperor of Russia*, 740-40. *His promise of favour to the English*, 741-40. *His good beginning*, 743-10. *His neighbour Princes desire a league with him, and be with the Queen of England*, 743. *His simplicity and Death*, 745-10.

Philippines, the Navigation thither from Spain, 806-10. The distance, and *season*, *ibid*.

Philippines *lands*, 852. *First discovered by Magallane*, *the*, *Second Voyage thither*, 852-30. *The third Voyage thither*, 853-30.

Coquilwates in the Islands, ibid.
Conquered and named by King Philip, ibid. *They receive Baptism, 283, 60 & 283, 40. They worship the Sun and Moon, 283, 4. The Franciscans go thither, 283, 40. The Dominicans, 283, 40. Their Priests were women, 283, 40. They would not go to heaven, because the Spaniards made them, 283, 4. The Bishop of the Maricao, 10 & 283, 1. The first Priests thither, 283, 4. They understand the Malayan Tongue, 283, 60. The different China, 283, 10. And from Mexico, 283, 10. Philipinae called the Kingdom of Luzon, by the Chinese, 309, 23, 30 & 310. Sometimes contrary to China, 377, 30.*

Philippinas, the coast of, 309, 23. from Lima in Peru, a full round the Line, 324, 30.

Philippinas Islands, the latitude & distance from Spaine. Description and Native Commodities of some of them, 304. There be 11000. of them; many Christians there and Mahometans, 305.

Philosophy little known in China, 343, 60 & 345, 50 & 345, 6. Philosophical Disputes of wealth and cold, 319, 320, 321, 60. Of the Winds, 323, 30.

Philosophers sacrificed save, 347, 40. 359, 50.

Physicians of Mexico cure all diseases, 347, 40.

Physicians in the West Indies, 347, 40.

Physicks tasted off in Island, 366, 30.

Physicks not much esteemed in China, 385, 20. Degrees taken in the Arts, 385, 20. ibid.

Physicks divine (or diabolical) of the Mexicans, 1043.

Places, or Indian Magicians, their Life and Art, 973, 40. Their dress and true enemics to the Spaniards, 974, 1.

Plants the Cure, 89, 20.

Pictures of Strange Creatures cut in precious stone or Gold, in Mexico, 1064, 50.

Pictures of Execution of Justice, to terrible Prisoners, 271, 60.

Pictures the King of China affixed to, 356. He thought them alive, 356, 10. ibid.

Pictures of Feathers the Arts of making them, and their curiosity, 905, 40.

THE TABLE.

Pixaries, *see* *Cronicles of the Mexican Emperors*, at page 1067, and elsewhere, at page . . . 1117
Pictorial-writings of the Mexicans, 1081:50
Piqueres-of Europe, admitted in China, 128.60
Picot Indian Birds with bills blacker than their bodies, 98.20
Pigeons, 98.1
Pigment, *see* *Book of Beasts*, 651-40
Pilgrimage, thoughtfully to be made in Noun, Tchoula, 612
Pigmies (*see* to be in Cathay), 33
Pigs, *Bacon* not to be eaten in going inland; How they are reared, ibid.; Their blood gives excellent purple, 34.1
Piscaceum, the Cris, 34.1
Pitchers, in numerous forms in Pannam; a story about them, 579.10
Pilgrimages of the Well Indians to their Gods, 875.60 &c.
Plalar of the Cimanates expelled by Iotuh in Mauritania (Mogadana), 662.10
Plants of the Swans in P. n., which flowered the Springing and setting, 1051
Plantain early of fruit, 60
Plumage Coquet, 119.66 & 203.20
Pillow of gift to the Kings of Mexico as a Table, 1126.40
Pine-tree, Cedar built table, 259.20
Fine apples of the West Indies, the manner of growing and quantities, 235.60
Purple River, 915.1
Pinardillo, Indian Birds, though the movable pronouns against the Monkeys, 98.1
Pinatos IIendi, 288.50
Pinatos his hard adventures, 253
Pincas in Cauchin-China, 254
Pines, 255.07
Pins, *see* Peru.
Pitida the River where, 520 the descriptions of the people dwelling on it, &c. of everything; the Russians give out the Discovery, ibid. Thought to reach upon China, 520.7. Tolling of bells heard, and Advantages calling out fire, ibid.
Pining at night is Great civility in Japan, 647.1. They walk in Pile, and why, 647.1
Pitch bringing out of the Earth, 933.20
Pixabing and Sawing like the Sea, 269.1
Puzzles of Days, and Feast of Birth in Greenland, 835.50. Officers' choice of Silver, ibid. 835.50
Pier's Fifth last long, 676.50
Plane tree of West India defined: the magnitude of the Leaves, generally of the Fruits or Nut, profitably ripened, 956.10.20
Plantations of the West Indies in the Spanish Islands, 861.85
Plasma Tree of West India, which its Fruit deflected, is here Eggs, 98.8
Plumaria a furtherer of Diseases, 478.30
Plate of the Russian Emperor, 741.1. 749.1. 20
Plate River, when discovered, the course, whence it called, the Province of Plate, the plentifulness of it, &c. 749.1. 20
Towns in it, and their Latitudes, Distances, Styles, Commodities, the Ports, Poles, Lays, Capes, &c. Within their Latitudes, the Indim name of this River, his month, Latitude, &c. 749.2
Plate Cris in West India, the Leads, 896.40
Plate River, enlarges like Nile: the breadth and Latitude, 934.40
Pleasures in China, all and sundry, - ping, 200
Playing with Buffaloes in China, 129.66
Plutoes Image in China deformed, 408.1
Poasts their manner in China, 189.40
Podolia, some places in it described, 376.60 &c.
Poetic of China, 376.60 &c.
Point Trust by Nova Zembla, the elevation, 509
Polacks the natural Enemy of Poland King, written great Duke of Lettow, 785.50 & 785.50
King of Sweden, 787.1
Ruled by his sons, 787.1
Poland overrun by the Tartars, 62.1
Policies of Boris to mimic the Pope, 745.1. 752.10
Police maintained well, by Policy, 746.40
Poles enter a League with Russia, and break it, 766.1. 10.20.
They travel in the City of Mosco, 769.50
Poles what amongst the Tartars, 771.40
Profits, 627. And in Lithuania, ibid.

THE TABLE

wards and confers with them, 63,20
Tartars, 63,20
Porcelain, the *arts* and manner of making, 177,40
Porcelain, 382,10
Porcelain where and how made, 101,40
Pork the Dainties of China, 197, 67
Porcupines where, 207,30
Porto Ferres, or Derbent, built by Alexander, 12,50. *Passage that way out of Persia, and Turkie to Bulgaria,* 15,40
Porto Ferres built by Alexander, *terrace down by an Embankment 55,50. Built with much wonderment, ibid.* 67,30
Magog/son of Japhet, 56,1. Broken by the Hunnes, 56,40
Porta Ferres described, 48,50, & 49,10
Ports of Hispaniola, their distance from Sane Domingo, 86,40
Ports of Africa, 274,50
Porto Ferres their Trade, China, 197, 67
Port, For Saker and China, *ibid.* 197,67
Portugal in China, *referred to* Amacao, 319,20,35,10. *Accounted natural metal subtilis, but permitted their Religion, ibid.* 40,40
As Sancer, 318,60. *The Chinese in Portugal, 319,20*
Portugal, *where they set the Stage in China,* 40,61. *Made vessels for their habitors, ibid.* Persecuted upon a wretched master, *ibid.* A temple amongst them, *ibid.*
Posts in Tartary, their exceeding *swift*, 87,30. Their *Princed*, 84,40. *Post Posts, ibid.* 87,30. Their *generous*, 111,48
Postal-faring, an *order* of institution to them, he made, 67,30. (*At view of the Staff-falling*) The *conference of Norway.*
Post Horn in Tartary the provision for them, 87,10,30 & 67,30. *Used in the Tartarian signification.*
Porcoi, *the name of the Mountain and the Mines, the several rivers and the great riches, and the manner of the Discovery,* 94,45-95,946. *How they digge, and refuse the Silver,* 94,7
Potch, the *Citie and Mountains of Silver* in the N. N. Indies, the Latitude, *inhabited,* 896,60. *Signification of the Name, richbless of the Mines: the Hill either barren, the forme and colour of the Earth, big,* 897,60
Pot of Ruffs, the Ceremony of treasuring, 135,10
Powder of Gold found in Russia, 892,1. *Where most in quantity, ibid.*
Praying towards the East, *used by the Mexicans,* 113,50
Prayers at a Consecration the most precious, 420,60
Prayers said by the Priest, *more holy then uttered by the People,* 448,10
Praying, their posture in Muzgals, 799,50
Precious Stone good against Thunder, 47,10
Precious Stones plenty in Russia, 104,20
Precious Stones much worn in Russia, 459,40
Preehan, *the King of Causchina, China,* 355,30
Priest of Mahometan his bloody office, 257
Priest, how respected, 357
Priests, *their number,* 190,40
Priests *serve in China,* 190,50
Priests of Mexico, *how educated, taught, exercised, corrected, &c.* 1108,07
Priests in China *Japan, head and beard,* 319,50
Priests of the Mexicans, their *Deities, Sacrifices, Offices, Consecrations, &c.* 1033,50. *Refused to eat, Preaching, the manner, Consecration, &c.* 1083,40
Their habit, 1021,1. 1041,10
Priests in Russia their Ordination, 447,40. *Sovereign, their Ordination, accompanied with Organs, and clothed with the Surplice, and crowned with their Office and manner, &c.* 447,40. *How they marry once, 447,50. Their maintenance, &c.* 447,50. *Prayers for private occasion,* 448,10
Their Offices and other prerogatives on the By-bid, *Habits adorned, & at Church, ibid.*
Priests, *where situated,* 483,20
Priests *in Russia their great reverence in Russia,* 448,1
Priests of the Tartars, are South-seas, 435,50. Their description, *ibid.* They have no chief Priest, *ibid.* How he acts at Court, *ibid.* *His office, ibid.* Their maintenance, *ibid.* Their Traffick in an Ecclesiastical to the Country, *ibid.* 1. Their fee for purging, *ibid.* 10. Their practices, 45, 10. How the Devil deludes them, 45,10
Priests of the Russians, *Many once, 225,40, & 229,1. A chief Bishop, &c.* 229,40. *Differ, according to their 229,10. Ecclesiastical habit, 229,10. The Russian, & their haire long, ibid.*
Priests burnt for Sacrifice in China, land, 628
Priests King by the Infidels, *the King of China,* 323,20
Priests given by the Russa Emperor, to the King of Albin, 798,2
Priests demanded by the Altine of the Russa, *ibid.*
Priests sent to the Spaniards from China, 306,6
Priests in Barten carried a good figure, 300
Priests the fathers of finding their way, 374,50
Priest Iohn of Affa, 420,10
Presbiter Iohn of Constantin in Cathay the Black or Kara-Cathay, 56,50. *Not Sufely, and in different times, on their sides of him in Ethiopia, ibid.*
Priest Iohn of Tartary, *of the Chan,* 77,40
Presbyter Iohn in Tartary, 72,40
Priest Iohn of Tartary, *traveller, rather Successors of Chingis Khan, 80,10. How Successors of Chingis, he is a Christian, on Earth,* 80,10
Priest Mobile, a *Physician, &c.* 814,50
Prince Charles his Land, the *Islands, &c.* 722
Princes of the Blood, how often in China, 391,1. *Their number, &c.* 390,40
Princes of the Blood, *only in Tartary,* 208. *Their only are, &c.* 208
Prince dying, no man here in his Lodging a long while after in Russia, 750,10
Princes of Russia his *Princes, &c.* 748,60 & 750,1
Princes understood as Gods by the Tartars, 340,10
Printing in China, 340,10
Printing, the fathers in China, 370,40,50. *Printing white Letters, ibid.*
Printing brought into Russia, 447,40. The Printing books *burnt, ibid.*
Printing first carried into Russia, 445,10
Printing, 445,10

THE TABLE.

[illegible]

R

R, the Chinois cannot pronounce: they call the Tartars *Tatos*, 170.20. & 319.20
Racke, the Indian word for *drinks of Rice*, 27.50. in marg.
Rambos a Fish that cleaves to the Sharks their description, 930. 931.
Ramels Food in Groneland: the *Lib-*

THE TABLE

Latitude and variation there, 83, 80
Rambulus (see and defined), 376, 36
Rapes (see word of *Palais*) the
Egmont, 666, 30 & 666, 10, 6
Rafers flung upon Darts by the
Mekong, the danger of the
mean, 1033, 60. *Veddy*, then
to *Sacramento*, 1035, 40
Ratures (a one North) the
Jew out of a Ship to *dispute*
Lash, 565, 50. *Ilam* called
Rafatoko of these Rivers, 615, 10
Raw Fish the Gronelander feed,
836, 20
Rawmote served in, in China,
298, 40
Raine, the Chinese faith of, 574,
30. *Isis Gods* *Adams*
Raine where *Adams*, or near, 898,
80
Raine, the sickle in Peru to keep it
off, or to procure it, 1045, 6
1046, 120. *Ragions* for it,
1047, 20
Raine the Eagle, where it never dies
881. Occurred by the *Adams*,
298, 30. And where it
dies occasionally, *ibid.*
Raine very folding boat, 198, 40
Raines, the region of much or little
under the *Equinoctial*, *Tor-*
ride Zone, *Adams* or without the
Tropick, 918, 40. Why under
the *Torride Zone* in the *Aff-*
mericon, and at the *South*,
some *Physicists* find 60 *Feet*,
but the *Physic*, 918, 40, 10 *Feet*,
R. in, where most boats under the
Torride Zone, 919, 40. They
also boat under the *Torride*
Zone, 921, 10
Raining of *Elas*, *Frigger*, etc., in
Italy, 922, 30. Were caused by
Norway winter, *ibid.* And by
Westerly,
Raines ever and never, where, 926,
The *croaf*, 927
Rainbow with both ends upwards,
225, 50
Rainbow the fable of it, 275, 40
Rains - *Deers* backwinded, 927, 20
They feed upon their *Moss*, 928, 10
The *discharges* of the
rain-bow, 928
Reasons of a *Northwest* *Pole*,
828, 89, 40
Rebaptization ofed by the *Rulle*,
451 & 786, 40. Their *Cate-*
chizing and other *Ceremonies*,
ibid.
Rebates the *Kingdom*, 311, 1

Rebellion how prevented in China,
376, 36
Records of the *Peruans*, kept by
kings, 1053, 20
Red, the King of *Chinas* Colour,
1058, 20
Red Painting forbidden to priests
Hofes in *China*, 407, 60. The
peculiar Colour where *Chifans*
come to the *Kings* throne, 405,
10
Red Sea, or the Straits of *Meca*,
335, 50. in *marg*,
Redemption of *willae* *Creatures*,
998, 30
Reedes exceeding hard and cold,
382, 20
Reedes or Caus of the West In-
dies, *Hofes* and *Quens*: made
of them: their knot full of pure
water, 983, 50
Refining of Gold, where *Abil* 943
50. *Silver*, 944, 110, 97
Region of *Darkness*, where the
Sunne appears not in winter,
370, 60. *ibid.*
Religion in *Murkon*, 217, 40
Religion of *Mulooma*, 444, 445
According to the *Greece*
Church, *ibid.*
Religion of *Muggals*, like the *Ru-*
lics, *ibid.*
Religion of the *Crim Tartars*, 444
10. Their opinions of *Cluist*,
ibid. Their *Idols*,
Religion of the *Mexicans*, 1026,
60
Religion in *Peru* the uniformity of
it, where, 1057, 10
Remission of sentence, is *Almes-*
ded, 921, 20
Rendacemle the *Civ*, 28,
Renkane Prementory in *East In-*
land, 654, 60
Reobate the *Country*, 71, 30
Redirection, an inking of it in
China, 274, 20. And after that,
all *shall* remaine in the *Adone*,
ibid.
Reidarsfari Mountains, in *Ilam*,
654, 20
Reidarsfari Bay, in *Ilam*, 654, 20
Revelation not read in the *Ruffian*
Church, 452, 10
Reward after Death, the *Chinos*
say of it, 301
Rhe-orine, the *Favourite* study of
China, 170
Rhincorotres, where, called *Bab-*
bars their Horse good against the
Piles, 169, 10. Used to *Carni-*
ges, 277, 60

Rhuibar, 364, 40. Where it grows,
76, 50. In *China*, 97, 10
Rhuibar described, 164, 40. The
price of it there, *ibid.* Called *Ru-*
oim *Cini*, 165
Ruilanes Province in *Ireland*, 665
Ribbes of the Examined broden, 47
Rica or Ric in *Liesland*, 627, 10. *Ri-*
Rigao,
Rice the King of *Chinas* tribute
paysan, 304. The chief food of
China, *ibid.*
Rice grows in *Maribor*, 178, 10
Rice Bread, 914
Ricci or Ricci a debauched *Eug-*
ilham, reprobated by the *Rulle*,
451, 50
Richett Province in the *World* is
Malabar, 102, 30
Ricuss the *Isafit*, sent for to *eat*
with him. Is made *Guinea* of
the *Caldeum* *Amacco*, 321, 40.
Disappointed of his *pumps*, and
wrote to *Amacco*, *ibid.* Re-
turnes into *China*, 327, 30. He
and *Ruggiers* sent to the *Atrato*,
ibid. Commanded away by him,
ibid. They leave to build,
40, 50. Their *Books* adorned,
339, 1. How honored, *ibid.*
Showered and confired again,
and fed, *ibid.* 20. He prints a
Book of the *China* *Channells*,
ibid. *Adels* *Syberians*, *Globet*,
and *Dry*, *ibid.* 60. *Propo-*
sition for an *Embell*,
Spain in *China*, *croff*, 330,
10. He is troubled in *Scutcheon*,
salute all with bribes, 333, 50.
How in after hand, *ibid.* Builds
another *Station* or house at *Xau-*
cam, 334, 50. Teaches *Ma-*
thematics, 335, 1. His house
adorned, and *Officers* paid,
ibid. 20. A *Confess* to
gambit him, *ibid.* Tidyk for a
Bouzi, and *infamous*, whereupon
he alters his habits, 336, 1. Goes
further into *China*, 337, 1, 10.
His *Interier* in *China*, 338,
10. *Interier* in *Abance*, and goes to
Nancin, *ibid.* His *Infamous* to *He*
gets into the *Art* of *medicine*, 339, 10.
He has a great credit, with a
Book of *Friendship*, *ibid.* Goes to
Nankang again, but not suffered to
go, 340, 1, 10. His *Ising* to
Edum, the *Chie* *Realt*, 341.
Fishes the *Knets* without, 342, 10.
Fishes a *China* *Dilloway*,
and *Grage*, 343, 10

turns again to Nanquin, 343	ruins, 89
RUELL, <i>inspired again at Nanquin,</i>	Ruists in China <i>all frozen in winter,</i>
345-30. <i>Teaches Manchukuo-</i>	ruists, 343:
<i>insists, ibid.</i> , 346. <i>Believed to</i>	<i>Ruists frozen for five months in</i>
<i>have lived some Ages, 347-39.</i>	Ruiz, 414-55
<i>Dignities with the Tameo Chi-</i>	Ruists of Podolia, 414-55
<i>non, and is admired, 348. His</i>	Ruists of Poland, 325-34
<i>country, 349. He is the first</i>	Ruists of Saint Louis, Nicaragua
<i>of their Ship, ibid. 350. 352.</i>	Ruists, in the West Indies, <i>the</i>
<i>His China came in Sittah, 349.</i>	<i>distance from the Equatorial</i>
<i>1. In danger of an Ennuch, ibid.</i>	891-94
<i>2. Is befriended and feasted by</i>	Ruists, <i>Mountains, &c. well</i>
<i>that great Ennuch, ibid. & 353.</i>	in India, 102-8. <i>Their Sac-</i>
<i>10-20. His Journey to Court,</i>	<i>rites, 103-6, 107</i>
<i>ibid. His Petition unanswered,</i>	<i>Knives most exceeding rich in</i>
354-140-60. <i>Pillaged by an En-</i>	74
<i>nuch, and preserved again, 355.</i>	Roba or Rellu, the Chia, 111-12
<i>356-30. 400-10. Is first in the</i>	Roba arizical, one, 346-60-6
<i>Kong-336-20. Exceeding elu-</i>	Roba of Dramas, 252-3
<i>cious, 376-20. Proposed to be made</i>	Rogations instigated by the Priest
<i>a Mandarin, 357-40. Is first</i>	Mexico, 1047-20, 105
<i>of some Menstr, and petitioned a-</i>	Roglandia Province in Norway
<i>gain, 358-10. Hair loose to</i>	654-4
<i>be a Hoof, and both allowance</i>	Roman fortress of a Mexican
<i>of the King's prey, and honoured</i>	Capitane, 101
<i>again, ibid. & 359. His Buks</i>	Romish reefs found in China, 39
<i>of the description of China begins</i>	60-10. <i>A single Leaf, Singing, &c.</i>
<i>pages, 360. The leaves offer to</i>	<i>Abolish, long Eaters, Purgatory,</i>
<i>make him Ruler of the World,</i>	<i>the Priest, his Illness, Mandar-</i>
<i>360-60. Each leaf is</i>	<i>and Preface, his Illness, Mandar-</i>
<i>in at P'ing in, and maintenance,</i>	<i>and Preface, his Illness, Mandar-</i>
405-40. <i>One writer against</i>	66-10. <i>and Preface, his Illness, Mandar-</i>
<i>man, falls sick and dyes, 407-1</i>	Romish Pilgrimage, held a pro-
Ring of a Marriage by the Rul-	<i>cess for tyrannous usurpation,</i>
les, 414-20	612-20
Rings, the Chinese wear in their	Rotes where the Indians make
<i>Ears, but not on their Fingers,</i>	<i>Bread or Meats, 954-99</i>
349-30. <i>Wore in the Nephthys</i>	Repe- <i>alliance in China, 349-9</i>
<i>by the Indians, 392-30</i>	Repe- <i>alliance admirably in the</i>
<i>Repeating of names Nati, &c. 392-</i>	Use India, 392-30
<i>394. Philosophical word, 395-10</i>	Role land in Russia by Archangel
Riphan Anatomical word, 53-30	Calla, an English house the
<i>The tables of them, 320-20</i>	744-10. <i>The way thence</i>
Risalan in a Province in Norway,	Mofco, 747-7
<i>the Etyman, 661-30</i>	Rejomakia, a strange Beast de-
Ruier made by an Ennuch in China, 97-30	62-20
Ruier changing his Curie, 336-30	Roofing the Examined one, 39
<i>A duty, 336-40</i>	41-2
Ruier lost in the Earthquake, 337-40	Ruofia a Fish, used to catch other
337-40	Fishes destroyed, where insects
Ruier sinking underground, and tri-	99-99
ving again, 875-50	Roxani and Roxolani in Syria
Ruies yielding Gold, 874-10	as the Russians, 633-39
Ruier Quian in China, the greatest	Roxellani, are not the Rufes, 41
in the world, 97-10. Much tra-	
ded upon, ibid.	
Ruies of Russia, the chief, 413-30	Rubro of a Ingling case by the
Ruies of Russia, the chief, 413-30	Armenian Monk, 32-40
Ruies of Russia, the chief, 413-30	32-40
Ruies of Russia, the chief, 413-30	Rubies where they grow mostly, 10
Ruies of Plate, the great, <i>the</i>	10-169-40. <i>One as big as</i>
<i>of their Ship, ibid. 350. 352.</i>	<i>man's arm, and valued at</i>
<i>His China came in Sittah, 349.</i>	<i>twice of a Cate, ibid. 110-10</i>
<i>1. In danger of an Ennuch, ibid.</i>	Rubie that derives merit of 8

Rubble, a Rufian *summa*, a Mark,
453-40
Rubricus the Friar his Journal to
the East parts of the World, x.
His message to the Tartarian
Emperour, ibid. 13, 20-68.
To Batu, 17, 110-11.
His Journey to Mangou Khan, 18, 1.
Shamed himself in Tartary, 18, 10.
His Oration to Mangou
Khan, 17, 50. His resolution to
keep company with Saracens, 16
40. Examined at Cacerum,
39-10
Rubricus his learned Discourse
with the Saracens, and his Con-
ference with the Courtiers of
Mangou Khan, 40, 68-101. His an-
swer to Mangou Khan, concerning
his coming into his Country,
41-10. His dispute with the Necro-
mancers, 43, 30-67. Nat followed
to play in Tartary, 43, 40. He de-
parts from Mangou Khan, 43,
50. His way from Volga into
Persia, 44, 30. Returns to Ba-
nat, 45, 10-17, 47, 50. He gets his
Books again, 45, 18-20. He goes
from Euphrates to Tipolis, 51,
10-67. His advice to his King
concerning the Tartars, 51, 50
Ruck the Bird, which carries away
an Elephant, 106-40
Rufes of Bands not worn by the
Rufes, 459
Ruggiers, learns the China tongue,
320, 20. In favour with the
Emperour, 320, 40. He is made
Ambasci, ibid. Sends forth Pictary
about felling at Amasco, 321.
Falls sick, ibid. Obtains a Char-
ter for the Isles, ibid. Returns
into China, 327, 30. Petitions the
Governour, but is commanded
to Amasco, 337, 60. His
Edict set up against him, 338, 1.
The Charter of the Emperour
in China, ibid. 30. Returns
for supplies to Amasco, 339, 10.
Baptized, 339, 30. Sent to fetch
Furniture for the King, ibid. Gets
with the Governour into Sciau-
chin, ibid. Gets a Horse there,
333, 1. Much bewoared there,
ibid. Makes forty Christians,
ibid. 20. Goes to Mowu, 333, 10.
Is threatened by Kijf Khan,
ibid. 10. Is sent to Amasco,
ibid. 10. 333-10. Returns
into Europe, ibid. 20
Rule to know native Cosmographers
and Creatures the Indians had,
before the Spaniards coming
thither, 96-10
Run land, one of the Orkneys, 57-10

[illegible][illegible]

THE TABLE.

S
Saboath in China every forti-
night, 345.1
Sabattaths of the Chinoits, 397.13
35
Sabboth of the Mexicans every
fourth day in the Warner, 1016.10
36
Sables the soft where, 416.30
Sables, the Furze of the beast Kora-
des, 107.1
Sacacuna Province in the West
Indies, the extent of the Turf-
ditions, bounds and Rivers, 87.60
37
Saccotara, 252.60
Sacraments three in the Russian
Church, 453
Sacrament in Russia, in both kinds,
217.
217. The bread left, and given
with a Spoon.
Sacrament of the Communion De-
milly intimated by the Mexi-
cans, 1040.10 & 1041.40 &
in Poland, 1046.1
Sacrament in both kinds, 217.40
Sacramental Bread, how made by
the Russians, 47.10. The pas-
ter Pat or Host, called Leavened
bread, The signification of their
Bread, ibid.
Sacrifices of old Island, 665.1. Of
Men, 32.1
Sacrifices of the Mexicans, 103.1
30. 30. 103.1. The manner,
103.30. The three kinds of
things sacrificed, 103.60. Men-
tion of Polygamy and Bards,
ibid. Sacrifices received from
foreigners, 103.60. Offerings of
the Kings, 102.10.60. Hu-
man Sacrifices, and the Manner,
103.7.10.3. Fine things men-
tioned, 103.60.
Sacrifice of Peter, 1045
Sacrilege ordinary of the Russian
Emperours, 450.6 & 431.1
Sacrilege punished by Death,
104.10. Tartars, 431.1
Sac' the people in Curland, 618.10
30
Sachion the City, where, 76.40
Saddles of Wood & Saddle, 250.40
Sagzi, a Tartaria piece of Gold, 32.
40
Salamanca, no where, 76.40
Salmander peculiar, 704.10
Sayung or Gromscheldt city of the Rus-
sian Emperour, 1010.30
Sayles words of Matsi, Polono-
vitz leaves, 904.50
Sayles, was admitted to be witness,
where, 105.10
Saints in Russia, for every day in
the week, 457.1
Salceperilla, where flore and good
use: the Curres it does, 959.50
Salmons, peace a piece, 537.1. A
great trade for Russia, ibid.
Salmons flore in Russia, 215.50
Salmon and Salmon Peale in
Cape Land, 17.10
Salemons Islands in the West In-
dies, discovered, their Latitude,
distance from Peru, many and
great, esteemed rich. Colors of
the people, the chiefest of them
named, their greatness, dis-
tances, &c. 907.30
Salomensky Town in Russia, where,
794.50
Salt, naturally made by the Sea, 47.1
30
Salt now made in Cianglu, 95.1
Salt made of water without boiling,
913
Salt hanging upon Horfes that
denote of the River of Salt, 898.
10
Salt-Lakes in Taurica, 636.60
Salt Separates Metall from Druffe,
902.60. Used in Refining, ibid.
Salt-water, its Virtues, 902.60
Salweenie, a cause of the obbing and
flopping of the Sea, 112.40
Salt-pits exceeding rich ones in Tar-
tarie, 3.30
Salomonstrainer, 72.10
Salt the best in the world, ibid.10
Saltations the fishes in China,
180.10
Samag or Samagi, a great City,
near the mouth of the River,
309.10
Samara the Kingdom, 100.10
Samet the River, 222.1
Samorchen, the great City, where,
74.40
Samorchen to Pachtia where Tar-
tanians have towns, the situation,
142.40
Samorchen a City of Jewes, where,
100.10
Sandan, what they call, 138.40
Sand spread in Japan, 216.30
Sanchoy Dragonis: where gotten,
886.1
Santals, their Appell, medicines,
of uses, Thumel, Relishes, Waters,
Marrowing, Rhetors and Funerals,
uses, 555. Their Judgments,
of Perfumes, and the uses of them,
Fragrance, and the benefits of them,
159.50
Samosedra the people, 22. 250.30
Samosedra their trade near Russia with
Russia, their manners of life, 92.1
5 & 546.30. The Russ Emperor
seeks to discover them, 553.50. Some
of them submit to him, 553.50.
The tribute of Samos, ibid. The
Admirer the Russian followers,
and submit themselves voluntarily,
524.30.30. Their Country made
the fink of false people, Ibid. It is
called Siberia, ibid. The descrip-
tion of the ways and Rivers on
the Russian border, 550. The
Country underlain, 550. The
Russ's build Tartarian there, 524.
526.60. Power they there find
to them, 553. 553. 522. Their trust
of Skunks: much by their Wo-
men, 546.30. They carry their
Families with them, ibid. Their
Language and Religion different
from the Russ, 522.60. Their
Apparel, vessels, and Invention
of Arms, 553.50.30.30
Samosedra their Habitation, King,
queen, apparel, provision, King,
manners, &c. 546.30. Their I-
magery, and Sacrifices of them,
481.10
Samosit, the people, subject to the
Russ, 443. They are run Ca-
tany: Amans, ibid. They ver-
fally give the Golden badge as
the same do, ibid. The services,
apparel, and language, given
to us by their Prull, ibid.
Sapugura, a City in Persia, 73.10
Pompous the bell in the World,
73.10
Saracen in the Holy Land, mar-
tyrdom by the Tartars, and pur-
sued, 122.10
Saracens at Equus in Catay first
seen, Persian, 122.10
Saracene Town upon the Volga,
47.40
Sarmatia the white and the black,
413.40. Their old limits, ibid.
The name now derived of Alas-
mathe, ibid.
Sartech, the Tartar present to the
French King, 47.40
Sartach a Tartarian Prince, who
Conq. Ta: 60. Rubruke the
Kierich he subjected to him, 13.1
His overthrow, 13.20. 20. 20.
Sardaryes, the Russes call fish
upon, 218.7. That before Christ,
They sleep in the Church, 227.
50
Sargha live in Groneland, 58.10
Sargha the Laidon, and Layton
from Longitude, towards the Division
of the Campsie and Thler,
825.50
Sargha Islands, where men have

THE TABLE.

bears like Dogs 34-40
Sandy fields and Rivers, 632-30
Scacati, a Tartarian Land, 5-10
Swanza, in Scandinavia, 620-10
Scalietum rig off in China, 333-40
Scallom the City in Persia, 73-30
Scelandia misnamed for Hiecland, 61-40
Schollers more martial than Scallanders in China, The King's admiral with them, 390-30
Their hats and corsets the Captains' ibid., 385-30
Schools of China, the manner? 339-10
Schollers in China, get whole body by heart, 339-10
Schollers men encourage or punish, Judean China, 1845-50 or 185-1
The great Officers and Government chosen on them, 184-60
At the Kings charge, 300
Sichuan in China, a desfricted, 460-30
The tribute it pays the King, ibid.
Scinmah, in Japan, 334-60
Scintmahim, 337-10
Scitih the people come and of Sarmatia, 437-10
Why they called the Sarmatians scitih, ibid.
Science signifies Fame or Glory, the significations turned by the Italians, 184-60
Scitiahmen first peopled, 662-30
Scitiahmones of Russia, different from those of Poland, 701-30
Scitiahmones came from the Russians, 433-30
Scitia fished to conquering the dardanis, 276-10
So-called Ptolemy's error in the Longitude, 643-50
Scots fish at Island, 800 years since, 617
Scythians, how interpreted by the Greek Church fathers, the Rufians, E. Wm., 452
Scurry-graffle carelessly, serving, and the Surgery, 514-10
Scurry-graffles in Greenland, the benefit of it as Sea, 847-30
Scythians in Clertionfish, which, 633-40
Scythia extends from Danubius, down to the Gulf, 384-10
Scythians, Tatarian, ibid.
Sea Cattle, a most Swarming, very properties, 879-30
Sea-coale in Cathay, 88-10
Sea-coale in marg., 406-40
Sea-coale upon fishes, 406-40
Sea coales, bone waters, 893-60
Sea water sweetened by the reef, 558-60
Sea-freshen, 47-60
Sea-freshen, and pulled over with Slids, 518-30
Sea-kytes, releasing of Portugali, 556-30
Sea-lacke, blue and greens, 970
Sea-tinkelle whence caused, 516-60
Sea-towthers barren, and where fertile, at the Mouth, 988-10
Sea-towthers dwelling at Land, 703-20
Their Habits same in England, 709
Sea the new-found of in the Foot ride Zone; tempers the heat, 921-1
Sea-monsters in Island, 649-00
650. Several descriptions of them, ibid.
Sea of Sand by China, 404-40
Sea of Seals, 384-40
Seas of Pontus, called the great Sea, 1-10
The length of it, ibid.
The Province of Synopolis and Callaria in it, ibid.
The sea the passage to it, defines Sea and Empires, 724-30
Fishes in what Latitude, 473-30
Sea-water good against pyrexia, 40-50
Sea-horse or Morfe described, 476-30
How rare of their young, and courage to struggle her self, Their teeth as good as ivory, 1-ibid.
612-60
Seals in Greenland, 705-60
Seals-fish the chiefest fishery, the benefit of Greenland, 827-40
60. Afterward call in Seal-skins, it darning the Fishes, 818-1
Seals in China, the fulmar, 383-30
Not imported in Wax, but sheep's tallow, ibid.
Can in several matters, 383-30
Seals of China Magistrate, 298-1
Eggs as worthy as our Lord Kippers, ibid.
Scale fish how hunted for, 416-60
Their natural policy to break the ice, 417-1
Scale, the Muscivores in the George, 581-40
Pondous to show the weight of the Scale, Sections of the texture of the Scale, ninth Flats from the Indies, 829-30
Seates of women known from the moon, 395-1
Sebastian de Guetaria his Voyage, 382
Sebastian Cabota, Governour for Discovery, 429-20
Sebastian Cabot, his Charge, White-hall, his attempt to discover, 807
His council as Sea in English ships; the occasion why King Henry the Seventh neglected his second Discovery, He left his furthest againe by the King of Spain; discover the River of Plate, the Grand Pilot of England, his Pay, 808
Schute the City, in Armenia, 511-10
Sebasteia in Cilicia, the Royal Castle in Armenia, 69-30
Seozamnia, the true name of Gronoeland, 825-10
Secretaries of Trames in Russia, 435-50
Their Ambury, 436-10
Segin a City of Cathay, and a Noble Arabian Shipwright, 24-1
Seguin the New, in the West Indian, its derivation, Pilgrims, Ports, etc., 881-1
Selte-shpherd, a Title of the Russian Emperours, 735-40
Seltsouca the City, now Mohk, 110
Solima, a Coffin, 236-40
Sentence of Antioch given to King of Chindia, the forms at large, 193-0
194-0
Sentence the refusal one in China, is whopping, 379-50
Septuaginta Sunday is kept by the Armenian, 31-10
Sepulchres of the Chinese Kings, 393-10
Sepulchres of the Chinese, 393-10
Series the people of Cathay, the greater, whence came the Serizem or Silk, 35-40
Sergentes as Armes in China, 300-60
Sericum or Silke, whence derived, 35-40
Serpents delicate meat where, 37-10
Serpents denouncing whole Stages, 410-40
A tale of one of them, ibid.
Serpents worshipped in the Mexican Kings Court, 1129-1
Fed with milk fish, ibid.
Serpents why the Mexicans spare them, 1041-10
Serrants sleep in China, 267-10
Serrants in Russia killed, and used

THE TABLE

assured for, 435
 Service in the Mother tongue, 217
 40. & 219. 10.
 Service in the Mother tongue, 217
 40. Before day light in Russia,
 218. 10.
 Suetaria a Russian Province, 756
 60.
 Suetaria took much of its breeding-
 ing of authority, 186. 20.
 Sexes undistinguish'd by Asperth,
 646. 10.
 Seylerach, strange Birds that give
 Intelligence of the Enemies ap-
 proach, 126. 60.
 Seylan Island, 212. 20.
 Sicilian Tartars, by the Cap'tain
 Sen, 442. Nine to Afracan &
 Media, 442. 50.
 Shallowness, a sure token and
 secret, 291. 10.
 Shamblies of mans life, where, 890
 50.
 Shar, the Kingdom of the Iron
 King, 800. 10. Reks in Dia-
 monds, where, 218. 10.
 Sharke fishes devour'd from horses,
 anything, (and from sea to land,
 and go on land for their prey.
 Their suckers, 910. 20. How
 troubled with the Rhinoceros,
 Sharke fishes devour'd, how taken,
 where they are good meat, 987. 40.
 Shih-nu, a new kind of life, used by the
 Russians, 459. 30.
 Shire of India their profitableness,
 968. 10. *Shirap-nu* a report for
 carriages, of fishes, of fish
 commodities, a small, or in
 of salt-fishes, 910. 20.
 Shire of Gold and Silver in Persia,
 1065. 10.
 Shire sacrificed in Peru, 1045
 20.
 Shire sacrifice, as before, 77. 10.
 Shirematians that consume their
 flesh in the West Indies, and
 their power, 962. 30.
 Shire matings 80, pounds, 237
 10.
 Shire with most exquisite horses,
 74. 30.
 Shermogula the Country, where,
 798. 40.
 Shites of the Indians to pull in
 their, 888. 60. & 934. 40.
 Shih-beating for death, 743. 30.
 Shire a town and in one River, 205
 40.
 Shipping of China, for pag. 173.
 10. & 174. 60.
 Shipping on the freshwater, as in
 China, as in all the world
 besides, 381. 50.
 Shipping of India described, 101. 2
 10. 20.
 Ships armed with Officers, 618. 40.
 Ships sleeken one, 349. 30. & 354
 10.
 Ships strangely made in Ormuz, 71
 50.
 Ships with one style, 97. 20.
 Ships of Leather of Officers, 652
 10.
 Ships sail'd with Adams guests by
 the Spaniards on the Indian
 172. 1.
 Ships of the Spaniards accounted
 Gods of the eastern war Temples
 on their backen by the Indians,
 219. 20.
 Ships, people dwelling in them, pag.
 10. *Shiway* on the Land, 381. 50.
 Ships in Tartary with four sails,
 and nine Sails upon the
Shiway Cister Catay, 801. 10.
 Shirona
 Shirlagala City in Catay, 800. 90.
 Shirts the Chinese wear, 394
 40.
 Shoes of Siles in China, 369. 1
 Shoes of Siles embroidered, 394. 40.
 Shocmarer a Christian people
 who make money, pag. 10. *Sho*
 of Adams guests, pag. 10. *Sho*
 of Rages and Fels, 507. 60.
 Shoring, the price for it, 201. 40.
 Shorne why Men are, 448. 60.
 Shovel-like, their Altitude 546
 10. *Shov* of the Campall Tartar,
 567. 10. *Shov* is done in the
 of Seward, 596
 Shoudner of Sheep, distilled
 oil, 918. 10. *Shoudner*, Abid.
 Shoungan River, 743. 10.
 Shouren Kingdom, called Soreu,
 254. 10.
 Siam the Kingdom of the Sornau of
 10. India, 280
 Siam, three years beguiled by the
 Tartars, 965. 10. *Siam*,
 514. 50. *Siam* 200,
 of the Siam, 439. 20. 743. 1
 Siberia, the Ruks on the Ob,
 805. 1
 Siles not in Tartary charmed,
 and a strange tale of them, 44
 20.
 Siles not fringed upon eulphure
 and salt, 709. 60.
 Siles and the Tartars, 117
 10.
 Sigoda the China Siles: the opium
 397. 50. *Sigoda* being
 with the Romish Rites, 118. 10.
 Sigmond, 39. 1. *Their College*
 Id
 Sigmond the third King of Po-
 land, breaks his league with
 Russia, an afflict on his people
 get the Crown, 766. 70. *Si*
 demit, ibid. *Afflict* another
 Demetrius, 770. *His claim*
 to Sweden, 770. 50. Enter
 Russia with a huge Army, ibid.
Si Demetrius, 770. 70. *Si*
 in Moscow and Smolensk, 780.
 Sike the abundance of in China,
 350. 20. *They* draw
 good, yet Tartars drift in
 366. 40.
 Sike much greater in the West In-
 dies, 878. 74.
 Sike women, their ordering in
 China, 411. 50. *What* while the
 go, and for them in the
 diet, 396. *Si* Remond by hangings
 under Childrens arms, 443. 50.
 Siles, where, 355. 20.
 Siles Africa in Greenland, 826
 20. & 120. 40. *Si* being
 833. 10.
 Siles made in Bricks, 801. 50.
 The Chinese find to make it,
 299. 20.
 Siles Images standing abroad, con-
 sider, 411. 10.
 Siles, who the second of China,
 943. *Si* Mountain, in
 of peace or war, Adams of off-
 ending, with Arts, *Si* Bellow, or
 Quicksilver, the Chinese Siles,
Si of the Indies, 944. *How*
 the richness of the Opium is de-
 manded by the colour, 949. 20. *Man-*
 ner of preparing the Opium, 950.
 Siles, the truth and the
 the English to do so, 957
 Sindiana the Country of Persia, 90
 10.
 Sindicin, the City, 80. 30.
 Singant the Mother City of Scian-
 216. 10.
 Singa, is the City of the
 the best of its, 87. 50.
 Sino, or Chiao, the Northern
 Confucian temple, where
 the 4440. *And* from Sino to
 Niocheu, 445. 70.
 Sitas in Persia, 70. 50.
 Siroppe thirty fivers, made of the
 of a tree, 977. 20.
 Synopsals a Province in the East
 of Pontus, 676. *Under* the Turks,
 ibid. 77. *Si* the
 Rastattone, 676.
 Synopsals and Soldia, are 300
 miles asunder, 730. 30.
 Synopsals a Province in the East
 of Pontus, 676. *Under* the Turks,
 ibid. 77. *Si* the
 Rastattone, 676.
 Synopsals and Soldia, are 300
 miles asunder, 730. 30.

THE TABLE.

Syrian tongue used by the Negroians
 in Cathaya, 24.1
 Synonymes *new* in China, &c. 304.10
 Synzymes, *not above* 300, in all
 China, 307.40. *All of one illi-*
kind, the Negro marries any of
his own Synzymes 307.50
 Skelengerins *displey* Gronland 320.10
 Skiafandis, a Bay in Northland 320.10
 Skins of *these men come off*, by *ea-*
ting the Liver of a Bear, 506.30
 Skulls of the Indians *extreme* *black-*
ened and hard, 993.1 & 994.1
 Skulls *fold* in China, and *only*, 271.10
 Skumme of the water *cast* for
meat in Mexico, 1133.10
 Skutkenies in Norway, 707.20
 The *Latitudes*, *from* 7.10 *to* 6.10 *How*
the land lies about it, &c. 70.60
 Slaues in the Tartary, *their* *miserie-*
64.1 The Tartars *earnestly* *to*
redeem *his own* *subtly*, 643.10
 Slaues of Scythia *rebellious* *persecut-*
ed with the fight of their *enemies*
106.1 479.10
 Slaues the Indians are *used* *by*
 the Spaniards, 91.60
 Slaues of Peru, *pleased* *with* *their*
own *servitudes*, 1036.50
 Slaury in Russia to *Creditors*, 454.30
 Slaury in China, *how* *it* *comes*, 182.50
 10. *Those* *that* *are* *taken* *in*
Warre *were* *red* *Capt*, 183.10
 Sleds *much* *used* *in* *Russia*, 904.10
 They carry *Cervus* 1000, *miles*,
 214.10. *They* *go* *poft*, 220.10
 They feed, 226.10. *Their* *furniture*,
ibid. *Not* *used* *in* *Summer*, 230.50
 30. *Aded* *Teleas*, 224.50
 Sleds in Russia, *a great* *number* *to*
be *taken* *up* *in* *a* *Nobility*,
 523.20. *Some* *drawn* *by* *Dogs*,
 524.1
 Sleds, *an* *easy* *and* *convenient* *tra-*
vel, 751.20
 Slobotia a *Towne* in Mezen, 527.10
 10. *The* *elation*, *ibid.* *The* *trade* *there*,
 548.30
 Slings *upon* *the* *lee* *with* *bones*,
 516.10
 Sluttery a *Fast*-*house*, 23.20
 Smiths Bay, 465.10
 Smolensk in Russia *taken* *in* *the*
 Poles, 778.10. *Burnt* *in* *the*

THE TABLE.

their conquest of Mexico, see
 132, 131, & 132, 66
BARBUDA silver carried to China, 310, 30
Spanish forbidden to Greenland, 406, 40
 , forbidden by the English, 406, 40
Spanish plants grew better in India, 30
 , and the Indian, 906, 601
Spanish *Chilomenes* contain water to feed the Names of their own Native Americans in the *Phaen*, then of the *Beasts*, Birds, &c. of the Country, 8, 6
Spanish reports of a *Ulysses*, 28, 3
Spices of *Elfers* taken, and bread in *Cathay* or China, 179, 10
Spice a man did, and *ma*, 1039, 60
 , *ma*, 1039, 60
Spelling by *Stranger*, *Koor*, and *Colan* in Peru, as we do *Letters*, 1039, 30
Sperma Ceti, 710, 30
Sperma *Cetivae* *Permyssus*, where *gylion*, 471, it lies in the *be*, 10
 , *ibid.*
Sphere in *China*, 346, 30
Spices of *China*, 346, 30
Spice the *forts* and *flors* in the *Moluccas* and *Philippinas*, 902, 904, 905, &c. The *flor* way to bring them from the *Moluccas* into *Spain*, 906, 10
Spillars a *fig* as a *Sparrow*, fall, *After* *Chilmen* *Lapae*, 978, 10
Spillars see our *dures* things in *China*, 346, 10
Spilbergen, in *Greenland*, 493, 30
Spodio and *Turia*, where no *hore* made, 72, 10
Sponges, the *Russian* *Nobility* wear in their *Girdle*, 459, 40
Spore *Esque* (see the *val*), 918, 40
Spore of *water*, which comes in *Spring* a *flow*, i. e. *thofe* that *grow* in it, 894, 30, & another *Spring* connected into white *Salt*, 918, 40
Spring of *fruits* water in the (see 99, 99, 30. On the top of a hot *Spring*, 918, 40
 , *ibid.*
Spring several *sorts*, 931, 30
Spring a *Spring* congeals in *ice* water, *then* *flats*, *Others* *find* *forth* *Pach*. *Others* (see *congeal*) *find* *forth* *Salt*. Some *good* for the *French* *Pace*, *anymore*, *Another* *forming* out *Insule*, some of the *Colours* of *Lake* or *Bloud*, 931, 30
Spring *Yules* or, 930, 1

[illegible]

THE TABLE

trading there
paying, 365.10
Sueu or Hiberi, the people in
tasia, now subject to the Tartars,
2.10
Sugar cheap in China, 365.10, &
great use, 411.10
Sugar-burn in China, 270.10
Sugar brewed, 101.10
Sugarcane, first carried to the
West Indies, 86.60
Sutsky the Ruffian, takes part against
Demetrius the Impolier, is taken
and paraded by him, 757.40
Suzerain against Demetrius, &
his wife, 757.40. Owing to the
Lords, 765.10. The Emperor of
Russia, 765.10. 766.40. His care
of the English, ibid. His letters
to King James, deferring his
Proceedings, Act. 765. Other
writings of him, ibid. in mar-
ginal notes, 766.40. against the King
of Poland, ibid. 767.
Cath. himself Vainly Eager,
wch. 766.10. Crowned, ibid.
Confin to him, and the manner of
it, 766.60. Makes away the Na-
tives, and converts with witches,
Sends an Englishman into Poland
to combat the Sorceress, Ac-
cused by the English for treachery,
770. & 771. of second marriage,
Demetrius first by assault, ibid.
770. Proclaims, & renounces the
Empire, & gives into the hands of
the Poles, who imprison him in
Poland, where he dies, 780
Sumbeber's of China, 394
Sumner, or Abracan, the Uni-
verse owns Volcan, in 68. degrees
of latitude 48. mrgs.
Sumnerpadan a River, 260.30
Summer and winter when they be-
ginn and end, in Brazil, 903
40
Summer and Autumn we observe
not in the Islands of Barotseine
adwby, 938.10
Sunne and Moone visible for En-
signes by the Tartars, 82. 40
Sunne in the Chinese style, 2.10,
1.48. 30. The Kingfisher himself
Lords the world, 2.10. Child of
the Sunne, 12. 40. The Chi-
nese performing it by the Chi-
nones, before the Persis, 30. 10
Sunne worshipped in Gromeland,
820.10. Adored by the Mexi-
cans, 1017.10. Prayed against by
an Indian, 1038. 40. His Image,
1051
Sunne seen both night and day in
New Zembla, where he begins
in the 60. 505. 1
Sunne fine Degrees, 33. 40. 1
high, at midnight, 374. & fine
degrees high, in what height of
the Pole, 575. 20. & 576. 40. 1
580
Sunne going down North, and
rising North North-east, where
the Sunne is, 596. 30
Sunne first taken about the North
in Winter, where and when, 594
20. 30. Where it rises and in-
tersects there, ibid. When it ap-
pears no more there, ibid. The Moone
after that scene continually, ibid.
When the Sunne begins to ap-
pear, 599. 60. A ship's position
distant, 599. 10
600
Sunnes three & four Rains: how
at once, 483. 10
Suolistan in Persia, 70. 40
Supererogation, believed in Chi-
na, 271. 10
Superstition Religion best agrees
with tyrannical government, 432
Surgout Tume open the River
Ob: what Nations trade there,
552. 10. The Russian
Emperours Customs of Mer-
chandise there for six years, ibid.
Surt-life, the "Priest" in Russia,
omitted with in their Ordina-
ry, 447. 50. And worse in
Service time at Church, 448
Swallowfish found in the bottom of
the Sea, which remained at the fire,
626.1
Sweeten Villages, 631.10. 631.1
Selkher Tatars in Dagestan, ibid.
Switz, ibid.
Sultan's admirable in arms, ibid.
32. 50
Swords of wood with edges of flint,
1199. 40. Their strength and
use, ibid.
Sword-hilt defurred, 988. 30

Giunna,	864.
Tabin Point in Tartaria	397.
Catha, 478. 1. The <i>diaphan</i>	
from N. S. zmba,	
Tabia, things to be laid <i>jang</i>	398.
Tables in China the fishes,	398.
tail; Baquans: midst the	
fish place,	398.
Tables of honour in China,	398.
Table of Gold, <i>reuerenced</i> , 20	
Table Bond his <i>doings</i> in Ilan	399.
Taes River falls into Obu,	399.
Taicolma, what in Japonia,	399.
Taido, the new Name of the	
Cambulato Tartary. The big	
neff; 83. 40. The <i>disperch</i>	
it, and the <i>twelve</i> Sankhu, his	
Tainui the Kingdom, 89.	
Taking of leave, the <i>folious</i> in	
Tala, 373.	
Talar, Chincalata a City in Ta	
Tai, 20.	
Tai of a Province in China,	
where men ever continue <i>the</i>	
same age, 34.	
Tales of the Tartarian <i>Sorcerer</i>	
Tallugh Kingdom, between	44. 20. 50.
Tella and Bctria, 800.	
Tellu, where <i>offed</i> , 924.	
Tullia, how their <i>stared</i> out	
Tullia, and the <i>Refuse</i> , 41.	
Tam, a Tartarian Prince for	
head, 33.	
Tambar, King of Cathay, 79	
Tam, the natural Name of	8
Tamen, why China was <i>for</i>	180. 3.
Tamejines (or Chinoi) the	250. 3.
mon, 20.	
Tamelan an excellent <i>stry</i>	
Tacago, <i>Uu</i> ibute, <i>Kel</i> , an	
Bliss: <i>Tu</i> 14. 11. 11. 11.	
His Father Oghmora the	
tyer or Cathay, a <i>prful</i> de	
scribed. <i>How</i> <i>late</i> , the <i>fig</i>	
infusion of his Name, 14. 11.	
20. 30. 47. His <i>first</i> <i>Bat</i> <i>the</i>	
gamp the Mulcoites; <i>the</i> <i>order</i> <i>der</i>	
of it, <i>bidom</i> , His <i>Wondry</i> , 142.	
110. <i>Uu</i> <i>Marrage</i> , <i>the</i> <i>W</i>	
Great Changs <i>Danger</i> , 142.	
40. <i>He</i> <i>was</i> <i>of</i> <i>all</i> <i>Religion</i> , <i>the</i>	

THE TABLE.

Hu Armie against China, 143
130. Calix his Confratice a-
gainst him in his absence, 143-
40 And 144. 10. Hu Ar-
mie, ibid.
Tamerlane turns back to fight
with him, 144. 50. Axalla,
a Ge. now one of Tamerlanes
Captaynes, takes Calix Prisoner.
Tamerlanes Pillory, 145-1
Tamerlane pardons Cathaya, 145
10. Gets the opinion of Clem-
en, 145. 10. Hu March
and coming to his Rev. know-
n, ibid. Hee gives a Lord Mar-
cher of China to his party, 146
60. That Lords Oration unto
Tamerlane, Hee offers to lead
fifty thousand Tartars into Chi-
na, besides the wall, 147. 10. 20.
Gre. Calix advance up the
Empire, ibid.
Tamerlane keeps his own re-
solute ferret, 147. 60. Hee deliv-
ers fifty thousand Men to the
Prince of Thanaia and the Chi-
nois Lord, to pass the Moun-
taines, whilst himselfe and his
Army make fow of assaulting
the wall, 148. 10. The Chi-
nois overthrown, and the wall
wone at once, 148. 30. The
Chinois affrighted, and new
Army.
Tamerlane rewards the Chinois
Lord, and beats down the wall,
ibid. Makes Axalla General
of the Foote, 149. 1. Oimar
great March of sixty miles a day,
ibid.
Tamerlane ascendeth with his de-
vout further up the Country,
ibid. Belegues the Caie Pag-
uino, 149. 10. The Country
thereabouts results to him, ibid.
Axalla wone at a Suburb of Pag-
uino, the fete of the Towne,
ibid. Battered, the wall wone
and lodged upon by the Tartars,
150. 1. The Generous flane.
The Towne yielding, batts fore
quarter given it, 150. 10. Ax-
alla refuses the Government, the
Prince of Thanaia accepts it,
ibid. The Chinois Armie
advances the Golden Magnifi-
cence of it.

Tamerlane chooses the place of bat-
telle, Hu order, 150. 40. 50. Gre.
The Chinois disorderly March,
151. 20. The fight.
Tamerlanes Vanguard over-
throwne, Oimar re-enforces
the fight, 151. 40. Axalla and
Tamerlanes profit upon the King
of Chinois Guards, wound him
and take him Prisoner.
The Victory, 152. 1. 10. The King
of Chinois Brother rallies some
Horse together. Hee takes in
Pannilou. The Modesty of
Tamerlane, and the proude
Speech of the King of China to
Tamerlane, 152. 40. The
Chinois fortifies Quantou, 153.
1. Which Tamerlane be-
sieges. The Chinois thinks
to release it by a Bridge of
Boates, which the Tartars
burne with Wild Fire, and kill
fifty thousand Enemies, 153.
20. 30. The Towne is yielded,
ibid. A Peace treated and con-
cluded between Tamerlane and
the Chinois, the conditions, 154. 1.
10. 20. 30. Gre. The bounds of
Tamerlanes Conquests. Hee
commands one God to be wor-
shipped. He returns home, 154.
50. Hee honours and rewards
Axalla, and is welcomed home
by the Great Chan, at Camba-
la, 155. 10. 20.
Tamerlane adjusts Buzzes the
Great Turke, to foregoe med-
dling with Greece, 155. Hu no-
table Saying, and Dreams, his
preparations against the Turke,
156. 1. 10. Hu March by
Mokouie to Trepliond and
Georgia, ibid.
Tamerlane still begins with
Prayer, ibid. Hu Martiall
Discipline, ibid. Hee mustres
100000. Horse and 500000.
Foote, 156. 50. 60. Hu Ren-
devous at Gianchi, 157. 1.
His Stratagem to delude Baiz-
zun, ibid. What Tamerlane used
to ready before a Battle, 157. 40.
The Armes must, but disor-
derly the charge, 148. 30. The
Victory gotten by his own Wis-
dome, ibid. 60. The number of
the flane, 159. 1. He gets Baiz-
zunes Chivalry, 159. 30. Sends
Baizun's Sword to the Great
Chan, 160. 10. Hu Modesty
and demeanour after Victory,

He returns to Samarand, 160.
30. Hu Vow to God. Hu flue-
to to encrease the place of his
Birth, 160. 50. Rewards his
Soldiers, 161. 1. Gives new
Conditions of Peace to the Chi-
nois, Buries the Great Chan,
161. 30.
Tamerlane make Chief Empe-
rour of the Tartars, 161. 40.
He would have his Sonne ge bar-
beaded and why, 162. 30. His
notable Sayings concerning his
Successor, and his own Re-
creation, 162. 40. 50. He pub-
lishes his in Justice thirce a
Week, 163. 50. Solenne chan-
ged his Sermons, ibid. His
death, 164. 1.
Tanais the River, divideth Asia
from Europe, 1140. Breach
of it, 11. 60. 'Is it the li-
mit of the East part of Rus-
sia, 12. 1. The head of it,
ibid. The length of it, it falls
into the Bayne Sea, ibid. Ru-
bricus River concerning it,
12. 1. in margin.
Tanais head in the Riparian
Mountaynes, 54. 30.
Tanais in Don, parts Europe from
Asia falls into Miceas, 41. 40.
Passage by it to Constantinople,
ibid.
Tanais called the Don, 233. 10.
Falls into the Euxine, ibid. 20.
Wherabouts, 2. 10. & 12. 1.
Tanauquit a River, 255. 1. Por-
tugals fight with the Pratts there,
ibid.
Taniampura in laus, 253. 40.
Tandois the Ile, 285. 10. And
Cite.
Tangaroon the Ile, 308. 40.
Langath the Province, 308. 20.
Tanning with Milke thicke and
salted, in Tartary, 7. 40.
Tapers burne by condemned per-
sons, 435. 1.
Taprobana the Hand, now called
Zellan or Ceylan, 110. 10.
Tartar made of the Fir-tree, 117. 40.
Tartar the Conquere, whence it
three Kings or Wicemen came to
worshep one Saviour, 109. Hence
the Tartars pretend to invade
Christendome to fetch home those
three Kings from Cullen. Their
Race are not Idolaters but Chris-
tians, ibid. Tartar Emperour
married a Daughter of theirs,
118. 50. & 117. 40. Tar-

Tartars, the Carriages used
there, 2. 50. And, 10. 40.
None comes to a their Prince
without a Present, 2. 60. & 9.
20. 30.
Tartars their true and naturall place
of beginning, 15. 10.
Tartars, the vulgar Error con-
cerning their Originall, 60. 40. &
in margin, & 61. 30. They
invade Poland, & Bolesmia and
Hungarie, and where, 60. 60. &
61. 1. 10. The Crucible practis
against them, 61. 1. Tartars
Prayer and Almsbegs done a-
gainst them, 61. 10.
Tartars inhabits Scythia, 3. 30.
Confiner upon Persia, 74. & 75
lepe.
Tartars Dominions in Persia, 78
& 79. On both sides the Danu-
bius, 2. 50. & 3. 30.
Tartars of the East, the names of
their Countreys, 78. 1. 10. 20. 30.
Between Russia and Cathay.
Their Countreys, and severall
Dukes, 79.
Tartars, the beginning of their
Reign, & their four Brothers,
79. 10. 20. 30.
Tartars beyond the River Volga,
their invasions upon Poland, 61. 9
50. Their Customs, Maligne-
ments, ibid.
Tartars hold themselves Lords of the
World, 59. 50. & 64. 30. They
command the Pope to doe per-
sonal damage to them, 59. 40.
Their first Expedition, and the
miraculous way left them by the
Sea, 118. 50. & 119. 1. They
send three Armies to conquer
Asia, 118. 40. Outcome the
Georgians, 113. 40. And the
Turkes, 114. 10. And India the
Left, 114. 40. And Persia, 116
1. And Baldach, 116. 20. And
Aleppo, 117. 1.
Tartars their Originall, 11. 30.
Their Princes despoticall, 11. 30.
Their first Habitation, 11. 10.
Why they were called Mosl,
and not Tartars, 57. 20.
Tartars, their warfare, 79. 10. The
Officers of their Armies, their
promotions, numbers, and buries,
ibid.
Tartars their Bowes, 61. 40. Symp-
tom in the armes they shew, 5.
ibid. Excellent Archers, 61. 10.
& 64. 50. Their slaughter made
in Comania, and of the Ruthen-
ians and Hungarians, 61. 40. 50.
The Hungarians require aide a-

THE TABLE.

gainst them, 61. 60. They divide
their Army into three parts, 62. 1
Their persons described, 62. 10. &
64. 40. Their dispositions, 64. 30
40. 50.
Tartars passe Rivers upon Skins
fastened together, and blowe full
wind, 62. 10. How they live in
the warres, 62. 10. Their Spies
in Christendome, 62. 30. The
Pope suspects them to be the
Emperours, 63. 10. The Emperours
flourish up Christendome against
them, 63. 10.
Tartars, the Civil warres betwix
them, 117. 40. They and the
Christians fall out in the Holy
Land, 117. 50. Beaten out of
the Holy Land by the Saracens,
117. 60. The Soldan of Egypt
somewhat discord amongst the Tar-
tars, 118. 20.
Tartars have small force of Ar-
mes, 118. 40. Where they be, 118
50. 1.
Tartars Enemies are the Sonne
and Moone, 82. 40. And Gen-
tlemen, 82. 40.
Two Tartars overthrown, 60. 20
ibid. They brake out, ibid. 1.
The Conquests in Europe, 60.
50. They flee from the Christian
Army, 64. 1. Their Founders
they call God, 64. 30. And
Sons of God, 64. 30. Their Fa-
miliars for them, 64. 30. The
falseness of their Expeditions,
64. 50. Their regulations, ibid.
How pretences to invade Chi-
rendome, 64. 60. & 65. 1. De-
frayed neere Damascus, by ap-
pearing the Suez, 122. 40. 40.
Tartars their Manners and Cere-
monies of Drinking and Feas-
ting, 120. 40. 50. Gre.
Thirsty in Food and Revenue, 122
20. Eate no Swine, 122. 50.
Aue Man-car, 119. 10. Their
feeding upon Carrion, 5. 10. And
wounded flesh, ibid.
The City of their Princes, 5.
40. Their Slaves will doe much
publike worke, 5. 40. Their men
Apparel, 6. 20. & 6. 30.
They were two games at once, 6. 30.
Their women Apparel, 6. 60. &
7. 10. They walk not in their Ap-
parel, 7. 20. How they cut their
haire, 6. 50.
Tartars flane their upper-lips,
and wear with the Persians,
for not doing so, 239. 40.
Justice in one of them, 240.
10.

Tartars true ones, 107. 1. Their
impudent begging of Stran-
gers, 8. 40. & 9. 20. Their
Injustice, 9. 1. They hold
themselves Lords of Men,
9. 1. They are bold thieves,
10. 40. Their beastliness, 11
30.
Tartars dealing with Travellers,
25. 40. Their Pride, 26. 1.
They rebeld the Bare-footed
Friars, as they had bene
Chastisers, 26. 20. Their
leadinge of Strangers, 27. 30.
Their Apparel, Armes, Pa-
lours, Obedience, and Reli-
gion, 78. 50. Gre. Their Wall
Naigins, ibid. Their Hosts,
described, 3. 30.
Tartars flinke a foreigne, 168
50. And 170. 1. Anyones
themselves with blood, 170.
1. 10. Why, ibid. Their Fabrics,
170. 30. Their manner of building, 6.
40. 50. & 40.
Tartars confesse nothing by tri-
umpe, 63. 10. Their Chon-
ing, ibid. Their Tributes
where they conquer, 61. 30. &
61. 60.
Tartarians take it ill, if their
Gifts be not accepted, 48. 40.
Their Religion, 48. 40. 50.
40. Their Customs, ibid. 20.
Their Religion, 48. 40. 50.
Warfare, Hostility, & De-
scribed, 11. 1, 10. 20. Gre.
Desire much, to have Men
pay for their lives, 27. 50.
Their Questions concerning
France, 128. 10. They flite
their right Hand of whom
they take pardon, 28. 10. De-
fire to see the death of Chri-
stians, 42. 40. They confesse
our God, 27. 1. Their Opinion
of the Christians doing Mirac-
les in the Scripture, ibid. 20.
Though Christened, yet will
not be called Christians, 34.
40. Tartars is not the right
Crosse, 31. 50. & 32. 1. 60.
Their Slaves will doe much
publike worke, 5. 40. 50.
How watched, why, ibid. 20.
Their Mourning for their Princes,
8. 10. Their Sepulchres, ibid.
20.
Tartars hunger of Feb. 4. To
represent their dead Princes,
and wear with the Persians,
& 30. 30. Their
Marriages, and their Dis-
crees of Christenlike Dis-
crees, 7. 40. Their Wit-
dome do not Marry, and
40.

THE TABLE.

wily, 740. The Bridegroom
forces his wife, 750
Tartarian must fail! faithful, 75
20. Obdurate and indurified,
78-30,40. Their Marriages,
78, 20,30. They marry their
dead children that dye comarred,
79,1. Their women fall and
flue nail'd dead faithfull, 79,30. They
grasp their faces, ibid.
They mix them with blacke Ointment,
80,40. They lie in bed, 4
They Child-birth, ibid., 4
They ride astride, ibid. They
workes and Duties to milke
Kowes, at the mens u, to milke
the Mares and to chorne Col-
lows, 72,20,30. Their slavestyes,
72,20,30
Tartarian Ladies flouen in
slight, 30
Tatars their generall Ruler, 34,43
1. Their Lawes and Justice, 7
60. What offences punish't with
death, 80,1
Tatars how they choose their Em-
perours, 58,50. Princes select
Palace at Ciangnam, 80,1
30
Tartarian Courts their Order, 30
Their Lings, 28,66-20,30. These
seuerall Princes of them, are
subject to their Great Chan,
126, 10. His Residence in
Cathay, at long or fons. The
power of these Princes, 126,20.
30,Ev.
Tartarian Prince's for upon beds, 27
40
Tartarian Princess keeps correspond-
ence, 47,60
Tartars reverence to their Princes
Court, 40,1. They get their
victories under colour of peace,
40,10
Tartarians make their Princes mas-
sfery with Bread and Drinke
at Meteluckedeche de Abramam,
or at the Germano-dee
of Cathay, 20,1. They geve Sabing
to them, 20,1. They geve Sabing
reade not on the Princes throb-
ble, 17,1. 31,30. Rubru-
chs companion kept Prefecture
for flumming at us, 31,40 &
32,30
Tartarian Princes Fleete of fish-
tyme English land, 34,40
Tatars. See Tartarian letters to the Pope
82,30
Tatars. revolve Affairs of Re-
quest, 84,40
Tatars, the revenge of the

To drink, 550. *See Androbar*
 Trade, 631. *See Trading*
 with *Rammer* and *skin*, 61 &
 with *appur*, 1030
Tatars trade for *Furres* into
 Siberia, 536.10
 tatars year begins, February
 23, 536.30
 tatars, the, 536.30
 tatars, the, 536.30
 and four miles English, 533.40
 & in margin,
tatarsans questions about *Poys*
 images, 3015
 tatars admirable *Centauz* up
 on the negligent *Galla*, 70.
 30
 Tatars,
 the *beast* of the *Ensign*, 378
 the *beast* of *en*, 378
 and *Scoring* Leaders, and *work*
 Engines, 378.10
Arctican Complements, 378.50
 & 279.1. *State of their*
Royal, 279.1. *Their* Kings
 State, and *Tribrary* Kings,
 279.30. *His* *Royal*, *ibid*.
His *wonder* at the *Ensign*
 of *China*, 279.30
 of *China*, 280.1. *Their*
Monks and *Names* *Chofine*,
 280.10. *Their* *Opinion* of
 the *Referritive*, *ibid*. *Their* Kings
Bursell place, 281.20. *Their*
theorizers in the *Border*, 314.
 60. *Their* *Culture* to *cease*
 up the *Grids* of *Stranger*
def, 313. & 316. 30
 of *China*, *See* *China* & *how*
they *held* it, and *how* *ex*
led, *See*, 376.20
Tartary, *vide* *Crim* *Tatars*.
Nagayans, *Chiofats* *Tatars*.
Chiofats *Tatars*, *Chiofats* *Tatars*.
Chiofats *Tatars*, *See*.
Tatami, *See* *Iaponian* *Earth*. 376.
 10
Taurica *Cheslonofus* *in* *Colonia*,
 533.30
Taurica *Cheslonofus* *def*,
 from *page* 631. *Unit* 630. *The*
length of *Unit* 636. *The*
style, 636.50. *The* *Simphon*
fofo, *Beards*, *Original*, *Prin*
ci, *See*, 537. *Part* *belong*
 to the *Turke*, and *part* *to*
 the *Turke*, *See*, *ibid*.
Taurism *See* *Chiofats*
Taurism *See* *Chiofats*, *where*,
 537.30
Tauris in *Perfia*, *the* *Mercantile*
of, 70.40
Tauris and *Manfa*, *Hand* of *Ch*
thaya, 34.11
Tayth *Chio* in *Catay*, 800.50
def, *ibid*.

Teth to the Province, now a *Vila*
dereski, 90.20. How *Tre-*
wellers suffer it, *ibid.* They
 desire *Pargers* to take their
 Daughters *Majdan-heads*, 90
 40. They are great Negro-
 makers, 90. 60. And 91
 Teeth, a Tartarian people, for
 his pity see their Dead Pa-
 rents, 23. 1. They make Cap-
 tivity their *Scout*, 23. 10, 35
 They have much Gold, 23
 Teeth covered with Gold, 92
 Teeth, the *fame* of *Quack* *Quack*
makibon fall on, 95. 01
 Tegel, or Waggon in the Russian,
 142.20
 Temple of the Sun in the Indies,
 895.60. Converted into a *Mo-*
nastery, 895.60
 Temple and Statue erected to a *Go-*
temur, 328
 Temple, a very large, 265. 07
 Temple of the *White* *Steeple*, 265. 07
 Temple of Peru, 1030. 05 Me-
 xico described, 1033. 03 1133
 Temple of Mexico described,
 1133.50. Their *Munions* kept
 in them, 1134. 01
 Temple of the Mexicans *Chil-*
chery and *Cimarr*, 1049
 30
 Temples yearly in China, and
Berege ones, 198. 1. 39.60
 Temples crush one in the
Mountains of Cathay, 36.20
 Laced, *ibid.*
 Temples extreme ones in *Hil-*
panola, 297
 Temples raised at the new *Spain*,
 256
 Temples of the *Demis*, 974
 60
 Tendish the Province of the Tar-
 tarian: *Presbyter* John, 710
 20
 Tensife in the West Indies, the
scene and *difference* from
 the *Spain*, *Magas* and *India*, *Myne*,
 385. 00. *River*, *ibid.*
 Terms paid by the Mexicans,
 the *fulcrum* of it, 1127. 40
 50
 Tensia, the Lords of it command all
 in *Spain*, 334.20. They are as
Hebre apparent, 335.40
 Tensh of the *Spyder*, to the
 Prince of the *Chm* Tartars, 60
 40
 Tents

THE TABLE

[illegible][illegible]

Tithis the Metropolis City of the Georgians,	49
Tiger denotes a man, — flory of it,	90
Tigers their battels with the Crocodiles,	51
Tigers of the Well Indies, are called <i>Jaghuas</i> an Indian from its roaring,	96
Tigers of India denoted have killed a Tiger tame,	98
Tigris the head of it,	49
Timber how Island is supplied	66
Timocamah in Perflu, how so.	70
Tingimsee people dejected, — 3551-40. Speaks like Tartar-Cuckies, Ind. Nations being them, § 8. 10. Their destroy- er take Cowes, Fish, and Penfish, — See also, § 30, 10. Near in Canna, —	343-60-66
Tingui the City,	64
Tinguingi the City, Drunkenly well overtake them,	26
Tinna the chiefs City of the Ruffian in the Samotres Country, § 65	10
Tinnus a River,	257
Tintari Lapland,	56
Tides in the Sea, where none, § 18.	30
Tides a decrease of them, § 11.	10
Tids their Course runs in the North,	49
Tides the chief Argument of the Northwest gale, —	84
Tides the force of them, § 15. True.	65
Time of day newly divided,	91
Tyrns, the River Nelter in Moldavia,	61
tyrns payed in Groneland,	50
tyrns payed in the West Indies,	98
Tlacateca Lake, the greatest fresh-water lake, of the E. coast of Mexico, § 1. The fish, and Fowls, and the taking of them,	92
Title of the King of Sweden, 771. Of the Emperors of Russia, See Russian Emperors, or Emperours of Russia, of the King of Poland,	78
Titles the Chinese Ambassadors of them,	38
Titles the great Merchandise in Japan,	20
To build the Cause,	20
To call, a wadon Mexican Government,	not ad.

THE TABLE.

nerall, his <i>Acts</i> , 1011, 1012.	a many first, 1002.10	ter, <i>Lances made of it</i> , &c. ibid.
1013. &c. <i>Winnes a battell won</i>	Torchillus the <i>Islander</i> , his <i>last</i>	Tree of <i>Silmer</i> , a most <i>Artificial</i> one
with <i>Children</i> , 1014.10. <i>Refu-</i>	1018, 665.50	in <i>Tartarie</i> , 35.50. <i>Discribed</i> , ibid.
<i>fuls the Kingdoms</i> , 1015. His	Tortoise of <i>India</i> , which take <i>five-</i>	Trees that <i>have been since Noah's</i>
<i>great Honour, Death, and Fune-</i>	tees <i>men to draw them out of the</i>	<i>Flood</i> , 231.60
<i>ral</i> , 1016.10	<i>water, the manner of taking</i>	Trees <i>none in the five an Countries</i>
Toak found <i>alone in the Timber of a</i>	<i>them</i> ; they lay <i>Eggs and feede</i>	of <i>Nous Zembla, Lapland, &c.</i>
<i>Ship</i> , 656.10	on <i>them</i> , 987.10	517.40
Toakes as bigge as <i>Cats</i> , not <i>ven-</i>	Tortois of the <i>West Indies</i> , <i>de-</i>	Trees in <i>Peru</i> , <i>bulfs of which yeild</i>
<i>mous</i> , their <i>singing, and nestes</i> ,	<i>scribed</i> ; when good <i>Meats</i> , and	<i>fruits for one face Months</i> , and
976.20	when <i>Payen</i> , 976.40	<i>the other side another</i> , 961.50
Tobacco the <i>burning quality</i> , of it,	Tortuga <i>lie in the West Indies</i> ,	Trees taken up by the <i>roates</i> , & <i>car-</i>
used by the <i>Mexicans in</i>	866.30	<i>ried by Elephants</i> , to the <i>Great</i>
<i>their Dialectic writing, and Thy-</i>	253.20	<i>Chams Gardens</i> , 83.30
<i>ficke</i> , 1043.40	Towers <i>wonderfull ones in China</i> ,	Trees of the <i>West Indies</i> , <i>loose not</i>
Tobacco lighted by the <i>Sunne at</i>	204.60	<i>their Leaves</i> , 983.30. Not <i>depe</i>
<i>mid-wight in Greenland</i> , 737.	204.60	<i>rated</i> , ibid.
80	Tower of <i>two Stories high</i> , 328.30	Trees and <i>Thickets of the West In-</i>
Tobacco Pipes of <i>Earth and Cape</i>	423	<i>Indies</i> , 960.10. <i>Huge Trees</i> , ibid.
<i>per</i> , 587.50. <i>Cape Cod</i> , ibid. 30	423	Trees, <i>Fruit, and Plants of West</i>
<i>Grapes and Reflex</i> and Tobacco	367.20	<i>India</i> , 981
<i>grow nere it</i> , ibid. <i>Discovered</i> ,	367.20	Trees <i>believe that will hold a hundred</i>
when, 588.10	367.20	<i>men</i> , 982.20
Tobolsko <i>Castle in Siberia</i> , <i>nere to</i>	88.20	Tribunals <i>slately ones</i> , 272.1
the <i>Dominions of the King of</i>	88.20	Tribute <i>payed to the King of Mexi-</i>
<i>Altreve</i> , 798.1. <i>How farre</i>	88.20	<i>co</i> , for <i>page</i> , 1080. &c. <i>Some</i>
<i>thence, through Altreve to Chi-</i>	88.20	<i>prate Story about that</i> , 1006.20
<i>na</i> , ibid. 60. The <i>Commodities</i>	88.20	Tribute of the <i>Russe</i> , <i>payed in Com-</i>
<i>and Trading there</i> , 544.50. <i>The</i>	88.20	<i>modities</i> , 428
<i>way from Pechora thither</i> , ibid.	88.20	Trigauntis, his <i>defence of China</i> , 380
<i>See 558</i>	88.20	Trimecu, <i>a strange Sell</i> , 277.1
Tocotican the <i>Island</i> , 308.40	88.20	Trinidad <i>Island</i> , <i>discovered</i> , the
Tooci the <i>Mexicans Idoll</i> , a <i>Young-</i>	88.20	<i>Isle</i> , &c. 866.1.10
<i>man worshipped in a Womens Tem-</i>	88.20	Trinity Harbour in <i>Greenland</i> ,
<i>ple</i> , 1004.10 1031.30	88.20	<i>an Every Armes for up there</i>
Tocke what, in <i>China</i> , 306.10	88.20	722.40. And <i>passing iders</i>
Toets the <i>River</i> , <i>navigable after a</i>	88.20	<i>for him</i> , ibid. The <i>Latitude and</i>
<i>Thames</i> , 394.20	88.20	<i>Variation</i> , 397
Toet with <i>two Nayles</i> , 394.20	88.20	Trinitie <i>some mention of it</i> , 397.
Tolte and <i>Casimier payed at Brid-</i>	88.20	60
<i>ges in China</i> , 330	88.20	Trinitie <i>initiated by the Devil in</i>
Toll taken at <i>Bridges in Russia</i> ,	88.20	<i>Peru</i> , 2045.20
754.40	88.20	Trondh the <i>Town in Norway</i> ,
Tombe a <i>strange one</i> , 265. & 266.	88.20	618.20. The <i>King of Peru</i>
<i>Inscriptions upon them in China</i> ,	88.20	<i>makes feast</i> , ibid. <i>Saint Olaf</i>
ibid. 40	88.20	<i>the King</i> buried there, ibid.
Tome <i>Malangua</i> an <i>Armenian</i> ,	88.20	Tropicks, the <i>causes of tempera-</i>
his <i>adventures</i> , 254	88.20	<i>ture and habitableness betwixt</i>
Tominies, an <i>Indian Bird as small</i>	88.20	<i>them</i> , 921. 922. <i>Constant differ-</i>
<i>as a Bee or Fly</i> , 965. 20. 977.10	88.20	<i>ences makes without them al-</i>
Tomo <i>Castle in Siberia</i> , <i>how farre</i>	88.20	<i>ways, and why</i> , 925.40
<i>from the Dominions of Altine and</i>	88.20	Tropicks, when <i>mett vayne wind</i>
<i>Cathaya</i> , 798. & 527	88.20	<i>or without them, and the reason</i>
Tongue of a <i>Bird like a Quail</i> , 980.	88.20	918.50. in <i>margis</i> , & 919. 20.
20	88.20	30. <i>Causes of temperate there</i> ,
Tooles made of <i>Cornes bones</i> , where	88.20	920. &c.
877.40	88.20	Truth well <i>recovered</i> , 194.30
Tooles that cut <i>Stone</i> , made of a	88.20	Trumpa the <i>kinde of Whale</i> that
<i>Comes of sand and blood</i> , 1129.	88.20	<i>yeilds the Sperma Ceti</i> , & <i>Am-</i>
40. And of <i>Flint for Gold</i>	88.20	<i>ber Grece</i> , 471.50
<i>smiths and Gravers</i> , 1132.50	88.20	Trumpets
Tooma the <i>new Ciu</i> , where, 527.1	88.20	
Tooth of a <i>Giant found</i> , as bigge as	88.20	

THE TABLE.

Trumpets of the <i>Cannibals of Isles</i>	69.40	In 61. Degrees 40. Min. 812.
of <i>Islands</i> , 992.50	71.1	20. In 55. Deg. 30. Min. 813.
Turizina the <i>Land</i> , 24.60	647.50	20. In 55. Deg. 31. Min. ibid.
Tucuman Province in the <i>West In-</i>	109.30	30. In 55. Deg. 30. Min. ibid.
<i>des</i> , bounds of its <i>latitude</i> , 109.	30. Wonne by the <i>Tartars</i> , 114.	At the <i>Naze of Norway</i> , 814.
Tunes in it and their <i>Latitude</i> , 114.	40. By <i>Fare</i> lie <i>ibid</i> , 50.	In 50. Deg. 50. Min. 815. 20.
Admiral Wood, <i>Gill-leather</i> , <i>Huf-</i>	312.60	50. Deg. 10. Min. 822. 40.
<i>bandy</i> , <i>River</i> , &c. 897.40	396.60	50. Deg. 40. Min. ibid. 40.
Tudinus, a <i>whole Kingdom</i> 95.10.	721.0	50. Deg. 50. Min. ibid. 40.
Great <i>trading there</i> , ibid.	498.60	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tufane, a <i>Temple of Vishu in China</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tuinians, a people of <i>Cathay</i> , 24.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tuinians opinion, that the <i>Son of</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>every thing</i> , is the <i>God of it</i> , 41.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
40. They <i>will not have the ferret</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>of their Religion</i> <i>swatched into</i> ,	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
41. 62. They are <i>Mandites</i> ,	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
42.10	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tumblers in <i>China</i> , 302.40	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tumen in <i>Tartarie</i> , the <i>trade there</i> ,	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
the <i>way thither from Pechora in</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>Russia</i> , 556.20	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tumen a <i>Tartarian money worth</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>ten Marcs</i> , 34.10	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tumulusus <i>multitude</i> , an <i>example</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>of them in Russia</i> , 783.20	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tunall Tree of <i>India</i> , the <i>strange</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>growing of it</i> , which <i>keeps from</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>and Cerebell</i> , 957. 30. One in	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>Mexico</i> , growing out of a <i>Man</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>heart</i> , the <i>strange storie</i> of it,	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
1003.40 & 1004.40.50.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tunall Tree, againe <i>described</i> , with	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>bysses</i> , 1131.30	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tunna a <i>West Indian fruit</i> , makes	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
the <i>vine like blood</i> , 984.40	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Tunil or <i>Bishops in Lapoa</i> , 344.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turkes in <i>stead of Morter in Island</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
662. Two <i>sorts of Turkes</i> , <i>inver-</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>of Turkes</i> , ibid.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turkes their <i>manner of living</i> , 69.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
40	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turkes trade into <i>China</i> , 560.10.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Their <i>Commodities and selling</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
the <i>China King</i> , with a <i>forced</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>tribute</i> , ibid.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turke <i>waisted by the Tartars</i> , 119.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
1. The <i>Kingdome of it</i> is <i>refused</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
by the <i>Armenian</i> , 119. 20. The	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>weak Estate of it</i> , in <i>Rubricus</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>by time</i> , 51.60 & 52.1.10	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turkemannia the <i>Country</i> , 237.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
1. Their <i>manner of living</i> and	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>feeding</i> , ibid.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turkemannia, inhabited by <i>Turkes</i> ,	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>Grecians</i> , and <i>Armenians</i> , 69.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
40. All <i>under the Tartars</i> ,	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>when</i> , ibid.	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
Turkin <i>Armie overthrown by the</i>	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.
<i>Russe</i> , 740	24.20	50. Deg. 50. Min. 823. 10.

V

V Achen the <i>Country</i> , <i>Gen-</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>tils</i> , 232.30	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vagata <i>Streights and Land Dif-</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>ferences</i> , 20. Inhabited by the	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Somocis</i> , ibid. Impassible for	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Ice</i> , 463.40. It is an <i>Island</i> , 250.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
30	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vaigates <i>Streights</i> , whence <i>the</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Ice and flowing Wind</i> , 517.50.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Sometimes open from the Ice</i> ,	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
526.40. The <i>River and Inlets</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>about it</i> , 545.1. The <i>way thence</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>to the River Obi</i> , 550.60	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vaigates or <i>Vegates</i> , 477.60. A	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>great Sea</i> beyond it, ibid. An <i>Is-</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>land South of it</i> , 478.10. The	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Rockes by it</i> , 479.1. The <i>climate</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>and Cranes there</i> , ibid.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
30. <i>Nere to the Tartarian Sea</i> ,	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
ibid. The <i>Course of Weygates</i> ,	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
460.1. The <i>Simoes there</i> <i>beake</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>the Russian</i> , ibid.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Valand Valania, the <i>people and</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Country of the Comarians</i> , 11.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
1. Where <i>feared</i> , and the <i>extent</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
of it, ibid. Called <i>Alania</i> by the	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Armenians</i> , ibid.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vandals <i>beake the Sclauonian or</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Bohemian King</i> , 19.1	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vatigamus the <i>Islands</i> , <i>goe into</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>India and China</i> , 320.1. His	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Beake of China</i> , <i>ibid</i> . Goes to	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Iapon</i> , ibid. Sends for <i>Riclus</i> ,	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
320.10. <i>Influens</i> <i>Islands</i> at	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Amacao</i> . Carries <i>Prices in</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Rome</i> , ibid.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Valour of the <i>West Indians</i> , 105	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vapours <i>nursh</i> <i>Plants</i> , how, 892.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
20 & in <i>marg</i> .	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vardla the <i>River</i> , 253.60. The	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>beake</i> , 254.10	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Vari <i>accolini</i> , <i>Beauty</i> , that <i>beare</i>	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
<i>Furres</i> , 1071	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Variation of the <i>Compass</i> , in 57.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.
Degrees 35. Minutes, 820.20.	829.1	In 65. Deg. 40. Min. 829.

Variation

THE TABLE

Varieties of the *Campeffe* new, where, 581.60 & 583.30
 Variation of the *Campeffe*, none in 571.72. *Campeffe*, 55, *Ministry*, 810. 20
 Variation of the *Campeffe*, 30 20
 Various accidents in China, 324. 30-40. *Wencho* &c., 324.0
 Various humours and fevers, 324.20
 Valde Caldo his Fortunes, 277.40
 Valde da Ganga; first Discoverer, 324.0
 Valde Indies, 252.50
 Valdeas, *Maffinger*, 324.0
 Valere in Sweden; subject to D. 218. 8
 Vamphayra a Chinese Captain 191.40 & 22. 30
 Vebno wood, in Russia, 44. 30
 Vidders of *Ceres* and *Mars*, placed in the Tartar bowls, 43.0
 Venomous *Worms* none about Cozonaco Peru, 894.50
 Venenous Apples of India, 985. 30
 Venetians, in the West Indies, the discoverer John Gramma the new, still discoverer in, 170. Harvest in a year, Commodities which it sends forth, *Tobacco* first introduced, occasion of the Name, *Attitudes*, excellent *Wine*, 866. 30
 Veracruz, a City in the West Indies, the Situation, the Latitude, 875. 30
 Vessels in the West Indies, the *Distance* and *Extent*, 30. *Ward* of the Indians, *Port*, *River*, *Bayes*, *Islands*, and their *Latitudes*, 875. 30
 Verapaz Province in the West Indies, the Site, *Extent*, *Commodities*, *Produce* of *Fabrics*, *Beasts*, *Fish*, *Rivers*, &c. 879. 20
 Vermillion found in Silver Mines, 894.20. *Quackfif* given out of it, 814. 30. This *Quackfif* gives a joyous colour in Paintings 814. 30
 Vermilion, *Seage*, 928.49
 Veritas the measure in Russia, 223. 60 & 224. 30. About a mile 247.60
 Vert of Russia, in three quarters of an English mile, 814. 30
 Vert of whole fower, the measure in, 817.50
 Veyles, now ride in them in Pagan, 324.20
 Veyles worn at Church in Norway, 617.40
 Vgolia, a Coast Town upon the River Ob or Saimy in Tartaria, 479.40
 Vgrnaki, Samedy on the Ob, 805. 1
 Via Lactea called The Milky Heaven, 459.1
 Via Lactea, more bright in the South parts; blacke spots seen in, 918.40
 Vinella, the *Stard* of the *deified*, 928.30
 Vitium, the *Etymon* of it, 1037. 30
 Vituals the price in China, 195. 50
 Vituals of the Mexicans, 113. 30
 Viscagoes a West Indian Beas described, how Hained; Cloath made of their Hair, his *Life* for *Wages* for the *Heir*, 43.0
 Vigna here offered in Russia, 460. 30
 Vine, the *Empress* their *Enter* and *Exit*, such to *Empress*, 437. 30
 Villa Lobos, his Voyage to the Philippines, 382. 30
 Vinnice, forsaken in Russia, and now, 875. 30
 Vinia in Lithuania, *Cadence* there, 618. 30
 Vincentius Belucensis his Relations of the Tartars, 38.40
 Vinger made of the Sopp of a Tree, 957.20
 Vipers of West India, *Leaves* up to them, the *deadliness* of their *Ph* for, 975. 30
 Viro, the excellency of the *Argo* and *Soly*, 853.30
 The *Commodities* of the *Sinaitic*. A Passage that way to the South Sea or Indian Ocean, &c. 914. 30
 Vision of a Labouring man in Mexico, 1023. 30
 Vision of the Devil in Mexico, *Unperceiv'd*, 1043.20
 Visitation performed by *John*, *Peter* beforehand, 391.30
 Visitation, *de*, 814. 30
 Visitation of the *Sicks*, not used in Tartaria 814. 30
 Visions of *Cadence*, and other *Visions* in China, 154. 50
 Virzopolitani, the Devil, *Idol* of the *West*, *Mexicans*; his *Storie*, 1003. 30

1003. *His horrible Sacrifice,*
 1004. *his description, 10, 6, 20.*
His Feign'd death, 1049
 Vladilaus Prince of Poland, el-
 dred Emperor of R. R. R. 782,
 40. 50. *The Articles brought*
 785; 786. *Not to alter their Re-*
ligion, to have one Romaine
Church in the Kingdom, to suffer
the Levites still to be Romaine
people the Churchmen, or Temp-
rality, His Poles, not to be ho-
geren (Cantz), not to alter prin-
cipal civilities, 784. *To contin-*
ue the former Penfions to Stran-
gers, and Officers, to continu-
the League with Poland, In-
vests to be forgiven, Captives re-
leased, and Prisoners Cities to be
renewed, 785. *And that the*
same first Trade, Caravan Tra-
de be continued, or restored to
Rofia, Voe, or Demetrius His
Impoffible to take Pains, His wife
not to take off, Vladilaus to be
Relinquish'd in the R. R. Religion
not. Not to send furs Southerly
to the Moldavia, 786. *His An-*
ti-Chriftian former Demands,
 and Ruffians: 787. *Refuffes to*
 come to Perfum: 788. *His*
high Style of his Letters, Per-
sonality the Grecke Religion, and
Clergie: threatens Rebeli-
tion The Articles confirmed in his
Name by Polish Generals
 788. 40. *And affented unto by*
the King his Father, 789. 20.
 Rejected again by the Ruffians
 His great designe utterly
 and by order Warres, 790. His
 Father sends another Arme
 to befall of him, an Accord made
 791. 30.
 Vladif, a Tartarian bold, 799. 10
 20. 6. *General comes of them*
 799. 30.
 Vnctions or Anointings of the
 Mexican Priests: with Perfum
 and Tobacco, a women's Ceremo-
 ny, 1043. 11.
 Vngut, fair women in Tartary
 for the Great Chans Concubines
 81. 50. *The manner of the*
Chief and of age, 1043.
 Vnincorns or Rhinoceroses, 9
 50.
 Vnincorns, their description, 10
 40. 10. 40.
 Vnincorns borne, for the Ruffians
 and English: 741. 30. *And*
fewer than found them
 741. 30.
 Vnincorns

THE TABLE

Vnicornes (= *Stagbeasts*) here, 465-1
 Vnicornes, are but *Fishes*, 651-40
 Vnicorne is a *Fish*, store of them
 whereabouts, 31, 40
 Vnicornes in China, 20-30
 Vnicornes in *Italy*, in what
 manner, 318, 60 & 344-40
 In *east* *Maler* *China*, about 345-
 60
 Vnicornes in *Tartary*, 280-60
 Vnicornes of *Mexico* in the *An-
 dices*, 871, 50. Of *Los Reyes*, or
 Lima, 923-57
 Vnicornes in *Russia*, believed by the
Poles, the *Emperors* governed by *Su-
 boyan*, & *the* *Sakoy* *tribe* in
Manchey and *Schid*, *ibid*,
 923-57
 Vochanite *Prince*, *ibid*,
 923-57
 Voiced *hills*, where, 360-49
 Voiced *figures* a *General*, 433-0
 Volcans, or burning *Mountains*,
 many in the *West*, *ibid*, 870-30
 One melted a *Calvary*, 880, 30
 60, 891-10. *Dunes* named and
 destroyed, 333. *Philosophical*
 effects of them, 390-9. *Tongues*
 to cause the *Earthquake*, *ibid*,
 390-9
 Volga a mighty *River*, *ibid*,
 390-9
 Course of it, *ibid*, The *difficult*
 from *Tahais*, *ibid*,
 Volga the *River*, called *Rha* or *Rh*,
 523-30; also in the *Caspian*, *ibid*,
 523-30. The head and breadth of
 it, 521. Two thousand miles long,
 24-10. Five weeks travel on
 the banks of it, 138. In both *Gen-
 eral*, *ibid*, 234
 Volga, the *Country* about it cre-
 quered, 234
 Volga in *Russia*, 214. The *Com-
 munities*, the *Houses* thereof,
 224-20. The *sea* from thence
 to *Malaga*, *ibid*. *Elephant* from
 the *Molots*, 744
 Volga the *River* in *Russia*, be-
 lieved in the *Caspian* Sea, 451
 50
 Vol the *Ruffe* *Impress*, the *Em-
 perors* believed by *him*, see *Demetri-
 us*, *ibid*, the same prece-
 dent, 11 788-10
 Voves usually made at *Leizid*, in
 Norway, 605-40
 Voves of women for fruitfulness,
 449-1
 Voves heard in *Mexico*, before the
 Ruines of that *Empire*, 100-40
 60-10
 Vra the *Gulf*, how farre from the
Equinotiall the North *Star* is
 from thence is found very
 975-1
 Vrgence, a *Chief*, 336-50
 Vrges of the dead *Mexicans*, their
 Lives buried with the *Abjests*,
 1059-50
 Vrges, is Gold beaten into powder,
 3155-10. *China*, an enamelling with
 it, *ibid*, And *Painting*, 326-10
 Vring Cuts, 224-1 & 343
 W
 W Alchica, some places in it,
 631-1
 Walking Capains in *Russia*, his
 Obedience, 437-10
 Walking *Captain* in *Russia*, 437-10
 Wall of *China* against *Tartary*,
 lanes therein, 141, 60 & 146-
 30. Impregnable, 147, 20. To be
 General, 798-40
 Wall of *China*, described, the height,
 Materials, Towers, Beacons, the
 length, number of Gates, 800-20
 80, 30
 Wall of *China*, the building, described,
 268. Called *China* *man*,
ibid, Instructed by *Blind*
Rivers, *ibid*. The Fortifications
 of it, Wall to bank flats, *ibid*,
 Mountains, Slaves, or *Condemn-
 ed* men, *ibid*. The Prison where
 they are first kept, 273-20. They
 sometimes live years, 273-30
 30. The number of them, *ibid*,
 Wall of *China*, the length, 673-15
 15-10. In *map*, 673-15
 Warmer it begets, 673-15
 Wall three hundred miles long, 673-
 15
 Walls of *military* build, 342-10
 Walls of *Tianhai* have a Surveyor in
 China, 176-50
 Walls of *Tiflis* in the *Indies*, 897,
 60
 Warhorse, the strength of it, 630-
 10
 Warhorse, its description, 630-10
 Warpe, a Sea creature, when 55-
 10
 Waters of the *Mexicans*, mostly in
 the *Provinces* for their Sacrifices
 to the *Deities*, 1030-10. The Ceremonies of
 dedicating the *Waters*, 1031-1
 Waters of the *Crim Tartars*, 640-10
 Waters the manner in *China*, 416-
 40
 Water Officers, *Masters*
Arms, Marching, Promotions
 for the Field, Discipline, Engi-
 neering, Ambushes, Engines,
 Ordnance, *ibid*, 418
 Warfare of the *West* Indians, 99-1
 Warfare on the *River* *Vindola*, 650-10

Warts growing on men's faces under
the & being cut off, occasioned by
eating of Hops, 89, 100
Warwick's Fossil in America, 10
the Latitude, and the Lead there
lands by it. How the London bazaar
and appears, 810, 95. The In-
fluence of setting of the Currents ac-
cording to the Latitude, 810, 95
Water, why it is not mooned about
with the Primum Mobile, 214, 30
Water of the Sea, good against the
fever, 985
Waves surging forth by the Earth,
the & being in a Convulsion, 905, 2
Waters wonderful ones, in Illinois,
that arise, send into rivers from
the Sea, carry the French Disease,
and other Malignities, 245, 648
Waters of the West India, of Offi-
cial properties, 923, 30
Water being mixed as it falls, 475, 1
Water warm in France, with the Wine,
in the Sacrament in Russia, 475, 1
Water clarified with Alembic, 304, 1
Water saline; not drunk by the Tur-
cars, 475, 1
Water procuring both, 72, 1
Water, making, whether it is, 72, 1
889, 30. Believed to relieve
Tooth, 889, 30
Water fall a few years old, the differ-
ence between of some Springs is to
pass, 924, 1
Water-Hawks in Hispaniola, 397, 1
Watches, adorned in China, 321, 30
Watch and word, the master in
Canary, 800
Watch and word, duty in China,
397, 30. A prize offered for it, 173, 1
Watching all night at Church, 436, 30
Waters of the Haven in Illinois,
1051
Naze boiling out of a Fountain,
Naze found in China, 647, 60
Naze from Calicut to Canby of 112,
90
Naze, five admirable ones in the
River, 889, 30
Naze-Market in Tartary, 87, 60
Reasons not shown by the Tartary,
897, 30. Now by the English,
540, 40
Scarcity of the West India, 245, 648
Scarcity of the West India, 245, 648
Scarcity in China, 245, 648
Waters

THE TABLE

Wauers *Shop in a Chinese Tree*, 960.10
 Weddings of the Chinese. See Marriages.
 Wednesdays *called by the Russians*, 218.1. *But upon a false reason*, 456.20
 Wednesday the *Eyemen of*, 664.
 We praise thee O God, *of* in the Russian Church, 150.49
 Wedding of *Ruse by* in China, 174.40
 Weekes of the Mexicans of *thirteen days*, 1050.20
 Weekes *of years in Mexico*, 1136.
 Weights, *all things* *lying by* in China, 139.40
 Welcomes *ancient* *felony in* the West Indies, *a discourse*, 807.10
 Wendouers *Relations of the* Tartars, 60.20
 Wennes in *mens throats*, *by drinking bad water*, 74.60
 Weils, the *Prudentes nurse rewards in* *Fraser's* *Wily*, 313.30
 Weils *they divided into two parts*, 860.20. *From any to any* *Disfranchised*, *How much of them* *of the Spanish Dominion*, 876.50. *They are not loyrd to our World*, 963.20. *In many*, *How Men, Beasts, and Fowles, come first thither*, in *Ancient Indage-mes*, 963.90
 Well Indies, the *supreme Cause*, *the Protestant*, *the number of* *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *the nallages*, and *Presbyters*, *how the Clergie is maintained there*, 908. *Church government, presbiter* *for* *Peru*, and *other Church兵in*, 909. *Names of all the Officers*, 916. *Orders for the goods of the Deceased*, *for* *Admiral* *men*, *Spanish Inquisition*, *of* *the*, 919. *Orders for the Spanish*, 920. *Orders for the Spanish*, 921. *Orders for the Spanish*, 922. *Orders for the Spanish*, 923. *Orders for the Spanish*, 924. *Orders for the Spanish*, 925. *Orders for the Spanish*, 926. *Orders for the Spanish*, 927. *Orders for the Spanish*, 928. *Orders for the Spanish*, 929. *Orders for the Spanish*, 930. *Orders for the Spanish*, 931. *Orders for the Spanish*, 932. *Orders for the Spanish*, 933. *Orders for the Spanish*, 934. *Orders for the Spanish*, 935. *Orders for the Spanish*, 936. *Orders for the Spanish*, 937. *Orders for the Spanish*, 938. *Orders for the Spanish*, 939. *Orders for the Spanish*, 940. *Orders for the Spanish*, 941. *Orders for the Spanish*, 942. *Orders for the Spanish*, 943. *Orders for the Spanish*, 944. *Orders for the Spanish*, 945. *Orders for the Spanish*, 946. *Orders for the Spanish*, 947. *Orders for the Spanish*, 948. *Orders for the Spanish*, 949. *Orders for the Spanish*, 950. *Orders for the Spanish*, 951. *Orders for the Spanish*, 952. *Orders for the Spanish*, 953. *Orders for the Spanish*, 954. *Orders for the Spanish*, 955. *Orders for the Spanish*, 956. *Orders for the Spanish*, 957. *Orders for the Spanish*, 958. *Orders for the Spanish*, 959. *Orders for the Spanish*, 960. *Orders for the Spanish*, 961. *Orders for the Spanish*, 962. *Orders for the Spanish*, 963. *Orders for the Spanish*, 964. *Orders for the Spanish*, 965. *Orders for the Spanish*, 966. *Orders for the Spanish*, 967. *Orders for the Spanish*, 968. *Orders for the Spanish*, 969. *Orders for the Spanish*, 970. *Orders for the Spanish*, 971. *Orders for the Spanish*, 972. *Orders for the Spanish*, 973. *Orders for the Spanish*, 974. *Orders for the Spanish*, 975. *Orders for the Spanish*, 976. *Orders for the Spanish*, 977. *Orders for the Spanish*, 978. *Orders for the Spanish*, 979. *Orders for the Spanish*, 980. *Orders for the Spanish*, 981. *Orders for the Spanish*, 982. *Orders for the Spanish*, 983. *Orders for the Spanish*, 984. *Orders for the Spanish*, 985. *Orders for the Spanish*, 986. *Orders for the Spanish*, 987. *Orders for the Spanish*, 988. *Orders for the Spanish*, 989. *Orders for the Spanish*, 990. *Orders for the Spanish*, 991. *Orders for the Spanish*, 992. *Orders for the Spanish*, 993. *Orders for the Spanish*, 994. *Orders for the Spanish*, 995. *Orders for the Spanish*, 996. *Orders for the Spanish*, 997. *Orders for the Spanish*, 998. *Orders for the Spanish*, 999. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1000. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1001. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1002. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1003. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1004. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1005. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1006. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1007. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1008. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1009. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1010. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1011. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1012. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1013. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1014. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1015. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1016. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1017. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1018. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1019. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1020. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1021. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1022. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1023. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1024. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1025. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1026. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1027. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1028. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1029. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1030. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1031. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1032. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1033. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1034. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1035. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1036. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1037. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1038. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1039. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1040. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1041. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1042. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1043. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1044. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1045. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1046. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1047. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1048. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1049. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1050. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1051. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1052. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1053. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1054. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1055. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1056. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1057. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1058. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1059. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1060. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1061. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1062. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1063. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1064. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1065. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1066. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1067. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1068. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1069. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1070. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1071. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1072. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1073. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1074. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1075. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1076. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1077. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1078. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1079. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1080. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1081. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1082. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1083. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1084. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1085. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1086. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1087. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1088. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1089. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1090. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1091. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1092. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1093. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1094. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1095. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1096. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1097. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1098. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1099. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1100. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1101. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1102. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1103. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1104. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1105. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1106. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1107. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1108. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1109. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1110. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1111. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1112. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1113. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1114. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1115. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1116. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1117. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1118. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1119. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1120. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1121. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1122. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1123. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1124. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1125. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1126. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1127. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1128. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1129. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1130. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1131. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1132. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1133. *Orders for the Spanish*, 1134.

176,50. *And all States*, 182, 40. *An Officer* *see* *Ruffia*.
Whoredoms *expurgated* *in* *Ruffia*, 460, 30.
Whoredome *for a morsell of bread*, 646, 40. *Scarcely punished* *in* *Iceland*, *ibid*.
White, the Tartars *held* *for a figure* *of goodliness*, 84, 50.
White, the Tartars *called* *it* *the Muskouters*, 214. *The mourning colour* *in* *China*, 368, 1. 165.
White Creatures *in cold Countries*, 640, 50.
White people *under the Torrid Zone*, 398, 20.
White *most rarely borne* *in* *Mexico*, 2128, 50.
White Caffia, *A Cite* *in* *Cassidy* *is* *fertile*, 801, 10.
White Sea, 515, 40. *The breadth, it is* *supposed* *Large*, *ibid*. *See* 531, 10.
Wicings, *are Practices*, 620, 1.
Wichia *in* *Ruffia*, *made habitable*, 423, 50. *The producers* *of* *it* *are* *in* *China*, *ibid*.
Wichia *the River*, the Samois *traded* *by* *it* *into* *Ruffia*, 322, 20. *The head*, 525, 20.
Widowes *in* *Tartarie* *Marry not* *and why*, 740.
Widowes *continuing so*, *rewarded* *in* *China*, 344, 50. *Are* *conspired*.
William Baffin *his Voyage*, 699, 1.
William Helye *his Account* *in* *Greenland*, 468, 46 & 47.
William Barents *his first Voyage*, 474, 30. *Returns into* *Holland*, 478, 10. *Sets out again*, *ibid*.
William Barents, 482, 30. *His third Voyage*, 483, 1. *Deaths*.
Nous Zembla, 508.
William Boucher *a French Consul sent* *forth* *into* *Tartary*, 28, 40. *His curious Workman* *upon* 35, 50 & 37, 40. *How* *he* *came* *into* *the* *country*, 30, 20.
Williams Island, *the height* *of* *the* *Summit* *there*, 474, 60.
Willoughbies Voyage *to* *Denmark*, 780, 10.
Willoughbie Land, 462, 60. *And* 215, 50. *Is* *in* *Greenland*, 579.
Windowes *first made* *in* *the* *Ruffia* *of* *bonfire*, 662.
Winter *near* *Alenburgh* *in* *Greenland*, 651, 30 & 669.
Winter *not known* *in* *the* *Islands* *of* *the* *Indies*, 921, 60. *It* *burns* *little*.

THE TABLE

[illegible]

Wives and ferments *flame to waste*
on their Matter in the next 1089, 20
 Woden, in our Saxon Stories, 864
 Odinn, 864
 Women the surest in the world,
 where, 72, 30
 Women in China have names, 394-50, they are seldom false
 They also all the work within
 does in China, 189, 10
 Women, *Gifts from* and *Charmers*
 in the West Indies, 113, 10
 Women *Worshipers* to the Indians,
 886, 20-892, 40
 Women *bring to bed,* the *Men*
 for us, 92, 30
 Women *fall in Sweden,* 637, 10
 Women *lives in Gronland,* and
 845
 Wonders of *Illand,* 647, 40
 Wood *built by the Chinese for an E-*
 Lement, 348
 Wood in *Ormus* *which will not*
 decay, 715, 50
 Wood *in my floor in the West-*
 Indies, 90, 10
 Wood *flaming in the Sea,* 331
 Why a wonder, 527, 50
 Wood *flaming in the night,* 399, 10
 Wrothing *from* to *Katna,* 414
 20. *Wrothing with* *the* *Indians,*
 Wool in China used in the
 of us, 189, 10
Woe, for Woe,
 Works of *Poety in China,* 371, 30
 World, the *Merchants* *believe of*
 and us, 108, 40
 Works *troublesome ones in the*
 Indies, 92, 30
 Worms *troublesome many* *to,* 278
 Of an *which now get* *in*
 Wrothing with *Perils and in* *Cher-*
 ney, 341, 10-370, 30
 the right hand *the left,* *the*
 flour, *both* *dominated,* *ibid.*
 Wring of China, from *the*
 the left, *and the lines*
 drawn *drawn,* 384, *For*
 writing *but* *where* *is* *349*
 Writing by *Picture* *in* *105, 30*
 Writing *and* *reading* *in* *Peru*
 upon *open* *cards,* *and* *by* *small*
 flowers *for* *a* *Welch* *on,*
 Writing the lines up or down, 1054

Well Indies, the Cancell, and
bounds of it, 87, 86, 20. The Bishop:
See removed thence to Guada-
lajara: where first settled, 86, 50
A fifty-century, the latitude, 87, 50
Xamou, the Emperor of Japan:
their Confucius a fearful dis-
grace of him, 104, 23
Xancheon in China discovered, 39
Xandu the Cities, 80, 40
Xandu and Xambla, for Catey and
Cambulou, 310
Xauwau the Infants, called the In-
dians of the Gulf, 317, 30. Con-
quered at Rome, 216, 30. Con-
verted to Christianity, 317, 30
317, 30. His travels, 318, 30
to Gangosha in France, 318, 30
publishes the Decalogue, 318, 40
Opposed by the Iaponian Priests,
180. Returns to India by sea
An Apostolic mission, 318, 30
The Pope, Nuncio, opposed by Al-
fonso, who falls into a prison,
turns, who falls into a prison,
118, 30
Xauwau leads and beholds, 317, 30
wards him, 319, 1. His wife
carried into China, where he is
surprised and dies, 319, 10
Xauwau, a flower that blows broad
in the fields, 319, 10
Xylophagum what it is, 319, 10
Xylophagum, 319, 10
Ximally-gali, the Signory, 381, 30

